HOLT

Earth Science

Mead A. Allison

Arthur T. DeGaetano

Jay M. Pasachoff

HOLT, RINEHART AND WINSTON

A Harcourt Education Company

Orlando • Austin • New York • San Diego • Toronto • London

About the Authors

Mead A. Allison, Ph.D.
Tulane University, New Orleans, Louisiana

Mead Allison received his Ph.D. in oceanography from State University of New York. He is an associate professor of Earth and environmental sciences at Tulane University in Louisiana, where he teaches introductory geology and upper-level courses in sedimentology and marine geology.

Arthur T. DeGaetano, Ph.D.
Cornell University, Ithaca, New York

Arthur DeGaetano received his Ph.D. in meteorology from Rutgers University. He is an associate professor of Earth and atmospheric sciences at Cornell University in New York, where he teaches introductory climatology and upper-level courses in atmospheric thermodynamics and physical meteorology. Dr. DeGaetano is also the director of the Northeast Regional Climate Center.

Jay M. Pasachoff, Ph.D.
Williams College, Williamstown, Massachusetts

Jay Pasachoff received his Ph.D. in astronomy from Harvard University. He is the Field Memorial Professor of Astronomy and the director of the Hopkins Observatory at Williams College in Massachusetts, where he teaches introductory and upper-level courses in astronomy. In addition, Dr. Pasachoff has written several popular college-level astronomy textbooks.

Copyright © 2006 by Holt, Rinehart and Winston

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.

Requests for permission to make copies of any part of the work should be mailed to the following address: Permissions Department, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 10801 N. MoPac Expressway, Austin, Texas 78759.

HOLT and **"Owl Design"** are trademarks licensed to Holt, Rinehart and Winston, registered in the United States of America and/or other jurisdictions.

SCILINKS is owned and provided by the National Science Teachers Association. All rights reserved.

Printed in the United States of America

ISBN 0-03-073543-2
1 2 3 4 5 6 048 08 07 06 05 04

Acknowledgments

Authors

Mead A. Allison, Ph.D.
Associate Professor
Department of Earth and Environmental Sciences
Tulane University
New Orleans, Louisiana

Arthur T. DeGaetano, Ph.D.
Director, Northeast Regional Climate Center
Associate Professor
Department of Earth and Atmospheric Science
Cornell University
Ithaca, New York

Jay M. Pasachoff, Ph.D.
Director, Hopkins Observatory
Field Memorial Professor of Astronony
Williams College
Williamstown, Massachusetts

Feature Development

Susan Feldkamp
Science Writer
Manchaca, Texas

Inclusion Specialist

Ellen McPeek Glisan
Special Needs Consultant
San Antonio, Texas

Academic Reviewers

Paul Asimow, Ph.D.
Assistant Professor of Geology and Geochemistry
Geological and Planetary Sciences
California Institute of Technology
Pasadena, California

John A. Brockhaus, Ph.D.
Professor of Geospatial Information Science
Geospatial Information Science Program
United States Military Academy
West Point, New York

Wesley N. Colley, Ph.D.
Professor of Astronomy
Department of Astronomy
University of Virginia
Portsmouth, Virginia

Roger J. Cuffey, Ph.D.
Professor of Paleontology
Department of Geosciences
Penn State University
University Park, Pennsylvania

Scott A. Darveau, Ph.D.
Associate Professor of Chemistry
Department of Chemistry
University of Nebraska at Kearney
Kearney, Nebraska

Turgay Ertekin, Ph.D.
Professor and Chair of Petroleum and Natural Gas Engineering
Petroleum and Natural Gas Engineering Program
Penn State University
University Park, Pennsylvania

Deborah Hanley, Ph.D.
Meteorologist
Florida Division of Forestry
Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services
Tallahassee, Florida

Steven Jennings, Ph.D.
Associate Professor of Geography
Geography and Environmental Studies
University of Colorado at Colorado Springs
Colorado Springs, Colorado

Joel S. Leventhal, Ph.D.
Emeritus Scientist, Geochemistry
U.S. Geological Survey
Denver, Colorado

Mark Moldwin, Ph.D.
Associate Professor of Space Physics
Earth and Space Sciences
University of California, Los Angeles
Los Angeles, California

Sten Odenwald, Ph.D.
Astronomer
Astronomy and Space Physics
NASA-Goddard Space Flight Center
Greenbelt, Maryland

Henry W. Robinson, Ph.D.
Meteorologist
Office of Services
National Weather Service
Silver Spring, Maryland

Kenneth H. Rubin, Ph.D.
Associate Professor
Geology and Geophysics
University of Hawaii
Manoa, Hawaii

Daniel Z. Sui, Ph.D.
Professor of Geography and Holder of the Reta A. Haynes Endowed Chair in Geosciences
Department of Geography
Texas A&M University
College Station, Texas

Vatche P. Tchakerian, Ph.D.
Professor
Geosciences
Texas A&M University
College Station, Texas

Dale E. Wheeler, Ph.D.
Associate Professor of Chemistry
A. R. Smith Department of Chemistry
Appalachian State University
Boone, North Carolina

Acknowledgments, continued

Teacher Reviewers

Lowell S. Bailey
Earth Science Educator
Bedford-North Lawrence High School
Bedford, Indiana

Shawn Beightol, M.S. Ed.
Chemistry Teacher
Michael Krop Senior High School
Miami, Florida

David Blinn
Science Teacher
Wrenshall High School
Wrenshall, Minnesota

Daniel Brownstein, MAT/MA
Science Department Chair
Hastings High School
Hastings, New York

Glenn Dolphin
Earth Science Teacher
Union-Endicott High School
Endicott, New York

Alexander Dvorak
Science Teacher
Heritage School
New York, New York

Jeanne Endrikat
Science Chair
Lake Braddock Secondary School
Burke, Virginia

Anthony P. LaSalvia
Curriculum Coordinator and Science Teacher
New Lebanon Central Schools
New Lebanon, New York

Keith A. McKain
Earth Science Teacher
Colonel Richardson High School
Federalsburg, Maryland

Marie E. McKay
Earth and Environmental Science Teacher
Ashbrook High School
Gastonia, North Carolina

Mike McKee
Science Department Chair
Cypress Creek High School
Orlando, Florida

Christine V. McLelland
Distinguished Earth Science Educator in Residence
Education and Outreach
Geological Society of America
Boulder, Colorado

Tammie Niffenegger
Science Chair and Teacher
Port Washington High School
Port Washington, Wisconsin

Scott Robertson
Earth Science and Physics Teacher
North Warren Central School District
Chestertown, New York

Teresa Tucker
Science Teacher
Northwest Community Schools
Jackson, Michigan

Lab Testing

Shawn Beightol, M.S. Ed.
Chemistry Teacher
Michael Krop Senior High School
Miami, Florida

Daniel Brownstein, MAT/MA
Science Department Chair
Hastings High School
Hastings, New York

Eric Cohen
Science Educator
Westhampton Beach High School
Westhampton Beach, New York

Alonda Droege
Science Teacher
Highline High School
Burien, Washington

Alexander Dvorak
Science Teacher
Heritage School
New York, New York

Randa Flinn, M.S.
Teacher and Science Curriculum Facilitator
Northeast High School
Broward County, Florida

Erich Landstrom
NASA SEU Educator Ambassador
Boynton Beach Community High School
Boynton Beach, Florida

Tammie Niffenegger
Science Chair and Teacher
Port Washington High School
Port Washington, Wisconsin

Scott Robertson
Earth Science and Physics Teacher
North Warren Central School District
Chestertown, New York

Teresa Tucker
Science Teacher
Northwest Community Schools
Jackson, Michigan

Standardized Test Prep Reviewers

Russell Agostaro
Program Development Specialist
Office of Funded Programs, Newburgh Enlarged City School District
Newburgh, New York

Lou Goldstein
Staff Development Specialist for Middle Level Science (retired)
New York City Department of Education
New York, New York

Sheila Lightbourne
Curriculum Specialist
Okaloosa School District
Fort Walton Beach, Florida

Craig Seibert, M. Ed.
Science Coordinator of Collier County Public Schools
Collier County Public Schools
Naples, Florida

continued on page 951

CONTENTS IN BRIEF

Unit 1 STUDYING THE EARTH 2

CHAPTER 1 Introduction to Earth Science 4
2 Earth as a System 26
3 Models of the Earth 52

Unit 2 COMPOSITION OF THE EARTH 78

CHAPTER 4 Earth Chemistry 80
5 Minerals of Earth's Crust 102
6 Rocks 124
7 Resources and Energy 154

Unit 3 HISTORY OF THE EARTH 182

CHAPTER 8 The Rock Record 184
9 A View of Earth's Past 210

Unit 4 THE DYNAMIC EARTH 236

CHAPTER 10 Plate Tectonics 238
11 Deformation of the Crust 270
12 Earthquakes 294
13 Volcanoes 318

Unit 5 RESHAPING THE CRUST 340

CHAPTER 14 Weathering and Erosion 342
15 River Systems 374
16 Groundwater 396
17 Glaciers 418
18 Erosion by Wind and Waves 444

Unit 6 OCEANS 468

CHAPTER 19 The Ocean Basins 470
20 Ocean Water 492
21 Movements of the Ocean 518

Unit 7 ATMOSPHERIC FORCES 544

CHAPTER 22 The Atmosphere 546
23 Water in the Atmosphere 574
24 Weather 600
25 Climate 630

Unit 8 SPACE 656

CHAPTER 26 Studying Space 658
27 Planets of the Solar System 684
28 Minor Bodies of the Solar System 718
29 The Sun 754
30 Stars, Galaxies, and the Universe 774

CONTENTS

Lab Safety xviii
Safety Symbols xx
How to Use Your Textbook xxii

STUDYING THE EARTH — Unit 1

Chapter 1

Introduction to Earth Science 4
SECTION 1 What Is Earth Science? 5
SECTION 2 Science as a Process 9
Chapter Highlights and Review 17
Standardized Test Prep 20
Inquiry Lab Scientific Methods 22
Maps in Action Geologic Features and Political Boundaries in Europe 24
Feature Article Field Geologist 25

Chapter 2

Earth as a System 26
SECTION 1 Earth: A Unique Planet 27
SECTION 2 Energy in the Earth System 31
SECTION 3 Ecology 39
Chapter Highlights and Review 43
Standardized Test Prep 46
Skills Practice Lab Testing the Conservation of Mass 48
Maps in Action Concentration of Plant Life on Earth 50
Feature Article Biological Clocks 51

Chapter 3

Models of the Earth 52
SECTION 1 Finding Locations on Earth 53
SECTION 2 Mapping Earth's Surface 57
SECTION 3 Types of Maps 63
Chapter Highlights and Review 69
Standardized Test Prep 72
Making Models Lab Contour Maps: Island Construction 74
Maps in Action Topographic Map of the Desolation Watershed . . . 76
Feature Article Mapping Life on Earth 77

Environmental Connection

COMPOSITION OF THE EARTH

Unit 2

Chapter 4

Earth Chemistry 80
- SECTION 1 **Matter** 81
- SECTION 2 **Combinations of Atoms** 87
- **Chapter Highlights and Review** 93
- **Standardized Test Prep** 96
- **Inquiry Lab** Physical Properties of Elements 98
- **Maps in Action** Element Resources in the United States 100
- **Feature Article** The Smallest Particles 101

Chapter 5

Minerals of Earth's Crust 102
- SECTION 1 **What Is a Mineral?** 103
- SECTION 2 **Identifying Minerals** 109
- **Chapter Highlights and Review** 115
- **Standardized Test Prep** 118
- **Skills Practice Lab** Mineral Identification 120
- **Maps in Action** Rock and Mineral Production in the United States 122
- **Feature Article** Mining Engineer 123

Chapter 6

Rocks 124
- SECTION 1 **Rocks and the Rock Cycle** 125
- SECTION 2 **Igneous Rock** 129
- SECTION 3 **Sedimentary Rock** 135
- SECTION 4 **Metamorphic Rock** 141
- **Chapter Highlights and Review** 145
- **Standardized Test Prep** 148
- **Skills Practice Lab** Classification of Rocks 150
- **Maps in Action** Geologic Map of Virginia 152
- **Feature Article** Moon Rock 153

Chapter 7

Resources and Energy 154

SECTION 1 **Mineral Resources** 155

SECTION 2 **Nonrenewable Energy** 159

SECTION 3 **Renewable Energy** 165

SECTION 4 **Resources and Conservation** 169

Chapter Highlights and Review 173

Standardized Test Prep 176

Inquiry Lab Blowing in the Wind 178

Maps in Action Wind Power in the United States 180

Feature Article What's Mined Is Yours 181

HISTORY OF THE EARTH

Unit 3

Chapter 8

The Rock Record 184

SECTION 1 **Determining Relative Age** 185

SECTION 2 **Determining Absolute Age** 191

SECTION 3 **The Fossil Record** 197

Chapter Highlights and Review 201

Standardized Test Prep 204

Making Models Lab Types of Fossils 206

Maps in Action Geologic Map of Bedrock in Ohio 208

Feature Article Clues to Climate Change 209

Chapter 9

A View of Earth's Past 210

SECTION 1 **Geologic Time** 211

SECTION 2 **Precambrian Time and the Paleozoic Era** 215

SECTION 3 **The Mesozoic and Cenozoic Eras** 221

Chapter Highlights and Review 227

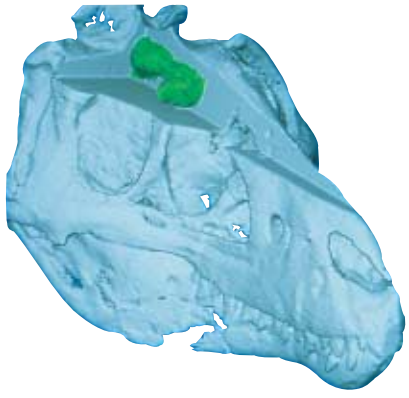
Standardized Test Prep 230

Skills Practice Lab History in the Rocks 232

Maps in Action Fossil Evidence for Gondwanaland 234

Feature Article CT Scanning Fossils 235

Environmental Connection



THE DYNAMIC EARTH

Unit 4

Chapter 10

Plate Tectonics 238

SECTION 1 **Continental Drift** 239

SECTION 2 **The Theory of Plate Tectonics** 247

SECTION 3 **The Changing Continents** 255

Chapter Highlights and Review 261

Standardized Test Prep 264

Making Models Lab Sea-Floor Spreading 266

Maps in Action Location of Earthquakes in South America, 2002–2003 268

Feature Article The Mid-Atlantic Ridge 269

Chapter 11

Deformation of the Crust 270

SECTION 1 **How Rock Deforms** 271

SECTION 2 **How Mountains Form** 279

Chapter Highlights and Review 285

Standardized Test Prep 288

Making Models Lab Continental Collisions 290

Maps in Action Shear Strain in New Zealand 292

Feature Article The Disappearing Mediterranean 293

Chapter 12

Earthquakes 294

SECTION 1 **How and Where Earthquakes Happen** 295

SECTION 2 **Studying Earthquakes** 301

SECTION 3 **Earthquakes and Society** 305

Chapter Highlights and Review 309

Standardized Test Prep 312

Skills Practice Lab Finding an Epicenter 314

Maps in Action Earthquake Hazard Map 316

Feature Article Geophysicist 317

Chapter 13

Volcanoes 318

SECTION 1 **Volcanoes and Plate Tectonics** 319

SECTION 2 **Volcanic Eruptions** 325

Chapter Highlights and Review 331

Standardized Test Prep 334

Making Models Lab Volcano Verdict 336

Maps in Action The Hawaiian-Emperor Seamount Chain 338

Feature Article The Effects of Volcanoes on Climate 339

RESHAPING THE CRUST

Unit 5

Chapter 14

Weathering and Erosion 342

SECTION 1 **Weathering Processes** 343
SECTION 2 **Rates of Weathering** 349
SECTION 3 **Soil** 353
SECTION 4 **Erosion** 357

Chapter Highlights and Review 365
Standardized Test Prep 368
Skills Practice Lab Soil Chemistry 370
Maps in Action Soil Map of North Carolina 372
Feature Article Soil Conservationist 373

Chapter 15

River Systems 374

SECTION 1 **The Water Cycle** 375
SECTION 2 **Stream Erosion** 379
SECTION 3 **Stream Deposition** 383

Chapter Highlights and Review 387
Standardized Test Prep 390
Inquiry Lab Sediments and Water 392
Maps in Action World Watershed Sediment Yield 394
Feature Article The Three Gorges Dam 395

Chapter 16

Groundwater 396

SECTION 1 **Water Beneath the Surface** 397
SECTION 2 **Groundwater and Chemical Weathering** 405

Chapter Highlights and Review 409
Standardized Test Prep 412
Skills Practice Lab Porosity 414
Maps in Action Water Level in the Ogallala Aquifer 416
Feature Article Disappearing Land 417

Environmental Connection

Chapter 17

Glaciers 418

SECTION 1 **Glaciers: Moving Ice** 419

SECTION 2 **Glacial Erosion and Deposition** 423

SECTION 3 **Ice Ages** 431

Chapter Highlights and Review 435

Standardized Test Prep 438

Making Models Lab Glaciers and Sea Level Change 440

Maps in Action Gulkana Glacier 442

Feature Article The Missoula Floods 443

Chapter 18

Erosion by Wind and Waves 444

SECTION 1 **Wind Erosion** 445

SECTION 2 **Wave Erosion** 451

SECTION 3 **Coastal Erosion and Deposition** 455

Chapter Highlights and Review 459

Standardized Test Prep 462

Inquiry Lab Beaches 464

Maps in Action Coastal Erosion Near the Beaufort Sea 466

Feature Article The Flooding of Venice 467

OCEANS

Unit 6

Chapter 19

The Ocean Basins 470

SECTION 1 **The Water Planet** 471

SECTION 2 **Features of the Ocean Floor** 475

SECTION 3 **Ocean-Floor Sediments** 479

Chapter Highlights and Review 483

Standardized Test Prep 486

Skills Practice Lab Ocean-Floor Sediments 488

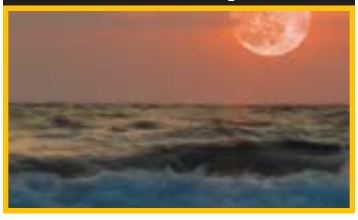
Maps in Action Total Sediment Thickness of Earth's Oceans 490

Feature Article Oceanographer 491

Chapter 20

Ocean Water 492

SECTION 1 **Properties of Ocean Water** 493
SECTION 2 **Life in the Oceans** 501
SECTION 3 **Ocean Resources** 505
Chapter Highlights and Review 509
Standardized Test Prep 512
Inquiry Lab Ocean Water Density 514
Maps in Action Sea Surface Temperatures in August 516
Feature Article A Harbor Makes a Comeback 517



Chapter 21

Movements of the Ocean 518

SECTION 1 **Ocean Currents** 519
SECTION 2 **Ocean Waves** 525
SECTION 3 **Tides** 531
Chapter Highlights and Review 535
Standardized Test Prep 538
Making Models Lab Wave Motion 540
Maps in Action Roaming Rubber Duckies 542
Feature Article Energy from the Ocean 543

ATMOSPHERIC FORCES Unit 7

Chapter 22

The Atmosphere 546

SECTION 1 **Characteristics of the Atmosphere** 547
SECTION 2 **Solar Energy and the Atmosphere** 555
SECTION 3 **Atmospheric Circulation** 561
Chapter Highlights and Review 565
Standardized Test Prep 568
Inquiry Lab Energy Absorption and Reflection 570
Maps in Action Absorbed Solar Radiation 572
Feature Article Energy from the Wind 573

Environmental Connection

Chapter 23

Water in the Atmosphere 574
- SECTION 1 **Atmospheric Moisture** 575
- SECTION 2 **Clouds and Fog** 581
- SECTION 3 **Precipitation** 587
- **Chapter Highlights and Review** 591
- **Standardized Test Prep** 594
- **Skills Practice Lab** Relative Humidity 596
- **Maps in Action** Annual Precipitation in the United States 598
- **Feature Article** Hail 599

Chapter 24

Weather 600
- SECTION 1 **Air Masses** 601
- SECTION 2 **Fronts** 605
- SECTION 3 **Weather Instruments** 611
- SECTION 4 **Forecasting the Weather** 615
- **Chapter Highlights and Review** 621
- **Standardized Test Prep** 624
- **Skills Practice Lab** Weather Map Interpretation 626
- **Maps in Action** Weather-Related Disasters, 1980–2003 628
- **Feature Article** Meteorologist 629

Chapter 25

Climate 630
- SECTION 1 **Factors That Affect Climate** 631
- SECTION 2 **Climate Zones** 637
- SECTION 3 **Climate Change** 641
- **Chapter Highlights and Review** 647
- **Standardized Test Prep** 650
- **Inquiry Lab** Factors That Affect Climate 652
- **Maps in Action** Climates of the World 654
- **Feature Article** Keeping Cool with Algae 655

SPACE

Unit 8

Chapter 26

Studying Space 658

SECTION 1 **Viewing the Universe** 659

SECTION 2 **Movements of the Earth** 667

Chapter Highlights and Review 675

Standardized Test Prep 678

Inquiry Lab Earth-Sun Motion 680

Maps in Action Light Sources 682

Feature Article *Landsat* Maps the Earth 683

Chapter 27

Planets of the Solar System 684

SECTION 1 **Formation of the Solar System** 685

SECTION 2 **Models of the Solar System** 691

SECTION 3 **The Inner Planets** 695

SECTION 4 **The Outer Planets** 701

Chapter Highlights and Review 709

Standardized Test Prep 712

Making Models Lab Crater Analysis 714

Maps in Action MOLA Map of Mars 716

Feature Article Astronomer 717

Chapter 28

Minor Bodies of the Solar System 718

SECTION 1 **Earth's Moon** 719

SECTION 2 **Movements of the Moon** 725

SECTION 3 **Satellites of Other Planets** 733

SECTION 4 **Asteroids, Comets, and Meteoroids** 739

Chapter Highlights and Review 745

Standardized Test Prep 748

Skills Practice Lab Galilean Moons of Jupiter 750

Maps in Action Lunar Landing Sites 752

Feature Article Mining on the Moon 753

Environmental Connection

Chapter 29

The Sun 754

SECTION 1 **Structure of the Sun** 755
SECTION 2 **Solar Activity** 761
Chapter Highlights and Review 765
Standardized Test Prep 768
Skills Practice Lab Energy of the Sun 770
Maps in Action SXT Composite Image of the Sun 772
Feature Article The Genesis Mission 773

Chapter 30

Stars, Galaxies, and the Universe 774

SECTION 1 **Characteristics of Stars** 775
SECTION 2 **Stellar Evolution** 781
SECTION 3 **Star Groups** 789
SECTION 4 **The Big Bang Theory** 793
Chapter Highlights and Review 797
Standardized Test Prep 800
Skills Practice Lab Star Magnitudes 802
Maps in Action The Milky Way 804
Feature Article Studying Stars in Formation 805

APPENDIX

Contents 806
Reading and Study Skills 807
FoldNote Instructions 814
Graphic Organizer Instructions 817
Math Skills Refresher 820
Graphing Skills Refresher 824
Chemistry Skills Refresher 827
Physics Skills Refresher 829
Mapping Expeditions 832
Long-Term Projects 846
Reference Tables 870
Reference Maps 881
Reading Check Answers 889

Glossary/Glosario 895
Index 925

CHAPTER LABS

Inquiry Labs

Scientific Methods 22
Physical Properties of Elements 98
Blowing in the Wind 178
Sediments and Water 392
Beaches 464
Ocean Water Density 514
Energy Absorption and Reflection 570
Factors That Affect Climate 652
Earth-Sun Motion 680

Skills Practice Labs

Testing the Conservation of Mass 48
Mineral Identification 120
Classification of Rocks 150
History in the Rocks 232
Finding an Epicenter 314
Soil Chemistry 370
Porosity 414
Ocean-Floor Sediments 488
Relative Humidity 596
Weather Map Interpretation 626
Galilean Moons of Jupiter . . . 750
Energy of the Sun 770
Star Magnitudes 802

Making Models Labs

Contour Maps: Island Construction 74
Types of Fossils 206
Sea-Floor Spreading 266
Continental Collisions 290
Volcano Verdict 336
Glaciers and Sea Level Change 440
Wave Motion 540
Crater Analysis 714

QUICK LABS

Making Observations 11
Sample Size and Accuracy 12
Effects of Solar Energy 35
Studying Ecosystems 41
Making Projections 58
Topographic Maps 64
Using the Periodic Table 83
Compounds 91
Modeling Tetrahedra 106
Determining Density 113
Crystal Formation 130
Graded Bedding 139
Solar Collector 166
Reclamation 170
What's Your Relative Age? . . . 186
Radioactive Decay 194
Geologic Time Scale 212
Chocolate Candy Survival . . . 217
Making Magnets 245
Tectonic Plate Boundaries . . . 253
Modeling Isostasy 272
Modeling Stress and Strain . . . 274
Seismographic Record 302
Earthquake-Safe Buildings . . . 306
Changing Melting Point 321
Volcanic Cones 329
Mechanical Weathering 345
Surface Areas 350
Modeling the Water Cycle . . . 377
Soil Erosion 385
Permeability 398
Chemical Weathering 405
Slipping Ice 421
Glacial Erosion 425
Modeling Desert Winds 449
Graphing Tides 456
Sonar 473
Diatoms 481
Dissolved Solids 495
Density Factors 499
Ocean Currents 522
Waves 527
Barometric Pressure 551
Light and Latitude 559
Dew Point 579
Cloud Formation 584
Wind Chill 612
Gathering Weather Data 618
Evaporation 634
Hot Stuff 644
Modeling a Pendulum 668
The Angle of the Sun's Rays 673
Water Planetesimals 687
Ellipses 692
Liquid and Solid Cores 722
Eclipses 728
The Size of Our Sun 758
Parallax 779
The Expanding Universe 795

MAPS IN ACTION

Geologic Features and Political Boundaries in Europe . . . 24
Concentration of Plant Life on Earth . . . 50
Topographic Map of the Desolation Watershed . . . 76
Element Resources in the United States . . . 100
Rock and Mineral Production in the United States . . . 122
Geologic Map of Virginia . . . 152
Wind Power in the United States . . . 180
Geologic Map of Bedrock in Ohio . . . 208
Fossil Evidence for Gondwanaland . . . 234
Location of Earthquakes in South America, 2002–2003 . . . 268
Shear Strain in New Zealand . . . 292
Earthquake Hazard Map . . . 316
The Hawaiian-Emperor Seamount Chain . . . 338
Soil Map of North Carolina . . . 372
World Watershed Sediment Yield . . . 394
Water Level in the Ogallala Aquifer . . . 416
Gulkana Glacier . . . 442
Coastal Erosion Near the Beaufort Sea . . . 466
Total Sediment Thickness of Earth's Oceans . . . 490
Sea Surface Temperatures in August . . . 516
Roaming Rubber Duckies . . . 542
Absorbed Solar Radiation . . . 572
Annual Precipitation in the United States . . . 598
Weather-Related Disasters, 1980–2003 . . . 628
Climates of the World . . . 654
Light Sources . . . 682
MOLA Map of Mars . . . 716
Lunar Landing Sites . . . 752
SXT Composite Image of the Sun . . . 772
The Milky Way . . . 804

FEATURE ARTICLES

CAREER FOCUS

Field Geologist . . . 25
Mining Engineer . . . 123
Geophysicist . . . 317
Soil Conservationist . . . 373
Oceanographer . . . 491
Meteorologist . . . 629
Astronomer . . . 717

IMPACT on Society

Biological Clocks . . . 51
The Mid-Atlantic Ridge . . . 269
The Disappearing Mediterranean . . . 293
Disappearing Land . . . 417
The Flooding of Venice . . . 467
Hail . . . 599
The Genesis Mission . . . 773

SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

The Smallest Particles . . . 101
Moon Rock . . . 153
CT Scanning Fossils . . . 235
Energy from the Ocean . . . 543
Energy from the Wind . . . 573
Landsat Maps the Earth . . . 683
Mining on the Moon . . . 753
Studying Stars in Formation . . . 805

EYE on the Environment

Mapping Life on Earth . . . 77
What's Mined Is Yours . . . 181
Clues to Climate Change . . . 209
The Effects of Volcanoes on Climate . . . 339
The Three Gorges Dam . . . 395
The Missoula Floods . . . 443
A Harbor Makes a Comeback . . . 517
Keeping Cool with Algae . . . 655

Lab Safety

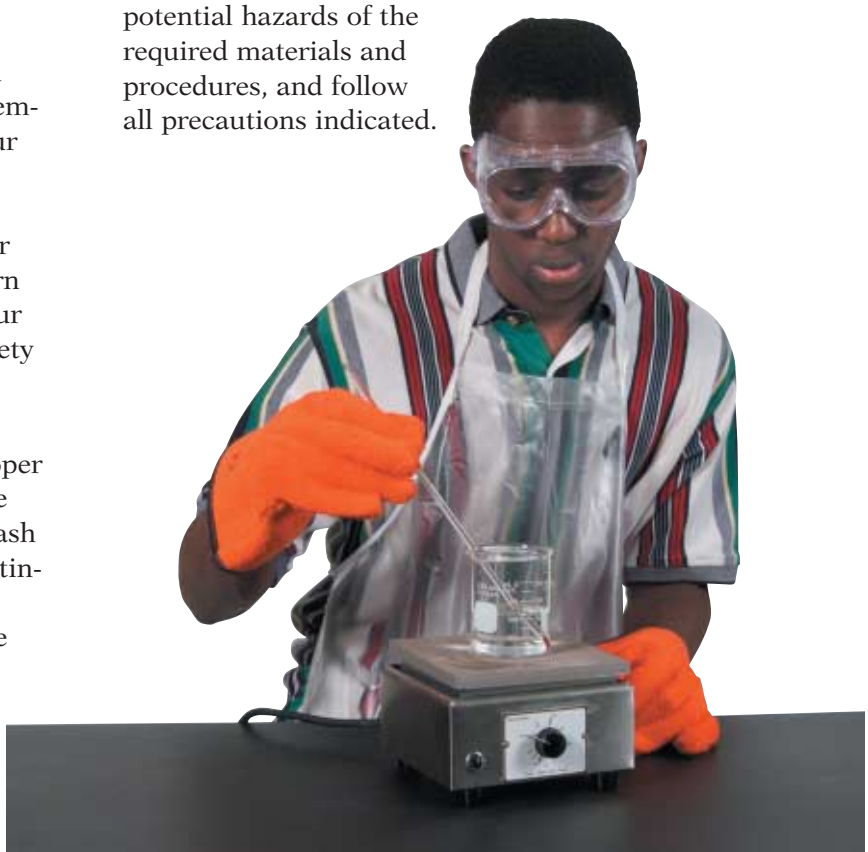
In the laboratory, you can engage in hands-on explorations, test your scientific hypotheses, and build practical lab skills. However, while you are working in the lab or in the field, it is your responsibility to protect yourself and your classmates by conducting yourself in a safe manner. You will avoid accidents in the lab by following directions, handling materials carefully, and taking your work seriously. Read the following safety guidelines before working in the lab. Make sure that you understand all guidelines before entering the lab.

Before You Begin

- **Read the entire activity before entering the lab.** Be familiar with the instructions before beginning an activity. Do not start an activity until you have asked your teacher to explain any parts of the activity that you do not understand.
- **Student-designed procedures or inquiry activities must be approved by your teacher before you attempt the procedures or activities.**
- **Wear the right clothing for lab work.** Before beginning work, tie back long hair, roll up loose sleeves, and put on any required personal protective equipment as directed by your teacher. Remove your wristwatch and any necklaces or jewelry that could get caught in moving parts. Avoid or confine loose clothing. Do not wear open-toed shoes, sandals, or canvas shoes.
- **Do not wear contact lenses in the lab.** Even though you will be wearing safety goggles, chemicals could get between contact lenses and your eyes and could cause irreparable eye damage. If your doctor requires that you wear contact lenses instead of glasses, then you should wear eye-cup safety goggles—similar to goggles worn for underwater swimming—in the lab. Ask your doctor or your teacher how to use eye-cup safety goggles to protect your eyes.
- **Know the location of all safety and emergency equipment used in the lab.** Know proper fire-drill procedures and the location of all fire xits. Ask your teacher where the nearest eyewash stations, safety blankets, safety shower, fire extinguisher, first-aid kit, and chemical spill kit are located. Be sure that you know how to operate the equipment safely.

While You Are Working

- **Always wear a lab apron and safety goggles.** Wear these items even if you are not working on an activity. Labs contain chemicals that can damage your clothing, skin, and eyes. If your safety goggles cloud up or are uncomfortable, ask your teacher for help.
- **NEVER work alone in the lab.** Work in the lab only when supervised by your teacher. Do not leave equipment unattended while it is in operation.
- **Perform only activities specifically assigned by your teacher.** Do not attempt any procedure without your teacher's direction. Use only materials and equipment listed in the activity or authorized by your teacher. Steps in a procedure should be performed only as described in the activity or as approved by your teacher.
- **Keep your work area neat and uncluttered.** Have only books and other materials that are needed to conduct the activity in the lab. Keep backpacks, purses, and other items in your desk, locker, or other designated storage areas.
- **Always heed safety symbols and cautions listed in activities, listed on handouts, posted in the room, provided on chemical labels, and given verbally by your teacher.** Be aware of the potential hazards of the required materials and procedures, and follow all precautions indicated.



- **Be alert, and walk with care in the lab.** Be aware of others near you and your equipment.
- **Do not take food, drinks, chewing gum, or tobacco products into the lab.** Do not store or eat food in the lab.
- **NEVER taste chemicals or allow them to contact your skin.** Keep your hands away from your face and mouth, even if you are wearing gloves.
- **Exercise caution when working with electrical equipment.** Do not use electrical equipment with frayed or twisted wires. Be sure that your hands are dry before using electrical equipment. Do not let electrical cords dangle from work stations. Dangling cords can cause you to trip and can cause an electrical shock.
- **Use extreme caution when working with hot plates and other heating devices.** Keep your head, hands, hair, and clothing away from the flame or heating area. Remember that metal surfaces connected to the heated area will become hot by conduction. Gas burners should be lit only with a spark lighter, not with matches. Make sure that all heating devices and gas valves are turned off before you leave the lab. Never leave a heating device unattended when it is in use. Metal, ceramic, and glass items do not necessarily look hot when they are hot. Allow all items to cool before storing them.
- **Do not fool around in the lab.** Take your lab work seriously, and behave appropriately in the lab. Lab equipment and apparatus are not toys; never use lab time or equipment for anything other than the intended purpose. Be aware of the safety of your classmates as well as your safety at all times.

Emergency Procedures

- **Follow standard fire-safety procedures.** If your clothing catches on fire, do not run; WALK to the safety shower, stand under it, and turn it on. While doing so, call to your teacher. In case of fire, alert your teacher and leave the lab.
- **Report any accident, incident, or hazard—no matter how trivial—to your teacher immediately.** Any incident involving bleeding, burns, fainting, nausea, dizziness, chemical exposure, or ingestion should also be reported immediately to the school nurse or to a physician. If you have a close call, tell your teacher so that you and your teacher can find a way to prevent it from happening again.

- **Report all spills to your teacher immediately.** Call your teacher rather than trying to clean a spill yourself. Your teacher will tell you whether it is safe for you to clean up the spill; if it is not safe, your teacher will know how to clean up the spill.
- **If you spill a chemical on your skin, wash the chemical off in the sink and call your teacher.** If you spill a solid chemical onto your clothing, brush it off carefully without scattering it onto somebody else and call your teacher. If you get liquid on your clothing, wash it off right away by using the faucet at the sink and call your teacher.

When You Are Finished

- **Clean your work area at the conclusion of each lab period as directed by your teacher.** Broken glass, chemicals, and other waste products should be disposed of in separate, special containers. Dispose of waste materials as directed by your teacher. Put away all material and equipment according to your teacher's instructions. Report any damaged or missing equipment or materials to your teacher.
- **Wash your hands with soap and hot water after each lab period.** To avoid contamination, wash your hands at the conclusion of each lab period, and before you leaving the lab.

Safety Symbols

Before you begin working in the lab, familiarize yourself with the following safety symbols, which are used throughout your textbook, and the guidelines that you should follow when you see these symbols.

Eye Protection

- **Wear approved safety goggles as directed.** Safety goggles should be worn in the lab at all times, especially when you are working with a chemical or solution, a heat source, or a mechanical device.
- **If chemicals get into your eyes, flush your eyes immediately.** Go to an eyewash station immediately, and flush your eyes (including under the eyelids) with running water for at least 15 minutes. Use your thumb and fingers to hold your eyelids open and roll your eyeball around. While doing so, ask another student to notify your teacher.
- **Do not wear contact lenses in the lab.** Chemicals can be drawn up under a contact lens and into the eye. If you must wear contacts prescribed by a physician, tell your teacher. In this case, you must also wear approved eye-cup safety goggles to help protect your eyes.
- **Do not look directly at the sun or any light source through any optical device or lens system, and do not reflect direct sunlight to illuminate a microscope.** Such actions concentrate light rays to an intensity that can severely burn your retinas, which may cause blindness.

Clothing Protection

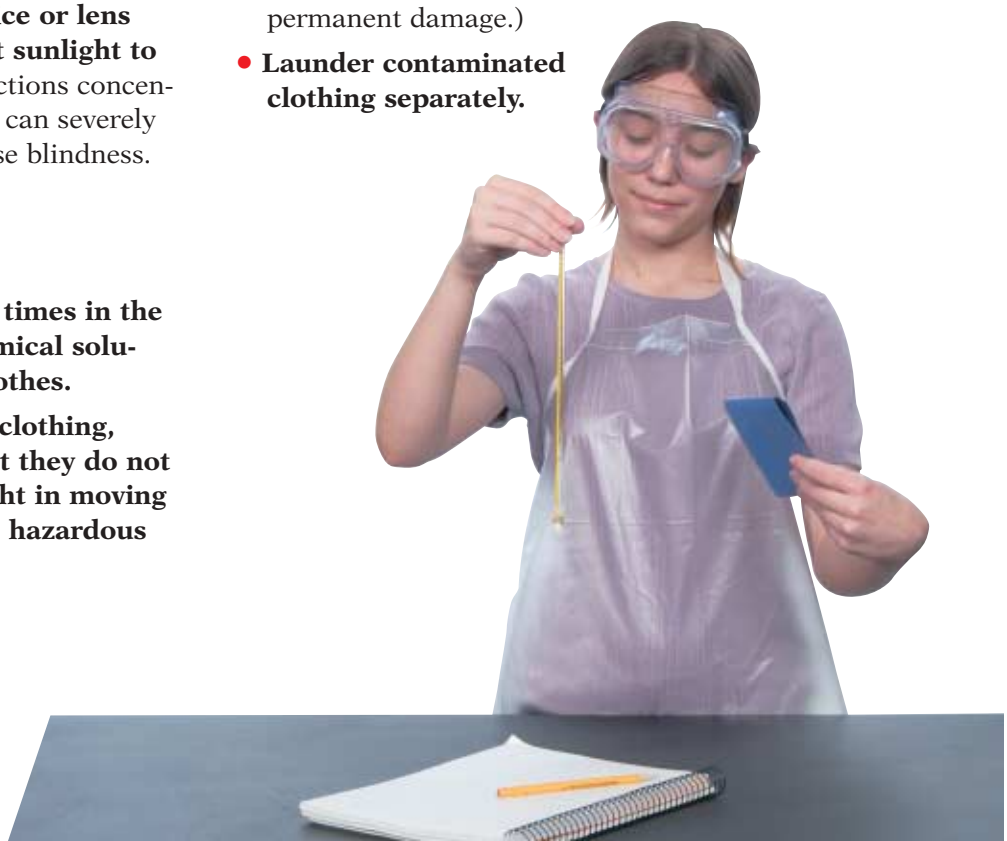
- **Wear an apron or lab coat at all times in the lab to prevent chemicals or chemical solutions from contacting skin or clothes.**
- **Tie back long hair, secure loose clothing, and remove loose jewelry so that they do not knock over equipment, get caught in moving parts, or come into contact with hazardous materials.**

Hand Safety

- **Do not cut an object while holding the object in your hand.** Dissect specimens in a dissecting tray.
- **Wear protective gloves when working with an open flame, chemicals, solutions, or wild or unknown plants.**
- **Use a hot mitt to handle resistors, light sources, and other equipment that may be hot.** Allow all equipment to cool before storing it.

Hygienic Care

- **Keep your hands away from your face and mouth while you are working in the lab.**
- **Wash your hands thoroughly before you leave the lab.**
- **Remove contaminated clothing immediately.** If you spill caustic substances on your skin or clothing, use the safety shower or a faucet to rinse. Remove affected clothing while you are under the shower, and call to your teacher. (It may be temporarily embarrassing to remove clothing in front of your classmates, but failure to rinse a chemical off your skin could result in permanent damage.)
- **Launder contaminated clothing separately.**



Sharp-Object Safety

- **Use extreme care when handling all sharp and pointed instruments, such as scalpels, sharp probes, and knives.**
- **Do not cut an object while holding the object in your hand.** Cut objects on a suitable work surface. Always cut in a direction away from your body.
- **Do not use double-edged razor blades in the lab.**

Glassware Safety

- **Inspect glassware before use; do not use chipped or cracked glassware.** Use heat-resistant glassware for heating materials or storing hot liquids, and use tongs or a hot mitt to handle this equipment.
- **Do not attempt to insert glass tubing into a rubber stopper without specific instructions from your teacher.**
- **Notify immediately your teacher if a piece of glassware or a light bulb breaks.** Do not attempt to clean up broken glass unless your teacher directs you to do so.

Electrical Safety

- **Do not use equipment with frayed electrical cords or loose plugs.**
- **Fasten electrical cords to work surfaces by using tape.** Doing so will prevent tripping and will ensure that equipment will not fall off the table.
- **Do not use electrical equipment near water or when your clothing or hands are wet.**
- **Hold the rubber cord when you plug in or unplug equipment.** Do not touch the metal prongs of the plug, and do not unplug equipment by pulling on the cord.
- **Wire coils on hot plates may heat up rapidly.** If heating occurs, open the switch immediately and use a hot mitt to handle the equipment.

Heating Safety

- **Be aware of any source of flames, sparks, or heat (such as open flames, electric heating coils, or hot plates) before working with flammable liquids or gases.**
- **Avoid using open flames.** If possible, work only with hot plates that have an on/off switch and an indicator light. Do not leave hot plates unattended. Do not use alcohol lamps. Turn off hot plates and open flames when they are not in use.
- **Never leave a hot plate unattended while it is turned on or while it is cooling off.**
- **Know the location of lab fire extinguishers and fire-safety blankets.**
- **Use tongs or appropriate insulated holders when handling heated objects.** Heated objects often do not appear to be hot. Do not pick up an object with your hand if it could be warm.
- **Keep flammable substances away from heat, flames, and other ignition sources.**
- **Allow all equipment to cool before storing it.**

Fire Safety

- **Know the location of lab fire extinguishers and fire-safety blankets.**
- **Know your school's fire-evacuation routes.**
- **If your clothing catches on fire, walk (do not run) to the emergency lab shower to put out the fire. If the shower is not working, STOP, DROP, and ROLL!** Smother the fire by stopping immediately, dropping to the floor, and rolling until the fire is out.

Safety with Gases

- **Do not inhale any gas or vapor unless directed to do so by your teacher.** Never inhale pure gases.
- **Handle materials that emit vapors or gases in a well-ventilated area.** This work should be done in an approved chemical fume hood.

Caustic Substances

- **If a chemical gets on your skin, on your clothing, or in your eyes, rinse it immediately and alert your teacher.**
- **If a chemical is spilled on the floor or lab bench, alert your teacher, but do not clean it up yourself unless your teacher directs you to do so.**

How to Use Your Textbook

Your Roadmap for Success with *Holt Earth Science*

Chapter 10 Plate Tectonics

Sections
1 Continental Drift
2 The Theory of Plate Tectonics
3 The Changing Continents

What You'll Learn
- How scientists developed the theory of plate tectonics
- Why tectonic plates move
- How Earth's geography has changed

Why It's Relevant
Understanding why and how tectonic plates move provides a basis for understanding other concepts of Earth science.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY
FOLDNOTES Tri-Fold
Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "TriFold" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Write what you know about plate tectonics in the column labeled "Know." Then, write what you want to know in the column labeled "Want." As you read the chapter, write what you learn in the column labeled "Learn."

▶ The island of Iceland is being torn into two pieces as two tectonic plates pull apart. Iceland is one of only a few places on Earth where this process can be seen on land.

238

Section 2 The Theory of Plate Tectonics

By the 1960s, evidence supporting continental drift and sea-floor spreading led to the development of a theory called *plate tectonics*. Plate tectonics is the theory that explains why and how continents move and is the study of the formation of features in Earth's crust.

OBJECTIVES
- Summarize the theory of plate tectonics.
- Identify and describe the three types of plate boundaries.
- List and describe three causes of plate movement.

KEY TERMS
plate tectonics
lithosphere
asthenosphere
divergent boundary
convergent boundary
transform boundary

How Continents Move

Earth's crust and the rigid, upper part of the mantle form a layer of Earth called the lithosphere. The lithosphere forms the thin outer shell of Earth. It is broken into several blocks, called *tectonic plates,* that ride on a deformable layer of the mantle called the *asthenosphere* in much the same way that blocks of wood float on water. The asthenosphere (as THEN uh sfir) is a layer of "plastic" rock just below the lithosphere. Plastic rock is solid rock that is under great pressure and that flows very slowly, like putty does. Figure 1 shows what tectonic plates may look like.

Earth's crust is classified into two types—*oceanic crust* and *continental crust*. Oceanic crust is dense and is made of rock that is rich in iron and magnesium. Continental crust has a low density and is made of rock that is rich in silica. Tectonic plates can include continental crust, oceanic crust, or both. The continents and oceans are carried along on the moving tectonic plates in the same way that passengers are carried by a bus.

plate tectonics the theory that explains how large pieces of the lithosphere, called *plates,* move and change shape

lithosphere the solid, outer layer of Earth that consists of the crust and the rigid upper part of the mantle

asthenosphere the solid, plastic layer of the mantle beneath the lithosphere; made of mantle rock that flows very slowly, which allows tectonic plates to move on top of it

Figure 1 ▶ Tectonic plates fit together on Earth's surface like three-dimensional puzzle pieces.

Section 2 The Theory of Plate Tectonics 247

Get Organized

Do the **Pre-Reading Activity** at the beginning of each chapter to create a **FoldNote,** which is a helpful note-taking and study aid. Use the **Graphic Organizer** activity within the chapter to organize the chapter content in a way that you understand.

STUDY TIP Go to the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix for guidance on making FoldNotes and Graphic Organizers.

Read for Meaning

Read the **Objectives** at the beginning of each section, because they will tell you what you'll need to learn. **Key Terms** are also listed for each section. Each key term is highlighted in the text and is defined in the margin. After reading each chapter, turn to the **Chapter Highlights** page and review the **Key Concepts,** which are brief summaries of the chapter's main ideas. You may want to do this even before you read the chapter.

STUDY TIP If you don't understand a definition, reread the page on which the term is introduced. The surrounding text should help make the definition easier to understand.

Be Resourceful—Use the Web

SCILINKS NSTA

SciLinks boxes in your textbook take you to resources that you can use for science projects, reports, and research papers. Go to **scilinks.org** and type in the **SciLinks code** to find information on a topic.

go hrw .com

Visit go.hrw.com
Find resources and reference materials that go with your textbook at **go.hrw.com.** Enter the keyword **HQ6 Home** to access the home page for your textbook.

Consider Environmental Issues

As you read each section, look for passages marked with oak leaves—one at the beginning of the passage and one at the end. These passages contain information that is directly related to important environmental issues.

Prepare for Tests

Section Reviews and **Chapter Reviews** test your knowledge of the main points of the chapter. Critical Thinking items challenge you to think about the material in different ways and in greater depth. The **standardized test prep** that is located after each Chapter Review helps you sharpen your test-taking abilities.

STUDY TIP Reread the Objectives and Chapter Highlights when studying for a test to be sure you know the material.

Use the Appendix

Your **Appendix** contains a variety of resources designed to enhance your learning experience. These resources include the **Skills Handbook,** which provides helpful study aids, **Mapping Expeditions** and **Long-Term Projects** activities, and **Reference Tables** and **Reference Maps.**

Figure 6 ▶ This stone lion sits outside Leeds Town Hall in England. It was damaged by acid precipitation, which fell regularly in Europe and North America for more than 50 years.

Acid Precipitation

Rainwater is slightly acidic because it combines with small amounts of carbon dioxide. But when fossil fuels, especially coal, are burned, nitrogen oxides and sulfur dioxides are released into the air. These compounds combine with water in the atmosphere to produce nitric acid, nitrous acid, or sulfuric acid. When these acids fall to Earth, they are called **acid precipitation.**

acid precipitation precipitation, such as rain, sleet, or snow, that contains a high concentration of acids, often because of the pollution of the atmosphere

Acid precipitation weathers rock faster than ordinary precipitation does. In fact, many historical monuments and sculptures have been damaged by acid precipitation, as shown in **Figure 6.** Between 1940 and 1990, acid precipitation fell regularly in some cities in the United States. In 1990, the Acid Rain Control Program was added to the Clean Air Act of 1970. These regulations gave power plants 10 years to decrease sulfur dioxide emissions. The occurrence of acid precipitation has been greatly reduced since power plants have installed scrubbers that remove much of the sulfur dioxide before it can be released.

Section 1 Review

1. **Identify** three agents of mechanical weathering.
2. **Describe** how ice wedging weathers rock.
3. **Explain** how two activities of plants or animals help weather rocks or soil.
4. **Compare** mechanical and chemical weathering processes.
5. **Identify** and describe three chemical processes that weather rock.
6. **Compare** hydrolysis, carbonation, and oxidation.
7. **Summarize** how acid precipitation forms.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Making Connections** What two agents of weathering would be rare in a desert? Explain your reasoning.
9. **Understanding Relationships** Automobile exhaust contains nitrogen oxides. How might these pollutants affect chemical weathering processes?

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *weathering, oxidation, mechanical weathering, ice wedging, hydrolysis, abrasion, chemical weathering, carbonation,* and *acid precipitation.*

348 Chapter 14 **Weathering and Erosion**

Holt Online Learning

Visit Holt Online Learning

If your teacher gives you a special password to log onto the **Holt Online Learning** site, you'll find your complete textbook on the Web. In addition, you'll find some great learning tools and practice quizzes. You'll be able to see how well you know the material from your textbook.

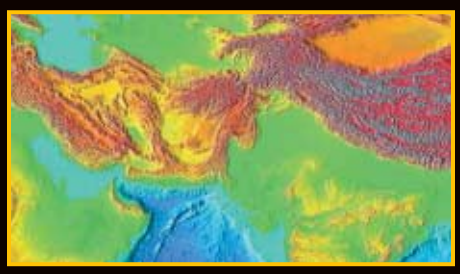
Unit 1

STUDYING THE EARTH

Unit 1 Outline

CHAPTER 1
Introduction to Earth Science

CHAPTER 2
Earth as a System



CHAPTER 3
Models of the Earth

▶ Earth scientists can be found everywhere on Earth, braving conditions from the extreme heat of an active volcano to the frozen depths of a glacier. The Muir Glacier at Alaska's Glacier Bay National Park can be explored and studied through this ice cave.

Chapter 1

Introduction to Earth Science

Sections

1 What Is Earth Science?

2 Science as a Process

What You'll Learn

- What areas of study make up Earth science
- How Earth scientists study the planet
- Why the work of Earth scientists is important to society

Why It's Relevant

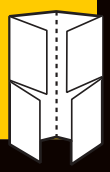
An understanding of Earth science is vital in determining how the environment affects human society and how human society affects the air, water, and soil of Earth.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Four-Corner Fold

Before you read this chapter, create the **FoldNote** entitled "Four-Corner Fold" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label each flap of the four-corner fold with a topic from the chapter. Write what you know about each topic under the appropriate flap. As you read the chapter, add other information that you learn.



▶ The movement of rocks like this one in an area called *Racetrack Playa,* in Death Valley, California, has intrigued Earth scientists for years. Scientists have many hypotheses as to how rocks that weigh over 320 kg can move more than 880 m. However, no one knows for sure how these rocks move.

Section 1 What Is Earth Science?

For thousands of years, people have looked at the world around them and wondered what forces shaped it. Throughout history, many cultures have been terrified and fascinated by seeing volcanoes erupt, feeling the ground shake during an earthquake, or watching the sky darken during an eclipse.

Some cultures developed myths or stories to explain these events. In some of these myths, angry goddesses hurled fire from volcanoes, and giants shook the ground by wrestling underneath Earth's surface. Modern science searches for natural causes and uses careful observations to explain these same events and to understand Earth and its changing landscape.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** two cultures that contributed to modern scientific study.
- **Name** the four main branches of Earth science.
- **Discuss** how Earth scientists help us understand the world around us.

KEY TERMS

Earth science
geology
oceanography
meteorology
astronomy

The Scientific Study of Earth

Scientific study of Earth began with careful observations. Scientists in China began keeping records of earthquakes as early as 780 BCE. The ancient Greeks compiled a catalog of rocks and minerals around 200 BCE. Other ancient peoples, including the Maya, tracked the movements of the sun, the moon, and the planets at observatories like the one shown in **Figure 1.** The Maya used these observations to create accurate calendars.

For many centuries, scientific discoveries were limited to observations of phenomena that could be seen with the unaided eye. Then, in the 17th century, the inventions of the microscope and the telescope made seeing previously hidden worlds possible. Eventually, the body of knowledge about Earth became known as Earth science. **Earth science** is the study of Earth and of the universe around it. Earth science, like other sciences, assumes that the causes of natural events, or phenomena, can be discovered through careful observation and experimentation.

Earth science the scientific study of Earth and the universe around it

Figure 1 ▶ El Caracol, an observatory built by the ancient Maya of Mexico, is the oldest known observatory in the Americas. Mayan calendars (inset) show the celestial movements that the Maya tracked by using observatories.

Branches of Earth Science

The ability to make observations improves when technology, such as new processes or equipment, is developed. Technology has allowed scientists to explore the ocean depths, Earth's unseen interior, and the vastness of space. Earth scientists have used technology and hard work to build an immense body of knowledge about Earth.

Most Earth scientists specialize in one of four major areas of study: the solid Earth, the oceans, the atmosphere, and the universe beyond Earth. Examples of Earth scientists working in these areas are shown in **Figure 2.**

geology the scientific study of the origin, history, and structure of Earth and the processes that shape Earth

oceanography the scientific study of the ocean, including the properties and movements of ocean water, the characteristics of the ocean floor, and the organisms that live in the ocean

Geology

The study of the origin, history, processes, and structure of the solid Earth is called **geology.** Geology includes many specialized areas of study. Some geologists explore Earth's crust for deposits of coal, oil, gas, and other resources. Other geologists study the forces within Earth to predict earthquakes and volcanic eruptions. Some geologists study fossils to learn more about Earth's past. Often, new knowledge forms new areas of study.

Oceanography

Oceans cover nearly three-fourths of Earth's surface. The study of Earth's oceans is called **oceanography.** Some oceanographers work on research ships that are equipped with special instruments for studying the sea. Other oceanographers study waves, tides, and ocean currents. Some oceanographers explore the ocean floor to obtain clues to Earth's history or to locate mineral deposits.

Figure 2 ▶ Fields of Study in Earth Science

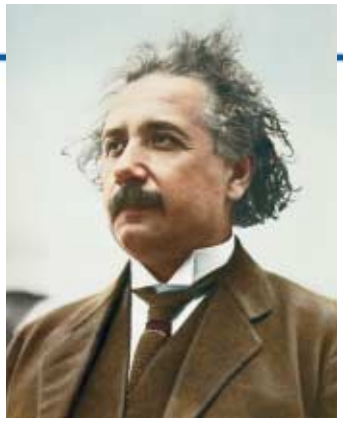
Geologists who study volcanoes are called *volcanologists*. This volcanologist is measuring the magnetic and electric properties of moving lava.

This astronomer is linking a telescope with a specialized instrument called a *spectrograph*. Information gathered will help her catalog the composition of more than 100 galaxies.

This meteorologist is studying ice samples to learn about past climate. Studying past climate patterns gives scientists information about possible future changes in climate.

Connection to **HISTORY**

Scientific Revolutions



Throughout history, many cultures have added to scientific knowledge. Over the last few centuries, global exploration and cultural exchanges have helped modern science change very quickly. During this time, science has aided the industrialization of countries around the world. Technology has also allowed humans to explore areas from the deep-ocean basins to the universe beyond Earth.

Advances in science usually occur through small additions to existing knowledge. The daily work of scientists and engineers normally results in step-by-step increases of understanding and improvements in the ability to meet human needs. In this way, scientists add knowledge, invent new technologies, and educate future generations of scientists.

However, some advances in science and technology occur very quickly and have effects that ripple through science and society. When a scientific advance completely changes the way that scientists think about the universe, a *scientific revolution* occurs. Scientific revolutions cause long-held ideas to be challenged and put aside for new ways of thinking and viewing the universe. Examples of recent scientific revolutions include Darwin's theory of evolution, the concept of quantum mechanics, and Einstein's general theory of relativity.

Progress in science and technology can be affected by social issues and challenges. In some cases, both scientists and nonscientists resist letting go of long-held beliefs. Many of the ideas that Einstein replaced with his theory of relativity had been in place for hundreds of years. Through many years of continued research and education, revolutionary ideas often become accepted by the scientific community and by society as a whole.

But even revolutionary ideas are continuously being tested. In 2002, experiments were performed aboard NASA's *Cassini* spacecraft to test a part of Einstein's theory of relativity. Using new technologies, scientists were able to verify Einstein's theory, which had been proposed almost 100 years earlier.

Meteorology

The study of Earth's atmosphere is called **meteorology.** Using satellites, radar, and other technologies, meteorologists study the atmospheric conditions that produce weather. Many meteorologists work as weather observers and measure factors such as wind speed, temperature, and rainfall. This weather information is then used to prepare detailed weather maps. Other meteorologists use weather maps, satellite images, and computer models to make weather forecasts. Some meteorologists study *climate,* the patterns of weather that occur over long periods of time.

meteorology the scientific study of Earth's atmosphere, especially in relation to weather and climate

astronomy the scientific study of the universe

Astronomy

The study of the universe beyond Earth is called **astronomy.** Astronomy is one of the oldest branches of Earth science. In fact, the ancient Babylonians charted the positions of planets and stars nearly 4,000 years ago. Modern astronomers use Earth-based and space-based telescopes as well as other instruments to study the sun, the moon, the planets, and the universe. Technologies such as rovers and space probes have also provided astronomers with new information about the universe.

Reading Check **How has technology affected astronomy? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Branches of Earth Science
SciLinks code: HQ60191

Figure 3 ▶ These meteorologists are risking their lives to gather information about tornadoes. If scientists can better predict when tornadoes will occur, many lives may be saved each year.

Environmental Science

Other Earth scientists study the ways in which humans interact with their environment. This relatively new field of Earth science is called *environmental science*. Environmental scientists study many issues, such as the use of natural resources, pollution, and the health of plant and animal species on Earth. Some environmental scientists study the effects of industries and technologies on the environment.

The Importance of Earth Science

Natural forces not only shape Earth but also affect life on Earth. For example, a volcanic eruption may bury a town under ash. And an earthquake may produce huge ocean waves that destroy shorelines. By understanding how natural forces shape our environment, Earth scientists, such as those in **Figure 3,** can better predict potential disasters and help save lives and property.

The work of Earth scientists also helps us understand our place in the universe. Astronomers studying distant galaxies have come up with new ideas about the origins of our universe. Geologists studying rock layers have found clues to Earth's past environments and to the evolution of life on this planet.

Earth provides the resources that make life as we know it possible. Earth also provides the materials to enrich the quality of people's lives. The fuel that powers a jet, the metal used in surgical instruments, and the paper and ink in this book all come from Earth's resources. The study of Earth science can help people gain access to Earth's resources, but Earth scientists also strive to help people use those resources wisely.

Section 1 Review

1. **Discuss** how one culture contributed to modern science.
2. **Name** the four major branches of Earth science.
3. **Describe** two specialized fields of geology.
4. **Describe** the work of oceanographers and meteorologists.
5. **Explain** how the work of astronomers has been affected by technology.

CRITICAL THINKING

6. **Analyzing Ideas** How have Earth scientists improved our understanding of the environment?
7. **Analyzing Concepts** Give two examples of how exploring space and exploring the ocean depths are similar.

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *Earth science, geology, meteorology, climate, environmental science, astronomy,* and *oceanography.*

Section 2 Science as a Process

Art, architecture, philosophy, and science are all forms of human endeavor. Although artists, architects, and philosophers may use science in their work, science does not have the same goals as other human endeavors do.

The goal of science is to explain natural phenomena. Scientists ask questions about natural events and then work to answer those questions through experiments and examination. Scientific understanding moves forward through the work of many scientists, who build on the research of the generations of scientists before them.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how science is different from other forms of human endeavor.
- **Identify** the steps that make up scientific methods.
- **Analyze** how scientific thought changes as new information is collected.
- **Explain** how science affects society.

KEY TERMS

observation
hypothesis
independent variable
dependent variable
peer review
theory

Behavior of Natural Systems

Scientists start with the assumption that nature is understandable. Scientists also expect that similar forces in a similar situation will cause similar results. But the forces involved in natural events are complex. For example, changes in temperature and humidity can cause rain in one city, but the same changes in temperature and humidity may cause fog in another city. These different results might be due to differences in the two cities or due to complex issues, such as differences in climate.

Scientists also expect that nature is predictable, which means that the future behavior of natural forces can be anticipated. So, if scientists understand the forces and materials involved in a process, they can predict how that process will evolve. The scientists in **Figure 1,** for example, are studying ice cores in Antarctica. Ice cores can provide clues to Earth's past climate changes. Because natural systems are complex, however, a high level of understanding and predictability can be difficult to achieve. To increase their understanding, scientists follow the same basic processes of studying and describing natural events.

Figure 1 ▶ Scientists use ice cores to study past compositions of Earth's atmosphere. This information can help scientists learn about past climate changes.

Scientific Methods

Over time, the scientific community has developed organized and logical approaches to scientific research. These approaches are known as *scientific methods*. Scientific methods are not a set of sequential steps that scientists always follow. Rather, these methods are guidelines to scientific problem solving. **Figure 2** shows a basic flowchart of scientific methods.

observation the process of obtaining information by using the senses; the information obtained by using the senses

hypothesis an idea or explanation that is based on observations and that can be tested

Ask a Question

Scientific methods often begin with observations. **Observation** is the process of using the senses of sight, touch, taste, hearing, and smell to gather information about the world. When you see thunderclouds form in the summer sky, you are making an observation. And when you feel cool, smooth, polished marble or hear the roar of river rapids, you are making observations.

Observations can often lead to questions. What causes tornadoes to form? Why is oil discovered only in certain locations? What causes a river to change its course? Simple questions such as these have fueled years of scientific research and have been investigated through scientific methods.

Form a Hypothesis

Once a question has been asked and basic information has been gathered, a scientist may propose a tentative answer, which is also known as a hypothesis (hie PAHTH uh sis). A **hypothesis** (plural, *hypotheses*) is a possible explanation or solution to a problem. Hypotheses can be developed through close and careful observation. Most hypotheses are based on known facts about similar events. One example of a hypothesis is that houseplants given a large amount of sunlight will grow faster than plants given a smaller amount of sunlight. This hypothesis could be made from observing how and where other plants grow.

Reading Check **Name two ways scientific methods depend on careful observations. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 2 ▶ Scientific Methods

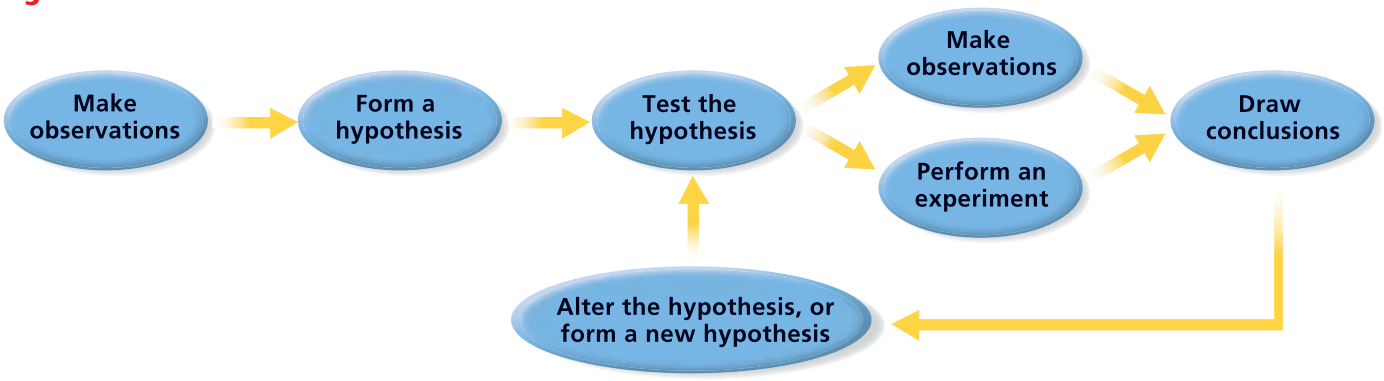


Figure 3 ▶ Astronaut Shannon Lucid observes wheat plants that are a part of an experiment aboard the *Mir* space station.

Test the Hypothesis

After a hypothesis is proposed, it is often tested by performing experiments. An *experiment* is a procedure that is carried out according to certain guidelines. Factors that can be changed in an experiment are variables. **Independent variables** are factors that can be changed by the person performing the experiment. **Dependent variables** are variables that change as a result of a change in independent variables.

In most experiments, only one independent variable is tested. For example, to test how sunlight affects plants, a scientist would grow identical plants. The plants would receive the same amount of water and fertilizer but different amounts of sunlight. Thus, sunlight would be the independent variable. How the plants respond to the different amounts of sunlight would be the dependent variable. Most experiments include a control group. A *control group* is a group that serves as a standard of comparison with another group to which the control group is identical except for one factor. In this experiment, the plants that receive a natural amount of sunlight would be the control group. An experiment that contains a control is called a *controlled experiment*. Most scientific experiments are controlled experiments. The "zero gravity" experiment shown in **Figure 3** is a controlled experiment.

Draw Conclusions

After many experiments and observations, a scientist may reach conclusions about his or her hypothesis. If the hypothesis fits the known facts, it may be accepted as true. If the experimental results differ from what was expected, the hypothesis may be changed or discarded. Expected and unexpected results lead to new questions and further study. The results of scientific inquiry may also lead to new knowledge and new methods of inquiry that further scientific aims.

independent variable in an experiment, the factor that is deliberately manipulated

dependent variable in an experiment, the factor that changes as a result of manipulation of one or more other factors (the independent variables)

QuickLAB 5 min

Making Observations

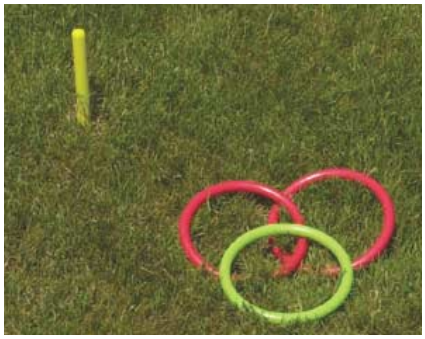
Procedure

1. Get an ordinary **candle** of any shape and color.
2. Record all the observations you can make about the candle.
3. Light the candle with a **match,** and watch it burn for 1 min.
4. Record as many observations about the burning candle as you can. When you are finished, extinguish the flame. Record any observations.

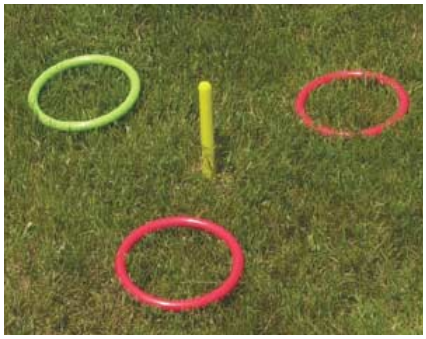
Analysis

1. Share your results with your class. How many things that your classmates observed did you not observe? Explain this phenomenon.

Good accuracy and good precision



Poor accuracy but good precision



Good accuracy but poor precision

Figure 4 ▶ Accuracy and Precision

Scientific Measurements and Analysis

During an experiment, scientists must gather information. An important method of gathering information is measurement. Measurement is the comparison of some aspect of an object or event with a standard unit. Scientists around the world can compare and analyze each other's measurements because scientists use a common system of measurement called the *International System of Units,* or SI. This system includes standard measurements for length, mass, temperature, and volume. All SI units are based on intervals of 10. The Reference Tables section of the Appendix contains a chart of SI units.

Accuracy and Precision

Accuracy and precision are important in scientific measurements. *Accuracy* refers to how close a measurement is to the true value of the thing being measured. *Precision* is the exactness of the measurement. For example, a distance measured in millimeters is more precise than a distance measured in centimeters. Measurements can be precise and yet inaccurate. The relationship between accuracy and precision is shown in **Figure 4.**

QuickLAB 15 min

Sample Size and Accuracy

Procedure

1. Shuffle a **deck of 52 playing cards** eight times.
2. Lay out 10 cards. Record the number of red cards.
3. Reshuffle, and repeat step 2 four more times.
4. Which trials showed the highest number and lowest number of red cards? Calculate the total range of red cards by finding the difference between the highest number and lowest number.
5. Determine the mean number of red cards per trial by adding the number of red cards in the five trials and then dividing by 5.

Analysis

1. A deck of cards has 50% red cards. How close is your average to the percentage of red cards in the deck?
2. Pool the results of your classmates. How close is the new average to the percentage of red cards in the deck?
3. How does changing the sample size affect accuracy?

Error

Error is an expression of the amount of imprecision or variation in a set of measurements. Error is commonly expressed as percentage error or as a confidence interval. Percentage error is the percentage of deviation of an experimental value from an accepted value. A *confidence interval* describes the range of values for a set percentage of measurements. For example, imagine that the average length of all of the ears of corn in a field is 23 cm, and 90% of the ears are within 3 cm of the average length. A scientist may report that the average length of all of the ears of corn in a field is 23 ± 3 cm with 90% confidence.

Observations and Models

In Earth science, using controlled experiments to test a hypothesis is often impossible. When experiments are impossible, scientists make additional observations to gather evidence. The hypothesis is then tested by examining how well the hypothesis fits or explains all of the known evidence.

Scientists also use models to simulate conditions in the natural world. A *model* is a description, representation, or imitation of an object, system, process, or concept. Scientists use several types of models, two of which are shown in **Figure 5.** Physical models are three-dimensional models that can be touched. Maps and charts are examples of graphical models.

Conceptual models are verbal or graphical models that represent how a system works or is organized. Mathematical models are mathematical equations that represent the way a system or process works. Most recently, scientists have developed computer models, which can be used to represent simple processes or complex systems. After a good computer model has been created, scientists can perform experiments by manipulating variables much as they would when performing a physical experiment.

Reading Check **Name three types of models. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

MATH PRACTICE

Percentage Error

Percentage error is calculated by using the following equation:

$$\text{percent error} = \left[\frac{(\text{accepted value} - \text{experimental value})}{\text{accepted value}}\right] \times 100$$

If the accepted value for the weight of a gallon of water is 3.78 kg and the measured value is 3.72 kg, what is the percentage error for the measurement? Show your work.

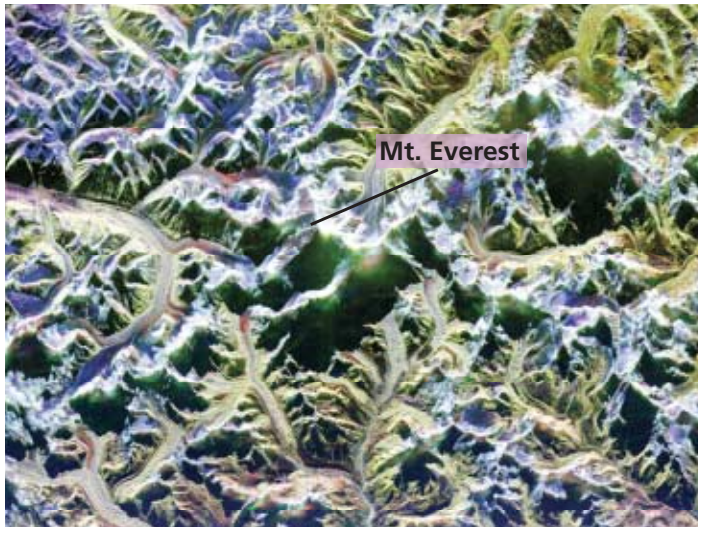


Figure 5 ▶ Two models of Mount Everest are shown below. The computer model on the right is used to track erosion along the Tibetan Plateau. The model on the left is a physical model.

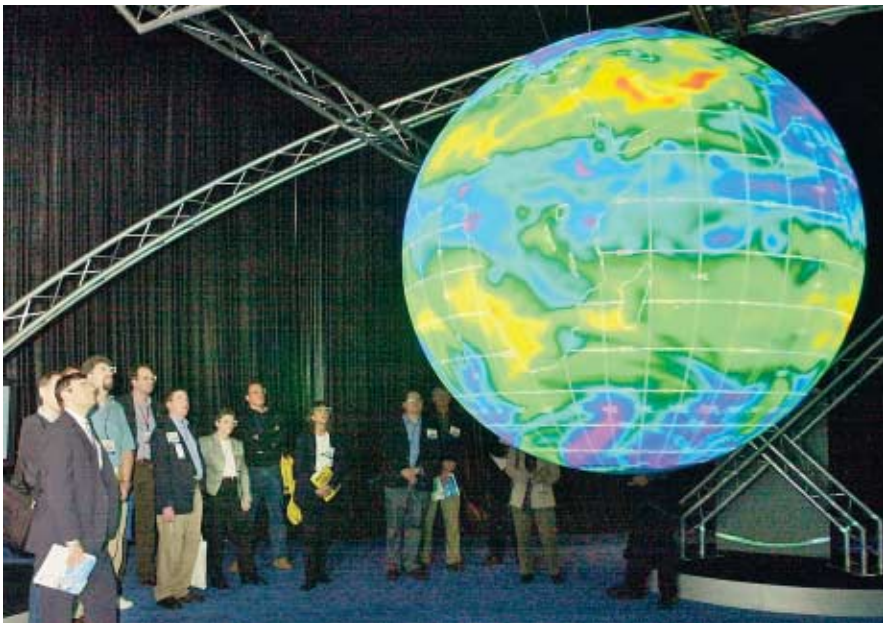
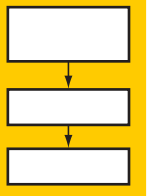


Figure 6 ▶ Meteorologists at a conference in California are watching the newly introduced "Science On a Sphere™" exhibit. They are wearing 3-D glasses to better see the complex and changing three-dimensional display of global temperatures.

Graphic Organizer

Chain-of-Events Chart

Create the **Graphic Organizer** entitled "Chain-of-Events Chart" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Then, fill in the chart with details about each step of how a hypothesis becomes an accepted scientific idea.



Acceptance of Scientific Ideas

When scientists reach a conclusion, they introduce their findings to the scientific community. New scientific ideas undergo review and testing by other scientists before the ideas are accepted.

Publication of Results and Conclusions

Scientists commonly present the results of their work in scientific journals or at professional meetings, such as the one shown in **Figure 6.** Results published in journals are usually written in a standard scientific format. Many journals are now being published online to allow scientists quicker access to the results of other scientists.

Peer Review

Scientists in any one research group tend to view scientific ideas similarly. Therefore, they may be biased in their experimental design or data analysis. To reduce bias, scientists submit their ideas to other scientists for peer review. **Peer review** is the process in which several experts on a given topic review another expert's work on that topic before the work gets published. These experts determine if the results and conclusions of the study merit publication. Peer reviewers commonly suggest improvements to the study, or they may determine that the results or conclusions are flawed and recommend that the study not be published. Scientists follow an ethical code that states that only valid experimental results should be published. The peer review process serves as a filter, which allows only well-supported ideas to be published.

peer review the process in which experts in a given field examine the results and conclusions of a scientist's study before that study is accepted for publication

Reading Check **Name two places scientists present the results of their work. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Formulating a Theory

After results are published, they usually lead to more experiments, which are designed to test and expand the original idea. This process may continue for years until the original idea is disproved, is modified, or becomes generally accepted. Sometimes, elements of different ideas are combined to form concepts that are more complete.

When an idea has undergone much testing and reaches general acceptance, that idea may help form a theory. A **theory** is an explanation that is consistent with all existing tests and observations. Theories are often based on scientific laws. A *scientific law* is a general statement that explains how the natural world behaves under certain conditions and for which no exceptions have been found. Like theories, laws are discovered through scientific research. Theories and scientific laws can be changed if conflicting information is discovered in the future.

theory the explanation for some phenomenon that is based on observation, experimentation, and reasoning; that is supported by a large quantity of evidence; and that does not conflict with any existing experimental results or observations

The Importance of Interdisciplinary Science

Scientists from many disciplines commonly contribute the information necessary to support an idea. The free exchange of ideas between fields of science allows scientists to identify explanations that fit a wide range of scientific evidence. When an explanation is supported by evidence from a variety of fields, the explanation is more likely to be accurate. New disciplines of science sometimes emerge as a result of new connections that are found between more than one branch of science. An example of the development of a widely accepted hypothesis that is based on interdisciplinary evidence is shown in **Figure 7.**

Figure 7 ▶ The hypothesis that the dinosaurs were killed by an asteroid impact was developed over many years and through the work of many scientists from different disciplines.

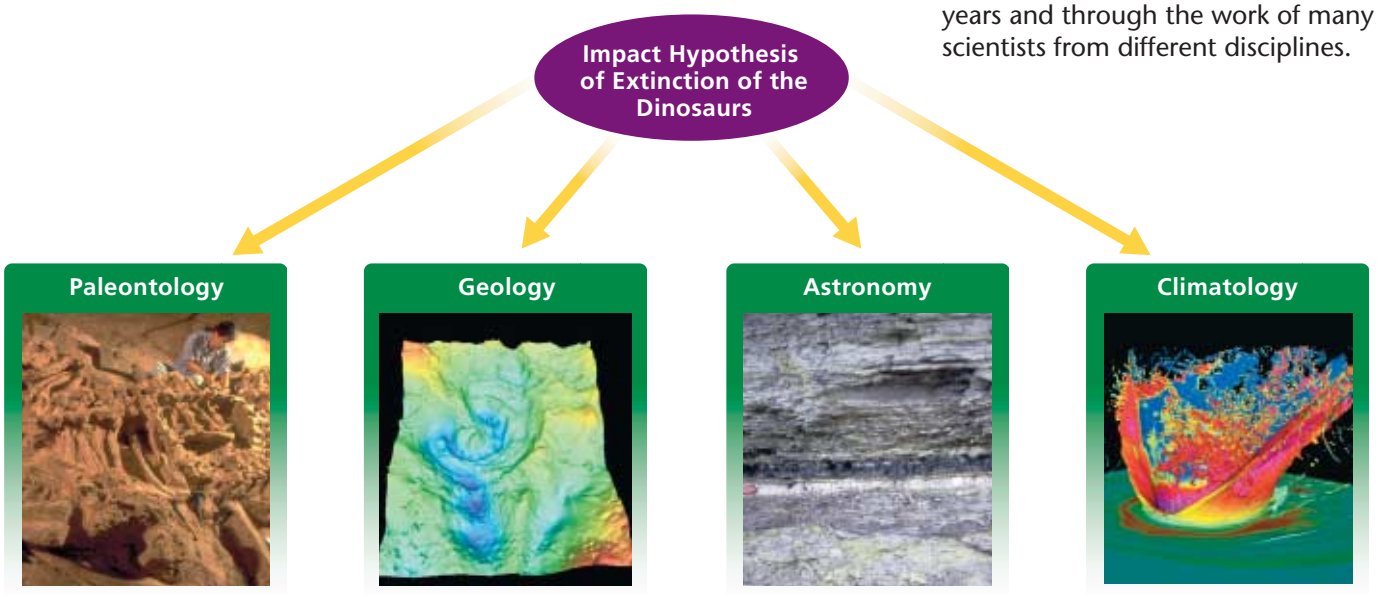


Figure 8 ▶ The Alaskan pipeline has carried more than 13 billion barrels of oil since it was built in 1977. The pipeline has also sparked controversy about the potential dangers to nearby Alaskan wildlife.

Science and Society

Scientific knowledge helps us understand our world. The work of people, including scientists, is influenced by their cultural and personal beliefs. Science is a part of society, and advances in science can have important and long-lasting effects on both science and society. Examples of these far-reaching advances include the theory of plate tectonics, quantum mechanics, and the theory of evolution.

Science is also used to develop new technology, including new tools, machines, materials, and processes. Sometimes, technologies are designed to address a specific human need. In other cases, technology is an indirect result of science that was directed at another goal. For example, technology that was designed for space exploration has been used to improve computers, cars, medical equipment, and airplanes.

However, new technology may also create new problems. Scientists involved in research that leads to new technologies have an obligation to consider the possible negative effects of their work. Before making decisions about technology, people should consider the alternatives, risks, and costs and benefits to humans and to Earth. Even after such decisions are made, society often continues to debate them. For example, the Alaskan pipeline, part of which is shown in **Figure 8,** transports oil. But the transport of oil in the United States is part of an ongoing debate about how we use oil resources and how these uses affect our natural world.

Section 2 Review

1. **Describe** one reason that a scientist might conduct research.
2. **Identify** the steps that make up scientific methods.
3. **Compare** a hypothesis with a theory.
4. **Describe** how scientists test hypotheses.
5. **Describe** the difference between a dependent variable and an independent variable.
6. **Explain** why scientific ideas that have been subject to many tests are still considered theories and not scientific laws.
7. **Summarize** how scientific methods contribute to the development of modern science.
8. **Explain** how technology can affect scientific research.

CRITICAL THINKING

9. **Analyzing Ideas** An observation can be precise but inaccurate. Do you think it is possible for an observation to be accurate but not precise? Explain.
10. **Making Comparisons** When an artist paints a picture of a natural scene, what aspects of his or her work are similar to the methods of a scientist? What aspects are different?
11. **Demonstrating Reasoned Judgment** A new technology is known to be harmful to a small group of people. How does this knowledge affect whether you would use this new technology? Explain.

CONCEPT MAPPING

12. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *independent variable, observation, experiment, dependent variable, hypothesis, scientific methods,* and *conclusion*.

Chapter 1

Highlights

Sections

1 What Is Earth Science?

Key Terms

Earth science, 5
geology, 6
oceanography, 6
meteorology, 7
astronomy, 7

Key Concepts

- Many cultures have contributed to the development of science over thousands of years.
- The four main branches of Earth science are geology, oceanography, meteorology, and astronomy.
- Earth scientists help us understand how Earth formed and the natural forces that affect human society.

2 Science as a Process

observation, 10
hypothesis, 10
independent variable, 11
dependent variable, 11
peer review, 14
theory, 15

- Scientific research attempts to solve problems logically through scientific methods.
- Science differs from other human endeavors by following a procedure of testing to help understand natural phenomena.
- Using scientific methods, scientists develop hypotheses and theories to describe natural phenomena.
- Scientific methods include observation and experimentation.
- Science aids in the development of technology. The main aim of technology is to solve human problems.

Chapter 1 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *observation*
2. *peer review*
3. *theory*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *hypothesis* and *theory*
5. *geology* and *astronomy*
6. *oceanography* and *meteorology*
7. *dependent variable* and *independent variable*
8. *Earth science* and *geology*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. The study of solid Earth is called
   a. geology. **c.** oceanography.
   b. meteorology. **d.** astronomy.

10. The Earth scientist most likely to study storms is a(n)
    a. geologist. **c.** oceanographer.
    b. meteorologist. **d.** astronomer.

11. The study of the origin of the solar system and the universe in general is
    a. geology. **c.** meteorology.
    b. ecology. **d.** astronomy.

12. How long ago were the first scientific observations about Earth made?
    a. a few years ago
    b. a few decades ago
    c. hundreds of years ago
    d. several thousand years ago

13. The Earth scientist most likely to study volcanoes is a(n)
    a. geologist. **c.** oceanographer.
    b. meteorologist. **d.** astronomer.

14. One possible first step in scientific problem solving is to
    a. form a hypothesis.
    b. ask a question.
    c. test a hypothesis.
    d. state a conclusion.

15. A possible explanation for a scientific problem is called a(n)
    a. experiment. **c.** observation.
    b. theory. **d.** hypothesis.

16. A statement that consistently and correctly describes a natural phenomenon is a scientific
    a. hypothesis. **c.** observation.
    b. theory. **d.** control.

17. When scientists pose questions about how nature operates and attempt to answer those questions through testing and observation, they are conducting
    a. research. **c.** examinations.
    b. predictions. **d.** peer reviews.

Short Answer

18. How does accuracy differ from precision in a scientific measurement?

19. Why do scientists use control groups in experiments?

20. A meteorite lands in your backyard. What two branches of Earth science would help you explain that natural event?

21. Write a short paragraph about the relationship between science and technology.

22. Give two reasons why interdisciplinary science is important to society.

23. Explain how peer review affects scientific knowledge.

24. How did some ancient cultures explain natural phenomena?

Critical Thinking

25. Making Connections How could knowing how our solar system formed affect how we see the world?

26. Evaluating Hypotheses Some scientists have hypothesized that meteorites have periodically bombarded Earth and caused mass extinctions every 26 million years. How might this hypothesis be tested?

27. Determining Cause and Effect Name some possible negative effects of a new technology that uses nuclear fuel to power cars.

28. Analyzing Ideas A scientist observes that each eruption of a volcano is preceded by a series of small earthquakes. The scientist then makes the following statement: "Earthquakes cause volcanic eruptions." Is the scientist's statement a hypothesis or a theory? Why?

29. Forming a Hypothesis You find a yellow rock and wonder if it is gold. How could you apply scientific methods to this problem?

Concept Mapping

30. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *control group, accuracy, precision, variable, technology, Earth science, experiment,* and *error*.

Math Skills

31. Making Calculations One kilogram is equal to 2.205 lb at sea level. At the same location, how many kilograms are in 100 lb?

32. Making Calculations One meter is equal to 3.281 ft. How many meters are in 5 ft?

33. Making Calculations The accepted value of the average distance between Earth and the moon is 384,467 km. If a scientist measures that the moon is 384,476 km from Earth, what is the measurement's percentage error?

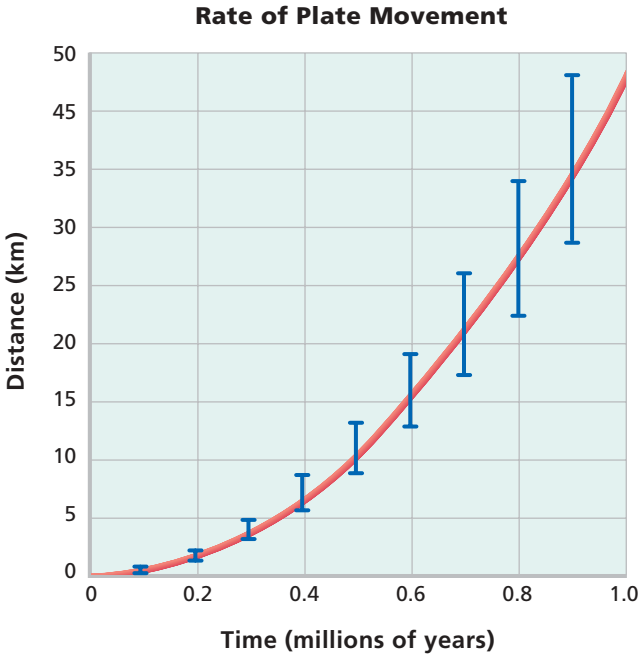
Writing Skills

34. Expressing Original Ideas Imagine that you must live in a place that has all the benefits of only one of the Earth sciences. Which branch would you choose? Defend your choice in an essay.

35. Outlining Topics Explain the sequence of events that happens as a scientific hypothesis becomes a theory.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows error in measuring tectonic plate movements. The blue bars represent confidence intervals. Use this graph to answer the questions that follow.



36. How much error is there in the smallest measurement of plate movement?

37. How much error is there in the largest measurement of plate movement?

38. How would you explain the difference between the error in the smallest measurement and the error in the largest measurement?

Chapter 1 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 A tested explanation of a natural phenomenon that has become widely adopted is a scientific
A. hypothesis **C.** theory
B. law **D.** observation

2 If experimental results do not match their predictions, scientists generally will
F. repeat the experiment until they do match
G. make the measurements more precise
H. revise their working hypothesis
I. change their experimental results

3 Scientists who study weather charts to analyze trends and to predict future weather events are
A. astronomers
B. environmental scientists
C. geologists
D. meteorologists

4 What type of model uses molded clay, soil, and chemicals to simulate a volcanic eruption?
F. conceptual model
G. physical model
H. mathematical model
I. computer model

5 Which of the following is an example of a new technology?
A. a tool that is designed to help a doctor better diagnose patients
B. a previously unknown element that is discovered in nature
C. a law that is passed to fund scientists conducting new experiments
D. scientists that record observations on the movement of a star

Directions (6–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 What is the term for the factors that change as a result of a scientific experiment?

7 Why do scientists often review one another's work before it is published?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–10): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Scientific Investigation

Scientists look for answers by asking questions. These questions are often answered through experimentation and observation. For example, scientists have wondered if there is some relationship between Earth's core and Earth's magnetic field.

To form their hypothesis, scientists started with what they knew: Earth has a dense, solid inner core and a molten outer core. They then created a computer model to simulate how Earth's magnetic field is generated. The model predicted that Earth's inner core spins in the same direction as the rest of Earth does but slightly faster than the surface does. If the hypothesis is correct, it might explain how Earth's magnetic field is generated. But how could the researchers test the hypothesis? Because scientists do not have the technology to drill to the core, they had to get their information indirectly. To do this, they decided to track the seismic waves that are created by earthquakes. These waves travel through Earth, and scientists can use them to infer information about the core.

8 The possibility of a connection between Earth's core and Earth's magnetic field formed the basis of the scientist's what?
A. theory **C.** hypothesis
B. law **D.** fact

9 To begin their investigation, the scientists first built a model. What did this model predict?
F. Earth's outer core is molten, and the inner core is solid.
G. Earth's inner core is molten, and the outer core is solid.
H. Earth's inner core spins in the same direction as the rest of Earth does.
I. Earth's outer core spins in the same direction as the rest of Earth does.

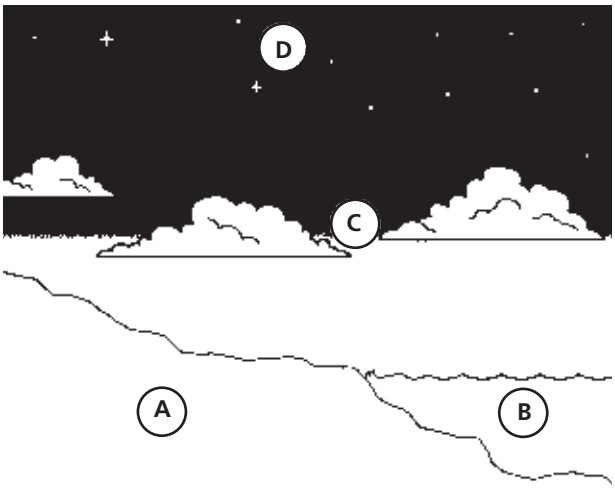
10 Why might the scientists have chosen to build a conceptual model of Earth, instead of a physical model of Earth?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–12): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagram below shows the four major areas studied by Earth scientists. Use this diagram to answer question 11.

Branches of Earth Science

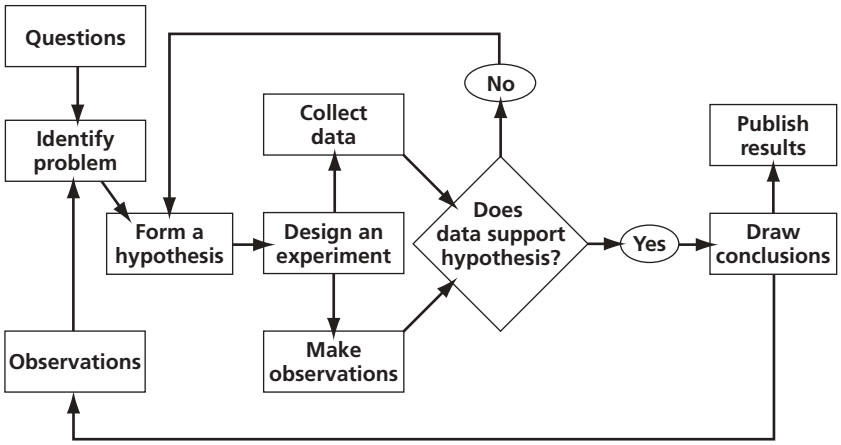


11 A scientist studying the events that take place in area C would be primarily concerned with which of the following?

F. Earth's age
G. Earth's weather
H. movement of waves and tides
I. movement of the stars across the sky

Use the flowchart below to answer question 12.

Scientific Method



12 What are two possible outcomes of the experimental process? What would a scientist do with the information gathered during the experimental process?

Test TIP

If you are unsure of an answer, eliminate the answers that you know are wrong before choosing your response.

Chapter 1

Inquiry Lab

Using Scientific Methods

Objectives

- **Observe** natural phenomena.
- **Propose** hypotheses to explain natural phenomena.
- **Evaluate** hypotheses.

Materials

hand lens
meterstick

Scientific Methods

Not all scientists think alike, and scientists don't always agree about various concepts. However, all scientists use scientific methods, part of which are the skills of observing, inferring, and predicting. In this lab, you will apply scientific methods as you examine a place where puddles often form after rainstorms. You can study the puddle area even when the ground is dry, but it would be best to observe the area again when it is wet. Because water is one of the most effective agents of change in our environment, you should be able to make many observations.

MAKE OBSERVATIONS

1. Examine the area of the puddle and the surrounding area carefully. Make a numbered list of what can be seen, heard, smelled, or felt. Sample observations are as follows: "The ground where the puddle forms is lower than the surrounding area, and there are cracks in the soil." Remember to avoid making any suggestions of causes.

FORM A HYPOTHESIS

2. Review your observations, and write possible causes for those observations. Sample causes are as follows: "Cracks in the soil (Observation 2) may have been caused by a lack of rain (Observation 5)."

Step 1

3. Review your observations and possible causes, and place them into similar groups, if possible. Can one cause or set of causes explain several observations? Is each cause reasonable when compared with the others? Does any cause contradict any of the other observations?

Step 2

TEST THE HYPOTHESIS

4. Based only on your hypotheses, make some predictions about what will happen at the puddle as conditions change. Describe the changes you expect and your reasoning. A sample prediction is the following: "If the puddle dries out, the crack will grow wider because of the loss of water."

5. Revisit the puddle several times to see if the changes that you observe match your predictions.

ANALYZE THE RESULTS

1. **Evaluating Results** Which of your predictions were correct, and which predictions were incorrect?

2. **Analyzing Methods** Which of your senses did you use most to make your observations? How could you improve your observations by using this sense? by using other senses?

3. **Evaluating Methods** What could you have used to measure, or quantify, many of your observations? Is quantitative observation better than qualitative observation? Explain your answer.

DRAW CONCLUSIONS

4. **Drawing Conclusions** Examine your incorrect predictions. What new knowledge have you gained from this new evidence?

5. **Analyzing Results** Reexamine your hypotheses. What can you say now about the ones that were correct?

6. **Drawing Conclusions** When knowledge is derived from observation and prediction, this process is called a *scientific method*. After reporting the results of a prediction, how might a scientist continue his or her research?

Extension

1. **Designing Experiments** Choose another small area to examine, but look for changes caused by a different factor, such as wind. Follow the steps outlined in this lab to predict changes that will occur in the area. Use scientific methods to design an experiment. Briefly describe your experiment, including how you would perform it.

Geologic Features and Political Boundaries in Europe

Map Skills Activity

This map shows the political boundaries of a part of Europe. The map also shows some surface features. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using the Key** What do the blue lines represent?
2. **Analyzing Data** How many countries are represented on the map?
3. **Examining Data** What country has two smaller countries within its borders?
4. **Applying Ideas** What type of surface features define the political boundary between Romania and Moldova and the political boundary between Switzerland and Germany?
5. **Applying Ideas** What type of surface feature defines the political boundary between Poland and the Czech Republic?
6. **Making Inferences** Why do you think that political boundaries commonly correspond with surface features?

Field Geologist

"A geologist is like a detective—he or she uses clues left in the natural world to determine what has happened in the past."

—Ken Pierce, Ph.D.

Imagine a summer visit to a meadow in Yellowstone National Park. Against blue skies, lush and grass-covered fields are dotted with grazing bison and elk. Field geologist Ken Pierce knows that there is more to this view than meets the eye. "Meadow areas, such as Hayden Valley," says Pierce, "are underlain by lake sediments deposited by glaciers thousands of years ago. This is why their soils hold a great deal of water and are great for plants—and for the animals that live there."

Earth's Past and Present

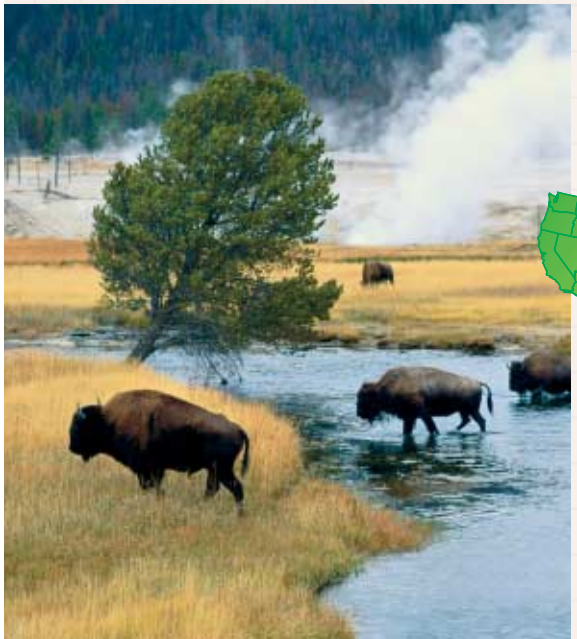
Pierce works in Montana for the United States Geological Survey. Pierce finds that connecting geology to biology is rewarding. "It's important to understand the geological history of the park. That's because the geology has important controls on the ecology. For example, the rock in the central part of Yellowstone is rhyolite, which forms nutrient-poor soils. This kind of rock almost always supports a desert-like ecology of lodgepole pine forests—thus, there are no bears in these areas because there's not much for bears to eat."

Geology—The Key

Like other geologists, Pierce studies the composition, structure, and history of Earth's crust. For Pierce, it was easy to see the career advantages. "You're outdoors when you're doing field geology!" says Pierce. While in the field, he observes, takes measurements, and collects samples that will later be studied in the lab. Pierce uses his observations, measurements, and samples to study the geological and biological history of the park.

Looking Ahead to the Future

Studying past events helps geologists better understand current events and sometimes predict future ones. For example, Pierce uses the data he collects to determine when the land surface was offset by faulting during past earthquakes. He uses this information to estimate the risk of future earthquakes. His research also helps predict landslides or mudflows after natural events such as wildfires. Knowing where and how often such hazards may occur helps reduce the risk to humans who visit Yellowstone National Park.



◀ Yellowstone was the first national park established in the United States.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Careers in Earth Science
SciLinks code: HQ60222

Chapter 2 Earth as a System

Sections

1 Earth: A Unique Planet

2 Energy in the Earth System

3 Ecology

What You'll Learn

- How Earth is structured
- How energy and matter cycle through the Earth system
- Why living organisms are important to the Earth system

Why It's Relevant

The systems approach to studying Earth provides a way to understand the interrelated nature of the physical, chemical, and biological forces that shape the planet.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Table Fold Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Table Fold" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns of the table "Earth's structure," "Earth's cycles and systems," and "Ecosystems." As you read the chapter, write examples of each topic under the appropriate column.

▶ This brown bear gains energy and nutrients from eating salmon. Energy and matter move through Earth's systems in many ways, including through the eating of prey by predators.

Section 1

Earth: A Unique Planet

Earth is unique for several reasons. It is the only known planet in the solar system that has liquid water on its surface and an atmosphere that contains a large proportion of oxygen. Earth is also the only planet—in our solar system or in any other solar system—that is known to support life. Scientists study the characteristics of Earth that make life possible in order to know what life-supporting conditions to look for on other planets.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the size and shape of Earth.
- **Describe** the compositional and structural layers of Earth's interior.
- **Identify** the possible source of Earth's magnetic field.
- **Summarize** Newton's law of gravitation.

KEY TERMS

crust
mantle
core
lithosphere
asthenosphere
mesosphere

Earth Basics

Earth is the third planet from the sun in our solar system. Earth formed about 4.6 billion years ago and is made mostly of rock. Approximately 70% of Earth's surface is covered by a relatively thin layer of water called the *global ocean*.

As viewed from space, Earth is a blue sphere covered with white clouds. Earth appears to be a perfect sphere but is actually an *oblate spheroid,* or slightly flattened sphere, as **Figure 1** shows. The spinning of Earth on its axis makes the polar regions flatten and the equatorial zone bulge. Earth's pole-to-pole circumference is 40,007 km. Its equatorial circumference is 40,074 km.

Earth's surface is relatively smooth. That is, distances between surface high points and low points are small relative to Earth's size. The difference between the height of the tallest mountain and the depth of the deepest ocean trench is about 20 km. This distance is small compared with Earth's average diameter of 12,756 km.

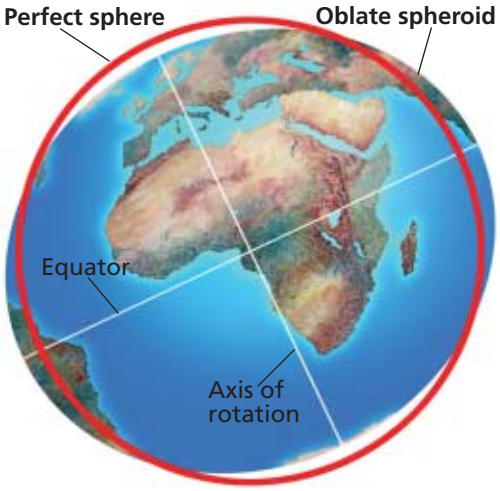


Figure 1 ▶ Although from afar Earth looks like a sphere (left), it is an oblate spheroid. In this illustration, Earth's shape has been exaggerated to show that Earth bulges at the equator.

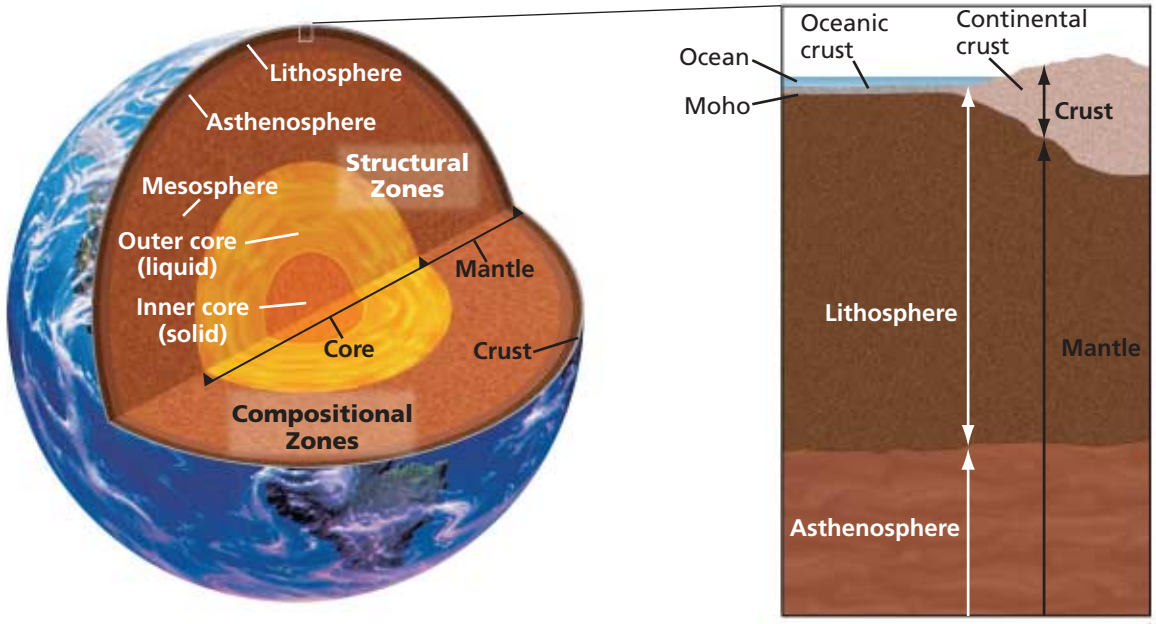


Figure 2 ▶ Changes in the speed and direction of seismic waves were used to determine the locations and properties of Earth's interior zones.

MATH PRACTICE

Speeding Waves

Earth's layers are of the following average thicknesses: crust, 35 km; mantle, 2,900 km; outer core, 2,250 km; and inner core, 1,228 km. Estimate how long a seismic wave would take to reach Earth's center if the wave's average rate of travel was 8 km/s through the crust, 12 km/s through the mantle, 9.5 km/s through the outer core, and 10.5 km/s through the inner core.

Earth's Interior

Direct observation of Earth's interior has been limited to the upper few kilometers that can be reached by drilling. So, scientists rely on indirect methods to study Earth at greater depths. For example, scientists have made important discoveries about Earth's interior through studies of seismic waves. *Seismic waves* are vibrations that travel through Earth. Earthquakes and explosions near Earth's surface produce seismic waves. By studying these waves as they travel through Earth, scientists have determined that Earth is made up of three major compositional zones and five major structural zones, as shown in **Figure 2.**

Compositional Zones of Earth's Interior

The thin, solid, outermost zone of Earth is called the **crust.** The crust makes up only 1% of Earth's mass. The crust beneath the oceans is called *oceanic crust*. Oceanic crust is only 5 to 10 km thick. The part of the crust that makes up the continents is called *continental crust*. The continental crust varies in thickness from 15 to 80 km. Continental crust is thickest beneath high mountain ranges.

The lower boundary of the crust, which was named for its discoverer, is called the *Mohorovičić* (MOH hoh ROH vuh CHICH) *discontinuity,* or *Moho*. The **mantle,** the layer that underlies the crust, is denser than the crust. The mantle is nearly 2,900 km thick and makes up almost two-thirds of Earth's mass.

The center of Earth is a sphere whose radius is about 3,500 km. Scientists think that this center sphere, called the **core,** is composed mainly of iron and nickel.

Reading Check **Explain why scientists have to rely on indirect observations to study Earth's interior. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

crust the thin and solid outermost layer of the Earth above the mantle

mantle in Earth science, the layer of rock between Earth's crust and core

core the central part of the Earth below the mantle

Structural Zones of Earth's Interior

The three compositional zones of Earth's interior are divided into five structural zones. The uppermost part of the mantle is cool and brittle. This part of the mantle and the crust above it make up the **lithosphere,** a rigid layer 15 to 300 km thick. Below the lithosphere is a less rigid layer, known as the **asthenosphere.** The asthenosphere is about 200 km thick. Because of enormous heat and pressure, the solid rock of the asthenosphere has the ability to flow. The ability of a solid to flow is called *plasticity*. Below the asthenosphere is a layer of solid mantle rock called the **mesosphere.**

At a depth of about 2,900 km lies the boundary between the mantle and the *outer core*. Scientists think that the outer core is a dense liquid. The inner core begins at a depth of 5,150 km. The inner core is a dense, rigid solid. The inner and outer core together make up nearly one-third of Earth's mass.

lithosphere the solid, outer layer of Earth that consists of the crust and the rigid upper part of the mantle

asthenosphere the solid, plastic layer of the mantle beneath the lithosphere; made of mantle rock that flows very slowly, which allows tectonic plates to move on top of it

mesosphere literally, the "middle sphere"; the strong, lower part of the mantle between the asthenosphere and the outer core

Earth as a Magnet

Earth has two magnetic poles. The lines of force of Earth's magnetic field extend between the North geomagnetic pole and the South geomagnetic pole. Earth's magnetic field, shown in **Figure 3,** extends beyond the atmosphere and affects a region of space called the *magnetosphere*.

The source of Earth's magnetic field may be the liquid iron in Earth's outer core. Scientists hypothesize that motions within the core produce electric currents that in turn create Earth's magnetic field. However, recent research indicates that the magnetic field may have another source. Scientists have learned that the sun and moon also have magnetic fields. Because the sun contains little iron and the moon does not have a liquid outer core, discovering the sources of the magnetic fields of the sun and moon may help identify the source of Earth's magnetic field.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Zones of Earth
SciLinks code: HQ61684

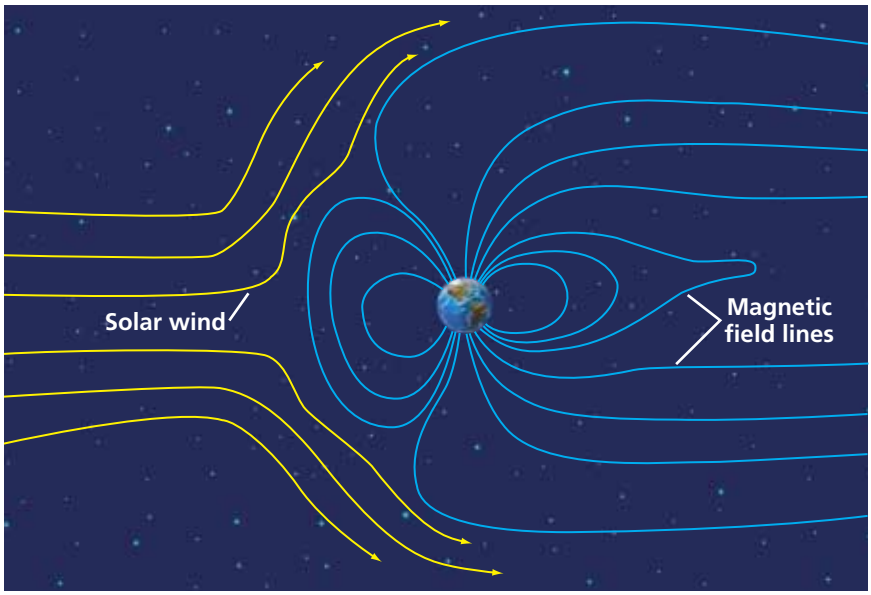


Figure 3 ▶ The magnetic field lines around Earth show the shape of Earth's magnetosphere. Earth's magnetosphere is compressed and shaped by solar wind, which is the flow of charged particles from the sun.

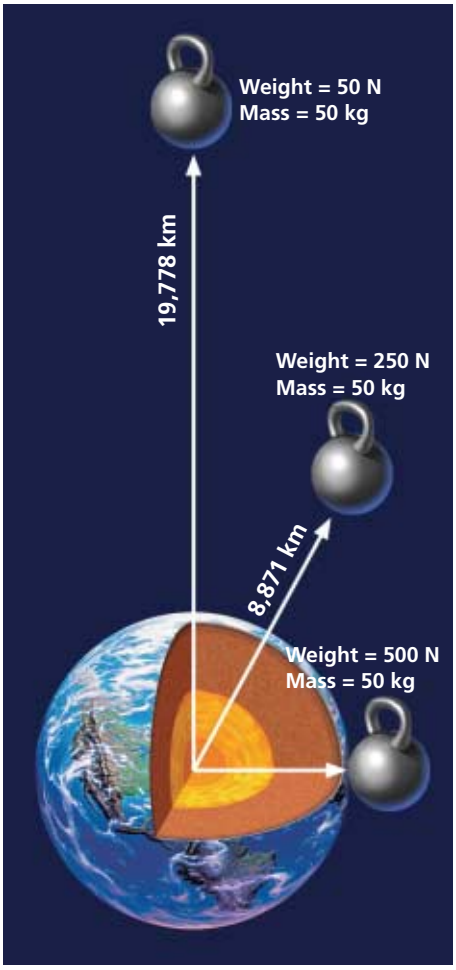


Figure 4 ▶ As the distance between an object and Earth's center increases, the weight of the object decreases. An object's mass is constant as its distance from Earth's center changes.

Earth's Gravity

Earth, like all objects in the universe, is affected by gravity. *Gravity* is the force of attraction that exists between all matter in the universe. The 17th-century scientist Isaac Newton was the first to explain the phenomenon of gravity. Newton described the effects of gravity in his *law of gravitation*. According to the law of gravitation, the force of attraction between any two objects depends on the masses of the objects and the distance between the objects. The larger the masses of two objects and the closer together the objects are, the greater the force of gravity between the objects will be.

Weight and Mass

Earth exerts a gravitational force that pulls objects toward the center of Earth. Weight is a measure of the strength of the pull of gravity on an object. The newton (N) is the unit used to measure weight. On Earth's surface, a kilogram of mass weighs about 10 N. The mass of an object does not change with location, but the weight of the object does. An object's weight depends on its mass and its distance from Earth's center. According to the law of gravitation, the force of gravity decreases as the distance from Earth's center increases, as shown in **Figure 4.**

Weight and Location

Weight varies according to location on Earth's surface. As you may recall, Earth spins on its axis, and this motion causes Earth to bulge near the equator. Therefore, the distance between Earth's surface and its center is greater at the equator than at the poles. This difference in distance means that your weight at the equator would be about 0.3% less than your weight at the North Pole.

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** the size and shape of Earth.
2. **Describe** two characteristics that make Earth unique in our solar system.
3. **Summarize** how scientists learn about Earth's interior.
4. **Compare** Earth's compositional layers with its structural layers.
5. **Identify** the possible source of Earth's magnetic field.
6. **Summarize** Newton's law of gravitation.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Inferences** What does the difference between your weight at the equator and your weight at the poles suggest about the shape of Earth?
8. **Making Comparisons** How does the asthenosphere differ from the mesosphere?
9. **Analyzing Ideas** Why would you weigh less on a high mountain peak than you would at sea level?

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *crust, mantle, core, lithosphere, asthenosphere, mesosphere, inner core,* and *outer core.*

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

Section 2

Energy in the Earth System

Traditionally, different fields of Earth science, such as geology, oceanography, and meteorology, have been studied separately. Geologists studied Earth's rocks and interior, oceanographers studied the oceans, and meteorologists studied the atmosphere. But now, some scientists are approaching the study of Earth in a new way. They are combining knowledge of several fields of Earth science in order to study Earth as a system.

OBJECTIVES

- **Compare** an open system with a closed system.
- **List** the characteristics of Earth's four major spheres.
- **Identify** the two main sources of energy in the Earth system.
- **Identify** four processes in which matter and energy cycle on Earth.

KEY TERMS

system
atmosphere
hydrosphere
geosphere
biosphere

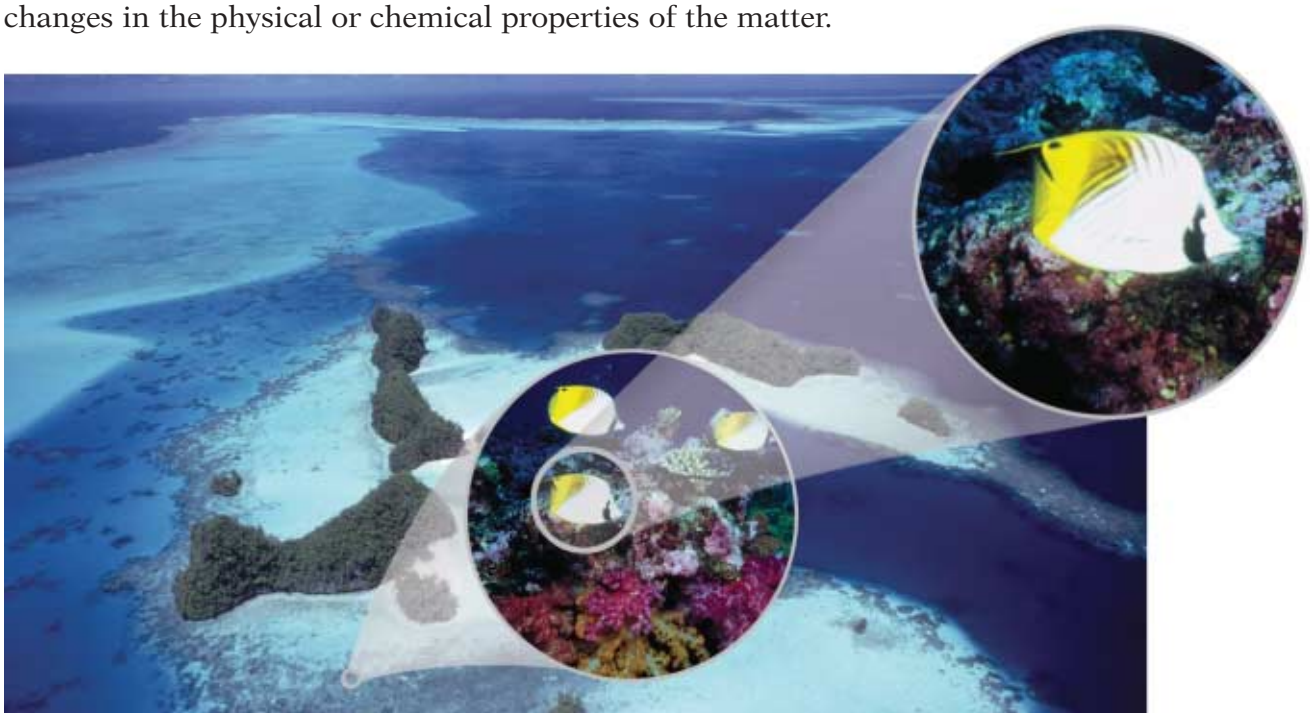
Earth-System Science

An organized group of related objects or components that interact to create a whole is a **system.** Systems vary in size from subatomic to the size of the universe. All systems have boundaries, and many systems have matter and energy that flow through them. Even though each system can be described separately, all systems are linked. A large and complex system, such as the Earth system, operates as a result of the combination of smaller, interrelated systems, as shown in **Figure 1.**

system a set of particles or interacting components considered to be a distinct physical entity for the purpose of study

The operation of the Earth system is a result of interaction between the two most basic components of the universe: matter and energy. *Matter* is anything that has mass and takes up space. Matter can be subatomic particles, such as protons, electrons, and neutrons. Matter can be atoms or molecules, such as oxygen atoms or water molecules, and matter can be larger objects, such as rocks, living organisms, or planets. *Energy* is defined as the ability to do work. Energy can be transferred in a variety of forms, including heat, light, vibrations, or electromagnetic waves. A system can be described by the way that matter and energy are transferred within the system or to and from other systems. Transfers of matter and energy are commonly accompanied by changes in the physical or chemical properties of the matter.

Figure 1 ▶ This threadfin butterflyfish is part of a system that includes other living organisms, such as coral. Together, the organisms are part of a larger system, a coral reef system in Micronesia.



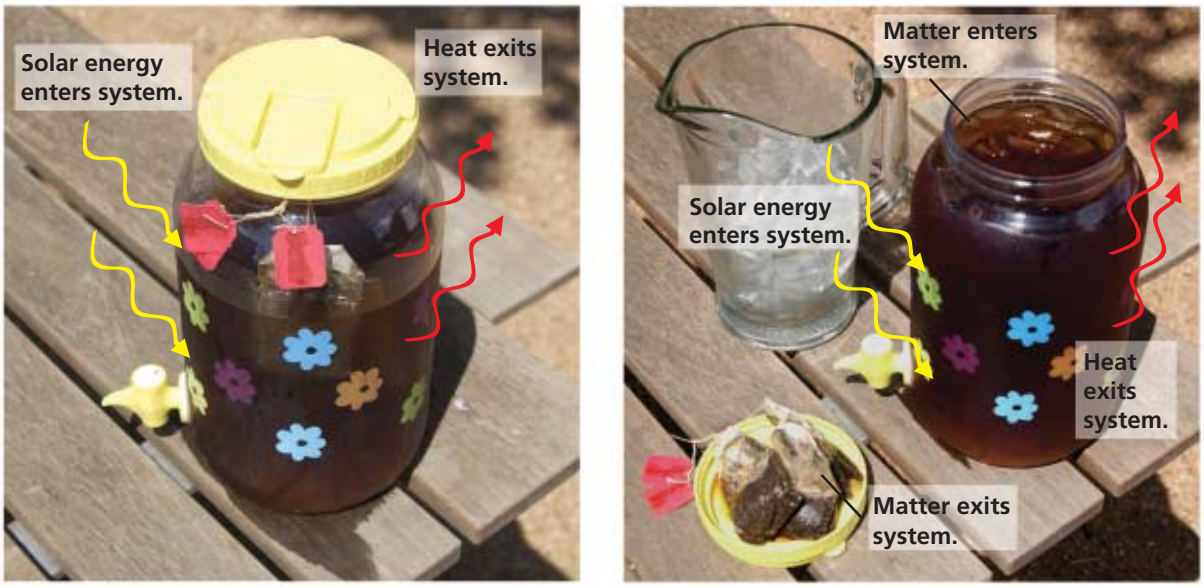


Figure 2 ▶ Energy is exchanged in both the closed system (left) and the open system (right). In the open system, matter is also exchanged.

Closed Systems

A *closed system* is a system in which energy, but not matter, is exchanged with the surroundings. **Figure 2** shows a sealed jar, which is a closed system. Energy in the form of light and heat can be exchanged through the jar's sides. But because the jar is sealed, matter cannot exit or enter the system. Most aquariums are open systems because oxygen and food must be added to them, but some are closed systems. Closed-system aquariums contain a variety of organisms: plants, which produce oxygen, and aquatic animals, some of which are food for others. Some of the animals feed on the plants. Animal wastes and organic matter nourish the plants. Only sunlight enters from the surroundings.

Open Systems

An *open system* is a system in which both energy and matter are exchanged with the surroundings. The open jar in **Figure 2** is an open system. A lake is also an open system. Water molecules enter a lake through rainfall and streams. Water exits a lake through streams, evaporation, and absorption by the ground. Sunlight and air exchange heat with the lake. Wind's energy is transferred to the lake as waves.

The Earth System

Technically, all systems that make up the Earth system are open. But the Earth system is almost a closed system because matter exchange is limited. Energy enters the system in the form of sunlight and is released into space as heat. Only a small amount of dust and rock from space enters the system, and only a fraction of the hydrogen atoms in the atmosphere escape into space.

Reading Check **What types of matter and energy are exchanged between Earth and space? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Earth's Four Spheres

Matter on Earth is in solid, liquid, and gaseous states. The Earth system is composed of four "spheres" that are storehouses of all of the planet's matter. These four spheres are shown in **Figure 3.**

The Atmosphere

The blanket of gases that surrounds Earth's surface is called the **atmosphere.** The atmosphere provides the air that you breathe and shields Earth from the sun's harmful radiation. Earth's atmosphere is made up of 78% nitrogen and 21% oxygen. The remaining 1% includes other gases, such as argon, carbon dioxide, water vapor, and helium.

atmosphere a mixture of gases that surrounds a planet or moon

hydrosphere the portion of the Earth that is water

geosphere the mostly solid, rocky part of the Earth; extends from the center of the core to the surface of the crust

biosphere the part of Earth where life exists; includes all of the living organisms on Earth

The Hydrosphere

Water covers 71% of Earth's surface area, and 97% of surface water is contained in the salty oceans. The remaining 3% is fresh water. Fresh water can be found in lakes, rivers, and streams, frozen in glaciers and the polar ice sheets, and underground in soil and bedrock. All of Earth's water except the water that is in gaseous form in the atmosphere makes up the **hydrosphere.**

The Geosphere

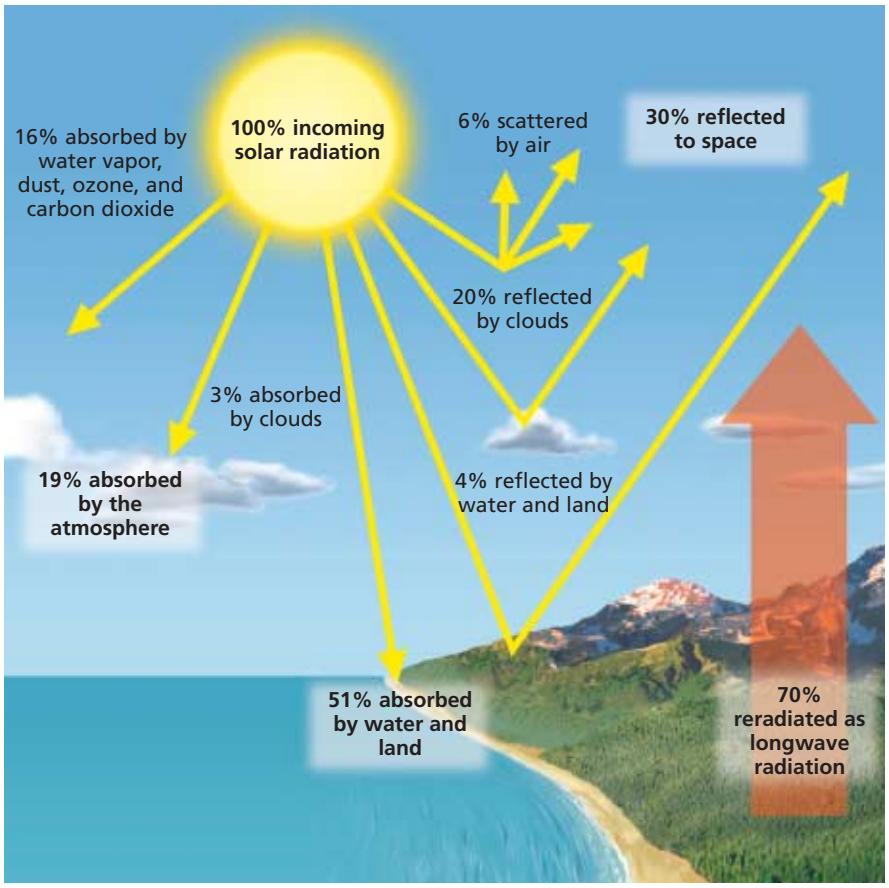
The mostly solid part of Earth is known as the **geosphere.** This sphere includes all of the rock and soil on the surface of the continents and on the ocean floor. The geosphere also includes the solid and molten interior of Earth, which makes up the largest volume of matter on Earth. Natural processes, such as volcanism, bring matter from deep inside Earth's interior to the surface. Other processes move surface matter back into Earth's interior.

Figure 3 ▶ The Earth system is composed of the atmosphere, hydrosphere, geosphere, and biosphere. ***Can you identify elements of the four spheres in this photo?***

The Biosphere

Another one of the four subdivisions of the Earth system is the biosphere. The **biosphere** is composed of all of the forms of life in the geosphere, in the hydrosphere, and in the atmosphere. The biosphere also contains any organic matter that has not decomposed. Once organic matter has completely decomposed, it becomes a part of the other three spheres. The biosphere extends from the deepest parts of the ocean to the atmosphere a few kilometers above Earth's surface.

Figure 4 ▶ Incoming solar energy is balanced by solar energy reflected or reradiated by several of Earth's systems.



Earth's Energy Budget

Exchanges and flow of energy on Earth happen in predictable ways. According to the *first law of thermodynamics,* energy is transferred between systems, but it cannot be created or destroyed. The transfers of energy between Earth's spheres can be thought of as parts of an *energy budget,* in which additions in energy are balanced by subtractions. This concept is shown in **Figure 4,** which shows how solar energy is transferred through Earth's systems. Solar energy is absorbed and reflected in such a way that the solar energy input is balanced by the solar energy output. Like energy, matter can be transferred but cannot be created or destroyed.

The *second law of thermodynamics* states that when energy transfer takes place, matter becomes less organized with time. The overall effect of this natural law is that the universe's energy is spread out more and more uniformly over time.

Earth's four main spheres are open systems that can be thought of as huge storehouses of matter and energy. Matter and energy are constantly being exchanged between the spheres. This constant exchange happens through chemical reactions, radioactive decay, the radiation of energy (including light and heat), and the growth and decay of organisms.

Reading Check **Define *energy budget.* (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Graphic Organizer — Comparison Table

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Comparison Table" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns with "Type of Source," and "Use of Source."Label the rows with "Radiactive decay, "Convection," "Sun," and "Moon."Then, fill in the the table with details of the type and use of each energy source in Earth's system.

Internal Sources of Energy

When Earth formed about 4.6 billion years ago, its interior was heated by radioactive decay and gravitational contraction. Since that time, the amount of heat generated by radioactive decay has declined. But the decay of radioactive atoms still generates enough heat to keep Earth's interior hot. Earth's interior also retains much of the energy from the planet's formation.

Because Earth's interior is warmer than its surface layers, hot materials move toward the surface in a process called *convection*. As material is heated, the material's density decreases, and the hot material rises and releases heat. Cooler, denser material sinks and displaces the hot material. As a result, the heat in Earth's interior is transferred through the layers of Earth and is released at Earth's surface. On a large scale, this process drives the motions in the surface layers of the geosphere that create mountain ranges and ocean basins.

External Energy Sources

In order for the life-supporting processes on Earth to continue operating for billions of years, energy must be added to the Earth system. Earth's most important external energy source is the sun. Solar radiation warms Earth's atmosphere and surface. This heating causes the movement of air masses, which generates winds and ocean currents. Plants, such as the wheat shown in **Figure 5,** use solar energy to fuel their growth. Because many animals feed on plants, plants provide the energy that acts as a base for the energy flow through the biosphere. Even the chemical reactions that break down rock into soil require solar energy. Another important external source of energy is gravitational energy from the moon and sun. The pull of the sun and the moon on the oceans, combined with Earth's rotation, generates tides that cause currents and drive the mixing of ocean water.

QuickLAB 10 min

Effects of Solar Energy

Procedure

1. Wrap one **small glass jar** with **black construction paper** so that no light can enter it. Get a **second glass jar.** Make sure that the second jar has a clean, transparent surface.
2. Use a **hammer** and **large nail** to punch a hole in each jar lid.
3. Place a **thermometer** through the hole in each jar lid. Place the lids tightly onto the jars.
4. Place the jars on the windowsill. Wait 5 min. Then, read the temperature from each jar's thermometer.

Analysis

1. Which jar had the higher temperature?
2. Which jar represents a system in which energy enters from outside the system?

Figure 5 ▶ Solar energy is changed into stored energy in the wheat kernels by chemical processes in the wheat plant. When the wheat is eaten, the stored energy is released from the wheat and used or stored by the consumer.

Cycles in the Earth System

A *reservoir* is a place where matter or energy is stored. A *cycle* is a group of processes in which matter and energy repeatedly move through a series of reservoirs. Many elements on Earth cycle between reservoirs. These cycles rely on energy sources to drive them. The length of time that energy or matter spends in a reservoir can vary from a few hours to several million years.

The Nitrogen Cycle

Organisms on Earth use the element nitrogen to build proteins, which are then used to build cells. Nitrogen gas makes up 78% of the atmosphere, but most organisms cannot use the atmospheric form of nitrogen. The nitrogen must be altered, or *fixed,* before organisms can use it. Nitrogen fixing is an important step in the *nitrogen cycle,* which is shown in **Figure 6.**

In the nitrogen cycle, nitrogen moves from air to soil, from soil to plants and animals, and back to air again. Nitrogen is removed from air mainly by the action of nitrogen-fixing bacteria. These bacteria live in soil and on the roots of certain plants. The bacteria chemically change nitrogen from air into nitrogen compounds, which are vital to the growth of all plants. When animals eat plants, nitrogen compounds in the plants become part of the animals' bodies. These compounds are returned to the soil by the decay of dead animals and in animals' excretions. After nitrogen compounds enter the soil, chemical processes release nitrogen back into the atmosphere. Water-dwelling plants and animals take part in a similar nitrogen cycle.

Reading Check **Identify two nitrogen reservoirs on Earth. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

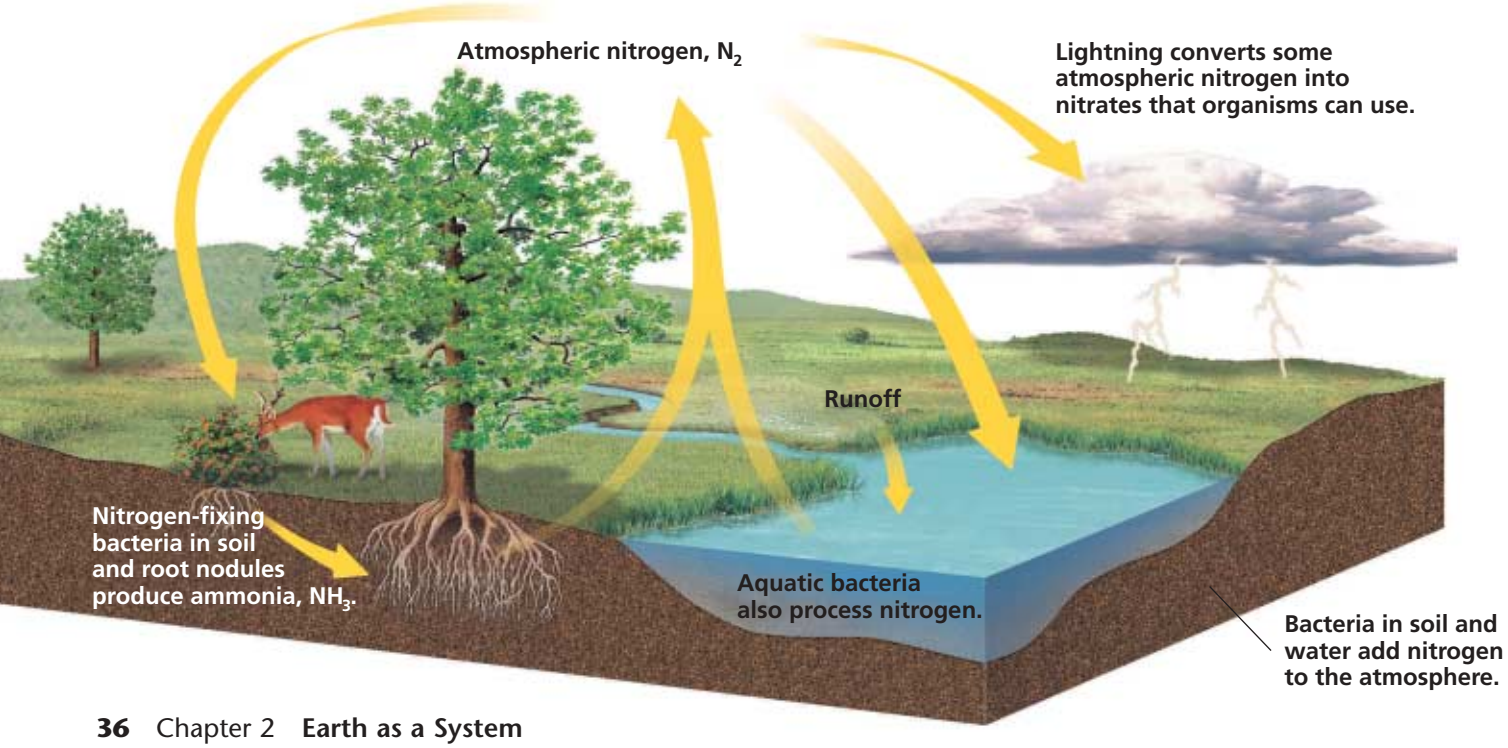


Figure 6 ▶ The balance of nitrogen in the atmosphere and biosphere is maintained through the nitrogen cycle. ***What role do animals play in the nitrogen cycle?***

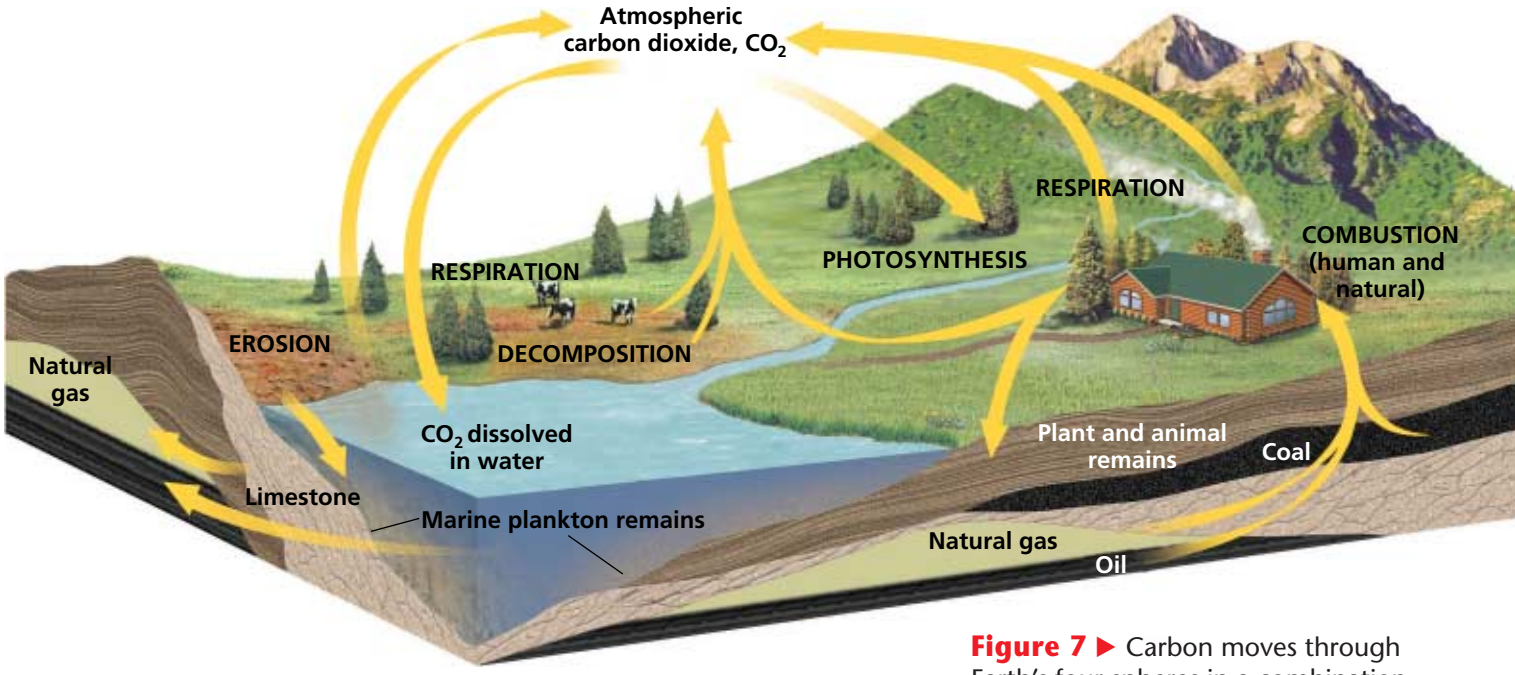


Figure 7 ▶ Carbon moves through Earth's four spheres in a combination of short-term and long-term cycles.

The Carbon Cycle

Carbon is an essential substance in the fuels used for life processes. Carbon moves through all four spheres in a process called the *carbon cycle,* as **Figure 7** shows. Part of the carbon cycle is a short-term cycle. In this short-term cycle, plants convert carbon dioxide, CO_2, from the atmosphere into carbohydrates, such as glucose, $C_6H_{12}O_6$. Then, organisms eat the plants and obtain the carbon from the carbohydrates. Next, organisms' bodies break down the carbohydrates and release some of the carbon back into the air as CO_2. Organisms also release carbon into the air through their organic wastes and by the decay of their remains, which release carbon into the air as CO_2 or as methane, CH_4.

Part of the carbon cycle is a long-term cycle in which carbon moves through Earth's four spheres over a very long time period. Carbon is stored in the geosphere in buried plant or animal remains and in a type of rock called a *carbonate*. Carbonate forms from shells and bones of once-living organisms.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Carbon Cycle
SciLinks code: HQ6216
Topic: Nitrogen Cycle
SciLinks code: HQ61036

The Phosphorus Cycle

The element phosphorus is part of some molecules that organisms need to build cells. During the *phosphorus cycle,* phosphorus moves through every sphere except the atmosphere, because phosphorus is rarely a gas. Phosphorus enters soil and water when rock breaks down and when phosphorus dissolves in water. Some organisms excrete their excess phosphorus in their waste, and this phosphorus may enter soil and water. Plants absorb this phosphorus through their roots. The plants then incorporate the phosphorus into their tissues. Animals absorb the phosphorus when they eat the plants. When the animals die, the phosphorus returns to the environment through decomposition.

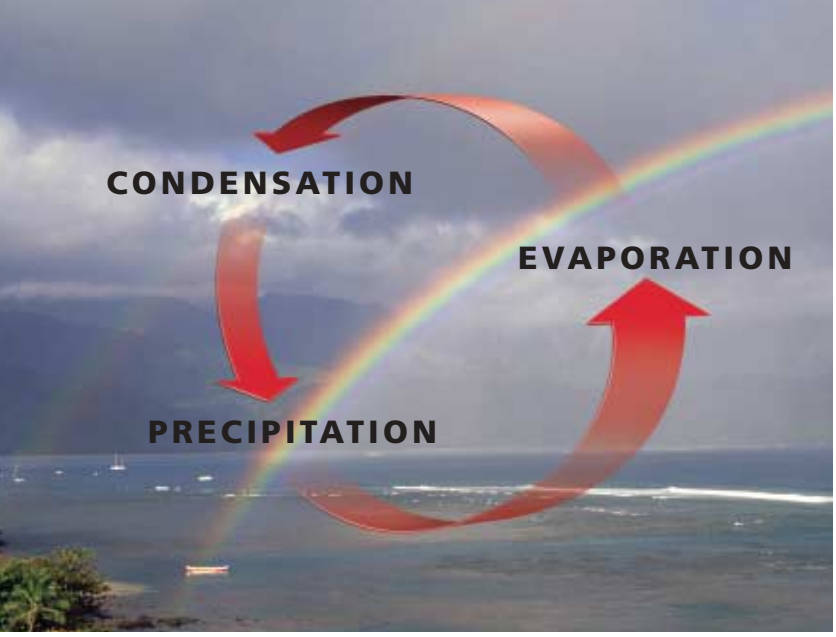


Figure 8 ▶ The water cycle is the continuous movement of water from the atmosphere to Earth's surface and back to the atmosphere.

The Water Cycle

The movement of water from the atmosphere to Earth's surface and back to the atmosphere is always taking place. This continuous movement of water is called the *water cycle*, which is shown in **Figure 8.** In the water cycle, water changes from liquid water to water vapor through the energy transfers involved in evaporation and transpiration. Evaporation occurs when energy is absorbed by liquid water and the energy changes the water into water vapor. Transpiration is the release of moisture from plant leaves. During these processes, water absorbs heat and changes state. When the water loses energy, it condenses to form water droplets, such as those that form clouds. Eventually, water falls back to Earth's surface as precipitation, such as rain, snow, or hail.

Humans and the Earth System

All natural cycles can be altered by human activities. The carbon cycle is affected when humans use fossil fuels. Fossil fuels form over millions of years. Carbon dioxide is returned to the atmospheric reservoir rapidly when humans burn these fuels. Also, both the nitrogen and phosphorus cycles are affected by agriculture. Some farming techniques can strip the soil of nitrogen and phosphorus. Many farmers replace these nutrients by using fertilizers, which can upset the balance of these elements in nature.

Section 2 Review

1. **Explain** how Earth can be considered a system.
2. **Compare** an open system with a closed system.
3. **List** two characteristics of each of Earth's four major spheres.
4. **Identify** the two main sources of energy in Earth's system.
5. **Identify** four processes in which matter and energy cycle on Earth.
6. **Explain** how carbon cycles in Earth's system.
7. **Explain** how nitrogen cycles in Earth's system.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Identifying Relationships** For each of Earth's four spheres, describe one way that the water cycle affects the sphere.
9. **Determining Cause and Effect** What effect, if any, would you expect a massive forest fire to have on the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere? Explain your answer.
10. **Analyzing Ideas** Early Earth was constantly being bombarded by meteorites, comets, and asteroids. Was early Earth an open system or a closed system? Explain your answer.
11. **Analyzing Relationships** Explain the role of energy in the carbon cycle.

CONCEPT MAPPING

12. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *closed system, system, open system, matter, atmosphere, biosphere, energy, geosphere,* and *hydrosphere.*

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

Section 3 Ecology

One area of science in which life science and Earth science are closely linked is called *ecology*. Ecology is the study of the complex relationships between living things and their nonliving, or abiotic, environment. Some ecologists also investigate how communities of organisms change over time.

Ecosystems

Organisms on Earth inhabit many different environments. A community of organisms and the environment that the organisms inhabit is called an **ecosystem.** The terms *ecology* and *ecosystem* come from the Greek word *oikos,* which means "house." Each ecosystem on Earth is a distinct, self-supporting system. An ecosystem may be as large as an ocean or as small as a rotting log. The largest ecosystem is the entire biosphere.

Most of Earth's ecosystems contain a variety of plants and animals. Plants are important to an ecosystem because they use energy from the sun to produce their own food. Organisms that make their own food are called *producers.* Producers are a source of food for other organisms. *Consumers* are organisms that get their energy by eating other organisms. Consumers may get energy by eating producers or by eating other consumers, as the consumers shown in **Figure 1** are doing. Some consumers get energy by breaking down dead organisms. These consumers are called *decomposers*. To remain healthy, an ecosystem needs to have a balance of producers, consumers, and decomposers.

OBJECTIVES

- **Define** *ecosystem.*
- **Identify** three factors that control the balance of an ecosystem.
- **Summarize** how energy is transferred through an ecosystem.
- **Describe** one way that ecosystems respond to environmental change.

KEY TERMS

ecosystem
carrying capacity
food web

ecosystem a community of organisms and their abiotic environment

Figure 1 ▶ Vultures and a spotted hyena are feeding on an elephant carcass in Chobe National Park in Botswana. ***Name two consumers that are shown in this photo.***

Figure 2 ▶ The fur of this elk calf was singed in a forest fire in Yellowstone National Park. Not enough food resources remain to allow the calf to stay in this area, but the calf may return here when the area has recovered.

carrying capacity the largest population that an environment can support at any given time

Balancing Forces in Ecosystems

Organisms in an ecosystem use matter and energy. Because amounts of matter and energy in an ecosystem are limited, population growth within the ecosystem is limited, too. The largest population that an environment can support at any given time is called the **carrying capacity.** Carrying capacity depends on available resources. The carrying capacity of an ecosystem is also affected by how easily matter and energy cycle between life-forms and the environment in that ecosystem. So, a given ecosystem can support only the number of organisms that allows matter and energy to cycle efficiently through the ecosystem.

Ecological Responses to Change

Changes in any one part of an ecosystem may affect the entire system in unpredictable ways. However, in general, ecosystems react to changes in ways that maintain or restore balance in the ecosystem.

Environmental change in the form of a sudden disturbance, such as a forest fire, can greatly damage and disrupt ecosystems, as shown in **Figure 2.** But over time, organisms will migrate back into damaged areas in predictable patterns. First, grasses and fast-growing plants will start to grow. Then, shrubs and small animal species will return. Eventually, larger tree species and larger animals will return to the area. Ecosystems are resilient and tend to restore a community of organisms to its original state unless the physical environment is permanently altered.

Reading Check **Explain the relationship between carrying capacity and the amount of matter and energy in an ecosystem. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Connection to ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

Lemmings

Lemmings are small arctic rodents. Lemmings play an important role in their ecosystem because they are the major food source for snowy owls and arctic foxes. While most animal species have a relatively constant population size, lemming populations vary greatly over a three- or four-year cycle.

When a lemming population is at its smallest, very few lemmings may be in an area. But lemmings can reproduce very quickly, and they produce large litters of up to 11 young. A female lemming can begin to produce offspring when she is only one month old. So, a very small population of lemmings can give rise to a large population in a short period of time. After a few years, the growing population of lemmings begins to use up available food resources. Eventually, lemmings begin to starve. When this happens, lemmings fight each other, and many migrate to other areas.

These mass migrations have given rise to myths that lemmings throw themselves off cliffs. Lemmings have been seen diving into the ocean, but scientists believe that lemmings do this because lemmings can swim. When lemmings swim across a stream, they can reach and populate new areas of land. When they dive into the ocean, however, they cannot reach land and often drown. When starvation, fighting, or drowning reduces a lemming population to very few members, the cycle of population growth repeats.

Energy Transfer

The ultimate source of energy for almost every ecosystem is the sun. Plants capture solar energy by a chemical process called *photosynthesis*. This captured energy then flows through ecosystems from the plants, to the animals that feed on the plants, and finally to the decomposers of animal and plant remains. Matter also cycles through an ecosystem by this process.

As matter and energy cycle through an ecosystem, chemical elements are combined and recombined. Each chemical change results in either the temporary storage of energy or the loss of energy. One way to see how energy is lost as it moves through the ecosystem is to draw an energy pyramid. Producers form the base of the pyramid. Consumers that eat producers are the next level of the pyramid. Animals that eat those consumers form the upper levels of the pyramid. As you move up the pyramid, more energy is lost at each level. Therefore, the least amount of energy is available to organisms at the top of the pyramid.

Food Chains and Food Webs

The sequence in which organisms consume other organisms can be represented by a *food chain*. However, ecosystems are complex and generally contain more organisms than are on a single food chain. In addition, many organisms eat more than just one other species. Therefore, a **food web,** such as the one shown in **Figure 3,** is used to represent the relationships between multiple food chains. Each arrow points to the organism that eats the organism at the base of the arrow.

food web a diagram that shows the feeding relationships among organisms in an ecosystem

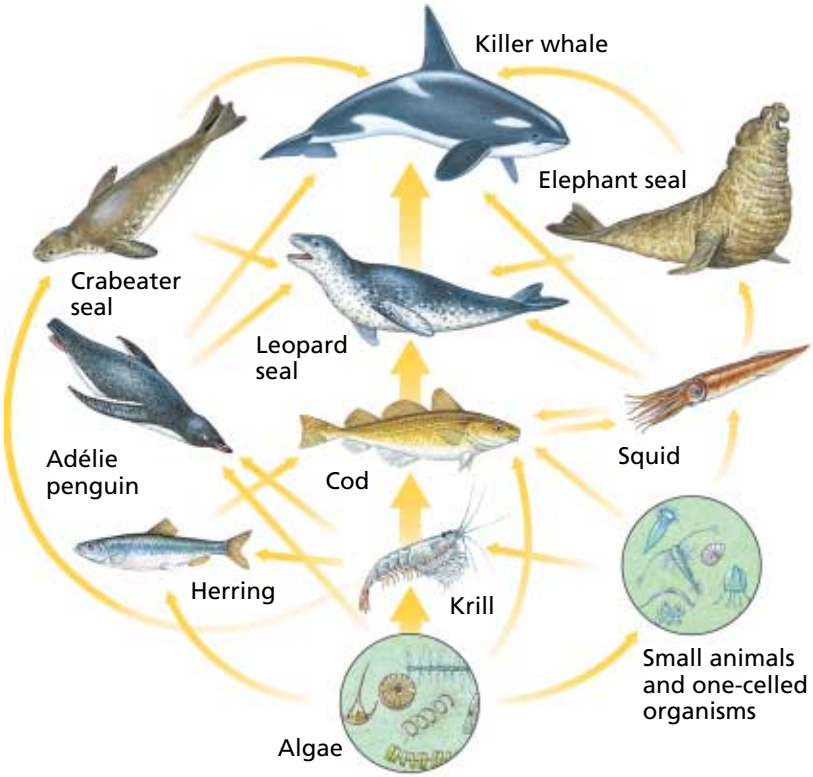


Figure 3 ▶ This food web shows how, in an ocean ecosystem, the largest organisms, such as killer whales, depend on the smallest organisms, such as algae. ***Which organisms would be near the top of a food pyramid?***

QuickLAB 20 min

Studying Ecosystems

Procedure

1. Find a **small natural area** near your school.
2. Choose a 5 m by 5 m section of the natural area to study. This area may include the ground or vegetation such as trees or bushes.
3. Spend 10 min documenting the number and types of organisms that live in the area.

Analysis

1. How many kinds of organisms live in the area that you studied?
2. Draw a food web that describes how energy may flow through the ecosystem that you studied.

Figure 4 ▶ These hikers are acting responsibly by choosing to remain on marked trails in the rain forest. In this way, they are helping prevent ecological damage to the area.

Human Stewardship of the Environment

All of Earth's systems are interconnected, and changes in one system may affect the operation of other systems. Earth's ecosystems provide a wide variety of resources on which people depend. People need water and air to survive. Changes in ecosystems can affect the ability of an area to sustain a human population. For example, the quality of the atmosphere, the productivity of soils, and the availability of natural resources can affect the availability of food.

Ecological balances can be disrupted by human activity. Populations of plants and animals can be destroyed through overconsumption of resources. When humans convert large natural areas to agricultural or urban areas, natural ecosystems are often destroyed. Another serious threat to ecosystems is pollution. *Pollution* is the contamination of the environment with harmful waste products or impurities.

When people, such as those in **Figure 4,** strive to prevent ecological damage to an area, they are trying to be responsible stewards of Earth. To help ensure the ongoing health and productivity of the Earth system, many people work to use Earth's resources wisely. By using fossil fuels, land and water resources, and other natural resources wisely, many people are helping keep Earth's ecosystems in balance.

Section 3 Review

1. **Define** *ecosystem.*
2. **Explain** why the entire biosphere is an ecosystem.
3. **Identify** three factors that control the balance of an ecosystem.
4. **Summarize** how energy is transferred between the sun and consumers in an ecosystem.
5. **Describe** one way that ecosystems respond to environmental change.
6. **Compare** a food chain with a food web.
7. **Summarize** the importance of good stewardship of Earth's resources.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Making Inferences** Discuss two ways that the expansion of urban areas might be harmful to nearby ecosystems.
9. **Analyzing Ideas** Why would adapting to a gradual change in environment be easier for an ecosystem than adapting to a sudden disturbance would be?
10. **Making Inferences** Why does energy flow in only one direction in a given food chain of an ecosystem?

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *ecology, ecosystem, producer, decomposer, carrying capacity, consumer,* and *food web.*

Chapter 2 Highlights

Sections

1 Earth: A Unique Planet

Key Terms

crust, 28
mantle, 28
core, 28
lithosphere, 29
asthenosphere, 29
mesosphere, 29

Key Concepts

- Earth is an oblate spheroid that has an average diameter of 12,756 km. About 70% of Earth's surface is covered by a relatively thin layer of water.
- Seismic waves have revealed that Earth's interior is composed of a series of layers of various densities.
- Earth has a magnetic field that extends into space in a region known as the *magnetosphere*.

2 Energy in the Earth System

system, 31
atmosphere, 33
hydrosphere, 33
geosphere, 33
biosphere, 33

- A closed system is a system in which energy enters and exits but matter remains static—neither enters nor exits. An open system is a system in which both energy and matter enter and leave.
- The Earth system can be thought of as consisting of four spheres—the geosphere, the hydrosphere, the atmosphere, and the biosphere—that influence the operation of one another.
- Matter and energy are not created or destroyed. Matter and energy cycle between Earth's systems. Energy, most of which is solar, is required to maintain this cycling.

3 Ecology

ecosystem, 39
carrying capacity, 40
food web, 41

- An ecosystem is a community of organisms and the environment that they inhabit.
- When sudden disturbances disrupt the health of an ecosystem, the components of the ecosystem respond in ways that return the ecosystem to a balanced condition.
- One way that energy moves through ecosystems is through the eating of organisms by other organisms.
- Humans are part of the global ecosystem. Stewardship of Earth's resources is important to maintaining healthy ecosystems.

Chapter 2 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *system*
2. *carrying capacity*
3. *lithosphere*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *system* and *ecosystem*
5. *biosphere* and *geosphere*
6. *hydrosphere* and *atmosphere*
7. *mantle* and *asthenosphere*
8. *energy pyramid* and *food web*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. The diameter of Earth is greatest at the
   a. poles. **c.** oceans.
   b. equator. **d.** continents.

10. The element that makes up the largest percentage of the atmosphere is
   a. oxygen.
   b. nitrogen.
   c. carbon dioxide.
   d. ozone.

11. The gravitational attraction between two objects is determined by the mass of the two objects and the
   a. distance between the objects.
   b. weight of the objects.
   c. diameter of the objects.
   d. density of the objects.

12. Energy can enter the Earth system from internal sources through convection and from external sources through
   a. radioactive decay.
   b. wave energy.
   c. wind energy.
   d. solar energy.

13. Closed systems exchange energy but do *not* exchange
   a. gravity. **c.** sunlight.
   b. matter. **d.** heat.

14. Which of the following is *not* an ecosystem?
   a. a lake **c.** a tree
   b. an ocean **d.** an atom

15. Which of the following processes is *not* involved in the water cycle?
   a. evaporation
   b. transpiration
   c. nitrogen fixing
   d. precipitation

16. A jar with its lid on tightly is one example of a(n)
   a. open system. **c.** closed system.
   b. biosphere. **d.** ecosystem.

17. Phosphorus cycles through all spheres except the
   a. geosphere. **c.** biosphere
   b. atmosphere. **d.** hydrosphere.

Short Answer

18. What characteristic of Earth's interior is likely to be responsible for Earth's magnetic field?

19. What is the role of decomposers in the cycling of matter in the biosphere?

20. Compare the three compositional zones of Earth with the five structural zones of Earth.

21. Restate the first and second laws of thermodynamics, and explain how they relate to ecosystems on Earth.

22. Describe two ways that your daily activities affect the water cycle.

23. Explain three reasons that stewardship of Earth's resources is important.

24. Describe three ways in which the atmosphere interacts with the geosphere.

25. Identify two distinguishing factors of a nearby ecosystem, and name five kinds of organisms that live in that ecosystem.

Critical Thinking

26. Analyzing Ideas What happens to the matter and energy in fossil fuels when the fuels are burned?

27. Making Inferences Draw an energy pyramid that includes the organisms shown in the food web diagram in this chapter.

28. Making Predictions How would the removal of decomposers from Earth's biosphere affect the carbon, nitrogen, and phosphorus cycles?

29. Analyzing Relationships Do you think that Earth has a carrying capacity for humans? Explain your reasoning.

Concept Mapping

30. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *biosphere, magnetosphere, mantle, atmosphere, geosphere, hydrosphere, ecosystem, crust,* and *core*.

Math Skills

31. Making Calculations In one year, the plants in each square meter of an ecosystem obtained 1,460 kilowatt•hours (kWh) of the sun's energy by photosynthesis. In that year, each square meter of plants stored 237 kWh. What percentage of the sun's energy did the plants use for life processes in that year?

32. Making Calculations The average radius of Earth is 6,371 km. If the average thickness of oceanic crust is 7.5 km and the average thickness of continental crust is 35 km, what fraction of Earth's radius is each type of crust?

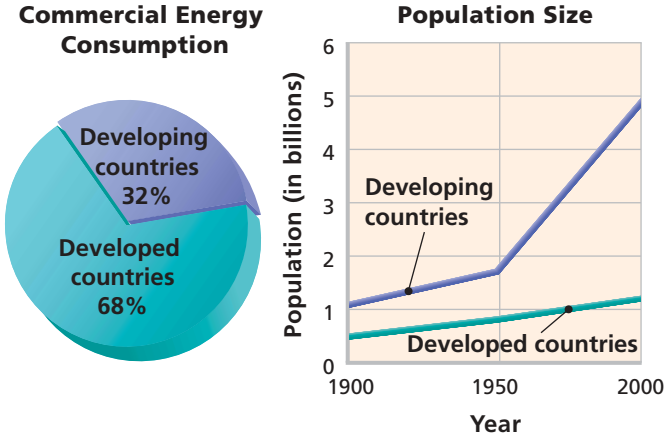
Writing Skills

33. Creative Writing If you noticed that pollution was harming a nearby lake, how would you convince your community of the need to take action to solve the problem? Describe three research tools you would use to find materials that support your opinion.

34. Communicating Main Ideas Explain why closed systems typically do not exist on Earth. Suggest two examples of a closed system created by humans.

Interpreting Graphics

The graphs below show the difference in energy consumption and population size in developed and developing countries. Use the graphs to answer the questions that follow.



35. Describe the differences in energy consumption and population growth between developed and the developing countries.

36. Do you think that the percentage of commercial energy consumed by developing countries will increase or decrease? Explain your answer.

37. Why is information on energy consumption represented in a pie graph, while population size is shown in a line graph?

Chapter 2 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 The crust and the rigid upper part of the mantle is found in what part of the Earth?
A. the asthenosphere
B. the lithosphere
C. the mesosphere
D. the stratosphere

2 Because phosphorus rarely occurs as a gas, the phosphorus cycle mainly occurs between the
F. biosphere, geosphere, and hydrosphere
G. biosphere, geosphere, and atmosphere
H. geosphere, hydrosphere, and atmosphere
I. biosphere, hydrosphere, and atmosphere

3 How are scientists able to study the composition and size of the interior layers of Earth?
A. by direct observation
B. by analyzing surface rock samples
C. by using seismic waves
D. by deep-drilling into the interior layers

4 Which of the following methods of internal energy transfer drives volcanic activity on Earth's surface?
F. radioactive decay
G. convection
H. kinetic transfer
I. conduction

5 Earth's primary external energy source is
A. cosmic radiation
B. the moon
C. distant stars
D. the sun

Directions (6–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 What do decomposers break down to obtain energy?

7 What scientific principle states that energy can be transferred but that it cannot be created or destroyed?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–9): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Acid Rain

Acid rain is rain, snow, fog, dew, or sleet that has a pH that is lower than the pH of normal precipitation. Acid rain occurs primarily as a result of the combustion of fossil fuels—a process that produces, as byproducts, oxides of nitrogen and sulfur dioxide. When combined with water in the atmosphere, these compounds form nitric acid and sulfuric acid. When it falls to Earth, acid rain has profound effects. It harms forests by damaging tree leaves and bark, which leaves them vulnerable to weather, disease, and parasites. Similarly, it damages crops. And it damages aquatic ecosystems by causing the death of all but the hardiest species. Because of the extensive damage that acid rain causes, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency limits the amount of sulfur dioxide and nitrogen oxides that can be emitted by factories, power plants, and motor vehicles.

8 According to the passage, which of the following contributes to the problem of acid rain?
A. the use of fossil fuels in power plants and motor vehicles
B. parasites and diseases that harm tree leaves and bark
C. the release of nitrogen into the atmosphere by aquatic ecosystems
D. damaged crops that release too many gases into the atmosphere

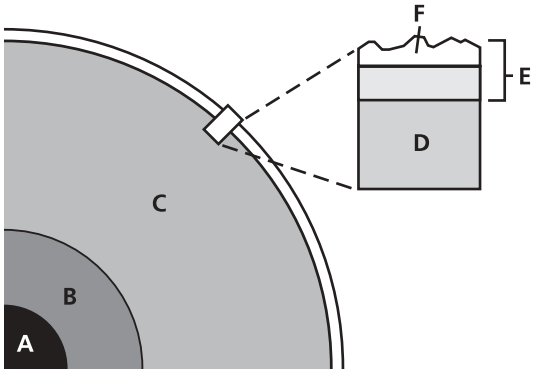
9 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
F. Acid rain is a natural problem that will correct itself if given enough time.
G. Ecosystems damaged by acid rain adapt so that they will not be damaged in the future.
H. Human activities are largely to blame for the problem of acid rain.
I. Acid rain is a local phenomenon and only damages plants and animals near power plants or roadways.

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (10–12): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagram below shows the interior layers of Earth. The layers in the diagram are representative of arrangement and are not drawn to scale. Use this diagram to answer question 10.

Structure of the Earth

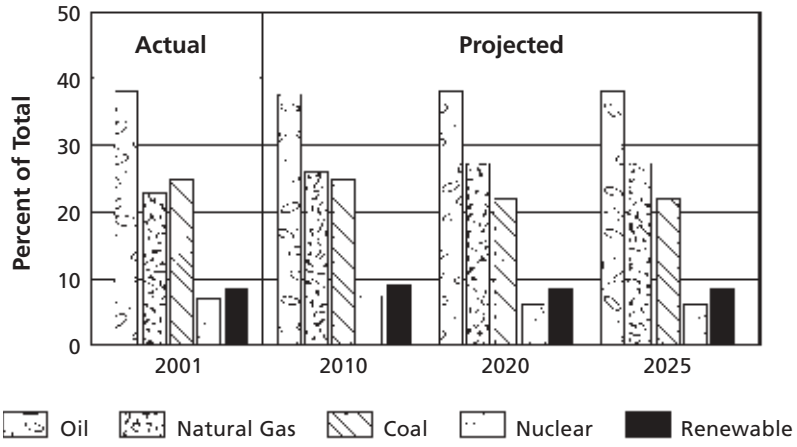


10 Which layer of Earth's interior does not transmit S waves?

F. layer B
G. layer C
H. layer D
I. layer E

Use the graph below, which shows predicted world-wide energy consumption by fuel type between the years 2001 and 2025, to answer questions 11 and 12.

Worldwide Energy Consumption By Source



11 Which of the following sources of energy is predicted to see the greatest increase in usage between 2001 and 2025?

A. oil
B. natural gas
C. coal
D. renewables

12 What trends in energy consumption by fuel type will change over the 25 years shown on the graph above? What trends will stay the same?

Test TIP

If time permits, take short mental breaks during the test to improve your concentration.

Chapter 2

Skills Practice Lab

Testing the Conservation of Mass

As matter cycles through the Earth system, the matter can undergo chemical changes that cause it to change state or change physical properties. However, although the matter may change form, it is not destroyed. This principle is known as the *law of conservation of mass.* In this lab, you will cause two chemicals to react to form products that differ from the two reacting chemicals. Then, you will determine whether the amount of mass in the system (the experiment) has changed.

Objectives

- **Measure** the masses of reactants and products in a chemical reaction.
- **Describe** how measuring masses of reactants and products can illustrate the law of conservation of mass.

Materials

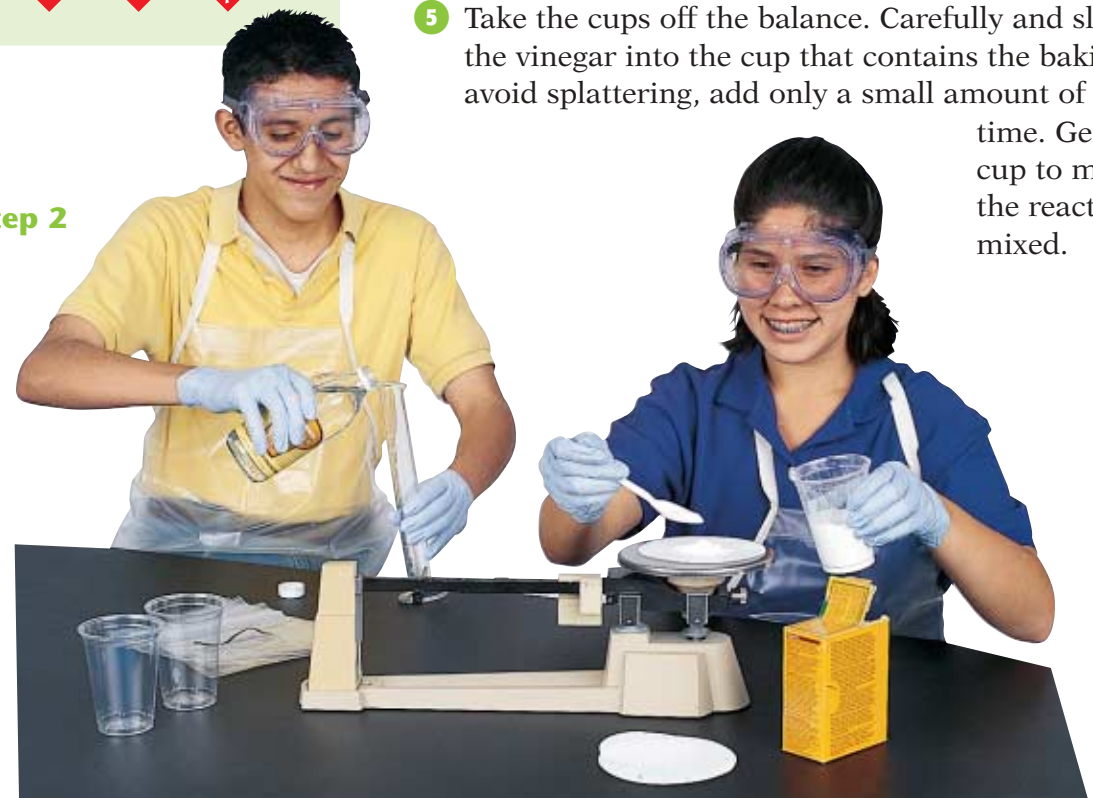
- bag, plastic sandwich, zipper-type closure
- baking soda (sodium bicarbonate)
- balance (or scale), metric
- beaker, 400 mL
- cup, clear plastic, 150 mL (2)
- graduated cylinder, 100 mL
- paper, weighing (2 pieces)
- twist tie
- vinegar (acetic acid solution)
- water

Safety

PROCEDURE

1. On a blank sheet of paper, prepare a table like the one shown on the next page.
2. Place a piece of weighing paper on a balance. Place 4 to 5 g of baking soda on the paper. Carefully transfer the baking soda to a plastic cup.
3. Using a graduated cylinder, measure 50 mL of vinegar. Pour the vinegar into a second plastic cup.
4. Place both cups on the balance, and determine the combined mass of the cups, baking soda, and vinegar to the nearest 0.01 g. Record the combined mass in the first row of your table under "Initial mass."
5. Take the cups off the balance. Carefully and slowly pour the vinegar into the cup that contains the baking soda. To avoid splattering, add only a small amount of vinegar at a time. Gently swirl the cup to make sure that the reactants are well mixed.

Step 2



	Initial mass (g)	Final mass (g)	Change in mass (g)
Trial 1			
Trial 2			

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK

6. When the reaction has finished, place both cups back on the balance. Determine the combined mass to the nearest 0.01 g. Record the combined mass in the first row of your table under "Final mass."
7. Subtract final mass from initial mass, and record the difference in the first row of your table under "Change in mass."
8. Repeat step 2, but carefully transfer the baking soda to one corner of a plastic bag rather than the cup.
9. To seal the baking soda in the corner of the bag, twist the corner of the bag above the baking soda and wrap the twist tie tightly around the twisted part of the bag.
10. Add 50 mL of vinegar to the bag. Zipper-close the bag so that the vinegar cannot leak out and the bag is airtight.
11. Place the bag in the beaker, and measure the mass of the beaker, the bag, and the reactants. Record the combined mass in the second row of your table under "Initial mass."
12. Remove the twist tie from the bag, and mix the reactants.
13. When the reaction has finished, repeat steps 6 and 7 by using the beaker, bag, twist tie, and products. Record the final mass and change in mass in the table's second row.

Step 11

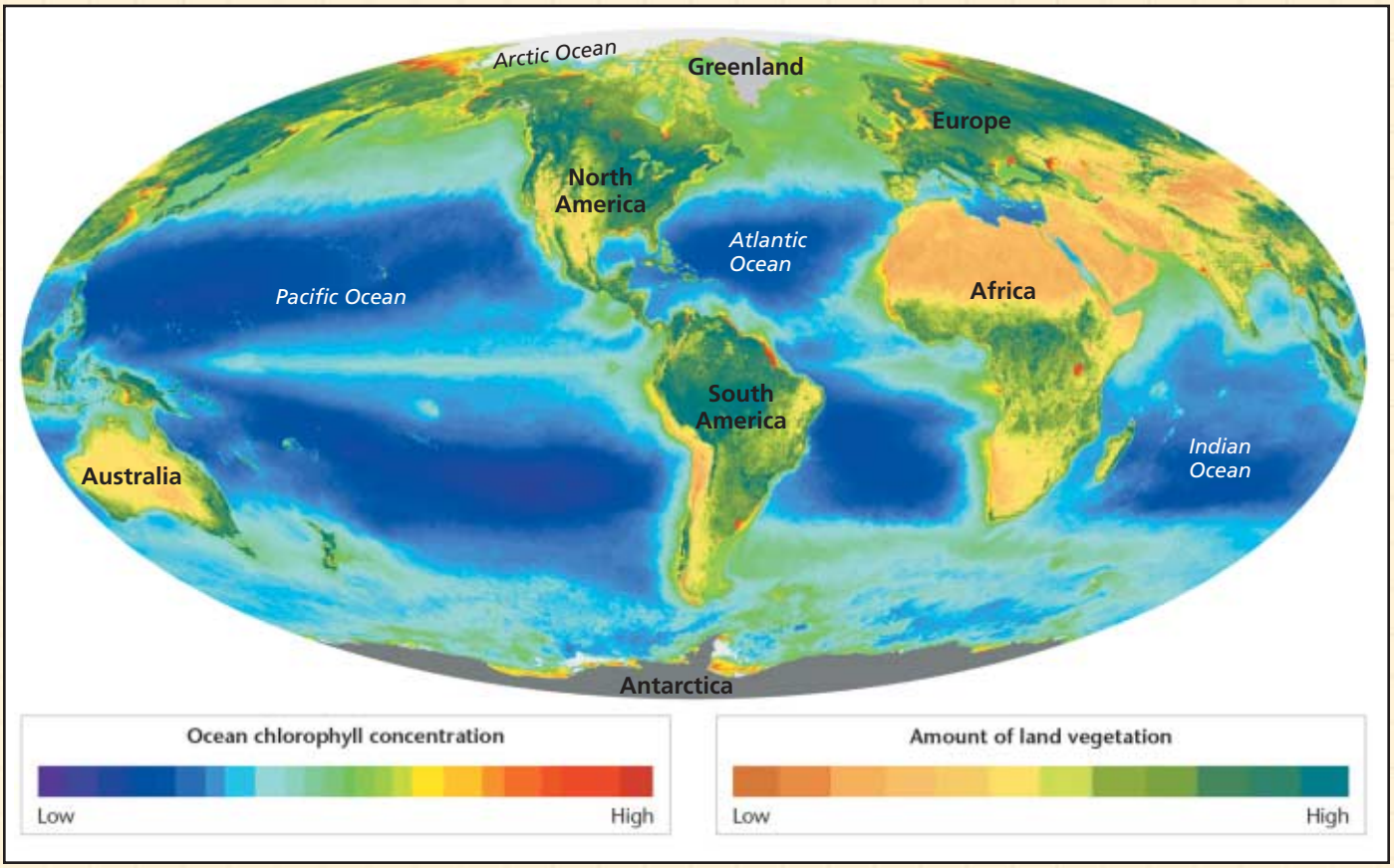
ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Analyzing Data** Compare the change in mass that you calculated for the first trial with the change in mass that you calculated for the second trial. What evidence of the conservation of mass does the second trial show?
2. **Analyzing Results** Was the law of conservation of mass violated in the first trial? Explain your answer.
3. **Drawing Conclusions** Was the first trial an example of a closed system or an open system? Which type of system was the second trial? Explain your answer.

Extension

1. **Designing an Experiment** Brainstorm other ways to demonstrate the law of conservation of energy in a laboratory. Describe the materials that you would need, and describe any difficulties that you foresee.

Concentration of Plant Life on Earth



Map Skills Activity

This map shows the concentration of plant life on land and in the oceans. Each color in the key represents a concentration of plant life as indicated by the concentration of chlorophyll. The higher the concentration of chlorophyll is, the higher the concentration of plant life is. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using a Key** How can you distinguish between high chlorophyll concentration in the ocean and high chlorophyll concentration on land?
2. **Comparing Areas** List three areas that have very low chlorophyll concentration on land. What characteristics of these areas cause such low chlorophyll concentrations?
3. **Comparing Areas** Why do you think Antarctica, Greenland, and the Arctic Ocean lack chlorophyll?
4. **Identifying Trends** Where are the highest chlorophyll concentrations in the ocean located? Why do you think that these locations have high chlorophyll concentrations?
5. **Identifying Trends** Plants use sunlight and chlorophyll to produce energy. What can you infer about the amount of sunlight around the equator that could help explain why areas along the equator tend to have higher concentrations of chlorophyll than surrounding areas do?

Biological Clocks

Humans are affected by cycles in the Earth system. Scientists think that our ancestors arranged their daily activities to correspond with daylight. They were probably awakened by sunrise and ended their workday at sunset. With the development of artificial light sources, however, humans have become less dependent on sunlight to set their daily routines. Recent research reveals surprising evidence that our bodies are still closely tied to natural, daily rhythms.

Feeling the Rhythm

Scientists have discovered that many body processes occur in 24-hour cycles called *circadian rhythms*. No one understands exactly what controls circadian rhythms, but the human body seems to have a number of internal clocks. These "biological clocks" regulate patterns of sleeping and waking, daily changes in body temperature, hormone secretions, heart rate, and blood pressure. Even moods, coordination, and memory are thought to be affected by circadian rhythms.

Broken Clocks?

Studies indicate that the cycle of darkness and light caused by Earth's rotation sets many of our biological clocks. When biological clocks get out of sync with the sun's 24-hour cycle because of long-distance travel or unusual work hours, problems may arise.

One problem is jet lag. Jet lag is the exhaustion, irritability, and insomnia that travelers suffer after a flight across several time zones. The human body may take days or weeks to reset its biological clock.

People living in areas near the poles can experience adverse effects of long periods of seasonal darkness. Extended periods of little sunlight can cause hormonal changes and mood disorders. Scientists are also beginning to understand how such mood and hormonal changes occur in people who work through the night and sleep during the day.

▲ Nocturnal animals are awake at night and sleep during the day. These animals have circadian rhythms opposite those of diurnal organisms, such as humans.

◀ Traveling over many time zones can interfere with natural patterns of sleep.

Extension

1. **Researching Information** When people travel to another time zone, their bodies stay synchronized with the cycle of the sun in the place that they left. Research ways in which travel affects circadian rhythms. Then, write a short brochure that explains how to reduce the effects of traveling across time zones.

Chapter 3

Models of the Earth

Sections

1 Finding Locations on Earth

2 Mapping Earth's Surface

3 Types of Maps

What You'll Learn

- How people determine location on Earth's surface
- How people make maps
- How various types of maps are used

Why It's Relevant

Maps help people navigate and find locations on Earth's surface. Maps also help scientists study changes in Earth's surface.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Three-Panel Flip Chart

Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Three-Panel Flip Chart" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the flaps of the three-panel flip chart with "Topographic maps," "Geologic maps," and "Other types of maps." As you read the chapter, write information you learn about each category under the appropriate flap.

▶ By using advanced technology, scientists can create highly accurate models of Earth. This image of India, taken from space, uses color to show the height of different land features and the depths of the ocean floor.

Section 1

Finding Locations on Earth

Earth is very nearly a perfect sphere. A sphere has no top, bottom, or sides to use as reference points for specifying locations on its surface. However, Earth's axis of rotation can be used to establish reference points. The points at which Earth's axis of rotation intersects Earth's surface are used as reference points for defining direction. These reference points are the geographic North and South Poles. Halfway between the poles, a circle called the *equator* divides Earth into the Northern and Southern Hemispheres. A reference grid that is made up of additioanl circles is used to locate places on Earth's surface.

OBJECTIVES

- **Distinguish** between latitude and longitude.
- **Explain** how latitude and longitude can be used to locate places on Earth's surface.
- **Explain** how a magnetic compass can be used to find directions on Earth's surface.

KEY TERMS

parallel
latitude
meridian
longitude

Latitude

One set of circles describes positions north and south of the equator. These circles are called **parallels** because they run east and west around the world parallel to the equator. The angular distance north or south of the equator is called **latitude.**

parallel any circle that runs east and west around Earth and that is parallel to the equator; a line of latitude

latitude the angular distance north or south from the equator; expressed in degrees

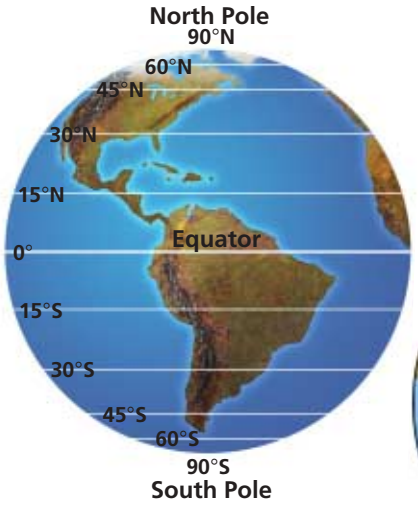
Degrees of Latitude

Latitude is measured in degrees, and the equator is designated as 0° latitude. Because the distance from the equator to either of the poles is one-fourth of a circle, and a circle has 360°, the latitude of both the North Pole and the South Pole is 1/4 of 360°, or 90°, as shown in **Figure 1.** In actual distance, 1° of latitude equals 1/360 of Earth's circumference, or about 111 km.

Parallels north of the equator are labeled *N*; those south of the equator are labeled *S*. In the Northern Hemisphere, Washington, D.C., is located near a parallel that is 39° north of the equator. So, the latitude of Washington, D.C., is 39°N. Sydney, Australia is in the Southern Hemisphere and has a latitude of 34°S.

Minutes and Seconds

Each degree of latitude consists of 60 equal parts, called *minutes*. One minute (symbol: ′) of latitude equals 1.85 km. A more precise latitude for Washington, D.C., is 38°53′N. In turn, each minute is divided into 60 equal parts, called *seconds* (symbol: ″). So, the precise latitude of the center of Washington, D.C., is expressed as 38°53′23″N.



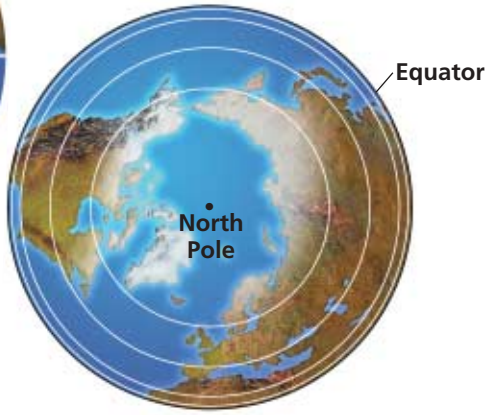


Figure 1 ▶ Parallels are circles that describe positions north and south of the equator. Each parallel forms a complete circle around the globe.

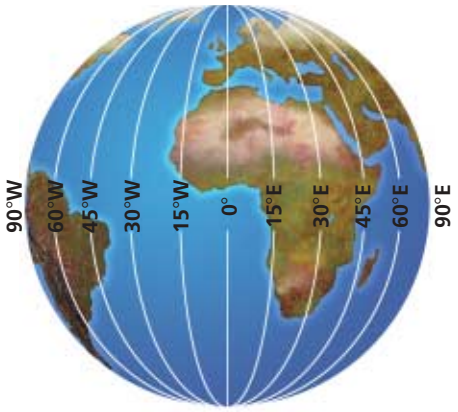


Figure 2 ▶ Meridians are semicircles reaching around Earth from pole to pole.

Longitude

The latitude of a particular place indicates only the place's position north or south of the equator. To determine the specific location of a place, you also need to know how far east or west that place is along its circle of latitude. East-west locations are established by using meridians. As **Figure 2** shows, a **meridian** is a semicircle (half of a circle) that runs from pole to pole.

By international agreement, one meridian was selected to be 0°. This meridian, called the *prime meridian,* passes through Greenwich, England. **Longitude** is the angular distance, measured in degrees, east or west of the prime meridian.

meridian any semicircle that runs north and south around Earth from the geographic North Pole to the geographic South Pole; a line of longitude

longitude the angular distance east or west from the prime meridian; expressed in degrees

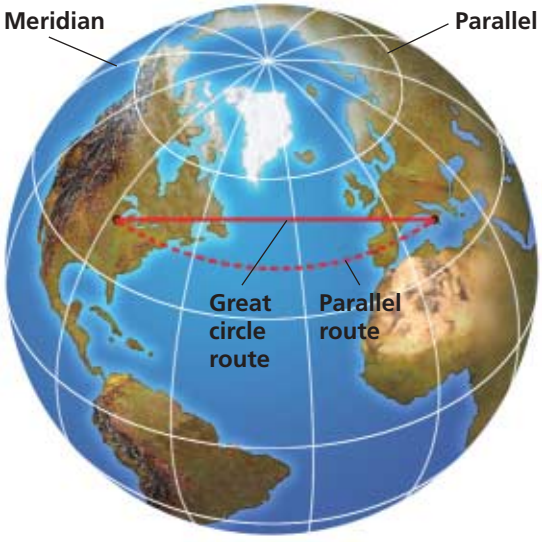
Degrees of Longitude

Because a circle is 360°, the meridian opposite the prime meridian, halfway around the world, is labeled 180°. All locations east of the prime meridian have longitudes between 0° and 180°E. All locations west of the prime meridian have longitudes between 0° and 180°W. Washington, D.C., which lies west of the prime meridian, has a longitude of 77°W. Like latitude, longitude can be expressed in degrees, minutes, and seconds. So, a more precise location for Washington, D.C., is 38°53′23″N, 77°00′33″W.

Distance Between Meridians

The distance covered by a degree of longitude depends on where the degree is measured. At the equator, or 0° latitude, a degree of longitude equals approximately 111 km. However, all meridians meet at the poles. Because meridians meet, the distance measured by a degree of longitude decreases as you move from the equator toward the poles. At a latitude of 60°N, for example, 1° of longitude equals about 55 km. At 80°N, 1° of longitude equals only about 20 km.

Figure 3 ▶ A great-circle route from Chicago to Rome is much shorter than a route following a parallel is.



Great Circles

A great circle is often used in navigation, especially by long-distance aircraft. A *great circle* is any circle that divides the globe into halves, or marks the circumference of the globe. Any circle formed by two meridians of longitude that are directly across the globe from each other is a great circle. The equator is the only line of latitude that is a great circle. Great circles can run in any direction around the globe. Just as a straight line is the shortest distance between two points on a flat surface or plane, the route along a great circle is the shortest distance between two points on a sphere, as shown in **Figure 3.** As a result, air and sea routes often travel along great circles.

Reading Check **Why is the equator the only parallel that is a great circle? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

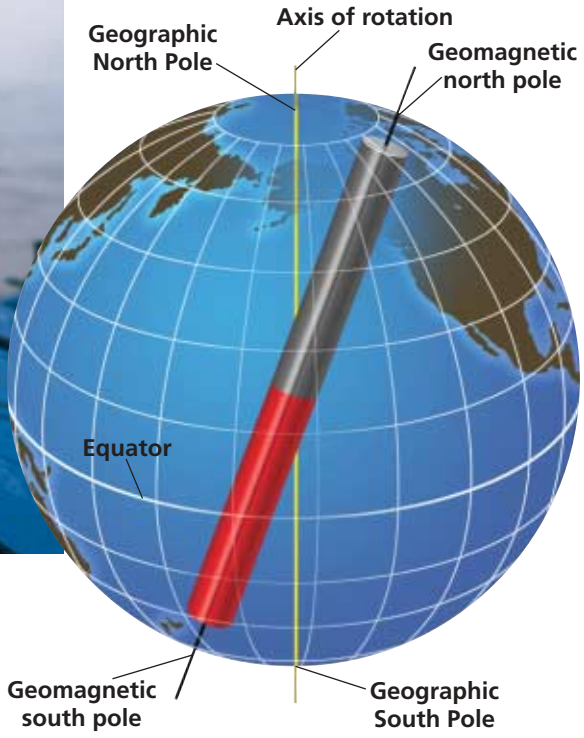


Figure 4 ▶ Earth's magnetic poles are at an angle to Earth's axis of rotation.

Finding Direction

One way to find direction on Earth is to use a magnetic compass. A magnetic compass can indicate direction because Earth has magnetic properties as if a powerful bar-shaped magnet were buried at Earth's center at an angle to Earth's axis of rotation, as shown in **Figure 4.**

The areas on Earth's surface just above where the poles of the imaginary magnet would be are called the *geomagnetic poles*. The geomagnetic poles and the geographic poles are located in different places. The needle of a compass points to the geomagnetic north pole.

Connection to **GEOGRAPHY**

The Prime Meridian and the International Date Line

Before 1884, most nations in the world designated an arbitrary meridian as the prime meridian for use on their land maps and nautical charts. Similarly, each country set its clocks by the meridian that it had designated as the prime meridian. Thus, each country had a different standard of time and of location. This situation made it difficult to coordinate travel and business activities.

In 1884, the International Meridian Conference met in Washington, D.C. Representatives from 25 nations came together to designate a single meridian as the prime meridian so that maps and times could be standardized around the globe. The meridian that runs through the Royal Observatory at Greenwich, England, was chosen as the prime meridian. The prime meridian marks 0° longitude.

The prime meridian runs through the Royal Observatory at Greenwich and is marked by the red line in this photo.

The designation of the Greenwich meridian as the standard prime meridian allowed an international time standard to be established. The meridian exactly opposite the prime meridian was designated as the International Date Line and marks the place where each new day officially begins at midnight. At that same moment, on the opposite side of Earth, the prime meridian marks noon of the previous day.

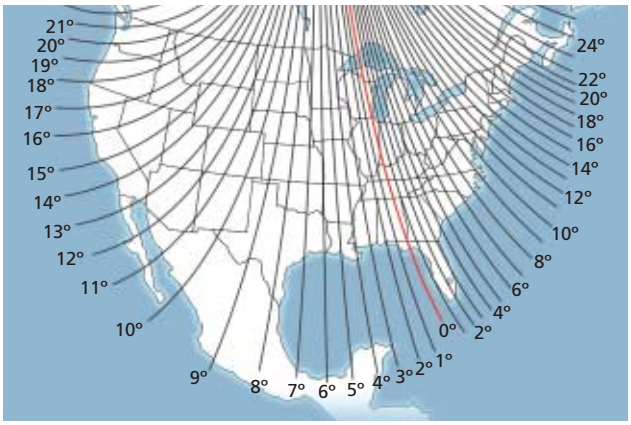


Figure 5 ▶ This map shows the magnetic declinations of the United States in 1995. The lines connect points that have the same magnetic declination.

Magnetic Declination

The angle between the direction of the geographic pole and the direction in which the compass needle points is called *magnetic declination*. In the Northern Hemisphere, magnetic declination is measured in degrees east or west of the geographic North Pole. A compass needle will align with both the geographic North Pole and the geomagnetic north pole for all locations along the line of 0° magnetic declination, which is shown as the red line in **Figure 5.**

Magnetic declination has been determined for points all over Earth. However, because Earth's magnetic field is constantly changing, the magnetic declinations of locations around the globe also change constantly. **Figure 5** shows the magnetic declinations for most of the United States in 1995. By using magnetic declination, a person can use a compass to determine geographic north for any place on Earth. Locating geographic north is important in navigation and in mapmaking.

The Global Positioning System

Another way people can find their location on Earth is by using the *global positioning system,* or *GPS*. GPS is a satellite navigation system that is based on a global network of 24 satellites that transmit radio signals to Earth's surface. The first GPS satellite, known as NAVSTAR, was launched in 1978.

A GPS receiver held by a person on the ground receives signals from three satellites to calculate the latitude, longitude, and altitude of the receiver on Earth. Personal GPS receivers are accurate to within 10 to 15 m of their position, but high-tech receivers designed for military or commercial use can be accurate to within several centimeters of their location.

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** the difference between lines of latitude and lines of longitude.
2. **Explain** how latitude and longitude are used to find specific locations on Earth.
3. **Summarize** why great-circle routes are commonly used in navigation.
4. **Explain** how a magnetic compass can be used to find directions on Earth.

CRITICAL THINKING

5. **Applying Concepts** How might GPS technology be beneficial when used in airplanes or on ships?
6. **Making Comparisons** How do parallels differ from latitude?
7. **Identifying Patterns** Explain why the distance between parallels is constant but the distance between meridians decreases as the meridians approach the poles.

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *equator, second, parallel, degree, Earth, minute, longitude, meridian, prime meridian,* and *latitude.*

Section 2 Mapping Earth's Surface

A globe is a familiar model of Earth. Because a globe is spherical like Earth, a globe can accurately represent the locations, relative areas, and relative shapes of Earth's surface features. A globe is especially useful in studying large surface features, such as continents and oceans. But most globes are too small to show details of Earth's surface, such as streams and highways. For that reason, a great variety of maps have been developed for studying and displaying detailed information about Earth.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** two ways that scientists get data to make maps.
- **Describe** the characteristics and uses of three types of map projections.
- **Summarize** how to use keys, legends, and scales to read maps.

KEY TERMS

remote sensing
map projection
legend
scale
isogram

How Scientists Make Maps

The science of making maps, called *cartography,* is a subfield of Earth science and geography. Scientists who make maps are called *cartographers*.

Cartographers use data from a variety of sources to create maps. They may collect data by conducting a field survey, shown in **Figure 1.** During a field survey, cartographers walk or drive through an area to be mapped and make measurements of that area. The information that they collect is then plotted on a map. Because surveyors cannot take measurements at every site in an area, they often use their measurements to make estimated measurements for sites between surveyed points.

By using remote sensing, cartographers can collect information about a site without being at that site. In **remote sensing,** equipment on satellites or airplanes obtain images of Earth's surface. Maps are often made by combining information from images gathered remotely with information from field surveys.

remote sensing the process of gathering and analyzing information about an object without physically being in touch with the object

Figure 1 ▶ Cartographers in the field use technology to enhance the precision of their measurements. Electronic devices can be used to measure the distance between an observer and a distant point with a high degree of accuracy.

QuickLAB 20 min

Making Projections

Procedure

1. Use a **fine-tip marker** to draw a variety of shapes on a **small glass ivy bowl** or **clear plastic hemisphere.**
2. Shine a **flashlight** through the bottom of the bowl.
3. Shape a **piece of white paper** into a cylinder around the bowl.
4. Trace the shapes projected from the bowl onto the paper.
5. Using a cone of paper, repeat steps 3 and 4.

Analysis

1. What type of projection did you create in steps 3 and 4? in step 5?
2. Compare the sizes of the shapes on the bowl with those on your papers. What areas did each projection distort?

Map Projections

A map is a flat representation of Earth's curved surface. However, transferring a curved surface to a flat map results in a distorted image of the curved surface. An area shown on a map may be distorted in size, shape, distance, or direction. The larger the area being shown is, the greater the distortion tends to be. A map of the entire Earth would show the greatest distortion. A map of a small area, such as a city, would show only slight distortion.

Over the years, cartographers have developed several ways to transfer the curved surface of Earth onto flat maps. A flat map that represents the three-dimensional curved surface of a globe is called a **map projection.** No projection is an entirely accurate representation of Earth's surface. However, each kind of projection has certain advantages and disadvantages that must be considered when choosing a map.

map projection a flat map that represents a spherical surface

Cylindrical Projections

Imagine Earth as a transparent sphere that has a light inside. If you wrapped a cylinder of paper around this lighted globe and traced the outlines of continents, oceans, parallels, and meridians, a *cylindrical projection,* shown in **Figure 2,** would result. Meridians on a cylindrical projection appear as straight, parallel lines that have an equal amount of space between them. On a globe, however, the meridians come together at the poles. A cylindrical projection is accurate near the equator but distorts distances and sizes near the poles.

Though distorted, cylindrical projections have some advantages. One advantage is that parallels and meridians form a grid, which makes locating positions easier. Also, the shapes of small areas are usually well preserved. When a cylindrical projection is used to map small areas, distortion is minimal.

Reading Check **Why do meridians and parallels appear as a grid when shown on a cylindrical projection? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

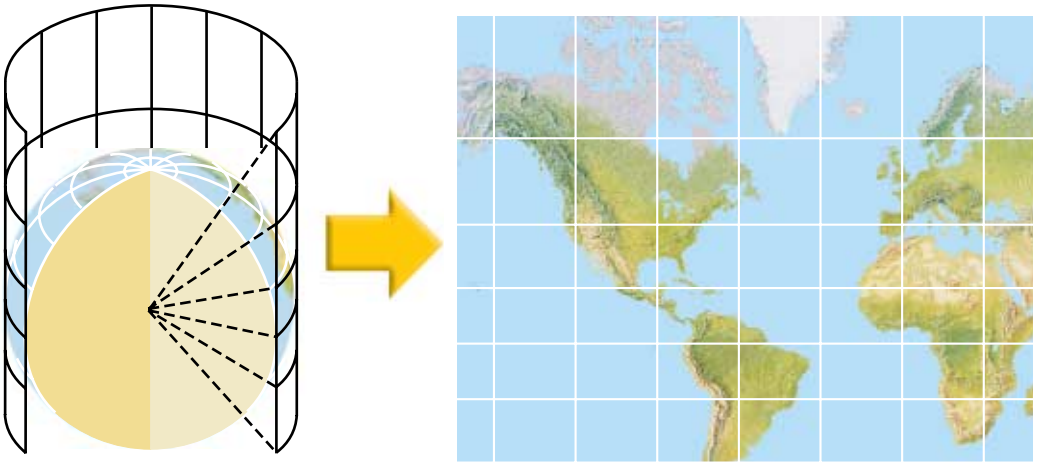


Figure 2 ▶ A light at the center of a transparent globe would project lines on a cylinder of paper (left), which would produce a cylindrical projection (right).

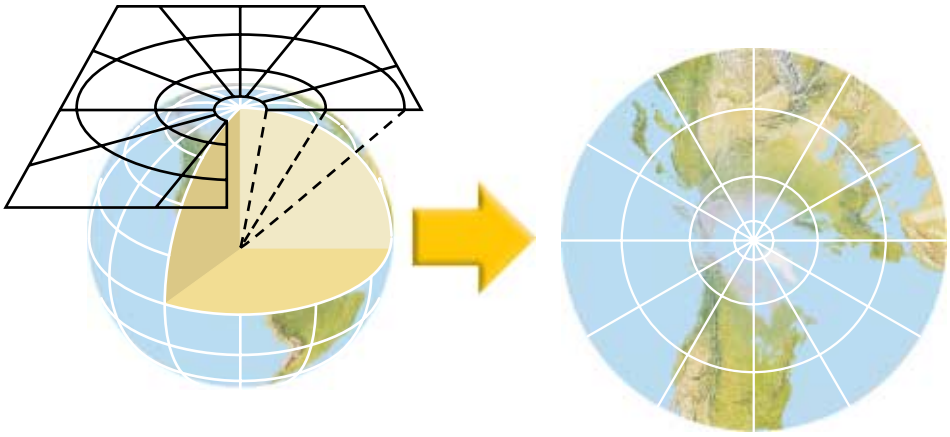


Figure 3 ▶ When a sheet of paper is placed so that it touches a lighted globe at only one point (left), the lines projected on the paper form an azimuthal projection (right).

Azimuthal Projections

A projection made by placing a sheet of paper against a transparent, lighted globe such that the paper touches the globe at only one point is called an *azimuthal* (AZ uh MYOOTH uhl) *projection*, as shown in **Figure 3.** On an azimuthal projection, little distortion occurs at the point of contact, which is commonly one of the poles. However, an azimuthal projection shows unequal spacing between parallels that causes a distortion in both direction and distance. This distortion increases as distance from the point of contact increases.

Despite distortion, an azimuthal projection is a great help to navigators in plotting routes used in air travel. As you know, a great circle is the shortest distance between any two points on the globe. When projected onto an azimuthal projection, a great circle appears as a straight line. Therefore, by drawing a straight line between any two points on an azimuthal projection, navigators can readily find a great-circle route.

Conic Projections

A projection made by placing a paper cone over a lighted globe so that the axis of the cone aligns with the axis of the globe is known as a *conic projection*. The cone touches the globe along one parallel of latitude. As shown in **Figure 4,** areas near the parallel where the cone and globe are in contact are distorted the least.

A series of conic projections may be used to increase accuracy by mapping a number of neighboring areas. Each cone touches the globe at a slightly different latitude. Fitting the adjoining areas together then produces a continuous map. Maps made in this way are called *polyconic projections*. The relative size and shape of small areas on the map are nearly the same as those on the globe.

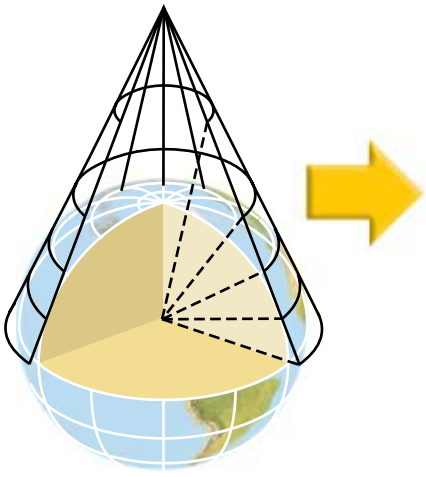
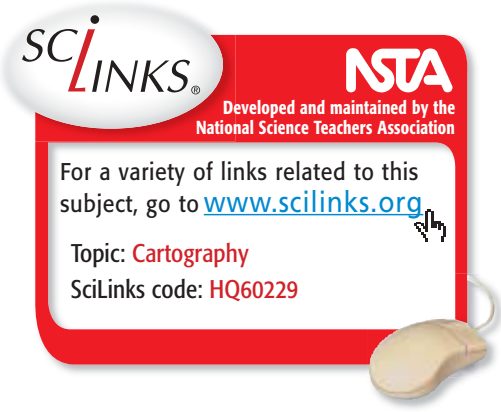


Figure 4 ▶ A light at the center of a transparent globe would project lines on a paper cone (left), which would produce a conic projection (right).

Reading a Map

Maps provide information through the use of symbols. To read a map, you must understand the symbols on the map and be able to find directions and calculate distances.



Direction on a Map

To correctly interpret a map, you must first determine how the compass directions are displayed on the map. Maps are commonly drawn with north at the top, east at the right, west at the left, and south at the bottom. Parallels run from side to side, and meridians run from top to bottom. Direction should always be determined in relation to the parallels and meridians.

On maps published by the United States Geological Survey (USGS), such as the one shown in **Figure 5,** north is located at the top of the map and is marked by a parallel. The southern boundary, at the bottom of a map, is also marked by a parallel. At least two additional parallels are usually drawn in or indicated by cross hairs at 2.5′ intervals. Meridians of longitude indicate the eastern and western boundaries of USGS maps. Additional meridians may also be shown. All parallels and meridians shown on these maps are labeled in degrees, minutes, and seconds.

Many maps also include a compass rose, as shown in **Figure 5.** A *compass rose* is a symbol that indicates the cardinal directions. The *cardinal directions* are north, east, south, and west. Some maps replace the compass rose with a single arrow that points north. This arrow is generally labeled and may not always point to the top of the map.

Figure 5 ▶ Maps may show locations by marking parallels and meridians. Direction is commonly shown with a compass rose (inset).

Figure 6 ▶ To be useful for estimating distance, a road map must include a map scale. Three types of map scales are shown on this legend. The map legend also explains the symbols used on this map. ***Which symbols in the map legend resemble the features that they represent?***

Symbols

Maps often have symbols for features such as cities and rivers. The symbols are explained in the map **legend**, a list of the symbols and their meanings, such as the one shown in **Figure 6.** Some symbols resemble the features that they represent. Others, such as those for towns and urban areas, are more abstract.

legend a list of map symbols and their meanings

scale the relationship between the distance shown on a map and the actual distance

Map Scales

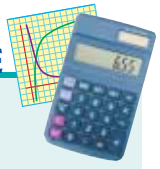
To be accurate, a map must be drawn to **scale.** The scale of a map indicates the relationship between distance shown on the map and actual distance. As **Figure 6** shows, a map scale can be expressed as a graphic scale, a fractional scale, or a verbal scale.

A *graphic scale* is a printed line that has markings on it that are similar to those on a ruler. The line represents a unit of measure, such as the kilometer or the mile. Each part of the scale represents a specific distance on Earth. To find the actual distance between two points on Earth, you first measure the distance between the points as shown on the map. Then, you compare that measurement with the map scale.

A second way of expressing scale is by using a ratio, or a *fractional scale*. For example, a fractional scale such as 1:25,000 indicates that 1 unit of distance on the map represents 25,000 of the same unit on Earth. A fractional scale remains the same with any system of measurement. In other words, the scale 1:100 could be read as 1 in. equals 100 in. or as 1 cm equals 100 cm.

A *verbal scale* expresses scale in sentence form. An example of a verbal scale is "One centimeter is equal to one kilometer." In this scale, 1 cm on the map represents 1 km on Earth.

Reading Check **Name three ways to express scale on a map. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**



MATHPRACTICE

Determining Distance

You notice that the scale on a map of the United States says, "One centimeter equals 120 kilometers." By measuring the straight-line distance between Brooklyn, New York, and Miami, Florida, you determine that the cities are about 14.5 cm apart on the map. What is the approximate distance in kilometers between the two cities?

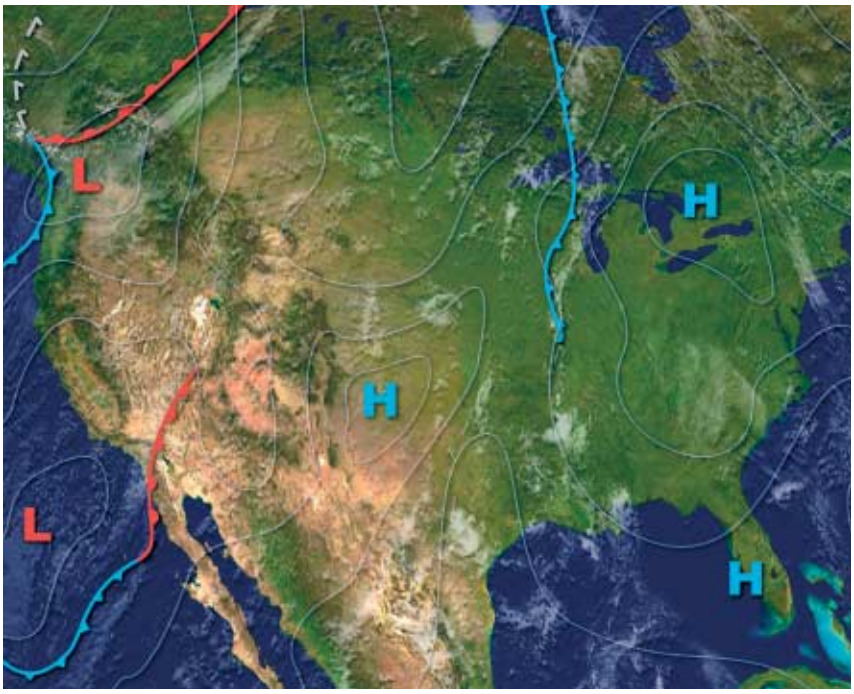


Figure 7 ▶ Areas connected by the isobars on the map share equal atmospheric pressure.

Isograms

A line on a map that represents a constant or equal value of a given quantity is an **isogram.** The prefix *iso-* is Greek for "equal." The second part of the word, *-gram,* means "drawing." This part of the word can be changed to describe the measurement being graphed. For example, when a line connects points of equal temperature, the line is called an *isotherm* because *iso-* means "equal" and *therm* means "heat." All locations along an isogram share the value that is being measured.

Isograms can be used to plot many types of data. Meteorologists use these lines to show changes in atmospheric pressure on weather maps. Isograms used in this manner on a weather map are called *isobars,* as shown in **Figure 7.** All points along an isobar share the same pressure value. Because one location cannot have two air pressures, isobars will never cross one another.

isogram a line on a map that represents a constant or equal value of a given quantity

Scientists can use isograms on a map to plot data that represents almost any type of measurement. Isograms are commonly used to show areas that have similar measurements of precipitation, temperature, gravity, magnetism, density, elevation, or chemical composition.

Section 2 Review

1. **Explain** two methods that scientists use to get the data needed to make maps.
2. **Describe** three types of map projections in terms of their different characteristics and uses.
3. **Explain** why all maps are in some way inaccurate representations.
4. **Summarize** how to use legends and scales to read maps.
5. **Describe** what isograms show
6. **Explain** why maps are more useful than globes are for studying small areas on the surface of Earth.
7. **Summarize** how to find directions on a map.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Applying Concepts** If a cartographer is making a map for three countries that do not use a common unit of measurement, what type of scale should the cartographer use on the map? Explain your answer.
9. **Making Inferences** Why would a conic projection produce a better map for exploring polar regions than a cylindrical projection would?

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *cartography, map projection, cylindrical projection, azimuthal projection, conic projection, map, legend, scale,* and *symbol.*

Section 3 Types of Maps

Earth scientists use a wide variety of maps that show many distinct characteristics of an area. Some of these characteristics include types of rocks, differences in air pressure, and varying depths of groundwater in a region. Scientists also use maps to show locations, elevations, and surface features of Earth.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how elevation and topography are shown on a map.
- **Describe** three types of information shown in geologic maps.
- **Identify** two uses of soil maps.

KEY TERMS

topography
elevation
contour line
relief

Topographic Maps

One of the most widely used maps is called a *topographic map*. Topographic maps show the surface features, or **topography,** of Earth. Most topographic maps show both natural features, such as rivers and hills, and constructed features, such as buildings and roads. Topographic maps are made by using both aerial photographs and survey points collected in the field. A topographic map shows the **elevation,** or height above sea level, of the land. Elevation is measured from *mean sea level,* the point midway between the highest and lowest tide levels of the ocean. The elevation at mean sea level is 0.

topography the size and shape of the land surface features of a region, including its relief

elevation the height of an object above sea level

Advantages of Topographic Maps

An aerial view of an island is shown in **Figure 1.** Although the drawing shows the shape of the island, it does not indicate the island's size or elevation. A typical map projection would show the island's size and shape but would not show the island's topography. A topographic map provides more detailed information about the surface of the island than either the drawing or a projection map does. The advantage of a topographic map is that it shows the island's size, shape, and elevation.

Figure 1 ▶ A drawing gives little information about the elevation of the island (left). In the topographic map (right), contour lines have been drawn to show elevation. An × marks the highest point on this map.

Figure 2 ▶ On a topographic map, the contour interval for this mountain would be very large because of the mountain's steep slope.

contour line a line that connects points of equal elevation on a map

relief the difference between the highest and lowest elevations in a given area

Elevation on Topographic Maps

On topographic maps, **contour lines** are used to show elevation. Each contour line is an isogram that connects points that have the same elevation. Because points at a given elevation are connected, the shape of the contour lines reflects the shape of the land.

The difference in elevation between one contour line and the next is called the *contour interval*. A cartographer chooses a contour interval suited to the scale of the map and the relief of the land. **Relief** is the difference in elevation between the highest and lowest points of the area being mapped. On maps of areas where the relief is high, such as the area shown in **Figure 2,** the contour interval may be as large as 50 or 100 m. Where the relief is low, the interval may be only 1 or 2 m.

To make reading the map easier, a cartographer makes every fifth contour line bolder than the four lines on each side of it. These bold lines, called *index contours,* are labeled by elevation. A point between two contour lines has an elevation between the elevations of the two lines. For example, if a point is halfway between the 50 and 100 m contour lines, its elevation is about 75 m. Exact elevations are marked by an × and are labeled.

QuickLAB 20 min

Topographic Maps

Procedure

1. Make a model mountain that is 6 to 8 cm high out of **modeling clay.** Work on a flat surface, and smooth out the mountain's shape. Make one side of the mountain slightly steeper than the other side.
2. Run a **paper clip** down one side of the model to form a valley that is several millimeters wide.
3. Place the model in the center of a **large waterproof container** that is at least 8 cm deep.
4. Use **tape** to hold a **ruler** upright in the container. One end of the ruler should rest on the bottom of the container. Make sure that the container is level.
5. Using the ruler as a guide, add **water** to the container to a depth of 1 cm. Use a **sharp pencil** to inscribe the clay by tracing around the model along the waterline.
6. Raise the water level 1 cm at a time until you reach the top of the model. Each time you add water to the container, inscribe another contour line in the clay along the waterline.

7. When you have finished, carefully drain the water and remove the model from the container.

Analysis

1. What is the contour interval of your model?
2. Observe your model from directly above. Try to duplicate the size and spacing of the contour lines on a sheet of paper to create a topographic map.
3. Compare the contour lines on a steep slope with those on a gentle slope. How do they differ?
4. How is a valley represented on your topographic map?

Figure 3 ▶ The features of the area's coastal valley are represented by contour lines on the topographic map of the area.

Landforms on Topographic Maps

As shown in **Figure 3,** the spacing and the direction of contour lines indicate the shapes of the landforms represented on a topographic map. Contour lines spaced widely apart indicate that the change in elevation is gradual and that the land is relatively level. Closely spaced contour lines indicate that the change in elevation is rapid and that the slope is steep.

A contour line that bends to form a V shape indicates a valley. The bend in the V points toward the higher end of the valley. If a stream or river flows through the valley, the V in the contour line will point upstream, the direction from which the water flows. A river always flows from higher to lower elevation. The width of the V formed by the contour line shows the width of the valley.

Contour lines that form closed loops indicate a hilltop or a depression. Generally, a depression is indicated by *depression contours,* which are closed-loop contour lines that have short, straight lines perpendicular to the inside of the loop. These short lines point toward the center of the depression.

Reading Check **Why do V-shaped contour lines along a river point upstream? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Topographic Map Symbols

Symbols are used to show certain features on topographic maps. Symbol color indicates the type of feature. For example, constructed features, such as buildings, boundaries, roads, and railroads, are generally shown in black. Major highways are shown in red. Bodies of water are shown in blue, and forested areas are shown in green. Contour lines are brown or black. Often, areas whose map information has been updated based on aerial photography but not verified by field exploration are shown in purple. A key to common topographic map symbols is shown in the Reference Tables section of the Appendix.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Topographic Maps
SciLinks code: HQ61536

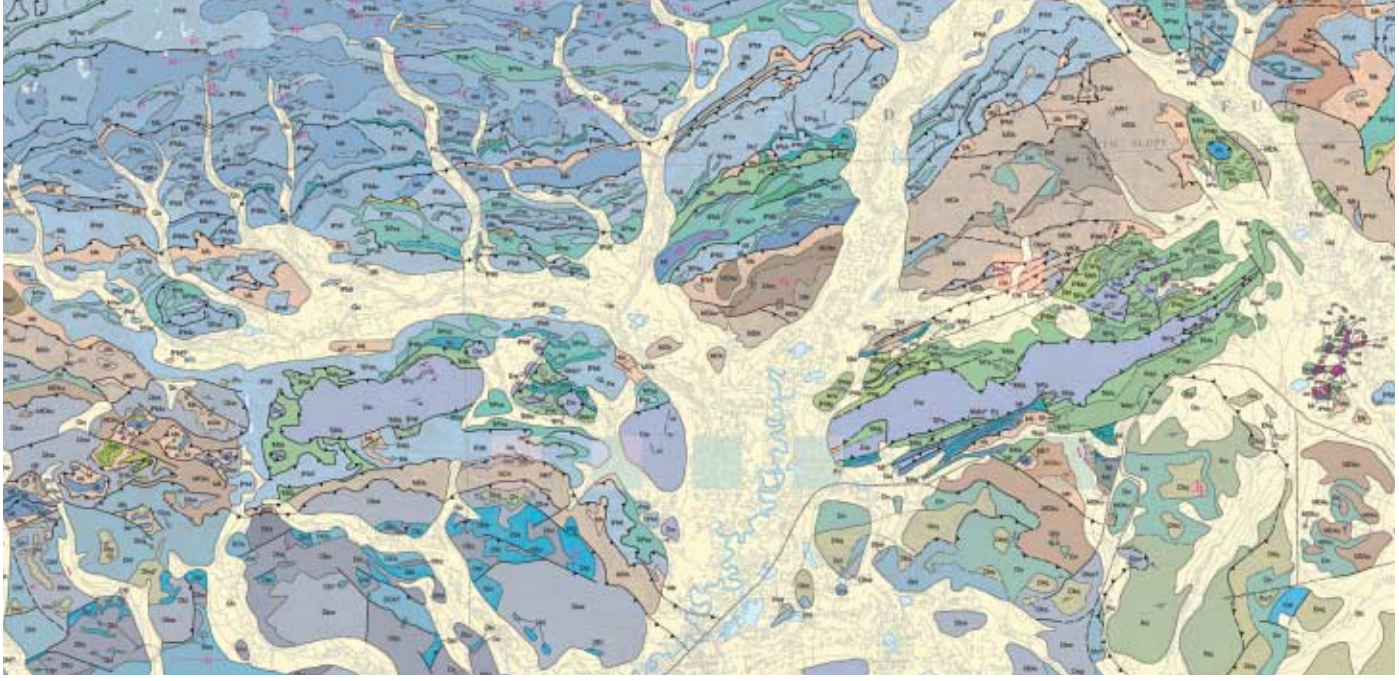


Figure 4 ▶ Each color on this geologic map represents a distinct type of rock and shows where in this region that type of rock occurs.

Geologic Maps

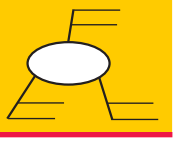
Geologic maps, such as the one shown in **Figure 4,** are designed to show the distribution of geologic features. In particular, geologic maps show the types of rocks found in a given area and the locations of faults, folds, and other structures.

Geologic maps are created on top of another map, called a *base map*. The base map provides surface features, such as topography or roads, to help identify the location of the geologic units. The base map is commonly printed in light colors or as gray lines so that the geologic information on the map is easy to read and understand.

Graphic Organizer

Spider Map

Create the **Graphic Organizer** entitled "Spider Map" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the circle "Types of maps." Create a leg for each type of map. Then, fill in the spider map with details about each type of map.



Rock Units on Geologic Maps

A volume of rock of a given age range and rock type is a *geologic unit*. On geologic maps, geologic units are distinguished by color. Units of similar ages are generally assigned colors in the same color family, such as different shades of blue. In addition to assigning a color, geologists assign a set of letters to each rock unit. This set of letters is commonly one capital letter followed by one or more lowercase letters. The capital letter symbolizes the age of the rock, usually by geologic period. The lowercase letters represent the name of the unit or the type of rock.

Other Structures on Geologic Maps

Other markings on geologic maps are contact lines. A *contact line* indicates places at which two geologic units meet, called *contacts*. The two main types of contacts are faults and depositional contacts. Depositional contacts show where one rock layer formed above another. Faults are cracks where rocks can move past each other. Also on geologic maps are strike and dip symbols for rock beds. *Strike* indicates the direction in which the beds run, and *dip* indicates the angle at which the beds tilt.

Soil Maps

Another type of map that is commonly used by Earth scientists is called a *soil map*. Scientists construct soil maps to classify, map, and describe soils. Soil maps are based on soil surveys that record information about the properties of soils in a given area. Soil surveys can be performed for a variety of areas, but they are most commonly performed for a county.

The government agency that is in charge of overseeing and compiling soil data is the Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS). The NRCS is part of the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA). The NRCS has been mapping the distribution of soils in the United States for more than a century.

Reading Check **Why do scientists create soil maps? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Soil Surveys

A soil survey consists of three main parts: text, maps, and tables. The text of soil surveys includes general information about the geology, topography, and climate of the area being mapped. The tables describe the types and volumes of soils in the area. Soil surveys generally include two types of soil maps. The first type is a very general map that shows the approximate location of different types of soil within the area, such as the one shown in **Figure 5.** The second type shows detailed information about soils in the area.

Uses of Soil Maps

Soil maps are valuable tools for agriculture and land management. Knowing the soil properties of an area helps farmers, agricultural engineers, and government agencies identify ways to conserve and use soil and to plan sites for future development.

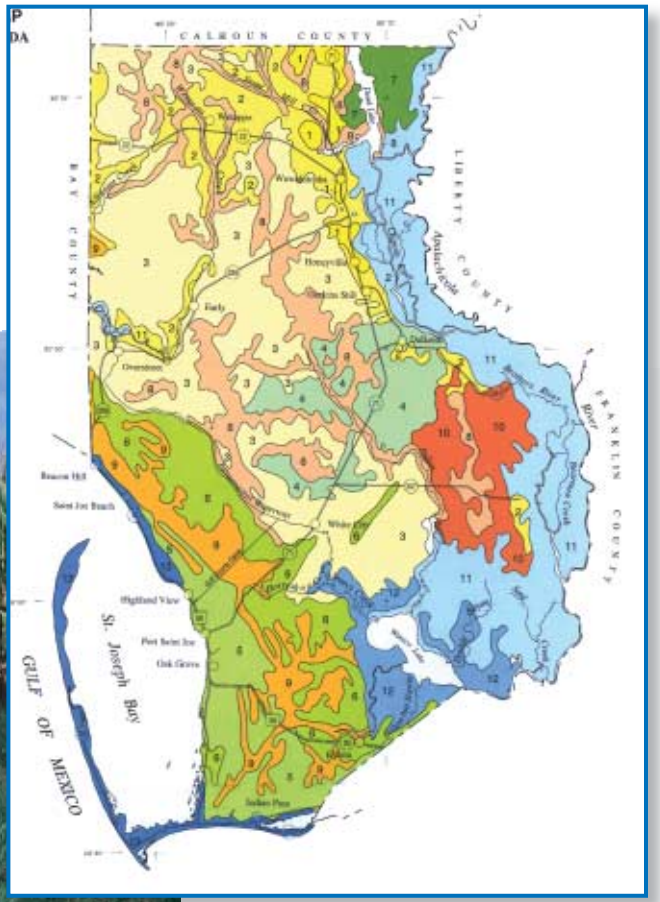


Figure 5 ▶ Scientists gather data to make a soil map by taking soil samples. Soil maps help scientists determine the potential abilities and limitations of the land to support development and agriculture.

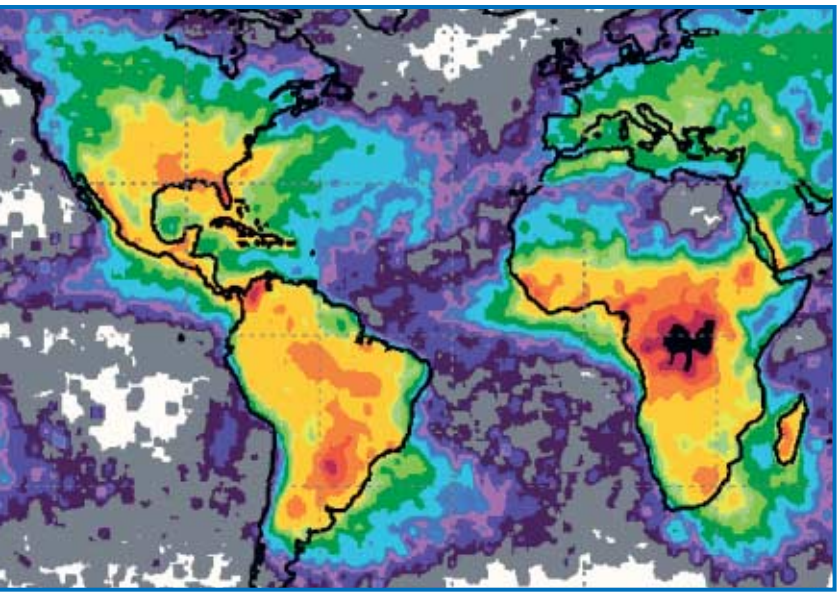


Figure 6 ▶ This map was created by using satellite data. The map shows the global distribution of lightning based on the average number of strikes per square kilometer. The highest frequency of strikes is shown in black, and the lowest frequency is shown in white.

Other Types of Maps

Earth scientists also use maps to show the location and flow of both water and air. These maps are commonly constructed by plotting data from various points around a region and then using isograms to connect the points whose data are identical.

Maps are useful to every branch of Earth science. For example, meteorologists use maps such as the one shown in **Figure 6** to record and predict weather events. Maps may be used to plot the amount of precipitation that falls in a given area. Maps are also used to show the locations of areas of high and low air pressure and the weather fronts that move across Earth's surface. These maps are updated constantly and are used by meteorologists to communicate to the public important information on daily weather conditions and emergency situations.

The location and direction of the flow of groundwater can be recorded on maps. Data from these maps can be used to determine where and when water shortages may occur. Scientists use map information to identify potential locations for power plants, waste disposal sites, and new communities.

Other types of Earth scientists use maps to study changes in Earth's surface over time. Such changes include changes in topography, changes in amounts of available resources, and changes in factors that affect climate. Maps generated by satellites are particularly useful for studying changes in Earth's surface.

Section 3 Review

1. **Explain** how elevation is shown on a topographic map.
2. **Define** *contour interval.*
3. **Summarize** how you can use information on a topographic map to compare the steepness of slopes on the map.
4. **Describe** how geologic units of similar ages are shown on a geologic map.
5. **Identify** the three main parts of a soil survey.
6. **Identify** two primary uses for soil maps.
7. **Identify** three types of maps other than topographic maps, geologic maps, or soil maps.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Applying Ideas** How can you use lines on a topographic map to identify the direction of river flow?
9. **Making Inferences** In what ways might topographic maps be more useful than simple map projections to someone who wants to hike in an area that he or she has never hiked in before?
10. **Identifying Patterns** What type of map would be the most useful to a scientist studying earthquake patterns: a geologic map or a topographic map?

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *topographic map, elevation, mean sea level, contour interval, contour line,* and *index contour.*

Chapter 3 Highlights

Sections

1 Finding Locations on Earth

Key Terms

parallel, 53
latitude, 53
meridian, 54
longitude, 54

Key Concepts

- Lines of latitude and lines of longitude form a system of intersecting circles that is used to locate places on Earth's surface.
- Parallels run east and west around Earth. Meridians run north and south from pole to pole.
- Because of Earth's magnetic field, a magnetic compass can be used to find directions on Earth's surface.

2 Mapping Earth's Surface

remote sensing, 57
map projection, 58
legend, 61
scale, 61
isogram, 62

- Three common types of map projections are cylindrical, azimuthal, and conic projections. Each type has certain advantages and disadvantages.
- A map scale is used to find distances on a map. A legend is a list of map symbols and their meanings.
- Lines called *isograms* may be used to connect areas on a map that have similar properties.

3 Types of Maps

topography, 63
elevation, 63
contour line, 64
relief, 64

- The spacing and direction of contour lines on a topographic map indicate the shapes of landforms.
- Geologic maps show the distribution of rock units and geologic structures in an area.
- Soil maps describe the types of soil located in an area.
- Earth scientists use maps to describe the movements of air and water and to study changes in Earth's surface over time.

Chapter 3 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *cartography*
2. *map projection*
3. *contour lines*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *parallel* and *latitude*
5. *meridian* and *longitude*
6. *legend* and *scale*
7. *topography* and *relief*
8. *index contour* and *contour interval*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. The distance in degrees east or west of the prime meridian is
   a. latitude.
   b. longitude.
   c. declination.
   d. projection.

10. The distance covered by a degree of longitude
    a. is 1/180 of Earth's circumference.
    b. is always equal to 11 km.
    c. increases as you approach the poles.
    d. decreases as you approach the poles.

11. The needle of a magnetic compass points toward the
    a. geomagnetic pole.
    b. geographic pole.
    c. parallels.
    d. meridians.

12. The shortest distance between any two points on the globe is along
    a. the equator.
    b. a line of latitude.
    c. the prime meridian.
    d. a great circle.

13. If 1 cm on a map equals 1 km on Earth, the fractional scale would be written as
    a. 1:1.
    b. 1:100.
    c. 1:100,000.
    d. 1:1,000,000.

14. On a topographic map, elevation is shown by means of
    a. great circles.
    b. contour lines.
    c. verbal scale.
    d. fractional scale.

15. What type of map is commonly used to locate faults and folds in beds of rock?
    a. geologic map
    b. topographic map
    c. soil map
    d. isogram map

16. The contour interval is a measurement of
    a. the change in elevation between two adjacent contour lines.
    b. the distance between mean sea level and any given contour line.
    c. the length of a contour line.
    d. the time needed to travel between any two contour lines.

Short Answer

17. How much distance on Earth's surface does one second of latitude equal?

18. What is the difference between latitude and longitude?

19. What are the three main types of map projections? How do they differ?

20. Compare the advantages and disadvantages of the three main types of map projections.

21. How do legends and scales help people interpret maps?

22. How do contour lines on a map illustrate topography?

Critical Thinking

23. Applying Ideas What is wrong with the following location: 135°N, 185°E?

24. Identifying Trends As you move from point A to point B in the Northern Hemisphere, the length of a degree of longitude progressively decreases. In which direction are you moving?

25. Understanding Relationships Imagine that you are at a location where the magnetic declination is 0°. Describe your position relative to magnetic north and true north.

26. Making Inferences You examine a topographic map on which the contour interval is 100 m. In general, what type of terrain is probably shown on the map?

27. Applying Ideas A topographic map shows two hiking trails. Along trail A, the contour lines are widely spaced. Along contour B, the contour lines are almost touching. Which path would probably be easier and safer to follow? Why?

Concept Mapping

28. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *latitude, longitude, relief, map projection, cylindrical projection, elevation, map, azimuthal projection, contour line, conic projection, topography, legend,* and *scale*.

Math Skills

29. Making Calculations A topographic map has a contour interval of 30 m. By how many meters would your elevation change if you crossed seven contour lines?

30. Applying Quantities A map has a fractional scale of 1:24,000. How many kilometers would 3 cm on the map represent?

31. Making Calculations A city to which you are traveling is located along the same meridian as your current position but is 11° of latitude to the north of your current position. About how far away is the city?

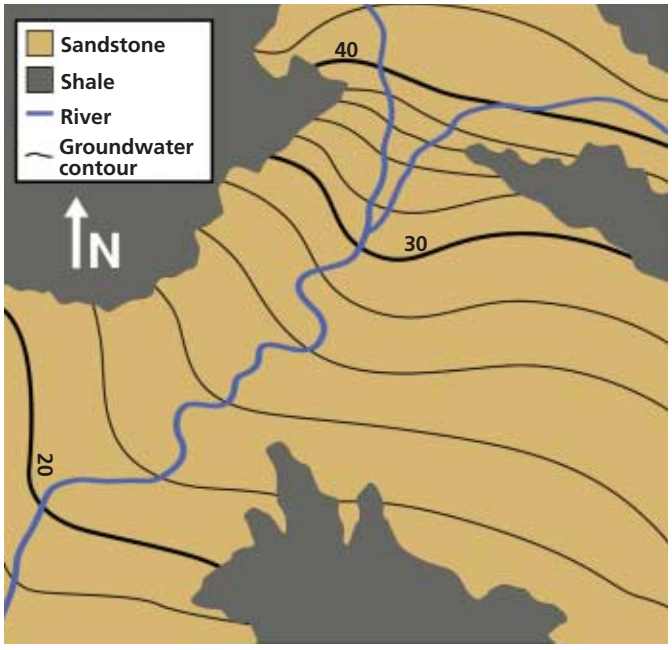
Writing Skills

32. Writing from Research Research the navigation instrument known as the *sextant*. Make a diagram explaining how the sextant can be used to determine latitude.

33. Writing from Research Use the Internet and library resources to research global positioning systems. Write a short essay describing the different ways that GPS devices are currently being used in everyday situations. Then, make a prediction about how the technology might be used in the future.

Interpreting Graphics

The map below shows contour lines of groundwater. The lines show elevation of the water table in meters above sea level. Use the map to answer the questions that follow.



34. What is the contour interval for this map?

35. What is the highest measured level of the water table?

36. Groundwater flows from highest to lowest elevation. In which direction is the groundwater flowing?

Chapter 3 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 How can you determine whether the contours on a topographic map show a gradual slope?
A. Look for V-shaped contour lines.
B. Look for widely spaced contour lines.
C. Look for short, straight lines inside the loop.
D. Look for tightly spaced, circular contour lines.

2 How far apart would two successive index contours be on a map with a contour interval of 5 meters?
F. 5 meters
G. 10 meters
H. 20 meters
I. 25 meters.

3 What part of a road map would you use in order to measure the distance from your current location to your destination?
A. latitude lines
B. map scale
C. longitude lines
D. map legend

4 Meteorologist use isobars on a weather map in order to
F. show changes in atmospheric air pressure
G. connect points of equal temperature
H. plot local precipitation data
I. show elevation above or below sea level

5 What is the angular distance, measured in degrees, east or west of the prime meridian?
A. latitude
B. longitude
C. isogram
D. relief

Directions (6–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 At what location on Earth does each new day begin at midnight?

7 What is the latitude of the North Pole?

Reading Skills

Directions (9–11): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Map Projections

Earth is a sphere, and thus its surface is curved. When a curved surface is transferred to a flat map, distortions in size, shape, distance, and direction occur. To limit these distortions, cartographers have developed many ways of transferring a three-dimensional curved surface to a flat map. On Mercator projections, meridians and parallels appear as straight lines. These lines cross each other at 90° angles and form a gird. On gnomonic projections, there is little distortion at one contact point on the map, which is often one of the poles. But distortion in direction and distance increases as distance from the point of contact increases. On conic projections, the map is accurate along one parallel of latitude. Areas near this parallel are distorted the least. However, none of these maps is an entirely accurate representation of Earth's surface.

9 Which of the following appears as a straight line on a gnomonic projection, where the point of contact is the North Pole?
A. great circles
B. parallels
C. the equator
D. coastlines

10 Which of the following statements about Mercator projections is true?
F. Because latitude and longitude form a grid, plotting great circles can be done by using a straight-edged ruler.
G. Because latitude and longitude form a grid, finding specific locations is easy on a Mercator map projection.
H. Mercator maps often show the greatest distortion where the projection touched the globe.
I. Mercator maps often show polar regions as being much smaller than they actually are.

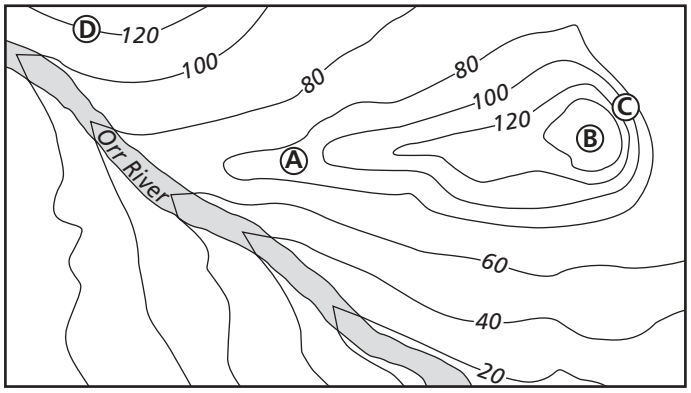
11 Why does each map described display some sort of distortion?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (12–15): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

Use the topographic map below to answer questions 12 and 13.

Topographic Map of the Orr River



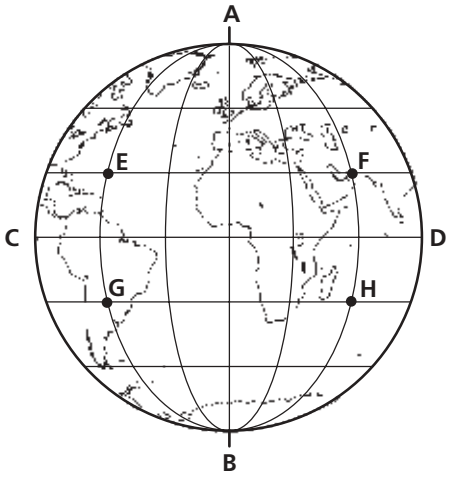
12 What location on the map has the steepest gradient?

A. location A
B. location B
C. location C
D. location D

13 In which direction is the river in the topographic map flowing? What information on the map helped you determine your answer?

The diagram below shows Earth's system of latitude and longitude lines. Lines are shown in 30° increments. Use this diagram to answer questions 14 and 15.

Latitude and Longitude



14 Which point is located at 30°N 60°E?

F. point E
G. point F
H. point G
I. point H

15 The distance between two lines of parallel that are 1° apart is about 111 km. What is the approximate distance between points G and E?

Test TIP

Choose an answer to a question based on both what you already know as well as any information presented in the question.

Chapter 3

Making Models Lab

Objectives

- **Build** a scale model based on a map.
- **Identify** contour intervals and landscape features based on a map.

Materials

- basin, flat (or large pan), 8 cm deep
- clay, modeling (4 lb)
- dowel, thick wooden (or rolling pin)
- knife, plastic
- paper, white
- pencil
- ruler, metric
- scissors
- topographic map from Reference Tables section of the Appendix
- water

Safety

Contour Maps: Island Construction

A map is a drawing that shows a simplified version of some detail of Earth's surface. There are many types of maps. Each type has its own special features and purpose. One of the most useful types of maps is the topographic map, or contour map. This type of map shows elevation and other important features of the landscape. Scientists make a contour map by using data obtained from a careful survey and photographic study of the area that the map represents.

PROCEDURE

1. Study the topographic map in the Reference Tables section of the Appendix. Record the contour interval used on the island contour map. Then, count the number of contour lines that appear on the map.
2. Use the dowel to press out as many flat pieces of clay as there were contour lines counted in Step 1. Each piece of clay should be 1 cm thick and large enough to cover the island shown on the map.
3. On a blank sheet of paper, trace the island contour map. Cut out the island from your copy of the contour map along the outermost contour line.

Step 2

4. Place this cutout on top of one of the pieces of clay. Trace the edge of the cutout in the clay. Cut the piece of clay to match the shape of the island.
5. Cut the paper tracing along the next contour line, making sure not to damage the outer ring of paper as you cut.
6. Using the new paper shape and a new layer of clay, repeat Step 4.
7. Place the paper ring from the first cut on the first clay shape that you cut out so that the outer edges of the paper ring line up with the edges of the clay. Stack the second layer of clay on the first layer so that the second layer fits inside the paper contour ring. This gives you the same contour spacing as shown on the map. Remove the paper ring.
8. Continue Steps 4–7 for each of the contour layers.
9. Use leftover clay to smooth the terraced edges into a more natural profile.
10. Make a mark inside a pan approximately 1 cm down from the rim. Put the clay model of the island into the pan, and add water to a depth of 1 cm.
11. Compare the shoreline of the model with the lines on the contour map. Continue to add water at 1 cm intervals until the water reaches the mark on the pan.

Step 5

Step 6

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

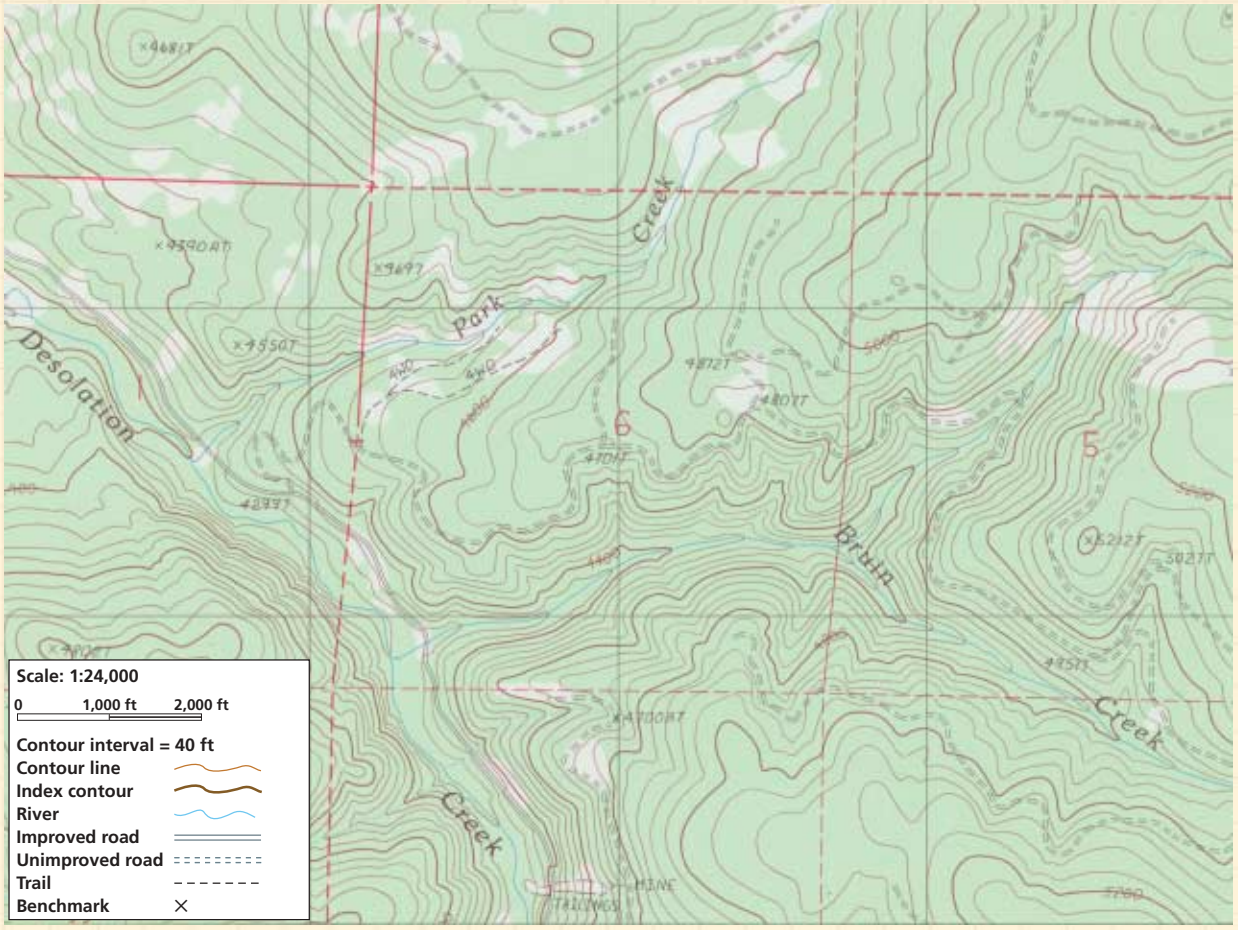
1. **Making Inferences** What is the contour interval of your map?
2. **Understanding Relationships** How could you tell the steepest slope from the gentlest slope by observing the spacing of the contour lines?
3. **Analyzing Data** What is the elevation above sea level for the highest point of your model?
4. **Applying Ideas** How do you know if your model contains any areas that are below sea level? If there are any such areas, where are they and what are their elevations?
5. **Evaluating Models** What landscape feature is located at point C on your model, as indicated on the original map? What is the elevation of point B on your model?

Extension

1. **Making Predictions** From observations of your model, what conclusions can you make about where people might live on this island? Explain your answer.

MAPS in Action

Topographic Map of the Desolation Watershed



Map Skills Activity

This map, produced by the United States Geological Survey (USGS), shows the topography of the area around the Desolation watershed located in eastern Oregon. Note that the USGS always uses English units, not metric units, when measuring distance. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using a Key** What is the distance between the location on the northwest corner of the map labeled "4681T" and the location on the eastern side of the map labeled "5212T"?

2. **Analyzing Data** In what direction does Park Creek flow? How are you able to determine this information by looking at the map?

3. **Making Comparisons** Which area has the steeper slopes: the area around Park Creek or the area around Bruin Creek? How are you able to determine this information by looking at the map?

4. **Inferring Relationships** What is the elevation of the contour line that circles the point 4550T, located on the northwest portion of the map?

5. **Identifying Trends** Desolation Creek, Park Creek, and Bruin Creek enter the map from different geographic directions. Use the information on the map to determine what these creeks have in common in terms of their direction of flow.

6. **Analyzing Relationships** What is the total change in elevation between two index contours?

Mapping Life on Earth

In 1992, researchers working in a forest in Southeast Asia made some amazing discoveries. They identified two species of deer and a species of oxen that scientists had never seen before! The researchers reported their findings and made plans for further study. Unfortunately, the forest was being cut down at an incredibly fast rate. Luckily, citizens, other scientists, and politicians got involved in trying to protect forests. Thanks to their efforts, Vietnam and Laos have begun measures to protect the remaining forests in the region.

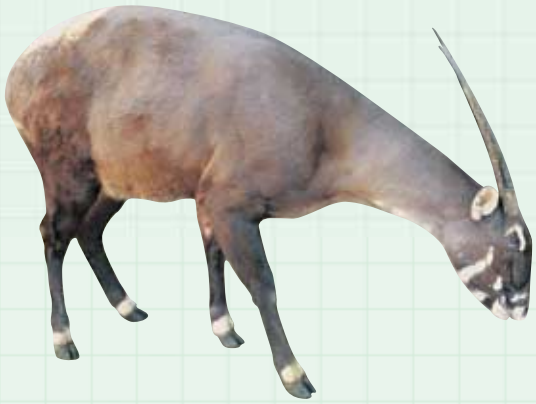
Why All the Fuss?

The biosphere, which includes only a thin slice of Earth and its atmosphere, is the area where all life on our planet exists. For every known species, scientists estimate that there are at least eight others (mostly insects and microorganisms) that have never been identified. As forests and other natural areas are destroyed, many of these unknown species are becoming extinct.

Help from Above

Given the amount of the biosphere that has never been thoroughly studied, how do scientists identify ecosystems that are endangered? Using satellite images, scientists can identify the makeup and size of Earth's remaining unexplored natural areas. Scientists can also conduct ground surveys. By pooling their data, they can create a biodiversity map.

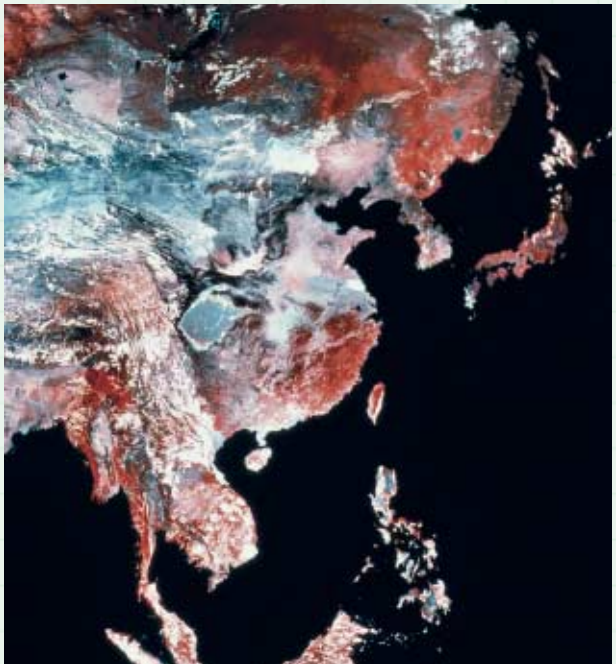
Biodiversity is the term used to describe the range of different organisms that live in an area. In locations that have a very high biodiversity, the variety of organisms living in a small area is large. Biodiversity maps often use color to show which parts of a region have the highest biodiversity.



▲ Before 1992, scientists had never seen the Vu Quang Ox.

Short-Term Success Story

Making and using biodiversity maps has already proven successful. In Jamaica, for example, such maps helped identify areas that may benefit from being turned into national parks. The maps also highlighted some offshore areas of high biodiversity, and officials were able to close some of these areas to fishing.



◀ This satellite image of southeast Asia shows various densities of vegetation. The redder an area is, the denser the vegetation in that area is.

Extension

1. **Making Comparisons** How does creating a biodiversity map differ from creating a topographic map? Could you create a biodiversity map that is also topographic? Explain your answer.

Unit 2

COMPOSITION OF THE EARTH

Unit 2 Outline

CHAPTER 4
Earth Chemistry

CHAPTER 5
Minerals of Earth's Crust

CHAPTER 6
Rocks

CHAPTER 7
Resources and Energy

▶ The Fly Geysers of the Black Rock Desert in Nevada are surrounded by a pool of water in which many different types of minerals are dissolved. Hot, mineral-rich water periodically erupts from springs deep within Earth to create these formations.

Chapter 4

Earth Chemistry

Sections

1 Matter
2 Combinations of Atoms

What You'll Learn

- How chemical structure affects physical and chemical properties of substances
- How elements combine to form compounds

Why It's Relevant

Understanding the chemical structure of substances will help you to understand the properties of the different materials that make up Earth.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Double Door Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Double Door" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Write "Element" on one flap of the double door and "Compound" on the other flap. As you read the chapter, compare the two topics, and write characteristics of each on the inside of the appropriate flap.

▶ New Zealand's Champagne Pool is a geothermal pool that has a temperature of 74°C! Its water contains dissolved elements such as gold, silver, mercury, sulfur, antimony, and arsenic.

Section 1 Matter

Every object in the universe is made of particles of some kind of substance. Scientists use the word *matter* to describe the substances of which objects are made. **Matter** is anything that takes up space and has mass. The amount of matter in any object is the *mass* of that object. All matter has observable and measurable properties. Scientists can observe the properties of a substance to identify the kind of matter that makes up that substance.

OBJECTIVES

- **Compare** chemical properties and physical properties of matter.
- **Describe** the basic structure of an atom.
- **Compare** atomic number, mass number, and atomic mass.
- **Define** *isotope*.
- **Describe** the arrangement of elements in the periodic table.

KEY TERMS

matter
element
atom
proton
electron
neutron
isotope

Properties of Matter

All matter has two types of distinguishing properties—physical properties and chemical properties. *Physical properties* are characteristics that can be observed without changing the composition of the substance. For example, physical properties include density, color, hardness, freezing point, boiling point, and the ability to conduct an electric current.

Chemical properties are characteristics that describe how a substance reacts with other substances to produce different substances. For example, a chemical property of iron is that iron reacts with oxygen to form rust. A chemical property of helium is that helium does not react with other substances to form new substances. Understanding the chemical properties of a substance requires knowing some basic information about the particles that make up all substances.

matter anything that has mass and takes up space

element a substance that cannot be separated or broken down into simpler substances by chemical means; all atoms of an element have the same atomic number

Elements

An **element** is a substance that cannot be broken down into simpler, stable substances by chemical means. Each element has a characteristic set of physical and chemical properties that can be used to identify it. **Figure 1** shows the most common elements in Earth's continental crust. More than 90 elements occur naturally on Earth. About two dozen other elements have been created in laboratories. Of the natural elements, eight make up more than 98% of Earth's crust. Every known element is represented by a symbol of one or two letters.

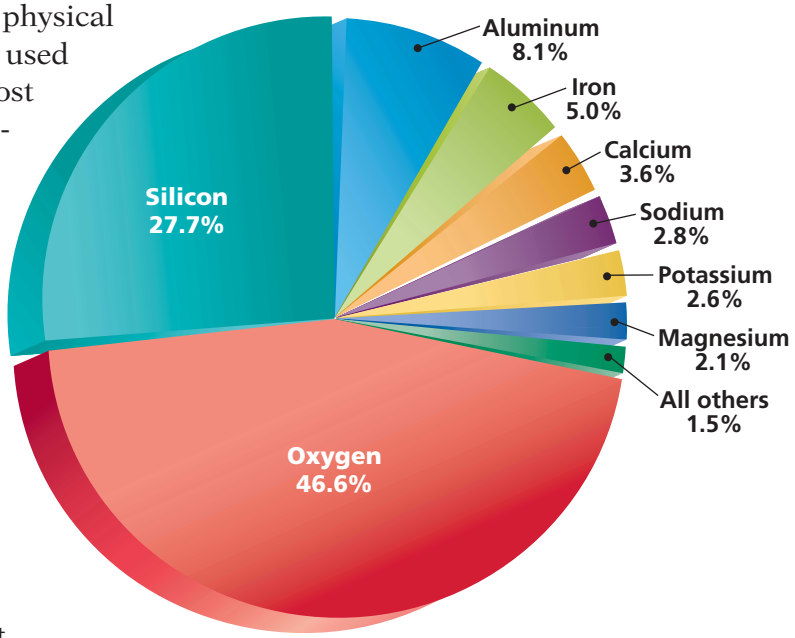


Figure 1 ▶ This graph shows the percentage of total mass that each common element makes up in Earth's continental crust.

Graphic Organizer

Comparison Table

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Comparison Table" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns with "Electron," "Proton," and "Neutron." Label the rows with "Charge" and "Location." Then, fill in the table with details about the charge and location of each subatomic particle.

Atoms

Elements consist of atoms. An **atom** is the smallest unit of an element that has the chemical properties of that element. Atoms cannot be broken down into smaller particles that will have the same chemical and physical properties as the atom. A single atom is so small that its size is difficult to imagine. To get an idea of how small it is, look at the thickness of this page. More than a million atoms lined up side by side would be equal to that thickness.

Atomic Structure

Even though atoms are very tiny, they are made up of smaller parts called *subatomic particles*. The three major kinds of subatomic particles are protons, electrons, and neutrons. **Protons** are subatomic particles that have a positive charge. **Electrons** are subatomic particles that have a negative charge. **Neutrons** are subatomic particles that have no charge.

atom the smallest unit of an element that maintains the chemical properties of that element

proton a subatomic particle that has a positive charge and that is located in the nucleus of an atom; the number of protons of the nucleus is the atomic number, which determines the identity of an element

electron a subatomic particle that has a negative charge

neutron a subatomic particle that has no charge and that is located in the nucleus of an atom

The Nucleus

As shown in **Figure 2,** the protons and neutrons of an atom are packed close to one another. Together they form the *nucleus*, which is a small region in the center of an atom. The nucleus has a positive charge because protons have a positive charge and neutrons have no charge.

The nucleus makes up most of an atom's mass but very little of an atom's volume. If an atom's nucleus were the size of a gumdrop, the atom itself would be as big as a football stadium. Because electrons are even smaller than protons and neutrons, the volume of an atom is mostly empty space.

The Electron Cloud

The electrons of an atom move in a certain region of space called an *electron cloud* that surrounds the nucleus. Because opposite charges attract each other, the negatively charged electrons are attracted to the positively charged nucleus. This attraction is what holds electrons in the atom.

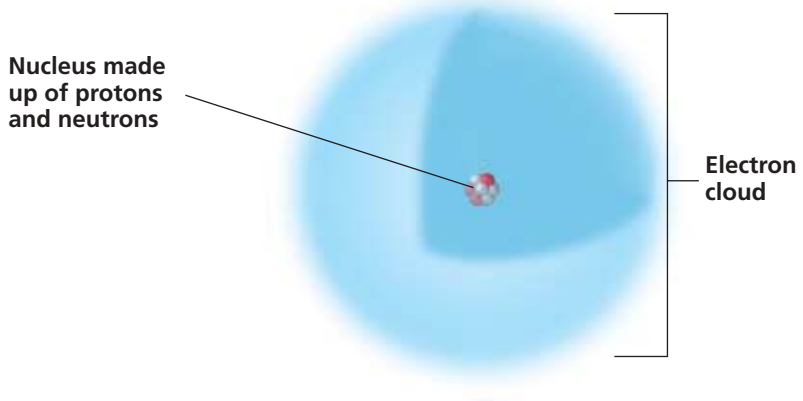


Figure 2 ▶ The nucleus of the atom is made up of protons and neutrons. The protons give the nucleus a positive charge. The negatively charged electrons are in the electron cloud that surrounds the nucleus.

Hydrogen
1 proton
1 electron
0 neutrons
Atomic number 1
Mass number 1

Helium
2 protons
2 electrons
2 neutrons
Atomic number 2
Mass number 4

Lithium
3 protons
3 electrons
4 neutrons
Atomic number 3
Mass number 7

Figure 3 ▶ Hydrogen, helium, and lithium are different elements because their atoms have different atomic numbers, or different numbers of protons.

Atomic Number

The number of protons in the nucleus of an atom is called the *atomic number*. All atoms of any given element have the same atomic number. An element's atomic number sets the atoms of that element apart from the atoms of all other kinds of elements, as shown in **Figure 3.** Because an uncharged atom has an equal number of protons and electrons, the atomic number is also equal to the number of electrons in an atom of any given element.

Elements on the periodic table are ordered according to their atomic numbers. The *periodic table,* shown on the following pages, is a system for classifying elements. Elements in the same column on the periodic table have similar arrangements of electrons in their atoms. Elements that have similar arrangements of electrons have similar chemical properties.

Atomic Mass

The sum of the number of protons and neutrons in an atom is the *mass number*. The mass of a subatomic particle is too small to be expressed easily in grams. So, a special unit called the *atomic mass unit* (amu) is used. Protons and neutrons each have an atomic mass that is close to 1 amu. In contrast, electrons have much less mass than protons and neutrons do. The mass of 1 proton is equal to the combined mass of about 1,840 electrons. Because electrons add little to an atom's total mass, their mass can be ignored when calculating an atom's approximate mass.

Reading Check **What is the difference between atomic number, mass number, and atomic mass unit? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Isotopes

Although all atoms of a given element contain the same number of protons, the number of neutrons may differ. For example, while most helium atoms have two neutrons, some helium atoms have only one neutron. An atom that has the same number of protons (or the same atomic number) as other atoms of the same element do but has a different number of neutrons (and thus a different atomic mass) is called an **isotope** (IE suh TOHP).

A helium atom that has two neutrons is more massive than a helium atom that has only one neutron. Because of their different number of neutrons and their different masses, different isotopes of the same element have slightly different properties.

QuickLAB 10 min

Using the Periodic Table

Procedure

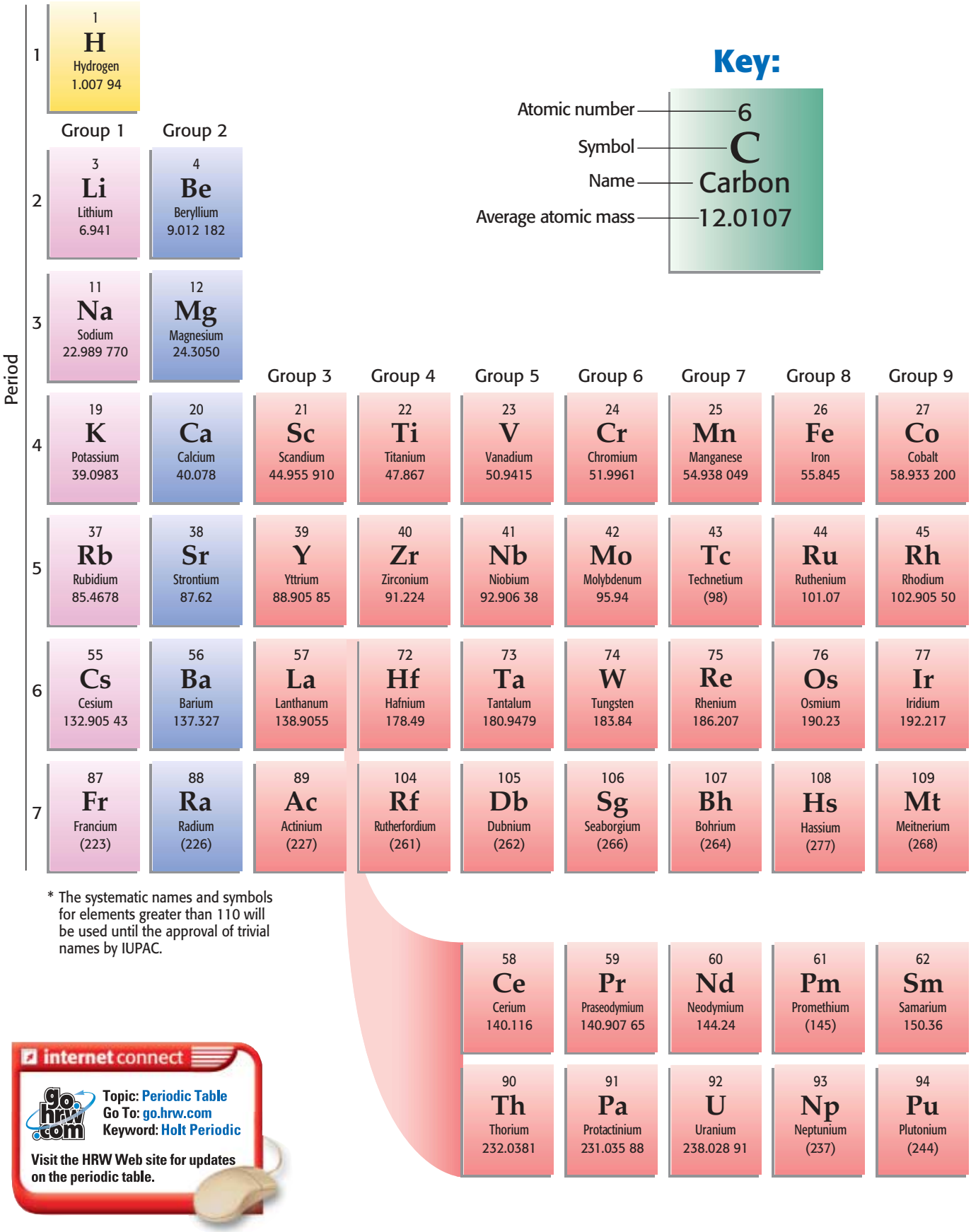
1. Use the periodic table to find the atomic numbers of the following elements: carbon, iron, molybdenum, and iodine.
2. Determine the number of protons and electrons that are in each neutral atom of the elements listed in step 1.
3. Find the average atomic masses of the elements listed in step 1.

Analysis

1. Use the atomic number and average atomic mass of each element to estimate the average number of neutrons in each atom of the elements listed in step 1 of this activity.
2. Which element has the largest difference between its average number of neutrons and the number of protons? Describe any trends that you observe.

isotope an atom that has the same number of protons (or the same atomic number) as the other atoms of the same element do but that has a different number of neutrons (and thus a different atomic mass)

The Periodic Table of Elements



* The systematic names and symbols for elements greater than 110 will be used until the approval of trivial names by IUPAC.

internet connect

Topic: Periodic Table
Go To: go.hrw.com
Keyword: Holt Periodic

Visit the HRW Web site for updates on the periodic table.

- Hydrogen
- Semiconductors (also known as *metalloids*)

Metals
- Alkali metals
- Alkaline-earth metals
- Transition metals
- Other metals

Nonmetals
- Halogens
- Noble gases
- Other nonmetals

Group 10	Group 11	Group 12	Group 13	Group 14	Group 15	Group 16	Group 17	Group 18
								2 **He** Helium 4.002 602
			5 **B** Boron 10.811	6 **C** Carbon 12.0107	7 **N** Nitrogen 14.0067	8 **O** Oxygen 15.9994	9 **F** Fluorine 18.998 4032	10 **Ne** Neon 20.1797
			13 **Al** Aluminum 26.981 538	14 **Si** Silicon 28.0855	15 **P** Phosphorus 30.973 761	16 **S** Sulfur 32.065	17 **Cl** Chlorine 35.453	18 **Ar** Argon 39.948
28 **Ni** Nickel 58.6934	29 **Cu** Copper 63.546	30 **Zn** Zinc 65.409	31 **Ga** Gallium 69.723	32 **Ge** Germanium 72.64	33 **As** Arsenic 74.921 60	34 **Se** Selenium 78.96	35 **Br** Bromine 79.904	36 **Kr** Krypton 83.798
46 **Pd** Palladium 106.42	47 **Ag** Silver 107.8682	48 **Cd** Cadmium 112.411	49 **In** Indium 114.818	50 **Sn** Tin 118.710	51 **Sb** Antimony 121.760	52 **Te** Tellurium 127.60	53 **I** Iodine 126.904 47	54 **Xe** Xenon 131.293
78 **Pt** Platinum 195.078	79 **Au** Gold 196.966 55	80 **Hg** Mercury 200.59	81 **Tl** Thallium 204.3833	82 **Pb** Lead 207.2	83 **Bi** Bismuth 208.980 38	84 **Po** Polonium (209)	85 **At** Astatine (210)	86 **Rn** Radon (222)
110 **Ds** Darmstadtium (281)	111 **Uuu*** Unununium (272)	112 **Uub*** Ununbium (285)	113 **Uut*** Ununtrium (284)	114 **Uuq*** Ununquadium (289)	115 **Uup*** Ununpentium (288)			

A team at Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratories reported the discovery of elements 116 and 118 in June 1999. The same team retracted the discovery in July 2001. The discovery of elements 113, 114, and 115 has been reported but not confirmed.

63 **Eu** Europium 151.964	64 **Gd** Gadolinium 157.25	65 **Tb** Terbium 158.925 34	66 **Dy** Dysprosium 162.500	67 **Ho** Holmium 164.930 32	68 **Er** Erbium 167.259	69 **Tm** Thulium 168.934 21	70 **Yb** Ytterbium 173.04	71 **Lu** Lutetium 174.967
95 **Am** Americium (243)	96 **Cm** Curium (247)	97 **Bk** Berkelium (247)	98 **Cf** Californium (251)	99 **Es** Einsteinium (252)	100 **Fm** Fermium (257)	101 **Md** Mendelevium (258)	102 **No** Nobelium (259)	103 **Lr** Lawrencium (262)

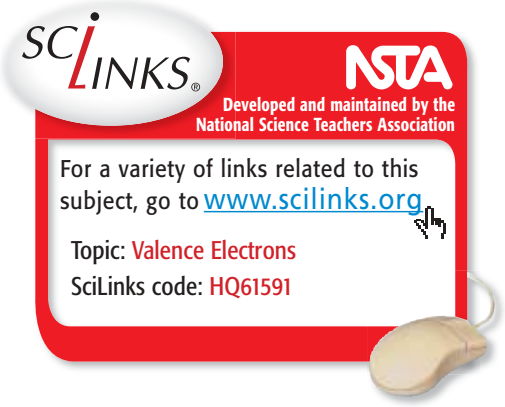
The atomic masses listed in this table reflect the precision of current measurements. (Values listed in parentheses are those of the element's most stable or most common isotope.)

Hydrogen–1, $^{1}_{1}H$
1 proton
1 electron
Atomic number 1
Mass number 1

Hydrogen–2, $^{2}_{1}H$
1 proton
1 neutron
1 electron
Atomic number 1
Mass number 2

Hydrogen–3, $^{3}_{1}H$
1 proton
2 neutrons
1 electron
Atomic number 1
Mass number 3

Figure 4 ▶ There are three naturally occurring isotopes of hydrogen. The main difference between these isotopes is their mass numbers.



Average Atomic Mass

Because the isotopes of an element have different masses, the periodic table uses an average atomic mass for each element. The *average atomic mass* is the weighted average of the atomic masses of the naturally occurring isotopes of an element.

As shown in **Figure 4,** hydrogen has three isotopes. Each isotope has a different mass because each has a different number of neutrons. By calculating the weighted average of the atomic masses of the three naturally occurring hydrogen isotopes, you can determine the average atomic mass. As noted on the periodic table, the average atomic mass of hydrogen is 1.007 94 amu.

Valence Electrons and Periodic Properties

Based on similarities in their chemical properties, elements on the periodic table are arranged in columns, which are called *groups*. An atom's chemical properties are largely determined by the number of the outermost electrons in an atom's electron cloud. These electrons are called *valence* (VAY luhns) electrons.

Within each group, the atoms of each element generally have the same number of valence electrons. For Groups 1 and 2, the number of valence electrons in each atom is the same as that atom's group number. Atoms of elements in Groups 3–12 have 2 or more valence electrons. For Groups 13–18, the number of valence electrons in each atom is the same as that atom's group number minus 10, except for helium, He. It has only two valence electrons. Atoms in Group 18 have 8 valence electrons. When an atom has 8 valence electrons, it is considered stable, or chemically unreactive. Unreactive atoms do not easily lose or gain electrons.

Elements whose atoms have only one, two, or three valence electrons tend to lose electrons easily. These elements have metallic properties and are generally classified as *metals*. Elements whose atoms have from four to seven valence electrons are more likely to gain electrons. Many of these elements, which are in Groups 13–17, are classified as *nonmetals*.

Section 1 Review

1. **Compare** the physical properties of matter with the chemical properties of matter.
2. **Describe** the basic structure of an atom.
3. **Name** the three basic subatomic particles.
4. **Compare** atomic number, mass number, and atomic mass.
5. **Explain** how isotopes of an element differ from each other.

CRITICAL THINKING

6. **Evaluating Data** Oxygen combines with hydrogen and becomes water. Is this combination a result of the physical or chemical properties of hydrogen?
7. **Making Comparisons** What sets an atom of one element apart from atoms of all other elements?

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *matter, element, atom, electron, proton, neutron, atomic number,* and *periodic table.*

Section 2 Combinations of Atoms

Elements rarely occur in pure form in Earth's crust. They generally occur in combination with other elements. A substance that is made of two or more elements that are joined by chemical bonds between the atoms of those elements is called a **compound**. The properties of a compound differ from those of the elements that make up the compound, as shown in **Figure 1.**

OBJECTIVES

- **Define** *compound* and *molecule*.
- **Interpret** chemical formulas.
- **Describe** two ways that electrons form chemical bonds between atoms.
- **Explain** the differences between compounds and mixtures.

KEY TERMS

compound
molecule
ion
ionic bond
covalent bond
mixture
solution

Molecules

The smallest unit of matter that can exist by itself and retain all of a substance's chemical properties is a **molecule.** In a molecule of two or more atoms, the atoms are chemically bonded together. Some molecules consist entirely of atoms of the same element.

Some elements occur naturally as *diatomic molecules,* which are molecules that are made up of only two atoms. For example, the oxygen in the air you breathe is the diatomic molecule O_2. The *O* in this notation is the symbol for oxygen. The subscript 2 indicates the number of oxygen atoms that are bonded together.

Chemical Formulas

In any given compound, the elements that make up the compound occur in the same relative proportions. Therefore, a compound can be represented by a chemical formula. A *chemical formula* is a combination of letters and numbers that shows which elements make up a compound. It also shows the number of atoms of each element that are required to make a molecule of a compound.

The chemical formula for water is H_2O, which indicates that each water molecule consists of two atoms of hydrogen and one atom of oxygen. In a chemical formula, the subscript that appears after the symbol for an element shows the number of atoms of that element that are in a molecule. For example, in the chemical formula for water, the subscript 2 and the symbol *H* mean that two atoms of hydrogen are in each molecule of water.

compound a substance made up of atoms of two or more different elements joined by chemical bonds

molecule a group of atoms that are held together by chemical forces; a molecule is the smallest unit of matter that can exist by itself and retain all of a substance's chemical properties

Figure 1 ▶ The silvery metal sodium combines with the poisonous, greenish-yellow gas chlorine to form white granules of table salt, which you can eat.

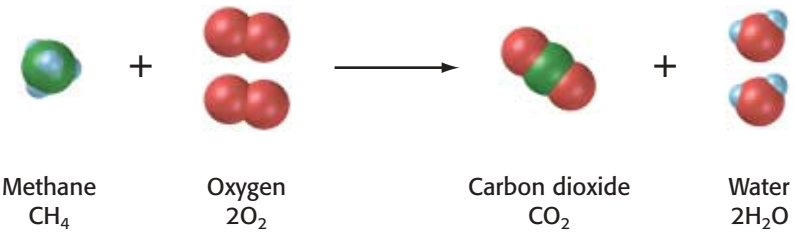


Figure 2 ▶ Methane, CH_4, and oxygen gas, O_2, react during combustion to form the products carbon dioxide, CO_2, and water, H_2O. ***How many hydrogen atoms are on each side of this reaction?***

Chemical Equations

Elements and compounds often combine through chemical reactions to form new compounds. The reaction of these elements and compounds can be described in a formula called a *chemical equation*.

Equation Structure

In a chemical equation, such as the one shown below, the *reactants,* which are on the left-hand side of the arrow, form the *products,* which are on the right-hand side of the arrow. When chemical equations are written, the arrow means "gives" or "yields."

$$CH_4 + 2O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + 2H_2O$$

In this equation, one molecule of methane, CH_4, reacts with two molecules of oxygen, O_2, to yield one molecule of carbon dioxide, CO_2, and two molecules of water, H_2O, as shown in **Figure 2.**

Balanced Equations

Chemical equations are useful for showing the types and amounts of the products that could form from a particular set of reactants. However, the equation must be balanced to show this information. A chemical equation is balanced when the number of atoms of each element on the right side of the equation is equal to the number of atoms of the same element on the left side.

To balance an equation, you cannot change chemical formulas. Changing the formulas would mean that different substances were in the reaction. To balance an equation, you must put numbers called *coefficients* in front of chemical formulas.

On the left side of the equation above, the methane molecule has four hydrogen atoms, which are indicated by the subscript 4. On the right side, each water molecule has two hydrogen atoms, which are indicated by the subscript 2. A coefficient of 2 is placed in front of the formula for water to balance the number of hydrogen atoms. A coefficient multiplies the subscript in an equation. For example, four hydrogen atoms are in the formula $2H_2O$.

A coefficient of 2 is also placed in front of the oxygen molecule on the left side of the equation so that both sides of the equation have four oxygen atoms. When the number of atoms of each element on either side of the equation is the same, the equation is balanced.

MATHPRACTICE

Balancing Equations

Magnesium, Mg, reacts with oxygen gas, O_2, to form magnesium oxide, MgO. Write a balanced chemical equation for this reaction by placing the coefficients that are needed to obtain an equal number of magnesium and oxygen atoms on either side of the equation.

Chemical Bonds

The forces that hold together the atoms in molecules are called *chemical bonds*. Chemical bonds form because of the attraction between positive and negative charges. Atoms form chemical bonds by either sharing or transferring valence electrons from one atom to another. Transferring or sharing valence electrons from one atom to another changes the properties of the substance. Variations in the forces that hold molecules together are responsible for a wide range of physical and chemical properties.

As shown in **Figure 3,** scientists can study interactions of atoms to predict which kinds of atoms will form chemical bonds together. Scientists do this by comparing the number of valence electrons that are present in a particular atom with the maximum number of valence electrons that are possible. For example, a hydrogen atom has only one valence electron. But because hydrogen can have two valence electrons, it will give up or accept another electron to reach a more chemically unreactive state.

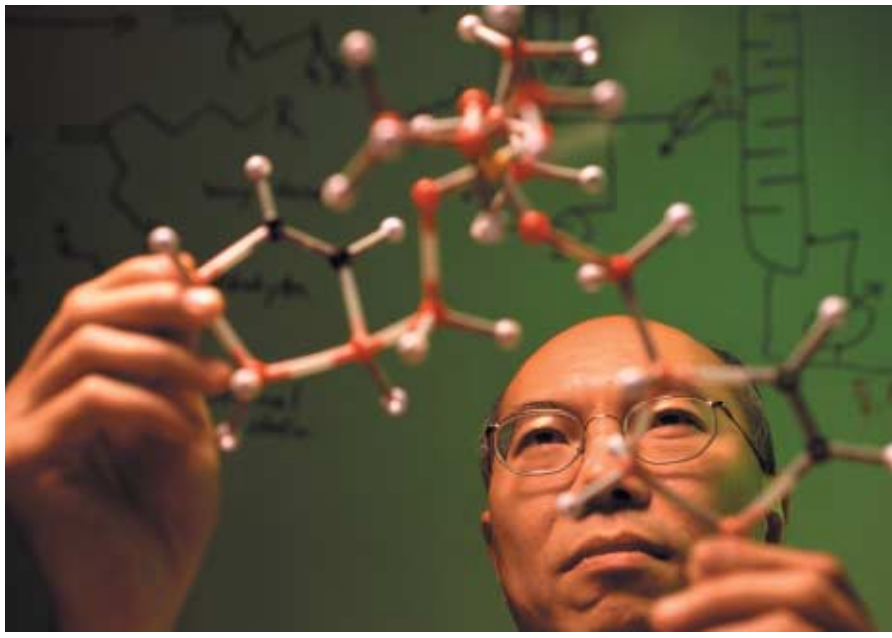


Figure 3 ▶ Scientists sometimes make physical models of molecules to better understand how chemical bonds affect the properties of compounds.

Reading Check **In what two ways do atoms form chemical bonds? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

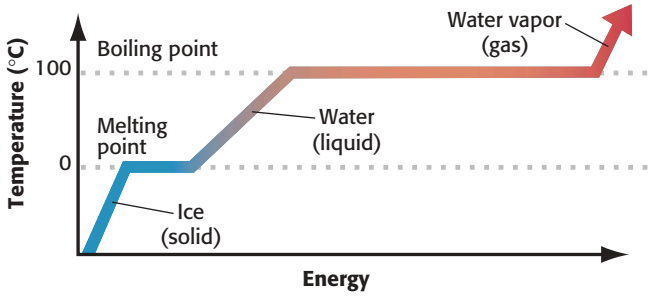
Connection to CHEMISTRY

States of Matter

Most matter on Earth can be classified into three states—solid, liquid, and gas. The speed at which the particles of matter move and the distance between the particles of matter determine the state of matter.

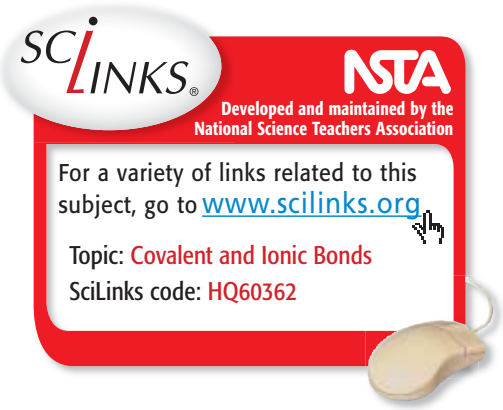
The particles that make up solids are packed tightly together in relatively fixed positions and are not free to move much in relation to each other. So, a *solid* has a definite shape and volume. A *liquid* has a definite volume but does not have a definite shape. Instead, a liquid takes the shape of the container that holds it. The particles that make up a liquid are also tightly packed, but they are more free to move than those in a solid are. A *gas* does not have a definite volume or shape. The particles of a gas are much farther apart and move faster and more freely than those of a liquid do. Thus, a gas is a formless collection of particles that tends to expand in all directions. If a gas is not confined, the space between its particles will continue to increase.

To melt a solid, you must add heat energy. The addition of energy causes the particles to move faster. When enough energy has been added, the individual particles break away from their fixed positions. When the particles break away, the material becomes a liquid. If enough energy is added, the particles move even faster and form a gas.



ion an atom or molecule that has gained or lost one or more electrons and has a negative or positive charge

ionic bond the attractive force between oppositely charged ions, which form when electrons are transferred from one atom or molecule to another



Ions

When an electron is transferred from one atom to another, both atoms become charged. A particle, such as an atom or molecule, that carries a charge is called an **ion.**

Neutral sodium atoms have 11 electrons. And because a sodium atom has 1 valence electron, sodium is a Group 1 element on the periodic table. If a sodium atom loses its outermost electron, the next 8 electrons in the atom's electron cloud become the outermost electrons. Because the sodium atom now has 8 valence electrons, it is unlikely to share or transfer electrons and therefore, is stable.

However, the sodium atom is missing the 1 electron that was needed to balance the number of protons in the nucleus. When an atom no longer has a balance between positive and negative charges, it becomes an ion. The sodium atom became a positive sodium ion, Na^+, when the atom released its valence electron.

Suppose a chlorine atom accepts the electron that the above sodium atom lost. A chlorine atom has a total of 17 electrons, 7 of which are valence electrons. This chlorine atom now has a complete set of 8 valence electrons and is chemically stable. The extra electron, however, changes the neutral chlorine atom into a negatively charged chloride ion, Cl^-.

Ionic Bonds

The attractive force between oppositely charged ions that result from the transfer of electrons from one atom to another is called an **ionic bond.** A compound that forms through the transfer of electrons is called an *ionic compound*. Most ionic compounds form when electrons are transferred between the atoms of metallic and nonmetallic elements.

Sodium chloride, or common table salt, is an ionic compound. The positively charged sodium ions and negatively charged chloride ions attract one another because of their opposite charges. This attraction between the positive sodium ions and the negative chloride ions is an ionic bond. The attraction creates cube-shaped crystals, such as the table salt shown in **Figure 4.**

Figure 4 ▼

Ionic Bonds

A sodium atom, Na, transfers an electron to a chlorine atom, Cl, to form table salt, NaCl. The chlorine atom with the added electron becomes a negatively charged ion, Cl^-, and the sodium atom, which lost the electron, becomes a positively charged ion, Na^+. The oppositely charged ions attract each other and form an ionic bond.

Table salt, NaCl

Figure 5 ▼

Covalent Bonds

Covalent bonds form when atoms share one or more pairs of electrons. In a covalent compound, pairs of electrons are shared between most of the atoms that make up the compound. Chlorine gas is an example of a covalent compound in which pairs of chlorine atoms are bonded together by sharing electrons.

Chlorine gas, Cl_2

Covalent Bonds

A bond that is formed by the attraction between atoms that share electrons is a **covalent bond.** When atoms share electrons, the positive nucleus of each atom is attracted to the shared negative electrons, as shown in **Figure 5.** The pull between the positive and negative charges is the force that keeps these atoms joined.

covalent bond a bond formed when atoms share one or more pairs of electrons

Water is an example of a *covalent compound*—that is, a compound formed by the sharing of electrons. Two hydrogen atoms can share their single valence electrons with an oxygen atom that has six valence electrons. The sharing of electrons creates a bond and gives oxygen a stable number of eight outermost electrons. At the same time, the oxygen atom shares two of its electrons—one for each hydrogen atom—which gives each hydrogen atom a more stable number of two electrons. Thus, a water molecule consists of two atoms of hydrogen combined with one atom of oxygen.

Polar Covalent Bonds

In many cases, atoms that are covalently bonded do not equally share electrons. The reason for this is that the ability of atoms of some elements to attract electrons from atoms of other elements differs. A covalent bond in which the bonded atoms have an unequal attraction for the shared electrons is called a *polar covalent bond*. Water is an example of a molecule that forms as a result of polar covalent bonds. Two hydrogen atoms bond covalently with an oxygen atom and form a water molecule. Because the oxygen atom has more ability to attract electrons than the hydrogen atoms do, the electrons are not shared equally between the oxygen and hydrogen atoms. Instead, the electrons remain closer to the oxygen nucleus, which has the greater pull. As a result, the water molecule as a whole has a slightly negative charge at its oxygen end and slightly positive charges at its hydrogen ends. The slightly positive ends of a water molecule attract the slightly negative ends of other water molecules.

Reading Check **Why do water molecules form from polar covalent bonds? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 10 min

Compounds

Procedure

1. Place **4 g of compound A** in a **clear plastic cup.**
2. Place **4 g of compound B** in a **second clear plastic cup.**
3. Observe the color and texture of each compound. Record your observations.
4. Add **5 mL of vinegar** to each cup. Record your observations.

Analysis

1. What physical and chemical differences between the two compounds did you record? How do physical properties and chemical properties differ?
2. Vinegar reacts with baking soda but not with powdered sugar. Which of these compounds is compound A, and which is compound B?

Figure 6 ▶ The steel that is being smelted in this steel mill in Iowa is a solution of iron, carbon, and various other metals such as nickel, chromium, and manganese.

mixture a combination of two or more substances that are not chemically combined

solution a homogeneous mixture of two or more substances that are uniformly dispersed throughout the mixture

Mixtures

On Earth, elements and compounds are generally mixed together. A **mixture** is a combination of two or more substances that are not chemically combined. The substances that make up a mixture keep their individual properties. Therefore, unlike a compound, a mixture can be separated into its parts by physical means. For example, you can use a magnet to separate a mixture of powdered sulfur, S, and iron, Fe, filings. The magnet will attract the iron, which is magnetic, and leave behind the sulfur, which is not magnetic.

Heterogeneous Mixtures

Mixtures in which two or more substances are not uniformly distributed are called *heterogeneous mixtures*. For example, the igneous rock granite is a heterogeneous mixture of crystals of the minerals quartz, feldspar, hornblende, and biotite.

Homogeneous Mixtures

In chemistry, the word *homogeneous* means "having the same composition and properties throughout." A homogeneous mixture of two or more substances that are uniformly dispersed throughout the mixture is a **solution.**

Any part of a given sample of the solution known as sea water, for example, will have the same composition. Sodium chloride, NaCl, (along with many other ionic compounds) is dissolved in sea water. The positive ends of water molecules attract negative chloride ions. And the negative end of water molecules attracts positive sodium ions. Eventually, all of the sodium and chloride ions become uniformly distributed among the water molecules.

Gases and solids can also be solutions. An *alloy* is a solution composed of two or more metals. The steel shown in **Figure 6** is an example of such a solution.

Section 2 Review

1. **Define** *compound* and *molecule*.
2. **Determine** the number of each type of atom in the following chemical formula: $C_6H_{12}O_6$.
3. **Explain** why atoms join to form molecules.
4. **Describe** the difference between ionic and covalent bonds.
5. **Explain** why a water molecule has polar covalent bonds.
6. **Compare** compounds with mixtures.
7. **Identify** two common solutions.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Applying Ideas** What happens to the chemical properties of a substance when it becomes part of a mixture?
9. **Evaluating Data** If you were given two mixtures and told that one is a solution, how might you determine which one is the solution?

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *compound, molecule, ionic compound, ionic bond, ion, covalent compound,* and *covalent bond.*

Chapter 4

Highlights

Sections

1 Matter

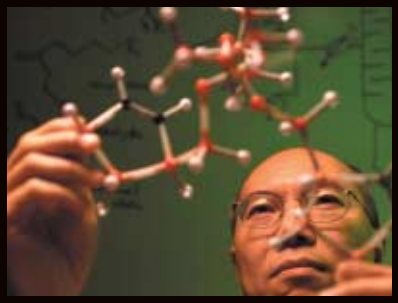
Key Terms

matter, 81
element, 81
atom, 82
proton, 82
electron, 82
neutron, 82
isotope, 83

Key Concepts

- An element is a substance that has a characteristic set of physical and chemical properties and that cannot be separated into simpler substances by chemical means.
- An atom consists of electrons surrounding a nucleus that is made up of protons and neutrons.
- The atomic number of an atom is equal to the number of protons in the atom. The mass number is equal to the sum of the protons and neutrons in the atom.
- Isotopes are atoms that have different numbers of neutrons than other atoms of the same element do.
- Elements on the periodic table are arranged in groups that are based on similarities in the chemical properties of the elements.

2 Combinations of Atoms



compound, 87
molecule, 87
ion, 90
ionic bond, 90
covalent bond, 91
mixture, 92
solution, 92

- A compound is a substance that is made up of two or more different elements that are joined by chemical bonds between the atoms of those elements.
- A chemical formula describes which elements and how many atoms of each of those elements make up a molecule of a compound.
- Chemical bonds between atoms form when electrons are shared or transferred between the atoms.
- A mixture consists of two or more substances that are not chemically bonded. A solution is a mixture in which one substance is uniformly dispersed in another substance.

Chapter 4 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *matter*
2. *neutron*
3. *ion*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *atom* and *molecule*
5. *element* and *compound*
6. *proton* and *electron*
7. *compound* and *mixture*
8. *covalent bond* and *ionic bond*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. Color and hardness are examples of a substance's
   a. physical properties.
   b. chemical properties.
   c. atomic structure.
   d. molecular properties.

10. Subatomic particles in atoms that do not carry an electric charge are called
    a. neutrons. **c.** nuclei.
    b. protons. **d.** ions.

11. Atoms of the same element that differ in mass are
    a. ions. **c.** isotopes.
    b. neutrons. **d.** molecules.

12. A combination of letters and numbers that indicates which elements make up a compound is a
    a. coefficient.
    b. reactant.
    c. chemical bond.
    d. chemical formula.

13. The type of chemical bond that forms between oppositely charged ions is a(n)
    a. covalent bond.
    b. mixture.
    c. ionic bond.
    d. solution.

14. Two or more elements whose atoms are chemically bonded form a(n)
    a. mixture. **c.** nucleus.
    b. ion. **d.** compound.

15. The outermost electrons in an atom's electron cloud are called
    a. ions.
    b. isotopes.
    c. valence electrons.
    d. neutrons.

16. A molecule of water, or H_2O, has one atom of
    a. hydrogen. **c.** helium.
    b. oxygen. **d.** osmium.

Short Answer

17. How do chemical properties differ from physical properties?

18. Define the term *element*.

19. Name three basic subatomic particles.

20. In terms of valence electrons, what is the difference between metallic elements and nonmetallic elements?

21. Which type of bonding includes the sharing of electrons?

22. Using the periodic table to help you to understand the following chemical formulas, list the name and number of atoms of each element in each compound: NaCl, H_2O_2, Fe_3O_4, and SiO_2.

23. What sets an atom of one element apart from the atoms of all other elements?

Critical Thinking

24. Applying Ideas Is a diatomic molecule more likely to be held together by a covalent bond or by an ionic bond? Explain your answer.

25. Making Inferences Calcium chloride is an ionic compound. Carbon dioxide is a covalent compound. Which of these compounds forms as a result of the transfer of electrons from one atom to another? Explain your answer.

26. Analyzing Relationships What happens to the chemical properties of a substance when it becomes part of a mixture? Explain your answer.

27. Classifying Information Oxygen combines with hydrogen to form water. Is this process due to the physical or chemical properties of oxygen and hydrogen?

Concept Mapping

28. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *chemical property, element, atom, electron, proton, neutron, atomic number, mass number, isotope, compound,* and *chemical bond*.

Math Skills

29. Making Calculations How many neutrons does a potassium atom have if its atomic number is 19 and its mass number is 39?

30. Using Formulas The covalent compound formaldehyde forms when one carbon atom, two hydrogen atoms, and one oxygen atom bond. Write a chemical formula for formaldehyde.

31. Balancing Equations Zinc metal, Zn, will react with hydrochloric acid, HCl, to produce hydrogen gas, H_2, and zinc chloride, $ZnCl_2$. Write and balance the chemical equation for this reaction.

Writing Skills

32. Organizing Data Choose one of the eight most common elements in Earth's crust, and write a brief report on the element's atomic structure, its chemical properties, and its economic importance.

33. Communicating Main Ideas Write a brief essay that describes how an element's chemical properties determine what other elements are likely to bond with that element.

34. Making Comparisons Write a brief essay that describes the differences between atoms, elements, ions, and isotopes.

Interpreting Graphics

The table below shows the average atomic masses and the atomic numbers of five elements. Use this table to answer the questions that follow.

Element	Symbol	Average atomic mass	Atomic number
Magnesium	Mg	24.3050	12
Tungsten	W	183.84	74
Copper	Cu	63.546	29
Silicon	Si	28.0855	14
Bromine	Br	79.904	35

35. If an atom of magnesium has 12 neutrons, what is its mass number?

36. Estimate the average number of neutrons in an atom of tungsten and in an atom of silicon.

37. Which element has the largest difference between the number of protons and the number of neutrons in the nucleus of one of its atoms? Explain your answer.

Chapter 4 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–4): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the number of the correct answer.**

1 Soil is an example of
- **A.** a solution
- **B.** a compound
- **C.** a mixture
- **D.** an element

2 Isotopes are atoms of the same element that has different mass numbers. This difference is caused by
- **F.** a different number of electrons in the atoms
- **G.** a different number of protons in the atoms
- **H.** a different number of neutrons in the atoms
- **I.** a different number of nuclei in the atoms

3 Which of the following statements best describes the charges of subatomic particles?
- **A.** Electrons have a negative charge, protons have a positive charge, and neutrons have no charge.
- **B.** Electrons have a positive charge, protons have a negative charge, and neutrons have a positive charge.
- **C.** Electrons have no charge, protons have a positive charge, and neutrons have a negative charge.
- **D.** In neutral atoms, protons, neutrons, and electrons have no charges.

4 An element is located on the periodic table according to
- **F.** when the element was discovered
- **G.** the letters of the element's chemical symbol
- **H.** the element's chemical name
- **I.** the element's physical and chemical properties

Directions (5–6): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

5 What is the name for an atom that has gained or lost one or more electrons and has acquired an charge?

6 Scientists use atomic numbers to help identify the atoms of different elements. How is the atomic number of an element determined?

Reading Skills

Directions (7–9): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Chemical Formulas

All substances can be formed by a combination of elements from a list of about 100 possible elements. Each element has a chemical symbol. A chemical formula is shorthand notation that uses chemical symbols and numbers to represent a substance. A chemical formula shows the amount of each kind of atom present in a specific molecule of a substance.

The chemical formula for water is H_20. This formula tells you that one water molecule is composed of two atoms of hydrogen and one atom of oxygen. The 2 in the formula is a subscript. A subscript is a number written below and to the right of a chemical symbol in a formula. When a symbol, such as the O for oxygen in water's formula, has no subscript, only one atom of that element is present.

7 What does a subscript in a chemical formula represent?
- **A.** Subscripts represent the number of atoms of the chemical symbol they directly follow present in the molecule.
- **B.** Subscripts represent the number of atoms of the chemical symbol they directly precede present in the molecule.
- **C.** Subscripts represent the number of protons present in each atom's nucleus.
- **D.** Subscripts represent the total number of atoms present in a molecule.

8 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
- **F.** Two atoms of hydrogen are always present in chemical formulas.
- **G.** A chemical formula indicates the elements that a molecule is made of.
- **H.** Chemical formulas can be used only to show simple molecules.
- **I.** No more than one atom of oxygen can be present in a chemical formula.

9 How many atoms would be found in a single molecule that has the chemical formula S_2F_{10}?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (10–14): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The graphic below shows the upper right segment of the periodic table. Use this graphic to answer questions 10 through 12.

Segment of the Periodic Table

13	14	15	16	17	18
					2 **He** 4.00
5 **B** 10.81	6 **C** 12.01	7 **N** 14.01	8 **O** 16.00	9 **F** 19.00	10 **Ne** 20.18
13 **Al** 26.98	14 **Si** 28.09	15 **P** 30.97	16 **S** 32.07	17 **Cl** 35.45	18 **Ar** 39.95

10 Which pair of elements would most likely have a similar arrangement of outer electrons and have similar chemical behaviors?

A. boron and aluminum
B. helium and fluoride
C. carbon and nitrogen
D. chlorine and oxygen

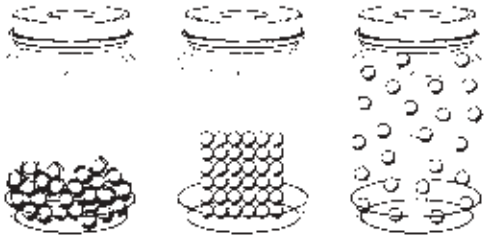
11 What is the atomic mass of helium?

F. 0.18
G. 0.26
H. 2.00
I. 4.00

12 How many neutrons does the average helium atom contain?

The graphic below shows matter in three different states. Use this graphic to answer questions 13 and 14.

States of Matter



13 In what physical state is the matter in jar A?

A. solid
B. liquid
C. gas
D. plasma

14 Explain how the positions and motions of particles determine the characteristics of each state of matter.

Test TIP

Double check (with a calculator, if permitted) all mathematical computations involved in answering a question.

Chapter 4

Inquiry Lab

Using Scientific Methods

Physical Properties of Elements

Objectives

- **Design** an experiment to test the physical properties of different metals.
- **Identify** unknown metals by comparing the data you collect and reference information.

Materials

- balance
- beakers (several)
- graduated cylinder
- hot plate
- magnet
- metal samples, unknown, similarly shaped (several)
- ruler, metric
- stopwatch
- water
- wax

Safety

In this lab, you will identify samples of various metals by collecting data and comparing the data with the reference information listed in the table below. Use at least two of the physical properties listed in the table to identify each metal.

ASK A QUESTION

1. How can you use an element's physical properties to identify the element?

FORM A HYPOTHESIS

2. Use the table below to identify which physical properties you will test. Write a few sentences that describe your hypothesis and the procedure you will use to test those physical properties.

TEST THE HYPOTHESIS

3. With your lab partner(s), decide how you will use the available materials to identify each metal that you are given. Because there are many ways to measure some of the physical properties that are listed in the table below, you may need to use only some of the materials that are provided.
4. Before you start to test your hypothesis, list each step that you will need to perform.

Physical Properties of Some Metals

Metal	Density (g/cm^3)	Relative hardness	Relative heat conductivity	Magnetic attraction
Aluminum, Al	2.7	28	100	No
Iron, Fe	7.9	50	34	Yes
Nickel, Ni	8.9	67	38	Yes
Tin, Sn	7.3	19	28	No
Tungsten, W	19.3	100	73	No
Zinc, Zn	7.1	28	49	No

5. After your teacher approves your plan, perform your experiment. Keep in mind that the more exact your measurements are, the easier it will be for you to identify the metals that you have been provided.
6. Record all the data that you collect and any observations that you make.

How to Measure Physical Properties of Metals		
Physical property	**Description**	**How to measure the property**
Density	mass per unit volume	If the metal is box-shaped, measure its length, height, and width, and then use these measurements to calculate the metal's volume. If the shape of the metal is irregular, add the metal to a known volume of water and determine what volume of water is displaced.
Relative hardness	how easy it is to scratch the substance	An object that has a high hardness value can scratch an object that has a lower value, but not vice versa.
Relative heat conductivity	how quickly a metal heats or cools	A metal that has a value of 100 will heat or cool twice as quickly as a metal that has a value of 50.
Magnetism	whether an object is magnetic	If a magnet placed near a metal attracts the metal, the metal is magnetic.

ANALYZE THE RESULTS

1. **Summarizing Data** Make a table that lists which physical properties you compared and what data you collected for each of the metals that you tested.
2. **Making Comparisons** Which physical properties were the easiest for you to measure and compare? Which were the most difficult to measure and compare? Explain why.
3. **Applying Ideas** What would happen if you tried to use zinc to scratch aluminum?

DRAW CONCLUSIONS

4. **Summarizing Results** Which metals were given to you? Explain how you identified each metal.
5. **Analyzing Methods** Explain why you would have difficulty distinguishing between iron and nickel unless you were to measure each metal's density.

Extension

1. **Evaluating Data** Suppose you find a metal fastener that has a density of 7 g/cm^3. What are two ways to determine whether the unknown metal is tin or zinc?

Element Resources in the United States

Map Skills Activity

This map shows the distribution of elements that are used as resources in the United States. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using a Key** Use the map to locate the state in which you live. Are any elements from the key found in your state?

2. **Making Comparisons** In the 1800s, at two separate times, two states experienced a rush of migration in response to the discovery of gold. Which two states do you think experienced a gold rush?

3. **Inferring Relationships** Is it possible to use this map to find out which states have the highest production of the mineral resources that are listed on the map? Why or why not?

4. **Inferring Relationships** Silver is mainly recovered as a byproduct of the bulk mining of other metals such as copper, lead, zinc, and gold. Where in the United States do you think silver recovery would happen?

5. **Analyzing Relationships** Can you identify any relationship between the locations of lead deposits and the locations of zinc deposits? Explain your reasoning.

The Smallest Particles

Matter is made of atoms. For a long time, scientists thought that atoms were the smallest particles of matter. Then, when protons, neutrons, and electrons were discovered, these particles were thought to be the smallest particles. Now, the honor goes to particles called *quarks* and *leptons*. But recent evidence suggests that quarks may be composed of smaller particles.

Energy to See

A fundamental principle of physics is that the smaller an object is, the greater the amount of energy is required to see it. Because the amount of energy needed to see subatomic particles does not exist naturally on Earth, scientists have to build up enough energy to break apart these particles so that individual parts can be isolated for study. Tevatron, a huge particle accelerator shown at right, is an underground, ring-shaped tunnel that has a 6.4 km circumference. It contains 1,000 superconducting magnets that move beams of particles at increasingly higher speeds. As the particles gain speed, they build up energy.

When the energized particles are moving near the speed of light (299,792,458 m/s), they are directed to hit either a fixed target or particles moving in an opposite direction. On impact, the particles split. The byproducts of the particles separate and scatter. The smaller particles, including quarks and leptons, are measured by a collider detector.

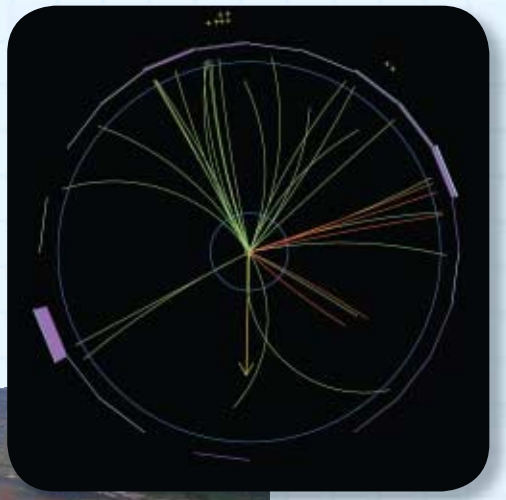
Applying the Results

For now, the nature of subatomic particles may seem far removed from Earth science. However, research on the most basic particles of matter may one day influence the work of Earth scientists by changing basic theories that range from the ultimate structure of matter to the origin of the universe.

Extension

1. **Research** Find out more about quarks and leptons. Then, write a short report that describes their characteristics and where they are found in an atom.

▼ This image shows the paths of the subatomic particles created by collisions in a particle accelerator. The shape and location of each path indicates the type of particle that formed the path.



▶ Particle accelerators, such as this one in Illinois, are so expensive to build and operate that they require international cooperation.

Chapter 5

Minerals of Earth's Crust

Sections

1 What Is a Mineral?
2 Identifying Minerals

What You'll Learn

- What the characteristics of minerals are
- Why minerals have certain properties
- How to identify minerals

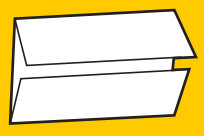
Why It's Relevant

Minerals are valued for their use in making everything from airplanes to cookware. Understanding the characteristics of minerals is also an important way to understand how Earth's processes form minerals.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Double Door Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Double Door" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Write "Silicate minerals" on one flap of the double door and "Nonsilicate minerals" on the other flap. As you read the chapter, compare the two topics, and write characteristics of each on the inside of the appropriate flap.



▶ Agates are a form of the mineral chalcedony, which is a type of quartz. This agate was dyed a brilliant blue to show its internal structure.

Section 1 What Is a Mineral?

A ruby, a gold nugget, and a grain of salt look very different from one another, but they have one thing in common. They are minerals, the basic materials of Earth's crust. A **mineral** is a natural, usually inorganic solid that has a characteristic chemical composition, an orderly internal structure, and a characteristic set of physical properties.

Characteristics of Minerals

To determine whether a substance is a mineral or a nonmineral, scientists ask four basic questions, as shown in **Table 1.** If the answer to all four questions is *yes,* the substance is a mineral.

First, is the substance inorganic? An inorganic substance is one that is not made up of living things or the remains of living things. Coal, for example, is organic—it is composed of the remains of ancient plants. Thus, coal is not a mineral.

Second, does the substance occur naturally? Minerals form and exist in nature. Thus, a manufactured substance, such as steel or brass, is not a mineral.

Third, is the substance a solid in crystalline form? The volcanic glass obsidian is a naturally occurring substance. However, the atoms in obsidian are not arranged in a regularly repeating crystalline structure. Thus, obsidian is not a mineral.

Finally, does the substance have a consistent chemical composition? The mineral fluorite has a consistent chemical composition of one calcium ion for every fluoride ion. Basalt, however, can have a variety of substances. The ratio of these substances commonly varies in each sample of basalt.

OBJECTIVES

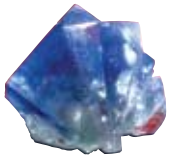
- **Define** *mineral.*
- **Compare** the two main groups of minerals.
- **Identify** the six types of silicate crystalline structures.
- **Describe** three common nonsilicate crystalline structures.

KEY TERMS

mineral
silicate mineral
nonsilicate mineral
crystal
silicon-oxygen tetrahedron

mineral a natural, usually inorganic solid that has a characteristic chemical composition, an orderly internal structure, and a characteristic set of physical properties

Table 1 ▶

Four Criteria for Minerals					
Questions to Identify a Mineral	**Coal**	**Brass**	**Obsidian**	**Basalt**	**Fluorite**
					
Is it inorganic?	No	**Yes**	**Yes**	**Yes**	**Yes**
Does it occur naturally?		No	**Yes**	**Yes**	**Yes**
Is it a crystalline solid?			No	**Yes**	**Yes**
Does it have a consistent chemical composition?				No	**Yes**

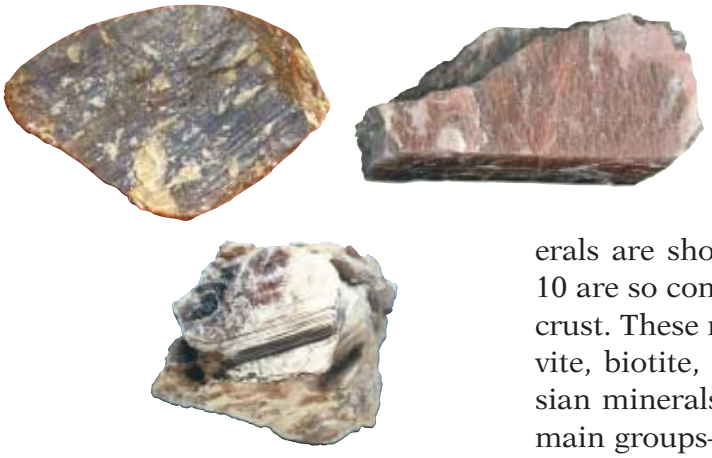


Figure 1 ▶ Plagioclase feldspar (left), muscovite mica (center), and orthoclase feldspar (right) are 3 of the 20 common rock-forming minerals.

silicate mineral a mineral that contains a combination of silicon and oxygen, and that may also contain one or more metals

Kinds of Minerals

Earth scientists have identified more than 3,000 minerals, but fewer than 20 of the minerals are common. The common minerals are called *rock-forming minerals* because they form the rocks that make up Earth's crust. Three of these minerals are shown in **Figure 1.** Of the 20 rock-forming minerals, 10 are so common that they make up 90% of the mass of Earth's crust. These minerals are quartz, orthoclase, plagioclase, muscovite, biotite, calcite, dolomite, halite, gypsum, and ferromagnesian minerals. All minerals, however, can be classified into two main groups—silicate minerals and nonsilicate minerals—based on the chemical compositions of the minerals.

Silicate Minerals

A mineral that contains a combination of silicon, Si, and oxygen, O, is a **silicate mineral.** The mineral quartz has only silicon and oxygen atoms. However, other silicate minerals have one or more additional elements. Feldspars are the most common silicate minerals. The type of feldspar that forms depends on which metal combines with the silicon and oxygen atoms. Orthoclase forms when the metal is potassium, K. Plagioclase forms when the metal is sodium, Na, calcium, Ca, or both.

In addition to quartz and the feldspars, ferromagnesian minerals—which are rich in iron, Fe, and magnesium, Mg—are silicates. These minerals include olivines, pyroxenes, amphiboles, and biotite. Silicate minerals make up 96% of Earth's crust. Feldspar and quartz alone make up more than 50% of the crust.

Connection to CHEMISTRY

Ions and Bonds

An atom that has a positive or negative charge is called an *ion*. When an atom loses one or more electrons, the atom has more protons than it has electrons. Thus, the atom acquires a positive charge. An ion that has a positive charge is called a *cation*. All of the most abundant elements in Earth's crust except oxygen release electrons and form cations. For example, sodium, Na, atoms generally lose one electron to form a cation that has a charge of +1.

An atom that gains one or more electrons acquires a negative charge because the atom has more electrons than protons. An ion that has a negative charge is called an *anion*. Chlorine, Cl, which generally gains one electron and thus has a charge of –1, forms an anion.

Atoms and ions rarely exist alone. Most atoms and ions combine to form *compounds*. Forces called *chemical bonds* hold atoms and ions together in these compounds. When ions combine to form compounds, the ions combine in proportions that allow all of the positive charges to equal and cancel out all of the negative charges. Thus, the compound is electrically neutral. The mineral halite is a good example of this relationship. Because sodium ions have +1 charges and chlorine ions have –1 charges, one sodium ion bonds with one chlorine ion to form the compound sodium chloride, NaCl, which is the mineral halite. Thus, 1 − 1 = 0, and the compound is neutral.

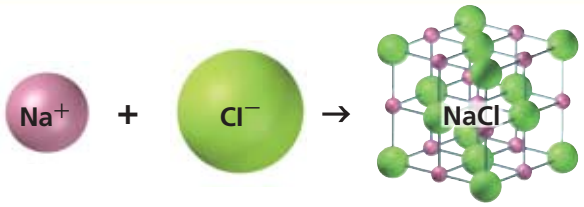
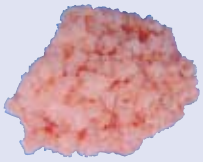
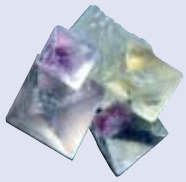
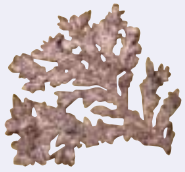
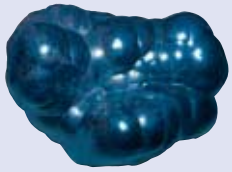


Table 2 ▼

Major Classes of Nonsilicate Minerals		
Carbonates compounds that contain a carbonate group (CO_3)	 Dolomite, $CaMg(CO_3)_2$	 Calcite, $CaCO_3$
Halides compounds that consist of chlorine or fluorine combined with sodium, potassium, or calcium	 Halite, NaCl	 Fluorite, CaF_2
Native elements elements uncombined with other elements	 Silver, Ag	 Copper, Cu
Oxides compounds that contain oxygen and an element other than silicon	 Corundum, Al_2O_3	 Hematite, Fe_2O_3
Sulfates compounds that contain a sulfate group (SO_4)	 Gypsum, $CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$	 Anhydrite, $CaSO_4$
Sulfides compounds that consist of one or more elements combined with sulfur	 Galena, PbS	 Pyrite, FeS_2

Nonsilicate Minerals

Approximately 4% of Earth's crust is made up of minerals that do not contain compounds of silicon and oxygen, or **nonsilicate minerals**. **Table 2** organizes the six major groups of nonsilicate minerals by their chemical compositions: carbonates, halides, native elements, oxides, sulfates, and sulfides.

nonsilicate mineral a mineral that does not contain compounds of silicon and oxygen

Reading Check **What compound of elements will you never find in a nonsilicate mineral? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Crystalline Structure

crystal a solid whose atoms, ions, or molecules are arranged in a regular, repeating pattern

silicon-oxygen tetrahedron the basic unit of the structure of silicate minerals; a silicon ion chemically bonded to and surrounded by four oxygen ions

All minerals in Earth's crust have a crystalline structure. Each type of mineral crystal is characterized by a specific geometric arrangement of atoms. A **crystal** is a solid whose atoms, ions, or molecules are arranged in a regular, repeating pattern. A large mineral crystal displays the characteristic geometry of that crystal's internal structure. The conditions under which minerals form, however, often hinder the growth of single, large crystals. As a result, minerals are commonly made up of masses of crystals that are so small that you can see them only with a microscope. But, if a crystal forms where the surrounding material is not restrictive, the mineral will develop as a single, large crystal that has one of six basic crystal shapes. Knowing the crystal shapes is helpful in identifying minerals.

One way that scientists study the structure of crystals is by using X rays. X rays that pass through a crystal and strike a photographic plate produce an image that shows the geometric arrangement of the atoms that make up the crystal.

QuickLAB 5 min

Modeling Tetrahedra

Procedure

1. Place **four toothpicks** in a **small marshmallow.** Evenly space the toothpicks as far from each other as possible.
2. Place **four large marshmallows** on the ends of the toothpicks.

Analysis

1. In your model, what do the toothpicks represent?
2. When tetrahedra form chains or rings, the tetrahedra share electrons. If you wanted to build a chain of tetrahedra, how would you connect two tetrahedra together?

Crystalline Structure of Silicate Minerals

Even though there are many kinds of silicate minerals, their crystalline structure is made up of the same basic building blocks. Each building block has four oxygen atoms arranged in a pyramid with one silicon atom in the center. **Figure 2** shows this four-sided structure, which is known as a **silicon-oxygen tetrahedron.**

Silicon-oxygen tetrahedra combine in different arrangements to form different silicate minerals. The various arrangements are the result of the kinds of bonds that form between the oxygen atoms of the tetrahedra and other atoms. The oxygen and silicon atoms of tetrahedra may bond with those of neighboring tetrahedra. Bonds may also form between the oxygen atoms in the tetrahedra and other elements' atoms outside of the tetrahedra.

Reading Check **What is the building block of the silicate crystalline structure? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

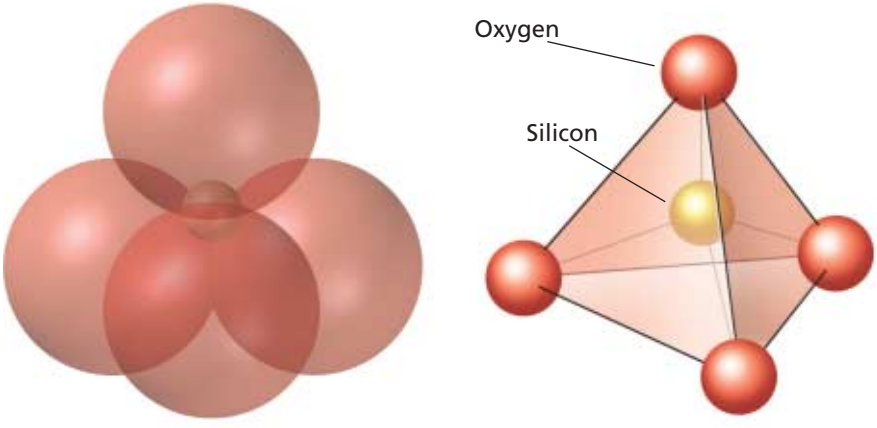


Figure 2 ▶ The structure of a silicon-oxygen tetrahedron can be shown by two different models. The model on the left represents the relative size and proximity of the atoms to one another in the molecule. The model on the right shows the tetrahedral shape of the molecule.

Isolated Tetrahedral Silicates and Ring Silicates

The six kinds of arrangements that tetrahedra form are shown in **Figure 3.** In minerals that have *isolated tetrahedra,* only atoms other than silicon and oxygen atoms link silicon-oxygen tetrahedra. For example, olivine is a mineral that forms when the oxygen atoms of tetrahedra bond to magnesium, Mg, and iron, Fe, atoms.

Ring silicates form when shared oxygen atoms join the tetrahedra to form three-, four-, or six-sided rings. Ionic bonds hold the rings together, and the rings align to create channels that can contain a variety of ions, molecules, and neutral atoms. Beryl and tourmaline are minerals that have ring-silicate structures.

Single-Chain Silicates and Double-Chain Silicates

In *single-chain silicates,* each tetrahedron is bonded to two others by shared oxygen atoms. In *double-chain silicates,* two single chains of tetrahedra bond to each other. Most single-chain silicate minerals are called *pyroxenes,* and those made up of double chains are called *amphiboles*.

Sheet Silicates and Framework Silicates

In the *sheet silicates,* each tetrahedron shares three oxygen atoms with other tetrahedra. The fourth oxygen atom bonds with an atom of aluminum, Al, or magnesium, Mg, which joins one sheet to another. The mica minerals, such as muscovite and biotite, are examples of sheet silicates.

In the *framework silicates,* each tetrahedron is bonded to four neighboring tetrahedra to form a three-dimensional network. Frameworks that contain only silicon-oxygen tetrahedra form the mineral quartz. The chemical formula for quartz is SiO_2. Other framework silicates, such as the feldspars, contain some tetrahedra in which atoms of aluminum or other metals substitute for some of the silicon atoms.

Figure 3 ▶ Six Kinds of Silicate-Mineral Arrangements

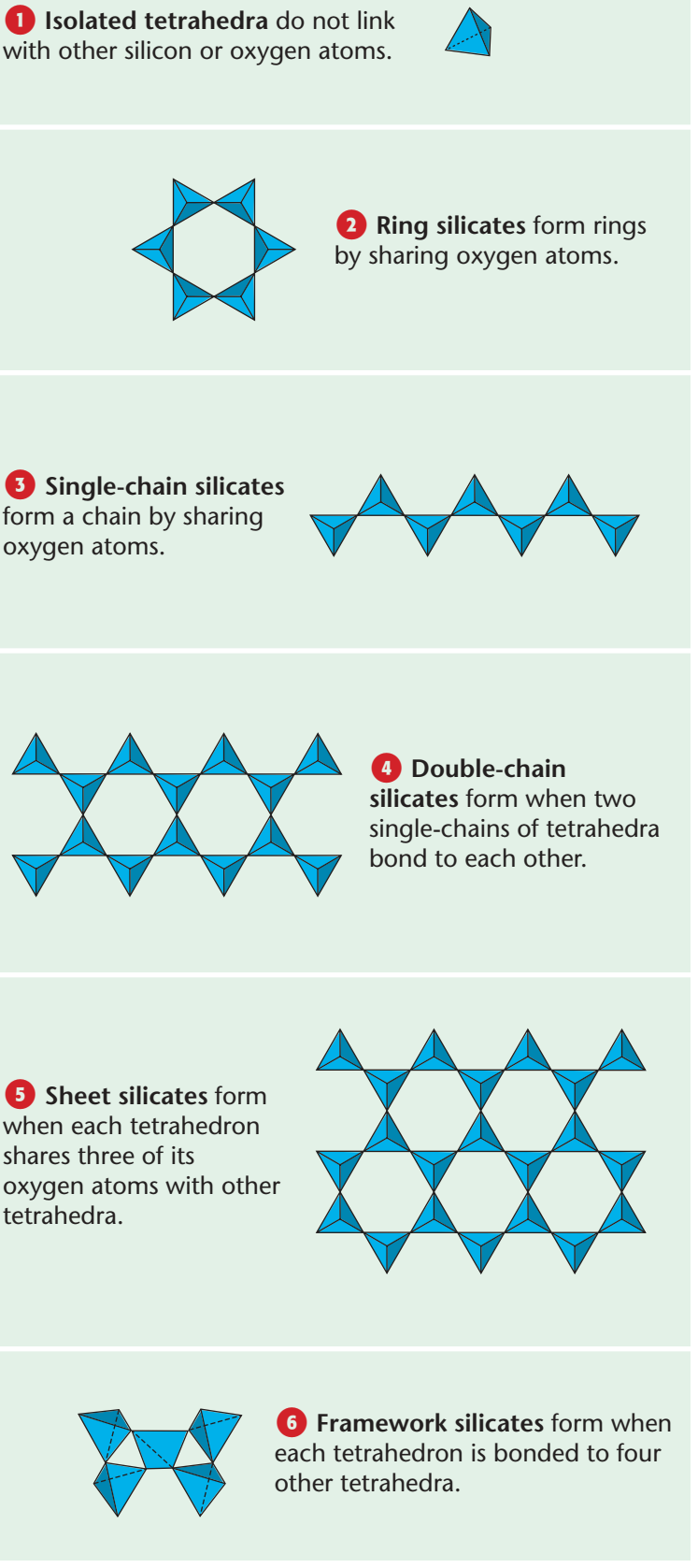


Figure 4 ▶ Gold (left) commonly has a dendritic shape. Halite (center) commonly has cubic crystals. Diamond (right) commonly has an octahedral crystal shape. All three of these minerals are nonsilicates.

The Crystalline Structure of Nonsilicate Minerals

Because nonsilicate minerals have diverse chemical compositions, nonsilicate minerals display a vast variety of crystalline structures. Common crystal structures for nonsilicate minerals include cubes, hexagonal prisms, and irregular masses. Some of these structures are shown in **Figure 4.**

Nonsilicates may form tetrahedra that are similar to those in silicates. However, the ions at the center of these tetrahedra are not silicon. Minerals that have the same ion at the center of the tetrahedron commonly share similar crystal structures. Thus, the classes of nonsilicate minerals can be divided into smaller groups based on the structural similarities of the minerals' crystals.

The structure of a nonsilicate crystal determines the nonsilicate's characteristics. For example, the native elements have very high densities because their crystal structures are based on the packing of atoms as close together as possible. This crystal structure is called *closest packing*. In this crystal structure, each metal atom is surrounded by 8 to 12 other metal atoms that are as close to each other as the charges of the atomic nuclei will allow.

Section 1 Review

1. **Define** *mineral*.
2. **Summarize** the characteristics that are necessary to classify a substance as a mineral.
3. **Compare** the two main groups of minerals.
4. **Identify** the two elements that are in all silicate minerals.
5. **Name** six types of nonsilicate minerals.
6. **Describe** the six main crystalline structures of silicate minerals.
7. **Explain** why nonsilicate minerals have a wider variety of crystalline structures than silicate minerals do.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Predicting Consequences** If silicon bonded with three oxygen atoms, how might the crystalline structures of silicate minerals be different?
9. **Applying Ideas** Gold is an inorganic substance that forms naturally in Earth's crust. Gold is also a solid and has a definite chemical composition. Is gold a mineral? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *mineral, crystal, silicate mineral, nonsilicate mineral, ring silicate, framework silicate, single-chain silicate,* and *silicon-oxygen tetrahedron*.

Section 2 Identifying Minerals

Earth scientists called **mineralogists** examine, analyze, and classify minerals. To identify minerals, mineralogists study the properties of the minerals. Some properties are simple to study, while special equipment may be needed to study other properties.

Physical Properties of Minerals

Each mineral has specific properties that are a result of its chemical composition and crystalline structure. These properties provide useful clues for identifying minerals. Many of these properties can be identified by simply looking at a sample of the mineral. Other properties can be identified through simple tests.

Color

One property of a mineral that is easy to observe is the mineral's color. Some minerals have very distinct colors. For example, sulfur is bright yellow, and azurite is deep blue. Color alone, however, is generally not a reliable clue for identifying a mineral sample. Many minerals are similar in color, and very small amounts of certain elements may greatly affect the color of a mineral. For example, corundum is a colorless mineral composed of aluminum and oxygen atoms. However, corundum that has traces of chromium, Cr, forms the red gem called *ruby*. Sapphire, which is a type of corundum, gets its blue color from traces of cobalt, Co, and titanium, Ti. **Figure 1** compares colorless, pure quartz with purple amethyst. Amethyst is quartz that has manganese, Mn, and iron, Fe, which cause the purple color.

Color is also an unreliable identification clue because weathered surfaces may hide the color of minerals. For example, the golden color of iron pyrite ranges from dark yellow to black when iron pyrite is weathered. When examining a mineral for color, you should inspect only the mineral's freshly exposed surfaces.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** seven physical properties that help distinguish one mineral from another.
- **List** five special properties that may help identify certain minerals.

KEY TERMS

mineralogist
streak
luster
cleavage
fracture
Mohs hardness scale
density

mineralogist a person who examines, analyzes, and classifies minerals

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Minerals
SciLinks code: HQ60966
Topic: Mineral Identification
SciLinks code: HQ60965

Figure 1 ▶ Pure quartz (left) is colorless. Amethyst (right) is a variety of quartz that is purple because of the presence of small amounts of manganese and iron.

Figure 2 ▶ All minerals have either a metallic luster, as platinum does (top), or a nonmetallic luster, as talc does (bottom).

Streak

A more reliable clue to the identity of a mineral is the color of the mineral in powdered form, which is called the mineral's **streak.** The easiest way to observe the streak of a mineral is to rub some of the mineral against a piece of unglazed ceramic tile called a *streak plate.* The streak's color may differ from the color of the solid form of the mineral. Metallic minerals generally have a dark streak. For example, the streak of gold-colored pyrite is black. For most nonmetallic minerals, however, the streak is either colorless or a very light shade of the mineral's standard color. Minerals that are harder than the ceramic plate will leave no streak.

Luster

Light that is reflected from a mineral's surface is called **luster.** A mineral is said to have a *metallic luster* if the mineral reflects light as a polished metal does, as shown in **Figure 2.** All other minerals have a *nonmetallic luster.* Mineralogists distinguish several types of nonmetallic luster. Transparent quartz and other minerals that look like glass have a glassy luster. Minerals that have the appearance of candle wax have a waxy luster. Some minerals, such as the mica minerals, have a pearly luster. Diamond is an example of a mineral that has a brilliant luster. A mineral that lacks any shiny appearance has a dull or earthy luster.

streak the color of a mineral in powdered form

luster the way in which a mineral reflects light

cleavage in geology, the tendency of a mineral to split along specific planes of weakness to form smooth, flat surfaces

fracture the manner in which a mineral breaks along either curved or irregular surfaces

Cleavage and Fracture

The tendency of a mineral to split along specific planes of weakness to form smooth, flat surfaces is called **cleavage.** When a mineral has cleavage, as shown in **Figure 3,** it breaks along flat surfaces that generally run parallel to planes of weakness in the crystal structure. For example, the mica minerals, which are sheet silicates, tend to split into parallel sheets.

Many minerals, however, do not break along cleavage planes. Instead, they **fracture,** or break unevenly, into pieces that have curved or irregular surfaces. Mineralogists describe a fracture according to the appearance of the broken surface. For example, a rough surface has an *uneven* or *irregular fracture.* A broken surface that looks like a piece of broken wood has a *splintery* or *fibrous fracture.* Curved surfaces are *conchoidal fractures* (kahng KOYD uhl FRAK chuhr), as shown in **Figure 3.**

Figure 3 ▶ Calcite is a mineral that cleaves in three directions. Quartz tends to have a conchoidal fracture.

Table 1 ▼

Mohs Hardness Scale					
Mineral	**Hardness**	**Common test**	**Mineral**	**Hardness**	**Common test**
Talc	1	easily scratched by fingernail	Feldspar	6	scratches glass, but does not scratch steel
Gypsum	2	can be scratched by fingernail	Quartz	7	easily scratches both glass and steel
Calcite	3	barely can be scratched by copper penny	Topaz	8	scratches quartz
Fluorite	4	easily scratched with steel file or glass	Corundum	9	scratches topaz
Apatite	5	can be scratched by steel file or glass	Diamond	10	scratches everything

Hardness

The measure of the ability of a mineral to resist scratching is called *hardness*. Hardness does not mean "resistance to cleavage or fracture." A diamond, for example, is extremely hard but can be split along cleavage planes more easily than calcite, a softer mineral, can be split.

To determine the hardness of an unknown mineral, you can scratch the mineral against those on the **Mohs hardness scale,** which is shown in **Table 1.** This scale lists 10 minerals in order of increasing hardness. The softest mineral, talc, has a hardness of 1. The hardest mineral, diamond, has a hardness of 10. The difference in hardness between two consecutive minerals is about the same throughout the scale except for the difference between the two hardest minerals. Diamond (10) is much harder than corundum (9), which is listed on the scale before diamond.

Mohs hardness scale the standard scale against which the hardness of minerals is rated

To test an unknown mineral for hardness, you must determine the hardest mineral on the scale that the unknown mineral can scratch. For example, galena can scratch gypsum but not calcite. Thus, galena has a hardness that ranges between 2 and 3 on the Mohs hardness scale. If neither of two minerals scratches the other, the minerals have the same hardness.

The strength of the bonds between the atoms that make up a mineral's internal structure determines the hardness of that mineral. Both diamond and graphite consist only of carbon atoms. However, diamond has a hardness of 10, while the hardness of graphite is between 1 and 2. A diamond's hardness results from a strong crystalline structure in which each carbon atom is firmly bonded to four other carbon atoms. In contrast, the carbon atoms in graphite are arranged in layers that are held together by much weaker chemical bonds.

Reading Check **What determines the hardness of a mineral? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Graphic Organizer **Comparison Table**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Comparison Table" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns with "Diamond," "Corundum," "Graphite," and "Galena." Label the rows with "Hardness" and "Description." Then, fill in the table with details about the hardness and a description of each mineral.

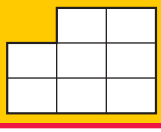
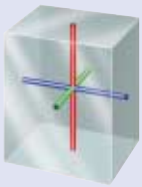
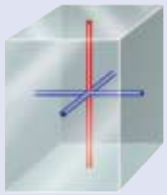
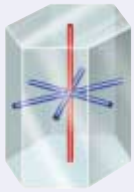
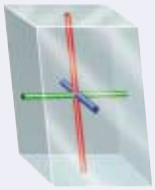
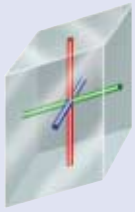
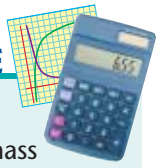


Table 2 ▼

The Six Basic Crystal Systems	
Isometric or Cubic System Three axes of equal length intersect at 90° angles.	**Orthorhombic System** Three axes of unequal length intersect at 90° angles. 
Tetragonal System Three axes intersect at 90° angles. The two horizontal axes are of equal length. The vertical axis is longer or shorter than the horizontal axes. 	**Hexagonal System** Three horizontal axes of the same length intersect at 120° angles. The vertical axis is longer or shorter than the horizontal axes. 
Monoclinic System Two of the three axes of unequal length intersect at 90° angles. The third axis is oblique to the others. 	**Triclinic System** Three axes of unequal length are oblique to one another. 

MATH PRACTICE



Calculating Density

A mineral sample has a mass (m) of 85 g and a volume (V) of 34 cm^3. Use the equation below to calculate the sample's density (D).

$$D = \frac{m}{V}$$

density the ratio of the mass of a substance to the volume of the substance; commonly expressed as grams per cubic centimeter for solids and liquids and as grams per liter for gases

Crystal Shape

A mineral crystal forms in one of six basic shapes, as shown in **Table 2.** A certain mineral always has the same general shape because the atoms that form the mineral's crystals always combine in the same geometric pattern. But the six basic shapes can become more complex as a result of environmental conditions, such as temperature and pressure, during crystal growth.

Density

When handling equal-sized specimens of various minerals, you may notice that some feel heavier than others do. For example, a piece of galena feels heavier than a piece of quartz of the same size does. However, a more precise comparison can be made by measuring the density of a sample. **Density** is the ratio of the mass of a substance to the volume of the substance.

The density of a mineral depends on the kinds of atoms that the mineral has and depends on how closely the atoms are packed. Most of the common minerals in Earth's crust have densities between 2 and 3 g/cm^3. However, the densities of minerals that contain heavy metals, such as lead, uranium, gold, and silver, range from 7 to 20 g/cm^3. Thus, density helps identify heavier minerals more readily than it helps identify lighter ones.

Special Properties of Minerals

All minerals exhibit the properties that were described earlier in this section. However, a few minerals have some additional, special properties that can help identify those minerals.

Fluorescence and Phosphorescence

The mineral calcite is usually white in ordinary light, but in ultraviolet light, calcite often appears red. This ability to glow under ultraviolet light is called *fluorescence*. Fluorescent minerals absorb ultraviolet light and then produce visible light of various colors, as shown in **Figure 4.**

When subjected to ultraviolet light, some minerals will continue to glow after the ultraviolet light is turned off. This property is called *phosphorescence*. It is useful in the mining of phosphorescent minerals such as eucryptite, which is an ore of lithium.

Chatoyancy and Asterism

In reflected light, some minerals display a silky appearance that is called *chatoyancy* (shuh TOY uhn see). This effect is also called the *cat's-eye effect*. The word *chatoyancy* comes from the French word *chat,* which means "cat," and from *oeil,* which means "eye." Chatoyancy is the result of closely packed parallel fibers within in the mineral. A similar effect called *asterism* is the phenomenon in which a six-sided star shape appears when a mineral reflects light.

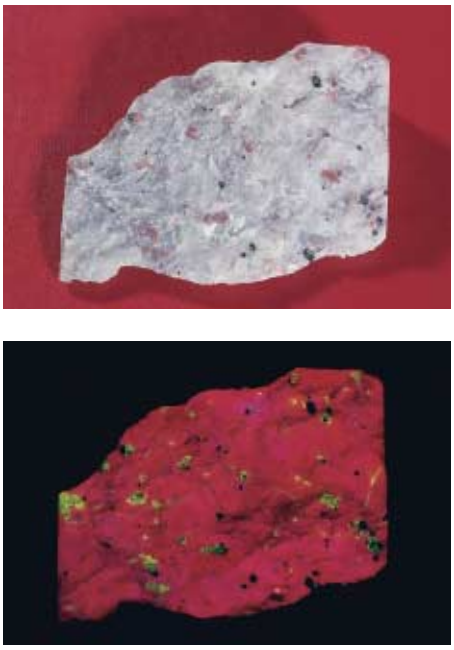


Figure 4 ▶ The fluorescent minerals calcite and willemite within this rock change colors as they are exposed to ordinary light (top) and ultraviolet light (bottom).

Reading Check **What is the difference between chatoyancy and asterism? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 10 min

Determining Density

Procedure

1. Use a **triple-beam balance** to determine the mass of three similarly-sized **mineral samples** that have different masses. Record the mass of each mineral sample.
2. Fill a **graduated cylinder** with **70 mL of water.**
3. Add one mineral sample to the water in the graduated cylinder. Record the new volume after the mineral sample is added to the water.
4. Calculate the volume of the mineral sample by subtracting the 70 mL from the new volume.
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 for the other two mineral samples.
6. Convert the volume of the mineral samples that you calculated in step 4 from milliliters to cubic centimeters by using the conversion: 1 mL = 1 cm^3.

Analysis

1. Calculate the density of each mineral sample by using the following equation:

   density = mass/volume

2. Compare the density of each mineral sample with the density of common minerals in Earth's crust. Compare the density of each mineral sample with minerals that contain a high percentage of heavy metals.
3. Do any of the mineral samples contain a high percentage of heavy metals? Explain your answer.

Figure 5 ▶ Some forms of the mineral calcite exhibit double refraction when light rays enter the crystal and split.

Double Refraction

Light rays bend as they pass through transparent minerals. This bending of light rays as they pass from one substance, such as air, to another, such as a mineral, is called *refraction*. Crystals of calcite and some other transparent minerals bend light in such a way that they produce a double image of any object viewed through them, as shown in **Figure 5.** This property is called *double refraction*. Double refraction takes place because light rays are split into two parts as they enter the crystal.

Magnetism

Magnets may attract small particles of some minerals that contain iron. Those minerals are also sometimes magnetic. In general, nonsilicate minerals that contain iron, such as magnetite, are more likely to be magnetic than nonsilicate minerals are. Lodestone is a form of magnetite. Like a bar magnet, some pieces of lodestone have a north pole at one end and a south pole at the other. The needles of the first magnetic compasses were made of tiny slivers of lodestone.

Radioactivity

Some minerals have a property known as *radioactivity*. The arrangement of protons and neutrons in the nuclei of some atoms is unstable. Radioactivity results as unstable nuclei decay over time into stable nuclei by releasing particles and energy. A *Geiger counter* can be used to detect the released particles and, thus, to identify minerals that are radioactive. Uranium, U, and radium, Ra, are examples of radioactive elements. Pitchblende is the most common mineral that contains uranium. Other uranium-bearing minerals are carnotite, uraninite, and autunite.

Section 2 Review

1. **Describe** seven physical properties that help distinguish one mineral from another.
2. **Identify** the two main types of luster.
3. **Summarize** how you would determine the hardness of an unidentified mineral sample.
4. **Explain** why color is an unreliable clue to the identity of a mineral.
5. **List** five special properties that may help identify certain minerals.
6. **Explain** how magnetism can be useful for identifying minerals.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Evaluating Data** An unknown metal has a black streak and a density of 18 g/cm^3. Is the mineral more likely to be metallic or nonmetallic?
8. **Analyzing Methods** Explain how phosphorescence is helpful in mining eucryptite. Describe other ways in which phosphorescent minerals might be used.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *luster, streak, fracture, hardness, Mohs hardness scale, streak plate, nonmetallic luster, metallic luster,* and *conchoidal fracture.*

Chapter 5

Highlights

Sections

1 What Is a Mineral?

Key Terms

mineral, 103
silicate mineral, 104
nonsilicate mineral, 105
crystal, 106
silicon-oxygen tetrahedron, 106

Key Concepts

- A mineral is a natural, usually inorganic, crystalline solid that has a characteristic chemical composition, a regularly repeating internal structure, and a characteristic set of physical properties.
- The two main groups of minerals are silicate minerals and nonsilicate minerals.
- The six major groups of nonsilicate minerals are carbonates, halides, native elements, oxides, sulfates, and sulfides.
- Silicate minerals have six types of crystalline structures based on the arrangement of the silicon-oxygen tetrahedra.

2 Identifying Minerals

mineralogist, 109
streak, 110
luster, 110
cleavage, 110
fracture, 110
Mohs hardness scale, 111
density, 112

- Seven physical properties that help distinguish one mineral from another are color, streak, luster, cleavage and fracture, hardness, crystal shape, and density.
- Special properties such as fluorescence and phosphorescence, chatoyancy and asterism, double refraction, magnetism, and radioactivity can aid in the identification of certain minerals.

Chapter 5 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *silicon-oxygen tetrahedron*
2. *mineral*
3. *Mohs hardness scale*
4. *cleavage*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

5. *mineral* and *crystal*
6. *silicate mineral* and *nonsilicate mineral*
7. *luster* and *streak*
8. *fluorescence* and *phosphorescence*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. The most common silicate minerals are the
   a. feldspars. **c.** carbonates.
   b. halides. **d.** sulfates.

10. Ninety-six percent of Earth's crust is made up of
    a. sulfur and lead.
    b. silicate minerals.
    c. copper and aluminum.
    d. nonsilicate minerals.

11. An example of a mineral that has a basic structure consisting of isolated tetrahedra linked by atoms of other elements is
    a. mica. **c.** quartz.
    b. olivine. **d.** feldspar.

12. When two single chains of tetrahedra bond to each other, the result is called a
    a. single-chain silicate.
    b. sheet silicate.
    c. framework silicate.
    d. double-chain silicate.

13. The words *waxy, pearly,* and *dull* describe a mineral's
    a. luster. **c.** streak.
    b. hardness. **d.** fluorescence.

14. The words *uneven* and *splintery* describe a mineral's
    a. cleavage. **c.** hardness.
    b. fracture. **d.** luster.

15. The ratio of a mineral's mass to its volume is the mineral's
    a. atomic weight. **c.** mass.
    b. density. **d.** weight.

16. Double refraction is a property of some crystals of
    a. mica. **c.** calcite.
    b. feldspar. **d.** galena.

Short Answer

17. Describe the six major classes of nonsilicate minerals.

18. List the 10 most common rock-forming minerals.

19. Why do minerals that have the nonsilicate crystalline structure called *closest packing* have high density?

20. Which of the two main groups of minerals is more abundant in Earth's crust?

21. Which of the following mineral groups, if any, contain silicon: carbonates, halides, or sulfides?

22. Describe the tetrahedral arrangement of olivine.

23. Summarize the characteristics that a substance must have to be classified as a mineral.

24. How many oxygen ions and silicon ions are in a silicon-oxygen tetrahedron?

Critical Thinking

25. Classifying Information Natural gas is a substance that occurs naturally in Earth's crust. Is it a mineral? Explain your answer.

26. Making Comparisons Which of the following are you more likely to find in Earth's crust: the silicates feldspar and quartz or the non-silicates copper and iron? Explain your answer.

27. Applying Ideas Iron pyrite, FeS_2, is called *fool's gold* because it looks a lot like gold. What simple test could you use to determine whether a mineral sample is gold or pyrite? Explain what the test would show.

28. Drawing Conclusions Can you determine conclusively that an unknown substance contains magnetite by using only a magnet? Explain your answer.

Concept Mapping

29. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *mineral, silicate mineral, nonsilicate mineral, silicon-oxygen tetrahedron, color, density, crystal shape, magnetism, native element, sulfate,* and *phosphorescence.*

Math Skills

30. Applying Quantities Hematite, Fe_2O_3, has three atoms of oxygen and two atoms of iron in each molecule. What percentage of the atoms in a hematite molecule are oxygen atoms?

31. Making Calculations A sample of olivine contains 3.4 billion silicon-oxygen tetrahedra. How many oxygen atoms are in the sample?

32. Applying Quantities A mineral sample has a mass of 51 g and a volume of 15 cm^3. What is the density of the mineral sample?

Writing Skills

33. Writing from Research Use the Internet or your school library to find a mineral map of the United States. Write a brief report that outlines how the minerals in your state are discovered and mined.

34. Communicating Main Ideas Write and illustrate an essay that explains how six different crystal structures form from silicon-oxygen tetrahedra.

Interpreting Graphics

This table provides information about the eight most abundant elements in Earth's crust. Use the table to answer the questions that follow.

The Eight Most Abundant Chemicals in Earth's Crust

Element	Chemical symbol	Weight (% of Earth's crust)	Volume (% of Earth's crust)*
Oxygen	O	46.60	93.8
Silicon	Si	27.72	0.9
Aluminum	Al	8.13	0.5
Iron	Fe	5.00	0.4
Calcium	Ca	3.63	1.0
Sodium	Na	2.83	1.3
Potassium	K	2.59	1.8
Magnesium	Mg	2.09	0.3
	Total	98.59	100.0

*The volume of Earth's crust comprised by all other elements is so small that it is essentially 0% when the numbers are rounded to the nearest tenth of a percent.

35. What percentage of the weight of Earth's crust is made of silicon?

36. Oxygen makes up 93.8% of Earth's crust by volume, but oxygen is only 46.60% of Earth's crust by weight. How is this possible?

37. By comparing the volume and weight percentages of aluminum and calcium, determine which element has the higher density.

Chapter 5 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the number of the correct answer.**

1 Coal is
A. organic and a mineral
B. inorganic and a mineral
C. organic and not a mineral
D. inorganic and not a mineral

2 Which of the following is one of the 10 rock-forming minerals that make up 90% of the mass of Earth's crust?
A. quartz
B. fluorite
C. copper
D. talc

3 Minerals can be identified by all of the following properties *except*
A. specimen color
B. specimen shape
C. specimen hardness
D. specimen luster

4 All minerals in Earth's crust
A. have a crystalline structure
B. are classified as ring silicates
C. are classified as pyroxenes or amphiboles
D. have no silicon in their tetrahedral structure

5 Which mineral can be scratched by a fingernail that has a hardness of 2.5 on the Mohs scale?
A. diamond
B. quartz
C. topaz
D. talc

Directions (6–8): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 Carbonates, halides, native elements, oxides, sulfates, and sulfides are classes of what mineral group?

7 What mineral is made up of *only* the elements oxygen and silicon?

8 What property is a mineral said to have when a person is able to view double images through it?

Reading Skills

Directions (9–11): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Native American Copper

In North America, copper was mined at least 6,700 years ago by the Native Americans who lived on Michigan's upper peninsula. Much of this mining took place on the Isle Royale, an island located in the waters of Lake Superior.

These ancient people removed copper from the rock by using stone hammers and wedges. The rock was sometimes heated to make breaking it easier. Copper that was mined was used to make a wide variety of items for the Native Americans including jewelry, tools, weapons, fish hooks, and other objects. These objects were often marked with intricate designs. The copper mined at the Lake Superior site was traded over long distances along ancient trade routes. Copper objects from the region have been found in Ohio, Florida, the Southwest, and the Northwest.

9 According to the passage, Native Americans who mined copper
A. used the mineral as a form of currency when buying goods from other tribes
B. traded copper objects with other Native American tribes over a large area
C. used the mineral to produce vastly superior weapons and armor
D. sold it to the Native Americans living around Lake Superior

10 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
A. Copper is a very strong metal and can be forged into extremely strong items.
B. Copper mining in the ancient world was only common in North America.
C. Copper is a useful metal that can be forged into a wide variety of goods.
D. Copper is a weak metal, and no items made by the ancient Native Americans remain.

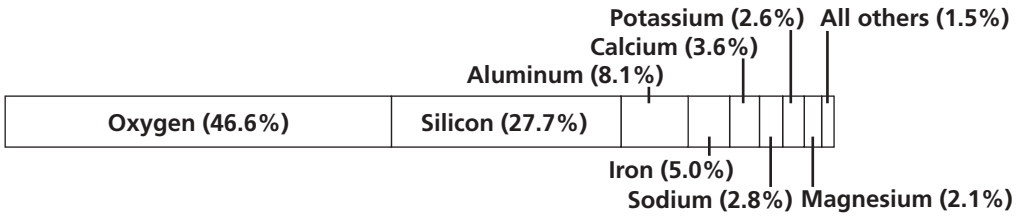
11 What are some properties of copper that might have made the metal useful to Native Americans?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (12–15): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

Base your answers to questions 12 and 13 on the figure below, which shows the abundance of various elements in Earth's crust.

Elements in Earth's Crust



12 Hematite is composed of oxygen and what other element?

A. calcium
B. aluminum
C. sodium
D. iron

13 Silicate minerals make up about 95% of Earth's crust. However, the elements present in all minerals in this group, oxygen and silicon, make up a significantly smaller percentage of the weight of Earth's crust. How can this discrepancy be explained?

Base your answers to questions 14 and 15 on the table below, which provides information about silicate minerals.

Common Silicates

Mineral	Idealized formula	Cleavage
Olivine	$(Mg,Fe)_2SiO_4$	none
Pyroxene group	$(Mg,Fe)SiO_3$	two planes at right angles
Amphibole group	$Ca_2(Mg,Fe)_5Si_8O_{22}(OH)_2$	two planes at 60° and 120°
Micas, biotite	$K(Mg,Fe)_3AlSi_3O_{10}(OH)_2$	one plane
Micas, muscovite	$KAl_2(AlSi_3O_{10})(OH)_2$	one plane
Feldspars, orthoclase	$KAlSi_3O_8$	two planes at 90°
Feldspars, plagioclase	$(Ca,Na)AlSi_3O_8$	two planes at 90°
Quartz	SiO_2	none

14 How is the cleavage of amphibole minerals similar to that of feldspar minerals?

A. Both have two planes.
B. Both have one plane.
C. Both cleave at 60°.
D. Both cleave at 90°.

15 Which minerals are ferromagnesian? How can you identify these minerals? Predict how the chemical composition of ferromagnesian minerals affects the minerals' density and magnetic properties.

Test TIP

If a question or an answer choice contains an unfamiliar term, try to break the word into parts to determine its meaning.

Mineral Identification

Objectives

- **Identify** several unknown mineral samples.
- **Evaluate** which properties of minerals are most useful in identifying mineral samples.

Materials

- file, steel
- Guide to Common Minerals (in the Reference Tables section of the Appendix)
- hand lens
- mineral samples (5)
- penny, copper
- square, glass
- streak plate

Safety

A mineral identification key can be used to compare the properties of minerals so that unknown mineral samples can be identified. Mineral properties that are often used in mineral identification keys are color, hardness, streak, luster, cleavage, and fracture. Hardness is determined by a scratch test. The Mohs hardness scale classifies minerals from 1 (soft) to 10 (hard). Streak is the color of a mineral in a finely powdered form. The streak shows less variation than the color of a sample does and thus is more useful in identification. The luster of a mineral is either metallic (having an appearance of metals) or nonmetallic. Cleavage is the tendency of a mineral to split along a plane. Planes may be in several directions. Other minerals break into irregular fragments in a process called *fracture.* In this lab, you will use these properties to classify several mineral samples.

PROCEDURE

1. Make a table with columns for sample number, color/luster, hardness, streak, cleavage/fracture, and mineral name.
2. Observe and record in your table the color of each mineral sample. Note whether the luster of each mineral is metallic or nonmetallic.

Step 4

Sample number	Color/ luster	Hardness	Streak	Cleavage/ fracture	Mineral name
1					
2					
3					
4					
5					

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK

3. Rub each mineral against the streak plate, and determine the color of the mineral's streak. Record your observations.
4. Using a fingernail, copper penny, glass square, and steel file, test each mineral to determine its hardness based on the Mohs hardness scale. Arrange the minerals in order of hardness. Record your observations in your table.
5. Determine whether the surface of each mineral displays cleavage or fracture. Record your observations.
6. Use the Guide to Common Minerals in the Reference Tables section of the Appendix to help you identify the mineral samples. Remember that samples of the same mineral will vary somewhat.

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

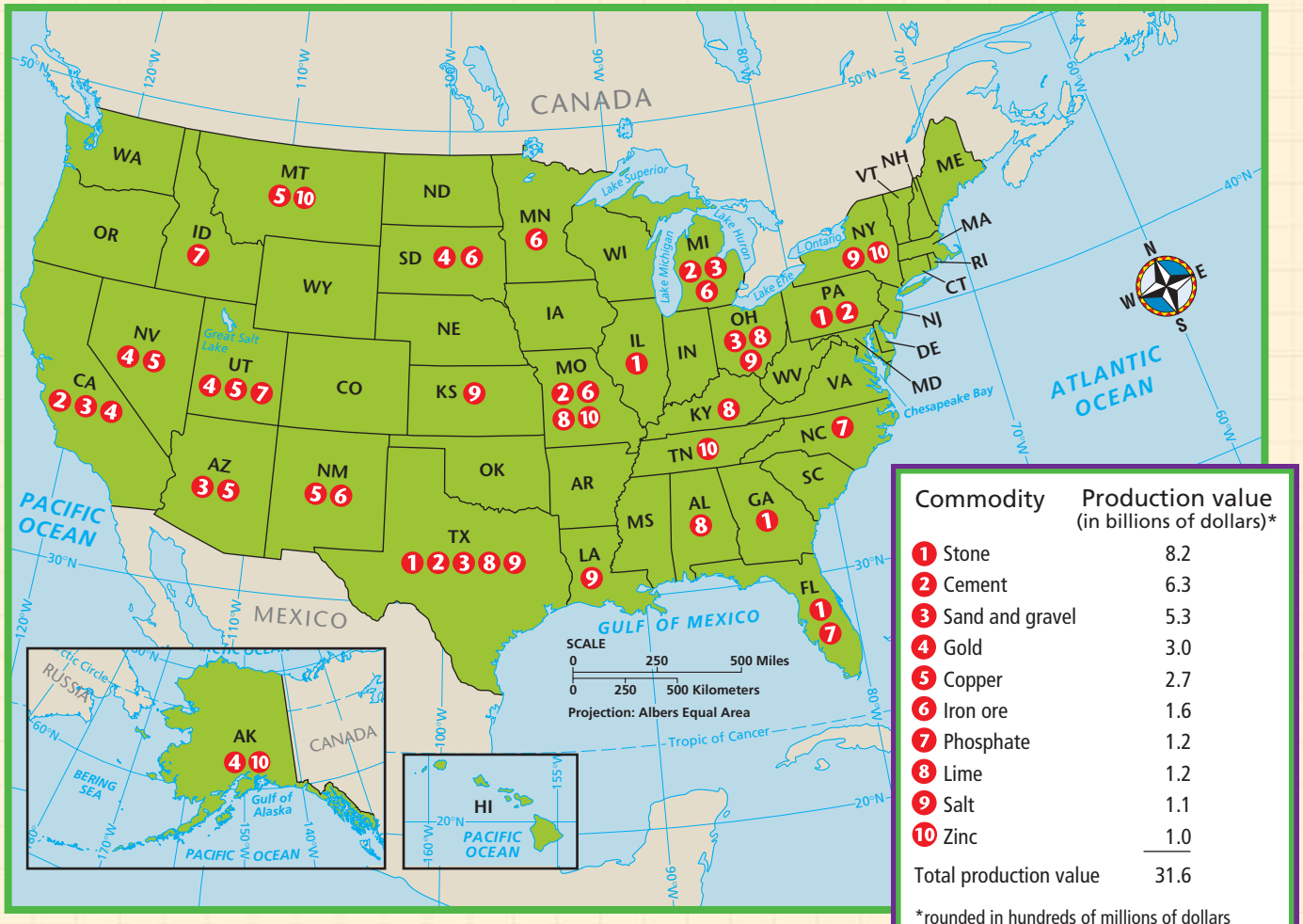
1. **Analyzing Results** For each mineral, compare the streak with the color of the mineral. Which minerals have the same color as their streak? Which do not?
2. **Classifying Information** Of the mineral samples you identified, how many were silicate minerals? How many were nonsilicate minerals?
3. **Analyzing Methods** Did you find any properties that were especially useful or especially not useful in identifying each sample? Identify these properties, and explain why they were or were not useful.
4. **Evaluating Methods** If you had to write a manual to explain step by step how to identify minerals, in what order would you test different properties? Explain your answer.

Extension

1. **Understanding Relationships** Corundum, rubies, and sapphires have different colors but are considered to be the same mineral. Diamonds and graphite are made of the element carbon but are not considered to be the same mineral. Research these minerals, and explain why they are classified in this way.

MAPS in Action

Rock and Mineral Production in the United States



Commodity	Production value (in billions of dollars)*
1 Stone	8.2
2 Cement	6.3
3 Sand and gravel	5.3
4 Gold	3.0
5 Copper	2.7
6 Iron ore	1.6
7 Phosphate	1.2
8 Lime	1.2
9 Salt	1.1
10 Zinc	1.0
Total production value	31.6

*rounded in hundreds of millions of dollars

Map Skills Activity

This map shows the distribution of the top 10 rock and mineral commodities produced in the United States in 1999. The key provides production values for these commodities. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using a Key** Which commodity had the highest production value in 1999?

2. **Evaluating Data** Gold, copper, iron ore, and zinc are metals in the top 10 mineral commodities produced in 1999. What percentage of the total 1999 production value do these metals represent? Which states produced these metals in 1999?

3. **Using a Key** Find your state on the map. Which of the top 10 mineral commodities, if any, were produced in your state in 1999?

4. **Evaluating Data** Stone, sand, and gravel are collectively known as *aggregates*. What percentage of the total 1999 production value of the 10 commodities listed do aggregates represent? Which states were the major producers of aggregates in 1999?

5. **Analyzing Relationships** If Texas were not a producer of stone, which state would be the closest one from which people in Texas could acquire stone?

Mining Engineer

"Without mining, we would not have cars, electricity, computers, . . . or any of the items that we often take for granted in today's society."

—Jami Girard-Dwyer

"At first, I wasn't interested in being a mining engineer," remembers Jami Girard-Dwyer. "I wanted to get a degree in computer science and write programs. Then, I took a course entitled 'Introduction to Mining Engineering' and got a summer job at a nearby gold mine. I became fascinated with the process of extracting ore from Earth and coming up with a finished product."

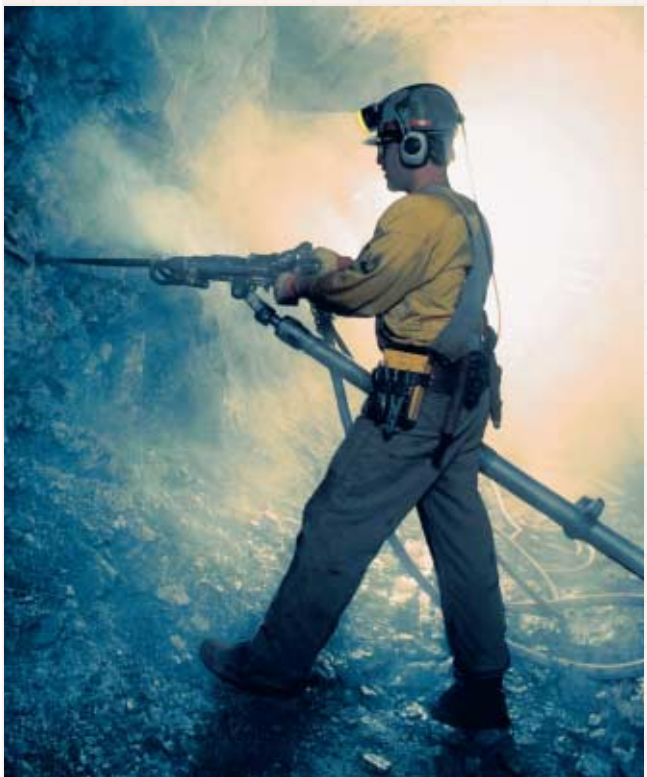
Computers and Mining

Girard-Dwyer realized that her knowledge of computers had many applications in the mining industry. "I began writing computer programs to help mining operations work more efficiently," she recalls. "I became very interested in learning how mine openings could be designed to ensure that they wouldn't collapse on workers or equipment."

Rewards

Now a mining engineer for the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), Girard-Dwyer helps keep miners safe. "The most rewarding part of my job is helping mines develop safer environments so that nobody gets hurt," she says. "I study the health and safety of the mine workers. I also do research to help prevent accidents, injuries, and fatalities." Her work frequently requires her to travel to visit mines. She says, "At a mine site, I will install monitoring equipment and computers to collect data about a particular type of problem. I will then use computers to analyze the data and make recommendations to the mining company based on the results."

Mines may be located on the surface of Earth (open-pit or strip mines) or thousands of feet underground. "Metals such as gold or silver often come to mind when people think of mining," says Girard-Dwyer. "But there are also mines that recover coal for creating energy, silica for making glass, and special industrial minerals for manufacturing everything from kitty litter to toothpaste!" Each mining operation uses unique methods to recover the minerals.



◀ Miners, such as this one drilling for coal in Utah, rely on mining engineers like Girard-Dwyer to help develop safe working environments.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Careers in Earth Science
SciLinks code: HQ60222

Chapter 6 Rocks

Sections

1 Rocks and the Rock Cycle
2 Igneous Rock
3 Sedimentary Rock
4 Metamorphic Rock

What You'll Learn

- How the processes that form rock determine the properties of rocks
- How scientists classify rocks

Why It's Relevant

Understanding how rocks form provides a basis for understanding the properties of different types of rocks.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Pyramid Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Pyramid" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the sides of the pyramid with "Igneous rock," "Sedimentary rock," and "Metamorphic rock." As you read the chapter, define each type of rock, and write characteristics of each type of rock on the appropriate pyramid side.

▶ Eagletail Peak stands more than 1005 m above Sonoran Desert in Arizona and is composed of sedimentary rock. Sedimentary rock is one of the three major types of rock.

Section 1 Rocks and the Rock Cycle

The material that makes up the solid parts of Earth is known as *rock*. Rock can be a collection of one or more minerals, or rock can be made of solid organic matter. In some cases, rock is made of mineral matter that is not crystalline, such as glass. Geologists study the forces and processes that form and change the rocks of Earth's crust. Based on these studies, geologists have classified rocks into three major types by the way the rocks form.

OBJECTIVES

- **Identify** the three major types of rock, and explain how each type forms.
- **Summarize** the steps in the rock cycle.
- **Explain** Bowen's reaction series.
- **Summarize** the factors that affect the stability of rocks.

KEY TERMS

rock cycle
Bowen's reaction series

Three Major Types of Rock

Studies of volcanic activity provide information about the formation of one rock type—*igneous rock*. The word *igneous* is derived from a Latin term that means "from fire." Igneous rock forms when *magma*, or molten rock, cools and hardens. Magma is called *lava* when it is exposed at Earth's surface.

Agents of erosion, such as wind and waves, break down all types of rock into small fragments. Rocks, mineral crystals, and organic matter that have been broken into fragments are known as *sediment*. Sediment is carried away and deposited by water, ice, and wind. When sediment deposits are compressed or cemented together and harden, *sedimentary rock* forms.

Certain forces and processes, including tremendous pressure, extreme heat, and chemical processes, also can change the form of existing rock. The rock that forms when existing rock is altered is *metamorphic rock*. The word *metamorphic* means "changed form." **Figure 1** shows an example of each major type of rock.

Granite (igneous)

Sandstone (sedimentary)

Gneiss (metamorphic)

Figure 1 ▶ These rocks are examples of the three major rock types.

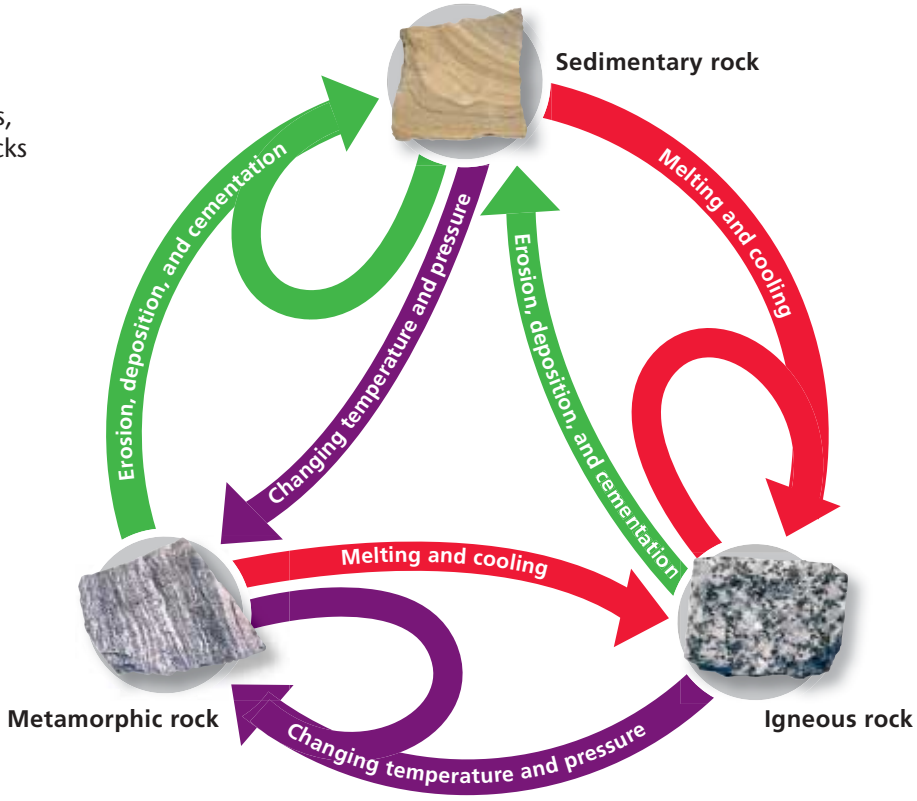


Figure 2 ▶ The rock cycle illustrates the changes that igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic rocks undergo.

The Rock Cycle

Any of the three major types of rock can be changed into another of the three types. Geologic forces and processes cause rock to change from one type to another. This series of changes is called the **rock cycle,** which is shown in **Figure 2.**

rock cycle the series of processes in which rock forms, changes from one type to another, is destroyed, and forms again by geological processes

One starting point for examining the steps of the rock cycle is igneous rock. When a body of igneous rock is exposed at Earth's surface, a number of processes break down the igneous rock into sediment. When sediment from igneous rocks is compacted or cemented, the sediment becomes sedimentary rock. Then, if sedimentary rocks are subjected to changes in temperature and pressure, the rocks may become metamorphic rocks. Under certain temperature and pressure conditions, the metamorphic rock will melt and form magma. Then, if the magma cools, new igneous rock will form.

Much of the rock in Earth's continental crust has probably passed through the rock cycle many times during Earth's history. However, as **Figure 2** shows, a particular body of rock does not always pass through each stage of the rock cycle. For example, igneous rock may never be exposed at Earth's surface where the rock could change into sediment. Instead, the igneous rock may change directly into metamorphic rock while still beneath Earth's surface. Sedimentary rock may be broken down at Earth's surface, and the sediment may become another sedimentary rock. Metamorphic rock can be altered by heat and pressure to form a different type of metamorphic rock.

SCILINKS
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: The Rock Cycle
SciLinks code: HQ61319

Properties of Rocks

All rock has physical and chemical properties that are determined by how and where the rock formed. The physical characteristics of rock reflect the chemical composition of the rock as a whole and of the individual minerals that make up the rock. The rate at which rock weathers and the way that rock breaks apart are determined by the chemical stability of the minerals in the rock. The way that minerals and rocks form is related to the stability of the rock.

Bowen's Reaction Series

In the early 1900s, a Canadian geologist named N. L. Bowen began studying how minerals crystallize from magma. He learned that as magma cools, certain minerals tend to crystallize first. As these minerals form, they remove specific elements from the magma, which changes the magma's composition. The changing composition of the magma allows different minerals that contain different elements to form. Thus, different minerals form at different times during the solidification (cooling) of magma, and they generally form in the same order.

In 1928, Bowen proposed a simplified pattern that explains the order in which minerals form as magma solidifies. This simplified flow chart is known as **Bowen's reaction series** and is shown in **Figure 3.** According to Bowen's hypothesis, minerals form in one of two ways. The first way is characterized by a gradual, continuous formation of minerals that have similar chemical compositions. The second way is characterized by sudden changes in mineral types. The pattern of mineral formation depends on the chemical composition of the magma.

Reading Check **Summarize Bowen's reaction series. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Graphic Organizer **Chain-of-Events Chart**

Create the **Graphic Organizer** entitled "Chain-of-Events Chart" in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Then, fill in the chart with each step of the discontinuous reaction series of Bowen's reaction series.

Bowen's reaction series the simplified pattern that illustrates the order in which minerals crystallize from cooling magma according to their chemical composition and melting point

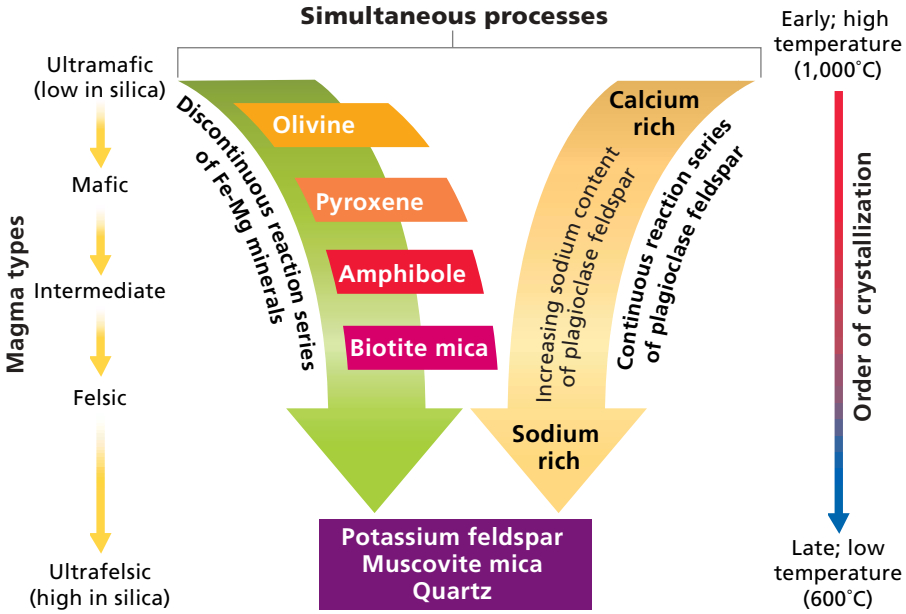


Figure 3 ▶ Different minerals crystallize at different times during the solidification of magma. Thus, as minerals crystallize from magma, the composition of the magma changes.

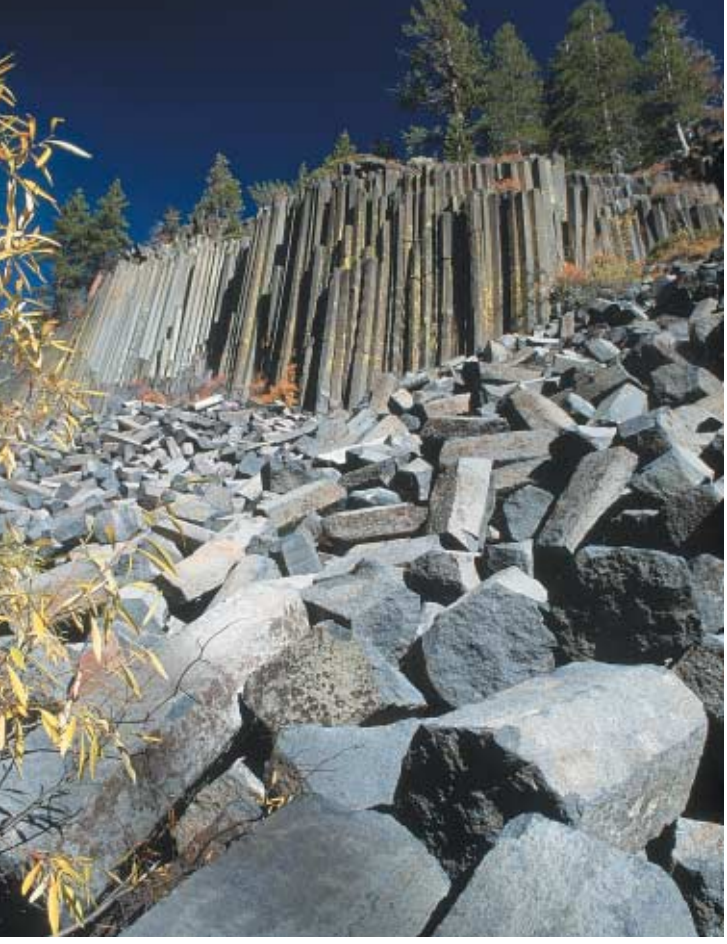


Figure 4 ▶ Devils Postpile National Monument in California is one of the world's finest examples of the igneous rock structures known as columnar joints.

Chemical Stability of Minerals

The rate at which a mineral chemically breaks down is dependent on the chemical stability of the mineral. *Chemical stability* is a measure of the tendency of a chemical compound to maintain its original chemical composition rather than break down to form a different chemical. The chemical stability of minerals is dependent on the strength of the chemical bonds between atoms in the mineral. In general, the minerals that are most resistant to weathering are the minerals that have the highest number of bonds between the elements silicon, Si, and oxygen, O.

Physical Stability of Rocks

Rocks have natural zones of weakness that are determined by how and where the rocks form. For example, sedimentary rocks may form as a series of layers of sediment. These rocks tend to break between layers. Some metamorphic rocks also tend to break in layers that form as the minerals in the rocks align during metamorphism.

Massive igneous rock structures commonly have evenly spaced zones of weakness, called *joints,* that form as the rock cools and contracts. Devils Postpile, shown in **Figure 4,** is igneous rock that has joints that cause the rock to break into columns.

Zones of weakness may also form when the rock is under intense pressure inside Earth. When rock that formed under intense pressure is uplifted to Earth's surface, decreased pressure allows the joints and fractures to open. Once these weaknesses are exposed to air and water, the processes of chemical and physical weathering begin.

Section 1 Review

1. **Identify** the three major types of rock.
2. **Explain** how each major type of rock forms.
3. **Describe** the steps in the rock cycle.
4. **Summarize** Bowen's reaction series.
5. **Explain** how the chemical stability of a mineral is affected by the bonding of the atoms in the mineral.
6. **Describe** how the conditions under which rocks form affect the physical stability of rocks.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Applying Ideas** Does every rock go through the complete rock cycle by changing from igneous rock to sedimentary rock, to metamorphic rock, and then back to igneous rock? Explain your answer.
8. **Identifying Relationships** How could a sedimentary rock provide evidence that the rock cycle exists?

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *rock, igneous rock, sedimentary rock, metamorphic rock,* and *rock cycle.*

Section 2 Igneous Rock

When magma cools and hardens, it forms **igneous rock.** Because minerals crystallize as igneous rock forms from magma, most igneous rock can be identified as *crystalline,* or made of crystals. The chemical composition of minerals in the rock and the rock's texure determine the identity of the igneous rock.

OBJECTIVES

- **Summarize** three factors that affect whether rock melts.
- **Describe** how the cooling rate of magma and lava affects the texture of igneous rocks.
- **Classify** igneous rocks according to their composition and texture.
- **Describe** intrusive and extrusive igneous rock structures.

KEY TERMS

igneous rock
intrusive igneous rock
extrusive igneous rock
felsic
mafic

The Formation of Magma

Magma forms when rock melts. The three factors that affect whether rock melts include temperature, pressure, and the presence of fluids in the rock. Rock melts when the temperature of the rock increases to above the melting point of minerals in the rock. The melting temperature is determined by the chemical composition of the minerals in the rock. Rock also melts when excess pressure is removed from rock that is hotter than its melting point. Rock may melt when fluids such as water are added to hot rock. The addition of fluids generally decreases the melting point of certain minerals in the rock, which can cause those minerals to melt.

igneous rock rock that forms when magma cools and solidifies

Partial Melting

Different minerals have different melting points, and minerals that have lower melting points are the first minerals to melt. When the first minerals melt, the magma that forms has a specific composition. As the temperature increases and as other minerals melt, the magma's composition changes. The process by which different minerals in rock melt at different temperatures is called *partial melting.* Partial melting is shown in **Figure 1.**

Figure 1 ▶ How Magma Forms by Partial Melting

This solid rock contains the minerals quartz (yellow), feldspar (gray), biotite (brown), and hornblende (green).

The first minerals that melt are quartz and some types of feldspars. The orange background represents magma.

Minerals such as biotite and hornblende generally melt last, which changes the composition of the magma.

Figure 2 ▶ As the temperature decreases, the first minerals to crystallize from magma are minerals that have the highest freezing points, such as biotite and hornblende. As the magma changes composition and cools, minerals that have lower freezing points form.

Fractional Crystallization

When magma cools, the cooling process is the reverse of the process of partial melting. Chemicals in magma combine to form minerals, and each mineral has a different freezing point. Minerals that have the highest freezing points crystallize first. As those minerals crystallize, they remove specific chemicals from the magma and change the composition of the magma. As the composition changes, new minerals begin to form. The crystallization and removal of different minerals from the cooling magma is called *fractional crystallization* and is shown in **Figure 2.**

Minerals that form during fractional crystallization tend to settle to the bottom of the magma chamber or to stick to the ceiling and walls of the magma chamber. Crystals that form early in the process are commonly the largest because they have the longest time to grow. In some crystals, the chemical composition of the inner part of the crystal differs from the composition of the outer parts of the crystal. This difference occurs because the magma's composition changed while the crystal was growing.

QuickLAB 20 min

Crystal Formation

Procedure

1. Add the following until **three glass jars** are 2/3 full: glass 1—water and **ice cubes;** glass 2—water at room temperature; and glass 3—hot tap water.
2. In a small **sauce pan,** mix **120 mL of Epsom salts** in **120 mL of water.** Heat the mixture on a **hot plate** over low heat. Do not let the mixture boil. Stir the mixture with a **spoon or stirring rod** until no more crystals dissolve.
3. Using a **funnel,** carefully pour equal amounts of the Epsom salts mixture into **three test tubes.** Use **tongs** to steady the test tubes as you pour. Drop a few crystals of Epsom salt into each test tube, and gently shake each one. Place one test tube into each glass jar.
4. Observe the solutions as they cool for 15 minutes. Let the glasses sit overnight, and examine the solutions again after 24 hours.

Analysis

1. In which test tube are the crystals the largest?
2. In which test tube are the crystals the smallest?
3. How does the rate of cooling affect the size of the crystals that form? Explain your answer.
4. How are the differing rates of crystal formation you observed related to igneous rock formation?
5. How would you change the procedure to obtain larger crystals of Epsom salts? Explain your answer.

Textures of Igneous Rocks

Igneous rocks are classified according to where magma cools and hardens. Magma that cools deep inside the crust forms **intrusive igneous rock.** The magma that forms these rocks intrudes, or enters, into other rock masses beneath Earth's surface. The magma then slowly cools and hardens. Lava that cools at Earth's surface forms **extrusive igneous rock.**

Intrusive and extrusive igneous rocks differ from each other not only in where they form but also in the size of their crystals or grains. The texture of igneous rock is determined by the size of the crystals in the rock. The size of the crystals is determined mainly by the cooling rate of the magma. Examples of different textures of igneous rocks are shown in **Figure 3.**

intrusive igneous rock rock formed from the cooling and solidification of magma beneath Earth's surface

extrusive igneous rock rock that forms from the cooling and solidification of lava at Earth's surface

Coarse-Grained Igneous Rock

Intrusive igneous rocks commonly have large mineral crystals. The slow loss of heat allows the minerals in the cooling magma to form large, well-developed crystals. Igneous rocks that are composed of large mineral grains are described as having a *coarse-grained texture*. An example of a coarse-grained igneous rock is granite. The upper part of the continental crust is made mostly of granite.

Fine-Grained Igneous Rock

Many extrusive igneous rocks are composed of small mineral grains that cannot be seen by the unaided eye. Because these rocks form when magma cools rapidly, large crystals are unable to form. Igneous rocks that are composed of small crystals are described as having a *fine-grained texture*. Examples of common fine-grained igneous rocks are basalt and rhyolite (RIE uh LIET).

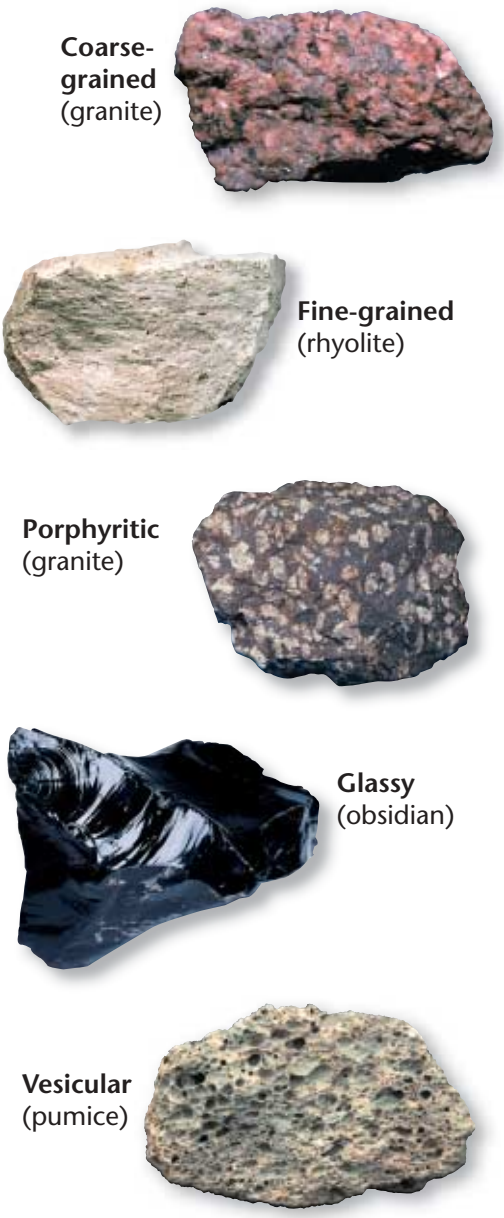
Other Igneous Rock Textures

Some igneous rock forms when magma cools slowly at first but then cools more rapidly as it nears Earth's surface. This type of cooling produces large crystals embedded within a mass of smaller ones. Igneous rock that has a mixture of large and small crystals has a *porphyritic texture* (POHR fuh RIT ik TEKS chuhr).

When a highly viscous magma cools quickly, few crystals are able to grow. If such magma contains a very small percentage of dissolved gases, a rock that has a *glassy* texture called obsidian forms. When this type of magma contains a large percentage of dissolved gases and cools rapidly, the gases become trapped as bubbles in the rock that forms. The rapid cooling process produces a rock full of holes called *vesicles,* such as those in pumice. This type of rock is said to have a *vesicular texture*.

Reading Check **What is the difference between fine-grained and coarse-grained igneous rock? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 3 ▶ Igneous Rock Textures



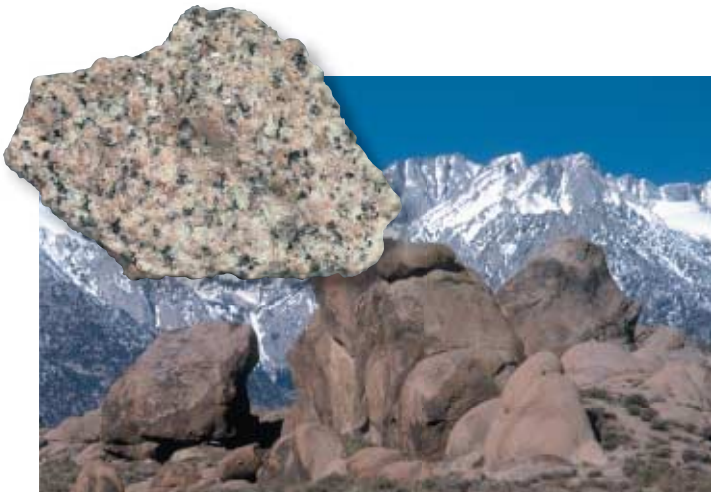


Figure 4 ▶ Felsic rocks, such as the outcropping and hand sample shown above (left), have light coloring. Mafic rocks (right) are usually darker in color.

Composition of Igneous Rocks

The mineral composition of an igneous rock is determined by the chemical composition of the magma from which the rock formed. Each type of igneous rock has a specific mineral composition. Geologists divide igneous rock into three families—felsic, mafic (MAF ik), and intermediate. Each of the three families has a different mineral composition. Examples of rock from the felsic and mafic families are shown in **Figure 4.**

felsic describes magma or igneous rock that is rich in feldspars and silica and that is generally light in color

mafic describes magma or igneous rock that is rich in magnesium and iron and that is generally dark in color

Felsic Rock

Rock in the **felsic** family forms from magma that contains a large proportion of silica. Felsic rock generally has the light coloring of its main mineral components, potassium feldspar and quartz. Felsic rock commonly also contains plagioclase feldspar, biotite mica, and muscovite mica. The felsic family includes many common rocks, such as granite, rhyolite, obsidian, and pumice.

Mafic Rock

Rock in the **mafic** family forms from magma that contains lower proportions of silica than felsic rock does and that is rich in iron and magnesium. The main mineral components of rock in this family are plagioclase feldspar and pyroxene minerals. Mafic rock may also include dark-colored *ferromagnesian minerals*, such as hornblende. These ferromagnesian components, as well as the mineral olivine, give mafic rock a dark color. The mafic family includes the common rocks basalt and gabbro.

Intermediate Rocks

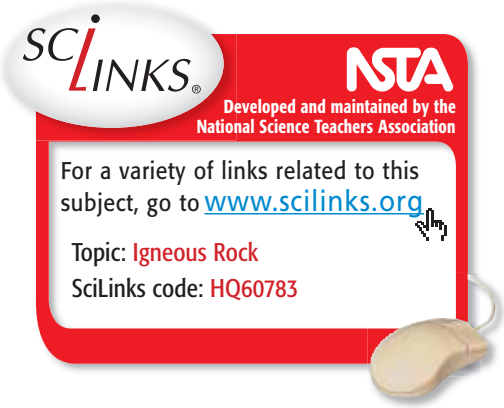
Rocks of the intermediate family are made up of the minerals plagioclase feldspar, hornblende, pyroxene, and biotite mica. Rocks in the intermediate family contain lower proportions of silica than rocks in the felsic family do but contain higher proportions of silica than rocks in the mafic family contain. Rocks in the intermediate family include diorite and andesite.

Intrusive Igneous Rock Structures

Igneous rock masses that form underground are called *intrusions*. Intrusions form when magma intrudes, or enters, into other rock masses and then cools deep inside Earth's crust. A variety of intrusions are shown in **Figure 5.**

Batholiths and Stocks

The largest of all intrusions are called *batholiths*. Batholiths are intrusive formations that spread over at least 100 km^2 when they are exposed on Earth's surface. The word *batholith* means "deep rock." Batholiths were once thought to extend to great depths beneath Earth's surface. However, studies have determined that many batholiths extend only several thousand meters below the surface. Batholiths form the cores of many mountain ranges, such as the Sierra Nevadas in California. The largest batholith in North America forms the core of the Coast Range in British Columbia. Another type of intrusion is called a *stock*. Stocks are similar to batholiths but cover less than 100 km^2 at the surface.



Laccoliths

When magma flows between rock layers and spreads upward, it sometimes pushes the overlying rock layers into a dome. The base of the intrusion is parallel to the rock layer beneath it. This type of intrusion is called a *laccolith*. The word *laccolith* means "lake of rock." Laccoliths commonly occur in groups and can sometimes be identified by the small dome-shaped mountains they form on Earth's surface. Many laccoliths are located beneath the Black Hills of South Dakota.

Reading Check **What is the difference between stocks and batholiths? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Sills and Dikes

When magma flows between the layers of rock and hardens, a *sill* forms. A sill lies parallel to the layers of rock that surround it, even if the layers are tilted. Sills vary in thickness from a few centimeters to hundreds of meters.

Magma sometimes forces through rock layers by following existing vertical fractures or by creating new ones. When the magma solidifies, a *dike* forms. Dikes cut across rock layers rather than lying parallel to the rock layers. Dikes are common in areas of volcanic activity.

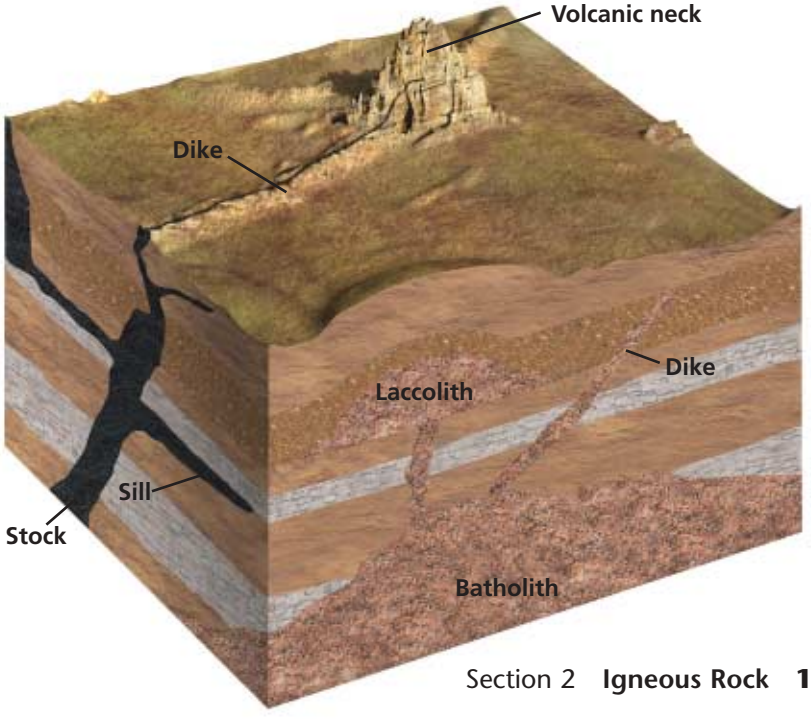


Figure 5 ▶ Igneous intrusions create a number of unique landforms. ***What is the difference between a dike and a sill?***

Figure 6 ▶ Shiprock, in New Mexico, is an example of a volcanic neck that was exposed by erosion.

Extrusive Igneous Rock Structures

Igneous rock masses that form on Earth's surface are called *extrusions*. A *volcano* is a vent through which magma, gases, or volcanic ash is expelled. When a volcanic eruption stops, the magma in the vent may cool to form rock. Eventually, the soft parts of the volcano are eroded by wind and water, and only the hardest rock in the vent remains. The solidified central vent is called a *volcanic neck*. Narrow dikes that sometimes radiate from the neck may also be exposed. A dramatic example of a volcanic neck called Shiprock is shown in **Figure 6.**

Extrusive igneous rock may also take other forms. Many extrusions are simply flat masses of rock called *lava flows*. A series of lava flows that cover a vast area with thick rock is known as a *lava plateau*. Volcanic ash deposits, also commonly called *tuff*, form when a volcano releases ash and other solid particles during an eruption. Tuff deposits can be several hundred meters thick and can cover areas of several hundred kilometers.

Section 2 Review

1. **Summarize** three factors that affect the melting of rock.
2. **Contrast** partial melting and fractional crystallization.
3. **Describe** how the cooling rate of magma affects the texture of igneous rock.
4. **Name** the three families of igneous rocks, and identify their specific mineral compositions.
5. **Describe** five intrusive igneous rock structures.
6. **Identify** four extrusive igneous rock structures.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Applying Ideas** If you wanted to create a rock that has large crystals in a laboratory, what conditions would you have to control? Explain your answer.
8. **Applying Ideas** An unidentified, light-colored igneous rock is made up of potassium feldspar and quartz. To what family of igneous rocks does the rock belong? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *igneous rock, magma, coarse grained, fine grained, felsic, mafic,* and *intermediate.*

Section 3 Sedimentary Rock

Loose fragments of rock, minerals, and organic material that result from natural processes, including the physical breakdown of rocks, are called *sediment*. Most sedimentary rock is made up of combinations of different types of sediment. The characteristics of sedimentary rock are determined by the source of the sediment, the way the sediment was moved, and the conditions under which the sediment was deposited.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** the processes of compaction and cementation.
- **Describe** how chemical and organic sedimentary rocks form.
- **Describe** how clastic sedimentary rock forms.
- **Identify** seven sedimentary rock features.

KEY TERMS

compaction
cementation
chemical sedimentary rock
organic sedimentary rock
clastic sedimentary rock

Formation of Sedimentary Rocks

After sediments form, they are generally transported by wind, water, or ice to a new location. The source of the sediment determines the sediment's composition. As the sediment moves, its characteristics change as it is physically broken down or chemically altered. Eventually, the loose sediment is deposited.

Two main processes convert loose sediment to sedimentary rock—compaction and cementation. **Compaction,** as shown in **Figure 1,** is the process in which sediment is squeezed and in which the size of the pore space between sediment grains is reduced by the weight and pressure of overlying layers. **Cementation** is the process in which sediments are glued together by minerals that are deposited by water. As water moves through the sediment, minerals precipitate from the water, surround the sediment grains, and form a cement that holds the fragments together.

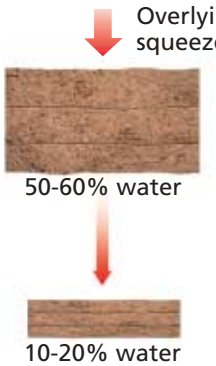
Geologists classify sedimentary rocks by the processes by which the rocks form and by the composition of the rocks. There are three main classes of sedimentary rocks—chemical, organic, and clastic. These classes contain their own classifications of sedimentary rocks that are grouped based on the shape, size, and composition of the sediments that form the rocks.

compaction the process in which the volume and porosity of a sediment is decreased by the weight of overlying sediments as a result of burial beneath other sediments

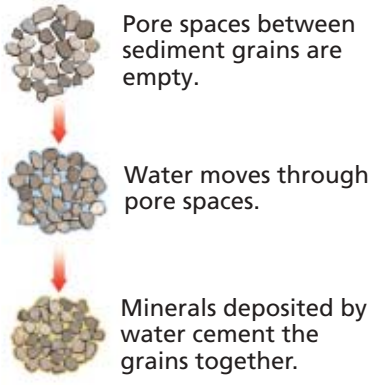
cementation the process in which minerals precipitate into pore spaces between sediment grains and bind sediments together to form rock

Figure 1 ▶ Processes That Form Sedimentary Rock

When mud is deposited, there may be a lot of space between grains. During compaction, the grains are squeezed together, and the rock that forms takes up less space.



When sand is deposited, there are many spaces between the grains. During cementation, water deposits minerals such as calcite or quartz in the spaces around the sand grains, which glues the grains together.



chemical sedimentary rock sedimentary rock that forms when minerals precipitate from a solution or settle from a suspension

organic sedimentary rock sedimentary rock that forms from the remains of plants or animals

Chemical Sedimentary Rock

Rock called **chemical sedimentary rock** forms from minerals that were once dissolved in water. Some chemical sedimentary rock forms when dissolved minerals precipitate out of water because of changing concentrations of chemicals.

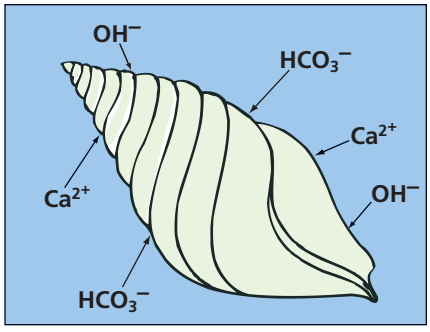
One reason minerals precipitate is because of evaporation. When water evaporates, the minerals that were dissolved in the water are left behind. Eventually, the concentration of minerals in the remaining water becomes high enough to cause minerals to precipitate out of the water. The minerals left behind form rocks called *evaporites*. Gypsum and halite, or rock salt, are two examples of evaporites. The Bonneville Salt Flats near the Great Salt Lake in Utah are a good example of evaporite deposits.

Organic Sedimentary Rocks

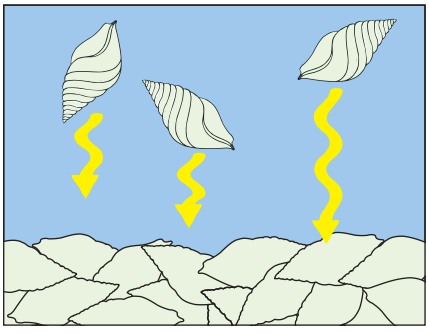
The second class of sedimentary rock is **organic sedimentary rock.** Organic sedimentary rock is rock that forms from the remains of living things. Coal and some limestones are examples of organic sedimentary rocks. Coal forms from plant remains that are buried before they decay and are then compacted into matter that is composed mostly of carbon.

While chemical limestones precipitate from chemicals dissolved in water, organic limestones form when marine organisms, such as coral, clams, oysters, and plankton, remove the chemical components of the minerals calcite and aragonite from sea water. These organisms make their shells from aragonite. When they die, their shells eventually become limestone. This process of limestone formation is shown in **Figure 2.** Chalk is an example of limestone made up of the shells of tiny, one-celled marine organisms that settle to the ocean floor.

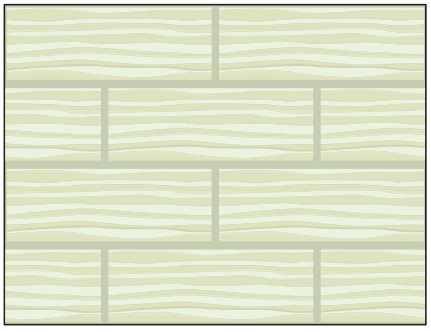
Figure 2 ▶ Organic Limestone Formation



Organisms that live in lakes or oceans take chemicals from the water and produce the mineral calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$. They use the $CaCO_3$ to build their shells or skeletons.



When the organisms die, the hard remains that are made of $CaCO_3$ settle to the lake or ocean floor.



The shells of the dead organisms pile up. Eventually, the layers are compacted and cemented to form limestone.

Figure 3 ▶ Types of Clastic Sedimentary Rock

Conglomerate is composed of rounded, pebble-sized fragments that are held together by a cement.

Breccia is similar to conglomerate, but breccia contains angular fragments.

Sandstone is made of small mineral grains that are cemented together.

Shale is made of flaky clay particles that compress into flat layers.

Clastic Sedimentary Rock

The third class of sedimentary rock is made of rock fragments that are carried away from their source by water, wind, or ice and left as deposits. Over time, the individual fragments may become compacted and cemented into solid rock. The rock formed from these deposits is called **clastic sedimentary rock.**

clastic sedimentary rock sedimentary rock that forms when fragments of preexisting rocks are compacted or cemented together

Clastic sedimentary rocks are classified by the size of the sediments they contain, as shown in **Figure 3.** One group consists of large fragments that are cemented together by finer sediments or by minerals. Rock that is composed of rounded fragments that range in size from fine mud to boulders is called a *conglomerate*. If the fragments are angular and have sharp corners, the rock is called a *breccia* (BRECH ee uh). In conglomerates and breccias, the individual pieces of sediment can be easily seen.

Another group of clastic sedimentary rocks is made up of sand-sized grains that have been cemented together. These rocks are called *sandstone*. Because quartz is one of the hardest common minerals, quartz is the major component of most sandstones. Many sandstones have pores between the sand grains through which fluids, such as groundwater, natural gas, and crude oil, can move.

A third group of clastic sedimentary rocks, called *shale*, consists of clay-sized particles that are cemented and compacted. The flaky clay particles are usually pressed into flat layers that will easily split apart.

Reading Check **Name three groups of clastic sedimentary rock. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

MATH PRACTICE

Sedimentation Rates The rate at which sediment accumulates is called the *sedimentation rate*. The sedimentation rate of an area is 1.5 mm per year. At this rate, how many years must pass for 10 cm of sediment to be deposited?

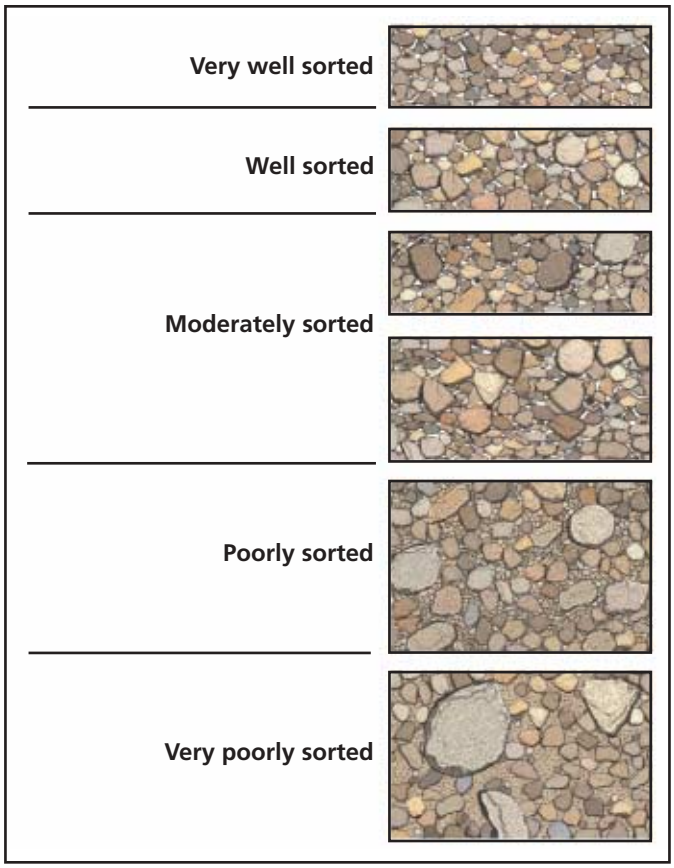


Figure 4 ▶ Sorting of Sediments

Characteristics of Clastic Sediments

The physical characteristics of sediments are determined mainly by the way sediments were transported to the place where they are deposited. Sediments are transported by four main agents: water, ice, wind, and the effects of gravity. The speed with which the agent of erosion moves affects the size of sediment particles that can be carried and the distance that the particles will move. In general, both the distance the sediment is moved and the agent that moves the sediment determine the characteristics of that sediment.

Sorting

The tendency for currents of air or water to separate sediments according to size is called *sorting*. Sediments can be well sorted, poorly sorted, or somewhere in between, as shown in **Figure 4.** In well-sorted sediments, all of the grains are roughly the same size and shape. Poorly sorted sediment consists of grains that are many different sizes. The sorting of a sediment is the result of changes in the speed of the agent that is moving the sediment. For example, when a fast-moving stream enters a lake, the speed of the water decreases sharply. Because large grains are too heavy for the current to carry, these grains are deposited first. Fine grains can stay suspended in the water for much longer than large grains can. So, fine particles are commonly deposited farther from shore or on top of coarser sediments.

Angularity

As sediment is transported from its source to where it is deposited, the particles collide with each other and with other objects in their path. These collisions can cause the particles to change size and shape. When particles first break from the source rock, they tend to be angular and uneven. Particles that have moved long distances from the source tend to be more rounded and smooth. In general, the farther sediment travels from its source, the finer and smoother the particles of sediment become.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Sedimentary Rock
SciLinks code: HQ61365

Sedimentary Rock Features

The setting in which sediment is deposited is called a *depositional environment*. Common depositional environments include rivers, deltas, beaches, and oceans. Each depositional environment has different characteristics that create specific structures in sedimentary rock. These features allow scientists to identify the depositional environment in which the rock formed.

Stratification

Layering of sedimentary rock, as shown in **Figure 5,** is called *stratification*. Stratification occurs when the conditions of sediment deposition change. The conditions may vary when there is a change in sediment type or of depositional environment. For example, a rise in sea level may cause an area that was once a beach to become a shallow ocean, which changes the type of sediment that is deposited in the area.

Stratified layers, or *beds,* vary in thickness depending on the length of time during which sediment is deposited and how much sediment is deposited. *Massive beds*, or beds that have no internal structures, form when similar sediment is deposited for long periods of time or when a large amount of sediment is deposited at one time.

Cross-beds and Graded Bedding

Some sedimentary rocks are characterized by slanting layers called *cross-beds* that form within beds. Cross-beds, which generally form in sand dunes or river beds, are shown in **Figure 5.**

When various sizes and kinds of materials are deposited within one layer, a type of stratification called *graded bedding* may occur. Graded bedding occurs when different sizes and shapes of sediment settle to different levels. Graded beds commonly transition from largest grains on the bottom to smallest grains on the top. However, certain depositional events, such as some mudflows, may cause *reverse grading,* in which the smallest grains are on the bottom and the largest grains are on top.

Reading Check **What is graded bedding? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 10 min

Graded Bedding

Procedure

1. Place **20 mL of water** into a **small glass jar.**
2. Pour **10 mL of poorly sorted sediment** into the jar. Place a **lid** securely on the jar.
3. Shake the jar vigorously for 1 min, and then let it sit still for 5 min.
4. Observe the settled sediment.

Analysis

1. Describe any sedimentary structures you observed.
2. Name two factors responsible for the sedimentary structures you observed.

Figure 5 ▶ Examples of Sedimentary Rock Structures

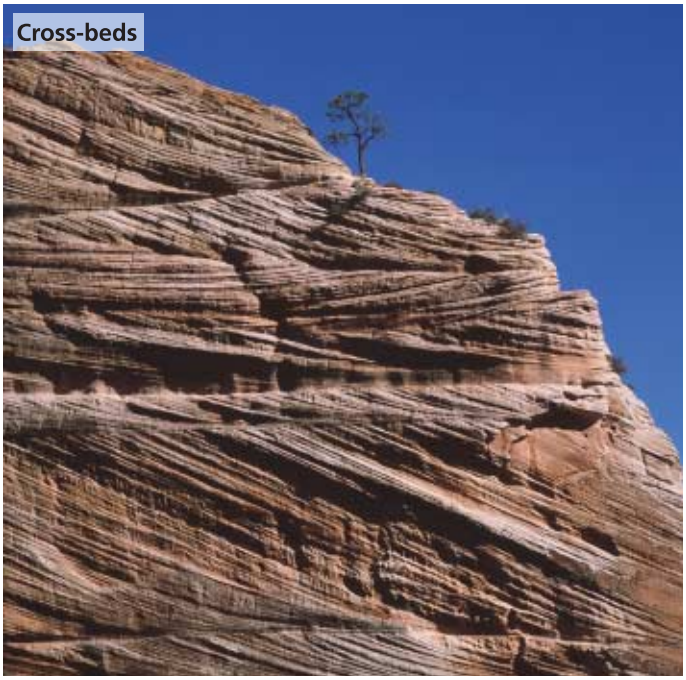


Figure 6 ▶ This dry and mud-cracked river bed is in Nagasaki, Japan. This river bed is the site of a future dam project.

Ripple Marks

Some sedimentary rocks clearly display *ripple marks*. Ripple marks are caused by the action of wind or water on sand. When the sand becomes sandstone, the ripple marks may be preserved. When scientists find ripple marks in sedimentary rock, the scientists know that the sediment was once part of a beach or a river bed.

Mud Cracks

The ground in **Figure 6** shows mud cracks, which are another feature of sedimentary rock. Mud cracks form when muddy deposits dry and shrink. The shrinking causes the drying mud to crack. A river's flood plain or a dry lake bed is a common place to find mud cracks. Once the area is flooded again, new deposits may fill in the cracks and preserve their features when the mud hardens to solid rock.

Fossils and Concretions

The remains or traces of ancient plants and animals, called *fossils,* may be preserved in sedimentary rock. As sediments pile up, plant and animal remains are buried. Hard parts of these remains may be preserved in the rock. More often, even the hard parts dissolve and leave only impressions in the rock. Sedimentary rocks sometimes contain lumps of rock that have a composition that is different from that of the main rock body. These lumps are known as *concretions*. Concretions form when minerals precipitate from fluids and build up around a nucleus. Groundwater sometimes deposits dissolved minerals inside cavities in sedimentary rock. The minerals may crystallize inside the cavities to form a special type of rock called a *geode*.

Section 3 Review

1. **Explain** how the processes of compaction and cementation form sedimentary rock.
2. **Describe** how chemical and organic sedimentary rocks form, and give two examples of each.
3. **Describe** how clastic sedimentary rock differs from chemical and organic sedimentary rock.
4. **Explain** how the physical characteristics of sediments change during transport.
5. **Identify** seven features that you can use to identify the depositional environment in which sedimentary rocks formed.

CRITICAL THINKING

6. **Making Comparisons** Compare the histories of rounded, smooth rocks and angular, uneven rocks.
7. **Identifying Relationships** Which of the following would most effectively sort sediments: a fast-moving river or a small, slow-moving stream? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *cementation, clastic sedimentary rock, sedimentary rock, chemical sedimentary rock, compaction,* and *organic sedimentary rock.*

Section 4 Metamorphic Rock

The process by which heat, pressure, or chemical processes change one type of rock to another is called **metamorphism.** Most metamorphic rock, or rock that has undergone metamorphism, forms deep within Earth's crust. All metamorphic rock forms from existing igneous, sedimentary, or metamorphic rock.

Formation of Metamorphic Rocks

During metamorphism, heat, pressure, and hot fluids cause some minerals to change into other minerals. Minerals may also change in size or shape, or they may separate into parallel bands that give the rock a layered appearance. Hot fluids from magma may circulate through the rock and change the mineral composition of the rock by dissolving some materials and by adding others. All of these changes are part of metamorphism.

The type of rock that forms because of metamorphism can indicate the conditions that were in place when the original rock changed, as shown in **Figure 1.** The composition of the rock being metamorphosed, the amount and direction of heat and pressure, and the presence or absence of certain fluids cause different combinations of minerals to form.

Two types of metamorphism occur in Earth's crust. One type occurs when small volumes of rock come into contact with magma. The second type occurs when large areas of Earth's crust are affected by the heat and pressure that is caused by the movement and collisions of Earth's giant tectonic plates.

OBJECTIVES

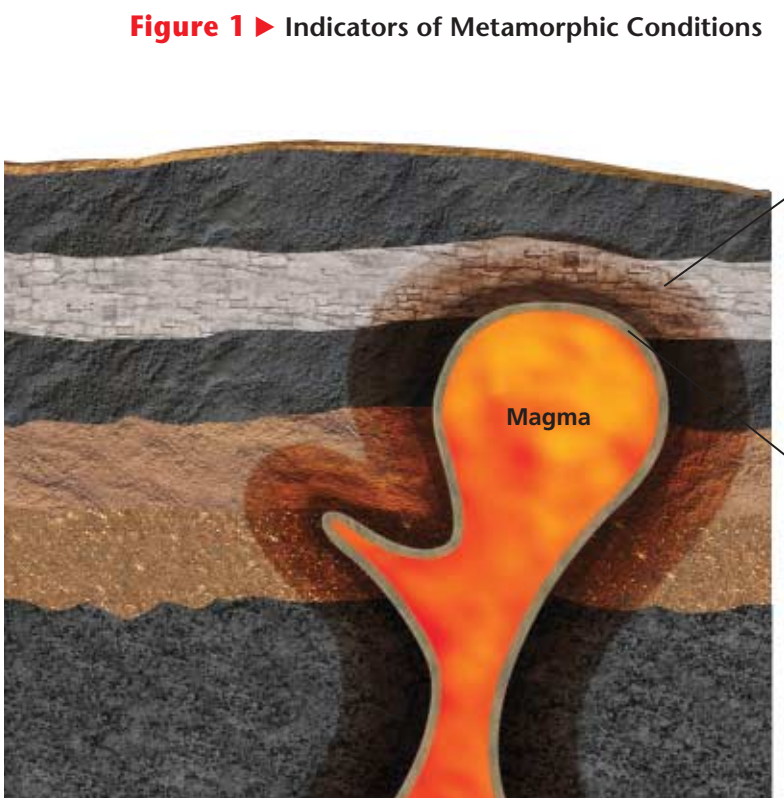
- **Describe** the process of metamorphism.
- **Explain** the difference between regional and contact metamorphism.
- **Distinguish** between foliated and nonfoliated metamorphic rocks, and give an example of each.

KEY TERMS

metamorphism
contact metamorphism
regional metamorphism
foliation
nonfoliated

metamorphism the process in which one type of rock changes into metamorphic rock because of chemical processes or changes in temperature and pressure

Figure 1 ▶ Indicators of Metamorphic Conditions



Slate is a metamorphic rock that commonly forms in the outer zone of metamorphism around a body of magma where clay-rich rock is exposed to relatively small amounts of heat.

Hornfels is a metamorphic rock that forms in the innermost zone of metamorphism, where clay-rich rock is exposed to large amounts of heat from the magma.

contact metamorphism a change in the texture, structure, or chemical composition of a rock due to contact with magma

regional metamorphism a change in the texture, structure, or chemical composition of a rock due to changes in temperature and pressure over a large area, generally as a result of tectonic forces

Contact Metamorphism

When magma comes into contact with existing rock, heat from the magma can change the structure and mineral composition of the surrounding rock by a process called **contact metamorphism.** During contact metamorphism only a small area of rock that surrounds the hot magma is changed by the magma's heat. Hot chemical fluids moving through fractures may also cause changes in the surrounding rock during contact metamorphism.

Regional Metamorphism

Metamorphism sometimes occurs over an area of thousands of square kilometers during periods of high tectonic activity, such as when mountain ranges form. The type of metamorphism that occurs over a large area is called **regional metamorphism.**

The movement of one tectonic plate against another generates tremendous heat and pressure in the rocks at the edges of the tectonic plates. The heat and pressure cause chemical changes in the minerals of the rock. Most metamorphic rock forms as a result of regional metamorphism. However, volcanism and movement of magma often accompany tectonic activity. Thus, rocks that are formed by contact metamorphism are also commonly discovered where regional metamorphism has occurred.

Reading Check **How are minerals affected by regional metamorphism? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Connection to PHYSICS

Directed Stress

The agents that cause metamorphism are temperature, pressure, chemically active fluids, and directed stress. When one of these conditions changes in a rock's environment, the minerals in the rock move from a stable state to an unstable state. This instability causes the rock to change, or metamorphose, to reach a more stable state in the new conditions.

Stress is the amount of force per unit area.

$$\sigma = \frac{Force}{Area}$$

Stress can be caused by fluids that are trapped in the rock or by the load of overlying and surrounding rock. At about 3.3 km below the surface of Earth's crust, the pressure of overlying rock is great enough to metamorphose rock.

In general, stress affects rock equally in all directions. However, sometimes, stresses acting in particular directions exceed the mean stress on the rock. This type of stress is called *directed stress*, and it can act in three ways. *Tension* is stress that expands the rock or pulls the rock apart. *Compression* is stress that squeezes the rock. *Shear stress* is stress that pushes different parts of a body of rock in different directions.

Compression of rock during metamorphism may form tiny folds, like the ones shown here.

Classification of Metamorphic Rocks

Minerals in the original rock help determine the mineral composition of the metamorphosed rock. As the original rock is exposed to changes in heat and pressure, the minerals in the original rock often combine chemically to form new minerals. While metamorphic rocks are classified by chemical composition, they are first classified according to their texture. Metamorphic rocks have either a foliated texture or a nonfoliated texture.

Foliated Rocks

The metamorphic rock texture in which minerals are arranged in planes or bands is called **foliation.** Foliated rock can form in one of two ways. Extreme pressure may cause the mineral crystals in the rock to realign or regrow to form parallel bands. Foliation also occurs as minerals that have different compositions separate to produce a series of alternating dark and light bands.

foliation the metamorphic rock texture in which mineral grains are arranged in planes or bands

Foliated metamorphic rocks include the common rocks slate, schist, and gneiss (NIES). Slate forms when pressure is exerted on the sedimentary rock shale, which contains clay minerals that are flat and thin. The fine-grained minerals in slate are compressed into thin layers, which split easily into flat sheets. Flat sheets of slate are used in building materials, such as roof tiles or walkway stones.

When large amounts of heat and pressure are exerted on slate, a coarse-grained metamorphic rock known as *schist* may form. Deep underground, intense heat and pressure may cause the minerals in schist to separate into bands as the minerals recrystallize. The metamorphosed rock that has bands of light and dark minerals is called *gneiss*. Gneiss is shown in **Figure 2.**

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Metamorphic Rock
SciLinks code: HQ60949

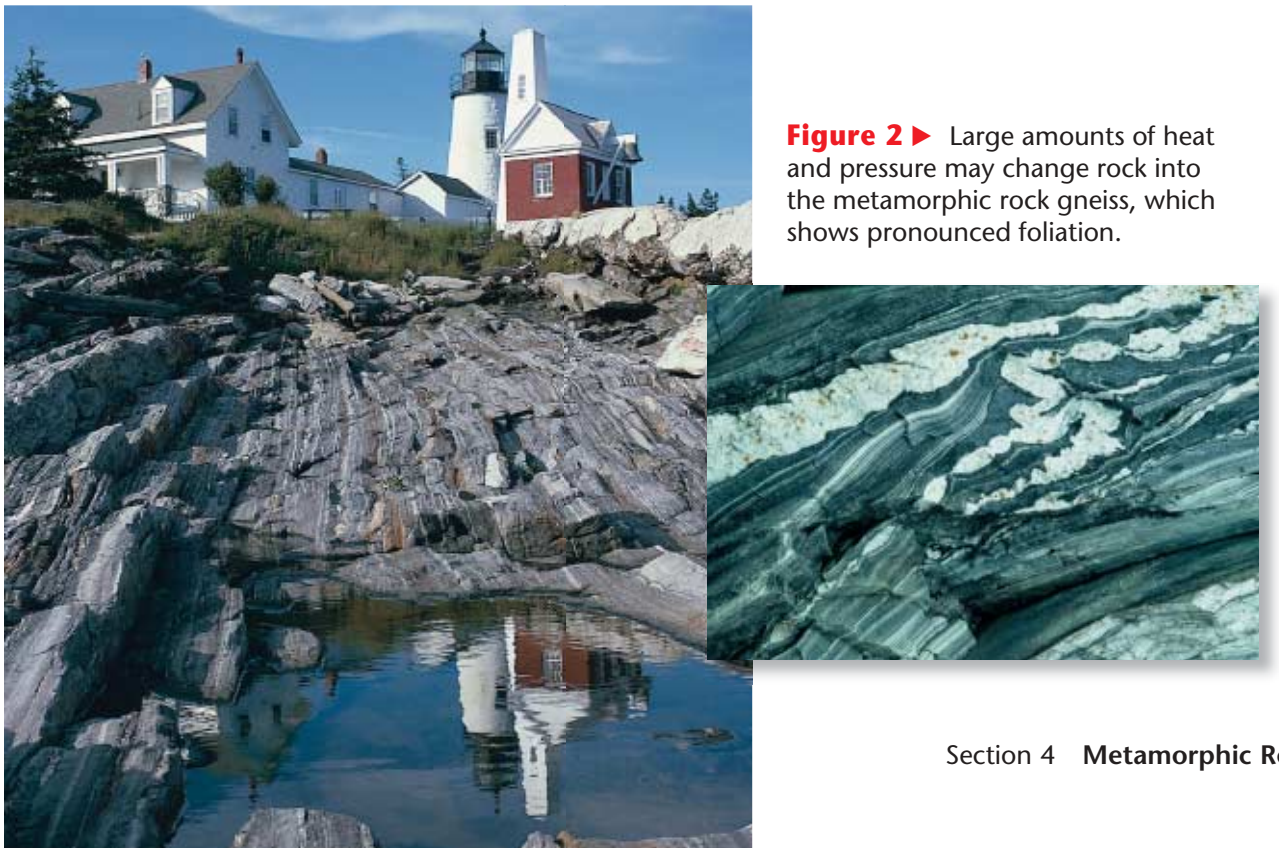


Figure 2 ▶ Large amounts of heat and pressure may change rock into the metamorphic rock gneiss, which shows pronounced foliation.

Figure 3 ▶ Marble is a nonfoliated metamorphic rock that is used as building and sculpting material.

nonfoliated the metamorphic rock texture in which mineral grains are not arranged in planes or bands

Nonfoliated Rocks

Rocks that do not have bands or aligned minerals are **nonfoliated.** Most nonfoliated metamorphic rocks share at least one of two main characteristics. First, the original rock that is metamorphosed may contain grains of only one mineral or contains very small amounts of other minerals. Thus, the rock does not form compositional bands when it is metamorphosed. Second, the original rock may contain grains that are round or square. Because the grains do not have some long and some short sides, these grains do not change position when exposed to pressure in one direction.

Quartzite is one common nonfoliated rock. Quartzite forms when quartz sandstone is metamorphosed. Because quartzite is very hard and durable, it is resistant to weathering. For this reason, quartzite remains after weaker rocks around it have eroded and may form hills or mountains.

Marble, the beautiful stone that is used for building monuments and statues, is a metamorphic rock that forms from the compression of limestone. The Parthenon, which is shown in **Figure 3,** has been standing in Greece for more than 1,400 years. However, the calcium carbonate in marble is susceptible to accelerated chemical weathering by acid rain, which is caused by air pollution. Many ancient marble structures and sculptures are being damaged by acid rain.

Section 4 Review

1. **Describe** the process of metamorphism.
2. **Explain** the difference between regional and contact metamorphism.
3. **Distinguish** between foliated and nonfoliated metamorphic rocks.
4. **Identify** two foliated metamorphic rocks and two nonfoliated metamorphic rocks.

CRITICAL THINKING

5. **Analyzing Relationships** What do a butterfly and metamorphic rock have in common?
6. **Making Comparisons** If you have samples of the two metamorphic rocks slate and hornfels, what can you say about the history of each rock?
7. **Identifying Relationships** The Himalaya Mountains are located on a boundary between two colliding tectonic plates. Would most of the metamorphic rock in that area occur in small patches or in wide regions? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *contact metamorphism, foliated, regional metamorphism, metamorphic rock,* and *nonfoliated.*

Chapter 6 Highlights

Sections

1 Rocks and the Rock Cycle

Key Terms

rock cycle, 126
Bowen's reaction series, 127

Key Concepts

- Rocks are classified into three major types based on how they form. These types are igneous rock, sedimentary rock, and metamorphic rock.
- In the rock cycle, rocks change from one type into another.
- The different minerals in igneous rocks form in a specific order as represented in Bowen's reaction series.

2 Igneous Rock

igneous rock, 129
intrusive igneous rock, 131
extrusive igneous rock, 131
felsic, 132
mafic, 132

- The rate at which magma and lava cool determines the texture of igneous rock.
- Igneous rocks are divided into three families based on their mineral composition. These families are felsic, mafic, and intermediate.
- Igneous rock structures take two basic forms. They are intrusions and extrusions.

3 Sedimentary Rock

compaction, 135
cementation, 135
chemical sedimentary rock, 136
organic sedimentary rock, 136
clastic sedimentary rock, 137

- Sedimentary rock forms in one of three ways. It may form from minerals once dissolved in water, from the remains of organisms, or from rock fragments.
- Sedimentary rocks have a number of identifiable features, including stratification, ripple marks, mud cracks, fossils, and concretions.

4 Metamorphic Rock

metamorphism, 141
contact metamorphism, 142
regional metamorphism, 142
foliation, 143
nonfoliated, 144

- Metamorphic rock forms as a result of heat and pressure caused by hot magma or tectonic plate movement.
- Metamorphic rocks can have a foliated or nonfoliated texture.

Chapter 6 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *rock cycle*
2. *Bowen's reaction series*
3. *sediment*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *igneous rock* and *metamorphic rock*
5. *intrusive igneous rock* and *extrusive igneous rock*
6. *chemical sedimentary rock* and *organic sedimentary rock*
7. *contact metamorphism* and *regional metamorphism*
8. *foliated* and *nonfoliated*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. Intrusive igneous rocks are characterized by a coarse-grained texture because they contain
   a. heavy elements.
   b. small crystals.
   c. large crystals.
   d. fragments of different sizes and shapes.

10. Light-colored igneous rocks are generally part of the
    a. basalt family.
    b. intermediate family.
    c. felsic family.
    d. mafic family.

11. Magma that solidifies underground forms rock masses that are known as
    a. extrusions.
    b. volcanic cones.
    c. lava plateaus.
    d. intrusions.

12. One example of an extrusion is a
    a. stock.
    b. dike.
    c. batholith.
    d. lava plateau.

13. Sedimentary rock formed from rock fragments is called
    a. organic.
    b. chemical.
    c. clastic.
    d. granite.

14. One example of chemical sedimentary rock is
    a. an evaporite.
    b. coal.
    c. sandstone.
    d. breccia.

15. The splitting of slate into flat layers illustrates its
    a. contact metamorphism.
    b. formation.
    c. sedimentation.
    d. foliation.

Short Answer

16. Describe partial melting and fractional crystallization.

17. Name and define the three main types of rock.

18. How do clastic sedimentary rocks differ from chemical and organic sedimentary rocks?

19. What is Bowen's reaction series?

20. What factors affect the chemical and physical stability of rock?

21. Describe three factors that affect whether rock melts.

22. Why are some metamorphic rocks foliated while others are not?

23. How does transport affect the size and shape of sediment particles?

Critical Thinking

24. Making Inferences A certain rock is made up mostly of plagioclase feldspar and pyroxene minerals. It also includes olivine and hornblende. Will the rock have a light or dark coloring? Explain your answer.

25. Classifying Information Explain how metamorphic rock can change into either of the other two types of rock through the rock cycle.

26. Applying Ideas Imagine that you have found a piece of limestone, which is a sedimentary rock, that has strange-shaped lumps on it. Will the lumps have the same composition as the limestone? Explain your answer.

27. Analyzing Ideas Which would be easier to break, the foliated rock slate or the nonfoliated rock quartzite? Explain your answer.

Concept Mapping

28. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *rock cycle, foliated, igneous rock, intrusive, sedimentary rock, clastic sedimentary rock, metamorphic rock, chemical sedimentary rock, extrusive, organic sedimentary rock,* and *nonfoliated*.

Math Skills

29. Making Calculations The gram formula weight (weight of one mole) of the mineral quartz is 60.1 g, and the gram formula weight of magnetite is 231.5 g. If you had 4 moles of magnetite, how many moles of quartz would be equal to the weight of the magnetite?

30. Making Calculations The gram formula weight (weight of one mole) of the mineral hematite, Fe_2O_3, is 159.7 g, and the gram formula weight of magnetite, Fe_3O_4, is 231.5 g. Which of the following would weigh more: half a mole of hematite or one-third of a mole of magnetite?

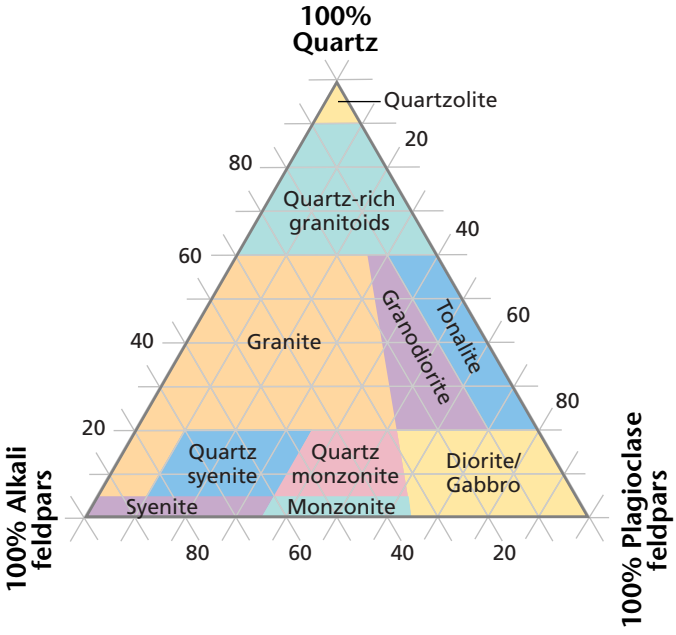
Writing Skills

31. Outlining Topics Outline the essential steps in the rock cycle.

32. Writing from Research Find out what types of rock are most abundant in your state. Research the geologic processes that form those types of rock, and write a brief report that describes how the rocks in your state most likely formed.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below is a ternary diagram that shows the classification of some igneous rocks. Refer to the Skills Handbook in the Appendix for instructions on how to read a ternary diagram. Use the diagram to answer the questions that follow.



33. What is the maximum amount of quartz in a quartz syenite?

34. What would a rock that contains 30% quartz, 20% alkali feldspar, and 50% plagioclase feldspar be called?

Chapter 6 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a sheet of paper the number of the correct answer.**

1 A rock that contains a fossil is most likely
A. igneous
B. sedimentary
C. metamorphic
D. felsic

2 The large, well-developed crystals found in some samples of granite are a sign that
F. the lava from which it formed cooled rapidly
G. the magma contained a lot of dissolved gases
H. the lava from which it formed cooled slowly
I. water deposited minerals in the rock cavities

3 How does coal differ from breccia?
A. Coal is an example of sedimentary rock, and breccia is an example of metamorphic rock.
B. Coal is an example of metamorphic rock, and breccia is an example of igneous rock.
C. Coal is an example of organic rock, and breccia is an example of clastic rock.
D. Coal is an example of clastic rock, and breccia is an example of a conglomerate.

4 How does the order in which igneous rocks form relate to their ability to resist weathering agents?
F. Rocks that form last weather faster.
G. Rocks that form first are the most resistant.
H. Rocks that form last are the most resistant.
I. There is no relationship between the order of igneous rock formation and weathering.

5 What occurs when heat from nearby magma causes changes in the surrounding rocks?
A. contact metamorphism
B. fluid metamorphism
C. intrusive metamorphism
D. regional metamorphism

Directions (6–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 What type of sedimentary rock is formed when angular clastic materials cement together?

7 What type of rock is formed when heat, pressure, and chemical processes change the physical properties of igneous rock?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–10): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Igneous and Sedimentary Rocks

Scientists think that Earth began as a melted mixture of many different materials. These materials underwent a physical change as they cooled and solidified. These became the first igneous rocks. Igneous rock continues to form today. Liquid rock changes from a liquid to a solid, when lava that is brought to Earth's surface by volcanoes hardens. This process can also take place far more slowly, when magma deep beneath the Earth's surface changes to a solid.

At the same time that new rocks are forming, old rocks are broken down by other processes. Weathering is the process by which wind, water, and gravity break up rock. During erosion, broken up pieces of rock are carried by water, wind, or ice and deposited as sediments elsewhere. These pieces pile up and, under heat and pressure, form sedimentary rock—rock composed of cemented fragments of older rocks.

8 Which of the following statements about the texture of sedimentary rock is most likely true?
A. Sedimentary rocks are always lumpy and made up of large pieces of older rocks.
B. Sedimentary rocks all contain alternating bands of lumpy and smooth textures.
C. Sedimentary rocks are always smooth and made up of small pieces of older rocks.
D. Sedimentary rocks have a variety of textures that depend on the size and type of pieces make up the rock.

9 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
F. Igneous rocks are the hardest form of rock.
G. Sedimentary rocks are the final stage in the life cycle of a rock.
H. Igneous rocks began forming early in Earth's history.
I. Sedimentary rocks are not affected by weathering.

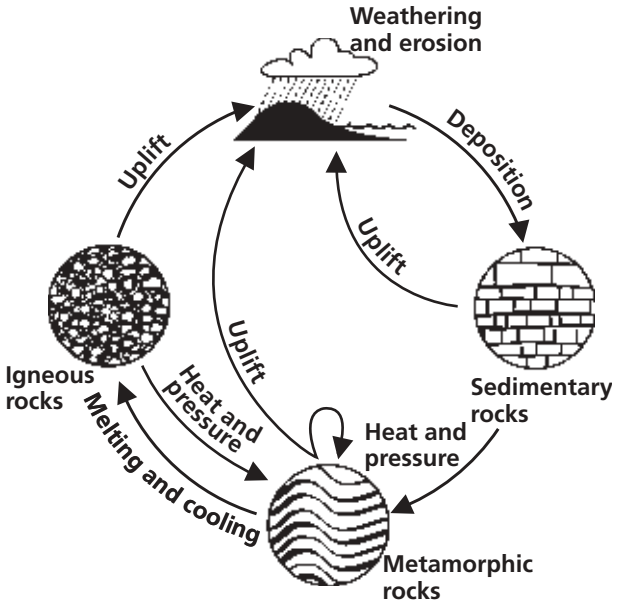
10 Is igneous rock or sedimentary rock more likely to contain fossils? Explain your answer.

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–13): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagram below shows several igneous rock formations. Use this diagram to answer question 11.

The Rock Cycle



11 Which of the following processes brings rocks to Earth's surface, where they can be eroded?

A. deposition
B. weathering
C. erosion
D. uplift

Use this table to answer questions 12 and 13.

Rock Types

Rock sample	Characteristics
Rock A	multiple compacted, round, gravel-sized fragments
Rock B	coarse, well-developed, crystalline mineral grains
Rock C	small, sand-sized grains, tan coloration
Rock D	gritty texture; many small, embedded seashells

12 Is rock D igneous, sedimentary, or metamorphic? Explain the evidence that supports this classification?

13 Is rock A made up of only one mineral? Explain the evidence supporting this classification?

Test TIP

When several questions refer to the same graph, table, or diagram, or text passage, answer the questions you are sure of first.

Chapter 6

Skills Practice Lab

Classification of Rocks

Objectives

- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Observe** the characteristics of common rocks.
- **Compare and contrast** the features of igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic rocks.
- **Identify** igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic rocks.

Materials

- hand lens
- hydrochloric acid, 10% dilute
- medicine dropper
- rock samples

Safety

There are many different types of igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic rocks. Therefore, it is important to know distinguishing features of the rocks to identify the rocks. The classification of rocks is generally based on the way in which they formed their mineral composition and the size and arrangement (or texture) of their minerals.

Igneous rocks differ in the minerals they contain and the sizes of their crystals. Metamorphic rocks often look similar to igneous rocks, but they may have bands of minerals. Most sedimentary rocks are made of fragments of other rocks that are compressed and cemented together. Some common features of sedimentary rocks are parallel layers, ripple marks, cross-bedding, and the presence of fossils. In this lab, you will use these features to identify various rock samples.

PROCEDURE

1. In your notebook, make a table that has columns for sample number, description of properties, rock class, and rock name. List the numbers of the rock samples you received from your teacher.

Step 2

2. Examine the rocks carefully. You can use a hand lens to study the fine details of the rock samples. Look for characteristics such as the shape, size, and arrangement of the mineral grains. For each sample, list in your table the distinguishing features that you observe.

Specimen	Descriptions of Properties	Rock Class	Rock Name

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK

3. Refer to the Guide to Common Rocks in the Reference Tables section of the Appendix. Compare the properties for each rock sample that you listed with the properties listed in the identification table. If you are unable to identify certain rocks, examine these rock samples again.

4. Certain rocks react with acid, which indicates that they are composed of calcite. If a rock contains calcite, the rock will bubble and release carbon dioxide. Using a medicine dropper and 10% dilute hydrochloric acid, test various samples for their reactions. **CAUTION** Wear goggles, gloves, and an apron when you work with hydrochloric acid. Wash your hands thoroughly afterward.

5. Complete your table by identifying the class of rock—igneous, sedimentary, or metamorphic—that each sample belongs to, and then name the rock.

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Analyzing Methods** What properties were most useful and least useful in identifying each rock sample? Explain.

2. **Evaluating Results** Were there any samples that you found difficult to identify? Explain.

3. **Making Comparisons** Describe any characteristics common to all of the rock samples.

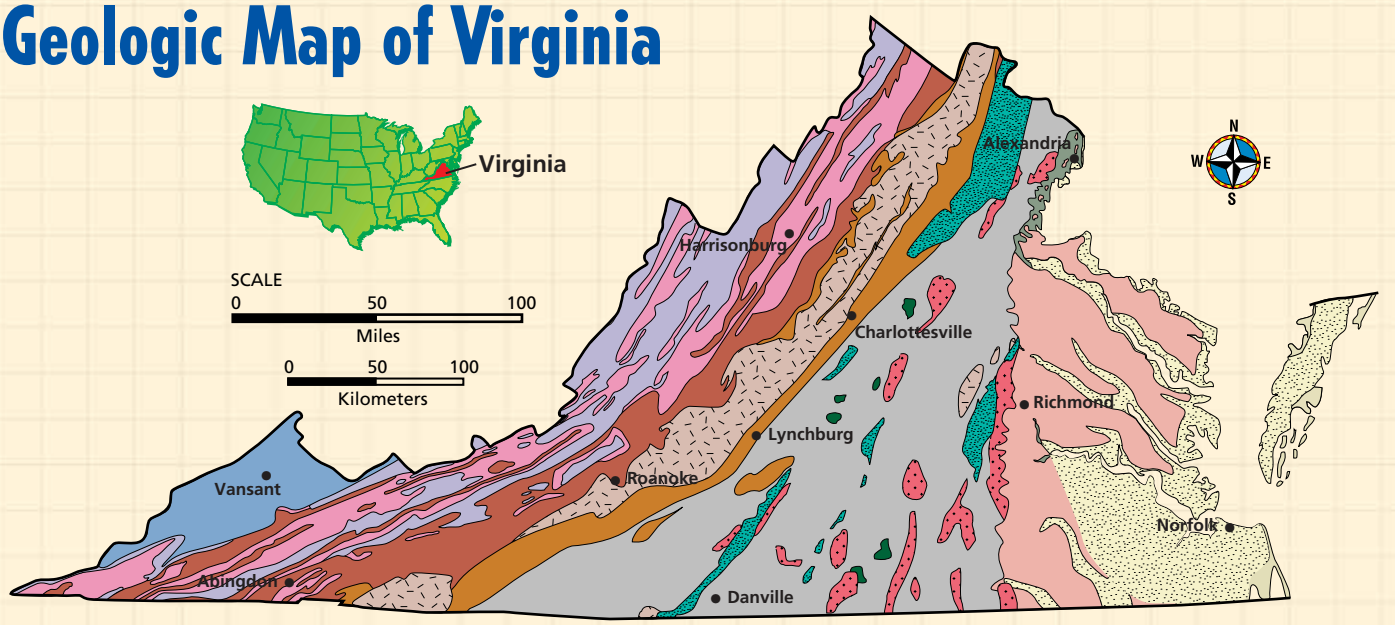
4. **Evaluating Ideas** How can you distinguish between a sedimentary rock and a foliated metamorphic rock if both have observable layering?

Extension

1. **Applying Conclusions** Collect a variety of rocks from your area. Use the Guide to Common Rocks to see how many you can classify. How many igneous rocks did you collect? How many sedimentary rocks did you collect? How many metamorphic rocks did you collect? After you identify the class of each rock, try to name the rock.

MAPS in Action

Geologic Map of Virginia



Precambrian

- **Precambrian (550–750 Ma)** Metasedimentary rocks, metarhyolite, and metabasalt
- **Precambrian (550–750 Ma)** Gneiss, schist, slate, phyllite, quartzite, and marble
- **Precambrian (980–1400 Ma)** Granite, granitic gneiss, charnockite, and layered gneiss

Paleozoic

- **Cambrian (500–550 Ma)** Dolomite, limestone, shale, and sandstone
- **Mississippian-Devonian (320–410 Ma)** Sandstone and shale with minor gypsum and coal
- **Silurian-Ordovican (410–500 Ma)** Limestone, dolomite, shale, and sandstone
- **Pennsylvanian (290–320 Ma)** Sandstone, shale, and coal
- **Paleozoic (300–500 Ma)** Granite and other felsic igneous rocks
- **Paleozoic (300–500 Ma)** Gabbro and other mafic igneous rocks

Mesozoic

- **Cretaceous (65–140 Ma)** Partly lithified sand, clay, and sandstone
- **Triassic-Jurassic (200–225 Ma)** Red and gray shale, sandstone, and conglomerate intruded by diabase and basalt

Cenozoic

- **Quaternary (20 ka–2 Ma)** Sand, mud, and gravel
- **Holocene (present–20 ka)** Sand, mud, and peat deposited in beaches, marshes, swamps, and estuaries
- **Tertiary (2–65 Ma)** Sand, mud, limy sand, and marl

Ma = millions of years
ka = thousands of years

Map Skills Activity

This map shows geologic data for the state of Virginia. The different colors indicate rocks of different ages. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using the Key** From what geologic era and period are rocks found in Roanoke, Virginia?
2. **Analyzing Data** Near which city in Virginia are the oldest rocks in the state found?
3. **Analyzing Data** Near which city in Virginia are the youngest rocks in the state found?
4. **Inferring Relationships** What feature or features helped to determine the location of the youngest rocks in Virginia?
5. **Identifying Trends** What are the differences between the three types of Precambrian rocks found in Virginia? Why do you think they are all located near each other?
6. **Analyzing Relationships** What are the age ranges of the oldest of each of the three rock types—igneous, metamorphic, and sedimentary—found in Virginia?

Moon Rock

NASA's Apollo missions brought 382 kg of lunar rock and soil back to Earth. In fact, moments after *Apollo 11* astronauts set foot on the moon in 1969, they began to fill two boxes with brown and gray moon rock. Later expeditions to the moon included vehicles that allowed a total of about 2,000 specimens to be collected.

Back on Earth

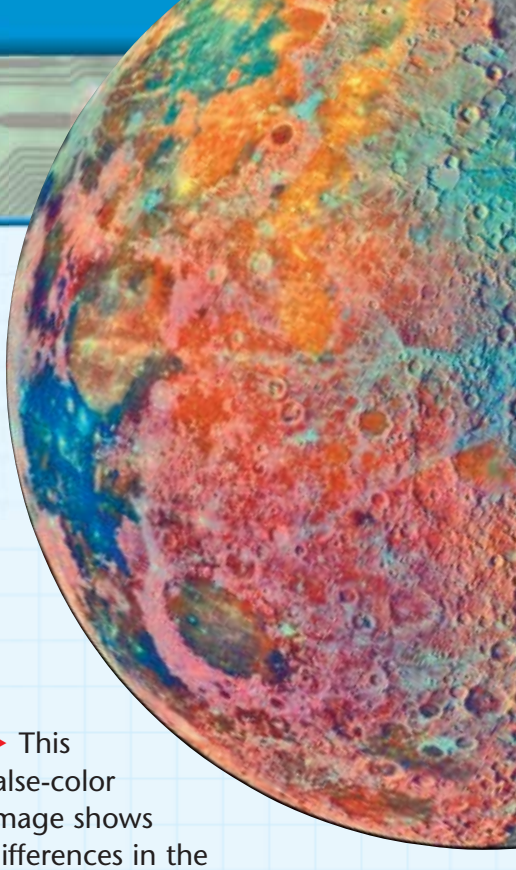
Geologists on Earth discovered that moon rocks are similar to Earth rocks in composition and in the way they formed. Geologists used their knowledge of Earth rock to analyze the moon rock and to learn about the geologic history of the moon.

Much of the rock material that was brought back from the moon was in a powdery form. This pulverized rock, called *regolith* (REG uh lith), covers much of the surface of the moon. Rock-dating methods show that regolith is one of the oldest materials on the moon's surface. From this information, geologists concluded that during the first billion years of the moon's existence, a shower of meteorites pulverized most of the moon's existing surface rock.

The Moon's History

The solid rocks on the moon are of two types—highland rocks and mare (MAW RAY) rocks. The highland rocks are igneous rocks that contain a large amount of plagioclase feldspar.

▲ *Apollo 12* astronaut Alan Bean holds a container designed to hold lunar soil (above). NASA scientist Andrea Mosie examines a volcanic moon rock (left).



▶ This false-color image shows differences in the moon's composition. The blue areas have rock that contains large amounts of titanium.

Mare, which is Latin for "sea," refers to the dark areas on the lunar surface. Scientists discovered that mare rock formed after meteor showers made craters on the moon. Lava from inside the moon then poured onto the crater floors and covered large areas of the lunar surface. The lava then cooled and hardened into basalt about 4 billion years ago.

Extension

1. **Making Inferences** Is mare rock classified as igneous, metamorphic, or sedimentary rock? Explain.

Chapter 7

Resources and Energy

Sections

1 Mineral Resources
2 Nonrenewable Energy
3 Renewable Energy
4 Resources and Conservation

What You'll Learn

- Which of Earth's resources humans use
- How resources are obtained
- How resource use affects the environment

Why It's Relevant

Supplies of some resources are diminishing. By understanding how these resources are used, scientists can search for sustainable, alternative resources.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Four-Corner Fold

Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Four-Corner Fold" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label each flap of the four-corner fold with a topic from the chapter. Write what you know about each topic under the appropriate flap. As you read the chapter, add other information that you learn.

▶ Hoover Dam generates hydroelectric power. Its construction also created Lake Mead, whose water is used to irrigate more than a million acres of land in California, Arizona, and Mexico.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

Section 1

Mineral Resources

Earth's crust contains useful mineral resources. The processes that formed many of these resources took millions of years. Scientists have identified more than 3,000 different minerals in Earth's crust. Many of these mineral resources are mined for human use.

Mineral resources can be either *metals,* such as gold, Au, silver, Ag, and aluminum, Al, or *nonmetals,* such as sulfur, S, and quartz, SiO_2. Metals can be identified by their shiny surfaces. Metals are also good conductors of heat and electricity, and they tend to bend easily when in thin sheets. Most nonmetals have a dull surface and are poor conductors of heat and electricity.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** what ores are and how they form.
- **Identify** four uses for mineral resources.
- **Summarize** two ways humans obtain mineral resources.

KEY TERMS

ore
lode
placer deposit
gemstone

Ores

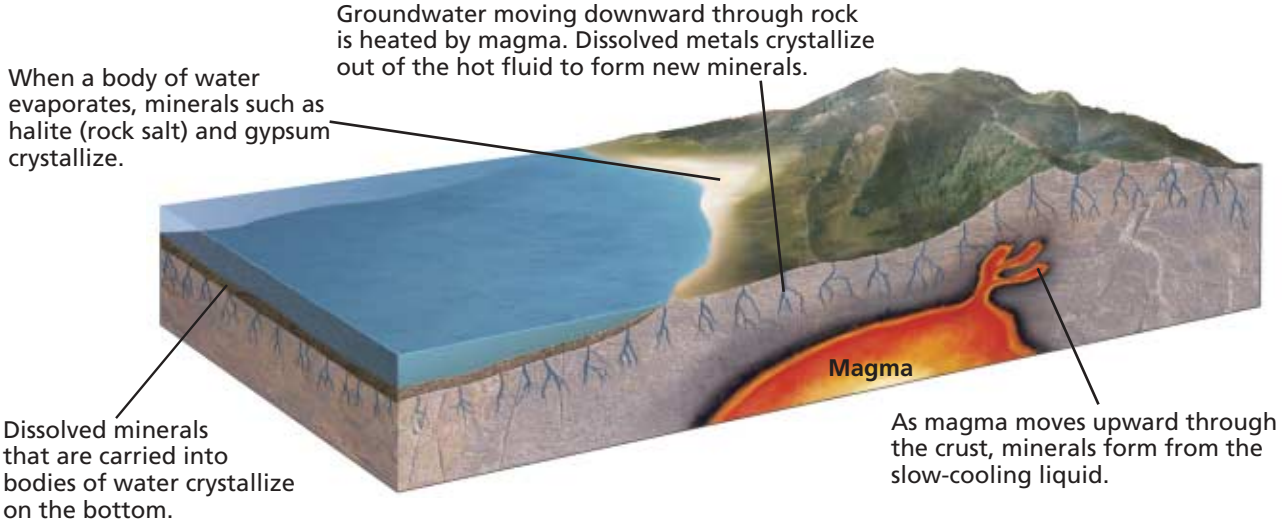
Metallic minerals such as gold, silver, and copper, Cu, are called *native elements* and can exist in Earth's crust as nuggets of pure metal. But most other minerals in Earth's crust are *compounds* of two or more elements. Mineral deposits from which metals and nonmetals can be removed profitably are called **ores.** For example, the metal iron, Fe, can be removed from naturally occurring deposits of the minerals magnetite and hematite. Mercury, Hg, can be separated from cinnabar, and aluminum, Al, can be separated from the ore bauxite.

ore a natural material whose concentration of economically valuable minerals is high enough for the material to be mined profitably

Ores Formed by Cooling Magma

Ores form in a variety of ways, as shown in **Figure 1.** Some ores, such as chromium, Cr; nickel, Ni; and lead, Pb, ores form within cooling magma. As the magma cools, dense metallic minerals sink. As the minerals sink, layers of these minerals accumulate at the bottom of the magma chamber to form ore deposits.

Figure 1 ▶ The Formation of Ores



Ores Formed by Contact Metamorphism

Some lead, Pb; copper, Cu; and zinc, Zn, ores form through the process of contact metamorphism. *Contact metamorphism* is a process that occurs when magma comes into contact with existing rock. Heat and chemical reactions with hot fluids from the magma can change the composition of the surrounding rock. These changes sometimes form ores.

Contact metamorphism can also form ore deposits when hot fluids called *hydrothermal solutions* move through small cracks in a large mass of rock. In this process, minerals from the surrounding rock dissolve into the hydrothermal solution. Over time, new minerals precipitate from the solution and form narrow zones of rock called *veins*. Veins commonly consist of ores of valuable heavy minerals, such as gold, Au; tin, Sn; lead, Pb; and copper, Cu. When many thick mineral veins form in a relatively small region, the ore deposit is called a **lode.** Stories of a "Mother Lode" kept people coming to California during the California gold rush in the late 1840s.

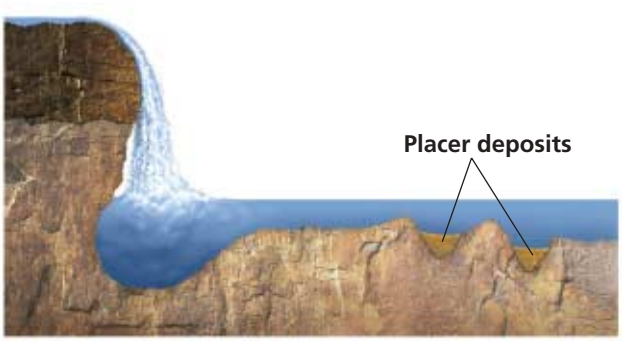
lode a mineral deposit within a rock formation

placer deposit a deposit that contains a valuable mineral that has been concentrated by mechanical action

Ores Formed by Moving Water

The movement of water helps to form ore deposits. First, tiny fragments of native elements, such as gold, Au, are released from rock as it breaks down by weathering. Then, streams carry the fragments until the currents become too weak to carry these dense metals. Finally, because of the mechanical action of the stream, the fragments become concentrated at the bottom of stream beds in **placer deposits.** A placer deposit is shown in **Figure 2.**

Reading Check **Name two ways water creates ore deposits. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**



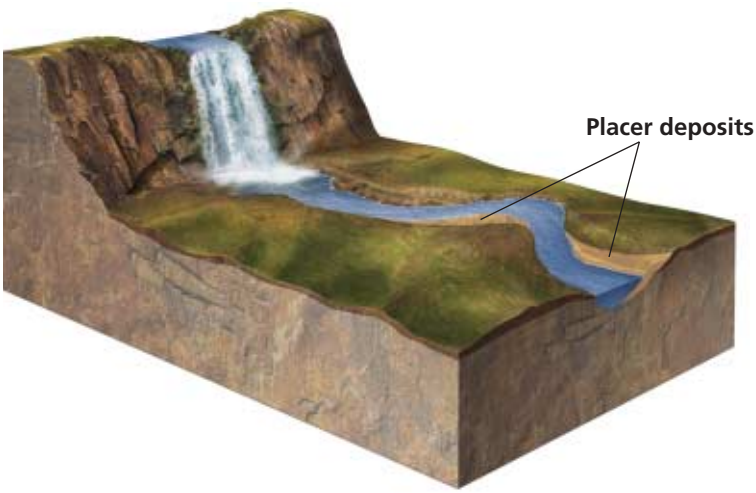


Figure 2 ▶ Placer deposits may occur at a river bend (left) or in holes downstream from a waterfall (right). Gold is a mineral that is commonly found in placer deposits. A stream carries heavy gold grains and nuggets and drops them where the current is weak.

Table 1

Minerals and Their Uses	
Metallic minerals	**Uses**
Hematite and magnetite (iron)	in making steel
Galena (lead)	in car batteries; in solder
Gold, silver, and platinum	in electronics and dental work; as objects such as coins, jewelry, eating utensils, and bowls
Chalcopyrite (copper)	as wiring, in coins and jewelry, and as building ornaments
Sphalerite (zinc)	in making brass and galvanized steel
Nonmetallic minerals	**Uses**
Diamond (carbon)	in drill bits and saws (industrial grade) and in jewelry (gemstone quality)
Graphite (carbon)	in pencils, paint, lubricants, and batteries
Calcite	in cement; as building stone
Halite (salt)	in food preparation and preservation
Kaolinite (clay)	in ceramics, cement, and bricks
Quartz (sand)	as glass
Sulfur	in gunpowder, medicines, and rubber
Gypsum	in plaster and wallboard

Uses of Mineral Resources

Some metals, such as gold, Au, platinum, Pt, and silver, Ag, are prized for their beauty and rarity. Metallic ores are sources of these valuable minerals and elements. Certain rare nonmetallic minerals called **gemstones** display extraordinary brilliance and color when they are specially cut for jewelry. Other nonmetallic minerals, such as calcite and gypsum, are used as building materials. **Table 1** shows some metallic and nonmetallic minerals and their common uses.

gemstone a mineral, rock, or organic material that can be used as jewelry or an ornament when it is cut and polished

Mineral Exploration and Mining

Companies that mine and recover minerals are often looking for new areas to mine. These companies identify areas that may contain enough minerals for economic recovery through mineral exploration. In general, an area is considered for mining if it has at least 100 to 1,000 times the concentration of minerals that are found elsewhere.

During mineral exploration, people search for mineral deposits by studying local geology. Airplanes that carry special equipment are used to measure and identify patterns in magnetism, gravity, radioactivity, and rock color. Exploration teams also collect and test rock samples to determine whether the rock contains enough metal to make a mine profitable.

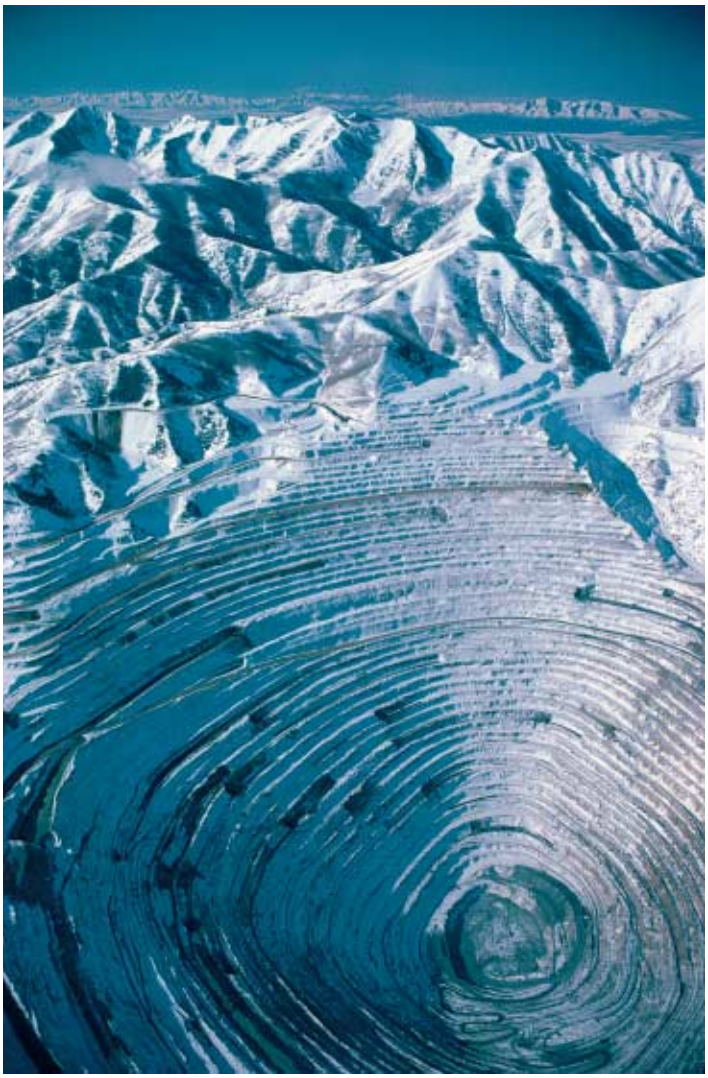


Figure 3 ▶ With a rim diameter of 4 km and a depth of almost 1 km, the Bingham Canyon Mine in Utah is the largest copper mine in the world.

Subsurface Mining

Many mineral deposits are located below Earth's surface. These minerals are mined by miners who work underground to recover mineral deposits. These mining techniques are called *subsurface mining*.

Surface Mining

When mineral deposits are located close to Earth's surface, they may be mined by using *surface mining* methods. In these methods, the overlying rock material is stripped away to reveal the mineral deposits. A very large open-pit copper mine is shown in **Figure 3.**

Placer Mining

Minerals in placer deposits are mined by dredging. In placer mining, large buckets are attached to a floating barge. The buckets scoop up the sediments in front of the barge. Dense minerals from placer deposits are separated from the surrounding sediment. Then, the remaining sediments are released into the water.

Undersea Mining

The ocean floor also contains mineral resources. *Nodules* are lumps of minerals on the deep-ocean floor that contain iron, Fe; manganese, Mn; and nickel, Ni, and that could become economically important if they could be recovered efficiently. However, because of their location, these deposits are very difficult to mine. Mineral deposits on land can be mined less expensively than deposits on the deep-ocean floor can.

Section 1 Review

1. **Define** *ore*.
2. **Describe** three ways that ore deposits form.
3. **Identify** two uses for each of the following minerals: sulfur, copper, and diamond.
4. **Summarize** the four main types of mining.

CRITICAL THINKING

5. **Applying Ideas** Which would be a better insulator for a hot-water pipe, a metal or a nonmetal? Explain your answer.
6. **Understanding Relationships** Why are dense minerals more likely to form placer deposits than less dense minerals are?
7. **Making Inferences** Why do you think that mining on land is less costly than mining in the deep ocean is?

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *mineral, ore, magma, contact metamorphism, vein, lode, placer deposit,* and *mine*.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

Section 2

Nonrenewable Energy

Many of Earth's resources are used to generate energy. Energy is used for transportation, manufacturing, and countless other things that are important to life as we know it. Energy resources that exist in limited amounts and that cannot be replaced quickly once they are used are examples of **nonrenewable resources.**

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** why coal is a fossil fuel.
- **Describe** how petroleum and natural gas form and how they are removed from Earth.
- **Summarize** the processes of nuclear fission and nuclear fusion.
- **Explain** how nuclear fission generates electricity.

KEY TERMS

nonrenewable resource
fossil fuel
nuclear fission
nuclear fusion

Fossil Fuels

Some of the most important nonrenewable resources are buried within Earth's crust. These natural resources—coal, petroleum, and natural gas—formed from the remains of living things. Because of their organic origin, coal, petroleum, and natural gas are called **fossil fuels.** Fossil fuels consist primarily of compounds of carbon and hydrogen called *hydrocarbons*. These compounds contain stored energy originally obtained from sunlight by plants and animals that lived millions of years ago. When hydrocarbons are burned, the breaking of chemical bonds releases energy as heat and light. Much of the energy humans use every day comes from the burning of the hydrocarbons that make up fossil fuels.

Formation of Coal

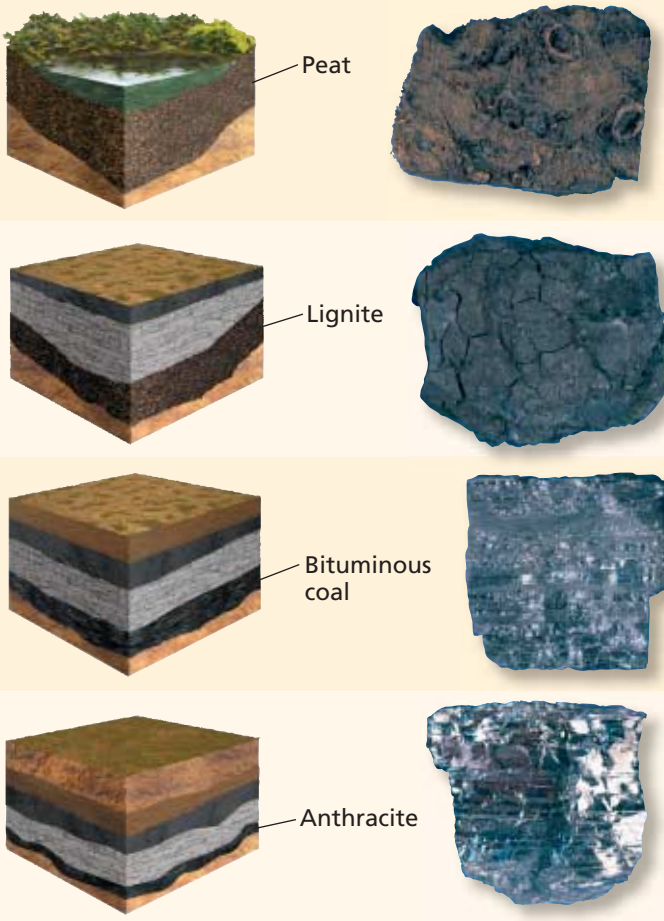
The most commonly burned fossil fuel is coal. The coal deposits of today are the remains of plants that have undergone a complex process called carbonization. *Carbonization* occurs when partially decomposed plant material is buried in swamp mud and becomes peat. Bacteria consume some of the peat and release the gases methane, CH_4, and carbon dioxide, CO_2. As gases escape, the chemical content of the peat gradually changes until mainly carbon remains. The complex chemical and physical changes that produce coal happen only if oxygen in a swamp is absent. When the conditions are not right for carbonization or if the time required for coal formation has not elapsed, peat remains. Peat may be used as an energy source, as shown in **Figure 1.**

nonrenewable resource a resource that forms at a rate that is much slower than the rate at which it is consumed

fossil fuel a nonrenewable energy resource that formed from the remains of organisms that lived long ago; examples include oil, coal, and natural gas

Figure 1 ▶ Peat deposits are still forming today. Some people in Ireland and Scotland heat their houses with peat. In Ireland and Russia, peat is used to fuel some electric power plants.

Figure 2 ▶ Types of Coal



Stage 1: Peat

The partial decomposition of plant remains forms a brownish-black material called *peat*.

Stage 2: Lignite

Peat is buried by other sediment. As heat and pressure increase, peat becomes lignite. Lignite is also called *brown coal*.

Stage 3: Bituminous Coal

Increased temperature and pressure turn lignite into bituminous coal, which is 80% carbon. Bituminous coal is also called *soft coal*.

Stage 4: Anthracite

Under high temperature and pressure conditions, bituminous coal eventually becomes anthracite, which is the hardest form of coal.

Types of Coal Deposits

As peat is covered by layers of sediments, the weight of these sediments squeezes out water and gases. A denser material called *lignite* forms, as shown in the second step of **Figure 2.** The increased temperature and pressure of more sediments compacts the lignite and forms *bituminous coal.* Bituminous coal is the most abundant type of coal. Where the folding of Earth's crust produces high temperatures and pressure, bituminous coal changes into *anthracite,* the hardest form of coal. Bituminous coal is made of 80% carbon, and anthracite is made of 90% carbon. Both release a large amount of heat when they burn.

Formation of Petroleum and Natural Gas

When microorganisms and plants died in shallow prehistoric oceans and lakes, their remains accumulated on the ocean floor and lake bottoms and were buried by sediment. As more sediments accumulated, heat and pressure increased. Over millions of years, the heat and pressure caused chemical changes to convert the remains into petroleum and natural gas.

Petroleum and natural gas are mixtures of hydrocarbons. Petroleum, which is also called *oil,* is made of liquid hydrocarbons. Natural gas is made of hydrocarbons in the form of gas.

MATH PRACTICE

Coal Reserves

There are thought to be more than 1,000 billion tons of coal on Earth that can be mined. If 4.5 billion tons are used worldwide every year, for how many years will Earth's coal reserves last? If coal use increases to 10 billion tons per year, for how many years will Earth's coal reserves last?

Petroleum and Natural Gas Deposits

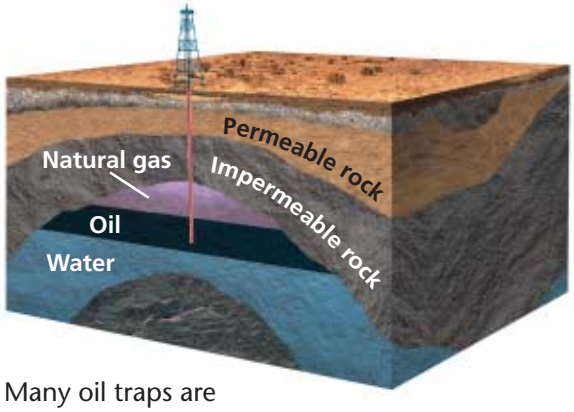
Petroleum and natural gas are very important sources of energy for transportation, farming, and many other industries. Because of their importance, petroleum and natural gas deposits are valuable and are highly sought after. Petroleum and natural gas are most often mined from permeable sedimentary rock. *Permeable rocks* have interconnected spaces through which liquids can easily flow.

As sediments accumulate and sedimentary rock forms, pressure increases. This pressure forces fluids, including water, oil, and gas, out of the pores and up through the layers of permeable rock. The fluids move upward until they reach a layer of *impermeable rock*, or rock through which liquids cannot flow, called *cap rock*. Petroleum that accumulates beneath the cap rock fills all the spaces to form an oil reservoir. Because petroleum is less dense than water, petroleum rises above any trapped water. Similarly, natural gas rises above petroleum, because natural gas is less dense than both oil and water.

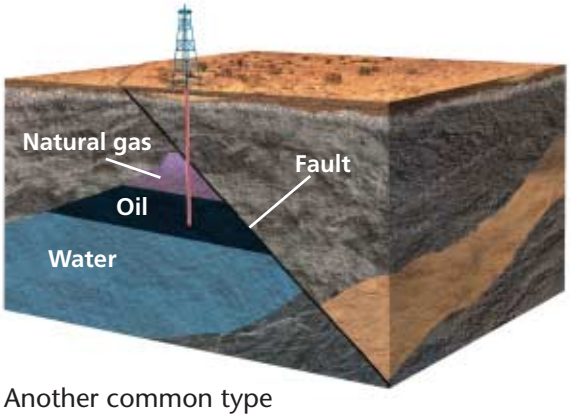
Oil Traps

Geologists explore Earth's crust to discover the kinds of rock structures that may trap oil or gas. They look for oil trapped in places such as the ones shown in **Figure 3.** When a well is drilled into an oil reservoir, the petroleum and natural gas often flow to the surface. When the pressure of the overlying rock is removed, fluids rise up and out through the well.

Figure 3 ▶ Oil Traps



Many oil traps are anticlines, or upward folds in rock layers.



Another common type of oil trap is a fault, or crack, in Earth's crust that seals the oil- or gas-bearing formation.

Fossil-Fuel Supplies

Fossil fuels, like minerals, are nonrenewable resources. Globally, fossil fuels are one of the main sources of energy. *Crude oil*, or unrefined petroleum, is also used in the production of plastics, synthetic fabrics, medicines, waxes, synthetic rubber, insecticides, chemical fertilizers, detergents, shampoos, and many other products.

Coal is the most abundant fossil fuel in the world. Every continent has coal, but almost two-thirds of known deposits occur in three countries—the United States, Russia, and China. Scientists estimate that most of the petroleum reserves in the world have been discovered. However, scientists think that there are undiscovered natural gas reserves. There is also a relatively abundant material called *oil shale* that contains petroleum. But the cost of mining oil from shale is far greater than the present cost of recovering oil from other sedimentary rocks.

Reading Check **What is cap rock? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Nonrenewable Resources
SciLinksCode: HQ61044
Topic: Fossil Fuels
SciLinksCode: HQ60614

Nuclear Energy

When scientists discovered that atoms had smaller fundamental parts, scientists wondered if atoms could be split. In 1919, Ernest Rutherford first studied and explained the results of bombarding atomic nuclei with high-energy particles. In the 30 years that followed his research, nuclear (NOO klee uhr) technologies were developed that allowed atomic weapons to be made and allowed nuclear reactions to be used to generate electricity. Energy that is produced by using these technologies is called *nuclear energy*.

nuclear fission the process by which the nucleus of a heavy atom splits into two or more fragments; the process releases neutrons and energy

Nuclear Fission

One form of nuclear energy is produced by splitting the nuclei of heavy atoms. This splitting of the nucleus of a large atom into two or more smaller nuclei is called **nuclear fission.** The process of nuclear fission is shown in **Figure 4.**

The forces that hold the nucleus of an atom together are more than 1 million times stronger than the strongest chemical bonds between atoms. If a nucleus is struck by a free neutron, however, the nucleus of the atom may split. When the nucleus splits, it releases additional neutrons as well as energy. The newly released neutrons strike other nearby nuclei, which causes those nuclei to split and to release more neutrons and more energy. A chain reaction occurs as more neutrons strike neighboring atoms. If a fission reaction is allowed to continue uncontrolled, the reaction will escalate quickly and may result in an explosion. However, controlled fission produces heat that can be used to generate electricity.

Reading Check **What causes a chain reaction during nuclear fission? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Nuclear Energy
SciLinksCode: HQ61047

Figure 4 ▶ An Example of a Nuclear Fission Reaction

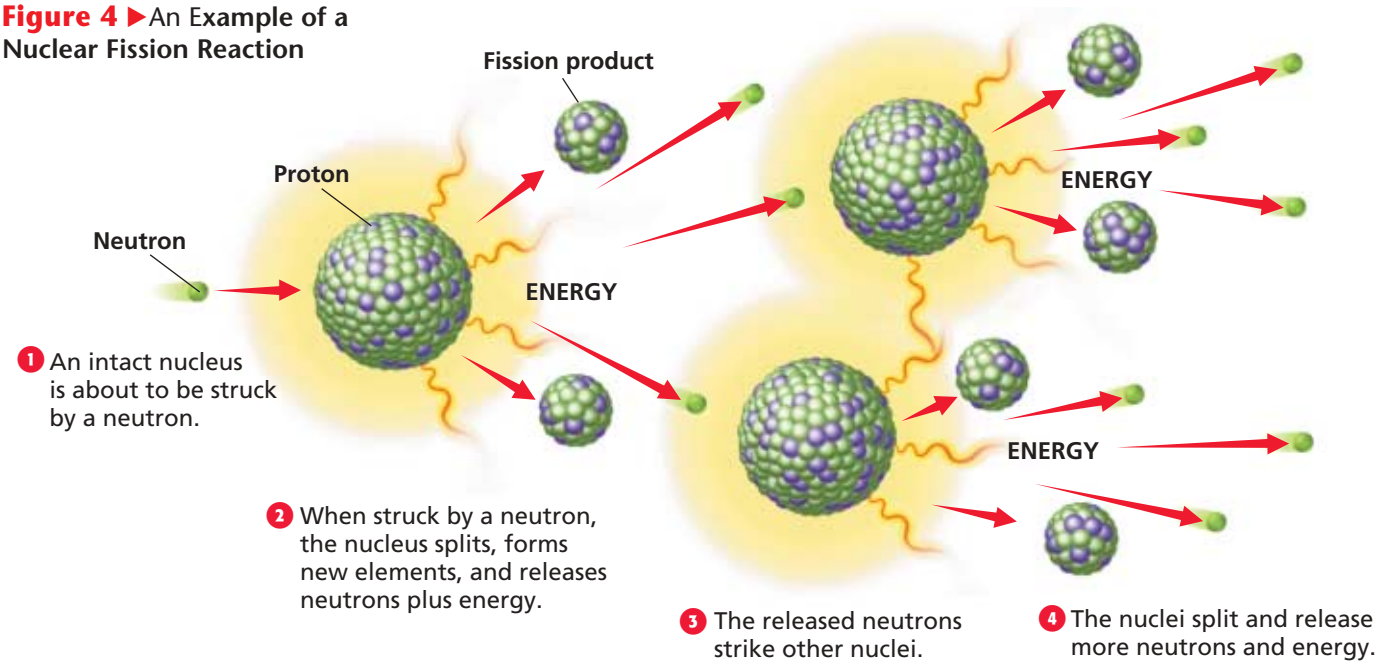
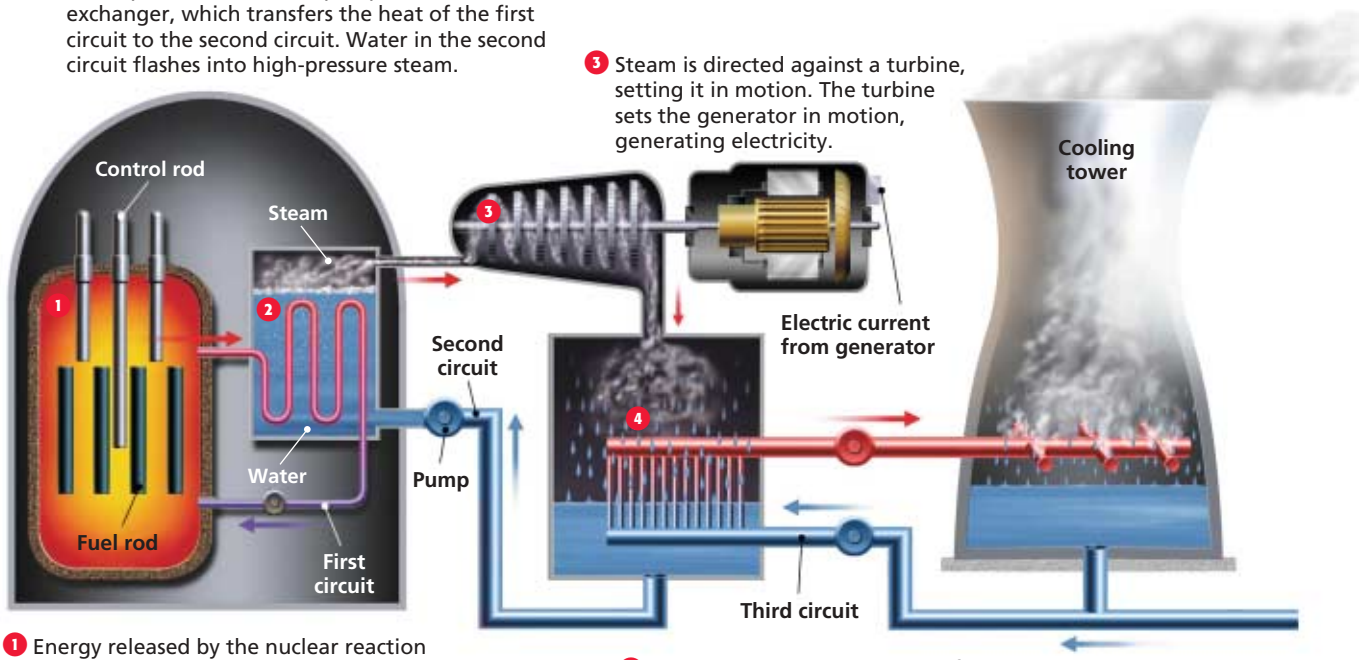


Figure 5 ▶ How a Nuclear Power Plant Generates Electricity



How Fission Generates Electricity

When a nuclear power plant is working correctly, the chain reaction that occurs during nuclear fission is controlled. The flow of neutrons into the fission reaction is regulated so that the reaction can be slowed down, speeded up, or stopped as needed. The specialized equipment in which controlled nuclear fission is carried out is called a *nuclear reactor*.

During fission, a tremendous amount of heat energy is released. This heat energy can in turn be used to generate electricity. **Figure 5** shows how nuclear fission inside a nuclear reactor can be used to generate electricity. Currently, only one kind of naturally occurring element is used for nuclear fission. It is a rare isotope of the element uranium called *uranium-235*, or ^{235}U. Because ^{235}U is rare, the ore that is mined is processed into fuel pellets that have a high ^{235}U content. After this process is complete, the fuel pellets are said to be uranium-enriched pellets.

These enriched fuel pellets are placed into rods to make *fuel rods*. Bundles of these fuel rods are then bombarded by neutrons. When struck by a neutron, the ^{235}U nuclei in the fuel rods split and release neutrons and energy. The resulting chain reaction causes the fuel rods to become very hot.

Water is pumped around the fuel rods to absorb and remove the heat energy. The water is then pumped into a second circuit, where the water becomes steam. The steam turns the turbines that provide power for electric generators. A third water circuit carries away excess heat and releases it into the environment.

Graphic Organizer — Chain-of-Events Chart

Create the **Graphic Organizer** entitled "Chain-of-Events Chart" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Then, fill in the chart with details about each step of how electricity is generated by fission.

Figure 6 ▶ These water pools store radioactive wastes. The blue glow indicates that the waste products are highly radioactive.

nuclear fusion the process by which nuclei of small atoms combine to form new, more massive nuclei; the process releases energy

Advantages and Disadvantages of Nuclear Fission

Nuclear power plants burn no fossil fuels and produce no air pollution. But because nuclear fission uses and produces radioactive materials that have very long half-lives, wastes must be safely stored for thousands of years. These waste products give off high doses of radiation that can destroy plant and animal cells and can cause harmful changes in the genetic material of living cells.

Currently, nuclear power plants store their nuclear wastes in dry casks or in onsite water pools, as shown in **Figure 6.** Other wastes are either stored onsite or transported to one of three disposal facilities in the United States. The U.S. Department of Energy has plans for a permanent disposal site for highly radioactive nuclear wastes.

Nuclear Fusion

All of the energy that reaches Earth from the sun is produced by a kind of nuclear reaction, called nuclear fusion. During **nuclear fusion,** the nuclei of hydrogen atoms combine to form larger nuclei of helium. This process releases energy. Fusion reactions occur only at temperatures of more than 15,000,000°C.

For more than 40 years, scientists have been trying to harness the energy released by nuclear fusion to produce electricity. More research is needed before a commercial fusion reactor can be built. If such a reactor could be built in the future, hydrogen atoms from ocean water might be used as the fuel. With ocean water as fuel, the amount of energy available from nuclear fusion would be almost limitless. Scientists also think that wastes from fusion would be much less dangerous than wastes from fission. The only byproducts of fusion are helium nuclei, which are harmless to living cells.

Section 2 Review

1. **Explain** why coal, petroleum, and natural gas are called *fossil fuels*.
2. **Compare** how coal, petroleum, and natural gas form.
3. **Describe** the kind of rock structures in which petroleum reservoirs form.
4. **Identify** the naturally occurring element that is used for nuclear fission.
5. **Explain** how nuclear fission generates electricity.
6. **Summarize** the process of nuclear fusion.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Analyzing Relationships** Why have we been able to build nuclear power plants for only the last 50 years?
8. **Recognizing Relationships** Can the waste products of nuclear fission be safely disposed of in rivers or lakes? Explain your answer.
9. **Making Comparisons** How do the processes of nuclear fusion and nuclear fission differ?

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *nonrenewable resource, fossil fuel, coal, carbonization, peat, lignite, bituminous coal, anthracite coal, petroleum,* and *natural gas.*

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

Section 3 Renewable Energy

If current trends continue and worldwide energy needs increase, the world's supply of fossil fuels may be used up in the next 200 years. Nuclear energy does not use fossil fuels, but numerous safety concerns are associated with it. Therefore, many nations are researching alternative energy sources to ensure that safe energy resources will be available far into the future. Resources that can be replaced within a human life span or as they are used are called **renewable resources**.

Geothermal Energy

In many locations, water flows far beneath Earth's surface. This water may flow through rock that is heated by nearby magma or by hot gases that are released by magma. This water becomes heated as it flows through the rock. The hot water, or the resulting steam, is the source of a large amount of heat energy. This heat energy is called **geothermal energy,** which means "energy from the heat of Earth's interior."

Engineers and scientists have harnessed geothermal energy by drilling wells to reach the hot water. Sometimes, water is first pumped down into the hot rocks if water does not already flow through them. The resulting steam and hot water can be used as a source of heat. The steam and hot water also serve as sources of power to drive turbines, which generate electricity.

The city of San Francisco, for example, obtains some of its electricity from a geothermal power plant located in the nearby mountains. In Iceland, 85% of the homes are heated by geothermal energy. Italy and Japan have also developed power plants that use geothermal energy. A geothermal power plant is shown in **Figure 1.**

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how geothermal energy may be used as a substitute for fossil fuels.
- **Compare** passive and active methods of harnessing energy from the sun.
- **Explain** how water and wind can be harnessed to generate electricity.

KEY TERMS

renewable resource
geothermal energy
solar energy
hydroelectric energy
biomass

renewable resource a natural resource that can be replaced at the same rate at which the resource is consumed

geothermal energy the energy produced by heat within Earth

Figure 1 ▶ These swimmers are enjoying the hot water near a geothermal power plant in Svartsbening, Iceland.

Solar Energy

solar energy the energy received by Earth from the sun in the form of radiation

Another source of renewable energy is the sun. Every 15 minutes, Earth receives enough energy from the sun to meet the energy needs of the world for one year. Energy from the sun is called **solar energy.** The challenge scientists face is how to capture even a small part of the energy that travels to Earth from the sun.

Converting sunshine into heat energy can be done in two ways. A house that has windows facing the sun collects solar energy through a *passive system*. The system is passive because it does not use moving parts. Sunlight enters the house and warms the building material, which stores some heat for the evening. An *active system* includes the use of solar collectors. One type of *solar collector* is a box that has a glass top. The box is commonly placed on the roof of a building. Water circulates through tubes within the box. The sun heats the water as it moves through the tubes, which provides heat and hot water. On cloudy days, however, there may not be enough sunlight to heat the water. So, the system must use heat that was stored from previous days.

Photovoltaic cells are another active system that converts solar energy directly into electricity. Photovoltaic cells work well for small objects, such as calculators. Producing enough electricity from these cells to power cities is under investigation.

QuickLAB 30 min

Solar Collector

Procedure

1. Line the inside of a **small, shallow pan** with **black plastic.** Use **tape** to attach a **thermometer** to the inside of the pan. Fill the pan with enough **room temperature water** to cover the end of the thermometer. Fasten **plastic wrap** over the pan with a **rubber band.** Be sure you can read the thermometer.
2. Place the pan in a sunny area. Use a **stopwatch** to record the temperature every 5 min until the temperature stops rising. Discard the water.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2, but do not cover the pan with plastic wrap.
4. Repeat steps 1 and 2, but do not line the pan with black plastic.
5. Repeat steps 1 and 2. But do not line the pan with plastic, and do not cover the pan with plastic wrap.
6. Calculate the rate of temperature change for each trial by subtracting the beginning temperature from the ending temperature. Divide this number by the number of minutes the temperature increased to find the rate of temperature range.

Analysis

1. What are the variables in this investigation? Which trial had the greatest rate of temperature change? the smallest rate of temperature change?
2. Which variable that you tested has the most significant effect on temperature change?
3. What materials would you use to design and build an efficient solar collector? Explain your answer.

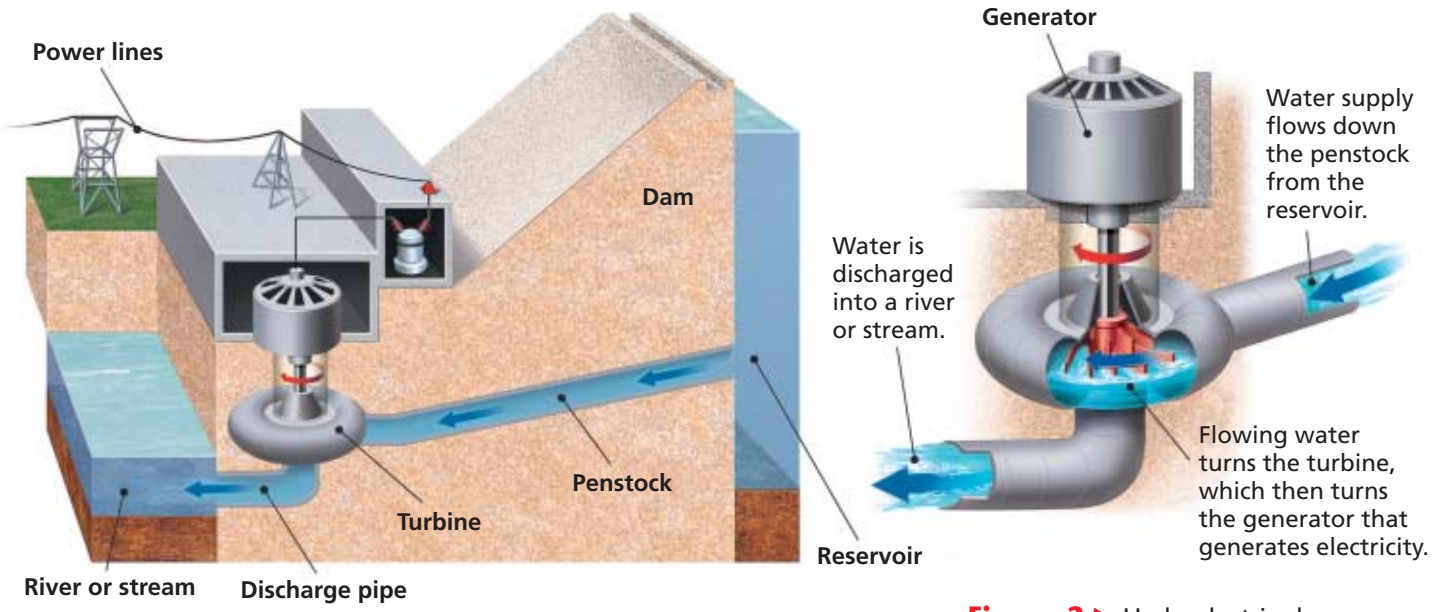


Figure 2 ▶ Hydroelectric dams use moving water to turn turbines. The movement of the turbine powers a generator that generates electricity.

Energy from Moving Water

One of the oldest sources of energy comes from moving water. Energy can be harnessed from the running water of rivers and streams or from ocean tides. In some areas of the world, energy needs can be met by **hydroelectric energy,** or the energy produced by running water. Today, 11% of the electricity in the United States comes from hydroelectric power plants. At a hydroelectric plant, massive dams hold back running water and channel the water through the plant. Inside the plant, the water spins turbines, which turn generators that produce electricity. An example of a hydroelectric plant is shown in **Figure 2.**

Another renewable source of energy for moving water is the tides. Tides are the rising and falling of sea level at certain times of the day. To make use of this tidal flow, people have built dams to trap the water at high tide and to then release it at low tide. As the water is released, it turns the turbines within the dams.

hydroelectric energy electrical energy produced by the flow of water

biomass plant material, manure, or any other organic matter that is used as an energy source

Energy from Biomass

Other renewable resources are being exploited to help supply our energy needs. Renewable energy sources that come from plant material, manure, and other organic matter, such as sawdust or paper waste, are called **biomass.** Biomass is a major source of energy in many developing countries. More than half of all trees that are cut down are used as fuel for heating or cooking. Bacteria that decompose the organic matter produce gases, such as methane, that can also be burned. Liquid fuels, such as ethanol, also form from the action of bacteria on biomass. All of these resources can be burned to generate electricity.

Reading Check **Name three sources of renewable energy. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Renewable Resources
SciLinksCode: HQ61291

Figure 3 ▶ The spinning blades of a windmill are connected to a generator. When winds cause the blades to spin faster, the generator produces more energy.

Energy from Wind

Wind is the movement of air over Earth's surface. Wind results from air pressure differences caused by the sun's uneven heating of Earth's surface. Wind turbines use the movement of air to convert wind energy into mechanical energy, which is used to generate electricity.

Wind energy is now being used to produce electricity in locations that have constant winds. Small, wind-driven generators are used to meet the energy needs of individual homes. *Wind farms,* such as the one shown in **Figure 3,** may have hundreds of giant wind turbines that can produce enough energy to meet the electricity needs of entire communities. However, wind generators are not practical everywhere. Even in the most favorable locations, such as in windy mountain passes, the wind does not always blow. Because the wind does not always blow, wind energy cannot be depended on as an energy source for every location.

Section 3 Review

1. **Explain** why many nations are researching alternative energy resources.
2. **Explain** how geothermal energy may be used as a substitute for fossil fuels.
3. **Describe** both passive and active methods of harnessing energy from the sun.
4. **Summarize** how electrical energy is generated from running water.
5. **Describe** how biomass can be used as fuels to generate electricity.
6. **Explain** how water and wind can be harnessed to generate electricity.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Comparisons** Both fossil fuels and biomass fuels come from plant and animal matter. Why are fossil fuels considered to be nonrenewable, and why is biomass considered to be renewable?
8. **Demonstrating Reasoned Judgement** If you were asked to construct a power plant that uses only renewable energy sources in your area, what type of energy would you use? Explain.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *renewable resource, solar collector, geothermal energy, solar energy, passive system, active system, hydroelectric energy, biomass,* and *wind energy.*

Section 4

Resources and Conservation

At the present rate of use, scientists estimate that the worldwide coal reserves will last about 200 years. Many scientists also think that within the next 20 years, humans will have used half of Earth's oil supply. This limited supply of fossil fuels and other traditional energy resources has inspired research into possible new energy sources.

Scientists are also studying how the use of traditional energy sources affects Earth's ecosystems. We have learned that mining can damage or destroy fragile ecosystems. Fossil fuels and nuclear power generation may add pollution to Earth's air, water, and soil. However, people can reduce the environmental impact of their resource use. Many governments and public groups have worked to create and enforce policies that govern the use of these natural resources.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** two environmental impacts of mining and the use of fossil fuels.
- **Explain** two ways the environmental impacts of mining can be reduced.
- **Identify** three ways that you can conserve natural resources.

KEY TERM

conservation
recycling

Environmental Impacts of Mining

Mining for minerals can cause a variety of environmental problems. Mining may cause both air and noise pollution. Nearby water resources may also be affected by water that carries toxic substances from mining processes. Surface mining is particularly destructive to wildlife habitats. For example, surface mining often uses controlled explosions to remove layers of rock and soil, as shown in **Figure 1.** Some mining practices cause increased erosion and soil degradation. Regions above subsurface mines may sink, or subside, because of the removal of the materials below. This sinking results in the formation of sinkholes. Fires in coal mines are also very difficult to put out and are commonly left to burn out, which may take several decades or centuries.

Figure 1 ▶ The surface of this gold mine in Nevada is being blasted to remove layers of rock.

QuickLAB 30 min

Reclamation

Procedure

1. Use a **plastic spoon** to remove the first layer of gelatin from a **multi-layered gelatin dessert cup** into a **small bowl.**
2. Remove the next layer of gelatin, and discard it.
3. Restore the dessert cup by replacing the first layer of gelatin.

Analysis

1. What does the first layer of gelatin on the restored dessert cup represent?
2. Does the "reclaimed" dessert cup resemble the original, untouched dessert cup?
3. What factors would you address to make reclamation more successful?

Mining Regulations

In the United States, federal and state laws regulate the operation of mines. These laws were designed to prevent mining operations from contaminating local air, water, and soil resources. Some of these federal laws include the Clean Water Act, the Safe Drinking Water Act, and the Comprehensive Response Compensation and Liability Act. All mining operations must also comply with the federal Endangered Species Act, which protects threatened or endangered species and their habitats from being destroyed by mining practices.

Mine Reclamation

To reduce the amount of damage done to ecosystems, mining companies are required to return mined land to its original condition after mining is completed. This process, called *reclamation,* helps reduce the long-lasting environmental impact of mining. In addition to reclamation, some mining operations work hard to reduce environmental damage through frequent inspections and by using processes that reduce environmental impacts.

Fossil Fuels and the Environment

Fossil-fuel procurement affects the environment. Strip mining of coal can leave deep holes where coal was removed. Without plants and topsoil to protect it, exposed land often erodes quickly. When rocks that are exposed during mining get wet, they can weather to form acids. If runoff carries the acids into nearby rivers and streams, aquatic life may be harmed.

Fossil-fuel use also contributes to air pollution. The burning of coal that has a high sulfur content releases large amounts of sulfur dioxide, SO_2, into the atmosphere. When SO_2 combines with water in the air, acid precipitation forms. When petroleum and natural gas are burned, they also release pollutants that can damage the environment. The burning of gasoline in cars is a major contributor to air pollution. But emissions testing, which is shown in **Figure 2,** and careful maintenance help reduce the amount of pollutants released into the air. Emissions testing and maintenance includes the testing of a car's catalytic converter, a device that removes numerous pollutants from the exhaust before the exhaust leaves the car.

Figure 2 ▶ Emissions testing and maintenance of pollution-reducing devices in today's vehicles can help reduce air pollution.

Reading Check **Name two ways the use of fossil fuel affects the environment. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Conservation

Many people and businesses around the world have adopted practices that help reduce the negative effects of the burning of fossil fuels and the use of other natural resources. This preservation and wise use of natural resources is called **conservation.** By conserving natural resources, people can ensure that limited natural resources last longer. Conservation can also help reduce the environmental damage and amount of pollution that can result from the mining and use of natural resources.

Mineral Conservation

Earth's mineral resources are being used at a faster rate each year. Every new person added to the world's population represents a need for additional mineral resources. In developing countries, people are using more mineral resources as their countries become more industrialized. This increased demand for minerals has led many scientists to look for ways to conserve Earth's minerals.

One way to conserve minerals is to use other abundant or renewable materials in place of scarce or nonrenewable minerals. Another way to conserve minerals is by recycling them. **Recycling** is the process of using materials more than once. Some metals, such as iron, copper, and aluminum, are often recycled, as shown in **Figure 3.** Glass and many building materials can also be efficiently recycled. Recycling does require energy, but recycling uses less energy than the mining and manufacturing of new resources does.

Figure 3 ▶ These cubes are made up of metals that have been compacted and are being sent to a recycling plant. ***Can you identify the source of these metals?***

conservation the preservation and wise use of natural resources

recycling the process of recovering valuable or useful materials from waste or scrap; the process of reusing some items

Connection to **ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE**

Methane Hydrates

One potential alternative energy source that scientists are hopeful about is methane hydrates. Methane hydrates are solid, icelike crystals that have gas molecules trapped within the crystal structure of water ice. The ice crystals form a lattice that holds the methane and other gas molecules in place.

This potential new energy source is located in the frozen soil in Arctic regions and on the sea floor. Most deposits of methane hydrate are located near continental margins, where ocean life is abundant. Methane hydrates are stable in sea-floor sediments at temperatures and pressures that are common at depths of 300 m in Arctic regions and at depths of 500 m in tropical regions.

While these energy compounds may look like ice, they burn with intense flame. When methane hydrates burn, they release much less carbon dioxide than the burning of traditional fossil fuels. Scientists are researching the possibility of using methane hydrates in transportation and for generating electricity.

However, scientists are concerned about the environmental impacts of mining this resource. Also, because methane is a powerful greenhouse gas, even a modest quantity of methane released into the atmosphere could affect global temperatures.

A researcher holds a chunk of burning methane hydrate.

Figure 4 ▶ Fiberglass insulation is used in homes to reduce the energy required for heating and cooling.

Fossil-Fuel Conservation

Fossil fuels can be conserved by reducing the amount of energy used every day. If less energy is used, fewer fossil fuels must be burned every day to supply the smaller demand for energy. Energy can be conserved in many ways. **Figure 4** shows insulation being installed into a new house to reduce the amount of energy that will be needed for cooling and heating. Using energy-efficient appliances also reduces the amount of electricity used every day. In addition, simple actions, such as turning off lights when you leave a room and washing only full loads of laundry and dishes will reduce energy use.

Reducing the amount of driving you do also conserves fossil fuels. There is evidence that an average car produces more than 8 kg of carbon dioxide for every 3.8 L (1 gal) of gasoline burned. Even fuel-efficient and hybrid cars release some pollutants into the air. When making short trips, consider walking or riding your bicycle. You can also combine errands so that you can make fewer trips in your car.

Conservation of Other Natural Resources

Conservation is important for other natural resources, such as water. Some scientists estimate that by the year 2050, the world will have a critical shortage of freshwater resources because of the increased need by a larger human population. Water can be conserved by using water-saving shower heads, faucets, and toilets. By turning off the faucet as you brush your teeth, you can conserve up to 1 gallon of water every day. You can also help conserve water by watering plants in the morning or at night and by planting native plants in your yard.

Section 4 Review

1. **Name** two environmental problems associated with the mining and use of coal.
2. **Explain** two ways the environmental impacts of mining can be reduced.
3. **Describe** two reasons why scientists are looking for alternatives to fossil fuels.
4. **Define** the term *reclamation* in your own words.
5. **Identify** three ways that you can conserve natural resources every day.
6. **State** one way that recycling can help conserve energy.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Analyzing Concepts** How do you think fossil-fuel use affects soil resources?
8. **Applying Ideas** Why does recycling require less energy than developing a new resource does?
9. **Drawing Conclusions** List 10 ways a small community can conserve energy and resources.

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *recycling, conservation, alternate energy source, renewable energy source, environmental impact, acid precipitation,* and *reclamation.*

Chapter 7 Highlights

Sections

1 Mineral Resources

Key Terms

ore, 155
lode, 156
placer deposit, 156
gemstone, 157

Key Concepts

- Ores are mineral deposits from which metallic and nonmetallic minerals can be profitably removed.
- Minerals are important sources of many useful and valuable materials.
- Humans obtain mineral resources through mining.

2 Nonrenewable Energy

nonrenewable resource, 159
fossil fuel, 159
nuclear fission, 162
nuclear fusion, 164

- Chemical and physical changes over time change the remains of plants into coal.
- Petroleum and natural gas formed from the remains of ancient microorganisms.
- Today, fossil fuels provide much of the world's energy.
- Nuclear fission can produce energy to generate electricity.

3 Renewable Energy

renewable resource, 165
geothermal energy, 165
solar energy, 166
hydroelectric energy, 167
biomass, 167

- Geothermal energy is energy from the heat of Earth's interior.
- Solar energy from the sun can be harnessed by both passive and active methods.
- Alternative sources of renewable energy include hydroelectric, tidal, solar, and wind energy.

4 Resources and Conservation

conservation, 171
recycling, 171

- Fossil fuels are nonrenewable resources. Once a nonrenewable resource is depleted, the resource may take millions of years to be replenished.
- Responsible mining operations work hard to return mined land to good condition through reclamation.
- Conservation is the preservation and wise use of natural resources.

Chapter 7 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *placer deposit*
2. *solar energy*
3. *conservation*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *renewable resource* and *nonrenewable resource*
5. *ore* and *lode*
6. *nuclear fission* and *nuclear fusion*
7. *fossil fuel* and *biomass*
8. *geothermal energy* and *hydroelectric energy*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. Metals are known to
   a. have a dull surface.
   b. provide fuel.
   c. conduct heat and electricity well.
   d. occur only in placer deposits.

10. Energy resources that formed from the remains of once-living things are called
    a. minerals. **c.** metals.
    b. gemstones. **d.** fossil fuels.

11. Impermeable rock that occurs at the top of an oil reservoir is called
    a. coal. **c.** cap rock.
    b. peat. **d.** water.

12. Plastics, synthetic fabrics, and synthetic rubber are composed of chemicals that are derived from
    a. anthracite. **c.** peat.
    b. petroleum. **d.** minerals.

13. The splitting of the nucleus of an atom to produce energy is called
    a. geothermal energy.
    b. nuclear fission.
    c. nuclear fusion.
    d. hydroelectric power.

14. Energy experts have harnessed geothermal energy by
    a. building dams.
    b. building wind generators.
    c. drilling wells.
    d. burning coal.

15. In a hydroelectric power plant, running water produces energy by spinning a
    a. turbine. **c.** fan.
    b. windmill. **d.** reactor.

Short Answer

16. Compare the three ways that ores commonly form.

17. Name two regulations that mining operations must follow to reduce the impact they have on the environment.

18. Identify and describe the uses for three mineral resources.

19. Describe one advantage and one disadvantage of obtaining energy from nuclear fission.

20. Describe one advantage and one disadvantage to the use of solar energy.

21. Identify two ways recycling can reduce energy use.

22. Explain two ways that moving water can be used to generate electricity.

23. Compare two types of mining, and describe the possible environmental impact of each type.

Critical Thinking

24. Applying Ideas You learn that the price of iron is higher than it has been in 20 years. Do you think it might be profitable for a company to mine hematite? Explain your answer.

25. Understanding Relationships A certain area has extensive deposits of shale. Why might a petroleum geologist be interested in examining the area?

26. Identifying Trends Hybrid cars have efficient gasoline and electric motor combinations. They have other design elements that make them extremely fuel efficient. Do you expect that there will be more or fewer hybrid cars on the road in the future? Explain.

27. Making Inferences A certain company in your area produces ^{235}U pellets and fuel rods. With which energy source is the company involved? Explain.

Concept Mapping

28. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *resource, renewable, nonrenewable, fossil fuel, nuclear energy, geothermal energy, solar energy, hydroelectric energy,* and *conservation.*

Math Skills

29. Making Calculations In one year, the United States produced 95,000 megawatts of power from renewable energy sources. If 3% of that amount of power came from wind energy, how much energy did wind power produce that year?

30. Making Calculations A water-efficient washing machine uses 16 gallons of water per load of laundry. Older washing machines use more than 40 gallons of water per load of laundry. If you wash an average of 10 loads of laundry a month, how many gallons of water would you save in a year if you switched to the water-efficient washer?

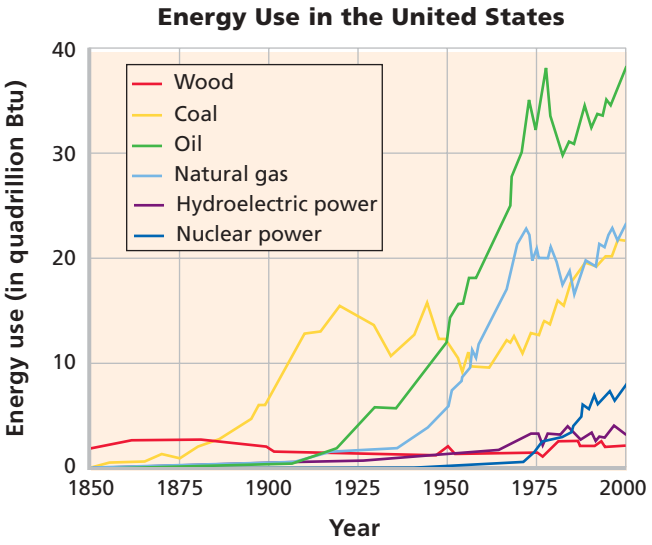
Writing Skills

31. Researching Information A debate surrounds municipal recycling programs. Do some research, and write a paragraph explaining each side of the debate. Write another paragraph explaining your view on whether recycling programs should be continued.

32. Writing Persuasively Research the pros and cons of building dams to harness energy. Write a letter to the editor of a local newspaper to express your opinion about whether dams should be used for generating electricity.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows the different contributions of various fuels to the U.S. energy supply since 1850. Use this graph to answer the questions that follow.



33. What were the two main energy sources used in 1875?

34. When did oil first become a more widely used energy source than coal?

35. The use of oil and natural gas rise and fall together. How do you explain this pattern?

Chapter 7 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the number of the correct answer.**

1 Which of the following is an example of a nonmetal mineral resource?
A. gold
B. quartz
C. aluminum
D. graphite

2 Nonmetals are identified by their
F. ability to conduct heat
G. shiny surfaces
H. ability to conduct electricity
I. dull surfaces

3 A mineral deposit called a *lode* is formed by
A. metal fragments deposited in stream beds
B. layers accumulating in cooling magma
C. hot mineral solutions in cracks in rock
D. precipitation of minerals from seawater

4 Which of the following is an example of a nonrenewable resource?
F. natural gas
G. sunlight
H. falling water
I. wind

5 A material from which mineral resources can be mined profitably is a(n)
A. gemstone
B. ore
C. nodule
D. renewable resource

Directions (6-8): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 Federal and state laws require mining companies to return land to its original condition or better than its original condition when mining operations are completed. What is this process called?

7 What are the three forms of fossil fuels, and what form does each one take?

8 Name three common items that may be recycled to save energy and natural resources?

Reading Skills

Directions (9–11): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Fossil Fuels

All fossil fuels form from the buried remains of ancient organisms. But different types of fossil fuels form in different ways and from different types of organisms. Petroleum and natural gas form mainly from the remains of microscopic sea life. When these organisms die, their remains collect on the ocean floor, where they are buried by sediment. Over time, the sediment slowly becomes rock and traps the organic remains. Through physical and chemical changes over millions of years, the remains become petroleum and natural gas. Gradually, more rocks form above the rocks that contain the fossil fuels. Under the pressure of overlying rocks and sediments, the fossil fuels are able to move through permeable rocks. Permeable rocks are rocks that allow fluids, such as petroleum and natural gas, to move through them. These permeable rocks become reservoirs that hold petroleum and natural gas.

9 What process causes organic remains to turn into fossil fuels?
A. pressure caused by overlying rocks and sediments
B. the constant layering of remains from microscopic sea life
C. millions of years of physical and chemical changes
D. the movement of fluids through layers of permeable rock

10 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
F. Fossil fuel formation is ongoing, and current remains may become petroleum in the future.
G. Fossil fuel formation happened millions of years ago and no longer takes place today.
H. Current petroleum and natural gas reservoirs are found only beneath the ocean floor.
I. Permeable rocks are also a good place to find other fossil fuels, such as coal.

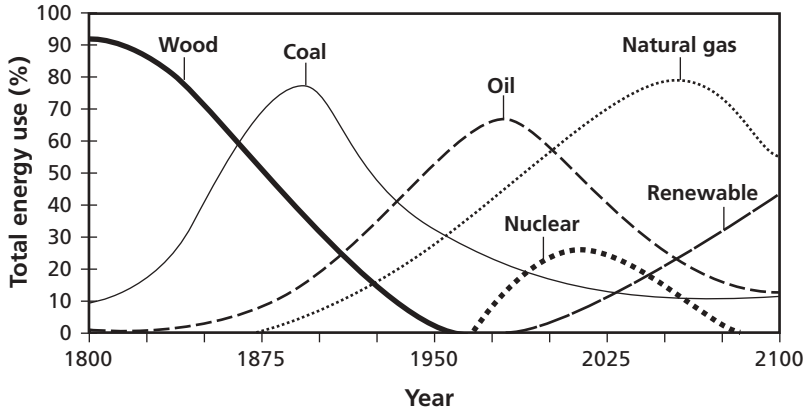
11 Why do we consider petroleum and natural gas to be nonrenewable resources?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (12–14): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The graph below illustrates the sources of energy used in the United States since 1850. Future statistics are predicted based on current trends and technology development. Use this graph to answer questions 12 and 13.

U.S. Energy Use from 1850 to 2100



12 Which of the following is the main reason that coal became a more widely used energy source than wood in the mid-1800s?

A. Coal burns easier than wood does.
B. Coal is renewable resource, unlike wood.
C. Coal is a more efficient energy-producer than wood.
D. Coal produces fewer byproducts and waste than wood does.

13 Evaluate reasons why nuclear power is predicted to peak in usage around the year 2025, and then steadily decline in usage?

The table below shows common minerals and their uses. Use this table to answer question 14.

Minerals and Their Uses

Minerals	Uses
Gold	electronics, coins, dental work, and jewelry
Galena	solder and batteries
Quartz	glass
Sulfur	medicines, gunpowder, and rubber
Graphite	pencils, paint, and ubricants
Hematite	making steel
Chalcopyrite	coins, jewelry, and cables

14 Use your everyday knowledge of automobiles to describe the part of an automobile for which each mineral listed in the table may be used.

Test TIP

When a question refers to a graph, study the data plotted on the graph to determine any trends or anomalies before you try to answer the question.

Chapter 7 **Inquiry Lab** Using Scientific Methods

Blowing in the Wind

Objectives

- **Prepare** a detailed sketch of your solution to the design problem.
- **Design and build** a functional windmill that lifts a specific weight as quickly as possible.

Materials

blow-dryer, 1,500 W
dowel or smooth rod
foam board
glue, white
paper clips, large (30)
paper cup, small (1)
spools of thread, empty (2)
string, 50 cm
***optional materials for windmill blades:* foam board, paper plates, paper cups, or any other lightweight materials**

Safety

MEMO
To: Division of Research and Development

Quixote Alternative Energy Systems is accepting design proposals to develop a windmill that can be used to lift window washers to the tops of buildings. As part of the design engineering team, your division has been asked to develop a working model of such a windmill. Your task is to design and build a model that can lift 30 large paper clips a vertical distance of 50 cm. The job will be given to the team whose model can lift the paper clips the fastest.

ASK A QUESTION

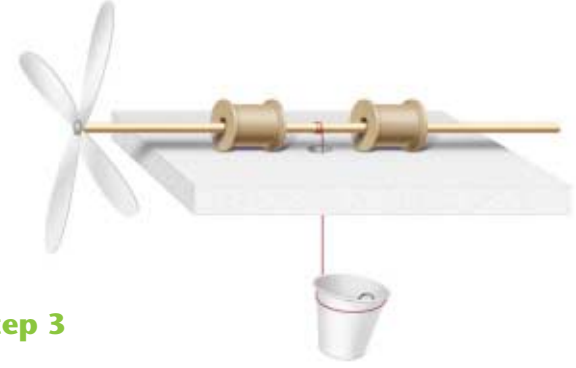
1. What is the best windmill design?

FORM A HYPOTHESIS

2. Brainstorm with a partner or small group of classmates to design a windmill using only the objects listed in the materials list. Sketch your design, and write a few sentences about how you think your windmill design will perform.

TEST THE HYPOTHESIS

3. Have your teacher approve your design before you begin construction. Build the base for your windmill by using glue to attach the two spools to the foam board. Make sure the spools are parallel before you glue them. Pass a dowel rod through the center of the spools. The dowel should rotate freely. Attach one end of the string securely to the dowel between the two spools.



Step 3

4. Poke a hole through the middle of the foam board to allow the string to pass through. Place your windmill base between two lab tables or in any area that will allow the string to hang freely.
5. After you have decided on your final design, attach the windmill blades to the base.
6. If you have time, you may want to try using different material to construct your windmill blades. Test the various blades to determine whether they improve the original design. You may also want to vary the number and size of the blades on your windmill.
7. Attach the cup to the end of the string. Fill the cup with 30 paper clips. Turn on the blow-dryer, and measure the time it takes for your windmill to lift the cup.

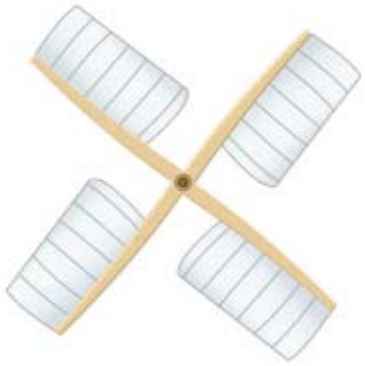
ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

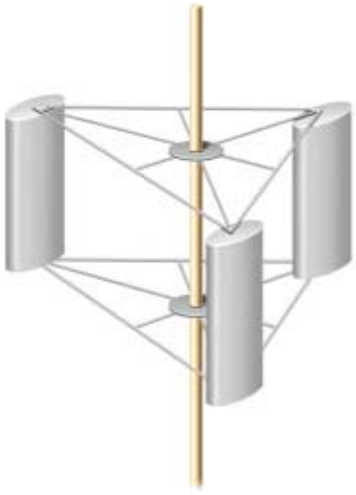
1. **Evaluating Methods** After you test all of the designs, determine which design took the shortest amount of time to complete the test. What elements of the design do you think made it the strongest?
2. **Evaluating Models** Describe how you would change your design to make your windmill work better or faster.

Extension

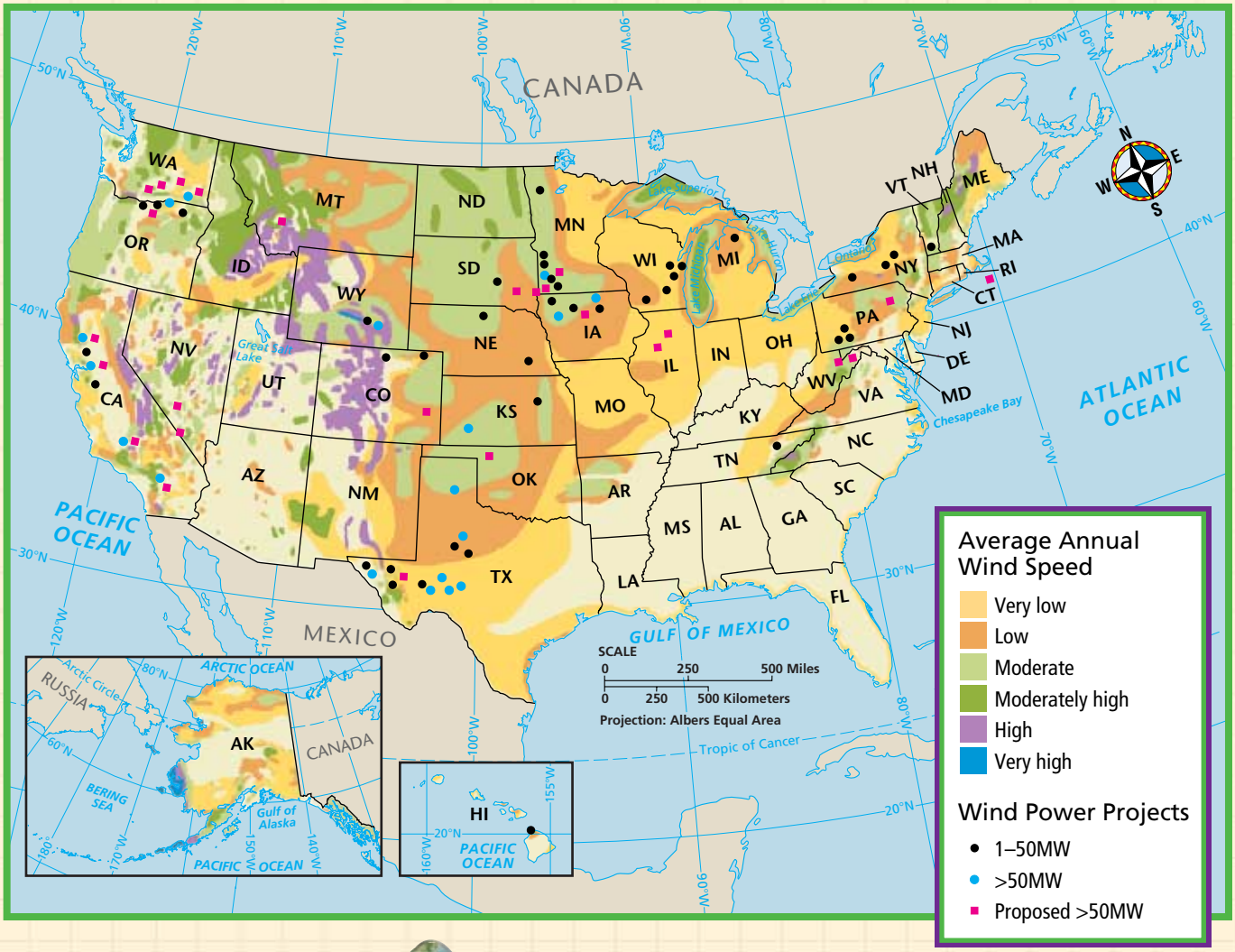
1. **Research** Windmills have been used for more than 2,000 years. Research the three basic types of vertical axis machines and the applications in which they are used. Prepare a report of your findings.
2. **Making Models** Adapt your design to make a water wheel. You will find that water wheels can lift much more weight than a windmill can. Find designs on the Internet for micro-hydropower water wheels, such as the Pelton wheel, and use the designs as inspiration for your models. You can even design your own dam and reservoir.

Step 2
Sample windmill blade designs





Wind Power in the United States



Map Skills Activity

This map shows average wind speeds and the locations of wind power projects throughout the United States. Use the map to answer the questions below:

1. **Using a Key** Name two states that have areas of very high wind speed.
2. **Using a Key** Which two states have the most proposed wind power projects?
3. **Making Comparisons** Which state has the most wind power projects currently in operation?
4. **Inferring Relationships** Examine Idaho, Wyoming, Montana, and Colorado. What landscape feature might account for the strong winds in those states?
5. **Identifying Trends** What states have more than four existing wind power projects that are larger than 50 MegaWatts (MW)?
6. **Making Comparisons** Because of their potential for wind power projects, the Great Plains states (MT, WY, CO, ND, SD, NE, KS, OK, TX, MN, and IA) have been called the "Saudi Arabia of wind energy." Why do you think this comparison has been made?

EYE on the Environment

What's Mined Is Yours

In every state of the United States, centuries of mining have left marks on the states' ecosystems. National parks alone contain more than 3,200 abandoned mining sites.

Environmental Scars

In a typical mining operation, bulldozers clear away layers of soil, which destroys vegetation and drastically changes the landscape. Streams may be diverted and cause floods in some areas.

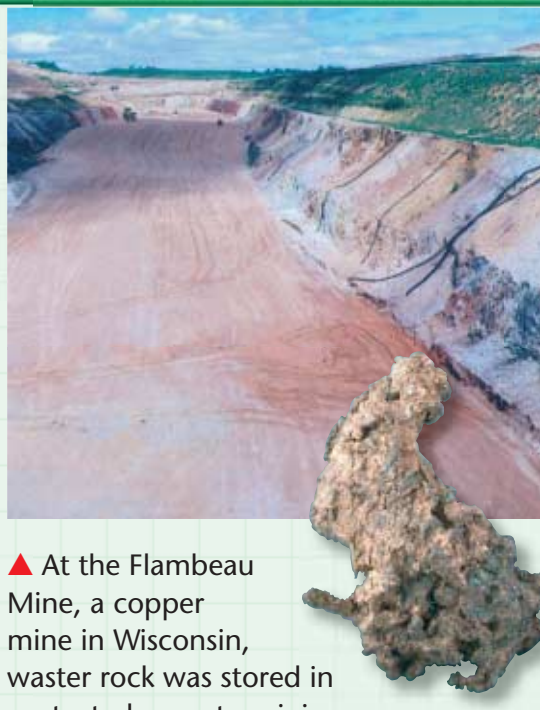
Long-term effects can be even more serious. When discarded rock is exposed to air and rainfall, chemical reactions can occur. As a result of the chemical reactions, acids may seep into the ground and pollute nearby waterways. Even years later, plants and animals may still be unable to live in the area because of the affects of mining.

Taking Responsibility

Most mining companies take environmental issues very seriously. New techniques and a better understanding of natural processes have made reclaiming land more effective than ever. Unfortunately, reclamation is very expensive. Returning land to its original state may cost as much as $20,000 per acre. As environmental laws become tougher, mining companies must be more creative to make a profit. Because of low-grade resources and world markets, thousands of people have lost their jobs and local economies have suffered greatly when mining operations go out of business.

No Easy Answers

As the population of the United States grows, we will need more of the metal ores, fossil fuels, and other products that the mining industry provides. Fortunately, reclamation efforts are constantly improving. In addition, efforts to recycle and reuse the resources that we already have are increasing. Nonetheless, finding a compromise between our need for mineral resources and our concern for environmental damage will continue to be expensive and difficult.



▲ At the Flambeau Mine, a copper mine in Wisconsin, waster rock was stored in protected areas to minimize the impact in the enviroment.

◀ After the Flambeau Mine was closed, the waste rock and soil were replaced. A few years later, as seen in this photo, the reclaimed land was restored to its original state.

Extension

1. **Research** Find out the top three mineral resources that your state produces. In what part of the state are they located? How are the minerals extracted, and how are they used?

Unit 3

HISTORY OF THE EARTH

Unit 3 Outline

CHAPTER 8
The Rock Record

CHAPTER 7
A View of Earth's Past

▶ Scientists learn about Earth's past by studying rocks and fossils. This fossil from the Green River formation in Wyoming is a fossilized predatory fish called *Mioplosus*. This extraordinary fossil captures a *Mioplosus* in the act of devouring a small fish.

Chapter 8

The Rock Record

Sections

1 Determining Relative Age

2 Determining Absolute Age

3 The Fossil Record

What You'll Learn

- How scientists determine relative age
- How scientists determine absolute age
- How fossils form

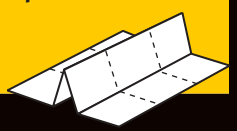
Why It's Relevant

To study Earth's 4.6 billion year history, scientists look to the information stored in rocks. Scientists must determine the age of rocks to put the events of Earth's history in order.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Table Fold Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Table Fold" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns of the table fold with "Absolute age" and "Relative age." As you read the chapter, write examples of each topic under the appropriate column.



▶ This slab of beautifully preserved crinoids shows each organism's 10 radial arms. Crinoids have been inhabiting aquatic environments on Earth for almost 490 million years.

Section 1 Determining Relative Age

Geologists estimate that Earth is about 4.6 billion years old. The idea that Earth is billions of years old originated with the work of James Hutton, an 18th-century Scottish physician and farmer. Hutton, who is shown in **Figure 1,** wrote about agriculture, weather, climate, physics, and even philosophy. Hutton was also a keen observer of the geologic changes taking place on his farm. Using scientific methods, Hutton drew conclusions based on his observations. Today, he is most famous for his ideas and writings about geology.

Uniformitarianism

Hutton theorized that the same forces that changed the landscape of his farm had changed Earth's surface in the past. He thought that by studying the present, people could learn about Earth's past. Hutton's principle of **uniformitarianism** is that current geologic processes, such as volcanism and erosion, are the same processes that were at work in the past. This principle is one of the basic foundations of the science of geology. Geologists later refined Hutton's ideas by pointing out that although the processes of the past and present are the same, the rates of the processes may vary over time.

OBJECTIVES

- **State** the principle of uniformitarianism.
- **Explain** how the law of superposition can be used to determine the relative age of rocks.
- **Compare** three types of unconformities.
- **Apply** the law of crosscutting relationships to determine the relative age of rocks.

KEY TERMS

uniformitarianism
relative age
law of superposition
unconformity
law of crosscutting relationships

uniformitarianism a principle that geologic processes that occurred in the past can be explained by current geologic processes

Figure 1 ▶ James Hutton (left) believed that studying the present is the key to understanding the past. This modern day Earth scientist (below) is looking for clues to Earth's past.

QuickLAB 20 min

What's Your Relative Age?

Procedure

1. Form a group with 5 to 10 of your classmates.
2. Work together to arrange group members in order from oldest to youngest.

Analysis

1. How did you determine your classmates' relative ages?
2. How did the relative ages compare to the absolute ages of your classmates?
3. How is this process of determining relative and absolute age different from the way scientists date rocks?

Earth's Age

Before Hutton's research was completed, many people thought that Earth was only about 6,000 years old. They also thought that all geologic features had formed at the same time. Hutton's principle of uniformitarianism raised some serious questions about Earth's age. Hutton observed that the forces that changed the land on his farm operated very slowly. He reasoned that millions of years must be needed for those same forces to create the complicated rock structures observed in Earth's crust. He concluded that Earth must be much older than previously thought. Hutton's observations and conclusions about the age of Earth encouraged other scientists to learn more about Earth's history. One way to learn about Earth's past is to determine the order in which rock layers and other rock structures formed.

Reading Check **What evidence did Hutton propose to show that Earth is very old? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Relative Age

In the same way that a history book shows an order of events, layers of rock, called *strata,* show the sequence of events that took place in the past. Using a few basic principles, scientists can determine the order in which rock layers formed. Once they know the order, a relative age can be determined for each rock layer. **Relative age** indicates that one layer is older or younger than another layer but does not indicate the rock's age in years.

relative age the age of an object in relation to the ages of other objects

Various types of rock form layers. Igneous rocks form layers when successive lava flows stack on top of each other. Some types of metamorphic rock, such as marble, also have layers. To determine the relative age of rocks, however, scientists commonly study the layers in sedimentary rocks, such as those shown in **Figure 2.**

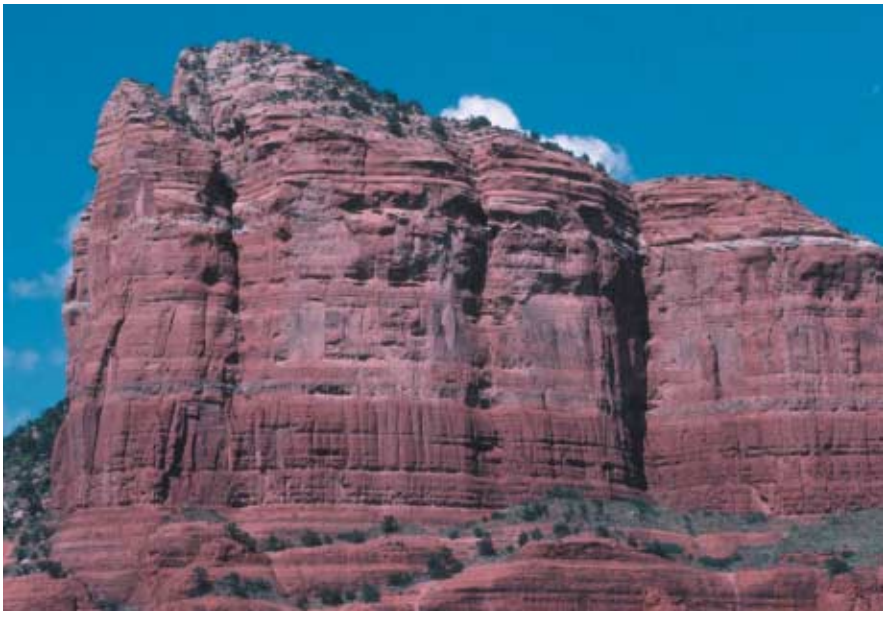


Figure 2 ▶ The layers of sedimentary rock that make up Canyon de Chelly in Arizona were deposited over millions of years.

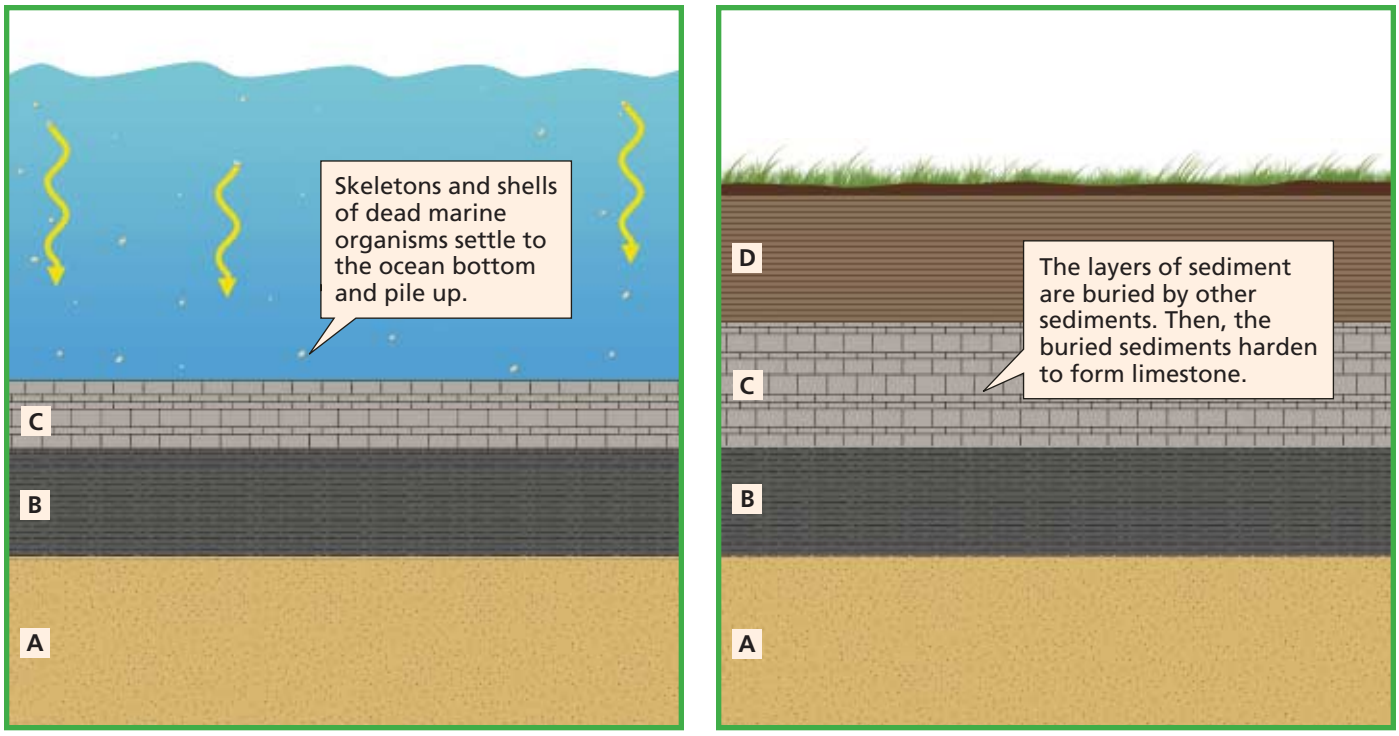


Figure 3 ▶ By applying the law of superposition, geologists are able to determine that layer D is the youngest bed in this rock section. ***According to the law of superposition, is layer B older or younger than layer C?***

Law of Superposition

Sedimentary rocks form when new sediments are deposited on top of old layers of sediment. As the sediments accumulate, they are compressed and harden into sedimentary rock layers which are called *beds*. The boundary between two beds is called a *bedding plane*.

Scientists use a basic principle called the law of superposition to determine the relative age of a layer of sedimentary rock. The **law of superposition** is that an undeformed sedimentary rock layer is older than the layers above it and younger than the layers below it. According to the law of superposition, layer A, shown in **Figure 3,** was the first layer deposited, and thus it is the oldest layer. The last layer deposited was layer D, and thus it is the youngest layer.

law of superposition the law that a sedimentary rock layer is older than the layers above it and younger than the layers below it if the layers are not disturbed

Principle of Original Horizontality

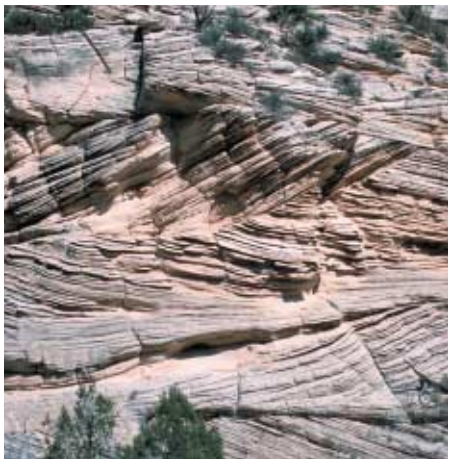
Scientists also know that sedimentary rock generally forms in horizontal layers. The *principle of original horizontality* is that sedimentary rocks left undisturbed will remain in horizontal layers. Therefore, scientists can assume that sedimentary rock layers that are not horizontal have been tilted or deformed by crustal movements that happened after the layers formed.

In some cases, tectonic forces push older layers on top of younger ones or overturn a group of rock layers. In such cases, the law of superposition cannot be easily applied. So, scientists must look for clues to the original position of layers and then apply the law of superposition.

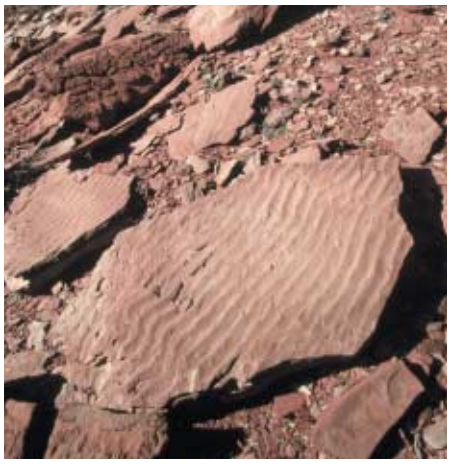
SCILINKS
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Law of Superposition
SciLinks code: HQ60858

Figure 4 ▶ Sedimentary Rock Structures

Graded Bedding Heavy particles settle to the bottom of a lake or river faster than smaller particles do and create graded beds like this one.



Cross-beds As sand slides down the slope of a large sand dune, the sand forms slanting layers like the ones shown here.

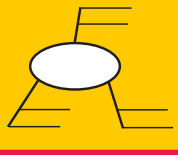


Ripple Marks When waves move back and forth on a beach, ripple marks like these commonly form.

Graphic Organizer

Spider Map

Create the **Graphic Organizer** entitled "Spider Map" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the circle "Unconformities." Create a leg for each type of unconformity. Then, fill in the map with details about each type of unconformity.



Graded Bedding

One possible clue to the original position of rock layers is the size of the particles in the layers. In some depositional environments, the largest particles of sediment are deposited in the bottom layers, as shown in **Figure 4.** The arrangement of layers in which coarse and heavy particles are located in the bottom layers is called *graded bedding*. If larger particles are located in the top layers, the layers may have been overturned by tectonic forces.

Cross-Beds

Another clue to the original position of rock layers is in the shape of the bedding planes. When sand is deposited, sandy sediment forms curved beds at an angle to the bedding plane. These beds are called *cross-beds* and are shown in **Figure 4.** The tops of these layers commonly erode before new layers are deposited. So, the sediment appears to be curved at the bottom of the layer and to be cut off at the top. By studying the shape of the cross-beds, scientists can determine the original position of these layers.

Ripple Marks

Ripple marks are small waves that form on the surface of sand because of the action of water or wind. When the sand becomes sandstone, the ripple marks may be preserved, as shown in **Figure 4.** In undisturbed sedimentary rock layers, the crests of the ripple marks point upward. By examining the orientation of ripple marks, scientists can establish the original arrangement of the rock layers. The relative ages of the rocks can then be determined by using the law of superposition.

Reading Check **How can ripple marks indicate the original position of rock layers? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Unconformities

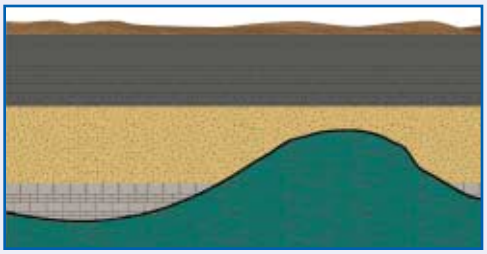
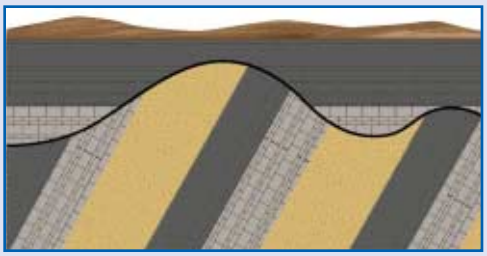
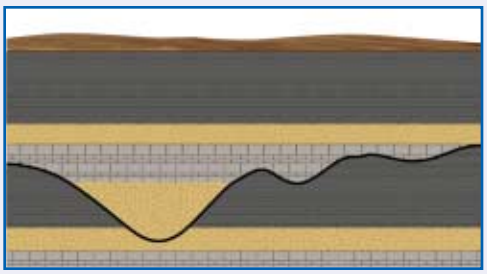
Movements of Earth's crust can lift up rock layers that were buried and expose them to erosion. Then, if sediments are deposited, new rock layers form in place of the eroded layers. The missing rock layers create a break in the geologic record in the same way that pages missing from a book create a break in a story. A break in the geologic record is called an **unconformity.** An unconformity shows that deposition stopped for a period of time, and rock may have been removed by erosion before deposition resumed.

unconformity a break in the geologic record created when rock layers are eroded or when sediment is not deposited for a long period of time

As shown in **Table 1,** there are three types of unconformities. An unconformity in which stratified rock rests upon unstratified rock is called a *nonconformity*. The boundary between a set of tilted layers and a set of horizontal layers is called an *angular unconformity*. The boundary between horizontal layers of old sedimentary rock and younger, overlying layers that are deposited on an eroded surface is called a *disconformity*. According to the law of superposition, all rocks beneath an unconformity are older than the rocks above the unconformity.

Table 1 ▼

Types of Unconformities

Type	Example	Description
Nonconformity		Unstratified igneous or metamorphic rock may be uplifted to Earth's surface by crustal movements. Once the rock is exposed, it erodes. Sediments may then be deposited on the eroded surface. The boundary between the new sedimentary rock and the igneous or metamorphic rock is a *nonconformity*. The boundary represents an unknown period of time during which the older rock was eroded.
Angular unconformity		An *angular unconformity* forms when rock deposited in horizontal layers is folded or tilted and then eroded. When erosion stops, a new horizontal layer is deposited on top of a tilted layer. When the bedding planes of the older rock layers are not parallel to those of the younger rock layers deposited above them, an angular unconformity results.
Disconformity		Sometimes, layers of sediments are uplifted without folding or tilting and are eroded. Eventually, the area subsides and deposition resumes. The layers on either side of the boundary are nearly horizontal. Although the rock layers look as if they were deposited continuously, a large time gap exists where the upper and lower layers meet. This gap is known as a *disconformity*.

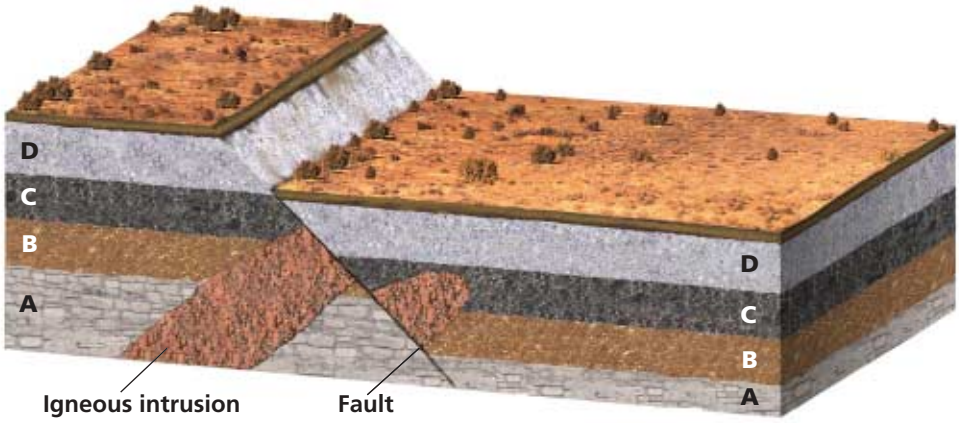


Figure 5 ▶ The law of crosscutting relationships can be used to determine the relative ages of rock layers and the faults and intrusions within them.

Crosscutting Relationships

When rock layers have been disturbed by faults or intrusions, determining relative age may be difficult. A *fault* is a break or crack in Earth's crust along which rocks shift their position. An *intrusion* is a mass of igneous rock that forms when magma is injected into rock and then cools and solidifies. In such cases, scientists may apply the law of crosscutting relationships. The **law of crosscutting relationships** is that a fault or igneous intrusion is always younger than the rock layers it cuts through. If a fault or intrusion cuts through an unconformity, the fault or intrusion is younger than all the rocks it cuts through above and below the unconformity.

law of crosscutting relationships the principle that a fault or body of rock is younger than any other body of rock that it cuts through

Figure 5 shows a series of rock layers that contains both a fault and an igneous intrusion. As you can see, an intrusion cuts across layers A, B, and C. According to the law of crosscutting relationships, the intrusion is younger than layers A, B, and C. The fault is younger than the intrusion and all four layers.

Section 1 Review

1. **Explain** why it is important for scientists to be able to determine the relative age of rocks.
2. **State** the principle of uniformitarianism in your own words.
3. **Explain** how the law of superposition can be used to determine the relative age of sedimentary rock.
4. **Explain** the difference between an unconformity and a nonconformity.
5. **Compare** an angular unconformity with a disconformity.
6. **Describe** how the law of crosscutting relationships helps scientists determine the relative ages of rocks.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Comparisons** Which would be more difficult to recognize: a nonconformity or a disconformity? Explain your answer.
8. **Analyzing Relationships** Suppose that you find a series of rock layers in which a fault ends at an unconformity. Explain how you could apply the law of crosscutting relationships to determine the relative age of the fault and of the rock layers that were deposited above the unconformity.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *principle of original horizontality, relative age, graded bedding, law of superposition, cross-bed,* and *ripple mark.*

Section 2 Determining Absolute Age

Relative age indicates only that one rock formation is younger or older than another rock formation. To learn more about Earth's history, scientists often need to determine the numeric age, or **absolute age,** of a rock formation.

Absolute Dating Methods

Scientists use a variety of methods to measure absolute age. Some methods use geologic processes that can be observed and measured over time. Other methods measure the chemical composition of certain materials in rock.

Rates of Erosion

One way to estimate absolute age is to study rates of erosion. For example, if scientists measure the rate at which a stream erodes its bed, they can estimate the age of the stream. But determining absolute age by using the rate of erosion is practical only for geologic features that formed within the past 10,000 to 20,000 years. One example of such a feature is Niagara Falls, which is shown in **Figure 1.** For older surface features, such as the Grand Canyon, which formed over millions of years, the method is less dependable because rates of erosion may vary greatly over millions of years.

OBJECTIVES

- **Summarize** the limitations of using the rates of erosion and deposition to determine the absolute age of rock formations.
- **Describe** the formation of varves.
- **Explain** how the process of radioactive decay can be used to determine the absolute age of rocks.

KEY TERMS

absolute age
varve
radiometric dating
half-life

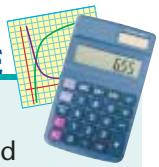
absolute age the numeric age of an object or event, often stated in years before the present, as established by an absolute-dating process, such as radiometric dating

Figure 1 ▶ The rocky ledge above Niagara Falls has been eroding at a rate of about 1.3 m per year for nearly 9,900 years. ***How many kilometers has the ledge been eroded in the last 9,900 years?***

Rates of Deposition

Another way to estimate absolute age is to calculate the rate of sediment deposition. By using data collected over a long period of time, geologists can estimate the average rates of deposition for common sedimentary rocks such as limestone, shale, and sandstone. In general, about 30 cm of sedimentary rock are deposited over a period of 1,000 years. However, any given sedimentary layer that is being studied may not have been deposited at an average rate. For example, a flood can deposit many meters of sediment in just one day. In addition, the rate of deposition may change over time. Therefore, this method of determining absolute age is not always accurate; it merely provides an estimate.

MATH PRACTICE



Deposition If 30 cm of sediments are deposited every 1,000 years, how long would 10 m of sediments take to accumulate?

Varve Count

You may know that a tree's age can be estimated by counting the growth rings in its trunk. Scientists have devised a similar method for estimating the age of certain sedimentary deposits. Some sedimentary deposits show definite annual layers, called **varves,** that consist of a light-colored band of coarse particles and a dark band of fine particles.

varve a banded layer of sand and silt that is deposited annually in a lake, especially near ice sheets or glaciers, and that can be used to determine absolute age

Varves generally form in glacial lakes. During the summer, when snow and ice melt rapidly, a rush of water can carry large amounts of sediment into a lake. Most of the coarse particles settle quickly to form a layer on the bottom of the lake. With the coming of winter, the surface of the lake begins to freeze. Fine clay particles still suspended in the water settle slowly to form a thin layer on top of the coarse sediments. A coarse summer layer and the overlying, fine winter layer make up one varve. Thus, each varve represents one year of deposition. Some varves are shown in **Figure 2.** By counting the varves, scientists can estimate the age of the sediments.

Reading Check **How are varves like tree rings? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 2 ▶ Varves (below), which form in glacial lakes (right), can be counted to determine the absolute age of sediments.

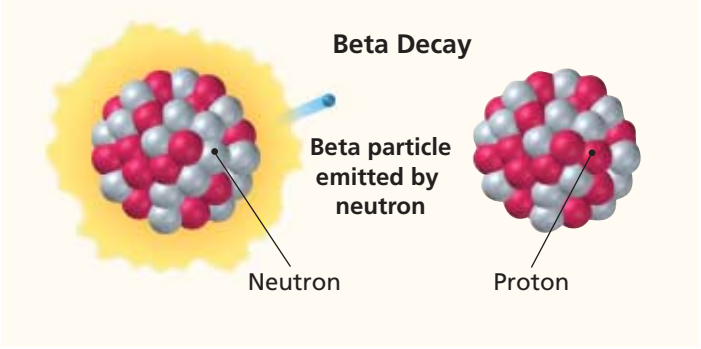


Figure 3 ▶ Beta decay and alpha decay are two forms of radioactive decay. In all forms of radioactive decay, an atom emits particles and energy.

Radiometric Dating

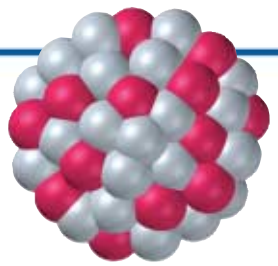
Rocks generally contain small amounts of radioactive material that can act as natural clocks. Atoms of the same element that have different numbers of neutrons are called *isotopes*. *Radioactive isotopes* have nuclei that emit particles and energy at a constant rate regardless of surrounding conditions. **Figure 3** shows two of the ways that radioactive isotopes decay. During the emission of the particles, large amounts of energy are released. Scientists use this natural breakdown of isotopes to accurately measure the absolute age of rocks. The method of using radioactive decay to measure absolute age is called **radiometric dating.**

radiometric dating a method of determining the absolute age of an object by comparing the relative percentages of a radioactive (parent) isotope and a stable (daughter) isotope

As an atom emits particles and energy, the atom changes into a different isotope of the same element or an isotope of a different element. Scientists measure the concentrations of the original radioactive isotope, or *parent isotope,* and of the newly formed isotopes, or *daughter isotopes*. Using the known decay rate, the scientists compare the proportions of the parent and daughter isotopes to determine the absolute age of the rock.

Connection to **CHEMISTRY**

Radioactive Decay of Uranium



Uranium is a radioactive element that occurs in some rocks. One form of uranium, which is represented by the symbol ^{238}U, has a mass number of 238 and an atomic number of 92. The atomic number is the number of protons in the nucleus. The mass number is the sum of the number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus. Uranium-238 is particularly useful in establishing the absolute ages of rocks.

The highly radioactive nucleus of ^{238}U spontaneously emits two protons and two neutrons in a process called *alpha decay* or alpha particle emission. The loss of protons and neutrons from the nucleus decreases both the atomic number and the mass number. After the first decay of ^{238}U, the new nucleus has a mass number of 234 and an atomic number of 90. The atom has changed into an isotope of thorium, ^{234}Th.

The ^{234}Th nucleus is also radioactive, and one of its neutrons changes into a proton and an electron in a process called *beta decay*. The change of the neutron to a proton increases the atomic number by one, and the thorium isotope then becomes an isotope of protactinium, ^{234}Pa, which is also radioactive.

The cycle of radioactive decay continues until a stable, or nonradioactive, form of lead is produced. A form of lead that has a mass number of 206, ^{206}Pb, is the final product of this radioactive-decay chain. In this chain of decay, ^{238}U is the parent isotope and ^{206}Pb is a daughter isotope. The time required for half of any given amount of ^{238}U to decay into ^{206}Pb is 4.5 billion years. Thus, 4.5 billion years is the half-life of ^{238}U.

Figure 4 ▶ After each half-life, one-half of the parent isotope is converted into a daughter isotope. After four half-lives, only 1/16 of the parent isotope remains.

half-life the time required for half of a sample of a radioactive isotope to break down by radioactive decay to form a daughter isotope

Half-Life

Radioactive decay happens at a relatively constant rate that is not changed by temperature, pressure, or other environmental conditions. Scientists have determined that the time required for half of any amount of a particular radioactive isotope to decay is always the same and can be determined for any isotope. Therefore, a **half-life** is the time it takes half the mass of a given amount of a radioactive isotope to decay into its daughter isotopes. If you began with 10 g of a parent isotope, you would have 5 g of that isotope after one half-life of that isotope. At the end of a second half-life, one-fourth, or 2.5 g, of the original isotope would remain. Three-fourths of the sample would now be the daughter isotope. This process is shown in **Figure 4.**

By comparing the amounts of parent and daughter isotopes in a rock sample, scientists can determine the age of the sample. The greater the percentage of daughter isotopes present in the sample, the older the rock is. But comparing parent to daughter isotopes works only when the sample has not gained or lost either parent or daughter isotopes through leaking or contamination.

QuickLAB 10 min

Radioactive Decay

Procedure

1. Use a **clock or watch that has a second hand** to record the time.
2. Wait 20 s, and then use **scissors** to carefully cut a **sheet of paper** in half. Select one piece, and set the other piece aside.
3. Repeat step 2 until nine 20 s intervals have elapsed.

Analysis

1. What does the whole piece of paper used in this investigation represent?
2. What do the pieces of paper that you set aside in each step represent?
3. What is the half-life of your paper isotope?
4. How much of your paper isotope was left after the first three intervals? after six intervals? after nine intervals? Express your answers as percentages.
5. What two factors in your model must remain constant so that your model is accurate? Explain your answer.

Table 1 ▼

Radiometric Dating Methods				
Radiometric dating method	**Parent Isotope**	**Daughter isotope**	**Half-life**	**Effective dating range**
Radiocarbon dating	carbon-14, ^{14}C	nitrogen-14, 14N	5,730 years	less than 70,000 years
Argon-argon dating, $^{39}Ar/^{40}Ar$	potassium-40, ^{40}K irradiated to form argon-39, ^{39}Ar	argon-40, ^{40}Ar	1.25 billion years	50,000 to 4.6 billion years
Potassium-argon dating, $^{40}K/^{40}Ar$	potassium-40, ^{40}K	Argon-40, ^{40}Ar	1.25 billion years	50,000 to 4.6 billion years
Rubidium-strontium dating, $^{87}Rb/^{87}Sr$	rubidium-87, ^{87}Rb	strontium-87, ^{87}Sr	48.8 billion years	10 million to 4.6 billion years
Uranium-lead dating, $^{235}U/^{207}Pb$	uranium-235, ^{235}U	lead-207, ^{207}Pb	704 million years	10 million to 4.6 billion years
Uranium-lead dating, $^{238}U/^{206}Pb$	uranium-238, ^{238}U	lead-206, ^{206}Pb	4.5 billion years	10 million to 4.6 billion years
Thorium-lead dating	thorium-232, ^{232}Th	lead-208, ^{208}Pb	14.0 billion years	less than 200 million years

Radioactive Isotopes

The amount of time that has passed since a rock formed determines which radioactive element will give a more accurate age measurement. If too little time has passed since radioactive decay began, there may not be enough of the daughter isotope for accurate dating. If too much time has passed, there may not be enough of the parent isotope left for accurate dating.

Uranium-238, ^{238}U (which is read as "U two thirty-eight"), has an extremely long half-life of 4.5 billion years. ^{238}U is most useful for dating geologic samples that are more than 10 million years old, as long as they contain uranium. In addition to ^{238}U, several other radioactive isotopes are used to date rock samples. One such isotope is potassium-40, ^{40}K, which has a half-life of 1.25 billion years. ^{40}K occurs in mica, clay, and feldspar and is used to date rocks that are between 50,000 and 4.6 billion years old. Rubidium-87, ^{87}Rb, has a half-life of about 49 billion years. ^{87}Rb, which commonly occurs in minerals that contain ^{40}K, can be used to verify the age of rocks previously dated by using ^{40}K. **Table 1** provides a list of other radiometric dating methods.

Reading Check **How does the half-life of an isotope affect the accuracy of the radiometric dating method? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 5 ▶ This scientist is preparing a mammoth's tooth for carbon-14 dating, which will determine the tooth's absolute age.

Carbon Dating

Younger rock layers may be dated indirectly by dating organic material found within the rock. The ages of wood, bones, shells, and other organic remains that are included in the layers and that are less than 70,000 years old can be determined by using a method known as *carbon-14 dating,* or *radiocarbon dating*, as shown in **Figure 5.** The isotope carbon-14, ^{14}C, combines with oxygen to form radioactive carbon dioxide, CO_2. Most CO_2 in the atmosphere contains nonradioactive carbon-12, ^{12}C. Only a small amount of CO_2 in the atmosphere contains ^{14}C.

Plants absorb CO_2, which contains either ^{12}C or ^{14}C during photosynthesis. Then, when animals eat the plants or the plant-eating animals, the ^{12}C and ^{14}C become part of the animals' body tissues. Thus, all living organisms contain both ^{12}C and ^{14}C.

To find the age of a small amount of organic material, scientists first determine the ratio of ^{14}C to ^{12}C in the sample. Then, they compare that ratio with the ratio of ^{14}C to ^{12}C known to exist in a living organism. While organisms are alive, the ratio of ^{12}C to ^{14}C remains relatively constant. When a plant or an animal dies, however, the ratio begins to change. The half-life of ^{14}C is only about 5,730 years. Because the organism is dead, it no longer absorbs ^{12}C and ^{14}C, and the amount of ^{14}C in the organism's tissues decreases steadily as the radioactive ^{14}C decays to nonradioactive nitrogen-14, ^{14}N.

Section 2 Review

1. **Differentiate** between relative and absolute age.
2. **Summarize** why calculations of absolute age based on rates of erosion and deposition can be inaccurate.
3. **Describe** varves, and describe how and where they form.
4. **Explain** how radiometric dating is used to estimate absolute age.
5. **Define** half-life, and explain how it helps determine an object's absolute age.
6. **List** three methods of radiometric dating, and explain the age range for which they are most effective.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Demonstrating Reasoned Judgment** Suppose you have a shark's tooth that you suspect is about 15,000 years old. Would you use ^{238}U or ^{14}C to date the tooth? Explain your answer.
8. **Making Inferences** You see an advertisement for an atomic clock. You also know that radioactive decay emits harmful radiation. Do you think the atomic clock contains decaying isotopes? Explain.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *absolute age, varve, radiometric dating, parent isotope, daughter isotope,* and *carbon dating*.

Section 3 The Fossil Record

The remains of animals or plants that lived in a previous geologic time are called **fossils.** Fossils, such as the one shown in **Figure 1,** are an important source of information for finding the relative and absolute ages of rocks. Fossils also provide clues to past geologic events, climates, and the evolution of living things over time. The study of fossils is called **paleontology.**

Almost all fossils are discovered in sedimentary rock. The sediments that cover the fossils slow or stop the process of decay and protect the body of the dead organism from damage. Fossils are rarely discovered in igneous rock or metamorphic rock because intense heat, pressure, and chemical reactions that occur during the formation of these rock types destroy all organic structures.

Interpreting the Fossil Record

The fossil record provides information about the geologic history of Earth. By revealing the ways that organisms have changed throughout the geologic past, fossils provide important clues to the environmental changes that occurred in Earth's past. For example, fossils of marine animals and plants have been discovered in areas far from any ocean. These fossils tell us that such areas were covered by an ocean in the past. Scientists can use this information to learn about how environmental changes have affected living organisms.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** four ways in which entire organisms can be preserved as fossils.
- **List** five examples of fossilized traces of organisms.
- **Describe** how index fossils can be used to determine the age of rocks.

KEY TERMS

fossil
paleontology
trace fossil
index fossil

fossil the trace or remains of an organism that lived long ago, most commonly preserved in sedimentary rock

paleontology the scientific study of fossils

SCILINKS
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Fossil Record
SciLinks code: HQ60615

Figure 1 ▶ Paleontologists are unearthing the remains of rhinoceroses that are 10 million years old at this site in Orchard, Nebraska.

Fossilization

Normally, dead plants and animals are eaten by other animals or decomposed by bacteria. If left unprotected, even hard parts such as bones decay and leave no trace of the organism. Only dead organisms that are buried quickly or protected from decay can become fossils. Generally, only the hard parts of organisms, such as wood, bones, shells, and teeth, become fossils. In rare cases, an entire organism may be preserved. In some types of fossils, only a replica of the original organism remains. Other fossils merely provide evidence that life once existed. **Table 1** describes different ways that fossils can form.

How Fossils Form

Mummification Mummified remains are often found in very dry places, because most bacteria, which cause decay, cannot survive in these places. Some ancient civilizations mummified their dead by carefully extracting the body's internal organs and then wrapping the body in carefully prepared strips of cloth.

Amber Hardened tree sap is called *amber*. Insects become trapped in the sticky sap and are preserved when the sap hardens. In many cases, delicate features such as legs and antennae have been preserved. In rare cases, DNA has been recovered from amber.

Tar Seeps When thick petroleum oozes to Earth's surface, the petroleum forms a tar seep. Tar seeps are commonly covered by water. Animals that come to drink the water can become trapped in the sticky tar. Other animals prey on the trapped animals and can also become trapped. The remains of the trapped animals are covered by the tar and preserved.

Freezing The low temperatures of frozen soil and ice can protect and preserve organisms. Because most bacteria cannot survive freezing temperatures, organisms that are buried in frozen soil or ice do not decay.

Petrification Mineral solutions such as groundwater replace the original organic materials that were covered by layers of sediment with new materials. Some common petrifying minerals are silica, calcite, and pyrite. The substitution of minerals for organic material often results in the formation of a nearly perfect mineral replica of the original organism.

Table 2 ▼

Types of Fossils

Imprints Carbonized imprints of leaves, stems, flowers, and fish made in soft mud or clay have been found preserved in sedimentary rock. When original organic material partially decays, it leaves behind a carbon-rich film. An imprint displays the surface features of the organism.

Molds and Casts Shells often leave empty cavities called *molds* within hardened sediment. When a shell is buried, its remains eventually decay and leave an empty space. When sand or mud fills a mold and hardens, a natural cast forms. A cast is a replica of the original organism.

Coprolites Fossilized dung or waste materials from ancient animals are called *coprolites.* They can be cut into thin sections and observed through a microscope. The materials identified in these sections reveal the feeding habits of ancient animals, such as dinosaurs.

Gastroliths Some dinosaurs had stones in their digestive systems to help grind their food. In many cases, these stones, which are called *gastroliths,* survive as fossils. Gastroliths can often be recognized by their smooth, polished surfaces and by their close proximity to dinosaur remains.

Types of Fossils

Fossils can show a remarkable amount of detail about ancient organisms. **Table 2** describes some of these fossils. In some cases, no part of the original organism survives in fossil form. But **trace fossils,** or fossilized evidence of past animal movement such as tracks, footprints, borings, and burrows, can still provide information about prehistoric life.

trace fossil a fossilized mark that formed in sedimentary rock by the movement of an animal on or within soft sediment

A trace fossil, such as the footprint of an animal, is an important clue to the animal's appearance and activities. Suppose a giant dinosaur left deep footprints in soft mud. Sand or silt may have blown or washed into the footprint so gently that the footprints remained intact. Then, more sediment may have been deposited over the prints. As time passed, the mud containing the footprints hardened into sedimentary rock and preserved the footprints. Scientists have discovered ancient footprints of reptiles, amphibians, birds, and mammals.

Reading Check **What is a trace fossil? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 2 ▶ If you discovered fossils such as these ammonites, you would know that the surrounding rock formed between 180 million and 206 million years ago.

Index Fossils

Paleontologists can use fossils to determine the relative ages of the rock layers in which the fossils are located. Fossils that occur only in rock layers of a particular geologic age are called **index fossils.** To be an index fossil, a fossil must meet certain requirements. First, it must be present in rocks scattered over a large region. Second, it must have features that clearly distinguish it from other fossils. Third, the organisms from which the fossil formed must have lived during a short span of geologic time. Fourth, the fossil must occur in fairly large numbers within the rock layers.

index fossil a fossil that is used to establish the age of rock layers because it is distinct, abundant, and widespread and existed for only a short span of geologic time

Index Fossils and Absolute Age

Scientists can use index fossils to estimate absolute ages of specific rock layers. Because organisms that formed index fossils lived during short spans of geologic time, the rock layer in which an index fossil was discovered can be dated accurately.

The ammonite fossils in **Figure 2** show that the rock in which the fossils were observed formed between 180 million and 206 million years ago. Scientists can also use index fossils to date rock layers in separate areas. So, an index fossil discovered in rock layers in different areas of the world indicates that the rock layers in these areas formed during the same time period.

Geologists also use index fossils to help locate rock layers that are likely to contain oil and natural gas deposits. These deposits form from plant and animal remains that change by chemical processes over millions of years.

Section 3 Review

1. **Describe** four ways in which an entire organism can be preserved as a fossil.
2. **List** four types of fossils that can be used to provide indirect evidence of organisms.
3. **Explain** how geologists use fossils to date sedimentary rock layers.
4. **Compare** the process of mummification with the process of petrification.
5. **Describe** how index fossils can be used to determine the age of rocks.

CRITICAL THINKING

6. **Applying Ideas** What two characteristics do all good sources of animal fossils have in common?
7. **Identifying Relationships** If a rock layer in Mexico and a rock layer in Australia contain the same index fossil, what do you know about the absolute ages of the layers in both places? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *fossil, mummification, amber, tar seep, freezing,* and *petrification.*

Chapter 8 Highlights

Sections

1 Determining Relative Age

Key Terms

uniformitarianism, 185
relative age, 186
law of superposition, 187
unconformity, 189
law of crosscutting relationships, 190

Key Concepts

- According to the principle of uniformitarianism, the forces that are changing Earth's surface today are the same forces that changed Earth's surface in the past.
- Scientists use the law of superposition to determine the relative ages of rock layers.
- Nonconformities, angular unconformities, and disconformities are interruptions in the sequence of rock layers and are collectively known as unconformities.
- Scientists use the law of crosscutting relationships to determine the relative ages of rock layers.

2 Determining Absolute Age

absolute age, 191
varve, 192
radiometric dating, 193
half-life, 194

- Absolute age is the numeric age of an object given in years.
- Because they can change over time, the rates of erosion and deposition are imprecise methods for determining absolute age of rocks.
- Varves are layers of sediment that form in glacial lakes as a result of the annual cycle of freezing and thawing of the glacier.
- Radioactive elements decay at constant and measurable rates and can be used to determine absolute age.

3 The Fossil Record

fossil, 197
paleontology, 197
trace fossil, 199
index fossil, 200

- Entire organisms may be preserved in amber, in tar seeps, or through freezing or mummification.
- Fossilized evidence of organisms includes trace fossils, imprints, molds, casts, coprolites, and gastroliths.
- Index fossils occur only in rock layers of a particular geologic age.

Chapter 8 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *uniformitarianism*
2. *varve*
3. *radiometric dating*
4. *half-life*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

5. *relative age* and *absolute age*
6. *law of superposition* and *law of crosscutting relationships*
7. *trace fossil* and *index fossil*

Understanding Key Concepts

8. Varves are layers of
   a. limestone mixed with coarse sediments.
   b. alternating coarse and fine sediments.
   c. fossils.
   d. sediments that have gaps that represent missing time in the rock sequence.

9. An unconformity that results when new sediments are deposited on eroded horizontal layers is a(n)
   a. angular unconformity.
   b. disconformity.
   c. crosscut unconformity.
   d. nonconformity.

10. A fault or intrusion is younger than the rock it cuts through, according to the
    a. type of unconformity.
    b. law of superposition.
    c. law of crosscutting relationships.
    d. principle of uniformitarianism.

11. The age of a rock in years is the rock's numerical age, or
    a. index age.
    b. relative age.
    c. half-life age.
    d. absolute age.

12. A gap in the sequence of rock layers is a(n)
    a. bedding plane.
    b. varve.
    c. unconformity.
    d. uniformity.

13. The process by which the remains of an organism are preserved by drying is called
    a. petrification.
    b. mummification.
    c. erosion.
    d. superposition.

14. Molds that fill with sediment sometimes produce
    a. casts.
    b. gastroliths.
    c. coprolites.
    d. imprints.

Short Answer

15. What prompted James Hutton to formulate the principle of uniformitarianism?

16. Describe how the law of superposition helps scientists determine relative age.

17. Compare and contrast the three types of unconformities.

18. How do scientists use radioactive decay to determine absolute age?

19. Besides radiometric dating, what are three other methods of estimating absolute age?

20. List and describe five ways that organisms can be preserved.

21. List the four characteristics that define an index fossil.

Thinking

g Inferences James Hutton developed rinciple of uniformitarianism by obg geologic changes on his farm. What ges might he have observed?

ing Ideas How might a scientist dene the original positions of the ientary layers beneath an angular unrmity?

zing Relationships One intrusion cuts gh all the rock layers. Another intrus eroded and lies beneath several of sedimentary rock. Which intrusion nger? Explain your answer.

zing Concepts A fossil that has unusual es is found in many areas on Earth. resents a brief period of geologic time ccurs in small numbers. Would this make a good index fossil? Explain.

g Comparisons Compare the processes mmification and freezing.

t Mapping

he following terms to create a concept *relative age, law of superposition, unrmity, law of crosscutting relationships, ute age, radiometric dating, carbon dat*nd *index fossil*.

kills

g Calculations Scientists know that a million grams of ^{238}U, 1/7,600 g of per year will be produced by active decay. How many grams of would be left after 1 million years?

ing Quantities A sample contains g of an isotope that has a half-life of ears. How many half-lives will have to before the sample contains less than f the parent isotope?

30. Making Calculations The half-life of ^{238}U is 4.5 billion years. How many years would 16 g of ^{238}U take to decay into 0.5 g of ^{238}U and 15.5 g of daughter products?

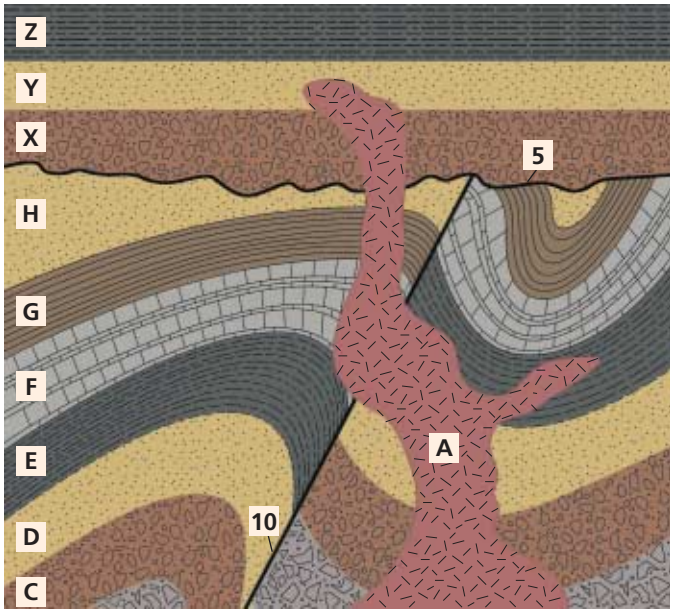
Writing Skills

31. Writing Persuasively Imagine that you are James Hutton. Write a letter to a fellow scientist to convince him or her of the validity of the principle of uniformitarianism.

32. Outlining Topics Describe what happens to the amount of an isotope as it undergoes radioactive decay through three half-lives.

Interpreting Graphics

The illustration below shows crosscutting relationships in an outcrop of rock. Use this illustration to answer the questions that follow.



33. Is intrusion A older or younger than fault 10? Explain your answer.

34. What type of unconformity does feature 5 represent? Explain your answer.

35. Which rock formation is older: layer X or layer Y? Explain your answer.

Chapter 8 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 A scientist used radiometric dating during an investigation. The scientist used this method because he or she wanted to determine the
A. relative age of rocks
B. absolute age of rocks
C. climate of a past era
D. fossil types in a rock

2 Fossils that provide direct evidence of the feeding habits of ancient animals are known as
F. coprolites
G. molds and casts
H. imprints
I. trace fossils

3 One way to estimate the absolute age of rock is
A. nonconformity
B. varve count
C. the law of superposition
D. the law of crosscutting relationships

4 To be an index fossil, a fossil must
F. be present in rocks that are scattered over a small geographic area
G. contain remains of organisms that lived for a long period of geologic time
H. occur in small numbers within the rock layers
I. have features that clearly distinguish it from other fossils

5 Which of the following statements best describes the relationship between the law of superposition and the principle of original horizontality?
A. Both describe the deposition of sediments in horizontal layers.
B. Both conclude that Earth is more than 100,000 years old.
C. Both indicate the absolute age of layers of rock.
D. Both recognize that the geologic processes in the past are the same as those at work now.

Directions (6): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 What is the name for a type of fossil that can be used to establish the age of rock?

Reading Skills

Directions (7–10): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions on a separate sheet of paper.**

Illinois Nodules

Around three hundred million years ago, the region that is now Illinois had a very different climate. Swamps and marshes covered much of the area. Scientists estimate that no fewer than 500 species lived in this ancient environment. Today, the remains of these organisms are found preserved within structures known as nodules. Nodules are round or oblong structures that are usually composed of cemented sediments. Sometimes, these nodules contain the fossilized hard parts of plants and animals. The Illinois nodules are extremely rare because many contain finely detailed impressions of the soft parts of the organisms together with the hard parts. Because they are rare, these nodules are desired for their incredible scientific value and may be found in fossil collections around the world.

7 According to the passage above, which of the following statements about nodules is correct?
A. Nodules are rarely round or oblong.
B. Nodules are usually composed of cemented sediments.
C. Nodules are rarely found outside of Illinois.
D. Nodules will always contain fossils.

8 What is the most unusual feature of the nodules found in modern-day Illinois?
F. their bright coloration
G. the fact that they come in many more unusual shapes that other nodules
H. the fact that they contain both the soft and hard parts of animals
I. their extremely heavy weight

9 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
A. Illinois nodules are sought by scientists.
B. Nodules can be purchased from the state.
C. Similar nodules can be found in nearby Iowa.
D. Nodules contain dinosaur fossils.

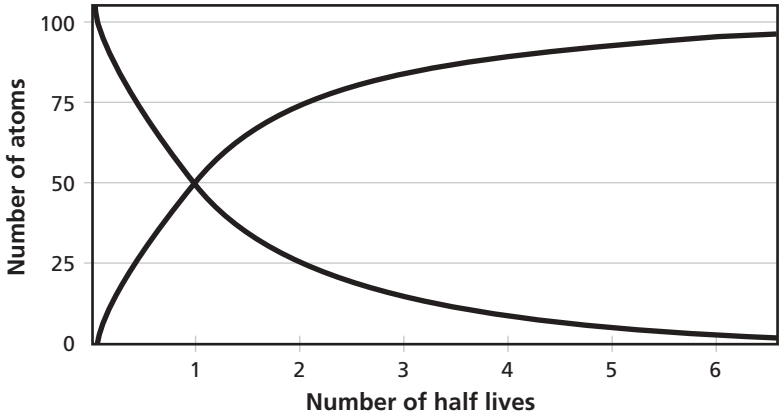
10 What might scientists learn from nodules that contains the soft and hard parts of an animal?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–13): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The graph below shows the rate of radioactive decay. Use this graph to answer question 11.

Radioactive Decay

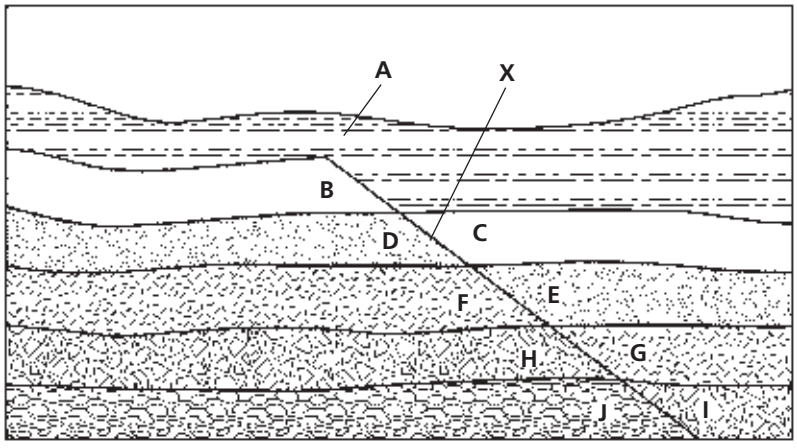


11 How many half-lives have passed when the number of daughter atoms is approximately three times the number of parent atoms?

A. one
B. two
C. three
D. four

The diagram below shows crosscutting taking place in layers of rock. Use this diagram to answer questions 12 and 13.

Layers of Rock with a Crosscutting Fault



12 Which of the letter combinations below belonged to the same layer of rock before the fault disrupted the layer?

A. C and D
B. C and F
C. G and I
D. G and F

13 Which is older, structure B or structure X? Explain your answer. What structure shown on the diagram is the youngest?

Test TIP

If time permits, take short mental breaks to improve your concentration during a test.

Chapter 8

Making Models Lab

Objectives

- **USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS** **Model** the way different types of fossils form.
- **Demonstrate** how certain types of fossils form.

Materials

clay, modeling
container, plastic
hard objects such as a shell, key, paper clip, or coin
leaf
newspaper
paper, carbon, soft
paper, white (1 sheet)
pencil (or wood dowel)
plaster of Paris
spoon, plastic
tweezers
water
wax paper

Safety

Types of Fossils

Paleontologists study fossils to find evidence of the kinds of life and conditions that existed on Earth in the past. Fossils are the remains of ancient plants and animals or evidence of their presence. In this lab, you will use various methods to make models of fossils.

PROCEDURE

1. Place a ball of modeling clay on a flat surface that is covered with wax paper.
2. Press the clay down to form a flat disk about 8 cm in diameter. Turn the clay over so that the smooth, flat surface is facing up.
3. Choose a small, hard object. Press the object onto the clay carefully so that you do not disturb the indentation. Is the indentation left by the object a mold or a cast? What features of the object are best shown in the indentation? Sketch the indentation.
4. On a second piece of smooth, flat clay, make a shallow imprint to represent the burrow or footprint of an animal. Sketch your fossil imprint.

Step 3

5. Fill a plastic container with water to a depth of 1 to 2 cm. Stir in enough plaster of Paris to make a paste that has the consistency of whipped cream.
6. Using the plastic spoon, fill both indentations with plaster. Allow excess plaster to run over the edges of the imprints. Let the plaster set for about 15 minutes until it hardens.
7. After the plaster has hardened, remove both pieces of plaster from the clay. Do the pieces of hardened plaster represent molds or casts?
8. Place the carbon paper on a flat surface with the carbon facing up. Gently place the leaf on the carbon paper, and cover it with several sheets of newspaper. Roll the pencil or wooden dowel back and forth across the surface of the newspaper several times, and press firmly to bring the leaf into full contact with the carbon paper.
9. Remove the newspaper. Lift the leaf by using the tweezers, and place it on a clean sheet of paper with the carbon-coated side facing down. Cover the leaf with clean wax paper, and roll your pencil across the surface of the wax paper.
10. Remove the wax paper and leaf. Observe and describe the carbon print left by the leaf.

Step 6

Step 9

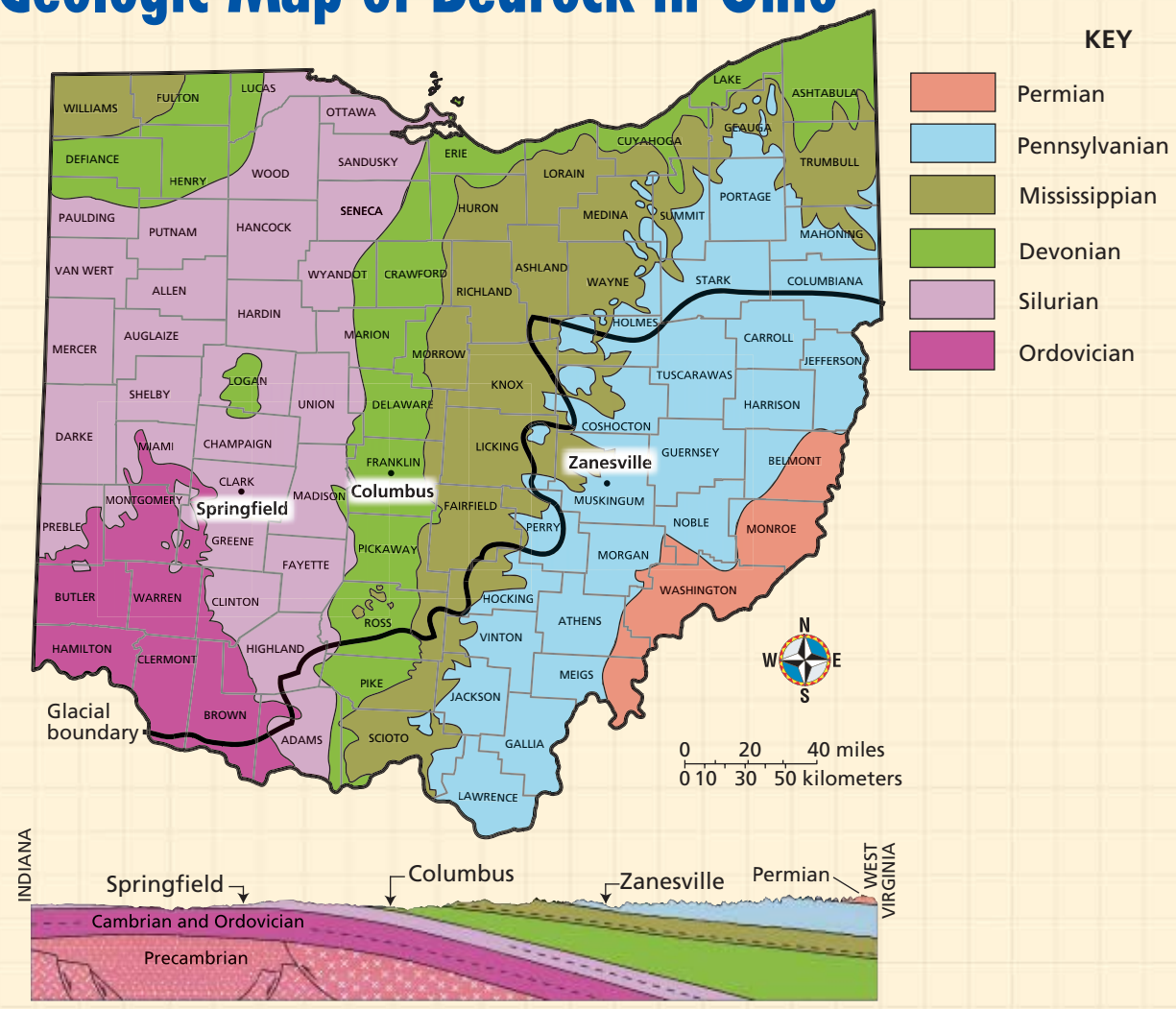
ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Analyzing Results** Look at the molds and casts made by others in your class. Identify as many of the objects used to make the molds and casts as you can.
2. **Making Comparisons** How does the carbon print you made differ from an actual carbonized imprint fossil?
3. **Applying Ideas** Trace fossils are evidence of the movement of an animal on or within soft sediment. Why are imprints, molds, and casts not considered trace fossils?

Extension

1. **Making Predictions** Which organism—a rabbit, a housefly, an earthworm, or a snail—would be most likely to form fossils? Which of the organisms would leave trace fossils? Explain.

Geologic Map of Bedrock in Ohio



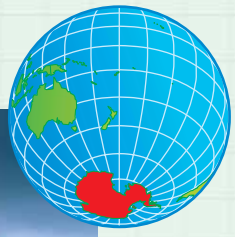
Map Skills Activity

This map shows the ages of the bedrock in Ohio. Bedrock is the solid rock that lies underneath all surface soil and other loose material. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using the Key** What geologic periods are represented in the bedrock of Ohio?
2. **Analyzing Data** Where is the youngest bedrock in Ohio? Where is the oldest bedrock in Ohio?
3. **Identifying Trends** If you traveled from east to west across Ohio, how would the ages of the rock beneath you change?
4. **Analyzing Relationships** Based on the geologic cross section, how does the shape of the rock beds cause rocks of different ages to be exposed at different places in Ohio?
5. **Identifying Relationships** Why is Mississippian rock likely to be located next to Devonian rock?
6. **Using the Key** The first reptiles appeared in the fossil record during the Pennsylvanian Period. If you wanted to look for fossils of these reptiles in Ohio, in what part of the state would you look? Explain your answer.

Clues to Climate Change

It is hard to imagine that the bitter cold climate of Antarctica was once much warmer than it is now and that the icy landscape supported thick forests. But studies of fossils found in ocean-floor sediments off the coast of Antarctica indicate climate change.



◀ Today, Antarctica is populated only by organisms that can survive extreme cold, such as these penguins.

Finding Fossil Clues

Scientists working on the Ocean Drilling Project have found samples of sediments from 60 million years ago to the present day. These samples reveal much about the complex history of climatic changes in Antarctica.

Fossil spores and pollen that are more than 39 million years old indicate that beech-tree forests once grew in Antarctica. Samples of sediment that are 37 million to 60 million years old contained soil that normally occurs in warm, humid climates. Thus, scientists learned that prior to 37 million years ago the climate in Antarctica was temperate.

Polar Beaches?

Fossils of freshwater organisms indicate that organisms were carried from Antarctic lakes to the ocean floor by rivers as recently as 20 million years ago. The fossils are evidence that the climate was once warm enough for unfrozen lakes to exist.

Scientists also discovered fossils of marine organisms that can live only in sunny coastal waters. Those found off the east coast were more than 15 million years old, and those found off the west coast were more than 4.8 million years old.

◀ About 60 million years ago, Antarctica may have looked like this Brazilian rain forest.

Extension

1. **Research** When did the ice shelves that now cover the ocean off the east and west coasts of Antarctica form? Research this topic, and write a report about your findings.

Chapter 9

A View of Earth's Past

Sections

1 Geologic Time

2 Precambrian Time and the Paleozoic Era

3 The Mesozoic and Cenozoic Eras

What You'll Learn

- How geologic time is divided
- What organisms lived during each geologic period

Why It's Relevant

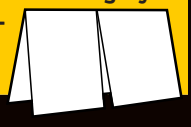
The geologic time scale provides a framework for understanding the geologic processes that shape Earth. The fossil record shows that Earth is a constantly changing planet.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Two-Panel Flip Chart

Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Two-Panel Flip Chart" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the flaps of the two-panel flip chart with "Geologic Time Scale" and "Geologic History." As you read the chapter, write information you learn about each category under the appropriate flap.



▶ This illustration shows an artist's idea of how a mother *Hypacrosaurus* may have looked as she fed her hatchlings. Because most dinosaur fossils are only fossilized bone, many other characteristics, such as skin color, are left to our imagination.

Section 1 Geologic Time

Earth's surface is constantly changing. Mountains form and erode; oceans rise and recede. As conditions on Earth's surface change, some organisms flourish and then later become extinct. Evidence of change is recorded in the rock layers of Earth's crust. To describe the sequence and length of this change, scientists have developed a *geologic time scale*. This scale outlines the development of Earth and of life on Earth.

OBJECTIVES

- **Summarize** how scientists worked together to develop the geologic column.
- **List** the major divisions of geologic time.

KEY TERMS

geologic column
era
period
epoch

The Geologic Column

By studying fossils and applying the principle that old layers of rock are below young layers, 19th-century scientists determined the relative ages of sedimentary rock in different areas around the world. No single area on Earth contained a record of all geologic time. So, scientists combined their observations to create a standard arrangement of rock layers. As shown in the example in **Figure 1,** this ordered arrangement of rock layers is called a **geologic column.** A geologic column represents a timeline of Earth's history. The oldest rocks are at the bottom of the column.

Rock layers in a geologic column are distinguished by the types of rock the layers are made of and by the kinds of fossils the layers contain. Fossils in the upper, more-recent layers resemble modern plants and animals. Most of the fossils in the lower, older layers are of plants and animals that are different from those living today. In fact, many of the fossils discovered in old layers are from species that have been extinct for millions of years.

Reading Check **Where would you find fossils of extinct animals on a geologic column? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

geologic column an ordered arrangement of rock layers that is based on the relative ages of the rocks and in which the oldest rocks are at the bottom

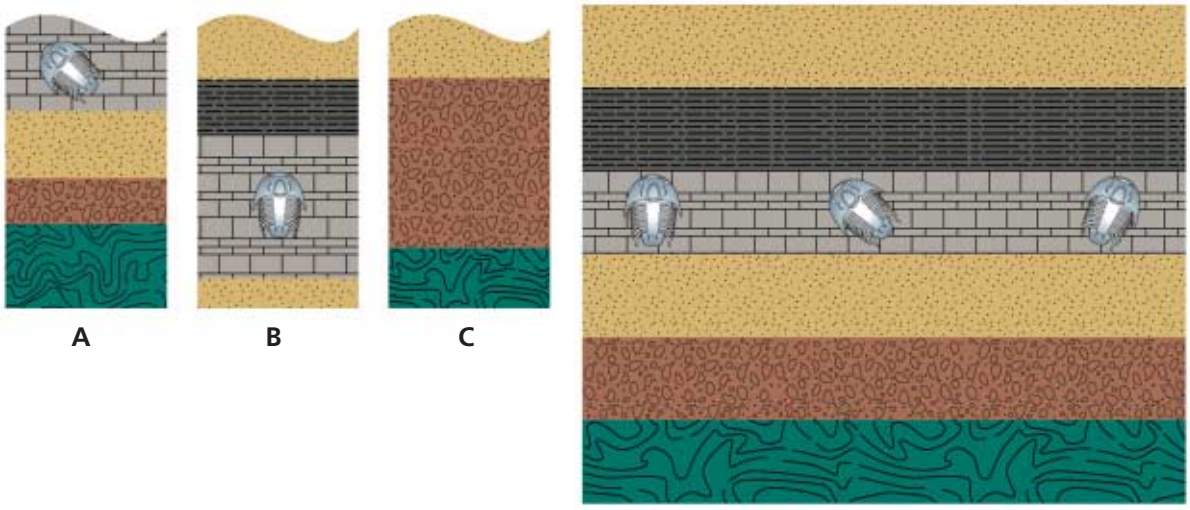


Figure 1 ▶ By combining observations of rock layers in areas A, B, and C, scientists can construct a geologic column. ***Why is relative position important in determining the ages of rock layers?***

Figure 2 ▶ This scientist is collecting rock samples that contain fossilized fungal spores that date the rock to the Triassic Period.

Using a Geologic Column

When the first geologic columns were being developed, scientists estimated the ages of rock layers by using factors such as the average rates of sediment deposition. The development of radiometric dating methods, however, allowed scientists to determine the absolute ages of rock layers with more accuracy.

Scientists can now use geologic columns to estimate the age of rock layers that cannot be dated radiometrically. To determine the layer's age, scientists compare a given rock layer with a similar layer in a geologic column that contains the same fossils or that has the same relative position. If the two layers match, they likely formed at about the same time. The scientist in **Figure 2** is investigating the ages of sedimentary rocks.

Divisions of Geologic Time

The geologic history of Earth is marked by major changes in Earth's surface, climate, and types of organisms. Geologists use these indicators to divide the geologic time scale into smaller units. Rocks grouped within each unit contain similar fossils. In fact, a unit of geologic time is generally characterized by fossils of a dominant life-form. A simplified geologic time scale is shown in **Table 1.**

Because Earth's history is so long, Earth scientists commonly use abbreviations when they discuss geologic time. For example, Ma stands for *mega-annum,* which means "one million years."

QuickLAB 30 min

Geologic Time Scale

Procedure

1. Copy the table shown at right onto a piece of **paper.**
2. Complete the table by using the scale 1 cm is equal to 10 million years.
3. Lay a **5 m strip of adding-machine paper** flat on a hard surface. Use a **meterstick,** a **metric ruler,** and a **pencil** to mark off the beginning and end of Precambrian time according to the time scale you calculated. Do the same for the three eras. Label each time division, and color each a different color with **colored pencils.**
4. Pick two periods from the geologic time scale. Using the same scale that was used in step 2, calculate the scale length for each period listed. Mark the boundaries of each period on the paper strip, and label the periods on your scale.

Era	Length of time (years)	Scale length
Precambrian	4,058,000,000	
Paleozoic	291,000,000	
Mesozoic	185,500,000	
Cenozoic	65,500,000 (to present)	

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK

5. Decorate your strip by adding names or drawings of the organisms that lived in each division of time.

Analysis

1. When did humans appear? What is the scale length from that period to the present?
2. Add the lengths of the Paleozoic, Mesozoic, and Cenozoic Eras. What percentage of the geologic time scale do these eras combined represent? What percentage of the geologic time scale does Precambrian time represent?

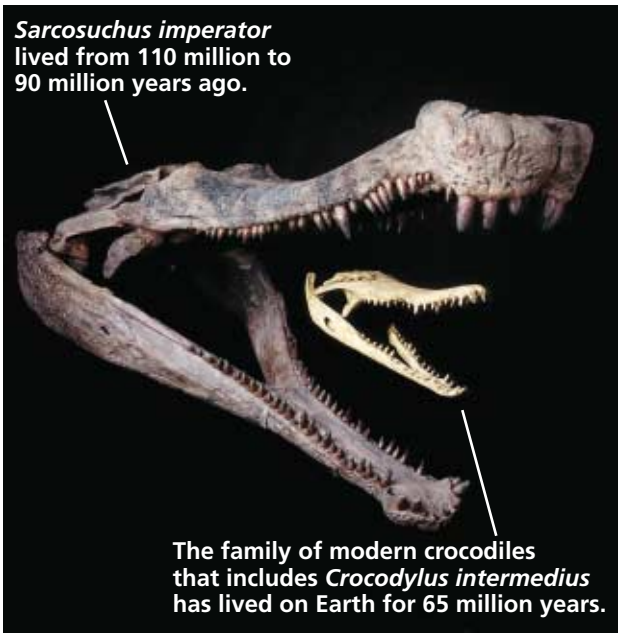


Figure 3 ▶ Crocodilians have lived on Earth for more than two geologic eras without major anatomical changes.

Eons and Eras

The largest unit of geologic time is an *eon*. Geologic time is divided into four eons—the Hadean eon, the Archean eon, the Proterozoic eon, and the Phanerozoic eon. The first three eons of Earth's history are part of a time interval commonly known as *Precambrian time*. This 4 billion year interval contains most of Earth's history. Very few fossils exist in early Precambrian rocks, so dividing Precambrian time into smaller time units is difficult.

After Precambrian time the Phanerozoic eon began. This eon, as well as most eons, is divided into smaller units of geologic time called **eras.** The first era of the Phanerozoic eon was the *Paleozoic Era* which lasted about 292 million years. Paleozoic rocks contain fossils of a wide variety of marine and terrestrial life forms. After the Paleozoic Era, the *Mesozoic Era* began and lasted about 183 million years. Mesozoic fossils include early forms of birds and of reptiles, such as the giant crocodilian shown in **Figure 3.** The present geologic era is the *Cenozoic Era,* which began about 65 million years ago. Fossils of mammals are common in Cenozoic rocks.

era a unit of geologic time that includes two or more periods

period a unit of geologic time that is longer than an epoch but shorter than an era

epoch a subdivision of geologic time that is longer than an age but shorter than a period

Periods and Epochs

Eras are divided into shorter time units called **periods.** Each period is characterized by specific fossils and is usually named for the location in which the fossils were first discovered. Where the rock record is most complete and least deformed, a detailed fossil record may allow scientists to divide periods into shorter time units called **epochs.** Epochs may be divided into smaller units of time called *ages*. Ages are defined by the occurrence of distinct fossils in the fossil record.

Section 1 Review

1. **Summarize** the reasons that many scientists had to work together to develop the geologic column.
2. **Describe** the major events in any one period of geologic time.
3. **Explain** why constructing geologic columns is useful to Earth scientists.
4. **List** the following units of time in order of length from shortest to longest: *year, period, era, eon, age,* and *epoch.*
5. **Name** the three eras of the Phanerozoic Eon, and identify how long each one lasted.
6. **Compare** geologic time with the geologic column.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Analyzing Relationships** When a scientist discovers a new type of fossil, what characteristic of the rock around the fossil would he or she want to learn first?
8. **Predicting Consequences** How would our understanding of Earth's past change if a scientist discovered a mammal fossil from the Paleozoic Era?

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *geologic time, Precambrian time, Paleozoic Era, Mesozoic Era, Cenozoic Era, period,* and *epoch.*

Section 2 Precambrian Time and the Paleozoic Era

History is a record of past events. Just as the history of civilizations is written in books, the geologic history of Earth is recorded in rock layers. The types of rock and the fossils that occur in each layer reveal information about the environment when the layer formed. For example, the presence of a limestone layer in a region indicates that the area was once covered by water.

OBJECTIVES

- **Summarize** how evolution is related to geologic change.
- **Identify** two characteristics of Precambrian rock.
- **Identify one** major geologic and two major biological developments during the Paleozoic Era.

KEY TERMS

evolution
Precambrian time
Paleozoic Era

Evolution

Fossils indicate the kinds of organisms that lived when rock formed. By examining rock layers and fossils, scientists have discovered evidence that species of living things have changed over time. Scientists call this process evolution. **Evolution** is the gradual development of new organisms from preexisting organisms. Scientists think that evolution occurs by means of natural selection. Evidence for evolution includes the similarity in skeletal structures of animals, as shown in **Figure 1.** The theory of evolution by natural selection was proposed in 1859 by Charles Darwin, an English naturalist.

evolution a heritable change in the characteristics within a population from one generation to the next; the development of new types of organisms from preexisting types of organisms over time.

Evolution and Geologic Change

Major geologic and climatic changes can affect the ability of some organisms to survive. For example, dramatic changes in sea level greatly affect organisms that live in coastal areas. By using geologic evidence, scientists try to determine how environmental changes affected organisms in the past. The fossil record shows that some organisms survived environmental changes while other organisms disappeared. Scientists use fossils to learn why some organisms survived long periods of time without changing while other organisms changed or became extinct.

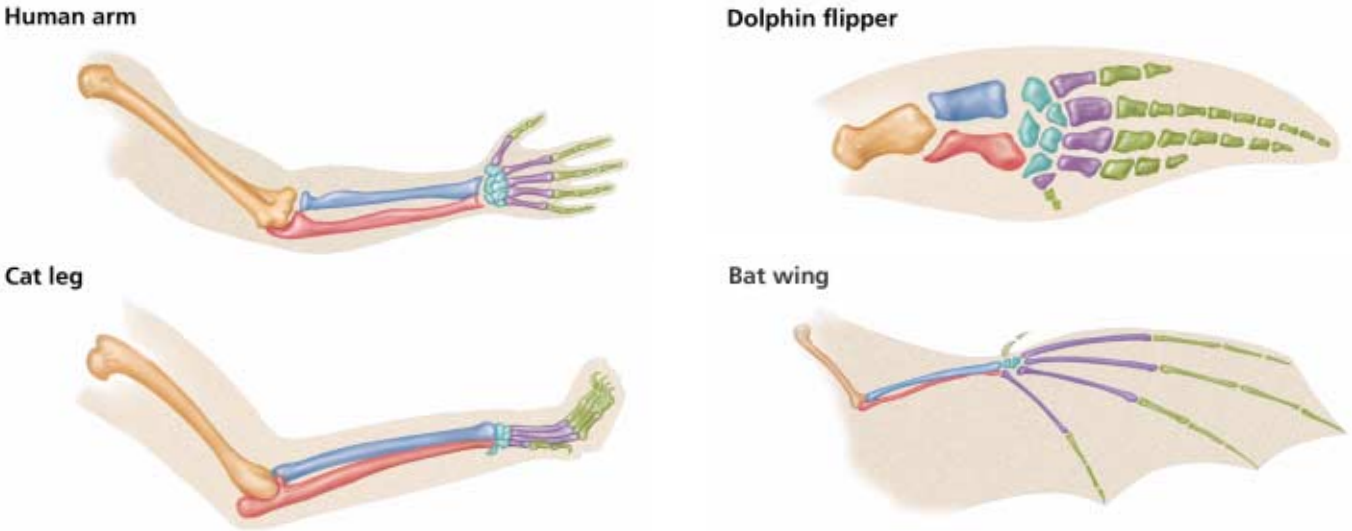


Figure 1 ▶ Bones in the front limbs of these animals are similar even though the limbs are used in different ways. Similar structures indicate a common ancestor.

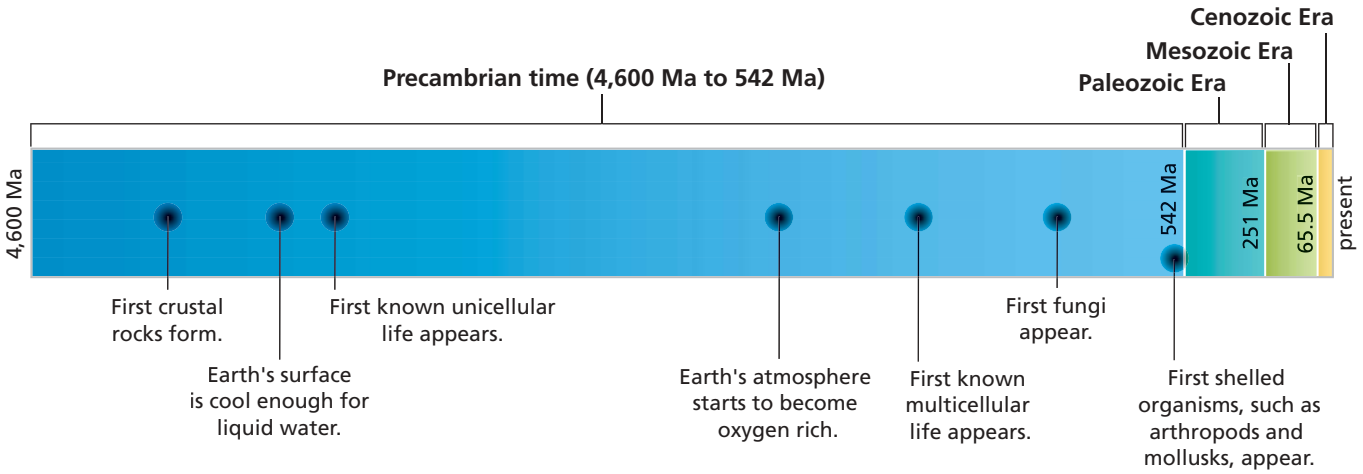


Figure 2 ▶ Precambrian Timeline
How many million years ago did the first unicellular life appear?

Precambrian Time

Most scientists agree that Earth formed about 4.6 billion years ago as a large cloud, or *nebula,* spun around the newly formed sun. As material spun around the sun, particles of matter began to clump together and eventually formed Earth and the other planets of the solar system. The time interval that began with the formation of Earth and ended about 542 million years ago is known as **Precambrian time.** This division of geologic time makes up about 88% of Earth's history, as shown in **Figure 2.**

Precambrian time the interval of time in the geologic time scale from Earth's formation to the beginning of the Paleozoic era, from 4.6 billion to 542 million years ago

Even though Precambrian time makes up such a large part of Earth's history, we know relatively little about what happened during that time. We lack information partly because the Precambrian rock record is difficult to interpret. Most Precambrian rocks have been so severely deformed and altered by tectonic activity that the original order of rock layers is rarely identifiable.

Reading Check **How old is Earth? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Connection to BIOLOGY

Natural Selection

In part, evolution occurs through a process called *natural selection*. Natural selection has four basic principles. First, every species produces more offspring than will survive to maturity. Second, individuals in a population are slightly different, and each individual has a unique combination of traits. Third, the environment does not have enough resources to support all of the individuals that are born. Fourth, only individuals that are well suited to the environment are likely to survive and reproduce.

Natural selection ensures that individuals who have better traits for surviving in their environment are more likely to pass those traits to their offspring. One of the assumptions of evolution is that only organisms that can adapt to the environmental changes will survive. Organisms that cannot survive—in other words, those that are unfit to live and reproduce in the changing environment—become extinct.

Because their fur hides them from predators, rabbits that are adapted to survive in the arctic are white. Brown rabbits are adapted to survive in other environments.

Precambrian Rocks

Large areas of exposed Precambrian rocks, called *shields,* exist on every continent. Precambrian shields are the result of several hundred million years of volcanic activity, mountain building, sedimentation, and metamorphism. After they were metamorphosed and deformed, the rocks of North America's Precambrian shield were uplifted and exposed at Earth's surface. Nearly half of the valuable mineral deposits in the world occur in the rocks of Precambrian shields. These valuable minerals include nickel, iron, gold, and copper.

Precambrian Life

Fossils are rare in Precambrian rocks, probably because Precambrian life-forms lacked bones, shells, or other hard parts that commonly form fossils. Also, Precambrian rocks are extremely old. Some date back nearly 3.9 billion years. Over this long period of time, volcanic activity, erosion, and extensive crustal movements, such as folding and faulting, probably destroyed most of the fossils that may have formed during Precambrian time.

Of the few Precambrian fossils that have been discovered, the most common are *stromatolites,* or reeflike deposits formed by blue-green algae. Stromatolites form today in warm, shallow waters, as shown in **Figure 3.** The presence of stromatolite fossils in Precambrian rocks indicates that shallow seas covered much of Earth during periods of Precambrian time. Imprints of marine worms, jellyfish, and single-celled organisms have also been discovered in rocks from late Precambrian Time.

QuickLAB 10 min

Chocolate Candy Survival

Procedure

1. Lay a **piece of colorful cloth** on a table.
2. Randomly sprinkle a handful of **candy-coated chocolate bits** on the cloth.
3. Look away for 1 min.
4. For 10 s, pick up chocolate bits one at a time. Record the colors of candy you picked up.
5. Repeat steps 1–4 with a piece of **colorful cloth that has a different pattern.**

Analysis

1. What colors were you more likely to pick up in the first trial? What about those candies made you pick them up?
2. When you changed the color of the cloth, did you change the color of candies you picked up?
3. How could camouflage help an organism survive?

Figure 3 ▶
Stromatolites, which are mats of blue-green algae, are the most common Precambrian fossils.

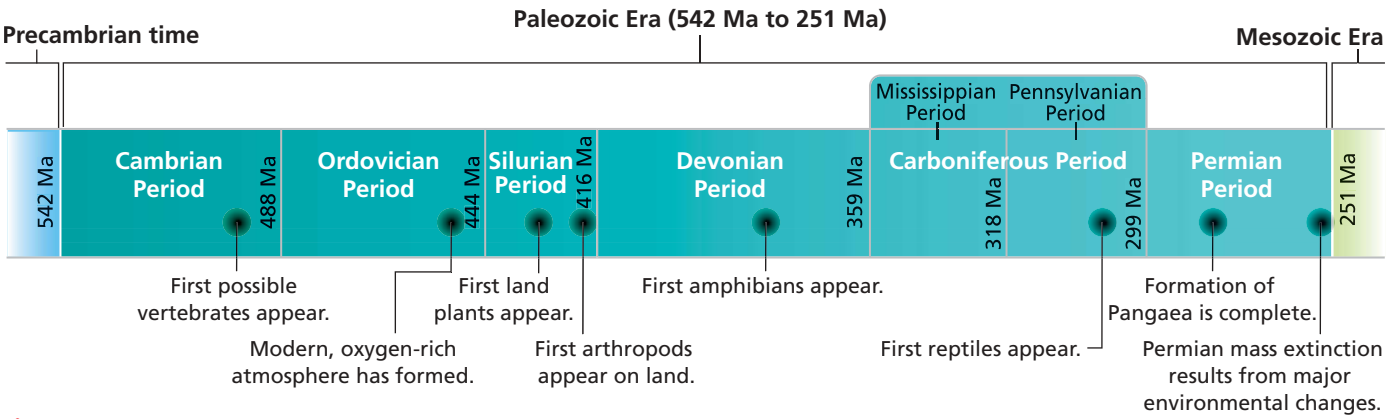


Figure 4 ▶ Paleozoic Timeline

The Paleozoic Era

As shown in **Figure 4,** the geologic era that began about 542 million years ago and ended about 251 million years ago is called the **Paleozoic Era.** At the beginning of the Paleozoic Era, Earth's landmasses were scattered around the world. By the end of the Paleozoic Era, these landmasses had collided to form the supercontinent Pangaea. This tectonic activity created new mountain ranges and lifted large areas of land above sea level.

Paleozoic Era the geologic era that followed Precambrian time and that lasted from 542 million to 251 million years ago

Unlike Precambrian rocks, Paleozoic rocks hold an abundant fossil record. The number of plant and animal species on Earth increased dramatically at the beginning of the Paleozoic Era. Because of this rich fossil record, North American geologists have divided the Paleozoic Era into seven periods.

The Cambrian Period

The Cambrian Period is the first period of the Paleozoic Era. A variety of marine life-forms appeared during this period. These Cambrian life-forms were more advanced than previous life-forms and quickly displaced the primitive organisms as the dominant life-forms. The explosion of Cambrian life may have been partly due to the warm, shallow seas that covered much of the continents during the time period. Marine *invertebrates*, or animals that do not have backbones, thrived in the warm waters. The most common of the Cambrian invertebrates were *trilobites,* such as the one shown in **Figure 5.** Scientists use many trilobites as *index fossils* to date rocks to the Cambrian Period.

Figure 5 ▶ During the early Paleozoic Era, various types of trilobites, such as this fossilized trilobite from the genus *Moducia,* flourished in the warm, shallow seas.

The second most common animals of the Cambrian Period were the *brachiopods*, a group of shelled animals. Fossils indicate that at least 15 different families of brachiopods existed during this period. A few kinds of brachiopods exist today, but modern brachiopods are rare. Other common Cambrian invertebrates include worms, jellyfish, snails, and sponges. However, no evidence of land-dwelling plants or animals has been discovered in Cambrian rocks.

Reading Check **Name three common invertebrates from the Cambrian Period. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 6 ▶ During the Silurian Period, eurypterids lived in shallow lagoons. Eurypterids had one pair of legs for swimming and had four or five pairs for walking.

The Ordovician Period

During the Ordovician (AWR duh VISH uhn) Period populations of trilobites began to shrink. Clamlike brachiopods and cephalopod mollusks became the dominant invertebrate life-forms. Large numbers of corals appeared. Colonies of tiny invertebrates called *graptolites* also flourished in the oceans, and primitive fish appeared. By this period, *vertebrates,* or animals that have backbones, had appeared. The most primitive vertebrates were fish. Unlike modern fish, Ordovician fish did not have jaws or teeth and their bodies were covered with thick, bony plates. During the Ordovician Period, as during the Cambrian Period and Precambrian times, there was no plant life on land.

The Silurian Period

Vertebrate and invertebrate marine life continued to thrive during the Silurian Period. Echinoderms, relatives of modern sea stars, and corals became more common. Scorpion-like sea creatures called *eurypterids* (yoo RIP tuhr IDZ), such as the one shown in **Figure 6,** also existed during the Silurian Period. Fossils of giant eurypterids nearly 3 m long have been discovered in western New York. Near the end of this period, the earliest land plants as well as animals, such as scorpions, evolved on land.

The Devonian Period

The Devonian Period is called the *Age of Fishes* because fossils of many bony fishes were discovered in rocks of this period. One type of fish, called a *lungfish,* had the ability to breathe air. Other air-breathing fish, called *rhipidistians,* (RIE puh DIS tee uhnz) had strong fins that may have allowed them to crawl onto the land for short periods of time. The first amphibians, from the genus *Ichthyostega* (IK thee oh STEG uh), probably evolved from rhipidistians. *Ichthyostega,* which resembled huge salamanders, are thought to be the ancestors of modern amphibians such as frogs and toads. During the Devonian Period, land plants, such as giant horsetails, ferns, and cone-bearing plants, also began to develop. In the sea, brachiopods and mollusks continued to thrive.

Graphic Organizer **Spider Map**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Spider Map" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the circle "Periods of the Paleozoic Era." Create a leg for each period in the Paleozoic Era. Then, fill in the map with details about each time period.

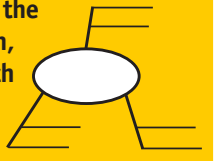


Figure 7 ▶ During the Carboniferous Period, crinoids, such as the one shown here, were common in the oceans. Crinoids are thought to be ancestors of modern sea stars.

The Carboniferous Period

During the Carboniferous Period, the climate was generally warm, and the humidity was extremely high over most of the world. Forests and swamps covered much of the land. Coal deposits in Pennsylvania, Ohio, and West Virginia are the fossilized remains of these forests and swamps. During this period, the rock in which some major oil deposits occur also formed. *Carboniferous* means "carbon bearing." In North America, the Carboniferous Period is divided into the Mississippian and Pennsylvanian Periods.

Amphibians and fish continued to flourish during the Carboniferous Period. *Crinoids,* like the one shown in **Figure 7,** were common in the oceans. Insects, such as giant cockroaches and dragonflies, were common on land. Toward the end of the Pennsylvanian Period, vertebrates that were adapted to life on land appeared. These early reptiles resembled large lizards.

The Permian Period

The Permian Period marks the end of the Paleozoic Era. A *mass extinction* of a large number of Paleozoic life-forms occurred at the end of the Permian Period. The continents had joined to form the supercontinent Pangaea. The collision of tectonic plates created the Appalachian Mountains. On the northwest side of the mountains, areas of desert and dry savanna climates developed. The shallow inland seas that had covered much of Earth disappeared. As the seas retreated, many species of marine invertebrates, including trilobites and eurypterids, became extinct. However, fossils indicate that reptiles and amphibians survived the environmental changes and dominated Earth in the millions of years that followed the Paleozoic Era.

Section 2 Review

1. **Summarize** how evolution is related to geologic change.
2. **Identify** two characteristics of most Precambrian rocks.
3. **Explain** why fossils are rare in Precambrian rocks.
4. **Identify** one life-form from each of the six periods of the Paleozoic Era.
5. **Explain** why the Devonian Period is commonly called the *Age of Fishes*.
6. **Describe** the kinds of life-forms that became extinct during the mass extinction at the end of the Permian Period.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Drawing Conclusions** Identify one way in which the formation of Pangaea affected Paleozoic life.
8. **Identifying Relationships** Why is Precambrian time—about 88% of geologic time—not divided into smaller units based on the fossil record?
9. **Analyzing Processes** Explain two ways in which the geologic record of the Paleozoic Era supports the theory of evolution.

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *Paleozoic Era, invertebrate, Cambrian Period, Ordovician Period, vertebrate,* and *Silurian Period.*

Section 3

The Mesozoic and Cenozoic Eras

At the end of the Permian Period, 90% of marine organisms and 78% of land organisms died. This episode during which an enormous number of species died, or **mass extinction,** left many resources available for the surviving life-forms. Because resources and space were readily available, an abundance of new life-forms appeared. These new life-forms evolved, and some flourished while others eventually became extinct.

OBJECTIVES

- **List** the periods of the Mesozoic and Cenozoic Eras.
- **Identify** two major geologic and biological developments during the Mesozoic Era.
- **Identify** two major geologic and biological developments during the Cenozoic Era.

KEY TERMS

mass extinction
Mesozoic Era
Cenozoic Era

The Mesozoic Era

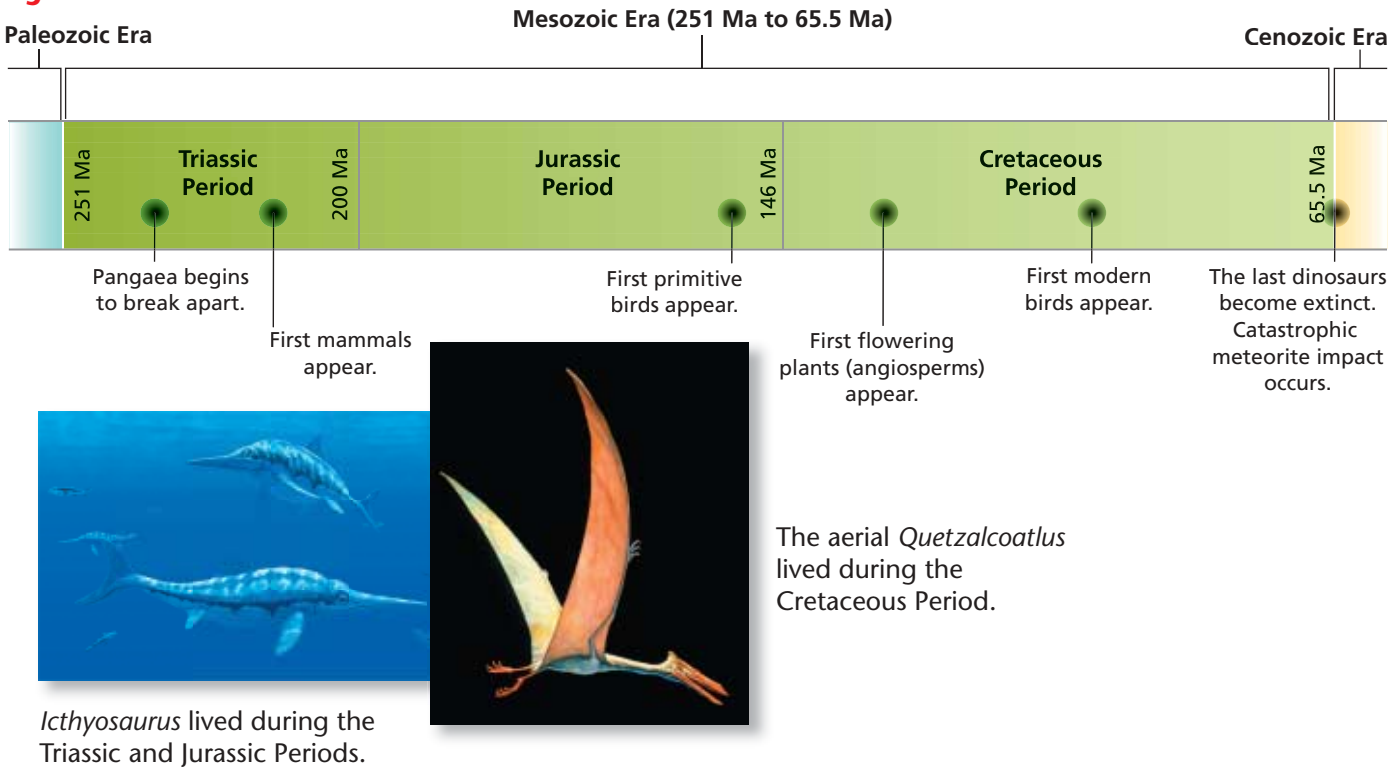
As shown in **Figure 1,** the geologic era that began about 251 million years ago and ended about 65 million years ago is called the **Mesozoic Era.** Earth's surface changed dramatically during the Mesozoic Era. As Pangaea broke into smaller continents, the tectonic plates drifted and collided. These collisions uplifted mountain ranges such as the Sierra Nevada in California and the Andes in South America. Shallow seas and marshes covered much of the land. In general, the climate was warm and humid.

Conditions during the Mesozoic Era favored the survival of reptiles. Lizards, turtles, crocodiles, snakes, and a variety of dinosaurs flourished during the Mesozoic Era. Thus, this era is also known as the *Age of Reptiles*. The Mesozoic Era has a rich fossil record and is divided into three periods.

mass extinction an episode during which large numbers of species become extinct

Mesozoic Era the geologic era that lasted from 251 million to 65.5 million years ago; also called the *Age of Reptiles*

Figure 1 ▶ Mesozoic Timeline



Icthyosaurus lived during the Triassic and Jurassic Periods.

The aerial *Quetzalcoatlus* lived during the Cretaceous Period.

Figure 2 ▶ A group of dinosaurs from the genus *Coelophysis* raced through a Triassic conifer forest in what is now New Mexico.

The Triassic Period

Dinosaurs appeared during the Triassic Period of the Mesozoic Era. Some dinosaurs were the size of squirrels. Others weighed as much as 15 tons and were nearly 30 m long. However, most of the dinosaurs of the Triassic Period were about 4 m to 5 m long and moved very quickly. As shown in **Figure 2,** these dinosaurs roamed through lush forests of cone-bearing trees and *cycads*, which are plants that resemble the palm trees of today.

Reptiles called *ichthyosaurs* lived in the Triassic oceans. New forms of marine invertebrates also evolved. The most distinctive was the ammonite, a type of shellfish that is similar to the modern nautilus. Ammonites serve as Mesozoic index fossils. The first mammals, small rodent-like forest dwellers, also appeared.

The Jurassic Period

Dinosaurs became the dominant life-form during the Jurassic Period. Fossil records indicate that two major groups of dinosaurs evolved. These groups are distinguished by their hip-bone structures. One group, called *saurischians,* or "lizard-hipped" dinosaurs, included herbivores, which are plant eaters, and carnivores, which are meat eaters. Among the largest saurischians were herbivores of the genus *Apatosaurus,* first known as *Brontosaurus*, which weighed up to 50 tons and grew to 25 m long.

The other major group of Jurassic dinosaurs, called *ornithischians,* or "bird-hipped" dinosaurs, were herbivores. Among the best known of the ornithischians were herbivores of the genus *Stegosaurus,* which were about 9 m long and about 3 m tall at the hips. In addition, flying reptiles called *pterosaurs* were common during the Jurassic Period. Like modern bats, pterosaurs flew on skin-covered wings. Fossils of the earliest birds, such as the one shown in **Figure 3,** also occur in Jurassic rocks.

Reading Check **Name two fossils that were discovered in the fossil record of the Jurassic Period. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 3 ▶ The *Archaeopteryx* (AWR kee AUP tuhr IKS) was one of the first birds that appeared during the Jurassic Period.

Figure 4 ▶ This 41-foot long *Tyrannosaurus rex* was discovered near Faith, South Dakota. This specimen, named Sue, was displayed in the Field Museum in Chicago in 2000.

The Cretaceous Period

Dinosaurs continued to dominate Earth during the Cretaceous Period. Among the most spectacular dinosaurs was the carnivore *Tyrannosaurus rex*, such as the one shown in **Figure 4.** The *Tyrannosaurus rex* stood nearly 6 m tall and had huge jaws with sharp teeth that were up to 15 cm long. Also, among the common Cretaceous dinosaurs were the armored *ankylosaurs,* horned dinosaurs called *ceratopsians,* and duck-billed dinosaurs called *hadrosaurs*.

Plant life had become very sophisticated by the Cretaceous Period. The earliest flowering plants, or *angiosperms,* appeared during this period. The most common of these plants were trees such as magnolias and willows. Later, trees such as maples, oaks, and walnuts became abundant. Angiosperms became so successful that they are the dominant type of land plant today.

The Cretaceous-Tertiary Mass Extinction

The Cretaceous Period ended in another mass extinction. No dinosaur fossils have been found in rocks that formed after the Cretaceous Period. Some scientists believe that this extinction was caused by environmental changes that were the result of the movement of continents and increased volcanic activity.

However, many scientists accept the *impact hypothesis* as the explanation for the extinction of the last dinosaurs. This hypothesis is that about 65 million years ago, a giant meteorite crashed into Earth. The impact of the collision raised enough dust to block the sun's rays for many years. As Earth's climate became cooler, plant life began to die, and many animal species became extinct. As the dust settled over Earth, the dust formed a layer of iridium-laden rock. Iridium is a substance that is uncommon in rocks on Earth but that is common in meteorites.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Mass Extinctions
SciLinks code: HQ60916
Topic: Geologic Time Scale
SciLinks code: HQ60669

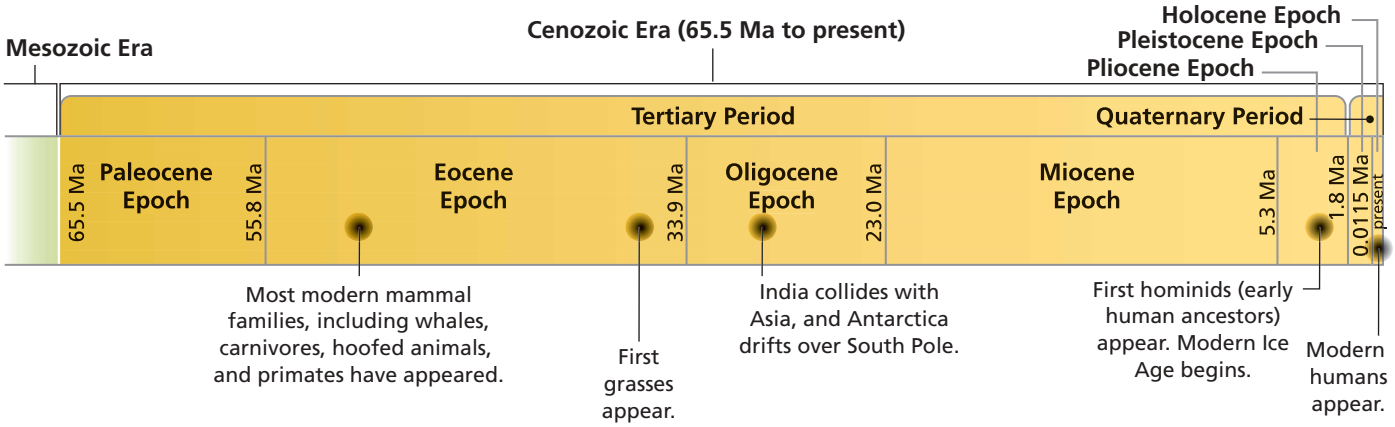


Figure 5 ▶ Cenozoic Timeline

The Cenozoic Era

Cenozoic Era the current geologic era, which began 65.5 million years ago; also called the *Age of Mammals*

As shown in **Figure 5,** the **Cenozoic Era** is the division of geologic time that began about 65 million years ago and that includes the present period. During this era, the continents moved to their present-day positions. As tectonic plates collided, huge mountain ranges, such as the Alps and the Himalayas in Eurasia, formed.

During the Cenozoic Era, dramatic changes in climate have occurred. At times, continental ice sheets covered nearly one-third of Earth's land. As temperatures decreased during the ice ages, new species that were adapted to life in cooler climates appeared. Mammals became the dominant life-form and underwent many changes. The Cenozoic Era is thus commonly called the *Age of Mammals*.

The Quaternary and Tertiary Periods

The Cenozoic Era is divided into two periods. The Tertiary Period includes the time before the last ice age. The Quaternary Period began with the last ice age and includes the present. These periods have been divided into seven epochs. The Paleocene, Eocene, Oligocene, Miocene, and Pliocene Epochs make up the *Tertiary Period*. The Pleistocene and Holocene Epochs make up the *Quaternary Period*.

Figure 6 ▶ The *tarsier* is the sole modern survivor of a group of primates common during the earlier Cenozoic Era. ***Why are mammals better suited to cool climates than reptiles are?***

The Paleocene and Eocene Epochs

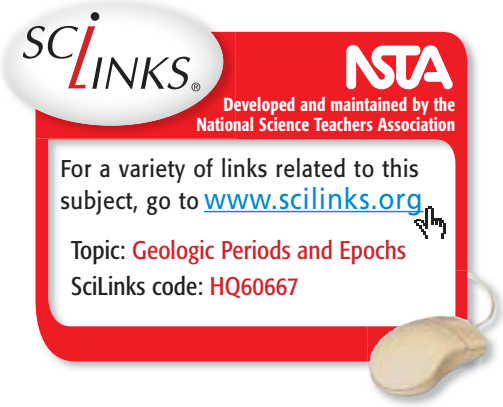
The fossil record indicates that during the Paleocene Epoch many new mammals, such as small rodents, evolved. The first primates also evolved during the Paleocene Epoch. A modern survivor of an early primate group is shown in **Figure 6.**

Other mammals, including the earliest known ancestor of the horse, evolved during the Eocene Epoch. Fossil records indicate that the first whales, flying squirrels, and bats appeared during this epoch. Small reptiles continued to flourish. Worldwide, temperatures dropped by about 4°C at the end of the Eocene Epoch.

The Oligocene and Miocene Epochs

During the Oligocene Epoch, the Indian subcontinent began to collide with the Eurasian continent, which caused the uplifting of the Himalayas. The worldwide climate became significantly cooler and drier. This change in climate favored grasses as well as cone-bearing and hardwood trees. Many early mammals became extinct. However, large species of deer, pigs, horses, camels, cats, and dogs flourished. Marine invertebrates, especially clams and snails, also continued to flourish.

During the Miocene Epoch, circumpolar currents formed around Antarctica, and the modern Antarctic icecap began to form. By the late Miocene Epoch, tectonic forces and dropping sea levels caused the Mediterranean Sea to dry up and refill several times. The largest known land mammals existed during this epoch. Miocene rocks also contain fossils of horses, camels, deer, rhinoceroses, pigs, raccoons, wolves, foxes, and the earliest saber-toothed cats, which are now extinct.



The Pliocene Epoch

During the Pliocene Epoch, predators—including members of the bear, dog, and cat families—evolved into modern forms. Herbivores, such as the giant ground sloth shown in **Figure 7**, flourished. The first modern horses also appeared in this epoch.

Toward the end of the Pliocene Epoch, dramatic climatic changes occurred, and the continental ice sheets began to spread. With more and more water locked in ice, sea level fell. The Bering land bridge appeared between Eurasia and North America. Changes in Earth's crust between North America and South America formed the Central American land bridge. Various species migrated between the continents across these two major land bridges.

Reading Check **Why did sea level fall in the Pliocene Epoch? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 7 ▶ Giant ground sloths lived during the late Pliocene in parts of North America and South America. These slow-moving leaf-eaters could grow as large as an African bull elephant and weigh as much as 5 tons.

Figure 8 ▶ This painting from the Stone Age was made by early humans between 15,000 and 13,000 years ago in a cave in Lascaux, France.

The Pleistocene Epoch

The Pleistocene Epoch began 1.8 million years ago. In Eurasia and North America, ice sheets advanced and retreated several times. Some animals had characteristics that allowed them to endure the cold climate, such as the thick fur that covered woolly mammoths and woolly rhinoceroses. Many other species survived by moving to warmer regions. Some species, such as giant ground sloths and dire wolves, became extinct.

Fossils of the earliest ancestors of modern humans were discovered in Pleistocene sediments. Evidence of more-modern human ancestors, such as the cave painting shown in **Figure 8,** indicates that early humans may have been hunters.

The Holocene Epoch

The Holocene Epoch, which includes the present, began about 11,500 years ago, as the last glacial period ended. As the ice sheets melted, sea level rose about 140 m, and the coastlines took on their present shapes. The North American Great Lakes also formed as the last ice sheets retreated. During the early Holocene Epoch, modern humans (*Homo sapiens*) developed agriculture and began to make and use tools made of bronze and iron.

Human history is extremely brief. If you think of the entire history of Earth as one year, the first multicellular organisms would have appeared in September. The dinosaurs would have disappeared at 8 P.M. on December 26. Modern humans would have would not have appeared until 11:48 P.M. on December 31.

Section 3 Review

1. **List** the periods of the Mesozoic Era, and describe one major life-form in each division.
2. **Identify** two major geologic and two major biological developments of the Mesozoic Era.
3. **List** the periods and epochs of the Cenozoic Era, and describe one major life-form in each division.
4. **Identify** two major geologic and two major biological developments of the Cenozoic Era.
5. **Explain** how the ice ages affected animal life during the Cenozoic Era.
6. **Identify** the era, period, and epoch we are in today.
7. **Describe** the worldwide environmental changes that set the stage for the Age of Mammals.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Drawing Conclusions** Explain the criteria scientists may have used for dividing the Cenozoic Era into the Tertiary and Quaternary Periods.
9. **Identifying Relationships** Suppose that you are a geologist who is looking for the boundary between the Cretaceous and Tertiary Periods in an outcrop. What characteristics would you look for to determine the location of the boundary? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *Mesozoic Era, Age of Reptiles, Jurassic Period, Triassic Period, Cretaceous Period, Cenozoic Era, Age of Mammals, Tertiary Period,* and *Quaternary Period.*

Chapter 9 Highlights

Sections

1 Geologic Time

Key Terms

geologic column, 211
era, 214
period, 214
epoch, 214

Key Concepts

- The geologic column is based on observations of the relative ages of rock layers throughout the world.
- Geologists used major changes in Earth's climate and extinctions recorded in the fossil record to divide the geologic time scale into smaller units.
- Geologic time is subdivided into eons, eras, periods, epochs, and ages.

2 Precambrian Time and the Paleozoic Era

evolution, 215
Precambrian time, 216
Paleozoic Era, 218

- Precambrian rocks may contain valuable minerals but few fossils.
- Evolution is the gradual development of organisms from other organisms. Evidence for the theory of evolution occurs throughout the fossil record.
- The rock record reveals the evolution of marine invertebrates and vertebrates during the Paleozoic Era.

3 The Mesozoic and Cenozoic Eras

mass extinction, 221
Mesozoic Era, 221
Cenozoic Era, 224

- The rock record of the Mesozoic Era reveals an environment that favored the development of reptiles.
- The Mesozoic Era ended with a mass extinction that included the extinction of the dinosaurs.
- The rock record of the Cenozoic Era includes the present period and reveals the rise of mammals as a predominant life-form.

Chapter 9 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *evolution*
2. *geologic column*
3. *period*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *era* and *epoch*
5. *period* and *era*
6. *Mesozoic Era* and *Cenozoic Era*
7. *Precambrian time* and *Paleozoic Era*

Understanding Key Concepts

8. The geologic time scale is a
   - **a.** scale for weighing rocks.
   - **b.** scale that divides Earth's history into time intervals.
   - **c.** rock record of Earth's past.
   - **d.** collection of the same kind of rocks.

9. Scientists are able to determine the absolute ages of most rock layers in a geologic column by using
   - **a.** the law of superposition.
   - **b.** radiometric dating.
   - **c.** rates of deposition.
   - **d.** rates of erosion.

10. To determine the age of a specific rock, scientists might correlate it with a layer in a geologic column that has the same relative position and
    - **a.** fossil content.
    - **b.** weight.
    - **c.** temperature.
    - **d.** density.

11. Geologic periods can be divided into
    - **a.** eras.
    - **b.** epochs.
    - **c.** days.
    - **d.** months.

12. Precambrian time ended about
    - **a.** 4.6 billion years ago.
    - **b.** 542 million years ago.
    - **c.** 65 million years ago.
    - **d.** 25 thousand years ago.

13. The most common fossils that occur in Precambrian rocks are
    - **a.** graptolites.
    - **b.** trilobites.
    - **c.** eurypterids.
    - **d.** stromatolites.

14. The first vertebrates appeared during
    - **a.** Precambrian time.
    - **b.** the Paleozoic Era.
    - **c.** the Mesozoic Era.
    - **d.** the Cenozoic Era.

15. The *Age of Reptiles* is the name commonly given to
    - **a.** Precambrian time.
    - **b.** the Paleozoic Era.
    - **c.** the Mesozoic Era.
    - **d.** the Cenozoic Era.

16. The first flowering plants appeared during the
    - **a.** Cretaceous Period.
    - **b.** Triassic Period.
    - **c.** Carboniferous Period.
    - **d.** Ordovician Period.

17. The *Age of Mammals* is the name commonly given to
    - **a.** Precambrian time.
    - **b.** the Paleozoic Era.
    - **c.** the Mesozoic Era.
    - **d.** the Cenozoic Era.

Short Answer

18. Write a short paragraph that describes the evolution of plants that is indicated by the fossil record.

19. Describe the events that may have led to the Cretaceous-Tertiary mass extinction. What evidence have scientists discovered that supports their hypothesis?

20. Describe the criteria that scientists use to divide a geologic column into different layers.

21. Identify two organisms that are found in the fossil record of a different geologic era but that are still living on Earth today. Identify what characteristic(s) have given them their long-term success.

Critical Thinking

22. Analyzing Ideas Why can Precambrian time not be divided into periods by using fossils?

23. Applying Ideas Many coal and oil deposits formed during the Carboniferous Period. What element would you expect to find in both oil and coal?

24. Identifying Relationships What information in the geologic record might lead scientists to infer that shallow seas covered much of Earth during the Paleozoic Era?

25. Making Comparisons Compare the causes of the Permian mass extinction with those of the Cretaceous mass extinction.

Concept Mapping

26. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *geologic time, Paleozoic Era, Mesozoic Era, stromatolite, Precambrian time, eurypterid, crinoid, Cenozoic Era, trilobite, saurischian, ornithischian, dinosaur, mammal,* and *human*.

Math Skills

27. Scientific Notation Write the beginning and end dates of each geologic era in scientific notation.

28. Making Calculations The Methuselah tree in California is 4.6×10^3 years old. How many times older than this tree is Earth ?

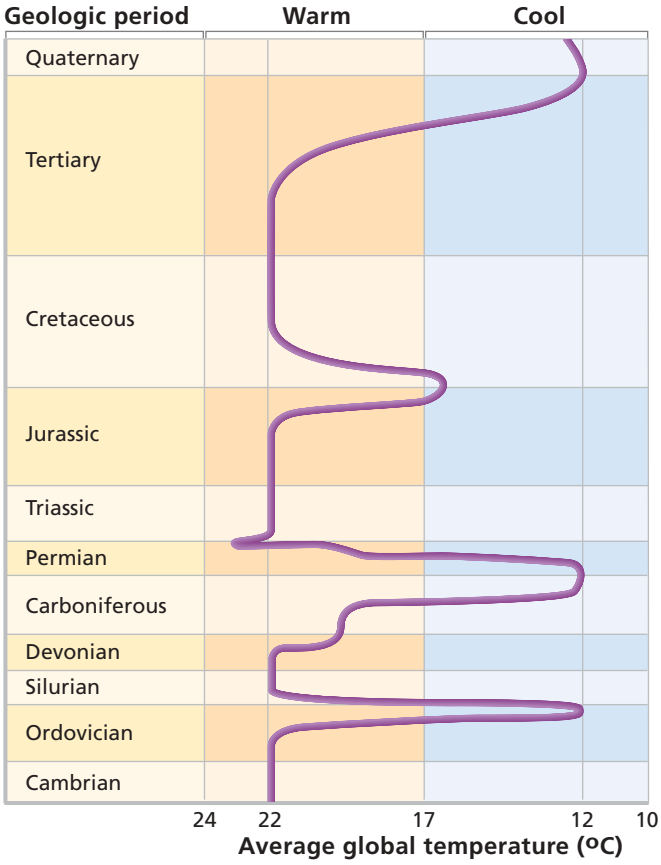
Writing Skills

29. Creative Writing Write an essay about a trip back in time that includes descriptions of the organisms that lived during one of the geologic periods described in this chapter.

30. Writing from Research Research the discoveries made by British anthropologists Louis S. B. Leakey and Mary Leakey in Olduvai Gorge in Tanzania, Africa. Write a report about your findings.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows average global temperatures since Precambrian time. Use this graph to answer the questions that follow.



31. During which two periods were Earth's average global temperature the highest?

32. During which periods did Earth's average global temperature decrease?

33. Based on the graph, could climate change have caused the Permian mass extinction? Is climate change a likely cause of the mass extinction at the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary? Explain your answer.

Chapter 9 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–4): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 Dinosaurs first became the dominant life-forms during which geologic period?

A. Quaternary Period
B. Jurassic Period
C. Triassic Period
D. Cretaceous Period

2 Pangaea broke into separate continents during

F. the Paleozoic Era
G. the Mesozoic Era
H. the Cenozoic Era
I. Precambrian time

3 Why are fossils rarely found in Precambrian rock?

A. Most Precambrian organisms did not have hard body parts that commonly form fossils.
B. Precambrian rock is buried too deeply for geologists to study it.
C. Most Precambrian organisms were too small to leave fossil remains.
D. Precambrian rock is made of a material that prevented the formation of fossils.

4 Which of the following statements describes a principle of natural selection?

F. The environment has more than enough resources to support all of the individuals that are born in a given ecosystem.
G. Only individuals well-suited to the environment are likely to survive and reproduce.
H. Individuals in a healthy population are identical and have the same traits.
I. Most species produce plentiful offspring that will all live until maturity and reproduce.

Directions (5–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

5 What is the term for the largest unit of geologic time?

6 What is the term for the gradual development of organisms from other organisms by means of natural selection?

7 Why is the Cenozoic Era also known as the Age of the Mammals?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–11): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions below on a separate sheet of paper.**

The Discovery of a Dinosaur

In 1995, paleontologist Paul Sereno was working in a previously unexplored region of Morocco when his team made an astounding discovery—an enormous dinosaur skull. The skull was nearly 1.6 m long. Given the size of the skull, Sereno concluded that the skeleton of the animal that it came from must have been about 14 m long—about as long as a full-sized school bus. The dinosaur was even larger than the *Tyrannosaurus rex.* The newly discovered dinosaur was thought to be 90 million years old. It most likely chased other dinosaurs by running on large, powerful hind legs, and its bladelike teeth must have meant certain death for its prey.

8 Which of the following is evidence that the dinosaur described in the passage above was most likely a predator?

A. It had sharp, bladelike teeth.
B. It had a large skeleton and powerful hind legs used for running.
C. It was found next to the bones of a smaller animal.
D. It was more than 90 million years old.

9 What types of information do you think that fossilized teeth provide about an organism?

F. the color of its skin
G. the types of food it ate
H. the speed at which it ran
I. the mating habits it had

10 According to the passage, which of the following statements is true?

A. This dinosaur was most likely a predator.
B. This skull belonged to a large Tyrannosaurus rex.
C. This dinosaur had powerful arms.
D. This dinosaur ate mainly plants and berries.

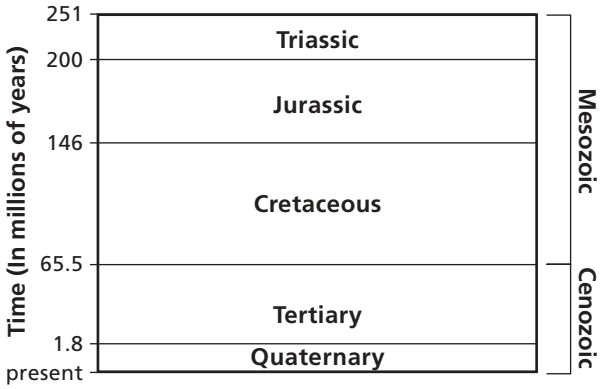
11 What are some methods that scientists might have used to determine that the age of the dinosaur skull was 90 million years old?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (12–15): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The timeline below shows the time divisions of the Mesozoic and Cenozoic eras. Use this timeline to answer questions 12 through 14.

The Mesozoic and Cenozoic Eras



12 Human civilization developed during which of the following periods of time?

A. Triassic Period
B. Jurassic Period
C. Tertiary Period
D. Quaternary Period

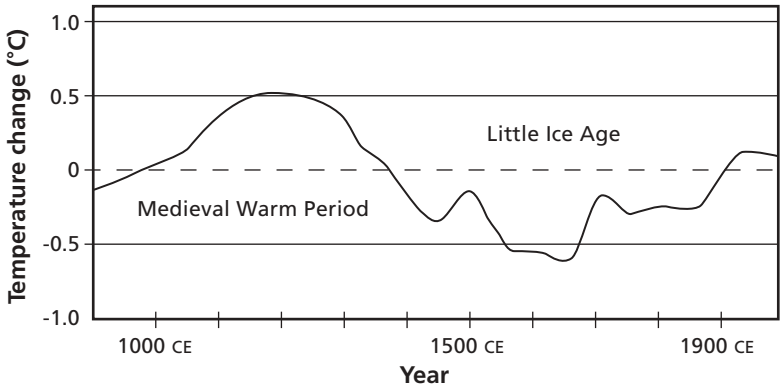
13 If Earth formed aboutd 4.6 billion years ago, what percentage of Earth's total history did the Cenozoic period fill?

F. about 1.5%
G. about 10.5%
H. about 15%
I. about 50%

14 Which event coincides with the start of the Cenozoic Era?

The graph below shows data on global temperature changes during the last millennium. Use this graph to answer question 15.

The Medieval Warm Period and the Little Ice Age



15 How do you think the temperature changes during the Little Ice Age of the Middle Ages affected the freezing and thawing of global waters? Explain your answer.

Test TIP

Simply keeping a positive attitude during any test will help you focus on the test and likely improve your score.

Chapter 9

Skills Practice Lab

History in the Rocks

Objectives

- **Apply** the law of superposition to sample rock columns.
- **Demonstrate** the use of index fossils in determining relative and absolute ages.
- **Evaluate** the usefulness of different methods used for determining relative and absolute age.

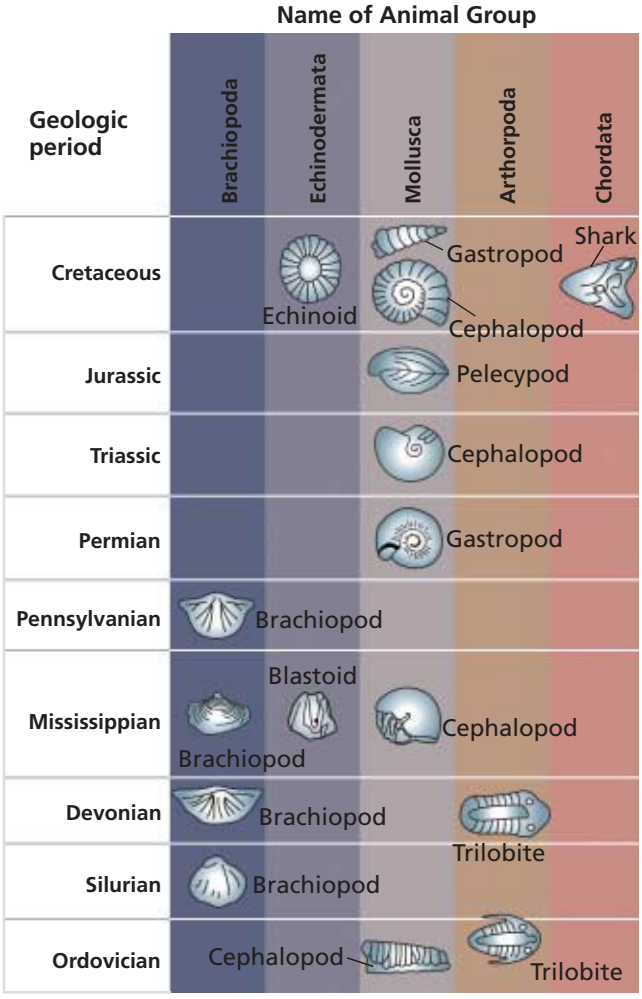
Materials

paper

pencil

Geologists have discovered much about the geologic history of Earth by studying the arrangement of fossils in rock layers, as well as by studying the arrangement of the rock layers themselves. Fossils provide clues about the environment in which the organism that formed the fossil existed. Scientists can determine the age of the rocks in which fossils occur because the ages of many fossils have been determined by radiometric dating of associated igneous rocks. Radiometric dating, fossil age, and rock arrangement are all used to determine changes that have occurred in the arrangement of the rock layers through geologic time. In this lab, you will discover how the geologic history of an area can be determined by examining the arrangement of fossils and rock layers.

Figure A



PROCEDURE

1. Study the index fossils shown in **Figure A.** Note their placement in related groups and the geologic periods in which they lived.
2. Select one of the four fossil arrangements shown in **Figure B.** This figure shows how some of these fossils may occur in a series of rock layers. Record the number of the arrangement that you are using.
3. Using **Figure A,** identify all the fossils in your arrangement and the geologic time in which the organisms that formed the fossils lived.
4. List the fossil names in order from bottom to top.
5. Do the fossils in your arrangement appear in the order of geologic time?
6. Do the fossils in your arrangement show a complete sequence of geologic periods? If not, which periods are missing?
7. Repeat steps 2–6 with each of the other three fossil arrangements.

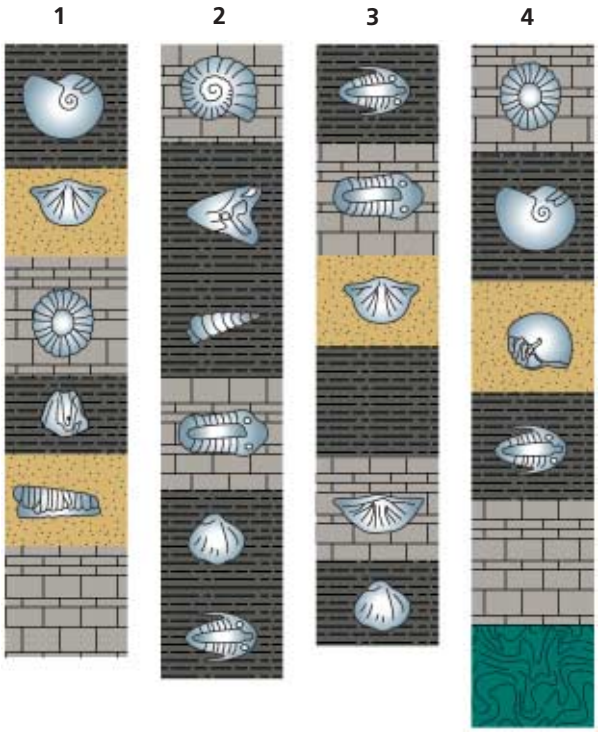


Figure B

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Analyzing Processes** What processes or events might explain the order in which each of the fossil arrangements was found?

2. **Evaluating Assumptions** Based on your observations in the procedure, why is it necessary that a fossil be found in a wide variety of geographic areas to be considered an index fossil?

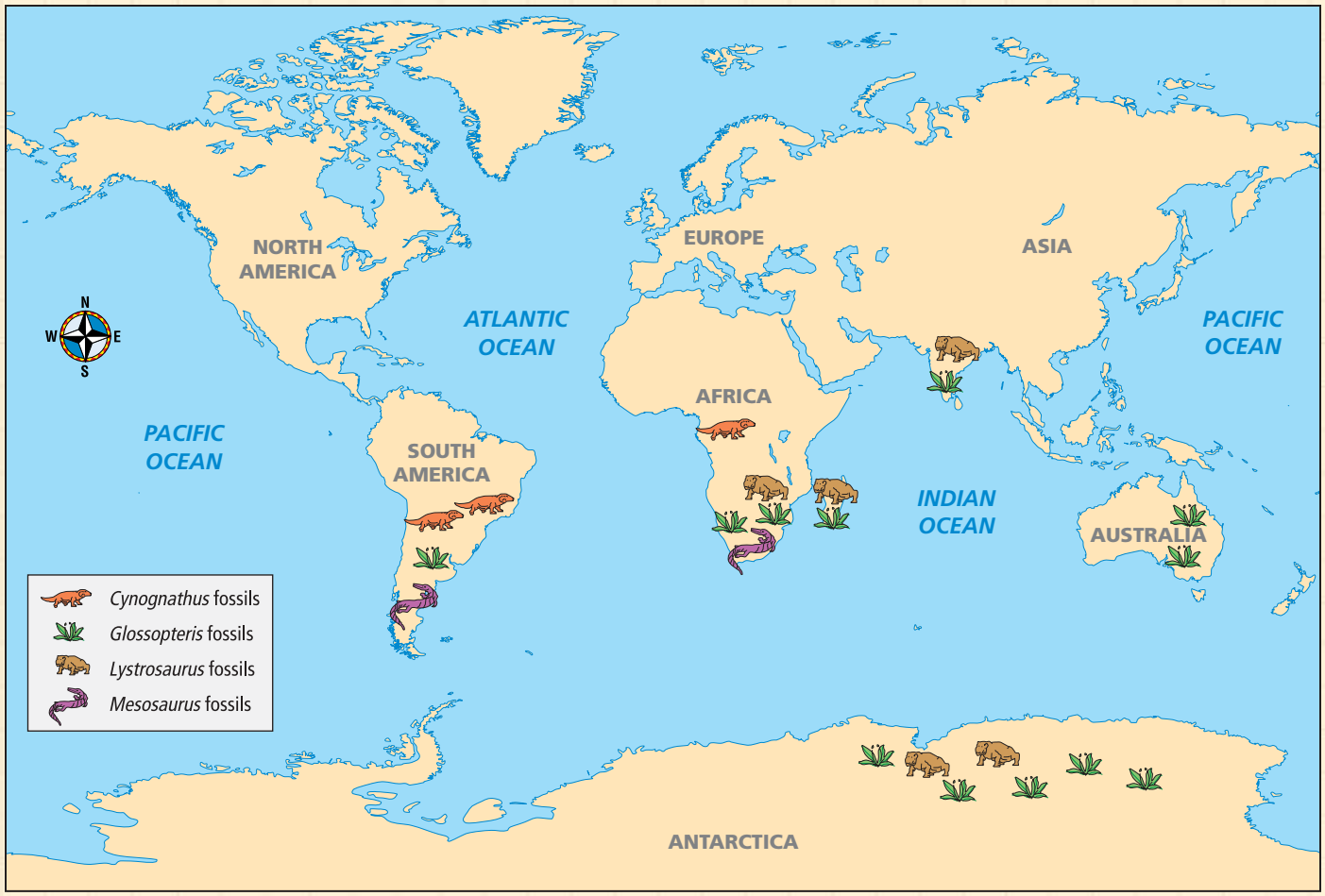
3. **Explaining Events** Study arrangement 3 in **Figure B.** Note that there is a rock layer that contains no fossils between two rock layers that contain fossils. How might this have occurred?

Extension

1. **Examining Data** Collect fossils in your area. Identify the fossils you have collected, and describe what your area was like when the organisms existed.

2. **Research** Find out how index fossils are used to help petroleum geologists locate oil reservoirs. Then, use that information to give an oral report to your class.

Fossil Evidence for Gondwanaland



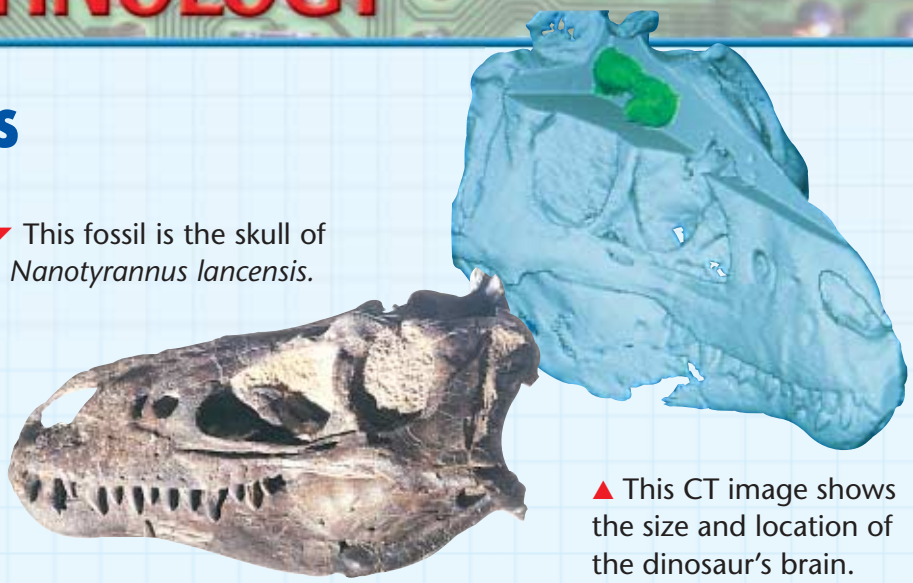
Map Skills Activity

This map shows areas where selected fossils have been found. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using the Key** On which continents have fossils from ferns of the genus *Glossopteris* been found?
2. **Using the Key** On which continents have fossils of organisms from the genus *Lystrosaurus* been found?
3. **Making Comparisons** Which fossil shown on the map was spread over the smallest area?
4. **Inferring Relationships** Based on the map, what continents were connected to Africa when the continents formed a supercontinent?
5. **Inferring Relationships** Based on the map, what continents were connected to Antarctica when the continents formed a supercontinent?
6. **Analyzing Relationships** How would you argue against a claim that ferns from the genus *Glossopteris* evolved independently on separate continents or were transported between continents that were not connected? Explain your answer.
7. **Identifying Trends** If the continents were to continue the motion they have had since the time the continents formed Gondwanaland, would you expect the east coast of South America and the west coast of Africa to be moving closer together or farther apart? Explain your answer.

CT Scanning Fossils

Paleontologists studying dinosaur bones want to learn as much as possible from the fossils they find. However, scientists often have to destroy a fossil to look inside it.



▼ This fossil is the skull of a *Nanotyrannus lancensis.*

▲ This CT image shows the size and location of the dinosaur's brain.

The Price of Discovery

Usually, paleontologists examine the inside of a fossil by grinding away the specimen layer by layer. Unfortunately, by the time all of the fossil's internal structures are revealed, the specimen is completely destroyed.

Sectioning a fossil by layers also takes a lot of time. Scientists must carefully document each fresh surface because it will be destroyed later to uncover the next surface. Scientists record their observations by measuring, drawing, photographing, and making an imprint of each new surface.

New Uses for Technology

But now, some paleontologists can use *computerized axial tomography,* or CT scanning, to examine certain fossils without destroying them. CT scanning was originally developed for diagnosing illnesses in people. A CT scanner bombards an object with X rays from all angles within a single plane. The scanner measures the absorption of this radiation to create a map of the different densities within the object. Denser areas absorb more of the X rays' energy and appear white or light gray. Less dense areas appear dark gray or black. Once the object has been scanned in one plane, it is moved less than a millimeter and another scan is performed. This process is repeated until the entire object has been scanned. A computer imaging program then assembles the cross sections into a picture that can be viewed from any angle.

CT scanning allows scientists to study some extremely fragile fossils that cannot be studied by using traditional methods. It also allows scientists to study rare or unique fossils that must be preserved. Using CT scans, paleontologists can study the interior of fossils in a much less destructive way and in much less time.

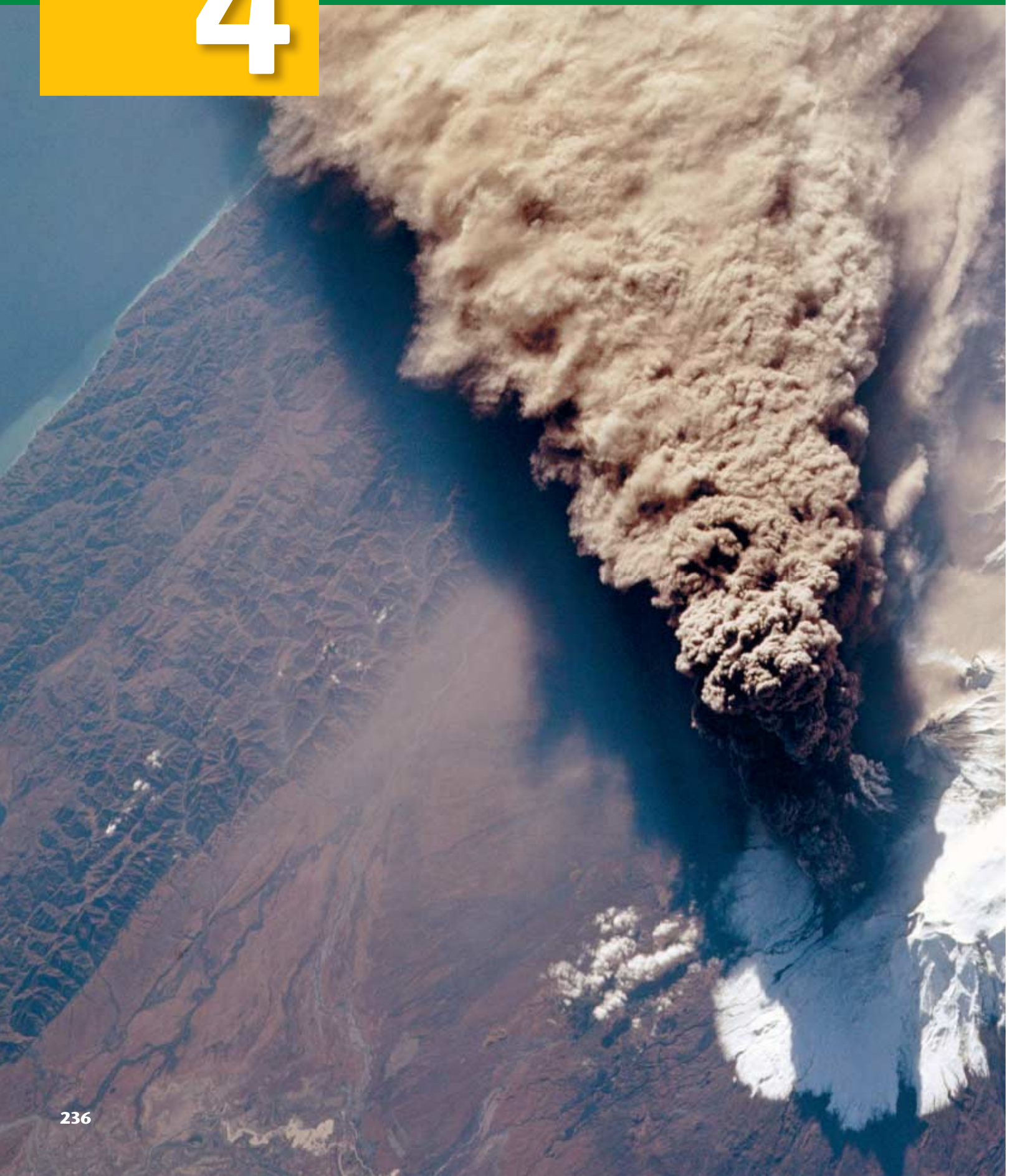
◀ High-resolution CT scanners provide unparalleled views of the internal structures of fossils.

Extension

1. **Making Comparisons** Research another use of CT scans. Write a brief report about your findings.

Unit 4

THE DYNAMIC EARTH



Unit 4 Outline

CHAPTER 10
Plate Tectonics

CHAPTER 11
Deformation of the Crust

CHAPTER 12
Earthquakes

CHAPTER 13
Volcanoes

▶ This photo was taken from the space shuttle *Endeavor* as Russia's Kliuchevskoi volcano erupted on September 30, 1994. The volcanic cloud reached 60,000 ft into the atmosphere, and wind carried the ash as far as 640 mi from the volcano.

Chapter 10

Plate Tectonics

Sections

1 Continental Drift

2 The Theory of Plate Tectonics

3 The Changing Continents

What You'll Learn

- How scientists developed the theory of plate tectonics
- Why tectonic plates move
- How Earth's geography has changed

Why It's Relevant

Understanding why and how tectonic plates move provides a basis for understanding other concepts of Earth science.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Tri-Fold Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "TriFold" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Write what you know about plate tectonics in the column labeled "Know." Then, write what you want to know in the column labeled "Want." As you read the chapter, write what you learn in the column labeled "Learn."

The island of Iceland is being torn into two pieces as two tectonic plates pull apart. Iceland is one of only a few places on Earth where this process can be seen on land.

Section 1 Continental Drift

One of the most exciting recent theories in Earth science began with observations made more than 400 years ago. As early explorers sailed the oceans of the world, they brought back information about new continents and their coastlines. Mapmakers used the information to chart the new discoveries and to make the first reliable world maps.

As people studied the maps, they were impressed by the similarity of the continental shorelines on either side of the Atlantic Ocean. The continents looked as though they would fit together like parts of a giant jigsaw puzzle. The east coast of South America, for example, seemed to fit perfectly into the west coast of Africa, as shown in **Figure 1.**

Wegener's Hypothesis

In 1912, a German scientist named Alfred Wegener (VAY guh nuhr) proposed a hypothesis that is now called **continental drift.** Wegener hypothesized that the continents once formed part of a single landmass called a *supercontinent*. According to Wegener, this supercontinent began breaking up into smaller continents about 250 million years ago (during the Mesozoic Era). Over millions of years, these continents drifted to their present locations. Wegener speculated that the crumpling of the crust in places may have produced mountain ranges such as the Andes on the western coast of South America.

OBJECTIVES

- **Summarize** Wegener's hypothesis of continental drift.
- **Describe** the process of sea-floor spreading.
- **Identify** how paleomagnetism provides support for the idea of sea-floor spreading.
- **Explain** how sea-floor spreading provides a mechanism for continental drift.

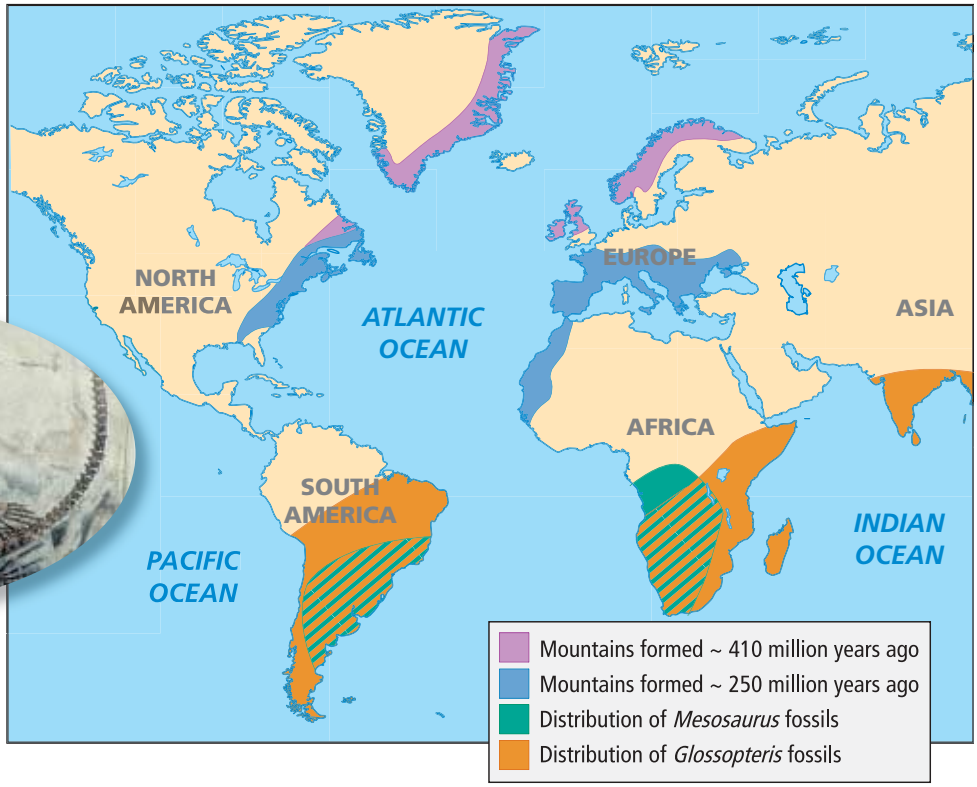
KEY TERMS

continental drift
mid-ocean ridge
sea-floor spreading
paleomagnetism

continental drift the hypothesis that states that the continents once formed a single landmass, broke up, and drifted to their present locations

Figure 1 ▶ Early explorers noticed that the coastlines of Africa and South America could fit together like puzzle pieces. ***Can you identify any other continents that could fit together like puzzle pieces?***

Figure 2 ▶ Fossils of *Mesosaurus*, such as the one shown below, were found in both South America and western Africa. Mountain chains of similar ages also exist on different continents, as shown in the map at right.



Fossil Evidence

In addition to seeing the similarities in the coastlines of the continents, Wegener found other evidence to support his hypothesis. He reasoned that if the continents had once been joined, fossils of the same plants and animals should be found in areas that had once been connected. Wegener knew that identical fossils of *Mesosaurus,* a small, extinct land reptile, had been found in both South America and western Africa. *Mesosaurus,* a fossil of which is shown in **Figure 2,** lived 270 million years ago (during the Paleozoic Era). Wegener knew that it was unlikely that these reptiles had swum across the Atlantic Ocean. He also saw no evidence that land bridges had once connected the continents. So, he concluded that South America and Africa had been joined at one time in the past.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Continental Drift
SciLinks code: HQ60351

Evidence from Rock Formations

Geologic evidence also supported Wegener's hypothesis of continental drift. The ages and types of rocks in the coastal regions of widely separated areas, such as western Africa and eastern South America, matched closely. Mountain chains that ended at the coastline of one continent seemed to continue on other continents across the ocean, as shown in **Figure 2.** The Appalachian Mountains, for example, extend northward along the eastern coast of North America, and mountains of similar age and structure are found in Greenland, Scotland, and northern Europe. If the continents are assembled into a model supercontinent, the mountains of similar age fit together in continuous chains.

ic Evidence

s in climatic patterns also suggest that the continents ot always been located where they are now. Geologists ed layers of debris from ancient glaciers in southern nd South America. Today, those areas have climates that warm for glaciers to form. Other fossil evidence—such lant fossil shown in **Figure 3**—indicated that tropical or ical swamps covered areas that now have much colder s. Wegener suggested that if the continents were once nd positioned differently, evidence of climatic differences e easy to explain.

g Mechanisms

the evidence that supports the hypothesis of continental egener's ideas were strongly opposed. Other scientists of e rejected the mechanism by which Wegener proposed continents moved. Wegener suggested that the conti- owed through the rock of the ocean floor. However, this s easily disproved by geologic evidence. Wegener spent of his life searching for a mechanism that would gain c consensus. Unfortunately, Wegener died in 1930 before ified a plausible explanation.

g Check **Why did many scientists reject Wegener's sis of continental drift? (See the Appendix for answers ng Checks.)**

Figure 3 ▶ The climate of Antarctica was not always as harsh and cold as it is today. When the plant that became this fossil lived, the climate of Antarctica was warm and tropical.

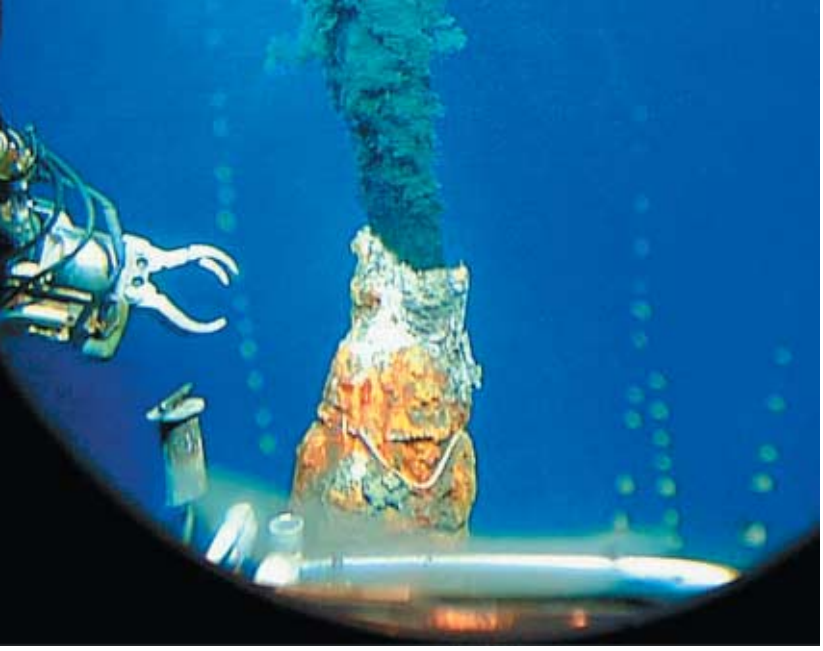


Figure 4 ▶ Black smokers are vents on the sea floor that form as hot, mineral-rich water rushes from the hot rock at mid-ocean ridges and mixes with the surrounding cold ocean water. This photo was taken from a submersible.

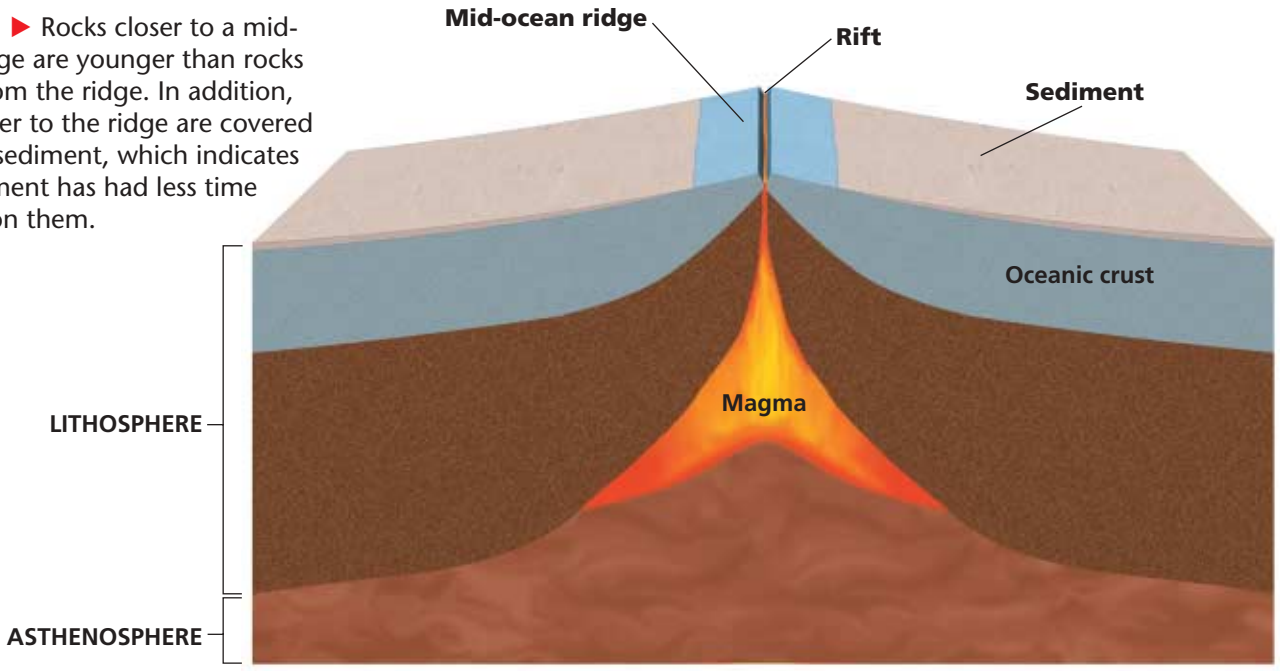
Mid-Ocean Ridges

The evidence that Wegener needed to support his hypothesis was discovered nearly two decades after his death. The evidence lay on the ocean floor. In 1947, a group of scientists set out to map the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. The Mid-Atlantic Ridge is part of a system of **mid-ocean ridges,** which are undersea mountain ranges through the center of which run steep, narrow valleys. A special feature of mid-ocean ridges is shown in **Figure 4.** While studying the Mid-Atlantic Ridge, scientists noticed two surprising trends. First, they noticed that the sediment that covers the sea floor is thinner closer to a ridge than it is farther from the ridge, as shown in **Figure 5.** This evidence suggests that sediment has been settling on the sea floor farther from the ridge for a longer time than it has been settling near the ridge. Scientists then examined the remains of tiny ocean organisms found in the sediment to date the sediment. The distribution of these organisms showed that the closer the sediment is to a ridge, the younger the sediment is. This evidence indicates that rocks closer to the ridge are younger than rocks farther from the ridge.

mid-ocean ridge a long, undersea mountain chain that has a steep, narrow valley at its center, that forms as magma rises from the asthenosphere, and that creates new oceanic lithosphere (sea floor) as tectonic plates move apart

Second, scientists learned that the ocean floor is very young. While rocks on land are as old as 3.8 billion years, none of the oceanic rocks are more than 175 million years old. Radiometric dating also showed evidence that sea-floor rocks closer to a mid-ocean ridge are younger than sea-floor rocks farther from a ridge.

Figure 5 ▶ Rocks closer to a mid-ocean ridge are younger than rocks farther from the ridge. In addition, rocks closer to the ridge are covered with less sediment, which indicates that sediment has had less time to settle on them.



Sea-Floor Spreading

In the late 1950s, a geologist named Harry Hess suggested a new hypothesis. He proposed that the valley at the center of the ridge was a crack, or *rift,* in Earth's crust. At this rift, molten rock, or *magma*, from deep inside Earth rises to fill the crack. As the ocean floor moves away from the ridge, rising magma cools and solidifies to form new rock that replaces the ocean floor. This process is shown in **Figure 6.** Robert Dietz, another geologist, named this process by which new ocean lithosphere (sea floor) forms as magma rises to Earth's surface and solidifies at a mid-ocean ridge as **sea-floor spreading.** Hess suggested that if the ocean floor is moving, the continents might be moving, too. Hess thought that sea-floor spreading was the mechanism that Wegener had failed to find.

Still, Hess's ideas were only hypotheses. More evidence for sea-floor spreading would come years later, in the mid-1960s. This evidence would be discovered through **paleomagnetism,** the study of the magnetic properties of rocks.

Reading Check **How does new sea floor form? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

sea-floor spreading the process by which new oceanic lithosphere (sea floor) forms as magma rises to Earth's surface and solidifies at a mid-ocean ridge

paleomagnetism the study of the alignment of magnetic minerals in rock, specifically as it relates to the reversal of Earth's magnetic poles; also the magnetic properties that rock acquires during formation

Graphic Organizer **Chain-of-Events Chart**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Chain-of-Events Chart" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Then, fill in the chart with details about each step of sea-floor spreading.

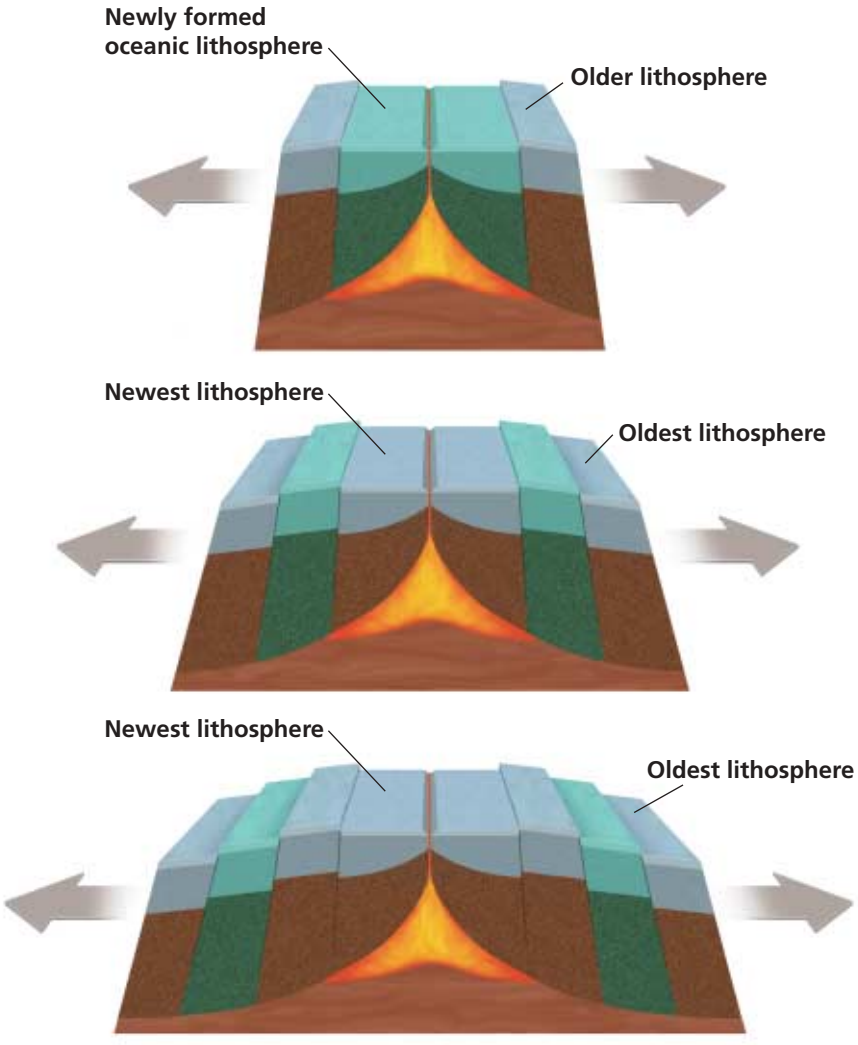


Figure 6 ▶ As the ocean floor spreads apart at a mid-ocean ridge, magma rises to fill the rift and then cools to form new rock. As this process is repeated over millions of years, new sea floor forms.

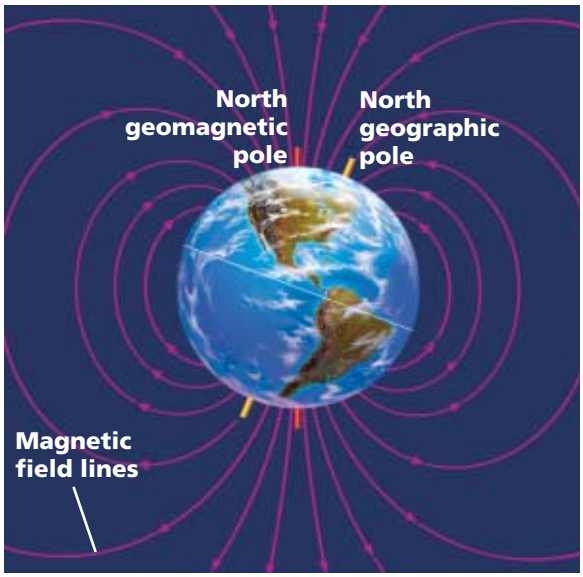


Figure 7 ▶ Earth acts as a giant magnet because of currents in Earth's core.

Paleomagnetism

If you have ever used a compass to determine direction, you know that Earth acts as a giant magnet. Earth has north and south geomagnetic poles, as shown in **Figure 7.** The compass needle aligns with the field of magnetic force that extends from one pole to the other.

As magma solidifies to form rock, iron-rich minerals in the magma align with Earth's magnetic field in the same way that a compass needle does. When the rock hardens, the magnetic orientation of the minerals becomes permanent. This residual magnetism of rock is called *paleomagnetism*.

Magnetic Reversals

Geologic evidence suggests that Earth's magnetic field has not always pointed north, as it does now. Scientists have discovered rocks whose magnetic orientations point opposite of Earth's current magnetic field. Scientists have dated rocks of different magnetic polarities. All rocks with magnetic fields that point north, or *normal polarity,* are classified in the same time periods. All rocks with magnetic fields that point south, or *reversed polarity,* also fell into specific time periods. When scientists placed these periods of normal and reverse polarity in chronological order, they discovered a pattern of alternating normal and reversed polarity in the rocks. Scientists used this pattern to create the *geomagnetic reversal time scale*.

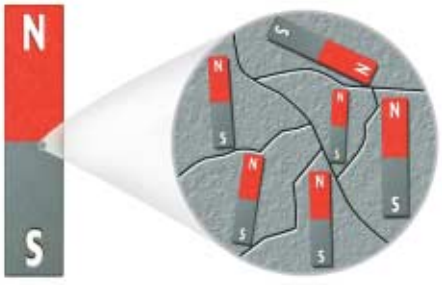
Connection to **PHYSICS**

What Makes Materials Magnetic?

Some materials are magnetic, while others are not. So, what makes a material magnetic? All matter is composed of atoms. In atoms, electrons are the negatively charged particles that move around the nucleus. The motion of electrons in an atom produces magnetic fields that can give the atom a north pole and a south pole.

In most materials, the magnetic fields of individual atoms are not aligned, so the materials are not magnetic. However, in some materials, such as the iron in some rocks, the atoms group together in tiny regions called *domains*. The atoms in a domain are arranged so that the north and south poles of the atoms are aligned to create a stronger magnetic field than that of a single atom. If most of the domains in an object are also aligned, their magnetic fields combine to make the whole object magnetic.

If the domains in an object are randomly arranged, the magnetic fields of individual domains cancel each other out and the object does not have magnetic properties.



If most of the domains in an object are aligned, the magnetic fields of individual domains combine to make the object magnetic.

Magnetic Symmetry

As scientists were learning about the age of the sea floor, they also were finding puzzling magnetic patterns on the ocean floor. The scientists used the geomagnetic reversal time scale to help them unravel the mystery of these magnetic patterns.

Scientists noticed that the striped magnetic pattern on one side of a mid-ocean ridge is a mirror image of the striped pattern on the other side of the ridge. These patterns are shown in **Figure 8.** When drawn on maps of the ocean floor, these patterns showed alternating bands of normal and reversed polarity that match the geomagnetic reversal time scale. Scientists suggested that as new sea floor forms at a mid-ocean ridge, the new sea floor records reversals in Earth's magnetic field.

By matching the magnetic patterns on each side of a mid-ocean ridge to the geomagnetic reversal time scale, scientists could assign ages to the sea-floor rocks. The scientists found that the ages of sea-floor rocks were also symmetrical. The youngest rocks were at the center, and older rocks were farther away on either side of the ridge. The only place on the sea floor that new rock forms is at the rift in a mid-ocean ridge. Thus, the patterns indicate that new rock forms at the center of a ridge and then moves away from the center in opposite directions. Thus, the symmetry of magnetic patterns—and the symmetry of ages of sea-floor rocks—supports Hess's idea of sea-floor spreading.

Reading Check **How are magnetic patterns in sea-floor rock evidence of sea-floor spreading? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 10 min

Making Magnets

Procedure

1. Slide one end of a **bar magnet** down the side of a **5 inch iron nail** 10 times. Always slide the magnet in the same direction.
2. Hold the nail over a small pile of **steel paperclips.** Record what happens.
3. Slide the bar magnet back and forth 10 times down the side of the nail. Repeat step 2.

Analysis

1. What was the effect of sliding the magnet down the nail in one direction? in different directions?
2. How does this lab demonstrate the idea of domains?

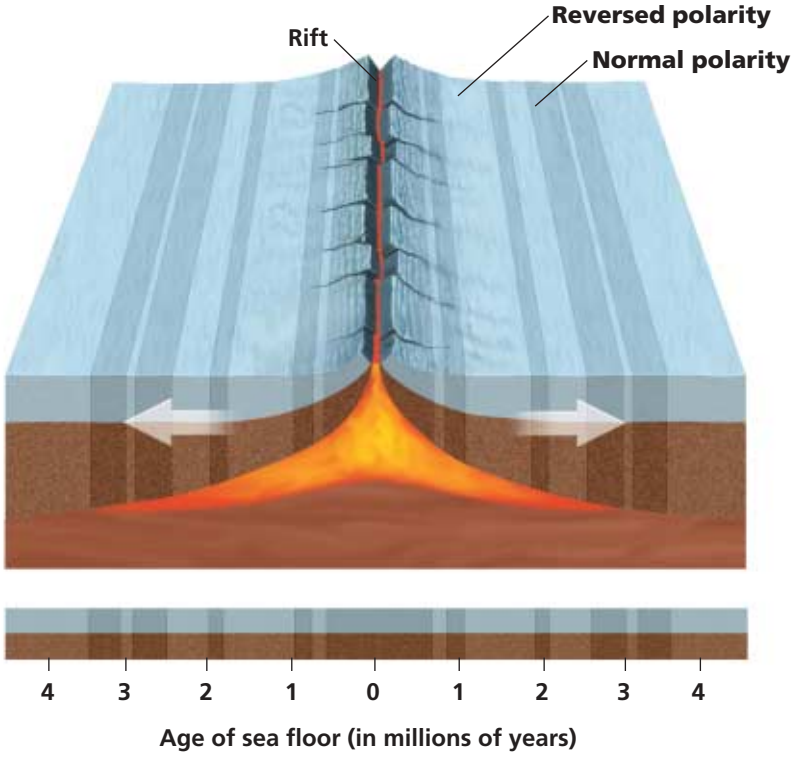


Figure 8 ▶ The stripes in the sea floor shown here illustrate Earth's alternating magnetic field. Dark stripes represent normal polarity, while the lighter stripes represent reversed polarity. ***What is the polarity of the rocks closest to the rift?***

Figure 9 ▶ Scientists collected samples of these sedimentary rocks in California and used the magnetic properties of the samples to date the rocks by using the geomagnetic reversal time scale.

Wegener Redeemed

Another group of scientists discovered that the reversal patterns seen in rocks on the sea floor also appeared in rocks on land, such as those shown in **Figure 9.** The reversals in the land rocks matched the geomagnetic reversal time scale. Because the same pattern occurs in rocks of the same ages on both land and the sea floor, scientists became confident that magnetic patterns show changes over time. Thus, the idea of sea-floor spreading gained further favor in the scientific community.

Scientists reasoned that sea-floor spreading provides a way for the continents to move over Earth's surface. Continents are carried by the widening sea floor in much the same way that objects are moved by a conveyer belt. The molten rock from a rift cools, hardens, and then moves away in the opposite direction on both sides of the ridge. Here, at last, was the mechanism that verified Wegener's hypothesis of continental drift.

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** the observation that first led to Wegener's hypothesis of continental drift.
2. **Summarize** the evidence that supports Wegener's hypothesis.
3. **Compare** sea-floor spreading and the formation of mid-ocean ridges.
4. **Explain** how scientists know that Earth's magnetic poles have reversed many times during Earth's history.
5. **Identify** how magnetic symmetry can be used as evidence of sea-floor spreading.
6. **Explain** how scientists date sea-floor rocks.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Inferences** How does evidence that sea-floor rocks farther from a ridge are older than rocks closer to the ridge support the idea of sea-floor spreading?
8. **Analyzing Ideas** Explain how sea-floor spreading provides an explanation for how continents may move over Earth's surface.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *continental drift, paleomagnetism, fossils, climate, sea-floor spreading, geologic evidence, supercontinent,* and *mid-ocean ridge.*

Section 2

The Theory of Plate Tectonics

By the 1960s, evidence supporting continental drift and seafloor spreading led to the development of a theory called *plate tectonics*. **Plate tectonics** is the theory that explains why and how continents move and is the study of the formation of features in Earth's crust.

How Continents Move

Earth's crust and the rigid, upper part of the mantle form a layer of Earth called the **lithosphere.** The lithosphere forms the thin outer shell of Earth. It is broken into several blocks, called *tectonic plates,* that ride on a deformable layer of the mantle called the *asthenosphere* in much the same way that blocks of wood float on water. The **asthenosphere** (as THEN uh sfir) is a layer of "plastic" rock just below the lithosphere. Plastic rock is solid rock that is under great pressure and that flows very slowly, like putty does. **Figure 1** shows what tectonic plates may look like.

Earth's crust is classified into two types—*oceanic crust* and *continental crust*. Oceanic crust is dense and is made of rock that is rich in iron and magnesium. Continental crust has a low density and is made of rock that is rich in silica. Tectonic plates can include continental crust, oceanic crust, or both. The continents and oceans are carried along on the moving tectonic plates in the same way that passengers are carried by a bus.

OBJECTIVES

- **Summarize** the theory of plate tectonics.
- **Identify** and describe the three types of plate boundaries.
- **List** and describe three causes of plate movement.

KEY TERMS

plate tectonics
lithosphere
asthenosphere
divergent boundary
convergent boundary
transform boundary

plate tectonics the theory that explains how large pieces of the lithosphere, called *plates,* move and change shape

lithosphere the solid, outer layer of Earth that consists of the crust and the rigid upper part of the mantle

asthenosphere the solid, plastic layer of the mantle beneath the lithosphere; made of mantle rock that flows very slowly, which allows tectonic plates to move on top of it

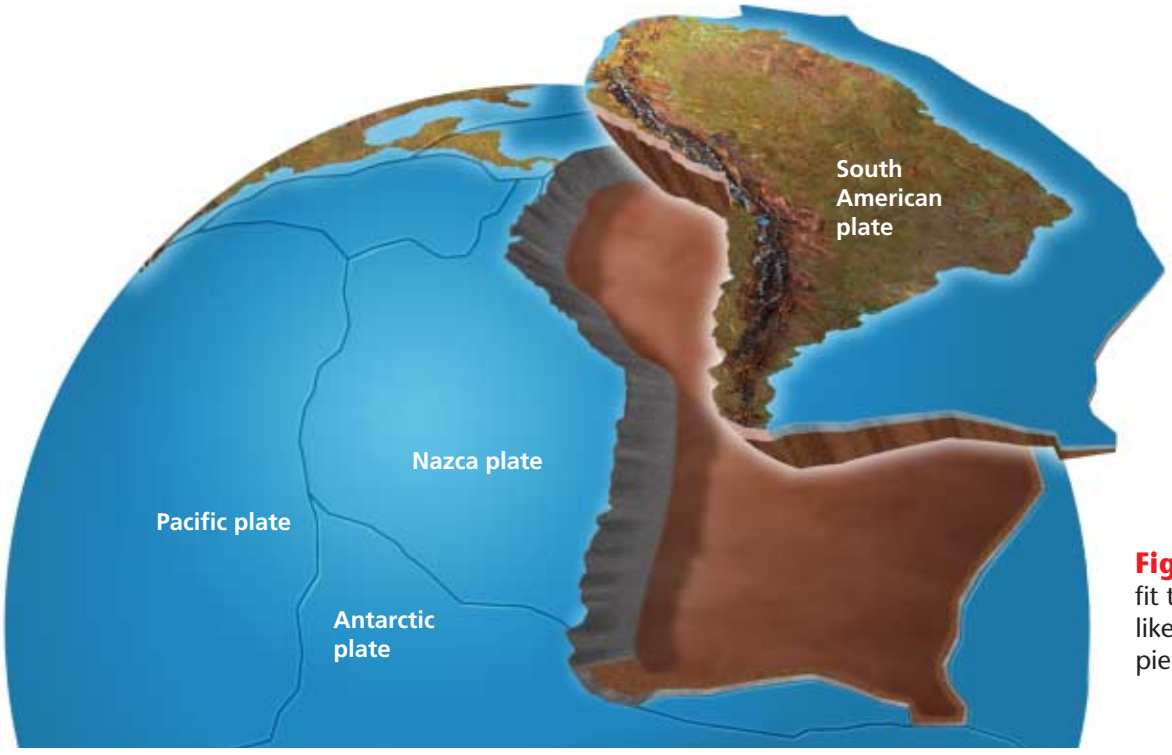
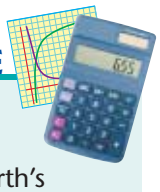


Figure 1 ▶ Tectonic plates fit together on Earth's surface like three-dimensional puzzle pieces.

MATH PRACTICE



The Rate of Plate Movement Tectonic plates move slowly on Earth's surface. The rate of plate movement can be calculated by using the following equation:

$$rate = \frac{distance}{time}$$

In kilometers, how far would a plate that moves 4 cm per year move in 2 million years?

Tectonic Plates

Scientists have identified about 15 major tectonic plates. While many plates are bordered by major surface features, such as mountain ranges or deep trenches in the oceans, the boundaries of the plates are not always easy to identify. As shown in **Figure 2,** the familiar outlines of the continents and oceans do not always match the outlines of plate boundaries. Some plate boundaries are located within continents far from mountain ranges.

Earthquakes

Scientists identify plate boundaries primarily by studying data from earthquakes. When tectonic plates move, sudden shifts can occur along their boundaries. These sudden movements are called *earthquakes*. Frequent earthquakes in a given zone are evidence that two or more plates may meet in that area.

Volcanoes

The locations of volcanoes can also help identify the locations of plate boundaries. Some volcanoes form when plate motions generate magma that erupts on Earth's surface. For example, the Pacific Ring of Fire is a zone of active volcanoes that encircles the Pacific Ocean. This zone is also one of Earth's major earthquake zones. The characteristics of this zone indicate that the Pacific Ocean is surrounded by plate boundaries.

Reading Check **How do scientists identify locations of plate boundaries? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

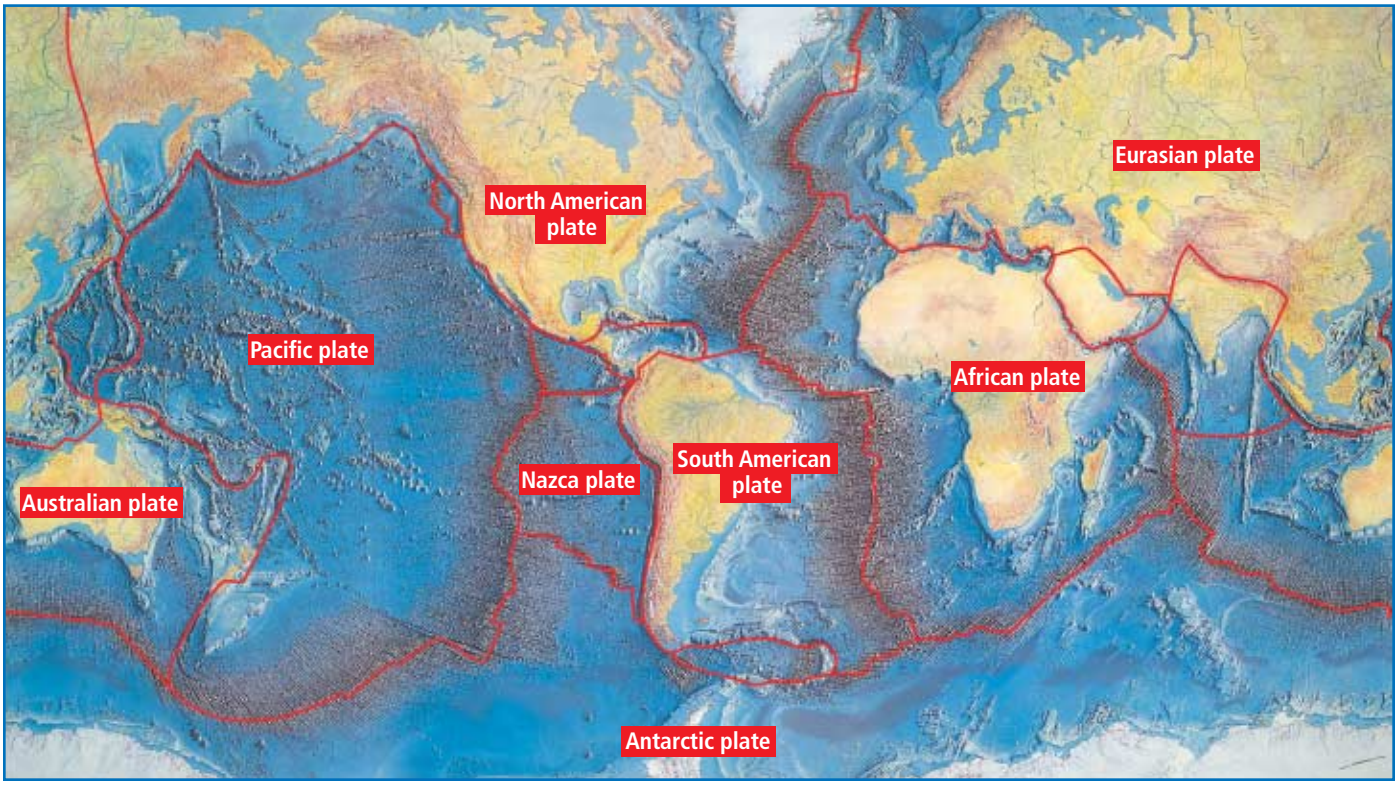


Figure 2 ▶ Tectonic plates may contain both oceanic and continental crust. Notice that the boundaries of plates do not always match the outlines of continents.

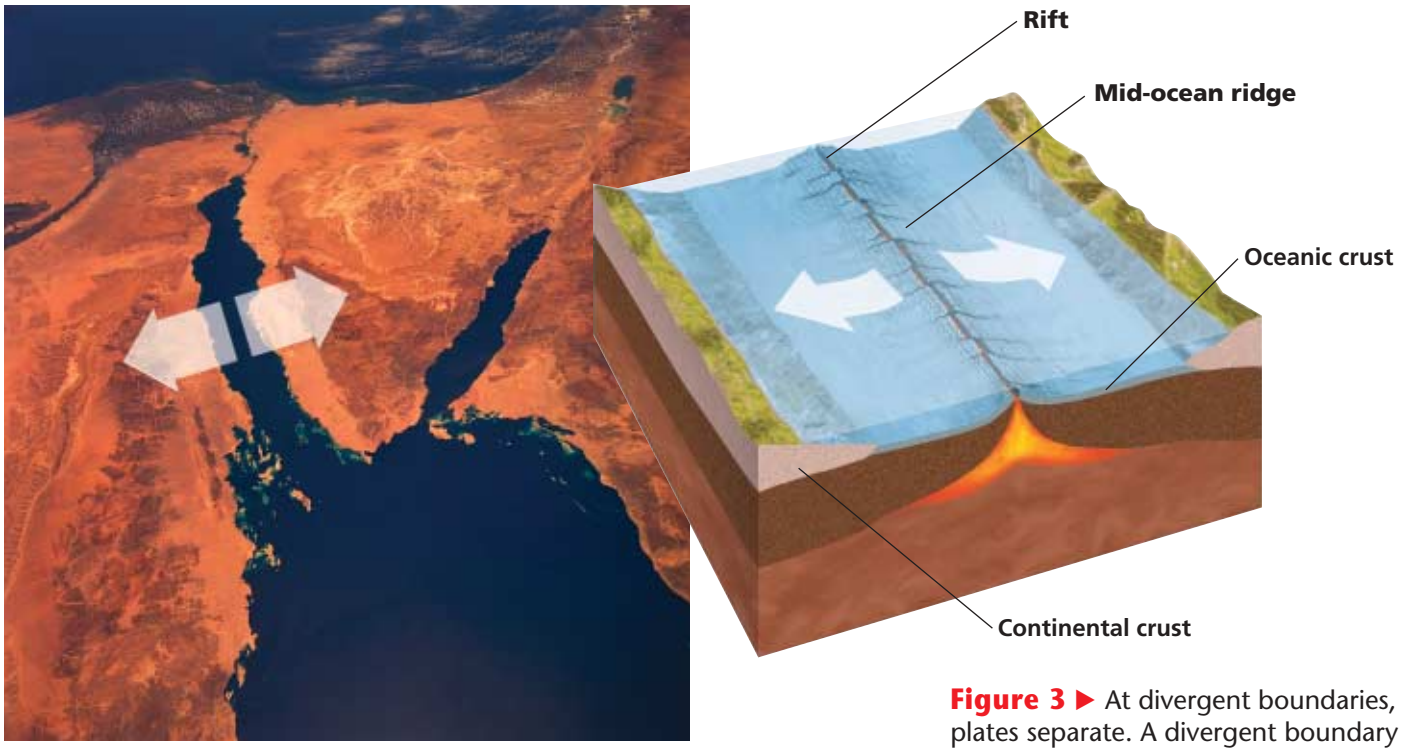


Figure 3 ▶ At divergent boundaries, plates separate. A divergent boundary exists in the Red Sea between the Arabian Peninsula and Africa.

Types of Plate Boundaries

Some of the most dramatic changes in Earth's crust, such as earthquakes and volcanic eruptions, happen along plate boundaries. Plate boundaries may be in the middle of the ocean floor, around the edges of continents, or even within continents. There are three types of plate boundaries. These plate boundaries are divergent boundaries, convergent boundaries, and transform boundaries. Each plate boundary is associated with a characteristic type of geologic activity.

Divergent Boundaries

The way that plates move relative to each other determines how the plate boundary affects Earth's surface. At a **divergent boundary,** two plates move away from each other. A divergent boundary is illustrated in **Figure 3.**

divergent boundary the boundary between tectonic plates that are moving away from each other

At divergent boundaries, magma from the asthenosphere rises to the surface as the plates move apart. The magma then cools to form new oceanic lithosphere. The newly formed rock at the ridge is warm and light. This warm, light rock is elevated above the surrounding sea floor and forms an undersea mountain range known as a *mid-ocean ridge.* Along the center of a mid-ocean ridge is a *rift valley,* a narrow valley that forms where the plates separate.

Most divergent boundaries are located on the ocean floor. However, rift valleys may also form where continents are separated by plate movement. For example, the Red Sea occupies a huge rift valley formed by the separation of the African plate and the Arabian plate, as shown in **Figure 3.**

convergent boundary the boundary between tectonic plates that are colliding

Convergent Boundaries

As plates pull apart at one boundary, they push into neighboring plates at other boundaries. **Convergent boundaries** are boundaries that form where two plates collide.

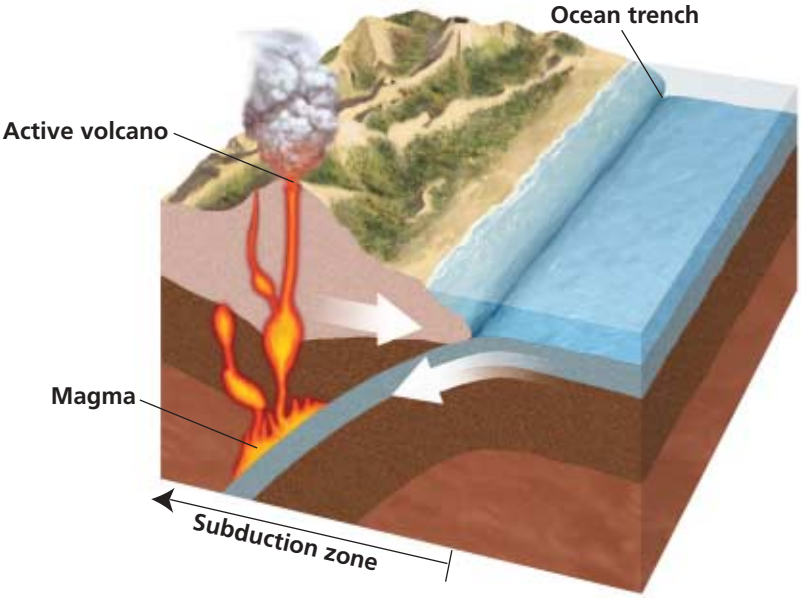
Three types of collisions can happen at convergent boundaries. One type happens when oceanic lithosphere collides with continental lithosphere, as shown in **Figure 4.** Because oceanic lithosphere is denser, it *subducts,* or sinks, under the less dense continental lithosphere. The region along a plate boundary where one plate moves under another plate is called a *subduction zone.* Deep-ocean trenches form at subduction zones. As the oceanic plate subducts, it heats up and releases fluids into the mantle above it. The addition of these fluids causes material in the overlying mantle to melt to form magma. The magma rises to the surface and forms volcanic mountains.

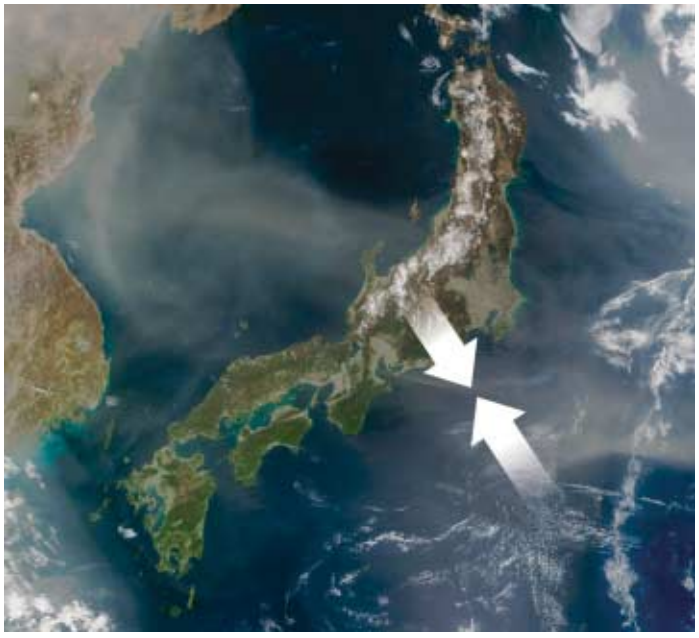
A second type of collision happens when two plates made of continental lithosphere collide. In this type of collision, neither plate subducts because neither plate is dense enough to subduct under the other plate. Instead, the colliding edges crumple and thicken, which causes uplift that forms large mountain ranges. The Himalaya Mountains formed in this type of collision.

The third type of collision happens between two plates that are made of oceanic lithosphere. One plate subducts under the other plate, and a deep-ocean trench forms. Fluids released from the subducted plate cause mantle rock to melt and form magma. The magma rises to the surface to form an *island arc,* which is a chain of volcanic islands. Japan is an example of an island arc.

Reading Check **Describe the three types of collisions that happen at convergent boundaries. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 4 ▶ Plates collide at convergent boundaries. The islands of Japan are formed by the subduction of the Pacific plate and the Philippine plate under the Eurasian plate.





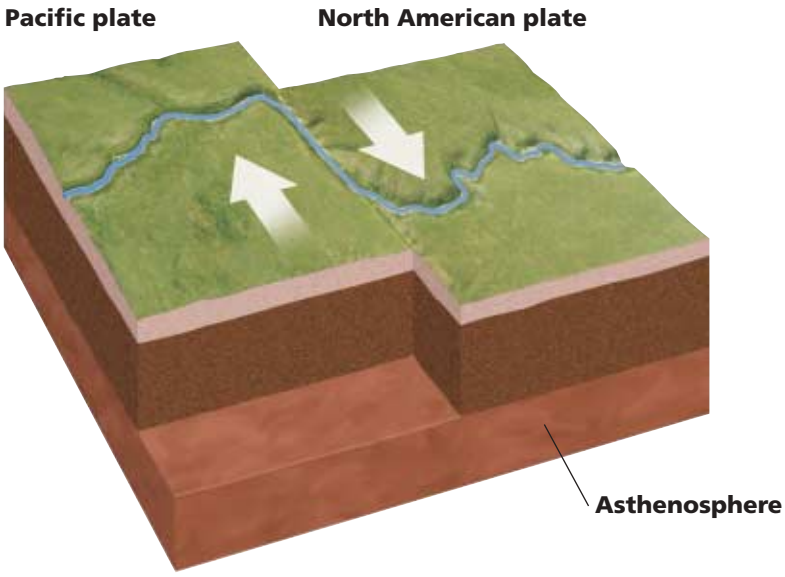


Figure 5 ▶ Plates slide past each other at transform boundaries. The course of the stream in the photo changed because the plates moved past each other at the San Andreas Fault in California.

Transform Boundaries

The boundary at which two plates slide past each other horizontally, as shown in **Figure 5,** is called a **transform boundary.** However, the plate edges usually do not slide along smoothly. Instead, they scrape against each other in a series of sudden spurts of motion that are felt as earthquakes. Unlike other types of boundaries, transform boundaries do not produce magma. The San Andreas Fault in California is a major transform boundary between the North American plate and the Pacific plate.

Transform motion also occurs along mid-ocean ridges. Short segments of a mid-ocean ridge are connected by transform boundaries called *fracture zones*.

Table 1 summarizes the three types of plate boundaries. The table also describes how each type of plate boundary changes Earth's surface and includes examples of each type of plate boundary.

transform boundary the boundary between tectonic plates that are sliding past each other horizontally

Table 1 ▼

Plate Boundary Summary		
Type of boundary	**Description**	**Example**
Divergent	plates moving away from each other to form rifts and mid-ocean ridges	North American and Eurasian plates at the Mid-Atlantic Ridge
Convergent	plates moving toward each other and colliding to form ocean trenches, mountain ranges, volcanoes, and island arcs	South American and Nazca plates at the Chilean trench along the west coast of South America
Transform	plates sliding past each other while moving in opposite directions	North American and Pacific plates at the San Andreas Fault in California

Causes of Plate Motion

Scientists don't fully understand what force drives plate tectonics. Many scientists think that the movement of tectonic plates is partly due to convection. *Convection* is the movement of heated material due to differences in density that are caused by differences in temperatures. This process can be modeled by boiling water in a pot on the stove. As the water at the bottom of the pot is heated, the water at the bottom expands and becomes less dense than the cooler water above it. The cooler, denser water sinks, and the warmer water rises to the surface to create a cycle called a *convection cell*.

Mantle Convection

Scientists think that Earth is also a convecting system. Energy generated by Earth's core and radioactivity within the mantle heat mantle material. This heated material rises through the cooler, denser material around it. As the hot material rises, the cooler, denser material flows away from the hot material and sinks into the mantle to replace the rising material. As the mantle material moves, it drags the overlying tectonic plates along with it, as shown in **Figure 6.**

Convection currents and the resulting drag on the bottoms of tectonic plates can explain many aspects of plate movement. But scientists have identified two specific mechanisms of convection that help drive the process of plate movement.

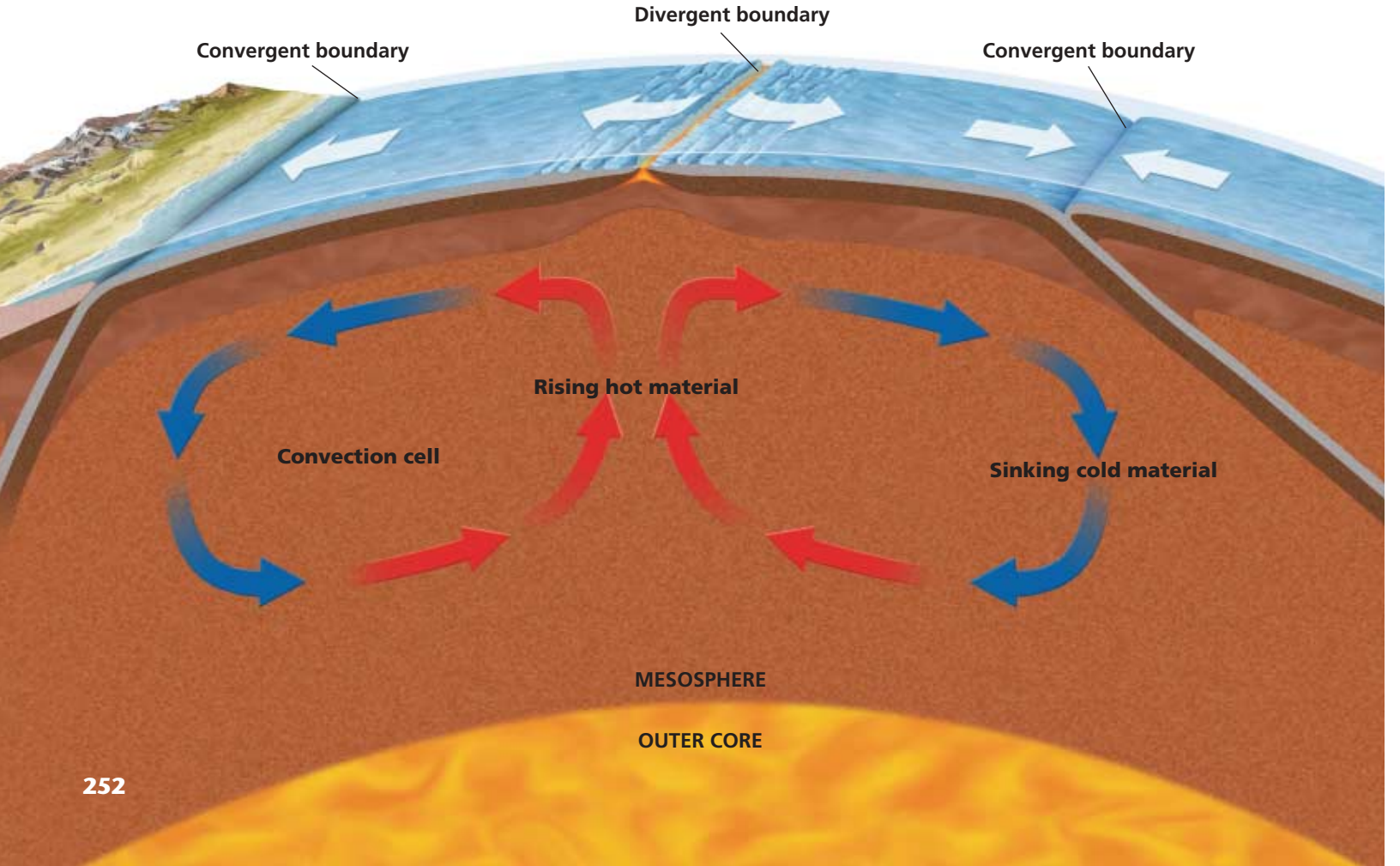


Figure 6 ▶ Scientists think that tectonic plates are part of a convection system. ***How is the rising of hot material related to the location of divergent boundaries?***

Ridge Push

Newly formed rock at a mid-ocean ridge is warm and less dense than older rock nearby. The warm, less dense rock is elevated above nearby rock, and older, denser rock slopes downward away from the ridge. As the newer, warmer rock cools and becomes denser, it begins to sink into the mantle and pull away from the ridge.

As the cooling rock sinks, the asthenosphere below it exerts force on the rest of the plate. This force is called *ridge push*. This force pushes the rest of the plate away from the mid-ocean ridge. Ridge push is illustrated in **Figure 7.**

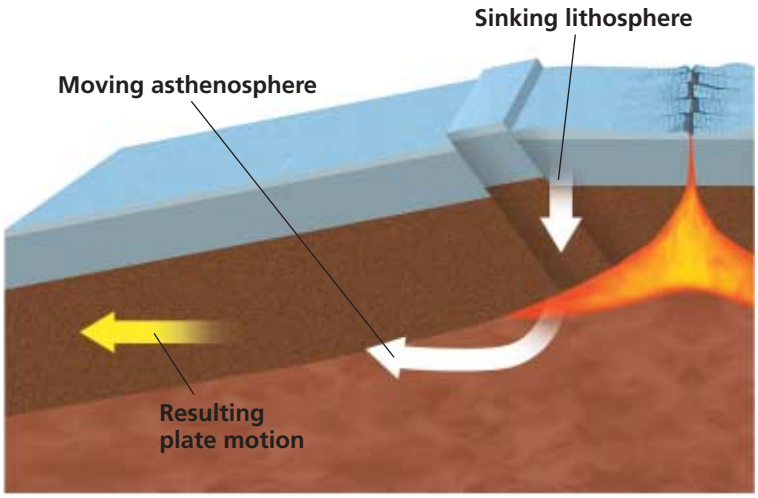


Figure 7 ▶ As the cooling lithosphere sinks, the asthenosphere moves away from the sinking lithosphere and pushes on the bottom of the plate. The plate moves in the direction that it is pushed by the asthenosphere.

Scientists think that ridge push may help drive plate motions. However, most scientists agree that ridge push is not the main driving force of plate motion. So, scientists looked to convergent boundaries for other clues to the forces that drive plate motion.

Reading Check **How may density differences in the rock at a mid-ocean ridge help drive plate motion? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB **30 min**

Tectonic Plate Boundaries

Procedure

1. Using a **ruler,** draw two 7 cm × 12 cm rectangles on a **piece of paper.** Cut them out with **scissors.**
2. Use a rolling pin to flatten **two different colored pieces of clay** to about 1/2 cm thick.
3. Use a **plastic knife** to cut each piece of clay into a 7 cm × 12 cm rectangle. Place a paper rectangle on each piece of clay.
4. Place the two clay models side by side on a flat surface and paper side down.
5. Place one hand on each piece of clay, and slowly push the blocks together until the edges begin to buckle and rise off the surface of the table.
6. Turn the clay models around so that the unbuckled edges are touching each other.
7. Place one hand on each clay model. Apply slight pressure toward the plane where the two blocks meet. Slide one clay model forward 7 cm and the other model backward about 7 cm.

Analysis

1. What type of plate boundary are you modeling in step 5?
2. What type of plate boundary are you modeling in step 7?
3. How do you think the processes modeled in this activity might affect the appearance of Earth's surface?

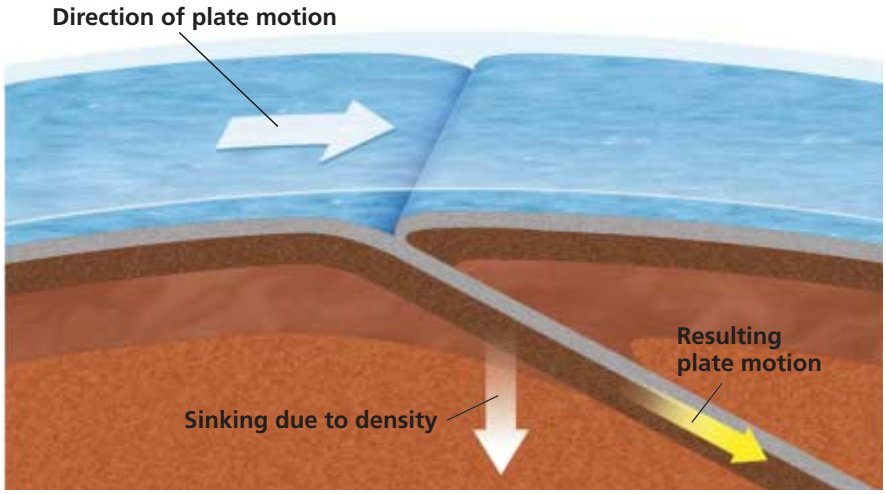


Figure 8 ▶ The leading edge of the subducting plate pulls the rest of the subducting plate into the asthenosphere in a process called *slab pull*.

Slab Pull

Where plates pull away from each other at mid-ocean ridges, magma from the asthenosphere rises to the surface. The magma then cools to form new lithosphere. As the lithosphere moves away from the mid-ocean ridge, the lithosphere cools and becomes denser. Where the lithosphere is dense enough, it begins to subduct into the asthenosphere. As the leading edge of the plate sinks, it pulls the rest of the plate along behind it. The force exerted by the sinking plate is called *slab pull*. This process is shown in **Figure 8.** In general, plates that are subducting move faster than plates that are not subducting. This evidence indicates that the downward pull of the subducting lithosphere is a strong driving force for tectonic plate motion.

All three mechanisms of Earth's convecting system—drag on the bottoms of tectonic plates, ridge push, and slab pull—work together to drive plate motions. These mechanisms form a system that makes Earth's tectonic plates move constantly.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Plate Tectonics
SciLinks code: HQ61171

Section 2 Review

1. **Summarize** the theory of plate tectonics.
2. **Explain** why most earthquakes and volcanoes happen along plate boundaries.
3. **Identify and describe** the three major types of plate boundaries.
4. **Compare** the changes in Earth's surface that happen at a convergent boundary with those that happen at a divergent boundary.
5. **Describe** the role of convection currents in plate movement.
6. **Describe** how ridge push and slab pull contribute to the movement of tectonic plates.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Inferences** How do convergent boundaries add material to Earth's surface?
8. **Determining Cause and Effect** Explain how the outward transfer of heat energy from inside Earth drives the movement of tectonic plates.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *tectonic plate, divergent, convergent, convection, transform, ridge push, slab pull, subduction zone,* and *mid-ocean ridge.*

Section 3

The Changing Continents

The continents did not always have the same shapes that they do today. And geologic evidence indicates that they will not stay the same shape forever. In fact, the continents are always changing. Slow movements of tectonic plates change the size and shape of the continents over millions of years.

Reshaping Earth's Crust

All of the continents that exist today contain large areas of stable rock, called *cratons,* that are older than 540 million years. Rocks within the cratons that have been exposed at Earth's surface are called *shields*. Cratons represent ancient cores around which the modern continents formed.

Rifting and Continental Reduction

One way that continents change shape is by breaking apart. **Rifting** is the process by which a continent breaks apart. New, smaller continents may form as a result of this process. The reason that continents rift is not entirely known. Because continental crust is thick and has a high silica content, continental crust acts as an insulator. This insulating property prevents heat in Earth's interior from escaping. Scientists think that as heat from the mantle builds up beneath the continent, continental lithosphere becomes thinner and begins to weaken. Eventually, a rift forms in this zone of weakness, and the continent begins to break apart, as shown in **Figure 1.**

OBJECTIVES

- **Identify** how movements of tectonic plates change Earth's surface.
- **Summarize** how movements of tectonic plates have influenced climates and life on Earth.
- **Describe** the supercontinent cycle.

KEY TERMS

rifting
terrane
supercontinent cycle
Pangaea
Panthalassa

rifting the process by which Earth's crust breaks apart; can occur within continental crust or oceanic crust

Figure 1 ▶ The East African Rift Valley formed as Africa began rifting about 30 million years ago.

Terranes and Continental Growth

terrane a piece of lithosphere that has a unique geologic history and that may be part of a larger piece of lithosphere, such as a continent

Continents change not only by breaking apart but also by gaining material. Most continents consist of cratons surrounded by a patchwork of terranes. A **terrane** is a piece of lithosphere that has a unique geologic history that differs from the histories of surrounding lithosphere. A terrane can be identified by three characteristics. First, a terrane contains rock and fossils that differ from the rock and fossils of neighboring terranes. Second, there are major faults at the boundaries of a terrane. Third, the magnetic properties of a terrane generally do not match those of neighboring terranes.

Terranes become part of a continent at convergent boundaries. When a tectonic plate carrying a terrane subducts under a plate made of continental crust, the terrane is scraped off the subducting plate, as shown in **Figure 2.** The terrane then becomes part of the continent. Some terranes may form mountains, while other terranes simply add to the surface area of a continent. The process in which a terrane becomes part of a continent is called *accretion* (uh KREE shuhn).

A variety of materials can form terranes. Terranes may be small volcanic islands or underwater mountains called *seamounts*. Small coral islands, or *atolls,* can also form terranes. And large chunks of continental crust can be terranes. When large terranes and continents collide, major mountain chains often form. For example, the Himalaya Mountains formed when India began colliding with Asia about 45 million years ago (during the Cenozoic Era).

Reading Check **Describe the process of accretion. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

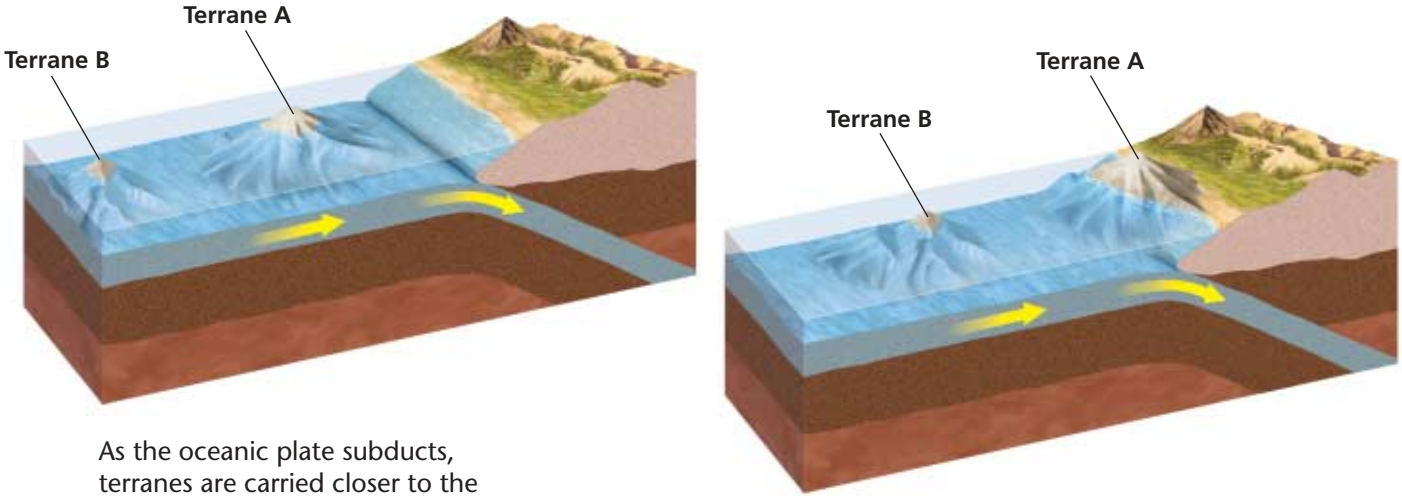


Figure 2 ▶ As oceanic crust subducts, a terrane is scraped off the ocean floor and becomes part of the continental crust. ***What would you expect to happen to sediments on the sea floor when the plate they are on subducts?***

As the oceanic plate subducts, terranes are carried closer to the continent.

When the terrane reaches the subduction zone, the terrane is scraped off the subducting plate and is added to the continent's edge.

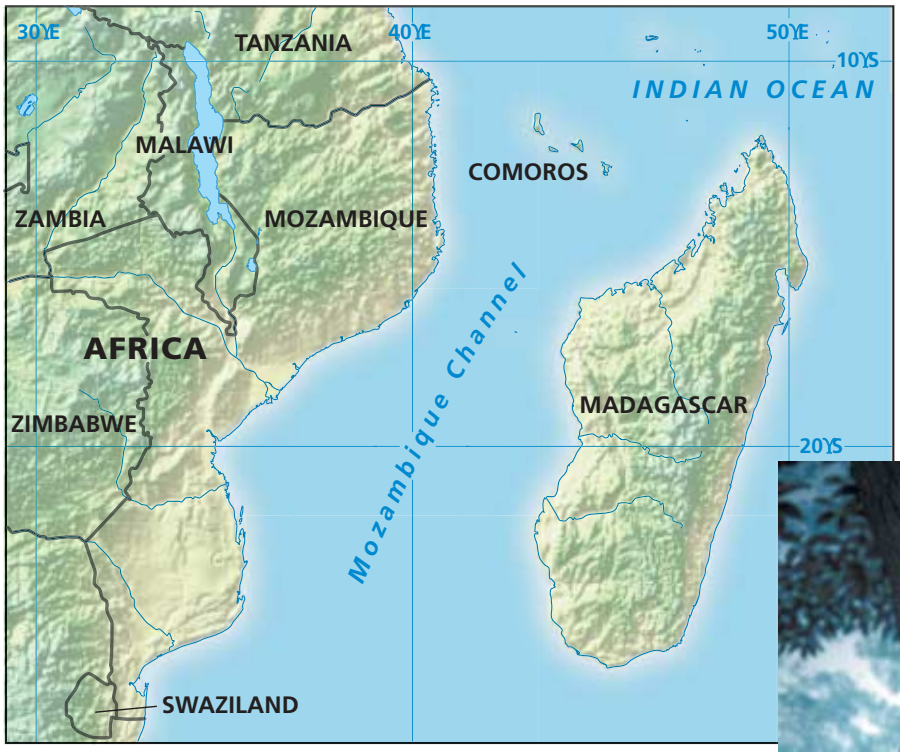


Figure 3 ▶ Madagascar separated from Africa about 165 million years ago and separated from India about 88 million years ago. This separation isolated the plants and animals on the island of Madagascar. As a result, unique species of plants and animals evolved on Madagascar. These species, such as the fossa (below), are found nowhere else on Earth.

Effects of Continental Change

Modern climates are a result of past movements of tectonic plates. A continent's location in relation to the equator and the poles affects the continent's overall climate. A continent's climate is also affected by the continent's location in relation to oceans and other continents. Mountain ranges affect air flow and wind patterns around the globe. Mountains also affect the amount of moisture that reaches certain parts of a continent. When continents move, the flow of air and moisture around the globe changes and causes climates to change.

Changes in Climate

Geologic evidence shows that ice once covered most of Earth's continental surfaces. Even the Sahara in Africa, one of the hottest places on Earth today, was once covered by a thick ice sheet. This ice sheet formed when all of the continents were close together and were located near the South Pole. As continents began to drift around the globe, however, global temperatures changed and much of the ice sheet melted.

Changes in Life

As continents rift or as mountains form, populations of organisms are separated. When populations are separated, new species may evolve from existing species. Sometimes, isolation protects organisms from competitors and predators and may allow the organismsm to evolve into unique organisms, as shown in **Figure 3.**

The Supercontinent Cycle

Using evidence from many scientific fields, scientists can construct a general picture of continental change throughout time. They think that at several times in the past, the continents were arranged into large landmasses called *supercontinents*. These supercontinents broke apart to form smaller continents that moved around the globe. Eventually, the smaller continents joined again to form another supercontinent. When the last supercontinent broke apart, the modern continents formed. A new supercontinent is likely to form in the future. The process by which supercontinents form and break apart over time is called the **supercontinent cycle** and is shown in **Figure 4.**

supercontinent cycle the process by which supercontinents form and break apart over millions of years

Pangaea the supercontinent that formed 300 million years ago and that began to break up beginning 250 million years ago

Panthalassa the single, large ocean that covered Earth's surface during the time the supercontinent Pangaea existed

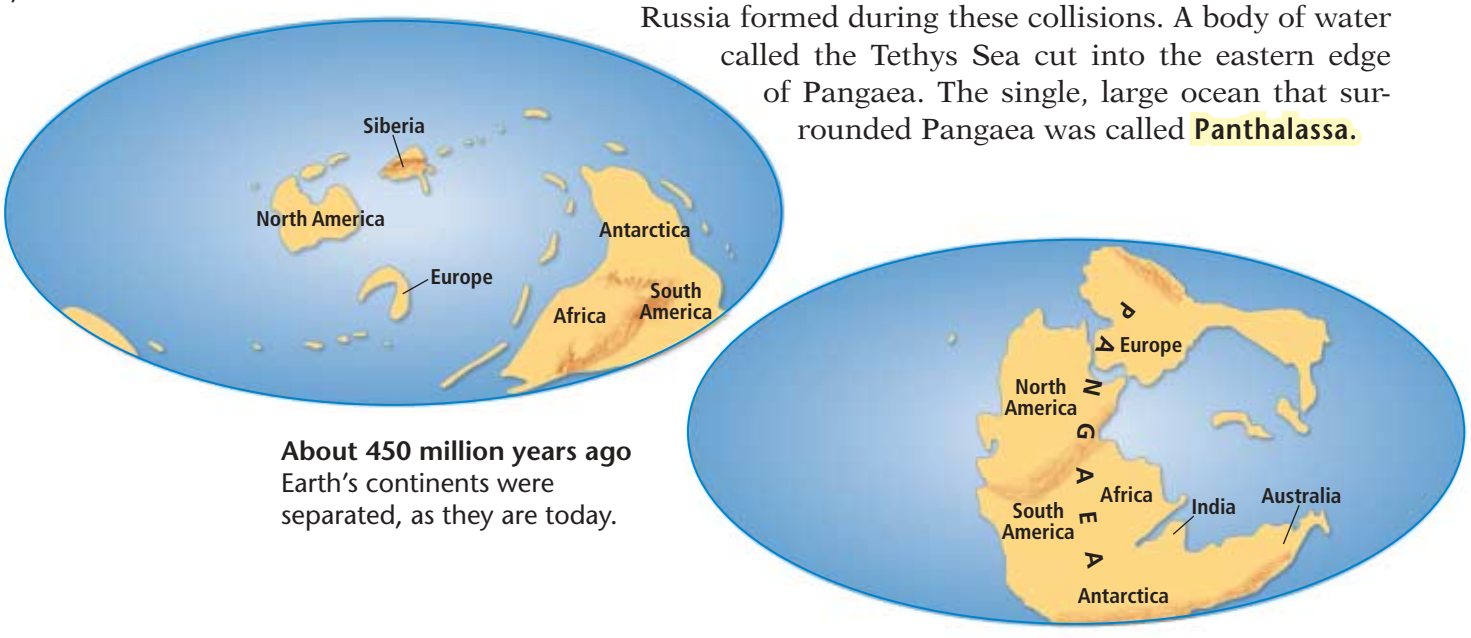
Why Supercontinents Form

The movement of plates toward convergent boundaries eventually causes continents to collide. Because continental lithosphere does not subduct, the convergent boundary between two continents becomes inactive, and a new convergent boundary forms. Over time, all of the continents collide to form a supercontinent. Then, heat from Earth's interior builds up under the supercontinent, and rifts form in the supercontinent. The supercontinent breaks apart, and plates carrying separate continents move around the globe.

Formation of Pangaea

The supercontinent **Pangaea** (pan JEE uh) formed about 300 million years ago (during the Paleozoic Era). As the continents collided to form Pangaea, mountains formed. The Appalachian Mountains of eastern North America and the Ural Mountains of Russia formed during these collisions. A body of water called the Tethys Sea cut into the eastern edge of Pangaea. The single, large ocean that surrounded Pangaea was called **Panthalassa.**

Figure 4 ▶ Over millions of years, supercontinents form and break apart in a cycle known as the *supercontinent cycle*.



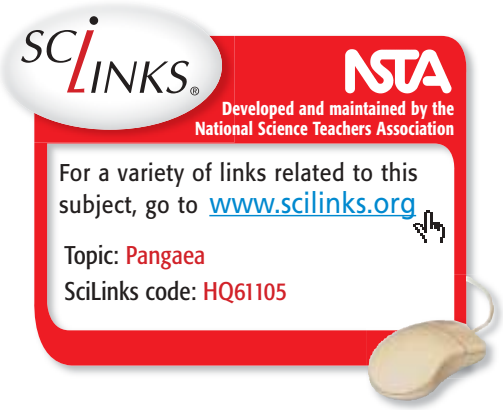
About 450 million years ago
Earth's continents were separated, as they are today.

260 million to 240 million years ago
Pangaea had formed and was beginning to break apart.

Breakup of Pangaea

About 250 million years ago (during the Paleozoic Era), Pangaea began to break into two continents—*Laurasia* and *Gondwanaland*. A large rift split the supercontinent from east to west. Then, Laurasia began to drift northward and rotate slowly, and a new rift formed. This rift separated Laurasia into the continents of North America and Eurasia. The rift eventually formed the North Atlantic Ocean. The rotation of Laurasia also caused the Tethys Sea to close. The Tethys Sea eventually became the Mediterranean Sea.

As Laurasia began to break apart, Gondwanaland also broke into two continents. One continent broke apart to become the continents of South America and Africa. About 150 million years ago (during the Mesozoic Era), a rift between Africa and South America opened to form the South Atlantic Ocean. The other continent separated to form India, Australia, and Antarctica. As India broke away from Australia and Antarctica, it started moving northward, toward Eurasia. About 60 million years ago (during the Cenozoic Era), India collided with Eurasia, and the Himalaya Mountains began to form.



The Modern Continents

Slowly, the continents moved into their present positions. As the continents drifted, they collided with terranes and other continents. These collisions welded new crust onto the continents and uplifted the land. Mountain ranges, such as the Rocky Mountains, the Andes, and the Alps, formed. Tectonic plate motion also caused new oceans to open up and caused others to close.

Reading Check **What modern continents formed from Gondwanaland? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

160 million to 140 million years ago
Pangaea split into two continents—Laurasia to the north and Gondwanaland to the south.

70 million to 50 million years ago
The continents were moving toward their current positions. The current positions of the continents are shown here in red.

Geography of the Future

As tectonic plates continue to move, Earth's geography will change dramatically. If plate movements continue at current rates, in about 150 million years, Africa will collide with Eurasia, and the Mediterranean Sea will close. A new ocean will form as east Africa separates from the rest of Africa and moves eastward. As the North American and South American plates move westward and as Eurasia and Africa move eastward, the Atlantic Ocean will become wider. Australia will continue to move north and eventually will collide with Eurasia.

In North America, Mexico's Baja Peninsula and the part of California that is west of the San Andreas Fault will move to where Alaska is today. If this plate movement occurs as predicted, Los Angeles will be located north of San Francisco's current location. Scientists predict that in 250 million years, the continents will come together again to form a new supercontinent, as shown in **Figure 5.**

Figure 5 ▶ Scientists predict that movements of tectonic plates will cause a supercontinent to form in the future.

Section 3 Review

1. **Identify** how rifting and accretion change the shapes of continents.
2. **Describe** why a terrane has a different geologic history from that of the surrounding area.
3. **Summarize** how continental rifting may lead to changes in plants and animals.
4. **Describe** the supercontinent cycle.
5. **Explain** how the theory of plate tectonics relates to the formation and breakup of Pangaea.
6. **Compare** Pangaea and Gondwanaland.
7. **List** three changes in geography that are likely to happen in the future.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Identifying Relationships** The interior parts of continents generally have colder climates than coastal areas do. How does this fact explain the evidence that the climate on Pangaea was cooler than many modern climates?
9. **Determining Cause and Effect** Explain how mountains on land can be composed of rocks that contain fossils of marine animals.

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *supercontinent, rifting, atoll, continent, terrane, seamount, accretion,* and *Pangaea*.

Chapter 10 Highlights

Sections

1 Continental Drift

Key Terms

continental drift, 239
mid-ocean ridge, 242
seafloor spreading, 243
paleomagnetism, 243

Key Concepts

- Fossil, rock, and climatic evidence supports Wegener's hypothesis of continental drift. However, Wegener could not explain the mechanism by which the continents move.
- New ocean floor is constantly being produced through sea-floor spreading, which creates mid-ocean ridges and changes the topography of the sea floor.
- Sea-floor spreading provides a mechanism for continental drift.

2 The Theory of Plate Tectonics

plate tectonics, 247
lithosphere, 247
asthenosphere, 247
divergent boundary, 249
convergent boundary, 250
transform boundary, 251

- The theory of plate tectonics proposes that changes in Earth's crust are caused by the very slow movement of large tectonic plates.
- Earthquakes, volcanoes, and young mountain ranges tend to be located in belts along the boundaries between tectonic plates.
- Tectonic plates meet at three types of boundaries—divergent, convergent, and transform. The geologic activity that occurs along the three types of plate boundaries differs according to the way plates move relative to each other.
- Tectonic plates may be part of a convecting system that is driven by differences in density and heat.

3 The Changing Continents

rifting, 255
terrane, 256
supercontinent cycle, 258
Pangaea, 258
Panthalassa, 258

- Continents grow through the accretion of terranes. Continents break apart through rifting.
- Movements of tectonic plates have altered climates on continents and have created conditions that lead to changes in plants and animals.
- Continents collide to form supercontinents and then break apart in a cycle called the *supercontinent cycle*.
- Earth's tectonic plates continue to move, and in the future, the continents will likely be in a different configuration.

Chapter 10 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *sea-floor spreading*
2. *convection*
3. *divergent boundary*
4. *terrane*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

5. *convergent boundary* and *subduction zone*
6. *continental drift* and *plate tectonics*
7. *ridge push* and *slab pull*
8. *Pangaea* and *Panthalasa*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. Support for Wegener's hypothesis of continental drift includes evidence of changes in
   a. climatic patterns. **c.** terranes.
   b. Panthalassa. **d.** subduction.

10. New ocean floor is constantly being produced through the process known as
    a. subduction.
    b. continental drift.
    c. sea-floor spreading.
    d. terranes.

11. An underwater mountain chain that formed by sea-floor spreading is called a
    a. divergent boundary.
    b. subduction zone.
    c. mid-ocean ridge.
    d. convergent boundary.

12. Scientists think that the upwelling of mantle material at mid-ocean ridges is caused by the motion of tectonic plates and comes from
    a. the lithosphere. **c.** the asthenosphere.
    b. terranes. **d.** rift valleys.

13. The layer of plastic rock that underlies the tectonic plates is the
    a. lithosphere. **c.** oceanic crust.
    b. asthenosphere. **d.** terrane.

14. The region along tectonic plate boundaries where one plate moves beneath another is called a
    a. rift valley.
    b. transform boundary.
    c. subduction zone.
    d. convergent boundary.

15. Two plates grind past each other at a
    a. transform boundary.
    b. convergent boundary.
    c. subduction zone.
    d. divergent boundary.

16. Convection occurs because heated material becomes
    a. less dense and rises.
    b. denser and rises.
    c. denser and sinks.
    d. less dense and sinks.

Short Answer

17. Explain the role of technology in the progression from the hypothesis of continental drift to the theory of plate tectonics.

18. Summarize how the continents moved from being part of Pangaea to their current locations.

19. Why do most earthquakes and volcanoes happen at or near plate boundaries?

20. Explain the following statement: "Because of sea-floor spreading, the ocean floor is constantly renewing itself."

21. Describe how rocks that form at a mid-ocean ridge become magnetized.

22. How may continental rifting influence the evolution of plants and animals?

Critical Thinking

23. Making Comparisons How are tectonic plates like the pieces of a jigsaw puzzle?

24. Making Inferences If Alfred Wegener had found identical fossil remains of plants and animals that had lived no more than 10 million years ago in both eastern Brazil and western Africa, what might he have concluded about the breakup of Pangaea?

25. Identifying Relationships Assume that the total surface area of Earth is not changing. If new material is being added to Earth's crust at one boundary, what would you expect to be happening at another boundary?

26. Making Predictions One hundred fifty million years from now, the continents will have drifted to new locations. How might these changes affect life on Earth?

Concept Mapping

27. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *asthenosphere, lithosphere, divergent boundary, convergent boundary, transform boundary, subduction zone, mid-ocean ridge, plates, convection, continental drift, theory of plate tectonics,* and *sea-floor spreading*.

Math Skills

28. Making Calculations The coasts of Africa and South America began rifting about 150 million years ago. Today, the coast of South America is about 6,660 km from the coast of Africa. Using the equation *velocity* = *distance* ÷ *time*, determine how fast the continents moved apart in millimeters per year.

29. Using Equations Assume that scientists know the rate at which the North American and Eurasian plates are moving away from each other. If t = time, d = distance, and v = velocity, what equation can they use to determine when North America separated from Eurasia during the breakup of Pangaea?

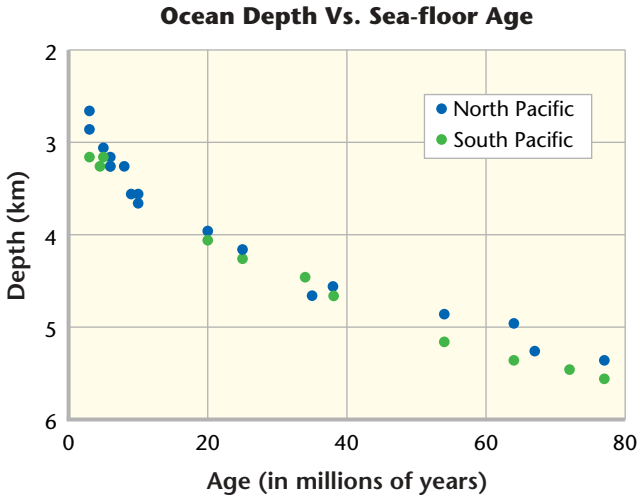
Writing Skills

30. Writing Persuasively Imagine that you are Alfred Wegener. Write a persuasive essay to explain your idea of continental drift. Use only evidence originally used by Wegener to support his hypothesis.

31. Communicating Main Ideas Explain how the research of Wegener, Hess, and others led to the theory of plate tectonics.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows the relationship between the age of sea floor rocks and the depth of the sea floor beneath the ocean surface. Use the graph to answer the questions that follow.



32. How old is the sea floor at a depth of 4 km?

33. Approximately how deep is the sea floor when it is 55 million years old?

34. What can you infer about the age of very deep sea floor from the data in the graph?

35. The ridge in the South Pacific Ocean is spreading faster than the ridge in the North Pacific Ocean. If this graph showed the depth of the sea floor in relation to the distance from the ridge, how would the graphs of the North Pacific and South Pacific ridges differ?

Chapter 10 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–4): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the number of the correct answer.**

1 Which of the following factors is most important when determining the type of collision that forms when two lithospheric plates collide?
A. the density of each plate
B. the size of each plate
C. the paleomagnetism of the rock
D. the length of the boundary

2 At locations where sea-floor spreading occurs, rock is moved away from a mid-ocean ridge. What replaces the rock as it moves away?
F. molten rock
G. older rock
H. continental crust
I. compacted sediment

3 Which of the following was a weakness of Wegener's proposal of continental drift when he first proposed the hypothesis?
A. an absence of fossil evidence
B. unsupported climatic evidence
C. unrelated continent features
D. a lack of proven mechanisms

4 Which of the following statements describes a specific type of continental growth?
F. Continents change not only by gaining material but also by losing material.
G. Terranes become part of a continent at convergent boundaries.
H. Ocean sediments move onto land because of sea-floor spreading.
I. Rifting adds new rock to a continent and causes the continent to become wider.

Directions (5–6): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

5 What is the name for the process by which the Earth's crust breaks apart?

6 What is the name for the layer of plastic rock directly below the lithosphere?

Reading Skills

Directions (7–9): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

The Himalaya Mountains

The Himalaya Mountians are a range of mountains that is 2,400 km long and that arcs across Pakistan, India, Tibet, Nepal, Sikkim, and Bhutan. The Himalaya mountains are the highest Mountains on Earth. Nine mounains in the chain, including Mount Everest, the tallest above-water mountain on Earth, rise to heights of more than 8,000 m above sea-level. Mount Everest stands 8,850 m tall.

The formation of the Himalaya Mountains began about 80 million years ago. A tectonic plate carrying the Indian subcontinent collided with the Eurasian plate. The Indian plate was denser than the Eurasian plate. This difference in density caused the uplifting of the Eurasian plate and the subsequent formation of the Himalaya Mountains. This process continues today. The Indian plate continues to push under the Eurasian plate. New measurements show that Mount Everest is moving to the northeast by as much as 10 cm per year.

7 According to the passage, what geologic process formed the Himalaya Mountains?
A. divergence
B. continental rifting
C. strike-slip faulting
D. convergence

8 Which of the following statements is a fact according to the passage?
F. The nine tallest mountains on Earth are located in the Himalaya Mountains.
G. The Himalaya Mountains are the longest mountain chain on Earth.
H. The Himalaya Mountains are located within six countries.
I. The Himalaya Mountains had completely formed by 80 million years ago.

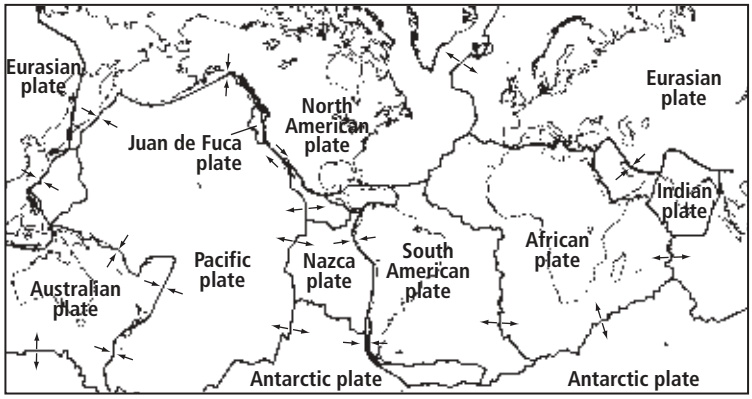
9 Which plate is being subducted along the fault that formed the Himalaya Mountains?
A. The Indian plate is being subducted.
B. The Eurasian plate is being subducted.
C. Both plates are being equally subducted.
D. Neither plate is being subducted.

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (10–13): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The map below shows the locations of the Earth's major tectonic plate boundaries. Use this map to answer questions 10 and 11.

Earth's Tectonic Plates



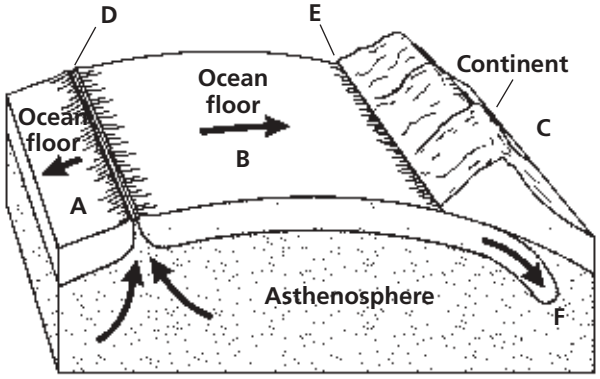
10 What type of boundary is found between the South American plate and the African plate?

A. convergent
B. divergent
C. transform
D. subduction

11 What type of boundary is found between the South American plate and the African plate? What surface features are most often found at boundaries of this type?

The graphic below shows a strike-slip fault along a transform boundary. Use the graphic to answer questions 12 and 13.

Plate Boundaries



12 What type of crustal interaction is indicated by the letter E?

F. continental rifting
G. sea-floor spreading
H. divergence
I. subduction

13 Describe how a transform boundary differs from the boundaries shown by letters D and E in terms of plate movement and magmatic activity.

Test TIP

If you become short on time, quickly scan the unanswered questions to see which questions are easiest to answer.

Chapter 10

Making Models Lab

Objectives

- **Model** the formation of sea floor.
- **Identify** how magnetic patterns are caused by sea-floor spreading.

Materials

marker
paper, unlined
ruler, metric
scissors or utility knife
shoebox

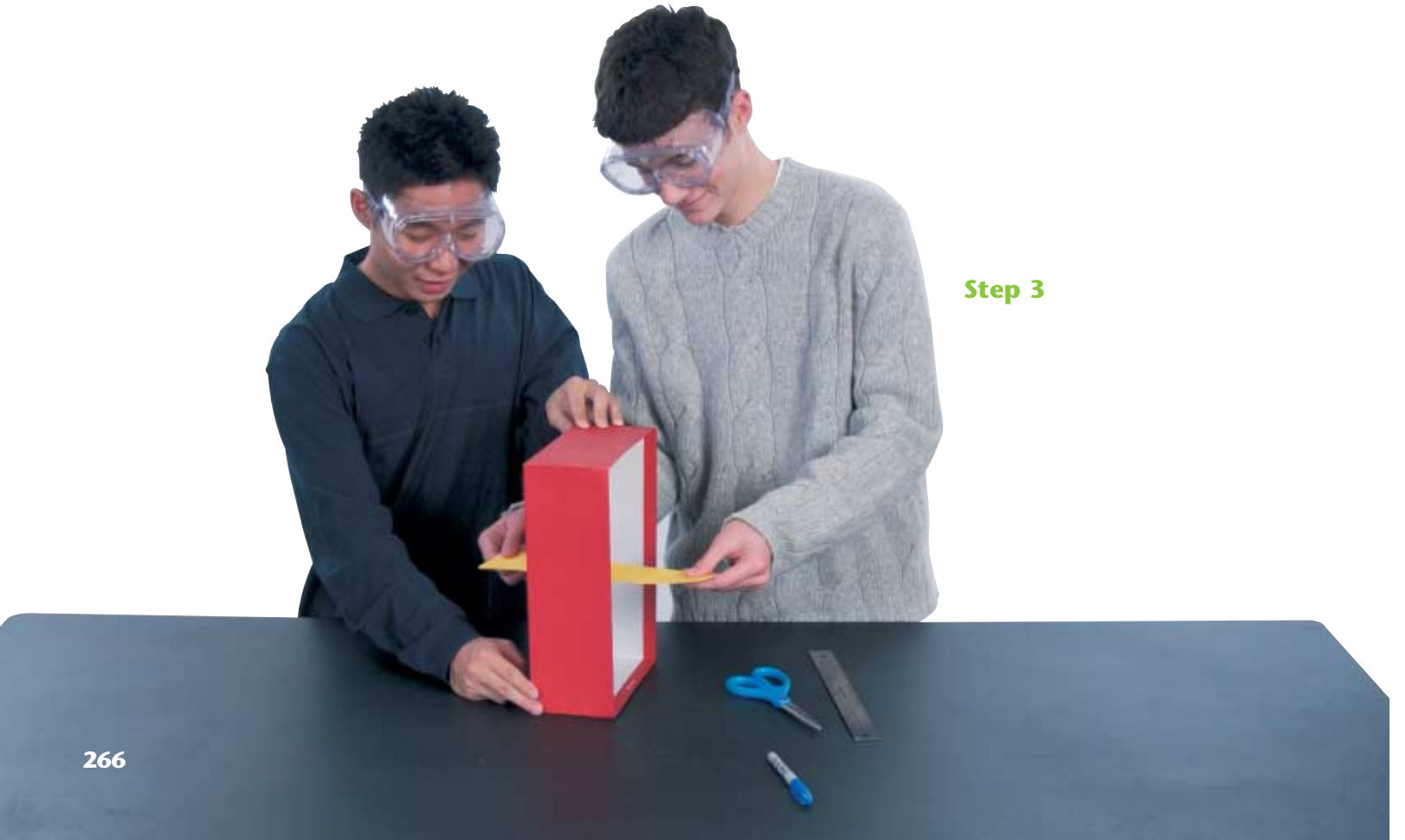
Safety

Sea-Floor Spreading

The places on Earth's surface where plates pull apart have many names. They are called divergent boundaries, mid-ocean ridges, and spreading centers. The term *spreading center* refers to the fact that sea-floor spreading happens at these locations. In this lab, you will model the formation of new sea floor at a divergent boundary. You will also model the formation of magnetic patterns on the sea floor.

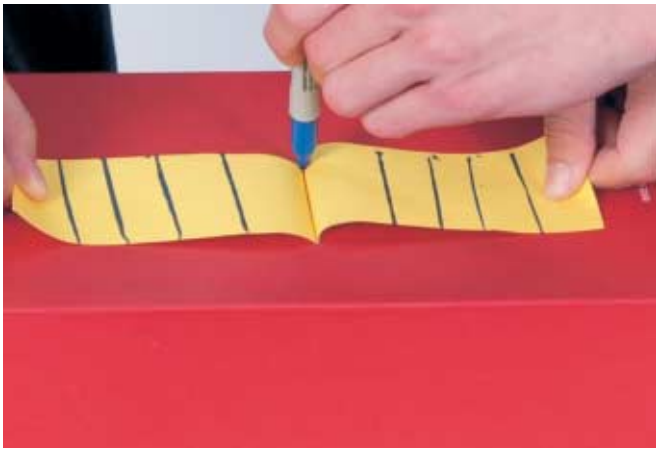
PROCEDURE

1. Cut two identical strips of unlined paper, each 7 cm wide and 30 cm long.
2. Cut a slit 8 cm long in the center of the bottom of a shoebox.
3. Lay the strips of paper together on top of each other end to end so that the ends line up. Push one end of the strips through the slit in the shoe box, so that a few centimeters of both strips stick out of the slit.



Step 3

4. Place the shoe box flat on a table open side down, and make sure the ends of the paper strips are sticking up.
5. Separate the strips, and hold one strip in each hand. Pull the strips apart. Then, push the strips down against the shoe box.
6. Use a marker to mark across the paper strips where they exit the box. One swipe with the marker should mark both strips.
7. Pull the strips evenly until about 2 cm have been pulled through the slit.
8. Mark the strips with the marker again.
9. Repeat steps 7 and 8, but vary the length of paper that you pull from the slit. Continue this process until both strips are pulled out of the box.



Step 6

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

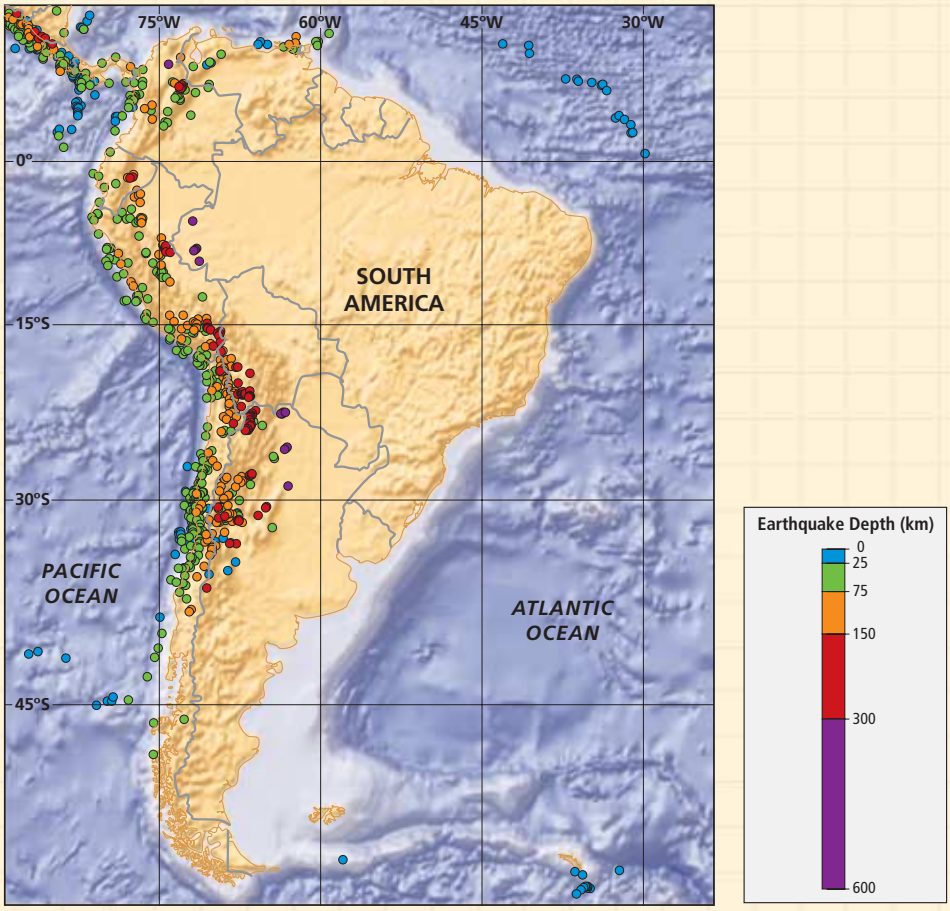
1. **Evaluating Models** How does this activity model sea-floor spreading?
2. **Analyzing Models** What do the marker stripes in this model represent?
3. **Analyzing Methods** If each 2 cm marked on the paper is equal to 3 million years, how could you use your model to determine the age of certain points on the sea floor?
4. **Applying Conclusions** You are given only the paper strips with marks already drawn on them. How would you use the paper strips to reconstruct the way in which the sea-floor was formed?

Extension

1. **Making Models** Design a model that shows what happens at a convergent boundary and what happens at a transform boundary. Present these models to the class.

MAPS in Action

Locations of Earthquakes in South America, 2002–2003



Map Skills Activity

This map shows the locations and depths of earthquakes that registered magnitudes greater than 5 and that happened in South America in 2002 and 2003. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using the Key** How many earthquakes happened at a depth greater than 300 km?

2. **Analyzing Data** Deep earthquakes are earthquakes that happen at a depth greater than 300 km. Which earthquakes happen more frequently: deep earthquakes or shallow earthquakes?

3. **Making Comparisons** How does the earthquake activity on the eastern edge of South America differ from the earthquake activity on the western edge?

4. **Inferring Relationships** The locations of earthquakes and plate boundaries are related. Where would you expect to find a major plate boundary?

5. **Identifying Trends** In what part of South America do most deep earthquakes happen? What relationships do you see between the locations of shallow and deep earthquakes in South America?

6. **Analyzing Relationships** Most deep earthquakes happen where subducting plates move deep into the mantle. What type of plate boundary is indicated by the earthquake activity in South America? Explain your answer.

The Mid-Atlantic Ridge

Deep in the Atlantic Ocean lies a mountain range so vast that it dwarfs the Himalaya Mountains. This mountain range, called the *Mid-Atlantic Ridge,* is the mid-ocean ridge at the diverging boundary between the North American and Eurasian plates and also between the South American and African plates.

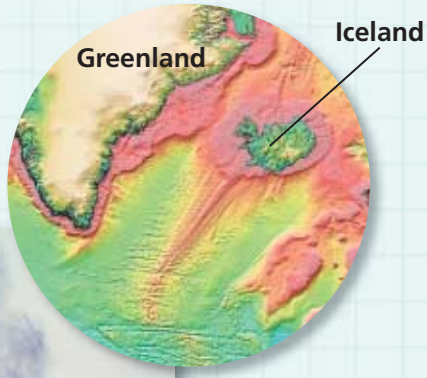
Sea-Floor Spreading on Land

Most of Earth's mid-ocean ridges are underwater, but part of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge rises above sea level just south of the Arctic Circle. The exposed section of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge forms the country of Iceland. Since Iceland was founded by Vikings more than 1,000 years ago, its inhabitants have contended with constant geologic activity associated with sea-floor spreading.

Lots and Lots of Lava

Separation of Earth's crust along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge affects Iceland's landscape in several ways. The movement of magma causes frequent earthquakes. Iceland is also one of the most volcanically active areas in the world. It contains about 200 volcanoes and averages one eruption every five years. Magma flowing up from the mantle creates numerous hot springs, geysers, and sulfurous gas vents. Scientists estimate that one-third of the total lava flow from Earth in the last 500 years has occurred on Iceland.

Despite Iceland's numerous volcanoes, much of its lava comes not from isolated eruptions but from cracks, or *fissures,* in the crust. In a recent rifting episode that lasted nearly 10 years, a series of fissures spit out enough molten basalt to cover 35 km^2 of land and individual fissures grew as much as 8 m in width. At present, sea-floor spreading adds an average of 2.5 cm of new material to Iceland each year. At this rate, Iceland will grow 25 km in width during the next million years.



◀ The Helgafjell volcano erupted in a curtain of fire that rained black ash on the town of Reykjavik Iceland, in 1973.

Extension

1. **Making Inferences** If geologists want to locate the youngest rocks on Iceland, where should they look? Where should they look to find the oldest rocks? Explain your answers.

SCILINKS®

NSTA Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this chapter, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Mid-Atlantic Ridge

SciLinks code: HQ60960

Chapter 11

Deformation of the Crust

Sections

1 How Rock Deforms
2 How Mountains Form

What You'll Learn

- How Earth's crust responds to stress
- What forms deformed rock takes
- How forces in the crust cause mountains to form

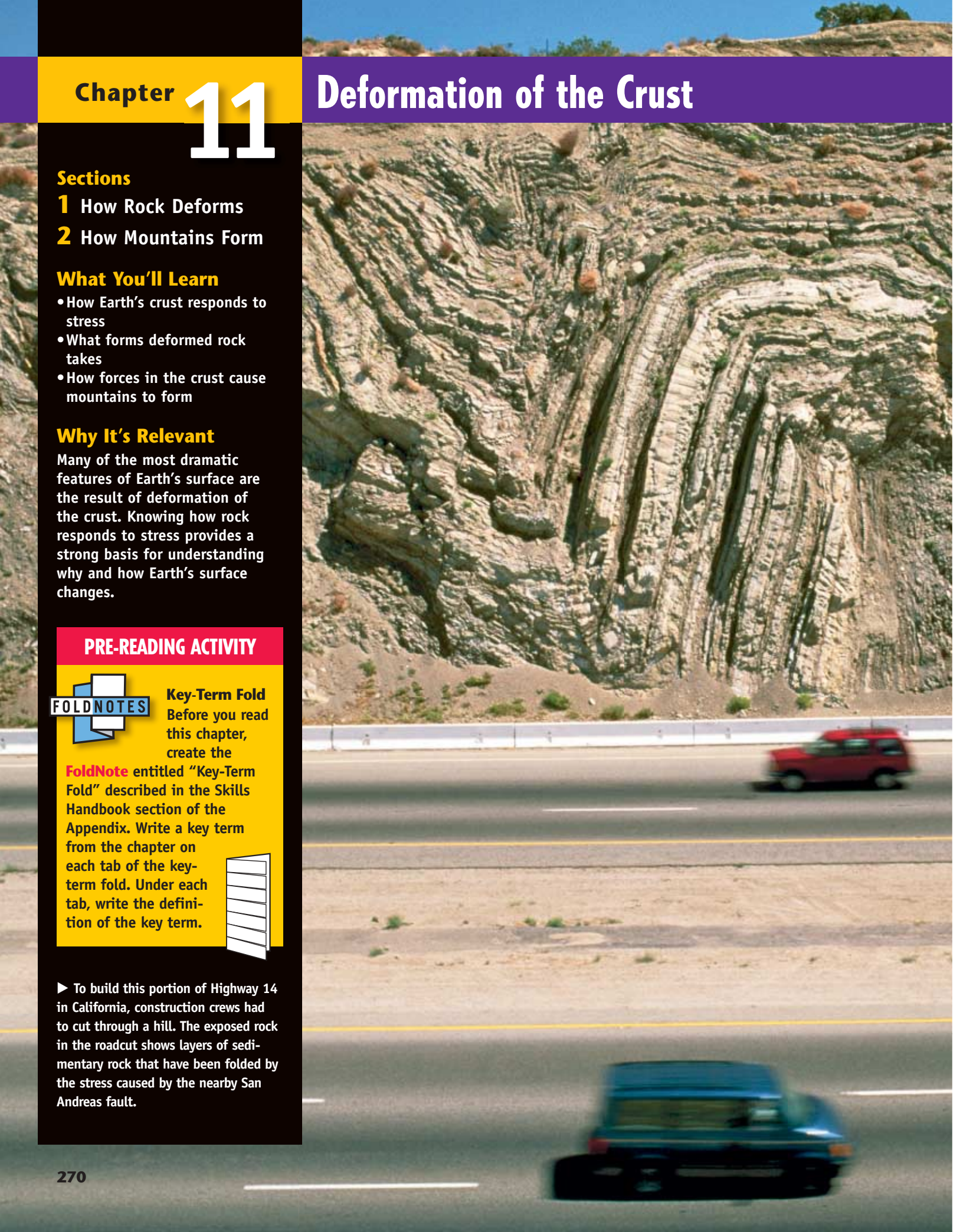
Why It's Relevant

Many of the most dramatic features of Earth's surface are the result of deformation of the crust. Knowing how rock responds to stress provides a strong basis for understanding why and how Earth's surface changes.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Key-Term Fold Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Key-Term Fold" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Write a key term from the chapter on each tab of the key-term fold. Under each tab, write the definition of the key term.



▶ To build this portion of Highway 14 in California, construction crews had to cut through a hill. The exposed rock in the roadcut shows layers of sedimentary rock that have been folded by the stress caused by the nearby San Andreas fault.

Section 1 How Rock Deforms

The Himalayas, the Rockies, and the Andes are some of Earth's most majestic mountain ranges. Mountain ranges are visible reminders that the shape of Earth's surface changes constantly. These changes result from **deformation**, or the bending, tilting, and breaking of Earth's crust.

OBJECTIVES

- **Summarize** the principle of isostasy.
- **Identify** the three main types of stress.
- **Compare** folds and faults.

KEY TERMS

deformation
isostasy
stress
strain
fold
fault

Isostasy

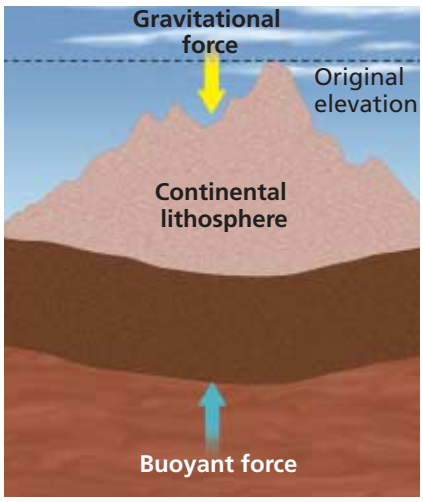
Deformation sometimes occurs because the weight of some part of Earth's crust changes. Earth's crust is part of the lithospheric plates that ride on top of the plastic part of the mantle called the *asthenosphere*. When parts of the lithosphere thicken and become heavier, they sink deeper into the asthenosphere. If parts of the lithosphere thin and become lighter, the lithosphere rises higher in the asthenosphere.

Vertical movement of the lithosphere depends on two opposing forces. One force is the force due to gravity, or weight, of the lithosphere pressing down on the asthenosphere. The other force is the buoyant force of the asthenosphere pressing up on the lithosphere. When these two forces are balanced, the lithosphere and asthenosphere are in a state called **isostasy.** However, when the weight of the lithosphere changes, the lithosphere sinks or rises until a balance of the forces is reached again. The movements of the lithosphere to reach isostasy are called *isostatic adjustments*. One type of isostatic adjustment is shown in **Figure 1.** As these isostatic adjustments occur, areas of the crust are bent up and down. This bending causes rock in that area to deform.

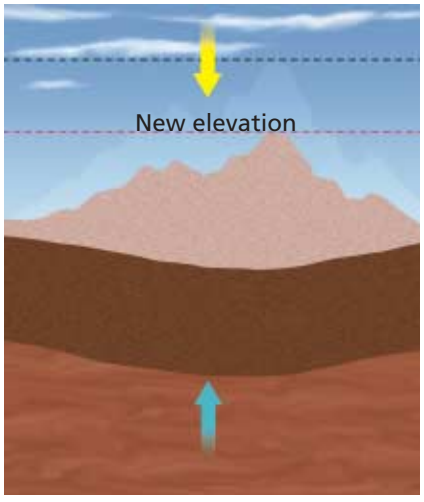
deformation the bending, tilting, and breaking of Earth's crust; the change in shape or volume of rock in response to stress

isostasy a condition of gravitational and buoyant equilibrium between Earth's lithosphere and asthenosphere

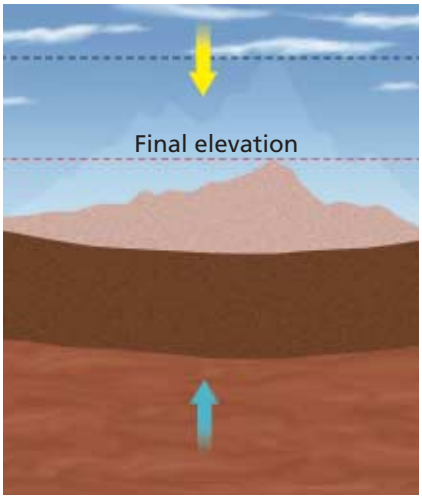
Figure 1 ▶ Isostatic Adjustments as a Result of Erosion



When the gravitational force equals the buoyant force, the lithosphere and asthenosphere are in isostasy.



As erosion wears away the crust, the lithosphere becomes lighter and is pushed up by the asthenosphere.



As erosion continues, the isostatic adjustment also continues.

Figure 2 ▶ Mt. Katahdin in Baxter State Park, Maine, has been worn down by weathering. As the mountain shrinks, the crust underneath it is uplifted.

Mountains and Isostasy

In mountainous regions, isostatic adjustments constantly occur. Over millions of years, the rock that forms mountains is worn away by the erosive actions of wind, water, and ice. This erosion can significantly reduce the height and weight of a mountain range, such as the one shown in **Figure 2.** As a mountain becomes smaller, the surrounding crust becomes lighter and the area may rise by isostatic adjustment in a process called *uplift*.

Deposition and Isostasy

Another type of isostatic adjustment occurs in areas where rivers carrying large amounts of mud, sand, and gravel flow into larger bodies of water. When a river flows into the ocean, most of the material that the river carries is deposited on the nearby ocean floor. The added weight of the deposited material causes the ocean floor to sink by isostatic adjustment in a process known as *subsidence*. This process is occurring in the Gulf of Mexico at the mouth of the Mississippi River, where a thick accumulation of deposited materials has formed.

Glaciers and Isostasy

Isostatic adjustments also occur as a result of the growth and retreat of glaciers and ice sheets. When a large amount of water is held in glaciers and ice sheets, the weight of the ice causes the lithosphere beneath the ice to sink. Simultaneously, the ocean floor rises because the weight of the overlying ocean water is less. When glaciers and ice sheets melt, the land that was covered with ice slowly rises as the weight of the crust decreases. As the water returns to the ocean, the ocean floor sinks.

QuickLAB 5 min

Modeling Isostasy

Procedure

1. Fill a **1 L beaker** with **500 mL of water.**
2. Place a **wooden block** in the water. Use a **grease pencil** to mark on the side of the beaker the levels of the top and the bottom of the block.
3. Place a **small mass,** of about 1 g, on the wooden block. Use a **second grease pencil** to mark the levels of the top and the bottom of the block.

Analysis

1. What happens to the block of wood when the weight is added?
2. What type of isostatic adjustment does this activity model?

Stress

As Earth's lithosphere moves, the rock in the crust is squeezed, stretched, and twisted. These actions exert force on the rock. The amount of force that is exerted on each unit of area is called **stress.** For example, during isostatic adjustments, the lithosphere sinks and rises atop the asthenosphere. As the lithosphere sinks, the rock in the crust is squeezed and the direction of stress changes. As the lithosphere rises, the rock in the crust is stretched and the direction of stress changes again. Similarly, stress occurs in Earth's crust when tectonic plates collide, separate, or scrape past each other. **Figure 3** shows the three main types of stress.

stress the amount of force per unit area that acts on a rock

Compression

The type of stress that squeezes and shortens a body is called *compression*. Compression commonly reduces the amount of space that rock occupies. In addition to reducing the volume of rock, compression pushes rocks higher up or deeper down into the crust. Much of the stress that occurs at or near convergent boundaries, where tectonic plates collide, is compression.

Tension

Another type of stress is tension. *Tension* is stress that stretches and pulls a body apart. When rocks are pulled apart by tension, they tend to become thinner. Much of the stress that occurs at or near divergent boundaries, where tectonic plates pull apart, is tension.

Shear Stress

The third type of stress is shear stress. *Shear stress* distorts a body by pushing parts of the body in opposite directions. Sheared rocks bend, twist, or break apart as they slide past each other. Shear stress is common at transform boundaries, where tectonic plates slide horizontally past each other. However, each type of stress occurs at or near all types of plate boundaries and in various other regions of the crust, too.

Reading Check **Which two kinds of stress pull rock apart? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 3 ▶ Types of Stress

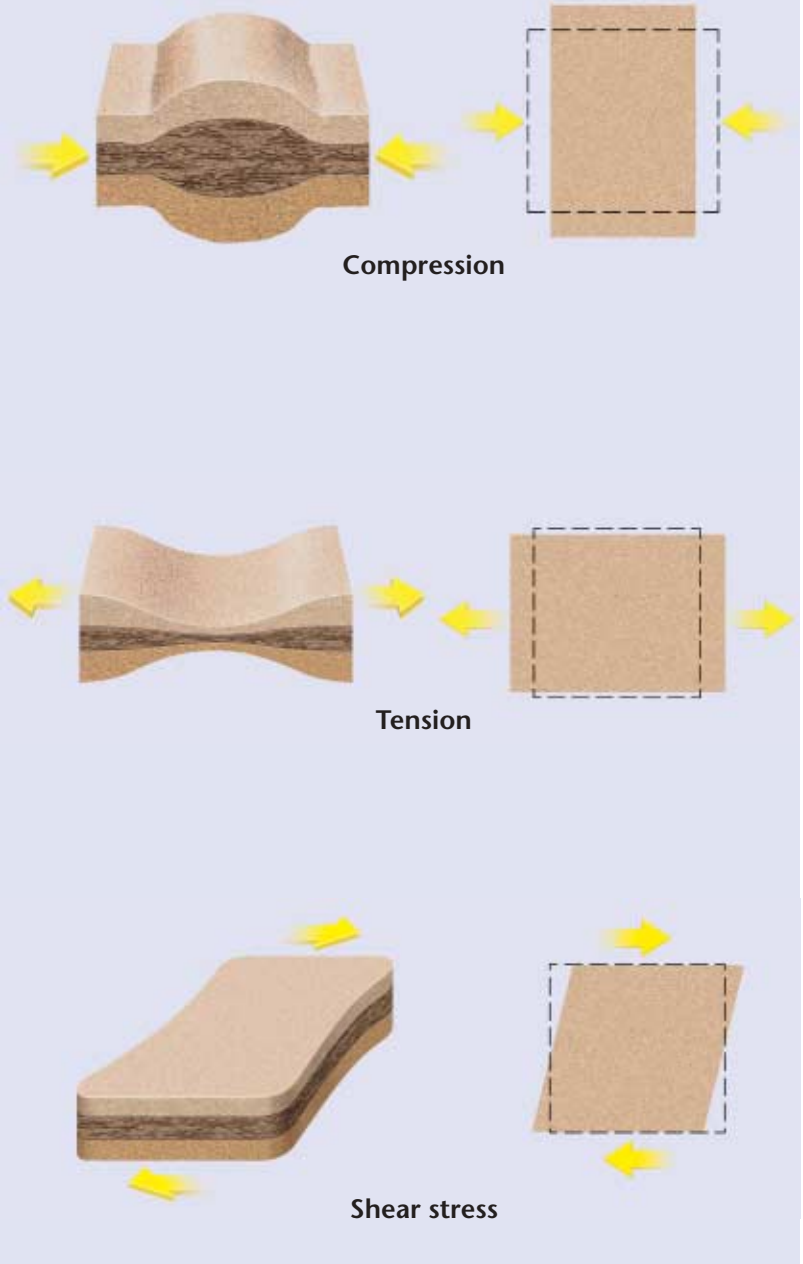


Figure 4 ▶ This rock deformation in Kingman, Arizona, is an example of brittle strain.

strain any change in a rock's shape or volume caused by stress

Strain

When stress is applied to rock, rock may deform. Any change in the shape or volume of rock that results from stress is called **strain.** When stress is applied slowly, the deformed rock may regain its original shape when the stress is removed. However, the amount of stress that rock can withstand without permanently changing shape is limited. This limit varies with the type of rock and the conditions under which the stress is applied. If a stress exceeds the rock's limit, the rock's shape permanently changes.

Types of Permanent Strain

Materials that respond to stress by breaking or fracturing are *brittle*. Brittle strain appears as cracks or fractures, as **Figure 4** shows. *Ductile* materials respond to stress by bending or deforming without breaking. Ductile strain is a change in the volume or shape of rock in which the rock does not crack or fracture. Brittle strain and ductile strain are types of permanent strain.

Factors That Affect Strain

The composition of rock determines whether rock is ductile or brittle. Temperature and pressure also affect how rock deforms. Near Earth's surface, where temperature and pressure are low, rock is likely to deform in a brittle way. At higher temperature and pressure, rock is more likely to deform in a ductile way.

The type of strain that stress causes is determined by the amount and type of stress and by the rate at which stress is applied to rock. The greater the stress on rock is, the more likely rock is to undergo brittle strain. The more quickly stress is applied to rock, the more likely rock is to respond in a brittle way.

QuickLAB 15 min

Modeling Stress and Strain

Procedure

1. Put on a pair of **gloves,** and pick up a 5 cm × 5 cm square of **frozen plastic play putty.** Hold one edge of the frozen putty in each hand.
2. Try to pull the putty apart by pulling the edges away from each other.
3. Push the edges of the frozen putty toward each other. (You may have to reshape the putty between steps.)
4. Push one edge of the frozen putty away from you, and pull the other edge toward you.
5. Repeat steps 2–4, but use a 5 cm × 5 cm square of **warm plastic play putty.**

Analysis

1. What types of stress did you model in steps 2, 3, and 4?
2. Make a table that lists the characteristics of the two substances that you modeled, the stresses that you modeled, and the resulting strain on each model.
3. How does the frozen putty respond to the stress? How does the warm putty's response to the stress differ from the frozen putty's response?

Folds

When rock responds to stress by deforming in a ductile way, folds commonly form. A **fold** is a bend in rock layers that results from stress. A fold is most easily observed where flat layers of rock were compressed or squeezed inward. As stress was applied, the rock layers bent and folded. Cracks sometimes appear in or near a fold, but most commonly the rock layers remain intact. Although a fold commonly results from compression, it can also form as a result of shear stress.

fold a form of ductile strain in which rock layers bend, usually as a result of compression

Anatomy of a Fold

Folds have features by which they can be identified. Scientists use these features to describe folds. The main features of a fold are shown by the illustration in **Figure 5.** The sloping sides of a fold are called *limbs*. The limbs meet at the bend in the rock layers, which is called the *hinge*. Some folds also contain an additional feature. If a fold's structure is such that a plane could slice the fold into two symmetrical halves, the fold is symmetrical. The plane is called the fold's *axial plane*. However, the two halves of a fold are rarely symmetrical.

Many folds bend vertically, but folds can have many other shapes, as shown by the photograph in **Figure 5.** Folds can be asymmetrical. Sometimes, one limb of a fold dips more steeply than the other limb does. If a fold is *overturned,* the fold appears to be lying on its side. Folds can have open shapes or be as tight as a hairpin. A fold's hinge can be a smooth bend or may come to a sharp point. Each fold is unique because the combination of stresses and conditions that caused the fold was unique.

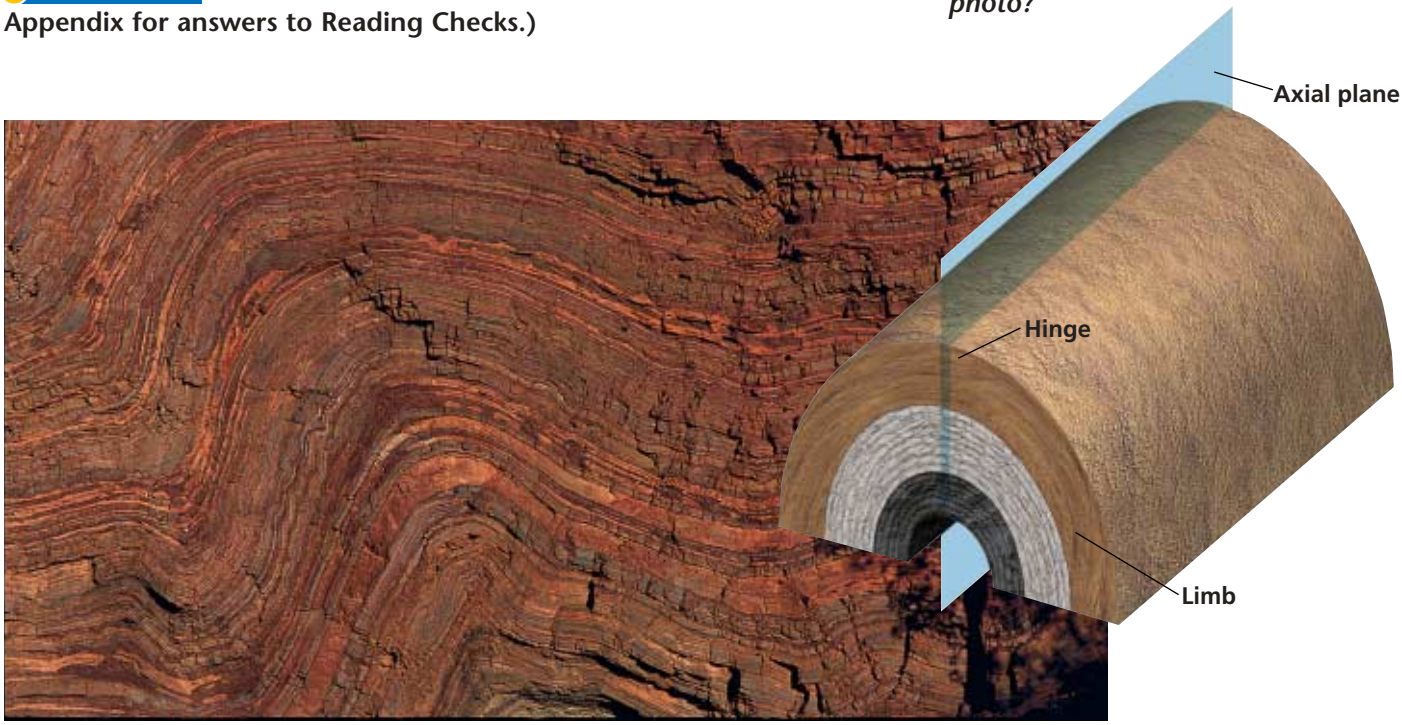
Reading Check **Name two features of a fold. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

MATH PRACTICE

Units of Stress

Two units are commonly used to describe stress or pressure. One unit is the pascal (Pa). A pascal is a measure of force (in newtons) divided by area (in square meters). The other unit of stress is the pound per square inch (psi). If the pressure in a region of Earth's crust is measured as 25 MPa (megapascals) and as 3,626 psi, how many pounds per square inch does 1 MPa equal? (Note: 1 MPa = 1,000,000 Pa)

Figure 5 ▶ Although not every fold is symmetrical, every fold has a hinge and limbs. ***Can you identify the limbs and hinge of each fold in the photo?***



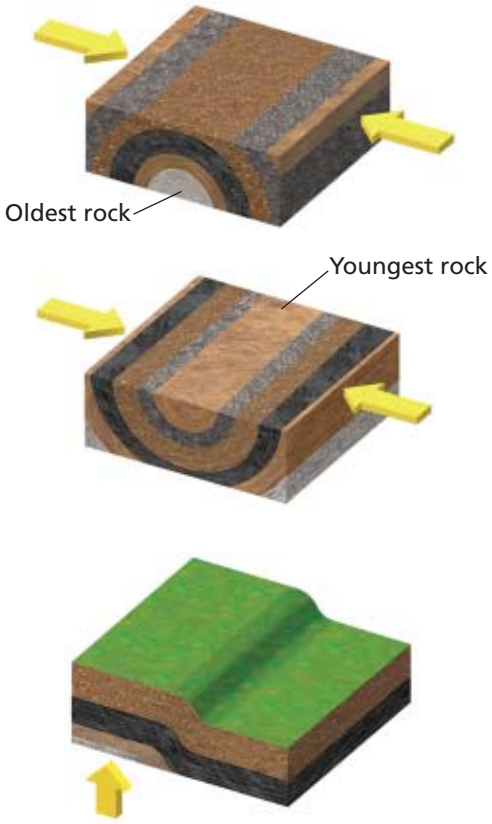


Figure 6 ▶ The three major types of folds are anticlines (top), synclines (middle), and monoclines (bottom).

Types of Folds

To categorize a fold, scientists study the relative ages of the rocks in the fold. The rock layers of the fold are identified by age from youngest to oldest. An *anticline* is a fold in which the oldest layer is in the center of the fold. Anticlines are commonly arch shaped. A *syncline* is a fold in which the youngest layer is in the center of the fold. Synclines are commonly bowl shaped. A *monocline* is a fold in which both limbs are horizontal or almost horizontal. Monoclines form when one part of Earth's crust moves up or down relative to another part. The three major types of folds are shown in **Figure 6.**

Sizes of Folds

Folds, which appear as wavelike structures in rock layers, vary greatly in size. Some folds are small enough to be contained in a hand-held rock specimen. Other folds cover thousands of square kilometers and can be seen only from the air.

Sometimes, a large anticline forms a ridge. A *ridge* is a large, narrow strip of elevated land that can occur near mountains. Nearby, a large syncline may form a valley. The ridges and valleys of the Appalachian Mountains are examples of landforms that were formed by anticlines and synclines.

Connection to ENGINEERING

Oil Traps

Oil and natural gas form where the remains of organisms, especially marine plants, are buried in an environment that prevents the remains from rapidly decomposing. Over millions of years, chemical reactions slowly change the organic remains into oil and natural gas.

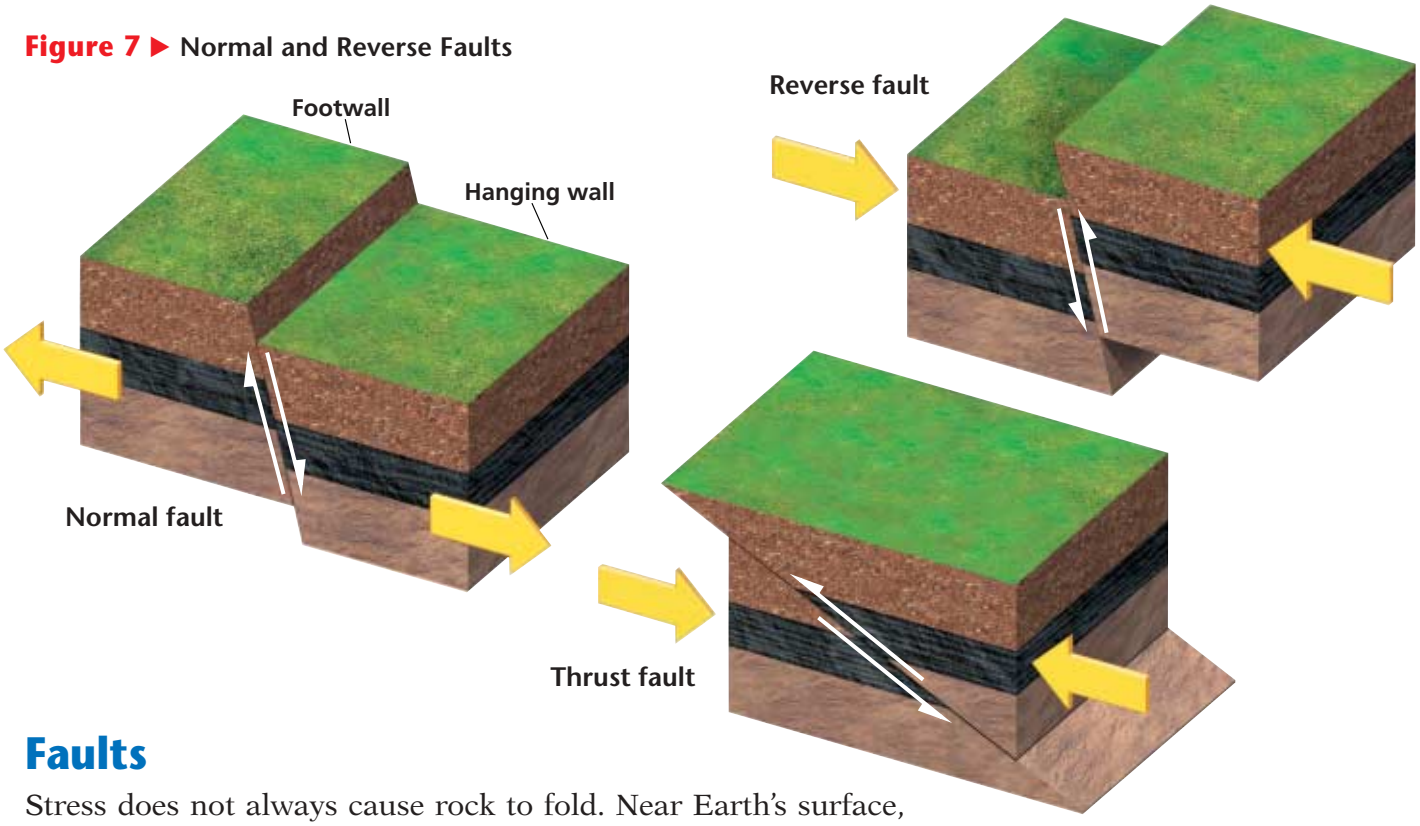
When prospecting for oil and natural gas, oil companies look for porous and permeable rock layers. Porous rock has spaces between rock particles. Permeable rock is rock in which the pore spaces are connected, so fluids can flow through the rock. When a rock layer is both porous and permeable and contains oil or gas, the layer is called a *reservoir*.

Because oil and natural gas are fluids that have low densities, they move upward through rock toward Earth's surface. Oil and gas move through rock layers until they meet an impermeable rock layer or structure, which then traps the oil and gas below it.

In addition to looking for porous and permeable rock layers, petroleum engineers look for rock layers that have been folded. Many folds are anticlines in which layers of impermeable rock overlay layers of permeable rock. Because the limbs of the fold slope upward, the oil and natural gas rise through the permeable layer to the crest of the anticline and are trapped there by the impermeable layer. Engineers can then drill through the impermeable layer to reach the oil or gas reservoir.

This oil pump brings oil and natural gas up to the surface.

Figure 7 ▶ Normal and Reverse Faults



Faults

Stress does not always cause rock to fold. Near Earth's surface, where temperatures and pressure are low, stresses may simply cause rock to break. Breaks in rock are divided into two categories. A break along which there is no movement of the surrounding rock is called a *fracture*. A break along which the surrounding rock moves is called a **fault.** The surface or plane along which the motion occurs is called the *fault plane*. In a nonvertical fault, the *hanging wall* is the rock above the fault plane. The *footwall* is the rock below the fault plane.

fault a break in a body of rock along which one block slides relative to another; a form of brittle strain

Normal Faults

As shown in **Figure 7,** a *normal fault* is a fault in which the hanging wall moves downward relative to the footwall. Normal faults commonly form at divergent boundaries, where the crust is being pulled apart by tension. Normal faults may occur as a series of parallel fault lines, forming steep, steplike landforms. The Great Rift Valley of East Africa formed by large-scale normal faulting.

Reverse Faults

When compression causes the hanging wall to move upward relative to the footwall, also shown in **Figure 7,** a *reverse fault* forms. A *thrust fault* is a special type of reverse fault in which the fault plane is at a low angle or is nearly horizontal. Because of the low angle of the fault plane, the rock of the hanging wall is pushed up and over the rock of the footwall. Reverse faults and thrust faults are common in steep mountain ranges, such as the Rockies and the Alps.

Reading Check **How does a thrust fault differ from a reverse fault? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Folding and Faulting
SciLinks code: HQ60589

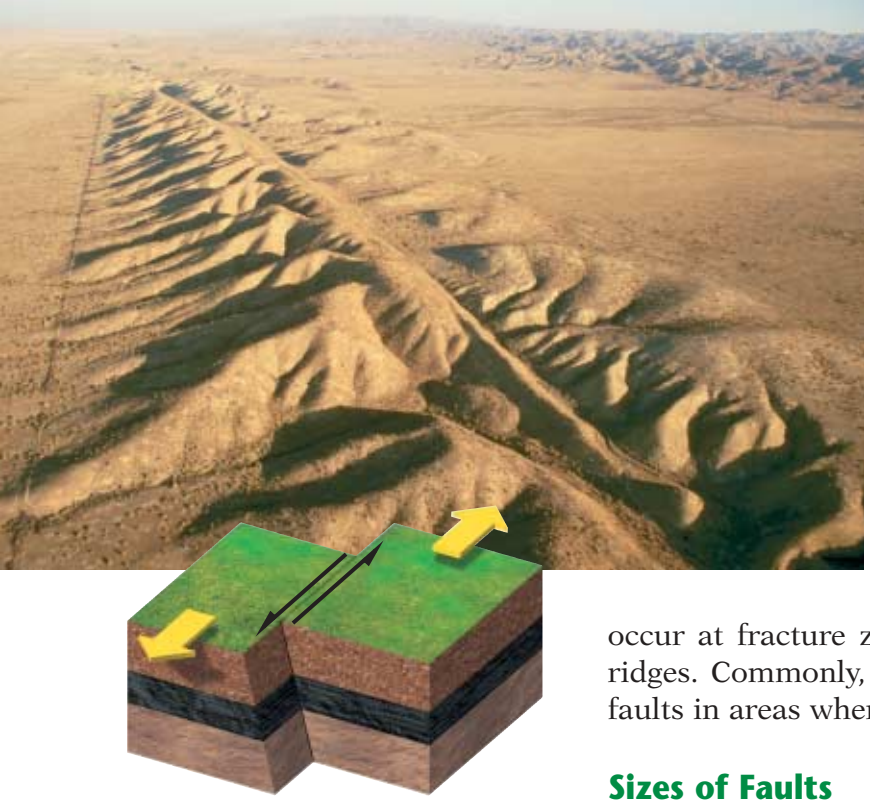


Figure 8 ▶ The San Andreas fault system stretches more than 1,200 km across California and is the result of two tectonic plates moving in different directions.

Strike-Slip Faults

In a *strike-slip fault,* the rock on either side of the fault plane slides horizontally in response to shear stress. Strike-slip faults got their name because they slide, or *slip,* parallel to the direction of the length, or *strike*, of the fault. Some strike-slip fault planes are vertical, but many are sloped.

Strike-slip faults commonly occur at transform boundaries, where tectonic plates grind past each other as they move in opposite directions. These motions cause shear stress on the rocks at the edges of the plates. Strike-slip faults also occur at fracture zones between offset segments of mid-ocean ridges. Commonly, strike-slip faults occur as groups of smaller faults in areas where large-scale deformation is happening.

Sizes of Faults

Like folds, faults vary greatly in size. Some faults are so small that they affect only a few layers of rock in a small region. Other faults are thousands of kilometers long and may extend several kilometers below Earth's surface. Generally, large faults that cover thousands of kilometers are composed of systems of many smaller, related faults, rather than of a single fault. The San Andreas fault in California, shown in **Figure 8,** is an example of a large fault system.

Section 1 Review

1. **Summarize** how isostatic adjustments affect isostasy.
2. **Identify and describe** three types of stress.
3. **Compare** stress and strain.
4. **Describe** one type of strain that results when rock responds to stress by permanently deforming without breaking.
5. **Identify** features that all types of folds share and features that only some types of folds have.
6. **Describe** four types of faults.
7. **Compare** folding and faulting as responses to stress.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Applying Ideas** Why is faulting most likely to occur near Earth's surface and not deep within Earth?
9. **Making Comparisons** How would the isostatic adjustment that results from the melting of glaciers differ from the isostatic adjustment that may occur when a large river empties into the ocean?
10. **Analyzing Relationships** You are examining a rock outcrop that shows a fold in which both limbs are horizontal but occur at different elevations. What type of fold does this outcrop show, and what can you say about the type of stress that the rock underwent?
11. **Predicting Consequences** You are watching a lab experiment in which a rock sample is being gently heated and slowly bent. Would you expect the rock to fold or to fracture? Explain your reasoning.

CONCEPT MAPPING

12. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *stress, compression, strain, tension, shear stress, folds,* and *faults.*

Section 2

How Mountains Form

A mountain is the most extreme type of deformation. Mount Everest, whose elevation is more than 8 km above sea level, is Earth's highest mountain. Forces inside Earth cause Mount Everest to grow taller every year. Mount St. Helens, a volcanic mountain, captured the world's attention in 1980 when its explosive eruption devastated the surrounding area.

OBJECTIVES

- **Identify** the types of plate collisions that form mountains.
- **Identify** four types of mountains.
- **Compare** how folded and fault-block mountains form.

KEY TERMS

mountain range
folded mountain
fault-block mountain
dome mountain

Mountain Ranges and Systems

A group of adjacent mountains that are related to each other in shape and structure is called a **mountain range.** Mount Everest is part of the Great Himalaya Range, and Mount St. Helens is part of the Cascade Range. A group of mountain ranges that are adjacent is called a *mountain system.* In the eastern United States, for example, the Great Smoky, Blue Ridge, Cumberland, and Green mountain ranges make up the Appalachian mountain system.

The largest mountain systems are part of two larger systems called *mountain belts.* Earth's two major mountain belts, the circum-Pacific belt and the Eurasian-Melanesian belt, are shown in **Figure 1.** The circum-Pacific belt forms a ring around the Pacific Ocean. The Eurasian-Melanesian belt runs from the Pacific islands through Asia and southern Europe and into northwestern Africa.

mountain range a series of mountains that are closely related in orientation, age, and mode of formation

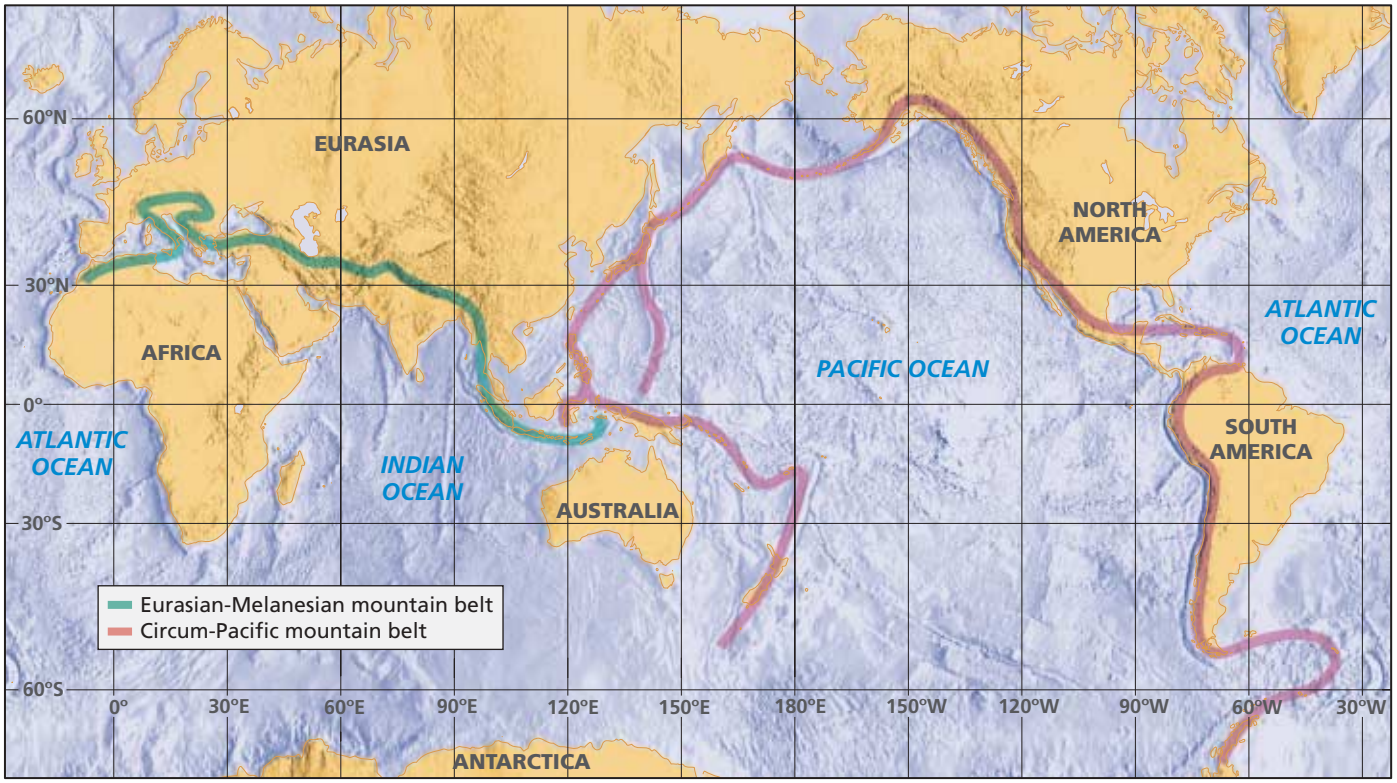


Figure 1 ▶ Most mountain ranges lie along either the Eurasian-Melanesian mountain belt or the circum-Pacific mountain belt.

Plate Tectonics and Mountains

Both the circum-Pacific and the Eurasian-Melanesian mountain belts are located along convergent plate boundaries. Scientists think that the location of these two mountain belts provides evidence that most mountains form as a result of collisions between tectonic plates. Some mountains, such as the Appalachians, do not lie along active convergent plate boundaries. However, evidence indicates that the places at which these ranges formed were previously active plate boundaries.

Collisions Between Continental and Oceanic Crust

Some mountains form when oceanic lithosphere and continental lithosphere collide at convergent plate boundaries. When the moving plates collide, the oceanic lithosphere subducts beneath the continental lithosphere, as shown in **Figure 2.** This type of collision produces such large-scale deformation of rock that high mountains are uplifted. In addition, the subduction of the oceanic lithosphere causes partial melting of the overlying mantle and crust. This melting produces magma that may eventually erupt to form volcanic mountains on Earth's surface. The mountains of the Cascade Range in the northwest region of the United States formed in this way. The Andes mountains on the western coast of South America are another example of mountains that formed by this type of collision.

Some mountains at the boundary between continental lithosphere and oceanic lithosphere may form by a different process. As the oceanic lithosphere subducts, pieces of crust called *terranes* are scraped off. These terranes then become part of the continent and may form mountains.

Graphic Organizer

Cause-and-Effect Map

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Cause-and-Effect Map" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the effect with "Mountain formation." Then, fill in the map with causes of mountain formation and details about why mountains form.

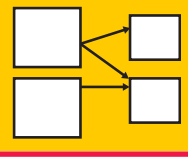
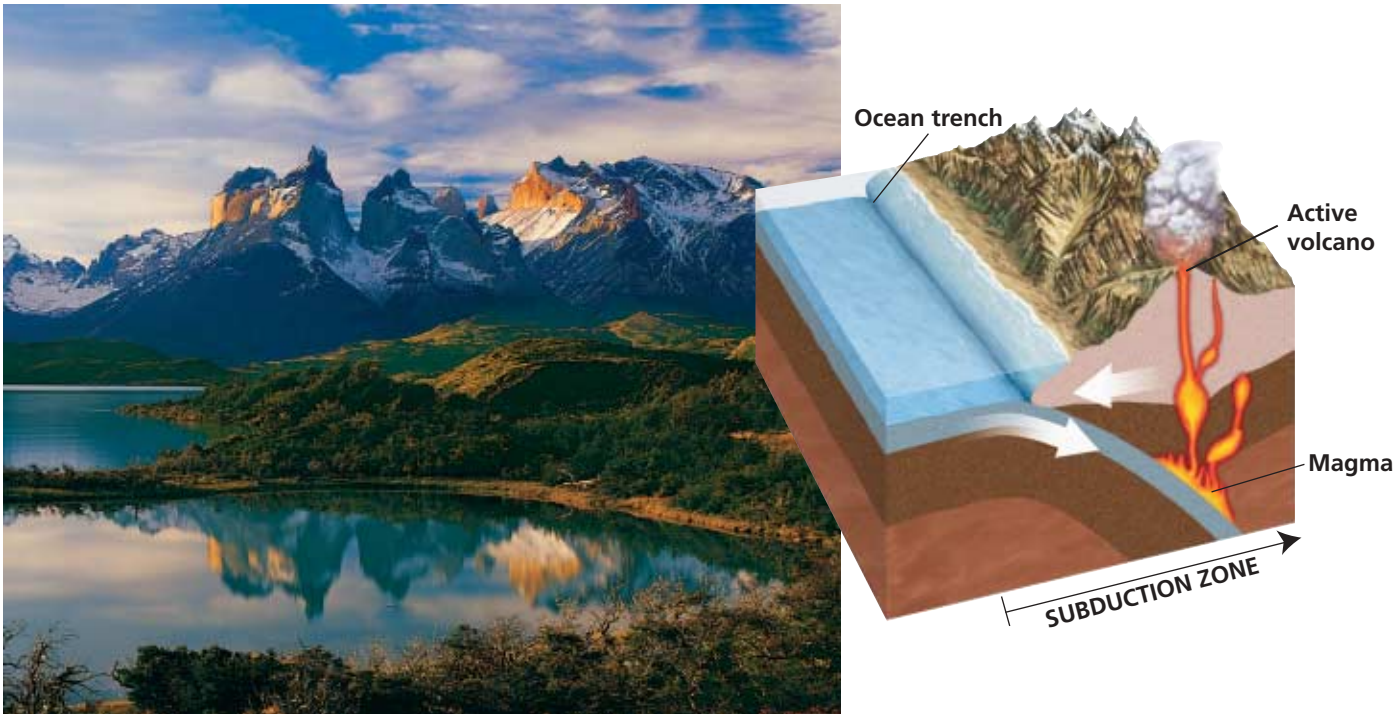


Figure 2 ▶ The Andes, shown below, are being uplifted as the Pacific plate subducts beneath the South American plate.



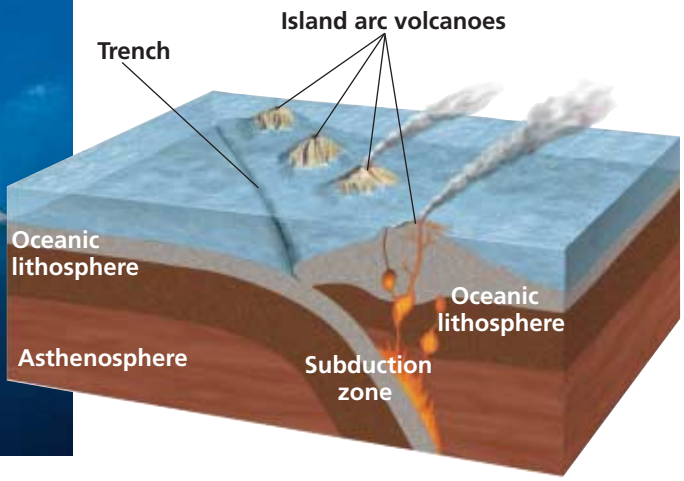


Figure 3 ▶ The Mariana Islands in the North Pacific Ocean are volcanic mountains that formed by the collision of two oceanic plates.

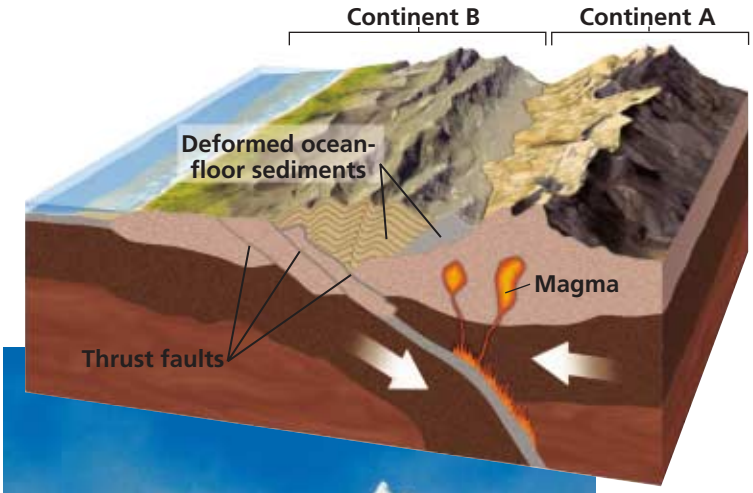
Collisions Between Oceanic Crust and Oceanic Crust

Volcanic mountains commonly form where two plates whose edges consist of oceanic lithosphere collide. In this collision, the denser oceanic plate subducts beneath the other oceanic plate, as shown in **Figure 3.** As the denser oceanic plate subducts, fluids from the subducting lithosphere cause partial melting of the overlying mantle and crust. The resulting magma rises and breaks through the oceanic lithosphere. These eruptions of magma form an arc of volcanic mountains on the ocean floor. The Mariana Islands are the peaks of volcanic mountains that rose above sea level.

Figure 4 ▶ The Himalayas formed when India collided with Eurasia.

Collisions Between Continents

Mountains can also form when two continents collide, as **Figure 4** shows. The Himalaya Mountains formed from such a collision. About 100 million years ago, India broke apart from Africa and Antarctica and became a separate continent. The Indian plate then began moving north toward Eurasia. The oceanic lithosphere of the Indian plate subducted beneath the Eurasian plate. This subduction continued until the continental lithosphere of India collided with the continental lithosphere of Eurasia. Because the two continents have equally dense lithosphere, subduction stopped, but the collision continued. The intense deformation that resulted from the collision uplifted the Himalayas. Because the plates are still colliding, the Himalayas are still growing taller.



Reading Check **Why are the Himalayas growing taller today? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Types of Mountains
SciLinks code: HQ61568

Types of Mountains

Mountains are more than just elevated parts of Earth's crust. Mountains are complicated structures whose rock formations provide evidence of the stresses that created the mountains. Scientists classify mountains according to the way in which the crust was deformed and shaped by mountain-building stresses. Examples of several types of mountains are shown in **Figure 5.**

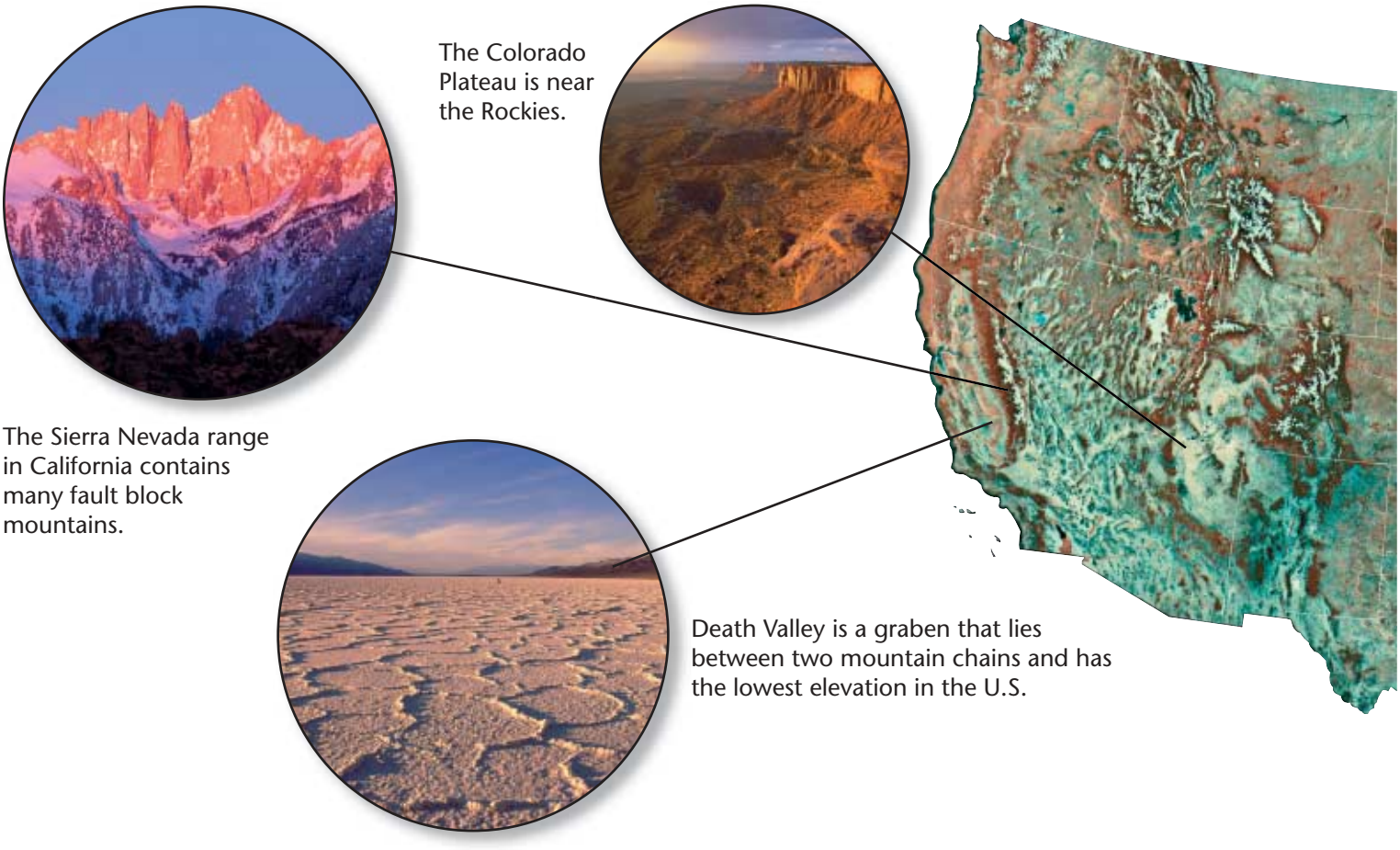
Folded Mountains and Plateaus

The highest mountain ranges in the world consist of folded mountains that form when continents collide. **Folded mountains** form when tectonic movements squeeze rock layers together into accordion-like folds. Parts of the Alps, the Himalayas, the Appalachians, and Russia's Ural Mountains consist of very large and complex folds.

folded mountain a mountain that forms when rock layers are squeezed together and uplifted

The same stresses that form folded mountains also uplift plateaus. *Plateaus* are large, flat areas of rock high above sea level. Most plateaus form when thick, horizontal layers of rock are slowly uplifted so that the layers remain flat instead of faulting and folding. Most plateaus are located near mountain ranges. For example, the Tibetan Plateau is next to the Himalaya Mountains, and the Colorado Plateau is next to the Rockies. Plateaus can also form when layers of molten rock harden and pile up on Earth's surface or when large areas of rock are eroded.

Figure 5 ▶ Mountains in the United States



Fault-Block Mountains and Grabens

Where parts of Earth's crust have been stretched and broken into large blocks, faulting may cause the blocks to tilt and drop relative to other blocks. The relatively higher blocks form **fault-block mountains.** The Sierra Nevada range of California consists of many fault-block mountains.

The same type of faulting that forms fault-block mountains also forms long, narrow valleys called *grabens*. Grabens develop when steep faults break the crust into blocks and one block slips downward relative to the surrounding blocks. Grabens and fault-block mountain ranges commonly occur together. For example, the Basin and Range Province of the western United States consists of grabens separated by fault-block mountain ranges.

fault-block mountain a mountain that forms where faults break Earth's crust into large blocks and some blocks drop down relative to other blocks

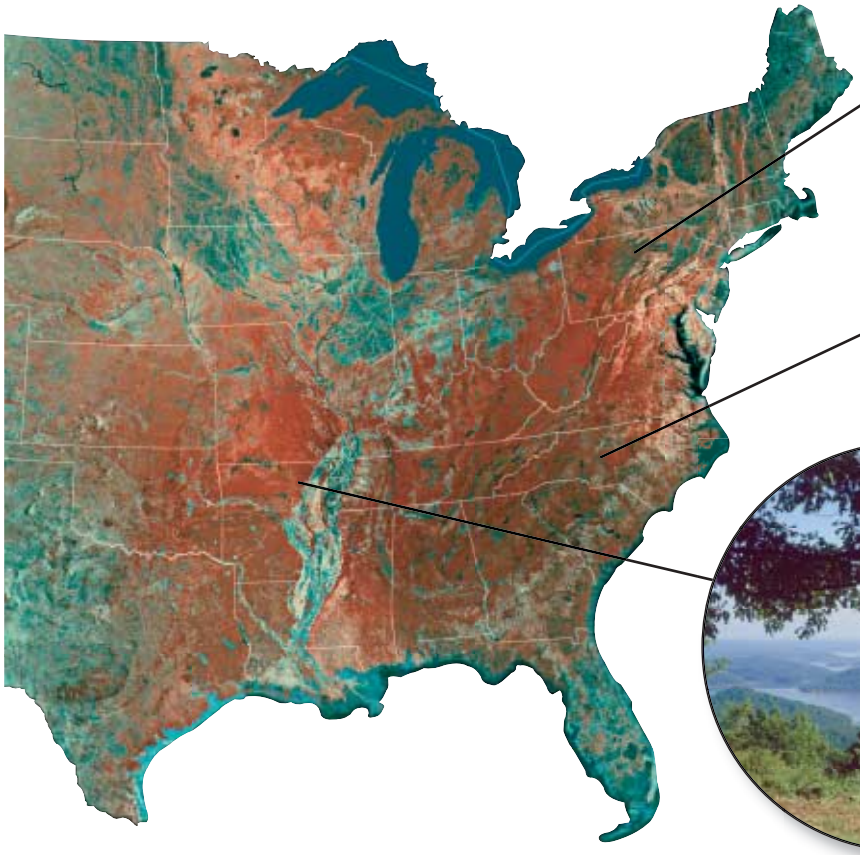
dome mountain a circular or elliptical, almost symmetrical elevation or structure in which the stratified rock slopes downward gently from the central point of folding

Dome Mountains

A rare type of mountain forms when magma rises through the crust and pushes up the rock layers above the magma. The result is a **dome mountain,** a circular structure made of rock layers that slope gently away from a central point. Dome mountains may also form when tectonic forces gently uplift rock layers. The Black Hills of South Dakota and the Adirondack Mountains of New York are examples of dome mountains.

Reading Check **Name three types of mountains found in the United States. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

This dome mountain is part of the Adirondacks in New York.



The Appalachian Mountains stretch from Georgia to Canada and contain many older, more rounded mountains.

The Ouachita Plateau in Arkansas is much wetter than the Colorado Plateau is.

Figure 6 ▶ Mount St. Helens (front) and Mount Rainier (back) in the Cascade Range of the western United States are volcanic mountains that formed along a convergent boundary.

Volcanic Mountains

Mountains that form when magma erupts onto Earth's surface are called *volcanic mountains*. Volcanic mountains commonly form along convergent plate boundaries. The Cascade Range of Washington, Oregon, and northern California is composed of this type of volcanic mountain, two of which are shown in **Figure 6.**

Some of the largest volcanic mountains are part of the mid-ocean ridges along divergent plate boundaries. Magma rising to Earth's surface at divergent boundaries makes mid-ocean ridges volcanically active areas. The peaks of these volcanic mountains sometimes rise above sea level to form volcanic islands, such as the Azores in the North Atlantic Ocean.

Other large volcanic mountains form on the ocean floor at hot spots. *Hot spots* are volcanically active areas that lie far from tectonic plate boundaries. These areas seem to correspond to places where hot material rises through Earth's interior and reaches the lithosphere. The Hawaiian Islands are an example of this type of volcanic mountain. The main island of Hawaii is a volcanic mountain that reaches almost 9 km above the ocean floor and has a base that is more than 160 km wide.

Section 2 Review

1. **Describe** three types of tectonic plate collisions that form mountains.
2. **Summarize** the process by which folded mountains form.
3. **Compare** how plateaus form with how folded mountains form.
4. **Describe** the formation of fault-block mountains.
5. **Explain** how dome mountains form.
6. **Explain** how volcanic mountains form.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Connections** Explain two ways in which volcanic mountains might get smaller.
8. **Making Connections** Explain why fault-block mountains and grabens are commonly found near each other.
9. **Analyzing Ideas** You are standing on a large, flat area of land and are examining the nearby mountains. You notice that many of the mountains have large folds. Are you standing on a plateau or a graben? Explain your answer.
10. **Making Predictions** Igneous rocks form from cooled magma. Near what types of mountains would you expect to find new igneous rocks?

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *mountain range, fault-block mountains, mountain belt, folded mountains, mountain system, dome mountains,* and *volcanic mountains*.

Chapter 11 Highlights

Sections

1 How Rock Deforms

Key Terms

deformation, 271
isostasy, 271
stress, 273
strain, 274
fold, 275
fault, 277

Key Concepts

- Tectonic plate movement and isostatic adjustments cause stress on the rock in Earth's crust.
- Stress can squeeze rock together, pull rock apart, and bend and twist rock.
- Stress on rock can cause strain, or the deformation of rock. Rock can deform by folding or by breaking to form fractures or faults.
- Three types of faults occur in rock: normal faults, reverse faults (including thrust faults), and strike-slip faults.

2 How Mountains Form

mountain range, 279
folded mountain, 282
fault-block mountain, 283
dome mountain, 283

- Mountains make up mountain ranges, which, in turn, make up mountain systems. The largest mountain systems form two major mountain belts.
- Four types of mountains are folded mountains, fault-block mountains, dome mountains, and volcanic mountains.
- Mountains commonly form as the result of the collision of tectonic plates.
- A mountain is classified according to the way in which the crust deforms when the mountain forms.

Chapter 11 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *isostasy*
2. *compression*
3. *shear stress*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *stress* and *strain*
5. *fold* and *fault*
6. *syncline* and *monocline*
7. *dome mountains* and *volcanic mountains*
8. *folded mountains* and *fault-block mountains*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. When the weight of an area of Earth's crust increases, the lithosphere
   a. sinks. **c.** rises.
   b. melts. **d.** collides.

10. The force per unit area that changes the shape and volume of rock is
    a. footwall. **c.** rising.
    b. isostasy. **d.** stress.

11. Shear stress
    a. bends, twists, or breaks rock.
    b. causes isostasy.
    c. causes rock to melt.
    d. causes rock to expand.

12. When stress is applied under conditions of high pressure and high temperature, rock is more likely to
    a. fracture. **c.** fault.
    b. sink. **d.** fold.

13. Folds in which both limbs remain horizontal are called
    a. monoclines. **c.** synclines.
    b. fractures. **d.** anticlines.

14. When a fault is not vertical, the rock above the fault plane makes up the
    a. tension. **c.** hanging wall.
    b. footwall. **d.** compression.

15. A fault in which the rock on either side of the fault plane moves horizontally in nearly opposite directions is called a
    a. normal fault. **c.** strike-slip fault.
    b. reverse fault. **d.** thrust fault.

16. The largest mountain systems are part of still larger systems called
    a. continental margins.
    b. ranges.
    c. belts.
    d. synclines.

17. Large areas of flat-topped rock high above the surrounding landscape are
    a. grabens. **c.** hanging walls.
    b. footwalls. **d.** plateaus.

Short Answer

18. Name two types of deformation in Earth's crust, and explain how each type occurs.

19. Explain how to identify an anticline.

20. Identify the two major mountain belts on Earth.

21. Describe how the various types of mountains are categorized.

22. Identify the two forces that are kept in balance by isostatic adjustments.

23. Compare the features of dome mountains with those of fault-block mountains.

Critical Thinking

24. Evaluating Ideas If thick ice sheets covered large parts of Earth's continents again, how would you expect the lithosphere to respond to the added weight of the continental ice sheets? Explain your answer.

25. Analyzing Relationships When the Indian plate collided with the Eurasian plate and produced the Himalaya Mountains, which type of stress most likely occurred? Which type of stress is most likely occurring along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge? Which type of stress would you expect to find along the San Andreas fault? Explain your answers.

26. Making Predictions If the force that causes a rock to deform slightly begins to ease, what may happen to the rock? What might happen if the force causing the deformation became greater?

27. Analyzing Processes Why do you think that dome mountains do not always become volcanic mountains?

Concept Mapping

28. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *stress, strain, brittle, ductile, folds, fault, normal fault, reverse fault, thrust fault,* and *strike-slip fault*.

Math Skills

29. Making Calculations Scientists calculate that parts of the Himalayas are growing at a rate of 6.1 mm per year. At this rate, in how many years will the Himalayas have grown 1 m taller?

30. Analyzing Data Rock stress is measured as 48 MPa at point A below Earth's surface. At point B nearby, stress is measured as 12 MPa. What percentage of the stress at point A is the stress at point B equal to?

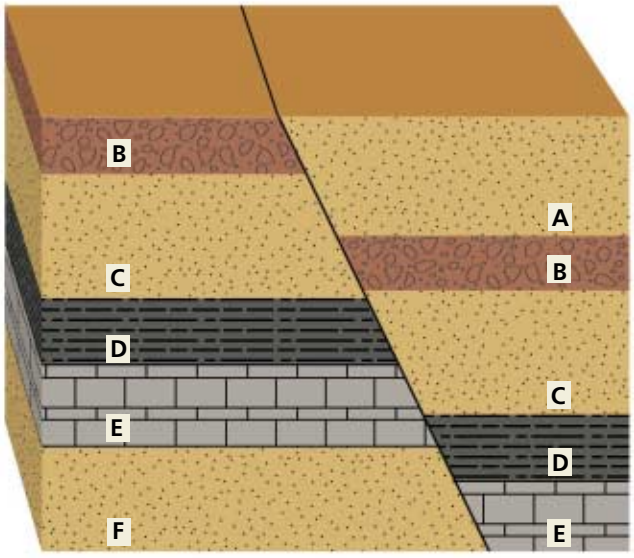
Writing Skills

31. Creative Writing Write a short story from the perspective of a rock that is being deformed. Describe the stresses that are affecting the rock and the final result of the stress.

32. Writing from Research Look for photos or illustrations of folding and faulting in a particular area. Then, research the geologic history of the area, and write a report based on your findings. Use any photos or drawings that you find to illustrate your report.

Interpreting Graphics

The diagram below shows a fault. Use the diagram below to answer the questions that follow.



33. Is Block 2 a footwall or a hanging wall? Explain your answer.

34. What type of fault is illustrated? Explain your answer.

35. What type of stress generally causes this type of fault?

Chapter 11 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–4): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 Where are most plateaus located?
- **A.** near mountain ranges
- **B.** bordering ocean basins
- **C.** beneath grabens
- **D.** alongside diverging boundaries

2 Which of the following features form where parts of the crust have been broken by faults?
- **F.** monoclines
- **G.** plateaus
- **H.** synclines
- **I.** grabens

3 Which of the following statements describes the formation of rock along strike-slip faults?
- **A.** Rock on either side of the fault plane slides vertically.
- **B.** Rock on either side of the fault plane slides horizontally.
- **C.** Rock in the hanging wall is pushed up and over the rock of the footwall.
- **D.** Rock in the hanging wall moves down relative to the footwall.

4 Which does not result in mountain formation?
- **F.** collisions between continental and oceanic crust
- **G.** subduction of one oceanic plate beneath another oceanic plate
- **H.** deposition and isostasy
- **I.** deformation caused by collisions between two or more continents

Directions (5–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

5 What is the term for a condition of gravitational equilibrium in Earth's crust?

6 What is the term for a type of stress that squeezes and shortens a body?

7 As a volcanic mountain range is built, isostatic adjustment will cause the crust beneath the mountain range to do what?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–10): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Stress and Strain

Stress is defined as the amount of force per unit area on a rock. When enough stress is placed on a rock, the rock becomes strained. This strain causes the rock to deform, usually by bending and breaking. For example, if you put a small amount of pressure on the ends of a drinking straw, the straw may not bend—even though you have put stress on it. However, when you put enough pressure on it, the straw bends, or becomes strained.

One example of stress is when tectonic plates collide. When plates collide, a large amount of stress is placed on the rocks that make up the plate, especially the rocks at the edge of the plates involved in the collision. Because of the stress, these rocks become extremely strained. In fact, even the shapes of the tectonic plates can change as a result of these powerful collisions.

8 Based on the passage, which of the following statements is not true?
- **A.** Strain can cause a rock to deform by bending or breaking.
- **B.** Rocks, like drinking straws, will not bend when pressure is applied to them.
- **C.** Stress is defined as amount of force per unit area that is put on a rock.
- **D.** A large amount of stress is placed on the rocks involved in tectonic plate collisions.

9 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
- **F.** The stress of tectonic plate collisions often creates large, smooth plains of rock.
- **G.** The stress of tectonic plate collisions often creates large, mountain chains.
- **H.** Bending a drinking straw requires the same amount of pressure that is needed to bend a rock.
- **I.** The only time a rock has stress is when the rock is involved in a tectonic collision.

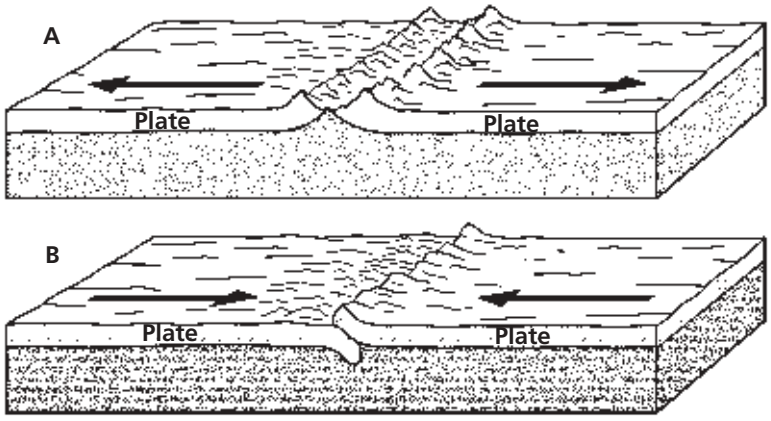
10 What happens to rocks when plates collide?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–14): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagrams below show a divergent and a convergent plate boundary. Use these diagrams to answer questions 11 and 12.

Divergent and Convergent Plate Boundaries



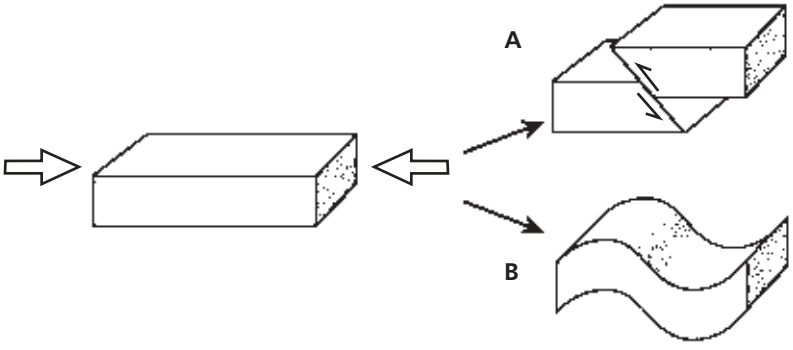
11 Which of the following is not likely to be found at or occur at the boundary found in diagram A?

A. volcanoes
B. lava flows
C. earthquakes
D. subduction

12 How does the subduction of the oceanic crust shown in diagram B produce volcanic mountains?

The diagram below shows two possible outcomes when pressure, which is represented by the large arrows, is applied to the rock on the left. Use this diagram to answer questions 13 and 14.

Rock Deformation



13 What type of deformation is seen in the rock labeled A?

F. brittle
G. ductile
H. folding
I. monocline

14 Describe the type of rock deformation shown in Figure B. Under what conditions is this type of deformation likely to occur?

Test TIP

Carefully study all of the details of a diagram before answering the question or questions that refer to it.

Chapter 11

Making Models Lab

Objectives

- **Model** collisions between continents.
- **Explain** how mountains form at convergent boundaries.

Materials

- blocks, wooden, 2.5 cm × 2.5 cm × 6 cm
- bobby pins, long (5)
- cardboard, thick, 15 cm × 30 cm
- napkins, paper, light- and dark-colored
- paper, adding-machine, 6 cm × 35 cm
- ruler, metric
- scissors
- tape, masking

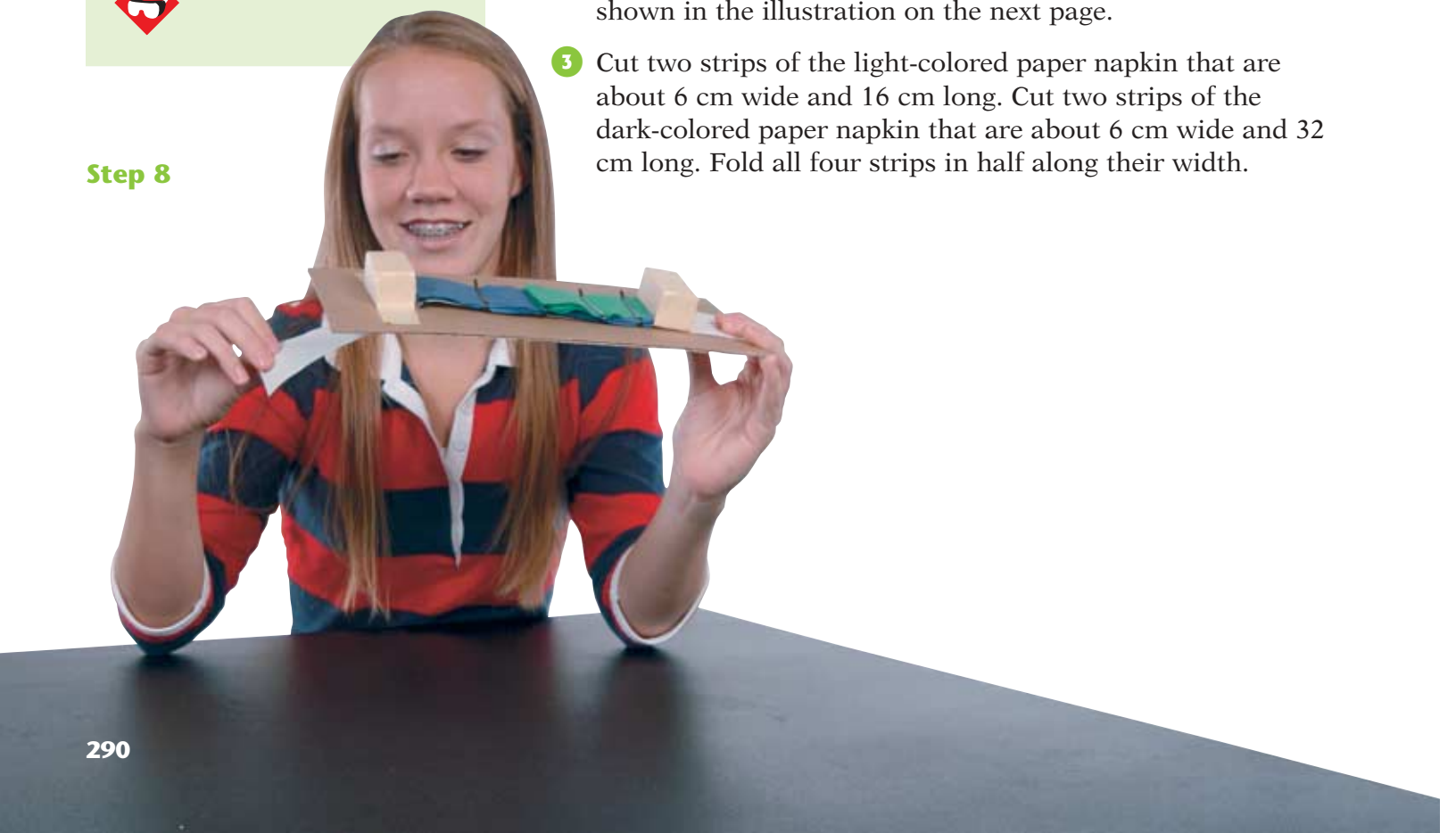
Safety

Continental Collisions

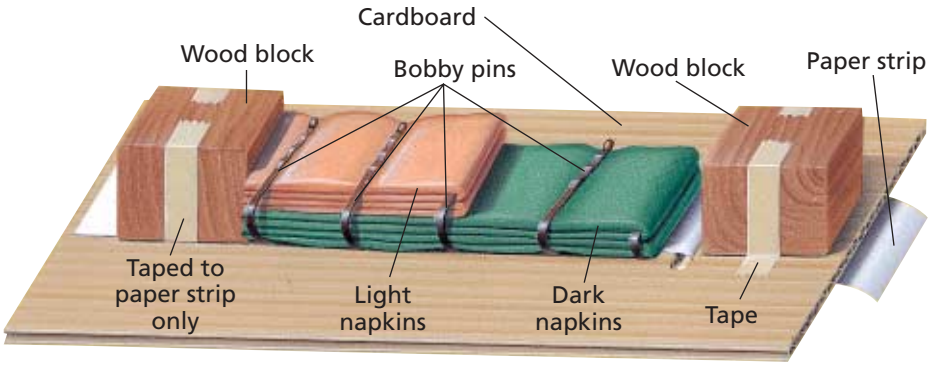
When the subcontinent of India broke away from Africa and Antarctica and began to move northward toward Eurasia, the oceanic crust on the northern side of India began to subduct beneath the Eurasian plate. The deformation of the crust resulted in the formation of the Himalaya Mountains. Earthquakes in the Himalayan region suggest that India is still pushing against Eurasia. In this lab, you will create a model to help explain how the Himalaya Mountains formed as a result of the collision of the Indian and Eurasian tectonic plates.

PROCEDURE

1. To assemble the continental-collision model, cut a 7 cm slit in the cardboard. The slit should be about 6 cm from (and parallel to) one of the short edges of the cardboard. Cut the slit wide enough such that the adding-machine paper will feed through the slit without being loose.
2. Securely tape one wood block along the slit between the slit and the near edge of the cardboard. Tape the other block across the paper strip about 6 cm from one end of the paper. The blocks should be parallel to one another, as shown in the illustration on the next page.
3. Cut two strips of the light-colored paper napkin that are about 6 cm wide and 16 cm long. Cut two strips of the dark-colored paper napkin that are about 6 cm wide and 32 cm long. Fold all four strips in half along their width.



Step 8



4. Stack the napkin strips on top of each other such that all of the folds are along the same side. Place the two dark-colored napkins on the bottom.
5. Place the napkin strips lengthwise on the paper strip. The nonfolded ends of the napkin strips should be butted up against the wood block that is taped to the paper strip.
6. Using the bobby pins, attach the napkins to the paper strip, as shown in the illustration above.
7. Push the long end of the paper strip through the slit in the cardboard until the first fold of the napkin rests against the fixed wood block.
8. Hold the cardboard at about eye level, and pull down gently on the paper strip. You may need a partner's help. Observe what happens as the dark-colored napkins contact the fixed wood block and as you continue to pull down on the paper strip. Stop pulling when you feel resistance from the strip.

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

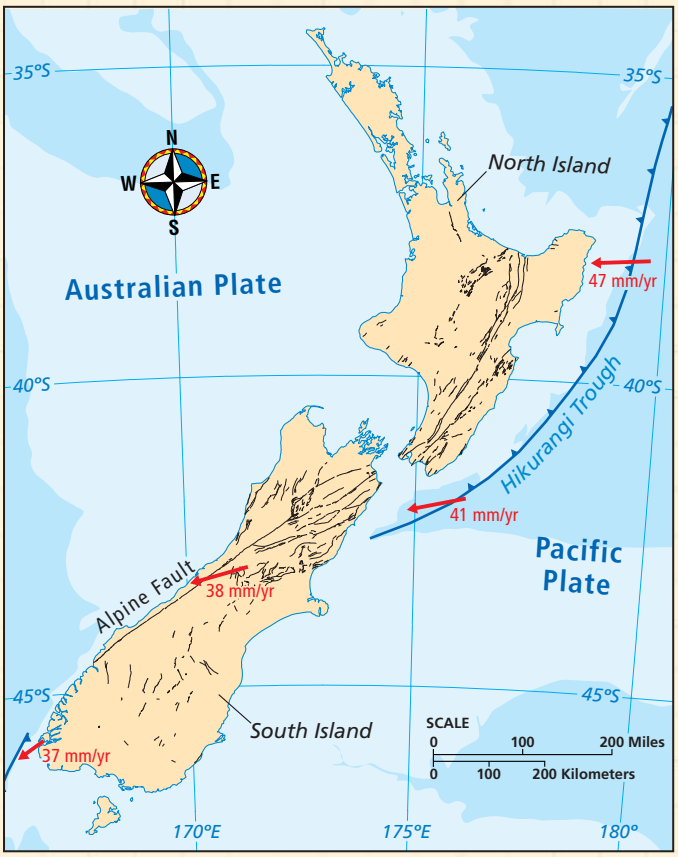
1. **Evaluating Methods** Explain what is represented by the dark napkins, the light napkins, and the wood blocks.
2. **Analyzing Processes** What plate-tectonics process is represented by the motion of the paper strip in the model? Explain your answer.
3. **Applying Ideas** What type of mountain would result from the kind of collision shown by the model?
4. **Evaluating Models** Explain how the process modeled here differs from the way the Himalaya Mountains formed.

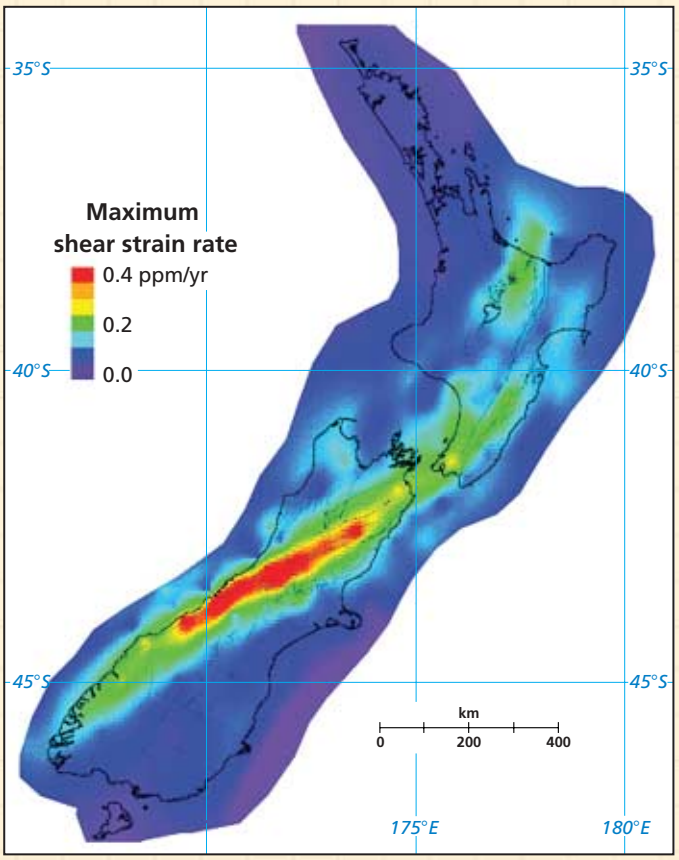
Extension

1. **Analyzing Data** Obtain a world map of earthquake epicenters. Study the map. Describe the pattern of epicenters in the Himalayan region. Does the pattern suggest that the Himalaya Mountains are still growing?
2. **Writing from Research** Read about the breakup of Gondwanaland and the movement of India toward the Northern hemisphere. Write about stages in India's movement. List the time frame in which each important event occurred.

MAPS in Action

Shear Strain in New Zealand





Map Skills Activity

The map above shows the plate boundary zone of New Zealand. In this region, the Australian plate is moving north, while the Pacific plate is moving west. These complex plate movements create areas of tension, compression, and shear stress, which result in strain. Strain is measured in parts per million (ppm) per year (yr). The map on the right shows strain in New Zealand. Use the two maps to answer the questions below.

1. **Using a Key** What is the highest amount of shear strain shown on the map?
2. **Identifying Locations** Using latitude and longitude, describe the location of the area that has the highest amount of shear strain.
3. **Using a Key** What is the approximate length of the area of maximum shear strain?
4. **Understanding Relationships** What type of plate boundary is located along the east coast of the North Island? Explain your answer.
5. **Comparing Areas** In what areas might you expect to find compression? Explain your answer.
6. **Making Inferences** What type of fault is the Alpine Fault? Explain your answer.
7. **Drawing Conclusions** A mountain range known as the *Southern Alps* runs through the center of the South Island. What type of mountains do you think the Southern Alps are? Explain your answer.

The Disappearing Mediterranean

Two of the most breathtaking regions of the world are the Alps and the Mediterranean. The Alps, considered to be among Earth's most beautiful mountains, have become a vast natural playground for skiers, hikers, and climbers. The Mediterranean plays host to travelers from around the world who wish to sample the diverse cultures, balmy climate, and famous beach resorts that surround the Mediterranean Sea. Local residents depend on the sea for their economic well-being.

Push and Pull

The same natural forces that uplifted the Alps are slowly swallowing up the Mediterranean. The Alps were formed—and are still being shaped—by the collision of two tectonic plates. Italy, part of which rides on the African plate, collided with Eurasia sometime in the past. The collision formed the Alps, but it did not stop the movement of the African plate.

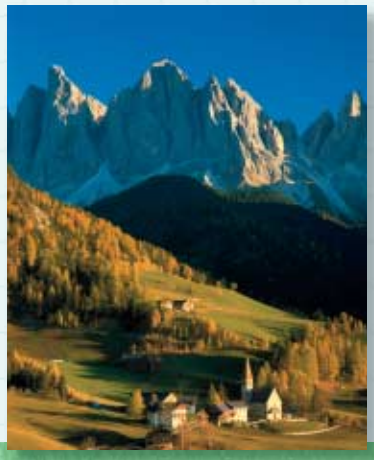
The History of Tomorrow

The northern oceanic crust of the African plate, which is the sea floor of the Mediterranean, is still subducting beneath the continental crust of Eurasia. As more oceanic crust subducts, the Mediterranean Sea will become smaller. Italy, which continues to be pushed into Eurasia, will eventually cease to exist as we know it. When the northern coast of the African continent finally collides with Eurasia, the Mediterranean Sea will disappear completely. Of course, this process will take millions of years, because tectonic plates move so slowly.

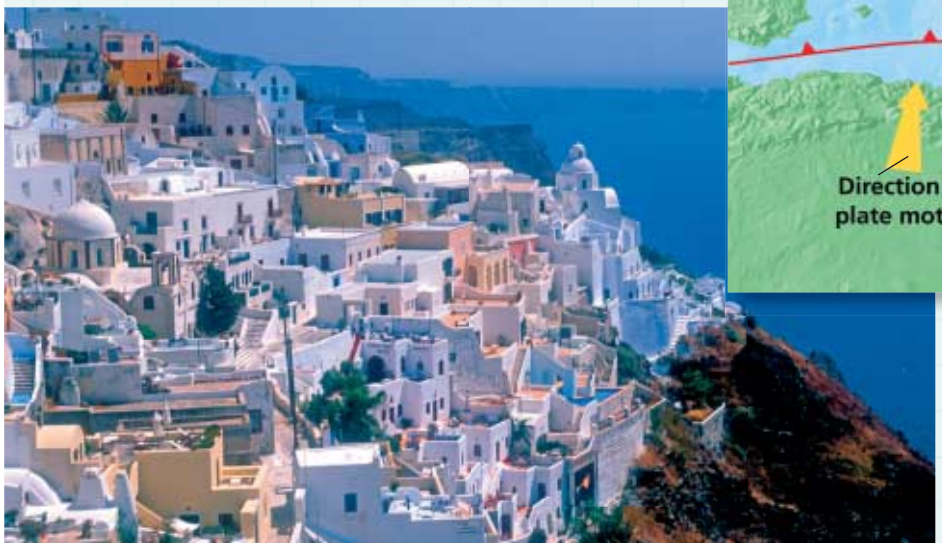
Extension

1. **Applying Ideas** What do you think will happen to the Alps as the African plate continues to push northward?

▼ The Alps formed when the African plate collided with Eurasia.



▼ The Aegean Sea is part of the larger Mediterranean Sea, which is slowly disappearing.



◀ Santorini, Greece, is an island in the Aegean Sea.

Chapter 12

Earthquakes

Sections

1 How and Where Earthquakes Happen

2 Studying Earthquakes

3 Earthquakes and Society

What You'll Learn

- What causes earthquakes
- How scientists measure earthquakes
- How earthquakes cause damage

Why It's Relevant

Understanding how, where, and why earthquakes happen can help scientists and engineers reduce earthquake damage and save lives. Studying earthquakes also helps scientists understand Earth's interior.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Pyramid Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Pyramid" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the sides of the pyramid with "How earthquakes happen," "How earthquakes are studied," and "How earthquakes affect society." As you read the chapter, write characteristics of each topic on the appropriate pyramid side.

▶ This expressway in Kobe, Japan, was toppled by the ground shaking of an earthquake that lasted 20 seconds and had a moment magnitude of 6.9.

Section 1

How and Where Earthquakes Happen

Earthquakes are one of the most destructive natural disasters. A single earthquake can kill thousands of people and cause millions of dollars in damage. **Earthquakes** are defined as movements of the ground that are caused by a sudden release of energy when rocks along a fault move. Earthquakes usually occur when rocks under stress suddenly shift along a fault. A *fault* is a break in a body of rock along which one block slides relative to another.

Why Earthquakes Happen

The rocks along both sides of a fault are commonly pressed together tightly. Although the rocks may be under stress, friction prevents them from moving past each other. In this immobile state, a fault is said to be *locked*. Parts of a fault remain locked until the stress becomes so great that the rocks suddenly grind past each other. This slippage causes the trembling and vibrations of an earthquake.

Elastic Rebound

Geologists think that earthquakes are a result of elastic rebound. **Elastic rebound** is the sudden return of elastically deformed rock to its undeformed shape. In this process, the rocks on each side of a fault are moving slowly. If the fault is locked, stress in the rocks increases. When the rocks are stressed past the point at which they can maintain their integrity, they fracture. The rocks then separate at their weakest point and *rebound,* or spring back to their original shape. This process is shown in **Figure 1.**

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** elastic rebound.
- **Compare** body waves and surface waves.
- **Explain** how the structure of Earth's interior affects seismic waves.
- **Explain** why earthquakes generally occur at plate boundaries.

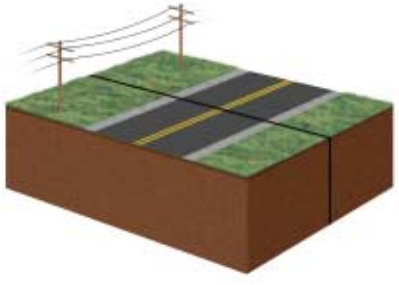
KEY TERMS

earthquake
elastic rebound
focus
epicenter
body wave
surface wave
P wave
S wave
shadow zone
fault zone

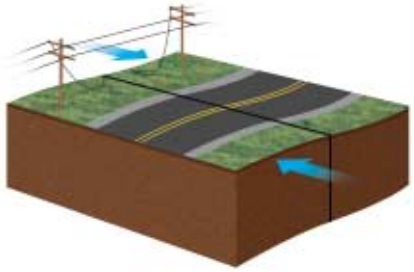
earthquake a movement or trembling of the ground that is caused by a sudden release of energy when rocks along a fault move

elastic rebound the sudden return of elastically deformed rock to its undeformed shape

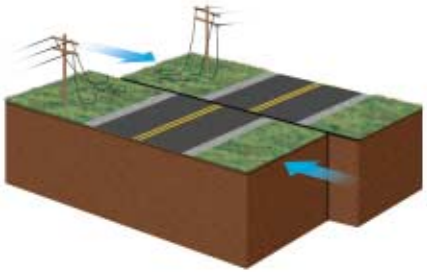
Figure 1 ▶ Elastic Rebound



Two blocks of crust pressed against each other at a fault are under stress but do not move because friction holds them in place.



As stress builds up at the fault, the crust deforms.



The rock fractures and then snaps back into its original shape, which causes an earthquake.

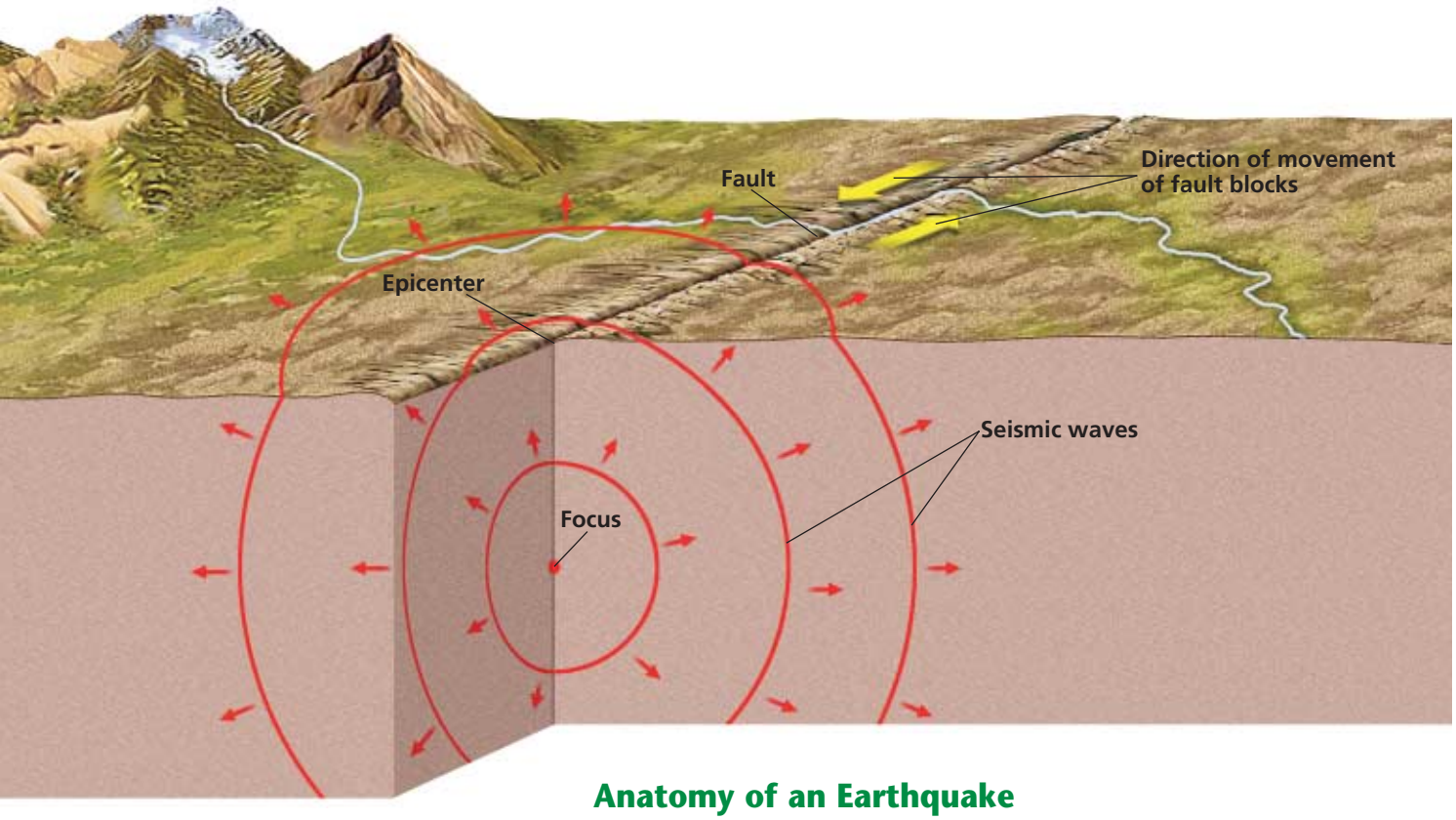


Figure 2 ▶ The epicenter of an earthquake is the point on the surface directly above the focus.

focus the location within Earth along a fault at which the first motion of an earthquake occurs

epicenter the point on Earth's surface directly above an earthquake's starting point, or focus

body wave in geology, a seismic wave that travels through the body of a medium

surface wave in geology, a seismic wave that travels along the surface of a medium and that has a stronger effect near the surface of the medium than it has in the interior

Anatomy of an Earthquake

The location within Earth along a fault at which the first motion of an earthquake occurs is called the **focus** (plural, *foci*). The point on Earth's surface directly above the focus is called the **epicenter** (EP i SENT uhr), as shown in **Figure 2.**

Although the focus depths of earthquakes vary, about 90% of continental earthquakes have a shallow focus. Earthquakes that have shallow foci take place within 70 km of Earth's surface. Earthquakes that have intermediate foci occur at depths between 70 km and 300 km. Earthquakes that have deep foci take place at depths between 300 km and 650 km. Earthquakes that have deep foci usually occur in subduction zones and occur farther from the plate boundary than shallower earthquakes do.

By the time the vibrations from an earthquake that has an intermediate or deep focus reach the surface, much of their energy has dissipated. For this reason, the earthquakes that usually cause the most damage usually have shallow foci.

Seismic Waves

As rocks along a fault slip into new positions, the rocks release energy in the form of vibrations called *seismic waves*. These waves travel outward in all directions from the focus through the surrounding rock. This wave action is similar to what happens when you drop a stone into a pool of still water and circular waves ripple outward from the center.

Earthquakes generally produce two main types of waves. **Body waves** are waves that travel through the body of a medium. **Surface waves** travel along the surface of a body rather than through the middle. Each type of wave travels at a different speed and causes different movements in Earth's crust.

Body Waves

Body waves can be placed into two main categories: P waves and S waves. **P waves,** also called *primary waves* or *compression waves*, are the fastest seismic waves and are always the first waves of an earthquake to be detected. P waves cause particles of rock to move in a back-and-forth direction that is parallel to the direction in which the waves are traveling, as shown in **Figure 3.** P waves can move through solids, liquids, and gases. The more rigid the material is, the faster the P waves travel through it.

S waves, also called *secondary waves* or *shear waves*, are the second-fastest seismic waves and arrive at detection sites after P waves. S waves cause particles of rock to move in a side-to-side direction that is perpendicular to the direction in which the waves are traveling. Unlike P waves, however, S waves can travel through only solid material.

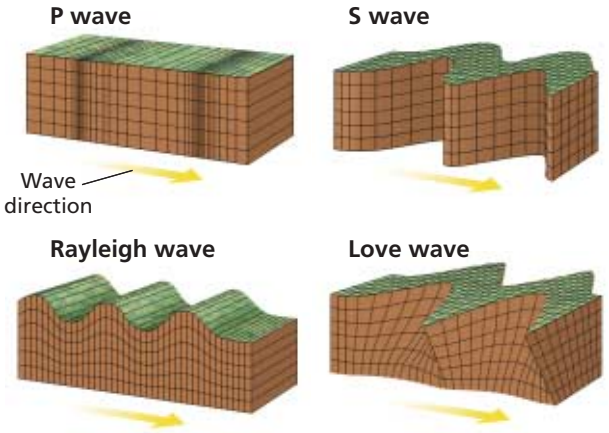


Figure 3 ▶ The different types of seismic waves cause different rock movements, which have different effects on Earth's crust.

P wave a primary wave, or compression wave; a seismic wave that causes particles of rock to move in a back-and-forth direction parallel to the direction in which the wave is traveling; P waves are the fastest seismic waves and can travel through solids, liquids, and gases

S wave a secondary wave, or shear wave; a seismic wave that causes particles of rock to move in a side-to-side direction perpendicular to the direction in which the wave is traveling; S waves are the second-fastest seismic waves and can travel only through solids

Surface Waves

Surface waves form from motion along a shallow fault or from the conversion of energy when P waves and S waves reach Earth's surface. Although surface waves are the slowest-moving waves, they may cause the greatest damage during an earthquake. The two types of surface waves are Love waves and Rayleigh waves. *Love waves* cause rock to move side-to-side and perpendicular to the direction in which the waves are traveling. *Rayleigh waves* cause the ground to move with an elliptical, rolling motion.

Reading Check **Describe the two types of surface waves. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Connection to ENGINEERING

Seismic Reflection Surveying

Many surveying companies have discovered the usefulness of seismic waves in mapping underground features. These features can be used to identify possible mineral deposits and oil or natural gas reservoirs.

In seismic surveying, a seismic shock is generated by using explosives, air guns, or a mechanical thumper. The seismic waves produced by the shock travel through the ground and reflect off bedding planes or other features below the surface. The reflected waves travel back to the surface, where they are recorded by an array of geophones. *Geophones* are instruments that convert the motion of a seismic wave into an electrical signal.

The geophones are set up in a straight line to collect data that are used to construct a two-dimensional profile of the underground layers. Scientists can also arrange the geophones in more-complex patterns to create three-dimensional images of the layers. Because each underground layer reflects waves at a different time, scientists can plot all of the data to construct an accurate picture of the underground layers.

Seismic reflection can be used to study phenomena at a variety of scales. It may be used to study just the top few tens of meters of soil and rock, or it may be used to study the structure of the deep crust. In particular, this technology has been adapted for use by oil and natural gas exploration companies to locate oil and gas reservoirs.

SCILINKS® NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Earthquakes
SciLinks code: HQ60453
Topic: Seismic Waves
SciLinks code: HQ61371

Seismic Waves and Earth's Interior

Seismic waves are useful to scientists in exploring Earth's interior. The composition of the material through which P waves and S waves travel affects the speed and direction of the waves. For example, P waves travel fastest through materials that are very rigid and are not easily compressed. By studying the speed and direction of seismic waves, scientists can learn more about the makeup and structure of Earth's interior.

Earth's Internal Layers

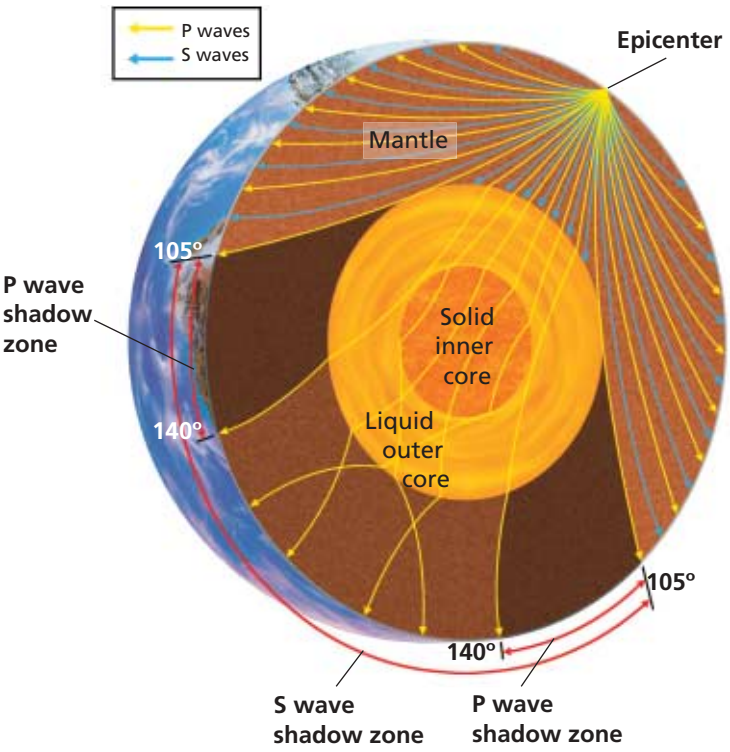
In 1909, Andrija Mohorovičić (MOH hoh ROH vuh CHICH), a Croatian scientist, discovered that the speed of seismic waves increases abruptly at about 30 km beneath the surface of continents. This increase in speed takes place because the mantle is denser than the crust. The location at which the speed of the waves increases marks the boundary between the crust and the mantle. The depth of this boundary varies from about 10 km below the oceans to about 30 km below continents. By studying the speed of seismic waves, scientists have been able to locate boundaries between other internal layers of Earth. The three main compositional layers of Earth are the *crust,* the *mantle,* and the *core*. Earth is also composed of five mechanical layers—the *lithosphere,* the *asthenosphere,* the *mesosphere,* the *outer core,* and the *inner core*.

shadow zone an area on Earth's surface where no direct seismic waves from a particular earthquake can be detected

Shadow Zones

Recordings of seismic waves around the world reveal shadow zones. **Shadow zones** are locations on Earth's surface where no body waves from a particular earthquake can be detected. Shadow zones exist because the materials that make up Earth's interior are not uniform in rigidity. When seismic waves travel through materials of differing rigidities, the speed of the waves changes. The waves will also bend and change direction as they pass through different materials.

Figure 4 ▶ P waves and S waves behave differently as they pass through different structural layers of Earth.



As shown in **Figure 4,** a large S-wave shadow zone covers the side of Earth that is opposite an earthquake. S waves do not reach the S-wave shadow zone because they cannot pass through the liquid outer core. Although P waves can travel through all of the layers, the speed and direction of the waves change as the waves pass through each layer. The waves bend in such a way that a P-wave shadow zone forms.

Reading Check **What causes the speed of a seismic wave to change? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

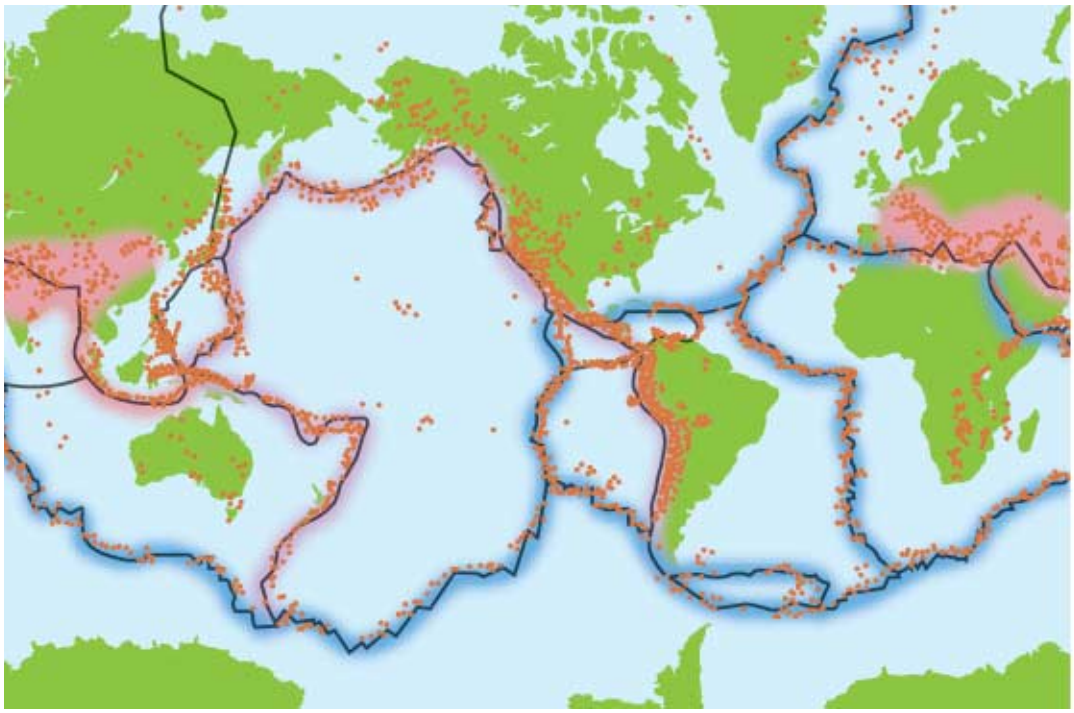


Figure 5 ▶ Earthquakes are the result of tectonic stresses in Earth's crust and occur in three main tectonic settings—mid-ocean ridges, subduction zones, and continental collisions.

Earthquakes and Plate Tectonics

Earthquakes are the result of stresses in Earth's lithosphere. Most earthquakes occur in three main tectonic environments, as shown in **Figure 5.** These settings are generally located at or near tectonic plate boundaries, where stress on the rock is greatest.

Convergent Oceanic Environments

At convergent plate boundaries, plates move toward each other and collide. The plate that is denser subducts, or sinks into the asthenosphere below the other plate. As the plates move, the overriding plate scrapes across the top of the subducting plate, and earthquakes occur. Convergent oceanic boundaries can occur between two oceanic plates or between one oceanic plate and one continental plate.

Divergent Oceanic Environments

At the divergent plate boundaries that make up the mid-ocean ridges, plates are moving away from each other. Earthquakes occur along mid-ocean ridges because oceanic lithosphere is pulling away from both sides of each ridge. This spreading motion causes earthquakes along the ocean ridges.

Continental Environments

Earthquakes also occur at locations where two continental plates converge, diverge, or move horizontally in opposite directions. As the continental plates interact, the rock surrounding the boundary experiences stress. The stress may cause mountains to form and also causes frequent earthquakes.

Graphic Organizer **Spider Map**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Spider Map" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the circle "Major earthquake zones." Create a leg for each type of earthquake zone. Then, fill in the map with details about each type of earthquake zone.

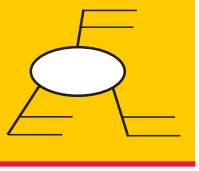


Figure 6 ▶ A series of parallel transform faults, seen in the center of this photo, make up part of the North Anatolian fault zone in Turkey.

Fault Zones

At some plate boundaries, there are regions of numerous, closely spaced faults called **fault zones.** Fault zones form at plate boundaries because of the intense stress that results when the plates separate, collide, subduct, or slide past each other. One such fault zone is the North Anatolian fault zone, shown in **Figure 6,** that extends almost the entire length of the country of Turkey. Where the edge of the Arabian plate pushes against the Eurasian plate, the small Turkish microplate is squeezed westward. When enough stress builds up, movement occurs along one or more of the individual faults in the fault zone and sometimes causes major earthquakes.

fault zone a region of numerous, closely spaced faults

Earthquakes Away from Plate Boundaries

Not all earthquakes result from movement along plate boundaries. The most widely felt series of earthquakes in the history of the United States did not occur near an active plate boundary. Instead, these earthquakes occurred in the middle of the continent, near New Madrid, Missouri, in 1811 and 1812. The vibrations from the earthquakes that rocked New Madrid were so strong that they caused damage as far away as South Carolina.

It was not until the late 1970s that studies of the Mississippi River region revealed an ancient fault zone deep within Earth's crust. This zone is thought to be part of a major fault zone in the North American plate. Scientists have determined that the fault formed at least 600 million years ago and that it was later buried under many layers of sediment and rock.

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** elastic rebound.
2. **Explain** the difference between the epicenter and the focus of an earthquake.
3. **Compare** body waves and surface waves.
4. **Explain** how seismic waves help scientists learn about Earth's interior.
5. **Explain** how the structure of Earth's interior affects seismic wave speed and direction.
6. **Explain** why earthquakes generally take place at plate boundaries.
7. **Describe** a fault zone, and explain how earthquakes occur along fault zones.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Applying Ideas** In earthquakes that cause the most damage, at what depth would movement along a fault most likely occur?
9. **Identifying Patterns** If a seismologic station measures P waves but no S waves from an earthquake, what can you conclude about the earthquake's location?
10. **Making Inferences** If an earthquake occurs in the center of Brazil, what can you infer about the geology of that area?

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *earthquake, seismic wave, body wave, surface wave, P wave, S wave, Rayleigh wave,* and *Love wave.*

Section 2 Studying Earthquakes

The study of earthquakes and seismic waves is called *seismology*. Many scientists study earthquakes because earthquakes are the best tool Earth scientists have for investigating Earth's internal structure and dynamics. These scientists have developed special sensing equipment to record, locate, and measure earthquakes.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the instrument used to measure and record earthquakes.
- **Summarize** the method scientists use to locate an epicenter.
- **Describe** the scales used to measure the magnitude and intensity of earthquakes.

KEY TERMS

seismograph
seismogram
magnitude
intensity

Recording Earthquakes

Vibrations in the ground can be detected and recorded by using an instrument called a **seismograph** (SIEZ MUH graf), such as the one shown in **Figure 1.** A modern three-component seismograph consists of three sensing devices. One device records the vertical motion of the ground. The other two devices record horizontal motion—one for east-west motion and the other for north-south motion. Seismographs record motion by tracing wave-shaped lines on paper or by translating the motion into electronic signals. The electronic signals can be recorded on magnetic tape or can be loaded directly into a computer that analyzes seismic waves. A tracing of earthquake motion that is recorded by a seismograph is called a **seismogram.**

seismograph an instrument that records vibrations in the ground

seismogram a tracing of earthquake motion that is recorded by a seismograph

Because they are the fastest-moving seismic waves, P waves are the first waves to be recorded by a seismograph. S waves travel much slower than P waves. Therefore, S waves are the second waves to be recorded by a seismograph. Surface waves, or Rayleigh and Love waves, are the slowest-moving waves. Thus, Rayleigh and Love waves are the last waves to be recorded by a seismograph.

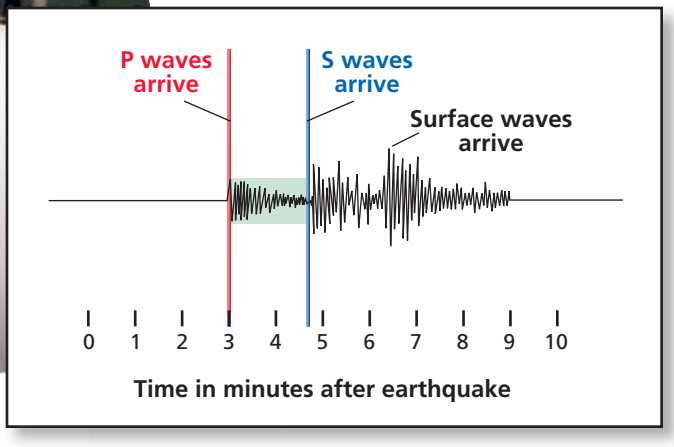


Figure 1 ▶ A seismograph station has banks of seismographs to record earthquakes. Each type of seismic wave leaves a unique "signature" on a seismogram (inset).

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Earthquake Measurement
SciLinks code: HQ60452

Locating an Earthquake

To determine the distance to an epicenter, scientists analyze the arrival times of the P waves and the S waves. The longer the lag time between the arrival of the P waves and the arrival of the S waves is, the farther away the earthquake occurred. To determine how far an earthquake is from a given seismograph station, scientists consult a lag-time graph. This graph translates the difference in arrival times of the P waves and S waves into distance from the epicenter to each station. The start time of the earthquake can also be determined by using this graph.

To locate the epicenter of the earthquake, scientists use computers to perform complex triangulations based on information from several seismograph stations. Before computers were widely available, scientists performed this calculation in a simpler and more imprecise way. On a map, they drew circles around at least three seismograph stations that recorded vibrations from the earthquake. The radius of each circle was equal to the distance from that station to the earthquake's epicenter. The point at which all of the circles intersected indicated the location of the epicenter of the earthquake.

QuickLAB 20 min

Seismographic Record

Procedure

1. Line a **shoe box** with a **plastic bag.** Fill the box to the rim with **sand.** Put on the lid.
2. Mark an X near the center of the lid.
3. Fasten a **felt-tip pen** to the lid of the box with a tight **rubber band** so that the pen extends slightly beyond the edge of the box.
4. Have a partner hold a **pad a paper** so that the paper touches the pen.
5. Hold a **ball** over the X at a height of 30 cm. As your partner slowly moves the paper horizontally past the pen, drop the ball on the X.
6. Label the resulting line with the type of material in the box.
7. Replace about 2/3 of the sand with crumpled **newspaper.** Put on the lid, and fasten the pen to the lid with the rubber band.
8. Repeat steps 4–6.

Analysis

1. What do the lines on the paper represent?
2. What do the sand and newspaper represent?
3. Compare the lines made in steps 4–6 with those made in step 8. Which material vibrated more when the ball was dropped on it? Explain why one material might vibrate more than the other.
4. How might different types of crustal material affect seismic waves that pass through it?
5. How might the distance of the epicenter of an earthquake from a seismograph affect the reading of a seismograph?

Figure 2 ▶ The 1995 earthquake in Kobe, Japan, had a moment magnitude of 6.9, lasted 20 s, and killed 5,470 people.

Earthquake Measurement

Scientists who study earthquakes are interested in the amount of energy released by an earthquake. Scientists also study the amount of damage done by the earthquake. These properties are studied by measuring magnitude and intensity.

Magnitude

The measure of the strength of an earthquake is called **magnitude.** Magnitude is determined by measuring the amount of ground motion caused by an earthquake. Seismologists express magnitude by using a magnitude scale, such as the Richter scale or the moment magnitude scale.

magnitude a measure of the strength of an earthquake

The *Richter scale* measures the ground motion from an earthquake to find the earthquake's strength. While the Richter scale was widely used for most of the 20th century, scientists now prefer the moment magnitude scale. *Moment magnitude* is a measurement of earthquake strength based on the size of the area of the fault that moves, the average distance that the fault blocks move, and the rigidity of the rocks in the fault zone. Although the moment magnitude and the Richter scales provide similar values for small earthquakes, the moment magnitude scale is more accurate for large earthquakes.

The moment magnitude of an earthquake is expressed by a number. The larger the number, the stronger the earthquake. The largest earthquake that has been recorded registered a moment magnitude of 9.5 The earthquake in Kobe, Japan, in 1995 that caused the damage shown in **Figure 2** had a moment magnitude of 6.9. Earthquakes that have moment magnitudes of less than 2.5 usually are not felt by people.

Reading Check **What is the difference between the Richter scale and the moment magnitude scale? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

MATHPRACTICE

Magnitudes On both the moment magnitude scale and the Richter scale, the energy of an earthquake increases by a factor of about 30 for each increment on the scale. Thus, a magnitude 4 earthquake releases 30 times as much energy as a magnitude 3 earthquake does. How much more energy does a magnitude 6 earthquake release than a magnitude 3 earthquake does?

Table 1 ▼

Modified Mercalli Intensity Scale	
Intensity	**Description**
I	is not felt except by very few under especially favorable conditions
II	is felt by only few people at rest; delicately suspended items may swing
III	is felt by most people indoors; vibration is similar to the passing of a large truck
IV	is felt by many people; dishes and windows rattle; sensation is similar to a building being struck
V	is felt by nearly everyone; some objects are broken; and unstable objects are overturned
VI	is felt by all people; some heavy objects are moved; causes very slight damage to structures
VII	causes slight to moderate damage to ordinary buildings; some chimneys are broken
VIII	causes considerable damage (including partial collapse) to ordinary buildings
IX	causes considerable damage (including partial collapse) to earthquake-resistant buildings
X	destroys some to most structures, including foundations; rails are bent
XI	causes few structures, if any, to remain standing; bridges are destroyed and rails are bent
XII	causes total destruction; distorts lines of sight; objects are thrown into the air

Intensity

intensity in Earth science, the amount of damage caused by an earthquake

Before the development of magnitude scales, the size of an earthquake was determined based on the earthquake's effects. A measure of the effects of an earthquake on a particular area is the earthquake's **intensity.** The modified *Mercalli scale,* shown in **Table 1,** expresses intensity in Roman numerals from I to XII and provides a description of the effects of each earthquake intensity. The highest-intensity earthquake is designated by Roman numeral XII and is described as total destruction. The intensity of an earthquake depends on the earthquake's magnitude, the distance between the epicenter and the affected area, the local geology, and the earthquake's duration.

Section 2 Review

1. **Describe** the instrument that is used to record seismic waves.
2. **Compare** a seismograph and a seismogram.
3. **Summarize** the method that scientists used to identify the location of an earthquake before computers became widely used.
4. **Describe** the scales that scientists use to measure the magnitude of an earthquake.
5. **Explain** the difference between magnitude and intensity of an earthquake.

CRITICAL THINKING

6. **Analyzing Methods** Explain why it would be difficult for scientists to locate the epicenter of an earthquake if they have seismic wave information from only two locations.
7. **Evaluating Data** Explain why an earthquake with a moderate magnitude might have a high intensity?

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *seismograph, seismogram, epicenter, P wave, S wave, magnitude,* and *intensity.*

Section 3 Earthquakes and Society

Movement of the ground during an earthquake seldom directly causes many deaths or injuries. Instead, most injuries result from the collapse of buildings and other structures or from falling objects and flying glass. Other dangers include landslides, fires, explosions caused by broken electric and gas lines, and floodwaters released from collapsing dams.

OBJECTIVES

- **Discuss** the relationship between tsunamis and earthquakes.
- **Describe** two possible effects of a major earthquake on buildings.
- **List** three safety techniques to prevent injury caused by earthquake activity.
- **Identify** four methods scientists use to forecast earthquake risks.

KEY TERMS

tsunami
seismic gap

Tsunamis

An earthquake whose epicenter is on the ocean floor may cause a giant ocean wave called a **tsunami** (tsoo NAH mee), which may cause serious destruction if it crashes into land. A tsunami may begin to form when a sudden drop or rise in the ocean floor occurs because of faulting associated with undersea earthquakes. The drop or rise of the ocean floor causes a large mass of sea water to also drop or rise. This mass of water moves up and down as it adjusts to the change in sea level. This movement sets into motion a series of long, low waves that increase in height as they near the shore. These waves are tsunamis. A tsunami may also be triggered by an underwater landslide caused by an earthquake.

tsunami a giant ocean wave that forms after a volcanic eruption, submarine earthquake, or landslide

Destruction to Buildings and Property

Most buildings are not designed to withstand the swaying motion caused by earthquakes. Buildings whose walls are weak may collapse completely. Very tall buildings may sway so violently that they tip over and fall onto lower neighboring structures, as shown in **Figure 1.**

The type of ground beneath a building can affect the way in which the building responds to seismic waves. A building constructed on loose soil and rock is much more likely to be damaged during an earthquake than a building constructed on solid ground is. During an earthquake, the loose soil and rock can vibrate like jelly. Buildings constructed on top of this kind of ground experience exaggerated motion and sway violently.

Figure 1 ▶ Rescue workers surround a building that collapsed in Taipei, Taiwan, during the earthquake of 1999.

Figure 2 ▶ In Tokyo, Japan—an area that has a high earthquake-hazard level—earthquake safety materials are available at disaster control centers.

Earthquake Safety

A destructive earthquake may take place in any region of the United States. However, destructive earthquakes are more likely to occur in certain geographic areas, such as California or Alaska. People who live near active faults should be ready to follow a few simple earthquake safety rules. These safety rules may help prevent death, injury, and property damage.

Before an Earthquake

Before an earthquake occurs, be prepared. Keep on hand a supply of canned food, bottled water, flashlights, batteries, and a portable radio. Some safety material is shown in **Figure 2.** Plan what you will do if an earthquake strikes while you are at home, in school, or in a car. Discuss these plans with your family. Learn how to turn off the gas, water, and electricity in your home.

During an Earthquake

When an earthquake occurs, stay calm. During the few seconds between tremors, you can move to a safer position. If you are indoors, protect yourself from falling debris by standing in a doorway or crouching under a desk or table. Stay away from windows, heavy furniture, and other objects that might topple over. If you are in school, follow the instructions given by your teacher or principal. If you are in a car, stop in a place that is away from tall buildings, tunnels, power lines, or bridges. Then, remain in the car until the tremors cease.

After an Earthquake

After an earthquake, be cautious. Check for fire and other hazards. Always wear shoes when walking near broken glass, and avoid downed power lines and objects touched by downed wires.

QuickLAB 10 min

Earthquake-Safe Buildings

Procedure

1. On a tabletop, build one structure by stacking **building blocks** on top of each other.
2. Pound gently on the side of the table. Record what happens to the structure.
3. Using **rubber bands,** wrap sets of three blocks together. Build a second structure by using these blocks.
4. Repeat step 2.

Analysis

1. Which of your structures was more resistant to damage caused by the "earthquake"?
2. How could this model relate to building real structures, such as elevated highways?

Earthquake Warnings and Forecasts

Humans have long dreamed of being able to predict earthquakes. Accurate earthquake predictions could help prevent injuries and deaths that result from earthquakes.

Today, scientists study past earthquakes to predict where future earthquakes are most likely to occur. Using records of past earthquakes, scientists can make approximate forecasts of future earthquake risks. However, there is currently no reliable way to predict exactly when or where an earthquake will occur. Even the best forecasts may be off by several years.

To make forecasts that are more accurate, scientists are trying to detect changes in Earth's crust that can signal an earthquake. Faults near many population centers have been located and mapped. Instruments placed along these faults measure small changes in rock movement around the faults and can detect an increase in stress. Currently, however, these methods cannot provide reliable or accurate predictions of earthquakes.

Seismic Gaps

Scientists have identified zones of low earthquake activity, or seismic gaps, along some faults. A **seismic gap** is an area along a fault where relatively few earthquakes have occurred recently but where strong earthquakes occurred in the past. Some scientists think that seismic gaps are likely locations of future earthquakes. Several gaps that exist along the San Andreas Fault zone may be sites of major earthquakes in the future. One of these locations, Loma Prieta, California, is shown in **Figure 3.**

Reading Check **Why do scientists think that seismic gaps are areas where future earthquakes are likely to occur? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

seismic gap an area along a fault where relatively few earthquakes have occurred recently but where strong earthquakes are known to have occurred in the past

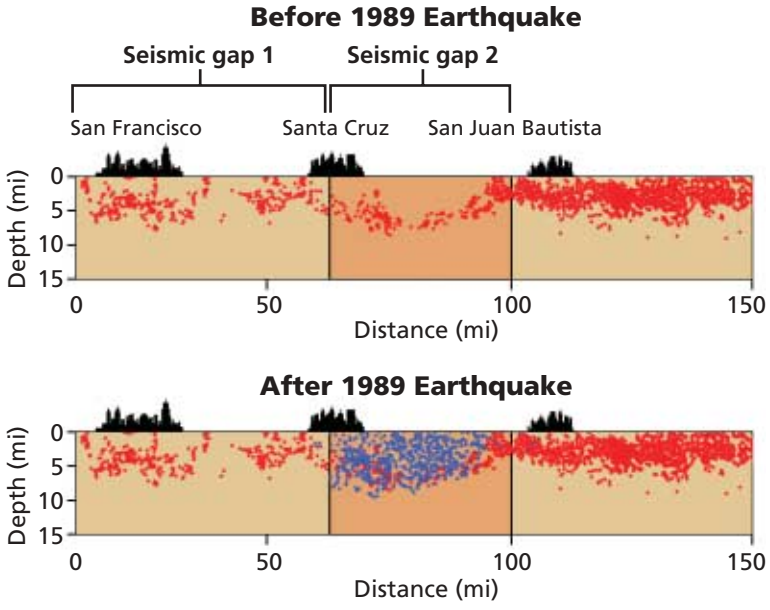


Figure 3 ▶ Each red dot in the cross section of the San Andreas Fault represents an earthquake or aftershock before the 1989 Loma Prieta earthquake. Note how seismic gap 2 was filled by the 1989 earthquake and its aftershocks, which are represented by the blue dots.

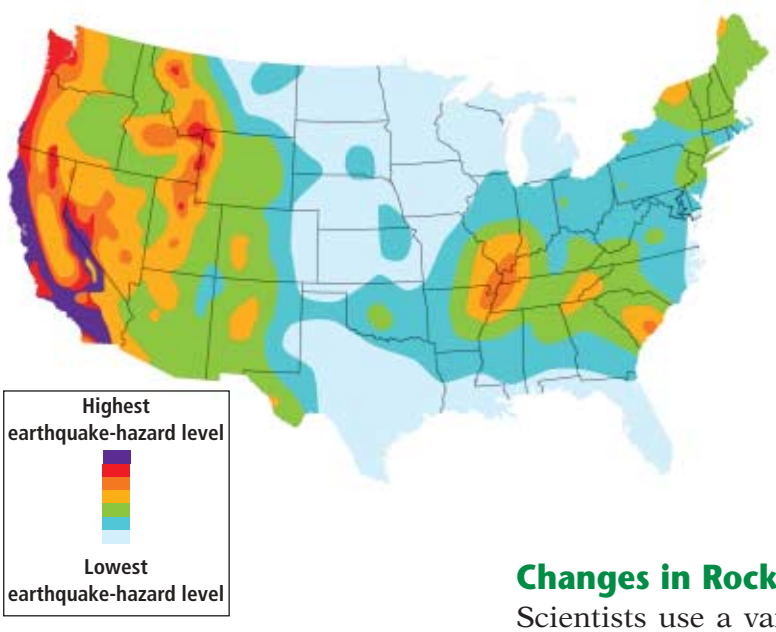


Figure 4 ▶ California, which has experienced severe earthquakes recently, has the highest earthquake-hazard level of the contiguous United States.

Foreshocks

Some earthquakes are preceded by little earthquakes called *foreshocks*. Foreshocks can precede an earthquake by a few seconds or a few weeks. In 1975, geophysicists in China recorded foreshocks near the city of Haicheng, which had a history of earthquakes. The city was evacuated the day before a major earthquake. The earthquake caused widespread destruction, but few lives were lost thanks to the warning. However, the Haicheng earthquake is the only example of a successful prediction made by using this method.

Changes in Rocks

Scientists use a variety of sensors to detect slight tilting of the ground and to identify the strain and cracks in rocks caused by the stress that builds up in fault zones. When these cracks in the rocks are filled with water, the magnetic and electrical properties of the rocks may change. Scientists also monitor natural gas seepage from rocks that are strained or fractured from seismic activity. Scientists hope that they will one day be able to use these signals to predict earthquakes.

Reliability of Earthquake Forecasts

Unfortunately, not all earthquakes have foreshocks or other precursors. Earthquake prediction is mostly unreliable. However, scientists have been able to determine areas that have a high earthquake-hazard level, as shown in **Figure 4.** Scientists continue to study seismic activity so that they may one day make accurate forecasts and save more lives.

Section 3 Review

1. **Discuss** the relationship between tsunamis and earthquakes.
2. **Describe** two possible effects of a major earthquake on buildings.
3. **List** three safety rules to follow when an earthquake strikes.
4. **Describe** how identifying seismic gaps may help scientists predict earthquakes.
5. **Identify** changes in rocks that may signal earthquakes.

CRITICAL THINKING

6. **Applying Concepts** What type of building construction and location regulations should be included in the building code of a city that is located near an active fault?
7. **Applying Concepts** You are a scientist assigned to study an area that has a high earthquake-hazard level. Describe a program that you could set up to predict potential earthquakes.

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *earthquake, earthquake-hazard level, damage, tsunami, safety,* and *prediction.*

Chapter 12 Highlights

Sections

1 How and Where Earthquakes Happen

Key Terms

earthquake, 295
elastic rebound, 295
focus, 296
epicenter, 296
body wave, 296
surface wave, 296
P wave, 297
S wave, 297
shadow zone, 298
fault zone, 300

Key Concepts

- In the process of elastic rebound, stress builds in rocks along a fault until they break and spring back to their original shape.
- There are two major types of seismic waves: body waves and surface waves.
- Different seismic waves act differently depending on the material of Earth's interior through which they pass.
- Most earthquakes occur near tectonic plate boundaries.

2 Studying Earthquakes

seismograph, 301
seismogram, 301
magnitude, 303
intensity, 304

- Scientists use seismographs to record earthquake vibrations.
- The difference in the times that P waves and S waves take to arrive at a seismograph station helps scientists locate the epicenter of an earthquake.
- Earthquake magnitude scales describe the strength of an earthquake. Intensity is a measure of the effects of an earthquake.

3 Earthquakes and Society

tsunami, 305
seismic gap, 307

- Most earthquake damage is caused by the collapse of buildings and other structures.
- Tsunamis often are caused by ocean-floor earthquakes.
- People who follow safety guidelines are less likely to be harmed by an earthquake.
- Seismic gaps, tilting ground, and variations in rock properties are some of the changes in Earth's crust that scientists use when trying to predict earthquakes.

Chapter 12 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *elastic rebound*
2. *fault zone*
3. *seismic gap*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *focus* and *epicenter*
5. *body wave* and *surface wave*
6. *P wave* and *S wave*
7. *seismograph* and *seismogram*
8. *intensity* and *magnitude*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. Vibrations in Earth that are caused by the sudden movement of rock are called
   a. epicenters. **c.** faults.
   b. earthquakes. **d.** tsunamis.

10. In the process of elastic rebound, as a rock becomes stressed, it first
    a. deforms. **c.** breaks.
    b. melts. **d.** shifts position.

11. Earthquakes that cause severe damage are likely to have what characteristic?
    a. a deep focus
    b. an intermediate focus
    c. a shallow focus
    d. a deep epicenter

12. Most earthquakes occur
    a. in mountains.
    b. along major rivers.
    c. at plate boundaries.
    d. in the middle of tectonic plates.

13. P waves travel
    a. only through solids.
    b. only through liquids and gases.
    c. through both solids and liquids.
    d. only through liquids.

14. S waves cannot pass through
    a. solids. **c.** Earth's outer core.
    b. the mantle. **d.** the asthenosphere.

15. Most injuries during earthquakes are caused by
    a. the collapse of buildings.
    b. cracks in Earth's surface.
    c. the vibration of S waves.
    d. the vibration of P waves.

16. Which of the following is *not* a method used to forecast earthquake risks?
    a. identifying seismic gaps
    b. determining moment magnitude
    c. recording foreshocks
    d. detecting changes in the rock

Short Answer

17. How do seismic waves help scientists understand Earth's interior?

18. Why is the S-wave shadow zone larger than the P-wave shadow zones are?

19. How do scientists determine the location of an earthquake's epicenter?

20. Why do scientists prefer the moment magnitude scale to the Richter scale?

21. How might tall buildings respond during a major earthquake?

22. What should you do if you are in a car when an earthquake happens?

23. List three changes in rock that may one day be used to help forecast earthquakes.

Critical Thinking

24. Understanding Relationships Why might surface waves cause the greatest damage during an earthquake?

25. Determining Cause and Effect Two cities are struck by the same earthquake. The cities are the same size, are built on the same type of ground, and have the same types of buildings. The city in which the earthquake produced a maximum intensity of VI on the Mercalli scale suffered $1 million in damage. The city in which the earthquake produced a maximum intensity of VIII on the Mercalli scale suffered $50 million in damage. What might account for this great difference in the costs of the damage?

26. Recognizing Relationships Would an earthquake in the Rocky Mountains in Colorado be likely to form a tsunami? Explain your answer.

Concept Mapping

27. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *earthquake, elastic rebound, surface wave, body wave, seismic wave, tsunami, seismograph, magnitude, intensity, moment magnitude scale,* and *Richter scale.*

Math Skills

28. Making Calculations If a P wave traveled 6.1 km/s, how long would the P wave take to travel 800 km?

29. Using Equations An earthquake with a magnitude of 3 releases 30 times more energy than does an earthquake with a magnitude of 2. How much more energy does an earthquake with a magnitude of 8 release than an earthquake with a magnitude of 6 does?

30. Making Calculations Of the approximately 420,000 earthquakes recorded each year, about 140 have a magnitude greater than 6. What percentage of all earthquakes have a magnitude greater than 6?

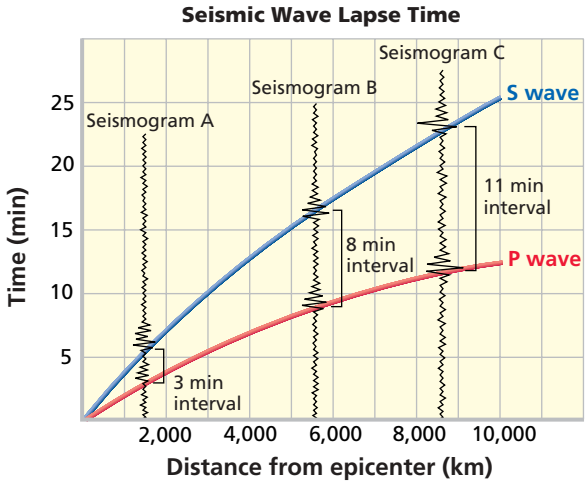
Writing Skills

31. Writing from Research Find out how and why the worldwide network of seismograph stations was formed. Also, find out how all the stations in the network work together. Prepare a report about your findings.

32. Communicating Main Ideas Find out which earthquake registered the highest intensity in history. Write a brief report that describes the effects of this earthquake.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows three seismograms from a single earthquake. Use the graph to answer the questions that follow.



33. How far from the epicenter is seismograph B?

34. How far from the epicenter is seismograph C?

35. Which seismograph is farthest from the epicenter?

36. Why is there an 8 min interval between P waves and S waves in seismogram B but an 11 min interval between P waves and S waves in seismogram C?

Chapter 12 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 Energy waves that produce an earthquake begin at what location on or within Earth?
A. the epicenter
B. the seismic gap
C. the focus
D. the shadow zone

2 The fastest-moving seismic waves produced by an earthquake are called
F. P waves
G. S waves
H. Raleigh waves
I. surface waves

3 The magnitude of an earthquake can be expressed numerically by using
A. only the Richter scale
B. only the Mercalli scale
C. both the Mercalli scale and the moment magnitude scale
D. both the Richter scale and the moment magnitude scale

4 Most earthquake-related injuries are caused by
F. tsunamis
G. collapsing buildings
H. rolling ground movements
I. sudden cracks in the ground

5 Which of the following is least likely to cause deaths during an earthquake?
A. floodwaters from collapsing dams
B. falling objects and flying glass
C. actual ground movement
D. fires from broken electric and gas lines

Directions (6–8): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 What is the name of the instrument that is used to detect and record seismic waves?

7 What is the term for waves that move through a medium instead of along its surface?

8 Where is the Ring of Fire located?

Reading Skills

Directions (9–11): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

The Loma Prieta Earthquake

At 5:04 P.M. on October 17, 1989, life in California's San Francisco Bay Area seemed relatively normal. While more than 62,000 excited fans filled Candlestick Park to watch the third game of baseball's World Series, other people were still rushing home from a long day's work or picking their children up from extracurricular activites. By 5:05 P.M., the situation had changed drastically. The area was rocked by the 6.9 Loma Prieta earthquake. The earthquake lasted 20 seconds and caused 62 deaths, 3,757 injuries, and the destruction of more than 1,000 homes and businesses. By midnight, the city was fighting more than 20 large structural fires resulting from the earthquake. People suffered injuries from collapses in weakened structures for days following the initial earthquake. Considering that the earthquake was of such a high magnitude and that it happened during the busy rush hour, it is amazing that more people were not injured or killed.

9 What type of waves are the most likely to have caused the damage described during the Loma Prieta earthquake?
A. P waves
B. S waves
C. body waves
D. surface waves

10 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
F. *Loma Prieta* is the Spanish term for "deadly earthquake."
G. The damage caused by the earthquake continued even after the waves had passed.
H. There were fewer people injured in this earthquake than in most earthquakes.
I. The Loma Prieta earthquake has the highest magnitude of any earthquake ever recorded.

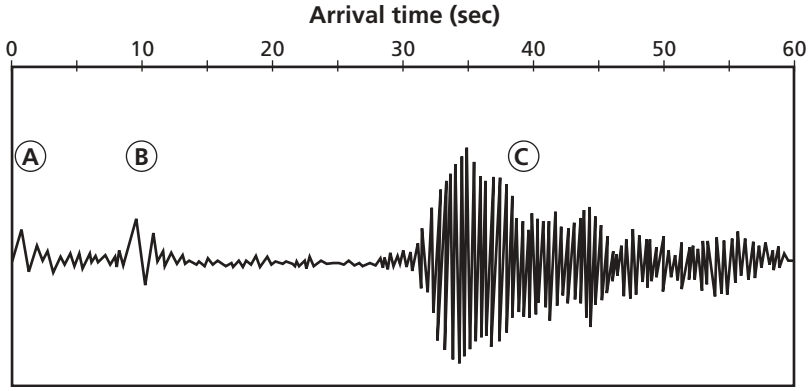
11 The 6.9 rating of the Loma Prieta earthquake is a rating on what measurement scale?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (13–15): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagram shows a recording of data by a seismograph. Use this diagram to answer questions 13 and 14.

Reading a Seismogram



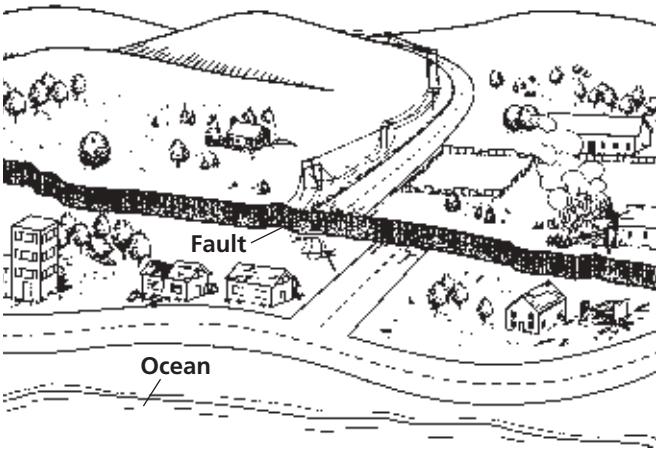
13 What type of seismic waves are indicated by the points on the seismogram marked by the letter A?

A. Love waves
B. Rayleigh waves
C. P waves
D. S waves

14 What type of seismic waves are indicated by the point on the seismogram marked by the letter C? How are these waves connected to the smaller waves that preceded them?

The illustration below shows the damage caused following an earthquake. Objects shown in this illustration are not drawn to scale. Use this illustration to answer question 15.

Earthquake Damage



15 What safety hazards can you identify in this scene? What safety advice would you give to someone approaching the scene above? How should people prepare for dealing with such post-earthquake safety hazards?

Test TIP

Always read the full question to make sure you understand what is being asked before you look at the answer choices.

Chapter 12

Skills Practice Lab

Finding an Epicenter

Objectives

- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Analyze** P waves and S waves to determine the distance from a city to the epicenter of an earthquake.
- **Determine** the location of an earthquake epicenter by using the distance from three different cities to the epicenter of an earthquake.

Materials

- calculator
- drawing compass
- ruler

An earthquake releases energy that travels through Earth in all directions. This energy is in the form of waves. Two kinds of seismic waves are P waves and S waves. P waves travel faster than S waves and are the first to be recorded at a seismograph station. The S waves arrive after the P waves. The time difference between the arrival of the P waves and the S waves increases as the waves travel farther from their origin. This difference in arrival time, called *lag time,* can be used to find the distance to the epicenter of the earthquake. Once the distance from three different locations is determined, scientists can find the approximate location of the epicenter.

PROCEDURE

1. The average speed of P waves is 6.1 km/s. The average speed of S waves is 4.1 km/s. Calculate the lag time between the arrival of P waves and S waves over a distance of 100 km.
2. The graph below shows seismic records made in three cities following an earthquake. These traces begin at the left. The arrows indicate the arrival of the P waves. The beginning of the next wave on each seismograph record indicates the arrival of the S wave. Use the time scale to find the lag time between the P wave and the S waves for each city. Draw a table similar to **Table 1.**

Seismograms

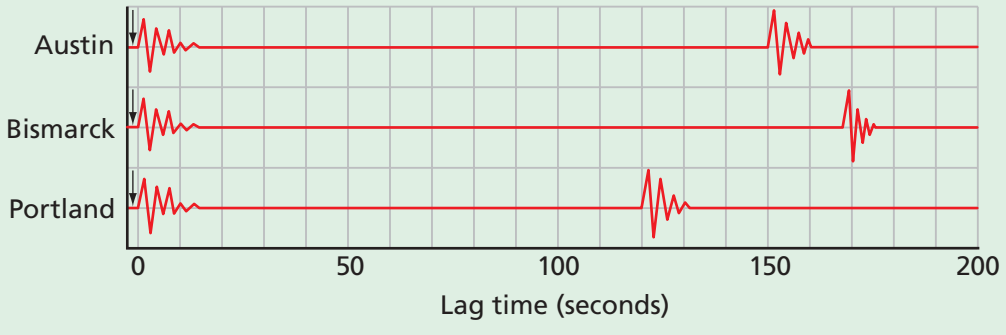


Table 1

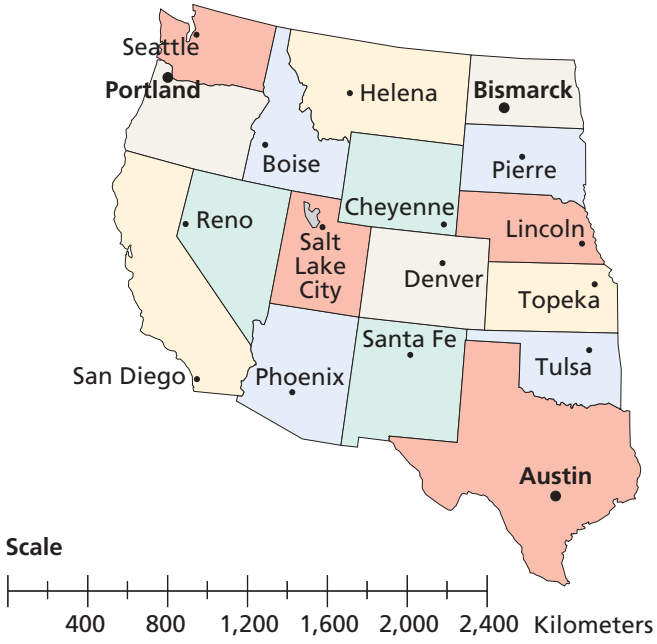
City	Lag time (seconds)	Distance from city to epicenter
Austin		
Bismarck		
Portland		

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK

3. Record lag time for each city in the table.
4. Use the lag times found in step 2 and the lag time per 100 km found in step 1 to calculate the distance from each city to the epicenter of the earthquake by using the equation below.

$$distance = \frac{measured\ lag\ time\ (s) \times 100\ km}{lag\ time\ for\ 100\ km}$$

5. Record distances in the table.
6. Copy the map at right, which shows the location of the three cities. Using the map scale on your copy of the map, adjust the compass so that the radius of the circle with Austin at the center is equal to the calculation for Austin in step 2. Put the point of the compass on Austin. Draw a circle on your copy of the map.
7. Repeat step 6 for Bismarck and for Portland. The epicenter of the earthquake is located near the point at which the three circles intersect.



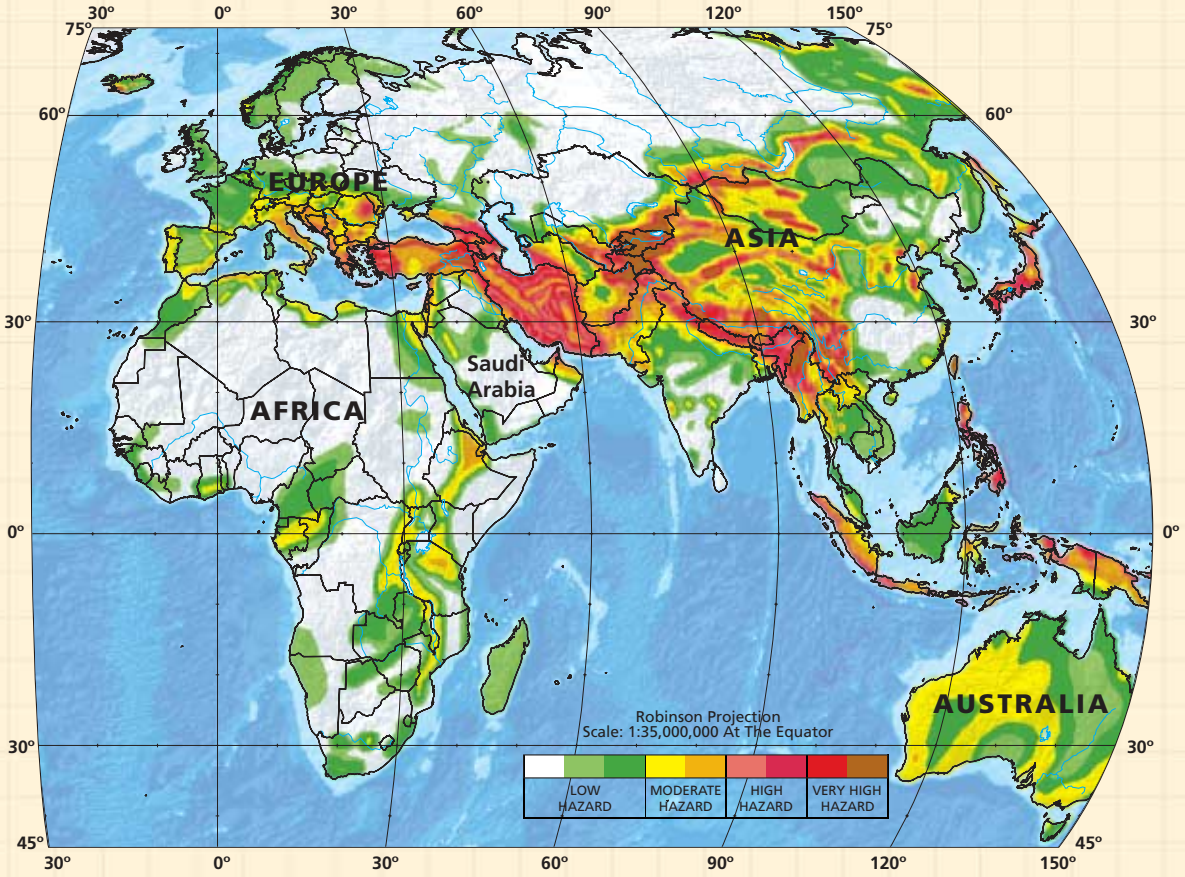
ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Evaluating Data** Describe the location of the earthquake's epicenter. To which city is the location of the earthquake's epicenter closest?
2. **Analyzing Processes** Why must measurements from three locations be used to find the epicenter of an earthquake?

Extension

1. **Evaluating Data** Research earthquakes in the United States. What is the probability of a major earthquake occurring in the area where you live? If an earthquake did occur in your area, what would most likely cause the earthquake?

Earthquake Hazard Map



Map Skills Activity

This map shows the earthquake-hazard levels for Europe, Asia, Africa, and Australia. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using a Key** Which areas of the map have a very high earthquake-hazard level?

2. **Using a Key** Determine which areas of the map have very low earthquake-hazard levels.

3. **Inferring Relationships** Most earthquakes take place near tectonic plate boundaries. Based on the hazard levels, describe the areas of the map where you think tectonic plate boundaries are located.

4. **Analyzing Relationships** In Asia, just below 60° north latitude, there are areas that have high earthquake-hazard levels but no plate boundaries. Explain why these areas might experience earthquakes.

5. **Forming a Hypothesis** There is a tectonic plate boundary between Africa and Saudi Arabia. However, the earthquake-hazard level in that region is low. Explain the low earthquake-hazard level.

6. **Analyzing Relationships** A divergent plate boundary began to tear apart the continent of Africa about 30 million years ago. Where on the continent of Africa would you expect to find landforms created by this boundary? Explain your answer.

Geophysicist

Earth's surface may appear solid and unmoving. But Wayne Thatcher sees daily evidence that Earth's surface is always changing. As a research geophysicist for the U.S. Geological Survey, Thatcher studies the forces that shape Earth's crust, such as earthquakes.

Tools of the Trade

To measure ground deformation, Thatcher and his colleagues use global positioning system (GPS) and radar satellite images. GPS is a network of satellites that is commonly used for navigation of ships and aircraft. Thatcher uses GPS to measure changes in Earth's crust. By measuring ground elevation changes of a few millimeters, GPS enables discoveries that would not have been made many years ago.

Thatcher also uses Interferometric Synthetic Aperture Radar (InSAR), a remote-sensing technique that uses satellite radio waves to create three-dimensional images of Earth's surface. In this way, InSAR is able to map ground displacement from one satellite pass to the next, which helps scientists form mappings of deformation over months or years.

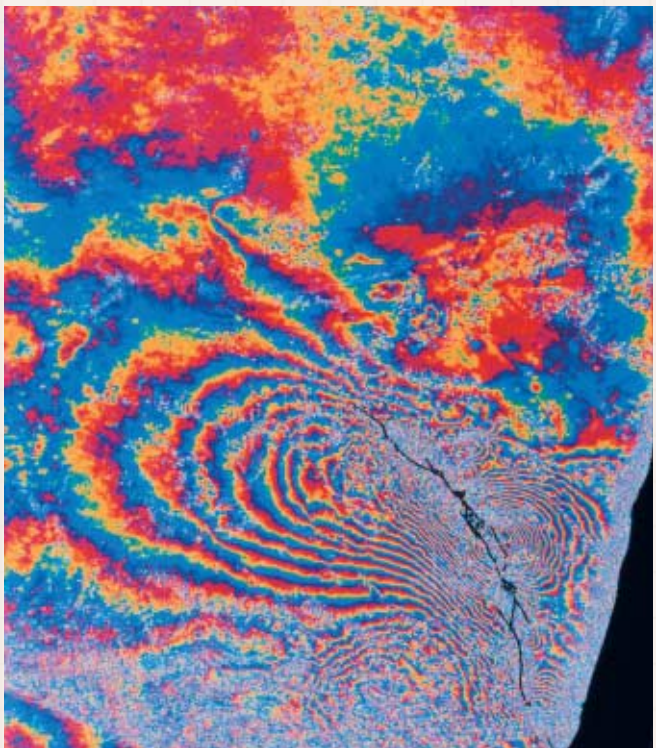
Predicting Future Earthquakes

For Thatcher and other geophysicists, the ability to forecast an earthquake remains an ongoing research aim. "Prediction is one of our ultimate goals," he notes. "We can estimate the level of risk based on GPS or InSAR readings. For example, we can track fault movements and note that 'something's got to give' and a quake is due."

For his research, Thatcher travels to fault zones throughout the western United States, where he sets up GPS benchmark sites. Trips to the sites in later years enable scientists to measure the rate and extent of movement of Earth's crust. Thatcher also journeys to other geologically active parts of the world, such as Japan, New Zealand, and Greece.

"Geophysics is a very international field of study. It's good to compare similarities and differences with other researchers who study earthquakes and volcanoes around the world."

—Wayne Thatcher, Ph.D.



◀ This colored satellite map shows the ground displacement after a 7.3 moment magnitude earthquake in Landers, California, on June 28, 1992.

SCILINKS® NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Careers in Earth Science
SciLinks code: HQ60222

Chapter 13

Volcanoes

Sections

1 Volcanoes and Plate Tectonics

2 Volcanic Eruptions

What You'll Learn

- Where volcanoes are located
- What causes volcanic eruptions
- How lava affects the shape of volcanoes

Why It's Relevant

Volcanoes can form features such as mountains or islands. Volcanic eruptions can also endanger human life. Learning about volcanoes can help scientists better predict eruptions and can prepare people to evacuate dangerous areas.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Table Fold Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Table Fold" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns of the table fold with "Slope," "Lava," and "Eruption style." Label the rows with the three different types of volcanic cones. As you read the chapter, write examples of each topic under the appropriate column.

▶ Because volcanic eruptions add new material to Earth's surface, they have formed many islands, such as the Hawaiian Island chain. There, you can witness the volcanic processes that form islands, as shown in this photo.

Section 1 Volcanoes and Plate Tectonics

Volcanic eruptions can cause some of the most dramatic changes to Earth's surface. Some eruptions can be more powerful than the explosion of an atomic bomb. The cause of many of these eruptions is the movement of tectonic plates. The movement of tectonic plates is driven by Earth's internal heat.

By studying temperatures within Earth, scientists can learn more about volcanic eruptions. **Figure 1** shows estimates of Earth's inner temperatures and pressures. As the graph shows, the combined temperature and pressure in the lower part of the mantle keeps the rocks below their melting point.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the three conditions under which magma can form.
- **Explain** what volcanism is.
- **Identify** three tectonic settings where volcanoes form.
- **Describe** how magma can form plutons.

KEY TERMS

magma
volcanism
lava
volcano
hot spot

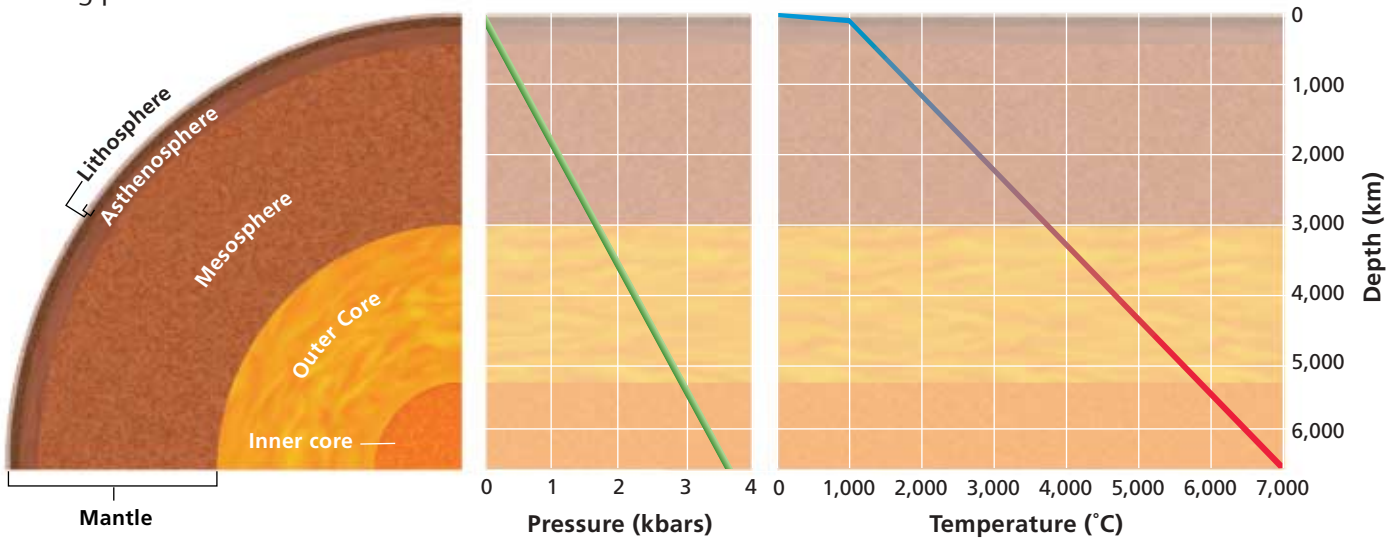
Formation of Magma

Despite the high temperature in the mantle, most of this zone remains solid because of the large amount of pressure from the surrounding rock. Sometimes, however, solid mantle and crust melt to form **magma**, or liquid rock that forms under Earth's surface.

magma liquid rock produced under Earth's surface

Magma can form under three conditions. First, if the temperature of rock rises above the melting point of the minerals the rock is composed of, the rock will melt. Second, rock melts when excess pressure is removed from rock that is above its melting point. Third, the addition of fluids, such as water, may decrease the melting point of some minerals in the rock and cause the rock to melt.

Figure 1 ▶ Temperature and pressure increase as depth beneath Earth's surface increases. So, rock in the lower mantle stays below its melting point.



Volcanism

volcanism any activity that includes the movement of magma toward or onto Earth's surface

lava magma that flows onto Earth's surface; the rock that forms when lava cools and solidifies

volcano a vent or fissure in Earth's surface through which magma and gases are expelled

Any activity that includes the movement of magma onto Earth's surface is called **volcanism.** Magma rises upward through the crust because the magma is less dense than the surrounding rock. As bodies of magma rise toward the surface, they can become larger in two ways. First, because they are so hot, they can melt some of the surrounding rock. Second, as the magma rises, it is forced into cracks in the surrounding rock. This process causes large blocks of overlying rock to break off and melt. Both of these processes add material to the magma body.

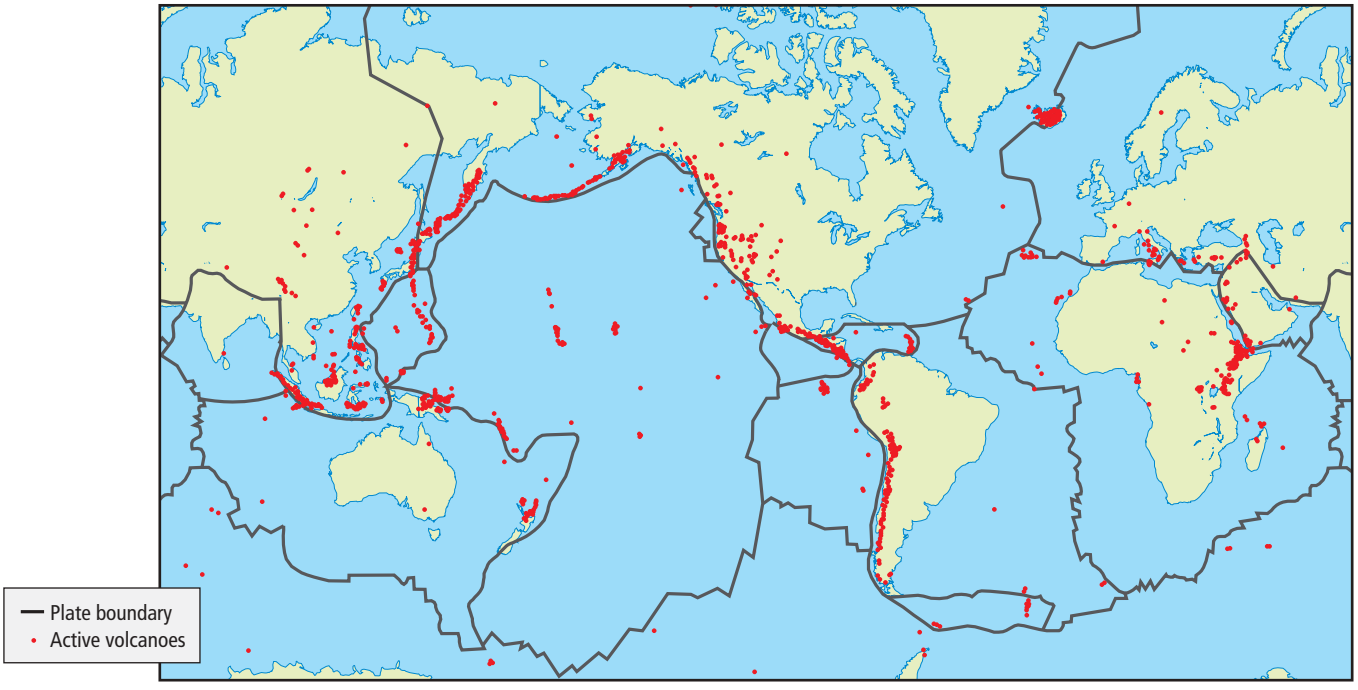
When magma erupts onto Earth's surface, the magma is called **lava.** As lava flows from an opening, or *vent,* the material may build up as a cone of material that may eventually form a mountain. The vent in Earth's surface through which magma and gases are expelled is called a **volcano.**

Major Volcanic Zones

If you were to plot the locations of the volcanoes that have erupted in the past 50 years, you would see that the locations form a pattern across Earth's surface. Like earthquakes, most active volcanoes occur in zones near both convergent and divergent boundaries of tectonic plates, as shown in **Figure 2.**

A major zone of active volcanoes encircles the Pacific Ocean. This zone, called the Pacific Ring of Fire, is formed by the subduction of plates along the Pacific coasts of North America, South America, Asia, and the islands of the western Pacific Ocean. The Pacific Ring of Fire is also one of Earth's major earthquake zones.

Figure 2 ▶ This map shows the locations of major tectonic plate boundaries and of active volcanoes. ***What is the relationship between the volcanoes and tectonic plate boundaries?***



Subduction Zones

Many volcanoes are located along *subduction zones,* where one tectonic plate moves under another. When a plate that consists of oceanic lithosphere meets one that consists of continental lithosphere, the denser oceanic lithosphere moves beneath the continental lithosphere. A deep *trench* forms on the ocean floor along the edge of the continent where the plate is subducted. The plate that consists of continental lithosphere buckles and folds to form a line of mountains along the edge of the continent.

As the oceanic plate sinks into the asthenosphere, fluids such as water from the subducting plate combine with crust and mantle material. These fluids decrease the melting point of the rock and cause the rock to melt and form magma. When the magma rises through the lithosphere and erupts on Earth's surface, lines of volcanic mountains form along the edge of the tectonic plate.

If two plates that have oceanic lithosphere at their boundaries collide, one plate subducts, and a deep trench forms. As in the case of continental lithosphere colliding with oceanic lithosphere, magma also forms as fluids are introduced into the mantle during oceanic plate collisions. Some of the magma breaks through the overriding plate to Earth's surface. Over time, a string of volcanic islands, called an *island arc,* forms on the overriding plate, as shown in **Figure 3.** The early stages of this type of subduction produce an arc of small volcanic islands, such as the Aleutian Islands, which are in the North Pacific Ocean and between Alaska and Siberia. As more magma reaches the surface, the islands become larger and join to form one landmass, such as the volcanic islands that joined to form present-day Japan.

Reading Check **When a plate that consists of oceanic crust and one that consists of continental crust meet, which plate subducts beneath the other plate? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 5 min

Changing Melting Point

Procedure

1. Place a **piece of ice** on a small **paper plate.**
2. Wait 1 min, and observe how much ice has melted. Remove the meltwater from the plate.
3. Pour **1/4 teaspoon of salt** onto a **second piece of ice.**
4. Wait 1 min, and observe how much ice has melted.

Analysis

1. What happened to the rate of melting when you added salt to the ice?
2. In this model, what is represented by the ice? by the salt?

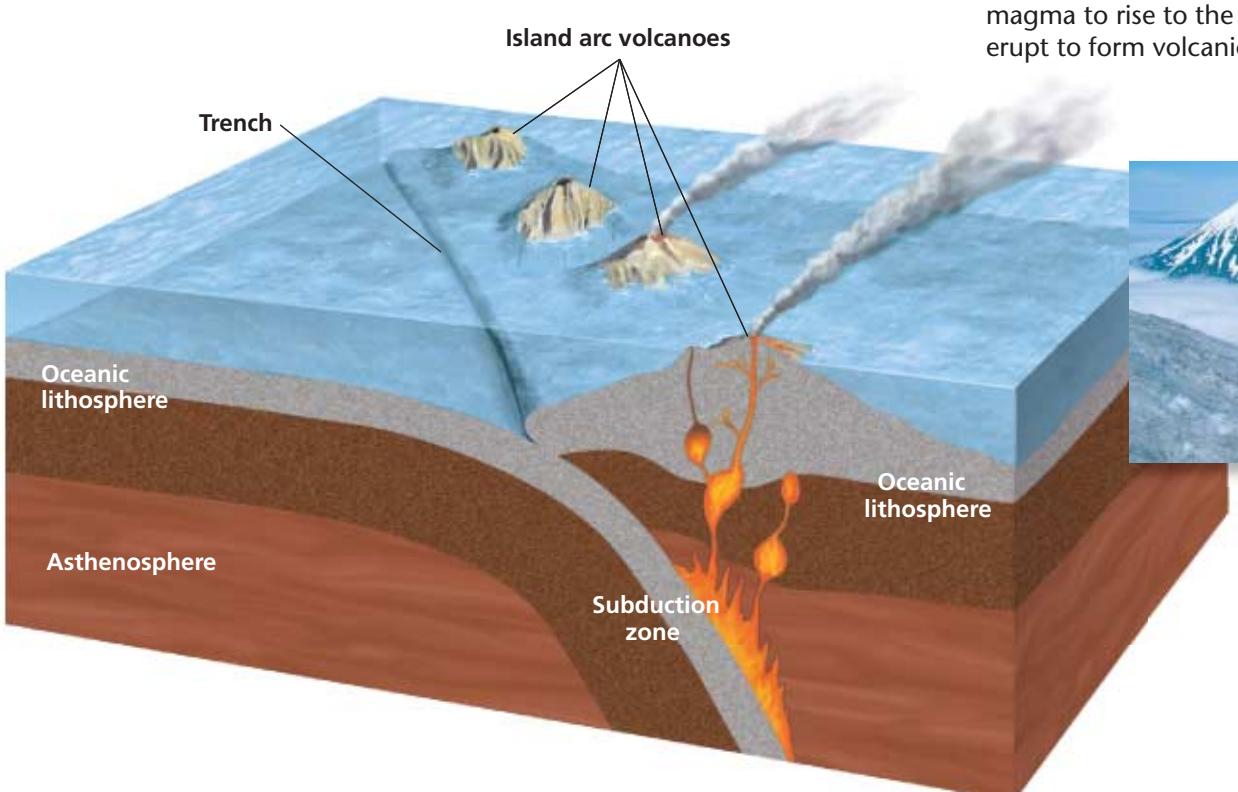


Figure 3 ▶ The Aleutian Islands (below) formed when oceanic lithosphere subducted beneath oceanic lithosphere and caused magma to rise to the surface and erupt to form volcanic islands (left).

Figure 4 ▶ When water rapidly cools hot lava, a hard, pillow-shaped crust forms. As the crust cools, it contracts and cracks. Hot lava flows through the cracks in the crust and then cools quickly to form another pillow-shaped structure.

Mid-Ocean Ridges

The largest amount of magma comes to the surface where plates are moving apart at mid-ocean ridges. Thus, the interconnected mid-ocean ridges that circle Earth form a major zone of volcanic activity. As plates pull apart, magma flows upward along the rift zone. The upwelling magma adds material to the mid-ocean ridge and creates new lithosphere along the rift. This magma erupts to form underwater volcanoes. **Figure 4** shows pillow lava, an example of volcanic rock that forms underwater at a mid-ocean ridge. Pillow lava is named for its pillow shape, which is caused by the water that rapidly cools the outer surface of the lava.

Most volcanic eruptions that happen along mid-ocean ridges are unnoticed by humans because the eruptions take place deep in the ocean. An exception is found on Iceland. Iceland is one part of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge that is above sea level. One-half of Iceland is on the North American plate and is moving westward. The other half is on the Eurasian plate and is moving eastward. The middle of Iceland is cut by large *fissures,* which are cracks through which lava flows to Earth's surface.

Connection to **GEOLOGY**

Sea-floor Formation

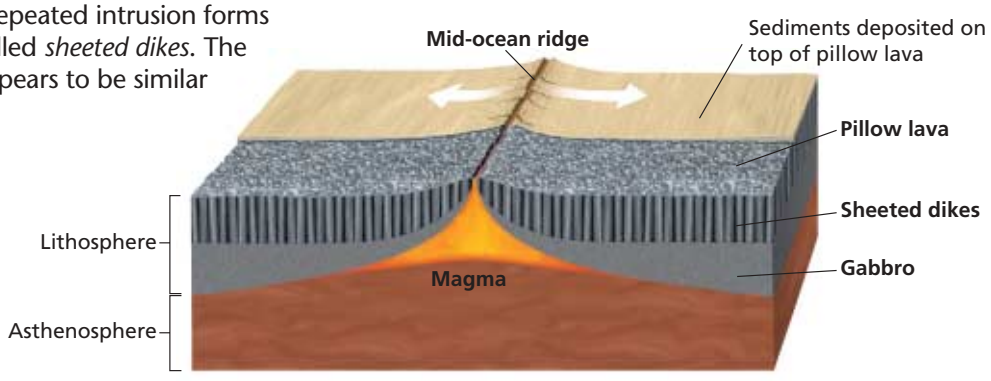
At mid-ocean ridges, magma moves upward from the asthenosphere. When the magma reaches the surface, the magma cools to form new sea-floor rock. When new sea floor forms at a mid-ocean ridge, a special sequence of rocks forms. This sequence forms because of the way the magma rises and cools. The thickness of the layers in this sequence varies greatly worldwide.

At the base of the new lithosphere, where the plates pull apart, a magma chamber forms. This chamber is cooled by circulating sea water. As the magma slowly cools, large crystals form. The crystals stick to the roof and sides of the magma chamber or sink to the bottom of the chamber and form a type of rock called *gabbro*. Gabbro forms the base layer in the rock sequence.

In the rift where the plates pull apart, the magma repeatedly intrudes. This repeated intrusion forms a series of vertical dikes called *sheeted dikes*. The structure of these dikes appears to be similar to a deck of cards standing on end. The sheeted-dike complex forms the middle layer in the rock sequence.

At the top of the new lithosphere, where the magma comes into contact with the cold ocean water, the magma freezes rapidly. This rapid freezing causes pillow lava to form. Pillow lava forms the uppermost layer in the rock sequence.

Sea-floor rock that formed millions of years ago can be seen on land today. When one plate subducts under another plate, some of the subducting crust is scraped off and becomes part of the overriding plate. The crust that was scraped off is later uplifted and exposed on land, where geologists can study the rock to learn more about the formation of sea floor.



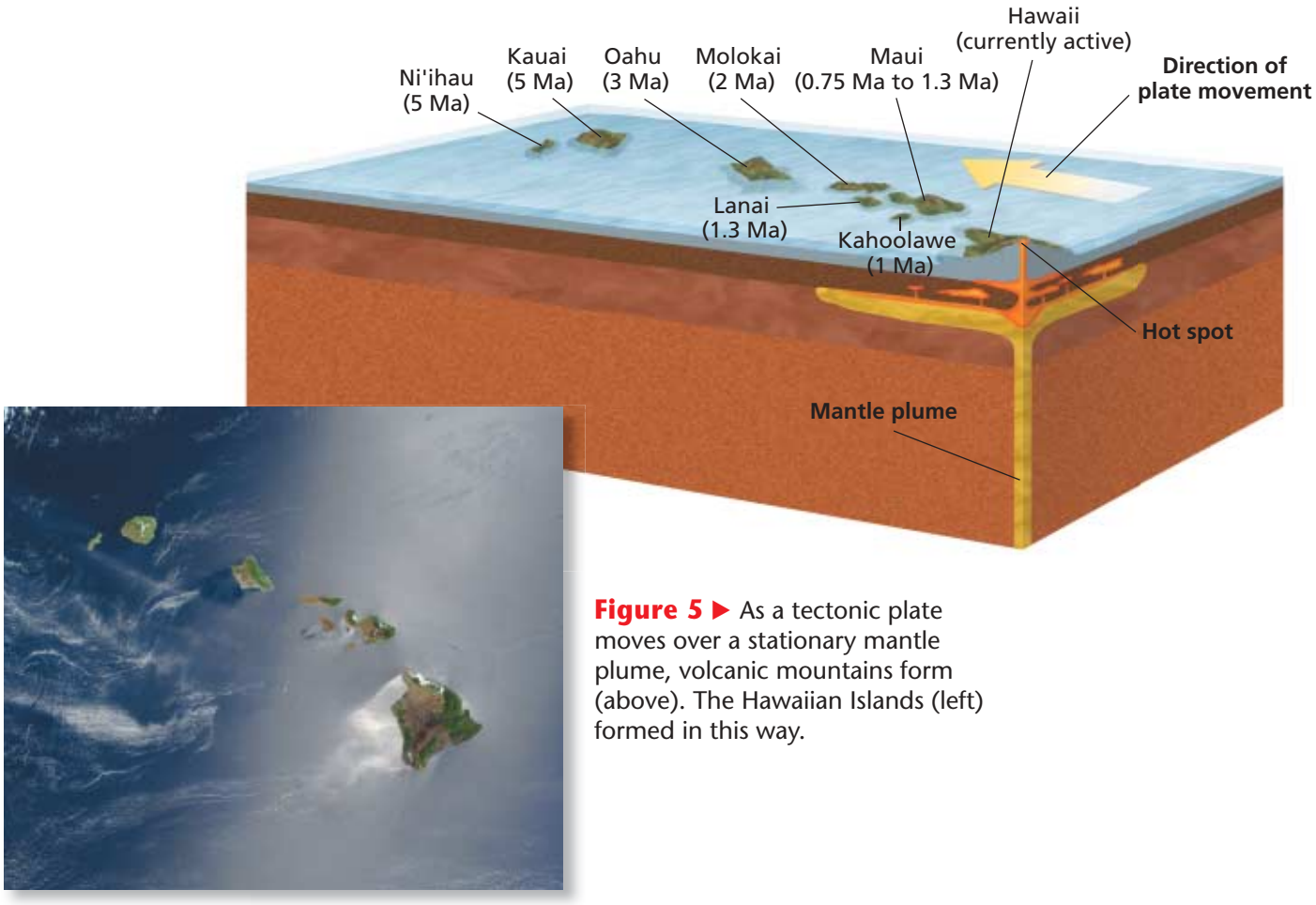


Figure 5 ▶ As a tectonic plate moves over a stationary mantle plume, volcanic mountains form (above). The Hawaiian Islands (left) formed in this way.

Hot Spots

Not all volcanoes develop along plate boundaries. Areas of volcanism within the interiors of lithospheric plates are called **hot spots.** Most hot spots form where columns of solid, hot material from the deep mantle, called *mantle plumes,* rise and reach the lithosphere. When a mantle plume reaches the lithosphere, the plume spreads out. As magma rises to the surface, it breaks through the overlying crust. Volcanoes can then form in the interior of a tectonic plate, as shown in **Figure 5.**

hot spot a volcanically active area of Earth's surface, commonly far from a tectonic plate boundary

Mantle plumes appear to remain nearly stationary. However, the lithospheric plate above a mantle plume continues to drift slowly. So, the volcano on the surface is eventually carried away from the mantle plume. The activity of the volcano stops because a hot spot that contains magma no longer feeds the volcano. However, a new volcano forms where the lithosphere has moved over the mantle plume.

Other scientists think that hot spots are the result of cracks in Earth's crust. The theory argues that hot-spot volcanoes occur in long chains because they form along cracks in Earth's crust. Both theories may be correct.

Reading Check **Explain how one mantle plume can form several volcanic islands. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 6 ▶ Devils Tower in Wyoming is an example of a pluton called a *volcanic neck,* a formation caused by cooling of magma within the vent of a volcano. The outer part of the volcano eroded, and only the volcanic neck remains.

SCILINKS® NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Volcanic Zones
SciLinks code: HQ61618

Intrusive Activity

Because magma is less dense than solid rock, magma rises through the crust toward the surface. As the magma moves upward, it comes into contact with, or *intrudes,* the overlying rock. Because of magma's high temperature, magma affects surrounding rock in a variety of ways. Magma may melt surrounding rock or may change the rock. Magma may also fracture surrounding rock and cause fissures to form or cause the surrounding rock to break apart and fall into the magma. Rock that falls into the magma may eventually melt, or the rock may combine with the new *igneous rock,* which is rock that forms when the magma cools.

When magma does not reach Earth's surface, the magma may cool and solidify inside the crust. This process results in large formations of igneous rock called *plutons,* as shown in **Figure 6.** Plutons can vary greatly in size and shape. Small plutons called *dikes* are tabular in shape and may be only a few centimeters wide. *Batholiths* are large plutons that cover an area of at least 100 km^2 when they are exposed on Earth's surface.

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** three conditions that affect whether magma forms.
2. **Explain** how magma reaches Earth's surface.
3. **Compare** magma with lava.
4. **Describe** how subduction produces magma.
5. **Identify** three tectonic settings where volcanoes commonly occur.
6. **Summarize** the formation of hot spots.
7. **Describe** two igneous structures that form under Earth's surface.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Identifying Relationships** Describe how the presence of ocean water in crustal rocks might affect the formation of magma.
9. **Applying Ideas** Yellowstone National Park in Wyoming is far from any plate boundary. How would you explain the volcanic activity in the park?

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *magma, volcanism, vent, volcano, subduction zone, hot spot, dike,* and *pluton.*

Section 2 Volcanic Eruptions

Volcanoes can be thought of as windows into Earth's interior. Lava that erupts from them provides an opportunity for scientists to study the nature of Earth's crust and mantle. By analyzing the composition of volcanic rocks, geologists have concluded that there are two general types of magma. **Mafic** (MAF ik) describes magma or rock that is rich in magnesium and iron and is commonly dark in color. **Felsic** (FEL sik) describes magma or rock that is rich in light-colored silicate materials. Mafic rock commonly makes up the oceanic crust, whereas felsic and mafic rock commonly make up the continental crust.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how the composition of magma affects volcanic eruptions and lava flow.
- **Describe** the five major types of pyroclastic material.
- **Identify** the three main types of volcanic cones.
- **Describe** how a caldera forms.
- **List** three events that may signal a volcanic eruption.

KEY TERMS

mafic
felsic
pyroclastic material
caldera

Types of Eruptions

The *viscosity,* or resistance to flow, of magma affects the force with which a particular volcano will erupt. The viscosity of magma is determined by the magma's composition. Because mafic magmas produce runny lava that has a low viscosity, they typically cause quiet eruptions. Because felsic magmas produce sticky lava that has a high viscosity, they typically cause explosive eruptions. Magma that contains large amounts of trapped, dissolved gases is more likely to produce explosive eruptions than is magma that contains small amounts of dissolved gases.

mafic describes magma or igneous rock that is rich in magnesium and iron and that is generally dark in color

felsic describes magma or igneous rock that is rich in feldspar and silica and that is generally light in color

Quiet Eruptions

Oceanic volcanoes commonly form from mafic magma. Because of mafic magma's low viscosity, gases can easily escape from mafic magma. Eruptions from oceanic volcanoes, such as those in Hawaii, shown in **Figure 1,** are usually quiet.

Figure 1 ▶ Lava flows from a quiet eruption like a red-hot river would flow. This lava flowed several miles from the Kilauea volcano to the sea.

Figure 2 ▶ Types of Mafic Lava Flow

Pahoehoe is the least viscous type of mafic lava. It forms wrinkly volcanic rock when it cools.

Aa lava is more viscous than pahoehoe lava and forms sharp volcanic rock when it cools.

Blocky lava is the most viscous type of mafic lava and forms chunky volcanic rock when it cools.

Lava Flows

When mafic lava cools rapidly, a crust forms on the surface of the flow. If the lava continues to flow after the crust forms, the crust wrinkles to form a volcanic rock called *pahoehoe* (pah HOH ee HOH ee), which is shown in **Figure 2.** Pahoehoe forms from hot, fluid lava. As it cools, it forms a smooth, ropy texture. Pahoehoe actually means "ropy" in Hawaiian.

If the crust deforms rapidly or grows too thick to form wrinkles, the surface breaks into jagged chunks to form *aa* (AH AH). Aa forms from lava that has the same composition as pahoehoe lava. Aa lava's texture results from differences in gas content and in the rate and slope of the lava flow.

Blocky lava has a higher silica content than aa lava does, which makes blocky lava more viscous than aa lava. The high viscosity causes the cooled lava at the surface to break into large chunks, while the hot lava underneath continues to flow. This process gives the lava flow a blocky appearance.

Reading Check **How do flow rate and gas content affect the appearance of lavas? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Explosive Eruptions

Unlike the fluid lavas produced by oceanic volcanoes, the felsic lavas of continental volcanoes, such as Mount St. Helens, tend to be cooler and stickier. Felsic lavas also contain large amounts of trapped gases, such as water vapor and carbon dioxide. When a volcano erupts, the dissolved gases within the lava escape and send molten and solid particles shooting into the air. So, felsic lava tends to explode and throw pyroclastic material into the air. **Pyroclastic material** consists of fragments of rock that form during a volcanic eruption.

MATH PRACTICE

A Lot of Lava Since late 1986, Kilauea volcano in Hawaii has been erupting mafic lava. In 2003, the total volume of lava that had been produced by this eruption was 0.6 mi^3, or 2.5 km^3. Calculate the average amount of lava, in cubic meters, that erupts from Kilauea each year.

pyroclastic material fragments of rock that form during a volcanic eruption

Types of Pyroclastic Material

Some pyroclastic materials form when magma breaks into fragments during an eruption because of the rapidly expanding gases in the magma. Other pyroclastic materials form when fragments of erupting lava cool and solidify as they fly through the air.

Scientists classify pyroclastic materials according to the sizes of the particles, as shown in **Figure 3.** Pyroclastic particles that are less than 2 mm in diameter are called *volcanic ash*. Volcanic ash that is less than 0.25 mm in diameter is called *volcanic dust*. Most volcanic dust and ash settles on the land that immediately surrounds the volcano. However, some of the smallest dust particles may travel around Earth in the upper atmosphere.

Large pyroclastic particles that are less than 64 mm in diameter, are called *lapilli* (luh PIL IE), which is from a Latin word that means "little stones." Lapilli generally fall near the vent.

Large clots of lava may be thrown out of an erupting volcano while they are red-hot. As they spin through the air, they cool and develop a round or spindle shape. These pyroclastic particles are called *volcanic bombs*. The largest pyroclastic materials, known as *volcanic blocks*, form from solid rock that is blasted from the vent. Some volcanic blocks are the size of a small house.

Graphic Organizer **Spider Map**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Spider Map" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the circle "Pyroclastic material." Create a leg for each type of pyroclastic material. Then, fill in the map with details about each type of pyroclastic material.

Figure 3 ▶ During an explosive eruption, like this one at Mount St. Helens, ash, blocks, and other pyroclastic materials are ejected violently from the volcano.

Types of Volcanoes

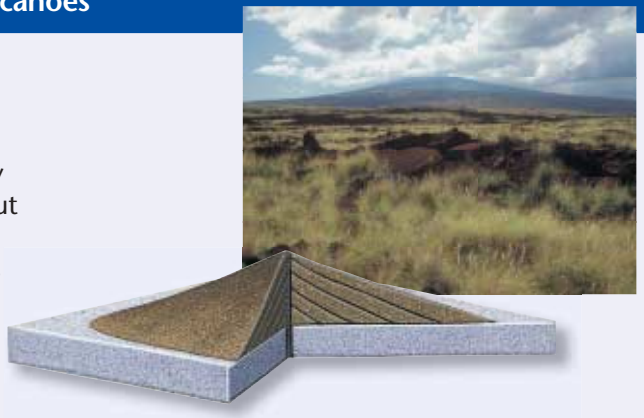
Volcanic activity produces a variety of characteristic features that form during both quiet and explosive eruptions. The lava and pyroclastic material that are ejected during volcanic eruptions build up around the vent and form volcanic cones. Volcanic cones are classified as three main types, as described in **Table 1.**

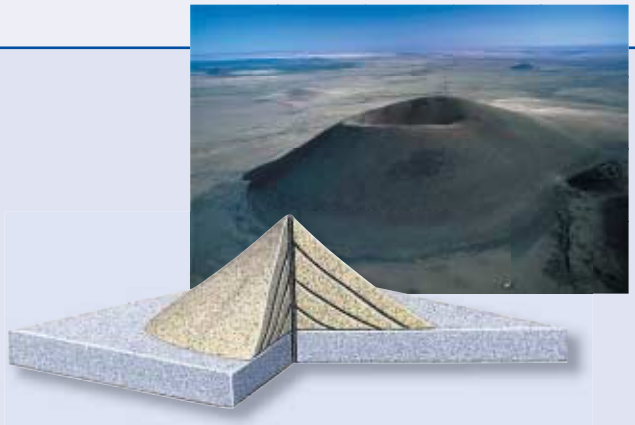
The funnel-shaped pit at the top of a volcanic vent is known as a *crater*. The crater forms when material is blown out of the volcano by explosions. A crater usually becomes wider as weathering and erosion break down the walls of the crater and allow loose materials to collapse into the vent. Sometimes, a small cone forms within a crater. This formation occurs when subsequent eruptions cause material to build up around the vent.

Table 1 ▶ Volcanic cones are classified into three main categories. ***Which type of volcano would form from lava that is highly viscous?***

Types of Volcanoes

Shield Volcanoes Volcanic cones that are broad at the base and have gently sloping sides are called *shield volcanoes*. A shield volcano covers a wide area and generally forms from quiet eruptions. Layers of hot, mafic lava flow out around the vent, harden, and slowly build up to form the cone. The Hawaiian Islands form a chain of shield volcanoes that built up from the ocean floor at a hot spot.

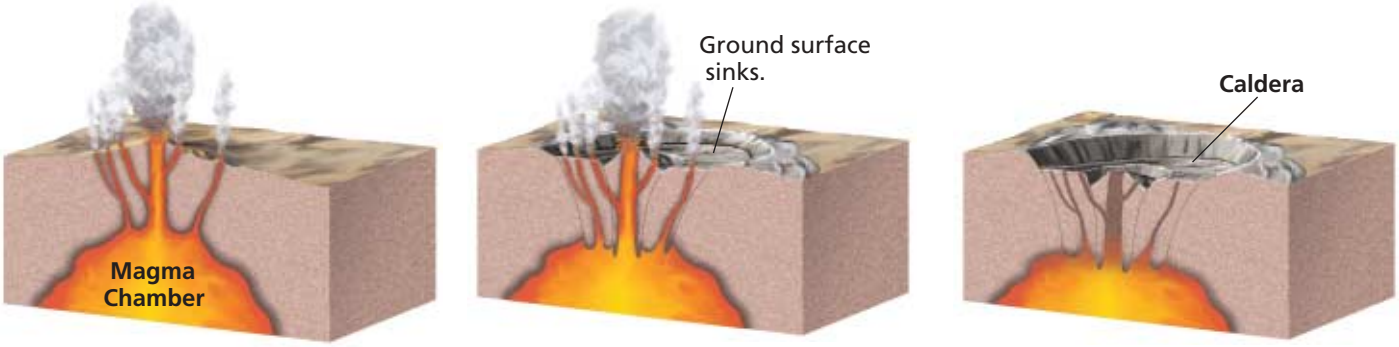




Cinder Cones A type of volcano that has very steep slopes is a cinder cone. The slope angles of the cinder cones can be close to 40°, and the slopes are rarely more than a few hundred meters high. Cinder cones form from explosive eruptions and are made of pyroclastic material.

Composite Volcanoes Composite volcanoes are made of alternating layers of hardened lava flows and pyroclastic material. During a quiet eruption, lava flows cover the sides of the cone. Then, when an explosive eruption occurs, large amounts of pyroclastic material are deposited around the vent. The explosive eruption is followed again by quiet lava flows. Composite volcanoes, also known as *stratovolcanoes,* commonly develop to form large volcanic mountains.

Figure 4 ▶ The Formation of a Caldera



A cone forms from volcanic eruptions.

Volcanic eruptions partially empty the magma chamber.

The top of the cone collapses inward to form a caldera.

Calderas

When the magma chamber below a volcano empties, the volcanic cone may collapse and leave a large, basin-shaped depression called a **caldera** (kal DER uh). The process of caldera formation is shown in **Figure 4.**

Eruptions that discharge large amounts of magma can also cause a caldera to form. Krakatau, a volcanic island in Indonesia, is an example of this type of caldera. When the volcanic cone exploded in 1883, a caldera with a diameter of 6 km formed.

Calderas may later fill with water to form lakes. Thousands of years ago, the cone of Mount Mazama in Oregon collapsed and formed a caldera. The caldera eventually filled with water and is now called Crater Lake.

caldera a large, circular depression that forms when the magma chamber below a volcano partially empties and causes the ground above to sink

Reading Check **Describe two ways that calderas form. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 25 min

Volcanic Cones

Procedure

1. Pour **1/2 cup (about 4 oz) of dry plaster of Paris** into a **measuring cup.**
2. Use a **graduated cylinder** to measure **60 mL of water,** and add the water to the dry plaster in the measuring cup. Use a **mixing spoon** to blend the mixture until it is smooth.
3. Hold the measuring cup about 2 cm over a **paper plate.** Pour the contents slowly and steadily onto the center of the plate. Allow the plaster to dry.
4. On a clean paper plate, pour **dry oatmeal or potato flakes** slowly until the mound is approximately 5 cm high.
5. Without disturbing the mound, use a **protractor** to measure its slope.
6. When the plaster cone has hardened, remove it from the plate. Measure the average slope angle of the cone.

Analysis

1. Which cone represents a cinder cone? Which cone represents a shield volcano? Compare the slope angles formed by these cones.
2. How would the slope be affected if the oatmeal were rounder, and how would the slope be affected if the oatmeal were thicker?
3. How would you use the same supplies to model a composite volcano?

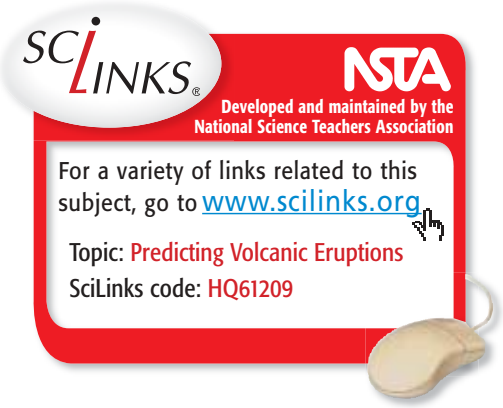
Figure 5 ▶ These scientists are sampling gases emitted from the fumarole field on Vulcano Island in Italy.

Predicting Volcanic Eruptions

A volcanic eruption can be one of Earth's most destructive natural phenomena. Scientists, such as those in **Figure 5,** look for a variety of events that may signal the beginning of an eruption.

Earthquake Activity

One of the most important warning signals of volcanic eruptions is changes in earthquake activity around the volcano. Growing pressure on the surrounding rocks from magma that is moving upward causes small earthquakes. Temperature changes within the rock and fracturing of the rock around a volcano also cause small earthquakes. An increase in the strength and frequency of earthquakes may be a signal that an eruption is about to occur.



Patterns in Activity

Before an eruption, the upward movement of magma beneath the surface may cause the surface of the volcano to bulge outward. Special instruments can measure small changes in the tilt of the ground surface on the volcano's slopes.

Predicting the eruption of a particular volcano also requires some knowledge of its previous eruptions. Scientists compare the volcano's past behavior with current daily measurements of earthquakes, surface bulges, and changes in the amount and composition of the gases that the volcano emits. Unfortunately, only a few of the active volcanoes in the world have been studied by scientists long enough to establish any activity patterns. Also, volcanoes that have been dormant for long periods of time may, with little warning, suddenly become active.

Section 2 Review

1. **Summarize** the difference between mafic and felsic magma.
2. **Explain** how the composition of magma affects the force of volcanic eruptions.
3. **Compare** three major types of lava flows.
4. **Define** *pyroclastic material,* and list three examples.
5. **Identify** the three main types of volcanic cones.
6. **Describe** how calderas form.
7. **List** three events that may precede a volcanic eruption.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Applying Ideas** Would quiet eruptions or explosive eruptions be more likely to increase the steepness of a volcanic cone? Explain your answer.
9. **Drawing Conclusions** Why would a sudden increase of earthquake activity around a volcano indicate a possible eruption?

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *mafic lava, felsic lava, pahoehoe, aa, shield volcano, pyroclastic material, lapilli, volcanic bomb, volcanic block, volcanic ash,* and *volcanic dust.*

Chapter 13

Highlights

Sections

1 Volcanoes and Plate Tectonics

Key Terms

magma, 319
volcanism, 320
lava, 320
volcano, 320
hot spot, 323

Key Concepts

- Magma can form when temperature or pressure changes in mantle rock. Magma also may form when water is added to hot rock.
- Volcanism is any activity that includes the movement of magma onto Earth's surface.
- Volcanism is common at convergent and divergent boundaries between tectonic plates.
- Hot spots are areas of volcanic activity that are located over rising mantle plumes that can exist far from tectonic plate boundaries.
- Magma that cools below Earth's surface forms intrusive igneous rock bodies called plutons.

2 Volcanic Eruptions

mafic, 325
felsic, 325
pyroclastic material, 326
caldera, 329

- Lava and magma can be described as mafic or felsic.
- Hot, less viscous, mafic lava commonly causes quiet eruptions. Cool, more viscous, felsic lava commonly causes explosive eruptions, especially if it contains trapped gases.
- Volcanic cones are classified into three categories based on composition and form.
- A caldera forms where a volcanic cone collapses and leaves a large, basin-shaped depression.
- Events that might signal a volcanic eruption include changes in earthquake activity, changes in the volcano's shape, changes in composition and amount of gases emitted, and changes in the patterns of the volcano's normal activity.

Chapter 13 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *volcanism*
2. *hot spot*
3. *pyroclastic material*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *magma* and *lava*
5. *mafic* and *felsic*
6. *shield volcano* and *composite volcano*
7. *crater* and *caldera*

Understanding Key Concepts

8. A characteristic of lava that determines the force of a volcanic eruption is
   a. color. **c.** density.
   b. viscosity. **d.** age.

9. Island arcs form when oceanic lithosphere subducts under
   a. continental lithosphere.
   b. calderas.
   c. volcanic bombs.
   d. oceanic lithosphere.

10. Areas of volcanism within tectonic plates are called
    a. hot spots. **c.** calderas.
    b. cones. **d.** fissures.

11. Explosive volcanic eruptions commonly result from
    a. mafic magma. **c.** aa lava.
    b. felsic magma. **d.** pahoehoe lava.

12. Pyroclastic materials that form rounded or spindle shapes as they fly through the air are called
    a. ash. **c.** lapilli.
    b. volcanic bombs. **d.** volcanic blocks.

13. A cone formed by only solid fragments built up around a volcanic opening is a
    a. shield volcano.
    b. cinder cone.
    c. composite volcano.
    d. stratovolcano.

14. The depression that results when a volcanic cone collapses over an emptying magma chamber is a
    a. crater. **c.** vent.
    b. caldera. **d.** fissure.

15. Scientists have discovered that before an eruption, earthquakes commonly
    a. stop.
    b. increase in number.
    c. have no relationship with volcanism.
    d. decrease in number.

Short Answer

16. At what point does magma become lava?

17. Describe how tectonic movement can form volcanoes.

18. Name the process that includes the movement of magma onto Earth's surface.

19. What may happen to magma that does not reach Earth's surface?

20. How is the composition of magma related to the force of volcanic eruptions?

21. List and describe the major types of pyroclastic material.

22. Compare the three main types of volcanic cones.

23. What signs can scientists study to try to predict volcanic eruptions?

Critical Thinking

24. Analyzing Ideas Why is most lava that forms on Earth's surface unnoticed and unobserved?

25. Identifying Relationships The Pacific Ring of Fire is a zone of major volcanic activity because of tectonic plate boundaries. Identify another area of Earth where you might expect to find volcanic activity.

26. Analyzing Processes Why does felsic lava tend to form composite volcanoes and cinder cones rather than shield volcanoes?

27. Making Inferences How might geologists distinguish an impact crater on Earth, such as Meteor Crater in Arizona, from a volcanic crater?

28. Making Comparisons Sinkholes form when the roof of an underground cave is not supported by groundwater. Compare this process to the process by which calderas form.

Concept Mapping

29. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *magma, lava, volcano, pluton, mafic lava, felsic lava, pyroclastic material, volcanic ash, volcanic dust, lapilli, volcanic bomb, volcanic block, volcanic cone, shield volcano, cinder cone,* and *composite volcano*.

Math Skills

30. Making Calculations On day 1, a volcano expelled 5 metric tons of sulfur dioxide. On day 2, the same volcano expelled 12 metric tons of sulfur dioxide. What is the percentage increase of sulfur dioxide expelled from day 1 to day 2?

31. Interpreting Statistics A lava flow travels for 7.3 min before it flows into the ocean. The velocity of the lava is 3 m/s. How far did the lava flow travel?

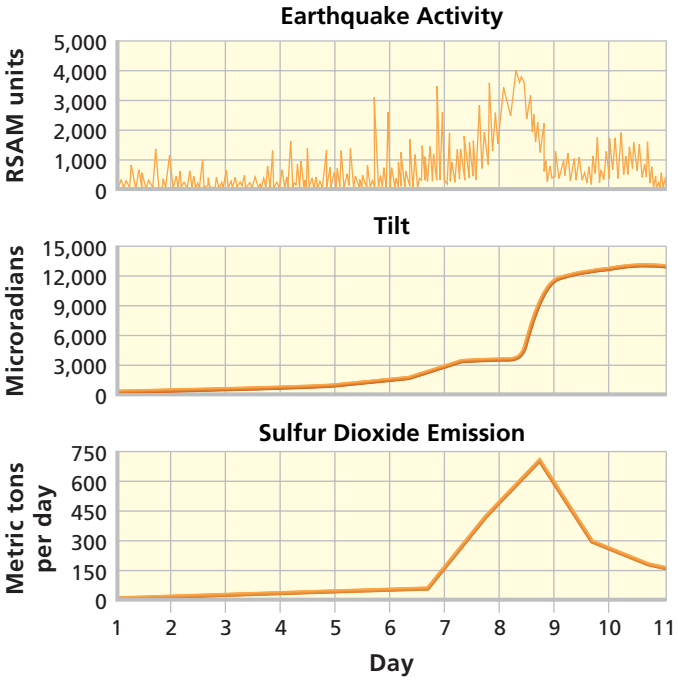
Writing Skills

32. Outlining Topics Outline the essential steps in the process of caldera formation.

33. Communicating Main Ideas Write an essay describing the formation of a volcano.

Interpreting Graphics

The graphs below show data about earthquake activity; the slope angle, or *tilt*, of the ground; and the amount of gas emitted for a particular volcano over a period of 10 days. Use the graphs to answer the questions that follow.



34. On what day did the volcano erupt? Explain your answer.

35. For how many days before the eruption did gas emission increase?

36. Why do you think the slope angle of the ground did not return to its original angle after the eruption?

Chapter 13 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 What type of volcanic rock commonly makes up much of the continental crust?
- **A.** basalt rock that is rich in olivines
- **B.** felsic rock that is rich in silicates
- **C.** limestone that is rich in calcium carbonate
- **D.** mafic rock that is rich in iron and magnesium

2 Which of the following formations results from magma that cools before it reaches Earth's surface?
- **F.** batholiths
- **G.** mantle plumes
- **H.** volcanic blocks
- **I.** aa lava

3 How does volcanic activity contribute to plate margins where new crust is being formed?
- **A.** Where plates collide at subduction zones, rocks melt and form pockets of magma.
- **B.** Between plate boundaries, hot spots may form a chain of volcanic islands.
- **C.** When plates pull apart at oceanic ridges, magma creates new ocean floor.
- **D.** At some boundaries, new crust is formed when one plate is forced on top of another.

4 An important warning sign of volcanic activity
- **F.** would be a change in local wind patterns
- **G.** is a bulge in the surface of the volcano
- **H.** might be a decrease in earthquake activity
- **I.** is a marked increase in local temperatures

5 Which aspect of mafic lava is important in the formation of smooth, ropy pahoehoe lava?
- **A.** a fairly high viscosity
- **B.** a fairly low viscosity
- **C.** rapidly deforming crust
- **D.** rapid underwater cooling

Directions (6–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 What is the name for rounded blobs of lava formed by the rapid, underwater cooling of lava?

7 Where is the Ring of Fire located?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–10): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Volcanoes That Changed the Weather

In 1815, Mt. Tambora in Indonesia erupted violently. Following this eruption, one of the largest recorded weather-related disruptions of the last 10,000 years occurred throughout North America and Western Europe. The year 1816 became known as "the year without a summer." Snowfalls and a killing frost occurred during the summer months of June, July, and August of that year. A similar, but less severe episode of cooling followed the 1991 eruption of Mt. Pinatubo. Eruptions such as these can send gases and volcanic dust high into the atmosphere. Once in the atmosphere the gas and dust travel great distances, block sunlight, and cause short-term cooling over large areas of the globe. Some scientists have even suggested a connection between volcanoes and the ice ages.

8 What can be inferred from the passage?
- **A.** Earthquakes can create the same atmospheric effects as volcanoes do.
- **B.** Volcanic eruptions can have effects far beyond their local lava flows.
- **C.** Major volcanic eruptions are common events.
- **D.** The year 1815 also had a number of earthquakes and other natural disasters.

9 According to the passage, which of the following statements is false?
- **F.** The year 1816 became known as "the year without a summer."
- **G.** The world experienced a period of unusually warm weather after Mt. Pinatubo erupted
- **H.** Mt. Pinatubo erupted in 1991.
- **I.** Eruptions send gas and dust into the atmosphere, where they travel around the globe.

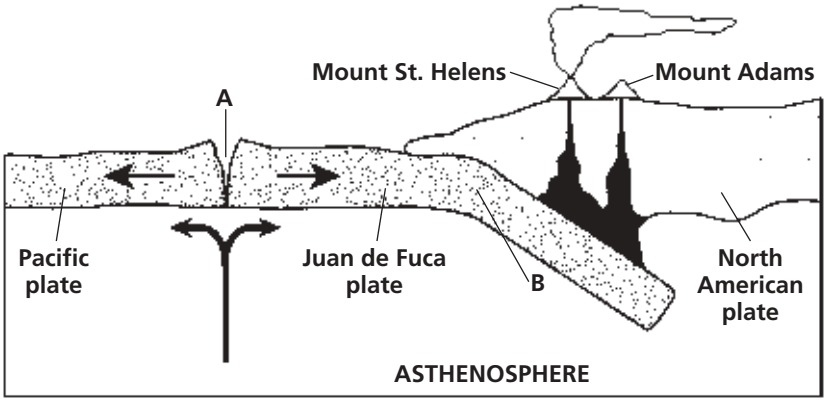
10 The eruptions described in the passage changed the weather briefly. Some scientists believe that periods of severe volcanic activity can produce long-term changes to the climate. Suggest one specific way in which the materials sent into the atmosphere by volcanoes might cause long-term changes to global climate and temperature?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–13): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

Base your answers to question 11 on the cross-section below, which shows volcanic activity in the Cascade region of the Pacific West Coast.

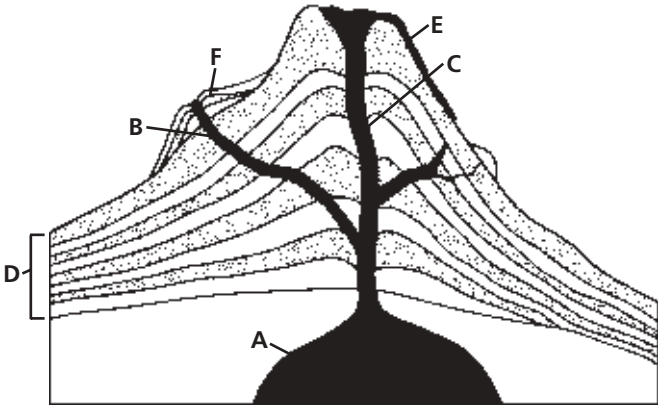
Cross-Section of the Juan de Fuca Ridge



11 Explain how the tectonic activity near point B causes the volcanic activity at Mount St. Helens and Mount Adams in the Cascade Range?

Base your answers to questions 12 and 13 on the diagram of the interior of a volcano shown below.

Interior of a Volcano



12 What is the term for the underground pool of molten rock, marked by the letter A, that feeds the volcano?

A. fissure
B. intrusion
C. lava pool
D. magma chamber

13 Letter D shows alternating layers in the volcanic cone. What are these layers made of, and what does this lead you to believe about the type of volcano that is represented in the diagram above?

Test TIP

When using a diagram to answer questions, carefully study each part of the figure as well as any lines or labels used to indicate parts of the diagram.

Chapter 13

Making Models Lab

Objectives

- **Create** a working apparatus to test carbon dioxide levels.
- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Analyze** the levels of carbon dioxide emitted from a model volcano.
- **Predict** the possibility of an eruption from a model volcano.

Materials

baking soda, 15 cm^3
drinking bottle, 16 oz
box or stand for plastic cup
clay, modeling
coin
cup, clear plastic, 9 oz
graduated cylinder
limewater, 1 L
straw, drinking, flexible
tissue, bathroom (2 sheets)
vinegar, white, 140 mL
water, 100 mL

Safety

Volcano Verdict

You will need to have a partner for this exploration. You and your partner will act as geologists who work in a city located near a volcano. City officials are counting on you to predict when the volcano will erupt next. You and your partner have decided to use limewater as a gas-emissions tester. You will use this tester to measure the levels of carbon dioxide emitted from a simulated volcano. The more active the volcano is, the more carbon dioxide it releases.

PROCEDURE

1. Carefully pour limewater into the plastic cup until the cup is three-fourths full. Place the cup on a box or stand. This will be your gas-emissions tester.
2. Now, build a model volcano. Begin by pouring 50 mL of water and 70 mL of vinegar into the drink bottle.
3. Form a plug of clay around the short end of the straw. The clay plug must be large enough to cover the opening of the bottle. Be careful not to get the clay wet.

Step 5

4. Sprinkle 5 cm^3 of baking soda along the center of a single section of bathroom tissue. Then, roll the tissue, and twist the ends so that the baking soda can't fall out.

5. Drop the tissue into the drink bottle, and immediately put the short end of the straw inside the bottle to make a seal with the clay.

6. Put the other end of the straw into the limewater.

7. Record your observations. You have just taken your first measurement of gas levels from the volcano.

8. Imagine that it is several days later and that you need to test the volcano again to collect more data. Before you continue, toss a coin. If it lands heads up, go to step 9. If it lands tails up, go to step 10. Write down the step that you follow.

9. Repeat steps 1–7. But use 2 cm^3 of baking soda in the tissue in step 4 instead of 5 cm^3. (Note: You must use fresh water, vinegar, and limewater.) Record your observations.

10. Repeat steps 1–7. But use 8 cm^3 of baking soda in the tissue in step 4 instead of 5 cm^3. (Note: You must use fresh water, vinegar, and limewater.) Record your observations.

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Explaining Events** How do you explain the difference in the appearance of the limewater from one trial to the next?

2. **Recognizing Patterns** What does the data that you collected tell you about the activity in the volcano?

3. **Evaluating Results** Based on your results in step 9 or 10, do you think it would be necessary to evacuate the city?

4. **Applying Conclusions** How would a geologist use a gas-emissions tester to predict volcanic eruptions?

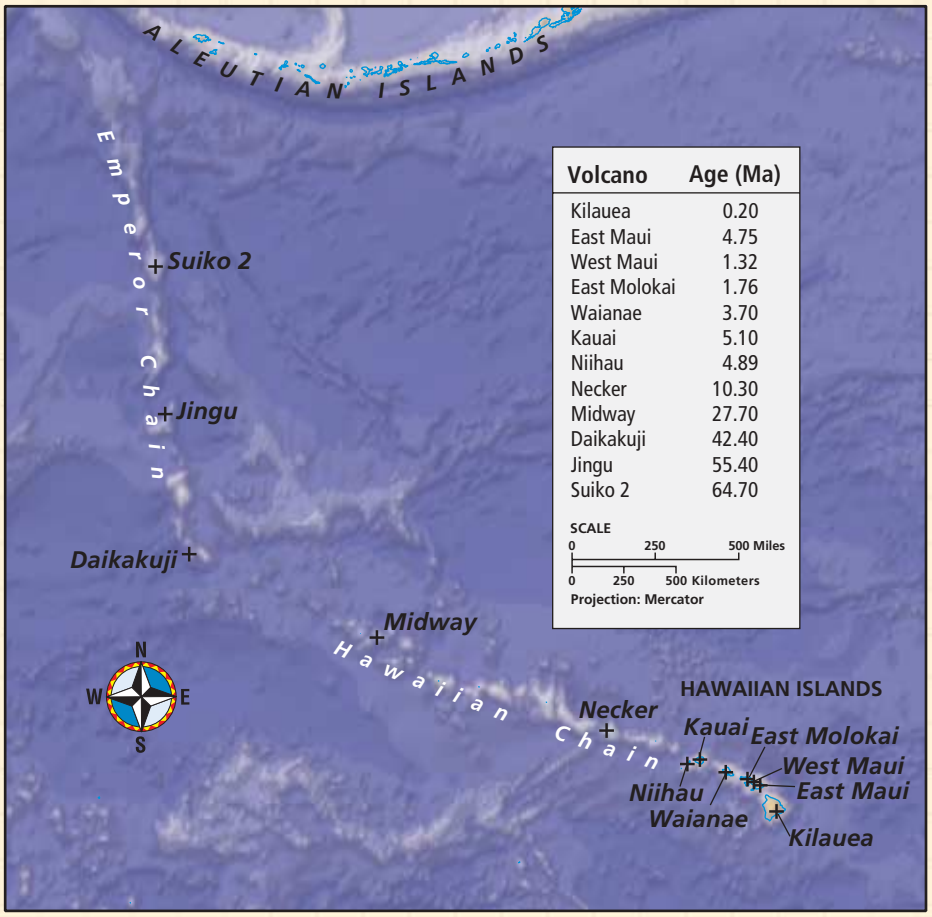
Extension

1. **Evaluating Data** Scientists base their predictions of eruptions on a variety of evidence before recommending an evacuation. What other forms of evidence would a scientist need to know to predict an eruption?

Mount Usu, 770 kilometers from Tokyo in Japan, erupted on March 31, 2000.

MAPS in Action

The Hawaiian-Emperor Seamount Chain



Volcano	Age (Ma)
Kilauea	0.20
East Maui	4.75
West Maui	1.32
East Molokai	1.76
Waianae	3.70
Kauai	5.10
Niihau	4.89
Necker	10.30
Midway	27.70
Daikakuji	42.40
Jingu	55.40
Suiko 2	64.70

Map Skills Activity

This map shows the locations and ages of islands and seamounts in the Hawaiian-Emperor seamount chain, which is located in the Pacific Ocean. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Inferring Relationships** Under which volcano is the hot spot presently located?
2. **Using the Key** Which volcano is the oldest?
3. **Evaluating Data** A seamont is a submarine volcanic mountain. Would you expect older volcanoes to be seamounts or islands? Explain your answer.
4. **Analyzing Data** Which island signifies a change in direction of the movement of the Pacific plate? Explain your answer.
5. **Identifying Trends** In which direction has the Pacific plate been moving since the formation of the islands in the seamount chain changed direction?
6. **Analyzing Relationships** How many years ago did the Pacific plate change its direction?
7. **Analyzing Data** What is the average speed of the Pacific plate over the last 65 million years?
8. **Predicting Consequences** Where would you expect a new volcano to form 1 million years from now?

The Effects of Volcanoes on Climate

Some scientists think that average temperatures around the globe will rise by 2°C by the year 2050 because of the air pollution released by the use of fossil fuels by humans. To understand the possible effects of human activity on Earth's environment, scientists are studying another source of atmospheric pollution—volcanoes.

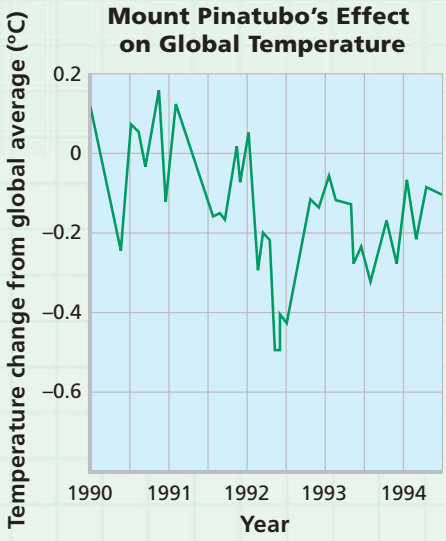
Volcanic Ash

The lava, gases, and ash that erupt into the atmosphere during a volcanic eruption can darken the skies for hundreds of kilometers. In the months after an eruption, some of this material settles to Earth, but much of it remains in the atmosphere, where wind currents disperse it around the world. While the dust and gases are not visible, they affect the climate of the entire planet.

Blocking the Sun's Energy

In June of 1991, Mount Pinatubo began a long series of eruptions. The resulting lava, ash, and mud flows devastated 20,000 km² of land. The eruption also released more than 18 million metric tons of sulfur dioxide into the atmosphere. Sulfur dioxide combines with water to become sulfuric acid, which reflects the sun's energy back into space. Scientists predicted that these large amounts of sulfur dioxide would have a cooling effect on Earth's surface. As predicted, average global surface temperatures dropped about 0.6°C by late 1992 and began to recover slowly after that.

By using data collected from several volcanic eruptions, scientists are developing computer models that may help them better understand and predict global climate changes.



▲ The low average global temperatures in 1992 are most likely caused by Mount Pinatubo's eruption in 1991.

Learning how the atmosphere is affected by such natural events will also help scientists understand how pollution from human sources affects the atmosphere.

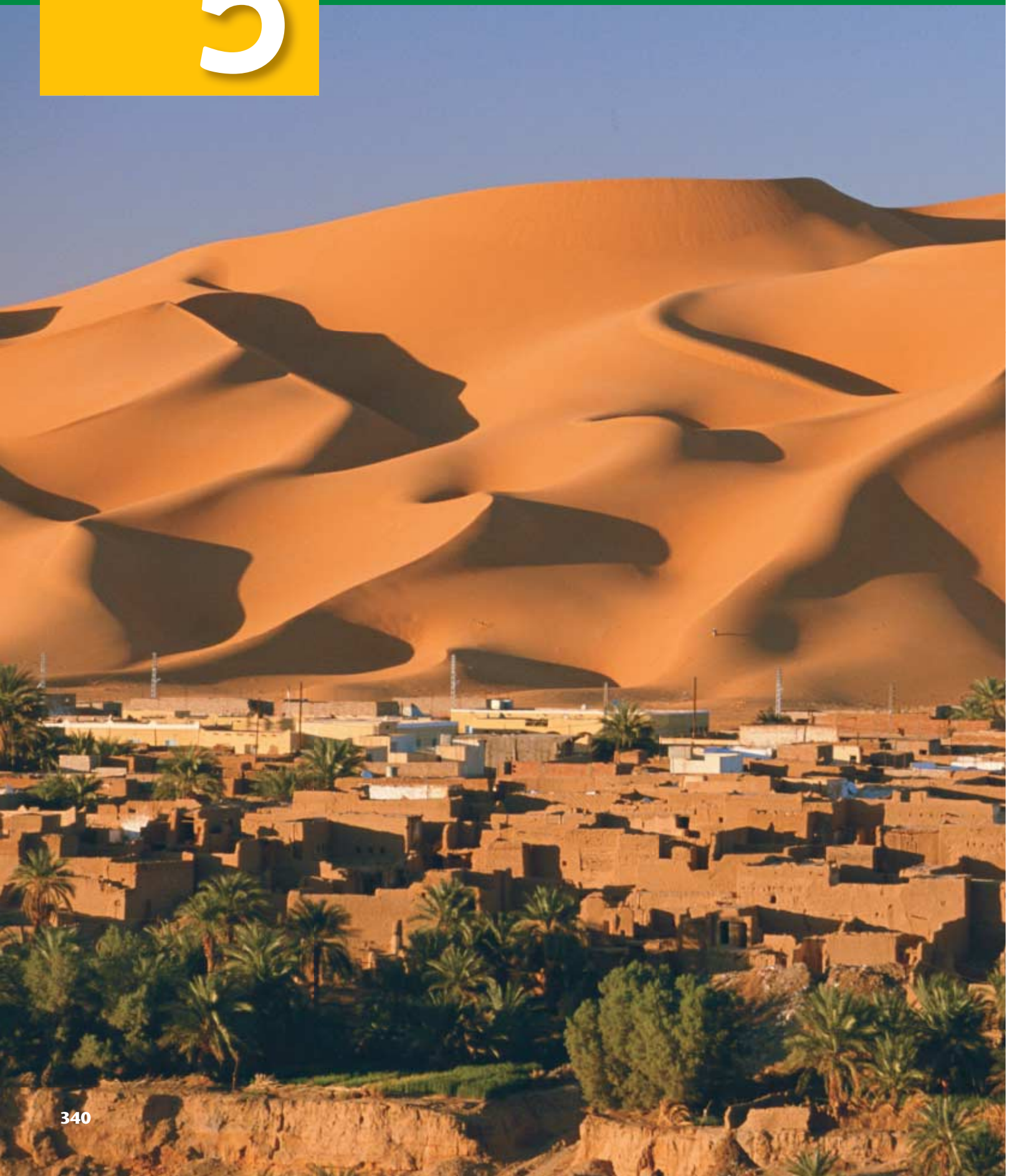
▼ During the 1991 eruption of Mount Pinatubo in the Philippines, ash fell like snow falls for several days.

Extension

1. **Applying Ideas** How would you determine if the 1991 eruption of Mount Pinatubo affected the average monthly temperatures in your community?
2. **Research** Find out how the 1980 eruption of Mount St. Helens changed nearby ecosystems, and identify which effects are still noticeable today.

Unit 5

RESHAPING THE CRUST



Unit 5 Outline

CHAPTER 14
Weathering and Erosion

CHAPTER 15
River Systems

CHAPTER 16
Groundwater

CHAPTER 17
Glaciers

CHAPTER 18
Erosion by Wind and Waves

▶ Earth's surface is constantly shaped by the action of wind and water. Winds in the Sahara move enormous amounts of sand and form huge sand dunes, such as these near the town of Kerzaz in Algeria, Africa.

Chapter 14

Weathering and Erosion

Sections

1 Weathering Processes
2 Rates of Weathering
3 Soil
4 Erosion

What You'll Learn

- How rock breaks down
- How soil forms
- What agents erode rock and soil

Why It's Relevant

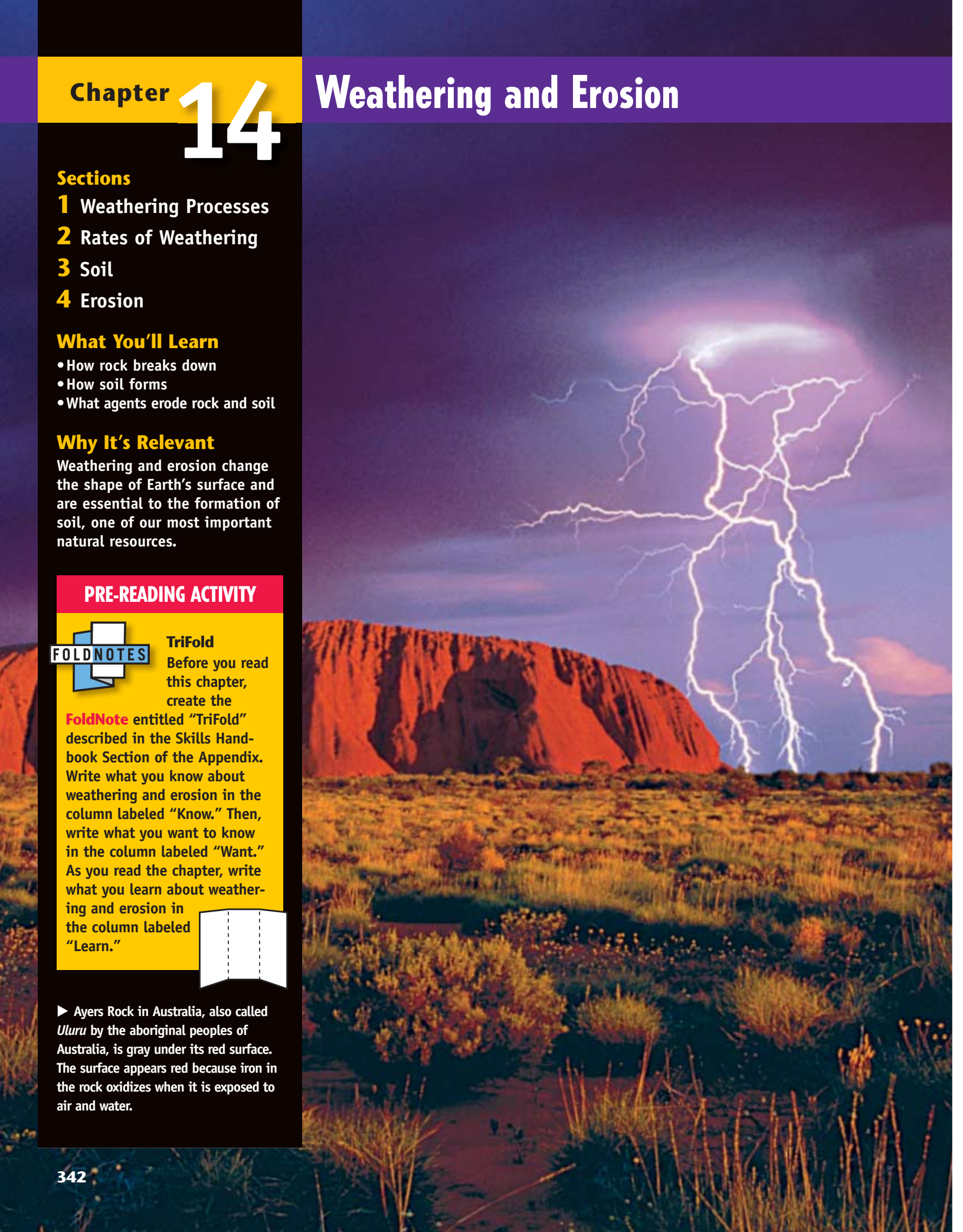
Weathering and erosion change the shape of Earth's surface and are essential to the formation of soil, one of our most important natural resources.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

TriFold

Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "TriFold" described in the Skills Handbook Section of the Appendix. Write what you know about weathering and erosion in the column labeled "Know." Then, write what you want to know in the column labeled "Want." As you read the chapter, write what you learn about weathering and erosion in the column labeled "Learn."



▶ Ayers Rock in Australia, also called *Uluru* by the aboriginal peoples of Australia, is gray under its red surface. The surface appears red because iron in the rock oxidizes when it is exposed to air and water.

Section 1 Weathering Processes

Most rocks deep within Earth's crust formed under conditions of high temperature and pressure. When these rocks are uplifted to the surface, they are no longer exposed to extreme temperatures and pressure. Uplifted rock is, however, exposed to the gases and water in Earth's atmosphere.

Because of these environmental factors, surface rocks undergo changes in their appearance and composition. The change in the physical form or chemical composition of rock materials is called **weathering.** There are two main types of weathering processes—mechanical weathering and chemical weathering. Each type of weathering has different effects on rock.

OBJECTIVES

- **Identify** three agents of mechanical weathering.
- **Compare** mechanical and chemical weathering processes.
- **Describe** four chemical reactions that decompose rock.

KEY TERMS

weathering
mechanical weathering
abrasion
chemical weathering
oxidation
hydrolysis
carbonation
acid precipitation

Mechanical Weathering

The process by which rock is broken down into smaller pieces by physical means is **mechanical weathering.** Mechanical weathering is strictly a physical process and does not change the composition of the rock. Common agents of mechanical weathering are ice, plants and animals, gravity, running water, and wind.

Physical changes within the rock itself affect mechanical weathering. For example, as overlying rocks are removed from above granite that formed deep beneath Earth's surface, the pressure on the granite decreases. As a result of the decreasing pressure, the granite expands. Long, curved cracks, called *joints,* that are parallel to the surface develop in the rock. When joints develop on the surface of the rock, the rock breaks into curved sheets that peel away from the underlying rock in a process called *exfoliation.* One example of granite exfoliation on a dome in Yosemite National Park is shown in **Figure 1.**

weathering the natural process by which atmospheric and environmental agents, such as wind, rain, and temperature changes, disintegrate and decompose rocks

mechanical weathering the process by which rocks break down into smaller pieces by physical means

Figure 1 ▶ This area of Yosemite National Park is part of a dome of granite that is shedding large sheets of rock through the process of exfoliation.

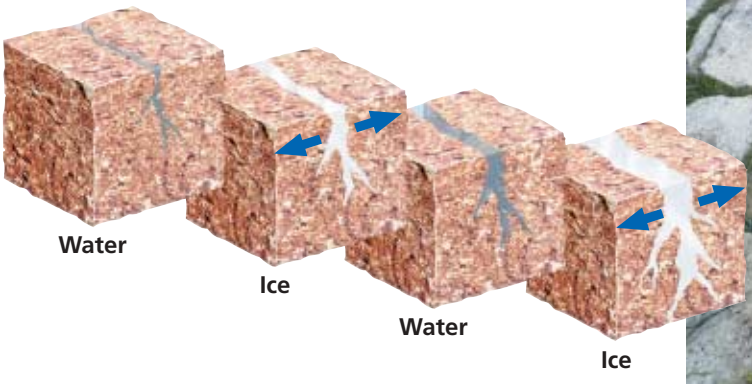


Figure 2 ▶ Water flows into a crack in a rock's surface. When the water freezes, it expands and causes the crack to widen. Ice wedging is responsible for most of the cracks shown in the photograph.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Weathering
SciLinksCode: HQ61648
Topic: Acid Precipitation
SciLinksCode: HQ61690

Ice Wedging

A type of mechanical weathering that occurs in cold climates is called *ice wedging*. Ice wedging occurs when water seeps into cracks in rock and then freezes. When the water freezes, its volume increases by about 10% and creates pressure on the surrounding rock. Every time the ice thaws and refreezes, cracks in the rock widen and deepen. This process eventually splits the rock apart, as shown in **Figure 2.** Ice wedging commonly occurs at high elevations and in cold climates. It also occurs in climates where the temperature regularly rises above and then falls below freezing, such as in the northern United States.

Abrasion

The collision of rocks that results in the breaking and wearing away of the rocks is a form of mechanical weathering called **abrasion.** Abrasion is caused by gravity, running water, and wind. Gravity causes loose soil and rocks to move down the slope of a hill or mountain. Rocks break into smaller pieces as they fall and collide. Running water can carry particles of sand or rock that scrape against each other and against stationary rocks. Thus, exposed surfaces are weathered by abrasion.

Wind is another agent of abrasion. When wind lifts and carries small particles, it can hurl them against surfaces, such as rocks. As the airborne particles strike the rock, they wear away the surface in the same way that a sandblaster would.

abrasion the grinding and wearing away of rock surfaces through the mechanical action of other rock or sand particles

Reading Check **Describe two types of mechanical weathering. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 3 ▶ This gray wolf (left) is burrowing into soil to make a den. Prairie dogs (above) also dig into soil and rock to form extensive burrows, where an entire prairie dog community may live.

Organic Activity

Plants and animals are important agents of mechanical weathering. As plants grow, the roots grow and expand to create pressure that wedges rock apart. The roots of small plants cause small cracks to form in the rocks. Eventually, the roots of large plants and trees can fit in the cracks and make the cracks bigger.

The digging activities of burrowing animals, shown in **Figure 3,** also cause weathering. Common burrowing animals include ground squirrels, prairie dogs, ants, earthworms, coyotes, and rabbits. Earthworms and other animals that move soil expose new rock surfaces to both mechanical and chemical weathering. Animal activities and plants can weather rocks dramatically over a long period of time.

QuickLAB 15 min

Mechanical Weathering

Procedure

1. Examine some **silicate rock chips** by using a **hand lens.** Observe the shape and surface texture.
2. Fill a **plastic container** that has a **tight-fitting lid** about half full of rock chips. Add **water** to just cover the chips.
3. Tighten the lid, and shake the container 100 times.
4. Hold a **strainer** over another container. Pour the water and rock chips into the strainer.
5. Move your finger around the inside of the empty container. Describe what you feel.
6. Use the hand lens to observe the rock chips.
7. Pour the water into a **glass jar,** and examine the water with the hand lens.
8. Put the rock chips and water back into the container that has the lid. Repeat steps 3–7.
9. Repeat step 8 two more times.

Analysis

1. Did the amount and particle size of the sediment that was left in the container change during your investigation? Explain your answer.
2. How did the appearance of the rock chips change? How did the appearance of the water change?
3. How does the transport of rock particles by water, such as in a river, affect the size and shape of the rock particles?

Chemical Weathering

chemical weathering the process by which rocks break down as a result of chemical reactions

oxidation a reaction that removes one or more electrons from a substance such that the substance's valence or oxidation state increases; in geology, the process by which an element combines with oxygen

The process by which rock is broken down because of chemical interactions with the environment is **chemical weathering.** Chemical weathering, or decomposition, occurs when chemical reactions act on the minerals in rock. Chemical reactions commonly occur between rock, water, carbon dioxide, oxygen, and acids. Acids are substances that form *hydronium ions,* or H_3O^+, in water. Hydronium ions are electrically charged and can pull apart the chemical bonds of the minerals in rock. Bases can also chemically weather rock. Bases are substances that form *hydroxide ions,* or OH^-, in water. Chemical reactions with either acids or bases can change the structure of minerals, which leads to the formation of new minerals. Chemical weathering changes both the chemical composition and physical appearance of the rock.

MATH PRACTICE

Rates of Weathering

Limestone is dissolved by chemical weathering at a rate of 0.2 cm every 100 years. At this rate, after how many years would a layer of limestone 15 m thick completely dissolve?

Oxidation

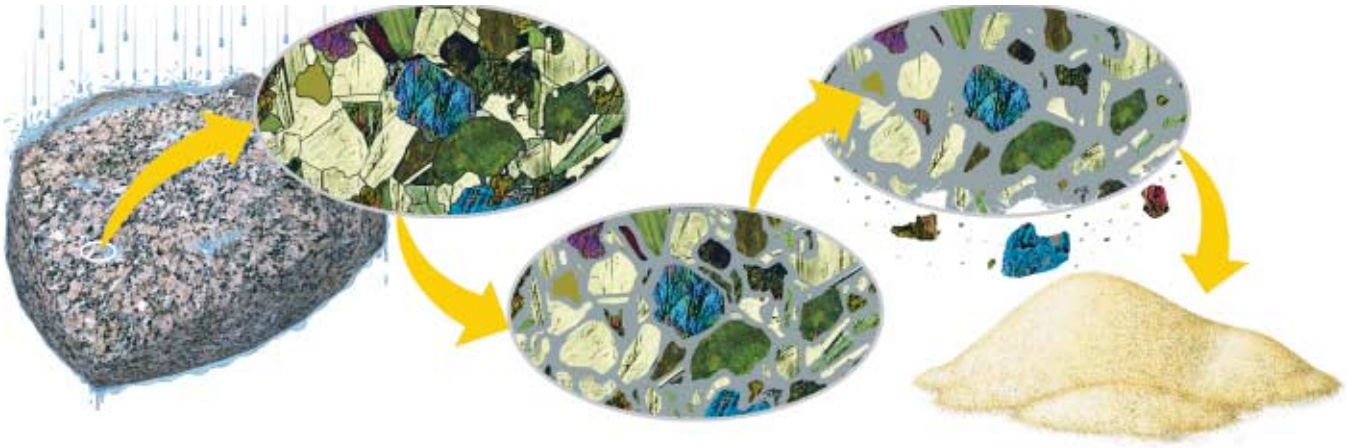
The process by which elements combine with oxygen is called **oxidation.** Oxidation commonly occurs in rock that has iron-bearing minerals, such as hematite and magnetite. Iron, Fe, in rocks and soil combines quickly with oxygen, O_2, that is dissolved in water to form rust, or iron oxide, Fe_2O_3:

$$4Fe + 3O_2 \rightarrow 2Fe_2O_3$$

The red color of much of the soil in the southeastern United States, as shown in **Figure 4,** is due to mainly the presence of iron oxide produced by oxidation. Similarly, the color of many red-colored rocks is caused by oxidized, iron-rich minerals.

Reading Check **Describe two effects of chemical weathering. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 4 ▶ The red tint of the soil surrounding this farmhouse in Georgia is caused by the chemical interaction of iron-bearing minerals in the soil with oxygen in the atmosphere.



Rain, weak acids, and air chemically weather granite.

The bonds between mineral grains weaken as weathering proceeds.

Sediment forms from the weathered granite.

Figure 5 ▶ Thousands of years of chemical weathering processes, such as hydrolysis and carbonation, can turn even a hard rock such as granite into sediment.

Hydrolysis

Water plays a crucial role in chemical weathering, as shown in **Figure 5.** The change in the composition of minerals when they react chemically with water is called **hydrolysis.** For example, a type of feldspar combines with water and produces a common clay called *kaolin*. In this reaction, hydronium ions displace the potassium and calcium atoms in the feldspar crystals, which changes the feldspar into clay.

Minerals that are affected by hydrolysis often dissolve in water. Water can then carry the dissolved minerals to lower layers of rock in a process called *leaching*. Ore deposits, such as bauxite, the aluminum ore, sometimes form when leaching causes a mineral to concentrate in a thin layer beneath Earth's surface.

hydrolysis a chemical reaction between water and another substance to form two or more new substances

carbonation the conversion of a compound into a carbonate

Carbonation

When carbon dioxide, CO_2, from the air dissolves in water, H_2O, a weak acid called *carbonic acid,* H_2CO_3, forms:

$$H_2O + CO_2 \quad H_2CO_3$$

Carbonic acid has a higher concentration of hydronium ions than pure water does, which speeds up the process of hydrolysis. When certain minerals come in contact with carbonic acid, they combine with the acid to form minerals called carbonates. The conversion of minerals into a carbonate is called **carbonation.**

One example of carbonation occurs when carbonic acid reacts with calcite, a major component of limestone, and converts the calcite into calcium bicarbonate. Calcium bicarbonate dissolves easily in water, so the limestone eventually weathers away.

Organic Acids

Acids are produced naturally by certain living organisms. Lichens and mosses grow on rocks and produce weak acids that can weather the surface of the rock. The acids seep into the rock and produce cracks that eventually cause the rock to break apart.

Figure 6 ▶ This stone lion sits outside Leeds Town Hall in England. It was damaged by acid precipitation, which fell regularly in Europe and North America for more than 50 years.

Acid Precipitation

Rainwater is slightly acidic because it combines with small amounts of carbon dioxide. But when fossil fuels, especially coal, are burned, nitrogen oxides and sulfur dioxides are released into the air. These compounds combine with water in the atmosphere to produce nitric acid, nitrous acid, or sulfuric acid. When these acids fall to Earth, they are called **acid precipitation.**

acid precipitation precipitation, such as rain, sleet, or snow, that contains a high concentration of acids, often because of the pollution of the atmosphere

Acid precipitation weathers rock faster than ordinary precipitation does. In fact, many historical monuments and sculptures have been damaged by acid precipitation, as shown in **Figure 6.** Between 1940 and 1990, acid precipitation fell regularly in some cities in the United States. In 1990, the Acid Rain Control Program was added to the Clean Air Act of 1970. These regulations gave power plants 10 years to decrease sulfur dioxide emissions. The occurrence of acid precipitation has been greatly reduced since power plants have installed scrubbers that remove much of the sulfur dioxide before it can be released.

Section 1 Review

1. **Identify** three agents of mechanical weathering.
2. **Describe** how ice wedging weathers rock.
3. **Explain** how two activities of plants or animals help weather rocks or soil.
4. **Compare** mechanical and chemical weathering processes.
5. **Identify** and describe three chemical processes that weather rock.
6. **Compare** hydrolysis, carbonation, and oxidation.
7. **Summarize** how acid precipitation forms.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Making Connections** What two agents of weathering would be rare in a desert? Explain your reasoning.
9. **Understanding Relationships** Automobile exhaust contains nitrogen oxides. How might these pollutants affect chemical weathering processes?

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *weathering, oxidation, mechanical weathering, ice wedging, hydrolysis, abrasion, chemical weathering, carbonation,* and *acid precipitation.*

Section 2

Rates of Weathering

The processes of mechanical and chemical weathering generally work very slowly. For example, carbonation dissolves limestone at an average rate of only about one-twentieth of a centimeter (0.2 cm) every 100 years. At this rate, it could take up to 30 million years to dissolve a layer of limestone that is 150 m thick.

The pinnacles in Nambung National Park in Australia are shown in **Figure 1.** These large, jutting pieces of limestone are all that remains of a thick limestone formation that covered the area millions of years ago. Most of the limestone was weathered away by agents of both chemical and mechanical weathering until only the pinnacles remained. The rate at which rock weathers depends on a number of factors, including rock composition, climate, and topography.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how rock composition affects the rate of weathering.
- **Discuss** how surface area affects the rate at which rock weathers.
- **Describe** the effects of climate and topography on the rate of weathering.

KEY TERM

differential weathering

Differential Weathering

The composition of rock greatly affects the rate at which rock weathers. The process by which softer, less weather-resistant rock wears away and leaves harder, more resistant rock behind is called **differential weathering.** When igneous rocks that are rich in the mineral quartz are exposed on Earth's surface, they remain basically unchanged, even after all of the surrounding sedimentary rock has weathered away. They remain unchanged because the chemical composition and crystal structure of quartz make quartz resistant to chemical weathering. These same characteristics make quartz a very hard mineral, so it also resists mechanical weathering.

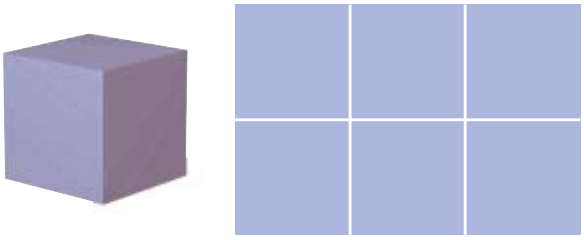
differential weathering the process by which softer, less weather resistant rocks wear away at a faster rate than harder, more weather resistant rocks do

Figure 1 ▶ Differences in rock composition and structure are the reasons for the different rates of weathering that formed these limestone pinnacles at Nambung National Park in Australia.

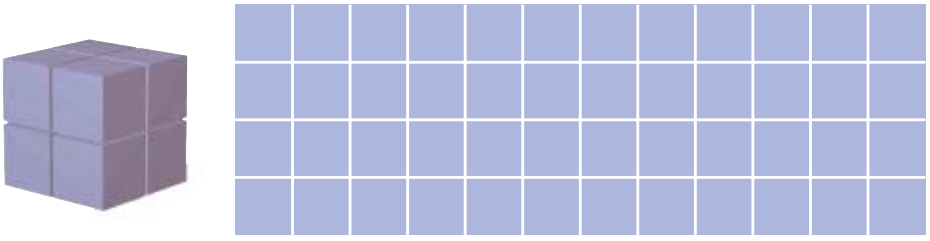
Rock Composition

Limestone and other sedimentary rocks that contain calcite are weathered most rapidly. They weather rapidly because they commonly undergo carbonation. Other sedimentary rocks are affected mainly by mechanical weathering processes. The rates at which these rocks weather depend mostly on the material that holds the sediment grains together. For example, shales and sandstones that are not firmly cemented together gradually break up to become clay and sand particles. However, conglomerates and sandstones that are strongly cemented by silicates resist weathering. Some of these strongly cemented sedimentary rocks can resist weathering longer than some igneous rocks do.

Figure 2 ▶ The Ratio of Total Surface Area to Volume



All cubes have both volume and surface area. The total surface area is equal to the sum of the areas of each of the six sides, or the length of each side multiplied by the width of each side.



If you split the first cube into eight smaller cubes, you have the same amount of material (volume), but the surface area doubles. If you split the eight small cubes in the same way, the original surface area is doubled again.

Amount of Exposure

The more exposure to weathering agents a rock receives, the faster the rock will weather. The amount of time the rock is exposed and the amount of the rock's surface area that is available for weathering are important factors in determining the rate of weathering.

Surface Area

Both chemical and mechanical weathering may split rock into a number of smaller rocks. The part of a rock that is exposed to air, water, and other agents of weathering is called the rock's *surface area*. As a rock breaks into smaller pieces, the surface area that is exposed increases. For example, imagine a block of rock as a cube that has six sides exposed. Splitting the block into eight smaller blocks, as shown in **Figure 2,** doubles the total surface area available for weathering.

Fractures and Joints

Most rocks on Earth's surface contain natural fractures and joints. These structures are natural zones of weakness within the rock. Fractures and joints increase the surface area of a rock and allow weathering to take place more rapidly. They also form natural channels through which water flows. Water may penetrate the rock through these channels and break the rock by ice wedging. As water moves through these channels, it chemically weathers the rock that is exposed in the fracture or joint. The chemical weathering removes rock material and makes the jointed or fractured area weaker.

Reading Check **How do fractures and joints affect surface area? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 10 min

Surface Areas

Procedure

1. Fill **two small containers** about half full with **water.**
2. Add **one sugar cube** to one container.
3. Add **1 tsp of granulated sugar** to the other container.
4. Use **two different spoons** to stir the water and sugar in each container at the same rate.
5. Use a **stopwatch** to measure how long the sugar in each container takes to dissolve.

Analysis

1. Did the sugar dissolve at the same rate in both containers?
2. Which do you think would wear away faster—a large rock or a small rock? Explain your answer.

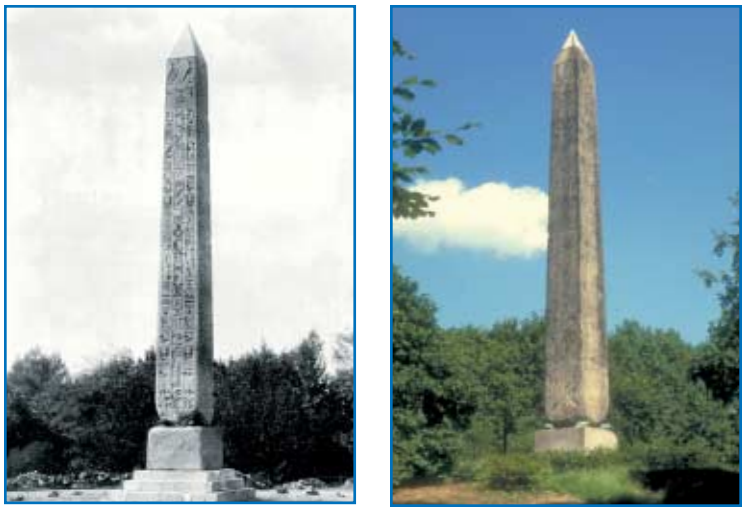


Figure 3 ▶ The photo on the left shows Cleopatra's Needle before it was moved to New York City. The photograph on the right shows the 3,000 year old carving after only one century in New York City.

Climate

In general, climates that have alternating periods of hot and cold weather allow the fastest rates of weathering. Freezing and thawing can cause the mechanical breakdown of rock by ice wedging. Chemical weathering can then act quickly on the fractured rock. When temperatures rise, the rate at which chemical reactions occur also accelerates. In warm, humid climates, chemical weathering is also fairly rapid. The constant moisture is highly destructive to exposed surfaces.

The slowest rates of weathering occur in hot, dry climates. The lack of water limits many weathering processes, such as carbonation and ice wedging. Weathering is also slow in very cold climates.

The effects of climate on weathering rates can be seen on Cleopatra's Needle, which is shown in **Figure 3.** Cleopatra's needle is an obelisk that is made of granite. For 3,000 years, the obelisk stood in Egypt, where the hot, dry climate scarcely changed its surface. Then, in 1880, Cleopatra's Needle was moved to New York City. After the obelisk was exposed to more than 100 years of moisture, the pollution, ice wedging, and acid precipitation caused more weathering than was caused in the preceding 3,000 years in the Egyptian desert.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Rates of Weathering
SciLinksCode: HQ61269

Topography

Topography, or the elevation and slope of the land surface, also influences the rate of weathering. Because temperatures are generally cold at high elevations, ice wedging is more common at high elevations than at low elevations. On steep slopes, such as mountainsides, weathered rock fragments are pulled downhill by gravity and washed out by heavy rains. As the rocks slide down the mountain or are carried away by mountain streams, rocks smash against each other and break apart. As a result of the removal of these surface rocks, new surfaces of the mountain are continually exposed to weathering.

Figure 4 ▶ All-terrain vehicles cause mechanical weathering on exposed surfaces. Because of this weathering, these vehicles are banned from some areas where erosion is a concern.

Human Activities

Rock can be chemically and mechanically broken down by the action of humans. Mining and construction often expose rock surfaces to agents of weathering. Mining also often exposes rock to strong acids and other chemical compounds that are used in mining processes. Construction often removes soil and exposes previously unexposed rock surfaces. Recreational activities such as hiking or riding all-terrain vehicles, as shown in **Figure 4,** can also speed up weathering by exposing new rock surfaces. Rock that is disturbed or broken by human activities weathers more rapidly than undisturbed rock does.

Plant and Animal Activities

Rock that is disturbed or broken by plants or animals also weathers more rapidly than undisturbed rock does. The roots of plants and trees often break apart rock. Burrowing animals dig holes into rock and soil. Some biological wastes of animals can cause chemical weathering. For example, caves that have large populations of bats also have large amounts of bat guano on the cave floors. Bat guano attracts small animals such as millipedes and other insects. The presence of these insects speeds up mechanical weathering, and the presence of the guano speeds up certain chemical weathering processes.

Section 2 Review

1. **Explain** how rock composition affects the rate of weathering.
2. **Discuss** how the surface area of a rock can affect the rock's weathering rate.
3. **Identify** two ways that climate can influence weathering rates.
4. **Describe** two ways the topography of a region affects weathering rates.
5. **Summarize** three ways human actions can affect the rate of weathering.
6. **Explain** two ways that animals can affect the rate of weathering.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Applying Concepts** Imagine that there is an area of land where mechanical weathering has caused damage. Describe two ways to reduce the rate of mechanical weathering.
8. **Identifying Relationships** How would Cleopatra's Needle probably have been affected if it had been in the cold, dry climate of Siberia for 100 years?

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *composition, exposure, precipitation, surface area, climate, temperature, topography, weathering, elevation,* and *human activities.*

Section 3 Soil

One result of weathering is the formation of *regolith*, the layer of weathered rock fragments that covers much of Earth's surface. *Bedrock* is the solid, unweathered rock that lies beneath the regolith. The lower regions of regolith are partly protected by those above and thus do not weather as rapidly as the upper regions do. The uppermost rock fragments weather to form a layer of very fine particles. This layer of small rock particles provides the basic components of soil. **Soil** is a complex mixture of minerals, water, gases, and the remains of dead organisms.

OBJECTIVES

- **Summarize** how soils form.
- **Explain** how the composition of parent rock affects soil composition.
- **Describe** the characteristic layers of mature residual soils.
- **Predict** the type of soil that will form in arctic and tropical climates.

KEY TERMS

soil
soil profile
horizon
humus

Characteristics of Soil

The characteristics of soil depend mainly on the rock from which the soil was weathered, which is called the soil's *parent rock*. Soil that forms and stays directly over its parent rock is called *residual soil*. However, the weathered mineral grains that form soil may be carried away from the location of the parent rock by water, wind, or glaciers. Soil that results from the deposition of this material is called *transported soil,* and this soil may have different characteristics than the bedrock on which it rests.

soil a loose mixture of rock fragments and organic material that can support the growth of vegetation

Soil Composition

Parent rock that is rich in feldspar or other minerals that contain aluminum weathers to form soils that contain large amounts of clay. Rocks that contain large amounts of quartz, such as granite, weather to form sandy soils. Soil composition refers to the materials of which it is made. The color of soil is related to the composition of the soil. Black soils are commonly rich in organic material, while red soils may form from iron-rich parent rocks. Soil moisture can also affect color, as shown in **Figure 1.**

Figure 1 ▶ These soil scientists are testing soil moisture to determine whether irrigation will be needed. Moister soils are generally darker than drier soils are.

Soil Texture

Rock material in soil consists of three main types: clay, silt, and sand. Clay particles have a diameter of less than 0.004 mm. Silt particles have diameters from 0.004 to 0.06 mm. Silt particles are too small to be seen easily, but they make soil feel gritty. Sand particles have diameters from 0.06 to 2 mm. The proportion of clay, silt, and sand in soil depends on the soil's parent rock.

Soil Profile

soil profile a vertical section of soil that shows the layers of horizons

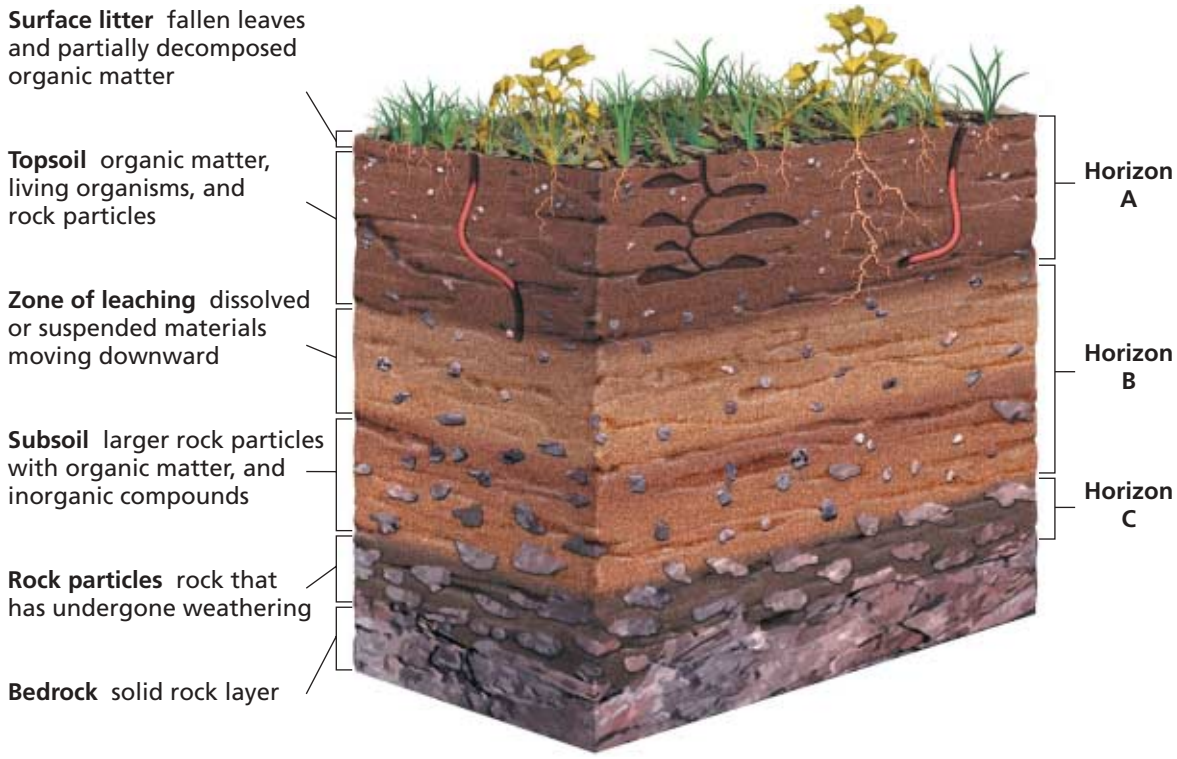
horizon a horizontal layer of soil that can be distinguished from the layers above and below it; *also* a boundary between two rock layers that have different physical properties

humus dark, organic material formed in soil from the decayed remains of plants and animals

Transported soils are commonly deposited in unsorted masses by water or wind. However, residual soils commonly develop distinct layers over time. To determine a soil's composition, scientists study a soil profile. A **soil profile** is a cross section of the soil and its bedrock. The different layers of soil are called **horizons.**

Residual soils generally consist of three main horizons. The *A horizon,* or *topsoil,* is a mixture of organic materials and small rock particles. Almost all organisms that live in soil inhabit the A horizon. As organisms die, their remains decay and produce **humus,** a dark, organic material. The A horizon is also the zone from which surface water leaches minerals. The *B horizon* or *subsoil,* contains the minerals leached from the topsoil, clay, and, sometimes, humus. In dry climates, the B horizon also may contain minerals that accumulate as water in the soil evaporates. The *C horizon* consists of partially-weathered bedrock. The first stages of mechanical and chemical change happen in this bottom layer. **Figure 2** shows the relationships between the three soil horizons.

Figure 2 ▶ Soil Horizons of Residual Soils



Soil and Climate

Climate is one of the most important factors that influences soil formation. Climate determines the weathering processes that occur in a region. These weathering processes, in turn, help determine the composition of soil.

Tropical Soils

In humid tropical climates, where much rain falls and where temperatures are high, chemical weathering causes thick soils to develop rapidly. These thick, tropical soils, called *laterites* (LAT uhr IETS), contain iron and aluminum minerals that do not dissolve easily in water. Leached minerals from the A horizon sometimes collect in the B horizon. Heavy rains, which are common in tropical climates, cause a lot of leaching of the topsoil, and thus keep the A horizon thin. But because of the dense vegetation in humid, warm climates, organic material is continuously added to the soil. As a result, a thin layer of humus usually covers the B horizon, as shown in **Figure 3.**

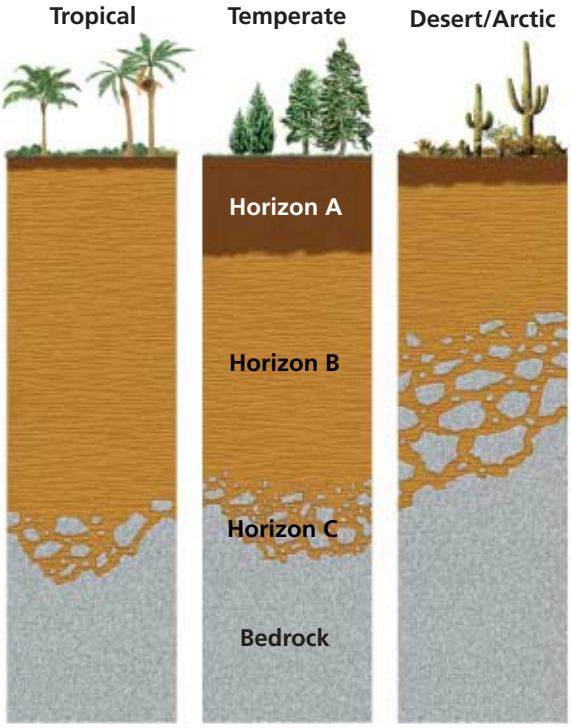


Figure 3 ▶ Tropical climates produce thick, infertile soils. Temperate climates produce thick, fertile soils. Desert and arctic climates produce thin soils.

Temperate Soils

In temperate climates, where temperatures range between cool and warm and where rainfall is not excessive, both mechanical and chemical weathering occur. All three soil horizons in temperate soils may reach a thickness of several meters, as shown in **Figure 3.**

Two main soil types form in temperate climates. In areas that receive more than 65 cm of rain per year, a type of soil called *pedalfer* (pi DAL fuhr) forms. Pedalfer soils contain clay, quartz, and iron compounds. The Gulf Coast states and states east of the Mississippi River have pedalfer soils. In areas that receive less than 65 cm of rain per year, a soil called *pedocal* (PED oh KAL) forms. Pedocal soils contain large amounts of calcium carbonate, which makes pedocal soil very fertile and less acidic than pedalfer soil. The southwestern states and most states west of the Mississippi River have pedocal soils.

Reading Check **Compare the formation of tropical soils and temperate soils. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Desert and Arctic Soils

In desert and arctic climates, rainfall is minimal and chemical weathering occurs slowly. As a result, the soil is thin and consists mostly of regolith—evidence that soil in these areas forms mainly by mechanical weathering. Desert and arctic climates are also often too warm or too cold to sustain life, so their soils have little humus.

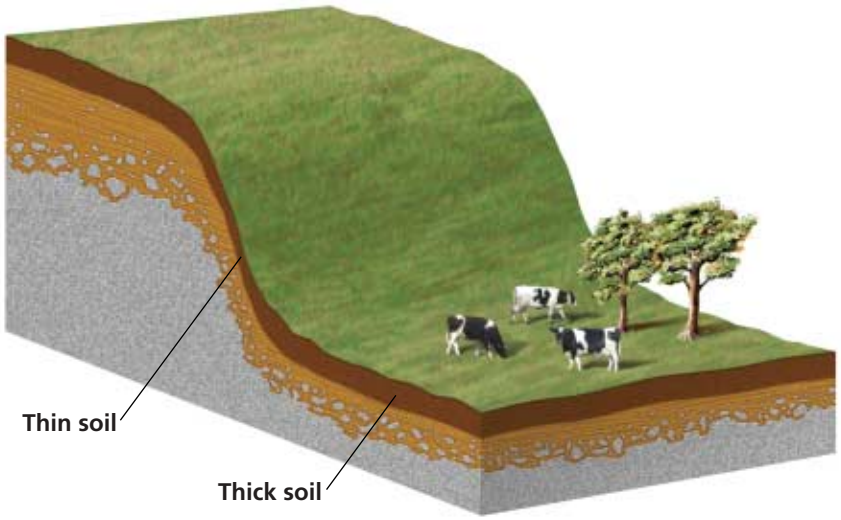


Figure 4 ▶ Soil is thick at the top and bottom of a slope. Soil is thin along the slope.

Soil and Topography

The shape of the land, or topography, also affects soil formation. Because rainwater runs down slopes, much of the topsoil of the slope washes away. Therefore, as shown in **Figure 4,** the soil at the top and bottom of a slope tends to be thicker than the soil on the slope.

One study of soil in Canada showed that A horizons on flat areas were more than twice as thick as those on 10° slopes. Topsoil that remains on a slope is often too thin to support dense plant growth. The lack of vegetation contributes to the development of a poor-quality soil that lacks humus. The soils on the sides of mountains are commonly thin and rocky, and the soils have few nutrients. Lowlands that retain water tend to have thick, wet soils and a high concentration of organic matter, which forms humus. A fairly flat area that has good drainage provides the best surface for formation of thick, fertile layers of residual soil.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Soil
SciLinksCode: HQ61407

Section 3 Review

1. **Summarize** how soils form.
2. **Explain** how the composition of parent rock affects soil composition.
3. **Describe** the three horizons of a residual soil.
4. **Predict** the type of soil that will form in arctic and tropical climates.

CRITICAL THINKING

5. **Applying Ideas** What combination of soil and climate would be ideal for growing deep-rooted crops? Explain your answer.
6. **Analyzing Relationships** Would you expect crop growth to be more successful on a farm that has an uneven topography or on a farm that has level land? Explain your answer.
7. **Analyzing Ideas** Why would tropical soil not be good for sustained farming?
8. **Making Comparisons** Although desert and arctic climates are extremely different, their soils may be somewhat similar. Explain why.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *soil, bedrock, regolith, humus, parent rock, residual soil, transported soil, horizon, soil profile, climate,* and *topography.*

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

Section 4

Erosion

When rock weathers, the resulting rock particles do not always stay near the parent rock. Various forces may move weathered fragments of rock away from where the weathering occurred. The process by which the products of weathering are transported is called **erosion.** The most common agents of erosion are gravity, wind, glaciers, and water. Water can move weathered rock in several different ways including by ocean waves and currents, by streams and runoff, and by the movements of groundwater.

Soil Erosion

As rock weathers, it eventually becomes very fine particles that mix with water, air, and humus to form soil. The erosion of soil occurs worldwide and is normally a slow process. Ordinarily, new soil forms about as fast as existing soil erodes. However, some forms of land use and unusual climatic conditions can upset this natural balance. Once the balance is upset, soil erosion often accelerates.

Some farming and ranching practices increase soil erosion. For example, plants anchor soil with their roots and prevent wind and water from eroding the soil. Clearing plants or allowing animals to overgraze destroys this groundcover and increases erosion rates. Soil erosion is considered by some scientists to be the greatest environmental problem that faces the world today. As shown in **Figure 1,** vulnerability to erosion affects fertile topsoil around the world. This erosion prevents some countries from growing the crops needed to prevent widespread famine.

OBJECTIVES

- **Define** erosion, and list four agents of erosion.
- **Identify** four farming methods that conserve soil.
- **Discuss** two ways gravity contributes to erosion.
- **Describe** the three major landforms shaped by weathering and erosion.

KEY TERMS

erosion
sheet erosion
mass movement
solifluction
creep
landform

erosion a process in which the materials of Earth's surface are loosened, dissolved, or worn away and transported from one place to another by a natural agent, such as wind, water, ice, or gravity

Figure 1 ▶ This map shows the vulnerability of soils worldwide to erosion by water.

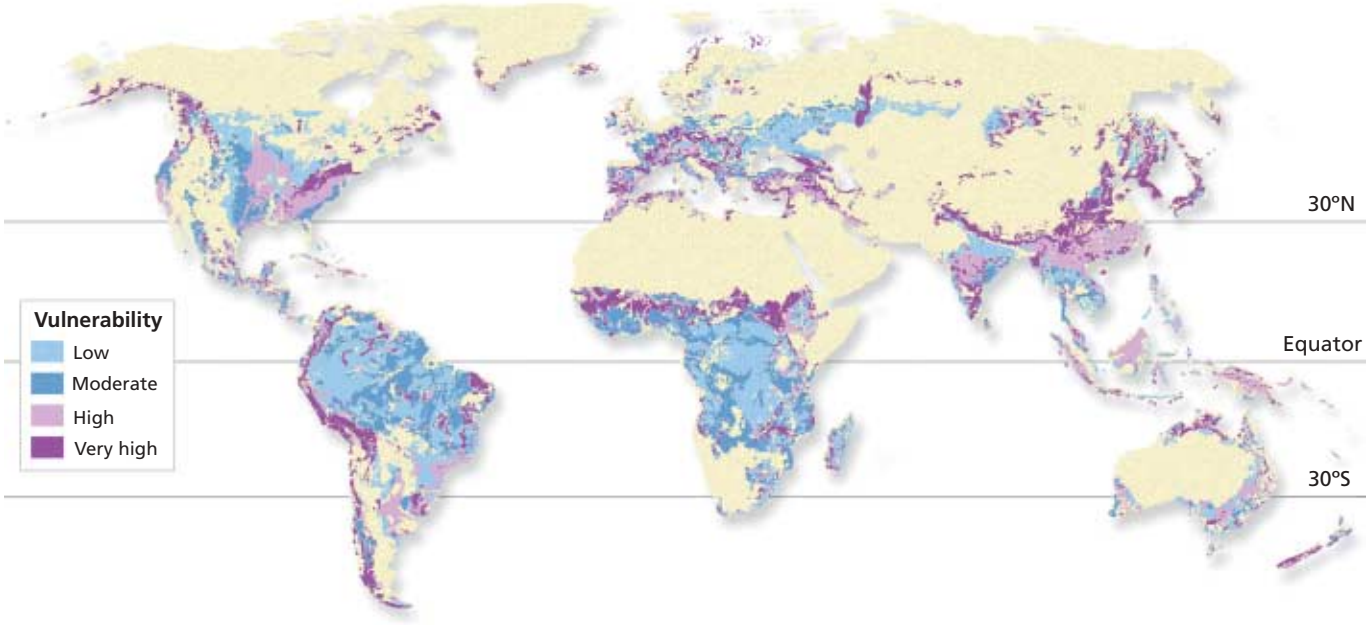


Figure 2 ▶ This land in Madagascar can no longer be used for farming because of a form of rapid erosion called *gullying*.

SCILINKS
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Soil Erosion
SciLinksCode: HQ61410
Topic: Soil Conservation
SciLinksCode: HQ61409

Gullying and Sheet Erosion

One farming technique that can accelerate soil erosion is the plowing of furrows, or long, narrow rows. Furrows that are plowed up and down slopes allow water to run swiftly over soil. As soil is washed away with each rainfall, a furrow becomes larger and forms a small gully. Eventually, land that is plowed in this way can become covered with deep gullies. This type of accelerated soil erosion is called *gullying*. The farmland shown in **Figure 2** has been ruined by gullying.

Another type of soil erosion strips away parallel layers of topsoil. Eventually, erosion can expose the surface of the subsoil. This process is called **sheet erosion.** Sheet erosion may occur where continuous rainfall washes away layers of the topsoil. Wind also can cause sheet erosion during unusually dry periods. The soil, which is made dry and loose by a lack of moisture, is carried away by the wind as clouds of dust and drifting sand. These wind-borne particles may produce large dust storms.

sheet erosion the process by which water flows over a layer of soil and removes the topsoil

Reading Check **Describe one way a dust storm may form, and explain how a dust storm can affect the fertility of land. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Results of Soil Erosion

Constant erosion reduces the fertility of the soil by removing the A horizon, which contains the fertile humus. The B horizon, which does not contain much organic matter, is difficult to farm because it is much less fertile than the A horizon. Without plants, the B horizon has nothing to protect it from further erosion. So, within a few years, all of the soil layers could be removed by continuous erosion.

Soil Conservation

Erosion rates are affected not only by natural factors but also by human activities. Certain farming and grazing techniques and construction projects can also increase the rate of erosion. In developing urban areas, vegetation is removed to build houses and roads, such as those shown in **Figure 3.** This land clearing removes protective ground cover plants and accelerates topsoil erosion. In some areas, such as deserts or mountainous regions, it may take hundreds or thousands of years for the topsoil to be replenished.

Figure 3 ▶ This housing development in England is encroaching on cropland. The clearing of land for development can accelerate topsoil erosion.

But rapid, destructive soil erosion can be prevented by soil conservation methods. People, including city planners and some land developers, have begun to recognize the environmental impact of land development and are beginning to implement soil conservation measures. Some land development projects are leaving trees and vegetation in place whenever possible. Other projects are planting cover plants to hold the topsoil in place. Farmers are also looking for new ways to prevent soil erosion to preserve fertile topsoil.

Connection to ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

Land Degradation

Soil that can support the growth of healthy plants is called *fertile soil*. Land that can be used to grow crops is called *arable land*. A limited area of arable land is available on Earth. As humans use this land for agriculture, they plow, fertilize, irrigate, and otherwise change the natural processes of soil formation.

Human activity and natural processes may damage land to the point that it can no longer support the local ecosystem. This process is called *land degradation*. Several activities may lead to land degradation. Three common factors in land degradation are urbanization, overgrazing, and deforestation.

Urbanization is the movement of people from rural areas to cities. As cities expand rapidly, people begin to develop the surrounding area, in a process called *urban sprawl*. As a result, arable land is paved and demand for resources may overwhelm the water and land resources in the area.

Overgrazing occurs when more animals are allowed to graze an area than the plants in that area can support. When animals overgraze, too many plants are eaten or trampled and too few plants are left to protect the soil from eroding.

If this clearcut in Willamette National Forest in Oregon was not reclaimed, the land may have continued to undergo degradation.

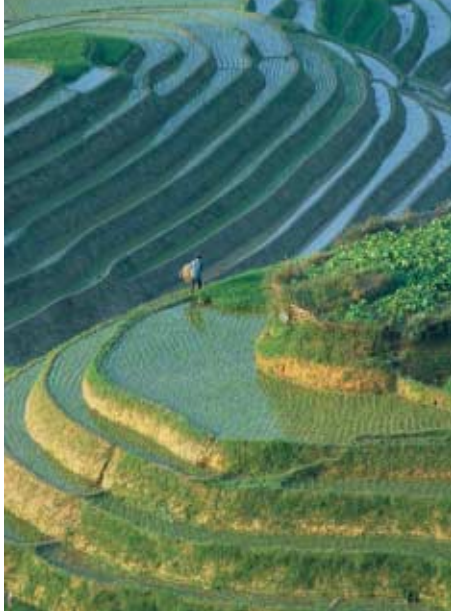
Deforestation is the clearing of trees from an area without replacing them. This process destroys wildlife habitat and results in accelerated soil erosion.

Extreme land degradation may cause desertification. *Desertification* is the process by which land in dry areas becomes more desertlike because of human activity or climate change. Desertification can cause land to become useless for farming or human habitation.

Many government and independent organizations are working to develop laws and guidelines to protect both wilderness and agricultural land. These groups hope that by protecting these lands now, the resources will be available for future generations.

Contour Plowing These fields are plowed in contours (or curves) that follow the shape of the land.

Strip-Cropping These fields were planted with alternating strips of different crops.



Terracing These terraced fields help slow runoff and prevent rapid soil erosion.

Figure 4 ▶ Soil Conservation Methods

Contour Plowing

Farmers in countries around the world use planting techniques to reduce soil erosion. In one method, called *contour plowing*, soil is plowed in curved bands that follow the contour, or shape, of the land. This method of planting, shown in **Figure 4,** prevents water from flowing directly down slopes, so the method prevents gullying.

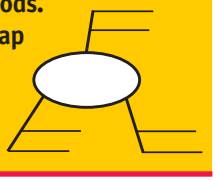
Strip-Cropping

In *strip-cropping*, crops are planted in alternating bands, also shown in **Figure 4.** A crop planted in rows, such as corn, may be planted in one band, and another crop that fully covers the surface of the land, such as alfalfa, will be planted next to it. The *cover crop* protects the soil by slowing the runoff of rainwater. Strip-cropping is often combined with contour plowing. The combination of these two methods can reduce soil erosion by 75%.

Graphic Organizer

Spider Map

Create the **Graphic Organizer** entitled "Spider Map" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the circle "Soil conservation methods." Then, fill in the map with at least four methods for soil conservation.



Terracing

The construction of steplike ridges that follow the contours of a sloped field is called *terracing*, as shown in **Figure 4.** Terraces, especially those used for growing rice in Asia, prevent or slow the downslope movement of water and thus prevent rapid erosion.

Crop Rotation

In *crop rotation*, farmers plant one type of crop one year and a different type of crop the next. For example, crops that expose the soil to the full effects of erosion may be planted one year, and a cover crop will be planted the next year. Crop rotation stops erosion in its early stages, which allows small gullies that formed during one growing season to fill with soil during the next one.

Gravity and Erosion

Gravity causes rock fragments to move down inclines. This movement of fragments down a slope is called **mass movement.** Some mass movements occur rapidly, and others occur very slowly.

mass movement the movement of a large mass of sediment or a section of land down a slope

Rockfalls and Landslides

The most dramatic and destructive mass movements occur rapidly. The fall of rock from a steep cliff is called a *rockfall*. A rockfall is the fastest kind of mass movement. Rocks in rockfalls often range in size from tiny fragments to giant boulders.

When masses of loose rock combined with soil suddenly fall down a slope, the event is called a *landslide*. Large landslides, in which loosened blocks of bedrock fall, generally occur on very steep slopes. You may have seen a small landslide on cliffs and steep hills overlooking highways, such as the one shown in **Figure 5.** Heavy rainfall, spring thaws, volcanic eruptions, and earthquakes can trigger landslides.

Reading Check **What is the difference between a rockfall and a landslide? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Mudflows and Slumps

The rapid movement of a large amount of mud creates a *mudflow*. Mudflows occur in dry, mountainous regions during sudden, heavy rainfall or as a result of volcanic eruptions. Mud churns and tumbles as it moves down slopes and through valleys, and it frequently spreads out in a large fan shape at the base of the slope. The mass movements that sometimes occur in hillside communities, such as the one shown in **Figure 5,** are often referred to as landslides, but they are actually mudflows.

Sometimes, a large block of soil and rock becomes unstable and moves downhill in one piece. The block of soil then slides along the curved slope of the surface. This type of movement is called a *slump*. Slumping occurs along very steep slopes. Saturation by water and loss of friction with underlying rock causes loose soil to slip downhill over the solid rock.

Figure 5 ▶ An earthquake in El Salvador caused this dramatic landslide (left). Heavy rains in the Philippines caused this destructive mudflow (right).

Solifluction

Although most slopes appear to be unchanging, some slow mass movement commonly occurs. Catastrophic landslides are the most hazardous mass movement. However, more rock material on the whole is moved by the greater number of slow mass movements than by catastrophic landslides.

One form of slow mass movement is called solifluction. **Solifluction** is the process by which water-saturated soil slips over hard or frozen layers. Solifluction occurs in arctic and mountainous climates where the subsoil is permanently frozen. In spring and summer, only the top layer of soil thaws. The moisture from this layer cannot penetrate the frozen layers beneath. So, the surface layer becomes muddy and slowly flows downslope, or downhill. Solifluction can also occur in warmer regions, where the subsoil consists of hard clay. The clay layer acts like the frozen subsoil in arctic climates by forming a waterproof barrier.

solifluction the slow, downslope flow of soil saturated with water in areas surrounding glaciers at high elevations

creep the slow downhill movement of weathered rock material

Creep

The extremely slow downhill movement of weathered rock material is known as **creep.** Soil creep moves the most soil of all types of mass movements. But creep may go unnoticed unless buildings, fences, or other surface objects move along with soil.

Many factors contribute to soil creep. Water separates rock particles, which allows them to move freely. Growing plants produce a wedgelike pressure that separates particles and loosens the soil. The burrowing of animals and repeated freezing and thawing loosen rock particles and allow gravity to slowly pull the particles downhill.

As rock fragments accumulate at the base of a slope, they form piles called *talus* (TAY luhs), as shown in **Figure 6.** Talus weathers into smaller fragments, which move farther down the slope. The fragments wash into gullies, are carried into successively larger waterways, and eventually flow into rivers.

Figure 6 ▶ The movement of rock fragments downslope formed these talus cones at the base of the Canadian Rockies.

Figure 7 ▶ The mountains in the Patagonian Andes, shown on the left, are still being uplifted and are more rugged than the more eroded Appalachian mountains on the right.

Erosion and Landforms

Through weathering and erosion, Earth's surface is shaped into different physical features, or **landforms.** There are three major landforms that are shaped by weathering and erosion—*mountains, plains,* and *plateaus*. Minor landforms include hills, valleys, and dunes. The shape of landforms is also influenced by rock composition.

landform a physical feature of Earth's surface

All landforms are subject to two opposing processes. One process bends, breaks, and lifts Earth's crust and thus creates elevated, or uplifted, landforms. The other process is weathering and erosion, which wears down land surfaces.

Erosion of Mountains

During the early stages in the history of a mountain, the mountain undergoes uplift. Generally, while tectonic forces are uplifting the mountain, it rises faster than it is eroded. Mountains that are being uplifted tend to be rugged and have sharp peaks and deep, narrow valleys. When forces stop uplifting the mountain, weathering and erosion wear down the rugged peaks to rounded peaks and gentle slopes. The formations in **Figure 7** show how the shapes of mountains are influenced by uplift and erosion.

Over millions of years, mountains that are not being uplifted become low, featureless surfaces. These areas are called *peneplains* (PEE nuh PLAYNZ), which means "almost flat." A peneplain commonly has low, rolling hills, as seen in New England.

Reading Check **Describe how a mountain changes after it is no longer uplifted. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 8 ▶ Ancient rivers carved plateaus into mesas, which eventually eroded into the buttes of Monument Valley in Arizona.

Erosion of Plains and Plateaus

A *plain* is a relatively flat landform near sea level. A *plateau* is a broad, flat landform that has a high elevation. A plateau is subject to much more erosion than a plain. Young plateaus, such as the Colorado Plateau in the southwestern United States, commonly have deep stream valleys that separate broad, flat regions. Older plateaus, such as those in the Catskill region in New York State, have been eroded into rugged hills and valleys.

The effect of weathering and erosion on a plateau depends on the climate and the composition and structure of the rock. In dry climates, resistant rock produces plateaus that have flat tops. As a plateau ages, erosion may dissect the plateau into smaller, tablelike areas called *mesas* (MAY suhz). Mesas ultimately erode to small, narrow-topped formations called *buttes* (BYOOTS). In dry regions, such as in the area shown in **Figure 8,** mesas and buttes have steep walls and flat tops. In areas that have wet climates, humidity and precipitation weather landforms into round shapes.

Section 4 Review

1. **Define** erosion.
2. **List** four agents of erosion.
3. **Summarize** two processes of soil erosion.
4. **Identify** four farming methods that result in soil conservation.
5. **Discuss** two ways gravity contributes to erosion.
6. **Compare** rapid mass movements and slow mass movements.
7. **Describe** the erosion of the three major landforms.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Analyzing Relationships** Describe an experiment that could help you determine whether a nearby hill is undergoing creep.
9. **Applying Ideas** Suppose you wanted to grow grapevines on a hillside in Italy. What farming methods would you use? Explain your answer.
10. **Predicting Consequences** Describe two ways a small butte would change if it was in a wet climate, rather than a dry climate.
11. **Drawing Conclusions** A hillside community has asked you to help brainstorm ways to prevent future mudflows. Describe three of your ideas.

CONCEPT MAPPING

12. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *erosion, gullying, sheet erosion, landslide, mudflow, slump, solifluction, creep, talus, landform, mountain, plain, plateau, mesa,* and *butte.*

Chapter 14

Highlights

Sections

1 Weathering Processes

Key Terms

weathering, 343
mechanical weathering, 343
abrasion, 344
chemical weathering, 346
oxidation, 346
hydrolysis, 347
carbonation, 347
acid precipitation, 348

Key Concepts

- Agents of mechanical weathering break rock into smaller pieces but do not change its chemical composition.
- Chemical weathering changes the mineral composition of rock.
- Types of chemical weathering include hydrolysis, carbonation, oxidation, and acid precipitation.

2 Rates of Weathering

differential weathering, 349

- Rock weathers at different rates, which depend partly on its mineral composition.
- The greater the amount of exposure a rock has, the faster a rock weathers.
- Rock weathers more rapidly in regions where rainfall is abundant and where alternating freezes and thaws occur.

3 Soil

soil, 353
soil profile, 354
horizon, 354
humus, 354

- The parent rock from which soil forms is the major factor that determines the composition of the soil.
- Thick soils form in tropical climates and temperate climates. Thin soils form in arctic climates and desert climates, where rainfall is minimal.

4 Erosion

erosion, 357
sheet erosion, 358
mass movement, 361
solifluction, 362
creep, 362
landform, 363

- Natural agents often move weathered rock away from where the weathering occurred. This movement leads to erosion.
- Planting crops helps to conserve soil.
- Slow and rapid mass movements of rock, soil, and mud cause massive amounts of soil erosion.
- Erosion wears away landforms as it levels Earth's surface.

Chapter 14 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *abrasion*
2. *humus*
3. *landform*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *weathering* and *erosion*
5. *mechanical weathering* and *chemical weathering*
6. *oxidation* and *carbonation*
7. *soil profile* and *horizon*
8. *solifluction* and *creep*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. A common kind of mechanical weathering is called
   a. oxidation. **c.** carbonation.
   b. ice wedging. **d.** leaching.

10. Oxides of sulfur and nitrogen that combine with water vapor cause
    a. hydrolysis.
    b. acid rain.
    c. mechanical weathering.
    d. carbonation.

11. The surface area of rocks exposed to weathering is increased by
    a. burial. **c.** leaching.
    b. accumulation. **d.** jointing.

12. Chemical weathering is most rapid in
    a. hot, dry climates.
    b. cold, dry climates.
    c. cold, wet climates.
    d. hot, wet climates.

13. The chemical composition of soil depends to a large extent on
    a. topography.
    b. the soil's A horizon.
    c. the parent material.
    d. soil's B horizon.

14. The soil in tropical climates is often
    a. thick. **c.** dry.
    b. thin. **d.** fertile.

15. All of the following farming methods prevent gullying, *except*
    a. terracing. **c.** contour plowing.
    b. strip-cropping. **d.** irrigation.

16. The type of mass movement that moves the most soil is
    a. a landslide. **c.** a rockfall.
    b. a mudflow. **d.** creep.

17. The grinding away of rock surfaces through the mechanical action of rock or sand particles is called
    a. carbonation. **c.** abrasion.
    b. hydrolysis. **d.** erosion.

18. The process by which softer rocks wear away and leave harder rocks behind is
    a. chemical weathering.
    b. mechanical weathering.
    c. differential weathering.
    d. erosion.

Short Answer

19. What is the difference between natural rain and acid precipitation?

20. Explain two reasons why soil conservation is important.

21. Describe how a mountain changes from a rugged mountain to a peneplain.

22. Describe three landforms that are shaped by weathering and erosion.

23. Explain two ways that weathering and erosion are related.

24. Identify three ways that climate affects the rate of weathering.

25. Name three landforms that you would expect to find in a desert.

Critical Thinking

26. Making Comparisons Compare the weathering processes that affect a rock on top of a mountain and those that affect a rock beneath the ground surface.

27. Understanding Relationships Which do you think would weather faster, a sculpted marble statue or a smooth marble column? Explain your answer.

28. Making Inferences Mudflows in the southern California hills are usually preceded by a dry summer and widespread fires, which are followed by torrential rainfall. Explain why these phenomena are followed by mudflows.

29. Evaluating Ideas How can differential weathering help you determine whether a rock is harder or softer than the rock that surrounds it?

30. Inferring Relationships Suppose that a mountain has been wearing down at the rate of about 2 cm per year for 10 years. After 10 years, scientists find that the mountain is no longer losing elevation. Why do you think the mountain is no longer losing elevation?

Concept Mapping

31. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *composition, mechanical weathering, chemical weathering, topography, erosion, conservation, exposure, weathering, surface area,* and *climate.*

Math Skills

32. Making Calculations A group of scientists calculates that an acre of land has crept 18 cm in 15 years. What is the average rate of creep in millimeters per year?

33. Making Calculations For a given area of land, the average rate of creep is 14 mm per year. How long will it take the area to move 1 m?

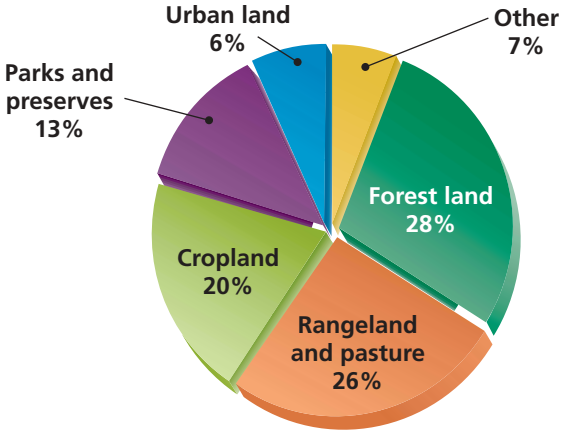
Writing Skills

34. Writing from Research Research a mudslide or landslide that occurred in the past. Describe the conditions that led to that mass movement and the impact it had.

35. Communicating Ideas You are in charge of preserving a precious marble statue. Write a paragraph that describes how you would protect the statue from weathering.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows land use in the United States. Use the graph to answer the questions that follow.



36. How much more land is rangeland and pasture than is urban land?

37. If cropland increased to 25% and all other categories remain the same except for forests, what would the percentage of forests be?

Chapter 14 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 The processes of physical weathering and erosion shape Earth's landforms by
A. expanding the elevation of Earth's surface
B. decreasing the elevation of Earth's surface
C. changing the composition of Earth's surface
D. bending rock layers near Earth's surface

2 Which of the following rocks is most likely to weather quickly?
F. a buried rock in a mountain
G. an exposed rock on a plain
H. a buried rock in a desert
I. an exposed rock on a slope

3 The red color of rocks and soil containing iron-rich minerals is caused by
A. chemical weathering
B. mechanical weathering
C. abrasion
D. erosion

4 In which of the following climates does chemical weathering generally occur most rapidly?
F. cold, wet climates
G. cold, dry climates
H. warm, humid climates
I. warm, dry climates

5 Which of the following has the greatest impact on soil composition?
A. activity of plants and animals
B. characteristics of the parent rock
C. amount of precipitation
D. shape of the land

Directions (6–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 In what type of decomposition reaction do hydrogen ions from water displace elements in a mineral?

7 Sand carried by wind is responsible for what type of mechanical weathering?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–10): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

How Rock Becomes Soil

Earthworms are crucial for forming soil. As they search for food by digging tunnels, they expose rocks and minerals to the effects of weathering. Over time, this process creates new soil.

Worms are not the only living things that help create soil. Plants also play a part in the weathering process. As the roots of plants grow and seek out water and nutrients, they help break large rock fragments into smaller ones. Have you ever seen a plant growing in a sidewalk? As the plant grows, its roots spread into tiny cracks in the sidewalk. These roots apply pressure to the cracks, and over time, the cracks become larger. As the plants make the cracks larger, ice wedging can occur more readily. As the cracks expand, more water can flow into them. When the water freezes, it expands and presses against the walls of the crack, which makes the crack larger. Over time, the weathering caused by water, plants, and worms helps break down rock to form soil.

8 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the passage?
A. Weathering can occur only when water freezes in cracks in rocks.
B. Only large plants have roots that are powerful enough to increase the rate of weathering.
C. Local biological activity may increase the rate of weathering in a given area.
D. Plant roots often prevents weathering by filling cracks and keeping water out of cracks.

9 Ice wedging, as described in the passage, is an example of which of the following?
F. oxidation
G. mechanical weathering
H. chemical weathering
I. hydrolysis

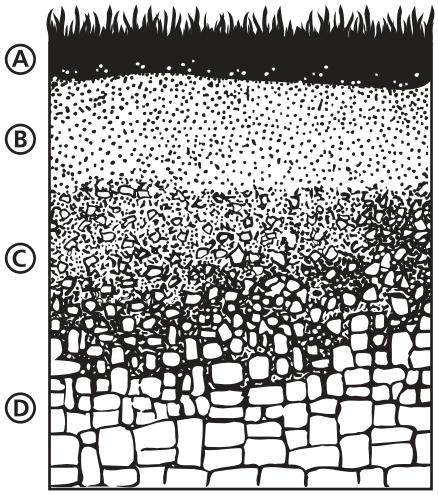
10 What are some ways not mentioned in the passage in which the activity of biological organisms may increase weathering?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–13): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagram shows the soil profile of a mature soil. Use this diagram to answer questions 11 and 12.

Mature Soil Profile



11 Which of the layers in the soil profile above contains the greatest number of soil organisms?

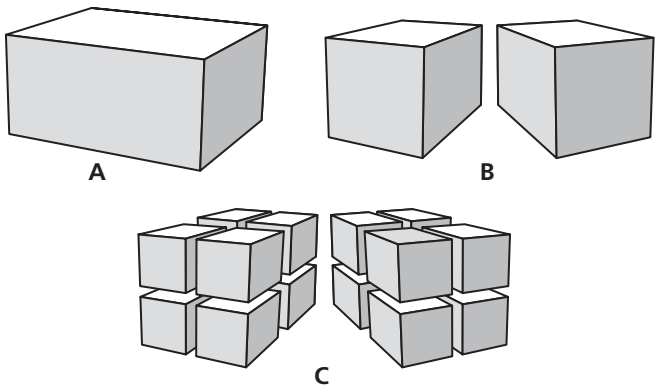
A. layer A
B. layer B
C. layer C
D. layer D

12 Which two layers in the soil profile above are least likely to contain the dark, organic material humus?

F. layers A and B
G. layers B and C
H. layers C and D
I. layers A and D

Use the diagram stone blocks below to answer question 13.

Blocks of Identical Volume



13 If the blocks shown in diagrams A, B, and C above contain identical volumes and are made of the same types of minerals, will they weather at the same rate? Explain your answer.

Test TIP

Whenever possible, highlight or underline important numbers or words that are critical to correctly answering a question.

Chapter 14

Skills Practice Lab

Soil Chemistry

Objectives

- **Test** the acidity of soil samples.
- **Identify** the composition of soil samples.

Materials

- ammonia solution
- stoppers, cork (9)
- hydrochloric acid, dilute
- medicine dropper
- pH paper
- subsoil sample (B and C horizons)
- test tubes, 9
- test-tube rack
- topsoil sample (A horizon)
- water

Safety

Different soil types contain different kinds and amounts of minerals. To support plant life, soil must have a proper balance of minerals and nutrients. For plants to take in the minerals they need, the soil must also have the proper acidity.

Acidity is measured on a scale called the *pH scale*. The pH scale ranges from 0 (acidic) to 14 (alkaline). A pH of 7 is neutral (neither acidic nor alkaline). In this lab, you will test the acidity of soil samples.

PROCEDURE

1. pH paper changes color in the presence of an acidic or alkaline substance. Wet a strip of pH paper with tap water. Compare the color of the wet pH paper with the pH color scale. What is the pH of the tap water?
2. Fill a clean test tube to 1/8 full with a small amount of the topsoil. Add water to the test tube until it is 3/4 full. Place a cork stopper on the test tube, and shake the test tube.
3. Set the soil and water mixture aside in the test-tube rack to settle. When the water is fairly clear, test it with a piece of pH paper. What is the pH of the soil sample? Is the soil acidic or alkaline?
4. Repeat step 2 and step 3 with the subsoil sample.
5. Pedalfer soils tend to become acidic. Pedocal soils tend to become alkaline. Based on the pH results in steps 3 and 4, predict whether your soil is pedalfer or pedocal.

6. To test your prediction, you will need to test the soil's composition. Take five rock particles from the subsoil sample. Place each particle in a separate test tube. Use the dropper to add two drops of hydrochloric acid, HCl, to the test tubes. **CAUTION** If you spill any acid on your skin or clothing, rinse immediately with cool water and alert your teacher.

7. HCl has little or no effect on silicates, but HCl decomposes calcium carbonate and causes CO_2 gas to bubble out of solution. How many of the rock particles were silicates? How many were calcium carbonate?

8. Fill a test tube 1/8 full with the subsoil. Slowly add HCl to the test tube until it is about 2/3 full. Cork the tube, and gently shake it. **CAUTION** Always shake the test tube by pointing it away from yourself and other students.

9. After shaking the test tube, remove the stopper and set the test tube in the rack. Record your observations. After the mixture has settled, draw the test tube and its contents. Label each layer. If iron is present, the solution may look brown. What color is the liquid above the soil sample?

10. Use a medicine dropper to place 10 drops of the liquid in a clean test tube. Carefully add 12 drops of ammonia to the test tube. Test the pH of the solution. If the pH is greater than 8, any iron should settle out as a reddish-brown residue. The remaining solution will be colorless.

11. If the pH is less than 8, add two more drops of ammonia and test the pH again. Continue adding ammonia until the pH reaches 8 or higher. Record your observations, and draw a diagram of the test tube. Label each layer of material in the test tube.

Step 6

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Analyzing Results** Is your soil sample most likely pedalfer or pedocal? Explain your answer.

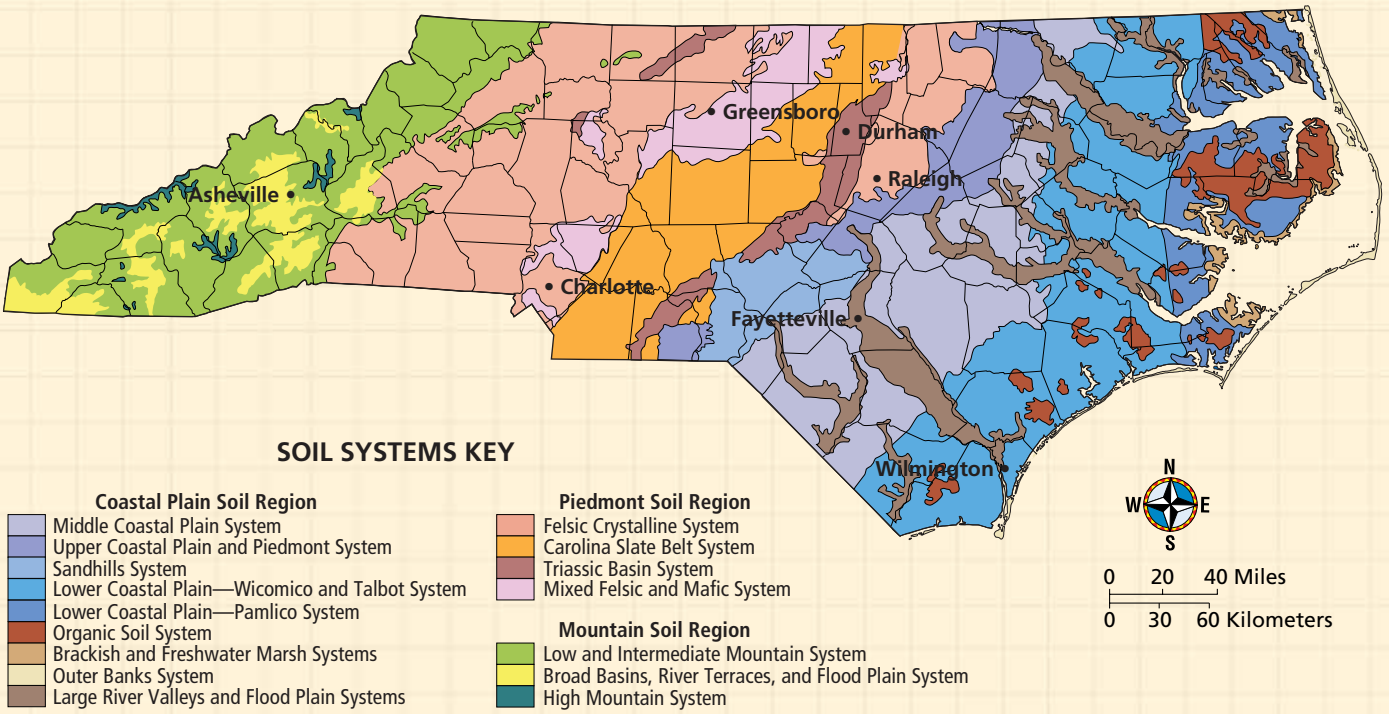
2. **Drawing Conclusions** What type of soil, pedalfer or pedocal, would you treat with acidic substances, such as phosphoric acid, sulfur, or ammonium sulfate, to help plant growth? Explain your answer.

3. **Recognizing Relationships** Explain why acidic substances are usually spread on the surface of the soil.

Extension

1. **Research** Use the library or the Internet to learn why the use of phosphate and nitrate detergents has been banned in some areas. Report your findings to the class.

Soil Map of North Carolina



Map Skills Activity

This map shows soil systems in the state of North Carolina, including the Outer Banks barrier island system. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using a Key** How many colors on the map represent soil systems in the Piedmont Soil Region?
2. **Using a Key** What soil systems are present along the eastern shore of North Carolina?
3. **Analyzing Data** What city is located on the banks of a large river or in a river valley? Explain your answer.
4. **Inferring Relationships** What landforms would you expect to surround the town of Asheville? Explain your answer.
5. **Analyzing Relationships** Brackish water is water that is somewhat salty but is not as salty as sea water. How does this fact explain the location of the Brackish and Freswater Marsh soil systems?
6. **Identifying Trends** How would you describe the change in elevation of North Carolina from west to east based on the locations of soil systems? Explain your answer.

Soil Conservationist

One hundred and fifty years ago, Boone County, Illinois, consisted mainly of rolling prairies. Today, farms and homes have replaced much of the prairies. As a soil conservationist, Lewis Nichols helps farmers and homeowners to more effectively manage their land.

Down-to-Earth Solutions

"Erosion is our number one issue here," says Nichols. "Gully erosion, the kind of erosion that forms large trenches, is the most visible kind. Farmers also have problems with sheet erosion, which can remove topsoil from entire fields." Nichols helps farmers implement conservation practices to keep valuable soil in the fields and to keep the soil out of streams and rivers. As more rural areas give way to housing developments, Nichols also visits new neighborhoods. Though most of his work is done in the field, Nichols returns to his office to develop specific conservation practices for the problems he is studying.

For Nichols, the career path to soil conservation began in a high school greenhouse. Nichols turned his interests into a profession. He earned a bachelor's degree in agronomy, which is the study of crop production and soil management.

◀ Irrigation in this peanut field in Oklahoma has caused erosion. Soil conservationists work with farmers to reduce erosion when possible.

"Everything ties back to the soil."

—Lewis Nichols

Hamburger and the Farmer

Like other soil conservationists, Nichols reaches out to communities and schools to teach the value of natural resources and to encourage conservation efforts. "We go to schools to talk to kids about conservation. We want kids to know the connection between a hamburger and the farmer that produced it," says Nichols. "I find it very rewarding to know I'm able to help society by looking out for the future and providing a better world for our children—a world where the words *natural resources* still have meaning."

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Careers in Earth Science
SciLinksCode: HQ60222

Chapter 15

River Systems

Sections

1 The Water Cycle
2 Stream Erosion
3 Stream Deposition

What You'll Learn

- How water moves between Earth's land, oceans, and atmosphere
- How rivers shape the land by erosion
- How rivers shape the land by deposition

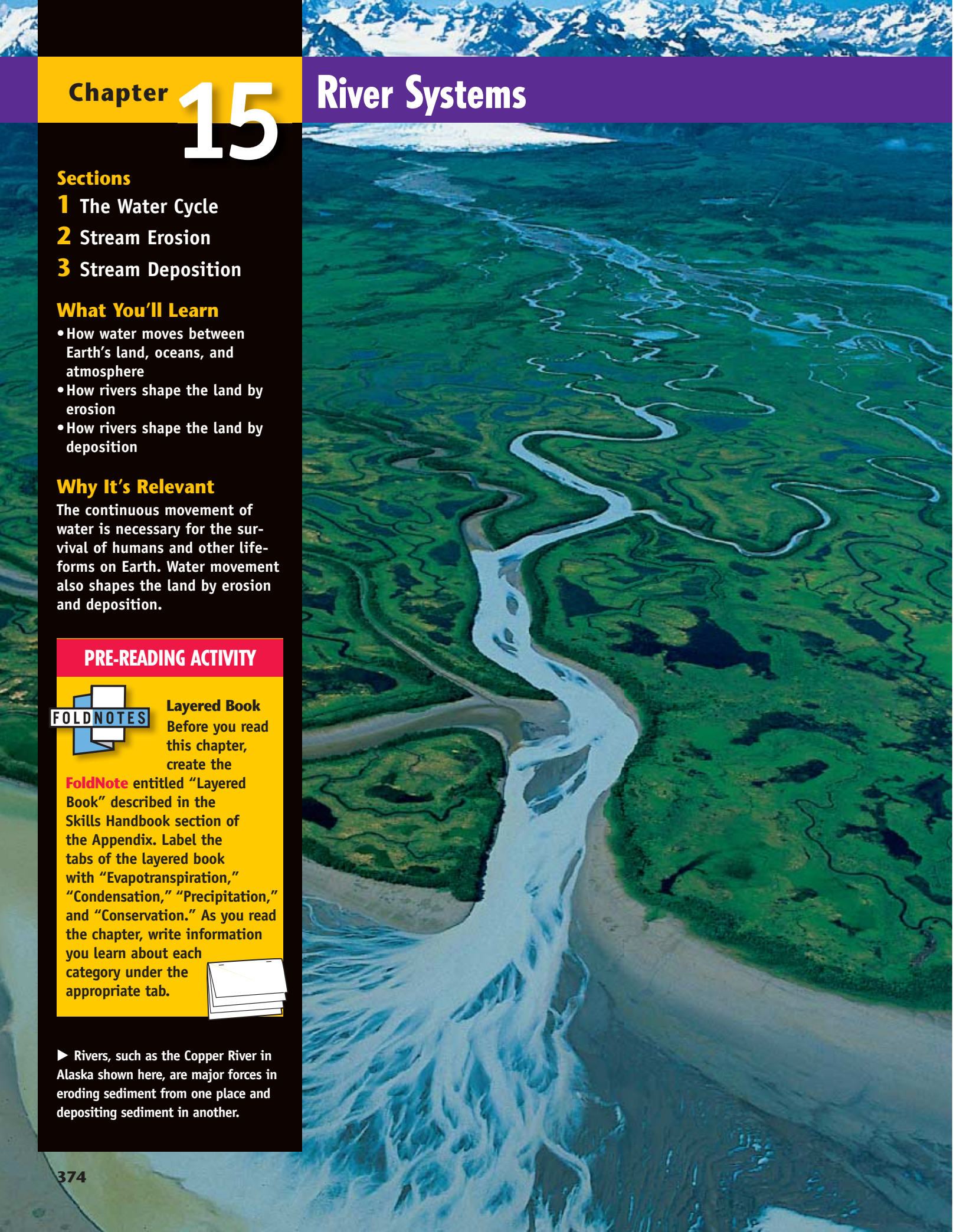
Why It's Relevant

The continuous movement of water is necessary for the survival of humans and other lifeforms on Earth. Water movement also shapes the land by erosion and deposition.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Layered Book Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Layered Book" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the tabs of the layered book with "Evapotranspiration," "Condensation," "Precipitation," and "Conservation." As you read the chapter, write information you learn about each category under the appropriate tab.



▶ Rivers, such as the Copper River in Alaska shown here, are major forces in eroding sediment from one place and depositing sediment in another.

Section 1 The Water Cycle

The origin of Earth's water supply has puzzled people for centuries. Aristotle and other ancient Greek philosophers believed that rivers such as the Nile and the Danube could be supplied by rain and snow alone. It was not until the middle of the 17th century that scientists could accurately measure the amount of water received on Earth and the amount flowing in rivers. These measurements showed that Earth's surface receives up to 5 times as much water as rivers carry off. So, a more puzzling question than "Where does Earth's water come from?" is "Where does the water go?"

Movement of Water on Earth

Water is essential for humans and all other organisms. Its availability in different forms is critical for the continuation of life on Earth. More than two-thirds of Earth's surface is covered with water. Water flows in streams and rivers. It is held in lakes, oceans, and icecaps at Earth's poles. It even flows through the rock below Earth's surface as groundwater. Water is found not only in these familiar bodies of water but also in the tissues of all living creatures. In the atmosphere, water occurs as an invisible gas. This gas is called *water vapor*. Liquid water also exists in the atmosphere as small particles in clouds and fog, as shown in **Figure 1.**

Earth's water is constantly changing from one form to another. Water vapor falls from the sky as rain. Glaciers melt to form streams. Rivers flow into oceans, where liquid water escapes into the atmosphere as water vapor. This continuous movement of water on Earth's surface from the atmosphere to the land and oceans and back to the atmosphere is called the **water cycle.**

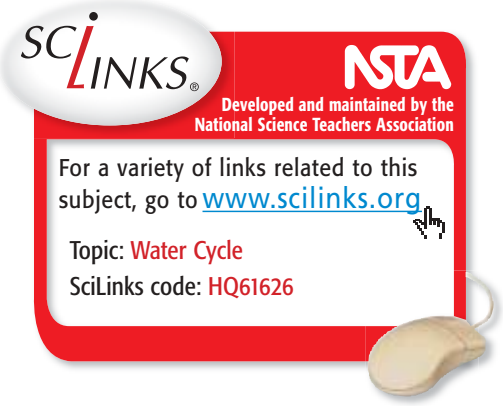
Figure 1 ▶ The snow, the fog, and the river water in this photo are three of the forms that water takes on Earth. Invisible water vapor is also present in the air.

OBJECTIVES

- **Outline** the stages of the water cycle.
- **Describe** factors that affect a water budget.
- **List** two approaches to water conservation.

KEY TERMS

water cycle
evapotranspiration
condensation
precipitation
desalination



water cycle the continuous movement of water between the atmosphere, the land, and the oceans

Evapotranspiration

The process by which liquid water changes into water vapor is called *evaporation*. Each year, about 500,000 km^3 of water evaporates into the atmosphere. About 86% of this water evaporates from the ocean. The remaining water evaporates from lakes, streams, and the soil. Water vapor also enters the air by *transpiration,* the process by which plants and animals release water vapor into the atmosphere. The total loss of water from an area, which equals the sum of the water lost by evaporation from the soil and other surfaces and the water lost by transpiration from organisms, is called **evapotranspiration.** Evapotranspiration is one part of the water cycle, which is shown in **Figure 2.**

evapotranspiration the total loss of water from an area, which equals the sum of the water lost by evaporation from the soil and other surfaces and the water lost by transpiration from organisms

condensation the change of state from a gas to a liquid

precipitation any form of water that falls to Earth's surface from the clouds; includes rain, snow, sleet, and hail

Condensation

Another process of the water cycle is condensation. **Condensation** is the change of state from a gas to a liquid. When water vapor rises in the atmosphere, it expands and cools. As the vapor becomes cooler, some of it condenses, or changes into tiny liquid water droplets, and forms clouds.

Precipitation

The third process of the water cycle is precipitation. **Precipitation** is any form of water that falls to Earth's surface from the clouds and includes rain, snow, sleet, and hail. About 75% of all precipitation falls on Earth's oceans. The rest falls on land and becomes runoff or groundwater. Eventually, all of this water returns to the atmosphere by evapotranspiration, condenses, and falls back to Earth's surface to begin the cycle again.

Reading Check **List the forms of precipitation. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

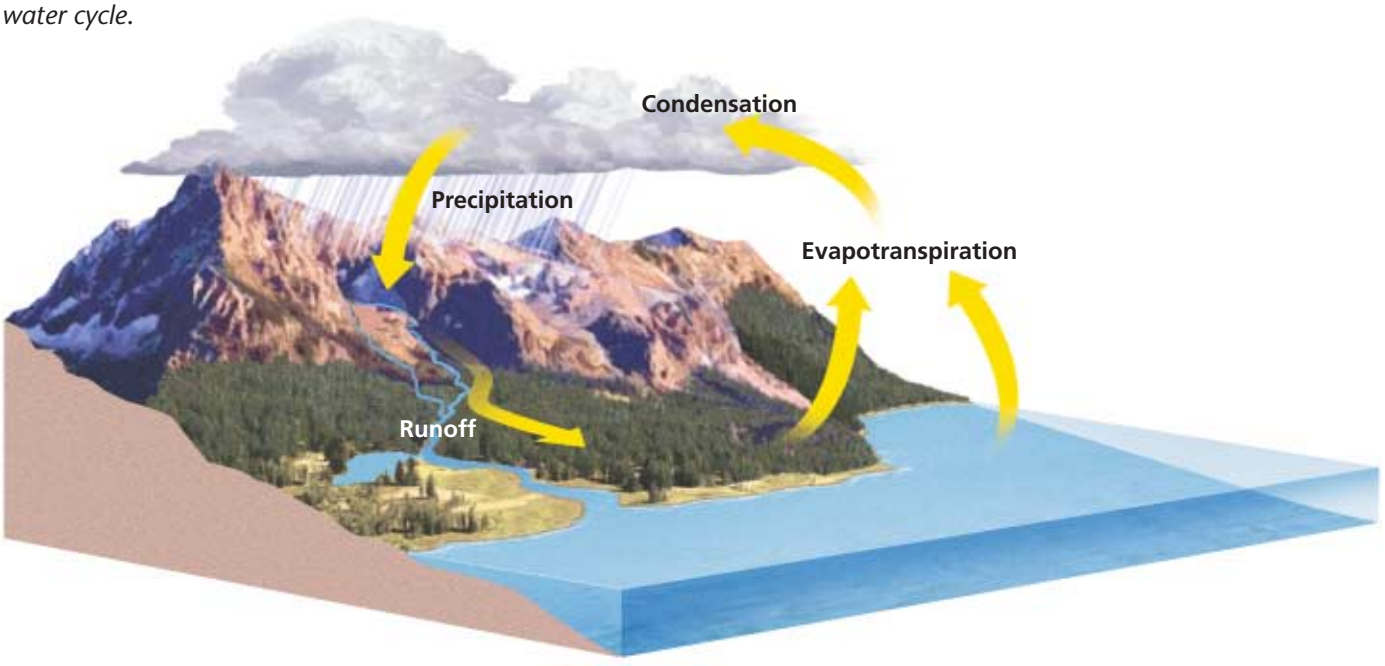


Figure 2 ▶ Evapotranspiration, condensation, and precipitation make up the continuous process called the *water cycle*.

Water Budget

The continuous cycle of evapotranspiration, condensation, and precipitation establishes Earth's *water budget*. A financial budget is a statement of expected income—money coming in—and expenses—money going out. In Earth's water budget, precipitation is the income. Evapotranspiration and runoff are the expenses. The water budget of Earth as a whole is balanced because the amount of precipitation is equal to the amount of evapotranspiration and runoff. However, the water budget of a particular area, called the *local water budget*, usually is not balanced.

Factors That Affect the Water Budget

Factors that affect the local water budget include temperature, vegetation, wind, and the amount and duration of rainfall. When precipitation exceeds evapotranspiration and runoff in an area, the result is moist soil and possible flooding. When evapotranspiration exceeds precipitation, the soil becomes dry and irrigation may be necessary. Vegetation reduces runoff in an area but increases evapotranspiration. Wind increases the rate of evapotranspiration.

The factors that affect the local water budget vary geographically. For example, the Mojave Desert in California receives much less precipitation than do the tropical rain forests of Queensland, Australia, as **Figure 3** shows.

The local water budget also changes with the seasons in most areas of Earth. In general, cooler temperatures slow the rate of evapotranspiration. During the warmer months, evapotranspiration increases. As a result, streams generally transport more water in cooler months than they do in warmer months.

Figure 3 ▶ Tropical rain forests, such as the one in Queensland, Australia (top photo), require large amounts of rainfall annually. Deserts, such as the Mojave Desert in California (bottom photo), receive small amounts of rainfall each year.

QuickLAB 35 min

Modeling the Water Cycle

Procedure

1. Place a **short glass** inside a **large plastic mixing bowl.** Add cold water to the mixing bowl until about three-fourths of the glass is covered with water. Make sure to keep the inside of the glass dry.
2. Add drops of **food coloring** (red, blue, or green) to the water in the bowl until the water has a strong color.
3. Now, add about 1 cup of dry **dirt** to the water, and stir gently until the water is muddy as well as colored.
4. Cover the bowl tightly with a **piece of plastic wrap** secured to the bowl with a **rubber band,** and place a **coin or stone** in the middle of the plastic wrap above the glass.
5. Set the bowl in the sun or under a **heat lamp** for 30 minutes to several hours. Then, observe the water that has collected in the glass.

Analysis

1. What are the processes that have taken place to allow water to collect in the glass?
2. Why is the water in the glass not muddy?
3. Is the water in the glass colored? What does this say about pollutants in water systems and the water cycle?

Figure 4 ▶ Waste from this paper mill has polluted the Qingai River in China.

desalination a process of removing salt from ocean water

Water Use

On average, each person in the United States uses about 95,000 L (20,890.5 gal) of water each year. Water is used for bathing, washing clothes and dishes, watering lawns, carrying away wastes, and drinking. Agriculture and industry also use large amounts of water. As the population of the United States increases, so does the demand for water.

About 90% of the water used by cities and industry is returned to rivers or to the oceans as wastewater. Some of this wastewater contains harmful materials, such as toxic chemicals and metals, as shown in **Figure 4.** These toxic materials can pollute rivers and can harm plants and animals in the water.

Conservation of Water

While Earth holds a lot of water, only a small percentage of that water is fresh water that can be used by humans. Scientists have identified two ways to ensure that enough fresh water is available today and in the future. One way is through conservation, or the wise use of water resources. Individuals can conserve water by limiting their water use as much as possible. Governments can help conserve water by enforcing conservation laws and antipollution laws that prohibit the dumping of waste into bodies of water.

A second way to protect the water supply is to find alternative methods of obtaining fresh water. One such method is called **desalination,** which is the process of removing salt from ocean water. However, this method is expensive and is impractical for supplying water to large populations. Currently, the best way of maintaining an adequate supply of fresh water is the wise use and conservation of the fresh water that is now available.

Section 1 Review

1. **List** two ways in which water reaches the oceans.
2. **Outline** the major stages of the water cycle.
3. **Explain** the difference between condensation and precipitation.
4. **Explain** why most local water budgets are not balanced.
5. **Describe** how vegetation and rainfall affect the local water budget.
6. **List** two ways to ensure the continued supply of fresh water.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Applying Concepts** Describe five ways that you can conserve water at home.
8. **Analyzing Processes** Why are the oceans the location of most evaporation and precipitation?

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *water cycle, evaporation, transpiration, evapotranspiration, condensation, precipitation,* and *water budget.*

Section 2 Stream Erosion

A river system begins to form when precipitation exceeds evapotranspiration in a given area. After the soil in the area soaks up as much water as the soil can hold, the excess water moves downslope as runoff. As runoff moves across the land surface, it erodes rock and soil and eventually may form a narrow ditch, called a *gully*. Eventually, the processes of precipitation and erosion form a fully developed valley with a permanent stream.

OBJECTIVES

- **Summarize** how a river develops.
- **Describe** the parts of a river system.
- **Explain** factors that affect the erosive ability of a river.
- **Describe** how erosive factors affect the evolution of a river channel.

KEY TERMS

tributary
watershed
stream load
discharge
gradient
meander
braided stream

Parts of a River System

A river system is made up of a main stream and **tributaries,** which are all of the feeder streams that flow into the main stream. The land from which water runs off into these streams is called a **watershed.** The ridges or elevated regions that separate watersheds are called *divides*. A river system is shown in **Figure 1.**

The relatively narrow depression that a stream follows as it flows downhill is called its *channel*. The edges of a stream channel that are above water level are called the stream's *banks*. The part of the stream channel that is below the water level is called the stream's *bed*. A stream channel gradually becomes wider and deeper as it erodes its banks and bed.

tributary a stream that flows into a lake or into a larger stream

watershed the area of land that is drained by a river system

Channel Erosion

River systems change continuously because of erosion. In the process of *headward erosion,* channels lengthen and branch out at their upper ends, where runoff enters the streams. Erosion of the slopes in a watershed can also extend a river system and can add to the area of the watershed. In the process known as *stream piracy,* a stream from one watershed is "captured" by a stream from another watershed that has a higher rate of erosion. The captured stream then drains into the river system that has done the capturing.

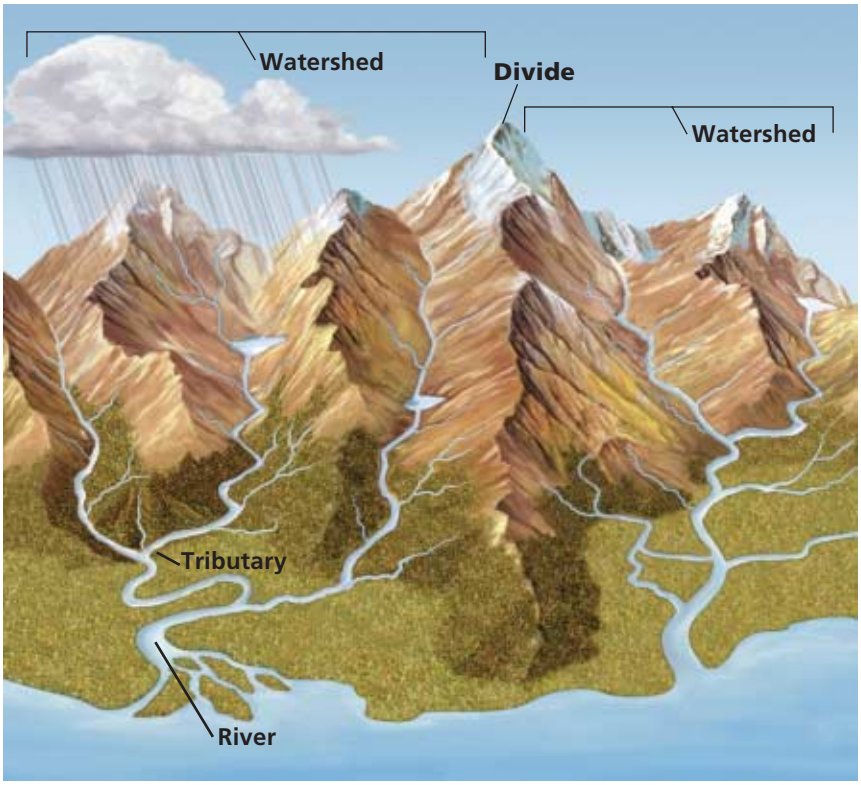


Figure 1 ▶ The tributaries that run into this river are fed by runoff from surrounding land. All of the land that drains into a single river makes up the watershed of the river.

stream load the materials other than the water that are carried by a stream

discharge the volume of water that flows within a given time

gradient the change in elevation over a given distance

Stream Load

A stream transports soil, loose rock fragments, and dissolved minerals as it flows downhill. The materials carried by a stream are called the **stream load.** Stream load takes three forms: suspended load, bed load, and dissolved load. The *suspended load* consists of particles of fine sand and silt. The velocity, or rate of downstream travel, of the water keeps these particles suspended, so they do not sink to the stream bed. The *bed load* is made up of larger, coarser materials, such as coarse sand, gravel, and pebbles. This material moves by sliding and jumping along the bed. The *dissolved load* is mineral matter transported in liquid solution.

Stream Discharge

The volume of water moved by a stream in a given time period is the stream's **discharge.** The faster a stream flows, the higher its discharge and the greater the load that the stream can carry. Thus, a swift stream carries more sediment and larger particles than a slow stream does. A stream's velocity also affects how the stream cuts down and widens its channel. Swift streams erode their channels more quickly than slow-moving streams do.

Stream Gradient

The velocity of a stream depends mainly on gradient. **Gradient** is the change in elevation of a stream over a given horizontal distance. In other words, gradient is the steepness of the stream's slope. Near the *headwaters,* or the beginning of a stream, the gradient generally is steep. This area of the stream has a high velocity, which causes rapid channel erosion. As the stream nears its *mouth,* where the stream enters a larger body of water, its gradient often becomes flatter. As a result, the river's velocity and erosive power decrease. The stream channel eventually is eroded to a nearly flat gradient by the time the stream channel reaches the sea. Streams with different gradients are shown in **Figure 2.**

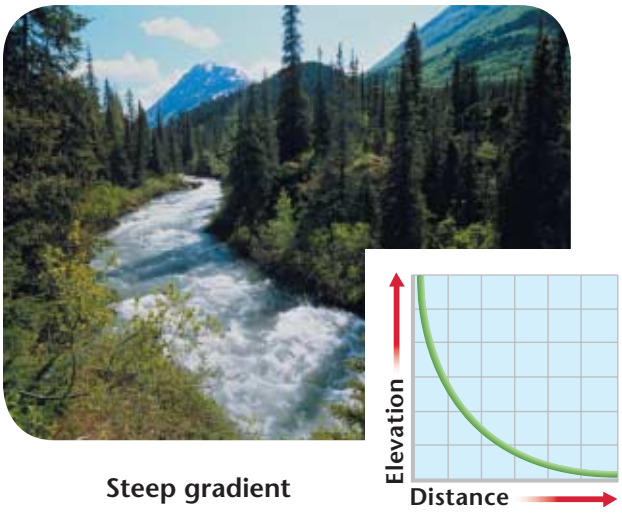
MATHPRACTICE

Water Discharge of a River River channels can carry an enormous volume of water. The water that rivers discharge can be calculated by using the following equation:

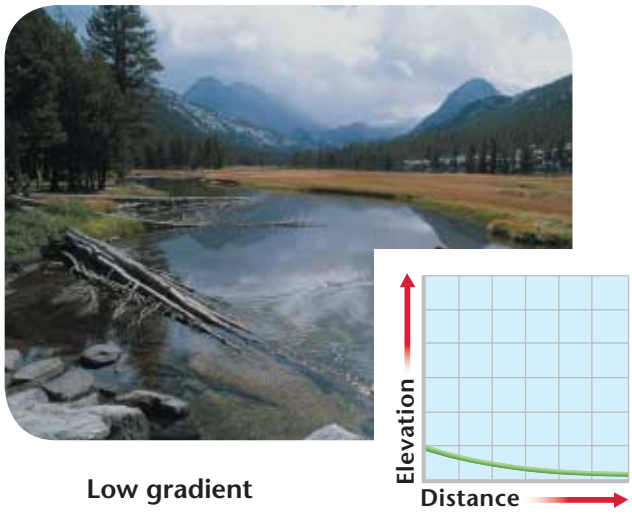
$$\text{discharge} = \text{velocity of the water} \times \text{cross-sectional area of the river channel}$$

In cubic meters per second (m^3/s), what is the discharge of water carried by a river that moves 1.5 m/s through a cross-sectional area of 520 m^2?

Figure 2 ▶ Streams that have steep gradients, such as the stream on the left, have a higher velocity than streams that have low gradients, such as the stream on the right, do.



Steep gradient



Low gradient

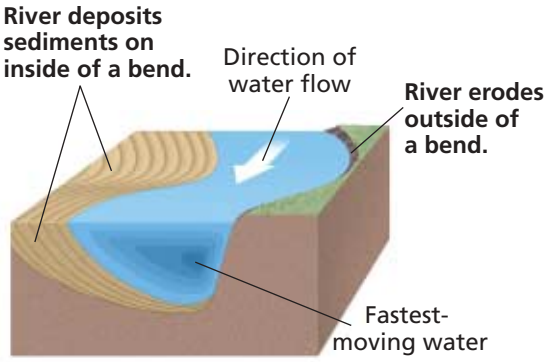


Figure 3 ▶ Decreased velocity on the inside of a river's curve leads to the deposition of sediment, as this photo of a river in the Banff National Park in Alberta, Canada, shows.

Evolution of River Channels

As the stream's load, discharge, and gradient decrease, the erosive power of the stream decreases, which influences the evolution of the stream's channel. Over time, as the channel erodes, it becomes wider and deeper. When the stream becomes longer and wider, it is called a *river*.

Meandering Channels

As a river evolves, it may develop curves and bends. A river that has a low gradient tends to have more bends than a river that has a steep gradient does. A winding pattern of wide curves, called **meanders,** develops because as the gradient decreases, the velocity of the water decreases. When the velocity of the water decreases, the river is less able to erode down into its bed. As the water flows through the channel, more energy is directed against the banks, which causes erosion of the banks.

meander one of the bends, twists, or curves in a low-gradient stream or river

When a river rounds a bend, the velocity of the water on the outside of the curve increases. The fast-moving water on the outside of a river bend erodes the outer bank of that bend. However, on the inside of the curve, the velocity of the water decreases. This decrease in velocity leads to the formation of a *bar* of deposited sediment, such as sand or gravel, as shown in **Figure 3.**

As this process continues, the curve enlarges while further sediment deposition takes place on the opposite bank, where the water is moving more slowly. Meanders can become so curved that they almost form a loop, separated by only a narrow neck of land. When the river cuts across this neck, the meander can become isolated from the river, and an *oxbow lake* forms.

Reading Check **How would you describe the gradient of a river that has meanders? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

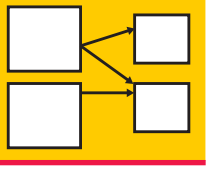
SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: River Systems
SciLinks code: HQ61314

Figure 4 ▶ Braided streams, such as the Chisana River in Alaska, divide into multiple channels.

Graphic Organizer

Cause-and-Effect Map

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Cause-and-Effect Map" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the effects with "Meandering streams" and "Braided streams." Then, fill in the map with causes of meandering streams and braided streams and details about the causes and effects.



braided stream a stream or river that is composed of multiple channels that divide and rejoin around sediment bars

Braided Streams

Most rivers are single channels. However, under certain conditions, the presence of sediment bars between a river's banks can divide the flow of the river into multiple channels. A stream or river that is composed of multiple channels that divide and rejoin around sediment bars is called a **braided stream.** Braided streams are a direct result of a large sediment load, particularly when a high percentage of the load is composed of coarse sand and gravel. The bars form on the channel floor when the river is unable to move all of the available load.

Although braided streams, such as those in **Figure 4,** look very different from meandering channels, they can cause just as much erosion. The channel location shifts constantly such that bars between channels erode and new bars form. Sometimes, a single river can change from a braided stream to a meandering stream as the gradient and discharge change.

Section 2 Review

1. **Summarize** how a river develops.
2. **Describe** the parts of a river system.
3. **Explain** the processes of headward erosion and stream piracy.
4. **List** the three types of stream load.
5. **Explain** how stream discharge and gradient affect the erosive ability of a river.
6. **Describe** the factors that control whether a river is braided or meandering.
7. **Summarize** the process that forms an oxbow lake.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Predicting Consequences** If geologic forces were to cause an uplift of the land surface, what would the effect on stream channel erosion be?
9. **Analyzing Processes** Explain how the velocity of a stream affects the suspended load.

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *braided channels, stream load, suspended load, dissolved load, bed load, meanders, stream gradient,* and *headwaters.*

Section 3 Stream Deposition

The total load that a stream can carry is greatest when a large volume of water is flowing swiftly. When the velocity of the water decreases, the ability of the stream to carry its load decreases. As a result, part of the stream load is deposited as sediment.

Deltas and Alluvial Fans

A stream may deposit sediment on land or in water. For example, the load carried by a stream can be deposited when the stream reaches an ocean or a lake. As a stream empties into a large body of water, the velocity of the stream decreases sharply. The load is usually deposited at the mouth of the stream in a triangular shape. A triangular-shaped deposit that forms where the mouth of a stream enters a larger body of water is called a **delta.** The exact shape and size of a delta are determined by waves, tides, offshore depths, and the sediment load of the stream.

When a stream descends a steep slope and reaches a flat plain, the speed of the stream suddenly decreases. As a result, the stream deposits some of its load on the level plain at the base of the slope. A fan-shaped deposit called an **alluvial fan** forms on land, and its tip points upstream. In arid and semi-arid regions, temporary streams commonly form alluvial fans. Alluvial fans differ from deltas in that alluvial fans form on land instead of being deposited in water. This difference is shown in **Figure 1.**

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** the two types of stream deposition.
- **Describe** one advantage and one disadvantage of living in a floodplain.
- **Identify** three methods of flood control.
- **Describe** the life cycle of a lake.

KEY TERMS

delta
alluvial fan
floodplain

delta a fan-shaped mass of rock material deposited at the mouth of a stream; for example, deltas form where streams flow into the ocean at the edge of a continent

alluvial fan a fan-shaped mass of rock material deposited by a stream when the slope of the land decreases sharply; for example, alluvial fans form when streams flow from mountains to flat land

Figure 1 ▶ A delta, such as this one in Alaska's Prince William Sound (above), forms when a stream deposits sediment into another body of water. An alluvial fan, such as this one in California's Death Valley (right), forms when a stream deposits sediment on land.

Figure 2 ▶ People who live in the Tonle Sap Floodplain in Cambodia have adapted to frequent flooding by building houses that are raised above the water level on stilts.

floodplain an area along a river that forms from sediments deposited when the river overflows its banks

Floodplains

The volume of water in nearly all streams varies depending on the amount of rainfall and snowmelt in the watershed. A dramatic increase in volume can cause a stream to overflow its banks and to wash over the valley floor. The part of the valley floor that may be covered with water during a flood is called a **floodplain.**

Natural Levees

When a stream overflows its banks and spreads out over the floodplain, the stream loses velocity and deposits its coarser sediment load along the banks of the channel. The accumulation of these deposits along the banks eventually produces raised banks, called *natural levees*.

Finer Flood Sediments

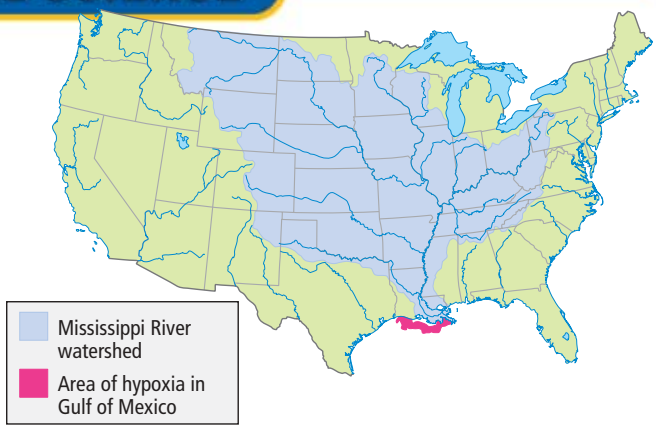
Not all of the load deposited by a stream in a flood will form levees. Finer sediments are carried farther out into the floodplain by the flood waters and are deposited there. A series of floods produces a thick layer of fine sediment, which becomes a source of rich floodplain soils. Swampy areas are common on floodplains because drainage is usually poor in the area between the levees and the outer walls of the valley. Despite the hazards of periodic flooding, people choose to live on floodplains, as shown in **Figure 2.** Floodplains provide convenient access to the river for shipping, fishing, and transportation. The rich soils, which are good for farming, also draw people to live on floodplains.

Connection to **ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE**

The Dead Zone

Oceanographers have discovered that water in the Gulf of Mexico west of the mouth of the Mississippi River delta has a low level of oxygen during the summer. This condition, known as *hypoxia,* can suffocate crabs, shrimp, and other fish that live on the sea floor. For this reason, the area has been dubbed the Dead Zone. Hypoxia has severely affected the marine food chain in this area as well as the fishing industry.

What is the origin of the Dead Zone? Studies indicate that water flowing from the Mississippi River to the Gulf of Mexico has a high level of dissolved nitrogen and phosphorus from fertilizers that are used to grow crops in the watershed. These substances increase the growth of phytoplankton—small floating marine plants—in shallow gulf waters where the river water ends up. When these plants die and sink to the sea floor, they are broken down by bacteria that use oxygen in the process. As a result, the ocean water becomes depleted of oxygen. This process usually occurs in the summer when river flow is high, more sunlight is available for plant growth, and shallow gulf waters are poorly mixed with offshore water by winds.



To reduce the effects of hypoxia in the Gulf of Mexico, government officials are considering regulating the amount and type of fertilizers that can be used in the Mississippi watershed.

QuickLAB 40 min

Soil Erosion

Procedure

1. Fill a **23 cm × 33 cm pan** about half full with **moist, fine sand.**
2. Place the pan in a **sink** so that one end of the pan is resting on a **brick** and is under the water faucet.
3. Position an **additional pan or container** such that it catches any sand and water that flow out of the first pan.
4. Slowly open the faucet until a gentle trickle of water falls onto the sand in the raised end of the pan. Let the water run for 15 to 20 s.
5. Turn off the water, and draw the pattern of water flow over the sand.
6. Press the sand back into place, and carefully smooth the surface by using a **ruler.** Repeat steps 4 and 5 three more times. Each time, increase the rate of water flow slightly without splashing the sand.

Analysis

1. Describe how the rate of water flow affects erosion.
2. How does the rate of water flow affect gullies?
3. How could erosion on a real hillside be reduced without changing the rate of water flow?
4. How does the shape of a river bend change as water flows?

Human Impacts on Flooding

Human activity can contribute to the size and number of floods in many areas. Vegetation, such as trees and grass, protects the ground surface from erosion by taking in much of the water that would otherwise run off. Where this natural ground cover is removed, water can flow more freely across the surface. As a result, the likelihood of flooding increases. Logging and the clearing of land for agriculture or housing development can increase the volume and speed of runoff, which leads to more frequent flooding. Natural events, such as forest fires, can also increase the likelihood of flooding.

Flood Control

Indirect methods of flood control include forest and soil conservation measures that prevent excess runoff during periods of heavy rainfall. More-direct methods include the building of artificial structures that redirect the flow of water.

The most common method of direct flood control is the building of *dams*. The artificial lakes that form behind dams act as reservoirs for excess runoff. The stored water can be used to generate electricity, supply fresh water, and irrigate farmland. Another direct method of flood control is the building of *artificial levees*. However, artificial levees must be protected against erosion by the river. As **Figure 3** shows, when artificial levees break, flooding and property damage can result. Permanent overflow channels, or floodways, can also help prevent flooding. When the volume of water in a river increases, floodways carry away excess water and keep the river from overflowing.

Reading Check **Describe two ways that floods can be controlled.**
(See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)

Figure 3 ▶ Week-long storms in Modesto, California, in 1997 broke this levee and caused flooding.

Precipitation collects in a depression and forms a lake.

A lake loses its water as the water drains away or evaporates.

As water is lost, the lake basin may eventually become dry land.

Figure 4 ▶ Compared to rivers, lakes are short lived, and some lakes may eventually dry up.

The Life Cycle of Lakes

Not all streams flow from the land to the ocean. Sometimes, water from streams collects in a depression in the land and forms a lake. Most lakes are located at high latitudes and in mountainous areas. Most of the water in lakes comes from precipitation and the melting of ice and snow. Springs, rivers, and runoff coming directly from the land are also sources of lake water.

Most lakes are relatively short lived in geologic terms. Many lakes eventually disappear because too much of their water drains away or evaporates, as shown in **Figure 4.** A common cause of excess drainage is an outflowing stream that erodes its bed below the level of a lake basin. Lakes may also lose water if the climate becomes drier and evaporation exceeds precipitation.

Lake basins may also disappear if they fill with sediments. Streams that feed a lake deposit sediments in the lake. Sediments also are carried into the lake by water that runs off the land but does not enter a stream. Most of these sediments are deposited near the shore. These sediments build up over time, which creates new shorelines and gradually fills in the lake. Organic deposits from vegetation also may accumulate in the bottom of a shallow lake. As these deposits grow denser, a bog or swamp may form. The lake basin may eventually become dry land.

SCILINKS
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Flooding and Society
SciLinks code: HQ60585
Topic: Stream Deposition
SciLinks code: HQ61457

Section 3 Review

1. **Identify** the differences between a delta and an alluvial fan.
2. **Explain** the differences between the deposition of sediment in deltas and alluvial fans with the deposition of sediment on a floodplain.
3. **Describe** the advantages and disadvantages of living in a floodplain.
4. **Summarize** how human activities can affect the size and number of floods.
5. **Identify** three methods of flood control.
6. **Explain** why lakes are usually short lived.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Analyzing Ideas** Why are spring floods common in rivers where the headwaters are in an area of cold, snowy winters?
8. **Making Inferences** If you were picking a material to make an artificial levee, what major characteristic would you look for? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *stream deposition, delta, alluvial fan, floodplain, natural levee, dam, artificial levee,* and *lake*.

Chapter 15 Highlights

Sections

1 The Water Cycle

Key Terms

water cycle, 375
evapotranspiration, 376
condensation, 376
precipitation, 376
desalination, 378

Key Concepts

- The continuous movement of water from the atmosphere to the land and oceans and back to the atmosphere is called the *water cycle*.
- A region's water budget is affected by temperature, vegetation, wind, and the amount and duration of rainfall.
- The availability of fresh water can be enhanced through conservation efforts.

2 Stream Erosion

tributary, 379
watershed, 379
stream load, 380
discharge, 380
gradient, 380
meander, 381
braided stream, 382

- A river system is made of a main stream and feeder streams, called *tributaries*.
- A watershed is the area of land that is drained by a river system.
- The erosive ability of a river is affected by stream load, stream discharge, and stream gradient.
- A bend in a low-gradient stream or river is called a *meander*.
- A river that is composed of multiple channels that divide and rejoin around sediment bars is called a *braided stream*.

3 Stream Deposition

delta, 383
alluvial fan, 383
floodplain, 384

- Where a stream slows significantly, it can deposit its stream load to form deltas and alluvial fans.
- In floodplains, flooding commonly brings in new, rich soil for farming but can cause property damage.
- Floods can be controlled through forest and soil conservation and by building structures such as levees and dams.

Chapter 15 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *water cycle*
2. *gradient*
3. *evapotranspiration*
4. *floodplain*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

5. *condensation* and *precipitation*
6. *watershed* and *tributary*
7. *stream load* and *discharge*
8. *delta* and *alluvial fan*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. The change of water vapor into liquid water is called
   a. runoff. **c.** evaporation.
   b. desalination. **d.** condensation.

10. In a water budget, the income is precipitation and the expense is
    a. evapotranspiration and runoff.
    b. condensation and saltation.
    c. erosion and conservation.
    d. conservation and sedimentation.

11. The land area from which water runs off into a stream is called a
    a. tributary. **c.** divide.
    b. watershed. **d.** gully.

12. Tributaries branch out and lengthen as a river system develops by
    a. headward erosion.
    b. condensation.
    c. saltation.
    d. runoff.

13. The stream load that includes gravel and large rocks is the
    a. suspended load. **c.** dissolved load.
    b. runoff load. **d.** bed load.

14. A fan-shaped formation that develops when a stream deposits its sediment at the base of a steep slope is called a(n)
    a. delta.
    b. meander.
    c. oxbow lake.
    d. alluvial fan.

15. The part of a valley floor that may be covered during a flood is the
    a. floodway.
    b. floodplain.
    c. meander.
    d. artificial levee.

16. One way to control floods indirectly is through
    a. soil conservation.
    b. dams.
    c. floodways.
    d. artificial levees.

Short Answer

17. How does a local water budget differ from the water budget of the whole Earth?

18. How is reducing the pollution in streams and groundwater linked to water conservation?

19. Describe how bank erosion can cause a river to meander.

20. Why do most rivers that have a large sediment load also have high water velocity?

21. Describe how lakes fill with sediment.

22. What is the difference between direct and indirect methods of flood control?

Critical Thinking

23. Evaluating Ideas How would Earth's water cycle be affected if a significant percentage of the sun's rays were blocked by dust or other contaminants in the atmosphere?

24. Making Comparisons Use an atlas to determine the geographic location of Calcutta, India, and Stockholm, Sweden. How might the local water budgets of these two cities differ? Explain your answer.

25. Making Inferences The Colorado River is usually grayish brown as it flows through the Grand Canyon. What causes this color?

26. Making Predictions What do you think would happen to cities in the southwestern U.S. if rivers in that area could not be dammed?

Concept Mapping

27. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *water vapor, condensation, precipitation, channel, stream load, watershed, bar, alluvial fan, delta, divides, watersheds, tributaries, floodplains, dams,* and *artificial levees*.

Math Skills

28. Making Calculations If a river is 3,705 km long from its headwaters to its delta and the average downstream velocity of its water is 200 cm/s, use the equation *time* = *distance* ÷ *velocity* to determine how many days a water molecule takes to make the trip.

29. Using Equations You wish to examine the annual water budget for the state of Colorado. If p = total precipitation, e = total evapotranspiration, r = total stream runoff, and g = total water soaking into the ground, what equation will allow you to determine whether Colorado experiences a net loss or net gain of water over the course of a year?

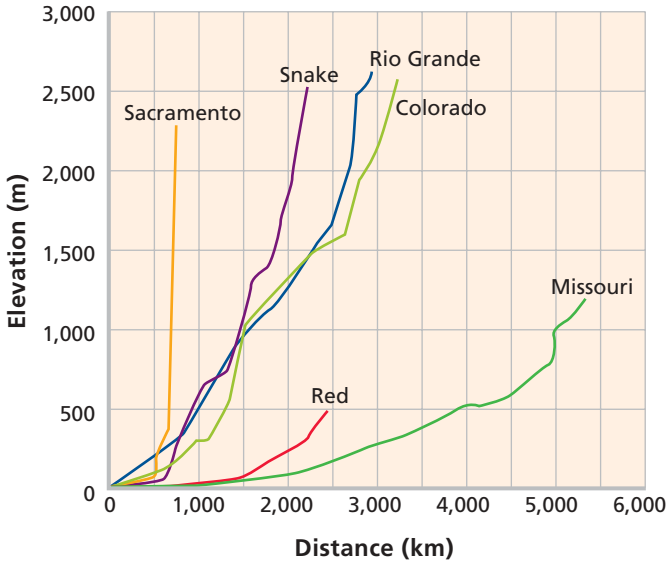
Writing Skills

30. Writing Persuasively Write a persuasive essay of at least 300 words that suggests ways in which your community can conserve water and reduce water pollution.

31. Communicating Main Ideas Discuss the dangers and advantages of living in a river floodplain. Outline the options for adapting to living in a river floodplain.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows the gradients of several rivers of the United States. Use the graph to answer the questions that follow.



32. Which river has the shallowest average gradient over its entire course?

33. Which river has the steepest average gradient over its entire course?

34. Based only on gradient, how would the velocity of the Snake River compare with the velocity of the Missouri River?

35. Which end of each line on the graph represents the headwaters of the river system? Explain your answer.

Chapter 15 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–4): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1. Condensation is often triggered as water vapor rising in the atmosphere
   A. cools
   B. warms
   C. contracts
   D. breaks apart

2. The continuous movement of water from the ocean, to the atmosphere, to the land, and back to the ocean is
   F. condensation.
   G. the water cycle.
   H. precipitation.
   I. evapotranspiration.

3. Which of the following formations drains a watershed?
   A. floodplains
   B. a recharge zone
   C. an artesian spring
   D. streams and tributaries

4. Like rivers, lakes have life cycles. Most lakes have short life cycles and eventually disappear. Which of the following conditions may cause a lake to disappear?
   F. when evaporation exceeds precipitation
   G. when precipitation exceeds evaporation
   H. when sediments are removed from the lake
   I. when a local water budget is balanced

Directions (5–8): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

5. What is the term for a volume of water that is moved by a stream during a given amount of time?

6. The gradient of a river is defined as a change in what over a given distance?

7. Streams are said to have varying loads. What makes up a stream's load?

8. Desalination removes what naturally occurring compound from ocean water?

Reading Skills

Directions (9–11): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

The Mississippi Delta

In the Mississippi River Delta, long-legged birds step lightly through the marsh and hunt fish or frogs for breakfast. Hundreds of species of plants and animals start another day in this fragile ecosystem. This delta ecosystem, like many other ecosystems, is in danger of being destroyed.

The threat to the Mississippi River Delta ecosystem comes from efforts to make the river more useful. Large parts of the river bottom have been dredged to deepen the river for ship traffic. Underwater channels were built to control flooding. What no one realized was that the sediments that once formed new land now pass through the channels and flow out into the ocean. Those river sediments had once replaced the land that was lost every year to erosion. Without them, the river could no longer replace land lost to erosion. So, the Mississippi River Delta began shrinking. By 1995, more than half of the wetlands were already gone—swept out to sea by waves along the Lousiana coast.

9. Based on the passage, which of the following statements about the Mississippi River is true?
   A. The Mississippi River never floods.
   B. The Mississippi River is not wide enough for ships to travel on it.
   C. The Mississippi River's delicate ecosystem is in danger of being lost.
   D. The Mississippi River is disappearing.

10. Based on the passage, which of the following statements is true?
    F. By 1995, more than half of the Mississippi River was gone.
    G. Underwater channels control flooding.
    H. Channels help form new land.
    I. Sediment cannot replace lost land.

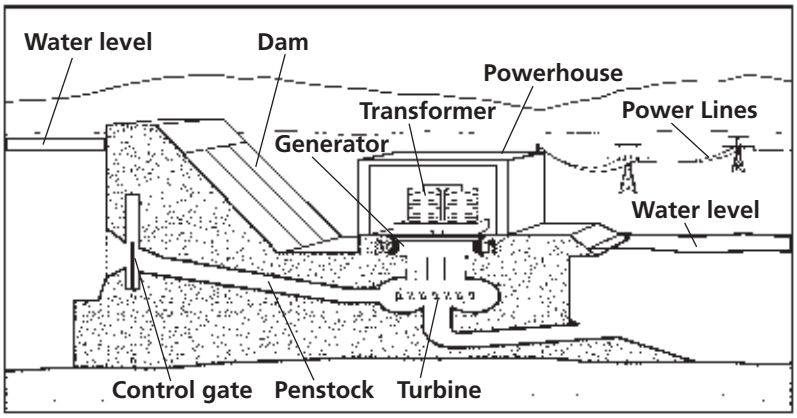
11. The passage mentions that damage to the ecosystem came from efforts to make the river more useful. For who or what was the river being made more useful?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (12–15): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagram below shows how a hydropower plant works. Use this diagram to answer questions 12 and 13.

Hydroelectric Dam



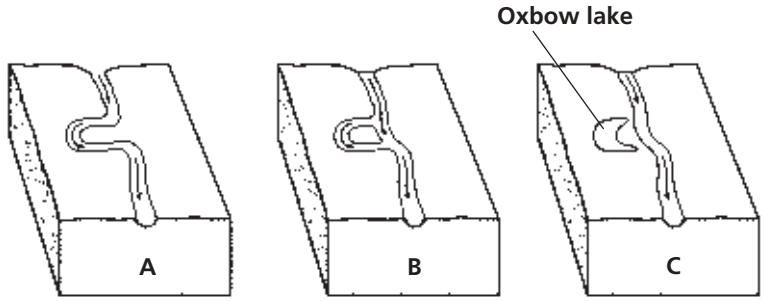
12 Hydroelectric dams are used to generate electricity for human use. As water rushes past the machinery inside, an electric current is generated. What does water rush past to turn the generator, which produces the current?

A. a transformer
B. the control gate
C. an intake
D. a turbine

13 Look at the diagram above. What direction does the water flow? What makes the water flow in this direction?

The graphic below shows the formation of an oxbow lake. Use this graphic to answer questions 14 and 15.

Formation of an Oxbow Lake



14 What is the term for the wide curves whose development causes the formation of oxbow lakes?

F. wonders
G. meanders
H. bows
I. loops

15 How does the speed at which the water flows contribute to the process of forming an oxbow lake?

Test TIP

If you are permitted to, draw a line through each incorrect answer choice as you eliminate it.

Chapter 15

Inquiry Lab

Using Scientific Methods

Sediments and Water

Running water erodes some types of soil more easily than it erodes others. How rapidly a soil erodes depends on how well the soil holds water. In this lab, you will determine the erosive effect of water on various types of sediment.

Objectives

- **Measure** the amount of water that sediment can hold.
- **Identify** the properties that affect how sediment interacts with water.

Materials

- graduated cylinder, 100 mL
- grease pencil
- juice containers, 12 oz (2)
- metric ruler
- nail, large
- pan, 23 cm × 33 cm × 5 cm or larger
- sand, dry and coarse
- silt, dry
- stopwatch or clock with second hand
- water

Safety

ASK A QUESTION

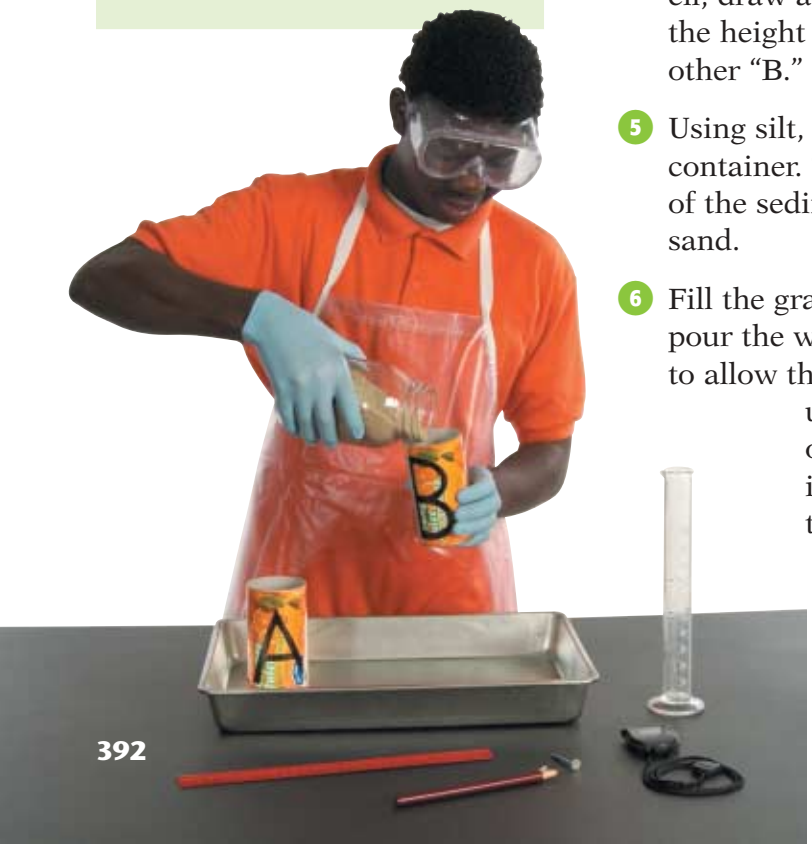
1. Which type of soil would hold more water: sandy soil or silty soil? Which soil would water flow through faster and thus would erode more rapidly: sandy soil or silty soil?

FORM A HYPOTHESIS

2. Write a hypothesis that is a possible answer to the questions above.

TEST THE HYPOTHESIS

3. Use a graduated cylinder to pour 300 mL of water into each of two juice containers.
4. Place the containers on a flat surface. Using a grease pencil, draw a line around the inside of the containers to mark the height of the water. Label one container "A" and the other "B." Empty and dry the containers.
5. Using silt, fill container A up to the line drawn inside the container. Tap the container gently to even out the surface of the sediment. Repeat this step for container B, but use sand.
6. Fill the graduated cylinder with 100 mL of water. Slowly pour the water into container A. Stop every few seconds to allow the soil to absorb the water. Continue pouring until a thin film of water forms on the surface of the sediment. If more than 100 mL of water is needed, refill the graduated cylinder and continue this step.



Step 5

7. Record the volume of water poured into the container.
8. Using container B, repeat steps 6 and 7. Record your observations.
9. Use a metric ruler to measure 1 cm above the surface of the sediment in each container. Using the grease pencil, draw a line to mark this height on the inside of each container. Pour water from the graduated cylinder into containers A and B until the water reaches the 1 cm mark.
10. Poke a nail through the very bottom of the side of container A. Place the container inside the pan. At the same time, start recording the time by using a stopwatch and pull the nail out of the container.
11. Observe the water level, and record the amount of time that the water takes to drop to the sediment surface.
12. Using container B, repeat steps 10 and 11. Record your observations.

Step 8

Step 12

ANALYZE THE RESULTS

1. **Analyzing Results** In step 8, which type of sediment held more water?
2. **Analyzing Results** Which type of sediment was the water able to flow through faster?
3. **Summarizing Results** What properties of the sediment do you think affected how the water flowed through the sediment? Explain your answer.

DRAW CONCLUSIONS

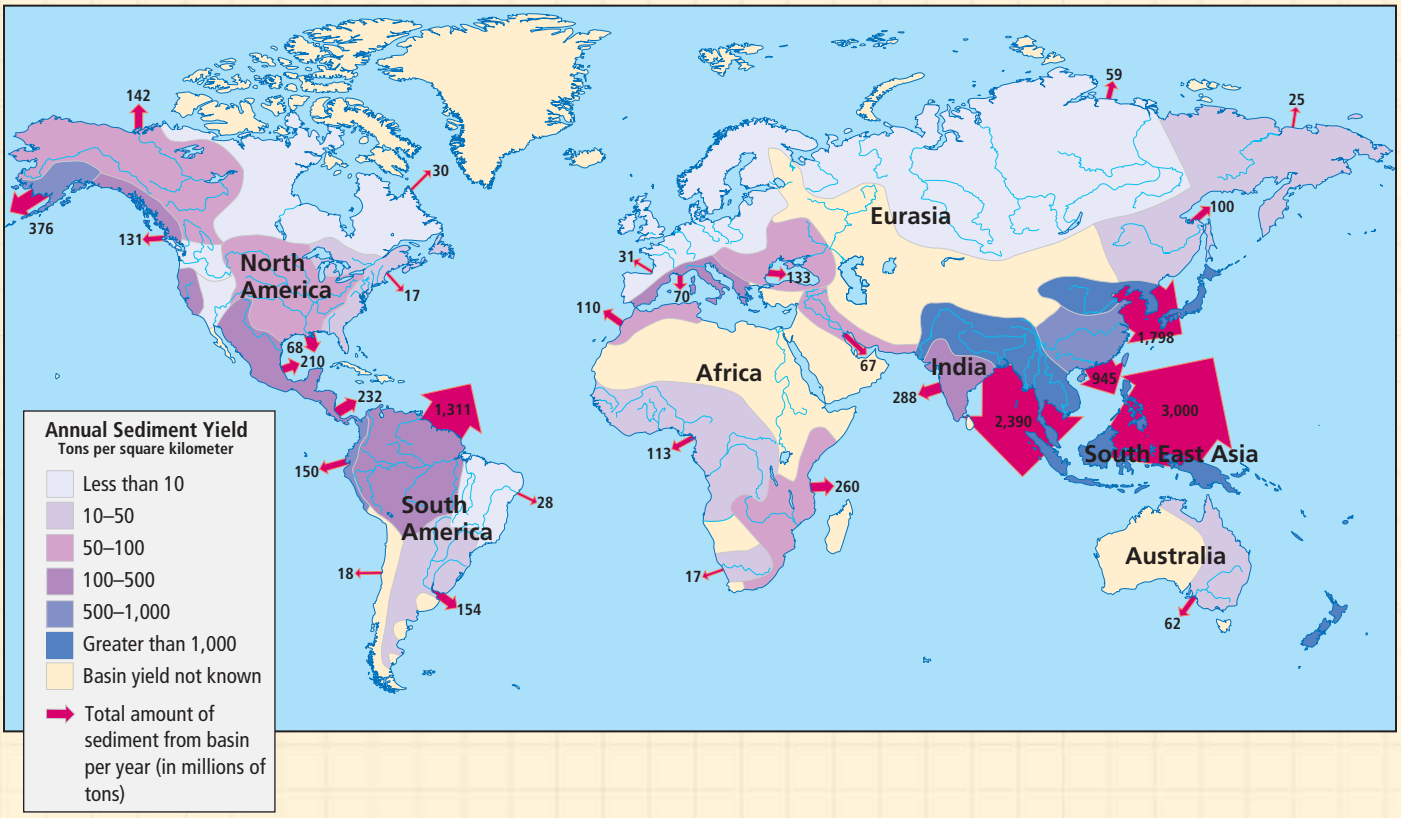
4. **Analyzing Results** On the basis of your answers to the questions above, which would water erode more quickly: an area of silt or an area of sand? Explain your answer.
5. **Drawing Conclusions** In which sediment do you think a deep stream channel is most likely to form? In which sediment is a meandering stream likely to form? Explain your answers.

Extension

1. **Applying Conclusions** Describe three ways to make slopes covered with soil more resistant to erosion.

MAPS in Action

World Watershed Sediment Yield



Map Skills Activity

This map shows the world's watersheds and identifies the sediment yield of each watershed basin in tons per square kilometer and the total amount of sediment that each basin dumps into the ocean in millions of tons per year. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using a Key** What area has the highest total annual sediment yield from one basin?
2. **Using a Key** What is the range of the annual sediment yield in tons per square kilometer for the United States, excluding Alaska?
3. **Analyzing Data** What is the total amount of sediment that basins in South America yield per year?
4. **Analyzing Relationships** Areas that have high relief, where the range of elevations is great, tend to have higher sediment yields than areas that have low relief, where the topography is flatter, do. Which area would you conclude has higher relief: Africa or South East Asia? Explain your answer.
5. **Making Comparisons** Both the Amazon basin, which is in northern South America, and the India basin have an annual sediment yield range of 100 to 500 tons per square kilometer. However, the total amount of sediment per year from the Amazon basin is 1,311 million tons, while the total amount of sediment per year from the India basin is 288 million tons. Explain why these two basins differ so significantly in their total sediment yield per year.

EYE on the Environment

The Three Gorges Dam

China's Yangtze River is the third-longest river in the world. The Yangtze River flows through the Three Gorges region of central China, which is famous for its natural beauty and historical sites. This region is also where the Three Gorges Dam—the largest hydroelectric dam project in the world—is currently being built. When the dam is complete, the Yangtze River will rise to form a reservoir that is 595 km long—as long as Lake Superior. In other words, the reservoir will be about as long as the distance between Los Angeles and San Francisco in California!

Benefits of the Dam

The dam has several purposes, one of which is to control the water level of the Yangtze River to prevent flooding. About 1 million people died in the last century from flooding along the river. The other purpose is to provide millions of people with hydroelectric power. China now burns air-polluting coal to meet 75% of the country's energy needs. Engineers project that when the dam is completed, its turbines will provide enough electrical energy to power a city that is 10 times the size of Los Angeles. When its flow is controlled, the Yangtze River will be deep enough for ships to navigate on it, so the dam will also increase trade in a relatively poor region of China.

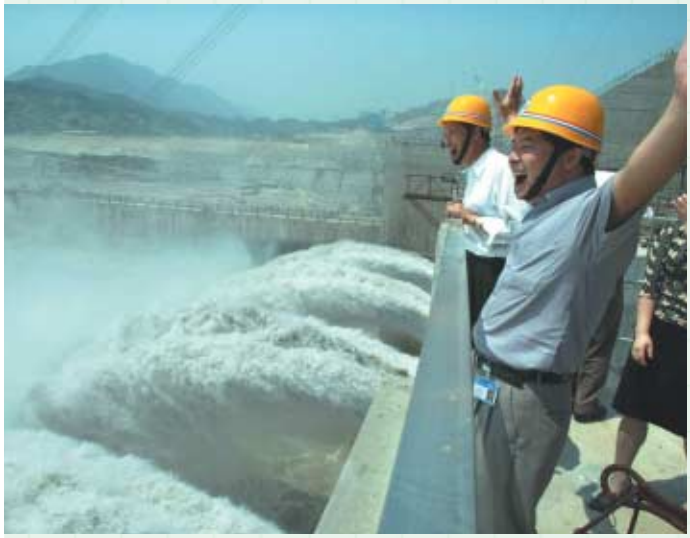
Disadvantages of the Dam

The project has several drawbacks, however. The reservoir behind the dam will flood an enormous area. Almost 2 million people living in the affected areas are being relocated—there are 13 cities and hundreds of villages in the area of the reservoir. As the reservoir's waters rise, fragile ecosystems and valuable archeological sites will be destroyed and scenic recreation areas will be submerged.

▲ A resident on the Yangtze River carries his belongings to higher ground after his home was destroyed when the dam caused the water level to rise.

Opponents of the project also claim that the dam will increase pollution levels in the Yangtze River. Most of the cities and factories along the river dump untreated wastes directly into the water. Some people think the reservoir will become the world's largest sewer when 1 billion tons of sewage flows into the reservoir every year.

Because the dam lies over a fault, scientists question whether the dam will be able to withstand earthquakes. If the dam were to burst, towns and cities downstream would be destroyed by the ensuing flood.



◀ An engineer on the Three Gorges Dam project celebrates the successful test of sluicing, which is the rushing of water through channels in the dam.

Extension

1. **Research** What do you think of the Three Gorges dam? Research other dam projects. After analyzing the benefits and risks of dams, write an essay describing your opinion about dam projects.

Chapter 16

Groundwater

Sections

1 Water Beneath the Surface

2 Groundwater and Chemical Weathering

What You'll Learn

- How water moves under Earth's surface
- How humans use groundwater
- How groundwater shapes Earth's surface

Why It's Relevant

Groundwater is a major source of drinking water for humans and a source of fresh water for agriculture and industry. Groundwater is also a major force in shaping Earth's landforms.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Key-Term Fold Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Key-Term Fold" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Write a key term from the chapter on each tab of the key-term fold. Under each tab, write the definition of the key term.

▶ These macaque monkeys are bathing in hot springs in Jigokudani National Park in Japan. Hot springs form where molten rock in Earth's crust heats surrounding rock and the groundwater in the rock. The water then rises to the surface to form pools and springs.

Section 1 Water Beneath the Surface

Surface water that does not run off into streams and rivers may seep down through the soil into the upper layers of Earth's crust. There, the water fills spaces, or *pores,* between rock particles. Water may also fill fractures or cavities in rock that were caused by erosion. Water that fills and moves through these spaces in rock and sediment is called **groundwater.** Groundwater is an important source of fresh water in the United States.

Properties of Aquifers

A body of rock or sediment in which large amounts of water can flow and be stored is called an **aquifer.** For water to flow freely through an aquifer, the pores or fractures in the aquifer must be connected. The ease with which water flows through an aquifer is affected by many factors, including porosity and permeability.

Porosity

In a set volume of rock or sediment, the percentage of the rock or sediment that consists of open spaces is **porosity.** One factor that affects porosity is sorting. *Sorting* is the amount of uniformity in the size of the rock or sediment particles, as **Figure 1** shows. Most particles in a well-sorted sediment are about the same size, and a few smaller particles fill the spaces between them. Poorly sorted sediment contains particles of many sizes. Small particles fill the spaces between large particles, which makes the rock less porous. Particle packing also affects porosity. Loosely packed particles leave many open spaces that can store water, so the rock has high porosity. Rock that has tightly packed particles contains few open spaces and thus has low porosity. Grain shape also affects porosity. In general, the more irregular the grain shape is, the more porous the rock or sediment is.

OBJECTIVES

- **Identify** properties of aquifers that affect the flow of groundwater.
- **Describe** the water table and its relationship to the land surface.
- **Compare** wells, springs, and artesian formations.
- **Describe** two land features formed by hot groundwater.

KEY TERMS

groundwater
aquifer
porosity
permeability
water table
artesian formation

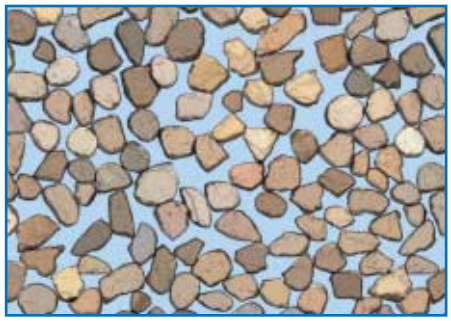
groundwater the water that is beneath Earth's surface

aquifer a body of rock or sediment that stores groundwater and allows the flow of groundwater

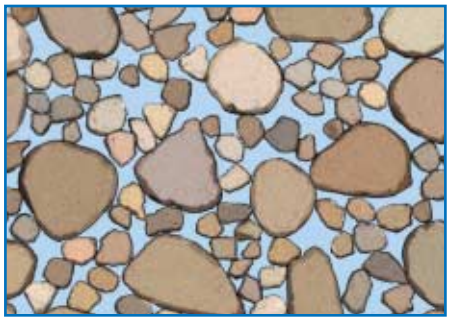
porosity the percentage of the total volume of a rock or sediment that consists of open spaces

Figure 1 ▶ Differences in Porosity

Well-sorted, coarse-grained sediment has high porosity.

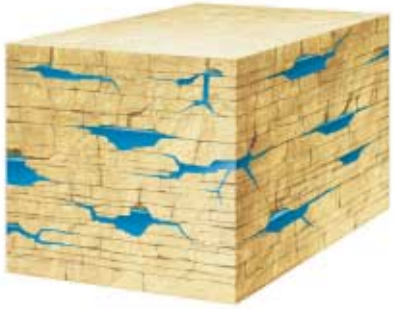


Well-sorted, fine-grained sediment has high porosity equal to the porosity of coarse-grained sediment.



Poorly sorted sediment that contains grains of many sizes has low porosity.

Rock is considered porous if it has many empty spaces that can fill with water.



Rock is considered permeable if its empty spaces are connected so that water may flow from one space to the next.

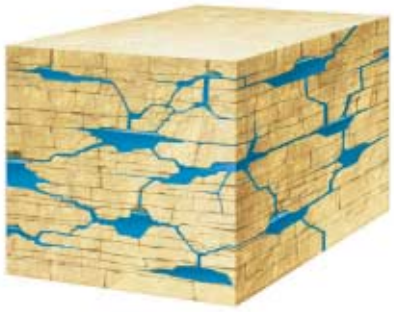


Figure 2 ▶ Porous rocks do not make good aquifers unless water can move freely through the rocks.

Permeability

The ease with which water passes through a porous material is called **permeability.** For a rock to be permeable, the open spaces must be connected, as shown in **Figure 2.** A rock that has high porosity is not permeable if the pores or fractures are not connected. Permeability is also affected by the size and sorting of the particles that make up a rock or sediment. The larger and better sorted the particles are, the more permeable the rock or sediment tends to be. The most permeable rocks, such as sandstone, are composed of coarse particles. Other rocks, such as limestone, may be permeable if they have interconnected cracks. Clay is a sediment composed of flat, very fine-grained particles. Because of this characteristic composition, clay is essentially *impermeable,* which means that water cannot flow through it.

permeability the ability of a rock or sediment to let fluids pass through its open spaces, or pores

QuickLAB 20 min

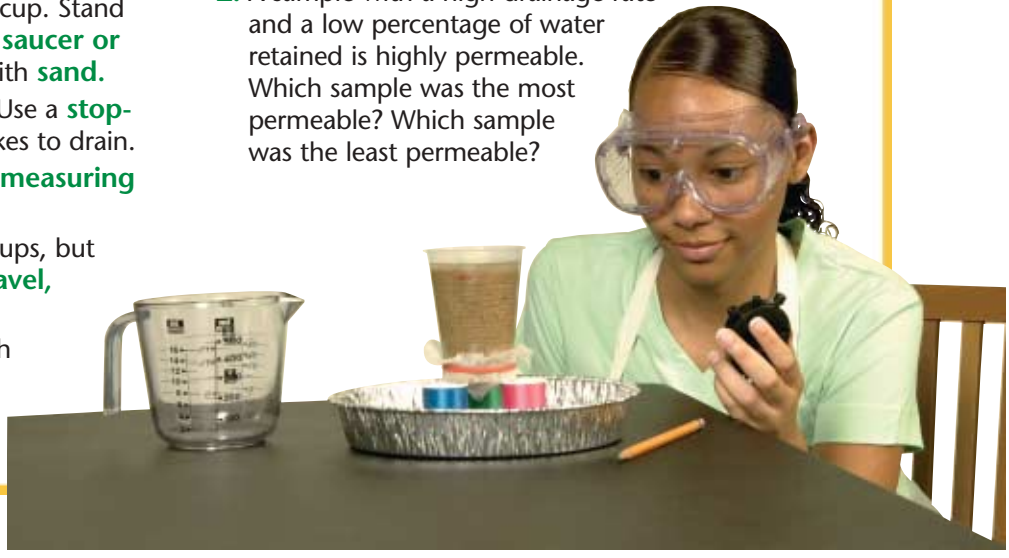
Permeability

Procedure

1. With a **sharpened pencil,** make seven tiny holes in the bottom of each of **three paper or plastic cups.** Stretch **cheesecloth** tightly over the bottom of each cup. Secure the cloth with a **rubber band.**
2. Mark a line 2 cm from the top of one cup. Stand the cup on **three thread spools** in a **saucer or pie pan,** and fill the cup to the line with **sand.**
3. Pour **120 mL of water** into the cup. Use a **stopwatch** to time how long the water takes to drain.
4. Pour the water from the saucer into a **measuring cup.** Record the amount of water.
5. Repeat steps 2–4 with the two other cups, but fill one cup with **soil** and one with **gravel,** not sand.
6. Calculate the rates of drainage for each cup by dividing the amount of water that drained by the time the water took to drain.
7. For each cup, calculate the percentage of water retained by subtracting the amount of water drained from 120 mL. Divide this volume by 120.

Analysis

1. Which cup had the highest drainage rate?
2. A sample with a high drainage rate and a low percentage of water retained is highly permeable. Which sample was the most permeable? Which sample was the least permeable?



Zones of Aquifers

Gravity pulls water down through soil and rock layers until the water reaches impermeable rock. Water then begins to fill, or saturate, the spaces in the rock above the impermeable layer. As more water soaks into the ground, the water level rises underground and forms two distinct zones of groundwater, as shown in **Figure 3.**

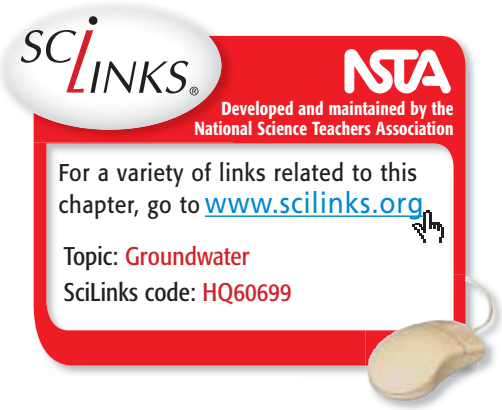
Zone of Saturation

The layer of an aquifer in which the pore space is completely filled with water is the *zone of saturation*. The term *saturated* means "filled to capacity." The zone of saturation is the lower of the two zones of groundwater. The upper surface of the zone of saturation is called the **water table.**

water table the upper surface of underground water; the upper boundary of the zone of saturation

Zone of Aeration

The zone that lies between the water table and Earth's surface is called the *zone of aeration*. The zone of aeration is composed of three regions. The uppermost region of the zone of aeration holds soil moisture—water that forms a film around grains of topsoil. The bottom region, just above the water table, is the capillary fringe. Water is drawn up from the zone of saturation into the capillary fringe by capillary action. *Capillary action* is caused by the attraction of water molecules to other materials, such as soil. For example, when a paper towel soaks up a spill, capillary action draws moisture into the towel. Between the soil moisture region and the capillary fringe is a region that is dry—except during periods of rain—and thus contains air in its pores.



Reading Check **What are the two zones of groundwater? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

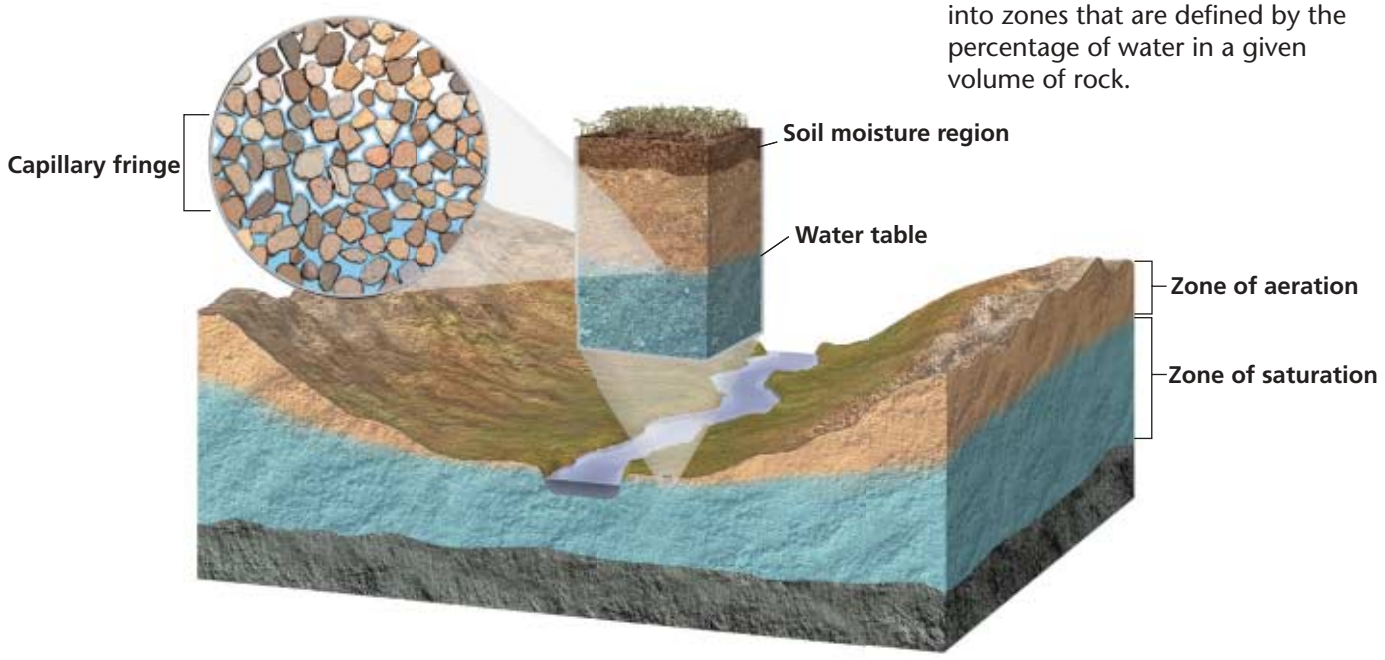


Figure 3 ▶ Groundwater is divided into zones that are defined by the percentage of water in a given volume of rock.

MATH PRACTICE

Rate of Groundwater Depletion In some areas, more groundwater is removed than is naturally replaced. In one area, for example, 575 million cubic meters of water enters the rock every year, while 1,500 million cubic meters of water is removed each year. What is the rate of groundwater depletion in that area? The total amount of groundwater available is 6,475 million cubic meters. If groundwater use continues at the current rate, in how many years will the water be completely depleted?

Movement of Groundwater

Like water on Earth's surface, groundwater flows downward in response to gravity. Water passes quickly through highly permeable rock and slowly through rock that is less permeable. The rate at which groundwater flows horizontally depends on both the permeability of the aquifer and the gradient of the water table. *Gradient* is the steepness of a slope. The velocity of groundwater increases as the water table's gradient increases.

Topography and the Water Table

The depth of the water table below the ground surface depends on surface topography, the permeability of the aquifer, the amount of rainfall, and the rate at which humans use the water. Generally, shallow water tables match the contours of the surface, as shown in **Figure 4.** During periods of prolonged rainfall, the water table rises. During periods of drought, the water table falls and flattens because water that leaves the aquifer is not replaced.

Only one water table exists in most areas. In some areas, however, a layer of impermeable rock lies above the main water table. This rock layer prevents water from reaching the main zone of saturation. Water collects on top of this upper layer and creates a second water table, which is called a *perched water table*.

Reading Check **What four factors affect the depth of a water table? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

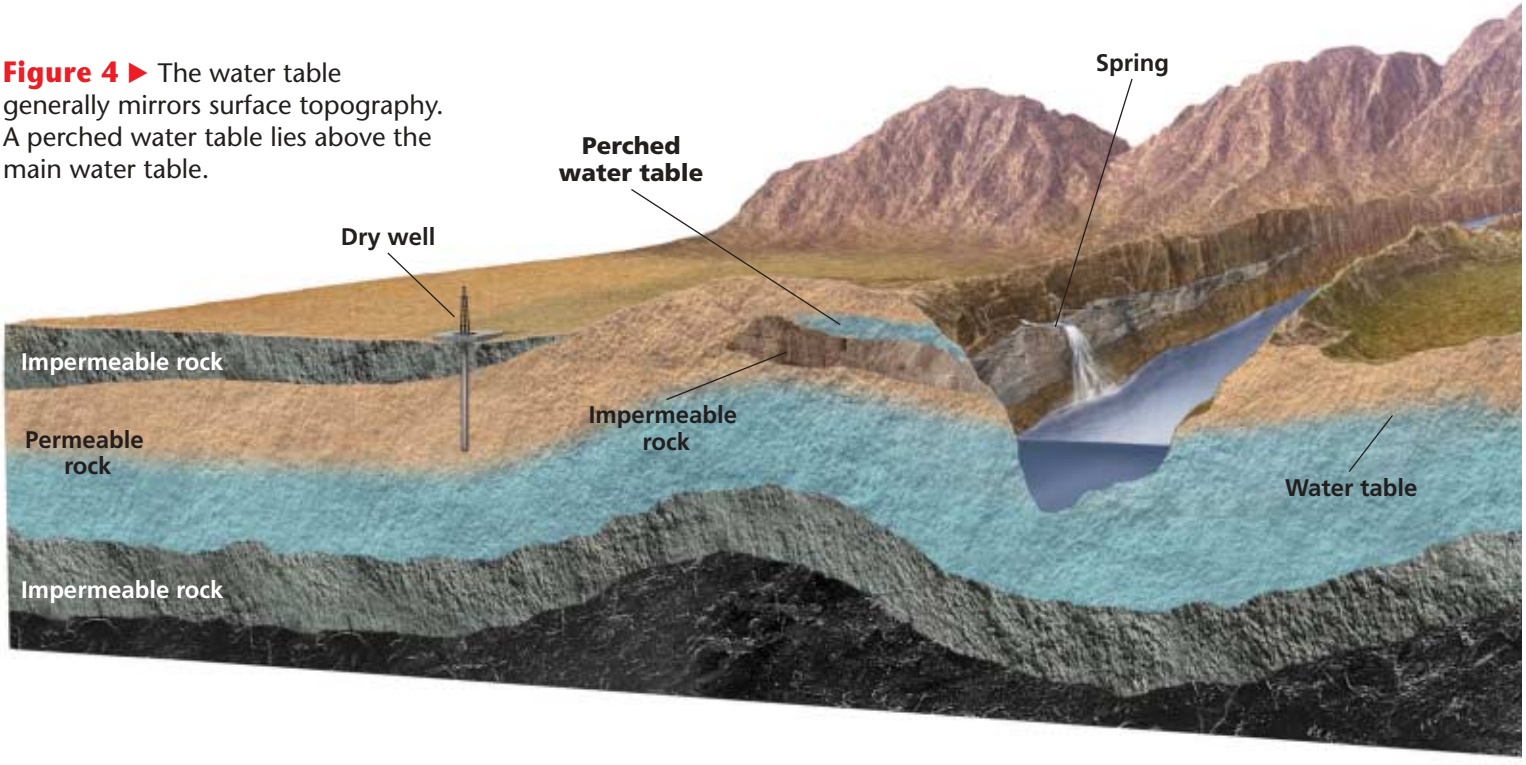


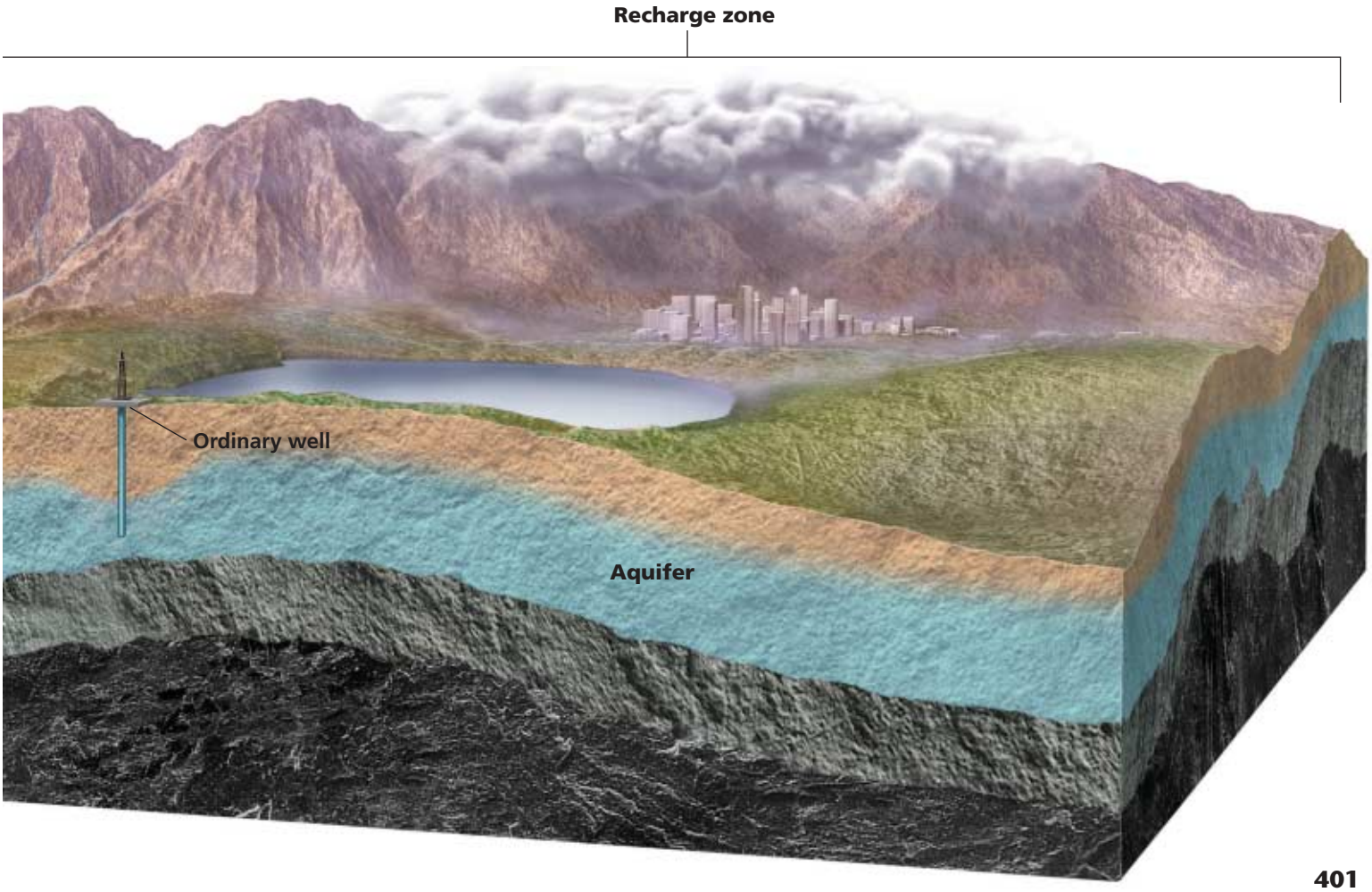
Figure 4 ▶ The water table generally mirrors surface topography. A perched water table lies above the main water table.

Conserving Groundwater

In many communities, groundwater is the only source of fresh water. Although groundwater is renewable, its long renewal time limits its supply. Groundwater collects and moves slowly, and the water taken from aquifers may not be replenished for hundreds or thousands of years. Communities often regulate the use of groundwater to help conserve this valuable resource. They can monitor the level of the local water table and discourage excess pumping. Some communities recycle used water. This water is purified and may be used to replenish the groundwater supply.

Surface water enters an aquifer through an area called a recharge zone. A *recharge zone* is anywhere that water from the surface can travel through permeable rock to reach an aquifer, as shown in **Figure 4.** Recharge zones are environmentally sensitive areas because pollution in the recharge zone can enter the aquifer. Therefore, recharge zones are often labeled by signs like the one shown in **Figure 5.** Pollution can enter an aquifer from waste dumps and underground storage tanks for toxic chemicals, from fertilizers and pesticides used in agriculture and on lawns, or from leaking sewage systems. If too much groundwater is pumped from an aquifer that is near the ocean, salt water from the ocean can then flow into the aquifer and contaminate the groundwater supply.

Figure 5 ▶ Water that enters this drain runs off into the Charles River and surrounding aquifers in Massachusetts.



Wells and Springs

Groundwater reaches Earth's surface through wells and springs. A *well* is a hole that is dug to below the level of the water table and through which groundwater is brought to Earth's surface. A *spring* is a natural flow of groundwater to Earth's surface in places where the ground surface dips below the water table. Wells and springs are classified into two groups—ordinary and artesian.

Ordinary Wells and Springs

Ordinary wells work only if they penetrate highly permeable sediment or rock below the water table. If the rock is not permeable enough, groundwater cannot flow into the well quickly enough to replace the water that is withdrawn.

Pumping water from a well lowers the water table around the well and forms a *cone of depression,* as shown in **Figure 6.** If too much water is taken from a well, the cone of depression may drop to the bottom of the well and the well will go dry. The lowered water table may extend several kilometers around the well and may cause surrounding wells to become dry.

Ordinary springs are usually found in rugged terrain where the ground surface drops below the water table. These springs may not flow continuously if the water table in the area has an irregular depth as a result of variable rainfall. Springs that form from perched water tables that intersect the ground surface are very sensitive to the amount of local precipitation. Thus, these springs may go dry during dry seasons or severe droughts.

Graphic Organizer **Venn Diagram**

Create the **Graphic Organizer** entitled "Venn Diagram" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the circles "Ordinary wells" and "Artesian wells." Then, fill in the diagram with characteristics that are common to both types of wells.

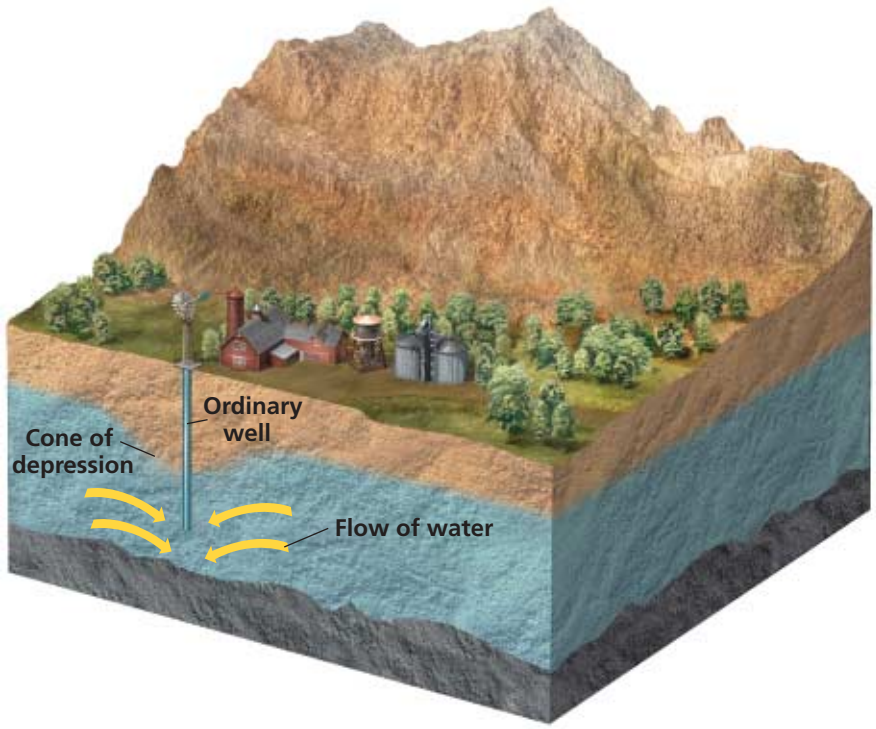


Figure 6 ▶ A cone of depression develops in the water table around a pumping well.

Figure 7 ▶ The aquifer in an artesian formation dips under the impermeable caprock. When a well is drilled into an artesian aquifer, pressure is released and the water rushes upward. These men are testing the quality of water from an artesian well in Pakistan.

Artesian Wells and Springs

The groundwater that supplies many wells comes from local precipitation. However, the water in some wells may come from as far away as hundreds of kilometers. Water may travel through an aquifer to a distant location. Because the aquifer is so extensive, it may become part of an artesian formation, an arrangement of permeable and impermeable rock.

An **artesian formation** is a sloping layer of permeable rock that is sandwiched between two layers of impermeable rock, as shown in **Figure 7.** The permeable rock is the aquifer, and the top layer of impermeable rock is called the *caprock*. Water enters the aquifer at a recharge zone and flows downhill through the aquifer. As the water flows downward, the weight of the overlying water causes pressure in the aquifer to increase. Because the water is under pressure, when a well is drilled through the caprock, the water quickly flows up through the well and may even spout from the surface. An *artesian well* is a well through which water flows freely without being pumped.

artesian formation a sloping layer of permeable rock sandwiched between two layers of impermeable rock and exposed at the surface

Artesian formations are also the source of water for some springs. When cracks occur naturally in the caprock, water from the aquifer flows through the cracks. This flow forms *artesian springs*.

Reading Check **What is the difference between ordinary springs and artesian springs? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

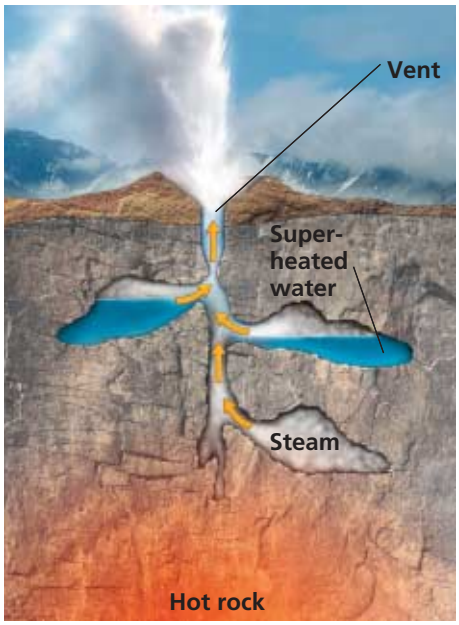


Figure 8 ▶ The vent and underground chambers of a geyser enable water to become superheated and to eventually erupt to the surface.

Hot Springs

Groundwater is heated when it passes through rock that has been heated by magma. Hot groundwater that is at least 37°C and that rises to the surface before cooling produces a *hot spring*. When water in a hot spring cools, the water deposits minerals around the spring's edges. The deposits form steplike terraces of calcite called *travertine*. *Mud pots* form when chemically weathered rock mixes with hot water to form a sticky, liquid clay that bubbles at the surface. Mud pots are called *paint pots* when the clay is brightly colored by minerals or organic materials.

Geysers

Hot springs that periodically erupt from surface pools or through small vents are called *geysers*. A geyser consists of a narrow vent that connects one or more underground chambers with the surface. The hot rocks that make up the chamber walls superheat the groundwater. The water in the vent exerts pressure on the water in the chambers, which keeps the water in the chambers from boiling for a time. When the water in the vent finally begins to boil, the boiling water produces steam that pushes the water above it to the surface. Release of the water near the top of the vent relieves the pressure on the superheated water farther down. With the sudden release of pressure, the superheated water changes into steam and explodes toward the surface, as shown in **Figure 8.** The eruption continues until most of the water and steam are emptied from the vent and chambers. After the eruption, groundwater begins to collect again and the process is repeated, often at regular intervals.

Section 1 Review

1. **Identify** the difference between porosity and permeability, and explain how permeability affects the flow of groundwater.
2. **Name and describe** the two zones of groundwater.
3. **Describe** how the contour of a shallow water table compares with the local topography.
4. **Explain** why ordinary springs often flow intermittently.
5. **Define** the term *cone of depression*.
6. **Compare** the rock layers in an artesian formation with those in an ordinary aquifer.
7. **Compare** artesian wells and ordinary wells.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Making Inferences** Which type of well would provide a community with a more constant source of water: an ordinary well or an artesian well? Explain your answer.
9. **Identifying Relationships** Why is protecting the environment from pollution important for communities in recharge zones?
10. **Analyzing Ideas** Why don't shallow pools of hot water erupt the way that geysers erupt?

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *groundwater, water table, zone of saturation,* and *zone of aeration*.

Section 2 Groundwater and Chemical Weathering

As groundwater passes through permeable rock, minerals in the rock dissolve. The warmer the rock is and the longer it is in contact with water, the greater the amount of dissolved minerals in the water. Water that contains relatively high concentrations of dissolved minerals, especially minerals rich in calcium, magnesium, and iron, is called *hard water*. Water that contains relatively low concentrations of dissolved minerals is called *soft water*.

Many people think that using hard water is unappealing. For example, more soap is needed to produce suds in hard water than in soft water. Also, many people prefer not to drink hard water because of its metallic taste. Some household appliances or fixtures may be damaged by the buildup of mineral deposits from hard water. **Figure 1** shows some results of the long-term presence of hard water.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** how water chemically weathers rock.
- **Explain** how caverns and sinkholes form.
- **Identify** two features of karst topography.

KEY TERMS

cavern
sinkhole
karst topography

Results of Weathering by Groundwater

One way that minerals become dissolved in groundwater is through chemical weathering. As water moves through soil and other organic materials, the water combines with carbon dioxide to form carbonic acid. This weak acid chemically weathers the rock that the acid passes through by breaking down and dissolving the minerals in the rock.

Figure 1 ▶ Soap scum forms when soap reacts with calcium carbonate in hard water (inset). During high-water stages, hard water deposited a residue of calcium carbonate on the canyon walls that border this creek.

QuickLAB 25 min

Chemical Weathering

Procedure

1. Place **limestone, granite, pyrite,** and **chalk chips** into separate **small beakers.**
2. Cover the rocks in **1% HCL solution.**
3. After 20 min, observe the rocks.

Analysis

1. How have the rocks changed?
2. How is this process of change like the process of chemical weathering by groundwater?

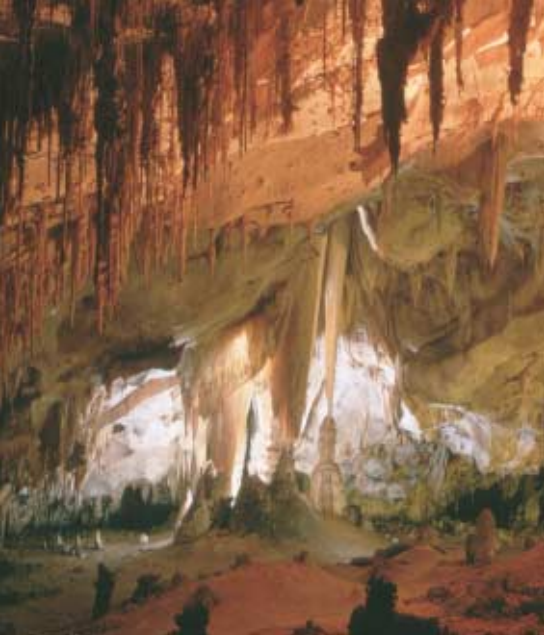


Figure 2 ▶ The formations in Carlsbad Caverns in New Mexico are made of calcite. ***Which formations in this photo are stalagmites?***

cavern a natural cavity that forms in rock as a result of the dissolution of minerals; also a large cave that commonly contains many smaller, connecting chambers

Caverns

Rocks that are rich in the mineral calcite, such as limestone, are especially vulnerable to chemical weathering. Although limestone is not porous, vertical and horizontal cracks commonly cut through limestone layers. As groundwater flows through these cracks, carbonic acid slowly dissolves the limestone and enlarges the cracks. Eventually, a cavern may form. A **cavern** is a large cave that may consist of many smaller connecting chambers. Carlsbad Caverns in New Mexico is a good example of a large limestone cavern, as shown in **Figure 2.**

Stalactites and Stalagmites

Although a cavern that lies above the water table does not fill with water, water still passes through the rock surrounding the cavern. When water containing dissolved calcite drips from the ceiling of a limestone cavern, some of the calcite is deposited on the ceiling. As this calcite builds up, it forms a suspended, cone-shaped deposit called a *stalactite* (stuh LAK TIET). When drops of water fall on the cavern floor, calcite builds up to form an upward-pointing cone called a *stalagmite* (stuh LAG MIET). Often, a stalactite and a stalagmite will grow until they meet and form a calcite deposit called a *column*.

Connection to **CHEMISTRY**

How Water Dissolves Limestone

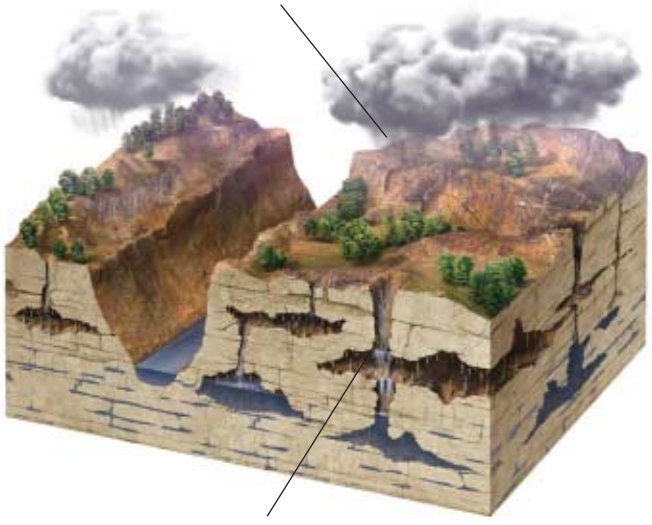
Water that falls as precipitation contains dissolved carbon dioxide, CO_2. This dissolved CO_2 causes the water to be slightly acidic. The formula for the dissolution of CO_2 is shown below.

Carbon dioxide reacts with **water** to form **carbonic acid: $H_2O + CO_2 = H_2CO_3$.**

Water that reaches the ground seeps into the soil. As the water passes through the soil, more CO_2 dissolves and the water becomes more acidic. The slightly acidic water enters fractures in limestone and dissolves the rock as the water moves through. The formula for the dissolution of limestone is shown below.

Carbonic acid dissolves **limestone** to form **calcium bicarbonate: $CaCO_3 + H_2CO_3 = Ca(HCO_3)_2$.**

Fractures widen over time, and caves develop underground. The calcium bicarbonate that forms when the limestone dissolves is deposited as the water drips and flows through the caves. This deposited calcium bicarbonate forms structures such as stalagmites and stalactites.



Sinkholes

A circular depression that forms at the surface when rock dissolves, when sediment is removed, or when caves or mines collapse is a **sinkhole.** Most sinkholes form by dissolution, in which the limestone or other rock dissolves where weak areas in the rock, such as fractures, previously existed. The dissolved material is carried away from the surface, and a small depression forms. *Subsidence sinkholes* form by a similar process except that as rock dissolves, overlying sediments settle into cracks in the rock and a depression forms.

Collapse sinkholes may form when sediment below the surface is removed and an empty space forms within the sediment layer. Eventually, the overlying sediments collapse into the empty space below. Collapse sinkholes may also form during dry periods, when the water table is low and caverns are not completely filled with water. Because water no longer supports the roof of the cavern, the roof may collapse. Collapse sinkholes may develop abruptly and cause extensive damage. A collapse sinkhole is shown in **Figure 3.**

Figure 3 ▶ When land overlying a cavern collapses to form a sinkhole, human-made structures, such as this highway, are often damaged.

sinkhole a circular depression that forms when rock dissolves, when overlying sediment fills an existing cavity, or when the roof of an underground cavern or mine collapses

Natural Bridges

When the roof of a cavern collapses in several places, a relatively straight line of sinkholes forms. The uncollapsed rock between each pair of sinkholes forms an arch of rock called a *natural bridge*, such as the one shown in **Figure 4.** When a natural bridge first forms, it is thick, but erosion causes the bridge to become thinner. Eventually, the natural bridge may collapse.

Reading Check **How are sinkholes related to natural bridges? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

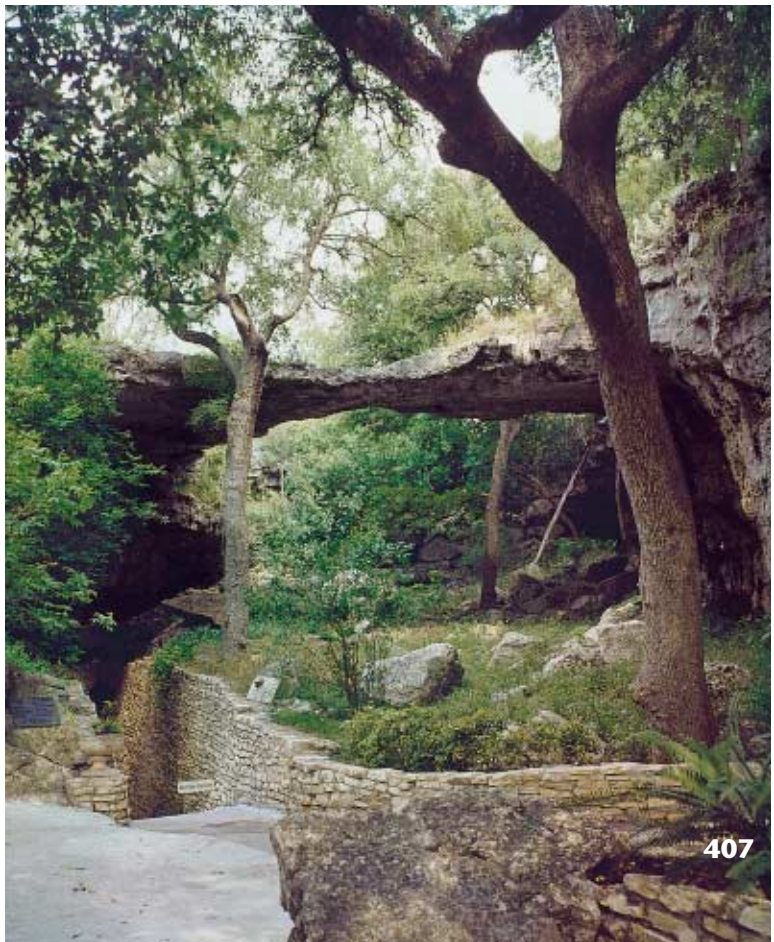


Figure 4 ▶ This natural bridge near San Marcos, Texas, formed when the roofs of two adjoining caverns collapsed.

Figure 5 ▶ The Stone Forest in Yunnan, China, is a dramatic example of karst topography.

Karst Topography

karst topography a type of irregular topography that is characterized by caverns, sinkholes, and underground drainage and that forms on limestone or other soluble rock

Irregular topography caused by the chemical weathering of limestone or other soluble rock by groundwater is called **karst topography.** Common features of karst topography include many closely spaced sinkholes and caverns. In karst regions, streams often disappear into cracks in the rock and then emerge in caves or through other cracks many kilometers away. In the United States, there is karst topography in Kentucky, Tennessee, southern Indiana, northern Florida, and Puerto Rico.

Generally, karst topography forms in regions where the climate is humid and where limestone formations exist at or near the surface. The plentiful precipitation in these regions commonly becomes groundwater. The groundwater flows through the limestone and reacts chemically with the calcite in the limestone. As the groundwater dissolves the limestone, cracks in the rock enlarge to form cave systems. Features of karst topography can form in dry regions, too. In these areas, sinkholes may form very close together and leave dramatic arches and spires, as shown in **Figure 5.** Karst topography in dry regions may indicate that the climate in those regions is becoming drier.

Section 2 Review

1. **Describe** how water chemically weathers rock.
2. **Explain** how caverns form.
3. **Explain** the difference between stalactites and stalagmites.
4. **Identify** three common features of karst topography.
5. **Describe** two ways in which a natural bridge might form.
6. **Compare** sinkholes and caverns.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Inferences** If an area has a dry climate, how can the area have karst topography?
8. **Identifying Relationships** Why might you expect to find springs in regions that have karst topography?

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *groundwater, stalagmite, stalactite, natural bridge, cavern,* and *sinkhole.*

Chapter 16 Highlights

Sections

1 Water Beneath the Surface

Key Terms

groundwater, 397
aquifer, 397
porosity, 397
permeability, 398
water table, 399
artesian formation, 403

Key Concepts

- Porosity and permeability determine how water moves through rock or sediment.
- Aquifers have two main zones—the zone of aeration and the zone of saturation. The upper surface of the zone of saturation is called the *water table*.
- The depth of the water table depends on the topography of the land, the permeability of the rock, the amount of rainfall, and the rate at which groundwater is used by humans.
- Groundwater can be polluted by wastes, agricultural and lawn fertilizers, agricultural and lawn pesticides, and sea water.
- Wells and springs may be ordinary or artesian. Artesian formations are the source of artesian wells and springs.
- Hot springs and geysers form when hot rock beneath Earth's surface heats groundwater.

2 Groundwater and Chemical Weathering

cavern, 406
sinkhole, 407
karst topography, 408

- Caverns form as a result of the chemical weathering of limestone.
- Stalagmites are calcite formations that form on the floor of a cavern. Stalactites are calcite formations that form on the roof of a cavern.
- Sinkholes form when rock dissolves, when sediment is removed, or when the roof of a cavern or mine collapses.
- Karst topography features closely spaced sinkholes, caverns, and streams that disappear into cracks in the rock and then emerge several kilometers away.

Chapter 16 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *groundwater*
2. *water table*
3. *karst topography*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *geyser* and *hot spring*
5. *porosity* and *permeability*
6. *well* and *spring*
7. *ordinary well* and *artesian well*
8. *stalactite* and *stalagmite*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. Any body of rock or sediment in which water can flow and be stored is called a(n)
   a. well.
   b. aquifer.
   c. sinkhole.
   d. artesian formation.

10. The percentage of open space in a given volume of rock is the rock's
    a. viscosity.
    b. capillary fringe.
    c. permeability.
    d. porosity.

11. The ease with which water can pass through a rock or sediment is called
    a. permeability.
    b. carbonation.
    c. porosity.
    d. velocity.

12. The slope of a water table is called the
    a. gradient.
    b. porosity.
    c. permeability.
    d. aquifer.

13. A natural flow of groundwater that has reached the surface is a(n)
    a. spring.
    b. well.
    c. aquifer.
    d. travertine.

14. Pumping water from a well causes a local lowering of the water table known as a
    a. cone of depression.
    b. horizontal fissure.
    c. hot spring.
    d. sinkhole.

15. Calcite formations that hang from the ceiling of a cavern are called
    a. stalagmites.
    b. sinks.
    c. stalactites.
    d. aquifers.

16. Regions where the results of weathering by groundwater are clearly visible have
    a. sink topography.
    b. karst topography.
    c. limestone topography.
    d. artesian formations.

17. When the roofs of several caverns collapse, the uncollapsed rock between sinkholes can form
    a. natural bridges.
    b. stalactites.
    c. limestone topography.
    d. artesian formations.

18. A layer of permeable rock that is sandwiched between layers of impermeable rock is called
    a. a natural bridge.
    b. karst topography.
    c. limestone topography.
    d. an artesian formation.

Short Answer

19. In regions where the water table is at the surface of the land, what type of terrain would you expect to find?

20. Explain the process that forms stalactites and stalagmites. Name another process in nature that produces shapes similar to the shapes of stalactites.

21. How does a mud pot form?

22. Describe the zones of an aquifer.

23. What are two ways that groundwater reaches Earth's surface?

24. How are caverns and sinkholes related?

25. What causes a geyser to erupt?

26. Why does polluted groundwater take a long time to become pure enough for human use?

Critical Thinking

27. Making Inferences In what type of location might pumping too much water from an aquifer lead to contamination of the groundwater supply? Explain how the water becomes contaminated.

28. Analyzing Relationships Describe an artesian formation, and explain how the water in an artesian well may have entered the ground many hundreds of kilometers away.

29. Analyzing Ideas Explain how a rock can be both porous and impermeable.

30. Identifying Relationships Do you think that an area that has karst topography would have many surface streams or few surface streams? Explain your answer.

Concept Mapping

31. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *porosity, sorting, permeability, ordinary well, artesian formation, highly permeable rock,* and *impermeable rock*.

Math Skills

32. Evaluating Data People in Oklahoma use 11 billion gallons of water every day. The renewable water supply in Oklahoma is 68.7 billion gallons per day. What percentage of the renewable water supply do Oklahomans use every day?

33. Making Conversions In an average aquifer, groundwater moves about 50 m per year. At this rate, how long would the groundwater take to flow 1 km?

Writing Skills

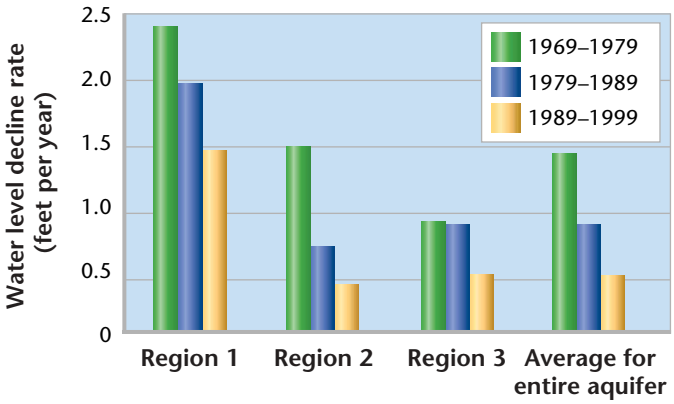
34. Writing Persuasively Write a persuasive essay about the importance of conserving groundwater.

35. Communicating Main Ideas Explain how overpumping at one well can affect groundwater availability in surrounding areas.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows the average annual decline in water level for the Ogallala Aquifer over 30 years. Use the graph below to answer the questions that follow.

Average Annual Rate of Decline by Decade for the Ogallala Aquifer, 1969–1999



36. Which region had the highest rate of decline from 1969 to 1999?

37. Over which decade did the aquifer have the lowest rate of decline?

38. Which years would you expect to have a higher rate of decline: the years 1999 to 2009 or the years 1989 to 1999? Explain your answer.

Chapter 16 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

***Directions* (1–5): For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 Which of the following statements is false?
A. Permeability affects flow through an aquifer.
B. Groundwater can be stored in an aquifer.
C. An aquifer is composed of a single rock layer.
D. Well-sorted sediment holds the most water.

2 The amount of surface water that seeps into the pores between rock particles is influenced by which of the following factors?
F. rock type, land slope, and climate
G. rock type, land slope, and capillary fringe
H. rock type, land slope, and sea level
I. rock type, land slope, and recharging

3 Shanghai removed 96.03 million cubic meters of groundwater in 2002 but replaced only 13.75 million cubic meters. What was the rate of groundwater depletion in Shanghai that year?
A. 109.78 million cubic meters per year
B. 1,320.41 million cubic meters per year
C. 6.98 million cubic meters per year
D. 82.28 million cubic meters per year

4 How does karst topography form in dry regions?
F. Limestone dissolves, and caves form.
G. Sinkholes form close together.
H. Soluble rock is chemically weathered.
I. Soluble rock is physically weathered.

5 What quality distinguishes an ordinary well from an artesian well?
A. Water flows freely from an ordinary well.
B. Water is pressurized in an ordinary well.
C. Water must be pumped from an ordinary well.
D. Water comes from rainfall in an ordinary well.

***Directions* (6–7): For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 What is a watershed?

7 What is the term for a local lowering of the water table caused by the pumping water from a well?

Reading Skills

***Directions (8–10)*: Read the passage below. Then answer the questions.**

Land Subsidence

Land subsidence is the settling or sinking of earth in response to the movement of materials under its surface. The greatest contributor to land subsidence is aquifer depletion. As groundwater is removed, the surface above may sink. Rocks may settle and pores may close close, which leaves less area for water to be stored. In areas where aquifers are replenished, the surface of Earth may subside and then return almost to its previous level. However, in areas where water is not pumped back into aquifers, subsidence is substantial and whole regions may sink. Human activites can contribute to land subsidence. These activities include the pumping of water, gas, and oil from underground reservoirs and the collapse of mine tunnels.

8 According to the passage, which of the following statements is not true?
A. Land subsidence is the settling or sinking of earth.
B. As groundwater is removed, the earth above may sink.
C. The greatest contributor to land subsidence is aquifer depletion.
D. Rocks settle and pores close, which leaves more area for water to be stored.

9 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
F. Subsidence sinkholes occur most often in rural areas.
G. The majority of all subsidence sinkholes are formed through natural processes
H. Subsidence sinkholes form both naturally and because of the activities of humans.
I. Older sinkholes are easily recovered by refilling the area with water.

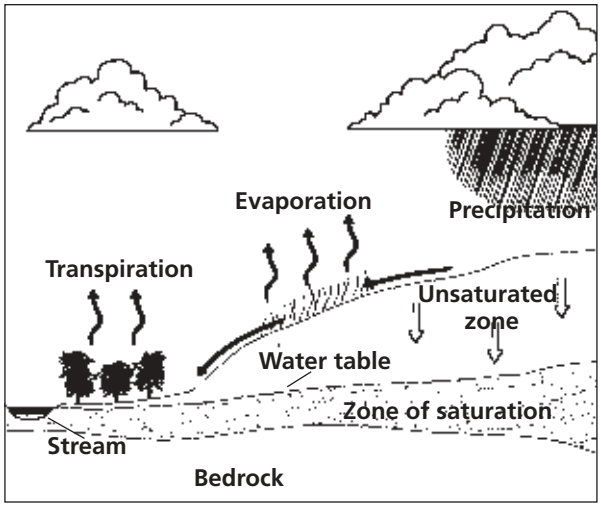
10 Subsidence due to groundwater depletion may occur slowly or very abruptly. Which type of subsidence presents a greater chance for recovery? Why?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–13): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

This graphic shows an example of the water cycle. Use this graphic to answer question 11.

The Water Cycle

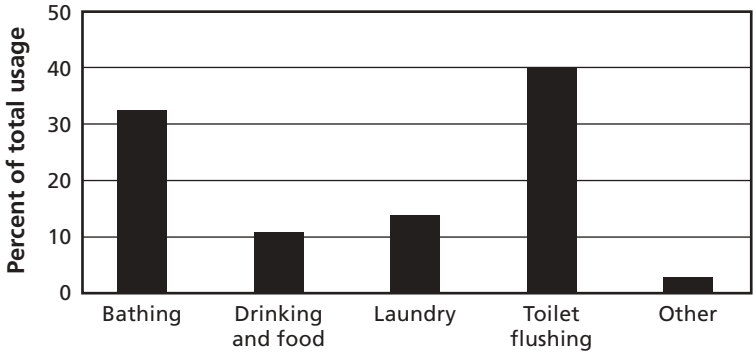


11 Which process occurs where the water table intersects the surface?

A. stream formation
B. runoff
C. groundwater movement
D. saturation

The graph below shows indoor water use for a typical family in the United States. Use this graph to answer questions 12 and 13.

Water Use for a Family of Four



12 According to the graph, what is the largest use of indoor water for a family in the United States? Name some ways that people can reduce the amount of water consumed by this task.

13 What total percentage of household indoor water is consumed by the two largest uses of indoor water? Round your answer to the nearest 10. How could this knowledge be used to help people reduce water usage?

Test TIP

Remember that if you can eliminate two of four answer choices, your chances of choosing the correct answer will double.

Chapter 16

Skills Practice Lab

Porosity

Objectives

- **USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS** **Measure** the porosity of a given volume of beads for each of three samples: large beads, small beads, and a mix of large and small beads.
- **Describe** how particle size and sorting of a material affect porosity.

Materials

beads, plastic, 4 mm (400)
beads, plastic, 8 mm (200)
beaker, 100 mL
graduated cylinder, 100 mL

Safety

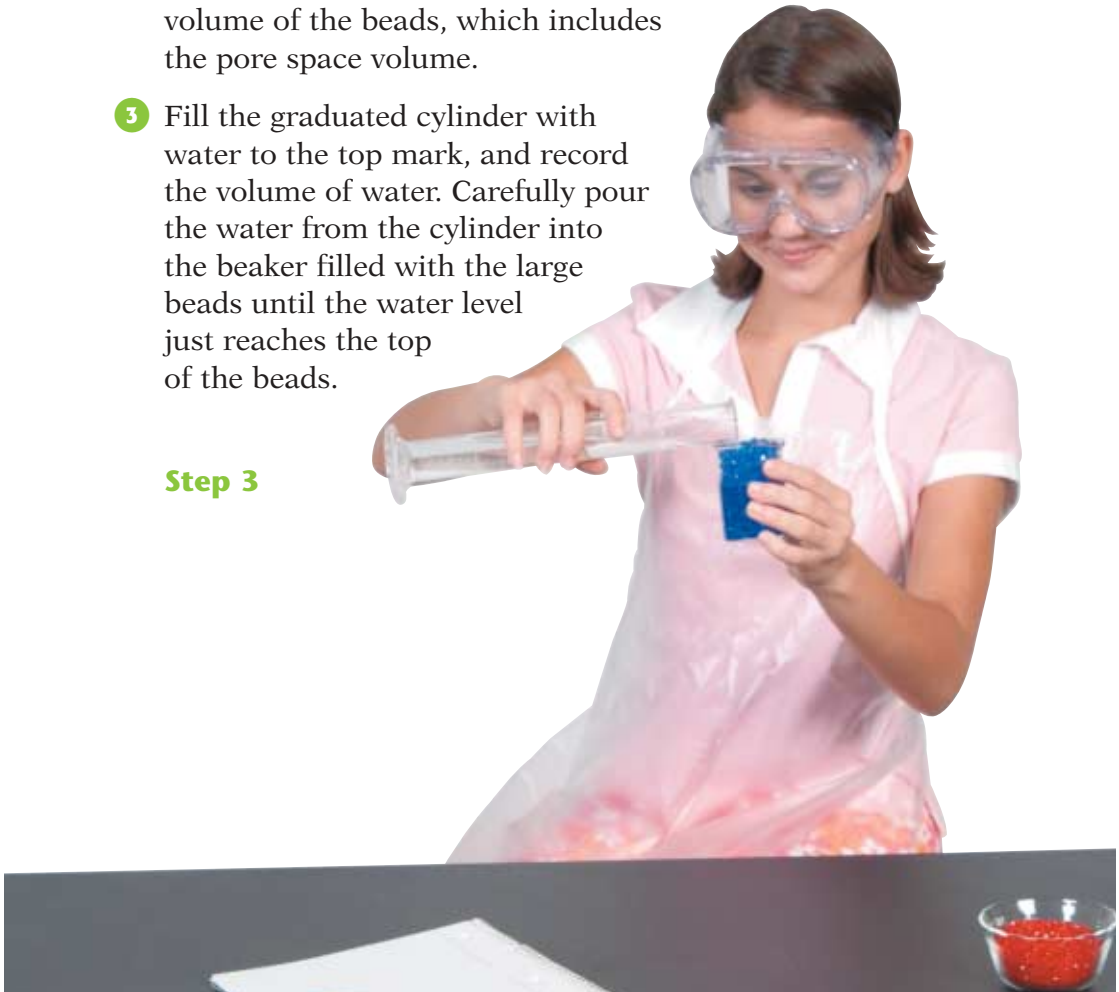
Whether soil is composed of coarse pieces of rock or very fine particles, some pore space remains between the pieces of solid material. Porosity is calculated by dividing the volume of the pore space by the total volume of the soil sample. Thus, if 50 cm^3 of soil contains 5.0 cm^3 of pore space, the porosity of the soil sample is

$$5.0\ cm^3/50\ cm^3 = 0.10 \times 100 = 10\%.$$

The result is generally written as a percentage. In this lab, you will measure and compare the porosity of three samples that represent rock particles.

PROCEDURE

1. Fill a beaker to the top with water. Pour the water into a graduated cylinder and record the volume of water.
2. Dry the beaker, and fill it to the top with large (8 mm) plastic beads. Gently tap the beaker to settle and compact the beads. Add more beads to fill the beaker until the beads are level with the top. Record the total volume of the beads, which includes the pore space volume.
3. Fill the graduated cylinder with water to the top mark, and record the volume of water. Carefully pour the water from the cylinder into the beaker filled with the large beads until the water level just reaches the top of the beads.



Step 3

4. To determine the amount of water that you added to the beaker, subtract the volume of water in the graduated cylinder from the volume that you recorded in step 3. This difference is the volume of the pore space between the beads. Record the volume of the pore space.
5. Calculate the porosity of the beads. Record the porosity as a decimal and as a percentage.
6. Repeat steps 2–5 using small (4 mm) beads.
7. Drain and dry both sets of beads. Mix together equal volumes of the small and large beads. Using the mixed-size beads, repeat steps 2–5.

Step 4

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

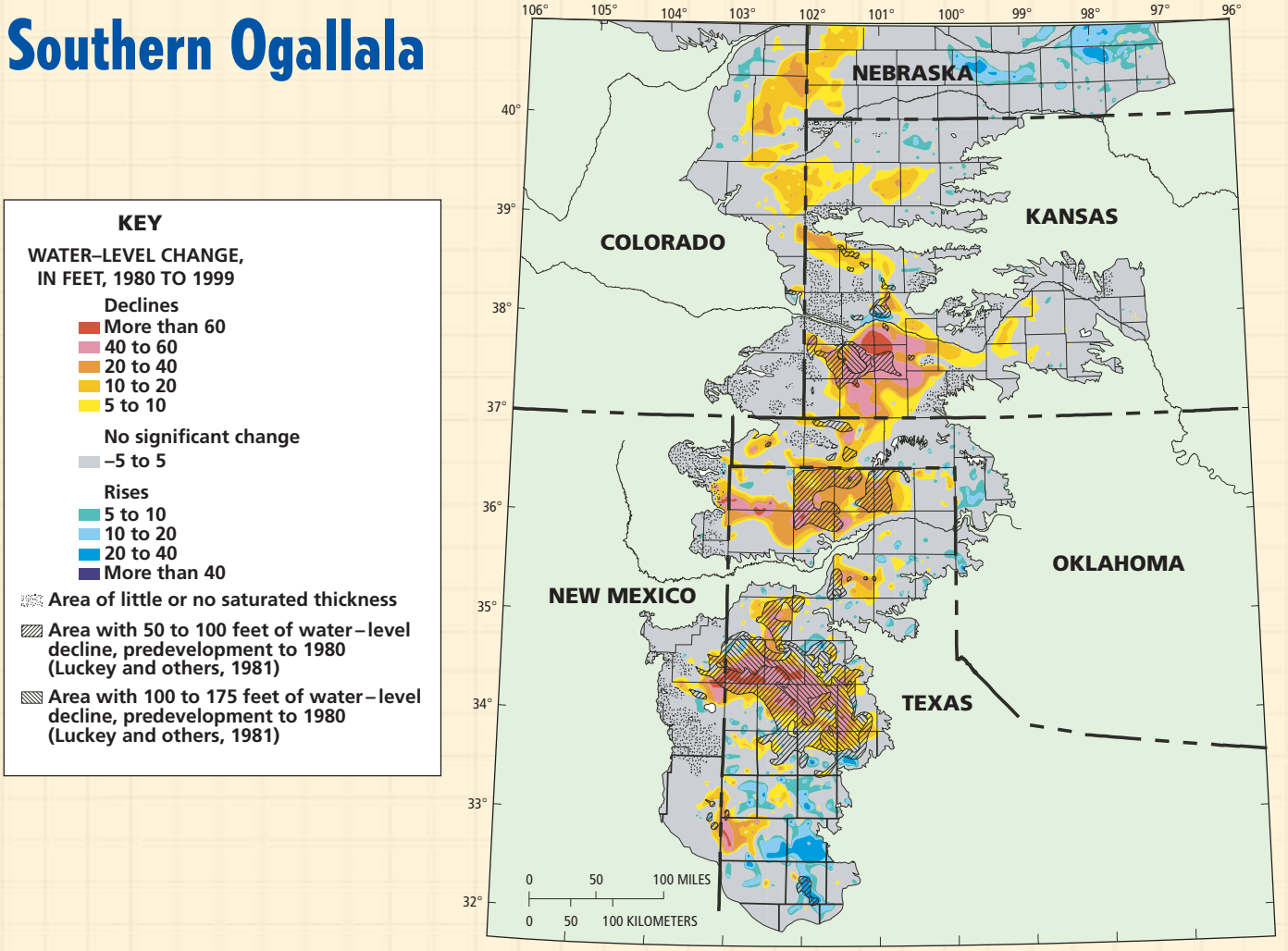
1. **Analyzing Methods** Do the 8 mm beads in step 2 represent well-sorted large rock particles, well-sorted small rock particles, or unsorted rock particles?
2. **Analyzing Methods** Do the 4 mm beads in step 6 represent well-sorted large rock particles, well-sorted small rock particles, or unsorted rock particles?
3. **Analyzing Methods** Do the mixed beads in step 7 represent well-sorted or unsorted rock particles?
4. **Making Graphs** Compare the porosity of the large beads with the porosity of the small beads. Make a graph that shows bead size on the *x*-axis and porosity on the *y*-axis.
5. **Drawing Conclusions** In well-sorted sediment, does porosity depend on particle size? Explain your answer.
6. **Determining Cause and Effect** How did mixing the bead sizes affect the porosity? Explain the effect.

Extension

1. **Designing Experiments** How would mixing coarse gravel with fine sand affect the porosity of the gravel? Conduct an experiment to find out if your answer is correct.

MAPS in Action

Water Level in the Southern Ogallala



Map Skills Activity

This map shows water-level change in regions of the Ogallala Aquifer, which supplies much of the drinking water in the midwestern United States. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using a Key** From predevelopment to 1980, how many areas had a decline in water level of 50 to 100 ft?
2. **Using a Key** From 1980 to 1999, how many areas had a decline in water level of more than 60 ft?
3. **Making Comparisons** Is the area in which the water level declined 50 to 100 ft before 1980 larger than or smaller than the area in which the water level declined more than 60 ft from 1980 to 1999?
4. **Identifying Trends** Has the overall amount of decline in the water-table level increased or decreased since 1980?
5. **Analyzing Relationships** What may have caused the trend that you identified in question 4? What may have changed between 1980 and 1999 that could account for the trend?

Disappearing Land

On May 8, 1981, in Winter Park, Florida, a resident saw a sycamore tree disappear. A sinkhole had swallowed the tree, and that disappearance was only the beginning.

When it first appeared, at about 8:00 P.M., the cone-shaped sinkhole was 13 m wide and 7 m deep. Overnight, the hole expanded to a diameter of 27 m. Before noon the next day, the hole expanded to a size of 300 m in diameter—the size of a football field—and 37 m deep. In the process, it consumed about 160,000 m^3 of ground.

The Winter Park Sinkhole

This destructive sinkhole resulted from a combination of natural processes and human activities. Collapse sinkholes, such as the one in Winter Park, occur when the sediment overlying a cavern collapses into a cavity formed by groundwater. However, the rapid expansion of this sinkhole may have been the result of the collapse of the cavern roof. Such a collapse may have resulted from the removal of too much water from an aquifer that was already depleted after a two-year drought.

The Money Pit

Eventually, the Winter Park sinkhole swallowed up several houses, part of a four-lane highway, a swimming pool, a parking lot, five cars, and a truck. The cost of the damage reached about $2 million. When the sinkhole finally stabilized, the city of Winter Park turned the hole into a municipal lake.

Extension

1. **Applying Ideas** What might Winter Park residents do to prevent the formation of more sinkholes?

▲ Florida's landscape is dotted with small sinkhole lakes.

Chapter 17

Glaciers

Sections

1 Glaciers: Moving Ice
2 Glacial Erosion and Deposition
3 Ice Ages

What You'll Learn

- How glaciers form and move
- What landforms glaciers create
- What factors drive glacial cycles

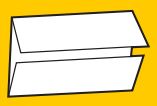
Why It's Relevant

Earth's surface was reshaped by glaciers during the last glacial period. Glaciers provide information about past and present climates and are key indicators of current climatic change.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Double Door Before you read the chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Double Door" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Write "Alpine glaciers" on one flap of the double door and "Continental glaciers" on the other flap. As you read the chapter, write the characteristics of each type of glacier under the appropriate flap.



▶ The brilliant blue color of Alaska's Mendenhall Glacier is characteristic of glacial ice. Ice crystals in the glacier scatter more blue light than any other color, which makes the ice look blue.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

Section 1

Glaciers: Moving Ice

A single snowflake is lighter than a feather. However, if you squeeze a handful of snow, you make a firm snowball. In a process similar to making a snowball, natural forces compact snow to make a large mass of moving ice called a **glacier.**

Formation of Glaciers

At high elevations and in polar regions, snow may remain on the ground all year and form an almost motionless mass of permanent snow and ice called a *snowfield*. Snowfields form as ice and snow accumulate above the snowline. The *snowline* is the elevation above which ice and snow remain throughout the year, as shown in **Figure 1.**

Average temperatures at high elevations and in polar regions are always near or below the freezing point of water. So, snow that falls there accumulates year after year. Cycles of partial melting and refreezing change the snow into grainy ice called *firn*.

In deep layers of snow and firn, the pressure of the overlying layers flattens the ice grains and squeezes the air from between the grains. The continued buildup of snow and firn forms a glacier that moves downslope or outward under its own weight.

The size of a glacier depends on the amount of snowfall received and the amount of ice lost. When new snow is added faster than ice and snow melt, the glacier gets bigger. When the ice melts faster than snow is added, the glacier gets smaller. Small differences in average yearly temperatures and snowfall may upset the balance between snowfall and ice loss. Thus, changes in the size of a glacier may indicate climatic change.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** how glaciers form.
- **Compare** two main kinds of glaciers.
- **Explain** two processes by which glaciers move.
- **Describe** three features of glaciers.

KEY TERMS

glacier
alpine glacier
continental glacier
basal slip
internal plastic flow
crevasse

glacier a large mass of moving ice

Figure 1 ▶ The snowline on the Grand Teton Mountains at Grand Teton National Park, Wyoming, is more than 3000 m above sea level.

Figure 2 ▶ An alpine glacier (above) descends through Thompson Pass in Alaska. A continental glacier (right) covers much of the land surface in Greenland.

alpine glacier a narrow, wedge-shaped mass of ice that forms in a mountainous region and that is confined to a small area by surrounding topography; examples include valley glaciers, cirque glaciers, and piedmont glaciers

continental glacier a massive sheet of ice that may cover millions of square kilometers, that may be thousands of meters thick, and that is not confined by surrounding topography

Types of Glaciers

The two main categories used to classify glaciers are alpine and continental. An **alpine glacier** is a narrow, wedge-shaped mass of ice that forms in a mountainous region and that is confined to a small area by surrounding topography, as shown in **Figure 2.** Alpine glaciers are located in Alaska, the Himalaya Mountains, the Andes, the Alps, and New Zealand.

Continental glaciers are massive sheets of ice that may cover millions of square kilometers, that may be thousands of meters thick, and that are not confined by surrounding topography, as shown in **Figure 2.** Today, continental glaciers, also called *ice sheets*, exist only in Greenland and Antarctica. The Antarctic ice sheet covers an area of more than 13 million km^2 and is more than 4,000 m thick in some places. The Greenland ice sheet covers 1.7 million km^2 of land, and its maximum thickness is more than 3,000 m. If these ice sheets melted, the water they contain would raise the worldwide sea level by more than 80 m.

Reading Check **Where can you find continental glaciers today? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Glaciers
SciLinks code: HQ60675

Movement of Glaciers

Glaciers are sometimes called "rivers of ice." Gravity causes both glaciers and rivers to flow downward. However, glaciers and rivers move in different ways. Unlike water in a river, glacial ice cannot move rapidly or flow easily around barriers. In a year, some glaciers may travel only a few centimeters, while others may move a kilometer or more. Glaciers move by two basic processes—basal slip and internal plastic flow.

Basal Slip

One way that glaciers move is by slipping over a thin layer of water and sediment that lies between the ice and the ground. The weight of the ice in a glacier exerts pressure that lowers the melting point of ice. As a result, the ice melts where the glacier touches the ground. The water mixes with sediment at the base of the glacier. This mixture acts as a lubricant between the ice and the underlying surface. The process that lubricates a glacier's base and causes the glacier to slide forward is called **basal slip.**

Basal slip also allows a glacier to work its way over small barriers in its path by melting and then refreezing. For example, if the ice pushes against a rock barrier, the pressure causes some of the ice to melt. The water from the melted ice travels around the barrier and freezes again as the pressure is removed.

basal slip the process that causes the ice at the base of a glacier to melt and the glacier to slide

internal plastic flow the process by which glaciers flow slowly as grains of ice deform under pressure and slide over each other

Internal Plastic Flow

Glaciers also move by a process called **internal plastic flow.** In this process, pressure deforms grains of ice under a glacier. As the grains deform, they slide over each other and cause the glacier to flow slowly. However, the rate of internal plastic flow varies for different parts of a glacier, as shown in **Figure 3.** The slope of the ground and the thickness and temperature of the ice determine the rate at which ice flows at a given point. The edges of a glacier move more slowly than the center because of friction with underlying rock. For this same reason, a glacier moves more quickly near its surface than near its base.

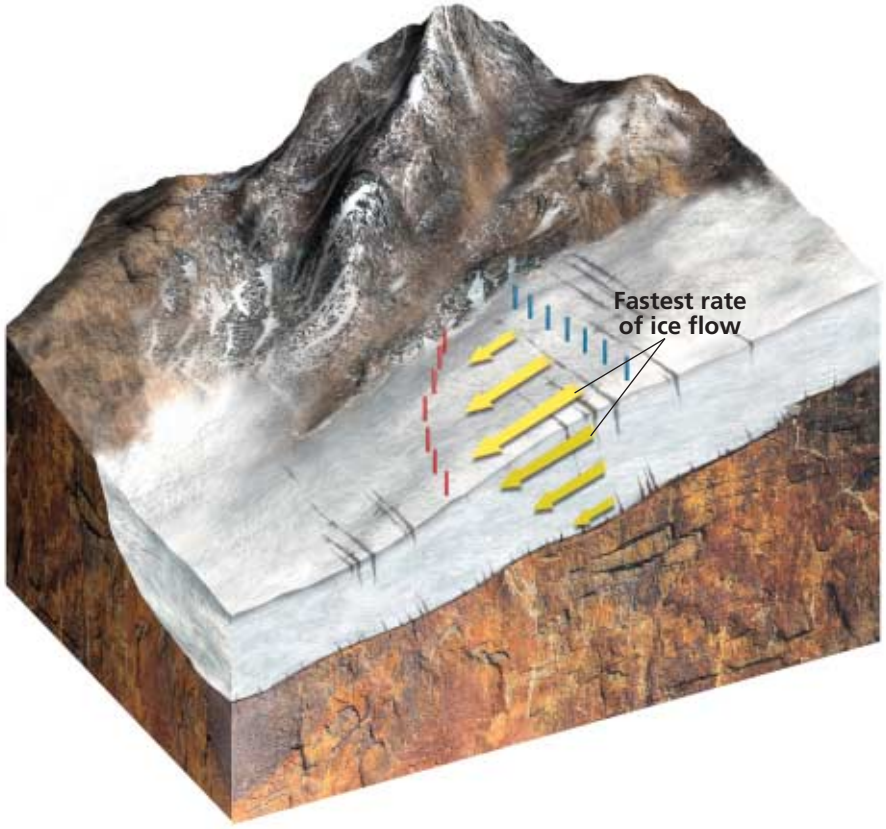


Figure 3 ▶ A line of blue stakes driven into a alpine glacier moves to the position of the red stakes as the glacier flows. This measurement shows that the central part of the glacier moves faster than its edges.

QuickLAB 15 min

Slipping Ice

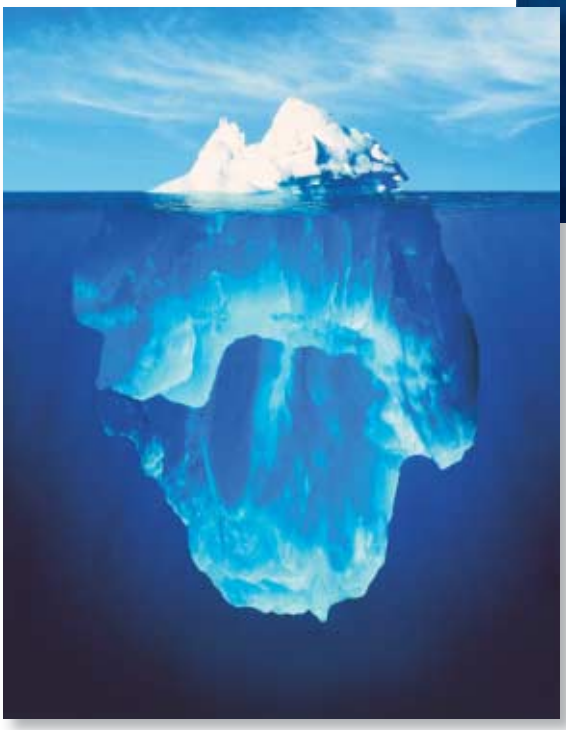
Procedure

1. Squeeze flat a handful of **snow** or **shaved ice** until you notice a change in the particles.
2. Place the squeezed ice on a **tray.** Place a **heavy weight** on the squeezed ice.
3. Lift one end of the tray to a 30° incline, and record your observations.

Analysis

1. What does squeezing do to the particles of snow or ice?
2. How is squeezing the snow or ice similar to the formation of a glacier?
3. What did you observe when you placed the squeezed ice on the tray? What glacial movement process is modeled here?

Figure 4 ▶ Crevasses (right) are large cracks in a glacier. The composite photograph below shows what an iceberg might look like if you could see the entire iceberg.



crevasse in a glacier, a large crack or fissure that results from ice movement

Features of Glaciers

While the interior of a glacier moves by internal plastic flow and the entire glacier moves by basal slip, the low pressure on the surface ice causes the surface ice to remain brittle. The glacier flows unevenly beneath the surface, and regions of tension and compression build under the brittle surface. As a result, large cracks, called **crevasses** (kruh VAS uhz), form on the surface, as shown in **Figure 4.** Some crevasses may be as deep as 50 m!

Continental glaciers move outward in all directions from their centers toward the edges of their landmasses. Some parts of the ice sheets may move out over the ocean and form *ice shelves*. When the tides rise and fall, large blocks of ice, called *icebergs,* may break from the ice shelves and drift into the ocean. Because most of an iceberg is below the surface of the water, as shown in **Figure 4,** icebergs pose a hazard to ships. The area above water of one of the largest icebergs ever observed in the Antarctic was twice the size of Connecticut!

Section 1 Review

1. **Identify** two regions in which snow accumulates year after year.
2. **Describe** the process by which glaciers form.
3. **Compare** an alpine glacier and a continental glacier.
4. **Explain** how internal plastic flow and basal slip move glaciers.
5. **Describe** two features of glaciers.
6. **Compare** a glacier and a snowfield.
7. **Explain** how a crevasse forms.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Making Inferences** If glaciers could move only by internal plastic flow, what might happen to the rate at which glaciers move? Explain your answer.
9. **Identifying Relationships** How can changes in the size of a glacier indicate climate change?
10. **Analyzing Ideas** If icebergs are visible at sea level, why do they pose a hazard to ships?

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *glacier, firn, snowline, snowfield, alpine glacier, continental glacier, basal slip, internal plastic flow, ice shelf, iceberg,* and *crevasse*.

Section 2

Glacial Erosion and Deposition

Many of the landforms in Canada and in the northern United States were created by glaciers. Large lakes, solitary boulders on flat plains, and jagged ridges are just a few examples of landforms created by glaciers. Glaciers created these landforms through the processes of erosion and deposition.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the landscape features that are produced by glacial erosion.
- **Name** and describe five features formed by glacial deposition.
- **Explain** how glacial lakes form.

KEY TERMS

cirque
arête
horn
erratic
glacial drift
till
moraine
kettle
esker

Glacial Erosion

Like rivers, glaciers are agents of erosion. Both a river and a glacier can pick up and carry rock and sediment. However, because of the size and density of glaciers, landforms that result from glacial action are very different from those that rivers form. For example, deep depressions in rock form when a moving glacier loosens and dislodges, or plucks, a rock from the bedrock at the base or side of the glacier. The rock plucked by the glacier is then dragged across the bedrock and causes abrasions. As shown in **Figure 1,** long parallel grooves in the bedrock are left behind and show the direction of the glacier's movement.

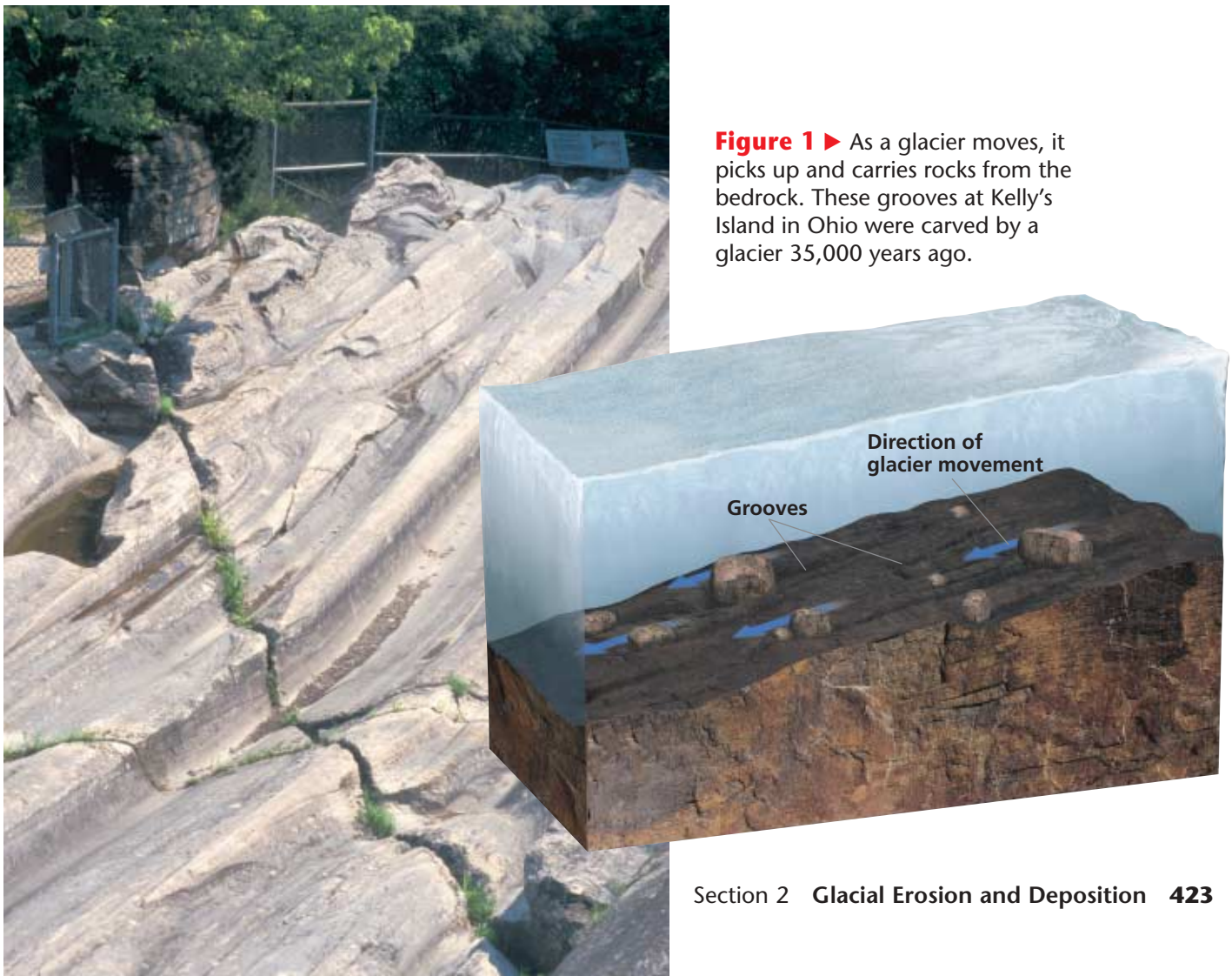


Figure 1 ▶ As a glacier moves, it picks up and carries rocks from the bedrock. These grooves at Kelly's Island in Ohio were carved by a glacier 35,000 years ago.

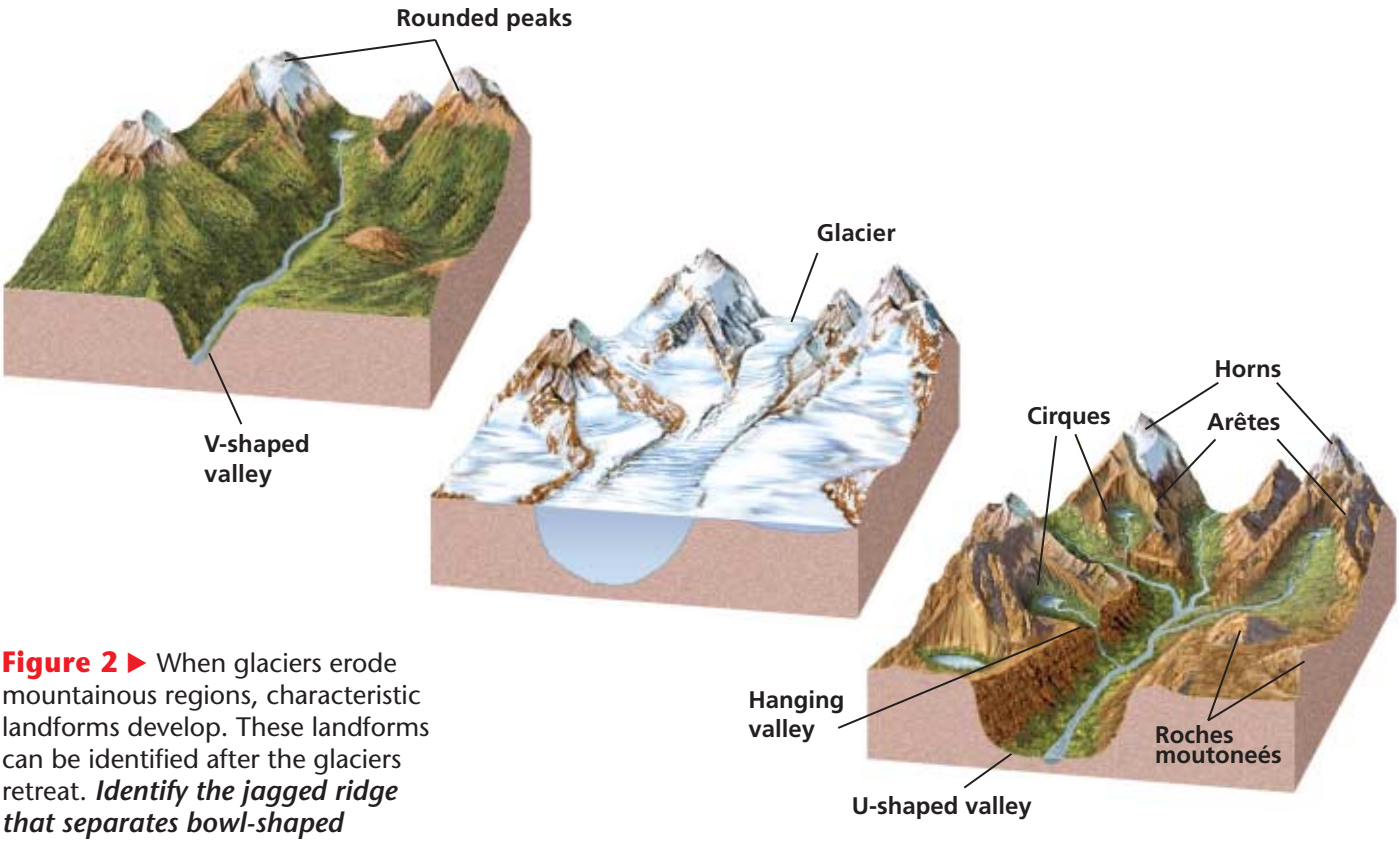


Figure 2 ▶ When glaciers erode mountainous regions, characteristic landforms develop. These landforms can be identified after the glaciers retreat. ***Identify the jagged ridge that separates bowl-shaped depressions.***

Landforms Created by Glacial Erosion

Glaciers have shaped many mountain ranges and have created unique landforms by erosive processes. The glacial processes that change the shape of mountains begin in the upper end of the valley where an alpine glacier forms. As a glacier moves through a narrow, V-shaped river valley, rock from the valley walls breaks off and the walls become steeper. The moving glacier also pulls blocks of rock from the floor of the valley. These actions create a bowl-shaped depression called a **cirque** (SUHRK). A sharp, jagged ridge called an **arête** (uh RAYT) forms between cirques. When several arêtes join, they form a sharp, pyramid-like peak called a **horn,** as shown in **Figure 2.**

cirque a deep and steep bowl-like depression produced by glacial erosion

arête a sharp, jagged ridge that forms between cirques

horn a sharp, pyramid-like peak that forms because of the erosion of cirques

As the glacier flows down through an existing valley, the glacier picks up large amounts of rock. These rock fragments, which range in size from microscopic particles to large boulders, become embedded in the ice.

Rock particles embedded in the ice may polish solid rock as the ice moves over the rock. Large rocks carried by the ice may gouge deep grooves in the bedrock. Glaciers may also round large rock projections. These rounded projections usually have a smooth, gently sloping side facing the direction from which the glacier came. The other side is steep and jagged because rock is pulled away as the ice passes. The resulting rounded knobs of rock are called *roches moutonnées* (ROHSH MOO tuh NAY), which means "sheep rocks" in French.

Reading Check **How does a glacier form a cirque? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

U-Shaped Valleys

A stream forms the V shape of a valley. As a glacier scrapes away a valley's walls and floor, this original V shape becomes a U shape, as shown in **Figure 3.** Because glacial erosion is the only way by which U-shaped valleys form, scientists can use this feature to determine whether a valley has been glaciated in the past.

Small tributary glaciers in adjacent valleys may flow into a main alpine glacier. Because a small tributary glacier has less ice and less cutting power than the main alpine glacier does, the small glacier's U-shaped valley is not cut as deeply into the mountains. When the ice melts, the tributary valley is suspended high above the main valley floor and is called a *hanging valley*. When a stream flows from a hanging valley, a waterfall forms.

Figure 3 ▶ Jollie Valley, a U-shaped glaciated valley, is located in the Southern Alps of New Zealand.

Erosion by Continental Glaciers

The landscape eroded by continental glaciers differs from the sharp, rugged features eroded by alpine glaciers. Continental glaciers erode by leveling landforms to produce a smooth, rounded landscape. Continental glaciers smooth and round exposed rock surfaces in a way similar to the way that bulldozers flatten landscapes. Rock surfaces are also scratched and grooved by rocks carried at the base of the ice sheet. These scratches and grooves are parallel to the direction of glacial movement.

QuickLAB 25 min

Glacial Erosion

Procedure

1. Put a **mixture of sand, gravel,** and **rock** in the bottom of a **15 cm × 10 cm × 5 cm plastic container.** Fill the container with **water** to a depth of about 4 cm. Freeze the container until the water is solid. Remove the **ice block** from the container.
2. Use a **rolling pin** or **large dowel** to flatten some **modeling clay** into a rectangle about 20 cm × 10 cm × 1 cm.
3. Grasp the ice block firmly with a **hand towel.** Place the block with the gravel-and-rock side down at one end of the clay. Press down on the ice block, and push it along the length of the flat clay surface.
4. Sketch the pattern made in the clay by the ice block.
5. Next, press a 2 cm layer of **damp sand** into the bottom of a **shallow, rectangular box.** As in step 3, push the ice block along the surface of the sand, but press down lightly.
6. Repeat steps 3 and 4, but use a **soft, wooden board** in place of the clay.

Analysis

1. Describe the effects of the ice block on the clay, on the sand, and on the wood.
2. Did any clay, sand, or wood become mixed with material from the ice block? Did the ice deposit material on any surface?
3. What glacial land features are represented by the features of the clay model? the sand model? the wood model?

Glacial Deposition

Glaciers are also agents of deposition. Deposition occurs when a glacier melts. A glacier will melt if it reaches low, warm elevations or if the climate becomes warmer. As the glacier melts, it deposits all of the material that it has accumulated, which may range in size from fine sediment to large rocks.

Large rocks that a glacier transports from a distant source are called **erratics.** Because a glacier carries an erratic a long distance, the composition of an erratic usually differs from that of the bedrock over which the erratic lies.

Various other landforms develop as glaciers melt and deposit sediment, as shown in **Figure 4.** The general term for all sediments deposited by a glacier is **glacial drift.** Unsorted glacial drift that is deposited directly from a melting glacier is called the **till.** Till is composed of sediments from the base of the glacier and is commonly left behind when glacial ice melts. Another type of glacial drift is stratified drift. *Stratified drift* is material that has been sorted and deposited in layers by streams flowing from the melted ice, or *meltwater*.

erratic a large rock transported from a distant source by a glacier

glacial drift rock material carried and deposited by glaciers

till unsorted rock material that is deposited directly by a melting glacier

Figure 4 ▶ Moraines, glacial lakes, drumlins, meltwater streams, and outwash plains are some examples of landforms created by glacial deposition.

Till Deposits

Landforms that result when a glacier deposits till are called *moraines*. **Moraines** are ridges of unsorted sediment on the ground or on the glacier itself. There are several types of moraines, as shown in **Figure 4.** A *lateral moraine* is a moraine that is deposited along the sides of an alpine glacier, usually as a long ridge. When two or more alpine glaciers join, their adjacent lateral moraines combine to form a *medial moraine*.

The unsorted material left beneath the glacier when the ice melts is the *ground moraine*. The soil of a ground moraine is commonly very rocky. An ice sheet may mold ground moraine into clusters of drumlins. *Drumlins* are long, low, tear-shaped mounds of till. The long axes of the drumlins are parallel to the direction of glacial movement.

Terminal moraines are small ridges of till that are deposited at the leading edge of a melting glacier. These moraines have many depressions that may contain lakes or ponds. Large terminal moraines, some of which are more than 100 km long, can be seen across the Midwest, especially south of the Great Lakes.

Reading Check **Which glacial deposit is a tear-shaped mound of sediment? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

moraine a landform that is made from unsorted sediments deposited by a glacier

Graphic Organizer **Spider Map**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Spider Map" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the circle "Moraines." Create a leg for each type of moraine. Then, fill in the map with details about each type of moraine.

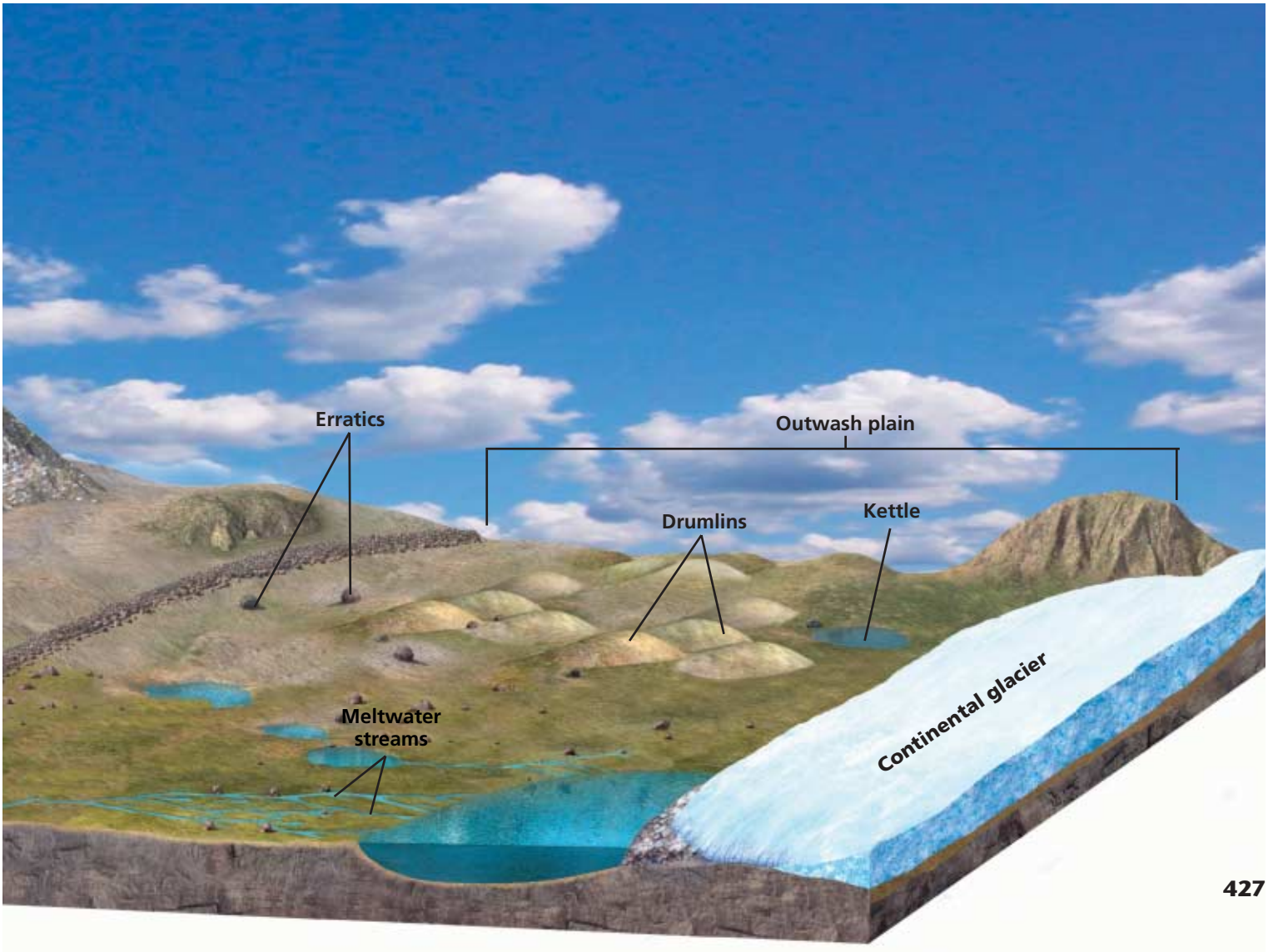


Figure 5 ▶ This kettle lake in Saskatchewan, Canada, formed as a result of glacial deposition.

kettle a bowl-like depression in a glacial drift deposit

esker a long, winding ridge of gravel and coarse sand deposited by glacial meltwater streams

Outwash Plains

When a glacier melts, streams of meltwater flow from the edges, the surface, and beneath the glacier. Glacial meltwater may have beautiful colors, such as milky white, emerald green, or turquoise blue, because it carries very fine sediment. The meltwater carries drift as well as rock particles and deposits them in front of the glacier as a large outwash plain. An *outwash plain* is a deposit of stratified drift that lies in front of a terminal moraine and is crossed by many meltwater streams.

Kettles

Most outwash plains are pitted with depressions called **kettles.** A kettle forms when a chunk of glacial ice is buried in drift. As the ice melts, a cavity forms in the drift. The drift collapses into the cavity and produces a depression. Kettles commonly fill with water to form kettle lakes, such as the one shown in **Figure 5.**

Eskers

When continental glaciers recede, **eskers** (ES kuhrz)—long, winding ridges of gravel and sand—may be left behind. These ridges consist of stratified drift deposited by streams of meltwater that flow through ice tunnels within the glaciers. Eskers may extend for tens of kilometers, like raised, winding roadways.

Reading Check **How do eskers form? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Glaciers and Landforms
SciLinks code: HQ60676

Glacial Lakes

Lake basins commonly form where glaciers erode surfaces and leave depressions in the bedrock. Thousands of lake basins in Canada and the northern United States were gouged from solid rock by a continental glacier. Thousands of other glacial lakes form as a result of deposition rather than as a result of erosion. Many lakes form in the uneven surface of ground moraine deposited by glaciers. These lakes exist in many areas of North America and Europe.

Long, narrow *finger lakes*, such as those in western New York, form where terminal and lateral moraines block existing streams. The area south of the Great Lakes, from Minnesota to Ohio, has belts of moraines and lakes. Minnesota, also called the "Land of 10,000 Lakes," was completely glaciated and has evidence of all types of glacial lakes.

Figure 6 ▶ Many streams and rivers carry dissolved minerals to the Great Salt Lake in Utah. However, because there is no outlet, the lake becomes concentrated with these minerals as continual evaporation removes water.

Formation of Salt Lakes

Many lakes existed during the last glacial advance. But because of topographic and climatic changes, outlet streams no longer leave these lakes. Water leaves the lakes only by evaporation. When the water evaporates, salt that was dissolved in the water is left behind, which makes the water increasingly salty. Salt lakes, such as the one shown in **Figure 6,** commonly form in dry climates, where evaporation is rapid and precipitation is low.

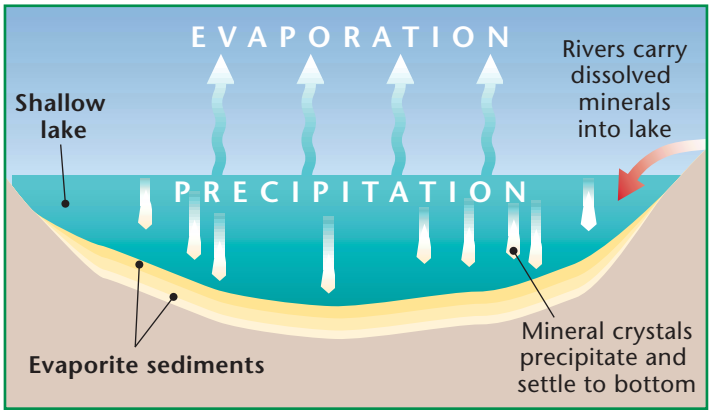
Connection to CHEMISTRY

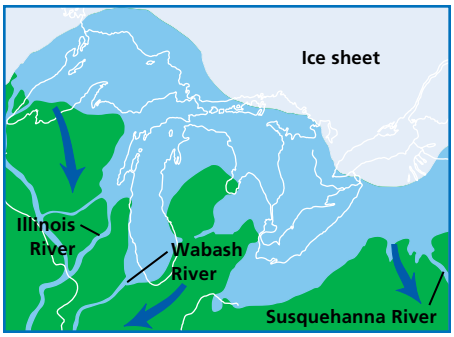
Precipitation of Minerals

Salt lakes form when a high rate of evaporation removes only water from the lake and leaves the dissolved minerals, such as salt, in the lake. Water can dissolve a limited amount of minerals. Therefore, when the concentration of minerals in the lake water becomes too high, the minerals crystallize in a process called *precipitation*. The crystallized minerals then settle to the bottom of the lake.

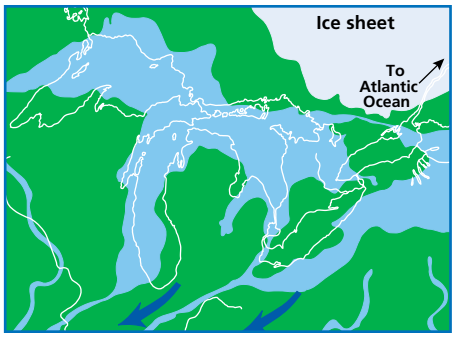
The minerals that precipitate from evaporating water are called *evaporites*. Common evaporite minerals include halite, or salt (NaCl); gypsum ($CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$); calcite ($CaCO_3$); and borax ($Na_2B_4O_7 \cdot 10H_2O$).

When the minerals settle out of the water, the concentration of chemicals in the water changes. This change in concentration causes different minerals to precipitate at different times. The first minerals to precipitate as water evaporates are carbonates, such as calcite. Continued evaporation leads to the formation of gypsum. Finally, salts such as halite begin to form. This process leads to the characteristic sequences of mineral deposits found in natural salt formations.





Early Ice Retreat The ice sheet that covered the northern part of North America formed enormous lakes.



Late Ice Retreat As the ice sheet retreated, the lakes became smaller and the drainage pattern changed.

Today's Great Lakes Uplifting of the land reduced the Great Lakes to their present sizes.

Figure 7 ▶ The Great Lakes in the northern United States were formed by a massive continental glacier.

History of the Great Lakes

The Great Lakes of North America formed as a result of erosion and deposition by a continental glacier, as shown in **Figure 7.** Glacial erosion widened and deepened existing river valleys. Moraines to the south blocked off the ends of these valleys. As the ice sheet melted, the meltwater was trapped in the valleys by the moraines and lakes formed.

In their early stages, the lakes emptied to the south into the Wabash and Illinois Rivers, which flowed into the Mississippi River. Later, the lakes grew larger and also drained into the Atlantic Ocean through the Susquehanna, Mohawk, and Hudson River valleys.

After the glacial period, the crust rose as the weight of the ice was removed. The lake beds uplifted and shrank. The uplift of the land caused the lakes to drain to the northeast through the St. Lawrence River. As a result of this northeasterly flow, Niagara Falls formed between Lake Erie and Lake Ontario.

Section 2 Review

1. **Describe** the following landscape features: a cirque, an arête, and a horn.
2. **List** five features that form by glacial deposition.
3. **Explain** how terminal and lateral moraines can form glacial lakes.
4. **Compare** the process of glacial deposition with the process of glacial erosion.
5. **Describe** how a kettle forms.
6. **Explain** how an alpine glacier can change the topography of a mountainous area.
7. **Compare** the process of erosion by glaciers with the process of erosion by rivers.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Making Comparisons** Compare the processes that form ground moraines with the processes that form eskers.
9. **Analyzing Predictions** On a field trip, you find rock that has long, parallel grooves. Form a hypothesis that explains this feature. What other landforms would you try to find to test this hypothesis?
10. **Making Comparisons** Compare glacial sediment deposited directly by glacial ice with the sediment deposited by glacial meltwater.

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *cirque, stratified drift, roches moutonnées, moraine, till, glacial drift, kettle, outwash plains,* and *glacier.*

Section 3 Ice Ages

Today, continental glaciers are located mainly in latitudes near the North and South Poles. However, thousands of years ago, ice sheets covered much more of Earth's surface. An **ice age** is a long period of climatic cooling during which the continents are glaciated repeatedly. Several major ice ages have occurred during Earth's geologic history, as shown in **Figure 1.** The earliest known ice age began about 800 million years ago. The most recent ice age began about 4 million years ago. The last advance of this ice age's massive ice sheets started to retreat about 15,000 years ago. Ice ages probably begin with a long, slow decrease in Earth's average temperatures. A drop in average global temperature of only about 5°C may be enough to start an ice age.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** glacial and interglacial periods within an ice age.
- **Summarize** the theory that best accounts for the ice ages.

KEY TERMS

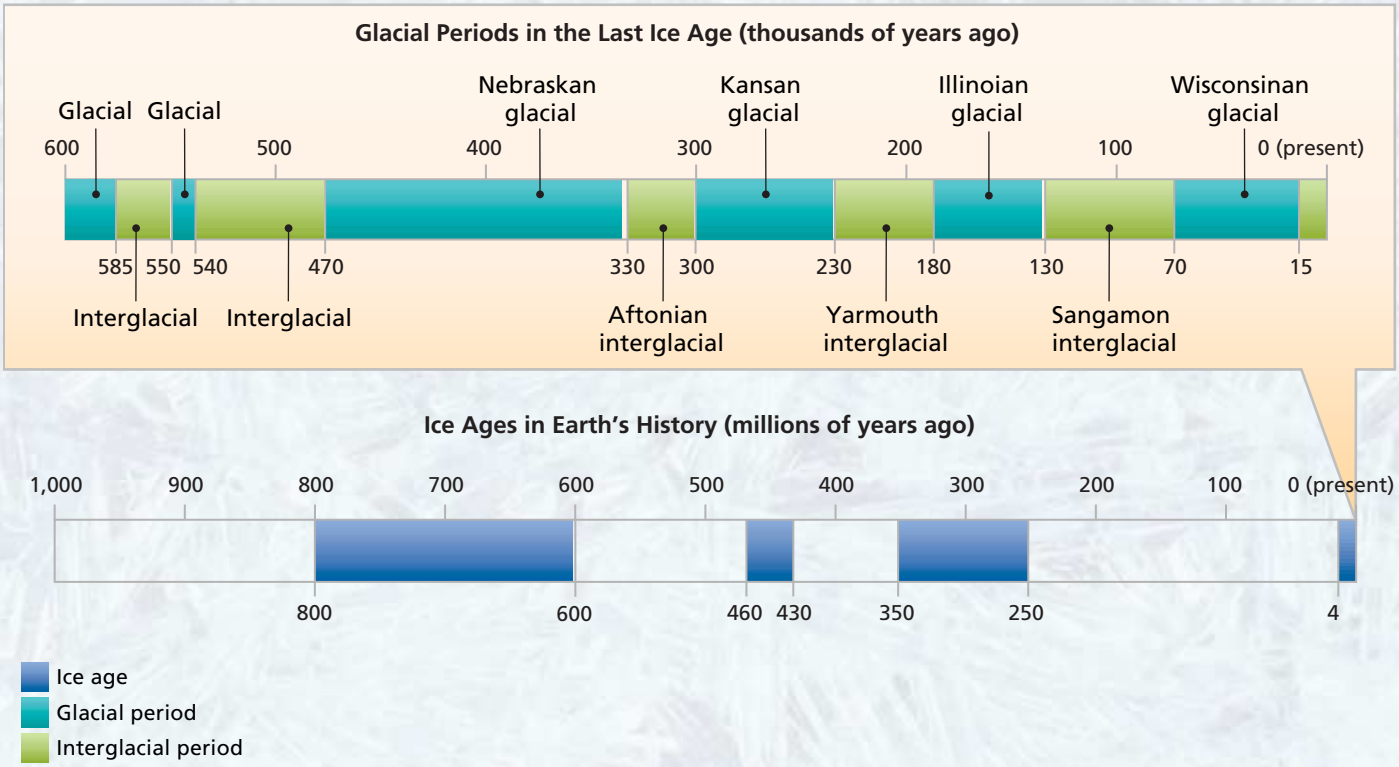
ice age
Milankovitch theory

ice age a long period of climatic cooling during which the continents are glaciated repeatedly

Glacial and Interglacial Periods

Continental glaciers advance and retreat several times during an ice age. The ice sheets advance during colder periods and retreat during warmer periods. A period of cooler climate that is characterized by the advancement of glaciers is called a *glacial period*. A period of warmer climate that is characterized by the retreat of glaciers is called an *interglacial period*. Currently, Earth is in an interglacial period of the most recent ice age.

Figure 1 ▶ Glacial and Interglacial Periods



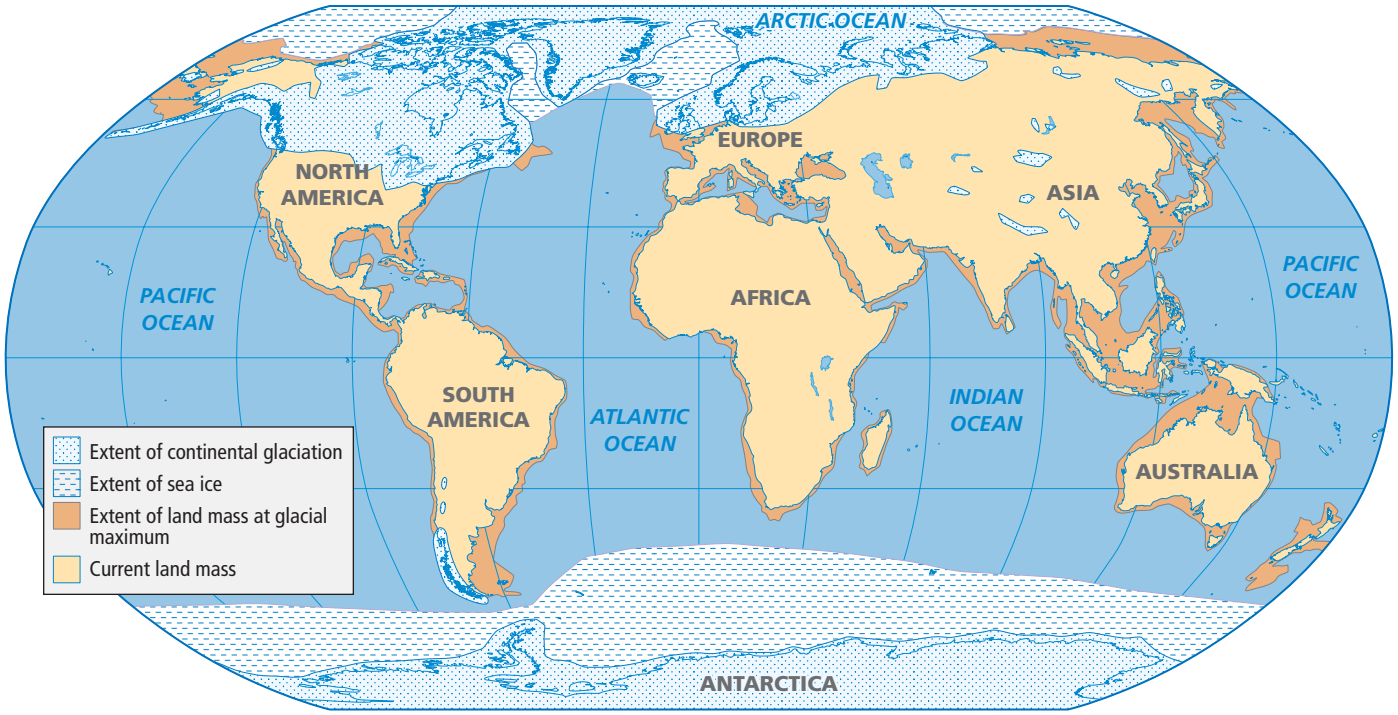


Figure 2 ▶ During the last glacial period, about 30% of Earth's surface was covered with ice.

Glaciation in North America

Glaciers covered about one-third of Earth's surface during the last glacial period. Most glaciation took place in North America and Eurasia. In some parts of North America, the ice was several kilometers thick. So much water was locked in ice during the last glacial period that sea level was as much as 140 m lower than it is today. As a result, the coastlines of the continents extended farther than they do today, as shown in **Figure 2.**

Canada and the mountainous regions of Alaska were buried under ice. In the mountains of the western United States, numerous small alpine glaciers joined to form larger glaciers. These large glaciers flowed outward from the Rocky Mountains and the Cascade and Sierra Nevada Ranges. A great continental ice sheet that was centered on what is now the Hudson Bay region of Canada spread as far south as the Missouri and Ohio Rivers.

Reading Check **How did glaciation in the last glacial period affect the sea level? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Glaciation in Eurasia and the Southern Hemisphere

In Europe, a continental ice sheet that was centered on what is now the Baltic Sea spread south over Germany, Belgium, and the Netherlands and west over Great Britain and Ireland. It flowed eastward over Poland and Russia. Long alpine glaciers formed in the Alps and the Himalayas. A continental ice sheet formed in Siberia. In the Southern Hemisphere, the Andes Mountains in South America and much of New Zealand were covered by mountainous ice fields and alpine glaciers. Many land features that formed during the last glacial period are still recognizable.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Ice Ages
SciLinks code: HQ60781

Causes of Ice Ages

Scientists have proposed a number of theories to explain ice ages. Each theory explains why Earth experienced the gradual cooling that brought on the advancement of the glaciers. The theories also explain why the glaciers retreated during the interglacial periods.

The Milankovitch Theory

A Serbian scientist named Milutin Milankovitch proposed a theory to explain the cause of ice ages. Milankovitch noticed that ice ages occurred in cycles. He thought that these cycles could be linked to cycles in Earth's movement relative to the sun. The **Milankovitch theory** is the theory that cyclical changes in Earth's orbit and in the tilt of Earth's axis occur over thousands of years and cause climatic changes.

Three periodic changes occur in the way that Earth moves around the sun, as **Figure 3** shows. First, the shape of Earth's orbit, or *eccentricity,* changes from nearly circular to elongated and back to nearly circular every 100,000 years. The second change occurs in the tilt of Earth's axis. Every 41,000 years, the tilt of Earth's axis varies between about 22.2° and 24.5°. A third periodic change is caused by the circular motion, or *precession,* of Earth's axis. Precession causes the axis to change its position, which is often described as a wobble. The axis of Earth traces a complete circle every 25,700 years.

Milankovitch calculated how these three factors may affect the distribution of solar energy that reaches Earth's surface. Changes in the distribution of solar energy affects global temperatures, which may cause an ice age.

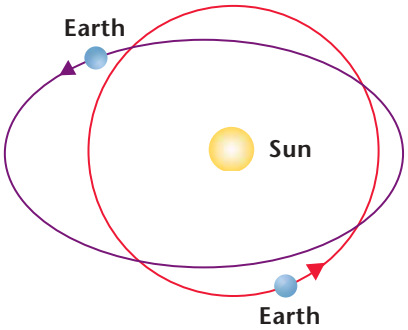
MATHPRACTICE

Earth's Tilt

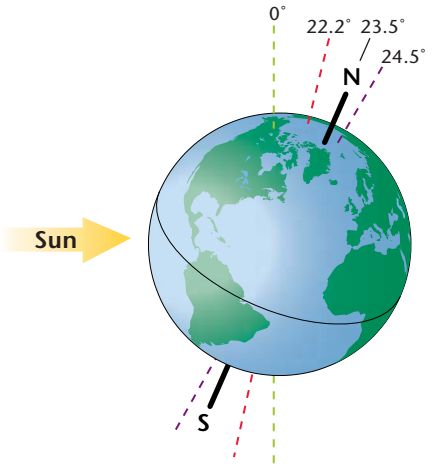
The current angle of Earth's tilt is 23.5°. That angle is decreasing. If the tilt moves from 24.5° to 22.2° over 41,000 years, estimate how many years will pass before Earth's tilt reaches 22.2°.

Milankovitch theory the theory that cyclical changes in Earth's orbit and in the tilt of Earth's axis occur over thousands of years and cause climatic changes

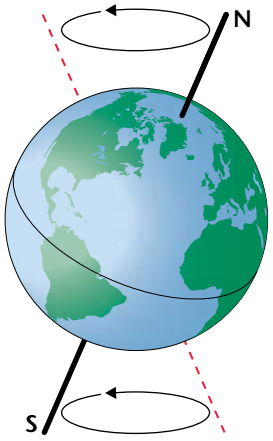
Figure 3 ▶ According to the Milankovitch theory, the distribution of solar radiation that Earth receives varies because of three kinds of changes in Earth's position relative to the sun.



Eccentricity Changes in orbital eccentricity cause an increase in seasonality in one hemisphere and reduce seasonality in the other hemisphere.



Tilt Over a period of 41,000 years, the tilt of Earth's axis varies between 22.2° and 24.5°. The poles receive more solar energy when the tilt angle is greater.



Precession The wobble of Earth's axis affects the amount of solar radiation that reaches different parts of Earth's surface at different times of the year.

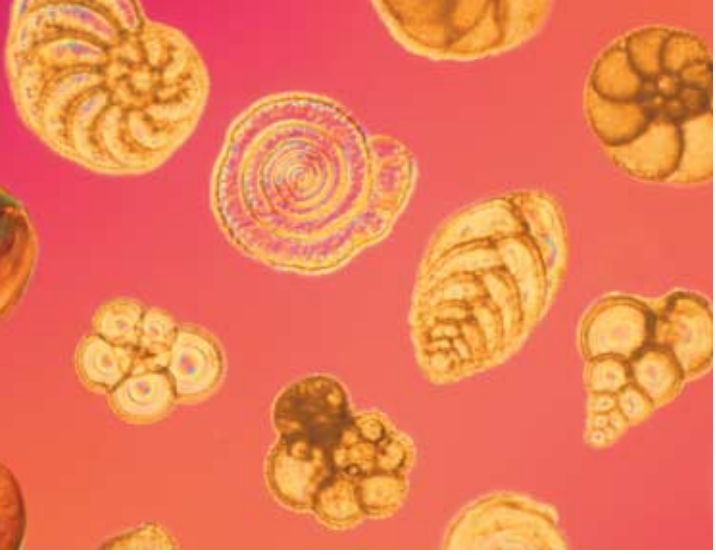


Figure 4 ▶ The microscopic shells of organisms from the order Foraminifera give clues to climate change.

Evidence for Multiple Ice Ages

Evidence for past ice ages has been discovered in the shells of dead marine animals found on the ocean floor. The formation of the shells of organisms from the order Foraminifera, shown in **Figure 4,** is affected by the temperature of the ocean water. Temperature of the ocean water affects the amount of oxygen that the water dissolves. The amount of oxygen in turn affects how these organisms form their shells. Organisms that lived in ocean waters that were warmer than 8°C coiled their shells to the right. Organisms that lived in ocean waters that were much cooler coiled their shells to the left.

By studying Foraminifera shells in the layers of sediment on the ocean floor, scientists have discovered evidence of different ice ages. Scientists have found that the record of ice ages in marine sediments closely follows the cycle of cooling and warming predicted by the Milankovitch theory.

Other Explanations for Ice Ages

Other explanations for the causes of ice ages have been suggested. However, unlike the Milankovitch theory, most of these explanations indicate that the ice ages were caused by a change in the amount of solar energy that reached Earth's surface. Some scientists propose that changes in solar energy are caused by varying amounts of energy produced by the sun. Other scientists suggest that ice ages start when volcanic dust blocks the sun's rays. Yet another explanation proposes that plate tectonics may cause ice ages, because changes in the positions of continents cause changes in global patterns of warm and cold air and ocean circulation.

Section 3 Review

1. **Describe** glacial periods and interglacial periods.
2. **Explain** what happens to global sea level during a glacial period.
3. **Identify** the areas of Earth's surface that were covered by ice during the last glacial period.
4. **Summarize** the Milankovitch theory.
5. **Explain** how fossils of marine animals provide evidence of past ice ages.
6. **Describe** three explanations of ice ages other than the Milankovitch theory.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Evaluating Hypotheses** Use the information that you learned about glacial periods within an ice age to explain why volcanic eruptions and plate tectonics may not be among the causes of ice ages.
8. **Predicting Consequences** If Earth's orbit were always circular, would Earth be more likely to experience ice ages or less likely to experience ice ages? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *ice age, glacial period, interglacial period, Milankovitch theory, eccentricity, tilt, volcanic eruption,* and *precession.*

Chapter 17 Highlights

Sections

1 Glaciers: Moving Ice

Key Terms

glacier, 419
alpine glacier, 420
continental glacier, 420
basal slip, 421
internal plastic flow, 421
crevasse, 422

Key Concepts

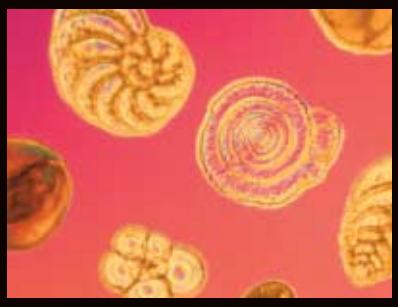
- A glacier is a large mass of moving ice formed by the compaction of snow.
- The two main types of glaciers are alpine glaciers and continental glaciers.
- Glaciers move by basal slip and by internal plastic flow.
- Three features of glaciers are crevasses, ice shelves, and icebergs.

2 Glacial Erosion and Deposition

cirque, 424
arête, 424
horn, 424
erratic, 426
glacial drift, 426
till, 426
moraine, 427
kettle, 428
esker, 428

- Glaciers create land features by eroding the land and by depositing rock and sediment.
- Glaciers erode the valleys through which they flow and produce characteristic landforms such as cirques, arêtes, horns, hanging valleys, and roches moutonneés.
- When glaciers melt, they deposit sediments called *glacial drift*.
- Glacial deposits may form erratics, kettles, eskers, drumlins, and moraines.
- Glaciers may form lake basins by eroding the land or by depositing sediments.

3 Ice Ages



ice age, 431
Milankovitch theory, 433

- An ice age occurs when a long period of climatic cooling causes continental glaciers to cover large areas of Earth's surface.
- During an ice age, cooler glacial periods alternate with warmer interglacial periods.
- The Milankovitch theory suggests that ice ages are caused by changes in the amount of solar energy Earth receives. These changes are caused by regular changes in the eccentricity of Earth's orbit, the tilt of Earth's axis, and precession.
- Variations in solar activity, volcanic activity, and plate tectonics may also affect climate.

Chapter 17 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *glacier*
2. *crevasse*
3. *ice age*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *alpine glacier* and *continental glacier*
5. *till* and *moraine*
6. *basal slip* and *internal plastic flow*
7. *cirque* and *arête*
8. *glacial period* and *interglacial period*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. Glaciers that form in mountainous areas are called
   a. continental glaciers.
   b. alpine glaciers.
   c. icebergs.
   d. ice shelves.

10. A glacier will move by sliding when the base of the ice and the underlying rock are separated by a thin layer of
    a. water and sediment.
    b. snow.
    c. pebbles.
    d. drift.

11. What part of a glacier moves fastest when the glacier moves by internal plastic flow?
    a. The center of the glacier moves fastest.
    b. The bottom of the glacier moves fastest.
    c. The edges of the glacier move fastest.
    d. The whole ice mass moves at the same speed.

12. Icebergs form when ice breaks off of a(n)
    a. crevasse. **c.** alpine glacier.
    b. ice shelf. **d.** esker.

13. As a glacier moves through a valley, it carves out a(n)
    a. U shape. **c.** V shape.
    b. esker. **d.** moraine.

14. A deposit of stratified drift is called a(n)
    a. drumlin.
    b. outwash plain.
    c. ground moraine.
    d. roche moutonnée.

15. One component of the Milankovitch theory is
    a. the circular motion of Earth's axis.
    b. continental drift.
    c. volcanic activity.
    d. landslide activity.

16. Which of the following is *not* a theory for the cause of ice ages?
    a. volcanic eruptions
    b. variations in Earth's orbit
    c. Foraminifera shell coils
    d. changes in tectonic plate position

Short Answer

17. How does climate change during an ice age?

18. What are the four types of moraines, and how are they different from each other?

19. Identify three types of landforms created by alpine glaciers.

20. In what two ways do glacial lakes form?

21. How do the processes of basal slip and internal plastic flow differ?

Critical Thinking

22. Identifying Relationships Why is it important for scientists to monitor and study the continental ice sheets that cover Greenland and Antarctica?

23. Applying Concepts Antarctic explorers need special training to travel safely over the ice sheet. Besides the cold, what structural aspects of the glaciers may be dangerous?

24. Evaluating Data What phenomenon other than decreased temperature and increased snowfall might signal the beginning of a glacial period?

Concept Mapping

25. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *snowfield, erosion, deposition, glacier, horn, arête, kettle, moraine, basal slip,* and *internal plastic flow.*

Math Skills

26. Using Equations The area of Earth's surface that is covered with water is 361,000,000 km^2. The volume of water locked in ice in the Antarctic ice sheet is about 26,384,368 km^3. Use the following equation to find the average worldwide rise in sea level, in meters, that would occur if the Antarctic ice sheet melted.

$$\text{rise in water level} = \frac{\text{volume of water in ice sheet}}{\text{area of Earth covered by water}}$$

27. Evaluating Data New York City has an elevation of 27 m above sea level. What would happen to the city if the Antarctic ice sheet melted and raised the worldwide sea level by 50 m?

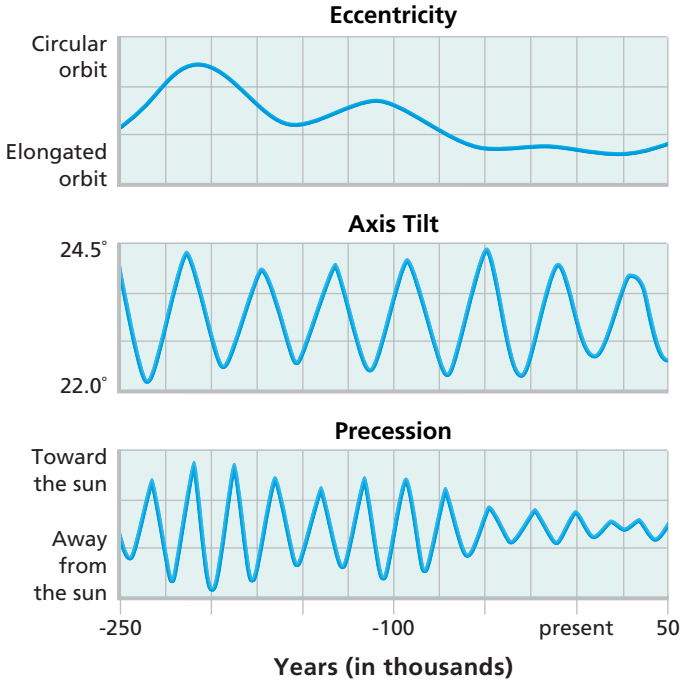
Writing Skills

28. Writing Persuasively Write a research proposal to the National Science Foundation that details a plan of action and reasons for studying the ice sheet in Greenland.

29. Writing from Research Research how ocean currents affect the polar icecaps. Write a short essay that describes global ocean currents and explains how they affect the formation and advancement of polar icecaps.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows the relationship between cycles of eccentricity, tilt, and precession. Use the graph to answer the questions that follow.



30. What was the angle of Earth's tilt 50,000 years ago?

31. Describe the shape of Earth's orbit 200,000 years ago.

32. How would the seasons 50,000 years from now be different from the seasons 50,000 years ago?

Chapter 17 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–4): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 Which statement *best* compares the movement of glacial ice to the movement of river water?
- **A** Glacial ice moves more rapidly than water.
- **B.** Glacial ice cannot easily flow around barriers.
- **C.** Glacial ice moves in response to gravity.
- **D.** Glacial ice moves in the same way as water.

2 What landform created by glaciers has a bowl-like shape?
- **F.** cirque
- **G.** arête
- **H.** horn
- **I.** roches moutonnée

3 What is the unsorted material left beneath a glacier when the ice melts?
- **A.** lateral moraine
- **B.** ground moraine
- **C.** medial moraine
- **D.** terminal moraine

4 Which of the following statements *best* describes how crevasses form on the surface of a glacier?
- **F.** Movement of the glacier's ice from the center toward the edges forms large cracks on the surface of the glacier.
- **G.** As the ice flows unevenly beneath the surface of the glacier, tension and compression on the surface form large cracks.
- **H.** Breakage of large blocks of ice from the edges of ice shelves forms large cracks.
- **I.** Narrow, wedge-shaped masses of ice confined to a small area form large cracks.

Directions (5–6): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

5 What is the term for all types of sediments deposited by a glacier?

6 What is the name of a jagged ridge that is formed between two or more cirques that cut into the same mountain?

Reading Skills

Directions (7–9): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Glacial and Interglacial Periods

Ice ages are periods during which ice collects in high latitudes and moves toward lower latitudes. During an ice age, there are periods of cold and of warmth. These periods are called *glacial and interglacial periods*. During glacial periods, enormous sheets of ice advance, grow bigger, and cover a large area. Because a large amount of sea water is frozen during glacial periods, the sea level around the world drops.

Warmer time periods that occur between glacial periods are known as interglacial periods. During an interglacial period, the large ice sheets begin to melt and the sea levels begin to rise again. Scientists believe that the last interglacial period began approximately 10,000 years ago and is still happening. For nearly 200 years, scientists have been debating what the current interglacial period might mean for humans and the possibility of a future glacial period.

7 According to the passage, which of the following statements is true?
- **A.** The last interglacial period began approximately 1,000 years ago.
- **B.** Scientists have been thinking about the next glacial period for two centuries.
- **C.** Ice ages are periods during which ice collects in the lower latitudes and moves toward higher latitudes.
- **D.** During glacial periods, enormous sheets of ice tend to melt, so they become smaller and cover less area.

8 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
- **F.** On average, ice ages occur every 50,000 years and always start with a glacial period.
- **G.** Interglacial periods always last 10,000 years.
- **H.** Glacial periods always last 10,000 years.
- **I.** The current interglacial period will likely be followed by a glacial period.

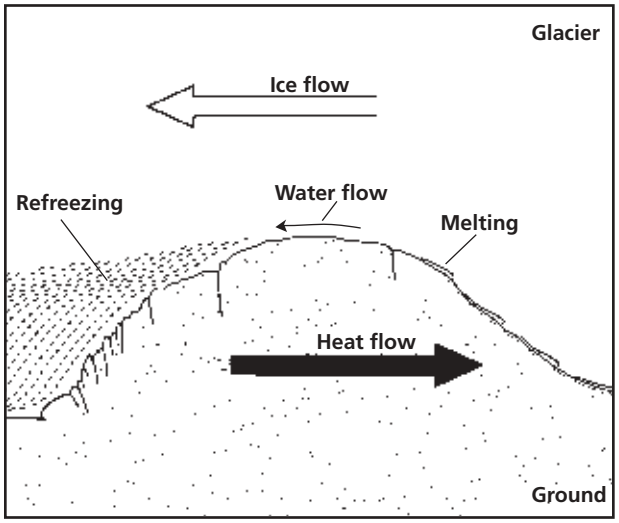
9 If a new glacial period began tomorrow, what might happen to coastal cities

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (10–13): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

Base your answers to questions 10 through 11 on the diagram below.

Basal Slip



10 What causes the ice to melt in the diagram above?
A. Pressure decreases the melting point of the ice.
B. Pressure increases the melting point of the ice.
C. The ground heats the ice until it melts.
D. Ice at the base of a glacier does not melt.

11 How does meltwater influence basal slip?

Base your answers to question 12 on the table below.

World Cities and Their Elevations

City	Elevation (m)
New York City	27
Kiev, Ukraine	168
Buenos Aries, Argentina	25
Amsterdam, Netherlands	2

12 What would happen to each of the cities listed in the table if the Antarctic ice sheet were to melt and raise the sea level by 50 m?

13 The movement of a glacier was recorded over a period of 180 days. During that time, the glacier moved a total of 36 m. What was the average speed of the glacier each day?
F. 0.20 m/day
G. 0.50 m/day
H. 2.00 m/day
I. 5.00 m/day

Test TIP

For a group of questions that refer to a diagram, graph, or table, read all of the questions quickly to determine what information you will need to glean from the graphic.

Chapter 17

Making Models Lab

Objectives

- **Model** the melting of an ice sheet.
- **USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS** **Analyze** the effects of melting ice on sea level.

Materials

block, ice, 5 cm × 5 cm × 5 cm
block, wooden, 5 cm × 5 cm × 5 cm
pan, 30 cm × 40 cm × 10 cm
pebbles (1 kg)
ruler, metric
sand (1 kg)
water

Safety

Glaciers and Sea Level Change

Today, glaciers hold only about 2.2% of Earth's water. But if the polar ice sheets melted, the coastal areas of many countries would flood. Many major cities, such as New York, New Orleans, Houston, and Los Angeles, would flood if the sea level rose only a few meters. In this lab, you will construct a model to simulate what would happen if the Antarctic ice sheet melted.

PROCEDURE

1. Calculate and record the approximate surface area of the bottom of the pan. Area (A) is equal to length (l) times width (w), or $A = l \times w$, and is expressed in square units.
2. Calculate and record the overall volume of the ice block and the area of one side of the ice block. Volume (V) is equal to length (l) times width (w) times height (h), or $V = l \times w \times h$, and is expressed in cubic units.
3. Add the sand and small pebbles to one end of the pan so that they cover about half of the area of the pan and slope toward the middle of the pan. Use the wooden block to elevate the end of the pan containing the sand and pebbles.
4. Slowly add water to the opposite end of the pan. Be sure that the water does not cover the sand and pebbles and touches only the edge of the sand.

Step 3

5. Measure and record the depth of the water at the deepest point.
6. Measure and record the distance from the end of the pan covered with sand to the point where the sand touches the water.
7. Place the block of ice in the pan on top of the sand. Calculate and record the percentage of the total area of the pan that is covered by ice.
8. As the ice begins to melt, pick up the ice block. Note the appearance of the bottom of the ice block and the appearance of the sand under the ice block. Record what is happening to the ice block and what is happening to the sand under the ice block. Place the ice block back on the sand.
9. While the ice is melting, calculate the expected rise in the pan's water level by using the following formula:

$$\text{rise in water level} = \frac{\text{volume of water in ice block}}{\text{area of pan covered by water}}$$

10. When the ice is completely melted, measure and record the depth of water at the deepest point.
11. Measure and record the distance from the end of the pan covered with sand to the point where the sand touches the water.

Step 4

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

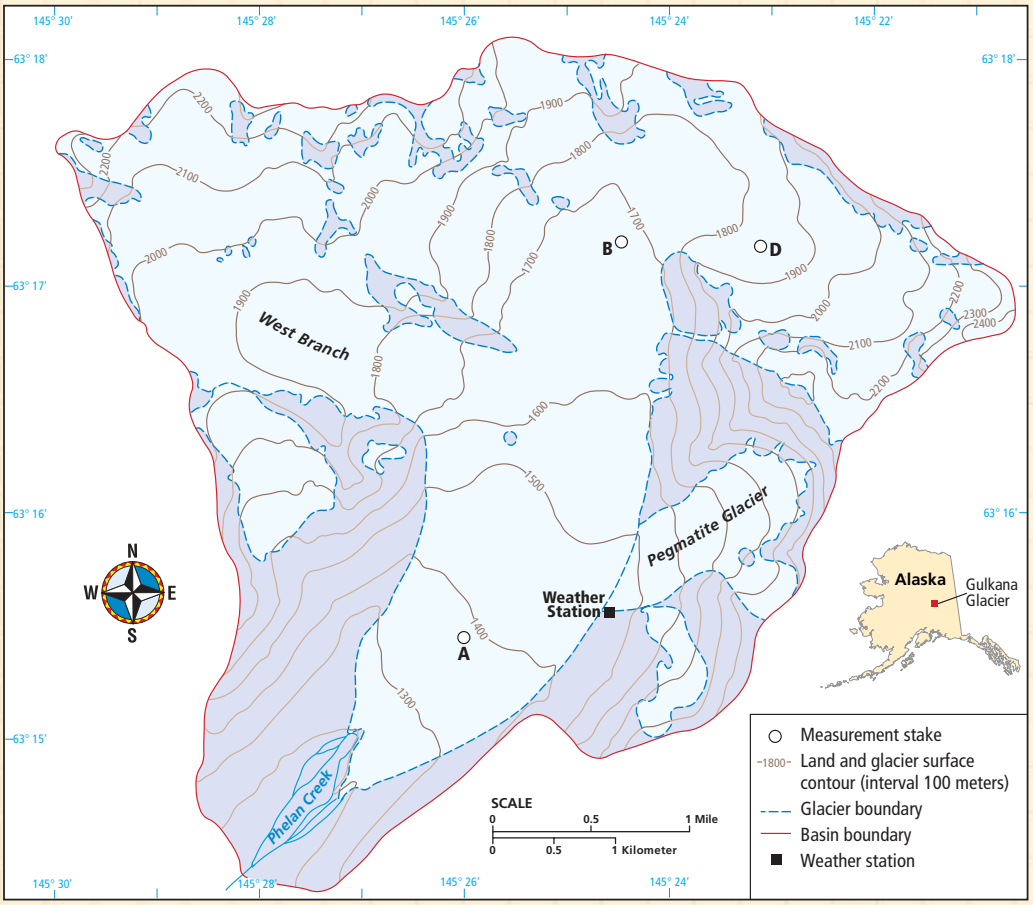
1. **Making Comparisons** Compare the depth of water at the beginning of the lab with the depth at the end of the lab. Explain any differences.
2. **Analyzing Results** How did the distance from the end of the pan covered with sand to the point where the sand touches the water change? Explain your answer.
3. **Compare and Contrast** How does the ice-block model differ from a glacier on Earth?
4. **Drawing Conclusions** How does the ice-block model represent what would happen on Earth if the Antarctic polar ice sheet melted?

Extension

1. **Evaluating Models** In this lab, you used a physical model to simulate an occurrence in nature. In what other ways do scientists use models? What kinds of errors can occur when models are used?

MAPS in Action

Gulkana Glacier



Map Skills Activity

This contour map shows the elevation and boundaries of the Gulkana Glacier located in Alaska. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using the Key** Estimate the length of the Gulkana Glacier from its northernmost point to its southernmost point.
2. **Analyzing Data** Estimate the latitude and longitude of the glacier's highest point.
3. **Identifying Trends** In which direction do you think Gulkana Glacier is moving at measurement stake D?
4. **Identifying Trends** In which direction do you think Gulkana Glacier is moving at measurement stake A?
5. **Predicting Consequences** Why might you think that the glacier moves in different directions at measurement stake A and measurement stake B?
6. **Analyzing Data** What do you think the scientists are measuring at the measurement stakes?

The Missoula Floods

In an area called the Channeled Scablands in Washington State, scientists discovered numerous gravel bars and ridges that are roughly parallel to each other. The ridges are 10 m high, extend about 115 m from crest to crest, and can be more than 3 km long. The scientists were puzzled and set out to determine how the ridges formed.

Mystery Ripples

After extensive research and some aerial photography, scientists realized that the gravel ridges are giant ripple marks that formed as a huge amount of water poured across the land. Scientists had observed similar ripples created by the movement of flowing water in rivers and on beaches, but no one had ever seen ripples of this size!

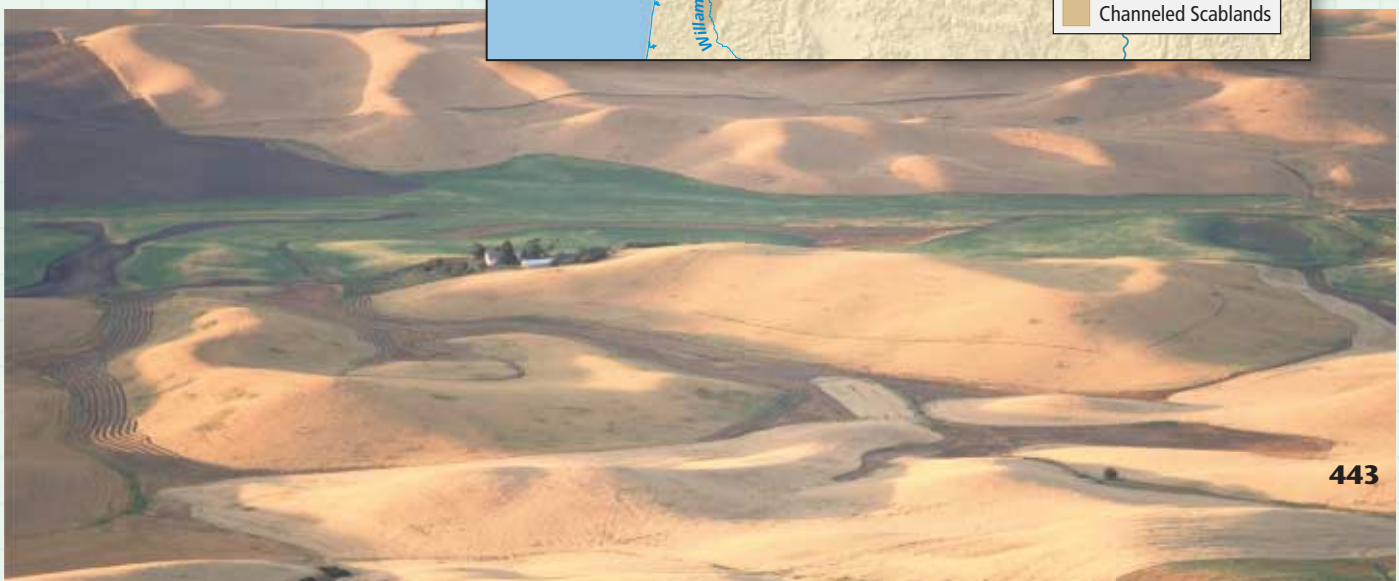
Catastrophic Floods

What caused such enormous ripples? During the last glacial period, a series of ice dams formed across the Clark Fork River, and a giant glacial lake—Lake Missoula—periodically formed. This lake was as big as Lake Erie and Lake Ontario combined! About 14,000 years ago, the last ice dam broke, and a wave 650 m tall raced across eastern Washington at a speed of about 90 km/h. The wave left huge piles of gravel and ripple marks in its wake. Scientists estimate that the water rushed through the region as fast as 400 million cubic feet per second and emptied the entire lake in only two days.

Extension

1. **Research and Communications** Research the type of sediment that makes up the gravel ridges in the Channeled Scablands. Write a brief essay that explains whether the type of sediment in the gravel ridges supports the hypothesis of a giant flood.

▼ The Channeled Scablands formed when an ice dam broke 14,000 years ago.



Chapter 18

Erosion by Wind and Waves

Sections

1 Wind Erosion

2 Wave Erosion

3 Coastal Erosion and Deposition

What You'll Learn

- How wind erodes the land
- How waves erode shorelines
- How coastlines change

Why It's Relevant

Wind and wave erosion change features of Earth's surface. Soil that is needed for farming is carried away by wind. Wave action affects beaches and coasts, which have high economic and recreational value.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Pyramid Before you read the chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Pyramid" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the sides of the pyramid with "Wind erosion," "Wave erosion," and "Coastal erosion and deposition." As you read the chapter, define each type of erosion, and write characteristics of each type on the appropriate pyramid side.

▶ This unusual rock sits on Kangaroo Island, which is located off the southern shore of Australia. This rock, like many other rocks, has been shaped by the forces of the wind and the waves.

Section 1 Wind Erosion

Wind contains energy. Some of this energy can move a sailboat or turn a wind turbine, but this energy can also erode the land. As wind passes over the land, the wind can carry sand or dust. Sand is loose fragments of weathered rocks and minerals. Most grains of sand are made of quartz. Other common minerals that make up sand are mica, feldspar, and magnetite.

Dust consists of particles that are smaller than the smallest sand grain. Most dust particles are microscopic fragments of rocks and minerals that come from the soil or volcanic eruptions. Other sources of dust are plants, animals, bacteria, pollution from the burning of fuels, and certain manufacturing processes.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** two ways that wind erodes land.
- **Compare** the two types of wind deposits.

KEY TERMS

saltation
deflation
ventifact
dune
loess

How Wind Moves Sand and Dust

Wind cannot keep sand aloft. Instead, sand grains are moved by a series of jumps and bounces called **saltation.** Saltation occurs when wind speed is high enough to roll sand along the ground. When rolling sand grains collide, some sand grains bounce up, as shown in **Figure 1.** Once in the air, a sand grain moves ahead a short distance and then falls. As a sand grain falls, it strikes other sand grains. Saltating sand grains move in the same direction that the wind blows. However, the grains rarely rise more than 1 m above the ground, even in very strong winds.

saltation the movement of sand or other sediments by short jumps and bounces that is caused by wind or water

Because dust particles are very small and light, even gentle air currents can keep dust particles suspended in the air. Dust from volcanic eruptions can remain in the atmosphere for several years. Strong winds may lift large amounts of dust and create dust storms, such as the one shown in **Figure 1.** Some dust storms cover hundreds of square kilometers and darken the sky for several days.

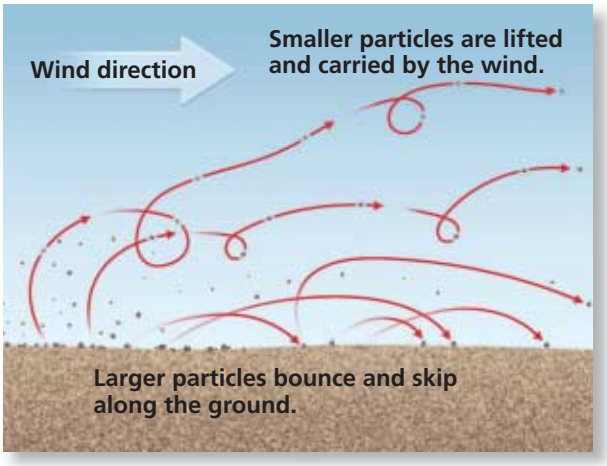
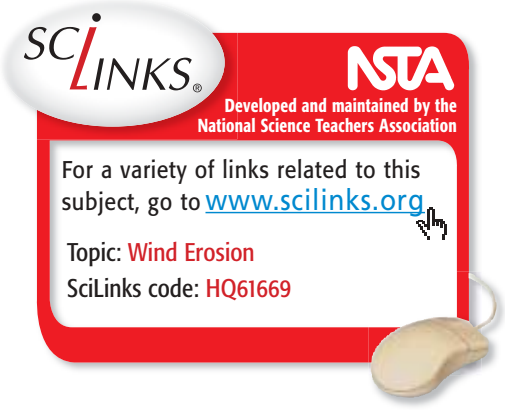


Figure 1 ▶ Heavy sand grains move by making low, arcing jumps when blown by the wind (above). Dust is light enough to be aloft for days, as shown in this dust storm in Phoenix, Arizona (left).

Figure 2 ▶ Desert pavement, such as the example above from Calico Hills, California, prevents erosion of the material beneath it.



Effects of Wind Erosion

While wind erosion happens everywhere there is wind, the landscapes that are most dramatically shaped by wind erosion are deserts and coastlines. In these areas, fewer plant roots anchor soil and sand in place to reduce the amount of wind erosion. Also, in the desert, where there is little moisture, soil layers are thin and are likely to be swept away by the wind. Moisture makes soil heavy and causes some soil and rock particles to stick together, which makes them difficult to move.

Reading Check **Why does wind erosion happen faster in dry climates than in moist climates? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

deflation a form of wind erosion in which fine, dry soil particles are blown away

Desert Pavement

One common form of wind erosion is deflation. **Deflation** is the process by which wind removes the top layer of fine, very dry soil or rock particles and leaves behind large rock particles. These remaining rock particles often form a surface of closely packed small rocks called *desert pavement,* or *stone pavement*, as shown in **Figure 2.** Desert pavement protects the underlying land from erosion by forming a protective barrier over underlying soil.

Deflation Hollows

Deflation is a serious problem for farmers because it blows away the best soil for growing crops. Deflation may form shallow depressions in areas where the natural plant cover has been removed. As the wind strips off the topsoil, a shallow depression called a *deflation hollow* forms. A deflation hollow may expand to a width of several kilometers and to a depth of 5 to 20 m.

Ventifacts

When pebbles and small stones in deserts and on beaches are exposed to wind abrasion, the surfaces of the rocks become flattened and polished on two or three sides. Rocks that have been pitted or smoothed by wind abrasion are called **ventifacts.** The word *ventifact* comes from the Latin word *ventus,* which means "wind." The direction of the prevailing wind in an area can be determined by the appearance of ventifacts.

Scientists once thought that large rock structures, such as desert basins, natural bridges, rock pinnacles, and rocks perched on pedestals, were formed by wind erosion. However, scientists now think that it is more likely that such large features were produced by erosion due to surface water and weathering. Erosion of large masses of rock by wind-blown sand happens very slowly and happens only close to the ground, where saltation occurs.

ventifact any rock that is pitted, grooved, or polished by wind abrasion

dune a mound of wind-deposited sand that moves as a result of the action of wind

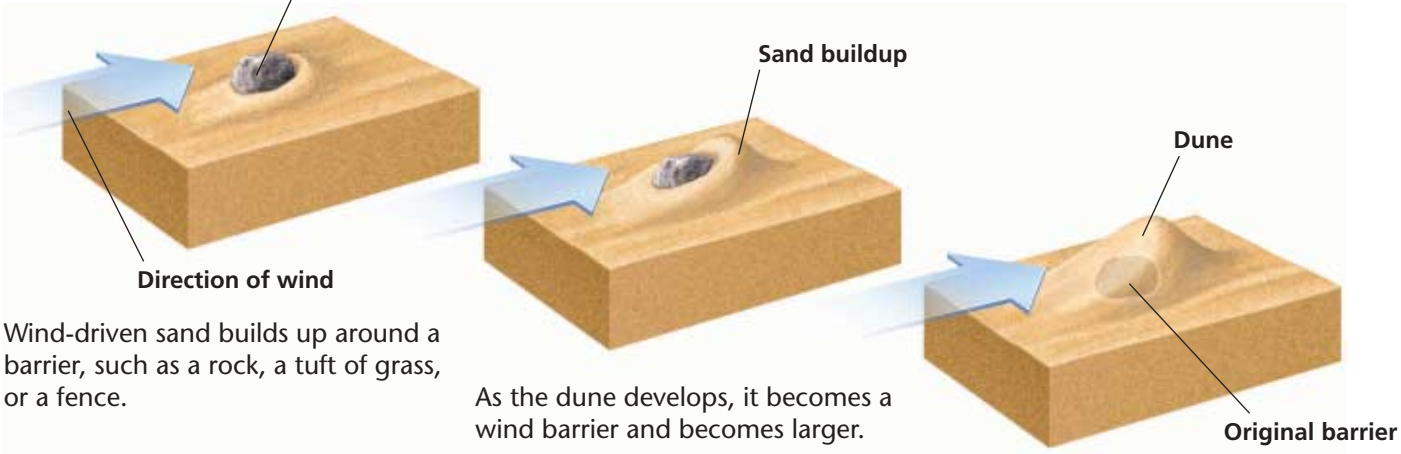
Wind Deposition

The wind drops particles when it slows down and can no longer carry them. These deposited particles are continually covered by additional deposits. Eventually, cementation and pressure from overlying layers bind the fragments together. This process is one way that sedimentary rocks form.

Dunes

The best-known wind deposits are **dunes,** which are mounds of wind-deposited sand. Dunes form where the soil is dry and unprotected and where the wind is strong, such as in deserts and along the shores of oceans and large lakes. A dune begins to form when a barrier slows the speed of the wind. When wind speed slows, sand accumulates on both sides of the barrier, as shown in **Figure 3.** As more sand is deposited, the dune itself acts as a barrier, grows, and buries the original barrier.

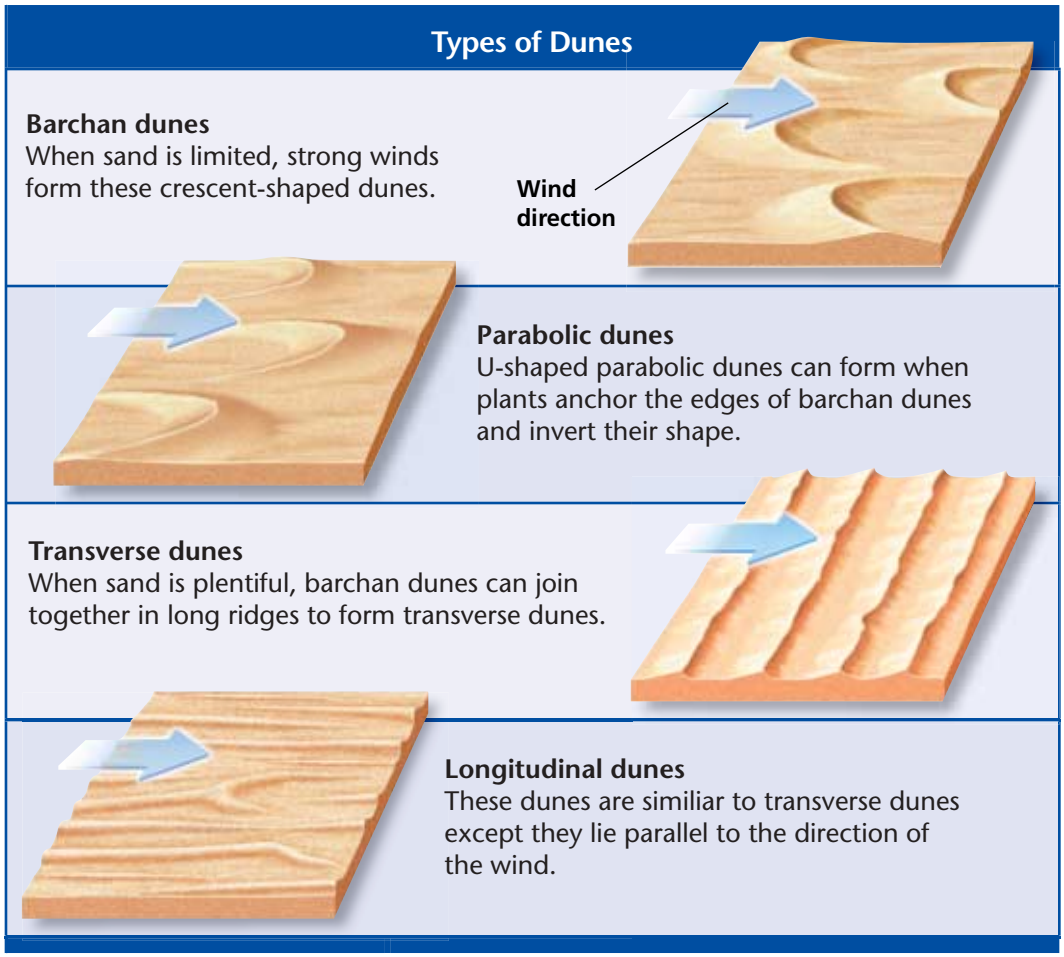
Figure 3 ▶ Dune Formation



Wind-driven sand builds up around a barrier, such as a rock, a tuft of grass, or a fence.

As the dune develops, it becomes a wind barrier and becomes larger.

The fully formed dune covers the original barrier.



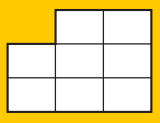
Types of Dunes

The force and direction of the wind shapes sand dunes. Commonly, the gentlest slope of a dune is the side that faces the wind. Sand that is blown over the crest of the dune tumbles down the opposite side, which is called the *slipface*. The slipface has a steeper slope than the windward side does. Two long, pointed extensions may form as wind sweeps around the ends of the dune and gives the dune a crescent shape. Crescent-shaped dunes that have an open side facing away from the wind are called *barchan dunes* (BAHR kahn doonz). A *parabolic dune* is a crescent-shaped dune whose open side faces into the wind. These dunes often form as sand collects around the rim of a deflation hollow.

In desert or coastal areas that have a large amount of sand, a series of ridges of sand may form in long, wavelike patterns. These ridges are called *transverse dunes*. Transverse dunes form at right angles to the wind direction. A type of dune that is similar to a transverse dune, called a *longitudinal dune,* also forms in the shape of a ridge. But longitudinal dunes lie parallel to the direction the wind blows. **Table 1** illustrates several types of dunes and explains how the shape of dunes relates to wind direction.

Graphic Organizer **Comparison Table**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Comparison Table" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns with "Barchan dunes," "Parabolic dunes," "Transverse dunes," and "Longitudinal dunes." Label the rows with "Shape" and "Formation." Then, fill in the table with details about the four kinds of dunes.



Reading Check **How do barchan dunes differ from transverse dunes? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 4 ▶ Wind erodes sand from the windward side of the dune and deposits it on the slipface. ***Which direction is this sand dune migrating?***

Dune Migration

The movement of dunes is called *dune migration*. If the wind usually blows from the same direction, dunes will move downwind. Dune migration occurs as sand is blown over the crest from the windward side and builds up on the slipface, as shown in **Figure 4.** In mostly level areas, dunes migrate until they reach a barrier. To prevent dunes from drifting over highways and farmland, people often build fences or plant grasses, trees, and shrubs.

QuickLAB 20 min

Modeling Desert Winds

Procedure

1. Spread a mixture of **dust, sand,** and **gravel** on a table placed outdoors.
2. Place an **electric fan** at one end of the table.
3. Put on **safety goggles** and a **filter mask.** Aim the fan across the sediment you have laid out. Start the fan on the lowest speed. Record any observations.
4. Turn the fan to a medium speed and record any observations. Then, turn the fan to its highest speed to imitate a desert windstorm. Record any observations.

Analysis

1. In what direction did the sediment move?
2. What was the relationship between the wind speed and the sediment size that was moved?
3. How does the remaining sediment compare to desert pavement?
4. How did the sand move in this activity? How do your observations relate to dune migration?
5. Using the same materials, how would you model dune migration? How would you model the formation of the different kinds of dunes?

Figure 5 ▶ These loess deposits are located in Vicksburg, Mississippi. Much of the surrounding land is fertile farmland.

Loess

loess fine-grained sediments of quartz, feldspar, hornblende, mica, and clay deposited by the wind

The wind carries dust higher and much farther than it carries sand. Fine dust may be deposited in such thin layers that it is not noticed. However, thick deposits of yellowish, fine-grained sediment, called **loess** (LOH ES), can form by the accumulation of windblown dust. Although loess is soft and easily eroded, it sometimes forms steep bluffs, such as those shown in **Figure 5.**

A large area in northern China is covered in a deep layer of loess. The material in this deposit came from the Gobi Desert, in Mongolia. Deposits of loess are also located in central Europe. In North America, loess is located in the midwestern states, along the eastern border of the Mississippi River valley, and in eastern Oregon and Washington State. These deposits probably formed as dust from dried beds of glacial lakes and from outwash plains blew across the region. Loess deposits are extremely fertile and provide excellent soil for grain-growing regions.

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** how wind transports sediment by saltation.
2. **Define** *deflation,* and explain how *deflation hollows* form.
3. **Describe** how desert pavement forms.
4. **Describe** how sand dunes form and how dunes migrate.
5. **Explain** how the wind moves loess.
6. **Identify** two reasons why wind erosion has a major affect on deserts.
7. **Compare** the four main shapes of dunes.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Analyzing Processes** Explain how scientists know that desert pavement forms by wind erosion.
9. **Determining Cause and Effect** Why does planting grass, trees, or shrubs help prevent dunes from covering roads?
10. **Analyzing Processes** Explain why the position of dunes would not be helpful for navigation in the desert.

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *saltation, deflation, dune, deflation hollow, desert pavement, wind, sand particle, top soil layer,* and *migration.*

Section 2 Wave Erosion

As wind moves over the ocean, the wind produces waves and currents that erode the coastline. Wave erosion changes the shape of shorelines, the places where the ocean and the land meet.

Shoreline Erosion

The power of waves striking rock along a shoreline can sometimes shake the ground as much as a small earthquake would. The great force of waves may break off pieces of rock and throw the pieces back against the shore. These sediments grind together in the tumbling water. This abrasive action, which is known as *mechanical weathering,* eventually reduces most of the rock fragments to small pebbles and sand grains.

Much of the erosion along a shoreline takes place during storms, which cause large waves that release tremendous amounts of energy, as shown in **Figure 1.** A severe storm can noticeably change the appearance of a shoreline in a single day.

Chemical weathering also affects the rock along a shoreline. The waves force salt water and air into small cracks in the rock. Chemicals in the air and water react with the rock and enlarge the cracks. Enlarged cracks expose more of the rock to mechanical and chemical weathering.

OBJECTIVES

- **Compare** the formation of six features produced by wave erosion.
- **Explain** how beaches form.
- **Describe** the features produced by the movement of sand along a shore.

KEY TERMS

headland
beach
longshore current

Figure 1 ▶ Large waves break apart rock on shorelines and change the shoreline's appearance. ***Where is erosion occurring in the photo shown here?***

Sea Cliffs

In places where waves strike directly against rock, the waves slowly erode the base of the rock. The waves cut under the overhanging rock, until the rock eventually collapses to form a steep *sea cliff*. The rate at which sea cliffs erode depends on the amount of wave energy and on the resistance of the rock along the shoreline. Soft rock, such as limestone, erodes very rapidly. Harder rock, such as granite, shows little change over hundreds of years. Resistant rock formations that project out from shore are called **headlands**. Areas that have less resistant rock form *bays*. **Figure 2** shows bays and several other coastal landforms produced by wave erosion.

headland a high and steep formation of rock that extends out from shore into the water

Sea Caves, Arches, and Stacks

Waves often cut deep into fractured and weak rock along the base of a cliff to form a large hole, or a *sea cave*. When waves cut completely through a headland, a *sea arch* forms. Offshore columns of rock that once were connected to a sea cliff or headland, are called *sea stacks*.

Terraces

As a sea cliff is worn, a nearly level platform, called a *wave-cut terrace,* usually remains beneath the water at the base of the cliff. Eroded material may be deposited offshore to create an extension to the wave-cut terrace called a *wave-built terrace*.

Reading Check **List three features that are caused by shoreline erosion. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

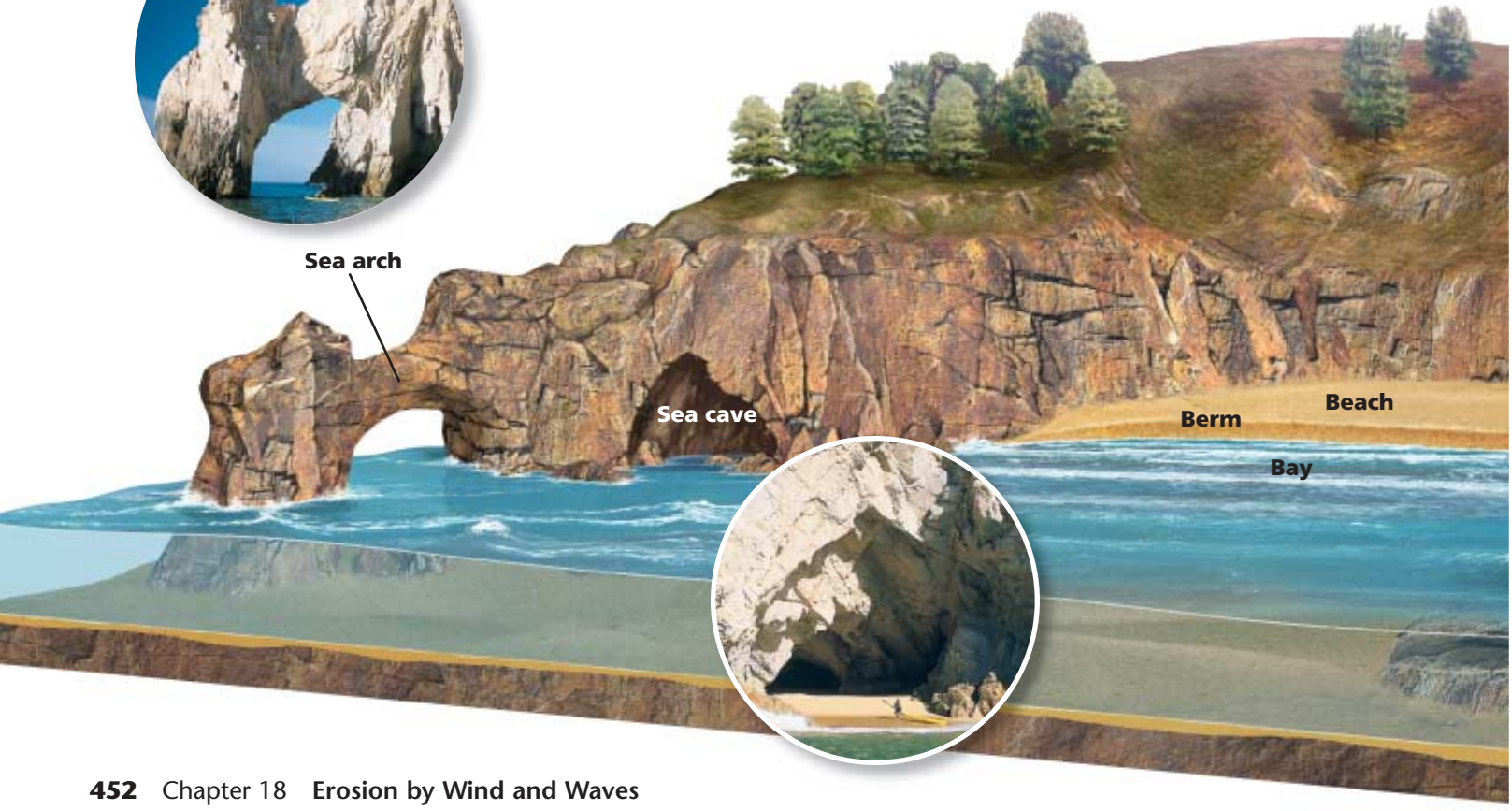


Figure 2 ▶ Wave erosion of sea cliffs causes cliff retreat and forms isolated sea stacks. Sea cliffs develop where waves strike directly against rock that is along a shoreline.

Beaches

Waves create features by eroding the land and depositing sediment. A deposit of sediment along an ocean or lake shore is called a **beach.** Beaches form where more sediment is deposited than is removed. After a beach forms, the rate at which sediment is deposited and the rate at which sediment is removed may vary.

beach an area of the shoreline that is made up of deposited sediment

Composition of Beaches

The sizes and kinds of materials that make up beaches vary. In general, the smaller the particle is, the farther it traveled before it was deposited. The composition of beach materials depends on the minerals in the source rock. Some beaches may consist of fragments of shells and coral that are washed ashore. In other locations, sand beaches form from sediment deposited by rivers or glaciers. Other beaches are composed of large pebbles.

The Berm

Each wave that reaches the shore moves sand slightly. The sand piles up to produce a sloping surface. During high tides or large storms, sand is deposited at the back of this slope. So, most beaches have a raised section called the *berm,* as shown in **Figure 2.** The berm is high and steep during the winter because large storms remove sand from the beach on the seaward side of the berm. The sand that is removed may be deposited offshore to form a long underwater ridge called a *sand bar*. In the summer, waves may move the sand back to the shore to widen the beach.

MATHPRACTICE

Wave Depth A wave will break when the depth of the wave is equal to 3/2 the height of the wave. This statement is represented by the formula $D = 3/2\ H$. If the tallest wave in a specific area is 6 m, what is the maximum depth at which wave erosion would occur in that area?

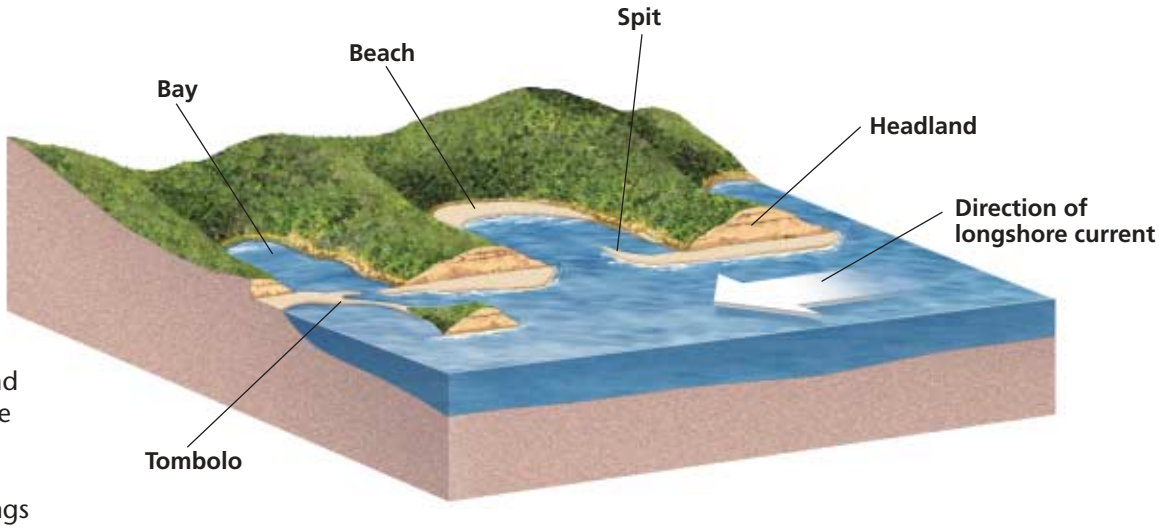


Figure 3 ▶ Spits and tombolos form where longshore currents deposit sand at headlands, at openings to a bay, or on offshore islands.

Longshore-Current Deposits

The direction in which a wave approaches the shore determines how the wave will move sediment. Most waves approach the beach at an angle and retreat in a direction that is more perpendicular to the shore. So, waves move individual sand grains in a zig-zag motion. The general movement of sand along the beach is in the direction in which the waves strike the shore.

longshore current a water current that travels near and parallel to the shoreline

Waves moving at an angle to the shoreline often create longshore currents. A **longshore current** is a movement of water parallel to and near the shoreline. Longshore currents transport sand parallel to the shoreline, as shown in **Figure 3.**

Along a relatively straight coastline, sand keeps moving until the shoreline changes direction at bays and headlands. The longshore current slows, and sand is deposited at the far end of the headland. A long, narrow deposit of sand connected at one end to the shore is called a *spit*. Currents and waves may curve the end of a spit into a hook shape. Beach deposits may also connect an offshore island to the mainland. Such connecting ridges of sand are called *tombolos*.

Section 2

1. **Compare** the formation of six features that are produced by shoreline erosion.
2. **Identify** two factors that determine the composition of beach materials.
3. **Explain** how beaches form.
4. **Compare** sea arches, sea caves, and sea stacks.
5. **Describe** three features produced by the movement of sand along a shore.

CRITICAL THINKING

6. **Making Inferences** How do seasonal changes affect beaches?
7. **Identifying Relationships** How does the speed at which water moves affect the deposition of materials of differing sizes?

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *shoreline erosion, sea arch, sea cave, sea cliff, wave-cut terrace, wave-built terrace,* and *terrace.*

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

Section 3

Coastal Erosion and Deposition

The boundaries between land and the ocean are among the most rapidly changing parts of Earth's surface. Coastal areas extend from relatively shallow water to several kilometers inland. Coastlines are affected by the long-term rise and fall of sea level and by the long-term uplifting or sinking of the land that borders the water. These and other more rapid processes, such as wave erosion and deposition, constantly change the appearance of coastlines.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how changes in sea level affect coastlines.
- **Describe** the features of a barrier island.
- **Analyze** the effect of human activity on coastal land.

KEY TERMS

estuary
barrier island
lagoon

Absolute Sea-Level Changes

A change in the amount of ocean water causes sea level to rise or fall, so coastlines are covered or exposed. During the last glacial period, which ended about 15,000 years ago, some of the water that is now in the ocean existed as continental ice sheets. Scientists estimate that the ice sheets held about 70 million cubic kilometers of ice. Now, the ice sheets in Antarctica and Greenland hold only about 25 million cubic kilometers of ice.

During the last glacial period, the water that made up the additional 45 million cubic kilometers of ice is thought to have come from the oceans. As a result, sea level was as much as 140 m lower during the last glacial period than it is today. Since the last glacial period, the ice sheets have been melting and sea level has been rising at a rate of about 1 mm per year, as shown in **Figure 1.** If the polar icecaps were to melt completely, the oceans would rise about 60 m and submerge low-lying coastal regions, including many large cities, such as New York, Los Angeles, Miami, and Houston.

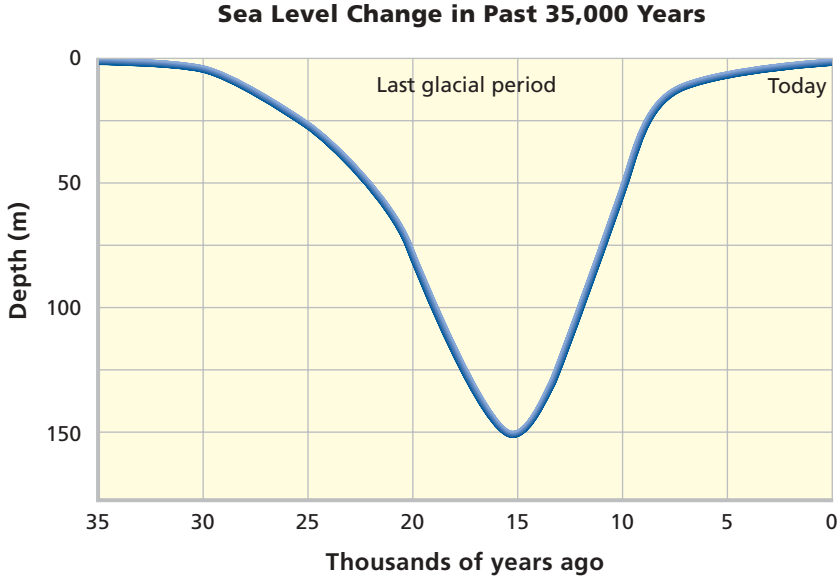


Figure 1 ▶ This graph shows how sea level has changed during the past 35,000 years.

QuickLAB 35 min

Graphing Tides

Procedure

1. Research the daily tidal data for a certain area for a calendar month.
2. Graph the tide measurements on a line graph.

Analysis

1. When was high tide? When was low tide?
2. What kind of sea-level changes do tides represent?
3. Research the full and new moon dates for the time period you graphed. How does the moon correspond with your high- and low-tides?

estuary an area where fresh water from rivers mixes with salt water from the ocean; the part of a river where the tides meet the river current

Relative Sea-Level Changes

Absolute sea level changes when the amount of water in the ocean changes. Relative sea level changes when the land or features near the coast change. These changes can be caused by large-scale geologic processes or by localized coastal changes. For example, movements of Earth's crust can cause coastlines to sink or to rise. Coastlines near a tectonic plate boundary may change as tectonic plates move. When coastlines change, the relative sea-level of that area also changes.

Submergent Coastlines

When sea level rises or when land sinks, a *submergent coastline* forms. Divides between neighboring valleys become headlands separated by bays and inlets, and submerged peaks may form offshore islands, as shown in **Figure 2.** Beaches are generally short, narrow, and rocky. When U-shaped glacial valleys become flooded with ocean water as sea level rises, spectacular narrow, deep bays that have steep walls, called *fiords* (FYAWRDZ), form.

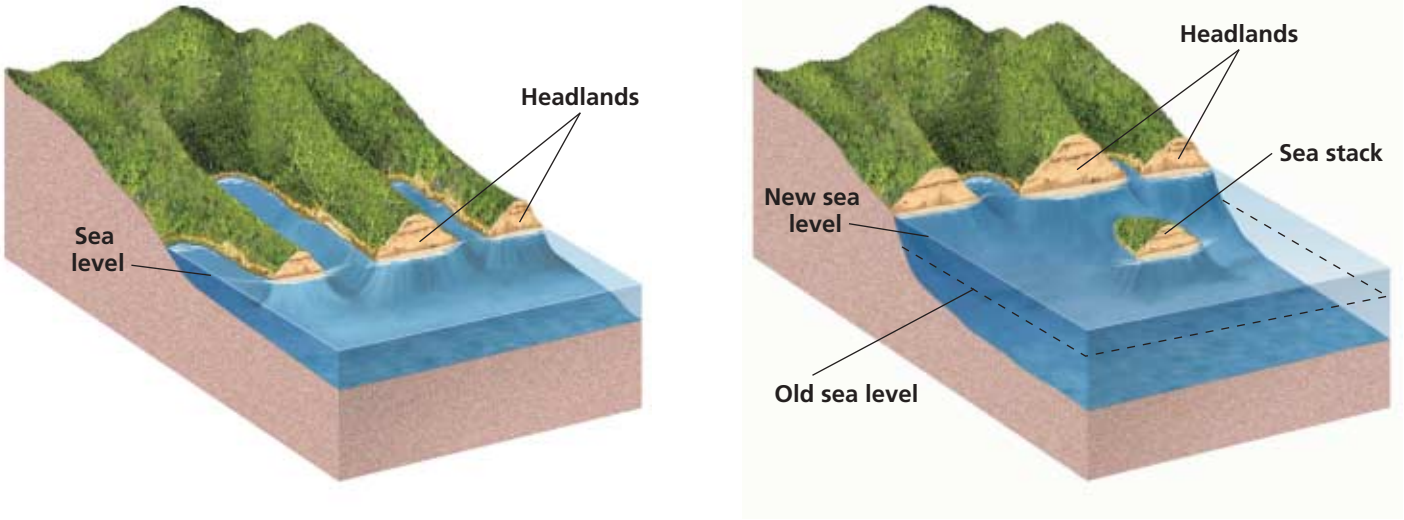
The mouth of a river valley that is submerged by ocean water may become a wide, shallow bay that extends far inland. This type of bay, where salt water and fresh water mix, is called an **estuary** (ES tyoo er ee).

Emergent Coastlines

When the land rises or when sea level falls, an *emergent coastline* forms. If an emergent coastline has a steep slope and is exposed rapidly, the coastline will erode to form sea cliffs, narrow inlets, and bays. A series of wave-cut terraces may be exposed as well.

A gentle slope forms when part of the continental shelf is slowly lifted and exposed. The gentle slope forms a smooth coastal plain that has few bays or headlands and that has many long, wide beaches.

Figure 2 ▶ The features of a submergent coastline erode over time as sea level rises.



Barrier Islands

As sea level rises over a flat coastal plain, the shoreline moves inland and isolates dunes from the old shoreline to form barrier islands, such as the one shown in **Figure 3.** **Barrier islands** are long, narrow ridges of sand that lie nearly parallel to the shoreline. Barrier islands can be 3 to 30 km offshore and can be more than 100 km long. Between a barrier island and the shoreline is a narrow region of shallow water called a **lagoon.**

Barrier islands also form when sand spits are separated from the land by storms or when waves pile up ridges of sand that were scraped from the shallow, offshore sea bottom. These deposits are then moved toward the shore by waves, currents, and winds. This motion causes most barrier islands to migrate toward the shoreline. Winds blowing toward the land often create a line of dunes that are 3 to 6 m high on the side of the island that faces the shore.

Large waves from storms, especially waves from hurricanes, may severely erode barrier islands. During a storm, sand washes from the ocean side toward the inland side of the island. Some barrier islands are eroding at a rate of about 20 m per year.

Figure 3 ▶ Santa Rosa Island is a long, narrow barrier island that is located off the coast of Florida.

barrier island a long ridge of sand or narrow island that lies parallel to the shore

lagoon a small body of water separated from the sea by a low, narrow strip of land

Reading Check **How do barrier islands form? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Connection to BIOLOGY

Coral Reefs

A common coastal feature called a *reef* forms when small marine animals called *corals*, which live in warm, shallow sea water, grow. Corals extract calcium carbonate from ocean water and use it to build a hard outer skeleton. Corals attach to each other to form a large colony made of millions of coral skeletons.

Fringing reefs form when a coral colony grows in the shallow water around a tropical volcanic island. As the sea floor bends under the weight of the volcano, both the volcano and the reef sink. The coral builds higher to form a *barrier reef* around the remnant of the volcanic island. When the island is completely submerged, a nearly circular coral reef, called an *atoll,* remains around a shallow lagoon.

A coral reef completely surrounds the island of Bora Bora in French Polynesia.

Figure 4 ▶ Engineers inspect beach erosion caused by hurricane Bonnie, which struck Wrightsville Beach, North Carolina.

Preserving the Coastline

Coastal lands are used for commercial fishing, shipping, industrial and residential development, and recreation. While development of coastal areas is economically important, it can also damage coastal areas in several ways. Pollution is a serious threat to coastal resources. Oil spills are a threat because tankers travel near shorelines and because oil wells are drilled offshore. Garbage, pollution from industry, and sewage from towns on the coast can pollute the coastline. This pollution can damage habitats and kill marine birds and other animals.

To preserve the coastal zone, private owners and government agencies often work together to set guidelines for coastal protection. Some coastal towns have brought sand from other places to rebuild beaches eroded by severe storms as shown in **Figure 4.** Coastal development in some environmentally sensitive areas, such as the North Carolina coast has been slowed or stopped completely in an attempt to protect these important areas.

SCILINKS® NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Coastal Changes
SciLinks code: HQ60307

Section 3 Review

1. **Explain** how changes in sea level affect coastlines.
2. **Explain** how the formation of a submergent coastline differs from the formation of an emergent coastline.
3. **Describe** two features of a barrier island.
4. **Explain** why barrier islands are particularly sensitive to erosion.
5. **Describe** two ways in which human activity affects coastlines.

CRITICAL THINKING

6. **Making Predictions** Predict the effect that a season of heavy storms would have on a barrier island.
7. **Identifying Relationships** If Earth were to enter a new glacial period, how might coastlines around the world change?

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *coastline, emergent coastline, submergent coastline, barrier island,* and *lagoon.*

Chapter 18 Highlights

Sections

1 Wind Erosion

Key Terms

saltation, 445
deflation, 446
ventifact, 447
dune, 447
loess, 450

Key Concepts

- Wind transports sediment by saltation and by deflation. Saltation is the movement of particles by a series of jumps or bounces. Deflation is the process of carrying small particles that are suspended in air currents.
- Wind erosion forms desert pavement, deflation hollows, and ventifacts.
- The two types of wind deposits are dunes, which are generally made of sand, and loess, which is made of dust particles.

2 Wave Erosion

headland, 452
beach, 453
longshore current, 454

- Waves weather and erode the shoreline and produce characteristic features, such as sea cliffs, sea caves, sea arches, sea stacks, terraces, and beaches.
- Beaches form from the deposition of sediments by waves.
- Longshore currents move sediments parallel to a shoreline.

3 Coastal Erosion and Deposition

estuary, 456
barrier island, 457
lagoon, 457

- Coastlines are exposed or submerged as sea level changes.
- Barrier islands are long, narrow offshore ridges of sand.
- Human activities, including development and pollution, affect land along the coasts.

Chapter 18 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *ventifact*
2. *longshore current*
3. *loess*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *saltation* and *deflation*
5. *headland* and *beach*
6. *barrier island* and *lagoon*

Understanding Key Concepts

7. Wind forms desert pavement by removing fine sediment and by leaving large rocks behind in a process called
   a. saltation. **c.** deflation.
   b. abrasion. **d.** ventifact.

8. Wind moves sand by
   a. saltation. **c.** abrasion.
   b. emergence. **d.** depression.

9. Dunes move primarily by the process called
   a. abrasion. **c.** deflation.
   b. migration. **d.** submergence.

10. Thinly layered, yellowish, fine-grained deposits are called
    a. beaches.
    b. loess.
    c. dunes.
    d. desert pavement.

11. The most important erosion agent along shorelines is
    a. wave action. **c.** wind.
    b. weathering. **d.** the tide.

12. Which of the following shoreline features is *not* produced by wave erosion of sea cliffs?
    a. spits **c.** wave-cut terraces
    b. sea stacks **d.** sea arches

13. Longshore-current deposition of sand at the end of a headland produces a
    a. sand bar. **c.** dune.
    b. spit. **d.** sea cliff.

14. Sea level is now
    a. stationary.
    b. falling about 1 mm per year.
    c. rising about 1 cm per year.
    d. rising about 1 mm per year.

15. Barrier islands tend to migrate
    a. away from the shore.
    b. along the shore.
    c. in the summer.
    d. toward the shore.

Short Answer

16. What is the difference between an emergent coastline and a submergent coastline?

17. Explain what may happen if shoreline resources are not protected.

18. What factors affect the composition of a beach?

19. Explain the difference between the four main types of dunes.

20. Explain the difference between absolute sea-level change and relative sea-level change.

Critical Thinking

21. **Identifying Relationships** The deserts of the southwestern United States contain many tall, sculpted rock formations. Was wind or water erosion the most likely agent responsible for these formations? Explain.

22. Making Inferences Suppose that one time each month for a year a satellite orbiting Earth takes a photograph of the same sandy, 1 km^2 area of the Sahara. Would the surface features shown in these 12 photographs remain essentially the same, or would they vary? Explain your answer.

23. Inferring Relationships Wave energy decreases when waves travel through shallow water. Based on this information, what effect do you think development of a wave-built terrace has on erosion of the shoreline? Explain your answer.

Concept Mapping

24. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *wave erosion, beaches, spit, berm,* and *tombolos*.

Math Skills

25. Making Calculations Suppose that sea level continuously rises at the rate of 1 mm per year and that other factors affecting the coastlines do not change. How many kilometers will sea level rise in 1 million years?

26. Applying Quantities Every year, 25 km^3 of sand is deposited on a beach by a nearby river, and 28 km^3 of sand is removed by wave action. Is the size of the beach increasing or decreasing? Explain.

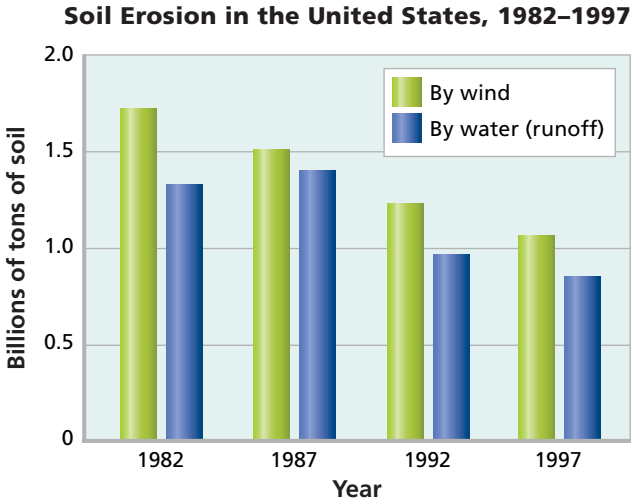
Writing Skills

27. Creative Writing Imagine that you are a newspaper reporter who has traveled to another planet. Scientists know that, at one time, both wind and water eroded the surface of the planet. Prepare a news release that describes the landscape you see and explains the processes that produced it.

28. Writing Persuasively You have learned that beautifully colored sunsets and sunrises are the result of dust in the atmosphere. Write a letter or essay to your doubting friend to convince him or her that sunsets and sunrises are caused by dust. Use the evidence that remarkable sunsets were visible around the world for two years after the 1883 eruption of Krakatau, a volcanic island in Indonesia, in your essay.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows soil erosion in the United States by wind and water from 1982 to 1997. Use this graph to answer the questions that follow.



29. Which year had the most combined soil erosion?

30. Which year had the most soil erosion due to water?

31. Do you predict more or less soil erosion by wind in future years? Explain your answer.

32. Would you expect that the amount of soil erosion in the United States would ever be zero? Explain your answer.

Chapter 18 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 Which of the following factors most affects the rate at which waves erode land features along the shore?
- **A** temperature of the waves
- **B.** direction in which waves approach shores
- **C.** shape of the rock formation
- **D.** compostion of the rock formation

2 Why are dust particles more likely to remain in the atmosphere longer and travel farther than sand particles?
- **F.** Sand grains are carried higher and fall.
- **G.** Dust particles are smaller and lighter.
- **H.** Sand grains are made from rocks.
- **I.** Dust is moved by the process of saltation.

3 What is the term for rocks or pebbles that have flat, polished surfaces caused by wind abrasion?
- **A.** bedrock
- **B.** compaction
- **C.** pinnacles
- **D.** ventifacts

4 What is the name for a submerged river valley mouth that forms a bay where salt and fresh water mix?
- **F.** estuary
- **G.** fiord
- **H.** atoll
- **I.** lagoon

5 Why is erosion by wind more common in arid climates than in other regions of the world?
- **A.** arid climates have much thicker soil layers
- **B.** arid climates have less frequent dust storms
- **C.** arid climates have less plant cover to anchor soil
- **D.** arid climates have more moisture to hold soil

Directions (6–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 What is the primary method of dune movement?

7 What factor is most important in determining the composition of beach materials?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–10): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Black Blizzards

The area that covers parts of Colorado, Kansas, New Mexico, Oklahoma, and Texas had been converted from natural grassland to farmland in the early 1900s. Many of the plants brought in to replace the natural prairie grasses had shallow root systems that could not hold soil in place. Much of the rest of the grassland was turned over to grazing land for hungry livestock.

During the 1930s, a long period of drought set in and the already dry soil turned to dust. In the spring of 1934, high winds blew black dust clouds across the dry wheat fields of these states. Some of the dust settled only when it reached Boston and New York City. The sky turned black at mid-day. And when the dust fell, houses were coated with thick layers of dust. Roads and fences were covered by dust. The remaining crops that had survived the droughts suffocated on the ground as the dust blocked the sunlight and other nutrients. Millions of people left their farms in search of a better life.

8 According to the passage, how far did some of the dust travel during the dust storms of 1934?
- **A.** all the way to the Pacific Ocean
- **B.** all the way to the Atlantic Ocean
- **C.** only as far as the Rocky Mountains
- **D.** only as far as the Great Smokey Mountains

9 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
- **A.** The dust storms from the 1930s continued well into the 1940s.
- **B.** Black blizzards are common occurances in the states of Texas and Colorado.
- **C.** One of the main causes of the dust storms of the 1930s was misuse of land by humans.
- **D.** Damage from the dust storms of the 1930s can still be seen today in states such as Texas and Oklahoma.

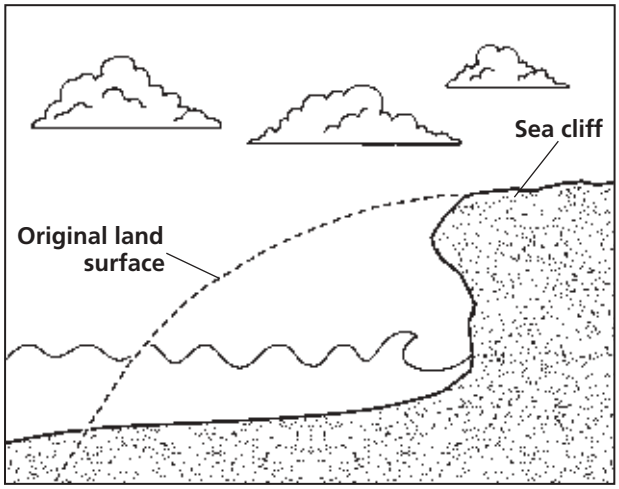
10 Briefly describe how high winds and an extensive drought could combine to produce the terrible conditions seen during the 1930s.

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–12): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

Base your answers to question 11 on the image of an eroding sea cliff . The projecting headland of the cliff is composed of granite, and the hillside below is made of limestone.

Erosion of a Sea Cliff

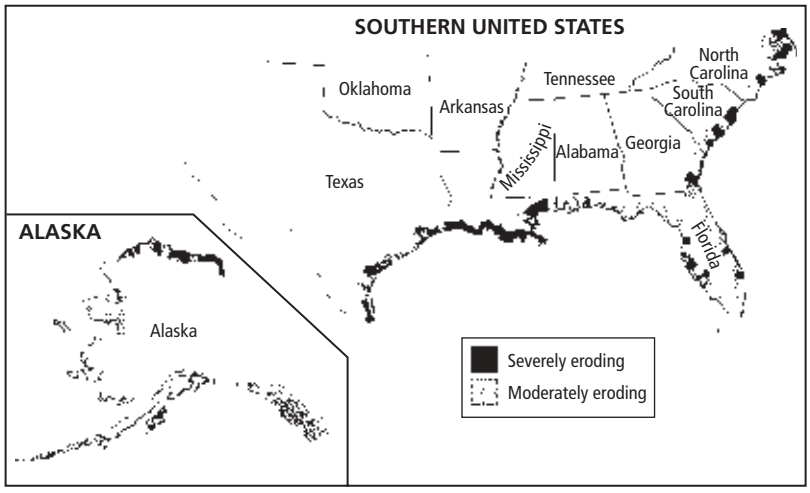


11 The coastal landforms shown were most likely formed as a result of the action of

A. glacial movements
B. seismic activity
C. sea level changes
D. waves and weathering

Base your answers to question 12 on the map below, which shows shoreline changes across the United States.

Map of Coastal Erosion Patterns



12 How might human activities along the rivers that empty into the Gulf of Mexico and the coastal shoreline play a part in the increasing rate of erosion that is affecting the region?

Test TIP

Do not spend a long period of time on any single question. Mark a question that you cannot answer quickly, and come back to it.

Chapter 18

Inquiry Lab

Using Scientific Methods

Beaches

Objectives

- **Model** the effects of wave action and longshore currents on a beach.
- **Identify** ways to decrease the effects of wave action on beach sand.

Materials

block, plaster (2)
block, wooden, large
container, plastic, large
pebbles
ruler, metric
sand, 5 to 10 lb
water

Safety

Coastal management is a growing concern because beaches are increasingly used for resources and recreation. The supply of sand for many beaches has been cut off by dams built on rivers and streams that are used to carry sand to the sea. Waves generated by storms also continuously wear away beaches. In some places, breakwaters have been built offshore to protect beaches from washing away. In this lab, you will examine how wave action may change the shape of beaches and how these changes can be reduced.

ASK A QUESTION

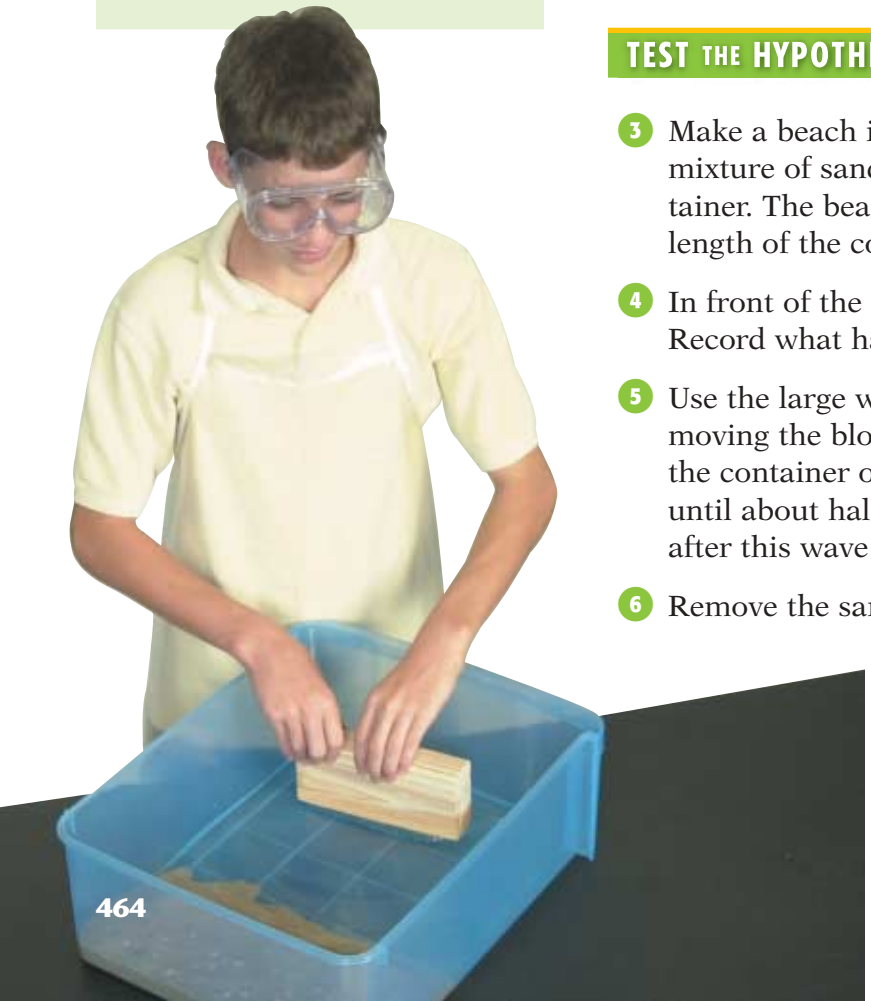
1. How does wave action affect the amount of sand on a beach? How can these effects be reduced?

FORM A HYPOTHESIS

2. Form a hypothesis that answers your question. Explain your reasoning.

TEST THE HYPOTHESIS

3. Make a beach in a large, shallow container by placing a mixture of sand and small pebbles at one end of the container. The beach should occupy about one-fourth of the length of the container.
4. In front of the sand, add water to a depth of 2 to 3 cm. Record what happens.
5. Use the large wooden block to generate several waves by moving the block up and down in the water at the end of the container opposite the beach. Continue this wave action until about half the beach has moved. Describe the beach after this wave action has taken place.
6. Remove the sand, and rebuild the beach.



Step 5

7. Design three breakwaters that change the flow of water along the beach. Draw your designs on a piece of paper. The two top photos at right are samples of some breakwater arrangements.
8. Have your teacher approve your designs before you build them into your model beach.
9. Use the two plaster blocks to model the first breakwater that you designed. Use a wooden block to generate waves as in step 5. Record your observations.
10. Use the wooden block to generate waves that move parallel to the beach. Record your observations.
11. Repeat steps 9 and 10 for each of your other two designs. Record your observations.

Step 7

Step 7

Step 10

ANALYZE THE RESULTS

1. **Making Comparisons** How does wave action build up a beach? How does wave action wear away a beach?
2. **Explaining Events** Describe what happened to the shape of the waves along the beach in step 10.
3. **Analyzing Results** How do breakwaters modify the effect that longshore currents have on the shape of a beach?

DRAW CONCLUSIONS

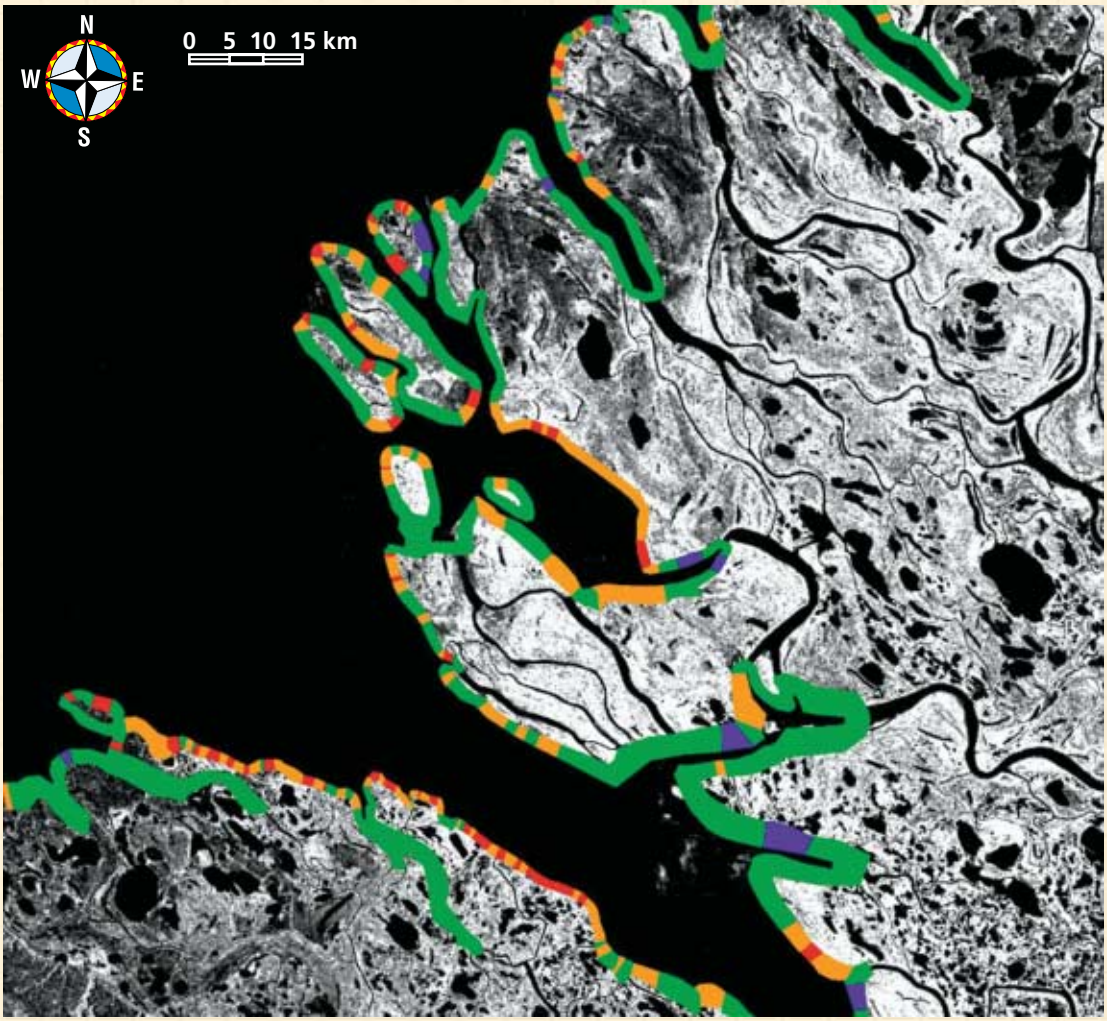
4. **Making Predictions** Predict what will happen to a beach that is affected by wave action if it had no source of additional sand.
5. **Drawing Conclusions** What effect would a series of jetties have on a beach?

Extension

1. **Research and Communications** Research what can be done to preserve a recreational beach from erosion that is caused by excessive use by people. Write a letter to a local authority outlining a plan of action to protect that beach.

MAPS in Action

Coastal Erosion Near the Beaufort Sea



Rapid erosion (>5 m/per year)

Moderate erosion (1 to 5 m/per year)

No detectable erosion (–1 to 1 m/per year)

Deposition (<–1 m/per year)

Areas of accretion are shown in blue. Accretion occurs when more material is deposited than is eroded.

Map Skills Activity

This map shows the coastline of the Beaufort Sea in Canada along with computed amounts of shoreline erosion and accretion. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using the Key** How many areas of accretion are shown on the map?
2. **Using the Key** What is the level of erosion that is present in most areas shown?
3. **Analyzing Data** Is the estimated overall shoreline change for the entire area shown a positive value (accretion) or a negative value (erosion)?
4. **Making Comparisons** Is there more erosion on the coastal area toward the north or on the area toward the south?
5. **Inferring Relationships** Is the area shown in the map more significantly affected by the effects of waves along the shoreline or by the depositional actions of rivers that enter the ocean? Explain your answer.
6. **Identifying Trends** If present conditions remain the same, what would you expect to happen to the five small islands that are located on the northwest area of the map.

The Flooding of Venice

The city of Venice, Italy, is famous for its canals and priceless art treasures. Venice is built on about 120 islands in the Adriatic Sea.

◀ Flooding in St. Mark's square invites residents to be creative about their transportation.

A City Underwater

The waters of the Adriatic Sea constantly threaten Venice. Every year, winter storms cause sea water to flood the city's public squares, walkways, and buildings. Venice's famous St. Mark's Square may flood more than 100 times per year. Overexposure to floodwaters is slowly eroding the foundations of the city's Byzantine and Renaissance architecture. The city's sidewalks are buckled because the water has eroded the ground underneath them.

These floods are the result of three factors: erosion, rising sea level, and sinking land. Erosion of barrier beaches and sandbars allows high tides to reach farther into Venice. Also, the Adriatic Sea is rising. Its average sea level has risen 11 cm over the last 100 years, and Venice has sunk 13 cm.

The weight of added sediments is causing the city to sink about 1 mm per year. Removal of too much groundwater and the weight of the buildings within the city have caused additional sinkage.

An Uncertain Future

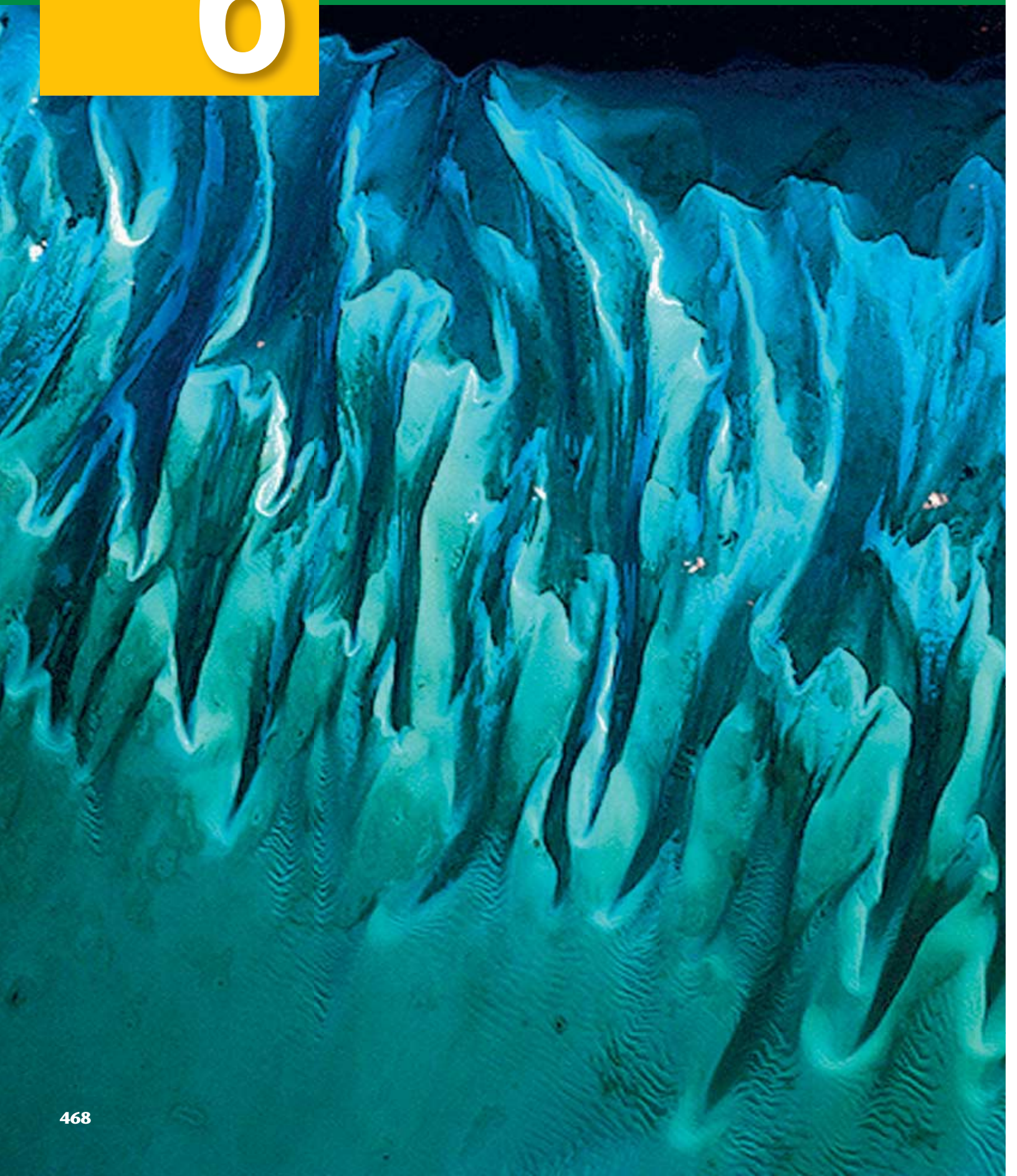
To prevent future and permanent damage to Venice, the city restricts the pumping of groundwater. Pavement is often raised to help keep the city above water and to minimize erosion caused by floodwaters. Massive floodgates have been built to block high tides that threaten the city. In addition, city planners are constructing a system to pump fluids into the aquifer below the lagoon to raise the level of water in the aquifer.

◀ Flooding causes erosion in wood, brick, and stone. Many building foundations are slowly dissolving into the waters of the Adriatic Sea.

Extension

1. **Researching Trends** Research another area of the world that is grappling with regular flooding. How is that city or town dealing with the erosion that is caused by flooding?

Unit 6 OCEANS



Unit 6 Outline

CHAPTER 19
The Ocean Basins

CHAPTER 20
Ocean Water

CHAPTER 21
Movements of the Ocean

▶ Oceans affect coastlines, climates, and aquatic life around the world. As shown in this satellite image of the Bahamas in the Caribbean Sea, ocean currents and tides have shaped the sand and seaweed beds so that from space the beds appear to be blue flames of a fire.

Chapter 19

The Ocean Basins

Sections

1 The Water Planet

2 Features of the Ocean Floor

3 Ocean-Floor Sediments

What You'll Learn

- Why scientists study the ocean
- What the features of the ocean basins are
- How ocean-floor sediments are classified

Why It's Relevant

The oceans interact with the atmosphere and the land to affect weather, climate, and the shape of continents. Exploration of the oceans explains how these interactions shape Earth's surface.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Booklet Before you read the chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Booklet" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label each page of the booklet with a main idea from the chapter. As you read the chapter, write what you learn about each main idea on the appropriate page of the booklet.

▶ The ocean floors contain evidence of changes in Earth over time and of human endeavors. This is the wreckage of the *Ora Verde,* a ship that was lost near the Grand Cayman Islands.

Section 1 The Water Planet

Nearly three-quarters of Earth's surface lies beneath a body of salt water called the **global ocean.** No other known planet has a similar covering of liquid water. Only Earth can be called the *water planet*.

The global ocean contains more than 97% of all of the water on Earth. Although the ocean is the most prominent feature of Earth's surface, the ocean is only about 1/4,000 of Earth's total mass and only 1/800 of Earth's total volume.

Divisions of the Global Ocean

As shown in **Figure 1,** the global ocean is divided into five major oceans. These major oceans are the Atlantic, Pacific, Indian, Arctic, and Southern Oceans. Each ocean has special characteristics. The Pacific Ocean is the largest ocean on Earth's surface. It contains more than one-half of the ocean water on Earth. With an average depth of 4.3 km, the Pacific Ocean is also the deepest ocean. The next largest ocean is the Atlantic Ocean. The Atlantic Ocean has an average depth of 3.9 km. The Indian Ocean is the third-largest ocean and has an average depth of 3.9 km. The Southern Ocean extends from the coast of Antarctica to 60°S latitude. The Arctic Ocean is the smallest ocean, and it surrounds the North Pole.

A **sea** is a body of water that is smaller than an ocean and that may be partially surrounded by land. Examples of major seas include the Mediterranean, Caribbean, and South China Seas.

OBJECTIVES

- **Name** the major divisions of the global ocean.
- **Describe** how oceanographers study the ocean.
- **Explain** how sonar works.

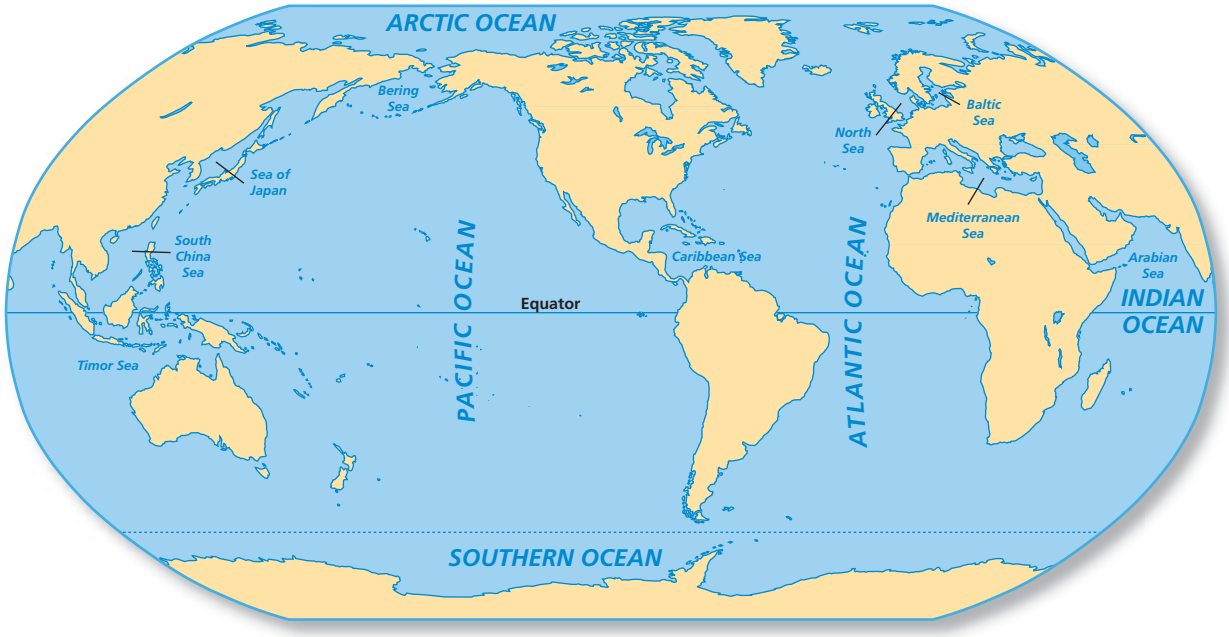
KEY TERMS

global ocean
sea
oceanography
sonar

global ocean the body of salt water that covers nearly three-fourths of Earth's surface

sea a large, commonly saline body of water that is smaller than an ocean and that may be partially or completely surrounded by land

Figure 1 ▶ The global ocean is divided into oceans and seas. ***How many oceans are on Earth?***



Exploration of the Ocean

oceanography the scientific study of the ocean, including the properties and movement of ocean water, the characteristics of the ocean floor, and the organisms that live in the ocean

The study of the physical characteristics, chemical composition, and life-forms of the ocean is called **oceanography.** Although some ancient civilizations studied the ocean, modern oceanography did not begin until the 1850s.

The Birth of Oceanography

An American naval officer named Matthew F. Maury used records from navy ships to learn about ocean currents, winds, depths, and weather conditions. In 1855, he published these observations as one of the first textbooks about the oceans. Then, from 1872 to 1876, a team of scientists aboard the British Navy ship HMS *Challenger* crossed the Atlantic, Indian, and Pacific Oceans. The scientists measured water temperatures at great depths and collected samples of ocean water, sediments, and thousands of marine organisms. The voyages of the HMS *Challenger* laid the foundation for the modern science of oceanography.

Today, many ships perform oceanographic research. In the 1990s and in the beginning of the 21st century, the research ship *JOIDES Resolution* was the world's largest and most sophisticated scientific drilling ship. Samples drilled by *JOIDES Resolution,* shown in **Figure 2,** provide scientists with valuable information about plate tectonics and the ocean floor. The Japanese ship *CHIKYU*, which is operated by the Integrated Ocean Drilling Program, is one of the most advanced drilling ship now in use.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: The Oceans
SciLinks code: HQ61069

Reading Check **List three characteristics of the ocean that oceanographers study. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 2 ▶ Reentry cones (above) are used so that core samples can later be taken from the same place on the ocean floor. Scientists aboard the research ship *JOIDES Resolution* (right) perform scientific studies of the ocean floor.

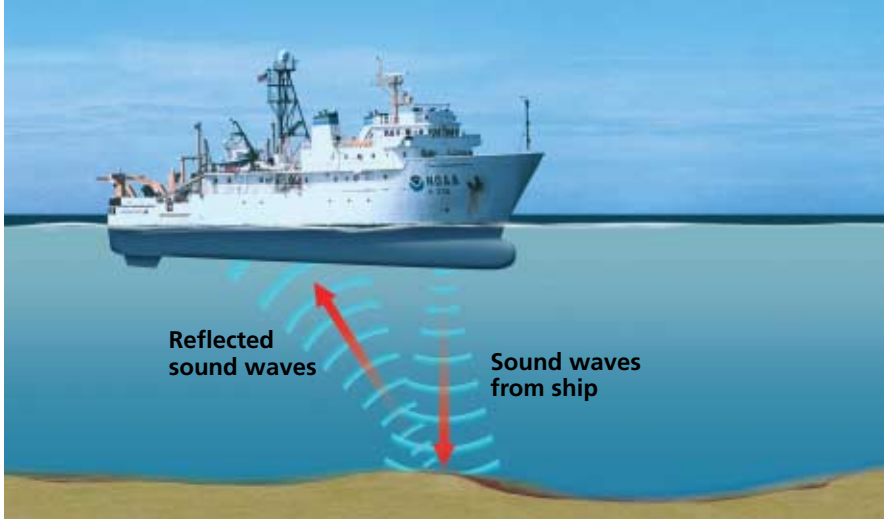


Figure 3 ▶ Active sonar sends out a pulse of sound. The pulse, called a *ping* because of the way it sounds, reflects when it strikes a solid object.

Sonar

Oceanographic research ships are often equipped with sonar. **Sonar** is a system that uses acoustic signals and returned echoes to determine the location of objects or to communicate. Sonar is an acronym for ***so****und* ***n****avigation* ***a****nd* ***r****anging*. A sonar transmitter sends out a continuous series of sound waves from a ship to the ocean floor, as shown in **Figure 3.** The sound waves travel about 1,500 m/s through sea water and bounce off the solid ocean floor. The waves reflect back to a receiver. Scientists measure the time that the sound waves take to travel from the transmitter, to the ocean floor, and to the receiver in order to calculate the depth of the ocean floor. Scientists then use this information to make maps and profiles of the ocean floor.

sonar *sound navigation and ranging,* a system that uses acoustic signals and returned echoes to determine the location of objects or to communicate

QuickLAB 30 min

Sonar

Procedure

1. Use **heavy string** to tie one end of a **spring** securely to a **doorknob.** Pull the spring taut and parallel to the floor. You will need to keep the tension of the spring constant throughout the lab.
2. Use **masking tape** to mark the floor directly beneath the hand that is holding the spring taut. Use a **meterstick** to measure and record the distance from that hand to the doorknob.
3. Note the time on a **stopwatch or clock with a second hand.** Hold the spring taut, and hit the spring horizontally to create a compression wave.
4. Check the time again to see how long the pulse takes to travel to the doorknob and back to your hand. Record the time.
5. Repeat steps 2–4 three times. Each time, hold the spring 60 cm closer to the doorknob. Keep tension constant by gathering coils as necessary.
6. Calculate the rate of travel for each trial by multiplying the distance between your hand and the doorknob by 2. Then, divide by the number of seconds the pulse took to travel to the doorknob and back.

Analysis

1. Did the rate the pulse traveled change during the course of the investigation?
2. If a pulse took 3 s to travel to the doorknob and back to your hand, what is the distance from the doorknob to your hand?
3. How is the apparatus you used similar to sonar? How is the apparatus different than sonar? Explain.

Figure 4 ▶ The submersible *Nautile* (top) carries enough oxygen to keep a three-person crew underwater for more than five hours. Deep-sea submersibles have discovered many strange organisms in the deep ocean, such as this angler fish (bottom).

Submersibles

Underwater research vessels, called *submersibles,* also enable oceanographers to study the ocean depths. Some submersibles are piloted by people. One such submersible is the *bathysphere,* a spherical diving vessel that remains connected to the research ship for communications and life support. Another type of piloted submersible, called a *bathyscaph,* is a self-propelled, free-moving submarine. One of the most well-known bathyscaphs is the *Alvin*. Another modern submersible, called *Nautile* (NOH teel), is shown in **Figure 4.**

Other modern submersibles are submarine robots. They can take photographs, collect mineral samples from the ocean floor, and perform many other tasks. These robot submersibles are remotely piloted and allow oceanographers to study the ocean depths for long periods of time.

Underwater Research

Submersibles have helped scientists make exciting discoveries about the deep ocean. During one dive in a submersible, startled oceanographers saw communities of unusual marine life living at depths and temperatures where scientists thought that almost no life could exist. Giant clams, blind white crabs, and giant tube worms were some of the strange life-forms that were discovered. Many of these life-forms have unusual adaptations that allow them to live in hostile environments. The angler fish, shown in **Figure 4,** can produce its own light, which attracts prey.

Section 1 Review

1. **Name** the five major divisions of the global ocean.
2. **Explain** the difference between an ocean and a sea.
3. **Define** *oceanography*.
4. **Describe** two ways that oceanographers study the ocean.
5. **Explain** how sonar works.
6. **Describe** two aspects of the ocean that submersibles are used to study.
7. **List** three types of submersibles.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Evaluating Ideas** Most submarines use sonar as a navigation aid. How would sonar enable an underwater vessel to move through the ocean depths?
9. **Analyzing Methods** Why are submarine robots more practical for deep-ocean research than submersibles designed to carry people are?

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *oceanography, submersible, bathysphere, bathyscaph, robot submersible,* and *sonar*.

Section 2 Features of the Ocean Floor

The ocean floor can be divided into two major areas, as shown in **Figure 1.** The **continental margins** are shallow parts of the ocean floor that are made of continental crust and a thick wedge of sediment. The other major area is the **deep-ocean basin,** which is made of oceanic crust and a thin sediment layer, is the deep part of the ocean beyond the continental margin.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the main features of the continental margins.
- **Describe** the main features of the deep-ocean basin.

KEY TERMS

continental margin
deep-ocean basin
trench
abyssal plain

Continental Margins

The line that divides the continental crust from the oceanic crust is not abrupt or distinct. Shorelines are not the true boundaries between the oceanic crust and the continental crust. The boundaries are actually some distance offshore and beneath the ocean and the thick sediments of the continental margin.

Continental Shelf

Continents are outlined in most places by a zone of shallow water where the ocean covers the edge of the continent. The part of the continent that is covered by water is called a *continental shelf*. The shelf usually slopes gently from the shoreline and drops about 0.12 m every 100 m. The average depth of the water covering a continental shelf is about 60 m. Although it is underwater, a continental shelf is part of the continental margin, not the deep-ocean basin.

Changes in sea level affect the continental shelves. During glacial periods, continental ice sheets hold large amounts of water. So, sea level falls and exposes more of the continental shelf to weathering and erosion. But if ice sheets melt adding water to the oceans, sea level rises and covers the continental shelf.

continental margin the shallow sea floor that is located between the shoreline and the deep-ocean bottom

deep-ocean basin the part of the ocean floor that is under deep water beyond the continent margin and that is composed of oceanic crust and a thin layer of sediment

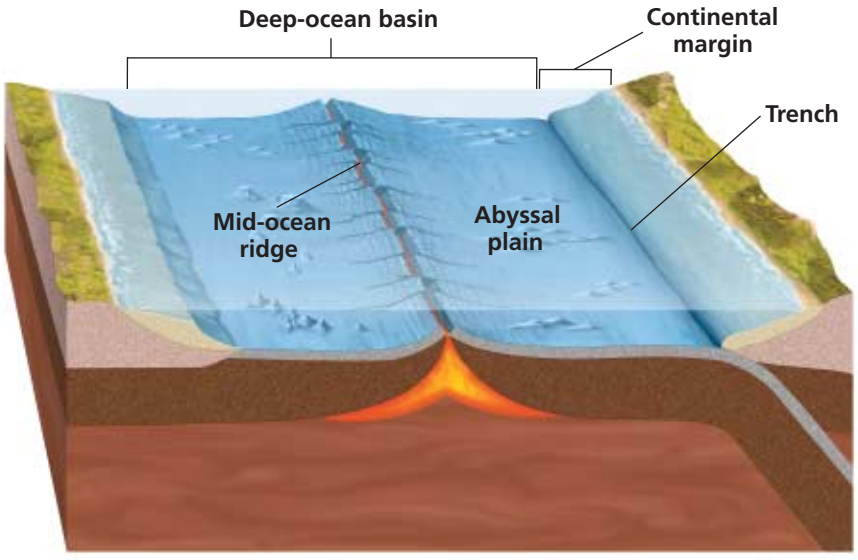


Figure 1 ▶ The ocean floor includes the continental margins and the deep-ocean basin. ***What are three other major features of the ocean floor?***

SCILINKS
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Ocean-Floor Features
SciLinks code: HQ61067

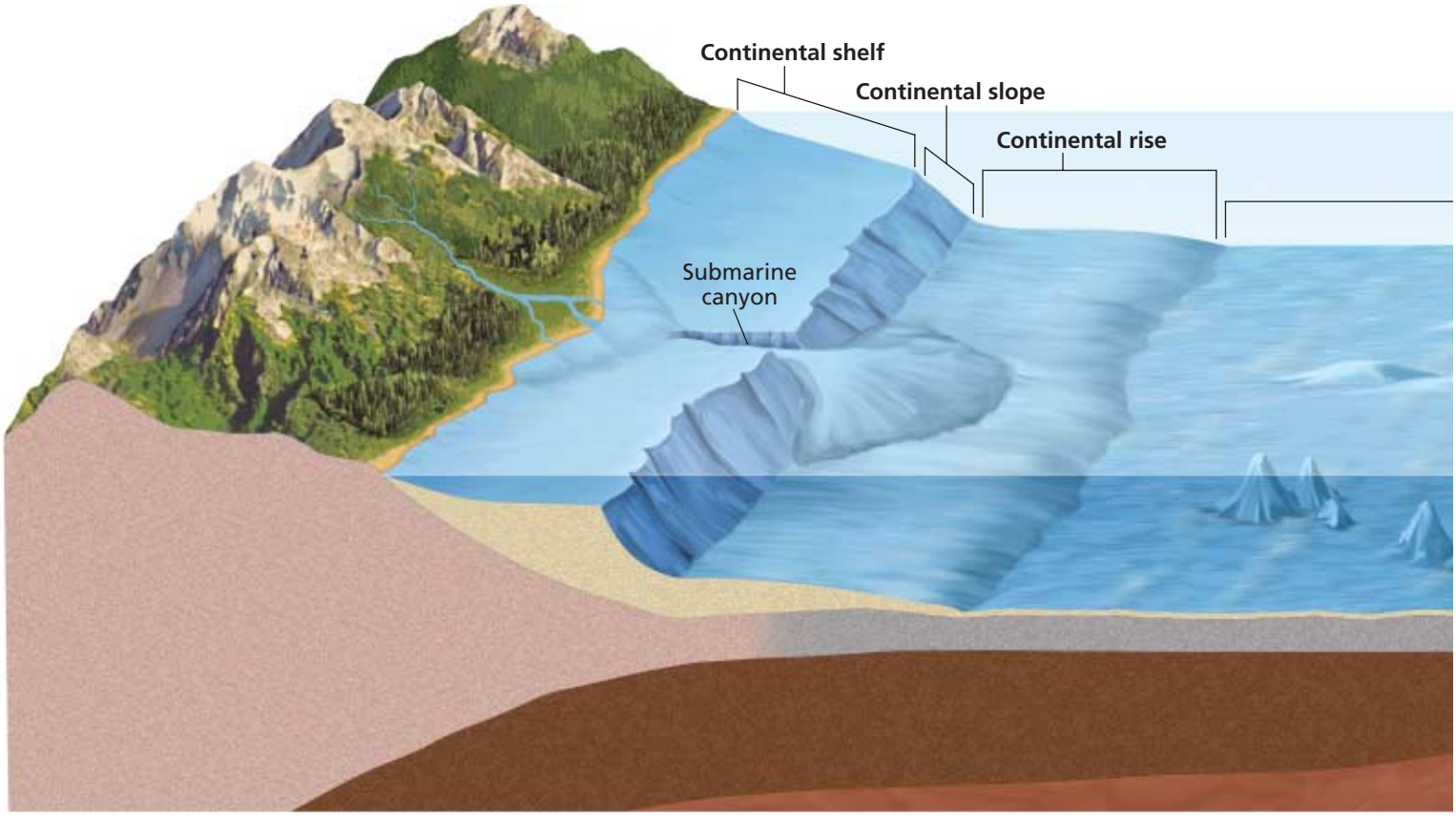


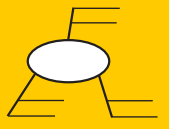
Figure 2 ▶ The ocean floor is made of distinct areas and features.

Continental Slope and Continental Rise

At the seaward edge of a continental shelf is a steep slope called a *continental slope*. The boundary between the continental crust and the oceanic crust is located at the base of the continental slope. Along the continental slope, the ocean depth increases by several thousand meters within a distance of a few kilometers, as shown in **Figure 2.** The continental shelf and continental slope may be cut by deep V-shaped valleys. These deep valleys are called *submarine canyons*. These deep canyons are often found near the mouths of major rivers. Other canyons may form over time as very dense currents called *turbidity currents* carry large amounts of sediment down the continental slopes. Turbidity currents form when earthquakes cause underwater landslides or when large sediment loads run down a slope. These sediments form a raised wedge at the base of the continental slope called a *continental rise*.

Graphic Organizer **Spider Map**

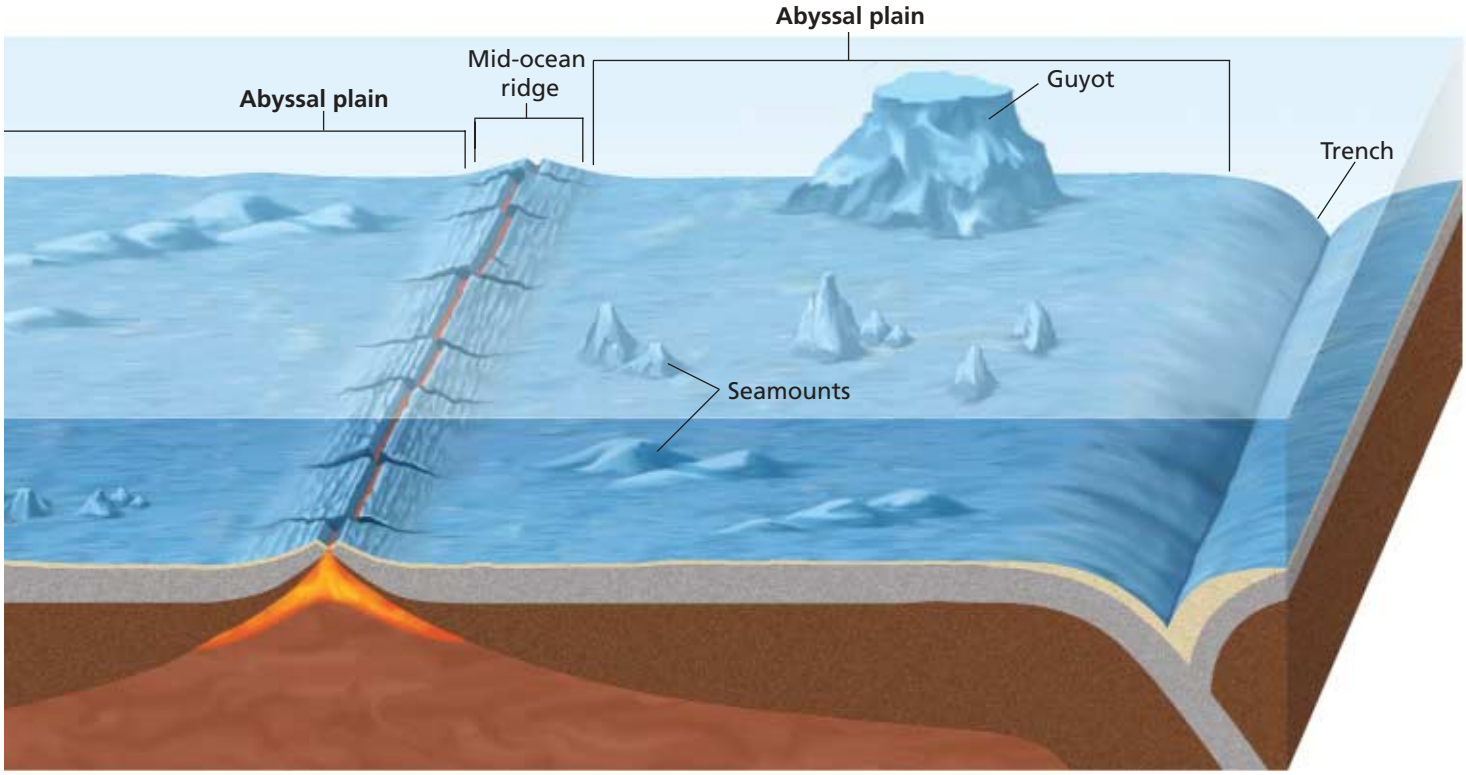
Create the **Graphic Organizer** entitled "Spider Map" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the circle "Ocean Basin Features." Create a leg for each ocean basin feature. Then, fill in the map with details about each ocean basin feature.



Deep-Ocean Basins

Deep-ocean basins also have distinct features, as shown in **Figure 2.** These features include broad, flat plains; submerged volcanoes; gigantic mountain ranges; and deep trenches. In the deep-ocean basins, the mountains are higher and the plains are flatter than any features found on the continents are.

Reading Check **What features are located in the deep-ocean basins? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**



Trenches

Long, narrow depressions located in the deep-ocean basins are called **trenches.** At more than 11,000 m deep, the Mariana Trench, in the western Pacific Ocean, is the deepest place in Earth's crust. Trenches form where one tectonic plate subducts below another plate. Earthquakes occur near trenches. Volcanic mountain ranges and volcanic island arcs also form near trenches.

trench a long, narrow, and steep depression that forms on the ocean floor as a result of subduction of a tectonic plate, that runs parallel to the trend of a chain of volcanic islands or the coastline of a continent, and that may be as deep as 11 km below sea level; also called an *ocean trench* or a *deep-ocean trench*

abyssal plain a large, flat, almost level area of the deep-ocean basin

Abyssal Plains

The vast, flat areas of the deep-ocean basins where the ocean is more than 4 km deep are called **abyssal plains** (uh BIS uhl PLAYNZ). Abyssal plains cover about half of the deep-ocean basins and are the flattest regions on Earth. In some places, the ocean depth changes less than 3 m over more than 1,300 km.

Layers of fine sediment cover the abyssal plains. Ocean currents and wind carry some sediments from the continental margins. Other sediment is made by organisms that live in the ocean and settle to the ocean floor when they die.

The thickness of sediments on the abyssal plains is determined by three factors. The age of the oceanic crust is one factor. Older crust is generally covered with thicker sediments than younger crust is. The distance from the continental margin to the abyssal plain also determines how much sediment reaches the plain from the continent. Third, the sediment cover on abyssal plains that are bordered by trenches is generally thinner than the sediment cover on abyssal plains that are not bordered by trenches.

Figure 3 ▶ The white ridges in this photo are coral reefs of an atoll that formed in the shallow waters around a volcanic island. Erosion is changing the island into a guyot.

Mid-Ocean Ridges

The most prominent features of ocean basins are the *mid-ocean ridges*, which form underwater mountain ranges that run along the floors of all oceans. Mid-ocean ridges rise above sea level in only a few places, such as in Iceland. Mid-ocean ridges form where plates pull away from each other. A narrow depression, or rift, runs along the center of the ridge. Through this rift, magma reaches the sea floor and forms new lithosphere. This new lithosphere is less dense than the old lithosphere. As the new lithosphere cools, it becomes denser and begins to sink as it moves away from the rift. Fault-bounded blocks of crust that form parallel to the ridges as the lithosphere cools and contracts are called *abyssal hills*.

As ridges adjust to changes in the direction of plate motions, they break into segments that are bounded by faults. These faults create areas of rough topography called *fracture zones*, which run perpendicular across the ridge.

Seamounts

Submerged volcanic mountains that are taller than 1 km are called *seamounts*. Seamounts form in areas of increased volcanic activity called *hot spots*. Seamounts that rise above the ocean surface form oceanic islands. As tectonic plate movements carry islands away from a hot spot, the islands sink and are eroded by waves to form flat-topped, submerged seamounts called *guyots* (GEE OHZ) or *tablemounts*. An intermediate stage in this process, called an *atoll*, is shown in **Figure 3.**

Section 2 Review

1. **Describe** the three main sections of the continental margins.
2. **Describe** where the boundary between the oceanic crust and the continental crust is located.
3. **Explain** how turbidity currents are related to submarine canyons.
4. **List** four main features of the deep-ocean basins, and describe one characteristic of each feature.
5. **Compare** seamounts, guyots, and atolls.
6. **Explain** the difference between the meanings of the terms *continental margin, continental shelf, continental slope,* and *continental rise.*

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Inferences** The Pacific Ocean is surrounded by trenches, but the Atlantic Ocean is not. In addition, the Pacific Ocean is wider than the Atlantic Ocean, and much of the crust under the Pacific Ocean is very young. Which ocean's abyssal plain has thicker sediments? Explain your answer.
8. **Determining Cause and Effect** If sea level were to fall significantly, what would happen to the continental shelves?

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *continental margin, deep-ocean basin, continental shelf, continental slope, continental rise, trench, abyssal plain,* and *mid-ocean ridge.*

Section 3 Ocean-Floor Sediments

Continental shelves and slopes are covered with sediments. Sediments are carried into the ocean by rivers, are washed away from the shoreline by wave erosion, or settle to the ocean bottom when the organisms that created them die. The composition of ocean sediments varies and depends on which part of the ocean floor the sediments form in. The sediments are fairly well sorted by size. Coarse gravel and sand are usually found close to shore because these heavier sediments do not move easily offshore. Lighter particles are suspended in ocean water and are usually deposited at a great distance from shore.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the formation of ocean-floor sediments.
- **Explain** how ocean-floor sediments are classified by their physical composition.

KEY TERMS

core sample
nodule

Sources of Deep Ocean–Basin Sediments

Sediments found in the deep-ocean basin, which is beyond the continental margin, are generally finer than those found in shallow water. Samples of the sediments in the deep-ocean basins can be gathered by scooping up sediments or by taking core samples. **Core samples** are cylinders of sediment that are collected by drilling into sediment layers on the ocean floor. **Figure 1** shows a core sample being studied aboard the research vessel *JOIDES Resolution*.

core sample a cylindrical piece of sediment, rock, soil, snow, or ice that is collected by drilling

The study of sediment samples shows that most of the sediments in the deep-ocean basins are made of materials that settle slowly from the ocean water above. These materials may come from organic or inorganic sources.

Figure 1 ▶ A scientist studies a core sample that was brought up from the drill aboard the research ship *JOIDES Resolution*.

Figure 2 ▶ This picture of sediment emptying out of the Mahakam River in Indonesia was taken by astronauts aboard the space shuttle *Columbia*.

Inorganic Sediments

Some ocean-basin sediments are rock particles that were carried from land by rivers. When a river empties into the ocean, the river deposits its sediment load, as shown in **Figure 2.** Most of these sediments are deposited along the shore and on the continental shelf. However, large quantities of these sediments occasionally slide down continental slopes to the ocean floor below. The force of the slide creates powerful turbidity currents that spread the sediments over the deep-ocean basins. Other deep ocean–basin sediments consist of fine particles of rock, including volcanic dust, that have been blown great distances out to sea by the wind. These particles land on the surface of the water, sink, and gradually settle to the bottom of the ocean.

Icebergs also provide sediments that can end up on the ocean basins. As a glacier moves across the land, the glacier picks up rock. The rock becomes embedded in the ice and moves with the glacier. When an iceberg breaks from the glacier, drifts out to sea, and melts, the rock material sinks to the ocean floor.

Even meteorites contribute to deep ocean-basin sediments. Much of a meteorite vaporizes as it enters Earth's atmosphere. The remaining cosmic dust falls to Earth's surface. Because most of Earth's surface is ocean, most meteorite fragments fall into the ocean and become part of the sediments on the ocean floor.

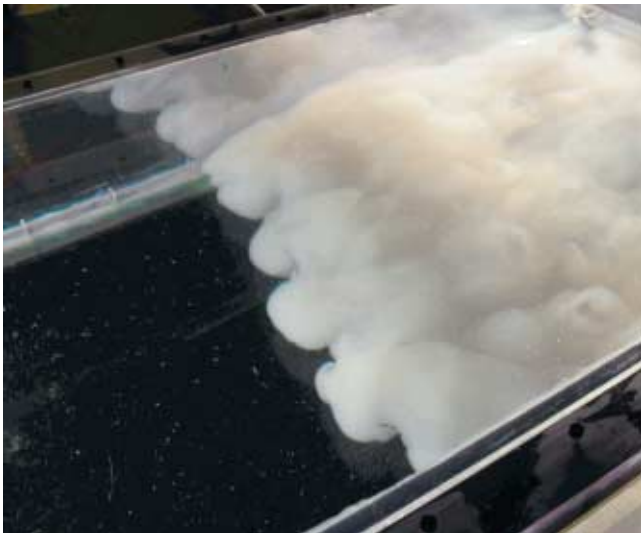
Connection to PHYSICS

Turbidity Currents

Underwater landslides can be caused by earthquakes or can happen when the sediment-water mixture becomes denser than the surrounding water. These landslides form currents called *turbidity currents*.

Gravity powers turbidity currents. As the dense sediment mixture moves downhill, it picks up sediment. This added sediment increases the current's density, which increases the current's speed. Turbidity currents can travel at speeds of more than 100 km/h.

The speed and composition of these currents make them powerful agents of erosion. One turbidity current may move billions of kilograms of mud, rock, and sand down a slope. Sediments are deposited as the speed of the current decreases. A turbidity current may gain enough momentum that it does not stop at the continental rise. Thus, it may spread sediment hundreds of kilometers onto the abyssal plain.



This simulated turbidity current was created in a laboratory. The density of the sediment-filled water causes it to move downhill like a landslide does.

Figure 3 ▶ Nodules, such as these mined from the East Pacific Rise, are rich in a variety of minerals.

MATH PRACTICE

Ocean-floor Sediments Ocean-floor sediments are composed of an average of 54% biogenic sediments, 45% Earth rocks and dust, less than 1% precipitation of dissolved materials (nodules and phosphorite), and less than 1% of rocks and dust from space. If you collected 10,000 kg of ocean-floor sediment, how many kilograms of each type of ocean-floor sediment would you expect to find?

Biogenic Sediments

In many places on the ocean floor, almost all of the sediments are biogenic. The word *biogenic* comes from the Latin words *bios*, which means "life," and *genus*, which means "origin." Biogenic sediments are the remains of marine plants and animals. The two most common compounds found in organic sediments are silica, SiO_2, and calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$. Silica comes primarily from microscopic organisms called *diatoms* and *radiolarians*. Calcium carbonate comes mostly from the skeletons of tiny organisms called *foraminiferans*.

Chemical Deposits

When chemical reactions take place in the ocean, solid materials can form. When substances that are dissolved in ocean water crystallize, these materials settle to the ocean floor as potato-shaped lumps of minerals called **nodules.** Nodules, such as the ones shown in **Figure 3,** are commonly located on the abyssal plains. Nodules are composed mainly of the oxides of manganese, nickel, copper, and iron. Other minerals, such as phosphorite, are carried in the ocean water before they precipitate and settle to the ocean floor.

Reading Check **How do nodules form? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 20 min

Diatoms

Procedure

1. Observe **diatoms** under a **microscope.**
2. Sketch what you see. Make sure to note the magnification.

Analysis

1. What characteristics of the diatoms did you observe?
2. Propose one possible function for each of the structures you observed.

nodule a lump of minerals that is made of oxides of manganese, iron, copper, or nickel and that is found in scattered groups on the ocean floor

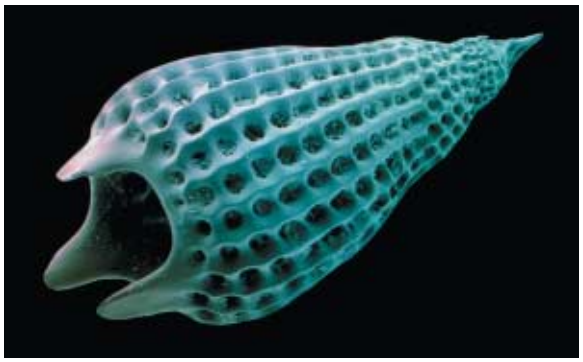


Figure 4 ▶ The remains of diatoms (left) and radiolarians (right), both magnified hundreds of times in these photos, are important components of biogenic sediments on the ocean floor.

Physical Classification of Sediments

Deep ocean-floor sediments can be classified into two basic types. *Muds* are very fine silt- and clay-sized particles of rock. One common type of mud on the abyssal plains is red clay. Red clay is made of at least 40% clay particles and is mixed with silt, sand, and biogenic material. This clay can vary in color from red to gray, blue, green, or yellow-brown. About 40% of the ocean floor is covered with soft, fine sediment called *ooze*. At least 30% of the ooze is biogenic materials, such as the remains of microscopic sea organisms. The remaining material is fine mud.

Ooze can be classified into two types. *Calcareous ooze* is ooze that is made mostly of calcium carbonate. Calcareous ooze is never found below a depth of 5 km, because at depths between 3 km and 5 km, calcium carbonate dissolves in the deep, cold ocean water. *Siliceous ooze*, which can be found at any depth, is made of mostly silicon dioxide, which comes from the shells of radiolarians and diatoms. Examples of remains of these organisms are shown in **Figure 4.** Most siliceous ooze is found in the cool, nutrient-rich ocean waters around Antarctica because of the abundance of diatoms and radiolarians in that location.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this topic, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Ocean-Floor Sediments
SciLinks code: HQ61068

Section 3 Review

1. **Describe** the formation of two different types of ocean-floor sediments.
2. **Summarize** how icebergs contribute to deep ocean-basin sediments.
3. **Explain** how substances that are dissolved in ocean water travel to the ocean floor.
4. **Explain** how ocean-floor sediments are classified by physical composition.
5. **Describe** how scientists define the word *mud*.
6. **Compare** the compositions of calcareous ooze and siliceous ooze.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Inferences** What could you infer from a core sample of a layer of sediment that contains volcanic ash and dust?
8. **Applying Ideas** Some businesses have tried to develop methods of extracting nodules from the ocean. Name two factors that businesses should consider when they are determining whether extracting nodules is profitable.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *nodule, inorganic sediment, biogenic sediment, diatom, chemical deposit,* and *ocean-floor sediment.*

Chapter 19 Highlights

Sections

1 The Water Planet

Key Terms

global ocean, 471
sea, 471
oceanography, 472
sonar, 473

Key Concepts

- The global ocean can be divided into five major oceans—the Pacific, Atlantic, Indian, Arctic, and Southern Oceans—and many smaller seas.
- Oceanography is the study of the oceans and the seas. Oceanographers study the ocean using research ships, sonar, and submersibles.
- Sonar is a system that uses acoustic signals and echo returns to determine the location of objects or to communicate.

2 Features of the Ocean Floor

continental margin, 475
deep-ocean basin, 475
trench, 477
abyssal plain, 477

- The areas around continents that are shallow parts of the ocean floor are called *continental margins*.
- Continental margins include the continental shelf, the continental slope, and the continental rise.
- Features of deep-ocean basins include trenches, abyssal plains, mid-ocean ridges, and seamounts.

3 Ocean-Floor Sediments

core sample, 479
nodule, 481

- Core samples are taken by drilling into sediment layers. Scientists study core samples to learn about the composition and characteristics of ocean-floor sediments.
- Ocean-floor sediments form from inorganic and biogenic materials as well as from chemical deposits.
- Based on physical characteristics, deep ocean–floor sediments are classified as mud or as ooze.

Chapter 19 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *oceanography*
2. *sonar*
3. *core sample*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *ocean* and *sea*
5. *submersible* and *nodule*
6. *continental margin* and *deep-ocean basin*
7. *global ocean* and *sea*
8. *mud* and *ooze*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. A self-propelled, free-moving submarine that is equipped for ocean research is a
   a. turbidity. **c.** bathyscaph.
   b. bathysphere. **d.** guyot.

10. A system that is used for determining the depth of the ocean floor is
    a. a guyot. **c.** a bathysphere.
    b. radiolarians. **d.** sonar.

11. The parts of the ocean floor that are made up of continental crust are called
    a. continental margins.
    b. abyssal plains.
    c. mid-ocean ridges.
    d. trenches.

12. The accumulation of sediments at the base of the continental slope is called the
    a. trench.
    b. turbidity current.
    c. continental margin.
    d. continental rise.

13. The deepest parts of the ocean are called
    a. trenches.
    b. submarine canyons.
    c. abyssal plains.
    d. continental rises.

14. Large quantities of the inorganic sediment that makes up the continental rise come from
    a. turbidity currents.
    b. earthquakes.
    c. diatoms.
    d. nodules.

15. Potato-shaped lumps of minerals on the ocean floor are called
    a. guyots. **c.** foraminiferans.
    b. nodules. **d.** diatoms.

16. Very fine particles of silt and clay that have settled to the ocean floor are called
    a. muds. **c.** guyots.
    b. seamounts. **d.** nodules.

Short Answer

17. What is the differences between a seamount and a guyot?

18. Explain how sonar is used to study the oceans.

19. List four ways that scientists can learn about the deep ocean.

20. How do fine sediments reach the deep-ocean bottom?

21. What effects do deep-ocean trenches have on the sediment thickness of the abyssal plain?

22. List the three main types of ocean-floor sediments, and describe how they are deposited.

Critical Thinking

23. Making Comparisons The exploration of the ocean depths has been compared with the exploration of space. What similarities exist between these two environments and the attempts by people to explore them?

24. Making Predictions What may be the eventual fate of seamounts as they are carried along the spreading oceanic crust?

25. Analyzing Ideas A type of fish is known to exist only in one river in the central United States. Explain how the fossilized remains of this fish might become part of the sediments on the ocean floor.

26. Analyzing Relationships Explain how it is possible that scientists have found some red clays on the ocean floor that contain material from outer space.

Concept Mapping

27. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *deep-ocean basin, continental shelf, mud, ooze, calcareous ooze, siliceous ooze,* and *sediment*.

Math Skills

28. Making Calculations The total area of Earth is approximately 511,000,000 km^2. About 71% of Earth's surface is covered with water. Calculate the area of Earth, in square kilometers, that is covered with water.

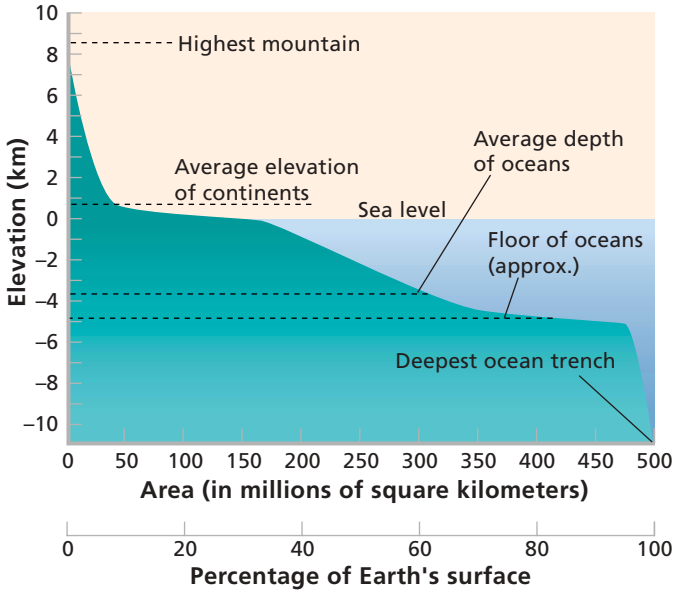
Writing Skills

29. Writing from Research Prepare a brief report on the different types of submersibles. Your report should explain the special features of each type of submersible as well as how each type has contributed to oceanographers' knowledge of the oceans.

30. Creative Writing Create an imaginary walking tour of the ocean basins. Your tour should begin at the edge of a continent—perhaps at a beach on the east coast of Florida. Explain exactly what tourists should look for along the continental margin and the ocean floor on their way to the western coast of Africa.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below compares elevations of land and depths of oceans on Earth's surface. Use the graph to answer the questions that follow.



31. What percentage of Earth's surface is covered by land?

32. Which is greater: the elevation of the highest mountain above sea level or the depth of the deepest ocean trench below sea level?

33. Relative to sea level, how many times greater is the average depth of the ocean than the average elevation of land?

34. According to this diagram, how many millions of square kilometers of crust is under ocean water?

Chapter 19 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 The global ocean is divided into which of the following oceans, in order of decreasing size?
A. Atlantic, Pacific, Arctic, Indian
B. Arctic, Indian, Atlantic, Pacific
C. Pacific, Arctic, Indian, Atlantic
D. Pacific, Atlantic, Indian, Arctic

2 What in the name for a vast, flat area of a deep-ocean basin?
F. trench
G. seamount
H. abyssal plain
I. mid-ocean ridge

3 What are very fine, silt- and clay-sized particles of rock found on the ocean floor called?
A. muds
B. calcareous ooze
C. siliceous ooze
D. sand

4 The study of deep-ocean sediment samples shows that
F. most of the sediments came from the crust.
G. most of the sediments settled from above.
H. sediments cannot be organic.
I. sediments cannot be inorganic.

5 Which of the following affects the ocean's salinity?
A. number of fish
B. wave size
C. evaporation
D. wave speed

Directions (6–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 The surface area of Earth is about 511,000,000 km^2. About 70% of the Earth's surface is covered by water and the Pacific Ocean makes up 50% of this amount. Calculate the surface area of Earth that is covered by the Pacific Ocean.

7 What is the name of the process used to remove salt from seawater?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–10): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Life on a Continental Shelf

While fish, mammals, and other forms of life can be found throughout these ocean waters, most life in the ocean is concentrated near the continental shores. The shallow waters of the continental shelf, which make up less than 10% of the ocean's total surface area, are home to an amazing array of plants, animals, and microscopic organisms.

Organisms such as coral and seaweed can grow on the ocean floor and still receive much needed sunlight that cannot penetrate deeper waters. The sunlight also makes the shallow waters much warmer than deeper abyssal waters. Algae flourishes in these warm, nutrient-rich waters and serves as food for many small ocean organisms. These organisms are in turn eaten by larger organisms. Even humans have become part of the food chain on the shelf. The vast majority of fish caught for human consumption are caught in waters above a continental shelf.

8 Which of the following statements about why humans catch so many fish in the waters over a continental shelf can be inferred from the information in the passage?
A. There are no fish in deeper waters.
B. Fish from deeper waters are inedible.
C. Humans do not have the technological ability to catch fish in deeper ocean waters.
D. There are larger and more varied fish populations over a continental shelf.

9 Coral reefs stop actively growing at depths of aboout 70 m. According to the passage, why might this be true?
F. Coral feed on algae in shallow waters.
G. Coral need sunlight to live, and sunlight can penetrate water only to a certain depth.
H. Coral need warmth, and the deeper ocean waters are too cold for them to survive.
I. Coral at greater depths are eaten by fish.

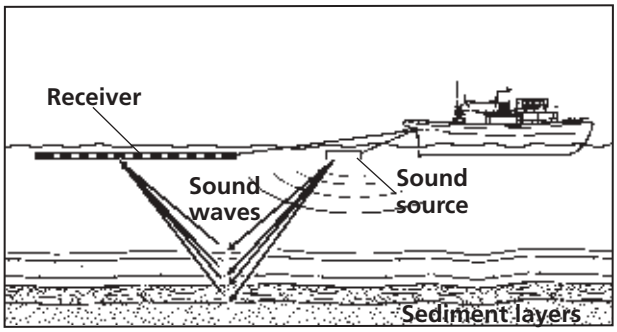
10 Why might the waters of a continental shelf have more nutrients than abyssal waters?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–13): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

Base your answer to question 11 on this image which shows how sonar equipment works.

Studying the Ocean Floor with Sonar



11 Which of the following best summarizes how sound waves are used?

A. A sound source dragged behind the boat emits waves that penetrate the different layers of the sea floor and bounce back to the receiver.

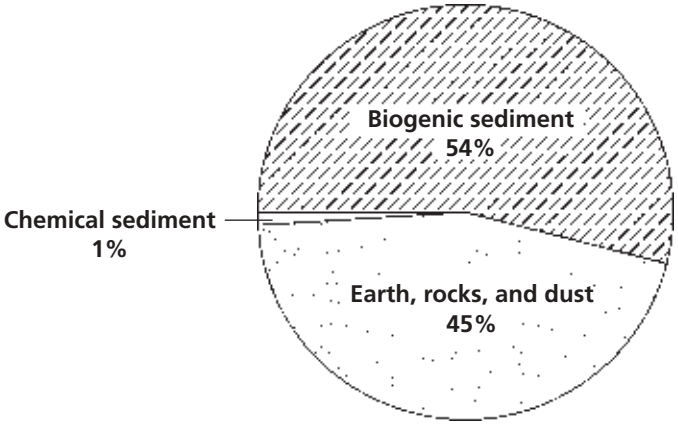
B. A sound source in front of the boat emits waves that penetrate the different layers of the sea floor and then bounce back to the receiver.

C. A receiver dragged behind the boat emits waves that penetrate the different layers of the sea floor and then bounce back to the receiver.

D. A receiver in front of the boat emits waves that penetrate the different layers of the sea floor and then bounce back to the receiver.

Base your answers to questions 12 and 13 on the pie graph below, which shows the composition of ocean-floor sediments.

Composition of Ocean-Floor Sediments



12 Why is there such a large difference between the percentage of biogenic sediment and the percentage of chemical sediment?

13 How did the inorganic materials in the two kinds of inorganic sediment shown on the pie graph above form and become part of the ocean floor?

Test TIP

Before choosing an answer to a question, try to answer the question without looking at the answer choices on the test.

Chapter 19

Skills Practice Lab

Ocean-Floor Sediments

Most of the ocean floor is covered with a layer of sediment that varies in thickness from 0.3 km to more than 1 km. Much of this sediment is thought to have originated on land through the process of weathering. Through erosion, the sediment has made its way to the deep-ocean basins. In this lab, you will use sediment samples of four particle sizes to determine the relationship between the size of particles and the settling rate of the particles in water.

Objectives

- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Observe and record** the settling rates of four different sediments.
- **Draw conclusions** about how particle size affects settling rate.
- **Identify** factors that affect settling rate of sediments besides particle size.

Materials

- balance, metric
- column, clear plastic, 80 cm × 4 cm
- cup, paper
- pencil, grease
- ring stand with clamp
- ruler, metric
- sieve, 4 mm, 2 mm, 0.5 mm
- soil, coarse, medium, medium-fine, and fine grain
- stopper, rubber
- stopwatch
- tape, adhesive
- teaspoon
- towels, paper
- water

Safety

PROCEDURE

1. Take one sample of sediment from each of the following size ranges: coarse, medium, medium-fine, and fine.
2. Plug one end of the plastic column with a rubber stopper, and secure the stopper to the column with tape. Place the column in a vertical position using the ring stand and clamp. Carefully fill the column with water to a level about 5 cm from the top, and allow the water to stand until all large air bubbles have escaped.
3. Use the grease pencil to mark the water level on the column. This will be the starting line.
4. Next, draw a line about 5 cm from the bottom of the column. This will be the finish line.
5. Have a member of your lab group put 1 tsp of the coarse sample into the water column. The other group member should record three time measurements as follows:

   a. Using a stopwatch, start timing when the first particles hit the start line on the column, and stop timing when they reach the finish line. Perform this procedure three times. Record the time for each trial in a table similar to the one shown below.

Soil samples	Trial 1	Trial 2	Trial 3	Average
Coarse	First time measurment:			
	Second time measurement:			
Medium	First time measurement:			
	Secont time measurement:			

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK

b. Next, use the stopwatch to determine how long it takes the last particle in the sample to travel from the start line to the finish line. Perform this procedure three times. Record the time for each trial in your table.

6. Determine the average time of the three trials for the first measurement. Do the same for the second measurement. Record the averages.

7. Pour the soil and water from the column into the container provided by your teacher. (Note: Do not pour the soil into the sink.)

8. Refill the plastic column with water up to the original level marked with the grease pencil.

9. Repeat steps 5, 6, and 7 for the remaining sediment sizes. Record the measurements and the averages in your table.

10. With the plastic column filled with water, pour 20 g of unsieved soil into the column, and allow the soil to settle for 5 minutes. After 5 minutes, look at the column and record your observations of both the settled sediment and the water. Repeat step 7, and then answer the questions below.

Step 5

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Organizing Data** Which particles settled fastest? Which particles settled slowest?

2. **Making Comparisons** Compare the settling time of the medium particles with the settling time of the medium-fine particles. Do similar-sized particles fall at the same rate?

3. **Making Inferences** In step 10, why did the water remain slightly cloudy even after most of the particles had settled?

4. **Evaluating Methods** How do the results in step 10 help to explain why the deep-ocean basins are covered with a very fine layer of sediment while areas near the shore are covered with coarse sediment?

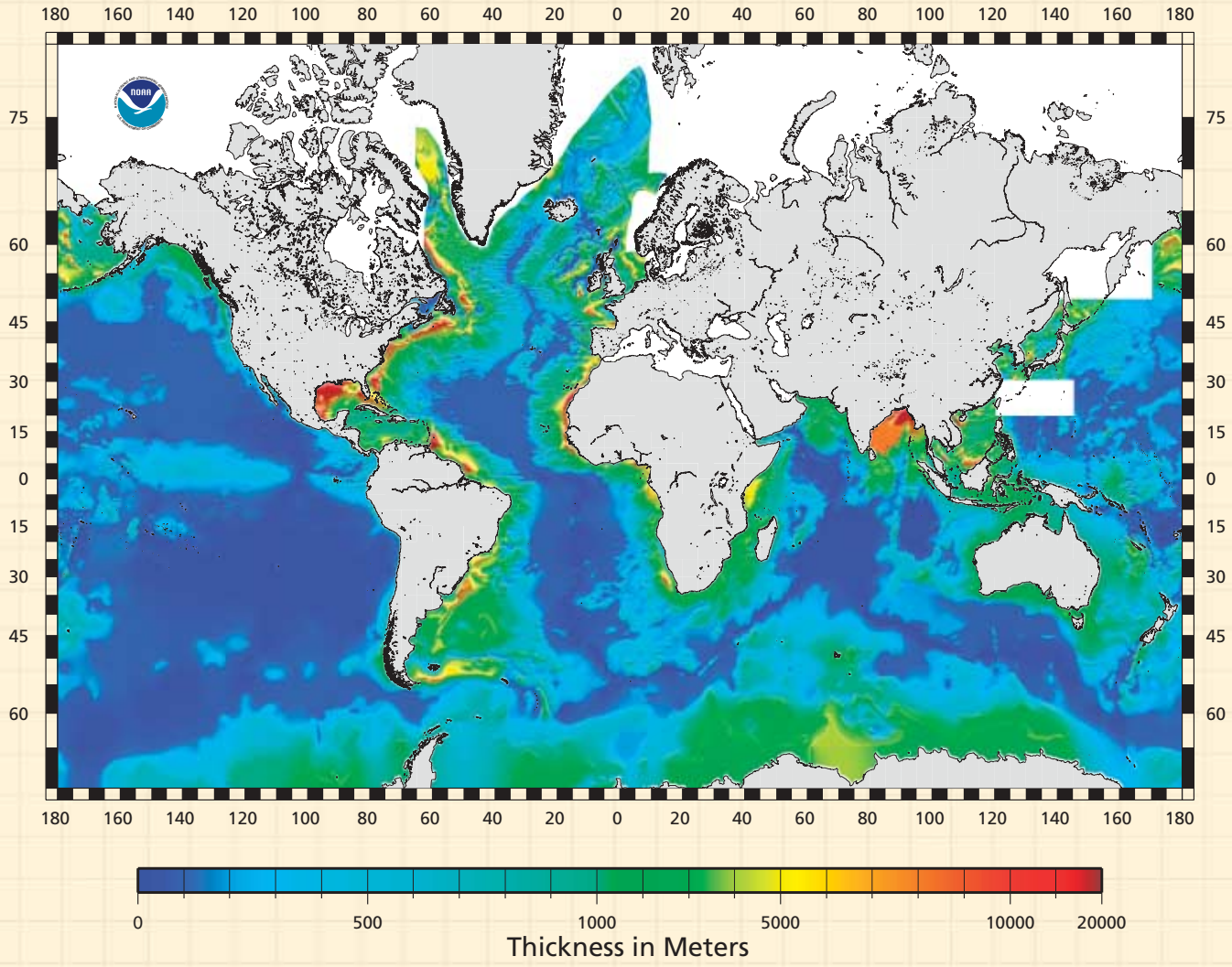
5. **Making Predictions** Other than size, what factors do you think would influence the speed at which particles fall in water? Explain your answer.

Extension

1. **Analyzing Predictions** Obtain particles of different shapes, such as long, cylindrical grains; flat, disk-shaped grains; round grains; and angular grains. Test the settling times of these grains, and write a brief paragraph that explains how grain shape affects the settling rate of particles in water.

MAPS in Action

Total Sediment Thickness of Earth's Oceans



Map Skills Activity

This map shows the total thicknesses of sediments on Earth's ocean floors. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using the Key** What is the approximate thickness of the sediment located at 45°S and 45°W?
2. **Analyzing Data** Use latitude and longitude to identify two areas that have the thickest sediments.
3. **Comparing Areas** Compare the amount of sediment near the middle of the oceans with the amount of sediment on the continental margins.
4. **Identifying Trends** Rivers deposit massive amounts of sediment when they reach the ocean. Based on this map, at what locations would you expect to find mouths of major rivers?
5. **Inferring Relationships** Which coast of South America—east or west—is most likely bordered by a trench?
6. **Analyzing Relationships** Why does this map contain white spaces even though the key lists no thickness that corresponds with the color white?

Oceanographer

"I chose oceanography because it's so environmental and large scale. You can see it and touch it."

—Lynne Talley Ph.D.

Lynne Talley is a physical oceanographer. Physical oceanographers study waves, tides, and currents in the ocean and the interactions between the ocean and the atmosphere. Talley's research focuses on large-scale patterns of ocean circulation that govern the worldwide movement of ocean waters. Her oceanography career began with a love for physics. Scientists also enter the field of oceanography from the fields of mathematics, geology, engineering, chemistry, biology, or ecology.

Going to Sea

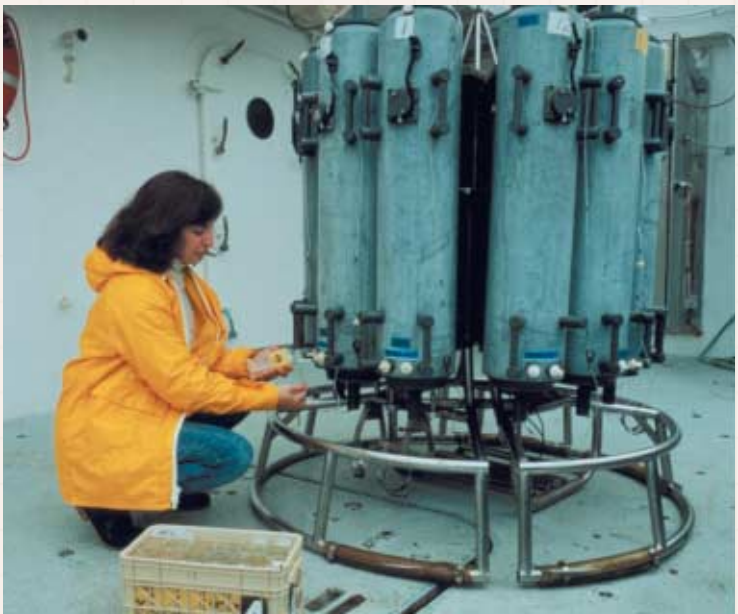
Unlike the many oceanographers who use remote-sensing aircraft and Earth-orbiting satellites to collect data, Talley is a seagoing oceanographer. She uses direct measurement techniques to collect data. Every two years, she goes to sea on a month-long research cruise. Scientists on the cruise measure the temperature, salinity, and dissolved oxygen of ocean waters at various depths. Water samples are analyzed for chemical "fingerprints," such as the isotope helium-3. The presence of helium-3 may indicate that the sampled waters were near the surface during thermonuclear weapons testing that began in the 1950s.

After each cruise, Talley uses computer programs to analyze the data collected on the cruise. "Because oceans cover almost three-fourths of the world's surface, they have a huge impact on climate," says Talley. By studying the global movements of ocean waters, Talley can trace the global movement of heat. She uses her data as a basis for building numerical models that help scientists predict future oceanic and atmospheric conditions.

Predicting Future Climate

Discovering how heat moves around Earth gives scientists a better understanding of global warming. Nations around the world are developing regulations to control global warming. Talley says that it is critical that such regulations be based on accurate data. "You must understand the actual processes occurring right now in order to predict change. You can't make up a model unless you understand the system."

▼ Lynne Talley uses this rosette sampler to take samples of ocean water at various depths.



SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this chapter, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Careers in Earth Science
SciLinks code: HQ60222

Chapter 20 Ocean Water

Sections

1 Properties of Ocean Water

2 Life in the Oceans

3 Ocean Resources

What You'll Learn

- What the properties of ocean water are
- How life survives in the ocean
- Why ocean resources are important

Why It's Relevant

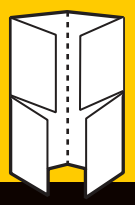
Earth's oceans play a vital role in Earth's ecology. Resources from the ocean provide humans with food, fuel, and fresh water.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Four-Corner Fold

Before you read the chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Four-Corner Fold" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label each flap of the four-corner fold with a topic. Write what you know about each topic under the appropriate flap. As you read the chapter, add other information that you learn.



▶ To avoid predators, chevron barracuda school in a spiraling tornado near the ocean surface in Kimbe Bay, Papua New Guinea. These fish get all of the nutrients they need for life from the ocean water in which they live.

Section 1 Properties of Ocean Water

Pure liquid water is tasteless, odorless, and colorless. However, the water in the ocean is not pure. Many solids and gases are dissolved in the ocean. In addition to dissolved substances, small particles of matter and tiny organisms are also suspended in ocean water. Ocean water is a complex mixture of chemicals that sustains a variety of plant and animal life.

Scientists describe ocean water by using a variety of properties, such as the presence of dissolved gases and the presence of dissolved solids, salinity, temperature, density, and color. Scientists study all of these properties to understand the complex interactions between the oceans, the atmosphere, and the land.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the chemical composition of ocean water.
- **Describe** the salinity, temperature, density, and color of ocean water.

KEY TERMS

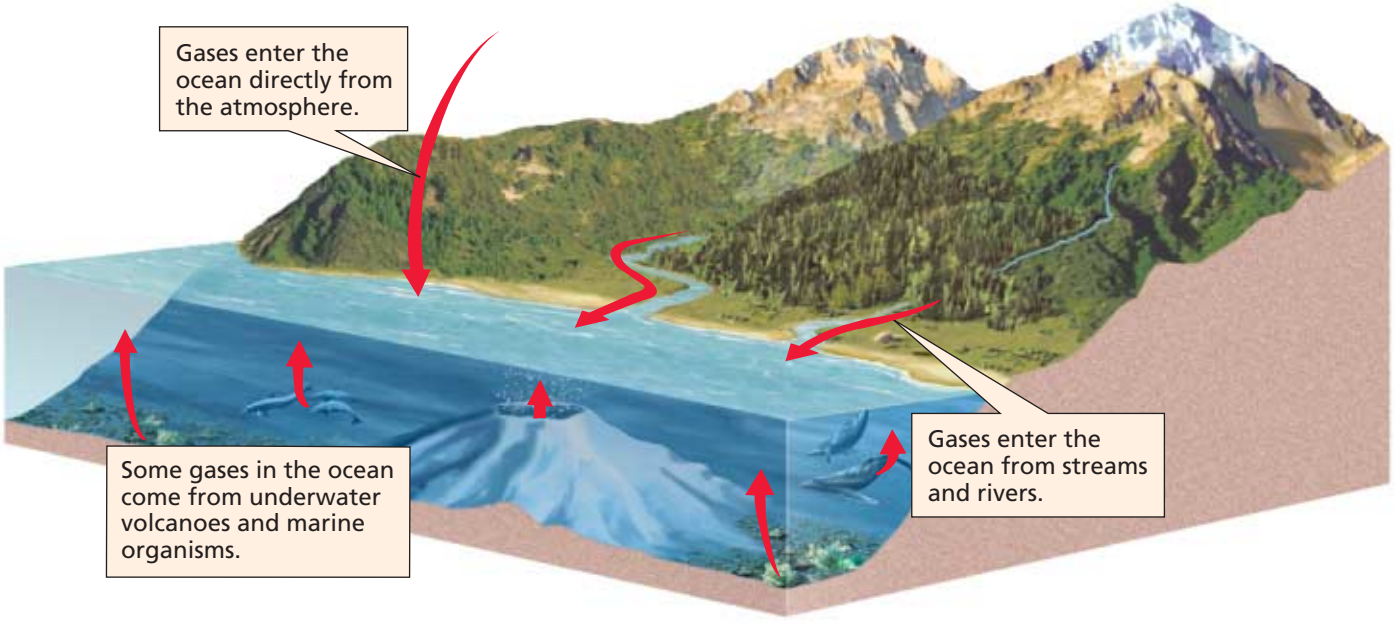
salinity
pack ice
thermocline
density

Dissolved Gases

The two principal gases in the atmosphere are nitrogen, N_2, and oxygen, O_2. These two gases are also the main gases dissolved in ocean water. While carbon dioxide, CO_2, is not a major component of the atmosphere, a large amount of this gas is dissolved in ocean water. Other atmospheric gases are also present in the ocean in small amounts.

Ocean water dissolves gases from a variety of sources, as shown in **Figure 1.** Gases may enter ocean water from water in streams and rivers. Some of the gases in ocean water come from volcanic eruptions beneath the ocean. Gases are also released directly into ocean water by organisms that live in the ocean. For example, many plants in the ocean make oxygen as a product of photosynthesis. However, most oxygen in the ocean enters at the surface of the ocean from the atmosphere.

Figure 1 ▶ Gases can enter the ocean from streams, volcanoes, organisms, and the atmosphere.



SCILINKS NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Properties of Ocean Water
SciLinks code: HQ61232

Temperature and Dissolved Gases

The temperature of water affects the amount of gas that dissolves in water. Gases dissolve more readily in cold water than in warm water. You may have noticed this phenomenon when your glass of soda quickly goes "flat" on a warm day. The soda goes flat quickly because the CO_2 that makes the soda bubbly escapes into the air. But if the soda is kept in the refrigerator, the soda will retain its fizz longer. Because cold water dissolves gases more readily, water at the surface of the ocean in cold regions dissolves larger amounts of gases than water in warm tropical regions does.

Gases also can return to the atmosphere from the ocean. If the water temperature rises, less gas will remain dissolved, and the excess gas will be released into the atmosphere. For example, warm equatorial ocean waters tend to release CO_2 into the atmosphere, but ocean waters at cooler, higher latitudes take up large amounts of CO_2. Therefore, the ocean and the atmosphere are continuously exchanging gases as water temperatures change.

The Oceans as a Carbon Sink

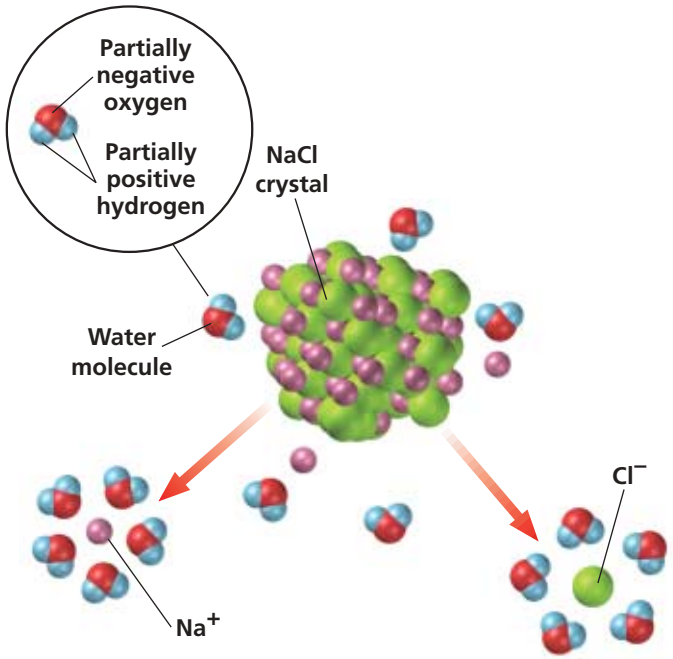
Oceans contain more than 60 times as much carbon as the atmosphere does. Dissolved CO_2 may be trapped in the oceans for hundreds to thousands of years. Because of this ability to dissolve and contain a large amount of CO_2, the oceans are commonly referred to as a *carbon sink*. Because gaseous CO_2 affects the atmosphere's ability to trap thermal energy from the sun, the oceans are important in the regulation of climate.

Connection to CHEMISTRY

How Substances Dissolve

A water molecule is one oxygen atom bonded to two hydrogen atoms. The oxygen atom pulls electrons away from the hydrogen atoms, which gives the hydrogen atoms a partial positive charge and gives the oxygen atom a partial negative charge. This uneven distribution of charges allows the water molecule to attract both positive and negative ions.

The figure at right shows how a sodium chloride, NaCl, crystal dissolves in water. The partially negative oxygen atoms in water molecules attract the positively charged sodium ions of the salt. The partially positive hydrogen atoms in the water molecules attract the negatively charged chloride ions of the salt. When the force of attraction between the ions and the water molecules becomes stronger than the force of attraction between the sodium and chloride atoms, the ions are pulled away from the crystal. The ions are then surrounded by water molecules. Eventually, all of the ions in the crystal are pulled into solution, and the substance is completely dissolved.



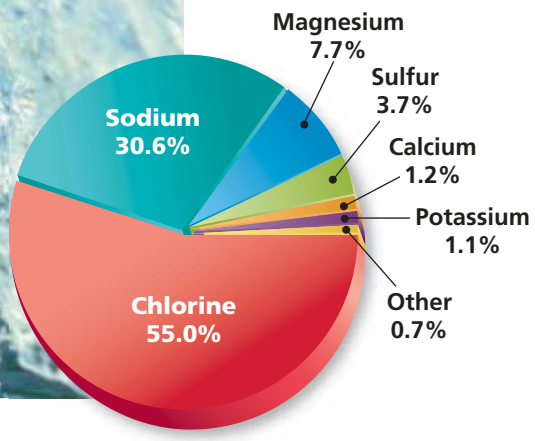


Figure 2 ▶ Dissolved solids make up 3.5% of the mass of ocean water. More than 85% of these dissolved solids are sodium and chlorine.

Dissolved Solids

Ocean water is 96.5% pure water, or H_2O. Dissolved solids make up about 3.5% of the mass of ocean water. These dissolved solids, commonly called *sea salts*, give the ocean its salty taste.

Most Abundant Elements

Solids dissolved in ocean water are composed of about 75 chemical elements. The six most abundant elements in ocean water are chlorine, sodium, magnesium, sulfur, calcium, and potassium. The salt halite, which is made of sodium and chloride ions, makes up more than 85% of the ocean's dissolved solids. The remaining dissolved solids consist of various other salts and minerals, as shown in **Figure 2.** *Trace elements* are elements that exist in very small amounts. Gold, zinc, and phosphorus are some of the trace elements that are found in the ocean.

Sources of Dissolved Solids

Most of the elements that form sea salts come from three main sources—volcanic eruptions, chemical weathering of rock on land, and chemical reactions between sea water and newly formed sea-floor rocks. Each year, rivers carry about 400 billion kilograms of dissolved solids into the ocean. Most of these dissolved solids are salts. As water evaporates from the ocean, salts and other minerals remain in the ocean. Only a small fraction of these salts and minerals are returned to the land in the water that falls as rain and snow during the water cycle.

Reading Check **How do dissolved solids enter the ocean? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 10 min

Dissolving Solids

Procedure

1. Heat **200 ml of water** in a **beaker** over a **hot plate** until the water is about 60°C.
2. Dissolve **table salt** in the water 1 tsp at a time until no more salt will dissolve. Record the total amount of salt that dissolves.
3. Dissolve table salt 1 tsp at a time into **200 ml of water** that has been chilled in the refrigerator to about 5°C. Record the total amount of salt that dissolves.

Analysis

1. Which water sample dissolved the most salt?
2. Describe what would happen to the dissolved salt in the hot water if the hot water was chilled to 10°C.

Salinity of Ocean Water

salinity a measure of the amount of dissolved salts in a given amount of liquid

One of the biggest differences between ocean water and fi is the high concentration of salts in ocean water. **Salinity** sure of the amount of dissolved salts and other solids liquid. Salinity is measured by the number of grams of solids in 1,000 g of ocean water. For example, if 1,000 g water contained 35 g of solids, the salinity of the sam be about 35 parts salt per 1,000 parts ocean water. This ment is written as *salinity* = 35 parts per thousand, Thus, the ocean is about 3.5% salts. However, fresh wa than 0.1% salt or has a salinity of 1‰.

Factors That Change Salinity

Evaporation and freezing remove only water molecules liquid part of the ocean; dissolved salts and other solic Where the rate of evaporation is high, the salinity water increases. Therefore, tropical waters have a hig ity at the surface than polar waters do. Salinity also as depth increases. Because water evaporates and free surface, surface water generally has a higher salinity water does.

Over most of the surface of the ocean, salinity ra 33‰ to 36‰. The global ocean has an average salinity However, salinity at particular locations can vary g shown in **Figure 3.** The salinity of the Red Sea, for e more than 40‰. The high salinity is due to the hot, d around the Red Sea, which causes high levels of evapo

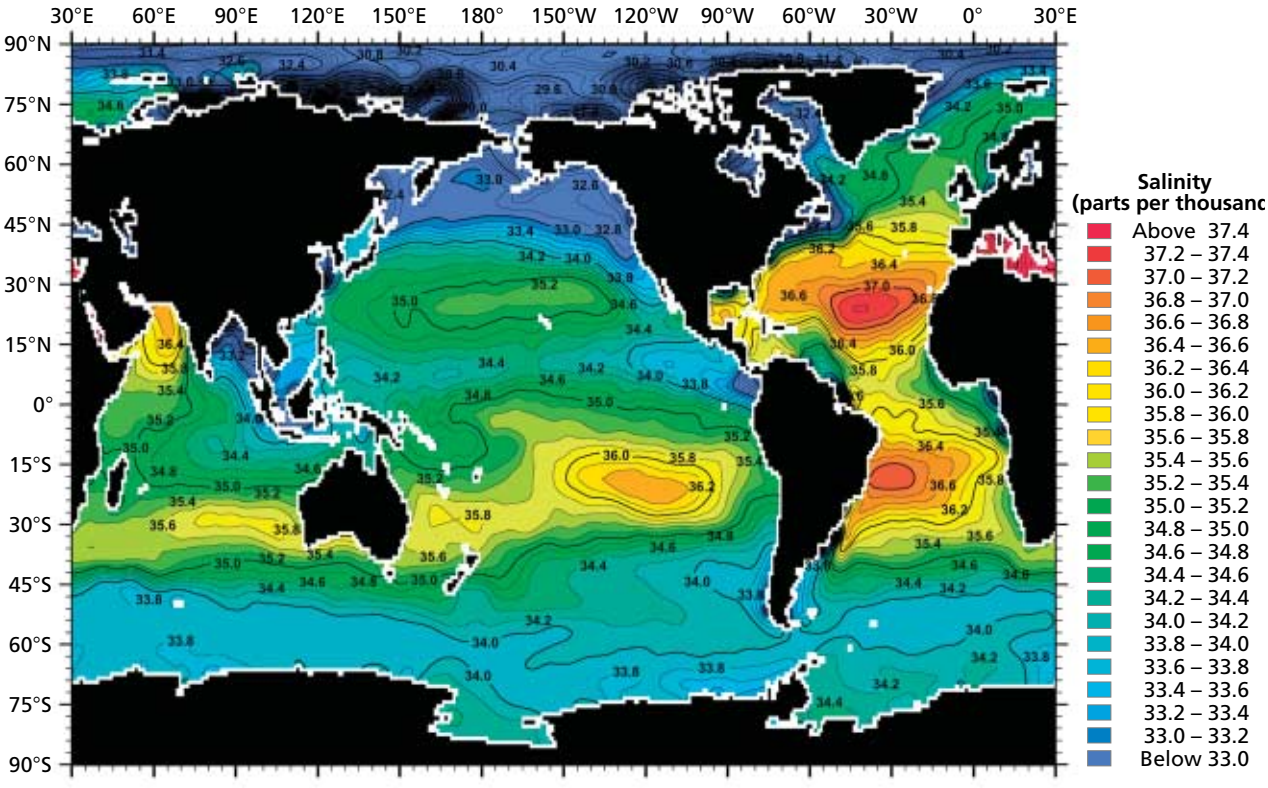


Figure 3 ▶ The average surface salinity of the global ocean varies from one location to another. ***What effect do river mouths tend to have on the salinity of the surrounding ocean water?***

Figure 4 ▶ The surface temperature of tropical ocean water (right) can be as high as 30°C. However, the surface temperature of polar ocean water (left) is below the freezing point of fresh water.

Temperature of Ocean Water

Like ocean salinity, ocean temperature varies depending on depth and location on the surface of the oceans. The range of ocean temperatures is affected by the amount of solar energy an area receives and by the movement of water in the ocean.

Surface Water

The mixing of the ocean's surface water distributes heat downward to a depth of 100 to 300 m. Thus, the temperature of this zone of surface water is relatively constant and decreases only slightly as depth increases. However, the temperature of surface water does decrease as latitude increases. Therefore, polar surface waters are much cooler than the surface waters in the Tropics, as shown in **Figure 4.**

The total amount of solar energy that reaches the surface of the ocean is much greater at the equator than in areas near the North and South Poles. In tropical waters, surface temperatures of about 30°C are common. Surface temperatures in polar oceans, however, usually drop below –2°C. Because ocean water freezes at about –2°C, vast areas of sea ice exist in polar oceans. A floating layer of sea ice that completely covers an area of the ocean surface is called **pack ice.** Usually, pack ice is no more than 5 m thick because the ice insulates the water below and prevents it from freezing. In the middle latitudes, the ocean surface temperature varies depending on the seasons. In some areas, the ocean surface temperature may vary by as much as 10°C to 20°C between summer and winter.

pack ice a floating layer of sea ice that completely covers an area of the ocean surface

Reading Check **What factors affect the surface temperature of the ocean? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

The Thermocline

Because the sun cannot directly heat ocean water below the surface layer, the temperature of the water decreases sharply as depth increases. In most places in the ocean, this sudden decrease in temperature begins close to the surface. The layer in a body of water in which water temperature drops with increased depth faster than it does in other layers is called the **thermocline.**

thermocline a layer in a body of water in which water temperature drops with increased depth faster than it does in other layers

The thermocline exists because the water near the surface becomes less dense as energy from the sun warms the water. This warm water cannot mix easily with the cold, dense water below. Thus, a thermocline marks the distinct separation between the warm surface water and the cold deep water. Below the thermocline, the temperature of the water continues to decrease, but it decreases very slowly, as shown in **Figure 5.** Changing temperature or shifting currents may alter the depth of the thermocline or cause the thermocline to disappear. Nevertheless, a thermocline is usually present beneath much of the ocean surface.

Deep Water

In the deep zones of the ocean, the temperature of the water is usually about 2°C. The colder the water is, the denser it is. The density of cold, deep water controls the slow movement of deep ocean currents. This movement occurs when the cold, dense water at the poles sinks and flows beneath warm water toward the equator. Cold, deep ocean water also holds more dissolved gases than warm, shallow ocean water does.

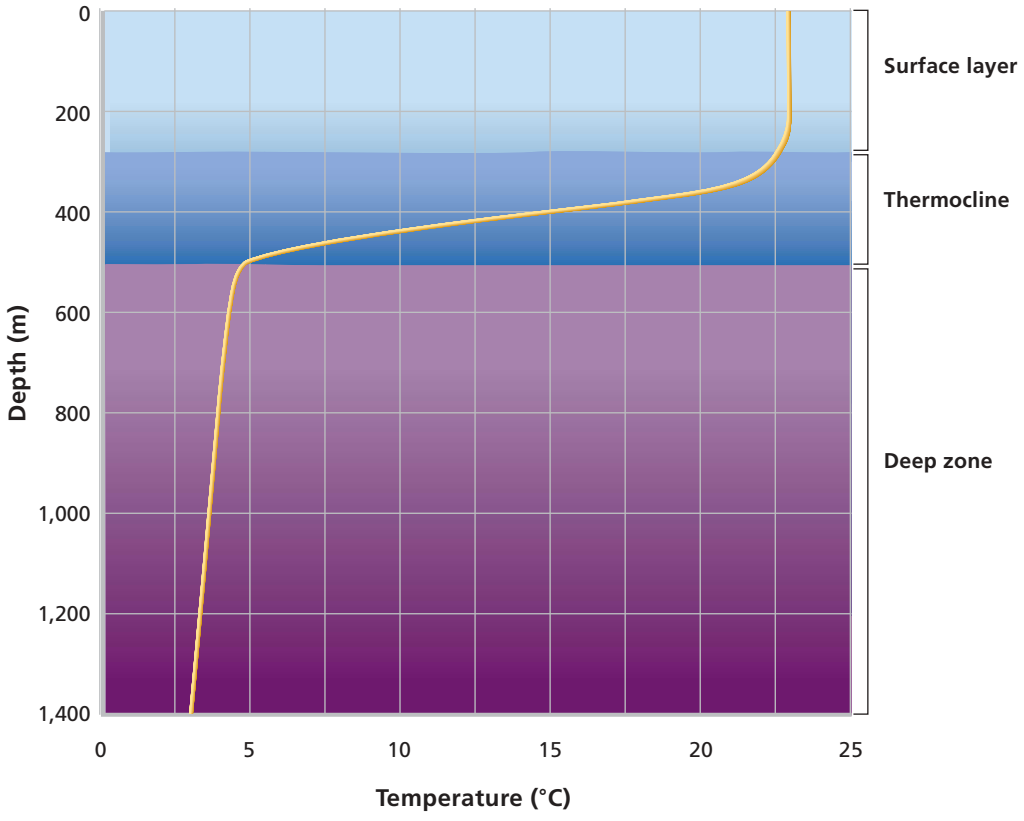


Figure 5 ▶ The temperature of ocean water decreases as depth increases. Just below the surface is a thermocline, an area where the water temperature decreases sharply.

Density of Ocean Water

The mass of a substance per unit volume is that substance's **density.** For example, 1 cm^3 of pure water has a mass of 1 g. So, the density of pure water is 1 g/cm^3. Different liquids have different densities, as shown in **Figure 6.** Two factors affect the density of ocean water: salinity and the temperature of the water. Dissolved solids, which are mainly salts, add mass to the water. The large amount of dissolved solids in ocean water makes it denser than pure fresh water. Ocean water has a density between 1.026 g/cm^3 and 1.028 g/cm^3.

Ocean water becomes denser as it becomes colder and less dense as it becomes warmer. Water temperature affects the density of ocean water more than salinity does. Therefore, the densest ocean water is found in the polar regions, where the ocean surface is coldest. This cold, dense water sinks and moves through the ocean basins near the ocean floor.

Figure 6 ▶ This graduated cylinder contains six liquids that have different densities. From top to bottom they are corn oil, water, shampoo, dish detergent, anti-freeze, and maple syrup. ***Which liquid has the lowest density?***

density the ratio of the mass of a substance to the volume of the substance; commonly expressed as grams per cubic centimeter for solids and liquids and as grams per liter for gases

Reading Check **Explain why ocean water is denser than fresh water. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 20 min

Density Factors

Procedure

1. Fill a **deep, clear plastic container** half full with **room temperature water.**
2. In a **1 L beaker,** mix **1/8 cup of table salt,** a **few drops of red food coloring,** and 1 L of room temperature water. Stir the mixture until the salt is dissolved.
3. Add the red saltwater mixture to the water in the clear plastic container. Record your observations.
4. In the **1 L beaker,** mix a **few drops of blue food coloring** with water that is 8°C.
5. Slowly add the cold, blue water to the clear plastic container in step 3. Record your observations.

Analysis

1. Describe what happened when you added the red salt water to the fresh water. Which is denser: fresh water or salt water?
2. What happened when you added the cold water to the room temperature water? Which is denser: cold water or room temperature water?
3. What would you expect to happen if the blue water was heated, instead of cooled?
4. Based on your observations, where would you expect the water in the ocean to be the least dense? the most dense?
5. Describe water layering where a river empties into the ocean.

Figure 7 ▶ Ocean water appears blue as far as 100 m below the surface.

Color of Ocean Water

Have you ever wondered why the ocean appears blue, as shown in **Figure 7?** The color of ocean water is determined by the way it absorbs or reflects sunlight. White light from the sun contains light from all the visible wavelengths of the electromagnetic spectrum. Much of the sunlight penetrates the surface of the ocean and is absorbed by the water. Water absorbs most of the wavelengths, or colors, of visible light. Only the blue wavelengths tend to be reflected. The reflection of this blue light makes ocean water appear blue.

Why Is Ocean Color Important?

Substances or organisms in ocean water, such as phytoplankton, can affect the color of the water. *Phytoplankton* are microscopic plants in the ocean that provide food to many of the ocean's organisms. Phytoplankton absorb red and blue light, but reflect green light. Therefore, the presence and amount of phytoplankton can affect the shade of blue of the ocean.

By studying variations in the color of the ocean, scientists can determine the presence of phytoplankton in the ocean. Because phytoplankton require nutrients, the presence or absence of phytoplankton can indicate the health of the ocean. If the color of an area of the ocean indicates that no phytoplankton is present, pollution may have prevented phytoplankton growth.

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** how water temperature affects the ability of the ocean water to dissolve gasses.
2. **Summarize** how freezing and evaporation affect salinity.
3. **Describe** the composition of ocean water.
4. **Define** *thermocline*.
5. **Describe** how temperature and salinity affect the density of ocean water.
6. **Explain** how the density of ocean water drives the movement of deep ocean currents.
7. **Explain** why shallow ocean water appears to be blue in color.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Making Inferences** Why does the surface temperature of ocean water in middle latitudes vary during the year?
9. **Understanding Relationships** Why would surface water in the North Sea be more likely to contain a high percentage of dissolved gases than the surface water in the Caribbean Sea would?
10. **Predicting Consequences** If global temperatures increase, how would this change affect the ability of the oceans to absorb CO_2?
11. **Identifying Relationships** If an area of the ocean has a large decrease in phytoplankton, how would this change affect other ocean organisms? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

12. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *ocean water, salinity, temperature, density, dissolved solids,* and *dissolved gas.*

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

Section 2 Life in the Oceans

Most marine organisms depend on two major factors for their survival—the essential nutrients available in ocean water and sunlight. Variations in either of these factors affect the ability of aquatic organisms to survive and flourish.

Ocean Chemistry and Marine Life

The chemistry of the ocean is a balance of dissolved gases and solids that are essential to marine life. Marine organisms help maintain the chemical balance of ocean water. They do this by removing nutrients and gases from the ocean while returning other nutrients and gases to the ocean. For example, marine plants absorb large amounts of carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and sulfur. They also absorb other elements such as nitrogen, phosphorus, and silicon. Marine organisms also return nutrients and gases to the ocean. For example, photosynthetic marine plants remove carbon dioxide from ocean water to produce oxygen.

Marine organisms, such as the sea horse shown in **Figure 1,** also help recycle nutrients in the ocean. During a marine organism's lifetime, the organism absorbs and stores nutrients from the ocean. These nutrients are eventually returned to the water when the organism dies. For example, bacteria in the water digest the remains of the dead organisms. The bacteria then release the essential nutrients from the dead organisms into the ocean.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how marine organisms alter the chemistry of ocean water.
- **Explain** why plankton can be called *the foundation of life in the ocean*.
- **Describe** the major zones of life in the ocean.

KEY TERMS

upwelling
plankton
nekton
benthos
benthic zone
pelagic zone

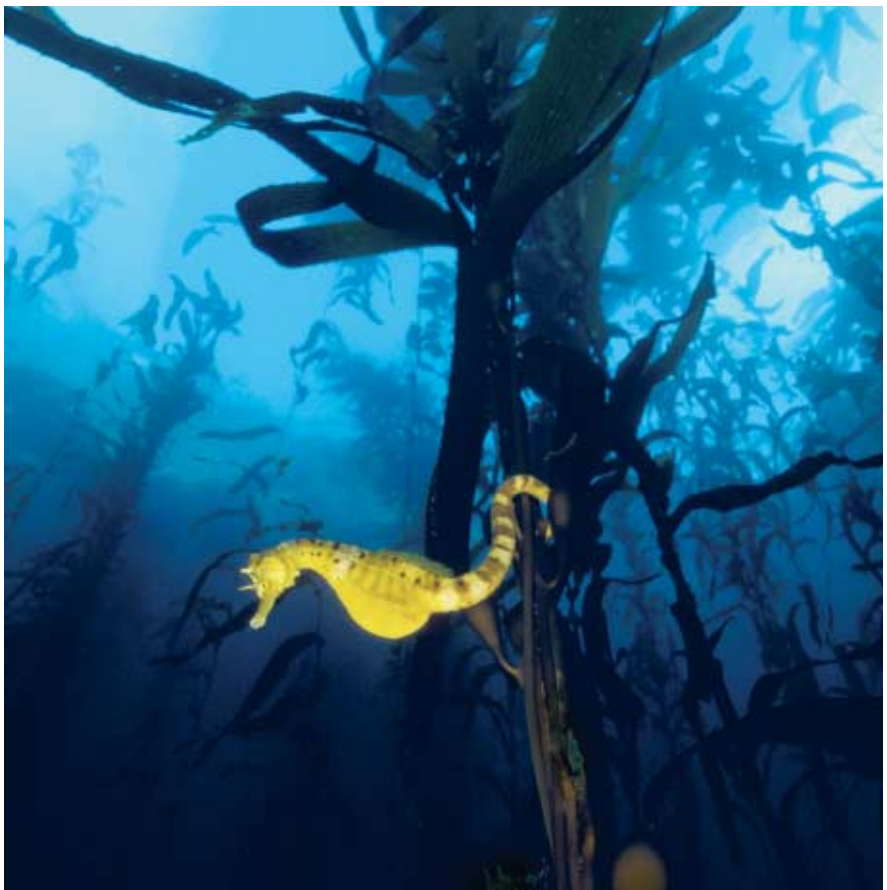


Figure 1 ▶ Like many marine organisms, this sea horse gets many of the nutrients it needs from the ocean water.

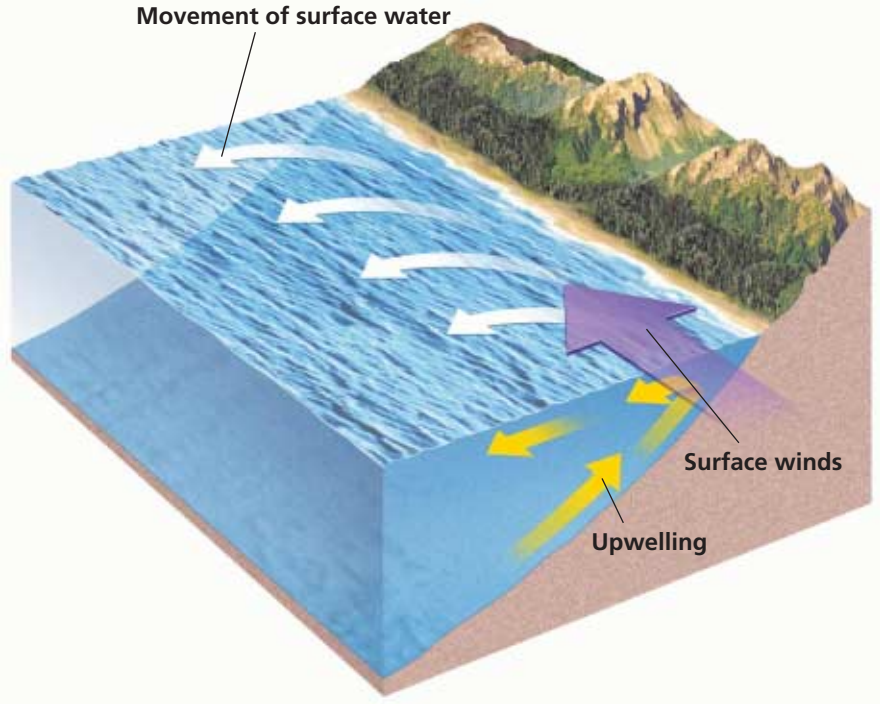


Figure 2 ▶ Upwelling is caused by offshore movement of surface water. ***How might stormy weather affect the process of upwelling?***

upwelling the movement of deep, cold, and nutrient-rich water to the surface

plankton the mass of mostly microscopic organisms that float or drift freely in the waters of aquatic (freshwater and marine) environments

nekton all organisms that swim actively in open water, independent of currents

benthos organisms that live at the bottom of oceans or bodies of fresh water

Upwelling

The distribution of life in the ocean depends on the way life-supporting nutrients cycle in the ocean water. In general, all of the elements necessary for life are consumed by organisms near the surface. Elements are then released back into the ocean water when organisms die, sink to lower depths, and decay. Thus, deep water is a storage area for the nutrients needed for life. These nutrients must, however, return to the surface before most organisms in the ocean can use them.

One way that nutrients return to the surface is through a process called upwelling. **Upwelling** is the movement of deep, cold, and nutrient-rich water to the surface, as shown in **Figure 2.** When wind blows steadily parallel to a coastline, surface water moves farther offshore. The deep, cold water then rises to replace the surface water that has moved away from the shore.

Figure 3 ▶ Plankton are so tiny that you need a microscope to see them.

Marine Food Webs

Because most marine organisms need sunlight as well as nutrients, most marine organisms live in the upper 100 m of water. Free-floating, microscopic plants and animals called **plankton** live within the sunlit zone. Plankton, shown in **Figure 3,** form the base of the complex food webs in the ocean. The plankton are consumed primarily by small marine organisms, which, in turn, become food for larger marine animals. These larger animals fall into two groups. All organisms that swim actively in open water, such as fish, dolphins, and squid, are called **nekton.** The organisms that live on the ocean floor are called **benthos.** Benthos include marine plants and animals, such as oysters, sea stars, and crabs, that live in sunlit, shallow waters.

Ocean Environments

The ocean can be divided into two basic environments, as shown in **Figure 4.** These zones are the bottom region, or **benthic zone,** and the upper region, or **pelagic zone.** The amount of sunlight, the water temperature, and the water pressure determine the distribution of marine life within these zones.

benthic zone the bottom region of oceans and bodies of fresh water

pelagic zone the region of an ocean or body of fresh water above the benthic zone

Benthic Zones

The shallowest benthic zone lies between the low-tide and high-tide lines and is called the *intertidal zone*. Shifting tides and breaking waves make this zone a continually changing environment for the marine organisms that flourish there.

Most of the organisms that live in the benthic zone live in the shallow *sublittoral zone*. This continuously submerged zone is located on the continental shelves and is populated by organisms such as sea stars, brittle stars, and sea lilies.

The *bathyal zone* begins at the continental slope and extends to a depth of 4,000 m. Because little or no sunlight reaches this zone, plant life is scarce. Examples of animals that live in the bathyal zone are octopuses, sea stars, and brachiopods.

The *abyssal zone* has no sunlight because it begins at a depth of 4,000 m and extends to a depth of 6,000 m. Organisms that live in the abyssal darkness include sponges and worms.

The *hadal zone* is confined to the ocean trenches, which are deeper than 6,000 m below the surface of the water. This zone is virtually unexplored, and scientists think that life in the hadal zone is sparse.

Reading Check **Which benthic zone has the most marine life? Why? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Graphic Organizer **Comparison Table**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Comparison Table" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns with the different benthic zones. Label the rows with "Depth," "Marine life," and "Sunlight." Then, fill in the table with details about the different benthic zones.

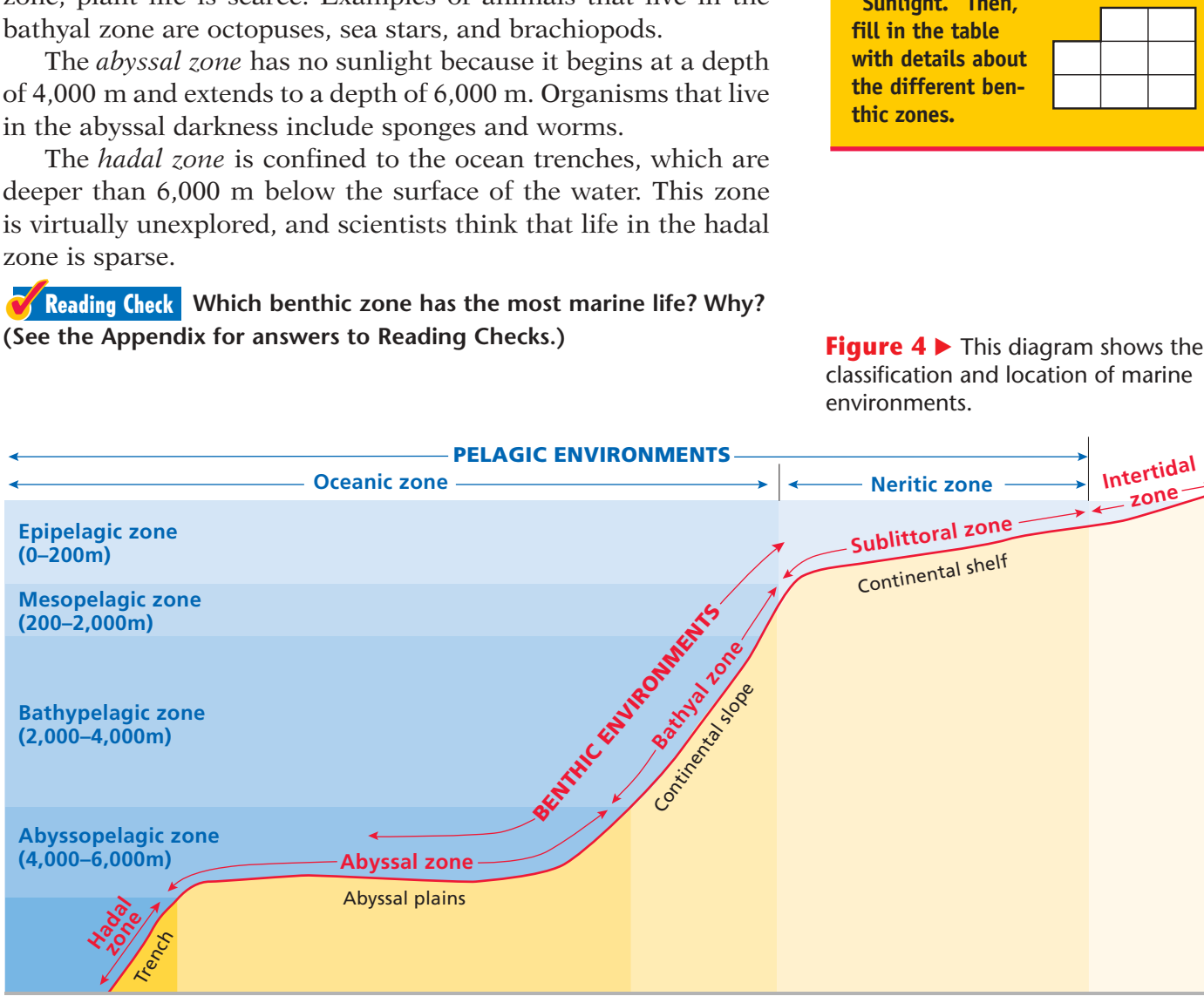
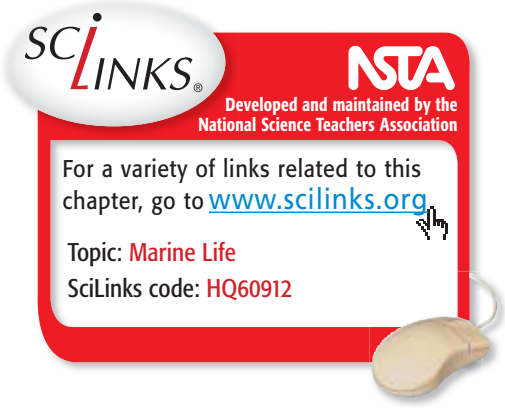


Figure 4 ▶ This diagram shows the classification and location of marine environments.

Figure 5 ▶ Fish and marine mammals are examples of organisms that live in the pelagic zone.



Pelagic Zones

The region of the ocean above the benthic zone is the pelagic zone. The area of the pelagic zone above the continental shelves is called the *neritic zone*. The neritic zone has abundant sunlight, moderate temperatures, and relatively low water pressure, which are ideal factors for marine life. Nekton fill the zone's waters and are the source of much of the fish and seafood that humans eat.

The *oceanic zone* extends into the deep waters beyond the continental shelf. It is divided into four zones, based on depth. The epipelagic zone is the uppermost area of the oceanic zone. It is sunlit and populated by marine life, such as the dolphins shown in **Figure 5.** The mesopelagic, bathypelagic, and abysso-pelagic zones occur at increasingly greater depths. The amount of marine life in the pelagic zone decreases as depth increases.

Section 2 Review

1. **Explain** the effects marine organisms have on the chemistry of ocean water.
2. **Summarize** the process of upwelling, and describe its importance to marine organisms.
3. **Explain** how plankton form the base of ocean food webs.
4. **Identify** the two major zones of the ocean environment.
5. **Compare** the sublittoral and neritic zones, and name some organisms found in each zone.

CRITICAL THINKING

6. **Analyzing Processes** How can the movement of wind currents alter the chemistry of a given area of the ocean?
7. **Making Predictions** How would life in the ocean change if the area of all regions of upwelling decreased?

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *pelagic zone, neritic zone, benthic zone, ocean environment,* and *oceanic zone.*

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

Section 3 Ocean Resources

The ocean supplies humans with a number of natural resources. It is a major source of food and minerals, and it provides a means of transportation. Furthermore, the growth of Earth's population has created new interest in the sea as a source of fresh water.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** three important resources of the ocean.
- **Explain** the threat water pollution poses to marine organisms.

KEY TERMS

desalination
aquaculture

Fresh Water from the Ocean

The increasing demand for fresh water for things such as drinking water, industry, and irrigation can be met by converting ocean water to fresh water. One way of increasing the freshwater supply is through desalination, as shown in **Figure 1.** **Desalination** is the extraction of fresh water from salt water. Although desalination may provide needed fresh water, the process is generally costly.

Methods of Desalination

desalination a process of removing salt from ocean water

One method of desalination is distillation. During *distillation,* ocean water is heated to remove salt. Heat causes liquid water to evaporate and leaves dissolved salts behind. When the water vapor condenses, the result is pure fresh water. However, the process of evaporating liquid water often requires a large amount of costly heat energy.

Another method of desalination is *freezing*. When water freezes, the first ice crystals that form do not contain salt. The ice can be removed and melted to obtain fresh water. This process requires about one-sixth the energy needed for distillation.

Reverse osmosis desalination is a popular method for desalinating ocean water. It includes the use of special membranes that allow water under high pressure to pass through and that block the dissolved salts.

Figure 1 ▶ Thousands of gallons of water from the Persian Gulf is converted into fresh water through the towers of this desalination plant in Kuwait.

Figure 2 ▶ Offshore oil rigs, such as this one in the Gulf of Mexico, produce about one-fourth of the world's oil.

Mineral and Energy Resources

Salt is one mineral resource that can be obtained from the ocean. Other minerals and energy resources can also be extracted from the oceans. While some valuable minerals are easily extracted from the oceans, others are costly or difficult to extract.

Petroleum

The most valuable resource in the ocean is the petroleum found beneath the sea floor. Offshore oil and natural gas deposits exist along continental margins around the world. About one-fourth of the world's oil is now obtained from offshore wells, such as the one shown in **Figure 2.** As a result of new drilling techniques, oil and gas can be extracted far offshore and from great depths.

Nodules

Potato-shaped lumps of minerals, called *nodules,* are found on the abyssal floor of the ocean. Nodules are a valuable source of manganese, iron, copper, nickel, cobalt, and phosphates. However, the recovery of nodules is expensive and difficult because they are located in very deep water. Because country borders are observed only close to land, the question of who has the right to mine minerals from the ocean floor has not been answered.

Trace Minerals

The ocean is also the main source of magnesium and bromine. However, the concentration of most other useful chemicals that are dissolved in the oceans is very small. The extraction of minerals found only in trace amounts is too costly to be practical.

MATH PRACTICE

Ocean's Gold One cubic kilometer of ocean water contains about 6 kg of gold. If you must process 4 million liters of ocean water to get an amount of gold worth 4¢, how many liters of water would have to be processed to get gold worth $1?

Food from the Ocean

Of all of the resources that the ocean supplies, the one in greatest demand is food. Seafood, which is an important source of protein, can be harvested through fishing or through aquaculture.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this chapter, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Ocean Resources
SciLinks code: HQ61065

Fishing

Because fish are a significant food source for people around the world, fishing has become an important industry. But when the ocean is overfished, or overharvested, over a long period of time, fish populations can collapse. A collapse may damage the ecosystem and threaten the fishing industry. To prevent overharvesting, many governments have passed laws to manage fishing.

Aquaculture

Another way to deal with the high demand for seafood is by farming aquatic life. **Aquaculture** is the raising of aquatic plants and animals for human use or consumption. Catfish, salmon, oysters, and shrimp are already grown on large aquatic farms. Similar methods may be used to breed fish and seaweed in ocean farms, such as the one shown in **Figure 3.** A major problem for aquaculturalists is that the ocean farms are susceptible to pollution and that the farms may be a local source of pollution.

Under the best conditions, an ocean farm could produce more food than an agricultural farm of the same size does. For example, in agriculture, only the top layers of soil can be used. In contrast, ocean farms may use a wide range of depths to produce food. Someday, the nutrient-rich bottom water may be pumped to the surface as a way of fertilizing aquatic farms.

Reading Check **List the benefits and problems of aquaculture. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

aquaculture the raising of aquatic plants and animals for human use or consumption

Figure 3 ▶ Aquaculture establishments, such as this seaweed farm in Madagascar, provide a reliable, economical source of food.

Figure 4 ▶ Pollution can damage the ocean's ecosystem and make seafood unsafe to eat.

Ocean-Water Pollution

The oceans have been used as a dumping ground for many kinds of wastes including garbage, sewage, and nuclear waste. Until recently, most wastes were diluted or destroyed as they spread throughout the ocean. But the growth of the world population and the increased use of more-toxic substances have reduced the ocean's ability to absorb wastes and renew itself.

Productive coastal areas and beaches are in the greatest danger of being polluted because they are closest to sources of pollution, as shown in **Figure 4.** Pollution has destroyed clam and oyster beds, sea birds have become tangled in plastic products, and beaches have been closed because of sewage and oil spills.

Besides being found in coastal waters, pollutants can be found in most other areas of the oceans. Traces of mercury, of the insecticide DDT, and of lead from gasoline have been detected in the ocean. In some areas of the world, concentrations of pollutants are so high that the fish have become unsafe for humans to eat. Recognizing the affects of dumping waste in the ocean, scientists and governments have been working to reduce pollution. For example, the use of DDT has been banned in the United States and the use of leaded gasoline has been reduced.

Section 3 Review

1. **Describe** three methods of desalinating ocean water.
2. **Explain** why distillation can be an expensive method of desalination.
3. **List** two important mineral resources in the ocean.
4. **Identify** the most valuable resource that can be obtained from the ocean.
5. **Define** the term *aquaculture,* and explain why aquaculture is important.
6. **Explain** why beaches are especially vulnerable to ocean pollution.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Inferences** Describe how the mining of nodules may create problems between countries.
8. **Predicting Consequences** How would pollution of oceans affect the fishing industry?
9. **Analyzing Relationships** How could humans be affected if microscopic marine organisms absorb small amounts of mercury?

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *desalination, distillation, freezing, reverse osmosis, petroleum, aquaculture, fishing, salt, ocean resource,* and *pollution.*

Chapter 20 Highlights

Sections

1 Properties of Ocean Water

Key Terms

salinity, 496
pack ice, 497
thermocline, 498
density, 499

Key Concepts

- Cold ocean water dissolves gases more readily than warm ocean water does.
- The ocean is a carbon sink that dissolves CO_2 from the atmosphere.
- Dissolved solids make up 3.5% of the mass of ocean water.
- Salinity is a measure of the amount of dissolved salts in ocean water.
- Temperature of ocean water is dependent on depth and latitude.
- Density of ocean water is dependent on temperature and salinity.
- The color of ocean water is affected by the presence of phytoplankton.

2 Life in the Oceans

upwelling, 502
plankton, 502
nekton, 502
benthos, 502
benthic zone, 503
pelagic zone, 503

- Marine organisms help maintain the chemical balance of ocean water by using nutrients for life processes and by returning the nutrients to the water after death.
- Plankton form the base of complex ocean food webs by acting as food for other marine organisms.
- There are two major zones of life in the ocean: benthic and pelagic. Each zone supports different types of organisms.

3 Ocean Resources

desalination, 505
aquaculture, 507

- The ocean is valuable as a source of fresh water, minerals, and food.
- Fresh water can be obtained from the ocean by the methods of desalination, freezing, and reverse osmosis desalination.
- Ocean-water pollution threatens both marine organisms and humans by damaging food resources in the ocean.

Chapter 20 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *thermocline*
2. *upwelling*
3. *desalination*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *salinity* and *density*
5. *plankton* and *nekton*
6. *benthic zone* and *pelagic zone*
7. *upwelling* and *aquaculture*

Understanding Key Concepts

8. The amount of dissolved salts in ocean water is called the water's
   a. salinity. **c.** plankton.
   b. nekton. **d.** density.

9. When liquid water is warmed, its density
   a. increases.
   b. decreases.
   c. remains the same.
   d. doubles.

10. Although most of the various wavelengths of visible light are absorbed by ocean water, the one wavelength that is most often reflected is the color
    a. violet. **c.** yellow.
    b. green. **d.** blue.

11. Drifting marine plants and animals are known as
    a. plankton. **c.** nekton.
    b. benthos. **d.** sea stars.

12. Marine animals that can swim to search for food and avoid predators are called
    a. phytoplankton. **c.** nekton.
    b. zooplankton. **d.** benthos.

13. Which of the following ocean environments experiences the most change?
    a. intertidal zone **c.** bathyal zone
    b. abyssal zone **d.** neritic zone

14. Which of the following methods is *not* used for producing fresh water by desalinating ocean water?
    a. distillation **c.** reverse osmosis
    b. evaporation **d.** aquaculture

15. Lumps of minerals on the ocean floor are called
    a. nekton. **c.** benthos.
    b. nodules. **d.** plankton.

16. Aquaculture is another name for
    a. desalination.
    b. distillation.
    c. ocean farming.
    d. rapid temperature changes.

Short Answer

17. Describe the process of upwelling, and explain its effects on marine life.

18. What are the six most abundant elements dissolved in ocean water?

19. How are temperature, salinity, and density related?

20. Describe how an oil spill would affect a fishing industry.

21. List three important resources from the ocean, and describe how they are obtained.

22. What effects does ocean pollution have on humans?

Critical Thinking

23. Predicting Consequences If climatic conditions over Earth's oceans caused upwelling and wave action to stop, what would happen to marine life? Explain your answer.

24. Identifying Relationships How would a significant and global decrease in sunlight affect plankton and other marine organisms?

25. Applying Concepts If you were to start an aquatic farm, in which of the zones of marine life would you locate your farm? Explain your answer.

26. Making Inferences When oceanographers first explored the deep-ocean basin along mid-ocean ridges, they discovered a variety of marine life, including sightless crabs. Explain why sightlessness is not a disadvantage to these crabs.

Concept Mapping

27. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *fishing, marine life, plankton, fish, color, dissolved gas, dissolved solid, desalination, salt, ocean water characteristics,* and *aquaculture*.

Math Skills

28. Using Equations Using the equation *density* = *mass* ÷ *volume,* determine the mass of a 3 cm^3 sample of ocean water if the water's density is 1.027 g/cm^3.

29. Making Calculations What percentage of dissolved salts would be present in water that has a salinity of 40‰?

30. Making Calculations A 1,000 g sample of ocean water contains 35 g of dissolved solids. Magnesium makes up 7.7% of the 35 g of dissolved solids. How many grams of magnesium are in the 1,000 g sample of ocean water?

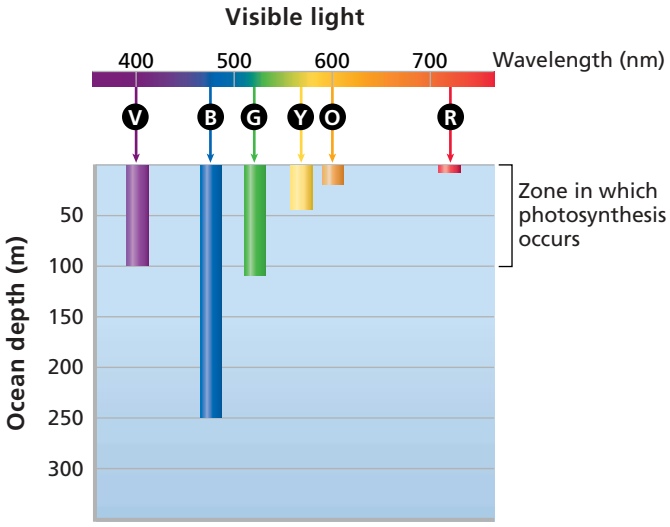
Writing Skills

31. Creative Writing Write a descriptive essay about the deep-ocean waters of the oceanic zone. The essay should include a description of the marine organisms in this zone as well as a description of what life is like for the marine organisms in this zone.

32. Writing from Research Research the new foods that are being produced through aquaculture and the nations that are investing in this method of farming. Write a short essay that describes these foods, where they are grown, and their nutritional values.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph shows the depths at which different wavelengths of light penetrate ocean water. Use this graph to answer the questions that follow.



33. Estimate the depth at which yellow light can no longer penetrate ocean water.

34. Which colors can penetrate the ocean at a depth of 50 m?

35. Would an object that is painted red appear red at a depth of 50 m? Explain your answer.

Chapter 20 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 Organisms that live on the ocean floor are called
A. benthos
B. nekton
C. plankton
D. phytoplankton

2 Which of the following cannot be used to remove salt from sea water to make the water safe for drinking?
F. distillation
G. freezing
H. reverse osmosis
I. adding fresh water

3 The temperature of ocean water is dependent on all of the following except
A. depth
B. the amount of solar energy it receives
C. water movement
D. the number of organisms living in it

4 As the temperature of ocean water increases from 10°C to 30°C, how does the water's density change?
F. It increases.
G. It decreases.
H. It remains the same.
I. It is impossible to predict.

5 Barriers to the mining of mineral nodules include
A. that mining rights for the ocean floor have not yet been determined.
B. that they contain only traces of minerals and therefore are not worth the effort to gather.
C. that they are readily accessible and therefore not valuable.
D. that they primarily contain elements that are dangerous to humans.

Directions (6–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 What is the cause of deep ocean currents?

7 What is the name for the top layer of ocean water that extends to 300 m below sea level?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–10): **Read the passage below. Then answer the questions.**

The Effects of El Niño

The interaction between the ocean and the atmosphere can profoundly affect weather conditions. Occurring, on average, every four years and lasting about 18 months, El Niño is one event that triggers global weather changes. El Niño is characterized by changes in wind patterns that allow warmer water from the western Pacific Ocean to surge eastward. Normally, east-to-west winds cause warm water to accumulate in the western Pacific Ocean. During El Niño, the trade winds shift warm water east. Sea surface temperatures from the coast of Peru to the equatorial central Pacific rise. The warm waters cause the thermocline to sink and contribute to the formation of convective clouds, which cause heavy rains that shift eastward at the same rate as the waters. In areas on the western coast of the Pacific Ocean, droughts become common.

8 According to the passage, which of the following statements is not true?
A. During El Niño, the trade winds shift warm water eastward.
B. El Niño is one event that triggers global weather changes.
C. An El Niño weather event lasts about two years on average.
D. An El Niño event lead to the formation of convective clouds that shift eastward.

9 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the reading passage?
F. An El Niño is usually followed by a weather event that moves cold water westward.
G. The changes caused by El Niño directly affect the weather in the United States.
H. El Niño causes severe disruptions to international trade and travel.
I. El Niño weather cycles are a relatively recent phenomenon.

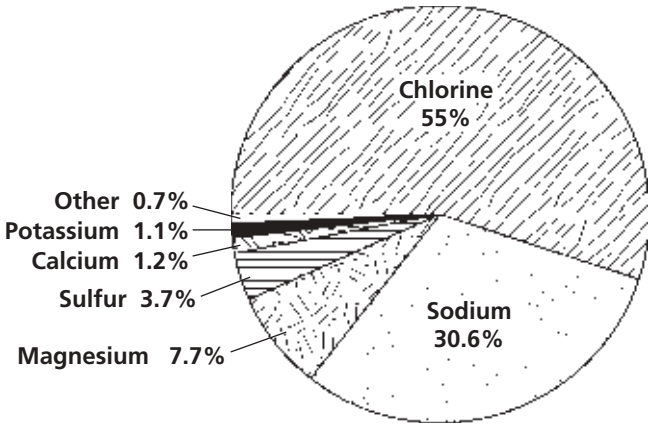
10 During an El Niño weather event, what happens to the thermocline and what effect might this have on upwelling?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–13): **For each question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

Base your answers to questions 11 and 12 on the pie graph below.

Solids Dissolved in Ocean Water



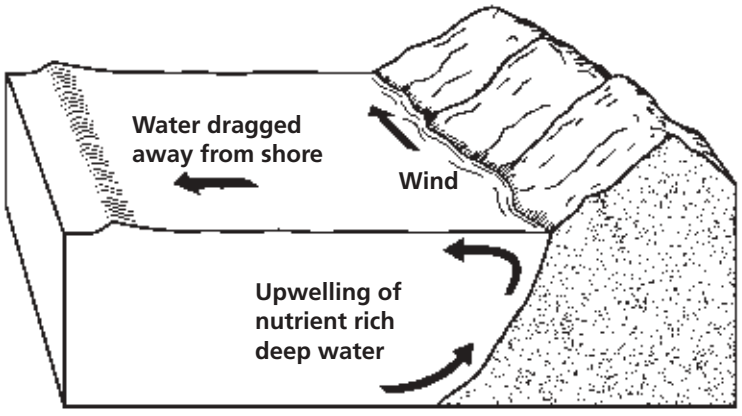
11 The two elements that make up the largest percentage of the dissolved solids combine to make what common solid found in ocean water?

F. sand
G. salt
H. siliceous ooze
I. calcareous ooze

12 While the salinity of ocean waters varies from one area to another, the relative amount of solids dissolved in ocean water does not change. What is the reason for this equilibrium?

Base your answer to question 13 on the diagram below, which shows the basic mechanics of upwelling.

Diagram of Upwelling



13 During summer months, beaches may sometimes close because of the appearance of large phytoplankton blooms. How might an upwelling contribute to these beach closings during warmer months?

Test TIP

Scan the answer set for words such as "never" and "always." Such words are often used in statements that are incorrect because they are too general.

Chapter 20

Skills Practice Lab

Ocean Water Density

The density of ocean water varies. Density is affected by the salinity of the water and the temperature of the water. Furthermore, the salinity of an area of the ocean is affected by the rate of evaporation or freezing and by the addition of fresh water and salts. The temperature of the ocean is determined by the amount of infrared radiation that reaches Earth's surface. In this lab, you will observe the effects of temperature and salinity on the density of salt water.

Objectives

- **Measure** the temperature and density of water.
- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Analyze** the effects of temperature and salinity on the density of water.

Materials

- beaker, 250 mL
- clay, modeling
- freezer (optional)
- gloves, heat-resistant
- graduated cylinder, 100 mL
- hot plate
- pencil, grease, red
- pencil, grease, yellow
- ruler, metric
- scissors
- straw, plastic
- table salt
- teaspoon
- thermometer
- water, distilled

Safety

PROCEDURE

1. Make a hydrometer by filling 5 cm of one end of the straw with modeling clay.
2. Pour 100 mL of distilled water at room temperature into a glass jar or beaker. Float the straw upright in the jar. If the straw does not float upright, cut off the open end at 1 cm intervals until it floats upright.
3. Use a red grease pencil to mark the water level on the straw. Remove the straw from the water, and draw a continuous line around the straw at the mark.
4. Use a yellow grease pencil to draw lines around the straw at 1 cm intervals above and below the red line. The red line will be used as a reference point.
5. Add 2 tsp of salt to the water, and stir until all of the salt has dissolved. Draw a table similar to **Table 1**. Measure and record the water temperature in **Table 1.**
6. Place the hydrometer in the salt water. In **Table 1,** record the density by counting the marks above or below the red line to the water's surface. The higher the hydrometer floats out of the water, the more dense the water.
7. Turn the hot plate on low. Place the beaker of salt water on the hot plate. CAUTION Wear heat-resistant gloves.
8. Hold a thermometer in the water. Do not let the thermometer touch the bottom of the beaker.

Step 8

9. When the water's temperature reaches 25°C, turn off the hot plate. Immediately place the hydrometer in the water. Record the relative density in **Table 1.**
10. Repeat steps 7–9, and heat the water until it is 30°C.
11. Turn the hot plate on high. Heat the salt water until it begins to boil. Boil the water for 5 min. Turn off the hot plate.
12. Place the hydrometer in the water. Draw a table similar to **Table 2**. Measure and record the water's density in **Table 2.**
13. Boil the water for another 5 min. Measure and record the water's density.
14. Repeat step 13. Once the water is cool, measure the amount of water that remains in the beaker.

Temperature (°C)	Density (cm above or below the red line)
25	
30	

Table 1

Minutes of boiling	Density (cm above or below the red line)
5	
10	
15	

Table 2

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

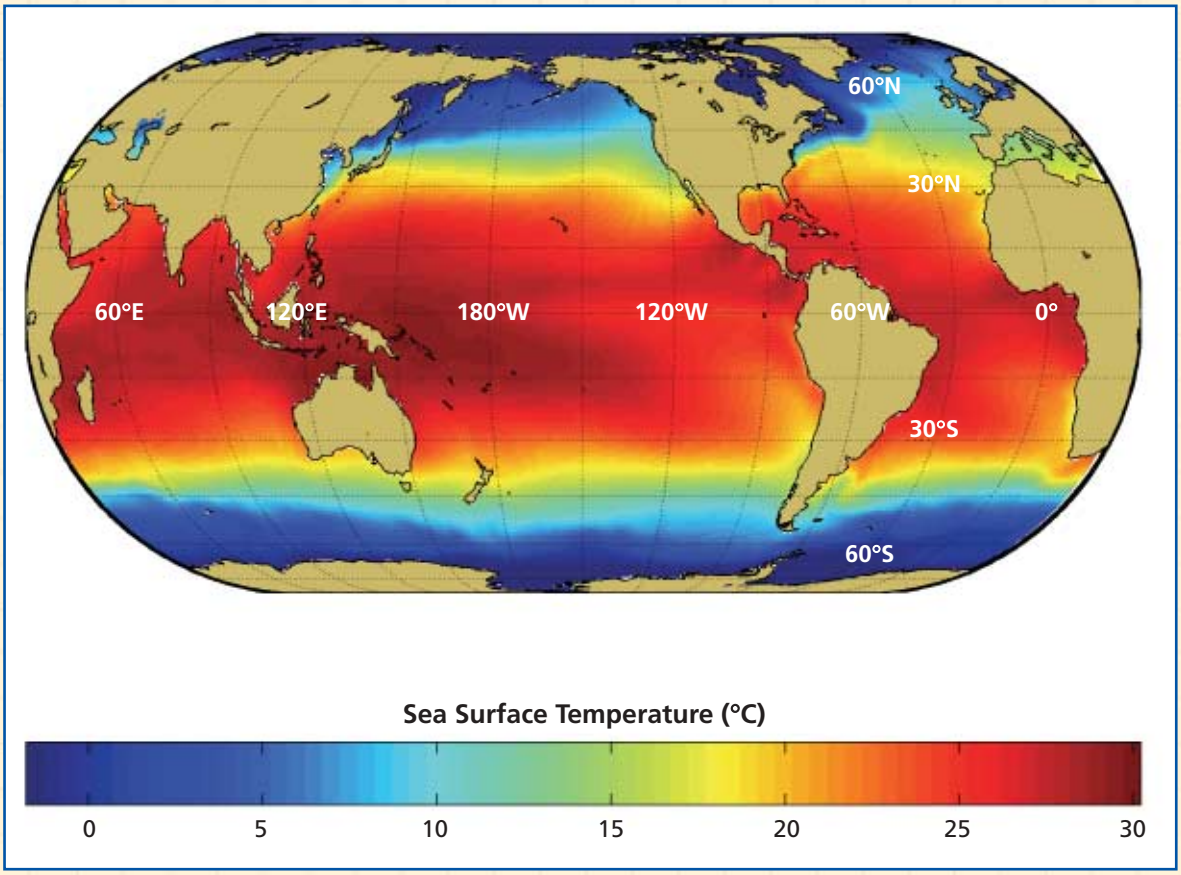
1. **Analyzing Data** In which trial was the water the most dense? the least dense? Explain your answers.
2. **Identifying Trends** As the temperature of the water increases, does the water's density increase or decrease?
3. **Making Inferences** Based on your observations, infer the density of polar ocean waters, and compare it with the density of equally saline water near the equator. Explain your answer.
4. **Analyzing Processes** Why did the amount of water in the beaker change? Explain why boiling the water affected its density.
5. **Forming a Hypothesis** How would you expect the density of the water to change if the water was frozen instead of boiled? Explain your answer.

Extension

1. **Evaluating Hypotheses** Place a beaker of salt water in a freezer until a crust of ice forms. Break up and remove the ice from the water, and record the density of the remaining water. Is the water denser or less dense than before it was frozen? Explain.

MAPS in Action

Sea Surface Temperatures in August



Map Skills Activity

This map shows global sea surface temperatures in the month of August. Latitude and longitude are shown in 10° intervals. The latitude of New York City is 41°N and 74°W. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Analyzing Data** Estimate the sea surface temperatures off the east coast of Florida.
2. **Identifying Relationships** Identify areas of the globe that receive the most solar energy.
3. **Inferring Relationships** At which locations would you most likely find pack ice?
4. **Making Comparisons** Where would you expect to find higher surface salinity values, off the coast of North Africa or off the coast of the southern tip of South America?
5. **Analyzing Relationships** As latitude increases, surface temperatures decrease. How would you expect the density of surface water to change as latitude increases? Explain your answer.
6. **Making Predictions** Off the coast of New York City in December, would you expect the density of the ocean waters to increase or decrease compared to the density of the waters in August? Explain.

EYE on the Environment

A Harbor Makes a Comeback

Not long ago, the harbor in Boston, Massachusetts, was known as the most polluted harbor in the world. In recent years, however, Boston Harbor has made one of the most impressive comebacks in history.

Polluted Since Colonial Times

During America's colonial period, residents of the city of Boston dealt with their sewage by dumping it directly into Boston Harbor. They hoped that the tides would carry the sewage out to sea. However, much of the raw sewage remained in the harbor. For hundreds of years, waste and sewage washed up along the shore and sometimes caused outbreaks of disease. Over time, most of the species of marine life disappeared from the harbor.

In the late 1960s, a sewage-treatment plant was built to treat the city's sewage before it was dumped into the harbor. Unfortunately, the plant could not meet the demands of the fast-growing city. Even as late as the 1980s, millions of tons of sewage flowed directly into the harbor every year. Beaches were closed, and the shell-fishing industry in Boston Harbor was shut down. Divers reported that a "gray, mayonnaise-like substance" covered the harbor's floor.

Taking Action

In the mid 1980s, a new sewage-treatment complex was built at Deer Island, which lies in the outskirts of the harbor. By 1995, the beaches were reopened and were significantly safer. Plants, fish, and other organisms returned to the harbor, and the ocean floor improved.

The task of protecting the harbor is far from over, however. Officials continue to monitor the sewage-treatment process. In addition, officials are working to expand the cleanup project to include surrounding watersheds.

▲ For many years, Boston Harbor was known as the most polluted harbor in the world.

◀ The Deer Island sewage-treatment facility is one of the largest facilities of its kind in the world. The large, egg-shaped tanks are used in the primary treatment of sewage.

Extension

1. **Determining Cause and Effect** Why would the health of Boston Harbor depend on the health of the surrounding watersheds?
2. **Research** Write a brief summary of how sewage from your area is treated and disposed and how long the current sewage-treatment system has been used.

Chapter 21

Movements of the Ocean

Sections

1 Ocean Currents
2 Ocean Waves
3 Tides

What You'll Learn

- What factors cause surface and deep currents
- How waves form and move
- How the moon affects tides

Why It's Relevant

Ocean water moves in currents. Ocean currents are a major method of heat transport that affects climate around the globe.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Layered Book Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Layered Book" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the tabs of the layered book with "Surface currents," "Deep currents," "Waves," and "Tides." As you read the chapter, write information you learn about each category under the appropriate tab.

▶ Tides are caused by the moon's gravitational pull on the oceans. In some places, the moon can cause tides that are as high as 15 m above the low tide.

Section 1 Ocean Currents

The water in the ocean moves in giant streams called **currents.** Many ocean currents are complex and difficult to trace. Oceanographers identify ocean currents by studying the physical and chemical characteristics of the ocean water. They also identify currents by mapping the paths of debris that is dumped or washed overboard from ships, as shown in **Figure 1.** From these data, scientists have mapped a detailed pattern of ocean currents around the world. Scientists place ocean currents into two major categories: surface currents and deep currents.

Factors That Affect Surface Currents

Currents that move on or near the surface of the ocean and are driven by winds are called **surface currents.** Surface currents are controlled by three factors: air currents, Earth's rotation, and the location of the continents.

All surface currents are affected by winds. Winds are caused by the uneven heating of the atmosphere. Variations in air temperature lead to variations in air density and pressure. Colder, denser air sinks and forms areas of high pressure. Air moves away from high-pressure areas to lower pressure areas. This movement gives rise to wind.

Because *wind* is moving air, wind has kinetic energy. The wind passes this energy to the ocean as the air moves across the ocean surface. As energy is transferred from the air to the ocean, the water at the ocean's surface begins to move.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** how wind patterns, the rotation of Earth, and continental barriers affect surface currents in the ocean.
- **Identify** the major factor that determines the direction in which a surface current circulates.
- **Explain** how differences in the density of ocean water affect the flow of deep currents.

KEY TERMS

current
surface current
Coriolis effect
gyre
Gulf Stream
deep current

current in geology, a horizontal movement of water in a well-defined pattern, such as a river or stream

surface current a horizontal movement of ocean water that is caused by wind and that occurs at or near the ocean's surface

Figure 1 ▶ Glass floats, which are used to hold up Japanese fishing nets, have been carried by surface currents from off the coasts of Japan to this beach in northwest Hawaii.

Global Wind Belts

Global wind belts, such as the trade winds and westerlies shown in **Figure 2,** are a major factor affecting the flow of ocean surface water. The *trade winds* are located just north and south of the equator. In the Northern Hemisphere, trade winds blow from the northeast. In the Southern Hemisphere, they blow from the southeast. In both hemispheres, trade-wind belts push currents westward across the tropical latitudes of all three major oceans.

The *westerlies* are located in the middle latitudes. In the Northern Hemisphere, westerlies blow from the southwest. In the Southern Hemisphere, they blow from the northwest. Westerlies push ocean currents eastward in the higher latitudes of the Northern and Southern Hemispheres.

Coriolis effect the apparent curving of the path of a moving object from an otherwise straight path due to Earth's rotation

gyre a huge circle of moving ocean water found above and below the equator

Continental Barriers

The continents are another major influence on surface currents. The continents act as barriers to surface currents. When a surface current flows against a continent, the current is deflected and divided.

The Coriolis Effect

Global wind belts and ocean currents do not flow in straight lines. Wind belts and ocean currents follow a curved or circular pattern that is caused by Earth's rotation. As Earth spins on its axis, ocean currents and wind belts curve. The curving of the path of oceans and winds due to Earth's rotation is called the **Coriolis effect.** The wind belts and the Coriolis effect cause huge circles of moving water, called **gyres,** to form. In the Northern Hemisphere, water flow in gyres is to the right, or clockwise. In the Southern Hemisphere, the flow is to the left, or counterclockwise.

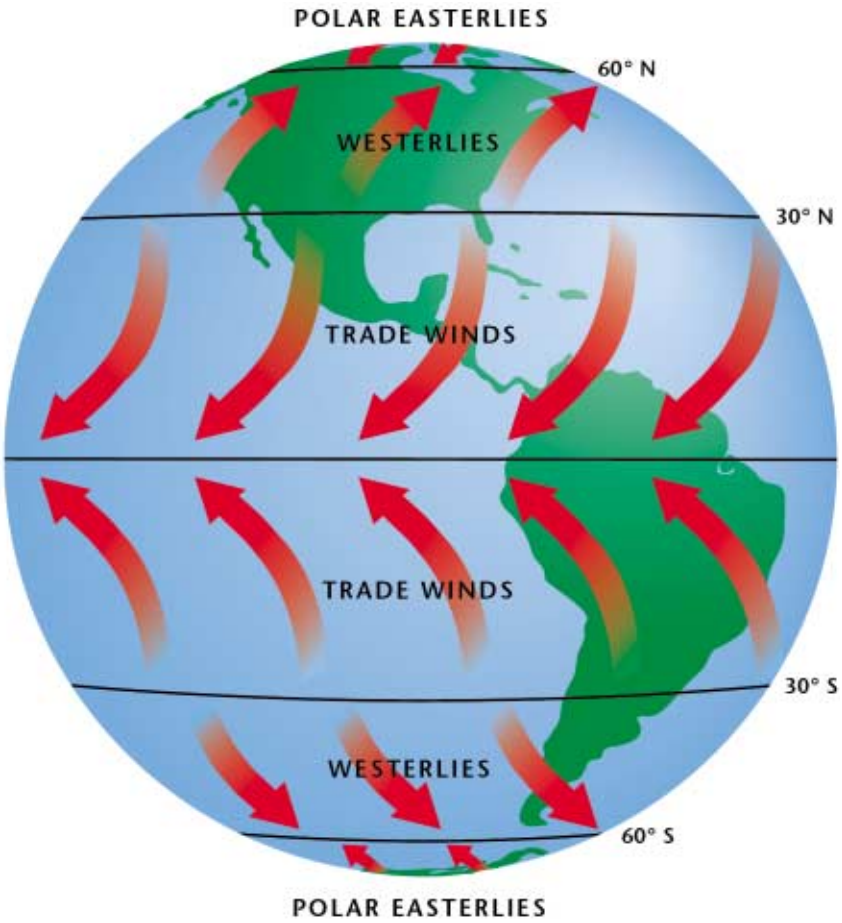


Figure 2 ▶ Global winds and the Coriolis effect together drive the surface currents of the oceans in great circular patterns. The photo at right shows a gyre in the Pacific Ocean off the east coast of Japan.

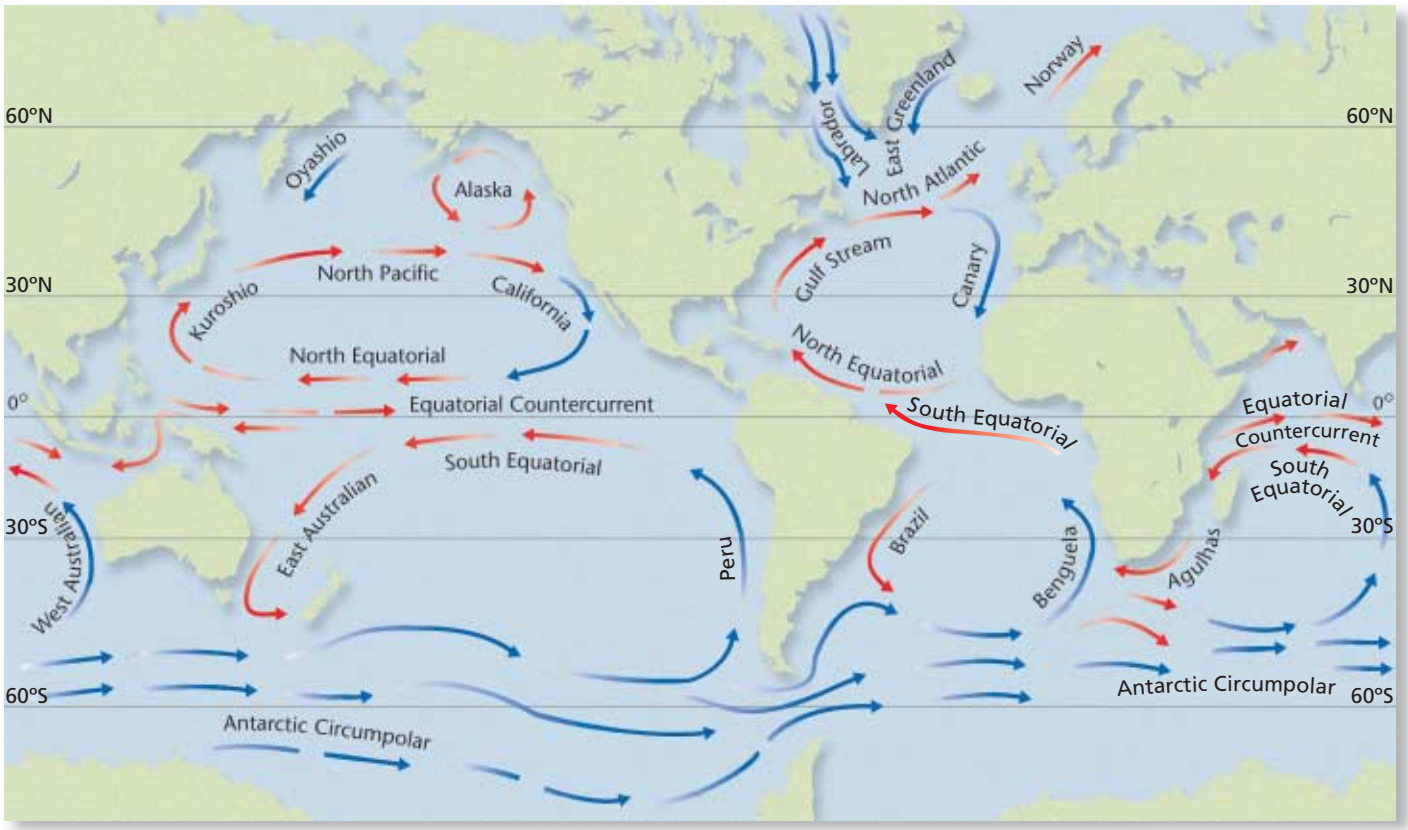


Figure 3 ▶ This map shows the major surface currents of the oceans of the world. Warm-water currents are shown in red; cold-water currents are shown in blue.

Major Surface Currents

The major surface currents of the world are shown in **Figure 3.** The major currents in the equatorial region and in the Northern and Southern Hemispheres are described below.

Equatorial Currents

Warm equatorial currents are located in the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans. Each of these oceans has two warm-water equatorial currents that move in a westward direction. Between these westward-flowing currents lies a weaker, eastward-flowing current called the *Equatorial Countercurrent*.

Currents in the Southern Hemisphere

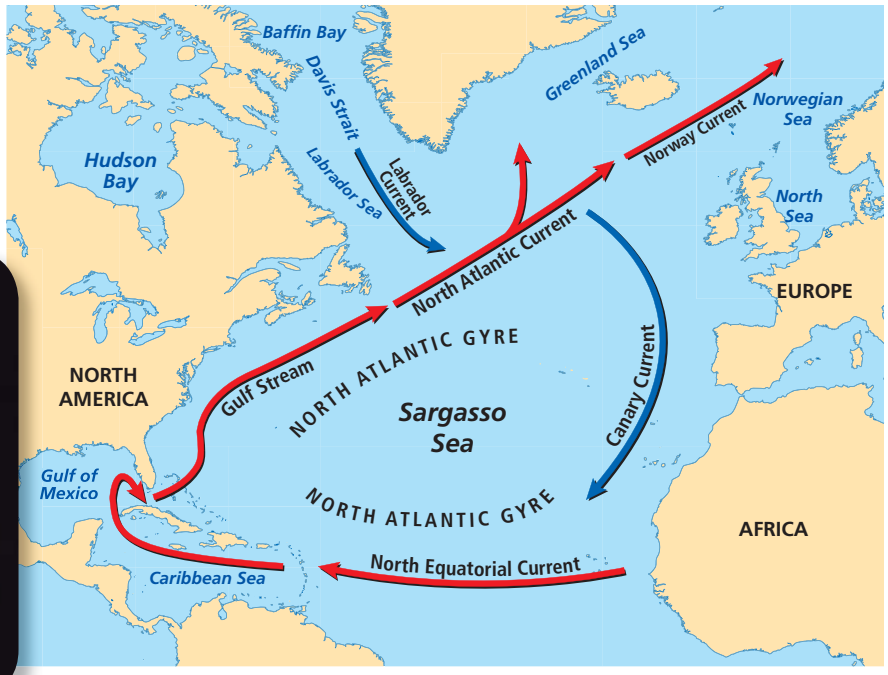
In the Southern Hemisphere, the currents in gyres move counterclockwise. In the most southerly regions of the oceans, constant westward winds produce the world's largest current, the *Antarctic Circumpolar Current,* also known as *West Wind Drift*. No continents interrupt the movement of this current that completely circles Antartica and crosses all three major oceans.

The Indian Ocean surface currents follow two patterns. Currents in the southern Indian Ocean follow a circular, counterclockwise gyre. Currents in the northern Indian Ocean are governed by *monsoons,* winds whose directions change seasonally.

Reading Check **What is the world's largest ocean current? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Ocean Currents
SciLinks code: HQ61061

Figure 4 ▶ Surface currents in the Atlantic Ocean form the North Atlantic Gyre. The Sargasso Sea in the center of the gyre results from this pattern of currents. The organisms below are commonly found in the Sargasso Sea.



Gulf Stream the swift, deep, and warm Atlantic current that flows along the eastern coast of the United States toward the north

Currents in the North Atlantic

In the North Atlantic Ocean, warm water moves through the Caribbean Sea and Gulf of Mexico and north along the east coast of North America in a swift, warm current called the **Gulf Stream.** Farther north, the cold-water Labrador Current, which flows south, joins the Gulf Stream. South of Greenland, the Gulf Stream widens and slows until it becomes a vast, slow-moving warm current known as the *North Atlantic Current*. Near western Europe, the North Atlantic Current splits. One part becomes the Norway Current, which flows northward along the coast of Norway and keeps that coast ice-free all year. The other part is deflected southward and becomes the cool Canary Current, which eventually warms and rejoins the North Equatorial Current.

As **Figure 4** shows, the Gulf Stream, the North Atlantic Current, the Canary Current, and the North Equatorial Current form the North Atlantic Gyre. At the center of this gyre lies a vast area of calm, warm water called the *Sargasso Sea*. The Sargasso Sea is named after *sargassum,* the brown seaweed that floats on the sea's surface in this area. The pattern of winds and currents around the Sargasso Sea concentrates all kinds of floating debris, such as orange peels and plastic cups, in this area.

Currents in the North Pacific

The pattern of currents in the North Pacific is similar to that in the North Atlantic. The warm Kuroshio Current, the Pacific equivalent of the Gulf Stream, flows northward along the east coast of Asia. This current then flows toward North America as the North Pacific Drift. It eventually flows southward along the California coast as the cool California Current.

QuickLAB 10 min

Ocean Currents

Procedure

1. Fill a **shallow pan** with **water.**
2. Sprinkle **paper confetti** on the surface of the water.
3. Blow across the surface of the water through a **drinking straw** to produce a clockwise current.
4. Blow through the straw to make a counterclockwise current. Try to make two currents.

Analysis

1. Draw a diagram of the currents. Draw the straw's positions, and use arrows to show air and water direction.
2. How does this activity relate to what happens in ocean currents?

Deep Currents

In addition to having wind-driven surface currents, the ocean has **deep currents,** cold, dense currents far below the surface. Deep currents move much more slowly than surface currents do. Deep currents form as cold, dense water of the polar regions sinks and flows beneath warmer ocean water.

deep current a streamlike movement of ocean water far below the surface

The movement of polar waters is a result of differences in density. When water cools, it contracts and the water molecules move closer together. This contraction makes the water denser, and the water sinks. When water warms, it expands and the water molecules move farther apart. The warm water is less dense, so it rises above the cold water. Temperature determines density.

Salinity, too, determines the density of water. The water in polar regions has high salinity because of the large amount of water frozen in icebergs and sea ice. When water freezes, the salt in the water does not freeze but stays in the unfrozen water. So, unfrozen polar water has a high salt concentration and is denser than water that has a lower salinity. This dense polar water sinks and forms a deep current that flows beneath less dense surface currents, as shown in **Figure 5.**

Graphic Organizer **Comparison Table**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Comparison Table" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns with "Surface currents" and "Deep currents." Label the rows with "Salinity," "Temperature," and "Density." Then, fill in the table with details about the salinity, temperature, and density of each current.

Antarctic Bottom Water

The temperature of the water near Antarctica is very cold, –2°C. The water's salinity is high. These two factors make the water off the coast of Antarctica the densest and coldest ocean water in the world. This dense, cold water sinks to the ocean bottom and forms a deep current called the *Antarctic Bottom Water*. The Antarctic Bottom Water moves slowly northward along the ocean bottom for thousands of kilometers to a latitude of about 40°N. It takes hundreds of years for the current to make the trip.

Reading Check **Why is Antarctic Bottom Water the densest in the world? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

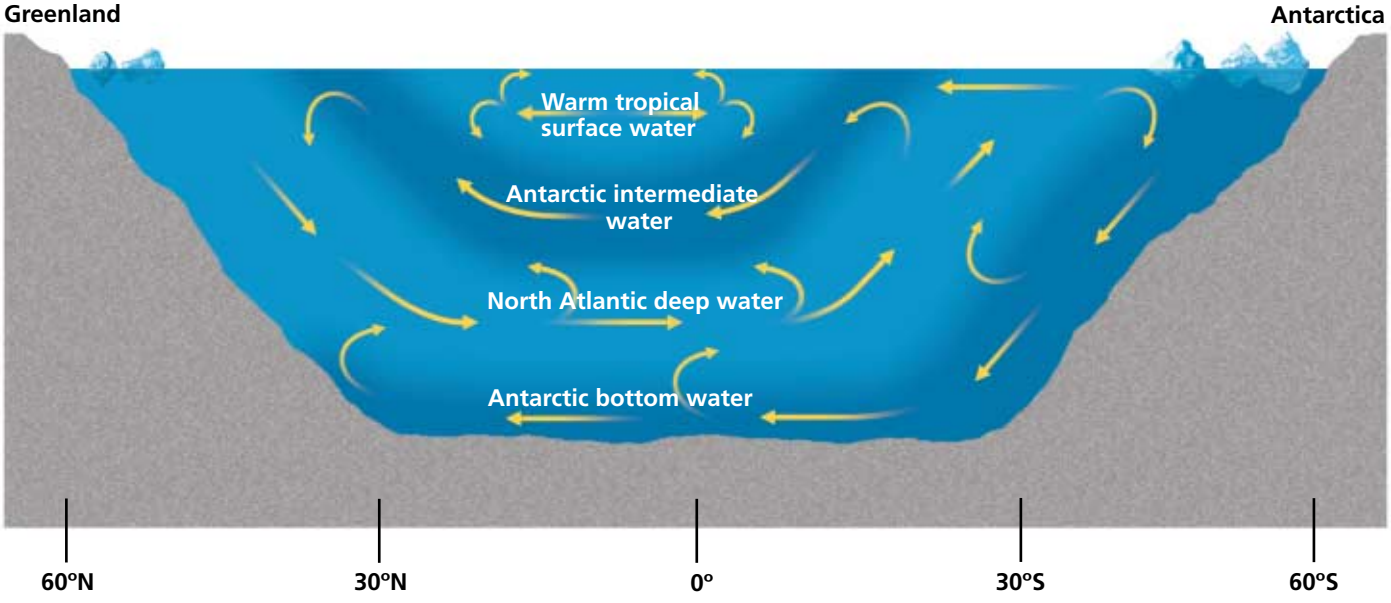


Figure 5 ▶ The very dense and highly saline Antarctic Bottom Water travels beneath less dense North Atlantic Deep Water.

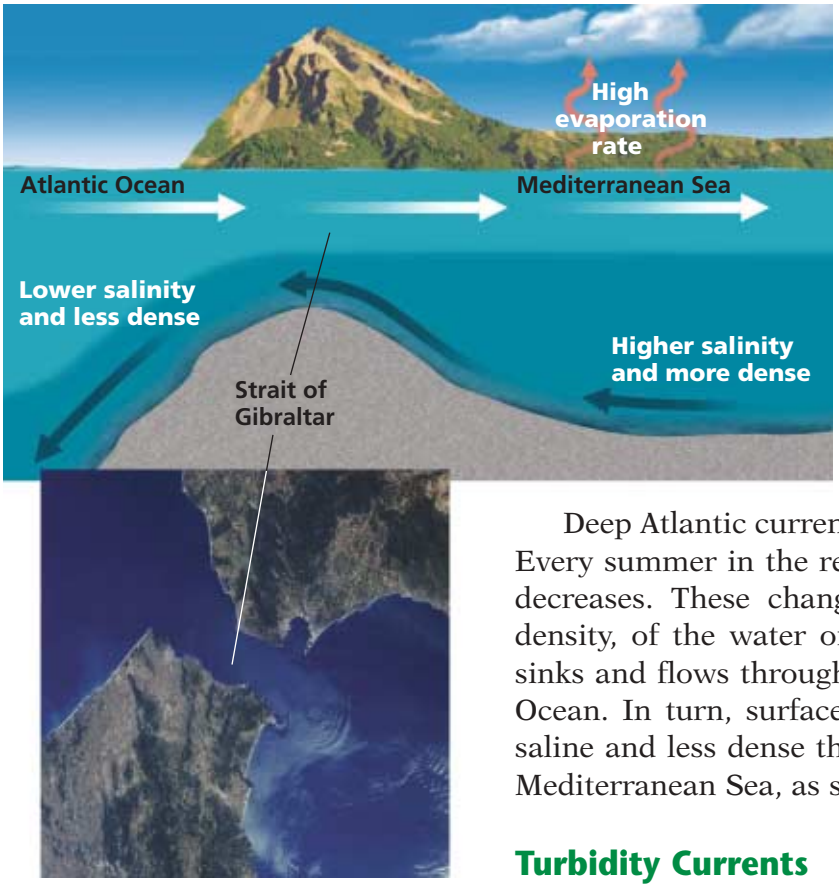


Figure 6 ▶ The dense, highly saline water of the Mediterranean Sea forms a deep current as it flows through the strait of Gibraltar and into the less dense Atlantic Ocean.

North Atlantic Deep Water

In the North Atlantic, south of Greenland, the water is very cold and has a high salinity. This cold, salty water forms a deep current that moves southward under the northward-flowing Gulf Stream. Near the equator, this deep current divides. One part begins to rise, reverse direction, and flow northward again. The rest of the current continues southward toward Antarctica and flows over the colder, denser Antarctic Bottom Water.

Deep Atlantic currents exist near the Mediterranean Sea, too. Every summer in the region, evaporation increases and rainfall decreases. These changes increase the salinity, and thus the density, of the water of the Mediterranean. This denser water sinks and flows through the strait of Gibraltar into the Atlantic Ocean. In turn, surface water from the Atlantic, which is less saline and less dense than deep current water is, flows into the Mediterranean Sea, as shown in **Figure 6.**

Turbidity Currents

A turbidity current is a strong current caused by an underwater landslide. A turbidity current occurs when large masses of sediment that have accumulated along a continental shelf or continental slope suddenly break loose and slide downhill. The landslide mixes the nearby water with sediment. The sediment causes the water to become cloudy, or turbid, and denser than the surrounding water. The dense water mass of the turbidity current moves beneath the less dense, clear water.

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** the force that drives most surface currents.
2. **Identify** the winds that affect the surface currents on either side of the equator.
3. **Identify** the winds that affect the surface currents in the middle latitudes.
4. **Describe** how density affects the flow of deep currents.
5. **List** the factors that affect the density of ocean water.
6. **List** three major surface currents and two major deep currents.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Predicting Consequences** Describe how surface currents would be affected if Earth did not rotate.
8. **Identifying Relationships** Explain how the distribution of solar energy around Earth affects ocean surface currents.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *ocean currents, surface currents, deep currents, Gulf Stream, North Atlantic Current, Antarctic Bottom Water, gyres,* and *Coriolis effect*.

Section 2 Ocean Waves

A **wave** is a periodic disturbance in a solid, liquid, or gas as energy is transmitted through the medium. One kind of wave is described as the periodic up-and-down movement of water. Such a wave has two basic parts—a *crest* and a *trough,* as shown in **Figure 1.** The crest is the highest point of a wave. The trough is the lowest point between two crests. The *wave height* is the vertical distance between the crest and the trough of a wave. The *wavelength* is the horizontal distance between two consecutive crests or between two consecutive troughs. The **wave period** is the time required for two consecutive wave crests to pass a given point. The speed at which a wave moves is calculated by dividing the wave's wavelength by its period.

$$\text{wave speed} = \frac{\text{wavelength}}{\text{wave period}}$$

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the formation of waves and the factors that affect wave size.
- **Explain** how waves interact with the coastline.
- **Identify** the cause of destructive ocean waves.

KEY TERMS

wave
wave period
fetch
refraction

Wave Energy

The uneven heating of Earth's atmosphere causes pressure differences that make air move. This moving air is called *wind*. Wind then transfers the energy received from the sun to the ocean and forms waves. Small waves, or ripples, form as a result of friction between the moving air and water. As a ripple receives more energy from wind, the ripple grows into a larger wave. The longer that wind blows from a given direction, the more energy is transferred from wind to water and the larger the wave becomes.

The smoothness of the ocean's surface is generally disrupted by many small waves moving in different directions. Because of their large surface area, larger waves receive more energy from the wind than smaller waves do. Thus, larger waves grow larger, and smaller waves die out.

wave a periodic disturbance in a solid, liquid, or gas as energy is transmitted through a medium

wave period the time required for two consecutive wave crests to pass a given point

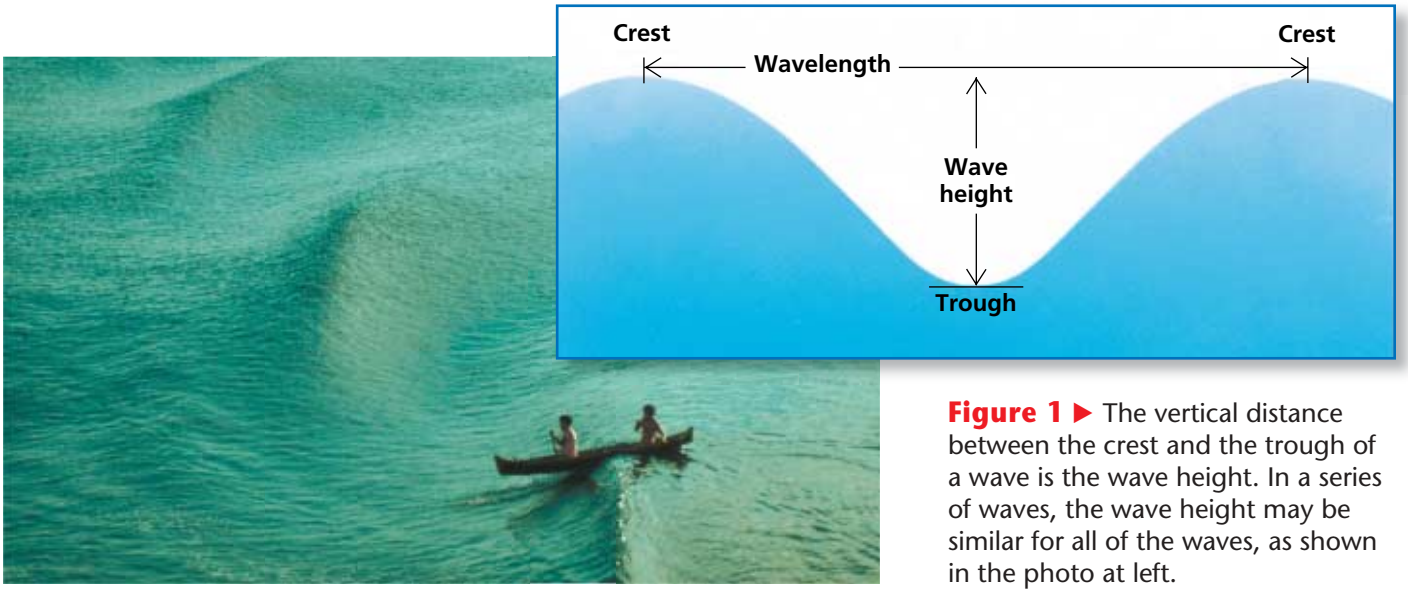


Figure 1 ▶ The vertical distance between the crest and the trough of a wave is the wave height. In a series of waves, the wave height may be similar for all of the waves, as shown in the photo at left.

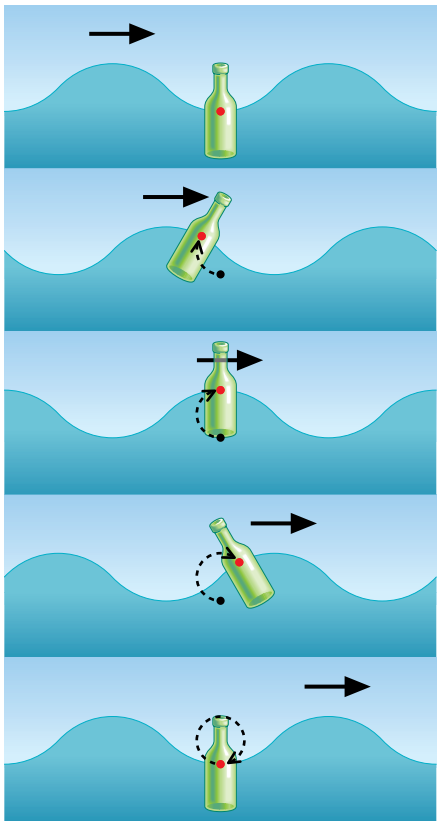


Figure 2 ▶ Like the bottle in this diagram, water molecules do not travel horizontally through the water with the wave.

Water Movement in a Wave

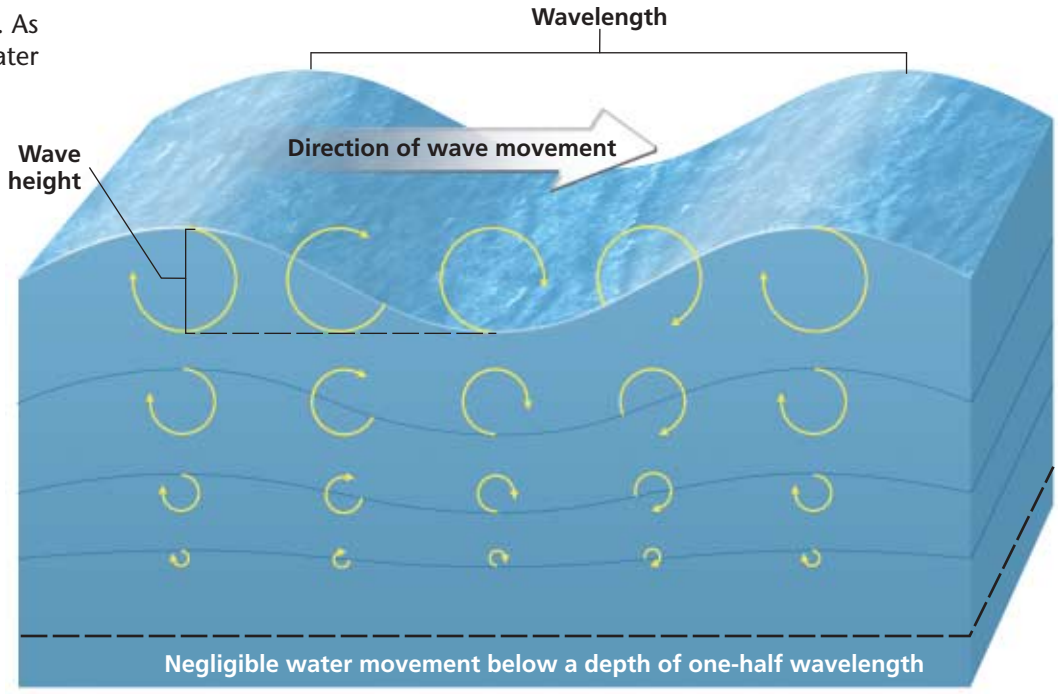
Although the energy of a wave moves from water molecule to water molecule in the direction of the wave, the water itself moves very little. This fact can be demonstrated by observing the movement of a bottle floating on the water as a wave passes. The bottle appears to move up and down, but it moves in a circular path, as shown in **Figure 2.** As the wave passes, the bottle returns to where it started.

As a wave moves across the surface of the ocean, only the energy of the wave, not the water, moves in the direction of the wave. The water molecules within the wave move in a circular motion. During a single wave period, each water particle moves in one complete circle. At the end of the wave period, a circling water particle ends up almost exactly where it started.

As a wave passes a given point, the circle traced by a water particle on the ocean surface has a diameter that is equal to the height of the wave. Because waves receive their energy from wind pushing against the surface of the ocean, the energy received decreases as the depth of the water increases. As a result, water at various depths receives varying amounts of energy. Thus, the diameter of a water molecule's circular path decreases as water depth increases, as shown in **Figure 3.** Below a depth of about one-half the wavelength, there is almost no circular motion of water molecules.

Reading Check **Why does the diameter of a water molecule's circular path in a wave decrease as depth increases? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 3 ▶ Wave energy decreases as depth increases. As a result, the diameter of a water molecule's circular path in the wave also decreases.



Wave Size

Three factors determine the size of a wave. These factors are the speed of the wind, the length of time the wind blows, and fetch. **Fetch** is the distance that the wind can blow across open water. Very large waves are produced by strong, steady winds blowing across a long fetch.

During a storm, steady high winds can cause some waves to gather enough energy to reach great size. Strong, gusty winds, on the other hand, produce choppy water that has waves of various heights and lengths and which may come from various directions. Nevertheless, the size of a wave will increase to only a certain height-to-length ratio before the wave collapses.

On calm days, small, smooth waves move steadily across the ocean's surface. One of a group of long, rolling waves that are of similar size is called a *swell*. Swells move in groups in which one wave follows another. Swells that reach the shore may have formed thousands of kilometers out in the ocean.

Figure 4 ▶ Whitecaps, such as the ones shown here off the coast of North Carolina, may form during storms.

fetch the distance that wind blows across an area of the sea to generate waves

Whitecaps

When winds blow the crest of a wave off, *whitecaps* form, as shown in **Figure 4.** Because whitecaps reflect solar radiation, they allow less radiation to reach the ocean. Scientists have been studying how this characteristic may affect climate.

QuickLAB 15 min

Waves

Procedure

1. Fill a **rectangular pan** (40 cm × 30 cm × 10 cm) with **water** to a depth of 7 cm.
2. Float a **cork** near the center of the pan. On each side of the pan, mark the location of the cork with a small piece of **tape.**
3. Hold a **spoon** in the water at one end of the pan. Carefully move the spoon up and down in the water to make a slow, regular pattern of waves.
4. Observe the movement of the cork for 1 minute. Sketch how the cork moves in relation to the waves.
5. Remove the cork from the pan.
6. Use the spoon to make a strong, steady series of waves.
7. Remove the spoon from the pan. Observe what happens when the waves reach the edges of the pan. Write down or sketch what you observe.

Analysis

1. Describe the motion of the cork when a wave passes.
2. How does the cork move relative to the tape on the sides of the pan? Explain your answer.
3. When a wave breaks on the shore, the water is carried in the direction of the wave. Based on your observations in step 4, does this statement contradict your model? Explain your answer.

Waves and the Coastline

In shallow water near the coastline, the bottom of a wave touches the ocean floor. A wave touches the ocean bottom where the depth of the water is about half the wavelength. Contact with the ocean floor creates friction, which causes the wave to slow and eventually break, as shown in **Figure 5.**

Breakers

The height of a wave changes as the wave approaches the coastline. The water involved in the motion of a wave extends to a depth of one-half wavelength. As the wave moves into shallow water, the bottom of the wave is slowed by friction. The top of the wave, however, continues to move at its original speed. The top of the wave gets farther and farther ahead of the bottom of the wave. Finally, the top of the wave topples over and forms a *breaker,* a foamy mass of water that washes onto the coastline. The height of the wave when the wave topples over is 1 to 2 times the height of the original wave.

Breaking waves scrape sediments off the ocean floor and move the sediments along the coastline. The waves also erode rocky coastlines. The size and force of breakers are determined by the original wave height, wavelength, and the steepness of the ocean floor close to the coastline. If the slope of the ocean floor is steep, the height of the wave increases rapidly and the wave breaks with great force. If the coastline slopes gently, the wave rises slowly. The wave spills forward with a rolling motion that continues as the wave advances up the coastline.

Reading Check **As a wave moves into shallow water, what causes the top of the wave to break and topple over? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

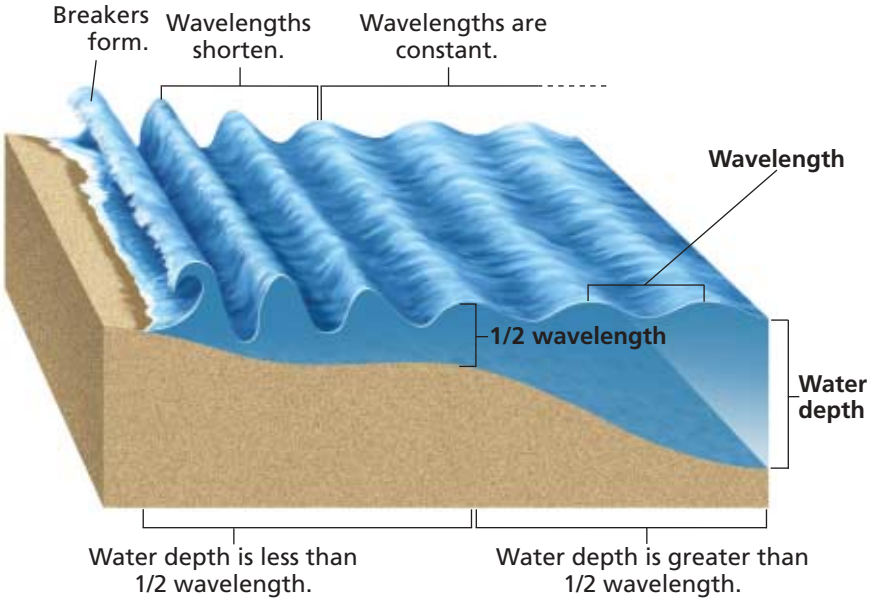


Figure 5 ▶ Breakers begin to form as the wave approaches the coastline. As a wave nears the coastline, wave height increases and wavelength decreases.

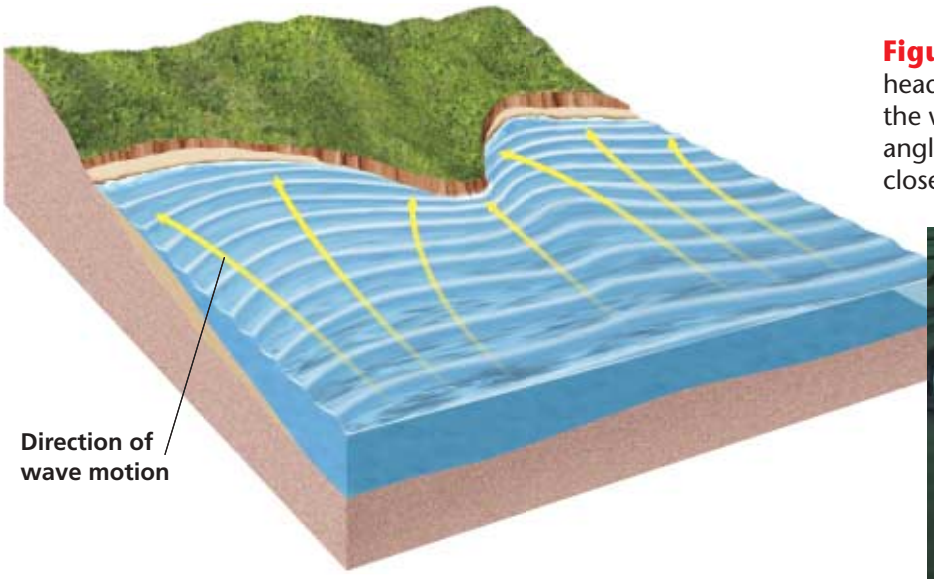
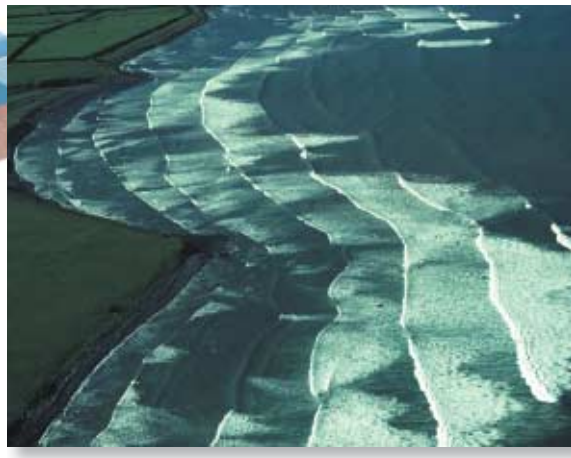


Figure 6 ▶ Waves strike the shore head-on as a result of refraction. Notice the waves approaching the shore at an angle. These waves bend as they draw closer to the shore.



Refraction

Most waves approach the coastline at an angle. When a wave reaches shallow water, however, the wave bends. This bending is called refraction. **Refraction** is the process by which ocean waves bend toward the coastline as they approach shallow water. As a wave approaches the coastline, the part of the wave that is in shallower water slows, and the part of the wave that is in deeper water maintains its speed. The wave gradually bends toward the beach and strikes the shore head-on, as shown in **Figure 6.**

refraction the process by which ocean waves bend directly toward the coastline as they approach shallow water, the part of the wave that is traveling in shallow water travels more slowly than the part of the wave that is still advancing in deeper water

Undertows and Rip Currents

Water carried onto a beach by breaking waves is pulled back into deeper water by gravity. This motion forms an irregular current called an *undertow*. An undertow is seldom strong, and only along shorelines that have steep drop-offs do undertows create problems for swimmers.

The generally weak undertow is often confused with the more dangerous *rip current*. Rip currents form when water from large breakers returns to the ocean through channels that cut through underwater sandbars that are parallel to the beach. Rip currents flow perpendicularly to shore through those channels and may be strong enough to quickly carry a swimmer away from shore. The presence of rip currents can usually be detected by a gap in a line of breakers or by turbid water, water in which sand has been stirred up by the current.

Longshore Currents

Longshore currents form when waves approach the beach at an angle. Longshore currents flow parallel to the shore. Great quantities of sand are carried by longshore currents. If there is a bay or inlet along the shoreline where waves refract, sand will be deposited as the energy of the waves decreases. These sand deposits form low ridges of sand called *sandbars*.

Figure 7 ▶ A tsunami caused wide-spread damage on the coastline of the Waiakea area of Hilo, Hawaii, in 1960.

Tsunamis

The most destructive waves in the ocean are not powered by the wind. *Tsunamis* are giant seismic ocean waves. Most tsunamis are caused by earthquakes on the ocean floor, but some can be caused by volcanic eruptions and underwater landslides. Tsunamis are commonly called *tidal waves*, which is misleading because tsunamis are not caused by tides.

Tsunamis have a long wavelength. In deep water, the wave height of a tsunami is usually less than 1 m, but the wavelength may be as long as 500 km. A tsunami commonly has a wave period of about 1 hour and may travel at speeds of up to 890 km/h (as fast as a jet airplane). Because the wave height of a tsunami is so low in the open ocean, the tsunami cannot be felt by people aboard ships.

Tsunami as a Destructive Force

A tsunami has a tremendous amount of energy. Because its wavelength is so great, the entire depth of the water is involved in the wave motion of a tsunami. All of the energy of this mass of water is released against the shore and causes a great deal of destruction, as shown in **Figure 7.** Near the shore, the height of the tsunami greatly increases as the tsunami's speed decreases. As it approaches the shore, the wave may reach a height of 30 to 40 m. The arrival of a tsunami may be signaled by the sudden pulling back of the water along the shore. This pulling back occurs when the trough of the tsunami arrives before the crest. If the crest arrives first, a sudden, rapid rise in the water level occurs.

The tsunami triggered by the earthquake in Chile in 1960 caused destruction to many countries in the Pacific Ocean. It struck the coast of South America and then Hawaii and crossed 17,000 km of ocean to strike Japan.

SCILINKS® NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Tsunamis
SciLinks code: HQ61561

Section 2 Review

1. **Explain** how wavelength and wave period can be used to calculate wave speed.
2. **Describe** the formation of waves.
3. **List** three factors that determine the size of a wave.
4. **Explain** why incoming waves refract toward the beach until they strike the shore head-on.
5. **Describe** what factors cause tsunamis.
6. **Explain** why waves slow down in shallow water.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Analyzing Processes** Would the breakers at a specific beach always form at the same distance from shore? Explain your answer.
8. **Predicting Consequences** Explain how whitecaps could affect climate.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *wave, wave height, whitecap, trough, crest, fetch, swell,* and *tsunami.*

Section 3 Tides

The periodic rise and fall of the water level in the oceans is called the **tide.** *High tide* is when the water level is highest. *Low tide* is when the water level is lowest. The tide change is most noticeable on the coastline. If you stand on a beach long enough, you can see how the ocean retreats and returns with the tides.

The Causes of Tides

In the late 1600s, Isaac Newton identified the force that causes the rise and fall of tides along coastlines. According to Newton's law of gravitation, the gravitational pull of the moon on Earth and Earth's waters is the major cause of tides. The sun also causes tides, but they are smaller because the sun is so much farther from Earth than the moon is.

As the moon revolves around Earth, the moon exerts a gravitational pull on the entire Earth. However, because the force of the moon's gravity decreases with distance from the moon, the gravitational pull of the moon is strongest on the side of Earth that is nearest to the moon. As a result, the ocean on Earth's near side bulges slightly, which causes a high tide within the area of the bulge.

At the same time, another tidal bulge forms on the opposite side of Earth. This tidal bulge forms because the solid Earth, which acts as though all of its mass were at Earth's center, is pulled more strongly toward the moon than the ocean water on Earth's far side is. The result is a smaller tidal bulge on Earth's far side. **Figure 1** shows the Earth-moon system and the position of the moon in relation to the tidal bulges.

Low tides form halfway between the two high tides. Low tides form because as ocean water flows toward the areas of high tide, the water level in other areas of the oceans drops.

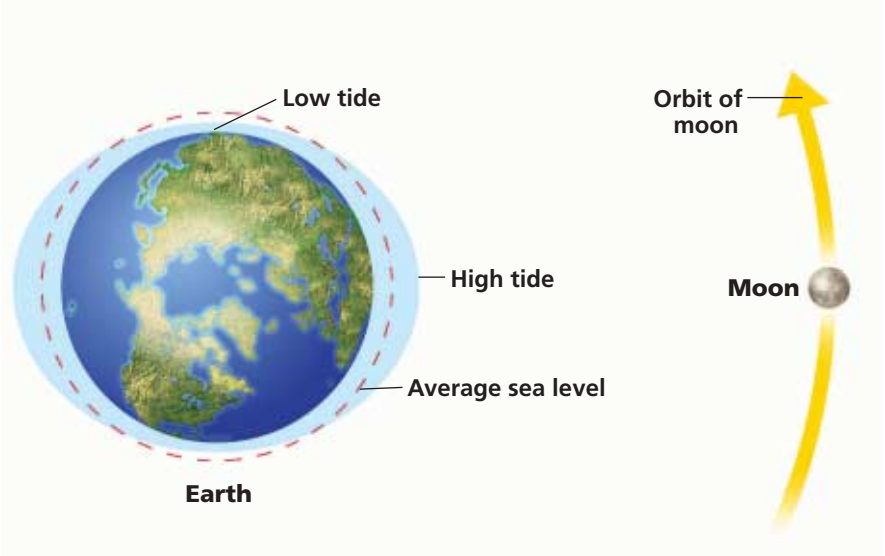


Figure 1 ▶ Tides form because the gravitational pull of the moon decreases with distance from the moon. Because of Earth's rotation, most locations in the ocean have two high tides and two low tides daily.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** how the gravitational pull of the moon causes tides.
- **Compare** spring tides and neap tides.
- **Describe** how tidal oscillations affect tidal patterns.
- **Explain** how the coastline affects tidal currents.

KEY TERMS

tide
tidal range
tidal oscillation
tidal current

tide the periodic rise and fall of the water level in the oceans and other large bodies of water

MATHPRACTICE

Tidal Friction As the tidal bulges move around Earth, friction between the water and the ocean floor slows Earth's rotation slightly. Scientists estimate that the average length of a day has increased by 10.8 min in the last 65 million years. How many years does it take for Earth's rotation to slow by 1 s?

Behavior of Tides

Earth rotates on its axis once every 24 h. In that 24 h, the moon moves through about 1/29 of its orbit. Because the moon orbits Earth in the same direction that Earth rotates, all areas of the ocean pass under the moon every 24 h 50 min. As seen from above the North Pole, Earth rotates counterclockwise and the tidal bulges appear to move westward around Earth.

Because there are two tidal bulges, most locations in the ocean have two high tides and two low tides daily. The difference in levels of ocean water at high tide and low tide is called the **tidal range.** The tidal range can vary widely from place to place. Because the moon rises about 50 minutes later each day, the times of high and low tides are about 50 minutes later each day.

tidal range the difference in levels of ocean water at high tide and low tide

Spring Tides

The sun's gravitational pull can strengthen or weaken the moon's influence on the tides. During the new moon and the full moon, Earth, the sun, and the moon are aligned, as shown in **Figure 2.** The combined gravitational pull of the sun and the moon results in higher high tides and lower low tides. So, the daily tidal range is greatest during the new moon and the full moon. During these two monthly periods, tides are called *spring tides*.

Neap Tides

During the first- and third-quarter phases of the moon, the moon and the sun are at right angles to each other in relation to Earth, also shown in **Figure 2.** The gravitational forces of the sun and moon work against each other. As a result, the daily tidal range is small. Tides that occur during this time are called *neap tides*.

Reading Check **Describe the location of the sun and moon in relation to Earth when the tidal range is small. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

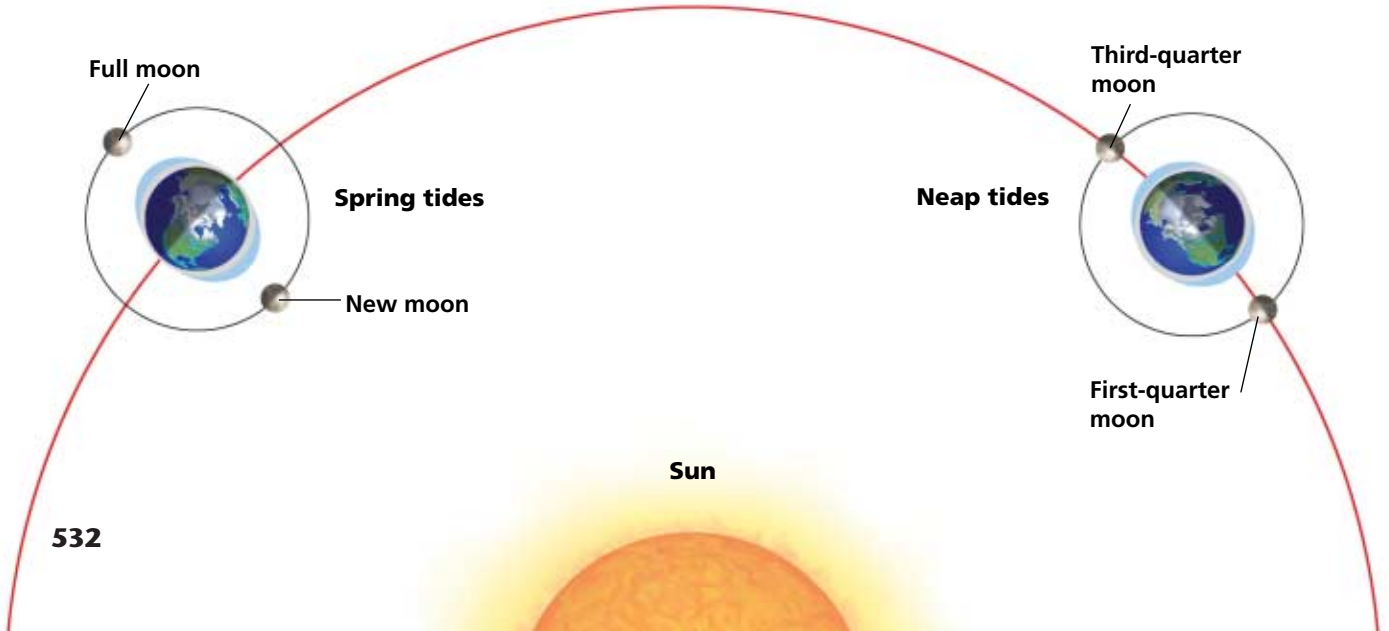


Figure 2 ▶ The alignment of the sun, moon, and Earth during spring tides differs from their alignment during neap tides. ***How often do spring tides occur?***

Tidal Variations

Although the global ocean is one body of water, continents and irregularities in the ocean floor divide the ocean into several basins. Tidal patterns are greatly influenced by the size, shape, depth, and location of the ocean basin in which the tides occur.

Along the Atlantic Coast of the United States, two high tides and two low tides occur each day and have a fairly regular tidal range. Along the shore of the Gulf of Mexico, however, only one high tide and one low tide occur each day. Along the Pacific Coast, the tides follow a mixed pattern of tidal ranges. Pacific Coast tides commonly have a very high tide followed by a very low tide and then a lower high tide, followed by a higher low tide.

Tidal Oscillations

Tidal patterns are also affected by tidal oscillations. **Tidal oscillations** (TIE duhl AHS uh LAY shunz) are slow, rocking motions of ocean water that occur as the tidal bulges move around the ocean basins. Along straight coastlines and in the open ocean, the effects of tidal oscillations are not very obvious. In some enclosed seas, such as the Baltic and Mediterranean Seas, tidal oscillations reduce the effects of the tidal bulges. As a result, these seas have a very small tidal range. However, in small basins and narrow bays located off major ocean basins, tidal oscillations may amplify the effects of the tidal bulges. An example of the effects of tidal oscillations is shown in **Figure 3.**

Figure 3 ▶ A great tidal range of as much as 15 m in the V-shaped Bay of Fundy in Canada is caused by tidal oscillations.

tidal oscillation the slow, rocking motion of ocean water that occurs as the tidal bulges move around the ocean basins

Connection to ASTRONOMY

The Earth-Moon System

The force of attraction that exists between all matter in the universe is called *gravity*. The force of attraction between any two objects depends on their masses and the distance between them. Earth's mass is estimated to be 6.0×10^{24} kg, and the moon's mass is estimated to be 7.3×10^{22} kg. The average distance between Earth and the moon is 384,000 km. These masses and distance make the attractive force of gravity strong between Earth and the moon. Because the gravitational forces between these two bodies is strong, the moon causes tides on Earth's surface. At the same time, Earth's gravity affects the rate at which the moon rotates.

Earth rotates on its axis once every 24 hours. While Earth completes one rotation, the moon travels only 1/29 of the way around Earth relative to the sun. As a result, the moon rises and sets about 50 minutes later each day. However, relative to the stars, the moon revolves around Earth once every 27.3 days.

In addition to orbiting Earth and revolving around the sun, the moon spins very slowly on its axis. It rotates on its axis once every 27.3 days, or about once every lunar cycle. Because the rotation and revolution of the moon take the same amount of time, observers on Earth always see the same side of the moon.

Figure 4 ▶ The photo to the right shows a tidal bore in early spring at Turnagain Arm of Cook Inlet, Alaska.

Tidal Currents

tidal current the movement of water toward and away from the coast as a result of the rise and fall of the tides

As ocean water rises and falls with the tides, it flows toward and away from the coast. This movement of the water is called a **tidal current.** When the tidal current flows toward the coast, it is called *flood tide.* When the tidal current flows toward the ocean, it is called *ebb tide.* When there are no tidal currents, the time period between flood tide and ebb tide is called *slack water.*

Tidal currents in the open ocean are much smaller than those at the coastline. Tidal currents are strongest between two adjacent coastal regions that have large differences in the height of the tides. In bays and along other narrow coastlines, tides may create rapid currents. Some tidal currents may reach speeds of 20 km/h.

Where a river enters the ocean through a long bay, the tide may enter the river mouth and create a *tidal bore,* a surge of water that rushes upstream, such as the one shown in **Figure 4.** In some cases, the tidal bore rushes upstream in the form of a large wave up to 5 m high that eventually loses energy. The tidal bores in the River Severn in England travel almost 20 km/h and reach as far as 33 km inland.

SCILINKS
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Tides
SciLinks code: HQ61525

Section 3 Review

1. **Describe** how the moon causes tides.
2. **Explain** how the sun can influence the moon's effect on tides.
3. **Compare** spring tides and neap tides.
4. **Describe** how ocean basins affect tidal patterns.
5. **Explain** how tidal oscillations in an enclosed sea would affect tidal patterns in that sea.
6. **Compare** the movement of ocean water in the open ocean with the movement of ocean water in narrow bays.
7. **Describe** how a tidal bore forms.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Predicting Consequences** Predict where tidal currents may be of concern to ships that are approaching the land.
9. **Identifying Relationships** Describe ways in which tides could be affected if Earth had two moons.

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *tide, tidal range, spring tide, neap tide, tidal oscillation, tidal current, flood tide,* and *ebb tide.*

Chapter 21

Highlights

Sections

1 Ocean Currents

Key Terms

current, 519
surface current, 519
Coriolis effect, 520
gyre, 520
Gulf Stream, 522
deep current, 523

Key Concepts

- Surface currents of the ocean are the result of global wind belts, the Coriolis effect, and continental land barriers.
- Major ocean currents, such as the Gulf Stream and the Canary Current, help create gyres.
- Deep currents are produced as dense water near the North and South Poles sinks and moves toward the equator beneath less-dense water.
- The Antarctic Bottom Water current is a deep-water current that moves slowly north along the ocean bottom.

2 Ocean Waves

wave, 525
wave period, 525
fetch, 527
refraction, 529

- The speed of a wave can be calculated by dividing the wavelength by the wave period.
- Wind is the primary source of wave energy.
- Wave size is determined by wind speed, by the length of time wind blows, and fetch.
- As a wave comes into contact with the ocean floor, the wave may undergo refraction or form breakers.
- Waves near the shoreline can cause currents such as an undertow and rip current.
- Tsunamis are giant, destructive waves.

3 Tides

tide, 531
tidal range, 532
tidal oscillation, 533
tidal current, 534

- The gravitational effects of the moon and, to a lesser extent, the sun cause tides.
- Tidal ranges are greatest during spring tides and smallest during neap tides.
- Variations in the tides are influenced by the size, shape, depth, and location of the ocean basins or seas in which the tides occur.
- Tidal currents are generally small in the open ocean but may create rapid currents in narrow bays along the coastline.

Chapter 21 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *current*
2. *gyre*
3. *tide*
4. *wave*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

5. *surface current* and *deep current*
6. *Coriolis effect* and *gyre*
7. *fetch* and *refraction*
8. *tidal range* and *tidal oscillation*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. The water in the ocean moves in giant streams called
   a. currents.
   b. westerlies.
   c. waves.
   d. tides.

10. The effect of Earth's rotation on winds and ocean currents is called the
    a. neap-tide effect.
    b. refraction effect.
    c. Coriolis effect.
    d. tsunami effect.

11. Which of the following currents is the westward warm-water current in the North Atlantic Gyre?
    a. Canary Current
    b. North Atlantic Current
    c. North Equatorial Current
    d. Gulf Stream

12. Deep currents are the result of
    a. the Coriolis effect.
    b. changes in the density of ocean water.
    c. the trade winds.
    d. neap tides.

13. The periodic disturbance in water as energy is transmitted through the water is a
    a. current.
    b. breaker.
    c. fetch.
    d. wave.

14. The highest point of a wave is the
    a. trough.
    b. period.
    c. crest.
    d. length.

15. The distance that wind blows across an area of the sea to generate waves is the
    a. trough.
    b. sargassum.
    c. fetch.
    d. wave period.

16. The movement of water toward and away from the coasts due to tidal forces is called a
    a. tidal bore.
    b. tidal current.
    c. tidal range.
    d. tidal oscillation.

Short Answer

17. Describe how a breaker forms.

18. Define *tide,* and explain why tides form.

19. What factors control most ocean surface currents?

20. How does the depth of the ocean floor affect the shape and speed of a wave?

21. How do deep currents form?

22. Explain how wind is the primary source for wave energy.

23. What is a tidal bore?

Critical Thinking

24. Determining Cause and Effect During winter in the northern Indian Ocean, winds called *monsoons* blow in a direction opposite to the direction that they blow during summer. What effect do these winds have on surface currents?

25. Analyzing Processes Suppose that a retaining wall is built along a shoreline. What will happen to waves as they pass over the retaining wall?

26. Making Inferences Imagine that you are fishing from a small boat anchored off the shore of the Gulf of Mexico. You are lulled to sleep by the gently rocking boat but wake up to find your boat on wet sand. What happened?

27. Making Predictions What effect would Earth's rotating in the direction opposite that in which it now rotates have on the movement of ocean currents?

Concept Mapping

28. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *currents, surface currents, trade winds, deep currents, Coriolis effect, wave, breaker, rip current, tide, Antarctic Bottom Water* and *tidal current*.

Math Skills

29. Applying Quantities The Gulf Stream can move 100 million cubic meters of water per second. The Mississippi River moves 15,400 m^3 of water per second. How many times more water per second does the Gulf Stream move than the Mississippi River does?

30. Making Calculations If a wave has a wavelength of 216 m and a period of 12 s, what is the wave's speed?

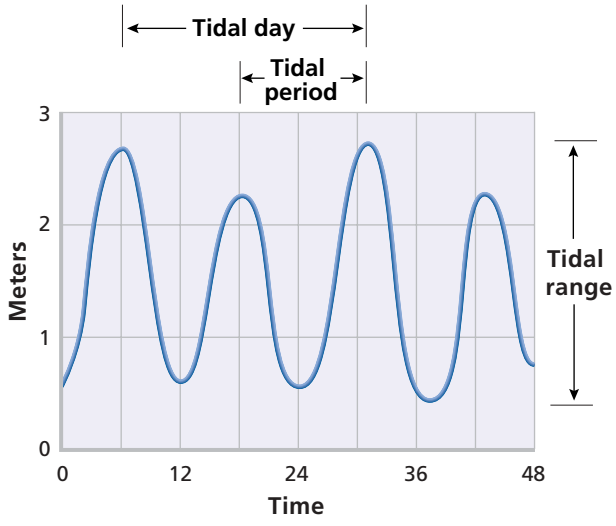
Writing Skills

31. Writing from Research Write a report that describes the La Rance, France, tidal power plant project, the amount of electricity provided by the project, and the impact of the project on the environment of the area.

32. Outlining Topics Create an outline that shows the steps of tide formation. Provide diagrams as needed to illustrate the steps.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows the measurements of tides in one location on the Atlantic coast of North America. Use the graph to answer the questions that follow.



33. How many high tides occur every day in this location?

34. How many hours is the tidal period?

35. How many hours apart are the low tides?

36. What is the average tidal range in meters?

37. What is the difference in height (in meters) between the first high tide and the second high tide?

Chapter 21 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 Which of the following factors is a cause of surface currents?
A. Earth's rotation on its axis
B. water salinity
C. human activity
D. sea-floor spreading

2 What is the speed of an ocean wave that has 12 s between crests and a wavelength of 36 m?
F. 6 m/s
G. 3 km
H. 3 m/s
I. 12 m

3 When an ocean wave travels 100 m west, which of the following also travels 100 m west?
A. the energy in the wave
B. the water molecules in the wave
C. both the water molecule and the energy
D. neither the water molecule nor the energy

4 What role do convection currents in the ocean and atmosphere have in regulating climate?
F. They set up atmospheric circulation.
G. They prevent deep-water currents.
H. They restrict energy to local use.
I. They ensure a balance of precipitation.

5 The vertical distance from the trough of a wave to the crest of a wave is called the
A. wave height
B. wave length
C. wave speed
D. wave distance

Directions (6–8): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 What is a main factor that causes the movements of deep-water currents?

7 What happens to a wave's height as the wave approaches the shore?

8 Most waves are generated by energy transferred to water from what?

Reading Skills

Directions (9–11): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Tsunamis

Tsunamis are the most destructive waves in the ocean. Most tsunamis are caused by earthquakes on the ocean floor, but some can be caused by volcanic eruptions and underwater landslides. Tsunamis are sometimes called *tidal waves*, which is misleading because tsunamis have no connections to tides.

Tsunamis commonly have a wave period of about 1 hour and a wave speed of about 890 km/h, which is about as fast as a commercial airplane. By the time the tsunami reaches the shore, the tsunami's height may be 40 m.

Tsunamis can travel thousands of kilometers. One tsunami was triggered by an earthquake off the coast of South America in 1960. The tsunami was so powerful that it crossed the Pacific Ocean and hit the city of Hilo, on the coast of Hawaii, approximately 10,000 km away. The same tsunami then continued and struck Japan.

9 Why is the word *misleading* used to describe the use of the term *tidal waves* in the reading passage?
A. Tsunamis are really large tides.
B. Tsunamis can cause extensive damage to coastal areas.
C. Tsunamis are related to earthquakes.
D. Tsunamis are not related to tides.

10 Which of the following statements is a fact from the passage?
F. All tsunamis are caused by earthquakes.
G. A tsunami can travel as fast as an airplane.
H. The tsunami of 1960 only struck Japan.
I. Tsunamis are caused by surface currents.

11 Once triggered, how far can a tsunami travel?
A. Tsunamis are short-lived and usually dissipate within just a few kilometers.
B. Tsunamis travel about 100 km before dissipating in the ocean.
C. Tsunamis travel about 1,000 km before dissipating in the ocean.
D. Tsunamis can travel thousands of kilometers before dissipating or striking land.

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (12–15): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

Base your answers to questions 12 and 13 on the diagrams of the Earth, moon, and sun system below.

Effect of Sun and Moon on Earth's Tides

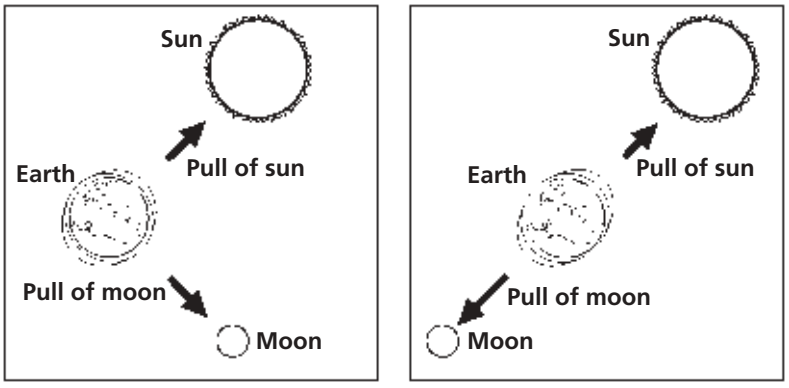


Diagram A Diagram B

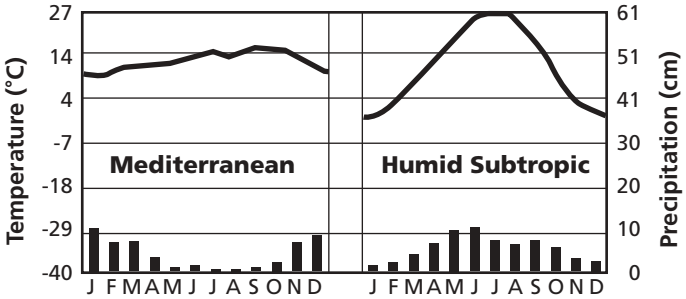
12 What type of tide is produced by the arrangement in Diagram B?

F. spring tide
G. neap tide
H. winter tide
I. weak tide

13 Using the diagrams above, explain in general terms how the gravitational effects of astronomical bodies cause tides on Earth.

Base your answers to questions 14 and 15 on the climate graphs shown below, which combine temperature and precipitation data for San Francisco, California and Wichita, Kansas.

Average Yearly Weather Data for San Francisco and Wichita



14 Which location shows the most extreme climate variation?

A. Wichita, Kansas shows the most extreme climate variation.
B. San Francisco, California shows the most extreme climate variation.
C. Both climates are equally mild.
D. Both climates are equally variable.

15 How do the location of these cities and the nearby currents help explain the differences in their climates?

Test TIP

Allow a few minutes at the end of the test-taking period to check for careless mistakes such as marking two answers for a single question.

Chapter 21

Making Models Lab

Objectives

- **Model** the movement of waves.
- **Compare** the characteristics of waves when wave speed changes.

Materials

cloth ties, about 50 cm in length (2)
marker
meterstick
paper, 2 m × 1 m
paper, graph
pen or pencil, colored (3)
rope, thin, 2.5 m in length

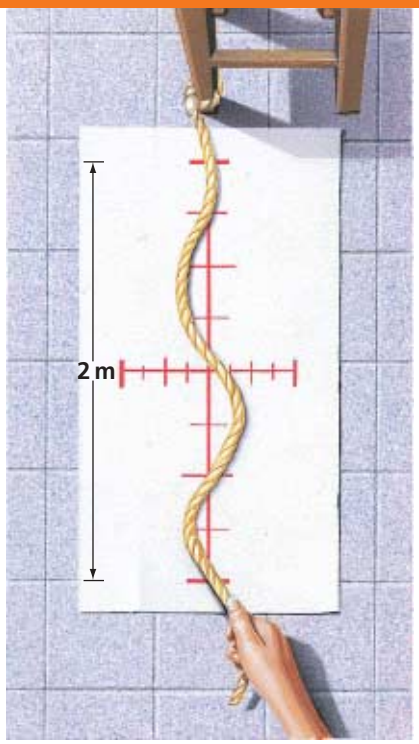
Wave Motion

The source of wave movement in water is energy, which is generated primarily from wind. Waves of water appear to move horizontally. However, only the energy of the waves moves horizontally; the water moves horizontally very little. In this lab, you will work with two partners to simulate wave motion and to observe how energy generates wave motion in water. You will also observe the properties of waves.

PROCEDURE

1. Tie one end of the rope securely to the leg of a chair or table.
2. On the large sheet of paper, use the meterstick to draw a grid like the one shown in the illustration on the next page. Draw and label the grid using the measurements shown.
3. Place the sheet of paper on the floor, and line up the rope along the 2 m line of the grid.
4. To make waves, move the free end of the rope from side to side. (Note: Be sure to maintain a constant motion with the rope.)
5. While one person moves the rope, another person marks the paper where a crest of a wave hits. The third group member marks the paper where a trough of a wave hits.
6. On the graph paper, make a graph that has wavelength (in meters) as the *x*-axis and wave height (in meters) as the *y*-axis.

Step 5



7. Plot a wave that represents the wave that you observed in step 5. Plot the wave height and the wavelength. Indicate the direction of the wave's motion.
8. Move the rope at a fast speed. Do not change the side-to-side distance that you move the free end of the rope.
9. As soon as a constant motion has been established, repeat steps 5 and 6. Plot a wave that represents the wave that you observed when repeating step 5. Use a pen or pencil whose color differs from the color of the first wave plot.
10. Next, generate very small waves. Repeat steps 5 and 6 using a third color of pen or pencil.
11. On your graph, label a crest and a trough on each of the waves that you plotted. Measure the wave height and wavelengths of each wave that you plotted.
12. Use the following formula to calculate the wave speeds of the three waves represented on the graph if each wave period is 6 s:

$$\text{wave speed} = \frac{\text{wavelength}}{\text{wave period}}$$

13. Tie the two pieces of cloth around the middle of the rope about 15 cm apart.
14. Make waves by moving the end of the rope from side to side. Observe and record the motion of the cloth ties relative to the motion of the waves.

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Examining Data** How do the wave motions of the waves shown on your graph differ from each other? If these waves were real water waves, what might be the cause(s) of the differences in motion?
2. **Recognizing Relationships** How is the movement of the rope similar to wave movement in water?
3. **Analyzing Relationships** How do the motions of the cloth ties differ from the wave's motion?
4. **Drawing Conclusions** What do the motions of the cloth ties tell you about wave movement in water?

Extension

1. **Making Comparisons** Use a 4 m rope to repeat the investigation. Construct a graph similar to your first graph, but extend the *x*-axis to provide room to plot a 4 m length. Observe and plot five waves of varying speeds and heights. Compare waves generated on a 2 m rope with those generated on a 4 m rope. Describe your results. Using 6 s as the wave period for each wave that you plot, calculate wave speeds.

Roaming Rubber Duckies

Map Skills Activity

This map shows the estimated route taken by bathtub toys spilled from a cargo ship in the North Pacific Ocean. Use the map to answer the questions below:

1. **Analyzing Data** Describe where the toys started their journey.
2. **Evaluating Data** How long did it take the toys to travel to Sitka, Alaska, by the most direct route?
3. **Identifying Relationships** Compare the map above with the map of the major surface currents in the section entitled *Ocean Currents*. Then, name the current that carried the toys past Hawaii.
4. **Evaluating Sources** Is the current that carries the toys along the coast of the western United States cold or warm? Explain your answer.
5. **Predicting Consequences** Predict where the toys might have been located in December 2003 if tracking data were plotted on the map.
6. **Identifying Relationships** What is the name of the current that carried the toys south along the coast of Siberia?
7. **Evaluating Data** How long did it take the toys to travel from the location where they were dumped to their location on the coast of China on July 26, 2003?

Energy from the Ocean

The search for renewable energy sources has led to some ingenious ways of tapping the ocean for energy. Scientists have found ways to generate electricity from three ocean features: waves, tides, and heat.

Wave Energy

Most wave-power systems use buoys and the up-and-down motion of waves to run pumps that force water or air through turbine generators. A newer design uses piezoelectric plastic (pie EE zoh ee LEK trik PLAS tik), a material that produces electricity when stretched.

Tidal Energy

Tides can generate electricity in a way similar in principle to the way that hydroelectric plants on rivers generate electricity. At high tide, a dam built across a bay or inlet traps water. As the tide ebbs, this water is released through the dam's turbines to drive electric generators.

Thermal Energy

The process of producing electricity from the heat energy contained in ocean water is called *ocean thermal energy conversion* (OTEC). OTEC plants rely on steam to turn their turbine generators. Warm surface water is pumped through a vacuum chamber, which turns the water to steam. The steam then turns special low-pressure turbines.

Ocean power is not as cost effective as electricity from fuel-burning or nuclear power plants is. However, as ocean power technology becomes more reliable and more efficient, the ocean's renewable energy may become more affordable.

Extension

1. **Determining Cause and Effect** What do all three types of ocean power have in common?
2. **Research** Write a short report that explains how using energy from waves, tides, or heat in the ocean could help reduce pollution of the air and ocean.

▼ Tidal power plants, such as this one in France, rely on the flow of tides to turn turbines that generate electricity.

◀ This wave-power energy station in Scotland generates 500 kilowatts of electricity, enough to power 300 homes.

Unit 7

ATMOSPHERIC FORCES

Unit 7 Outline

CHAPTER 22
The Atmosphere

CHAPTER 23
Water in the Atmosphere

CHAPTER 24
Weather

CHAPTER 25
Climate

▶ Wall clouds, such as this one near Adrian, Texas, are small clouds that form underneath large storm clouds. The beginning of a tornado can be seen in the circulation of dust on the ground under this wall cloud. Tornadoes tend to form under wall clouds.

Chapter 22

The Atmosphere

Sections

1 Characteristics of the Atmosphere

2 Solar Energy and the Atmosphere

3 Atmospheric Circulation

What You'll Learn

- Which gases make up the atmosphere
- How solar energy interacts with the atmosphere
- What causes wind

Why It's Relevant

The atmosphere affects all living things on Earth. It provides the air that we breathe, protection from solar radiation, and the insulation that maintains the global temperature of Earth.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Booklet Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Booklet" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label each page of the booklet with a main idea from the chapter. As you read the chapter, write what you learn about each main idea on the appropriate page of the booklet.

▶ This image was captured by a satellite that was monitoring a large storm over the Atlantic Ocean. Storms are only one small feature of Earth's dynamic atmosphere.

Section 1

Characteristics of the Atmosphere

The layer of gases that surrounds Earth is called the **atmosphere**. The atmosphere is made up of a mixture of chemical elements and compounds that is commonly called *air*. The atmosphere protects Earth's surface from the sun's radiation and helps regulate the temperature of Earth's surface.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the composition of Earth's atmosphere.
- **Explain** how two types of barometers work.
- **Identify** the layers of the atmosphere.
- **Identify** two effects of air pollution.

KEY TERMS

atmosphere
ozone
atmospheric pressure
troposphere
stratosphere
mesosphere
thermosphere

Composition of the Atmosphere

As the graph in **Figure 1** shows, the most abundant elements in air are the gases nitrogen, oxygen, and argon. The composition of dry air is nearly the same everywhere on Earth's surface and up to an altitude of about 80 km. The two most abundant compounds in air are the gases carbon dioxide, CO_2, and water vapor, H_2O. In addition to containing gaseous elements and compounds, the atmosphere commonly carries various kinds of tiny solid particles, such as dust and pollen.

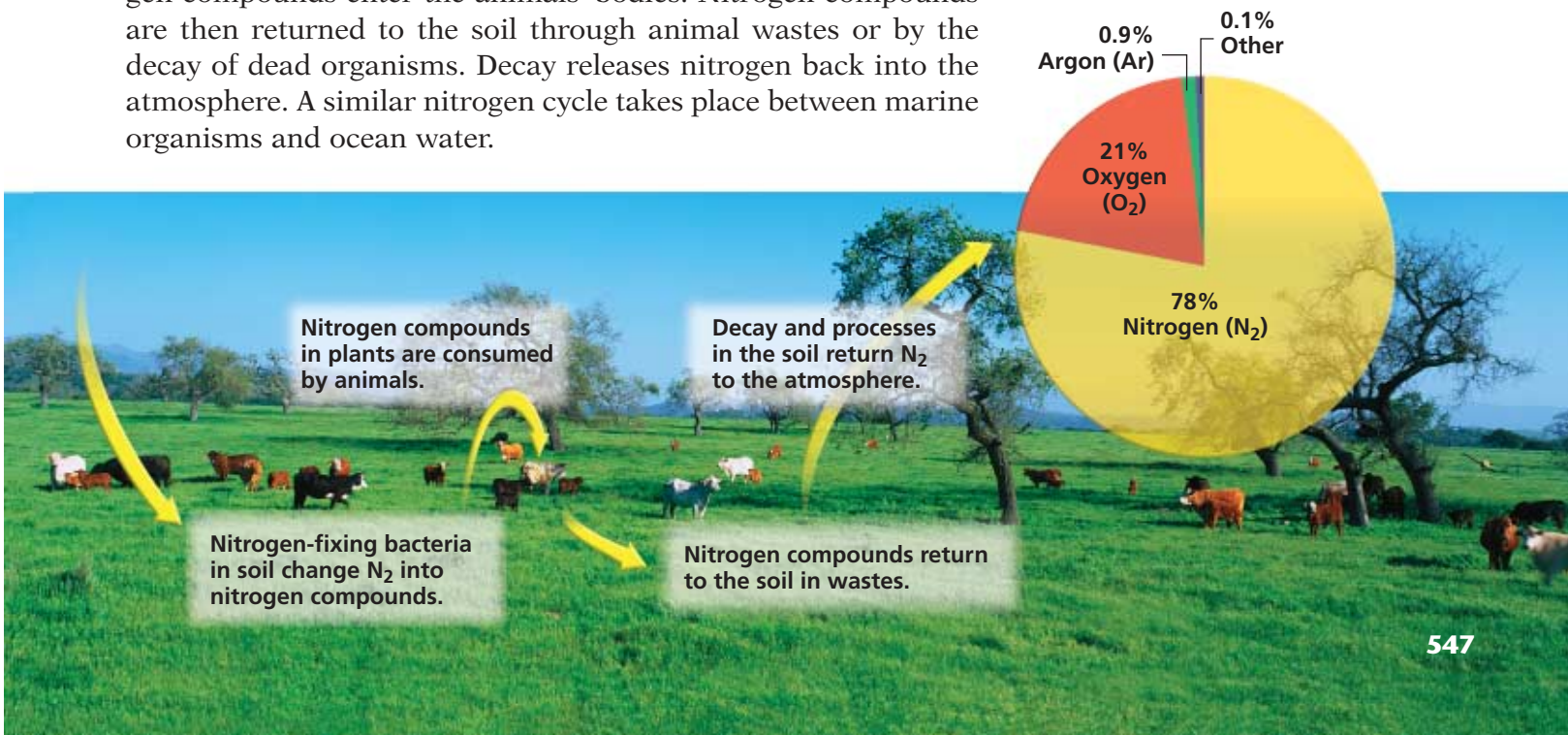
Nitrogen in the Atmosphere

Nitrogen makes up about 78% of Earth's atmosphere. Nitrogen in the atmosphere is maintained through a process called the *nitrogen cycle*. During the nitrogen cycle, nitrogen moves from air to the soil and then to plants and animals and eventually returns to the air, as shown in **Figure 1.**

Nitrogen is removed from the air mainly by the action of nitrogen-fixing bacteria. These microscopic organisms live in the soil and on the roots of certain plants. The bacteria chemically change nitrogen from the air into nitrogen compounds that are vital to the growth of all plants. When animals eat plants, nitrogen compounds enter the animals' bodies. Nitrogen compounds are then returned to the soil through animal wastes or by the decay of dead organisms. Decay releases nitrogen back into the atmosphere. A similar nitrogen cycle takes place between marine organisms and ocean water.

atmosphere a mixture of gases that surrounds a planet, such as Earth

Figure 1 ▶ The pie graph shows the composition of dry air by volume at sea level. Nitrogen in the atmosphere is kept at a relatively constant level by the nitrogen cycle.



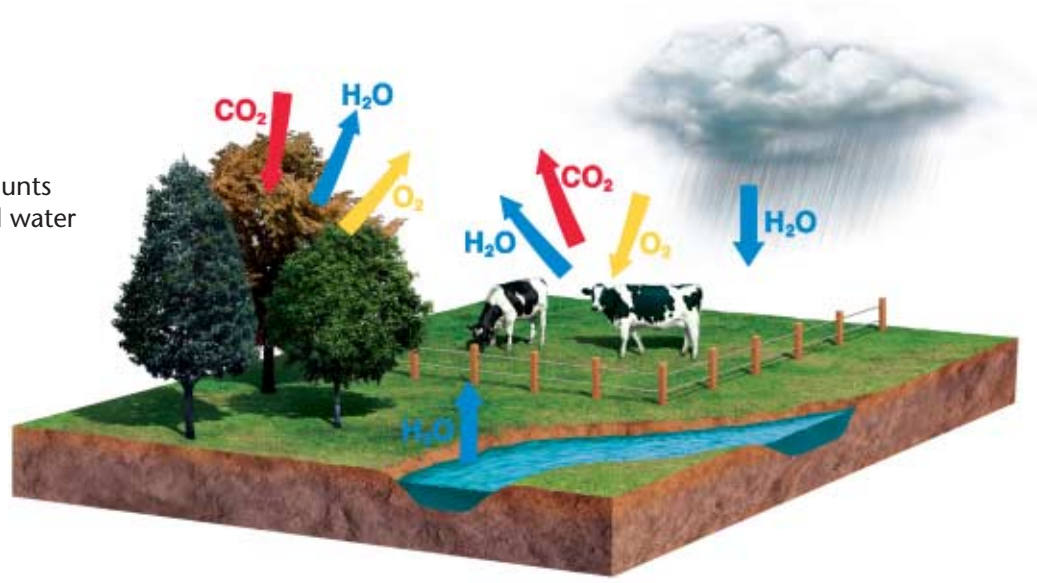


Figure 2 ▶ Several processes interact to maintain stable amounts of oxygen, carbon dioxide, and water in the atmosphere.

Oxygen in the Atmosphere

Oxygen makes up about 21% of Earth's atmosphere. As shown in **Figure 2,** natural processes maintain the chemical balance of oxygen in the atmosphere. Animals, bacteria, and plants remove oxygen from the air as part of their life processes. Forest fires, the burning of fuels, and the weathering of some rocks also remove oxygen from air. These processes would quickly use up most atmospheric oxygen if various processes that add oxygen to air did not take place.

Land and ocean plants produce large quantities of oxygen in a process called *photosynthesis*. During photosynthesis, plants use sunlight, water, and carbon dioxide to produce their food, and they release oxygen as a byproduct. The amount of oxygen produced by plants each year equals the amount consumed by all animal life processes. Thus, the oxygen content of the air has not changed significantly for millions of years.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: The Atmosphere
SciLinks code: HQ60112

Water Vapor in the Atmosphere

As water evaporates from oceans, lakes, streams, and soil, it enters air as the invisible gas *water vapor*. Plants and animals give off water vapor during transpiration, one of their life processes. But as water vapor enters the atmosphere, it is removed by the processes of condensation and precipitation. The percentage of water vapor in the atmosphere varies depending on factors such as time of day, location, and season. Because the amount of water vapor in air varies, the composition of the atmosphere is usually given as that of dry air. Dry air has less than 1% water vapor. Moist air may contain as much as 4% water vapor.

Reading Check **Does transpiration increase the amount of water vapor in the atmosphere or decrease the amount of water vapor in the atmosphere? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Ozone in the Atmosphere

Although it is present only in small amounts, a form of oxygen called **ozone** is an important component of the atmosphere. The oxygen that we breathe, O_2, has two atoms per molecule, but ozone, O_3, has three atoms. Ozone in the upper atmosphere forms the *ozone layer,* which absorbs harmful ultraviolet radiation from the sun. Without the ozone layer, living organisms would be severely damaged by the sun's ultraviolet rays. Unfortunately, a number of human activities damage the ozone layer. Compounds known as *chlorofluorocarbons,* or CFCs, which were previously used in refrigerators and air conditioners, and exhaust compounds, such as nitrogen oxide, break down ozone and have caused parts of the ozone layer to weaken, as **Figure 3** shows.

ozone a gas molecule that is made up of three oxygen atoms

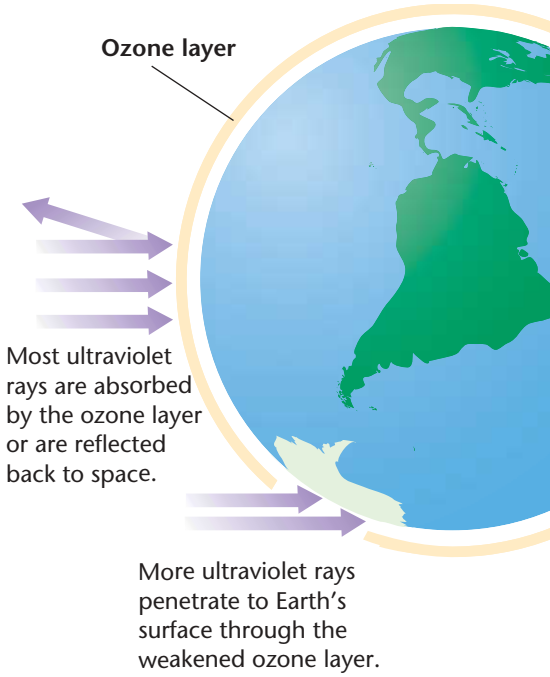


Figure 3 ▶ Harmful ultraviolet radiation can reach Earth's surface through the weakened ozone layer over Antarctica.

Particulates in the Atmosphere

In addition to containing gases, the atmosphere contains various tiny solid particles, called *particulates*. Particulates can be volcanic dust, ash from fires, microscopic organisms, or mineral particles lifted from soil by winds. Pollen from plants and particles from meteors that have vaporized are also particulates. When tiny drops of ocean water are tossed into the air as sea spray, the drops evaporate. Left behind in the air are tiny crystals of salt, another type of particulate. Four common sources of particulates are shown in **Figure 4.** Large, heavy particles remain in the atmosphere only briefly, but tiny particles can remain suspended in the atmosphere for months or years.

Figure 4 ▶ Sources of Particulates

Volcanic ash and dust can remain in the atmosphere for years.

The wind carries pollen from plant to plant.

Tornadoes and windstorms carry dirt and dust high into the atmosphere.

As seaspray evaporates, salt particles are left in the atmosphere.

Figure 5 ▶ At high altitudes, climbers must carry a supply of oxygen to breathe from because the density of the atmosphere there is very low. So, oxygen levels in the air are too low to supply the climber. In 2001, Eric Weihenmeyer (shown above) was the first blind person to reach the summit of Mount Everest.

Atmospheric Pressure

Gravity holds the gases of the atmosphere near Earth's surface. As a result, the air molecules are compressed together and exert force on Earth's surface. The pressure exerted on a surface by the atmosphere is called **atmospheric pressure.** Atmospheric pressure is exerted equally in all directions—up, down, and sideways.

atmospheric pressure the force per unit area that is exerted on a surface by the weight of the atmosphere

Earth's gravity keeps 99% of the total mass of the atmosphere within 32 km of Earth's surface. The remaining 1% extends upward for hundreds of kilometers but gets increasingly thinner at high altitudes, as shown in **Figure 5.** Because the pull of gravity is not as strong at higher altitudes, the air molecules are farther apart and exert less pressure on each other at higher altitudes. Thus, atmospheric pressure decreases as altitude increases.

Atmospheric pressure also changes as a result of differences in temperature and in the amount of water vapor in the air. In general, as temperature increases, atmospheric pressure at sea level decreases. The reason is that molecules move farther apart when the air is heated. So, fewer particles exert pressure on a given area, and the pressure decreases. Similarly, air that contains a lot of water vapor is less dense than drier air because water vapor molecules have less mass than nitrogen or oxygen molecules do. The lighter water vapor molecules replace an equal number of heavier oxygen and nitrogen molecules, which makes the volume of air less dense.

MATHPRACTICE

Force of the Air

On average, a column of air 1 m^2 at its base that reaches upward from sea level has a mass of 10,300 kg and exerts a force of 101,325 N (newtons) on the ground. So, at sea level, on every square meter of Earth's surface, the atmosphere presses down with an average force of 101,325 N. What would the average force of a column of air that has a 3 m^2 base be?

Measuring Atmospheric Pressure

Meteorologists use three units for atmospheric pressure: atmospheres (atm), millimeters or inches of mercury, and millibars (mb). *Standard atmospheric pressure,* or 1 atmosphere, is equal to 760 mm of mercury, or 1000 millibars. The average atmospheric pressure at sea level is 1 atm. Meteorologists measure atmospheric pressure by using an instrument called a *barometer.*

Mercurial Barometers

Meteorologists use two main types of barometers. One type is the *mercurial barometer,* a model of which is shown in **Figure 6.** Atmospheric pressure presses on the liquid mercury in a well at the base of the barometer. The pressure holds the mercury up to a certain height inside a tube. The height of the mercury inside the tube varies with the atmospheric pressure. The greater the atmospheric pressure is, the higher the mercury rises.

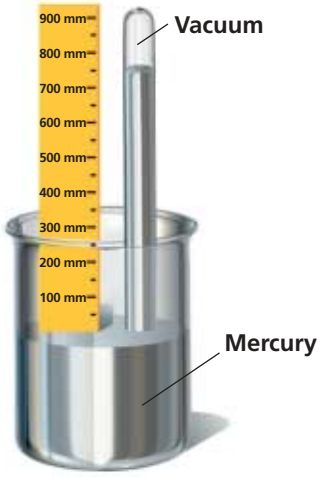


Figure 6 ▶ The height of the mercury in this mercurial barometer indicates barometric pressure. ***What is the barometric pressure shown?***

Aneroid Barometers

The type of barometer most commonly used today is called an *aneroid barometer.* Inside an aneroid barometer is a sealed metal container from which most of the air has been removed to form a partial vacuum. Changes in atmospheric pressure cause the sides of the container to bend inward or bulge out. These changes move a pointer on a scale. Aneroid barometers can be constructed to keep a continuous record of atmospheric pressure.

An aneroid barometer can also measure altitude above sea level. When used for this purpose, an aneroid barometer is called an *altimeter*. The scale on an altimeter registers altitude instead of pressure. At high altitudes, the atmosphere is less dense and exerts less pressure than at low altitudes. So, a lowered pressure reading can be interpreted as an increased altitude reading.

Reading Check **What is inside an aneroid barometer? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB **25 min (over 5 days)**

Barometric Pressure

Procedure

1. Use a **rubber band** to secure **plastic wrap** tightly over the open end of a **coffee can**.
2. Use **tape** to secure one end of a **10 cm drinking straw** onto the plastic wrap near the center of the can.
3. Use **scissors** and a **metric ruler** to cut a piece of **cardboard** 10 cm wide. The cardboard should also be at least 13 cm taller than the can.
4. Fold the cardboard so that it stands upright and extends at least 3 cm above the top of the straw.
5. Place the cardboard near the can so that the free end of the straw just touches the front of the cardboard. Mark an *X* where the straw touches.
6. Draw three horizontal lines on the cardboard: one that is level with the *X*, one that is 2 cm above the *X*, and one that is 2 cm below the *X*.
7. Position the cardboard so that the straw touches the *X*. Tape the base of the cardboard in place.
8. Observe the level of the straw at least once per day over a 5-day period. Record any changes that you see.

Analysis

1. What factors affect how your model works? Explain.
2. What does an upward movement of the straw indicate? What does a downward movement indicate?
3. Compare your results with the barometric pressures listed in your local newspaper. What may have caused your results to differ from the newspaper's?

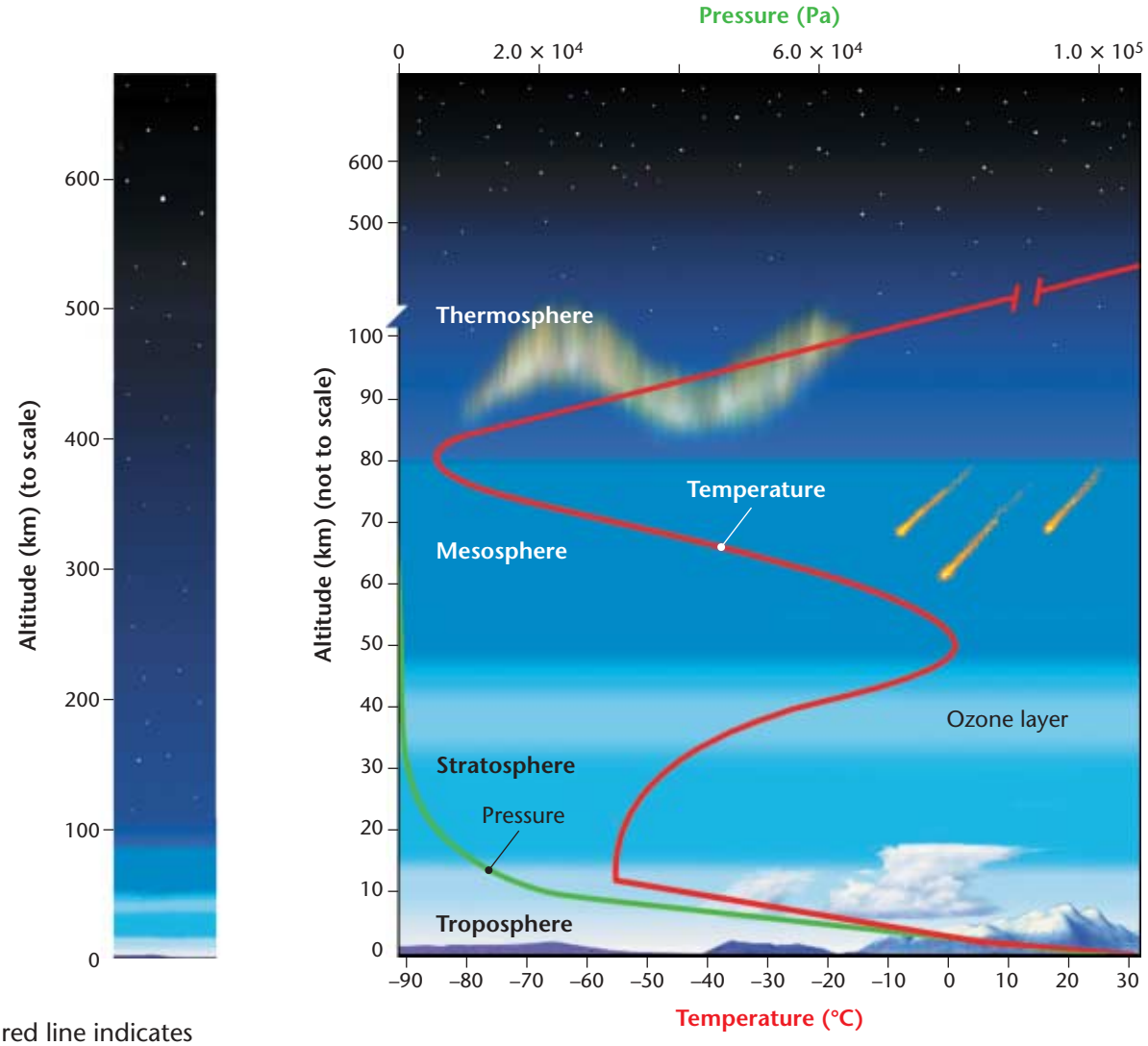


Figure 7 ▶ The red line indicates the temperature at various altitudes in the atmosphere. The green line indicates atmospheric pressure at various altitudes.

Layers of the Atmosphere

Earth's atmosphere has a distinctive pattern of temperature changes with increasing altitude, as shown in **Figure 7.** The temperature differences mainly result from how solar energy is absorbed as it moves through the atmosphere. Scientists identify four main layers of the atmosphere based on these differences.

The Troposphere

troposphere the lowest layer of the atmosphere, in which temperature drops at a constant rate as altitude increases; the part of the atmosphere where weather conditions exist

The atmospheric layer that is closest to Earth's surface and in which nearly all weather occurs is called the **troposphere.** Almost all of the water vapor and carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is found in this layer. Temperature within the troposphere decreases as altitude increases because air in this layer is heated from below by thermal energy that radiates from Earth's surface. The temperature within the troposphere decreases at the average rate of 6.5°C per kilometer as the distance from Earth's surface increases. However, at an average altitude of 12 km, the temperature stops decreasing. This zone is called the *tropopause* and represents the upper boundary of the troposphere. The altitude of this boundary varies with latitude and season.

The Stratosphere

The layer of the atmosphere called the **stratosphere** extends from the tropopause to an altitude of nearly 50 km. Almost all of the ozone in the atmosphere is concentrated in this layer. In the lower stratosphere, the temperature is almost –60°C. In the upper stratosphere, the temperature increases as altitude increases because air in the stratosphere is heated from above by absorption of solar radiation by ozone. The temperature of the air in this layer rises steadily to a temperature of about 0°C at an altitude of about 50 km above Earth's surface. This zone, called the *stratopause,* marks the upper boundary of the stratosphere.

stratosphere the layer of the atmosphere that lies between the troposphere and the mesosphere and in which temperature increases as altitude increases; contains the ozone layer

mesosphere the coldest layer of the atmosphere, between the stratosphere and the thermosphere, in which temperature decreases as altitude increases

thermosphere the uppermost layer of the atmosphere, in which temperature increases as altitude increases; includes the ionosphere

The Mesosphere

Located above the stratopause and extending to an altitude of about 80 km is the **mesosphere.** In this layer, temperature decreases as altitude increases. The upper boundary of the mesosphere, called the *mesopause*, has an average temperature of nearly –90°C, which is the coldest temperature in the atmosphere. Above this boundary temperatures again begin to increase.

The Thermosphere

The atmospheric layer above the mesopause is called the **thermosphere.** In the thermosphere, temperature increases steadily as altitude increases because nitrogen and oxygen atoms absorb solar radiation. Because air particles in the thermosphere are very far apart, they do not strike a thermometer often enough to produce an accurate temperature reading. Therefore, special instruments are needed. These instruments have recorded temperatures of more than 1,000°C in the thermosphere.

The lower region of the thermosphere, at an altitude of 80 to 400 km, is commonly called the *ionosphere*. In the ionosphere, solar radiation that is absorbed by atmospheric gases causes the atoms of gas molecules to lose electrons and to produce ions and free electrons. Interactions between solar radiation and the ionosphere cause the phenomena known as *auroras,* which are shown in **Figure 8.**

There are not enough data about temperature changes in the thermosphere to determine its upper boundary. However, above the ionosphere is the region where Earth's atmosphere blends into the almost complete vacuum of space. This zone of indefinite altitude, called the *exosphere,* extends for thousands of kilometers above the ionosphere.

Reading Check **What is the lower region of the thermosphere called? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 8 ▶ Auroras can be seen from space as well as from the ground.

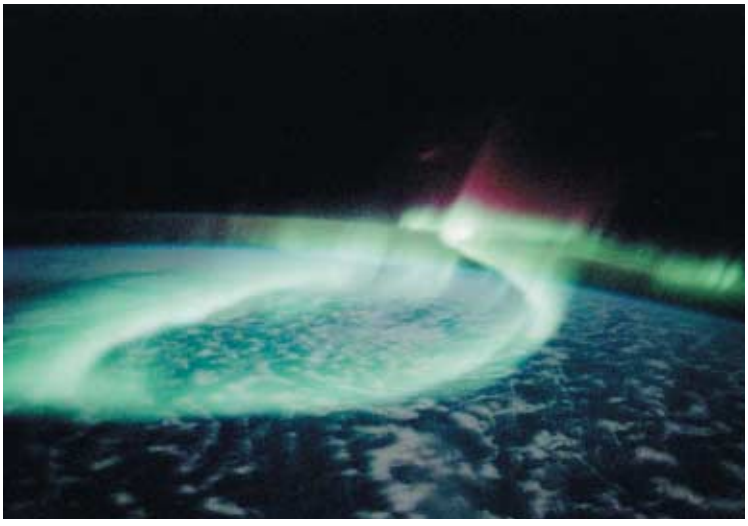


Figure 9 ▶ During a temperature inversion, polluted cool air becomes trapped beneath a warm-air layer.

Temperature Inversions

Any substance that is in the atmosphere and that is harmful to people, animals, plants, or property is called an *air pollutant*. Today, the main source of air pollution is the burning of fossil fuels, such as coal and petroleum. As these fuels burn, they may release harmful chemical substances, such as sulfur dioxide gas, hydrocarbons, nitrogen oxides, carbon monoxide, and lead, into the air.

Certain weather conditions can make air pollution worse. One such condition is a *temperature inversion*, the layering of warm air on top of cool air. Warm air, which is less dense than cool air is, can trap cool, polluted air beneath it. In some areas, topography may make air pollution even worse by keeping the polluted inversion layer from dispersing, as **Figure 9** shows. Under conditions in which air cannot circulate up and away from an area, trapped automobile exhaust can produce *smog*, a general term for air pollution that indicates a combination of smoke and fog.

Air pollution can be controlled only by preventing the release of pollutants into the atmosphere. International, federal, and local laws have been passed to reduce the amount of air pollutants produced by automobiles and industry.

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** the composition of dry air at sea level.
2. **Identify** five main components of the atmosphere.
3. **Explain** the cause of atmospheric pressure.
4. **Explain** how the two types of barometers measure atmospheric pressure.
5. **Identify** the layer of the atmosphere in which weather occurs.
6. **Compare** the four main layers of the atmosphere.
7. **Identify** the two atmospheric layers that contain air as warm as 25°C.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Drawing Conclusions** Why is atmospheric pressure generally lower beneath a mass of warm air than beneath a mass of cold air?
9. **Making Calculations** Calculate how much colder air is at the top of Mount Everest, which is almost 9 km above sea level, than air is at the Indian coastline. (Hint: On average, the temperature in the troposphere decreases by 6.5°C per kilometer of altitude.)
10. **Applying Ideas** Which industrial city would have fewer air-pollution incidents related to temperature inversions: one on the Great Plains or one near the Rocky Mountains? Explain your answer.
11. **Applying Concepts** In 1982, Larry Walters rose to an altitude of approximately 4,900 m on a lawn chair attached to 45 helium-filled weather balloons. Give two reasons why Walters' trip was dangerous.

CONCEPT MAPPING

12. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *oxygen, atmosphere, air, nitrogen, water vapor, ozone,* and *particulates*.

Section 2 Solar Energy and the Atmosphere

Earth's atmosphere is heated by the transfer of energy from the sun. Some of the heat in the atmosphere comes from the absorption of the sun's rays by gases in the atmosphere. Some heat enters the atmosphere indirectly as ocean and land surfaces absorb solar energy and then give off that energy as heat.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how radiant energy reaches Earth.
- **Describe** how visible light and infrared energy warm Earth.
- **Summarize** the processes of radiation, conduction, and convection.

KEY TERMS

electromagnetic spectrum
albedo
greenhouse effect
conduction
convection

Radiation

All of the energy that Earth receives from the sun travels through space between Earth and the sun as radiation. *Radiation* includes all forms of energy that travel through space as waves. Visible light is the form of radiation that human eyes can detect. However, there are many other forms of radiation that humans cannot see, such as ultraviolet light, X rays, and radio waves.

Radiation travels through space in the form of waves at a very high speed—approximately 300,000 km/s. The distance from any point on a wave to the identical point on the next wave, for example from crest to crest, is called the *wavelength* of a wave. The various types of radiation differ in the length of their waves. Visible light, for example, consists of waves that have various wavelengths that are seen as different colors. The wavelengths of ultraviolet rays, X rays, and gamma rays are shorter than those of visible light. Infrared waves and radio waves have relatively long wavelengths. The waves that make up all forms of radiation are called *electromagnetic waves*. Almost all of the energy that reaches Earth from the sun is in the form of electromagnetic waves. The **electromagnetic spectrum,** shown at the bottom of **Figure 1,** consists of the complete range of wavelengths of electromagnetic waves.

electromagnetic spectrum all of the frequencies or wavelengths of electromagnetic radiation

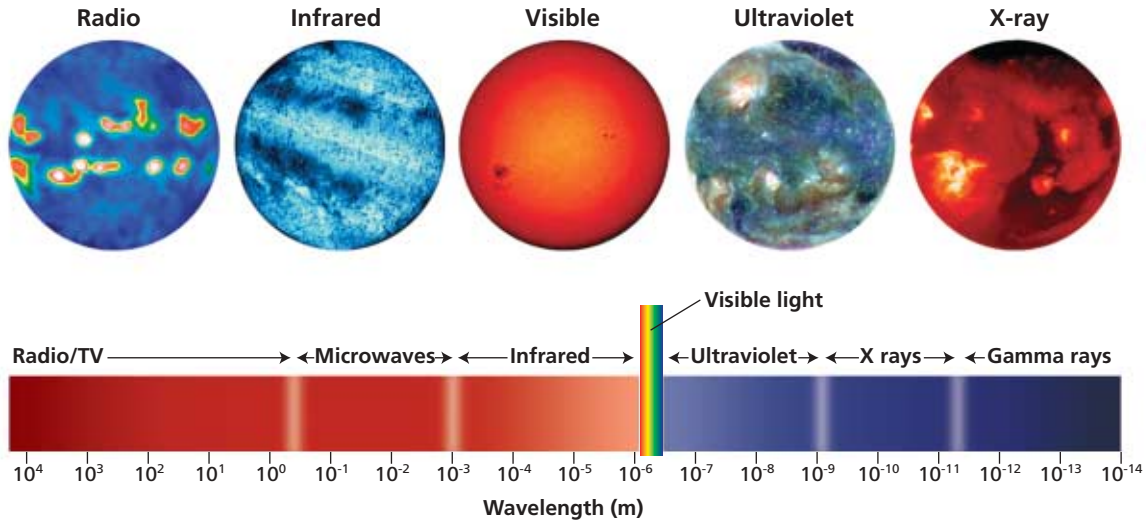


Figure 1 ▶ The sun emits radiation whose wavelengths range throughout the electromagnetic spectrum. Five images of the sun are shown above. Each image shows radiation emitted at different wavelengths.

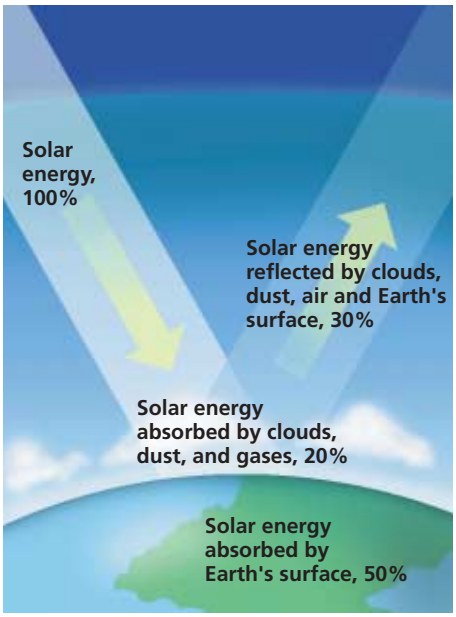


Figure 2 ▶ About 70% of the solar energy that reaches Earth is absorbed by Earth's land and ocean surfaces and by the atmosphere. The remainder is reflected back into space.

The Atmosphere and Solar Radiation

As solar radiation passes through Earth's atmosphere, the atmosphere affects the radiation in several ways. The upper atmosphere absorbs almost all radiation that has a wavelength shorter than the wavelengths of visible light. Molecules of nitrogen and oxygen in the thermosphere and mesosphere absorb the X rays, gamma rays, and ultraviolet rays. In the stratosphere, ultraviolet rays are absorbed and act upon oxygen molecules to form ozone.

Most of the solar rays that reach the lower atmosphere, such as visible and infrared waves, have longer wavelengths. Most incoming infrared radiation is absorbed by carbon dioxide, water vapor, and other complex molecules in the troposphere. As visible light waves pass through the atmosphere, only a small amount of this radiation is absorbed. **Figure 2** shows the percentage of solar energy that is reflected and absorbed by the atmosphere.

Scattering

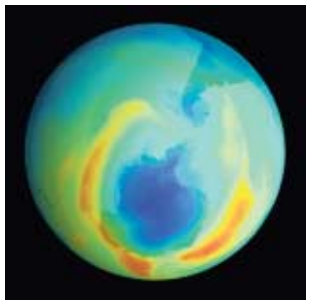
Clouds, dust, water droplets, and gas molecules in the atmosphere disrupt the paths of radiation from the sun and cause scattering. Scattering occurs when particles and gas molecules in the atmosphere reflect and bend the solar rays. This deflection causes the rays to travel out in all directions without changing their wavelengths. Scattering sends some of the radiation back into space. The remaining radiation continues toward Earth's surface. As a result of scattering, sunlight that reaches Earth's surface comes from all directions. In addition, scattering makes the sky appear blue and makes the sun appear red at sunrise and sunset.

Connection to PHYSICS

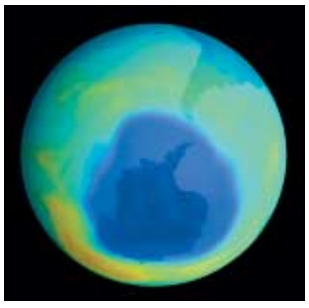
The Ozone "Hole"

Ozone, O_3, is a naturally occurring gas that is present primarily in the stratosphere. The thin layer of ozone that surrounds Earth prevents most of the sun's ultraviolet (UV) radiation from reaching Earth's surface. Overexposure to UV radiation is dangerous to living things because it damages DNA. DNA is the genetic material that carries the information for inherited characteristics. UV radiation also makes the body more susceptible to skin cancer.

The protective ozone layer is not distributed around Earth evenly. Scientists have observed that ozone concentrations vary with latitude and with the time of year. In 1985, scientists discovered that the ozone layer was unusually thin in regions over Antarctica. This "ozone hole" allows greater amounts of UV radiation to reach Earth's surface. Scientists discovered that chemicals called chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) were causing the ozone layer to break down. CFCs were used as coolants in refrigerators and air conditioners.



Satellite image of the ozone "hole" (purple) in 1980



Satellite image of the same ozone "hole" in 2000

CFCs were also used in spray cans such as those used for household products and paint. The discovery of a connection between CFCs and the weakening ozone layer led to an international ban on CFCs.

CFCs can act to destroy ozone continuously for 60 to 120 years. So, CFCs released 30 years ago may still be destroying ozone today. It will take many years for the ozone layer to completely recover.

Table 1 ▼

Percentage of Solar Radiation		
Surface	Reflected	Absorbed
Soils (dark colored)	5–10	90–95
Desert	20–40	60–80
Grass	5–25	75–95
Forest	5–10	90–95
Snow	50–90	10–50
Water (high sun angle)	5–10	90–95
Water (low sun angle)	50–80	20–50

Table 1 ▶ Reflection and Absorption Rates of Various Materials

Reflection

When solar energy reaches Earth's surface, the surface either absorbs or reflects the energy. The amount of energy that is absorbed or reflected depends on characteristics such as the color, texture, composition, volume, mass, transparency, state of matter, and specific heat of the material on which the solar radiation falls. The intensity and amount of time that a surface material receives radiation also affects how much energy is reflected or absorbed.

The fraction of solar radiation that is reflected by a particular surface is called the **albedo.** Because 30% of the solar energy that reaches Earth's atmosphere is either reflected or scattered, Earth is said to have an albedo of 0.3. **Table 1** shows the amount of incoming solar radiation that is absorbed and reflected by various surfaces.

albedo the fraction of solar radiation that is reflected off the surface of an object

Absorption and Infrared Energy

The sun constantly emits radiation. Solar radiation that is not reflected is absorbed by rocks, soil, water, and other surface materials. When Earth's surface absorbs solar radiation, the radiation's short-wavelength infrared rays and visible light heat the surface materials. Then, the heated materials convert the energy into infrared rays of longer-wavelengths and reemit it as those waves. Gas molecules, such as water vapor and carbon dioxide, in the atmosphere absorb these infrared rays. The absorption of thermal energy from the ground heats the lower atmosphere and keeps Earth's surface much warmer than it would be if there were no atmosphere. Sometimes, warm air near Earth's surface bends light rays to produce an effect called a *mirage,* as **Figure 3** shows.

Figure 3 ▶ Hot air near the surface of this road bends light rays. ***What objects in this photo appear to be reflected?***

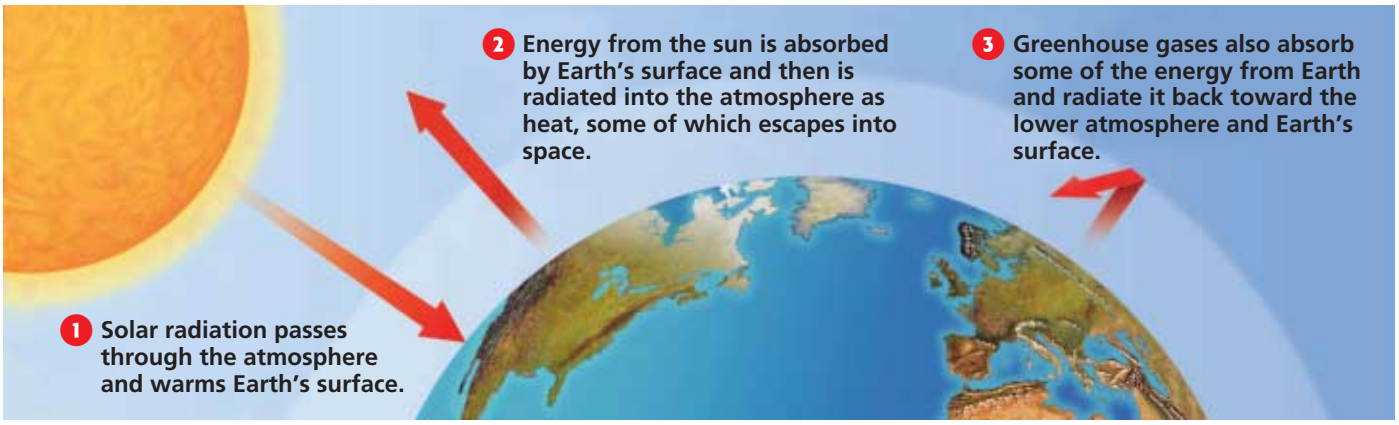


Figure 4 ▶ One process that helps heat Earth's atmosphere is similar to the process that heats a greenhouse.

The Greenhouse Effect

One of the ways in which the gases of the atmosphere absorb and reradiate infrared rays, shown in **Figure 4,** can be compared to the process that keeps a greenhouse warm. The glass of a greenhouse allows visible light and infrared rays from the sun to pass through and warm the surfaces inside of the greenhouse. But the glass prevents the infrared rays that are emitted by the warmed surfaces within the greenhouse from escaping. Similarly, Earth's atmosphere slows the escape of energy that radiates from Earth's surface. Because this process is similar to the process that heats a greenhouse, it is called the **greenhouse effect.**

greenhouse effect the warming of the surface and lower atmosphere of Earth that occurs when carbon dioxide, water vapor, and other gases in the air absorb and reradiate infrared radiation

Human Impact on the Greenhouse Effect

Generally, the amount of solar energy that enters Earth's atmosphere is about equal to the amount that escapes into space. However, human activities may change this balance and may cause the average temperature of the atmosphere to increase. For example, measurements indicate that the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere has been increasing in recent years. These increases have been attributed to the burning of more fossil fuels. These increases seem likely to continue in the future. Increases in the amount of carbon dioxide may intensify the greenhouse effect and may cause Earth to become warmer in some areas and cooler in others.

SCILINKS
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Greenhouse Effect
SciLinks code: HQ60694

Variations in Temperature

Radiation from the sun does not heat Earth equally at all places at all times. In addition, a slight delay occurs between the absorption of energy and an increase in temperature. Earth's surface must absorb energy for a time before enough heat has been absorbed and reradiated from the ground to change the temperature of the atmosphere. For a similar reason, the warmest hours of the day are usually mid- to late afternoon even though solar radiation is most intense at noon. The temperature of the atmosphere in any region on Earth's surface depends on several factors, including latitude, surface features, and the time of year and day.

Latitude and Season

Latitude is the primary factor that affects the amount of solar energy that reaches any point on Earth's surface. Because Earth is a sphere, the sun's rays do not strike all areas at the same angle, as shown in **Figure 5.** The rays of the sun strike the ground near the equator at an angle near 90°. At the poles, the sunlight strikes the ground at a much smaller angle. When sunlight hits Earth's surface at an angle smaller than 90°, the energy is spread out over a larger area and is less intense. Thus, the energy that reaches the equator is more intense than the energy that strikes the poles, so average temperatures are higher near the equator than near the poles.

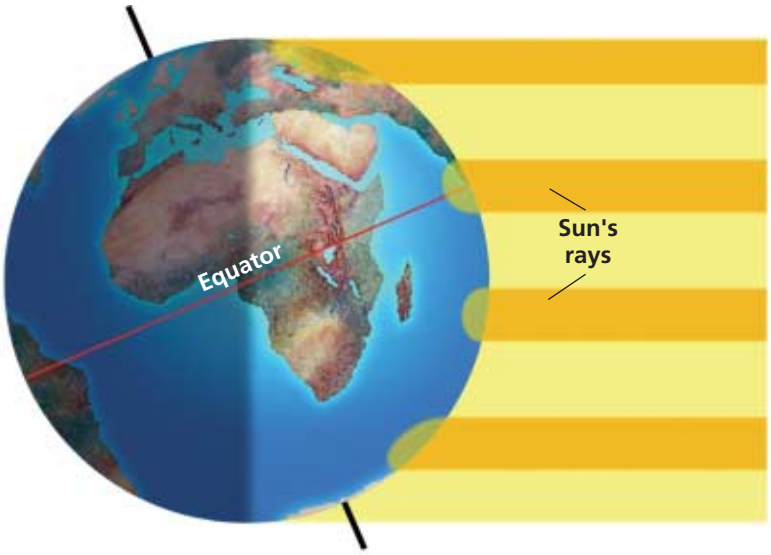


Figure 5 ▶ Temperatures are higher at the equator because solar energy is concentrated in a small area. Farther north and south, the same amount of solar energy is spread out over a larger area.

Temperature varies seasonally because of the tilt of Earth's axis. As Earth revolves around the sun once each year, the portion of Earth's surface that receives the most intense sunlight changes. For part of the year, the Northern Hemisphere is tilted toward the sun and receives more direct sunlight. During this time of year, temperatures are at their highest. For the other part of the year, the Southern Hemisphere is tilted toward the sun. During this time, the Northern Hemisphere receives less direct sunlight, and the temperatures there are at their lowest.

Water in the Air and on the Surface

Because water vapor stores heat, the amount of water in the air affects the temperature of a region. The thinner air at high elevations contains less water vapor and carbon dioxide to absorb the heat. As a result, those areas become warm during the day but cool very quickly at night. Similarly, desert temperatures may vary widely between day and night because little water vapor is present to hold the heat of the day.

Land areas close to large bodies of water generally have more moderate temperatures. In other words, these areas will be cooler during the day and warmer at night than inland regions that have the same general weather conditions are. The reason for these moderate temperatures is that water heats up and cools down faster than air does, so the temperature of water changes less than the temperature of land does.

The wind patterns in an area also affect temperature. A region that receives winds off the ocean waters has more moderate temperatures than does a similar region in which the winds blow from the land.

Reading Check **Why are deserts generally colder at night than other areas are? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 5 min

Light and Latitude

Procedure

1. Hold a **flashlight** so that the beam shines directly down on a **white piece of paper.** Use a **pencil** to trace the outline of the beam of light.
2. Move the flashlight so that the light shines on the paper at an angle. Trace the outline of the beam of light.

Analysis

1. How does the area of the direct beam differ from the area of the angled beam?
2. How does this exercise illustrate how latitude affects incoming solar radiation?

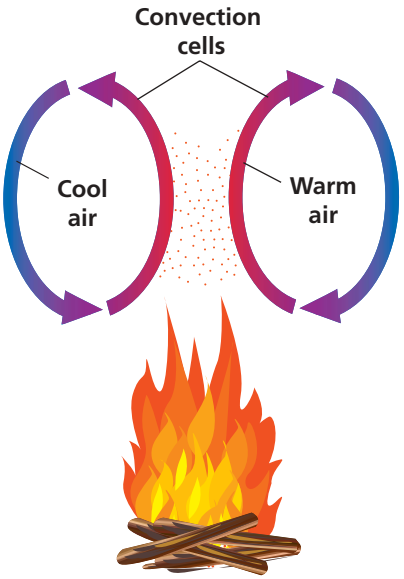


Figure 6 ▶ During convection, energy is carried away by heated air as it rises above cooler, denser air.

conduction the transfer of energy as heat through a material

convection the movement of matter due to differences in density that are caused by temperature variations; can result in the transfer of energy as heat

Conduction

The molecules in a substance move faster as they become heated. These fast-moving molecules cause other molecules to move faster. Collisions between the particles result in the transfer of energy, which warms the substance. The transfer of energy as heat from one substance to another by direct contact is called **conduction**. Solid substances, in which the molecules are close together, make relatively good conductors. Because the molecules of air are far apart, air is a poor conductor. Thus, conduction heats only the lowest few centimeters of the atmosphere, where air comes into direct contact with the warmed surface of Earth.

Convection

The heating of the lower atmosphere is primarily the result of the distribution of heat through the troposphere by convection. **Convection** is the process by which air, or other matter, rises or sinks because of differences in temperature. Convection occurs when gases or liquids are heated unevenly. As air is heated by radiation or conduction, it becomes less dense and is pushed up by nearby cooler air. In turn, this cooler air becomes warmer, and the cycle repeats, as shown in **Figure 6.**

The continuous cycle in which cold air sinks and warm air rises warms Earth's atmosphere evenly. Because warm air is less dense than cool air is, warm air exerts less pressure than the same volume of cooler air does. So, the atmospheric pressure is lower beneath a mass of warm air. As dense, cool air moves into a low-pressure region, the less dense, warmer air is pushed upward. These pressure differences, which are the result of the unequal heating that causes convection, create winds.

Section 2 Review

1. **Explain** how radiant energy reaches Earth.
2. **List and describe** the types of electromagnetic waves.
3. **Describe** how gases and particles in the atmosphere interact with light rays.
4. **Describe** how visible light and infrared energy warm Earth.
5. **Explain** how variations in the intensity of sunlight can cause temperature differences on Earth's surface.
6. **Summarize** the processes of conduction and convection.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Inferences** Why do scientists study all wavelengths of the electromagnetic spectrum?
8. **Applying Concepts** Explain how fans in convection ovens help cook food more evenly.
9. **Applying Conclusions** You decide not to be outside during the hottest hours of a summer day. When will the hottest hours probably be? How do you know?

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *electromagnetic waves, infrared waves, greenhouse effect, ultraviolet waves, visible light, scattering,* and *absorption.*

Section 3 Atmospheric Circulation

Pressure differences in the atmosphere cause the movement of air worldwide. The air near Earth's surface generally flows from the poles toward the equator. The reason for this flow is that air moves from high-pressure regions to low-pressure regions. High-pressure regions form where cold air sinks toward Earth's surface. Low-pressure regions form where warm air rises away from Earth's surface.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** the Coriolis effect.
- **Describe** the global patterns of air circulation, and name three global wind belts.
- **Identify** two factors that form local wind patterns.

KEY TERMS

Coriolis effect
trade winds
westerlies
polar easterlies
jet stream

The Coriolis Effect

The circulation of the atmosphere and of the oceans is affected by the rotation of Earth on its axis. Earth's rotation causes its diameter to be greatest through the equator and smallest through the poles. Because each point on Earth makes one complete rotation every day, points near the equator travel farther and faster in a day than points closer to the poles do. When air moves toward the poles, it travels east faster than the land beneath it does. As a result, the air follows a curved path. The tendency of a moving object to follow a curved path rather than a straight path because of the rotation of Earth is called the **Coriolis effect,** which is shown in **Figure 1.**

Coriolis effect the curving of the path of a moving object from an otherwise straight path due to Earth's rotation

Winds that blow from high-pressure areas to lower-pressure areas curve as a result of the Coriolis effect. The Coriolis effect deflects moving objects along a path that depends on the speed, latitude, and direction of the object. Objects are deflected to the right in the Northern Hemisphere and are deflected to the left in the Southern Hemisphere.

The faster an object travels, the greater the Coriolis effect on that object is. The Coriolis effect also noticeably changes the paths of large masses that travel long distances, such as air or ocean currents. In general, the Coriolis effect is detectable only on objects that move very fast or that travel over long distances.

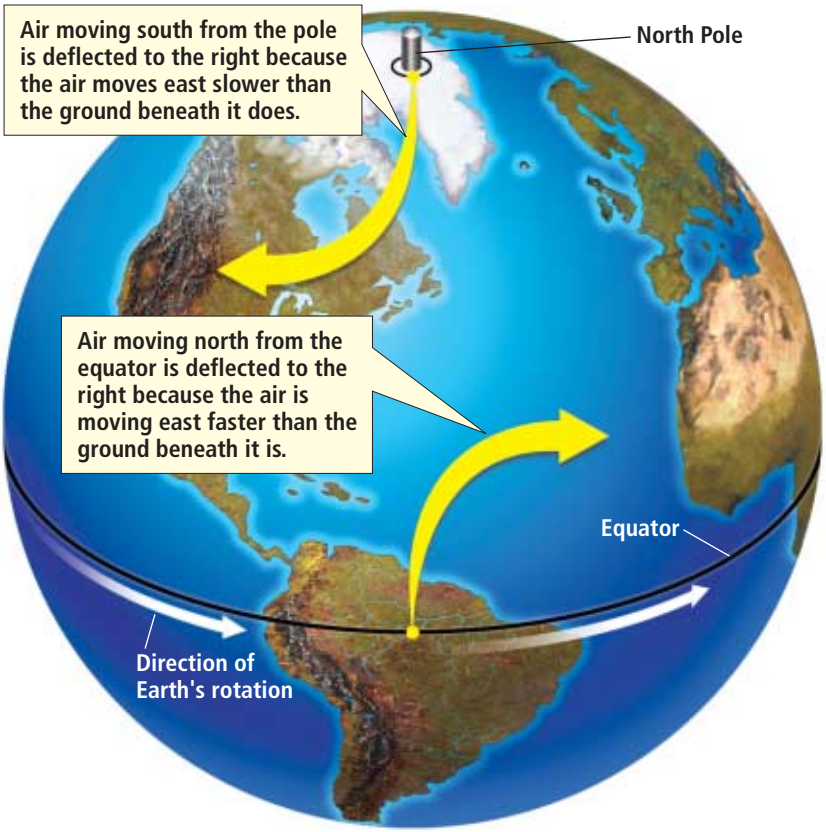


Figure 1 ▶ Because of Earth's rotation, an object that travels north from the equator will curve to the east. This curving is called the *Coriolis effect*.

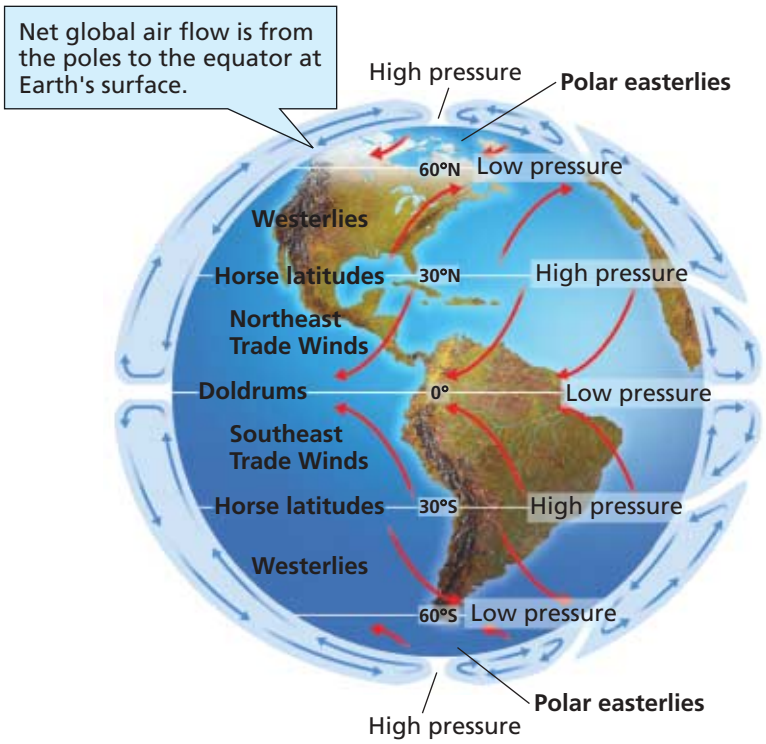


Figure 2 ▶ Each hemisphere has three wind belts. Wind belts are the result of pressure differences at the equator, the subtropics, the subpolar regions, and the poles. Winds in the belts curve because of the Coriolis effect. ***Do winds in the Northern Hemisphere curve clockwise or counterclockwise?***

Global Winds

The air that flows from the poles toward the equator does not flow in a single, straight line. Each hemisphere contains three looping patterns of flow called *convection cells*. Each of these convection cells correlates to an area of Earth's surface, called a *wind belt*, that is characterized by winds that flow in one main direction. These winds are called *prevailing winds*. All six wind belts are shown in **Figure 2.**

Trade Winds

In both hemispheres, the winds that flow toward the equator between 30° and 0° latitude are called **trade winds.** Like all winds, the trade winds are named according to the direction from which they flow. In the Northern Hemisphere, the trade winds flow from the northeast and are called the *northeast trade winds*. In the Southern Hemisphere, the trade winds are called the *southeast trade winds*. These wind belts are called *trade winds* because many trading ships sailed on these winds from Europe in the 18th and 19th centuries.

Westerlies

Between 30° and 60° latitude, some of the descending air moving toward the poles is deflected by the Coriolis effect. This flow creates the **westerlies,** which exist in another wind belt in each hemisphere. In the Northern Hemisphere, the westerlies are southwest winds. In the Southern Hemisphere, they are northwest winds. The westerlies blow throughout the contiguous United States.

Reading Check **Name two ways in which the trade winds of the Northern Hemisphere differ from the westerlies of the Northern Hemisphere. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Polar Easterlies

Toward the poles, or poleward, of the westerlies—at about 60° latitude—is a zone of low pressure. This zone of low pressure separates the westerlies from a third wind belt in each hemisphere. Over the polar regions themselves, descending cold air creates areas of high pressure. Surface winds created by the polar high pressure are deflected by the Coriolis effect and become the **polar easterlies.** The polar easterlies are strongest where they flow off Antarctica. Where the polar easterlies meet warm air from the westerlies, a stormy region known as a *front* forms.

trade winds prevailing winds that blow from east to west from 30° latitude to the equator in both hemispheres

westerlies prevailing winds that blow from west to east between 30° and 60° latitude in both hemispheres

polar easterlies prevailing winds that blow from east to west between 60° and 90° latitude in both hemispheres

The Doldrums and Horse Latitudes

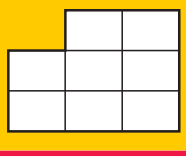
As **Figure 2** shows, the trade wind systems of the Northern Hemisphere and Southern Hemisphere meet at the equator in a narrow zone called the *doldrums*. In this warm zone, most air movement is upward and surface winds are weak and variable. As the air approaches 30° latitude, it descends and a high-pressure zone forms. These subtropical high-pressure zones are called the *horse latitudes*. Here, too, surface winds are weak and variable.

Wind and Pressure Shifts

As the sun's rays shift northward and southward during the changing seasons of the year, the positions of the pressure belts and wind belts shift. Although the area that receives direct sunlight can shift by up to 47° north and south of the equator, the average shift for the pressure belts and wind belts is only about 10° of latitude. However, even this small change causes some areas of Earth's surface to be in different wind belts during different times of the year. In southern Florida, for example, westerlies prevail in the winter, but trade winds dominate in the summer.

Graphic Organizer **Comparison Table**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Comparison Table" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns with "Trade winds," "Westerlies," "Polar easterlies," and "Jet streams." Label the rows with "Latitude" and "Direction.". Then, fill in the table with details about each type of wind.



Jet Streams

Narrow bands of high-speed winds that blow in the upper troposphere and lower stratosphere are **jet streams.** These winds exist in the Northern Hemisphere and Southern Hemisphere.

jet stream a narrow band of strong winds that blow in the upper troposphere

One type of jet stream is a polar jet stream. Polar jet streams form as a result of density differences between cold polar air and the warmer air of the middle latitudes. These bands of winds, which are about 100 km wide and 2 to 3 km thick, are located at altitudes of 10 to 15 km. Polar jet streams can reach speeds of 500 km/h and can affect airline routes and the paths of storms.

Another type of jet stream is a subtropical jet stream. In the subtropical regions, very warm equatorial air meets the cooler air of the middle latitudes, and the *subtropical jet streams* form. Unlike the polar jet streams, the subtropical jet streams do not change much in speed or position. A subtropical jet stream is shown in **Figure 3.**

Figure 3 ▶ Clouds in this jet stream are traveling high over Egypt. This remarkable photograph was taken by *Gemini 12* astronauts.

Figure 4 ▶ Sea breezes keep these kites aloft during the afternoon. Overnight, land breezes will blow the flags toward the ocean.

Local Winds

Winds also exist on a scale that is much smaller than a global scale. Movements of air are influenced by local conditions, and local temperature variations commonly cause local winds. Local winds are not part of the global wind belts. Gentle winds that extend over distances of less than 100 km are called *breezes*.

Land and Sea Breezes

Equal areas of land and water may receive the same amount of energy from the sun. However, land surfaces heat up faster than water surfaces do. Therefore, during daylight hours, a sharp temperature difference develops between a body of water and the land along the water's edge. This temperature difference is apparent in the air above the land and water. The warm air above the land rises as the cool air from above the water moves in to replace the warm air. A cool wind moving from water to land, called a *sea breeze*, generally forms in the afternoon, as shown in **Figure 4.** Overnight, the land cools more rapidly than the water does, and the sea breeze is replaced by a *land breeze*. A land breeze flows from the cool land toward the warmer water.

Mountain and Valley Breezes

During the daylight hours in mountainous regions, a gentle valley breeze blows upslope. This *valley breeze* forms when warm air from the valleys moves upslope. At night, the mountains cool more quickly than the valleys do. At that time, cool air descends from the mountain peaks to create a *mountain breeze*. Areas near mountains may experience a warm afternoon that turns to a cold evening soon after sunset. This evening cooling happens because cold air flows down mountain slopes and settles in valleys.

Section 3 Review

1. **Describe** the pattern of air circulation between an area of low pressure and an area of high pressure.
2. **Explain** how the Coriolis effect affects wind flow.
3. **Name and describe** Earth's three global wind belts.
4. **Summarize** the importance of the jet streams.
5. **Identify** two factors that create local wind patterns.

CRITICAL THINKING

6. **Applying Concepts** Determine whether wind moving south from the equator will curve eastward or westward because of the Coriolis effect.
7. **Inferring Relationships** Which has a lower pressure: the air in your lungs as you inhale or the air outside your body? Explain.
8. **Applying Ideas** While visiting the Oregon coast, you decide to hike toward the ocean, but you are not sure of the direction. The time is 4:00 P.M. How might the breeze help you find your way?

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *wind, sea breeze, global winds, trade winds, westerlies, local winds, polar easterlies, land breeze, mountain breeze,* and *valley breeze.*

Chapter 22 Highlights

Sections

1 Characteristics of the Atmosphere

Key Terms

atmosphere, 547
ozone, 549
atmospheric pressure, 550
troposphere, 552
stratosphere, 553
mesosphere, 553
thermosphere, 553

Key Concepts

- Earth's atmosphere is the mixture of gases, called *air*, that surrounds Earth. Mixed with the gases that make up air are solid particles called *particulates*.
- Atmospheric pressure is the force exerted on Earth's surface by the weight of the atmosphere. It is measured by using a barometer.
- The atmosphere is divided into four major layers whose temperature and pressure vary.
- Air pollution can be harmful to people, animals, plants, and property.

2 Solar Energy and the Atmosphere

electromagnetic spectrum, 555
albedo, 557
greenhouse effect, 558
conduction, 560
convection, 560

- Most of the energy that reaches Earth from the sun is in the form of electromagnetic radiation.
- Visible light and infrared rays from the sun penetrate Earth's atmosphere and heat materials on the surface.
- The upper atmosphere is heated by absorption of radiation from the sun. The lower atmosphere is heated by conduction from Earth's surface and by convection of air.

3 Atmospheric Circulation

Coriolis effect, 561
trade winds, 562
westerlies, 562
polar easterlies, 562
jet stream, 563

- Air-pressure differences due to the unequal heating of Earth in combination with Earth's rotation cause the global wind belts.
- A surface feature, such as a body of water, a mountain, or a valley, can influence local wind patterns.

Chapter 22 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *atmosphere*
2. *electromagnetic spectrum*
3. *Coriolis effect*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *troposphere* and *stratosphere*
5. *mesosphere* and *thermosphere*
6. *conduction* and *convection*
7. *trade winds* and *westerlies*
8. *polar easterlies* and *westerlies*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. During one part of the nitrogen cycle, nitrogen is removed from the air mainly by nitrogen-fixing
   a. bacteria. **c.** minerals.
   b. waves. **d.** crystals.

10. The atmosphere contains tiny solid particles called
    a. gases. **c.** meteors.
    b. particulates. **d.** nitrogen.

11. A barometer measures
    a. atmospheric pressure.
    b. wind speed.
    c. ozone concentration.
    d. wavelengths.

12. Almost all of the water and carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is in the
    a. exosphere. **c.** troposphere.
    b. ionosphere. **d.** stratosphere.

13. The process by which the atmosphere slows Earth's loss of heat to space is called the
    a. greenhouse effect. **c.** doldrums.
    b. Coriolis effect. **d.** convection cell.

14. Energy as heat can be transferred within the atmosphere in three ways—radiation, conduction, and
    a. transpiration.
    b. temperature inversion.
    c. weathering.
    d. convection.

15. A vertical looping pattern of airflow is known as
    a. the Coriolis effect. **c.** a trade wind.
    b. a convection cell. **d.** a westerly.

16. A gentle wind that covers less than 100 km is called
    a. a jet stream. **c.** a breeze.
    b. the doldrums. **d.** a trade wind.

17. Which of the following layers of the atmosphere is closest to the ground?
    a. troposphere **c.** mesosphere
    b. thermosphere **d.** exosphere

18. Which of the following layers of the atmosphere is closest to space?
    a. troposphere **c.** mesosphere
    b. ionosphere **d.** exosphere

Short Answer

19. List the three main elemental gases that compose the atmosphere.

20. What is atmospheric pressure, and how is it measured?

21. List and describe the four main layers of the atmosphere.

22. What happens to visible light that enters Earth's atmosphere?

23. How is heat energy transferred by Earth's atmosphere?

24. How does latitude affect the temperature of a region?

25. Explain how the greenhouse effect helps warm the atmosphere.

26. What causes the Coriolis effect?

27. Name and describe the three main wind belts in both hemispheres.

28. How do surface features influence local wind patterns?

Critical Thinking

29. Making Inferences If a breeze is blowing from the ocean to the land on the coast of Maine, about what time of day is it? Explain your answer.

30. Evaluating Ideas What effect might jet streams have on airplane travel?

31. Inferring Relationships Most aerosol sprays that contain CFCs have been banned in the United States. Which of the four layers of the atmosphere does this ban help protect? Explain your answer.

32. Evaluating Information You hear a report about Earth's weather. The reporter says that visible light rays coming from Earth's surface heat the atmosphere in a way similar to the way a greenhouse is heated. Explain why the reporter's statement is incorrect.

Concept Mapping

33. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *atmosphere, troposphere, stratosphere, temperature, mesosphere, thermosphere, atmospheric pressure, altitude,* and *exosphere*.

Math Skills

34. Applying Quantities The albedo of the moon is 0.07. What percent of the total solar radiation that reaches the moon is reflected?

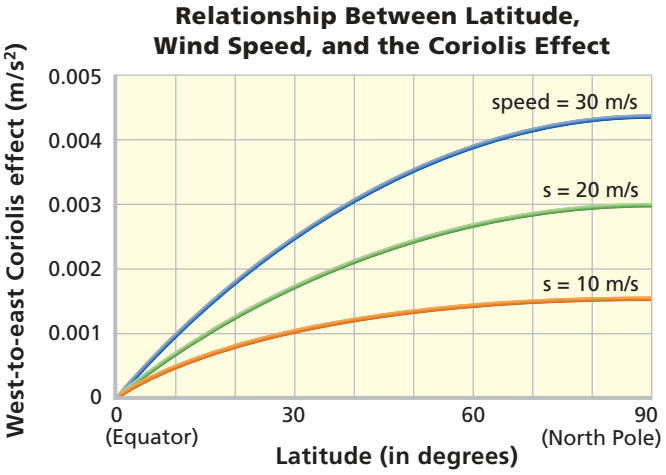
35. Making Calculations Maximum local wind speeds for each of the last seven days were 12 km/h, 20 km/h, 11 km/h, 6 km/h, 8 km/h, 19 km/h, and 17 km/h. What was the average maximum wind speed?

Writing Skills

36. Writing from Research Research the debate about global warming. Write one paragraph that includes evidence that supports global warming and one paragraph that includes evidence that does not support global warming.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows how the Coriolis effect changes as latitude and wind speed change. Use the graph to answer the questions that follow.



37. At what wind speed is the Coriolis effect the greatest?

38. At what latitude is the Coriolis effect the smallest?

39. At 90° latitude, is there a direct relationship between the Coriolis effect and wind speed?

Chapter 22 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–4): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 Which of the following processes is the source of the oxygen gas found in Earth's atmosphere?
- **A.** oxidation
- **B.** combustion
- **C.** respiration
- **D.** photosynthesis

2 Which of the following statements best describes the relationship of atmospheric pressure to altitude?
- **F.** The atmospheric pressure increases as the altitude increases.
- **G.** The atmospheric pressure increases as the altitude decreases.
- **H.** The atmospheric pressure varies unpredictably at different altitudes.
- **I.** The atmospheric pressure is constant at all altitudes.

3 Approximately how much of the solar energy that reaches Earth is absorbed by the atmosphere, land surfaces, and ocean?
- **A.** 30%
- **B.** 50%
- **C.** 70%
- **D.** 100%

4 In the Northern Hemisphere, the Coriolis effect causes winds moving toward the North Pole to be deflected in which of the following ways?
- **F.** Winds are deflected to the right.
- **G.** Winds are deflected to the left.
- **H.** Winds are deflected in unpredictable patterns.
- **I.** Winds are not deflected by the Corilois effect.

Directions (5–6): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

5 What is the most abundant gas in Earth's atmosphere?

6 In which atmospheric layer do interactions between gas molecules and solar radiation produce the aurora borealis phenomenon?

Reading Skills

Directions (7–9): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

The Snow Eater

The chinook, or "snow eater," is a dry wind that blows down the eastern side of the Rocky Mountains from New Mexico to Alaska. Arapaho gave the chinook its name because of its ability to melt large amounts of snow very quickly. Chinooks form when moist air is forced over a mountain range. The air cools as it rises. As the air cools, it releases moisture in the form of rain or snow, which nourishes the local flora. As the dry air flows over the mountaintop, they air compresses and heats the air below. The warm, dry wind that results can melt half of a meter of snow in just a few hours.

The temperature change caused when a chinook rushes down a mountainside can be dramatic. In 1943, in Spearfish, South Dakota, the temperature at 7:30 A.M. was –4°F. But only two minutes later, a chinook caused the temperature to soar to 45°F.

7 Why are the chinook winds of the Rocky Mountains called "snow eaters?"
- **A.** Chinook winds pick up snow and carry it to new locations.
- **B.** Chinook winds drop all of their snow on the western side of the mountains.
- **C.** Chinook winds cause the temperature to decrease, which causes snow to accumulate.
- **D.** Chinook winds cause the temperature to increase rapidly, which causes snow to melt.

8 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
- **F.** Chinook winds are a relatively new phenomenon related to global warming.
- **G.** The Rocky Mountains are more arid on their eastern side than on their western side.
- **H.** The only type of wind that blows down from mountaintops are chinook winds.
- **I.** When they blow up the western side of the Rocky Mountains, chinook winds are very hot.

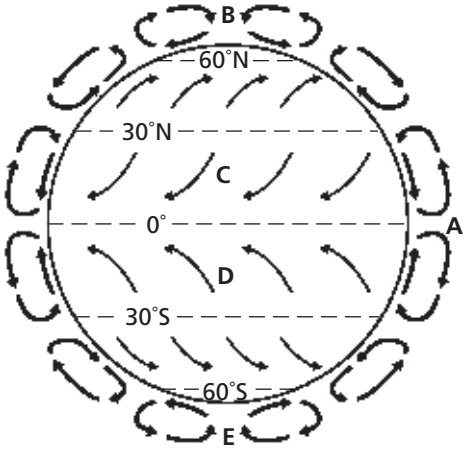
9 How might chinook winds affect agriculture on the eastern side of the Rocky Mountains?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (10–12): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagram below shows global wind belts and convection cells at different latitudes. Use this diagram to answer questions 10 and 11.

Global Wind Belts



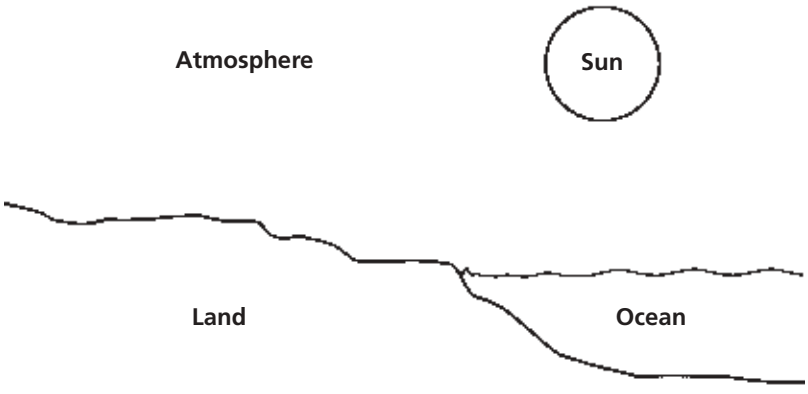
10 What happens to the air around location A as the air warms and decreases in density?

A. It rises.
B. It sinks.
C. It stagnates.
D. It contracts.

11 Compare and contrast the wind patterns in the global wind belts labeled C and D. Why do the winds move in the directions shown?

The graphic below shows a typical coastal area. Use this graphic to answer question 12.

Coastal Land Area on a Summer Day



12 Would the direction of local winds be the same during the night as they would during the day in this location? Explain your answer in terms of the wind's direction and cause during the day and during the night.

Test TIP

Do not be fooled by answers that may seem correct to you just because they contain unfamiliar words.

Chapter 22

Inquiry Lab

Using Scientific Methods

Energy Absorption and Reflection

When solar energy reaches Earth's surface, the energy is either reflected or absorbed by the material that the surface is made of. Whether the material absorbs or reflects energy, and the amount of energy that is reflected or absorbed, depends on several characteristics of the material. These characteristics include the material's composition, its color and texture, how transparent the material is, the mass and volume of the substance, and the specific heat of the substance. In this lab, you will study these characteristics to determine which material is best suited for use as roofing material.

Objectives

- **Determine** which material would keep the inside of a house coolest.
- **Explain** which properties of that material determine whether it is a conductor or an insulator.

Materials

- cardboard, 4 cm × 4 cm × 1 cm (4 pieces)
- paint, black, white, and light blue tempera
- metal, 4 cm × 4 cm × 1 cm
- rubber, beige or tan, 4 cm × 4 cm × 1 cm
- sandpaper, 4 cm × 4 cm × 1 cm
- thermometers, Celsius (4)
- watch, or clock
- wood, beige or tan, 4 cm × 4 cm × 1 cm

Safety

ASK A QUESTION

1. Which material would keep the interior of a house coolest?

FORM A HYPOTHESIS

2. Identify the material that you think will keep the inside of a house coolest. List the characteristics of that material that caused you to choose that material.

TEST THE HYPOTHESIS

3. Brainstorm with a partner or with a small group of classmates to design a procedure that will help you determine which materials absorb the most energy and which materials keep the surface below them coolest. You do not have to test all of the materials, if you can explain why you think those materials would not be coolest. Write down your experimental procedure.

Step 3

4. Have your teacher approve your experimental design.

5. Create a table like the one shown at right. Use this table to record the data you collect as you perform your experiment.

6. Following your design, measure the temperatures that the materials and the surfaces beneath them reach.

Material	Color	Surface temperature (°C)	Temperature below material (°C)
Cardboard	white		
Rubber	beige		
Sandpaper	beige		

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK

ANALYZE THE RESULTS

1. **Graphing Data** Use the data you collected to create a bar graph whose *x*-axis you label with the materials you tested and *y*-axis you label with a range of temperatures.

2. **Analyzing Data** Which material reached the highest temperature on its surface? Which material caused the surface below it to reach the highest temperature?

3. **Analyzing Data** Which material stayed the lowest temperature at its surface? Which material kept the temperature of the surface beneath it lowest?

4. **Evaluating Results** Did the color of the materials affect whether they absorbed or reflected solar energy? Explain your answer.

DRAW CONCLUSIONS

5. **Drawing Conclusions** Based on your results, which material would you use for the roof of a house? Did your experimental results support your original hypothesis?

6. **Inferring Relationships** What properties of the material you identified in question 5 do you think make it best for this purpose? Explain your answer.

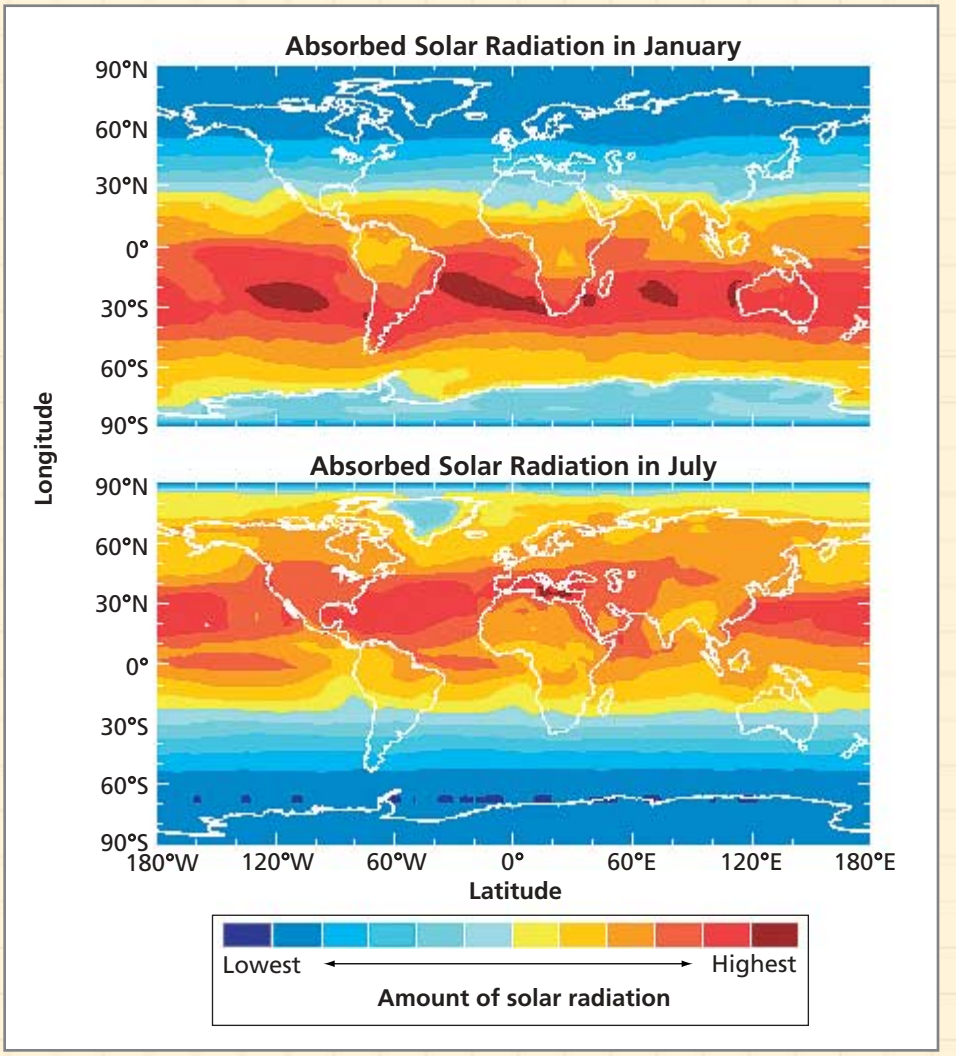
7. **Making Predictions** Do you think the material you chose would keep the inside of a house warm in colder weather? Explain your answer.

8. **Analyzing Methods** Name two changes in your experimental design that you would make if you were going to repeat the experiment. Explain why you would make each change.

Extension

1. **Applying Ideas** Use the materials you tested in this lab to create a model of Earth's surface that represents how different parts of Earth's surface absorb or reflect solar energy. Which areas of Earth's surface absorb the least energy?

Absorbed Solar Radiation



Map Skills Activity

These maps show the total amount of solar radiation that is absorbed by Earth in January and July. Use the maps to answer the questions below.

1. **Using a Key** In January, which region has the highest amount of absorbed solar radiation?
2. **Using a Key** In July, which region has the highest amount of absorbed solar radiation?
3. **Comparing Areas** Which area has the greatest difference between the amount of absorbed solar radiation in January and the amount in July: southern Australia or northeastern South America?
4. **Analyzing Data** At what latitudes are January's and July's amounts of absorbed solar radiation similar?
5. **Inferring Relationships** How do these maps explain the differences between the Northern Hemisphere's weather in January and its weather in July?

Energy from the Wind

For more than a thousand years, people have used windmills for tasks such as grinding grain or pumping water. Today, more and more people are rediscovering the benefits of wind power, and the number of wind turbines used to generate electricity continues to grow.

A New Take on an Old Idea

One result of the renewed interest in wind power is the reintroduction of the Darrieus turbine. Invented in 1920, the Darrieus turbine resembles an upside-down eggbeater. The Darrieus turbine is designed to catch winds blowing from all directions, and most of its moving parts are located on the ground. The bend in the blades can be changed to maximize efficiency, and the turbine's shape—taller than it is wide—minimizes land use.

Other, more recent technological advances in wind turbines include the use of lighter and less costly materials and the use of faster airfoil blades. Instead of being flat like earlier blades, an airfoil blade is shaped like an airplane wing. This shape allows air to flow smoothly over the blades and enables the airfoil to use the lifting force of the wind more effectively.

Energy of the Future

Using the wind to generate electricity consumes no fuels and produces no wastes. Also, wind itself costs nothing and is available in certain areas in a limitless supply. However, wind power has some disadvantages. One disadvantage is the unpredictability of wind speed and wind direction. Wind farms can also be noisy, unattractive, and deadly to migrating birds.

Thousands of wind turbines have been installed in California, Texas, and other states. Because of the steady increase in wind power use in European countries such as the Netherlands, Denmark, Germany, and England, wind power is quickly becoming the sustainable energy source of choice for utility companies worldwide.

Extension

1. **Making Predictions** What problems might arise in wind turbines placed between 20° and 40° latitude?

▲ A modern Darrieus turbine

▼ A modern wind farm

Chapter 23

Water in the Atmosphere

Sections

1 Atmospheric Moisture
2 Clouds and Fog
3 Precipitation

What You'll Learn

- How water enters the atmosphere
- How clouds form
- How precipitation forms

Why It's Relevant

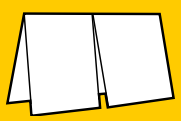
Severe weather conditions can put lives in danger. Understanding how water moves through the atmosphere provides a basis for understanding weather.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Two-Panel Flip Chart

Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Two-Panel Flip Chart" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the flaps of the two-panel flip chart with "Clouds" and "Precipitation." As you read the chapter, write information you learn about each category under the appropriate flap.



▶ Dark clouds, such as the clouds near Rosston, Oklahoma, shown here, usually signal the coming of a thunderstorm. The clouds look dark because they are so thick that little solar radiation passes through them.

Section 1 Atmospheric Moisture

Water in the atmosphere exists in three states, or *phases*. One phase is known as a gas called *water vapor*. The other two phases of water are the solid phase known as *ice* and the liquid phase known as *water*.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how heat energy affects the changing phases of water.
- **Explain** what absolute humidity and relative humidity are, and describe how they are measured.
- **Describe** what happens when the temperature of air decreases to the dew point or below the dew point.

KEY TERMS

latent heat
sublimation
dew point
absolute humidity
relative humidity

Changing Forms of Water

Water changes from one phase to another when heat energy is absorbed or released, as shown in **Figure 1.** Molecules of ice are held almost stationary in a definite crystalline arrangement. However, when energy is absorbed by the ice, the molecules move more rapidly. They break from their fixed positions and slide past each other in the fluid form of a liquid.

When more energy is absorbed by liquid water, the water changes from a liquid to a gas. Because the additional energy causes the movement of molecules in liquid water to speed up, the molecules collide more frequently with each other. Such collisions can cause the molecules to move so rapidly that the fastest-moving molecules escape from the liquid to form invisible water vapor in a process called *evaporation*.

Latent Heat

The heat energy that is absorbed or released by a substance during a phase change is called **latent heat.** When liquid water evaporates, the water absorbs energy from the environment. This energy becomes potential energy between the molecules. When water vapor changes back into a liquid through the process of *condensation*, energy is released to the surrounding air and the molecules move closer together. Likewise, latent heat is absorbed when ice thaws, and latent heat is released when water freezes.

latent heat the heat energy that is absorbed or released by a substance during a phase change

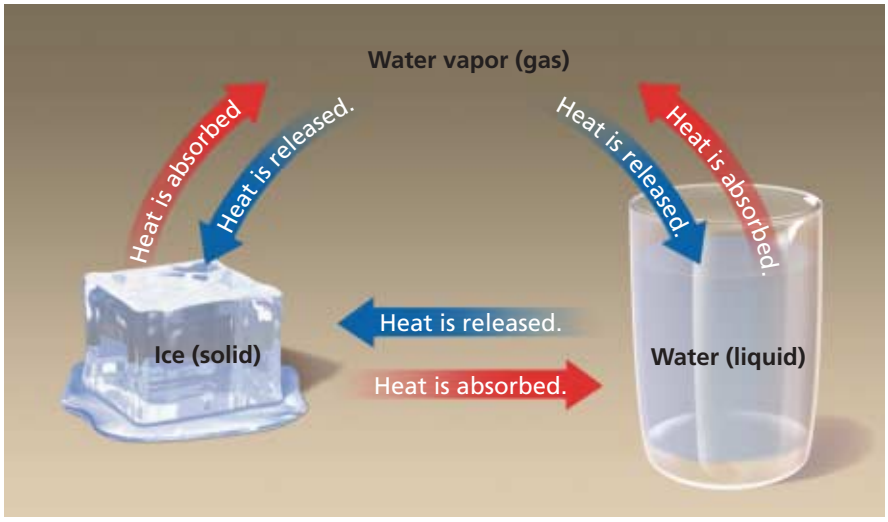


Figure 1 ▶ Water exists in three states, called *phases*. As it changes from one phase to another, water either absorbs or releases heat energy.

Evaporation

Most water enters the atmosphere through the process of evaporation. Because the largest amounts of solar energy reach Earth near the equator, most evaporation takes place in the oceans of the equatorial region. However, water vapor also enters the atmosphere by evaporation from lakes, ponds, streams, and soil. Plants release water into the atmosphere in a process called transpiration. Volcanoes and burning fuels also release small amounts of water vapor into the atmosphere.

Sublimation

Ice commonly changes into a liquid before changing into a gas. However, in some cases, ice can change directly into water vapor without becoming a liquid. The process by which a solid changes directly into a gas is called **sublimation.** When the air is dry and the temperature is below freezing, ice and snow may sublimate into water vapor. Water vapor can also turn directly into ice without becoming a liquid.

sublimation the process in which a solid changes directly into a gas (the term is sometimes also used for the reverse process)

Reading Check **Summarize the conditions under which sublimation commonly occurs. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Connection to PHYSICS

Light and Water in the Atmosphere

The interaction of water and light in the atmosphere can create a number of visual effects. When visible light passes through raindrops, the raindrops *refract*, or bend the light rays, which separates the white light into the colors that make up the entire visible spectrum. You can see these colors in rainbows, glories, and coronas. *Coronas* are small, multicolored circles that surround the sun or moon. *Glories* are small, multicolored circles that surround the shadow of an object on which light is shining.

Sun dogs, sun pillars, halos, and rings are caused by the interaction of light rays and ice crystals in the atmosphere. In general, the ice crystals do not separate the light into different colors, so these phenomena involve white light. *Sun dogs* are bright spots that appear in the sky, often on either side of the sun. *Sun pillars* are bright shafts of light that extend up and down from the sun or moon. *Halos* and *rings* are fuzzy or bright rings that are commonly seen around the sun and the moon.

Crepuscular rays are slanting sunbeams that form when sunlight is intermittently interrupted by clouds or fog. The clouds cast shadows that appear to break up the sunlight to form smaller, individual rays.

A *mirage* is one of two types of optical illusions that form when light rays are refracted as they pass through a boundary between hot air and cool air. The first type, called an *inferior mirage,* occurs when light passes from a layer of cool air to a layer of hot air close to the ground. When the light rays enter the hot air, they bend upward and cause the sky to appear as a pool of water on the ground. The other type, a *superior mirage,* is an image of an object that seems to be suspended in the sky. This type occurs when light rays pass through a layer of warm air into a layer of cool air below.

Sun dogs, such as these below, are caused when ice crystals in the atmosphere interact with light rays.

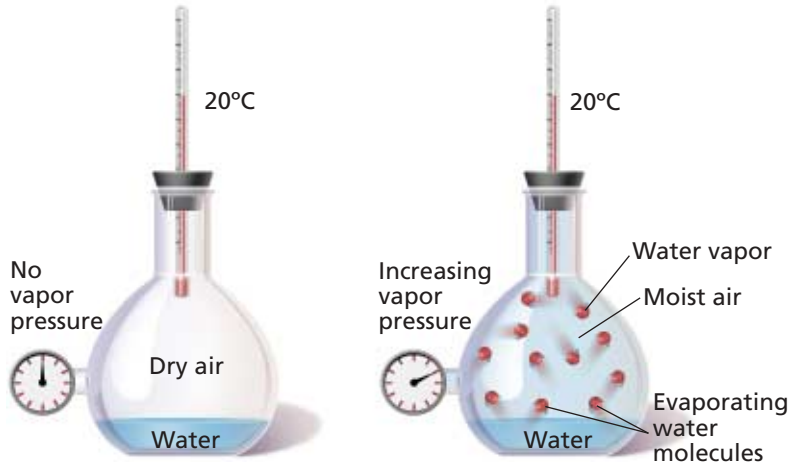


Figure 2 ▶ When water comes into contact with dry air, some of the water molecules evaporate into the dry air. The addition of the water molecules to the air causes the air pressure to increase. This increase in pressure is due to vapor pressure.

Humidity

Water vapor in the atmosphere is known as *humidity*. Humidity is controlled by rates of condensation and evaporation. The rate of evaporation is determined by the temperature of the air. The higher the temperature is, the higher the rate of evaporation is. The rate of condensation is determined by vapor pressure. Vapor pressure is the part of the total atmospheric pressure that is caused by water vapor, as shown in **Figure 2.** When vapor pressure is high, the condensation rate is high.

When the rate of evaporation and the rate of condensation are in equilibrium, the air is said to be "saturated." The temperature at which the condensation rate equals the evaporation rate is called the **dew point.** At temperatures below the dew point, net condensation occurs, and liquid water droplets form.

dew point at constant pressure and water vapor content, the temperature at which the rate of condensation equals the rate of evaporation

absolute humidity the mass of water vapor per unit volume of air that contains the water vapor, usually expressed as grams of water vapor per cubic meter of air

Absolute Humidity

One way to express the amount of moisture in air is by absolute humidity. **Absolute humidity** is the mass of water vapor contained in a given volume of air. In other words, absolute humidity is a measure of the actual amount of water vapor in the air. Absolute humidity is calculated by using the following equation:

$$\text{absolute humidity} = \frac{\text{mass of water vapor (grams)}}{\text{volume of air (cubic meters)}}$$

However, as air moves, its volume changes as a result of temperature and pressure changes. Therefore, meteorologists prefer to describe humidity by using the mixing ratio of air. The *mixing ratio* is the mass of water vapor in a unit of air relative to the mass of the dry air. For example, the very moist air in tropical regions might have 18 g of water vapor in 1 kg of air, or a mixing ratio of 18 g/kg. On the other hand, the cold, dry air in polar regions commonly has a mixing ratio of less than 1 g/kg. Because this measurement uses only units of mass, it is not affected by changes in temperature or pressure.

SCILINKS
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Atmospheric Moisture
SciLinks code: HQ60113

Figure 3 ▶ Dew forms on surfaces such as grass and spider webs when the temperature of air reaches the dew point.

relative humidity the ratio of the amount of water vapor in the air to the amount of water vapor needed to reach saturation at a given temperature

Relative Humidity

A more common way to express the amount of water vapor in the atmosphere is by *relative humidity*. **Relative humidity** is a ratio of the actual water vapor content of the air to the amount of water vapor needed to reach saturation. In other words, relative humidity is a measure of how close the air is to reaching the dew point. For example, at 25°C, air is saturated when it contains 20 g of water vapor per 1 kg of air. If air that is 25°C contains 5 g of water vapor, the relative humidity is expressed as 5/20, or 25%.

If the temperature does not change, the relative humidity will increase if moisture enters the air. Relative humidity can also increase if the moisture in the air remains constant but the temperature decreases. If the temperature increases as the moisture in the air remains constant, the relative humidity will decrease.

Reaching the Dew Point

When the air is nearly saturated with a relative humidity of almost 100%, only a small temperature drop is needed for air to reach its dew point. Air may cool to its dew point by conduction when the air is in contact with a cold surface. During the night, grass, leaves, and other objects near the ground lose heat. Their surface temperatures often drop to the dew point of the surrounding air. Air, which normally remains warmer than surfaces near the ground do, cools to the dew point when it comes into contact with cooler objects, such as grass. The resulting form of condensation, shown in **Figure 3,** is called *dew*. Dew is most likely to form on cool, clear nights when there is little wind.

If the dew point falls below the freezing temperature of water, water vapor may change directly into solid ice crystals, or *frost*. Because frost forms when water vapor turns directly into ice, frost is not frozen dew. Frozen dew is relatively uncommon. Unlike frost, frozen dew forms as clear beads of ice.

Reading Check **How does dew differ from frost? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

MATHPRACTICE

Relative Humidity

Relative humidity can be calculated by using the following equation:

$$\text{relative humidity} = \left[\frac{\text{amount of water vapor in air}}{\text{amount of water vapor needed to reach saturation}}\right] \times 100$$

Air at 20°C is saturated when it contains 14 g/kg of water vapor. What is the relative humidity of a volume of air that is 20°C and that contains 10 g/kg of water vapor?

Measuring Humidity

Meteorologists are interested in measuring humidity so that they can better predict weather conditions. Relative humidity can be measured by using a variety of instruments, such as a thin polymer film, a psychrometer, a dew cell, and a hair hygrometer.

Using Thin Polymer Film to Measure Humidity

Humidity is commonly measured by a humidity sensor that uses a *thin polymer film*. The relative humidity of the surrounding air affects the ability of the thin polymer film to absorb or release water vapor. The amount of water vapor the thin polymer film contains changes the film's ability to conduct electricity. The polymer film's ability to conduct electricity is affected by the relative humidity of the surrounding air. Thus, by measuring the polymer film's ability to store electricity, relative humidity can be determined.

Using Psychrometers to Measure Humidity

A *psychrometer,* shown in **Figure 4,** is another instrument that is used to measure relative humidity. It consists of two identical thermometers. The bulb of one thermometer is covered with a damp wick, while the bulb of the other thermometer remains dry. When the psychrometer is held by a handle and whirled through the air, the air circulates around both thermometers. As a result, the water in the wick of the wet-bulb thermometer evaporates. Evaporation requires heat, so heat escapes from the thermometer. Consequently, the temperature of the wet-bulb thermometer is lower than that of the dry-bulb thermometer. The difference between the dry-bulb temperature and the wet-bulb temperature is used to calculate relative humidity. If there is no difference between the wet-bulb temperature and dry-bulb temperature, no water evaporated from the wet-bulb thermometer. Thus, the air is saturated and the relative humidity is 100%.

QuickLAB 10 min

Dew Point

Procedure

1. Pour **room-temperature water** into a **glass container,** such as a drinking glass, until the water level is near the top of the cup.
2. Observe the outside of the glass container, and record your observations.
3. Add **one or two ice cubes** to the container of water.
4. Watch the outside of the container for 5 min for any changes.

Analysis

1. What happened to the outside of the container?
2. What is the liquid on the container?
3. Where did the liquid come from? Explain your answer.

Figure 4 ▶ A psychrometer is commonly used with a table that lists relative humidity based on differences between wet-bulb and dry-bulb readings.

Figure 5 ▶ Scientists use weather balloons, such as this one in Antarctica, to send electric hygrometers into the high altitudes of the atmosphere.

Other Methods for Measure Humidity

Another instrument that has been used to measure relative humidity is the *dew cell*. Dew cells consist of a ceramic cylinder with electrodes attached to it and treated with lithium chloride, LiCl. When LiCl absorbs water from the air, the dew cells ability to conduct electricity increases. By detecting the electrical resistance of LiCl as it is heated and cooled, the dew cell can determine the dew point.

The *hair hygrometer* determines relative humidity based on the principle that hair becomes longer as relative humidity increases. As relative humidity decreases, hair becomes shorter.

Measuring Humidity at High Altitudes

To measure humidity at high altitudes, scientists use an electric hygrometer. The hygrometer may be carried up into the atmosphere in an instrument package known as a *radiosonde*. The radiosonde is attached to a weather balloon, such as the one shown in **Figure 5.** The electric hygrometer is triggered by passing an electric current through a moisture-attracting chemical substance. The amount of moisture changes the electrical conductivity of the chemical substance. The change can then be expressed as the relative humidity of the surrounding air.

Section 1 Review

1. **Explain** how most water vapor enters the air.
2. **Identify** the principal source from which most water vapor enters the atmosphere.
3. **Identify** the process by which ice changes directly into a gas.
4. **Define** *humidity*.
5. **Compare** relative humidity with absolute humidity.
6. **Describe** what happens when the temperature of air decreases to the dew point or below the dew point.
7. **Identify** four instruments that are used to measure relative humidity.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Predicting Consequences** Explain what would happen to a sample of air whose relative humidity is 100% if the temperature decreased.
9. **Identifying Relationships** Which region of Earth would you expect to have a higher absolute humidity: the equatorial region or the polar regions?

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *humidity*, *water vapor, dew point, absolute humidity, dew cell, psychrometer, hygrometer, evaporation, condensation,* and *relative humidity*.

Section 2 Clouds and Fog

Clouds are collections of small water droplets or ice crystals that fall slowly through the air. Ice crystals and water droplets form when condensation or sublimation occurs more rapidly than evaporation does. People commonly think that clouds are high in the sky and fog is close to the ground. However, clouds are not limited to high altitudes. Fog is actually a cloud that forms near or on Earth's surface.

Cloud Formation

For water vapor to condense and form a cloud, a solid surface on which condensation can take place must be available. Although the lowest layer of the atmosphere, the *troposphere,* does not contain any large solid surfaces, it contains millions of suspended particles of ice, salt, dust, and other materials. Because the particles are so small—less than 0.001 mm in diameter—they remain suspended in the atmosphere for a long time. The suspended particles that provide the surfaces necessary for water vapor to condense are called **condensation nuclei.** As water molecules collect on the nuclei, water droplets form, as **Figure 1** shows.

In addition, for clouds to form, the rate of evaporation must initially be in equilibrium with the rate of condensation. When this condition occurs, the air is said to be "saturated" with water vapor. When the temperature of the saturated air drops, condensation occurs more rapidly than evaporation does. As a result of this net condensation, clouds begin to form. Because the rate of evaporation decreases as temperature decreases, cooling of air may lead to net condensation. Four major processes can cause the cooling that is necessary for clouds to form.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the conditions that are necessary for clouds to form.
- **Explain** the four processes of cooling that can lead to the formation of clouds.
- **Identify** the three types of clouds.
- **Describe** four ways in which fog can form.

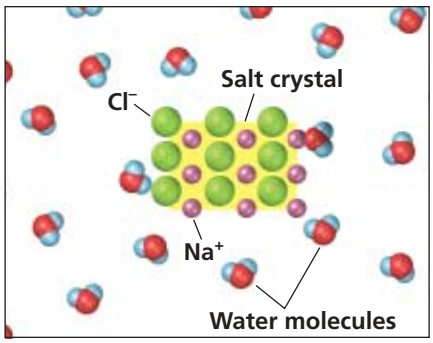
KEY TERMS

cloud
condensation nucleus
adiabatic cooling
advective cooling
stratus cloud
cumulus cloud
cirrus cloud
fog

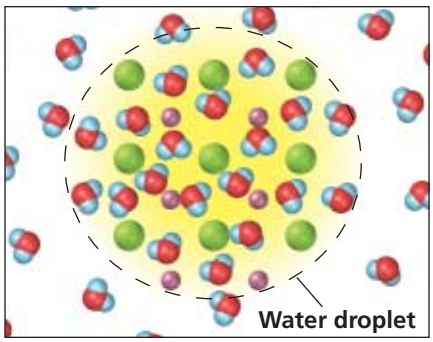
cloud a collection of small water droplets or ice crystals suspended in the air, which forms when the air is cooled and condensation occurs

condensation nucleus a solid particle in the atmosphere that provides the surface on which water vapor condenses

Figure 1 ▶ Formation of a Water Droplet



Water molecules are electrically attracted to the sodium ions, Na^+, and the chlorine ions, Cl^-, in a salt crystal.



The water molecules and ions form a solution. Additional water molecules are attracted to the solution, and the droplet gets bigger.

Adiabatic Cooling

As a mass of air rises, the surrounding atmospheric pressure decreases. Because of the lower pressure, the molecules in the rising air move farther apart. Thus, fewer collisions between the molecules happen. The resulting decrease in the amount of energy that transfers between molecules decreases the temperature of the air. The process by which the temperature of a mass of air decreases as the air rises and expands is called **adiabatic cooling** (AD ee uh BAT ik KOOL ing).

adiabatic cooling the process by which the temperature of an air mass decreases as the air mass rises and expands

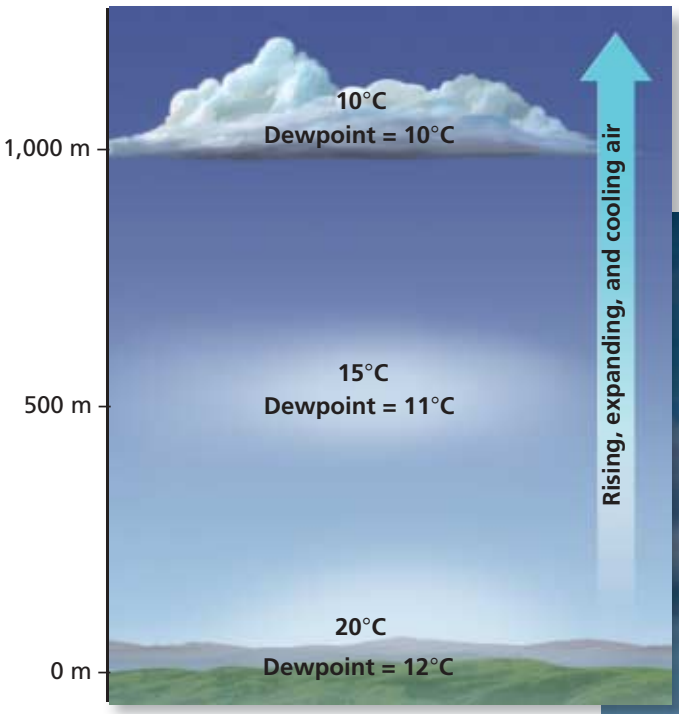
Adiabatic Lapse Rate

The rate at which the temperature of a parcel of air changes as the air rises or sinks is called the *adiabatic lapse rate*. The adiabatic lapse rate of clear air is about –1°C for every 100 m that the air rises. Air that is below the dew point—and thus is cloudy—cools more slowly, however. The average adiabatic lapse rate for cloudy air varies between –0.5°C and –0.9°C per 100 m that the air rises. The slower rate of cooling of moist air results from the release of latent heat as the water condenses.

Condensation Level

The process through which clouds form by adiabatic cooling is shown in **Figure 2.** Earth's surface absorbs energy from the sun and then reradiates that energy as heat. The air close to Earth's surface absorbs the heat. As the air warms, it rises, expands, and then cools. When the air cools to a temperature that is below the dew point, net condensation causes clouds to form. The altitude at which this net condensation begins is called the *condensation level*. The condensation level is marked by the base of the clouds. Further condensation allows clouds to rise and expand above the condensation level.

Figure 2 ▶ Notice in this illustration that temperature and dew point are the same at an altitude of 1,000 m. Above that altitude, condensation begins and clouds, such as the clouds in the image on the right, form.



Reading Check **What is the source of heat that warms the air and leads to cloud formation? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 3 ▶ Clouds can form as air is pushed up along a mountain slope and is cooled to below the dew point.

Mixing

Some clouds form when one body of moist air mixes with another body of moist air that has a different temperature. The combination of the two bodies of air causes the temperature of the air to change. This temperature change may cool the combined air to below its dew point, which results in cloud formation.

Lifting

The forced upward movement of air commonly results in the cooling of air and in cloud formation. Air can be forced upward when a moving mass of air meets sloping terrain, such as a mountain range. As the rising air expands and cools, clouds form. As **Figure 3** shows, entire mountaintops can be covered with clouds that formed in this way.

The large cloud formations associated with storm systems also form by lifting. These clouds form when a mass of cold, dense air enters an area and pushes a less dense mass of warmer air upward.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Clouds and Fog
SciLinks code: HQ60304

Advective Cooling

Another cooling process that is associated with cloud formation is advective cooling. **Advective cooling** is the process by which the temperature of an air mass decreases as the air mass moves over a cold surface, such as a cold ocean or land surface. As air moves over a surface that is colder than the air is, the cold surface absorbs heat from the air and the air cools. If the air cools to below its dew point, clouds form.

advective cooling the process by which the temperature of an air mass decreases as the air mass moves over a cold surface

stratus cloud a gray cloud that has a flat, uniform base and that commonly forms at very low altitudes

QuickLAB 15 min

Cloud Formation

Procedure

1. Use a **bottle opener** to puncture one or two holes into the metal lid of a **glass jar.**
2. Pour **1 mL of hot water** into the jar.
3. Place an **ice cube** over the holes in the lid of the jar. Make sure the holes are completely covered.
4. Observe the changes that occur within the jar.

Analysis

1. Draw a diagram of the jar. Label the areas of the diagram where evaporation and condensation take place. Also, label areas where latent heat is released and absorbed.
2. Explain why latent heat was released and absorbed in the areas that you labeled on the diagram.

Classification of Clouds

Clouds are classified by their shape and their altitude. The three basic cloud forms are stratus clouds, cumulus clouds, and cirrus clouds. There are also three altitude groups: low clouds (0 to 2,000 m), middle clouds (2,000 to 6,000 m), and high clouds (above 6,000 m). This classification system is shown in **Figure 4.**

Stratus Clouds

Clouds that have a flat, uniform base and that begin to form at very low altitudes are called **stratus clouds.** *Stratus* means "sheetlike" or "layered." The base of stratus clouds is low and may almost touch Earth's surface. Stratus clouds form where a layer of warm, moist air lies above a layer of cool air. When the overlying warm air cools below its dew point, wide clouds appear. Stratus clouds cover large areas of sky and often block out the sun. Usually, very little precipitation falls from stratus clouds.

Two variations of stratus clouds are known as *nimbostratus* and *altostratus*. The prefix *nimbo-* and the suffix *-nimbus* mean "rain." Unlike other stratus clouds, the dark nimbostratus clouds can cause heavy precipitation. Altostratus clouds form at the middle altitudes. They are generally thinner than the low stratus clouds and usually produce very little precipitation.

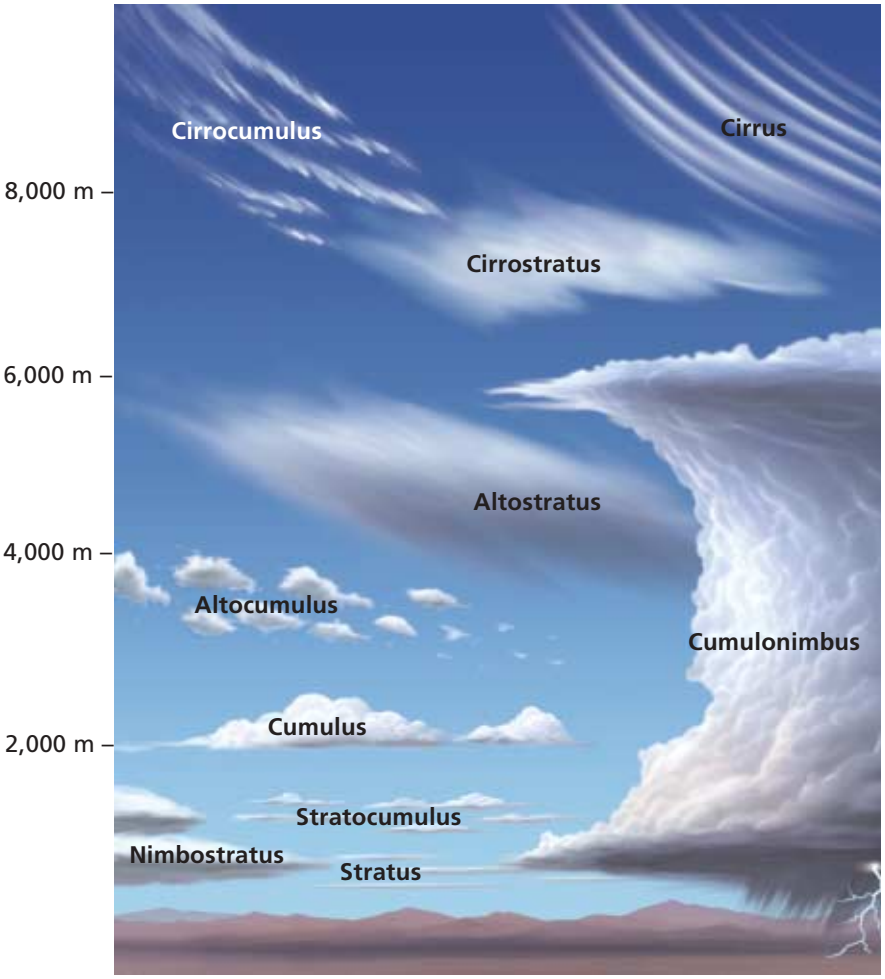


Figure 4 ▶ A variety of cloud types can be identified by their altitude and shape. ***What cloud types form at or above 6,000 m?***

Figure 5 ▶ Cumulus clouds (left) are puffy, vertically growing clouds, while cirrus clouds (right) are wispy.

Cumulus Clouds

Low-altitude, billowy clouds that commonly have a top that resembles cotton balls and a dark bottom are called **cumulus clouds.** *Cumulus* means "piled" or "heaped." Cumulus clouds usually look fluffy, as shown in **Figure 5.** These clouds form when warm, moist air rises and cools. As the cooling air reaches its dew point, the clouds form. The flat base that is characteristic of most cumulus clouds represents the condensation level.

The height of a cumulus cloud depends on the stability of the troposphere, which is the layer of the atmosphere that touches Earth's surface, and on the amount of moisture in the air. On hot, humid days, cumulus clouds reach their greatest heights. High, dark storm clouds known as *cumulonimbus clouds,* or thunderheads, are often accompanied by rain, lightning, and thunder. If the base of cumulus clouds begins at middle altitudes, the clouds are called *altocumulus clouds*. Low clouds that are a combination of stratus and cumulus clouds are called *stratocumulus clouds*.

cumulus cloud a low-level, billowy cloud that commonly has a top that resembles cotton balls and a dark bottom

cirrus cloud a feathery cloud that is composed of ice crystals and that has the highest altitude of any cloud in the sky

Cirrus Clouds

Feathery clouds that are composed of ice crystals and that have the highest altitude of any cloud in the sky are **cirrus clouds.** Cirrus clouds are also shown in **Figure 5.** *Cirro-* and *cirrus* mean "curly." Cirrus clouds form at altitudes above 6,000 m. These clouds are made of ice crystals because the temperatures are low at such high altitudes. Because these clouds are thin, light can easily pass through them.

Cirrocumulus clouds are rare, high-altitude, billowy clouds composed entirely of ice crystals. Cirrocumulus clouds commonly appear just before a snowfall or a rainfall. Long, thin clouds called *cirrostratus clouds* form a high, transparent veil across the sky. A halo may appear around the sun or moon when either is viewed through a cirrostratus cloud. This halo effect is caused by the bending of light rays as they pass through the ice crystals.

Reading Check **Why are cirrus clouds commonly composed of ice crystals? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Graphic Organizer **Comparison Table**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Comparison Table" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns with "Stratus clouds," "Cumulus clouds," and "Cirrus clouds." Label the rows with "Altitude" and "Shape." Then, fill in the table with details about the altitude and shape of each cloud.

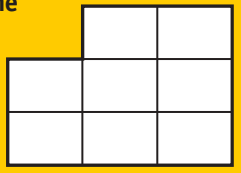


Figure 6 ▶ Steam fog covers the Yakima River in Washington.

Fog

Like clouds, **fog** is the result of the condensation of water vapor in the air. The obvious difference between fog and clouds is that fog is very near the surface of Earth. However, fog also differs from clouds because of how fog forms.

Radiation Fog

One type of fog forms from the nightly cooling of Earth. The layer of air in contact with the ground becomes chilled to below the dew point, and the water vapor in that layer condenses into droplets. This type of fog is called *radiation fog* because it results from the loss of heat by radiation. Radiation fog is thickest in valleys and low places because dense, cold air sinks to low elevations. Radiation fog is often quite thick around cities, where smoke and dust particles act as condensation nuclei.

fog water vapor that has condensed very near the surface of Earth because air close to the ground has cooled

Other Types of Fog

Another type of fog, *advection fog,* forms when warm, moist air moves across a cold surface. Advection fog is common along coasts, where warm, moist air from above the water moves in over a cooler land surface. Advection fog forms over the ocean when warm, moist air is carried over cold ocean currents.

An *upslope fog* forms by the lifting and cooling of air as air rises along land slopes. *Steam fog* is a shallow layer of fog that forms when cool air moves over an inland warm body of water, such as a river, as shown in **Figure 6.**

Section 2 Review

1. **Describe** the conditions that are necessary for clouds to form.
2. **Explain** the four processes of cooling that can lead to cloud formation.
3. **Identify** the cloud types that form at 8,000 m.
4. **Compare** cirrus, cumulus, and stratus clouds.
5. **Identify** the type of cloud that is known for causing thunderstorms.
6. **Compare** clouds with fog.
7. **Describe** four ways in which fog can form.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Applying Ideas** Explain why air expands when it rises.
9. **Making Predictions** How might an increase in pollution affect cloud formation?
10. **Making Comparisons** Which type of cloud has the lowest condensation level? Which type has the highest condensation level?

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *cloud, cirrus, condensation level, advective cooling, adiabatic cooling, stratus, cumulus,* and *fog.*

Section 3

Precipitation

Any moisture that falls from the air to Earth's surface is called **precipitation.** The four major types of precipitation are rain, snow, sleet, and hail.

Forms of Precipitation

Rain is liquid precipitation. Normal raindrops are between 0.5 and 5 mm in diameter. They may vary from a fine mist to large drops in a torrential rainstorm. If the raindrops are smaller than 0.5 mm in diameter, the rain is called *drizzle*. Drizzle results in only a small amount of total precipitation.

The most common form of solid precipitation is *snow,* which consists of ice particles. These particles may fall as small pellets, as individual crystals, or as crystals that combine to form snowflakes. Snowflakes tend to be large at temperatures near 0°C and become smaller at lower temperatures.

When rain falls through a layer of freezing air near the ground, clear ice pellets, called *sleet,* can form. In some cases, the rain does not freeze until it strikes a surface near the ground. There, it forms a thick layer of ice called *glaze ice,* as shown in **Figure 1.** The condition in which glaze ice is produced is commonly referred to as an *ice storm*.

Hail is solid precipitation in the form of lumps of ice. The lumps can be either spherical or irregularly shaped. Hail usually forms in cumulonimbus clouds. Convection currents within the clouds carry raindrops to high levels, where the drops freeze before they fall. If the frozen raindrops are carried upward again, they can accumulate additional layers of ice until they are too heavy for the convection currents to carry them. They then fall to the ground. Large hailstones can damage crops and property.

OBJECTIVES

- **Identify** the four forms of precipitation.
- **Compare** the two processes that cause precipitation.
- **Describe** two ways that precipitation is measured.
- **Explain** how rain can be produced artificially.

KEY TERMS

precipitation
coalescence
supercooling
cloud seeding

precipitation any form of water that falls to Earth's surface from the clouds; includes rain, snow, sleet, and hail

Figure 1 ▶ Glaze ice forms as rain freezes on surfaces near the ground, such as on these flowers.

Figure 2 ▶ During coalescence, as cloud droplets fall, they collide and combine with small droplets. The resulting larger droplets fall as rain.

coalescence the formation of a large droplet by the combination of smaller droplets

supercooling a condition in which a substance is cooled below its freezing point, condensation point, or sublimation point without going through a change of state

Causes of Precipitation

Most cloud droplets have a diameter of about 20 micrometers, which is smaller than the period at the end of this sentence. Droplets of this size fall very slowly through the air. A droplet must increase in diameter by about 100 times to fall as precipitation. Two natural processes cause cloud droplets to grow large enough to fall as precipitation: coalescence and supercooling.

Coalescence

The formation of a large droplet by the combination of smaller droplets is called **coalescence** (koh uh LES uhnts) and is shown in **Figure 2.** Large droplets fall much faster through the air than small ones do. As these larger droplets drift downward, they collide and combine with smaller droplets. Each large droplet continues to coalesce until it contains a million times as much water as it did originally.

Supercooling

Precipitation also forms by the process of supercooling. **Supercooling** is a condition in which a substance is cooled to below its freezing point, condensation point, or sublimation point without changing state. Supercooled water droplets may have a temperature as low as –50°C. Yet even at this low temperature, the water droplets do not freeze. They cannot freeze because too few *freezing nuclei* on which ice can form are available. Freezing nuclei are solid particles that are suspended in the air and that have structures similar to the crystal structure of ice. Most water from the supercooled water droplets evaporates. The water vapor then condenses on the ice crystals that have formed on the freezing nuclei. The ice crystals rapidly increase in size until they gain enough mass to fall as snow, as shown in **Figure 3.** If ice crystals melt and turn into rain as they pass through air whose temperature is above freezing, they form the big raindrops that are common in summer thunderstorms.

Figure 3 ▶ Most of the rain and snow in the middle and high latitudes of Earth are the result of the formation of ice crystals in supercooled clouds.

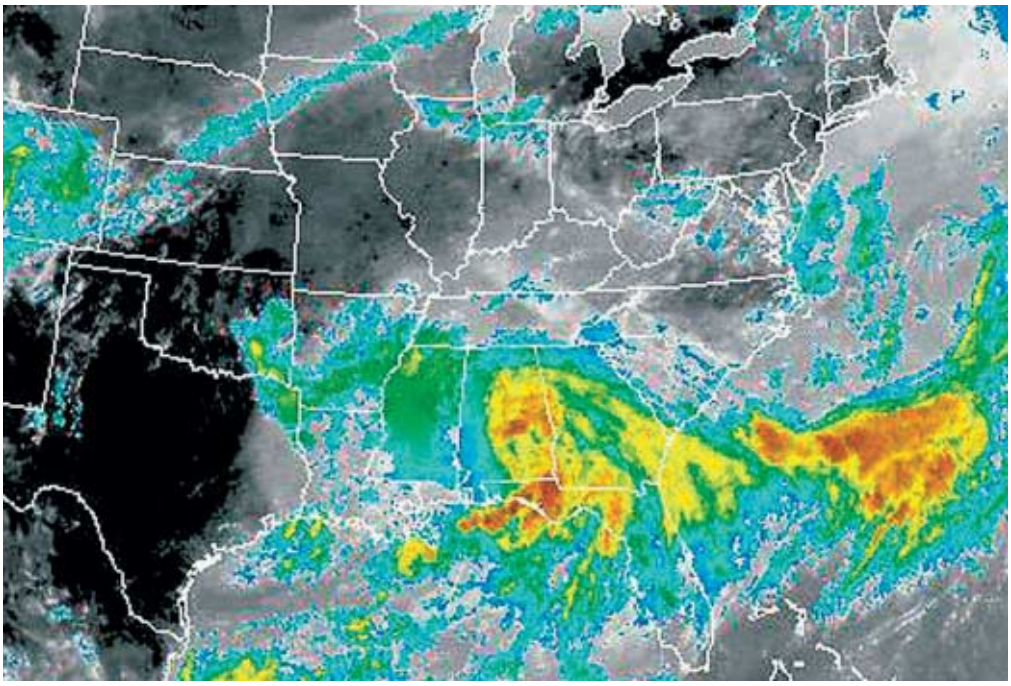


Figure 4 ▶ Doppler radar helps meteorologists track storms, such as Tropical Storm Barry over the southeastern United States. The colors represent the intensity of rainfall. Reds and yellows indicate areas of heaviest rainfall, while blues and greens denote areas of lighter rainfall.

Measuring Precipitation

Meteorologists use a variety of instruments to measure precipitation. For example, a *rain gauge* may be used to measure rainfall.

Amount of Precipitation

In one type of rain gauge, rainwater passes through a funnel into a calibrated container, where the amount of rainfall can then be measured. In another type of rain gauge, rain caught in a funnel fills a bucket. Each time the bucket fills with a given amount of rainwater, the bucket tips and sets off an electrical device that records the amount. As the bucket tips, it activates a switch that releases the water from the bucket.

Snow depth is simply determined with a measuring stick. The water content of the snow is determined by melting a measured volume of snow and by measuring the amount of water that results. On average, 10 cm of snow will melt to produce about 1 cm of water.

Doppler Radar

The intensity of precipitation can be measured using Doppler radar. Doppler radar images, such as the one in **Figure 4,** are commonly used by meteorologists for communicating weather forecasts. Doppler radar works by bouncing radio waves off rain or snow. By timing how long the wave takes to return, meteorologists can detect the location, direction of movement, and intensity of precipitation. This information is very valuable in saving lives because people can be warned of an approaching storm.

Reading Check **What aspects of precipitation can Doppler radar measure? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Precipitation
SciLinks code: HQ61202

Figure 5 ▶ Special equipment attached to the wings of cloud-seeding planes releases freezing nuclei into clouds. Meteorologists hope that cloud seeding will induce rain to fall on drought-stricken areas.

Weather Modification

In areas suffering from drought, scientists may attempt to induce precipitation through cloud seeding, as shown in **Figure 5.** **Cloud seeding** is the process of introducing freezing nuclei or condensation nuclei into a cloud to cause rain to fall.

Methods of Cloud Seeding

One method of cloud seeding uses silver iodide crystals, which resemble ice crystals, as freezing nuclei. The silver iodide is released from burners on the ground or from flares dropped from aircraft. Another method of cloud seeding uses powdered dry ice, which is dropped from aircraft to cool cloud droplets and to cause ice crystals to form. As the ice crystals fall, they may melt to form raindrops.

cloud seeding the process of introducing freezing nuclei or condensation nuclei into a cloud in order to cause rain to fall

Improving Cloud Seeding

In some cases, seeded clouds produce more precipitation than unseeded clouds do. In other experiments, cloud seeding does not cause a significant increase in precipitation. In some instances, cloud seeding appears to cause less precipitation. Thus, meteorologists have concluded that cloud seeding may increase precipitation under some conditions but decrease it under others. Research is underway to identify the conditions that cause increased precipitation. Eventually, cloud seeding may become a way to overcome many drought-related problems. Cloud seeding could also help control severe storms by releasing precipitation from clouds before a storm can become too large.

Section 3 Review

1. **Identify** four forms of precipitation.
2. **Compare** coalescence and supercooling.
3. **Identify** the instrument that measures amounts of rainfall.
4. **Describe** how the amount of snowfall can be measured.
5. **Explain** how Doppler radar can be used to measure the intensity of precipitation.
6. **Describe** how precipitation can be induced or increased artificially.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Predicting Consequences** If water could not remain liquid during supercooling, how would the potential for precipitation in colder climates be affected?
8. **Making Inferences** Explain how cloud seeding could be dangerous if it is not done properly.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *precipitation, rain, snow, glaze ice, hail, coalescence, supercooling, freezing nucleus, sleet,* and *drizzle.*

Chapter 23 Highlights

Sections

1 Atmospheric Moisture

Key Terms

latent heat, 575
sublimation, 576
dew point, 577
absolute humidity, 577
relative humidity, 578

Key Concepts

- Latent heat is released or absorbed when water changes from one state to another.
- Relative humidity is a ratio of the actual amount of water vapor in the air to the amount of water vapor needed to reach saturation.
- When air reaches the dew point, the rate of condensation equals the rate of evaporation. Below the dew point, net condensation causes dew to form.

2 Clouds and Fog

cloud, 581
condensation nucleus, 581
adiabatic cooling, 582
advective cooling, 583
stratus cloud, 584
cumulus cloud, 585
cirrus cloud, 585
fog, 586

- Clouds form when water vapor cools and condenses on condensation nuclei.
- Water vapor can cool and condense by adiabatic cooling, by the mixing of two bodies of moist air that have different temperatures, by lifting of air, and by advective cooling.
- The three major forms of clouds are stratus clouds, cumulus clouds, and cirrus clouds.
- The four types of fog are radiation fog, advection fog, upslope fog, and steam fog.

3 Precipitation

precipitation, 587
coalescence, 588
supercooling, 588
cloud seeding, 590

- The major forms of precipitation are rain, snow, sleet, and hail.
- Coalescence and supercooling are two processes by which cloud droplets become large enough to fall as precipitation.
- A rain gauge is used to measure liquid precipitation. Snow is measured by its depth and water content.
- Cloud seeding is one way in which meteorologists try to induce precipitation.

Chapter 23 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *latent heat*
2. *condensation nucleus*
3. *precipitation*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *coalescence* and *supercooling*
5. *stratus cloud* and *cumulus cloud*
6. *adiabatic cooling* and *advective cooling*
7. *relative humidity* and *absolute humidity*
8. *cloud* and *fog*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. When the temperature of the air decreases, the rate of evaporation
   a. increases. **c.** stays the same.
   b. varies. **d.** decreases.

10. The type of fog that results when moist air moves across a cold surface is
    a. radiation fog. **c.** advection fog.
    b. ground fog. **d.** steam fog.

11. Changes in temperature that result from the cooling of rising air or the warming of sinking air are
    a. adiabatic. **c.** advective.
    b. relative. **d.** latent.

12. Clouds form when the water vapor in air condenses as
    a. the air is heated.
    b. the air is cooled.
    c. snow falls.
    d. the air is superheated.

13. The prefix *nimbo-* and suffix *-nimbus* mean
    a. high. **c.** rain.
    b. billowy. **d.** layered.

14. The fog that results from the nightly cooling of Earth is called
    a. steam fog. **c.** radiation fog.
    b. upslope fog. **d.** advection fog.

15. Rain that freezes when it strikes a surface produces
    a. sleet. **c.** hail.
    b. glaze ice. **d.** frost.

16. Clouds in which the water droplets remain liquid below 0°C are said to be
    a. saturated. **c.** superheated.
    b. supersaturated. **d.** supercooled.

17. In one method of cloud seeding, silver iodide crystals are used as
    a. freezing nuclei. **c.** dry ice.
    b. cloud droplets. **d.** latent heat.

18. An instrument that uses the electrical conductance of the chemical lithium chloride to measure relative humidity is the
    a. hygrometer. **c.** psychrometer.
    b. rain gauge. **d.** dew cell.

Short Answer

19. Explain how the transfer of energy affects the changing forms of water.

20. Explain how a psychrometer measures humidity.

21. Describe how frost forms.

22. Describe how precipitation is measured.

23. Describe how cloud seeding may increase precipitation.

24. Explain how clouds are classified.

Critical Thinking

25. Making Inferences Where would air contain more water vapor—over Panama or over Antarctica? Explain your answer.

26. Identifying Relationships One body of air has a relative humidity of 97%. Another has a relative humidity of 44%. At the same temperature, which body of air is closer to its dew point? Explain your answer.

27. Applying Ideas Why would polluted air be more likely to form fog than clean air would?

28. Analyzing Relationships In tropical regions, surface temperatures are very high. However, some precipitation in these regions forms by supercooling. Why might this be true?

29. Predicting Consequences How would a significant decrease in condensation nuclei in the world's atmosphere affect cloud formation and climate?

Concept Mapping

30. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *hygrometer, condensation nucleus, stratus, cirrus, cloud, cumulus, precipitation, relative humidity, saturated, rain, supercooling, snow, sleet, coalescence, dew cell,* and *psychrometer.*

Math Skills

31. Applying Quantities One day in January, 6 cm of snow falls on your area. If all of this snow melts quickly, how deep will the water from the melted snow be? Explain your answer.

32. Making Calculations At 15°C, air reaches saturation when it contains 10 g of water vapor per 1 kg of air. What is the relative humidity of air at 15°C that contains 7 g of water vapor per 1 kg of air?

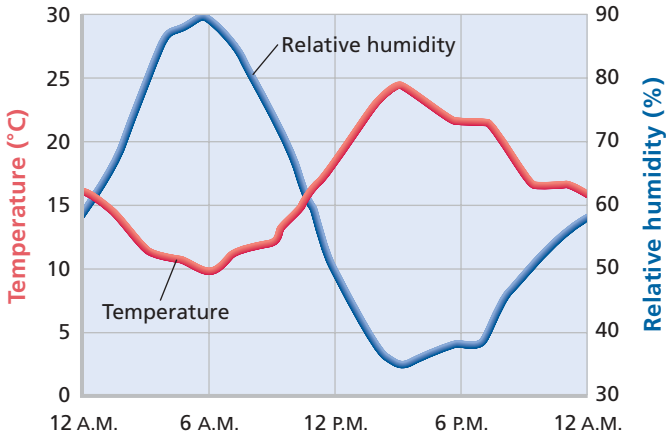
Writing Skills

33. Writing from Research Write a report that describes weather conditions necessary to form each type of cloud. Propose regions and describe climates where each cloud type is most likely to be found.

34. Outlining Topics Create an outline of how clouds form and a separate outline of how precipitation forms. Then, explain how the two differ.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows variations of temperature and humidity in a 24 h period. Use this graph to answer the questions that follow.



35. Estimate the relative humidity at 6:00 A.M.

36. Estimate the temperature at 6:00 A.M.

37. Explain why relative humidity might be highest at 6:00 A.M.

38. When is relative humidity lowest?

39. How does humidity vary relative to temperature?

Chapter 23 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–4): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the number of the correct answer.**

1 What type of fog is formed when cool air moves across a warm river or lake?
- **A.** radiation fog
- **B.** advection fog
- **C.** upslope fog
- **D.** steam fog

2 Which of the following processes produces most of the water vapor in the atmosphere?
- **F.** sublimation
- **G.** evaporation
- **H.** advective cooling
- **I.** convective cooling

3 Which of the following is the main source of moisture in Earth's atmosphere?
- **A.** lakes
- **B.** rivers
- **C.** polar icecaps
- **D.** oceans

4 What is relative humidity?
- **F.** a ratio comparing the mass of water vapor in the air at two different locations
- **G.** a ratio comparing the mass of water vapor in the air at two times during the day and in the same location
- **H.** a ratio comparing the actual amount of water vapor in the air with the capacity of the air to hold moisture at a given temperature
- **I.** a ratio comparing the mass of water vapor that air can hold at two different altitudes at noon and at midnight

Directions (5–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

5 What instrument is used to measure atmospheric pressure?

6 Particles called condensation nuclei, which are suspended in the atmosphere, are necessary in allowing what process to take place?

7 Water vapor will turn into what when the dew point falls below the freezing point of water?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–9): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Acid Precipitation

Thousands of lakes thoughout the world are affected by acid precipitation, often known simply as acid rain. Acid precipitation is precipitation, such as rain, sleet, or snow, that contains high concentrations of acids. When fossil fuels are burned, they release oxides of sulfur and nitrogen. When the oxides combine with water in the atmosphere, they form sulfuric acid and nitric acid, which fall as precipitation. This acidic water flows over and through the ground, and then flows into lakes, rivers, and streams. Acid precipitation can kill living things and can result in the decline or loss of some local animal and plant populations.

A pH (power of hydrogen) number is a measure of how acidic or basic a substance is. The lower the number on the pH scale is, the more acidic a substance is; the highter a pH number is, the more basic a substance is. Each whole number on the pH scale indicates a tenfold change in acidity.

8 According to the passage, which of the following statements is true?
- **A.** Acid precipitation always falls as rain.
- **B.** Acid precipitation seeps into local water supplies and may pose a danger to living things in the area.
- **C.** Sulfur and nitrogen mix with oxygen in the atmosphere and become acids.
- **D.** The amount of acidic precipitation is balanced in nature by an equal amount of basic precipitation.

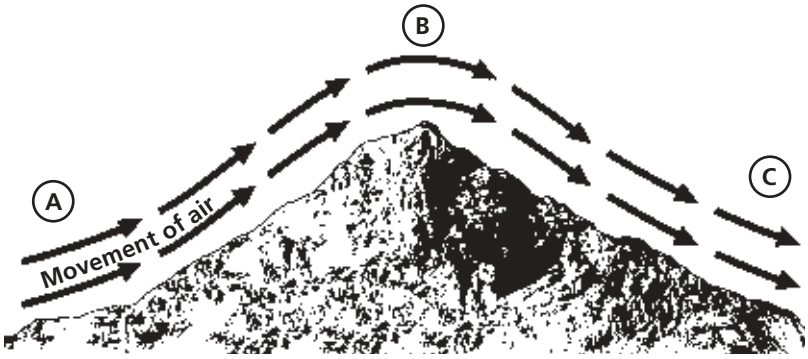
9 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
- **F.** A reduction in the usage of fossil fuels may help alleviate the problem of acid rain.
- **G.** Local animal and plant species will most likely adapt to acid rain.
- **H.** The acid in precipitation is effectively neutralized once it is in a lake or stream.
- **I.** The amount of acid in a substance can be measured by using a 10-point scale.

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (10–14): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagram below shows shows the direction of air movement over a mountain. Use this diagram to answer questions 10 through 12.

Movement of Air Over a Mountain



10 As air moves from point A to point B, the air temperature

A. increases
B. decreases
C. stays the same
D. impossible to predict

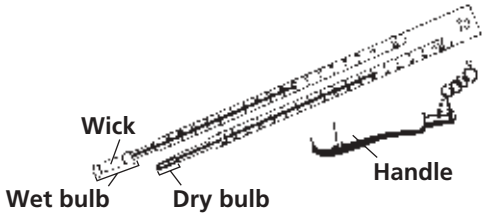
11 Air moving from point B to point C will become compressed and gain energy as it moves down the mountain, which will cause the air to undergo

F. adiabatic warming
G. adiabatic cooling
H. condensation
I. sublimation

12 If moist air moves up the mountain from point A, what process is likely to occur when the moist air moves near point B?

The diagram below shows the parts of a psychrometer. Use this diagram to answer questions 13 and 14.

Parts of a Psychrometer



13 How does a meteorologist use a psychrometer, such as the one shown in the diagram above?

A. It is placed in a pan of water and exposed to the air for one hour.
B. The handle is used to dip it into a body of water such as a lake.
C. It is held by the handle and twirled in the air.
D. It is held until the readings on both thermometers are equal.

14 Why is it necessary to obtain two readings? What measurements of atmospheric moisture can be determined from these readings?

Test TIP

If you are not sure of an answer, go to the next question, but remember to skip that number on your answer sheet.

Chapter 23

Skills Practice Lab

Relative Humidity

Objectives

- **Measure** humidity in the classroom.
- **Calculate** relative humidity.

Materials

- cloth, cotton, at least 8 cm × 8 cm
- container, plastic
- piece of paper
- ring stand with ring
- rubber band
- string
- thermometer, Celsius (2)
- water

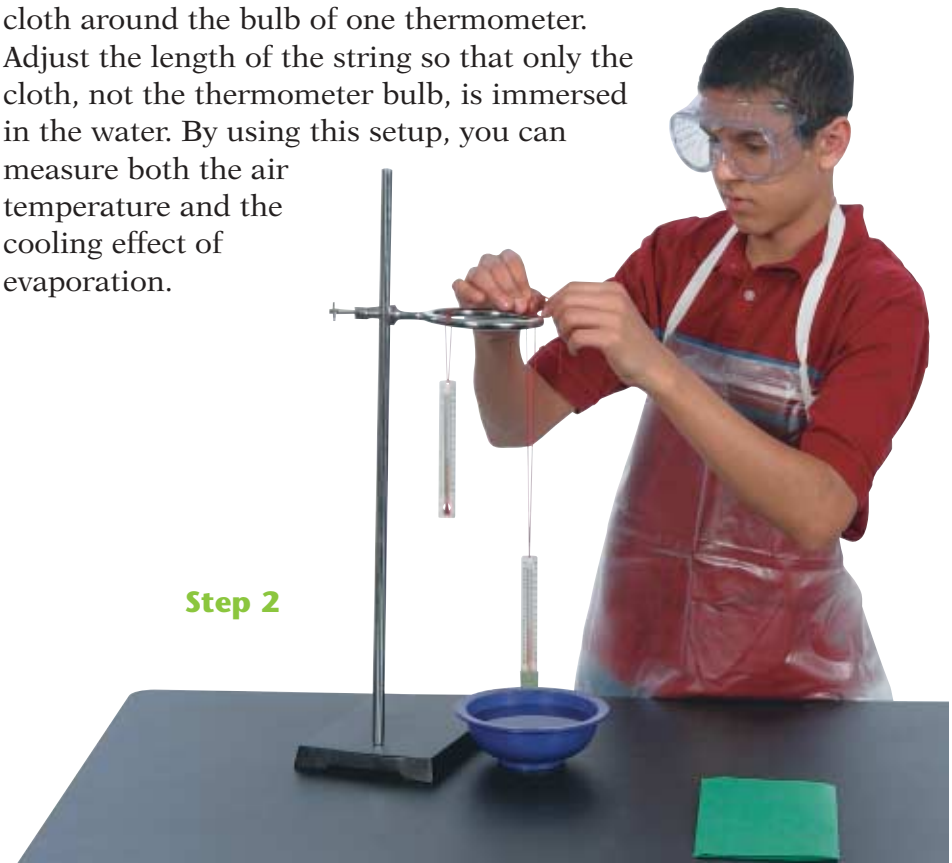
Safety

Earth's atmosphere acts as a reservoir for water that evaporates from Earth's surface. However, the amount of water vapor in the atmosphere depends on the relative rates of condensation and evaporation. When the rates of condensation and evaporation are equal, the air is said to be "saturated." However, when the rate of condensation exceeds the rate of evaporation, water droplets begin to form in the air or on nearby surfaces. The point at which the condensation rate equals the evaporation rate is called the *dew point* and depends on the temperature of the air and on the atmospheric pressure.

Relative humidity is the ratio of the amount of water vapor in the air to the amount of water vapor that is needed for the air to become saturated. This ratio is most commonly expressed as a percentage. When the air is saturated, the air is said to have a relative humidity of 100%. In this lab, you will use wet-bulb and dry-bulb thermometer readings to determine the relative humidity of the air in your classroom.

PROCEDURE

1. Hang two thermometers from a ring stand, as shown in the illustration below.
2. Using a rubber band, fasten a piece of cotton cloth around the bulb of one thermometer. Adjust the length of the string so that only the cloth, not the thermometer bulb, is immersed in the water. By using this setup, you can measure both the air temperature and the cooling effect of evaporation.



Step 2

3. Predict whether the two thermometers will have the same reading or which thermometer will have the lower reading.

4. Using a piece of paper, fan both thermometers rapidly until the reading on the wet-bulb thermometer stops changing. Read the temperature on each thermometer.
   a. What is the temperature on the dry-bulb thermometer?
   b. What is the temperature on the wet-bulb thermometer?
   c. What is the difference in the two temperature readings?

5. Use the table entitled "Relative Humidity" in the Reference Tables section of the Appendix to find the relative humidity based on your temperature readings in **Step 4.** Look at the left-hand column labeled "Dry-Bulb Temperature." First, find the temperature that you recorded in **Step 4a.** Follow along to the right in the table until you come to the number that is directly below the column entitled "Difference in Temperature" (top row of the table) and that you recorded in **Step 4c.** This number, expressed as a percentage, is the relative humidity. What is the relative humidity of the air in your classroom?

Step 4

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Drawing Conclusions** On the basis of the relative humidity you calculated, is the air in your classroom close to or far from the dew point? Explain your answer.

2. **Applying Conclusions** If you wet the back of your hand, would the water evaporate and cool your skin?

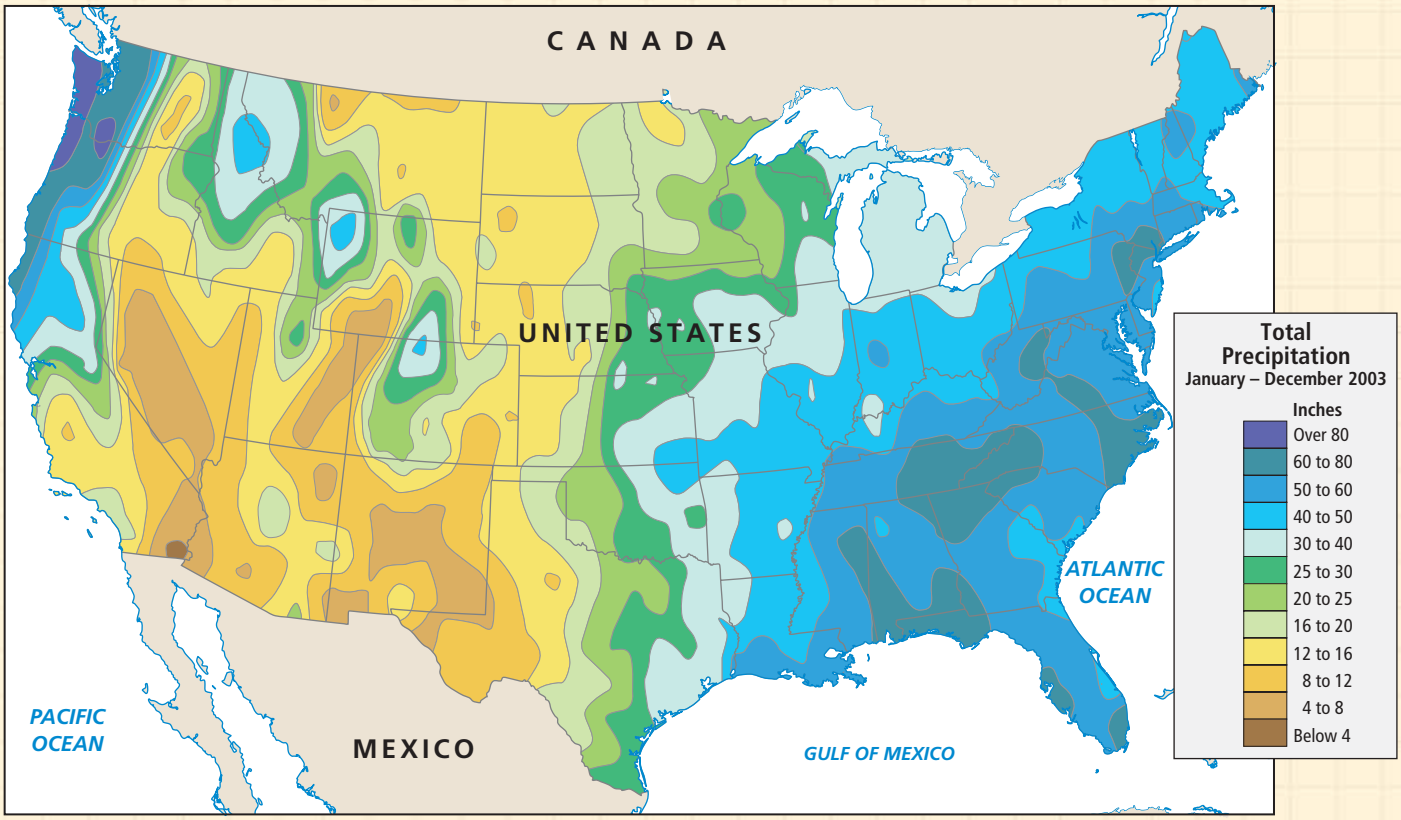
Extension

1. **Making Inferences** Suppose that you exercise in a room in which the relative humidity is 100%.
   a. Would the moisture on your skin from perspiration evaporate easily?
   b. Would you be able to cool off readily? Explain your answer.

2. **Applying Ideas** Suppose that you have just stepped out of a swimming pool. The relative humidity is low, about 30%. Would you feel warm or cool? Explain your answer.

MAPS in Action

Annual Precipitation in the United States



Map Skills Activity

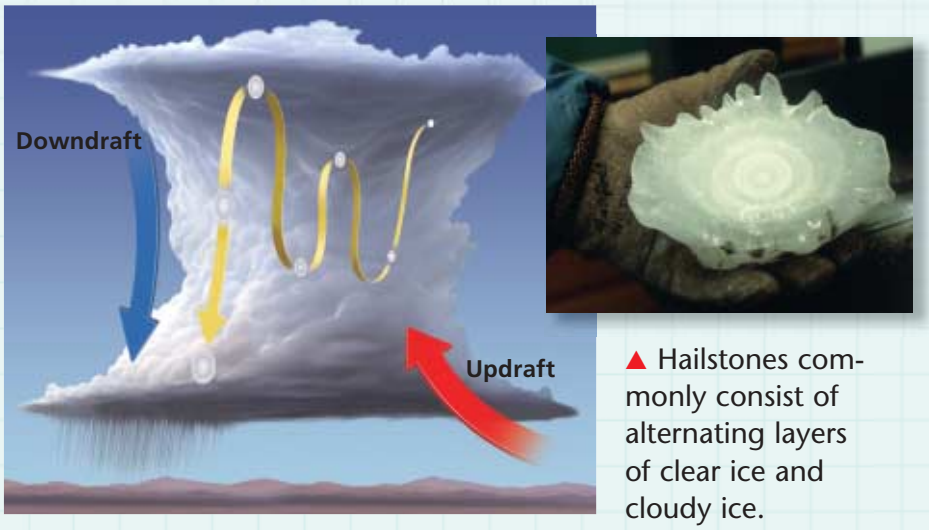
This map shows the total precipitation for the continental United States for the year 2003. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using a Key** What is the highest total amount of precipitation for any area in your state?
2. **Making Comparisons** Which area of the United States has the highest total annual precipitation?
3. **Analyzing Methods** Using what you have learned about the formation of precipitation, explain why one area of the United States might have a higher total annual precipitation than another area has.
4. **Making Inferences** List the forms of precipitation that occur in the United States. Identify areas of the United States where you would likely encounter each form.
5. **Evaluating Data** Describe the location in the United States that might be classified as desert.
6. **Making Comparisons** Describe the location in the United States that might have the highest rate of evaporation.
7. **Making Comparisons** Describe the location in the United States that you think might have the highest relative humidity.

Hail

Hail is precipitation in the form of a lump of ice that starts as a raindrop falling from clouds. Updraft convection currents carry the raindrop back into freezing cloud regions, where layer after layer of supercooled water is added to the frozen drops. The added water also freezes and increases the sizes of the hailstones. Some hailstones have grown from this process to the size of grapefruits. The largest hailstone ever recorded had a circumference of more than 47 cm.

Hailstones often consist of alternating layers of clear ice and cloudy ice. The clear ice forms as a hailstone passes through a layer of very moist air. The cloudy layer forms when water droplets freeze to the surface of the hailstone and trap air bubbles between them.



▲ Hailstones commonly consist of alternating layers of clear ice and cloudy ice.

Hail's Destructive Power

A hailstorm that lasts only a few minutes can cause tremendous damage. For example, hail has been responsible for some airplane crashes. It has torn holes in the roofs of houses and automobiles and in the cabins of aircraft. Hail has killed people, livestock, and wildlife, and it has stripped plants of their leaves.

In July 1984, a hailstorm in Germany caused $1 billion worth of damage to crops, trees, buildings, and vehicles. Trees were stripped of their bark. Crops were destroyed, and 400 people were injured.

The Cost of Hail

Hail destroys more than $200 million worth of wheat, corn, soybeans, and other crops in the United States each year. Hailstorms can have a devastating effect on individual farmers. Unlike drought, hail does not cause gradual damage. Instead, a family's entire crop, which may represent work over an entire year, can be wiped out within minutes.

◀ A strawberry farmer in Atwater, California, investigates damage to his crop. Seventy-five to eighty percent of his crop was destroyed by a hailstorm.

Extension

1. **Analyzing Processes** If you cut a hailstone in half, you would see layering. Explain why.

Chapter 24 Weather

Sections

1 Air Masses
2 Fronts
3 Weather Instruments
4 Forecasting the Weather

What You'll Learn

- How air masses affect weather
- How fronts lead to severe weather
- How scientists forecast weather

Why It's Relevant

Weather affects many different aspects of our lives every day. Studying the weather helps scientists make forecasts and warn people of dangerous weather.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Key Term Fold Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Key-Term Fold" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Write a key term from the chapter on each tab of the key-term fold. Under each tab, write the definition of the key term.

▶ During a thunderstorm, clouds may discharge a spark of electricity called lightning. This bolt of lightning struck near Sugar Loaf Mountain in Rio De Janeiro, Brazil.

Section 1

Air Masses

Differences in air pressure are caused by unequal heating of Earth's surface. The region along the equator receives more solar energy than the regions at the poles do. The heated equatorial air rises and creates a low-pressure belt. Conversely, cold air near the poles sinks and creates high-pressure centers. Differences in air pressure at different locations on Earth create wind patterns.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how an air mass forms.
- **List** the four main types of air masses.
- **Describe** how air masses affect the weather of North America.

KEY TERM

air mass

How Air Moves

Air moves from areas of high pressure to areas of low pressure. Therefore, there is a general, worldwide movement of surface air from the poles toward the equator. At high altitudes, the warmed air flows from the equator toward the poles. Temperature and pressure differences on Earth's surface create three wind belts in the Northern Hemisphere and three wind belts in the Southern Hemisphere. The *Coriolis effect,* which occurs when winds are deflected by Earth's rotation, also influences wind patterns. The processes that affect air movement also influence storms, such as the one shown in **Figure 1.**

air mass a large body of air throughout which temperature and moisture content are similar

Formation of Air Masses

When air pressure differences are small, air remains relatively stationary. If the air remains stationary or moves slowly over a uniform region, the air takes on the characteristic temperature and humidity of that region. A large body of air throughout which temperature and moisture are similar is called an **air mass.** Air masses that form over frozen polar regions are very cold and dry. Air masses that form over tropical oceans are warm and moist.

Figure 1 ▶ The motion of Earth's atmosphere can lead to the formation of powerful storms such as Hurricane Florence, which was photographed by astronauts on the shuttle *Atlantis* over the Atlantic Ocean in 1994.

Table 1 ▼

Air Masses		
Source region	**Type of air**	**Symbol**
Continental	dry	c
Maritime	moist	m
Tropical	warm	T
Polar	cold	P

Types of Air Masses

Air masses are classified according to their source regions. The source regions also determine the temperature and the humidity of the air mass. The source regions for cold air masses are polar areas. The source regions for warm air masses are tropical areas. Air masses that form over the ocean are called *maritime*. Air masses that form over land are called *continental*. Maritime air masses are moist, and continental air masses are dry. Air masses and the symbols used to designate them are listed in **Table 1.** The combination of tropical or polar air and continental or maritime air results in air masses that have distinct characteristics.

Continental Air Masses

Continental air masses form over large landmasses, such as northern Canada, northern Asia, or the southwestern United States. Because these air masses form over land, the level of humidity is very low. An air mass may remain over its source region for days or weeks. However, the air mass will eventually move into other regions because of global wind patterns. In general, continental air masses bring dry weather conditions when they move into another region. There are two types of continental air masses: *continental polar* (cP) and *continental tropical* (cT). Continental polar air masses are cold and dry. Continental tropical air masses are warm and dry.

Maritime Air Masses

Maritime air masses form over oceans or other large bodies of water. These air masses take on the characteristics of the water over which they form. The humidity in these air masses tends to be higher than that of the continental air masses. When these very moist masses of air travel to a new location, they commonly bring more precipitation and fog, as shown in **Figure 2.**

The two different maritime air masses are *maritime polar* (mP) and *maritime tropical* (mT). Maritime polar air masses are moist and cold. Maritime tropical air masses are moist and warm.

Figure 2 ▶ A maritime air mass brings fog that rolls in off the coast of California.

North American Air Masses

The four types of air masses that affect the weather of North America come from six regions. These air masses, their source locations, their movements, and the weather they bring are summarized in **Table 2.** The general directions of the air masses' movements are shown in **Figure 3.** An air mass usually brings the weather of its source region, but an air mass may change as it moves away from its source region. For example, cold, dry air may become warmer and more moist as it moves from land to the warm ocean. As the lower layers of air are warmed, the air rises. This warmed air may then create clouds and precipitation.

Table 2 ▼

Air Masses of North America

Air mass	Source location	Movement	Weather
cP	polar regions in Canada	south-southeast	cold and dry
mP	polar Pacific; polar Atlantic	southeast; southwest-south	cold and moist
cT	U.S. southwest	north-northeast	warm and dry
mT	tropical Pacific; tropical Atlantic	northeast; north-northwest	warm and moist

Tropical Air Masses

Continental tropical air masses form over the deserts of the southwestern United States. These air masses bring dry, hot weather in the summer. They do not form in the winter. Maritime tropical air masses form over the warm water of the tropical Atlantic Ocean. They bring mild, often cloudy weather to the eastern United States in the winter. In the summer, they bring hot, humid weather and thunderstorms. Maritime tropical air masses also form over warm areas of the Pacific Ocean. But these air masses do not usually reach the Pacific coast. In the winter, maritime tropical air masses bring moderate precipitation to the coast and the southwestern deserts.

Reading Check **Which air mass brings dry, hot weather in the summer? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Air Masses
SciLinks code: HQ60031

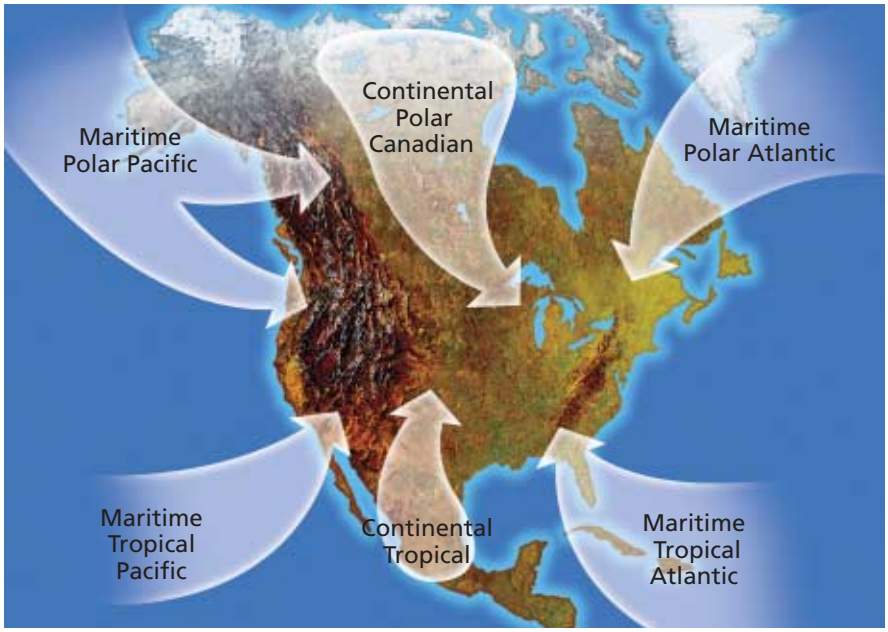


Figure 3 ▶ The four types of air masses that influence the weather in North America come from six regions and are named according to their source regions.

Figure 4 ▶ Maritime polar Atlantic air masses can bring heavy snowfall, such as in this snowstorm that hit New York City in 2003.

Polar Air Masses

Polar air masses from three regions—northern Canada and the northern Pacific and Atlantic Oceans—influence weather in North America. Continental polar air masses form over ice- and snow-covered land. These air masses move into the northern United States and can occasionally reach as far south as the Gulf Coast of the United States. In summer, the air masses usually bring cool, dry weather. In winter, they bring very cold weather to the northern United States.

Maritime polar air masses form over the North Pacific Ocean and are very moist, but they are not as cold as continental polar Canadian air masses. In winter, these maritime polar Pacific air masses bring rain and snow to the Pacific Coast. In summer, they bring cool, often foggy weather. As they move inland and eastward over the Cascades, the Sierra Nevada, and the Rocky Mountains, these cold air masses lose much of their moisture and warm slightly. Thus, they may bring cool and dry weather by the time they reach the central United States.

Maritime polar Atlantic air masses move generally eastward toward Europe. But they sometimes move westward over New England and eastern Canada. In winter, they can bring cold, cloudy weather and snow, as shown in **Figure 4.** In summer, these air masses can produce cool weather, low clouds, and fog.

Section 1 Review

1. **Define** *air mass*.
2. **Explain** how an air mass forms.
3. **Identify** the location where a cold, dry air mass would form.
4. **List** the four main types of air masses.
5. **Describe** how the four main types of air masses affect the weather of North America.
6. **Describe** the air mass that forms over the warm waters of the Atlantic Ocean. What letters designate the source region of this air mass?

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Predictions** How would temperature and humidity at a given location change when a maritime tropical air mass is replaced by a continental polar air mass?
8. **Recognizing Relationships** In which direction would you expect a tropical air mass near the coast of Europe to travel? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *maritime polar Pacific, maritime polar, continental polar Canadian, air mass, continental polar,* and *maritime polar Atlantic.*

Section 2 Fronts

When two unlike air masses meet, density differences usually keep the air masses separate. A cool air mass is dense and does not mix with the less-dense air of a warm air mass. Thus, a boundary, called a *front,* forms between air masses. A typical front is several hundred kilometers long. However, some fronts may be several thousand kilometers long. Changes in middle-latitude weather usually take place along the various types of fronts. Fronts do not exist in the Tropics because no air masses that have significant temperature differences exist there.

Types of Fronts

For a front to form, one air mass must collide with another air mass. The kind of front that forms is determined by how the air masses move in relationship to each other.

Cold Fronts

When a cold air mass overtakes a warm air mass, a **cold front** forms. The moving cold air lifts the warm air. If the warm air is moist, clouds will form. Large cumulus and cumulonimbus clouds typically form along fast-moving cold fronts. Storms that form along a cold front are usually short-lived and are sometimes violent. A long line of heavy thunderstorms, called a *squall line,* shown in **Figure 1,** may occur in the warm, moist air just ahead of a fast-moving cold front. A slow-moving cold front lifts the warm air ahead of it more slowly than a fast-moving front does. A slow-moving cold front typically produces weaker storms and lighter precipitation than a fast-moving cold front does.

OBJECTIVES

- **Compare** the characteristic weather patterns of cold fronts with those of warm fronts.
- **Describe** how a midlatitude cyclone forms.
- **Describe** the development of hurricanes, thunderstorms, and tornadoes.

KEY TERMS

cold front
warm front
stationary front
occluded front
midlatitude cyclone
thunderstorm
hurricane
tornado

cold front the front edge of a moving mass of cold air that pushes beneath a warmer air mass like a wedge

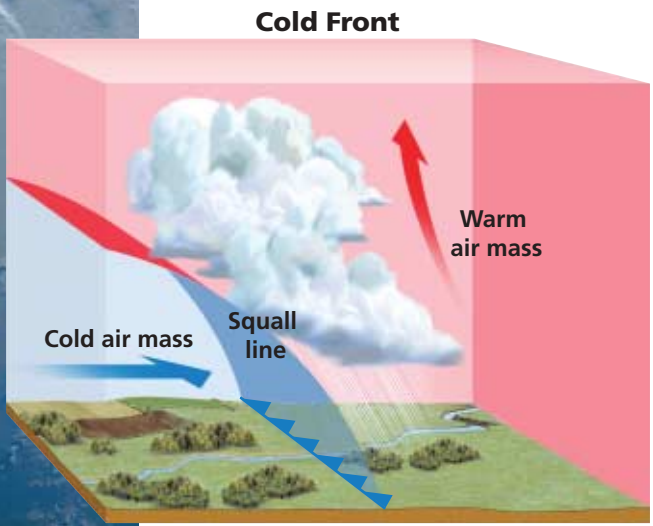


Figure 1 ▶ As a cold air mass overtakes a warm air mass, a line of thunderstorms called a *squall line* forms. The photo shows a squall line over the North Atlantic Ocean.

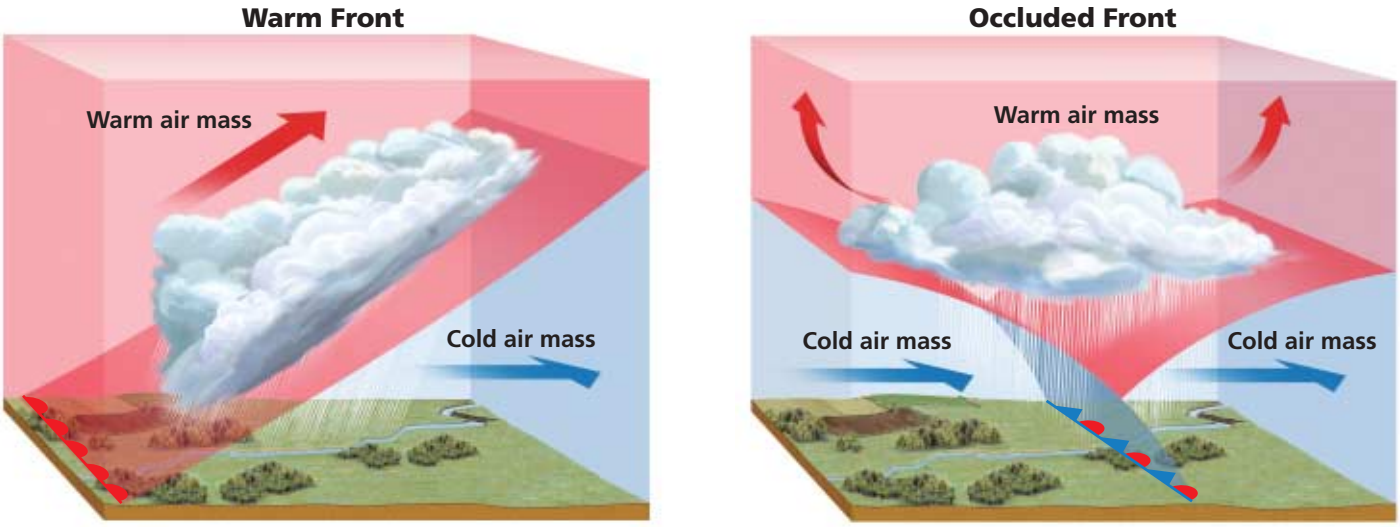


Figure 2 ▶ As a warm air mass rises over a cold air mass (left), a warm front forms at the boundary of the two air masses. An occluded front (right) forms when a cold air mass lifts a warm air mass off the ground.

warm front the front edge of advancing warm air mass that replaces colder air with warmer air

stationary front a front of air masses that moves either very slowly or not at all

occluded front a front that forms when a cold air mass overtakes a warm air mass and lifts the warm air mass off the ground and over another air mass

midlatitude cyclone an area of low pressure that is characterized by rotating wind that moves toward the rising air of the central low-pressure region

Warm Fronts

When a cold air mass retreats from an area, a **warm front** forms. The less dense warm air rises over the cooler air. The slope of a warm front is gradual, as shown in **Figure 2.** Because of this gentle slope, clouds may extend far ahead of the surface location, or *base,* of the front. A warm front generally produces precipitation over a large area and may cause violent weather.

Stationary and Occluded Fronts

Sometimes, when two air masses meet, the cold air moves parallel to the front, and neither air mass is displaced. A front at which air masses move either very slowly or not at all is called a **stationary front.** The weather around a stationary front is similar to that produced by a warm front. An **occluded front** usually forms when a fast-moving cold front overtakes a warm front and lifts the warm air off the ground completely, as shown in **Figure 2.**

Polar Fronts and Midlatitudes Cyclones

Over each of Earth's polar regions is a dome of cold air that may extend as far as 60° latitude. The boundary where this cold polar air meets the tropical air mass of the middle latitudes, especially over the ocean, is called the *polar front.* Waves commonly develop along the polar front. A *wave* is a bend that forms in a cold front or a stationary front. This wave is similar to the waves that moving air produces when it passes over a body of water. However, waves that form in a cold front or stationary front are much larger. They are the beginnings of low-pressure storm centers called midlatitude cyclones or *wave cyclones.* **Midlatitude cyclones** are areas of low pressure that are characterized by rotating wind that moves toward the rising air of the central, low-pressure region. These cyclones strongly influence weather patterns in the middle latitudes.

Stages of a Midlatitude Cyclone

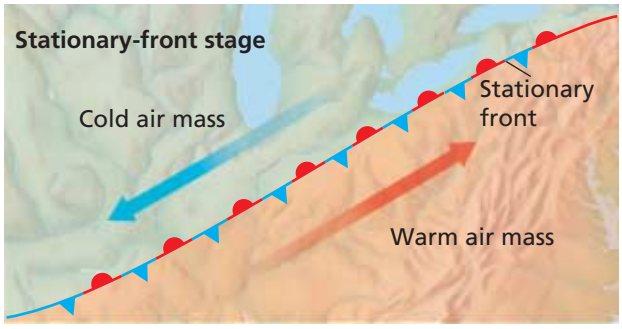
A midlatitude cyclone usually lasts several days. The stages of formation and dissipation of a midlatitude cyclone are shown in **Figure 3.** In North America, midlatitude cyclones generally travel about 45 km/h in an easterly direction as they spin counterclockwise. They follow several storm tracks, or routes, as they move from the Pacific coast to the Atlantic coast. As they pass over the western mountains, they may lose their moisture and energy.

Anticyclones

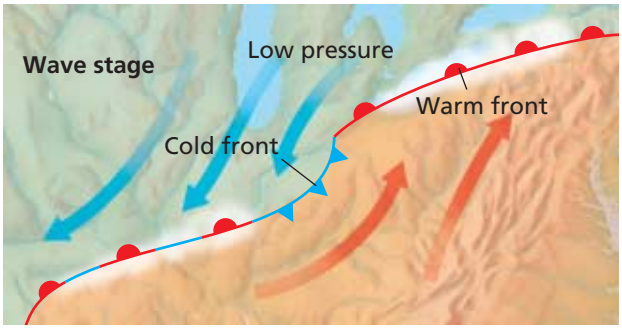
Unlike the air in a midlatitude cyclone, the air of an *anticyclone* sinks and flows outward from a center of high pressure. Because of the Coriolis effect, the circulation of air around an anticyclone is clockwise in the Northern Hemisphere. Anticyclones bring dry weather, because their sinking air does not promote cloud formation. If an anticyclone stagnates over a region for a few days, the anticyclone may cause air pollution problems. After being stationary for a few weeks, anticyclones may cause droughts.

Reading Check **How is the air of an anticyclone different from that of a midlatitude cyclone? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

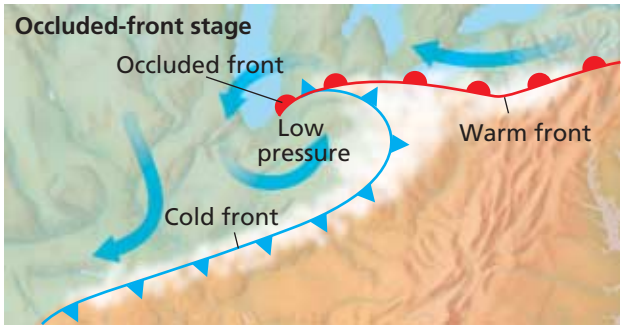
Figure 3 ▶ Stages of a Midlatitude Cyclone



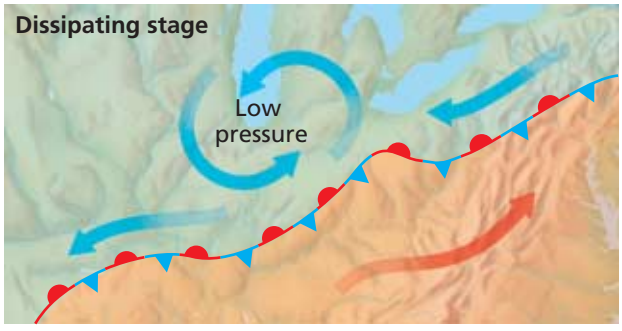
1 Midlatitude cyclones occur along a cold or a stationary front. Winds move parallel to the front but in opposite directions on each side of the front.



2 A wave forms when a bulge of cold air develops and advances slightly ahead of the rest of the front.



3 As the fast-moving part of the cold front overtakes the warm front, an occluded front forms and the storm reaches its highest intensity.



4 Eventually, the system generally loses all of its energy and the midlatitude cyclone dissipates.

Severe Weather

Severe weather is weather that may cause property damage or loss of life. Severe weather may include large quantities of rain, lightning, hail, strong winds, or tornadoes. This type of weather causes billions of dollars in damage each year.

Thunderstorms

thunderstorm a usually brief, heavy storm that consists of rain, strong winds, lightning, and thunder

A heavy storm that is accompanied by rain, thunder, lightning, and strong winds is called a **thunderstorm.** Thunderstorms develop in three distinct stages. In the first stage, or *cumulus stage,* warm, moist air rises, and the water vapor within the air condenses to form a cumulus cloud. In the next stage, called the *mature stage,* condensation continues as the cloud rises and becomes a dark cumulonimbus cloud. Heavy, torrential rain and hailstones may fall from the cloud. While strong updrafts continue to rise, downdrafts form as air is dragged downward by the falling precipitation. During the final stage, or *dissipating stage,* the strong downdrafts stop air currents from rising. The thunderstorm dissipates as the supply of water vapor decreases.

Lightning

During a thunderstorm, clouds discharge electricity in the form of *lightning.* The released electricity heats the air, and the air expands rapidly and produces the loud noise known as *thunder.* For lightning to occur, the clouds must have areas that carry distinct electrical charges. The upper part of the cloud usually carries a positive charge, while the lower part carries mainly a negative charge. Lightning is a huge spark that travels within the cloud or between the cloud and ground to equalize electrical charges. **Figure 4** shows an example of lightning.

MATH PRACTICE

Thunderstorm Distance The time between when a person sees a lightning strike and when he or she hears thunder indicates how far away the lightning bolt was from that person. Sound travels approximately 1 km in 3 s. The lapse time in seconds divided by 3 is roughly the number of kilometers between the viewer and the lightning. If 27 seconds pass between a flash of lightning and the sound of thunder, how far away was the lightning strike from the viewer?

Figure 4 ▶ The average lightning flash lasts only about a quarter of a second, but lightning causes more than $330,000,000 in damage per year in the United States.

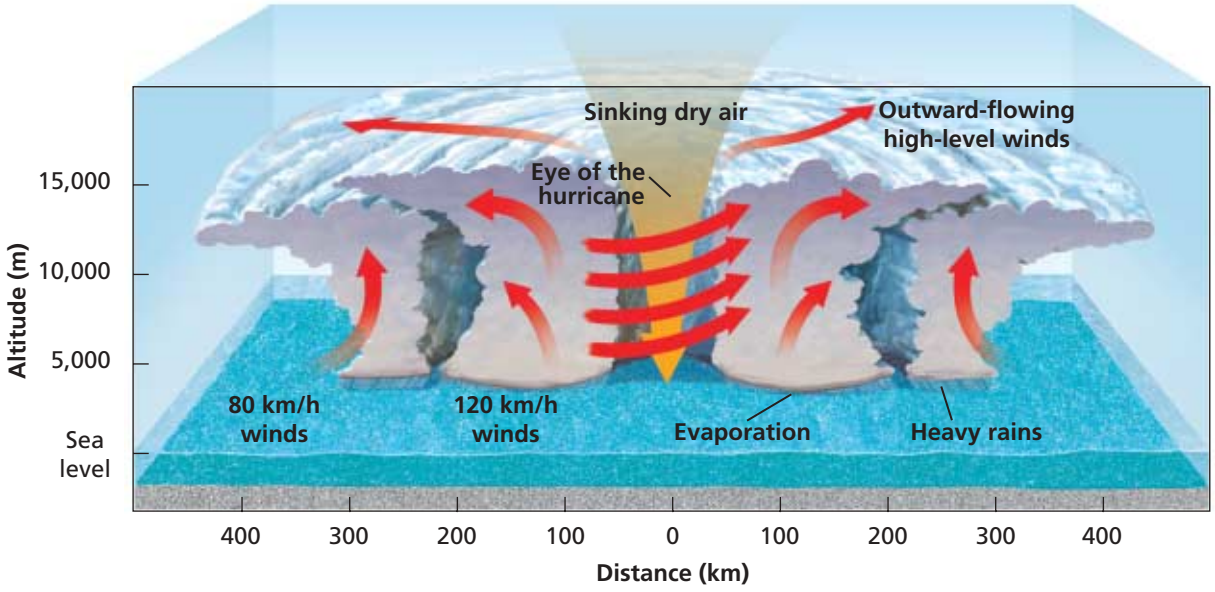


Figure 5 ▶ Although hurricanes are the most destructive storms, the eye at the center of the hurricane is relatively calm.

Hurricanes

Tropical storms differ from midlatitude cyclones in several ways. Tropical storms are concentrated over a small area. They lack warm and cold fronts. Also, they are usually much more violent and destructive than midlatitude cyclones. A tropical storm that has strong wind speeds of more than 120 km/h that spiral in toward its intense low pressure center is called a **hurricane.**

hurricane a severe storm that develops over tropical oceans and whose strong winds of more then 120 km/h spiral in toward the intensely low-pressure storm center

Hurricanes develop over warm, tropical oceans. A hurricane begins when warm, moist air over the ocean rises rapidly. When moisture in the rising warm air condenses, a large amount of energy in the form of latent heat is released. *Latent heat* is heat energy that is absorbed or released during a phase change. This heat increases the force of the rising air.

A fully developed hurricane consists of a series of thick cumulonimbus cloud bands that spiral upward around the center of the storm, as shown in **Figure 5.** Winds increase toward the center, or eye, of the storm and reach speeds of up to 275 km/h along the eyewall. The eye itself, however, is a region of calm, clear, sinking air.

At about 700 km in diameter, hurricanes are the most destructive storms that occur on Earth. The most dangerous aspect of a hurricane is a rising sea level and large waves, called a *storm surge*. A storm surge can submerge vast low-lying coastal areas. This flooding is the reason why most deaths during hurricanes are caused by drowning.

Every hurricane is categorized on the *Safir-Simpson scale* by using several factors. These factors include central pressure, wind speed, and storm surge. The Safir-Simpson scale has five categories. Category 1 storms cause the least damage. Category 5 storms can result in catastrophic damage.

Reading Check **Where do hurricanes develop? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Graphic Organizer **Venn Diagram**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Venn Diagram" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the circles with "Hurricanes," "Cyclones," and "Anticyclones." Then, fill in the diagram with characteristics that each weather event shares with the other weather events.

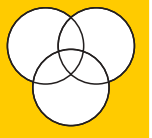


Figure 6 ▶ A powerful tornado in Texas embedded this bucket in a wooden door (inset).

tornado a destructive, rotating column of air that has very high wind speeds and that maybe visible as a funnel-shaped cloud

Tornadoes

The smallest, most violent, and shortest-lived severe storm is a tornado. A **tornado** is a destructive, rotating column of air that has very high wind speeds and that is visible as a funnel-shaped cloud, as shown in **Figure 6.**

A tornado forms when a thunderstorm meets high-altitude, horizontal winds. These winds cause the rising air in the thunderstorm to rotate. A storm cloud may develop a narrow, funnel-shaped, rapidly spinning extension that reaches downward and may or may not touch the ground. If the funnel does touch the ground, it generally moves in a wandering, haphazard path. Frequently, the funnel rises and touches down again a short distance away. Tornadoes generally cover paths not more than 100 m wide. Usually, everything in that path is destroyed. Tornadoes occur in many locations, but they are most common in *Tornado Alley* in the late spring or early summer. Tornado Alley stretches from Texas up through the midwestern United States.

The destructive power of a tornado is due to mainly the speed of the winds in the funnel. These winds may reach speeds of more than 400 km/h. Most injuries and deaths caused by tornadoes occur when people are trapped in collapsing buildings or are struck by objects blown by the wind.

Section 2 Review

1. **Describe** the four main types of fronts.
2. **Compare** the characteristic weather patterns of cold fronts with those of warm fronts.
3. **Identify** the type of front that may form a squall line.
4. **Summarize** how a midlatitude cyclone forms.
5. **Describe** the stages in the development of thunderstorms.
6. **Describe** the stages in the development of hurricanes.
7. **Explain** why tornadoes are destructive.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Evaluating Methods** What areas of Earth should meteorologists monitor to detect developing hurricanes? Explain your answer.
9. **Making Comparisons** Compare the destructive power of midlatitude cyclones, hurricanes, and tornadoes in terms of size, wind speed, and duration.

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *tornado, hurricane, warm front, squall line, cold front, severe weather, stationary front, front, midlatitude cyclone,* and *occluded front.*

Section 3 Weather Instruments

Weather observations are based on a variety of measurements, including atmospheric pressure, humidity, temperature, wind speed, and precipitation. These measurements are made with special instruments. Meteorologists then use the measurements to forecast weather patterns.

OBJECTIVES

- **Identify** four instruments that measure lower-atmospheric weather conditions.
- **Describe** how scientists measure conditions in the upper atmosphere.
- **Explain** how computers help scientists understand weather.

KEY TERMS

thermometer
barometer
anemometer
wind vane
radiosonde
radar

Measuring Lower-Atmospheric Conditions

During the course of a day, the lower-atmospheric conditions at a given location can change drastically. Meteorologists use the magnitude and speed of these changes to make predictions of future weather events. To obtain accurate data from the lower atmosphere, scientists use instruments such as those shown in **Figure 1.**

Air Temperature

An instrument that measures and indicates temperature is called a **thermometer.** A common type of thermometer uses a liquid—usually mercury or alcohol—sealed in a glass tube to indicate temperature. A rise in temperature causes the liquid to expand and fill more of the tube. A drop in temperature causes the liquid to contract and fill less of the tube. A scale marked on the glass tube indicates the temperature.

Another type of thermometer is an *electrical thermometer.* As the temperature rises, the electric current that flows through the material of the electrical thermometer increases and is translated into temperature readings. A *thermistor,* or thermal resistor, is a type of electrical thermometer that responds very quickly to temperature changes. For this reason, thermistors are extremely useful where temperature change occurs rapidly.

thermometer an instrument that measures and indicates temperature

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Weather Instruments
SciLinks code: HQ61646

Figure 1 ▶ Weather instruments, such as these at Elk Mountain weather research facility in Wyoming, indicate wind speed and direction.

Figure 2 ▶ A meteorologist uses an anemometer during Hurricane Luis to measure wind speed.

barometer an instrument that measures atmospheric pressure

anemometer an instrument used to measure wind speed

wind vane an instrument used to determine direction of the wind

Air Pressure

Changes in air pressure affect air masses. The approach of a front is usually indicated by a drop in air pressure. Scientists use instruments called **barometers** to measure atmospheric pressure.

Wind Speed

An instrument called an **anemometer** (AN uh MAHM uht uhr) measures wind speed. A typical anemometer consists of small cups that are attached by spokes to a shaft that rotates freely. The wind pushes against the cups and causes them to rotate, as shown in **Figure 2.** This rotation triggers an electrical signal that registers the wind speed in meters per second or in miles per hour.

Wind Direction

The direction of the wind is determined by using an instrument called a **wind vane.** The wind vane is commonly an arrow-shaped device that turns freely on a pole as the tail catches the wind. Wind direction may be described by using one of 16 compass directions, such as north-northeast. Wind direction also may be recorded in degrees by moving clockwise and beginning with 0° at the north. Thus, east is 90°, south is 180°, and west is 270°.

Reading Check **Which instrument is used to measure air pressure? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 15 min

Wind Chill

Procedure

1. Place a **23 cm × 33 cm pan** on a level table. Fill the pan to a depth of 1 cm with **room temperature water.**
2. Lay a **thermometer** in the center of the pan with the bulb submerged. After 5 minutes, record the water temperature. Do not touch the thermometer.
3. Place an **electric fan** facing the pan and a few centimeters from the pan. Turn on the fan at a low speed. **CAUTION** Do not get the fan or cord wet.
4. Record the water temperature every minute until the temperature remains constant.

Analysis

1. How does the moving air affect the temperature of the water?

2. If the moving air is the same temperature as the still air in the room, what causes the water temperature to change?
3. How would you dress on a cool, windy day to stay comfortable? Explain your answer.

Connection to **TECHNOLOGY**

Doppler Radar

Conventional radar helps scientists estimate the distance to a storm and the intensity of the storm by measuring how many radio waves return. To learn more about storms, meteorologists developed a different form of radar to study weather. This form of radar, called *Doppler radar,* can measure not only the distance to a storm and the storm's overall direction and speed but also the direction that rain droplets or ice particles inside the storm are moving. This information allows scientists to identify conditions inside the storm.

Doppler radar uses the Doppler effect to read the apparent shift in wavelength of reflected radio waves as the particles that the waves reflect from move. You may have experienced the Doppler effect when an ambulance sped by you. The sound of the siren appeared to change from high-pitched as the ambulance approached to low-pitched as it moved farther away. Because the wind causes the rain or ice particles to move around, the frequency of the radar signals they reflect also appear to shift. The Doppler radar measures that apparent frequency shift. Computer models then convert this information into an overall picture of the movement of the particles.

Lightning strikes near this Doppler radar facility in Oklahoma.

The use of Doppler radar allows meteorologists to identify dangerous conditions within a storm and to track the movement of these features. This ability allows meteorologists to warn communities of weather threats in time to save lives.

Measuring Upper-Atmospheric Conditions

Conditions of the atmosphere near Earth's surface are only a part of the complete weather picture. Scientists use several instruments to measure conditions in the upper atmosphere to obtain a better understanding of local and global weather patterns.

Radiosonde

An instrument package that is carried high into the atmosphere by a helium-filled weather balloon to measure relative humidity, air pressure, and air temperature is called a **radiosonde.** The radiosonde sends measurements as radio waves to a receiver that records the information. The path of the balloon is tracked to determine the direction and speed of high-altitude winds. When the balloon reaches a very high altitude, the balloon expands and bursts, and the radiosonde parachutes back to Earth.

Radar

Another instrument for determining weather conditions in the atmosphere is radar. **Radar,** which stands for **ra**dio **d**etection **a**nd **r**anging, is a system that uses reflected radio waves to determine the velocity and location of objects. For example, large particles of water in the atmosphere reflect radar pulses. Thus, precipitation and storms, such as thunderstorms, tornadoes, and hurricanes, are visible on a radar screen. The newest Doppler radar can indicate the precise location, movement, and extent of a storm. It can also indicate the intensity of precipitation and wind patterns within a storm.

radiosonde a package of instruments that is carried aloft by balloons to measure upper atmospheric conditions, including temperature, dew point, and wind velocity

radar **ra**dio **d**etection **a**nd **r**anging, a system that uses reflected radio waves to determine the velocity and location of objects

Figure 3 ▶ This satellite image captured Hurricane Andrew in 1992 as it approached Louisiana.

Weather Satellites

Instruments carried by weather satellites also collect important information about the atmosphere. Satellite images, such as the one shown in **Figure 3,** provide weather information for regions where observations cannot be made from the ground.

The direction and speed of the wind at the level of the clouds can also be measured by examining a continuous sequence of cloud images. For night monitoring, satellite images made by using infrared energy reveal temperatures at the tops of clouds, at the surface of the land, and at the ocean surface. Satellite instruments can also measure marine conditions. For example, the instruments can measure the temperature and flow of ocean currents and the height of ocean waves.

Computers

Meteorologists also use supercomputers to understand the weather. Before computers were available, solving the mathematical equations that describe the behavior of the atmosphere was very difficult, and sometimes impossible. In addition to solving many of these equations, computers can store weather data from around the world. These data can provide information that is useful in forecasting weather changes. Computers can also store weather records for quick retrieval. In the future, powerful computers may greatly improve weather forecasts and provide a much better understanding of the atmosphere.

Section 3 Review

1. **Identify** four instruments scientists use to measure lower-atmospheric conditions.
2. **Explain** why scientists are interested in weather conditions in the upper atmosphere.
3. **Describe** the instruments used to measure conditions in the upper atmosphere.
4. **Explain** how meteorologists send weather instruments into the upper atmosphere.
5. **Summarize** how satellites help meteorologists study weather.
6. **Summarize** how computers help scientists study weather.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Recognizing Relationships** Wind is named according to the direction from which it blows. Why would a meteorologist need to know the direction wind is blowing from?
8. **Making Inferences** If weather instruments were moved from a location in a valley to the top of a hill, what changes would you expect in the data? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *thermometer, barometer, anemometer, radar, radiosonde, satellite, upper atmosphere, lower atmosphere,* and *weather instruments.*

Section 4

Forecasting the Weather

Predicting the weather has challenged people for thousands of years. People in many early civilizations attributed control of weather conditions, such as wind, rain, and thunder, to gods. Some people attempted to forecast the weather by using the position of the moon and stars as the basis for their predictions.

Scientific weather forecasting began with the invention of basic weather instruments, such as the thermometer and the barometer. The invention of the telegraph in 1844 enabled meteorologists to share information about weather conditions quickly and led to the creation of national weather services. For example, the United States formed a weather-forecasting agency called the Weather Bureau. In 1970, it was renamed the *National Weather Service*. Because weather events in the United States commonly originate beyond U.S. borders, the National Weather Service exchanges weather data with other nations around the world.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how weather stations communicate weather data.
- **Explain** how a weather map is created.
- **Explain** how computer models help meteorologists forecast weather.
- **List** three types of weather that meteorologists have attempted to control.

KEY TERM

station model

Global Weather Monitoring

Weather observers at stations around the world report weather conditions frequently, sometimes hourly. They record the barometric pressure and how it has changed as well as the speed and direction of surface wind. They measure precipitation, temperature, and humidity. They note the type, amount, and height of cloud cover. Observers also record visibility and general weather conditions. Similar data are gathered continuously by automated observing systems. Each station in the system sends its data to a collection center. Weather centers around the world exchange the weather information they have collected.

The World Meteorological Organization (WMO) sponsors a program called *World Weather Watch* to promote the rapid exchange of weather information. The organization helps developing countries establish or improve their meteorological services, as shown in **Figure 1.** It also offers advice on the effect of weather on natural resources and on human activities, such as farming and transportation. WMO was founded in 1873 and is now part of the United Nations.

Figure 1 ▶ One major role of the World Meteorological Organization is to train professionals to use weather instruments, such as this Bobson spectrophotometer installed at Maun, Botswana.

Weather Maps

The data that weather stations collect are transferred onto weather maps. Weather maps allow meteorologists to understand the current weather and to predict future weather events. To communicate weather data on a weather map, meteorologists use symbols and colors. These symbols and colors are understood and used by meteorologists around the world.

Weather Symbols

station model a pattern of meteorological symbols that represents the weather at a particular observing station and that is recorded on a weather map

On some weather maps, clusters of meteorological symbols show weather conditions at the locations of weather stations. Such a cluster of symbols is called a **station model.** Common weather symbols describe cloud cover, wind speed, wind direction, and weather conditions, such as type of precipitation and storm activity. These symbols and a station model are shown in **Figure 2.** Notice that the symbols for cloud cover, wind speed, and wind direction are combined in one symbol in the station model.

Other information included in the station model are the air temperature and the dew point. The *dew point* is the temperature to which the air must cool in order for more water to condense than to evaporate in a given amount of time. The dew point indicates how high the humidity of the air is, or how much water is in the air.

The station model also indicates the atmospheric pressure by using a three-digit number in the upper right hand corner. If this number starts with 0, then the pressure is higher than 1,000 millibars. The position of a straight line under this figure—horizontal or angled up or down—shows whether the atmospheric pressure is steady or is rising or falling.

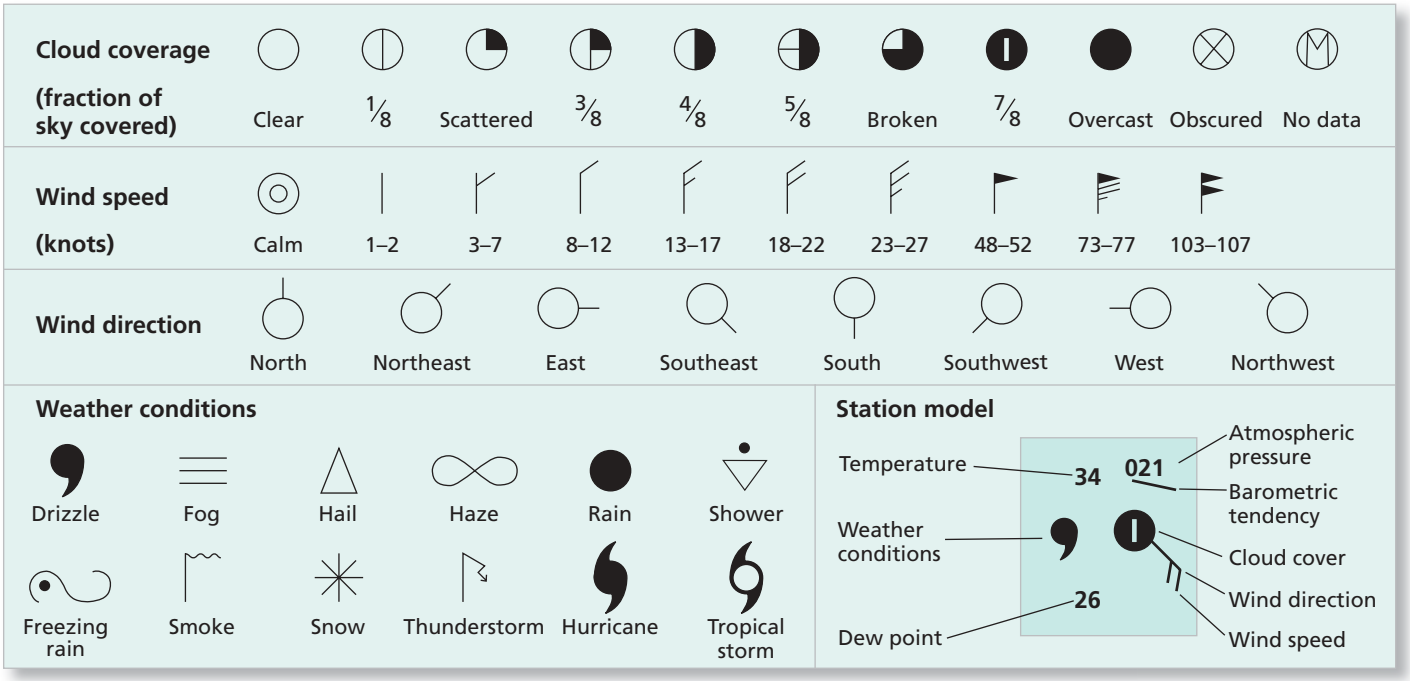


Figure 2 ▶ Meteorologists use symbols to indicate weather conditions. The station model (lower right) shows an example of conditions around a weather station.

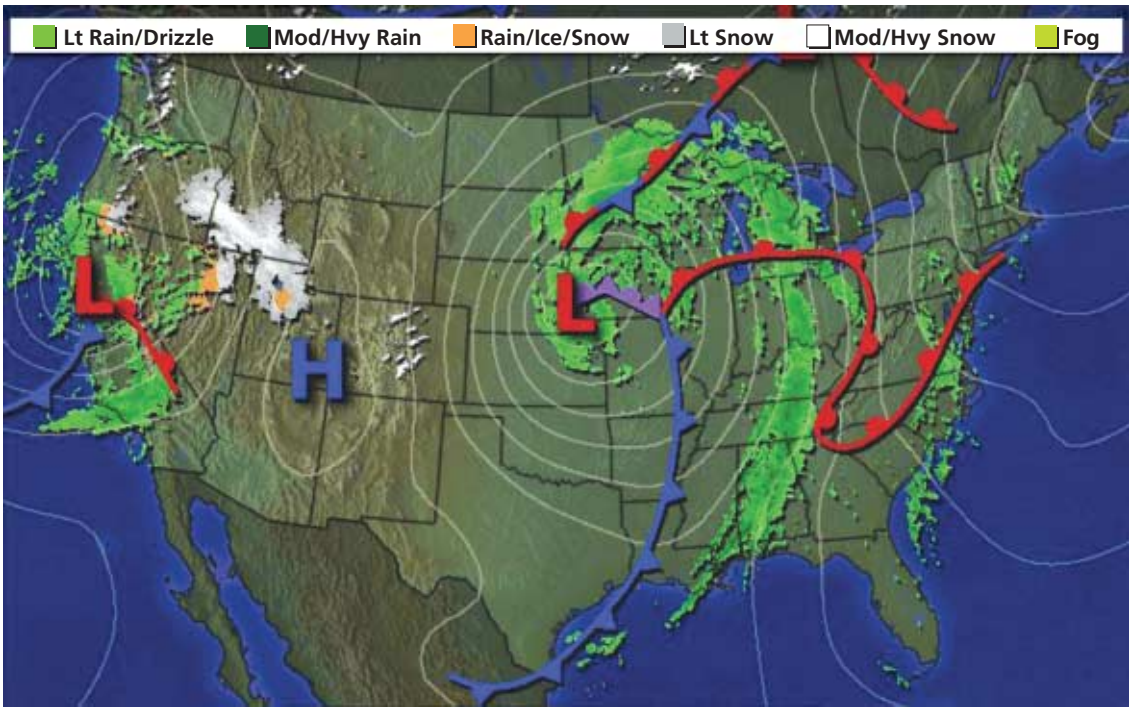


Figure 3 ▶ A typical weather map shows isobars, highs and lows, fronts, and precipitation. ***In what parts of the United States are low-pressure areas located?***

Plotting Temperature and Pressure

Scientists use lines on weather maps to connect points of equal measurement. Lines that connect points of equal temperature are called *isotherms*. Lines that connect points of equal atmospheric pressure are called *isobars*. The spacing and shape of the isobars help meteorologists interpret their observations about the speed and direction of the wind. Closely spaced isobars indicate a rapid change in pressure and high wind speeds. Widely spaced isobars generally indicate a gradual change in pressure and low wind speeds. Isobars that form circles indicate centers of high or low air pressure. Such centers that are marked with an *H* represent high pressure, as you can see in **Figure 3.** Centers that are marked with an *L* represent low pressure.

Plotting Fronts and Precipitation

Most weather maps mark the locations of fronts and areas of precipitation. The weather map in **Figure 3** shows examples of a warm front, a cold front, an occluded front, and a stationary front. Fronts are identified by sharp changes in wind speed and direction, temperature, or humidity.

Areas of precipitation are commonly marked by using colors or symbols. Different forms of precipitation are represented by different colors or symbols. For example, the weather map in **Figure 3** indicates light rain by using light green, while snow is represented by gray and white. Some weather maps use colors to represent different amounts of precipitation so that the amount of precipitation that falls in different areas can be compared.

Reading Check **How do meteorologists mark precipitation on a weather map? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Weather Maps
SciLinks code: HQ61647
Topic: Weather Forecasting
SciLinks code: HQ61645

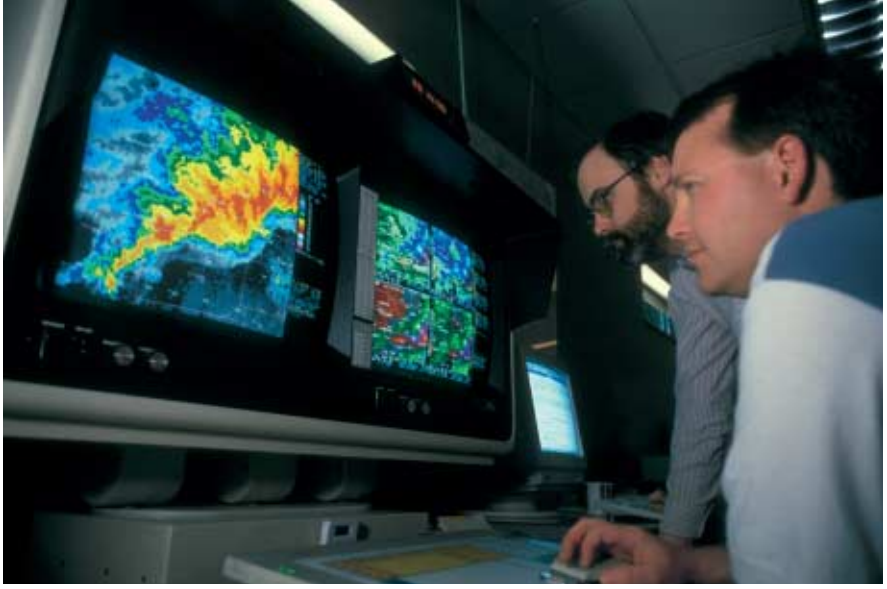


Figure 4 ▶ With the help of Doppler radar, meteorologists can track severe storms from radar stations, such as this one in Kansas.

Weather Forecasts

To forecast the weather, meteorologists regularly plot the intensity and path of weather systems on maps. Meteorologists then study the most recent weather map and compare it with maps from previous hours. This comparison allows them to follow the progress of large weather systems. By following the progress of weather systems, meteorologist can forecast the weather.

Weather Data

Doppler radar, shown in **Figure 4,** and satellite images supply important information, such as intensity of precipitation. Meteorologists input these data into computers to create weather models. Computer models can show the possible weather conditions for several days. However, meteorologists must carefully interpret these models because computer predictions are based on generalized descriptions.

Some computer models may be better at predicting precipitation for a particular area, while other computer models may be better at predicting temperature and pressure. Comparing models helps meteorologists better predict weather. If weather information on two or more models is similar, a meteorologist will be more confident about the weather prediction. By using all of the weather data available, meteorologists can issue an accurate forecast of the weather.

Temperature, wind direction, wind speed, cloudiness, and precipitation can usually be forecasted accurately. But it is often difficult to predict precisely when precipitation will occur or the exact amount. By using computers, scientists can manipulate data on temperature and pressure to simulate errors in measuring these data. Forecasts are then compared to see if slight data changes cause substantial differences in forecasts. From what they learn, meteorologists can make more accurate forecasts.

Reading Check **Why do meteorologists compare models? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 10 min

Gathering Weather Data

Procedure

1. Select an area outside your school building that is in the shade away from buildings and pavement.
2. Use a **thermometer** to measure the air temperature.
3. Estimate the percentage of cloud cover.
4. Estimate wind speed. Use a **magnetic compass** to estimate the wind direction.

Analysis

1. What are the current weather conditions outside your school?
2. Using the data you collected, create a station model that describes the weather at your school.

Types of Forecasts

Meteorologists make four types of forecasts. *Nowcasts* mainly use radar and enable forecasters to focus on timing precipitation and tracking severe weather. *Daily forecasts* predict weather conditions for a 48-hour period. *Extended forecasts* look ahead 3 to 7 days. *Medium range forecasts* look ahead 8 to 14 days. *Long-range forecasts* cover monthly and seasonal periods.

Accurate weather forecasts can be made for 0 to 7 days. However, accuracy decreases with each day. Extended forecasts of 8 to 14 days are made by computer analysis of slowly changing large-scale movements of air. These changes help meteorologists predict the general weather pattern. For example, the changes indicate if temperature will be warmer or cooler than normal or if conditions will be dry or wet.

Severe Weather Watches and Warnings

One main goal of meteorology is to reduce the amount of destruction caused by severe weather by forecasting severe weather early. When meteorologists forecast severe weather, they issue warnings and watches. A *watch* is issued when the conditions are ideal for severe weather. A *warning* is given when severe weather has been spotted or is expected within 24 hours. Meteorologists use these alerts to provide people in areas facing severe weather with instructions on how to be safer during the event. **Table 1** lists some safety tips to follow for different types of severe weather.

Table 1 ▼

Severe Weather Safety Tips		
Type of weather	**How to prepare**	**Safety during the event**
Thunderstorm	Have a storm preparedness kit that includes a portable radio, fresh batteries, flashlights, rain gear, blankets, bottled water, canned food, and medicines.	Listen to weather updates. Stay or go indoors. Avoid electrical appliances, running water, metal pipes, and phone lines. If outside, avoid tall objects, stay away from bodies of water, and get into a car, if possible.
Tornado	Have a storm preparedness kit as described above. Plan and practice a safety route.	Listen to weather updates. Stay or go indoors. Go to a basement, storm cellar, or small, inner room, closet, or hallway that has no windows. Stay away from areas that are likely to have flying debris or other dangers. If outside, lie in a low-lying area. Protect your head and neck.
Hurricane	Have a storm preparedness kit as described above. Secure loose objects, doors, and windows. Plan and practice an evacuation route.	Listen to weather updates. Be prepared to follow instructions and planned evacuation routes. Stay indoors and away from areas that are likely to have flying debris or other dangers.
Blizzard	Have a storm preparedness kit as described above. Make sure you have a way to safely make heat in the event of power outages.	Listen to weather updates. Stay or go indoors. Dress warmly. Avoid walking or driving in icy conditions.

Figure 5 ▶ An outdoor ultrahigh-voltage laboratory generates artificial lightning to test its affects on electrical utility equipment. Research has led to the development of equipment that suffers less damage from lightning.

Controlling the Weather

Some meteorologists are investigating methods of controlling rain, hail, and lightning. Currently, the most researched method for producing rain has been *cloud seeding*. In this process, particles are added to clouds to cause the clouds to precipitate. Cloud seeding can also be used to prevent more-severe precipitation. Scientists in Russia have used cloud seeding with some success on potential hail clouds by causing rain, rather than hail, to fall.

Hurricane Control

Hurricanes have also been seeded with freezing nuclei in an effort to reduce the intensity of the storm. During Project Stormfury, which took place from 1962 to 1983, four hurricanes were seeded, and the project had mixed results. Scientists have, for the most part, abandoned storm and hurricane control because it is not an attainable goal with existing technology. They do, however, continue to seed clouds to cause precipitation.

Lightning Control

Attempts have also been made to control lightning. Seeding of potential lightning storms with silver-iodide nuclei has seemed to modify the occurrence of lightning. However, no conclusive results have been obtained. Researchers have also generated artificial lightning at research facilities to learn more about lightning and how it affects objects it strikes. An example of one of these facilities is shown in **Figure 5.**

Section 4 Review

1. **Summarize** how global weather is monitored.
2. **Explain** how a weather map is made.
3. **Explain** which would show stronger winds—widely spaced isobars or closely spaced isobars.
4. **List** six different pieces of information that you can obtain from a station model.
5. **Explain** why meteorologists compare new weather maps and weather maps that are 24 hours old.
6. **Describe** how computer models help meteorologists forecast weather.
7. **List** three types of weather that meteorologists have tried to control.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Making Inferences** Why might cloud seeding reduce the amount of hail from a storm?
9. **Making Reasoned Judgment** Seeding hurricanes may or may not yield positive results. Each attempt costs a lot of money. If you were in charge of deciding whether to seed a potentially dangerous hurricane, what factors would you consider when deciding what to do? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *isobar, isotherm, weather map, forecast, watch, warning, station model,* and *meteorological symbol.*

Chapter 24

Highlights

Sections

1 Air Masses

Key Terms

air mass, 601

Key Concepts

- An air mass is a large body of air that has uniform temperature and humidity.
- Air masses can be described as polar, tropical, continental, and maritime. Their characteristics, which affect how they influence weather in North America, depend on their source region.

2 Fronts

cold front, 605
warm front, 606
stationary front, 606
occluded front, 606
midlatitude cyclone, 606
thunderstorm, 608
hurricane , 609
tornado, 610

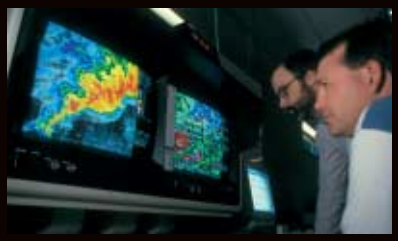
- Cold and warm fronts are associated with characteristic weather conditions.
- A midlatitude cyclone is a storm that has a low-pressure center, rotating winds, and high-speed winds.
- Hurricanes, thunderstorms, and tornadoes are violent, destructive storms that are caused by the interaction of air masses with different properties.

3 Weather Instruments

thermometer, 611
barometer, 612
anemometer, 612
wind vane, 612
radiosonde, 613
radar, 613

- Thermometers, barometers, anemometers, and wind vanes measure lower-atmospheric weather conditions.
- Radiosondes, radar, satellite equipment, and computers are used to measure upper-atmospheric weather conditions.
- Computers are used to solve complicated mathematical equations that describe weather.

4 Forecasting the Weather



station model, 616

- Meteorologists prepare weather maps that are based on information from weather stations around the world.
- Meteorologists use different instruments to make daily and long-term forecasts of the weather.
- Meteorologists have attempted to control rain, hurricanes, and lightning with only limited success.

Chapter 24 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *air mass*
2. *stationary front*
3. *station model*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *midlatitude cyclone* and *hurricane*
5. *wind vane* and *anemometer*
6. *radiosonde* and *radar*
7. *cold front* and *warm front*
8. *thermometer* and *barometer*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. Which of the following is information you would not find from a station model?
   a. precipitation **c.** front
   b. cloud cover **d.** wind speed

10. Continental polar Canadian air masses generally move
    a. southeasterly. **c.** northeasterly.
    b. northerly. **d.** westerly.

11. The type of front that forms when two air masses move parallel to the front between them is called
    a. stationary. **c.** polar.
    b. occluded. **d.** warm.

12. The type of front that is completely lifted off the ground by cold air is called
    a. cold. **c.** polar.
    b. occluded. **d.** warm.

13. The eye of a hurricane is a region of
    a. hailstorms. **c.** calm, clear air.
    b. torrential rainfall. **d.** strong winds.

14. The winds of a midlatitude cyclone blow in circular paths around a
    a. front.
    b. low-pressure center.
    c. high-pressure center.
    d. jet stream.

15. In the mature stage of a thunderstorm, a cumulus cloud grows until it becomes a
    a. stratocumulus cloud.
    b. altocumulus cloud.
    c. cumulonimbus cloud.
    d. cirrocumulus cloud.

16. An instrument package attached to a weather balloon is
    a. an anemometer. **c.** a thermograph
    b. a wind vane. **d.** a radiosonde.

17. The lines that connect points of equal atmospheric pressure on a weather map are called
    a. isobars. **c.** highs.
    b. isotherms. **d.** lows.

Short Answer

18. Describe the weather before and after an occluded front.

19. What causes lightning?

20. What is the most likely location for hurricane development? Explain your answer.

21. How could a meteorologist use a station model to determine whether a cold front is approaching?

22. Identify the wind direction of wind given as 315°. What direction would a wind vane point in that case?

23. Identify the type of air mass that would most likely be responsible if the air in your region is warm and dry. What letters designate this air mass?

Critical Thinking

24. Making Predictions Suppose people on Vancouver Island, off the west coast of Canada, hear reports of a midlatitude cyclone in the Gulf of Alaska. Is it likely that the midlatitude cyclone will reach their area? Explain why.

25. Making Inferences Suppose a hurricane is passing over a Caribbean island. Suddenly, the rain and winds stop and the air becomes calm and clear. Can a person safely go outside? Explain your answer.

26. Applying Ideas Is it safe to be in an automobile during a tornado? Explain your answer.

27. Making Inferences An air traffic controller is monitoring nearby airplanes by radar. The controller warns an incoming pilot of a storm a few miles away. How did radar help the controller detect the storm?

Concept Mapping

28. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *air mass, front, warm front, cold front, cyclones, thunderstorm, thermometer, hurricane, barometer,* and *anemometer.*

Math Skills

29. Making Calculations The temperature at a station is given as 47°F . Using the equation, °C = 5/9 × (°F − 32), find the temperature in degrees Celsius.

30. Making Calculations An average of 124 tornadoes occur each year in Texas. If that is equivalent to 4.7 tornadoes per 10,000 mi^2, what is the area of Texas in square miles?

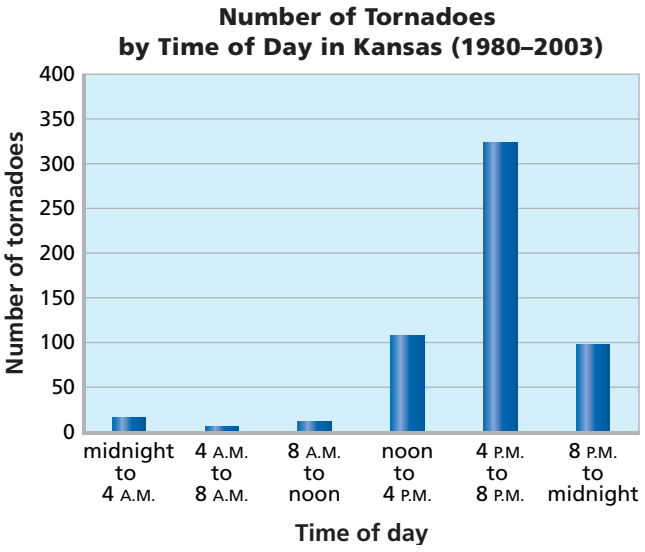
Writing Skills

31. Creative Writing Imagine that you are traveling with friends through the desert in the southwestern United States and a thunderstorm occurs. You then tell them about the type of air mass that may have brought the storm. Describe what the stages might look like by types of clouds formed, types of precipitation, and sky color.

32. Communicating Main Ideas Explain how cP and mT air masses travel across the United States, and explain why this information helps meteorologists make forecasts.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows the number of tornadoes that happened in Kansas at different times of day between January 1980 and July 2003. Use the graph to answer the questions that follow.



33. During which time of day did the least tornadoes occur?

34. Would Kansas students be more likely to experience a tornado while they are at school or while they are at home?

35. During which time of day did most tornadoes occur? Why would most tornadoes happen at this time of day?

Chapter 24 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 What tool do meteorologists use to analyze particle movements within storms?
A. an anemometer
B. a radiosonde balloon
C. doppler radar
D. satellite imaging

2 What kind of front forms when two air masses move parallel to the boundary located between them?
F. an occluded front
G. a polar front
H. a warm front
I. a stationary front

3 Which of the following weather systems commonly forms over warm tropical oceans?
A. thunderstorms
B. hurricanes
C. tornadoes
D. anticyclones

4 What often happens to maritime air masses as they move inland over mountainous country?
F. They bring warm, dry weather conditions.
G. They produce clouds and hurricanes.
H. They bring cold, dry weather conditions.
I. They lose moisture passing over mountains.

5 What type of air mass originates over the southwestern desert of the United States in summer?
A. continental polar air mass
B. continental tropical air mass
C. maritime polar air mass
D. maritime tropical air mass

Directions (6–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 What type of front is formed when a warm air mass is overtaken by a cold air mass, which causes the warm air to lift above the cold air?

7 What do closely spaced isobars indicate about the wind on a weather map?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–10): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Tornado Alley

Though tornadoes are not unique to the area, the violent, rotating, funnel-shaped clouds and their trails of destruction are so common in the central United States that the area is called Tornado Alley. These severe thunderstorms and the super-cell tornadoes that they spawn are formed when warm, moist air from the Gulf of Mexico becomes trapped beneath hot, dry air from the southwest desert region. Above that hot, dry air, cold, dry air sweeps in from the Rocky Mountains. The interaction between high-altitude winds and thunderstorms creates the funnel-shaped vortex of high-speed winds known as a tornado.

The largest outbreak of tornadoes in this region occurred in April of 1974. Before the storms ended, 148 separate tornadoes roared through 13 different states. More than 300 people lost their lives, and another 5,000 people were injured. More than 1,300 buildings were destroyed.

8 Why is the central part of the United States also known as Tornado Alley?
A. Tornadoes in the area move in straight lines known as alleys.
B. The destruction left by tornadoes made the area look like an unkempt alley.
C. Areas between buildings are the safest places to be during of a tornado.
D. Tornadoes are common occurances in this particular part of the country.

9 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
F. In the United States, tornadoes are more common in some areas than in other areas.
G. Tornadoes can form only in the area near the Rocky Mountains.
H. All tornadoes cause injuries to humans.
I. Multiple tornadoes are a rare occurance.

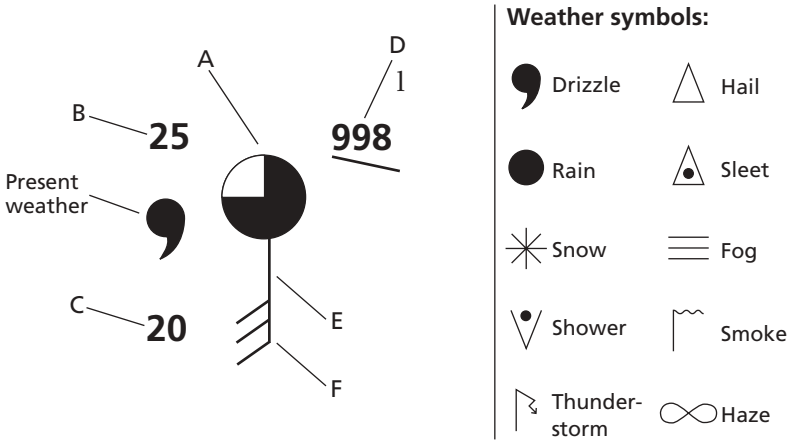
10 What makes tornadoes so much more difficult to predict than other severe weather systems?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–14): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagram below shows a station model. Use this diagram to answer questions 11 and 12.

Interpreting a Station Model



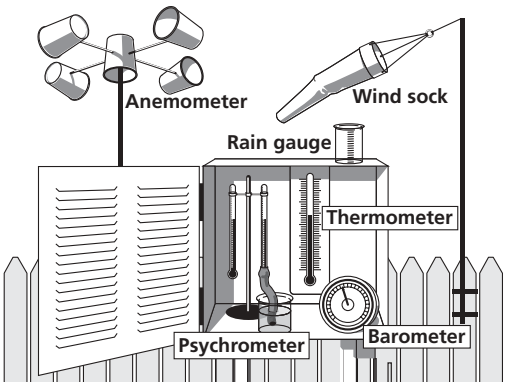
11 What letter represents the current barometric reading shown in the model?

A. letter A
B. letter B
C. letter C
D. letter D

12 What weather information do the symbols indicated by the letters E and F provide? Interpret this part of the station model.

The diagram below shows a home weather station. Use this diagram to answer questions 13 and 14.

Weather Instruments



13 Which of the following weather instruments shown uses the cooling effect of evaporation to take measurements?

A. a rain gauge
B. a psychrometer
C. a wind sock
D. a thermometer

14 Describe how an anemometer is used to calculate wind speed.

Test TIP

Sometimes, only one part of a diagram, graph, or table is needed to answer a question. In such cases, focus on only that information to answer the question.

Chapter 24

Skills Practice Lab

Weather Map Interpretation

Weather maps use various map symbols and lines to illustrate the weather conditions in an area at a given time. In this lab, you will study the symbols used on a weather map to gain an understanding of the relationships between temperature, pressure, and winds.

Objectives

- **Construct** a pressure and temperature map.
- **Interpret** a weather map.
- **Explain** how weather patterns are related to pressure systems.

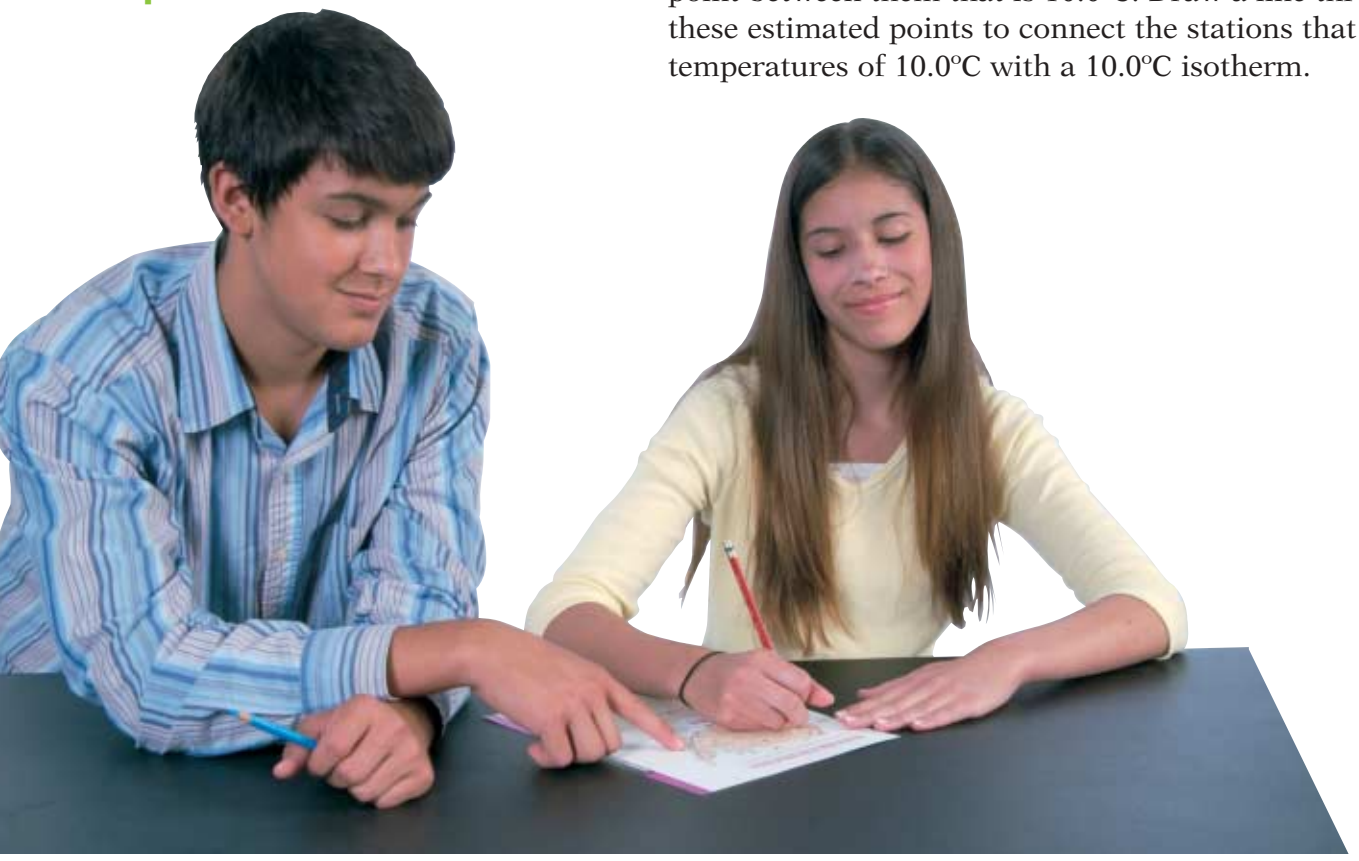
Materials

paper
pencil
pencils, colored, red, blue

PROCEDURE

1. Make a copy of the weather map on the following page. This map can also be found in the Reference Tables section of the Appendix. You will use the map symbols on the same page of the Appendix to interpret the weather map. The higher number associated with each station on the map represents atmospheric pressure. The lower number represents temperature.
2. On your copy of the weather map, find stations that have a temperature of 10.0°C. Use a red pencil to draw a light line through these stations. If two adjacent stations have temperatures above and below 10°C, there is an estimated point between them that is 10.0°C. Draw a line through these estimated points to connect the stations that have temperatures of 10.0°C with a 10.0°C isotherm.

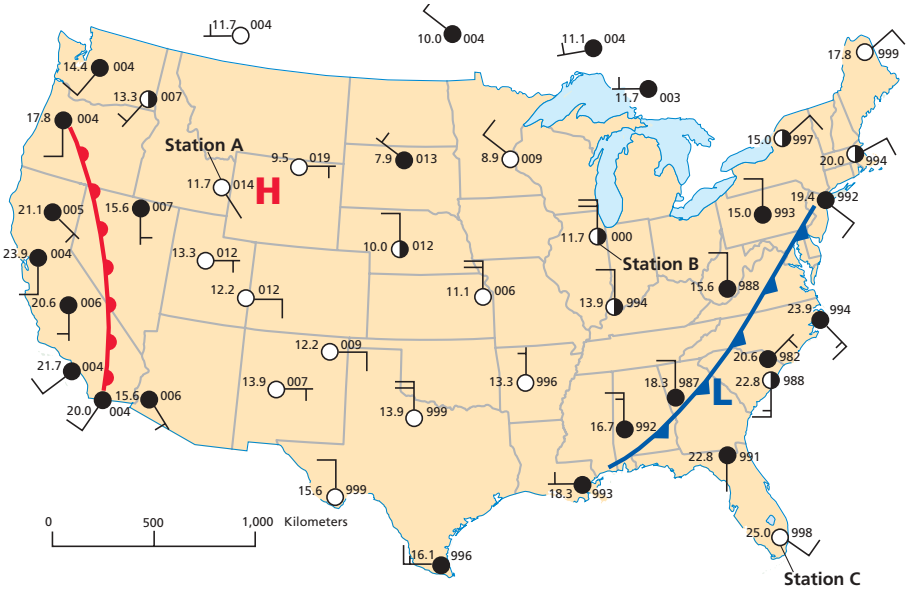
Step 2



3. Using the same method as in step 2, draw isotherms for every two degrees of temperature. Examples are isotherms of 12.0°C, 14.0°C, and 16.0°C. Label each isotherm with the temperature it represents.

4. Find a station that has a barometric pressure of 1,004 millibars. Use a blue pencil, and follow the same method that you used in step 2 to create a 1,004 millibars isobar.

6. Using the same method as in step 3, lightly draw isobars for every 4 millibars of pressure. Examples are isobars of 1,000 mb, 1,008 mb, and 1,012 mb. Label each isobar with the pressure it represents.



Step 1

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Identifying Trends** What is the lowest temperature for which you have drawn an isotherm? What is the highest temperature for which you have drawn an isotherm? Is either isotherm a closed loop? If so, which one?

2. **Making Inferences** Is the air mass that is identified by the closed isotherms a cold air mass or a warm air mass? Explain your answer.

3. **Analyzing Data** Is there a shift in wind direction associated with either front shown on your map? Describe the shift.

4. **Identifying Trends** What is the value of the lowest-pressure isobar that was drawn? What is the value of the highest-pressure isobar that was drawn? Is either isobar a closed loop? If so, which one?

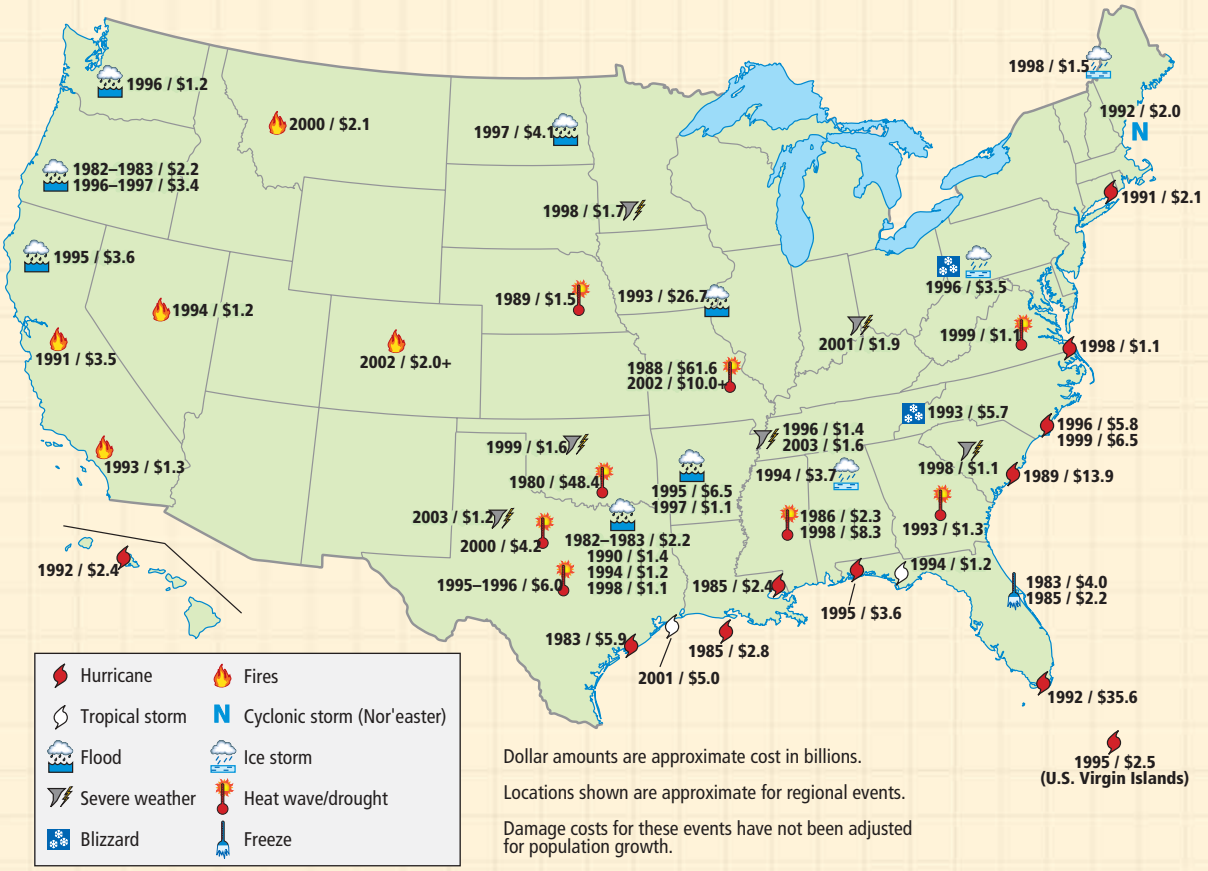
5. **Drawing Conclusions** At the time that the map represents, were there any areas of low pressure? of high pressure? Identify these areas. What weather conditions would you expect to find in those areas?

Extension

1. **Making Predictions** Predict the weather conditions at Station A 24 hours after the observations for your map were made. Record your predictions in a table with columns for pressure, wind direction, wind speed, temperature, and sky condition. Also, make and record predictions for Station B and Station C.

MAPS in Action

Weather-Related Disasters, 1980–2003



Dollar amounts are approximate cost in billions.

Locations shown are approximate for regional events.

Damage costs for these events have not been adjusted for population growth.

Map Skills Activity

This map shows the types and locations of weather disasters in the United States that caused at least $1 billion in damage. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using the Key** How many severe weather events caused more than $10 billion in damage between 1980 and 2003?

2. **Analyzing Data** Which type of weather disaster is more common—floods or fires?

3. **Making Comparisons** How do the types of disasters that happen in the western United States differ from the types of disasters that happen in the eastern United States? Explain why this difference exists.

4. **Inferring Relationships** Why might an ice storm in Alabama cause more damage than an ice storm in Maine?

5. **Identifying Trends** Almost all hurricane damage during this period happened along the coasts of the Atlantic Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico. Explain why.

6. **Analyzing Relationships** In 1996, a blizzard and floods caused $3.5 billion in damage in Ohio, Pennsylvania, and West Virginia. How might these events be related? Explain your answer.

7. **Analyzing Processes** Explain why fires are included in this map of weather-related disasters.

Meteorologist

When a hurricane threatens, most people flee, but not Shirley Murillo. Murillo boards a research aircraft and flies into the hurricane! As the plane flies through the hurricane, instruments record wind speed, wind direction, temperature, and air pressure.

Through the Eye of the Storm

Most of the flight is remarkably smooth, until the aircraft reaches the eyewall. The eyewall is a donutlike ring of turbulent thunderstorms that surround the calm eye of the storm. Once past the eyewall, the plane enters calm air. "We fly for hours going in and out of the eye, dropping instruments … into the eye," says Murillo. Some of these instruments measure air pressure. These data help hurricane forecasters decide if the storm is becoming weaker or stronger.

Improving Hurricane Forecasting

When she is not flying into hurricanes, Murillo is in her office at the Hurricane Research Division of the Atlantic Oceanographic and Meteorological Laboratory, an NOAA facility in Miami, Florida. Murillo studies how hurricane wind speeds change at landfall.

Murillo's research helps hurricane forecasters at the National Hurricane Center create their forecasts and advisories. Emergency managers also use it to determine areas along the coast that need to be evacuated. Scientists also use Murillo's work to predict storm surge, the onshore rush of seawater caused by a hurricane's high winds and low pressure.

"Flying into a hurricane is a thrill. The data that are collected … help save lives and property."

—Shirley Murillo

Rewards and Benefits

There is no doubt that Murillo's job can be exciting—and gratifying. "The most rewarding part of my job is the way in which our understanding of hurricanes and our improvement in forecasting benefit the scientific community and the public."

◀ The eye of the storm can be seen just below the plane *NOAA P-3* as it flies through Hurricane Caroline.

SCILINKS® NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Careers in Earth Science
SciLinks code: HQ60222

Chapter 25 Climate

Sections

1 Factors That Affect Climate

2 Climate Zones

3 Climate Change

What You'll Learn

- What factors affect climate
- How regional climates vary
- How scientists study past climate changes and predict future climate changes

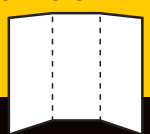
Why It's Relevant

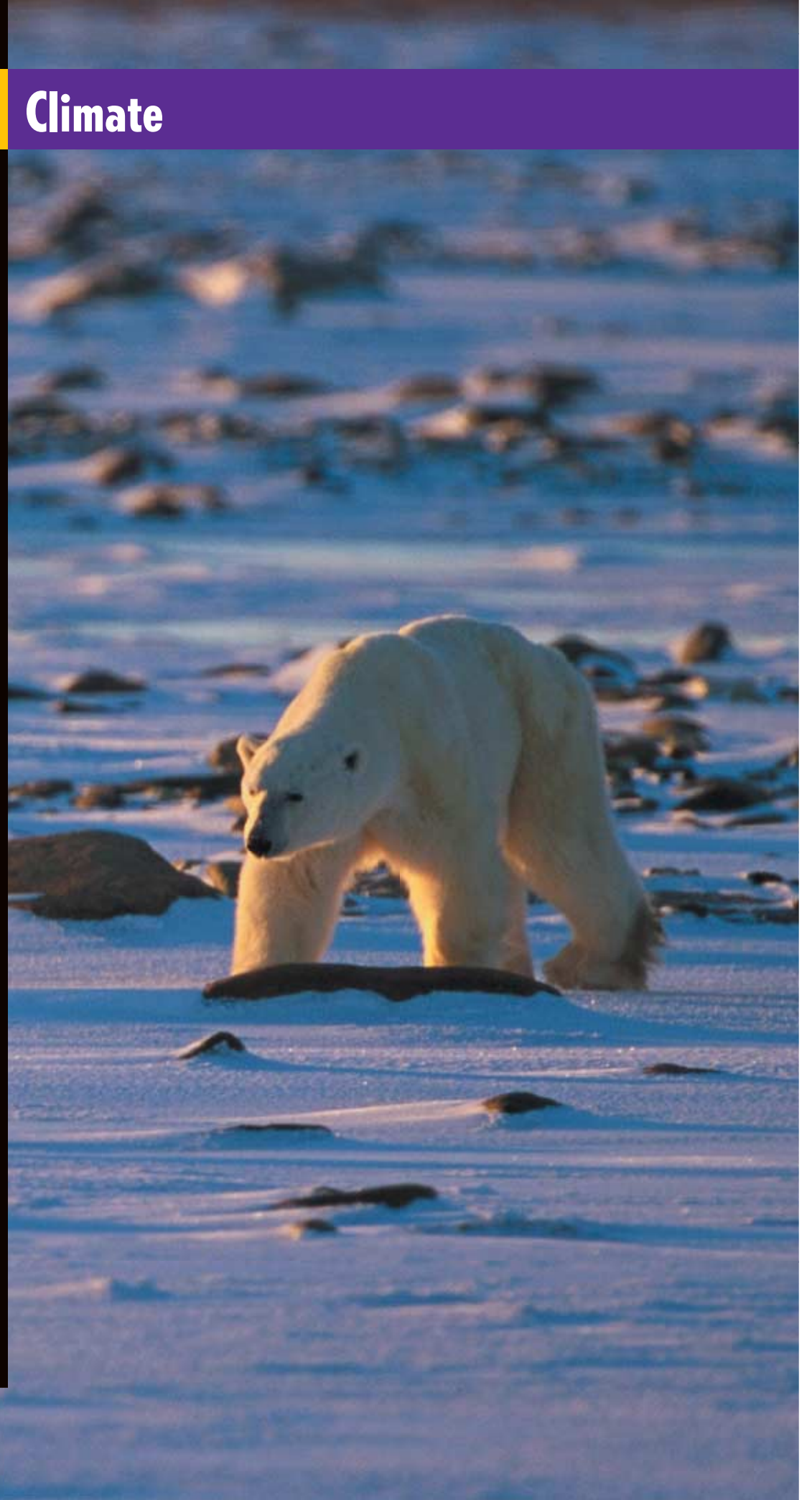
Earth sustains life because the temperature and moisture conditions are right. By learning about climate, we can understand factors that might affect life on Earth.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Tri-Fold Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "TriFold" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Write what you know about climate in the column labeled "Know." Then, write what you want to know in the column labeled "Want." As you read the chapter, write what you learn about climate in the column labeled "Learn."





▶ Thick fur and other adaptations allow polar bears to survive and thrive in the freezing temperatures of the tundra climate.

Section 1

Factors That Affect Climate

The average weather conditions for an area over a long period of time are referred to as **climate.** Climate is different from weather in that weather is the condition of the atmosphere at a particular time. Weather conditions, such as temperature, humidity, wind, and precipitation, vary from day to day. To understand climate, scientists study the features that define different climates.

Temperature and Precipitation

Climates are chiefly described by using average temperature and precipitation. To estimate the average daily temperature, add the high and low temperatures of the day and divide by two. The monthly average is the average of all of the daily averages for a given month. The yearly average temperature can be found by averaging the 12 monthly averages. However, using only average temperatures to describe climate can be misleading. As you can see in **Figure 1,** areas that have similar average temperatures may have very different temperature ranges. Another way scientists describe climate is by using the *yearly temperature range,* or the difference between the highest and lowest monthly averages.

Another major factor that affects climate is precipitation. It is also described by using monthly and yearly averages as well as ranges. As with temperature, average yearly precipitation alone cannot describe a climate. The months that have the largest amount of precipitation are important for determining climate. When describing climates, extremes of temperature and precipitation as well as averages have to be considered. The factors that have the greatest influence on both temperature and precipitation are latitude, heat absorption and release, and topography.

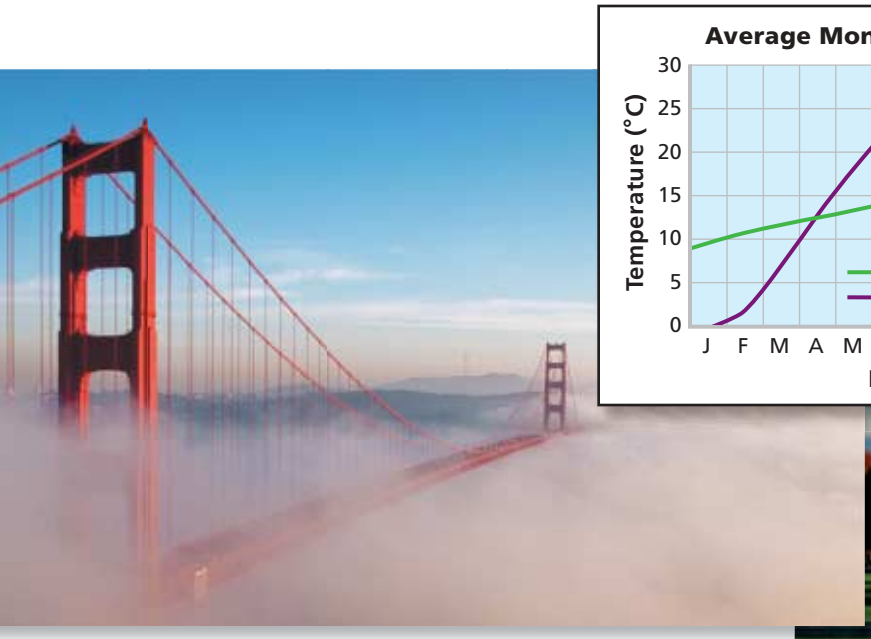
OBJECTIVES

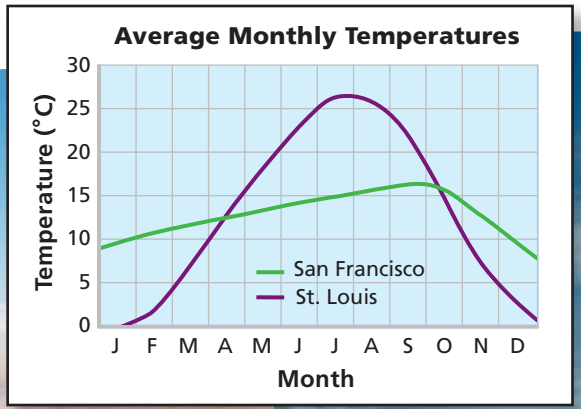
- **Identify** two major factors used to describe climate.
- **Explain** how latitude determines the amount of solar energy received on Earth.
- **Describe** how the different rates at which land and water are heated affect climate.
- **Explain** the effects of topography on climate.

KEY TERMS

climate
specific heat
El Niño
monsoon

climate the average weather conditions in an area over a long period of time





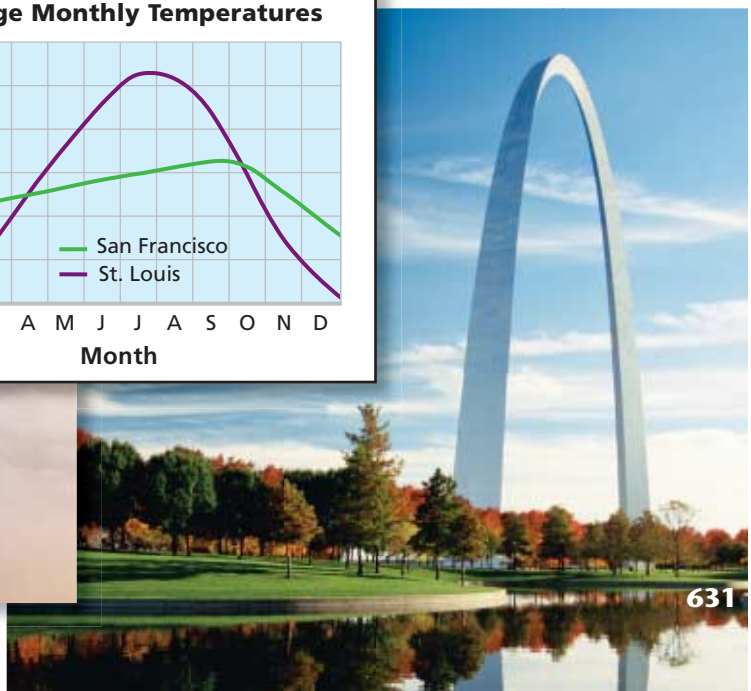
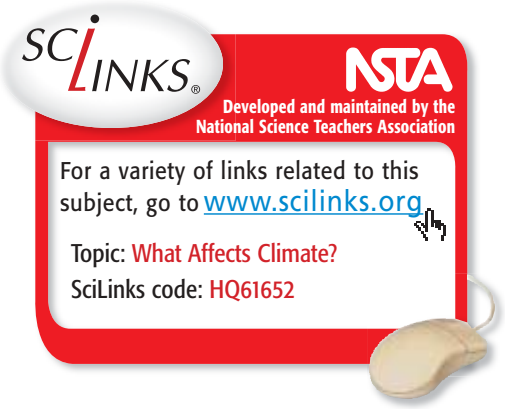


Figure 1 ▶ Both St. Louis and San Francisco have the same average yearly temperature. However, St. Louis (right) has a climate of cold winters and hot summers, while San Francisco (left) has a generally mild climate all year.

Latitude

One of the most important factors that determines a region's climate is latitude. Different latitudes on Earth's surface receive different amounts of solar energy. Solar energy determines the temperature and wind patterns of an area, which influence the average annual temperature and precipitation.



Solar Energy

The higher the latitude of an area is, the smaller the angle at which the sun's rays hit Earth is and the smaller the amount of solar energy received by the area is. At the equator, or 0° latitude, the sun's rays hit Earth at a 90° angle. So, temperatures at the equator are high. At the poles, or 90° latitudes, the sun's rays hit Earth at a smaller angle, and solar energy is spread over a large area. So, temperatures at the poles are low.

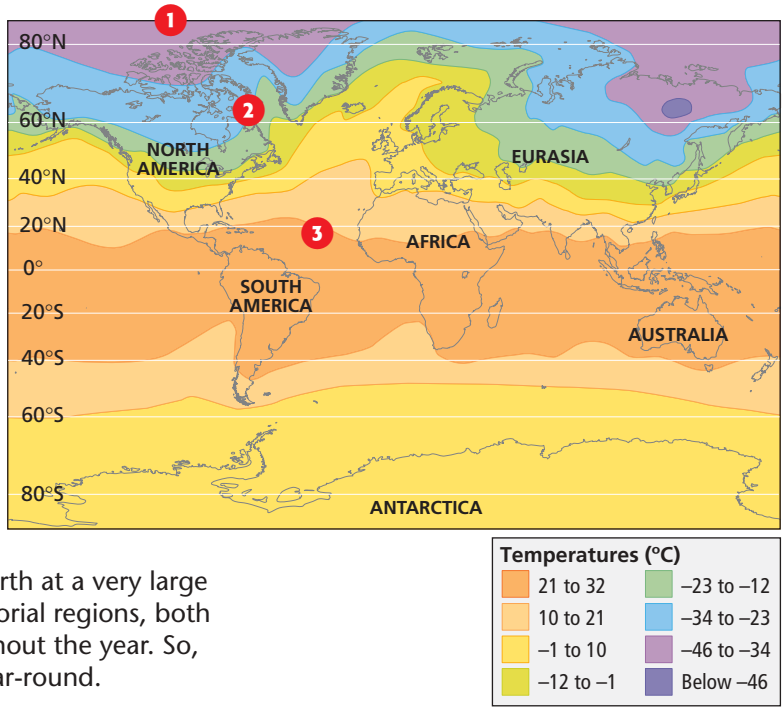
Because Earth's axis is tilted, the angle at which the sun's rays hit an area changes as Earth orbits the sun. During winter in the Northern Hemisphere, the northern half of Earth is tilted away from the sun. Thus, light that reaches the Northern Hemisphere hits Earth's surface at a smaller angle than it does in summer, when the axis is tilted toward the sun. Because of the tilt of Earth's axis during winter in the Northern Hemisphere, areas of Earth at higher northern latitudes directly face the sun for less time than during the summer. As a result, the days are shorter and the temperatures are lower during the winter months than during the summer months. **Figure 2** describes these effects.

Figure 2 ▶ Average Sea-Level Temperatures During Winter in the Northern Hemisphere

1 In polar regions, the amount of daylight varies from 24 hours of daylight in the summer to 0 hours in the winter. Thus, the annual temperature range is very large, but the daily temperature ranges are very small.

2 At middle latitudes, the sun's rays strike Earth at an angle of less than 90°. The energy of the rays is spread over a large area. Thus, average yearly temperatures at middle latitudes are lower than those at the equator. The lengths of days and nights vary less than they do at the poles. Therefore, the yearly temperature range is large.

3 At the equator, the sun's rays always strike Earth at a very large angle—nearly 90° for much of the year. In equatorial regions, both days and nights are about 12 hours long throughout the year. So, these regions have steady, high temperatures year-round.



Global Wind Patterns

Because Earth receives different amounts of solar energy at different latitudes, belts of cool, dense air form at latitudes near the poles, while belts of warm, less dense air form near the equator. Because cool air is dense, it forms regions of high pressure, while warm air forms regions of low pressure. Differences in air pressure create wind. Because air pressure is affected by latitude, the atmosphere is made up of global wind belts that run parallel to lines of latitude. Winds affect many weather conditions, such as precipitation, temperature, and cloud cover. Thus, regions that have different global wind belts often have different climates.

In the equatorial belt of low pressure, called the *doldrums,* the air rises and cools, and water vapor condenses. Thus, this region generally has large amounts of precipitation. The amount of precipitation generally decreases as latitude increases. In the regions between about 20° and 30° latitude in both hemispheres, or the *subtropical highs,* the air sinks, warms, and dries. Thus, little precipitation occurs in these regions. Most of the world's deserts are located in these regions. In the middle latitudes, at about 45° to 60° latitude in both hemispheres, warm tropical air meets cold polar air, which leads to belts of greater precipitation. In the high-pressure areas, above 60° latitude, the air masses are cold and dry, and average precipitation is low.

As seasons change, global wind belts shift in a north or south direction, as shown in **Figure 3.** As the wind and pressure belts shift, the belts of precipitation associated with them also shift.

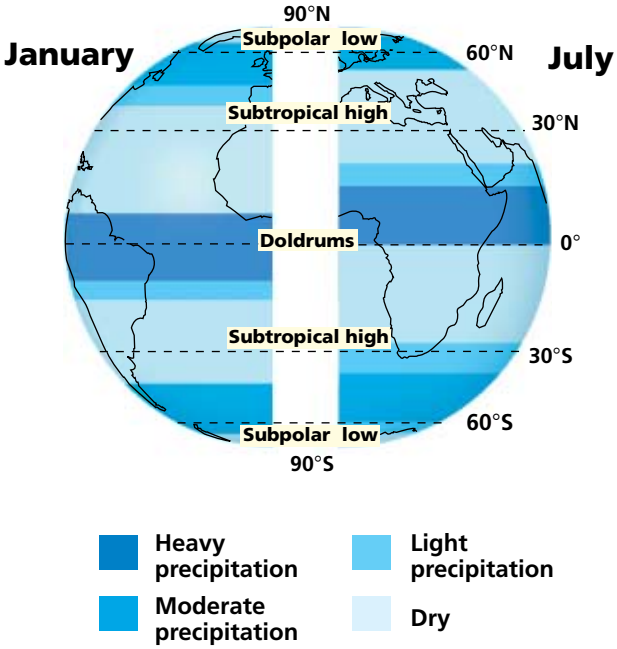


Figure 3 ▶ During winter in the Northern Hemisphere, global wind and precipitation belts shift to the south.

Heat Absorption and Release

Latitude and cloud cover affect the amount of solar energy that an area receives. However, different areas absorb and release heat differently. Land heats faster than water and thus can reach higher temperatures in the same amount of time. One reason for this difference is that the land surface is solid and unmoving. Surface ocean water, on the other hand, is liquid and moves continuously. Waves, currents, and other movements continuously replace warm surface water with cooler water from the ocean depths. This action prevents the surface temperature of the water from increasing rapidly. However, the surface temperature of the land can continue to increase as more solar energy is received. In turn, the temperature of the land or ocean influences the amount of heat that the air above the land or ocean absorbs or releases. The temperature of the air then affects the climate of the area.

Reading Check **How do wind and ocean currents affect the surface temperature of oceans? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

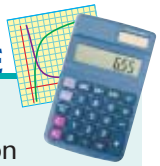
specific heat the quantity of heat required to raise a unit mass of homogeneous material 1 K or 1°C in a specified way given constant pressure and volume

Specific Heat and Evaporation

Even if not in motion, water warms more slowly than land does. Water also releases heat energy more slowly than land does. This is because the specific heat of water is higher than that of land. **Specific heat** is the amount of energy needed to change the temperature of 1 g of a substance by 1°C. A given mass of water requires more energy than land of the same mass does to experience an increase in temperature of the same number of degrees.

The average temperatures of land and water at the same latitude also vary because of differences in the loss of heat through evaporation. Evaporation affects water surfaces much more than it affects land surfaces.

MATH PRACTICE



Specific Heat

Use the following equation to calculate the amount of energy needed to heat 200 kg of water 6°C given that the specific heat of water is 4,186 J/kg • K.

energy = *specific heat* × *mass* × *temperature change*

Ocean Currents

The temperature of ocean currents that come in contact with the air influences the amount of heat absorbed or released by the air. If winds consistently blow toward shore, ocean currents have a strong effect on air masses over land. For example, the combination of a warm Atlantic current and steady westerly winds gives northwestern Europe a high average temperature for its latitude. In contrast, the warm Gulf Stream has little effect on the eastern coast of the United States. This is because westerly winds usually blow the Gulf Stream and its warm tropical air away from the coast.

Reading Check **Why does land heat faster than water does? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 15 min

Evaporation

Procedure

1. On a **piece of paper,** make a data table similar to the one shown here.
2. Assemble a **ring stand** on a **table.** Use a **meterstick** to place the support rings at heights of 20 cm and 40 cm above the base. Position a **portable clamp lamp that has an incandescent bulb** directly over the rings and at a height of 60 cm.
3. Place **three Petri dishes** or **watch glasses** as follows: one on the base of the stand and one on each of the two rings.
4. Take **three thermometers,** and lay one across each dish. Turn on the lamp. Use a **stopwatch** to record the temperature every 3 min for 9 min.
5. Remove the thermometers, and add **30 mL of water** to each of the three dishes.
6. Keep the lamp on and over the dishes for 24 h.

Dish	Temperature	Amount of water evaporated
1		
2		
3		

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK

7. Turn off the lamp. Carefully pour the water from the first dish into a **graduated cylinder,** and record any change in volume. Repeat this process for the other two dishes.

Analysis

1. At what distance from the lamp did the most water evaporate? the least water evaporate?
2. Explain the relationship between temperature and the rate of evaporation.
3. Explain why puddles of water dry out much more quickly in summer than they do in fall or winter.

El Niño–Southern Oscillation

The *El Niño–Southern Oscillation*, or *ENSO,* is a cycle of changing wind and water-current patterns in the Pacific Ocean. Every 3 to 10 years, **El Niño,** which is the warm-water phase of the ENSO, causes surface-water temperatures along the west coast of South America to rise. The event changes the interaction of the ocean and the atmosphere, which can change global weather patterns. During El Niño, typhoons, cyclones, and floods may occur in the Pacific Ocean region and southeastern United States. Droughts may strike other areas around the world, such as Indonesia and Australia. The ENSO also has a cool-water phase called *La Niña*. La Niña also affects weather patterns.

El Niño the warm-water phase of the El Niño–Southern Oscillation; a periodic occurrence in the eastern Pacific Ocean in which the surface-water temperature becomes unusually warm

monsoon a seasonal wind that blows toward the land in the summer, bringing heavy rains, and that blows away from the land in the winter, bringing dry weather

Seasonal Winds

Temperature differences between the land and the oceans sometimes cause winds to shift seasonally in some regions. During the summer, the land warms more quickly than the ocean. The warm air rises and is replaced by cool air from the ocean. Thus, the wind moves toward the land. During the winter, the land loses heat more quickly than the ocean does, and the cool air flows away from the land. Thus, the wind moves seaward. Such seasonal winds are called **monsoons.**

Monsoon climates, such as that in southern Asia, are caused by heating and cooling of the northern Indian peninsula. In the winter, continental winds bring dry weather and sometimes drought. In the summer, winds carry moisture to the land from the ocean and cause heavy rainfall and flooding, as shown in **Figure 4.** Monsoon conditions also occur in eastern Asia and affect the tropical regions of Australia and East Africa.

Figure 4 ▶ Effects of Monsoon Climates

Because monsoon rains cause regular flooding, such as this flood in eastern India, people who live in monsoon regions have adapted to living in flood conditions.

People who live in monsoon climates must adjust to periodic droughts, such as the drought that affected this cropland in southern India.

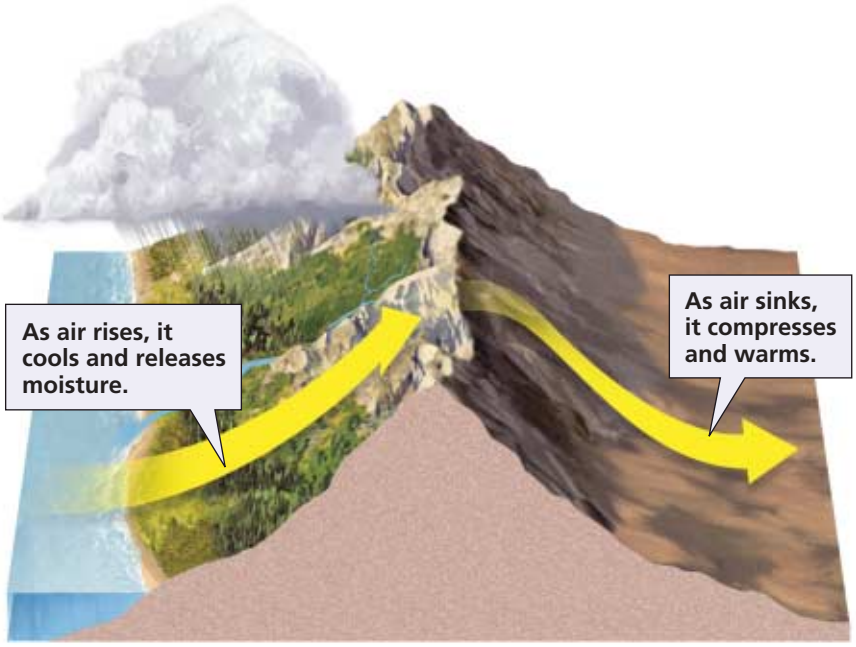


Figure 5 ▶ Mountains cause air to rise, cool, and lose moisture as the air passes over the mountains. This process affects the climate on both sides of the mountain.

Topography

The surface features of the land, or *topography,* also influence climate. Topographical features, such as mountains, can control the flow of air through a region.

Elevation

The elevation, or height of landforms above sea level, produces distinct temperature changes. Temperature generally decreases as elevation increases. For example, for every 100 m increase in elevation, the average temperature decreases by 0.7°C. Even along the equator, the peaks of high mountains can be cold enough to be covered with snow.

Rain Shadows

When a moving air mass encounters a mountain range, the air mass rises, cools, and loses most of its moisture through precipitation, as shown in **Figure 5.** As a result, the air that flows down the other side of the range is usually warm and dry. This effect is called a *rain shadow*. One type of warm, dry wind that forms in this way is the *foehn* (FAYN), a dry wind that flows down the slopes of the Alps. Similar dry, warm winds that flow down the eastern slopes of the Rocky Mountains are called *chinooks*.

Section 1 Review

1. **Identify** two factors that are used to describe climate.
2. **Explain** how latitude determines the amount of solar energy received on Earth.
3. **Describe** how latitude determines wind patterns.
4. **Describe** how the different rates at which land and water are heated affect climate.
5. **Explain** the El Niño–Southern Oscillation cycle.
6. **Summarize** the conditions that cause monsoons.
7. **Explain** how elevation affects climate.
8. **Describe** a rain shadow and the resulting local winds.

CRITICAL THINKING

9. **Making Inferences** If land and water had the same specific heat, how might climate be different around the world?
10. **Analyzing Processes** On a mountain, are you likely to find more vegetation on the side facing prevailing winds or on the side facing away from them?
11. **Recognizing Relationships** Why might you find snow-capped mountains in Hawaii even though Hawaii is closer to the equator than Florida is?

CONCEPT MAPPING

12. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *climate, temperature range, wind, doldrums, subtropical high, monsoon, El Niño,* and *topography.*

Section 2

Climate Zones

Earth has three major types of climate zones: tropical, middle-latitude, and polar. Each zone has distinct temperature characteristics, including a specific range of temperatures. Each of these zones has several types of climates because the amount of precipitation within each zone varies.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the three types of tropical climates.
- **Describe** the five types of middle-latitude climates.
- **Describe** the three types of polar climates.
- **Explain** why city climates may differ from rural climates.

KEY TERMS

tropical climate
middle-latitude climate
polar climate
microclimate

Tropical Climates

Climates that are characterized by high temperatures and are located in the equatorial region are referred to as **tropical climates.** These climates have an average monthly temperature of at least 18°C, even during the coldest month of the year. Within the tropical zone, there are three types of tropical climates: tropical rain forest, tropical desert, and savanna. These climates are described in **Table 1.**

Tropical rain-forest climates are humid and warm and support a diverse variety of life including dense, rain-forest vegetation. The warm, moist, rising air produces an annual rainfall of 200 cm. Central Africa, the Amazon River basin of South America, Central America, and Southeast Asia have areas that have tropical rain-forest climates.

Tropical desert climates receive less than 25 cm of precipitation every year and have little or no vegetation. The largest belt of tropical deserts extends across north Africa and southwestern Asia.

Savanna climates support open grasslands that have drought-resistant trees and shrubs. Savannas have very wet summers and very dry winters. Savanna climates are located in South America, Africa, Southeast Asia, and northern Australia.

tropical climate a climate characterized by high temperatures and heavy precipitation during at least part of the year; typical of equatorial regions

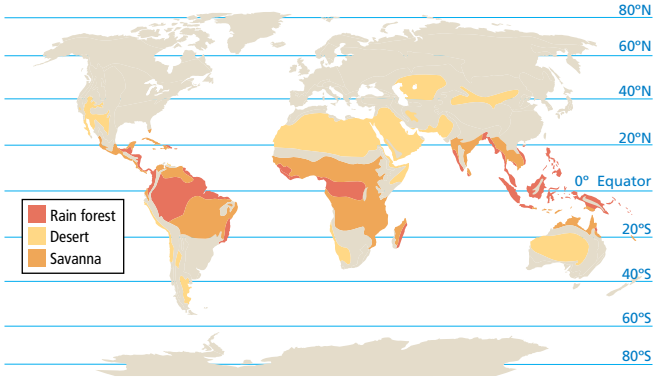
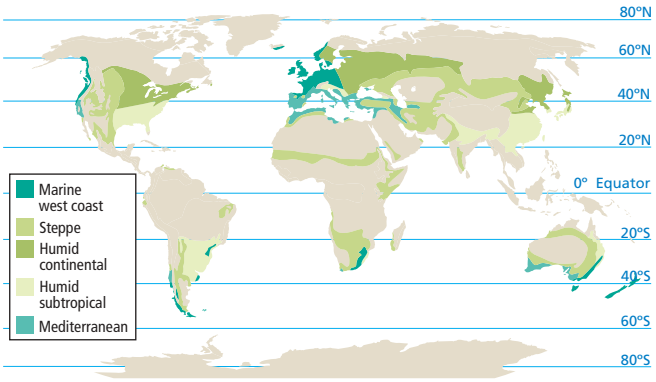


Table 1 ▼

Tropical Climates		
Climate	**Temperature and precipitation**	**Description**
Rain forest	small temperature range; annual rainfall of 200 cm	characterized by dense, lush vegetation; broadleaf plants; and high biodiversity
Desert	large temperature range, hot days, and cold nights; annual rainfall of less than 25 cm	characterized by little to no vegetation and organisms adapted to dry conditions
Savanna	small temperature range; annual rainfall of 50 cm; alternating wet and dry periods	characterized by open grasslands that have clumps of drought-resistant shrubs

Table 2 ▼

Middle-Latitude Climates		
Climate	**Temperature and precipitation**	**Description**
Marine west coast	low annual temperature range; frequent rainfall throughout the year	characterized by deciduous trees and dense forests; mild winters and summers
Steppe	large annual temperature range; annual precipitation of less than 40 cm	characterized by drought-resistant vegetation; cold, dry winters and warm, wet summers
Humid continental	large annual temperature range; annual precipitation of greater than 75 cm	characterized by a wide variety of vegetation and evergreen trees; variable weather
Humid subtropical	large annual temperature range; annual precipitation of 75 to 165 cm	characterized by broadleaf and evergreen trees; high humidity
Mediterranean	low annual temperature range; average annual precipitation of about 40 cm	characterized by broadleaf and evergreen trees; long, dry summers and mild, wet winters



Middle-Latitude Climates

Climates that have an average maximum temperature of 8°C in the coldest month and an average minimum temperature of 10°C in the warmest month are referred to as **middle-latitude climates.** There are five middle-latitude climates, which are described in **Table 2.**

middle-latitude climate a climate that has a maximum average temperature of 8°C in the coldest month and a minimum average temperature of 10°C in the warmest month

Marine west coast climates receive about 60 to 150 cm of precipitation annually. The average temperature is 20°C in the summer and 7°C in the winter. The Pacific Northwest of the United States has a marine west coast climate.

Steppe climates are dry climates that receive less than 40 cm of precipitation per year. The average temperature is about 23°C. The winters are very cold and have an average temperature of –1°C. The Great Plains of the United States has a steppe climate.

The *humid continental climate* and *humid subtropical climate* have a high annual precipitation. However, the humid continental has a much greater temperature range between the summers and winters than the humid subtropical. In the United States, the humid subtropical climate is in the southeast and the humid continental climate is located in the northeast.

The *mediterranean climate* is a mild climate that has a small temperature range between summer and winter. This climate is named after the sea between Africa and Europe, where this climate is located. However, this climate is also located along the coast of central and southern California.

Reading Check **Which subclimates have a high annual precipitation? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 1 ▶ Subarctic climates, as shown here at Tombstone Valley in Yukon, Canada, support sparse tree growth.

SCILINKS NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Polar Climates
SciLinks code: HQ61175

Polar Climates

The climates of the polar regions are referred to as the **polar climates.** There are three types of polar climates: the subarctic climate, shown in **Figure 1,** the tundra climate, and the polar icecap climate. The *subarctic climate* has the largest annual temperature range of all climates. The average difference between summer and winter temperatures in the subarctic climate is 63°C. The *tundra climate* has a smaller annual temperature range than the subarctic climate does. But the average temperature of the tundra is colder than that of the subarctic climate. In the *polar icecap climate,* most of the land surface and much of the ocean are covered in thick sheets of ice year-round. The average temperature in these regions never rises above freezing. The polar climates are described in **Table 3.**

polar climate a climate that is characterized by average temperatures that are near or below freezing; typical of polar regions

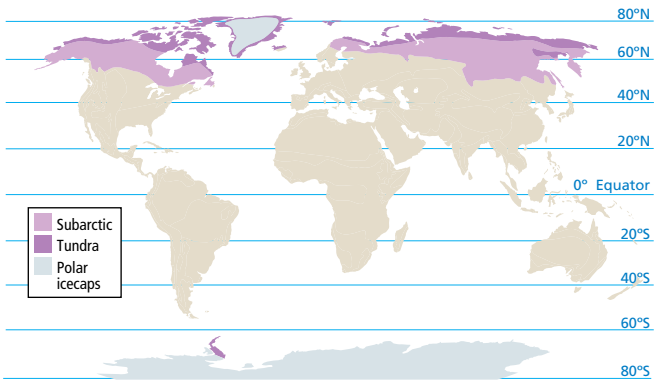


Table 3 ▼

Polar Climates		
Climate	**Temperature and precipitation**	**Description**
Subarctic	largest annual temperature range (63°C); annual precipitation of 25 to 50 cm	characterized by evergreen trees; brief, cool summers and long, cold winters
Tundra	average temperature below 4°C; annual precipitation of 25 cm	characterized by treeless plains; nine months of temperatures below freezing
Polar icecaps	average temperature below 0°C; low annual precipitation	characterized by little or no life; temperatures below freezing year-round and high winds

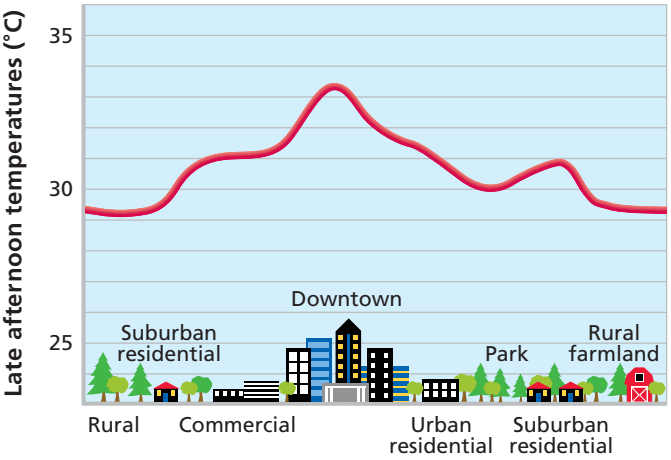


Figure 2 ▶ The less vegetation and more pavement and buildings an area has, the higher the temperatures in the area tend to be.

Local Climates

The climate of a small area is called a **microclimate.** Microclimates are influenced by density of vegetation, by elevation, and by proximity to large bodies of water. For example, in a city, pavement and buildings absorb and reradiate a lot of solar energy, which raises the temperature of the air above and creates a "heat island," as shown in **Figure 2.** As a result, the average temperature may be a few degrees higher in the city than it is in surrounding rural areas. In contrast, vegetation in rural areas does not reradiate as much energy, so temperatures in those areas are lower.

microclimate the climate of a small area

Effects of Elevation

Elevation also may affect local climates. As elevation increases, temperature decreases and the climate changes. For example, the *highland climate* is characterized by large variation in temperatures and precipitation over short distances because of changes in elevation. Highland climates are commonly located in mountainous regions—even in tropical areas.

Effects of Large Bodies of Water

Large bodies of water, such as lakes, influence local climates. The water absorbs and releases heat slower than land does. Thus, the water moderates the temperature of the nearby land. Large bodies of water can also increase precipitation. Therefore, microclimates near large bodies of water have a smaller range of temperatures and higher annual precipitation than other locations at the same latitude do.

Section 2 Review

1. **Identify** the three types of climate zones.
2. **Describe** the three types of tropical climates.
3. **Describe** the five types of middle-latitude climates.
4. **Describe** the three types of polar climates.
5. **Identify** three factors that influence microclimates.
6. **Explain** why city climates may differ from rural climates.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Inferences** What would happen to the temperature of a rural location if the vegetation were replaced with a parking lot?
8. **Compare and Contrast** Compare latitude lines with the boundaries of major climate zones. Why do they align in some regions but not in others?

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *tropical climate, subarctic, tundra, steppe, polar ice-cap, mediterranean, middle-latitude climate, rain forest, savanna, desert,* and *polar climate.*

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

Section 3 Climate Change

When discussing changes in climate, scientists must answer two questions. First, is the climate really changing, or are year-to-year changes just natural variation? Second, if the climate is changing, what is the cause? **Climatologists** are scientists who try to answer these questions by gathering data to study and compare past and present climates.

OBJECTIVES

- **Compare** four methods used to study climate change.
- **Describe** four factors that may cause climate change.
- **Identify** potential impacts of climate change.
- **Identify** ways that humans can minimize their effect on climate change.

KEY TERMS

climatologist
global warming

Studying Climate Change

Climatologists look to past climates to find patterns in the changes that occur. Identifying those patterns allows the scientists to make predictions about future climates. Climatologists use a variety of techniques to reconstruct changes in climate.

Collecting Climate Data

Today, scientists use thousands of weather stations around the world to measure recent precipitation and temperature changes. However, when trying to learn about factors that influence climate change, scientists need to study the evidence left by past climates. This evidence can be left in the remains of plants and animals from earlier time periods. For example, *fossils* of a plant or animal may show adaptations to a particular environment that can reveal clues about the environment's climate. Even polar icecaps contain evidence of past climates. By studying the concentration of gases in *ice cores*, scientists can learn about the gas composition of the atmosphere thousands of years ago. **Table 1** describes methods used to study past climates.

climatologist a scientist who gathers data to study and compare past and present climates and to predict future climate change

Table 1 ▼

Methods of Studying Past Climates			
Method	**What is measured**	**What is indicated**	**Length of time measured**
Ice cores	concentrations of gases in ice and meltwater	High levels of CO_2 indicate warmer climate; ice ages follow decreases in CO_2.	hundreds of thousands of years
Sea-floor sediment	concentration of ^{18}O in shells of microorganisms	High ^{18}O levels indicate cool water; lower ^{18}O levels indicate warm water.	hundreds of thousands of years
Fossils	pollen types, leaf shapes, and animal body adaptations	Flower pollens and broad leaves indicate warm climates; evergreen pollens and small, waxy leaves indicate cool climates. Animal fossils show adaptations to climate changes.	millions of years
Tree rings	ring width	Thin rings indicate cool weather and less precipitation.	hundreds to thousands of years

Figure 1 ▶ Scientists need to use powerful computers to process the amount of data required to study climates.

Modeling Climates

Because so many factors influence climate, studying climate change is a complicated process. Currently, scientists use computers to create models to study climate, as shown in **Figure 1.** The models incorporate millions of pieces of data and help sort the complex sets of variables that influence climate. These models are called *general circulation models,* or GCMs. GCMs simulate changes in one variable when other variables are unchanged. For example, if the sulfur dioxide level is raised in a particular model, the model indicates a decrease in incoming solar radiation because sulfur dioxide reflects sunlight.

Climate models predict many factors of climate, including temperature, precipitation, wind patterns, and sea-level changes. These computer models are complex because they model interactions between oceans, wind, land, clouds, and vegetation. As computers become more powerful, computer-generated climate models will become more accurate and will help scientists better understand climate change.

Reading Check **Why do scientists use computers to model climate? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

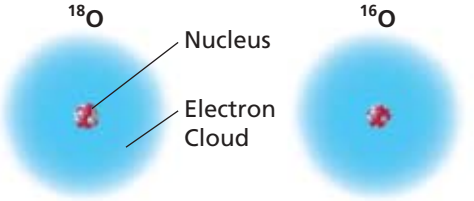
Connection to CHEMISTRY

Oxygen Isotopes

By studying the shells of certain marine organisms, scientists have found evidence that the oceans were much warmer during the Jurassic period than they are today. Marine shells form differently depending on the temperature of the ocean, because the concentration of oxygen isotopes in the marine shells depends on the temperature of the water.

Isotopes are atoms of the same element that have a different number of neutrons. All elements are made up of atoms that contain protons, electrons, and neutrons. Isotopes of the same element have the same number of protons and electrons, but have a different number of neutrons.

Because isotopes have a different number of neutrons, they have different mass numbers. For example, oxygen's most common isotope has a mass number of 16 and is written as ^{16}O. A less common isotope of oxygen is ^{18}O.



^{18}O	^{16}O
Protons: 8	Protons: 8
Neutrons: 10	Neutrons: 8
Mass number: 18	Mass number: 16

Marine shells contain both isotopes ^{16}O and ^{18}O. When the temperature of the sea water increases, the concentration of ^{18}O decreases and the concentration of ^{16}O increases. Scientists study the fossils of marine shells from different time periods to determine the concentration of each oxygen isotope in the marine shells. Upon determining the concentrations, scientists can predict the temperature of the oceans during the time period in which the shells formed.

Potential Causes of Climate Change

By studying computer-generated climate models, scientists have determined several potential causes of climate change. Factors that might cause climate change include the movement of tectonic plates, changes in the Earth's orbit, human activity, and atmospheric changes.

Graphic Organizer

Cause-and-Effect Map

Create the **Graphic Organizer** entitled "Cause-and-Effect Map" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the effect with "Climate change." Then, fill in the map with causes of climate change and details about the causes and effects.

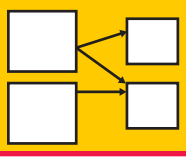


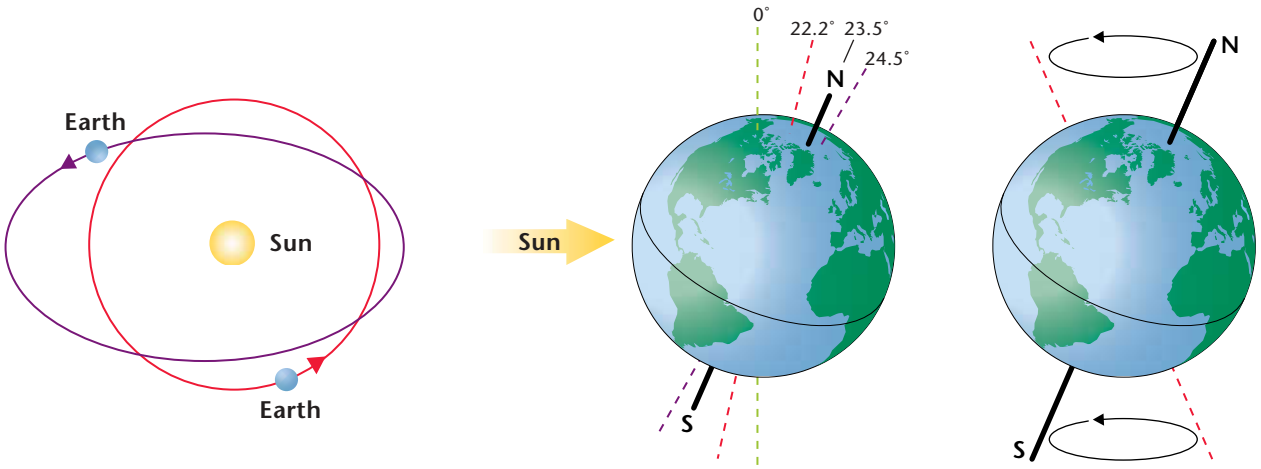
Plate Tectonics

The movement of continents over millions of years caused by tectonic plate motion may affect climate changes. The changing position of the continents changes wind flow and ocean currents around the globe. These changes affect the temperature and precipitation patterns of the continents and oceans. Thus, the climate of any particular continent is not the same as it was millions of years ago.

Orbital Changes

Changes in the shape of Earth's orbit, changes in Earth's tilt, and the wobble of Earth on its axis can lead to climate changes, as shown in **Figure 2.** The combination of these factors is described by the *Milankovitch theory*. Each change of motion has a different effect on climate. Variation in the shape of Earth's orbit, from elliptical to circular, affects Earth's distance from the sun. Earth's distance from the sun affects the temperature of Earth and therefore affects the climate. Decreasing tilt decreases temperature differences between seasons. The wobble of Earth on its axis changes the direction of Earth's tilt and can reverse the seasons. These changes occur in cycles of 21,000 to 100,000 years.

Figure 2 ▶ Earth's Orbital Changes



Eccentricity Earth encounters more variation in the energy that it receives from the sun when Earth's orbit is elongated than it does when Earth's orbit is circular.

Tilt The tilt of Earth's axis varies between 22.2° and 24.5°. The greater the tilt angle is, the more solar energy the poles receive.

Precession The wobble of Earth's axis affects the amount of solar radiation that reaches different parts of Earth's surface at different times of the year.

Figure 3 ▶ Most deforestation in Brazil is caused by farmers who clear the land for planting crops.

Human Activity

Many scientists think that human activity affects climate. Pollution from transportation and industry releases carbon dioxide, CO_2, into the atmosphere. Increases in CO_2 concentrations may lead to global warming, an increase in temperatures around Earth. CO_2 is also released into the atmosphere when trees are burned to provide land for agriculture and urban development. Because vegetation uses CO_2 to make food, deforestation, as shown in **Figure 3,** also affects one of the natural ways of removing CO_2 from the atmosphere. As scientists continue to study climate, they will learn more about how human activity affects climate and about how changes in climate may affect us.

Volcanic Activity

Large volcanic eruptions can influence climates around the world. Sulfur and ash from eruptions can decrease temperatures by reflecting sunlight back into space. These changes last from a few weeks to several years and depend on the strength and duration of the eruption.

Potential Impacts of Climate Change

Scientists are concerned about climate changes because of the potential impacts of these changes. Earth's atmosphere, oceans, and land are all connected, and each influences both local and global climates. Changes in the climate of one area can affect climates around the world. Climate change affects not only humans but also plants and animals. Even short-term changes in the climate may lead to long-lasting effects that may make the survival of life on Earth more difficult for both humans and other species. Some of these potential climate changes include global warming, sea-level changes, and changes in precipitation.

Reading Check **What things are influenced by climate change? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 15 min

Hot Stuff

Procedure

1. In mid-afternoon, use a **thermometer** to measure the air temperature over a grassy field or other vegetated area. Make sure to shield the thermometer from direct sunlight.
2. Measure the air temperature over a parking lot. Take the measurement at the same height above the surface as the height of the measurement of the vegetated area. Again, make sure the thermometer is not directly in the sunlight.

Analysis

1. How did the results differ for each location?
2. How would you explain the difference in the results?
3. What suggestion for how to keep cooling costs low would you give to someone who is building a new store?

Global Warming

Global temperatures have increased approximately 1°C over the last 100 years. Researchers are trying to determine if this increase is a natural variation or the result of human activities, such as deforestation and pollution. A gradual increase in average global temperatures is called **global warming.** This process may result from an increase in the concentration of greenhouse gases, such as CO_2, in the atmosphere.

global warming a gradual increase in the average global temperature that is due to a higher concentration of gases such as carbon dioxide in the atmosphere

An increase in global temperature can lead to an increase in evaporation. Increased evaporation could cause some areas to become drier than they are now. Some plants and animals would not be able to live in these drier conditions. An increase in evaporation in other areas could cause crops to suffer damage. However, an increase in temperatures due to global warming might improve conditions for crops in colder, northern regions.

An increase in global temperatures could also cause ice at the poles to melt. If a significant amount of ice melts, sea levels around the world could rise. This rise in sea levels would cause flooding around coastlines, where many cities are located.

Sea-Level Changes

Using computer models, some scientists have predicted an increase in global temperature of 2°C to 4°C during this century. An increase of only a few degrees worldwide could melt the polar icecaps and raise sea level by adding water to the oceans. On a shoreline that has a gentle slope, the shoreline could shift inland many miles, as shown in **Figure 4.** Many coastal inhabitants would be displaced, and freshwater and agricultural land resources would be diminished. Because approximately 50% of the world population lives near coastlines, this sea-level rise would have devastating effects.

Figure 4 ▶ As sea level rises, shorelines could shift inland many miles. ***Which two states would lose the most area if sea level were to rise by 3 m?***

Figure 5 ▶ People from the Wangari Maathai Green Belt Movement in Kenya, Africa, prepare seedlings for planting.

What Humans Can Do

Many countries are working together to reduce the potential effects of global warming. Treaties and laws have been passed to reduce pollution. Industrial practices are being monitored and changed. Even community projects to reforest areas, such as the one shown in **Figure 5,** have been developed on a local level.

Individual Efforts

Each individual person can also help to reduce CO_2 concentrations in the atmosphere that are caused by pollution. Pollution is caused mostly by the burning of fossil fuels, such as running automobiles and using electricity. Therefore, humans can have a significant effect on pollution rates by turning lights off when they are not in use, by turning down the heat in winter, and by reducing air conditioner use in the summer. Recycling is also helpful because less energy is needed to recycle some products than to create them.

Transportation Solutions

Using public transportation and driving fuel-efficient vehicles also help release less CO_2 into the atmosphere. All vehicles burn fuel more efficiently when they are properly tuned and the tires are properly inflated. Driving at a consistent speed also allows a vehicle to burn fuel efficiently. Car manufacturers have been developing cars that are more fuel efficient. For example, *hybrid cars* use both gasoline and electricity. These cars release less CO_2 into the atmosphere from burning fuel than other cars do.

Section 3 Review

1. **Compare** four methods that climatologists use to study climate.
2. **Identify** four factors that may cause climate change.
3. **Describe** how orbital changes may affect climate.
4. **Explain** how changes in CO_2 concentrations affect global temperatures.
5. **Explain** one potential negative impact of global warming.
6. **Identify** two ways that countries can work together to reduce the potential effects of global warming.
7. **Identify** four ways that an individual can reduce the potential effects of global warming.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Making Predictions** How would the melting of small icebergs affect sea level? Explain your answer.
9. **Evaluating Models** Can short-term climate changes be explained by using the cycles described by the Milankovitch theory? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *climatologist, general circulation models, global warming, ice cores, tree rings, fossils,* and *isotopes.*

Chapter 25 Highlights

Sections

1 Factors That Affect Climate

Key Terms

climate, 631
specific heat, 634
El Niño, 635
monsoon, 635

Key Concepts

- The climate of a region is described by the region's temperature and precipitation.
- Latitude affects climate by determining the intensity of solar energy received by an area.
- The rates at which land and water are heated affect climate.
- Topography affects climate by causing temperature variations due to elevation and by creating rain shadows.

2 Climate Zones

tropical climate, 637
middle-latitude climate, 638
polar climate, 639
microclimate, 640

- Tropical subclimates are located near the equator and include tropical rain-forest, tropical desert, and savanna climates.
- Middle-latitude climates include marine west coast, steppe, humid continental, humid subtropical, and mediterranean climates.
- Polar climates include subarctic, tundra, and polar icecap climates.
- Microclimates are influenced by large bodies of water, by elevation, and by vegetation and urban development.

3 Climate Change

climatologist, 641
global warming, 645

- By using ice cores, sea-floor sediment, fossils, and tree rings, scientists have been able to study past climates.
- Computer-generated climate models help scientists predict possible consequences of changing certain variables in the climate system.
- Natural processes and human activities may be causing changes in Earth's climate, including global warming.

Chapter 25 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *specific heat*
2. *microclimate*
3. *climatologist*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *climate* and *microclimate*
5. *El Niño* and *monsoon*
6. *tropical climate* and *polar climate*

Understanding Key Concepts

7. At the equator, the sun's rays always strike Earth
   - **a.** at a low angle.
   - **b.** at nearly a 90° angle.
   - **c.** 18 hours each day.
   - **d.** no more than 8 hours each day.

8. Which of the following is *not* used as evidence of past climates?
   - **a.** ice cores
   - **b.** general circulation models
   - **c.** tree rings
   - **d.** fossils

9. Water cools
   - **a.** more slowly than land does.
   - **b.** more quickly than land does.
   - **c.** only during evaporation.
   - **d.** during global warming.

10. Ocean currents influence temperature by
    - **a.** eroding shorelines.
    - **b.** heating or cooling the air.
    - **c.** washing warm, dry sediments out to sea.
    - **d.** dispersing the rays of the sun.

11. Winds that blow in opposite directions in different seasons because of the differential heating of the land and the oceans are called
    - **a.** chinooks.
    - **b.** foehn.
    - **c.** monsoons.
    - **d.** El Niño.

12. When a moving air mass encounters a mountain range, the air mass
    - **a.** stops moving.
    - **b.** slows and sinks.
    - **c.** rises and cools.
    - **d.** reverses its direction.

13. In regions that have a mediterranean climate, almost all of the yearly precipitation falls
    - **a.** during monsoons.
    - **b.** in the summer.
    - **c.** in the winter.
    - **d.** during hurricanes.

14. The climate that has the largest annual temperature range is the
    - **a.** subarctic climate.
    - **b.** middle-latitude desert climate.
    - **c.** mediterranean climate.
    - **d.** humid continental climate.

15. The pavement and buildings in cities affect the local climate by
    - **a.** decreasing the temperature.
    - **b.** increasing the temperature.
    - **c.** increasing the precipitation.
    - **d.** decreasing the precipitation.

Short Answer

16. Describe the Milankovitch theory, including how it may explain some climate changes.

17. What are the possible effects of global warming?

18. Compare marine west coast and humid continental climates.

Critical Thinking

19. Making Predictions Describe how the climate in California might be affected if all of the trees in California were cut down.

20. Making Inferences Explain why the vegetation in areas that have a tundra climate is sparse even though these areas receive enough precipitation to support plant life.

21. Analyzing Ideas Explain why climates cannot be classified only by latitude.

22. Predicting Consequences How would global climate be affected if Earth were not tilted on its axis? Explain your reasoning.

Concept Mapping

23. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *fossil, ice cores, climate, polar climate, climatologist, steppe, temperature range, tropical climate, middle-latitude climate,* and *savanna*.

Math Skills

24. Using Equations Temperature generally decreases about 6.5°C for every kilometer above sea level. If T_N = temperature at new altitude, a = altitude in kilometers, and T_I = the initial temperature at sea level, what equation can be used to find the temperature at a given altitude?

25. Making Calculations From 1970 to 1997, nitrous oxide, NO_2, emissions increased from about 18.7 million to about 20.8 million tons per year. By what percentage did NO_2 emissions increase from 1970 to 1997?

Writing Skills

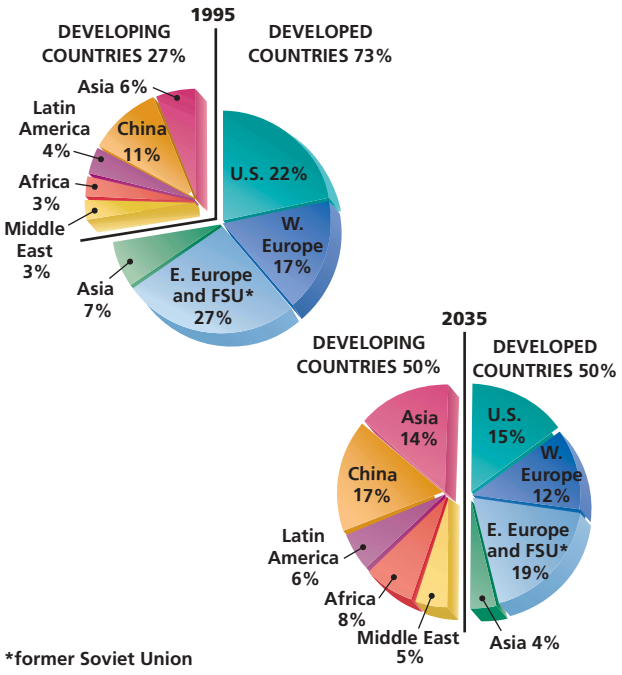
26. Researching Topics Research greenhouse gases to determine how they are produced. Then, write a brief essay that outlines how they can be reduced.

27. Communicating Main Ideas Imagine that you are going to build a vacation house. Research three locations where you would like to build your house, and outline the climate features that would make each location ideal for your vacation home.

Interpreting Graphics

The pie graphs below show world emissions of carbon dioxide, CO_2, in 1995 and predict emissions in 2035. Use these graphs to answer the questions that follow.

Total World Emissions of Carbon Dioxide



28. In 1995, which country or region emitted the most CO_2? Which emitted the least CO_2?

29. What percentage of the total CO_2 was emitted by developing countries in 1995?

30. Why do you think researchers predict that CO_2 emissions by developing countries will equal that of developed countries by 2035?

Chapter 25 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–4): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 Which statement best compares how land and water are heated by solar energy?

A. Water heats up faster and to a higher temperature than land does.
B. Land heats up faster and to a higher temperature than water does.
C. Water heats up more slowly but reaches a higher temperature than land does.
D. Land heats up more slowly and reaches a lower temperature than water does.

2 Which of the following statements best describes the El Niño–Southern Oscillation?

F. a change in global wind patterns that occurs in the Southern Hemisphere
G. a warming of surface waters in the eastern Pacific due to the effects of changing wind patterns on ocean currents near the equator
H. a cooling of surface waters in the eastern Pacific due to the effects of changing wind patterns on ocean currents near the equator
I. a global wind and precipitation belt between 20°N and 30°N latitude

3 A seasonal wind that blows toward the land in the summer and brings heavy rains is called a

A. trade wind
B. jet stream
C. doldrum
D. monsoon

4 In samples of atmospheric gases taken from ice cores, high levels of carbon dioxide indicate that the sample is from a time period that had

F. a warm climate
G. a cool climate
H. high amounts of precipitation
I. low amounts of precipitation

Directions (5–6): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

5 What is the term for the area around a mountain that receives warm, dry winds?

6 What is the term for the average weather in an area over a long period of time?

Reading Skills

Directions (7–9): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

The Greenhouse Effect

The greenhouse effect is Earth's natural heating process, in which gases in the atmosphere trap thermal energy. Earth's atmosphere acts like the glass windows of a car. Imagine that it is a hot day and that you are about to get inside a car. You immediately notice that it feels hotter inside the car than it does outside the car.

Many scientists hypothesize that the rise in global temperatures is due to an increase in carbon dioxide that is produced as a result of human activity. Most evidence indicates that the increase in carbon dioxide is caused by the burning of fossil fuels that release carbon dioxide into the atmosphere. Fossil fuels are organic compounds that are formed from the buried remains of ancient plants and animals. These fuels are used by humans for many things such as heating homes and providing fuel for automobiles.

7 Based on the passage, which of the following statements is not true?

A. The atmosphere of Earth traps thermal heat in a similar manner to the way a car window traps heat.
B. The greenhouse effect is a natural heating process for Earth.
C. Earth absorbs sunlight and reradiates it as carbon dioxide.
D. Human activity is the one producer of the greenhouse gas carbon dioxide.

8 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?

F. The greenhouse effect is responsible for an increase in the use of fossil fuels by humans.
G. Humans created the greenhouse effect by burning coal for industrial uses.
H. Human activity is the only producer of gases that create the greenhouse effect.
I. Human activity may play a role in amplifying the natural process of the greenhouse effect.

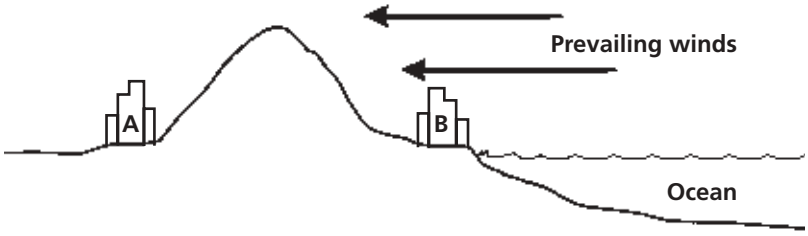
9 Name some fossil fuels that are contributors to the production of carbon dioxide?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (10–13): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagram shows the locations of two cities at the same latitude. Use this map to answer questions 10 and 11.

Two Cities Separated by Coastal Mountains



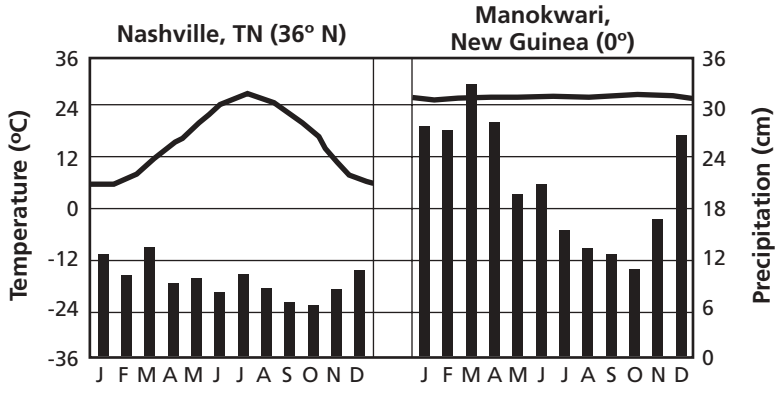
10 Which city is most likely to have the largest yearly temperature range?

A. City A would likely have the largest yearly temperature range.
B. City B would likely have the largest yearly temperature range.
C. Both cities would likely have the same temperature range.
D. There is not enough information to answer the question.

11 Which city is most likely to have a dry climate? Explain what would cause this city's climate to be drier than the other city's climate.

The climatograms below summarize average monthly precipitation and temperature data measured in two locations over a period of one year. Use these climatograms to answer questions 12 and 13.

Climatograms for Two Cities



12 Which month shows the most rainfall for both climates in the climatograms?

F. March
G. June
H. September
I. December

13 Based on the data in the climatograms, write a description of the climate found in each location and the type of vegetation that is likely to occur as a result of the climate in each location.

Test TIP

Read all of the information, including the heads, in a table or chart before answering the questions that refer to it.

Chapter 25

Inquiry Lab

Using Scientific Methods

Factors That Affect Climate

Objectives

- **Determine** whether land or water absorbs heat faster.
- **Explain** how the properties of land and water affect climate.

Materials

container (2)
heat lamp
meterstick
soil
thermometer, Celsius (2)
water

Safety

Many factors affect climate. One of the most significant factors that influence climate is the distribution of land and water. Because land and water absorb and release heat energy differently, they affect the atmosphere differently. In turn, the differences between land and water affect the climate. In this lab, you will explore how the properties of land and water affect climate.

ASK A QUESTION

1. How do the properties of land and water affect climate?

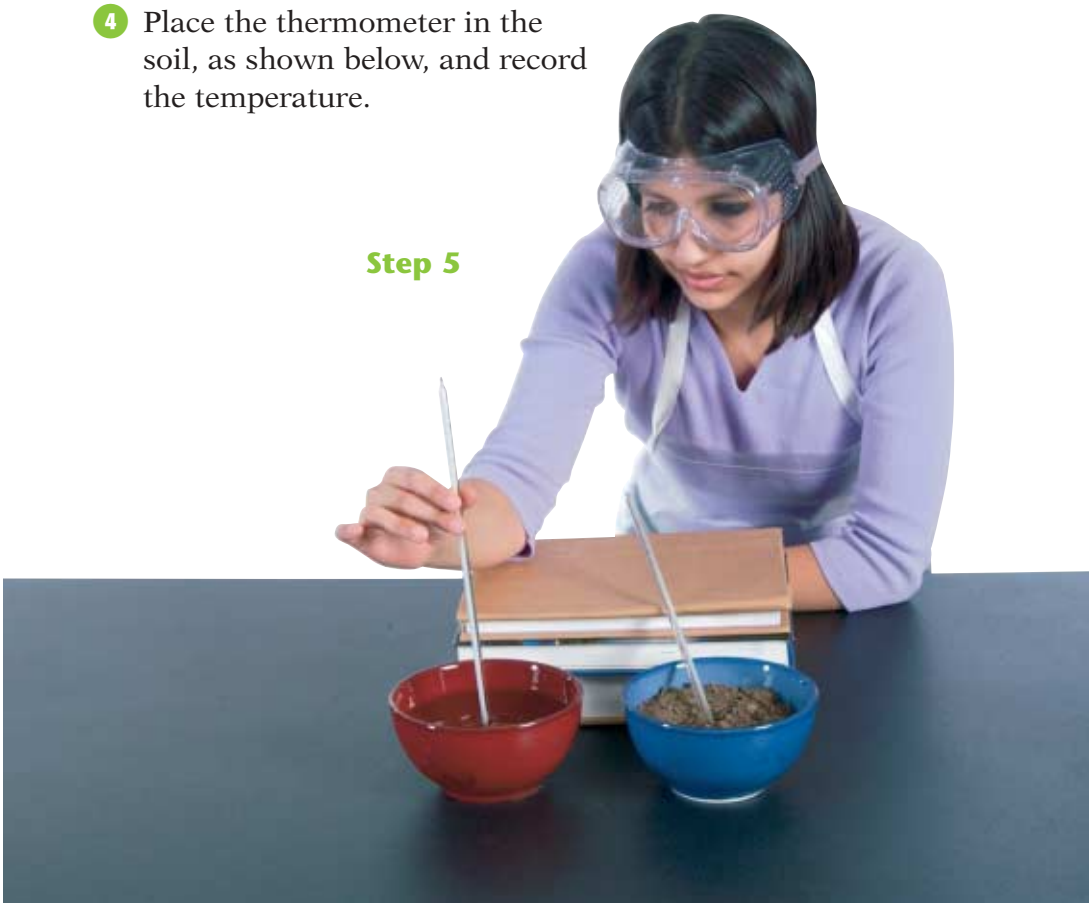
FORM A HYPOTHESIS

2. On a separate piece of paper, write a hypothesis that is a possible answer to the question above.

TEST THE HYPOTHESIS

3. Fill one container with soil and the other with water. Place both containers on a flat surface next to each other.
4. Place the thermometer in the soil, as shown below, and record the temperature.

Step 5



5. Place the second thermometer in the container of water, as shown in the illustration on the previous page. The bulbs of both thermometers should be placed so that they are covered by no more than 0.5 cm of water or soil.

6. Place the heat lamp 25 cm above both containers. Turn on the heat lamp.

7. Create a data table like the one shown to the right. In the table, record the temperature of each sample at 1, 3, 5, and 10 min intervals.

8. Disconnect the lamp, and record the temperature of the soil and water after 5 min. **CAUTION** Be sure to let the heat lamp cool before storing it.

Data Table

Time (min)	Temperature of soil (°C)	Temperature of water (°C)
1		
3		
5		
10		
5 (after light off)		

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK

ANALYZE THE RESULTS

1. **Analyzing Data** Which substance absorbed more heat energy: water or soil?

2. **Analyzing Results** Which substance lost heat energy faster when the heat source was turned off: water or soil?

DRAW CONCLUSIONS

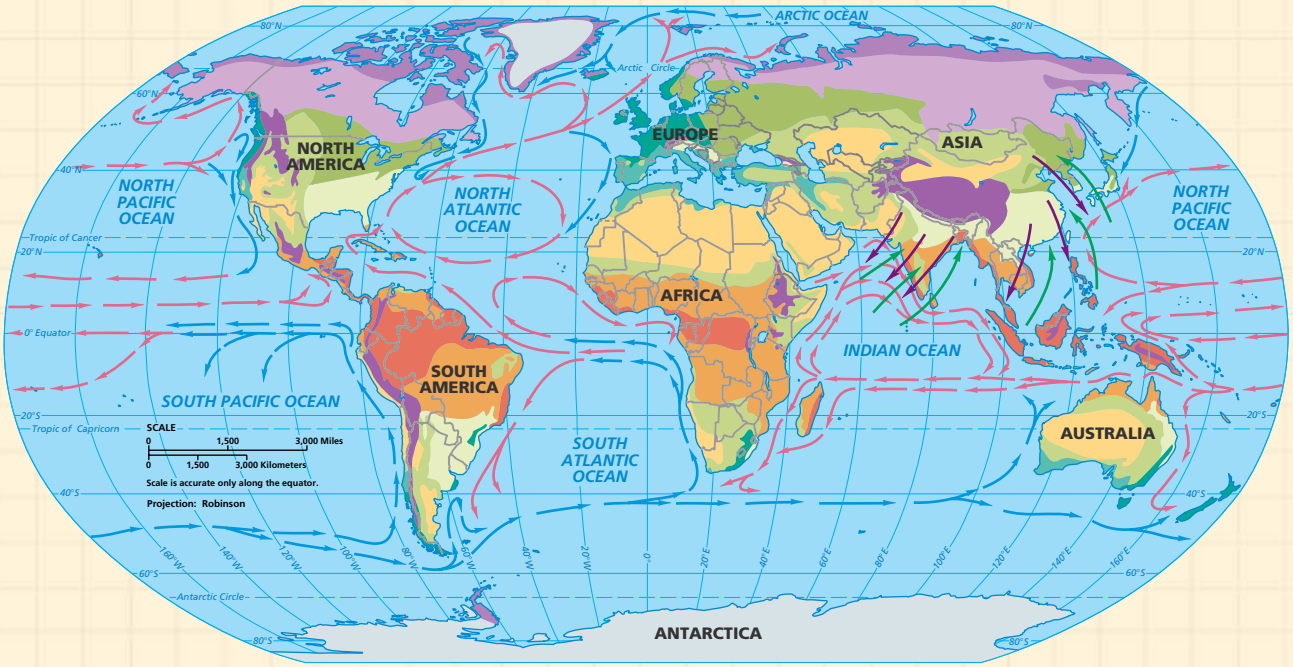
3. **Evaluating Conclusions** What conclusion can you draw about how land and water on Earth are heated by the sun?

4. **Analyzing Methods** Does this experiment describe how proximity to a body of water affects the temperature of a region? If so, explain your answer. If not, how could you test that variable?

Extension

1. **Applying Ideas** Repeat this experiment, but modify the angle at which the light strikes the surface of the soil and the water. How do your results differ from the results of the original experiment? How does the angle of the light affect temperature change in water and soil?

Climates of the World



Tropical Climates
- Rain forest
- Desert
- Savanna

Mid Latitude Climates
- Marine west coast
- Steppe
- Humid continental
- Humid subtropical
- Mediterranean

Polar Climates
- Subarctic
- Tundra
- Polar icecaps
- Highland

Monsoon Air Flow
- Wet monsoon
- Dry monsoon

Major World Ocean Currents
- Cool currents
- Warm currents

Map Skills Activity

This map shows the climate regions of Earth and the locations of warm and cold ocean currents. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Analyzing Data** Estimate the latitude range for the desert climate of northern Africa.
2. **Making Comparisons** Why does the eastern coast of the United States have a different climate than the western coast does even though the coasts are at similar latitudes?
3. **Analyzing Ideas** If the ocean current that flows off the western coast of Australia were a warm current, how would this type of current affect the climate of western Australia?
4. **Using a Key** Identify the latitudes where monsoons are located.
5. **Evaluating Data** Explain why the western coast of South America is desert while the inland part of the continent at the same latitude is humid.

Keeping Cool with Algae

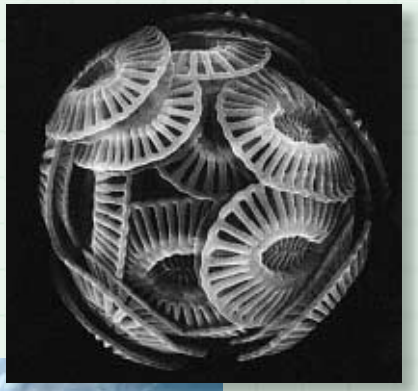
Earth is constantly receiving energy from the sun. At the same time, Earth emits energy into space. By balancing these processes, Earth maintains its temperature. What keeps Earth from getting too hot or too cold? In seeking to answer this question, scientists look to microorganisms called *coccolithophores*.

Disappearing Carbon Dioxide

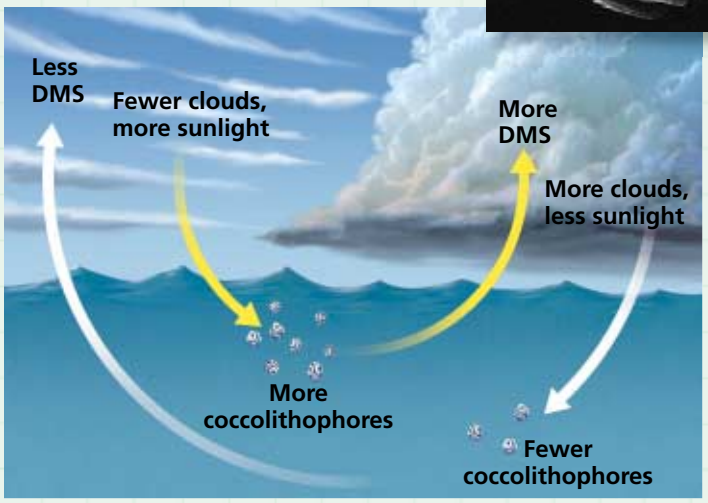
Each year, humans release more than 6 billion tons of carbon dioxide, CO_2, but only about half of that amount can be detected in the atmosphere. Where does the rest of the CO_2 go? Much of it is absorbed by coccolithophores in the oceans. These tiny algae are the primary users of CO_2. They use CO_2 to build chalky disks made of calcium carbonate. By absorbing the CO_2, these algae have a significant impact on the greenhouse effect.

DMS and Sulfur Cycles

Coccolithophores also may affect the number of clouds that form. These algae absorb sulfur compounds from ocean water to produce dimethyl sulfide, or DMS, which is then released into the air. DMS causes water vapor to condense and form clouds. As more clouds form, sunlight is blocked and photosynthesis is reduced. The number of algae begins to decline. Less DMS is produced, and fewer clouds form. When more sunlight hits the ocean, more coccolithophores can grow, and the cycle continues.



▲ This tiny microorganism may help regulate the temperature of our planet.



Scientists think that this process may help serve as a natural thermostat for the entire planet.

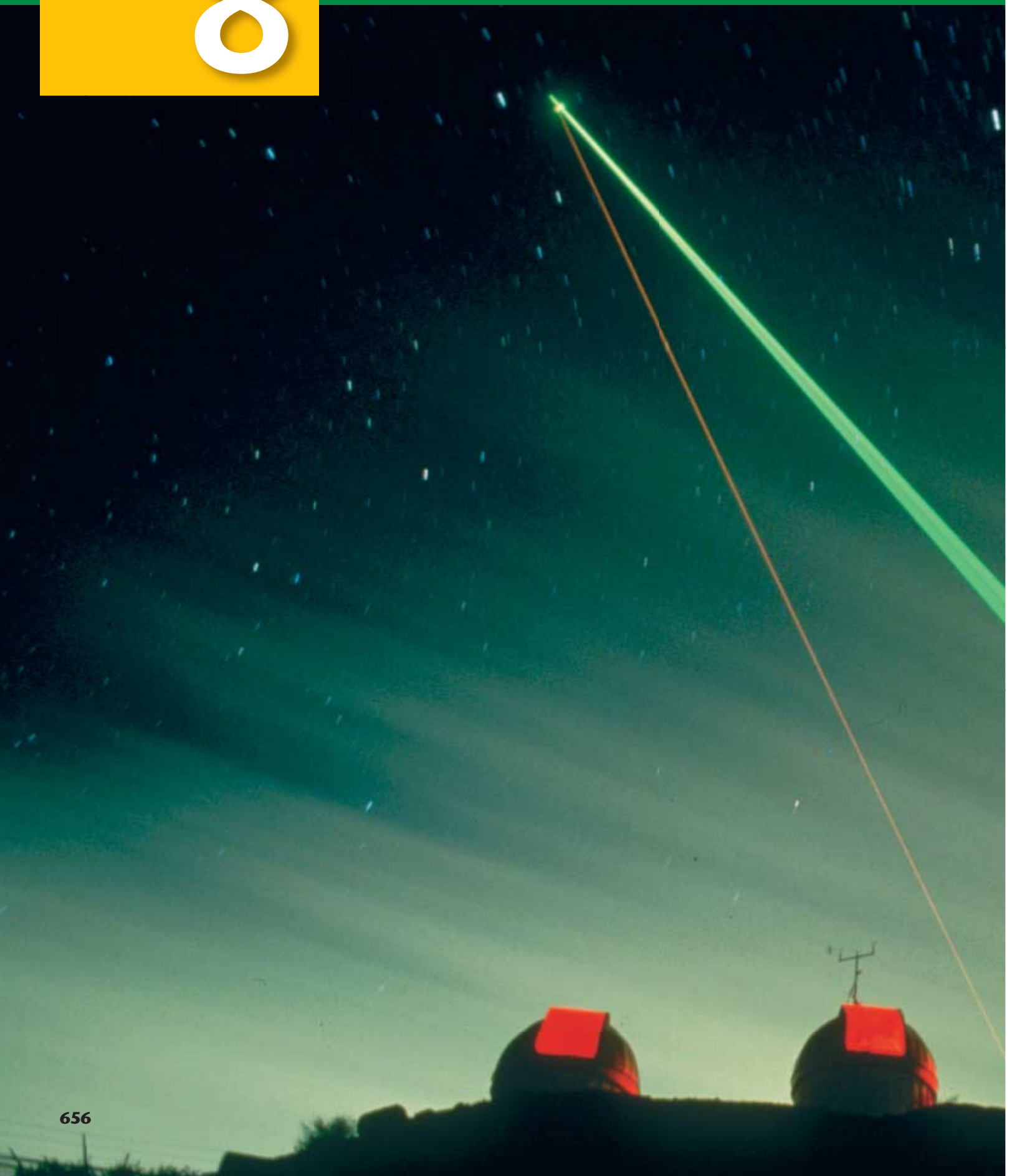
Tough Puzzles to Solve

Scientists now have a better understanding of how coccolithophores affect the atmosphere. However, scientists do not know if this knowledge can be used to help regulate climates. If scientists could promote coccolithophore growth in the ocean, atmospheric CO_2 could be reduced and more clouds could be created. As a result, the planet would cool down. However, because scientists do not know how marine ecosystems would be affected, this plan would be risky. As research continues, scientists will probably learn more about how to apply this research.

Extension

1. **Making Inferences** Why would predicting the effects of artificially promoting coccolithophore growth be difficult?
2. **Understanding Relationships** Find out about other marine microorganisms. How are they important to other organisms in marine ecosystems?

Unit 8 SPACE



Unit 8 Outline

CHAPTER 26
Studying Space

CHAPTER 27
Planets of the Solar System

CHAPTER 28
Minor Bodies of the Solar System

CHAPTER 29
The Sun

CHAPTER 30
Stars, Galaxies, and the Universe

▶ The Starfire telescope in New Mexico provides clear images by using a laser to compensate for atmospheric turbulance.

Chapter 26 Studying Space

Sections

1 Viewing the Universe

2 Movements of Earth

What You'll Learn

- How astronomers study the universe
- How different kinds of telescopes and spacecraft work
- How Earth moves and the consequences of that movement

Why It's Relevant

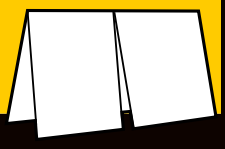
Understanding how scientists study space helps to explain the physical nature of the universe. Learning how Earth moves in space can help explain phenomena such as Earth's seasons.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Two-Panel Flip Chart

Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Two-Panel Flip Chart" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the flaps of the two-panel flip chart with "Tools of astronomy" and "Movements of Earth." As you read the chapter, write information you learn about each category under the appropriate flap.



▶ Astronaut Bruce McCandless II tests a backpack jet propelled by nitrogen that takes him 320 ft from the space shuttle. Equipment, such as the backpack, help scientists explore space.

Section 1 Viewing the Universe

People studied the sky long before the telescope was invented. For example, farmers observed changes in daylight throughout the year to track seasons and to predict floods and droughts. Sailors focused on the stars to navigate through unknown territory. Today, most interest in studying the sky comes from a curiosity to discover what lies within the universe. This scientific study of the universe is called **astronomy.** Scientists who study the universe are called *astronomers*.

The Value of Astronomy

In the process of observing the universe, astronomers have made exciting discoveries, such as new planets, stars, black holes, and nebulas, such as the one shown in **Figure 1.** By studying these objects, astronomers have been able to learn more about the origin of Earth and the processes involved in the formation of our solar system.

Studying the universe is also important for the potential benefits to humans. For example, studies of how stars shine may one day lead to improved or new energy sources on Earth. Astronomers may also learn how to protect us from potential catastrophes, such as collisions between asteroids and Earth. Because of these and other contributions, astronomical research is supported by federal agencies, such as the National Science Foundation and NASA. Private foundations and industry also fund research in astronomy.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** characteristics of the universe in terms of time, distance, and organization.
- **Identify** the visible and nonvisible parts of the electromagnetic spectrum.
- **Compare** refracting telescopes and reflecting telescopes.
- **Explain** how telescopes for nonvisible electromagnetic radiation differ from light telescopes.

KEY TERMS

astronomy
galaxy
astronomical unit
electromagnetic spectrum
telescope
refracting telescope
reflecting telescope

astronomy the scientific study of the universe

Figure 1 ▶ A nebula is a large cloud of gas and dust in space. This nebula is called the Eskimo nebula. It formed as a result of an explosion on the surface of the central star. By studying nebulas, scientists may learn if our sun will ever reach this state.

Figure 2 ▶ The Whirlpool galaxy, M51 (above), is 28 million light-years from the Milky Way. Abell 1689 (right) is one of the most massive galaxy clusters known.

Characteristics of the Universe

The study of the origin, properties, processes, and evolution of the universe is called *cosmology*. Most astronomers agree that the universe began about 14 billion years ago in one giant explosion, called the *big bang*. Since that time, the universe has continued to expand. The universe is very large, and the objects within it are extremely far apart. Telescopes are used to study some distant objects. However, astronomers also commonly use computer models to study the universe.

Organization of the Universe

The nearest part of the universe to Earth is our solar system. The solar system includes the sun, Earth, the other planets, and many smaller objects such as asteroids and comets. The solar system is part of a **galaxy,** which is a large collection of stars, dust, and gas bound together by gravity. The galaxy in which the solar system resides is called the *Milky Way galaxy*. Beyond the Milky Way galaxy, there are millions of other galaxies, a few of which are shown in **Figure 2.**

Measuring Distances in the Universe

Because the universe is so large, the units of measurement used on Earth are too small to represent the distance between objects in space. To measure distances in the solar system, astronomers often use astronomical units. An **astronomical unit** (symbol, AU) is the average distance between Earth and the sun, which is 149,597,870.66 km or approximately 150 million km.

Astronomers also use the speed of light to measure distance. Light travels at 300,000,000 m/s. In one year, light travels 9.4607×10^{12} km. This distance is known as a *light-year*. Aside from the sun, the closest star to Earth is 4.2 light-years away.

MATH PRACTICE

Astronomical Unit

An astronomical unit is the average distance between the sun and Earth, or about 150 million km. Venus orbits the sun at a distance of 0.7 AU. Venus is how many kilometers from the sun?

galaxy a collection of stars, dust, and gas bound together by gravity

astronomical unit the average distance between the Earth and the sun; approximately 150 million kilometers (symbol, AU)

Observing Space

Light enables us to see the world around us and to make observations. When astronomers look at the night sky, they see stars and other objects in space because of the light these objects emit. Planets, however, do not emit light. They reflect the light from stars. However, this light is only a small amount of energy that comes from these objects. By studying the other forms of energy, astronomers are able to learn more about the universe.

Electromagnetic Spectrum

Visible light is part of a spectrum of energy called the electromagnetic spectrum. The **electromagnetic spectrum** is all of the wavelengths of electromagnetic radiation. Light, radio waves, and X rays are all examples of electromagnetic radiation. The radiation is composed of traveling waves of electric and magnetic fields that oscillate at fixed frequencies and wavelengths.

electromagnetic spectrum all of the frequencies or wavelengths of electromagnetic radiation

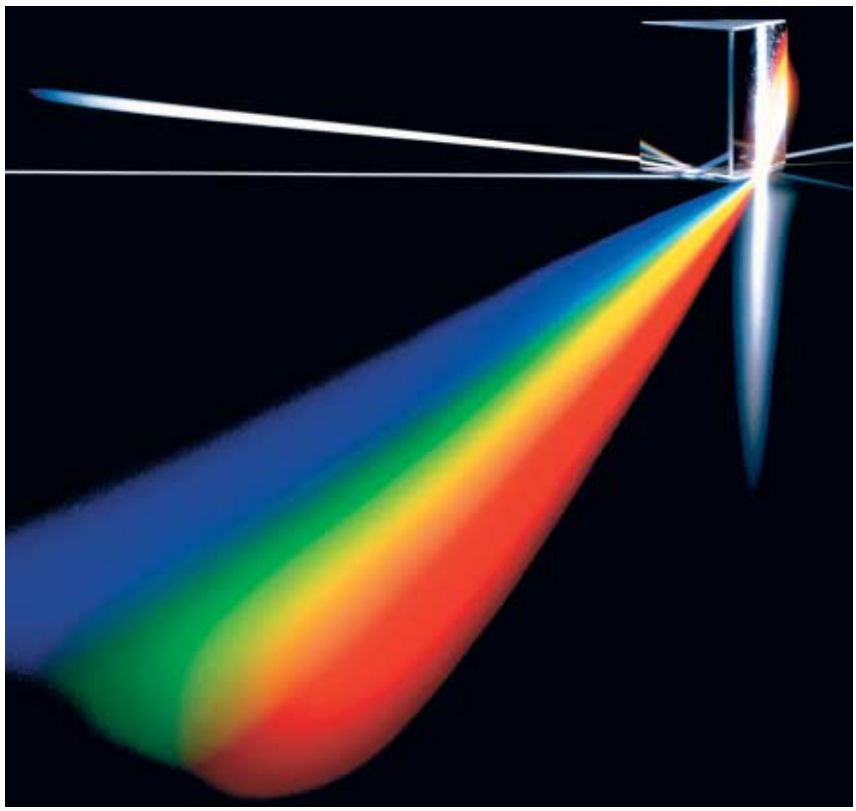
Visible Electromagnetic Radiation

The human eye can see only radiation of wavelengths in the visible light range of the spectrum. When white light passes through a prism, the light is broken into a continuous set of colors, as shown in **Figure 3.** Every rainbow formed in the sky and any color spectrum formed by a prism will always have the same colors in the same order. The different colors result because each color of light has a characteristic wavelength. Though all light travels at the same speed, different colors of light have different wavelengths. For example, the shortest wavelengths of light are blue and violet, while the longest wavelengths of light are orange and red.

Electromagnetic radiation that has wavelengths that are shorter than the wavelengths of violet light or longer than the wavelengths of red light cannot be seen by humans. But these wavelengths can be detected by instruments that are designed to detect electromagnetic radiation that cannot be seen by humans. These invisible wavelengths include infrared waves, microwaves, radio waves, ultraviolet rays, X rays, and gamma rays.

Reading Check **Which type of electromagnetic radiation can be seen by humans? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 3 ▶ Visible light is broken into different colors because each color has a different wavelength. These colors can be seen when visible light is passed through a prism.



Invisible Electromagnetic Radiation

If you place a thermometer in any wavelength of the visible spectrum, the temperature reading on the thermometer will increase. In 1852, a scientist named Sir Frederick William Herschel moved the thermometer beyond the red end of the visible spectrum. Even though he could not see any light on the thermometer, the temperature reading on the thermometer increased. He had discovered *infrared,* which means "below the red." Infrared is electromagnetic radiation that has waves that are longer than waves of visible light. Later, other scientists discovered radio waves, which have even longer wavelengths than infrared waves do.

The shortest wavelengths of visible light, which are shorter than the wavelengths of violet light, are the ultraviolet wavelengths. *Ultraviolet* means "beyond the violet." The X-ray wavelengths are shorter than the ultraviolet wavelengths are. The shortest wavelengths are the gamma ray wavelengths.

Telescopes

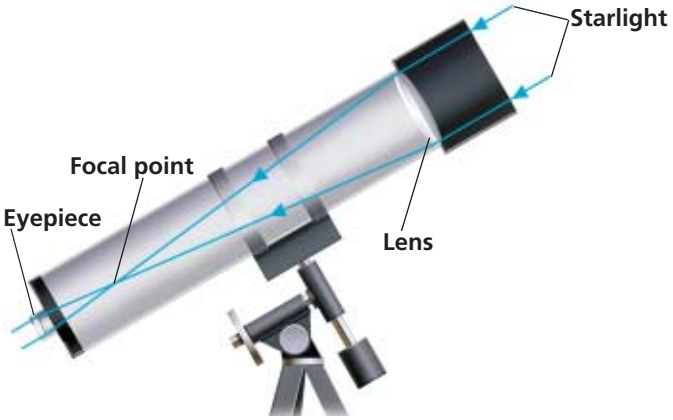
Our eyes can see detail, but some things are too small or too far away to see. Our ability to see the detail of distant objects in the sky began with the Italian scientist Galileo. In 1609, he heard of a device that used two lenses to make distant objects appear closer. He built one of the devices and turned it toward the sky. For the first time, he could see that there are craters on the moon and that the Milky Way is made of stars. An example of one of these early devices is shown in **Figure 4.**

telescope an instrument that collects electromagnetic radiation from the sky and concentrates it for better observation

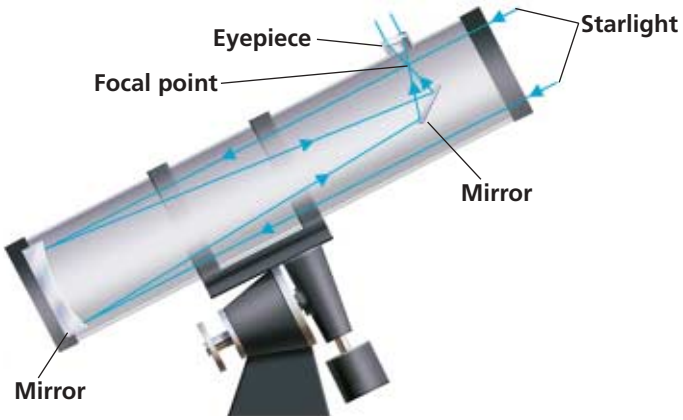
A **telescope** is an instrument that collects electromagnetic radiation from the sky and concentrates it for better observation. While modern telescopes are able to collect and use invisible electromagnetic radiation, the first telescopes that were developed collected only visible light. Telescopes that collect only visible light are called *optical telescopes.* The two types of optical telescopes are refracting telescopes and reflecting telescopes.

Figure 4 ▶ One of the first reflecting telescopes, which was created by Isaac Newton, can be seen at the Royal Society in London, England.

Figure 5 ▶ Reflecting and Refracting Telescopes



Refracting telescopes use lenses to gather and focus light from distant objects.



Reflecting telescopes use mirrors to gather and focus light from distant objects.

Refracting Telescopes

Lenses are clear objects shaped to bend light in special ways. The bending of light by lenses is called *refraction*. Telescopes that use a set of lenses to gather and focus light from distant objects are called **refracting telescopes.** Refracting telescopes have an objective lens that bends light that passes through the lens and focuses the light to be magnified by an eyepiece, as shown in **Figure 5.**

One problem with refracting telescopes is that the lens focuses different colors of light at different distances. For example, if an object is in focus in red light, the object will appear out of focus in blue light. Another problem with refracting telescopes is that their potential to focus on distant objects is limited by the size of their objective lens. Objective lenses that are too large will sag under their own weight and cause images to become distorted.

refracting telescope a telescope that uses a set of lenses to gather and focus light from distant objects

reflecting telescope a telescope that uses a curved mirror to gather and focus light from distant objects

Reflecting Telescopes

In the mid-1600s, Isaac Newton solved the problem of color separation that resulted from the use of lenses. He invented the **reflecting telescope,** as shown in **Figure 5,** which used a curved mirror to gather and focus light from distant objects. When light enters a reflecting telescope, the light is reflected by a large curved mirror to a second mirror. The second mirror reflects the light to the eyepiece, where the image is magnified and focused.

Unlike objective lenses in refracting telescopes, mirrors in reflecting telescopes can be made very large without affecting the quality of the image. Thus, reflecting telescopes can be much larger and can gather more light than refracting telescopes can. The largest reflecting telescopes are a pair called the Keck Telescopes in Hawaii. Each telescope is 10 m in diameter. Astronomers are tentatively planning to build an OWL, Overwhelmingly Large Telescope, that would be 100 m in diameter.

Reading Check **What are the problems with refracting telescopes? (See the Appendix for the answers to Reading Checks.)**

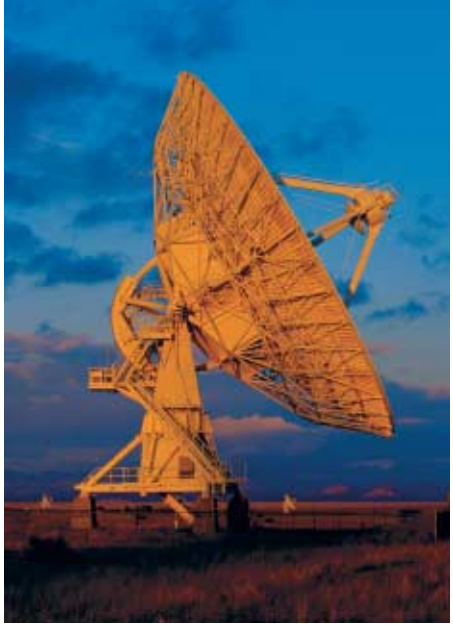


Figure 6 ▶ Radio telescopes, such as this one at the National Radio Astronomy Observatory in New Mexico, provide scientists with information about objects in space.

Telescopes for Invisible Electromagnetic Radiation

Each type of electromagnetic radiation provides scientists with information about objects in space. Scientists have developed telescopes that detect invisible radiation. For example, a radio telescope, such as the one shown in **Figure 6,** detects radio waves. There are also telescopes that detect gamma rays, X rays, and infrared rays.

One problem with using telescopes to detect invisible electromagnetic radiation is that Earth's atmosphere acts as a shield against many forms of electromagnetic radiation. Water vapor can prevents the gamma rays, X rays, and most of the infrared and ultraviolet rays from reaching Earth's surface. So, ground-based telescopes that are used to study these forms of radiation work best at high elevations, where the air is dry. But the only way to study many forms of radiation is from space.

Space-Based Astronomy

While ground-based telescopes have been critical in helping astronomers learn about the universe, valuable information has also come from spacecraft. Spacecraft that contain telescopes and other instruments have been launched to investigate planets, stars, and other distant objects. In space, Earth's atmosphere cannot interfere with the detection of electromagnetic radiation.

Reading Check **Why do scientists launch spacecraft beyond Earth's atmosphere? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Connection to **ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE**

Light Pollution

About 6,000 stars shine brightly enough to be seen with the unaided eye. Of those, about half are above the horizon at a time. But we can see those 3,000 stars only if the sky is very dark. Most people, however, live in or close to cities, where street lighting and other lighting casts a glow into the sky. This glow masks the fainter stars. In big cities, you may see only a handful of stars, instead of thousands!

The glow in the sky that obstructs our view of the stars is known as *light pollution*. Light pollution not only affects humans but also affects animals. Near the ocean, for example, street lighting can affect where and whether turtles come ashore to lay their eggs. On the beaches of Florida's developed coastline, bright lights may discourage female leatherback and green turtles from coming ashore to nest.

In recent years, efforts have been made to reduce light pollution. Reflectors on tops of streetlights would keep the light aimed at the ground instead of into the sky. Reflectors would also reduce wasted electricity. Outdoor house lights and floodlights in parking lots can be directed downward to decrease light pollution. Turning off outdoor lighting when it is not needed, such as when businesses are closed, also contributes to limiting light pollution. Taking steps such as these can improve the view of the night sky without compromising safety in our neighborhoods.

Figure 7 ▶ The *Hubble Space Telescope* is in orbit around Earth, where the telescope can detect visible and nonvisible electromagnetic radiation without the obstruction of Earth's atmosphere.

Space Telescopes

The *Hubble Space Telescope,* shown in **Figure 7,** is an example of a telescope that has been launched into space to collect electromagnetic radiation from objects in space. Another example, the *Chandra X-ray Observatory* makes remarkably clear images using X rays from objects in space, such as the remnants of exploded stars. The *Compton Gamma Ray Observatory* is no longer in space, but it detected gamma rays from objects, such as black holes. The *Spitzer Space Telescope* was launched in 2003 to detect infrared radiation. The *James Webb Space Telescope* is scheduled to be launched in 2011. When deployed in space, this telescope will detect infrared radiation from objects in space.

Other Spacecraft

Since the early 1960s, spacecraft have been sent out of Earth's orbit to study other planets. Launched in 1977, the *Voyager 1* and *Voyager 2* spacecraft investigated Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune. These two spacecraft collected images of these planets and their moons. The *Galileo* spacecraft was in orbit around Jupiter and its moons from 1995 to 2003. This spacecraft gathered information about the composition of Jupiter's atmosphere and storm systems, which are several times larger than Earth's storm systems. The *Cassini-Huygens* spacecraft was launched in 1997, as shown in **Figure 8,** and began orbiting Saturn in 2004. In December 2004, the *Huygens* probe is scheduled to be detached from the *Cassini* orbiter to study the atmosphere of Titan, Saturn's largest moon. Like Earth, Titan has an atmosphere that is rich in nitrogen. Scientists hope to learn more about the origins of Earth by studying Titan.

Figure 8 ▶ On October 15, 1997, the *Cassini-Huygens* spacecraft was launched atop a Titan IV-Centaur rocket system. The spacecraft's journey to Saturn, which the spacecraft now orbits, took 7 years and covered 2.2 billion miles.

Figure 9 ▶ Astronaut Jerry L. Ross conducts space assembly experiments while anchored to the foot restraint on the remote manipulator system on the space shuttle.

Human Space Exploration

Spacecraft that carry only instruments and computers are described as *robotic*. These spacecraft can explore space and travel beyond the solar system. Crewed spacecraft, or those that carry humans, have never gone beyond Earth's moon.

The first humans went into space in the 1960s. Between 1969 and 1972, NASA landed 12 people on the moon. Now, crewed spaceflights only orbit Earth. Flights, such as those aboard the space shuttles, allow people to release or repair satellites and to perform scientific experiments, as shown in **Figure 9.**

Eventually, NASA would like to send people to explore Mars. However, such a voyage would be expensive, difficult, and dangerous. The loss of two space shuttles and their crews, the *Challenger* in 1986 and the *Columbia* in 2003, have focused public attention on the risks of human space exploration.

Spinoffs of the Space Program

Space programs have brought benefits to areas outside of the field of astronomy. Satellites in orbit provide information about weather all over Earth. This information helps scientists make accurate weather predictions days in advance. Other satellites broadcast television signals from around the world or allow people to navigate cars and airplanes. Inventing ways to make objects smaller and lighter so that they can go into space has also led to improved electronics. These technological developments have been applied to radios, televisions, and other equipment. Even medical equipment has benefited from space programs. For example, heart pumps have been improved based on NASA's research on the flow of fluids through rockets.

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** characteristics of the universe in terms of time, distance, and organization.
2. **Identify** the parts of the electromagnetic spectrum, both visible and invisible.
3. **Explain** how astronomers use electromagnetic radiation to study space.
4. **Compare** reflecting telescopes and refracting telescopes.
5. **Explain** how a radio telescope differs from an optical telescope.
6. **Identify** two examples of space telescopes and two examples of probes.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Identifying Relationships** Using the development of reflecting telescopes as an example, explain how scientific inquiry leads to advances in technology.
8. **Analyzing Processes** Human space exploration is expensive and dangerous. Should NASA continue human spaceflight?

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *electromagnetic radiation, reflecting telescope, refracting telescope, telescope, probe, astronomy, universe,* Voyager, and Cassini.

Section 2 Movements of Earth

Understanding the basic motions of Earth helps scientists understand the motions of other bodies in the solar system and the universe. These movements of Earth are also responsible for the seasons and the changes in weather.

The Rotating Earth

The spinning of Earth on its axis is called **rotation.** Each complete rotation takes about one day. The most observable effects of Earth's rotation on its axis are day and night. As Earth rotates from west to east, the sun appears to rise in the east in the morning. The sun then appears to cross the sky and set in the west. At any given moment, the hemisphere of Earth that faces the sun experiences daylight. At the same time, the hemisphere of Earth that faces away from the sun experiences nighttime.

The Foucault Pendulum

In the 19th century, the scientist Jean-Bernard-Leon Foucault, provided evidence of Earth's rotation by using a pendulum. He created a long, heavy pendulum that rocks back and forth by attaching a wire to the ceiling and then attaching a weight to the wire. Throughout the day, the bob would swing back and forth. The path of the pendulum appeared to change over time. However, it was the floor that was moving while the pendulum's path stayed constant. Because the floor was attached to Earth, one can conclude that Earth rotates. A Foucault pendulum is shown in **Figure 1.**

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** two lines of evidence for Earth's rotation.
- **Explain** how the change in apparent positions of constellations provides evidence of Earth's rotation and revolution around the sun.
- **Summarize** how Earth's rotation and revolution provide a basis for measuring time.
- **Explain** how the tilt of Earth's axis and Earth's movement cause seasons.

KEY TERMS

rotation
revolution
perihelion
aphelion
equinox
solstice

rotation the spin of a body on its axis

Figure 1 ▶ The 12 ft arc of this Foucault pendulum in Spokane, Washington, appears to change throughout the day. However, the path of the pendulum does not actually change. Instead, Earth moves the floor as Earth rotates on its axis.

QuickLAB 10 min

Modeling a Pendulum

Procedure

1. Use a **yo-yo,** or tie a **small object** at one end of a **length of string for a pendulum.**
2. Hold the end of the string in your fingers, and swing the pendulum.
3. Twist the string in your fingers as you allow the pendulum to continue swinging.

Analysis

1. Does the direction in which the yo-yo swings change?
2. Does the yo-yo twist around with the string?
3. How does this experiment differ from the Foucault pendulum?

The Coriolis Effect

Evidence of the rotation of Earth can also be seen in the movment of ocean surface currents and wind belts. Ocean currents and wind belts do not move in a straight path. The rotation of Earth causes ocean currents and wind belts to be deflected to the right in the Northern Hemisphere. In the Southern Hemisphere, ocean currents and wind belts deflect to the left. This curving of the path of wind belts and ocean currents is caused by Earth's rotation and is called the *Coriolis effect*.

The Revolving Earth

As Earth spins on its axis, Earth also revolves around the sun. Even though you cannot feel Earth moving, it is traveling around the sun at an average speed of 29.8 km/s. The motion of a body that travels around another body in space is called **revolution.** Each complete revolution of Earth around the sun takes 365 1/4 days, or about one year.

Earth's Orbit

The path that a body follows as it travels around another body in space is called an *orbit*. Earth's orbit around the sun is not quite a circle. Earth's orbit is an ellipse. An *ellipse* is a closed curve whose shape is determined by two points, or foci, within the ellipse. In planetary orbits, one focus is located within the sun. No object may be located at the other focus.

Because its orbit is an ellipse, Earth is not always the same distance from the sun. The point in the orbit of a planet at which the planet is closest to the sun is the **perihelion.** The point in the orbit of a planet at which the planet is farthest from the sun is the **aphelion** (uh FEE lee uhn). As shown in **Figure 2,** Earth's aphelion distance is 152 million km. Its perihelion distance is 147 million km.

revolution the motion of a body that travels around another body in space; one complete trip along an orbit

perihelion the point in the orbit of a planet at which the planet is closest to the sun

aphelion the point in the orbit of a planet at which the planet is farthest from the sun

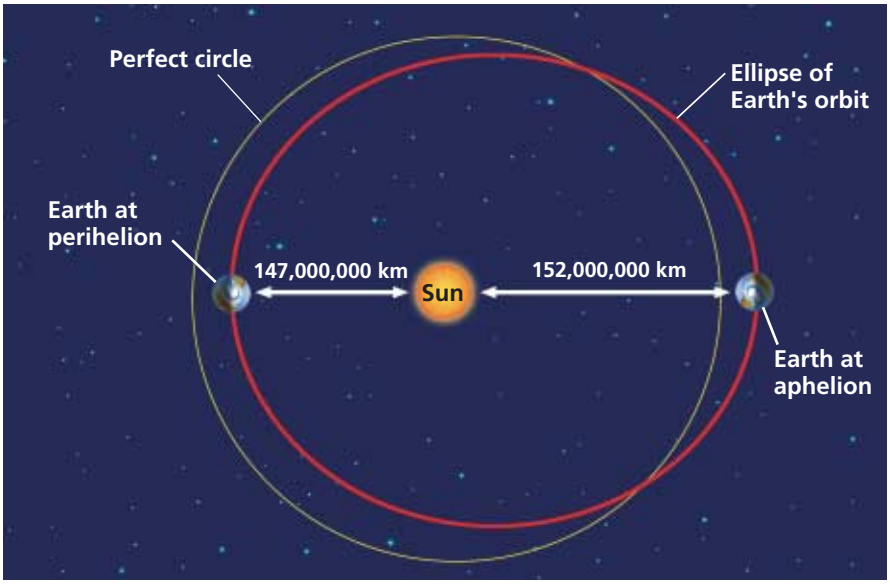


Figure 2 ▶ As Earth revolves around its elliptical orbit, the planet is farthest from the sun in July and closest to the sun in January. The elliptical orbit in this illustration has been exaggerated for emphasis.

Constellations and Earth's Motion

Evidence of Earth's revolution and rotation around the sun can be seen in the motion of constellations. A *constellation* is a group of stars that are organized in a recognizable pattern. In 1930, the International Astronomical Union divided the sky into 88 constellations. Many of the names given to these constellations came from the ancient Greeks more than 2,000 years ago. Taurus, the bull, and Orion, the hunter, are some examples of names from Greek mythology that have been given to constellations.

Evidence of Earth's Rotation

If you gaze up at a constellation in the evening sky over a period of several hours, you may notice that the constellation appears to have changed its position in the sky. However, the constellation's movement has not caused the constellation's change in position. The rotation of Earth on its axis causes the change in position. Thus, Earth is moving, and the constellation is not moving.

Evidence of Earth's Revolution

A constellation's position in the evening sky will change not only because of Earth's rotation but also because of Earth's revolution around the sun. Over a period of several weeks, at the same time of the evening, a constellation's position will appear to change, as shown in **Figure 3.** But Earth's revolution around the sun causes the constellation to have different positions in the evening sky over a period of several weeks. As Earth revolves around the sun, the night side of Earth faces a different direction of the universe. Thus, different constellations will appear in the night sky as the seasons change.

Reading Check **How does the movement of constellations provide evidence of Earth's rotation and revolution? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

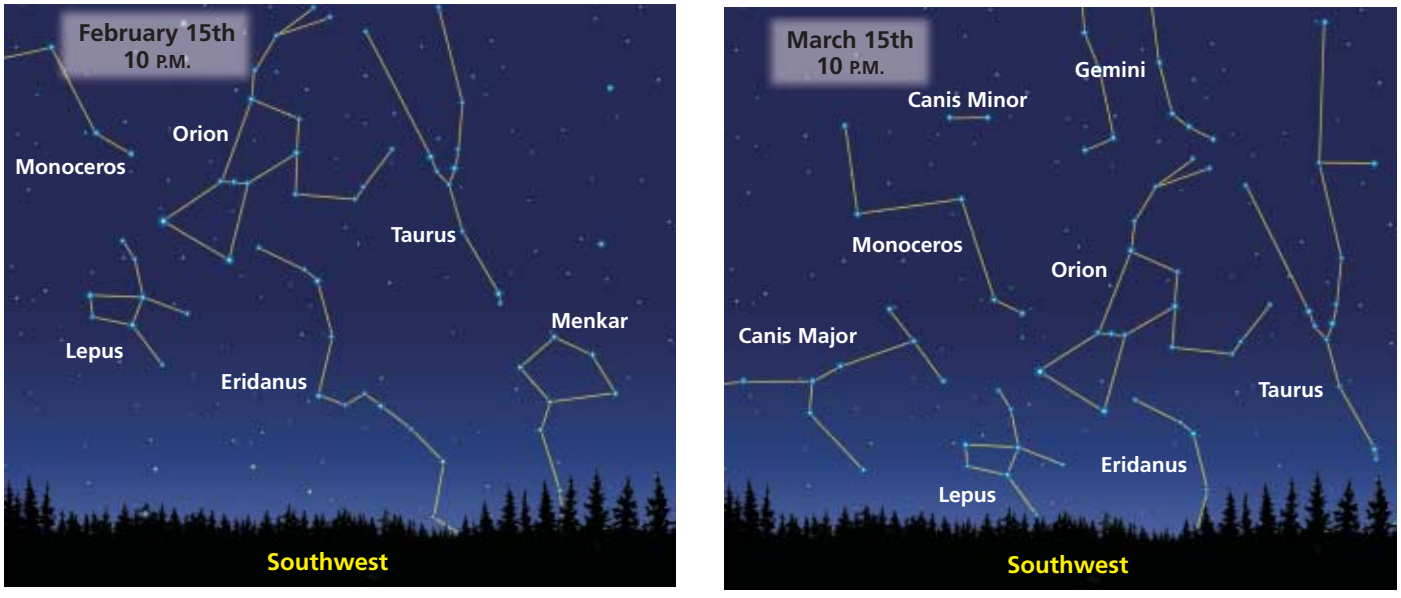


Figure 3 ▶ In one month's period, the position of the constellations in the sky seen from Denver, Colorado, at 10 PM change because of the revolution of Earth.

Figure 4 ▶ This is a reconstruction of a stone calendar that the Aztecs created to help determine when to plant crops.

Measuring Time

Earth's motion provides the basis for measuring time. For example, the day and year are based on periods of Earth's motion. The day is determined by Earth's rotation on its axis. Each complete rotation of Earth on its axis takes one day, which is then broken into 24 hours.

The year is determined by Earth's revolution around the sun. Each complete revolution of Earth around the sun takes 365 1/4 days, or one year.

A month is based on the moon's motion around Earth. A month was originally determined by the period between successive full moons, which is 29.5 days. The word *month* actually comes from the word *moon*. However, the number of full moons in a year is not a whole number. Therefore, a month is now determined as roughly one-twelfth of a year.

Formation of the Calendar

A *calendar* is a system created for measuring long intervals of time by dividing time into periods of days, weeks, months, and years. Many ancient civilizations created versions of calendars based on astronomical cycles. The ancient Egyptians were the first to use a calendar based on a solar year. The Babylonians used a 12 month lunar year. The Aztecs, who lived in what is now Mexico, also created a calendar, which is shown in **Figure 4.**

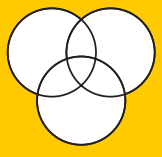
Because the year is 365 1/4 days long, the extra 1/4 day is usually ignored to make the number of days on a calendar a whole number. To keep the calendars on the same schedule as Earth's movements, we must account for the extra time. So, every four years, one day is added to the month of February. Any year that contains an extra day is called a *leap year.*

More than 2,000 years ago, Julius Caesar, of the Roman Empire, revised the calendar so that an extra day every four years was added. His successor, Augustus Caesar, made the extra day come at the end of the shortest month, February. He also made July and August long months with 31 days each.

Graphic Organizer

Venn Diagram

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Venn Diagram" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the circles with "Day," "Month," and "Year." Then, fill in the diagram with characteristics that each period of time shares with the other periods of time.



The Modern Calendar

Because the year is not exactly 365 1/4 days long, over centuries, the calendar gradually became misaligned with the seasons. In the late 1500s, Pope Gregory XIII formed a committee to create a calendar that would keep the calendar aligned with the seasons. We use this calendar today. In this Gregorian calendar, century years, such as 1800 and 1900, are not leap years unless the century years are exactly divisible by 400. Thus, 2000 was a leap year even though it was a century year. However, 2100, 2200, and 2300 will not be leap years.

Time Zones

Using the sun as the basis for measuring time, we define noon as the time when the sun is highest in the sky. Because of Earth's rotation, the sun is highest above different locations on Earth at different times of day. Earth's surface has been divided into 24 standard time zones, as shown in **Figure 5,** to avoid problems created by different local times. In each zone, noon is set as the time when the sun is highest over the center of that zone. Because Earth is nearly spherical, its circumference equals 360°. If you divide 360° by the 24 hours needed for one rotation, you find that Earth rotates at a rate of 15° per hour. Therefore, each of Earth's 24 standard time zones covers about 15°. The time in each zone is one hour earlier than the time in the zone to the east of each zone.

International Date Line

There are 24 standard time zones and 24 hours in a day. But there must be some point on Earth's surface where the date changes. The *International Date Line* was established to prevent confusion. The International Date Line is a line that runs from north to south through the Pacific Ocean. When it is Friday west of the International Date Line, it is Thursday east of the line. The line is drawn so that it does not cut through islands or continents. Thus, everyone living within one country has the same date. Note where the line is drawn between Alaska and Siberia in **Figure 5.**

Reading Check **What is the purpose of the International Date Line? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

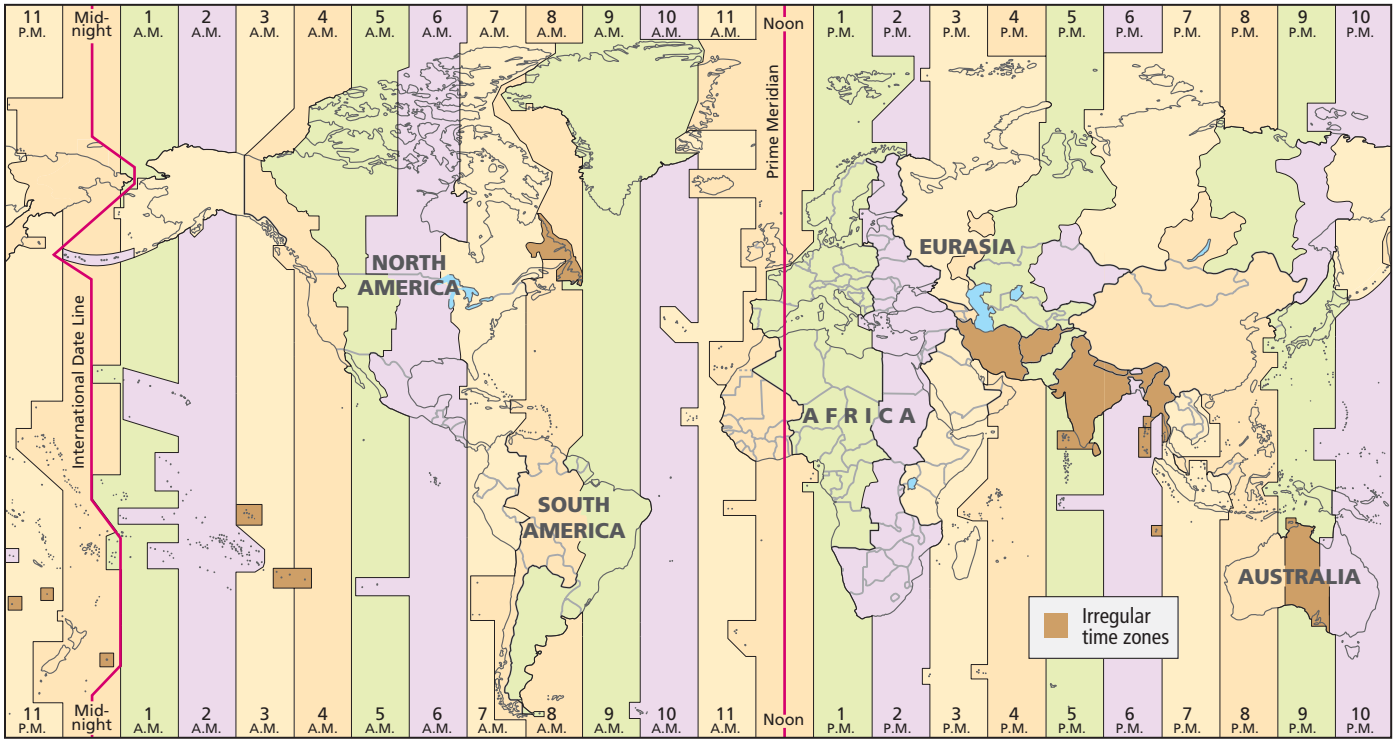


Figure 5 ▶ Earth has been divided into 24 standard time zones. Irregular time zones may differ between 15 to 45 minutes compared to regular time zones. ***At 6 P.M. on the east coast of South America what time is it on the west coast of South America?***

Daylight Savings Time

Because of the tilt of Earth's axis, daylight time is shorter in the winter months than in the summer months. During the summer months, days are longer so that the sun rises earlier in the morning when many people are still sleeping. To take advantage of that daylight time, the United States uses *daylight savings time*. Under this system, clocks are set one hour ahead of standard time in April, which provides an additional hour of daylight during the evening. The additional hour also saves energy because the use of electricity decreases. In October, clocks are set back one hour to return to standard time. Countries in the equatorial region do not observe daylight savings time because there are not significant changes in the amount of daylight time in the equatorial region. Daylight is about 12 hours every day of the year.

The Seasons

Earth's axis is tilted at 23.5°. As Earth revolves around the sun, Earth's axis always points toward the North Star. Thus, during each revolution, the North Pole sometimes tilts toward the sun and sometimes tilts away from the sun, as shown in **Figure 6.** When the North Pole tilts toward the sun, the Northern Hemisphere has longer periods of daylight than the Southern Hemisphere does. When the North Pole tilts away from the sun, the Southern Hemisphere has longer periods of daylight.

The angle at which the sun's rays strike each part of Earth's surface changes as Earth moves through its orbit. When the North Pole tilts toward the sun, the sun's rays strike the Northern Hemisphere at a high angle. When the North Pole tilts away from the sun, the sun's rays strike the Northern Hemisphere at a low angle. When the sun's rays strike Earth at a high angle, the area receives a high concentration of solar energy.

Reading Check **What is daylight savings time? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

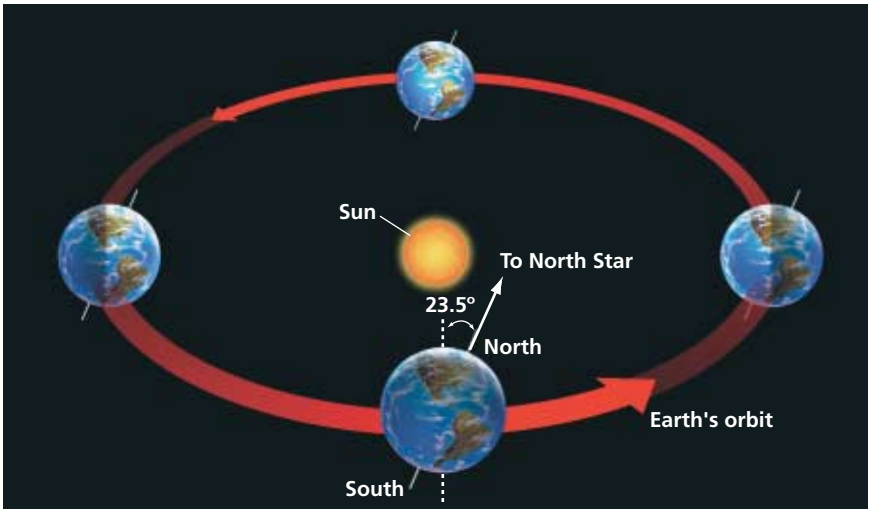


Figure 6 ▶ The direction of tilt of Earth's axis remains the same throughout Earth's orbit around the sun. Thus, the Northern Hemisphere is closer to the sun during summer months and farther from the sun during winter months.

Seasonal Weather

Changes in the angle at which the sun's rays strike Earth's surface cause the seasons. When the North Pole tilts away from the sun, the angle of the sun's rays falling on the Northern Hemisphere is low. As a result, the sun's rays spread solar energy over a large area, which leads to lower temperatures. The tilt of the North Pole away from the sun also causes the Northern Hemisphere to experience fewer daylight hours. Fewer daylight hours also mean less energy and lower temperatures. Lower temperatures cause the winter seasons. At the time, the Northern Hemisphere tilts away from the sun, the Southern Hemisphere tilts toward the sun. The sun's rays strike the Southern Hemisphere at a greater angle than they do in the Northern Hemisphere, and there are more daylight hours in the Southern Hemisphere. Therefore, the Southern Hemisphere experiences the warm summer season.

Equinoxes

The seasons fall and spring begin on days called equinoxes. An **equinox** is the moment when the sun appears to cross the celestial equator. The *celestial equator* is a line drawn on the sky directly overhead from the equator on Earth. At an equinox, the sun's rays strike Earth at a 90° angle along the equator. The hours of daylight and darkness are approximately equal everywhere on Earth on that day. The *autumnal equinox* occurs on September 22 or 23 of each year and marks the beginning of fall in the Northern Hemisphere. The *vernal equinox* occurs on March 21 or 22 of each year and marks the beginning of spring in the Northern Hemisphere.

equinox the moment when the sun appears to cross the celestial equator

QuickLAB 10 min

The Angle of the Sun's Rays

Procedure

1. Turn the lights down low or off in the classroom.
2. Place a **piece of paper** on the floor. Hold a **flashlight** 1 m above the paper, and shine the light of the flashlight straight down on the piece of paper.
3. Have a partner outline the perimeter of the circle of light cast by the flashlight on the paper. Label the circle "90° angle." Place a clean piece of paper on the floor.
4. At a height of 1/2 m from the floor, shine the light of the flashlight on the paper at an angle. Make sure the distance between the flashlight and the paper is 1 m.
5. Have a partner outline the perimeter of the circle of light cast by the flashlight on the paper. Label the circle "low angle."

Analysis

1. Compare the two circles drawn in steps 3 and 5. Which circle concentrates the light in a smaller area?
2. Which circle would most likely model the sun's rays striking Earth during the summer season?

Figure 7 ▶ In the Northern Hemisphere, the sun appears to follow its highest path across the sky on the summer solstice and its lowest path across the sky on the winter solstice.

solstice the point at which the sun is as far north or as far south of the equator as possible

Summer Solstices

The seasons of summer and winter begin on days called **solstices.** Each year on June 21 or 22, the North Pole's tilt toward the sun is greatest. On this day, the sun's rays strike Earth at a 90° angle along the Tropic of Cancer, which is located at 23.5° north latitude. This day is called the *summer solstice* and marks the beginning of summer in the Northern Hemisphere. *Solstice* means "sun stop" and refers to the fact that in the Northern Hemisphere, the sun follows its highest path across the sky on that day, as shown in **Figure 7.**

The Northern Hemisphere has the most hours of daylight at the summer solstice. The farther north of the equator you are, the longer the period of daylight you have. North of the Arctic Circle, which is located at 66.5° north latitude, there are 24 hours of daylight at the summer solstice. At the other extreme, south of the Antarctic Circle, there are 24 hours of darkness at that time.

Winter Solstices

By December, the North Pole is tilted to the farthest point away from the sun. On December 21 or 22, the sun's rays strike Earth at a 90° angle along the Tropic of Capricorn, which is located at 23.5° south latitude. This day is called the *winter solstice*. It marks the beginning of winter in the Northern Hemisphere. At the winter solstice, the Northern Hemisphere has the fewest daylight hours. The sun follows its lowest path across the sky. Places that are north of the Arctic Circle then have 24 hours of darkness. However, places that are south of the Antarctic Circle have 24 hours of daylight at that time.

Section 2 Review

1. **Explain** how the apparent change of position of constellations over time provides evidence of Earth's revolution around the sun.
2. **Describe** two lines of evidence that indicate that Earth is rotating.
3. **Summarize** how movements of Earth provide a basis for measuring time.
4. **Explain** why today's calendars have leap years.
5. **Identify** two advantages in using daylight savings time.
6. **Explain** how the tilt of Earth's axis and Earth's movements cause seasons.
7. **Identify** the position of Earth in relation to the sun that causes winter in the Northern Hemisphere.
8. **Describe** the position of Earth in relation to the sun during the Northern Hemisphere's summer solstice.

CRITICAL THINKING

9. **Understanding Relationships** How can it be that Earth is at perihelion during wintertime in the Northern Hemisphere?
10. **Predicting Consequences** Explain how measurements of time might differ if Earth did not rotate on its axis.

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *revolution, perihelion, aphelion, rotation, ellipse, orbit, rotation, Foucault pendulum, Coriolis effect, Earth,* and *constellation.*

Chapter 26 Highlights

Sections

1 Viewing the Universe

Key Terms

astronomy, 659
galaxy, 660
astronomical unit, 660
electromagnetic spectrum, 661
telescope, 662
refracting telescope, 663
reflecting telescope, 663

Key Concepts

- The universe formed about 14 billion years ago in a giant explosion and has been expanding since that time.
- The electromagnetic spectrum contains all of the frequencies or wavelengths of electromagnetic radiation. Scientists use this radiation to study the universe.
- Refracting telescopes use lenses to gather and focus light, while reflecting telescopes use curved mirrors to gather and focus light.
- Space programs have led to improved technology in areas such as airplane navigation, weather forecasting, and medical equipment.

2 Movements of Earth

rotation, 667
revolution, 668
perihelion, 668
aphelion, 668
equinox, 673
solstice, 674

- Earth's rotation is evidenced by the change from day to night, the apparent motion of constellations, the Foucault pendulum, and the Coriolis effect.
- Earth's revolution around the sun is evidenced by the apparent motion of constellations.
- Movements of Earth provide a basis for measuring time. One revolution of Earth around the sun is equal to one year. One rotation of Earth on its axis is equal to one day.
- The angle of the sun's rays changes throughout the year and leads to seasonal change on Earth's surface.

Chapter 26 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *electromagnetic spectrum*
2. *galaxy*
3. *perihelion*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *reflecting telescope* and *refracting telescope*
5. *solstice* and *equinox*
6. *rotation* and *revolution*

Understanding Key Concepts

7. Stars organized into a pattern are
   a. perihelions. **c.** constellations.
   b. satellites. **d.** telescopes.

8. Days are caused by Earth's
   a. perihelion. **c.** revolution.
   b. aphelion. **d.** rotation.

9. The seasons are caused by
   a. Earth's distance from the sun.
   b. the angle of Earth's axis.
   c. the sun's temperature.
   d. the calendar.

10. Which of the following is a tool that is used by astronomers to study radiation?
    a. a computer model
    b. a ground-based telescope
    c. a Foucault pendulum
    d. a calendar

11. Which of the following is evidence of Earth's revolution?
    a. the Foucault pendulum
    b. the Coriolis effect
    c. night and day
    d. constellation movement

12. Which of the following forms of radiation can be shielded by Earth's atmosphere?
    a. gamma rays
    b. radio waves
    c. visible light
    d. All of the above

13. Which of the following is not a space telescope?
    a. *Hubble Space Telescope*
    b. *Chandra X-ray Observatory*
    c. *Challenger*
    d. *Spitzer Space Telescope*

14. Which of the following marks the beginning of spring in the Northern Hemisphere?
    a. vernal equinox
    b. autumnol equinox
    c. summer solstice
    d. winter solstice

15. Which of the following is evidence of Earth's rotation?
    a. the Foucault pendulum
    b. day and night
    c. the Coriolis effect
    d. All of the above

Short Answer

16. Which two forms of electromagnetic radiation have the shortest wavelengths?

17. What is an advantage of using orbiting telescopes rather than ground-based telescopes?

18. Why does the rotation of Earth require people to establish time zones?

19. What is a leap year, and what purpose does it serve?

20. What line on Earth's surface marks where the date changes?

21. How does the tilt of Earth's axis cause the seasons?

Critical Thinking

22. Evaluating Data If telescopes had not been developed, how would our knowledge of the universe be different?

23. Analyzing Ideas In each time zone, it gets dark earlier on the eastern side of the zone than on the western side. Explain why.

24. Applying Ideas How would seasons be different if Earth was not tilted on its axis?

25. Making Inferences What limitation of a refracting telescope could be overcome by placing the telescope in space? Explain your answer.

Concept Mapping

26. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *Galileo, probe, telescope, constellation, rotation, revolution, Foucault pendulum, Coriolis effect, equinox, solstice,* and *astronomy.*

Math Skills

27. Making Calculations A certain star is 1.135×10^{14} km away from Earth. If light travels at 9.4607×10^{12} km per year, how long will it take for light from the star to reach Earth?

28. Applying Quantities At aphelion, Earth is 152,000,000 km from the sun. At perihelion, the two bodies are 147,000,000 km apart. What is the difference in kilometers between Earth's farthest point from the sun and Earth's closest point to the sun?

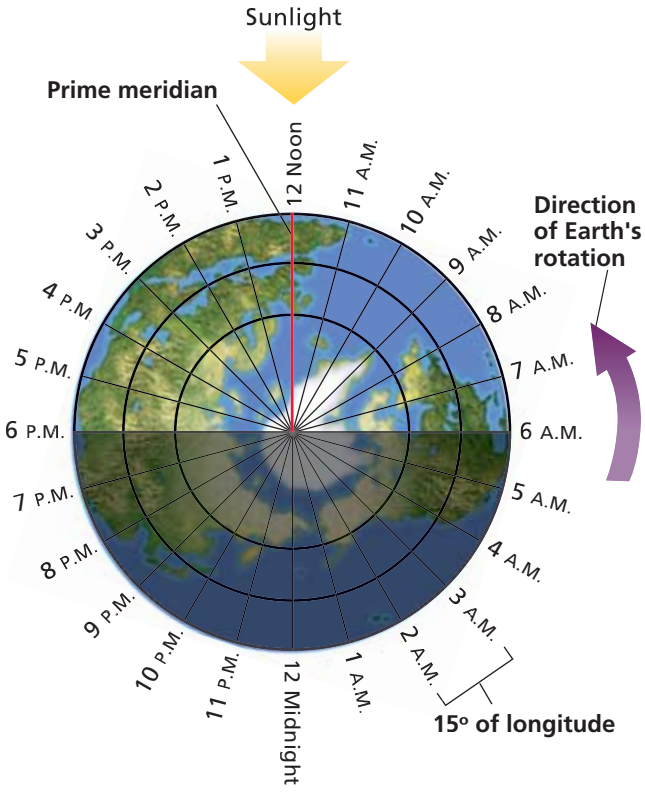
Writing Skills

29. Creative Writing Imagine that you are the head of a space program that has created the first orbiting telescope. Write a press release that explains to the public why your space agency has spent billions of dollars to build and launch a space telescope.

30. Communicating Main Ideas Explain how the Foucault pendulum and the Coriolis effect provide evidence of Earth's rotation.

Interpreting Graphics

The diagram below shows the different time zones of the world by looking down at the North Pole. Use the diagram to answer the questions that follow.



31. If it is 6 P.M. at the prime meridian, what is the time on the opposite side of the world?

32. On the diagram, it is 9 P.M. in Japan and 2 A.M. in Alaska. How many degrees apart are Alaska and Japan?

33. If it is 6 A.M. in Alaska, what time is it in Japan?

34. How many hours are in 120°?

Chapter 26 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 Earth is closest to the sun at which of the following points in its orbit?

A. aphelion
B. perihelion
C. an equinox
D. a solstice

2 What object is located at one of the focus points for the orbit of each planet in the solar system?

F. Earth is located at one of the focus points in the orbit of each planet in the solar system.
G. A moon of each planet is located at one of the focus points in that planet's orbit.
H. The sun is one of the focus points in the orbit of each planet in the solar system.
I. The orbits of the planets do not share any common focus points.

3 Earth revolves around the sun about once every

A. 1 hour
B. 24 hours
C. 1 month
D. 365 days

4 Which of the following statements describes the position of Earth during the equinoxes?

F. The North Pole tilts 23.5° toward the sun.
G. The South Pole tilts 23.5° toward the sun.
H. Rays from the sun strike the equator at a 90° angle.
I. Earth's axis tilts 90° and points directly at the sun.

5 Which of the following statements about the electromagnetic spectrum is true?

A. It moves slower than the speed of light.
B. It consists of waves of varying lengths.
C. The shortest wavelengths are orange and red.
D. Scientists can only detect waves of visible light.

Directions (6–8): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 In what year did NASA first land astronauts on the moon?

7 What is the term that describes a spacecraft sent from Earth to another planet?

8 How does the wavelength of gamma rays compare to the wavelength of visible light?

Reading Skills

Directions (9–10): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

The Chandler Wobble

In 1891, an American astronomer named Seth Carlo Chandler, Jr., discovered that Earth "wobbles" as it spins on its axis. This change in the spin of Earth's axis, known as the Chandler wobble, can be visualized if you imagine that Earth is penetrated by an enormous pen at the South Pole. This pen emerges at the North Pole and draws the pattern of rotation of Earth on its axis on a gigantic paper placed directly at the tip of the pen. If Earth did not have a wobble, you would expect the pen to draw a dot as Earth rotated on its axis. Because of the wobble, however, the pen draws a small circle. Over the course of 14 months, the pen will draw a spiral.

While the exact cause of the Chandler wobble is not known, scientists believe that it is related to the movement of the liquid center of Earth or to fluctuating pressure at the bottom of the ocean. This wobble affects celestial navigation. Because of the wobble, navigators' star charts must reflect new reference points for the North Pole and South Pole every 14 months.

9 Because of the Chandler wobble, celestial navigators must chart new reference points for the poles every 14 months. Changes in determining the location of the North Pole by using a compass are not required. Why?

A. Compasses point to Earth's magnetic north pole, not Earth's geographic North Pole.
B. Compasses automatically adapt and move with the wobble.
C. The wobble is related to stellar movements.
D. The wobble improves compass accuracy.

10 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?

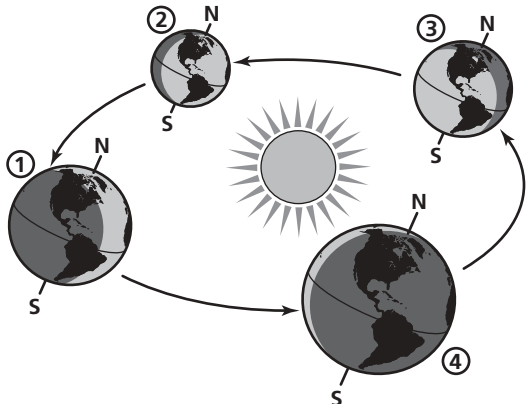
F. Earth's axis moves once every 14 months.
G. The Chandler wobble prevents the liquid center of Earth from solidifying.
H. The Chandler wobble causes the oceans to move and fluctuate in pressure.
I. To locate a star, scientists must account for the wobble when using telescopes.

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–14): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagram below shows the position of Earth during the four seasons. Use this diagram to answer questions 11 and 12.

Seasons and Tilt



11 The Northern Hemisphere tilts toward the sun during which season?

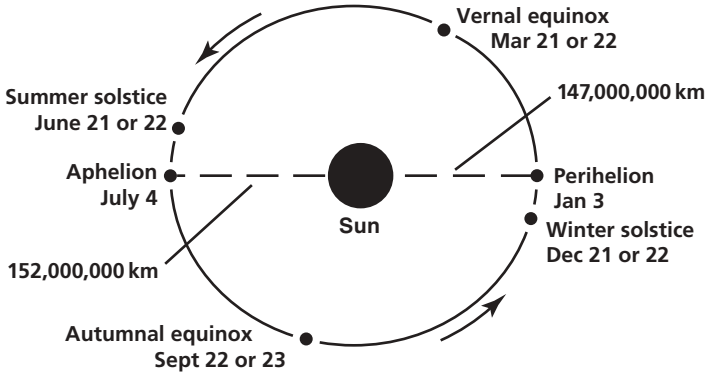
A. winter
B. spring
C. summer
D. fall

12 The Northern Hemisphere experiences a vernal equinox when it is at which of the following positions on the diagram?

F. position 1
G. position 2
H. position 3
I. position 4

The diagram below shows the dates of specific events in Earth's orbit around the sun. Use this diagram to answer questions 13 and 14.

Orbit of Earth Around the Sun



13 Use the diagram to describe the shape of Earth's orbit around the sun, and explain how the solstices differ from the aphelion and perihelion.

14 What is the relationship between Earth and the sun on March 21 or 22? Compare this relationship with the relationship between Earth and the sun on September 22 or 23?

Test TIP

Keep an eye on your time limit. If you begin to run short on time, quickly read the remaining questions to which questions might be the easiest for you to answer.

Chapter 26

Inquiry Lab

Using Scientific Methods

Earth-Sun Motion

Objectives

- **Design** an experiment to measure the movement of Earth.
- **Analyze** the effectiveness of your experimental design.
- **Demonstrate** how shadows can be used to measure time.

Materials

board, wooden, 20 cm × 30 cm
clock or watch
compass, magnetic
dowel, 30 cm long, 1/4 in. diameter
paper, lined
pencil
ruler, metric
tape, masking

During the course of a day, the sun moves across the sky. This motion is due to Earth's rotation. In ancient times, one of the earliest devices used by people to study the sun's motion was the shadow stick. The shadow stick is a primitive form of a sundial. Before clocks were invented, sundials were one of the only means of telling time.

In this lab, you will use a shadow stick to identify how changes in a shadow are related to Earth's rotation. You will also determine how a shadow stick can be used to measure time.

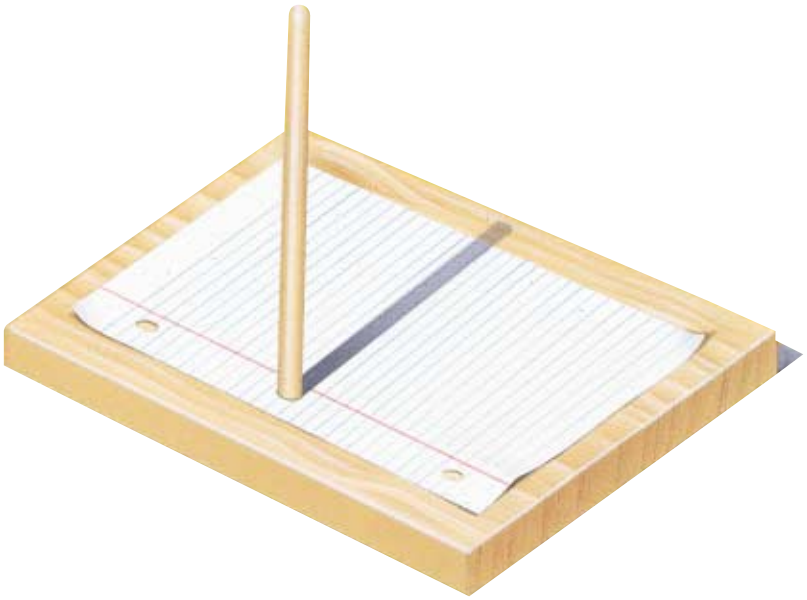
ASK A QUESTION

1. How can I measure the movement of Earth?

FORM A HYPOTHESIS

2. With a partner, build a shadow stick apparatus that is similar to the one in the illustration on the following page. Brainstorm with your partner a way in which you can use the apparatus in an experiment to measure the movement of Earth for 30 minutes. Write a few sentences that describe your design and your hypothesis about how this experiment will measure Earth's motion.

Step 2



TEST THE HYPOTHESIS

3. When you complete your experimental design, have your teacher approve your design before you begin.
CAUTION Never look directly at the sun.
4. Follow your design to set up and to complete your experiment.
5. Take measurements every 5 min, and record this information in a data table.

ANALYZE THE RESULTS

1. **Analyzing Data** In what direction did the sun appear to move in the 30 min period?
2. **Evaluating Methods** If you made your shadow stick half as long, would its shadow move the same distance in 30 min? Explain your answer.
3. **Evaluating Methods** Would you make any changes to your experimental design? Explain your answer.

DRAW CONCLUSIONS

4. **Drawing Conclusions** In what direction does Earth rotate?
5. **Applying Conclusions** How might a shadow stick be used to tell time?

Extension

1. **Evaluating Methods**
Repeat this lab at different hours of the day. Perform the lab early in the morning, early in the afternoon, and early in the evening. Record the results and any differences that you observe. Explain how shadow sticks can be used to tell direction.

MAPS in Action

Light Sources

Map Skills Activity

This image of Earth as seen from space at night shows light sources that are almost all created by humans. The image is a composite image made from hundreds of nighttime images taken by orbiting satellites. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Comparing Areas** Some climatic conditions on Earth, such as extreme cold, heat, wetness, or a thin atmosphere, make parts of our planet less habitable than other parts. Examples of areas on our planet that do not support large populations include deserts, high mountains, polar regions, and tropical rain forests. Using the image, identify regions of Earth where climatic conditions may not be able to support large human populations.
2. **Inferring Relationships** Using a map of the world and the brightness of the light sources on the image as a key, identify the locations of some of the most densely populated areas on Earth.
3. **Finding Locations** Many large cities are seaports on the coastlines of the world's oceans. By using the image, can you look along coastlines and locate light sources that might indicate the sites of large ports? Using a map of the world, name some of these cities.
4. **Inferring Relationships** By looking at the differences in the density of the light sources on the map, can you locate any borders between countries? Identify the countries on both sides of these borders.

Landsat Maps of Earth

Landsat satellites have been recording images of Earth for more than three decades. In that time, these Earth-scanning satellites have logged more than a million images. As Landsat satellites periodically rescan regions, the satellites create a visual history of Earth's changing landscapes.

Say Cheese!

Landsat images resemble aerial photographs. Each image records about 30,000 km^2 of Earth's surface. Landsat images are not ordinary photographs, however. Each satellite uses a scanning sensor system called a *thematic mapper,* or *TM,* to create images. The TM sensors detect visible light, which is the light recorded by an ordinary camera. The TM sensors also detect other parts of the electromagnetic spectrum that humans cannot see, such as infrared light. This capability gives Landsat images much more detail than conventional photographs have.

Once a satellite sends an image back to Earth, cartographers can use computers to create a thematic map. A thematic map is a map that illustrates a particular subject or feature. Selecting different combinations of data allows cartographers to highlight features such as river deltas, geologic faults, and mineral deposits.

Earth's Changing Surface

Landsat images appeal to Earth scientists in a variety of fields. Landsat images have enabled cartographers to map remote areas of the world. The images have allowed hydrologists to find uncharted lakes. Landsat images have also helped geologists discover oil in the Sudan, tin in Brazil, and copper in Mexico.

Recently, ecologists have begun to use Landsat images to observe changes in Earth's environment. With a series of images of the same region, taken over years, ecologists can monitor the effects of processes such as urbanization, deforestation, and soil erosion. New, useful applications of Landsat satellites may arise as the satellites continue to record Earth's changing surface.

▲ *Landsat 7* is the latest mission in the Landsat series of Earth-observation satellites.

◀ The Ganges River empties into the Bay of Bengal and forms a delta. The delta is covered by a swamp forest known as the Sunderbans.

Extension

1. **Extension** How might cartographers use Landsat images to check the accuracy of maps?

Chapter 27

Planets of the Solar System

Sections

1 Formation of the Solar System

2 Models of the Solar System

3 The Inner Planets

4 The Outer Planets

What You'll Learn

- How the planets of the solar system formed
- How laws of motion govern the movements of planets
- How inner planets differ from outer planets

Why It's Relevant

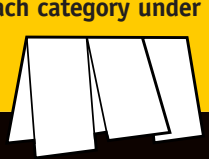
Understanding the formation of the planets provides a basis for understanding Earth's processes.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Three-Panel Flip Chart

Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Three-Panel Flip Chart" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the flaps of the three-panel flip chart with "Inner planets," "Outer planets," and "Exoplanets." As you read the chapter, write information you learn about each category under the appropriate flap.



This composite image shows how the Valles Marineris, a large canyon on the surface of Mars, may look from one of Mars's moons.

Section 1 Formation of the Solar System

The **solar system** consists of the sun and all of the planets and other bodies that revolve around the sun. **Planets** are any of the primary bodies that orbit the sun. Scientists have long debated the origins of the solar system. In the 1600s and 1700s, many scientists thought that the sun formed first and threw off the materials that later formed the planets. But in 1796, the French mathematician Pierre-Simon, marquis de Laplace, advanced a hypothesis that is now known as the *nebular hypothesis*.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** the nebular hypothesis of the origin of the solar system.
- **Describe** how the planets formed.
- **Describe** the formation of the land, the atmosphere, and the oceans of Earth.

KEY TERMS

solar system
planet
solar nebula
planetesimal

The Nebular Hypothesis

Laplace's hypothesis states that the sun and the planets condensed at about the same time out of a rotating cloud of gas and dust called a *nebula*. Modern scientific calculations support Laplace's hypothesis and help explain how the sun and the planets formed from an original nebula of gas and dust.

Matter is spread throughout the universe. Some of this matter gathers into clouds of dust and gas, such as the one shown in **Figure 1.** Almost 5 billion years ago, the amount of gravity near one of these clouds increased as a result of a nearby supernova or other forces. The rotating cloud of dust and gas from which the sun and planets formed is called the **solar nebula.** Energy from collisions and pressure from gravity caused the center of the solar nebula to become hotter and denser. When the temperature at the center became high enough—about 10,000,000°C—hydrogen fusion began. A star, which is now called the sun, or *Sol,* formed. The sun is composed of about 99% of all of the matter that was contained in the solar nebula.

solar system the sun and all of the planets and other bodies that travel around it

planet any of the primary bodies that orbit the sun; a similar body that orbits another star

solar nebula a rotating cloud of gas and dust from which the sun and planets formed; *also* any nebula from which stars and planets may form

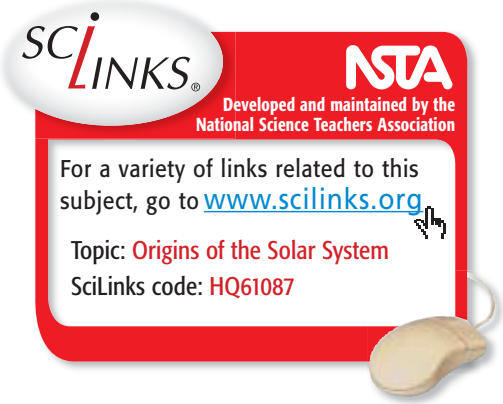
Figure 1 ▶ The Orion nebula is about 1,500 light-years from Earth. Scientists study the nebula to learn about the processes that give birth to stars.

Formation of the Planets

planetesimal a small body from which a planet originated in the early stages of development of the solar system

While the sun was forming in the center of the solar nebula, planets were forming in the outer regions, as shown in **Figure 2.** Small bodies from which a planet originated in the early stages of formation of the solar system are called **planetesimals.** Some planetesimals joined together through collisions and through the force of gravity to form larger bodies called *protoplanets*. The protoplanets' gravity attracted other planetesimals in the solar nebula. These planetesimals collided with the protoplanets and added their masses to the protoplanets.

Eventually, the protoplanets became very large and condensed to form planets and moons. *Moons* are the smaller bodies that orbit the planets. Planets and moons are smaller and denser than the protoplanets.



Formation of the Inner Planets

The features of a newly formed planet depended on the distance between the protoplanet and the developing sun. The four protoplanets closest to the sun became Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars. They contained large percentages of heavy elements, such as iron and nickel. These planets lost their less dense gases because at the temperature of the gases, gravity was not strong enough to hold the gases. Other lighter elements may have been blown or boiled away by radiation from the sun. As the denser material sank to the centers of the planets, layers formed. The less dense material was on the outer part of the planet, and the denser material was at the center. Today, the inner planets have solid surfaces that are similar to Earth's surface. The inner planets are smaller, rockier, and denser than the outer planets.

Figure 2 ▶ The Nebular Model of the Formation of the Solar System

The young solar nebula begins to collapse because of gravity.

As the solar nebula rotates, it flattens and becomes warmer near its center.

Planetesimals begin to form within the swirling disk.

Formation of the Outer Planets

The next four protoplanets became Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune. As a group, these outer planets are very different from the small, rocky inner planets. These outer planets formed in the colder regions of the solar nebula. They were far from the sun and therefore were cold. Thus, they did not lose their lighter elements, such as helium and hydrogen, or their ices, such as water ice, methane ice, and ammonia ice.

At first, thick layers of ice surrounded small cores of heavy elements. However, because of the intense heat and pressure in the planets' interiors, the ices melted to form layers of liquids and gases. Today, these planets are referred to as *gas giants* because they are composed mostly of gases, have low density, and are huge planets. Jupiter, for example, has a density of only 24% of Earth's density but a diameter that is 11 times Earth's diameter.

The Different Planet—Pluto

Pluto is the farthest planet from the sun. Unlike the other outer planets, Pluto is very small. It is actually the smallest of the known planets and is even smaller than Earth's moon. Like the gas giants, Pluto is also very cold. Pluto may be best described as an ice ball that is made of frozen gases and rock.

Recently, astronomers have also discovered hundreds of objects that are similar to Pluto and that exist beyond Neptune's orbit. None of these objects are larger than Pluto, but Pluto is probably one of those objects. Because of this discovery, many scientists think that Pluto does not qualify as a major planet.

Reading Check **How is Pluto different from the other outer planets? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 5 min

Water Planetesimals

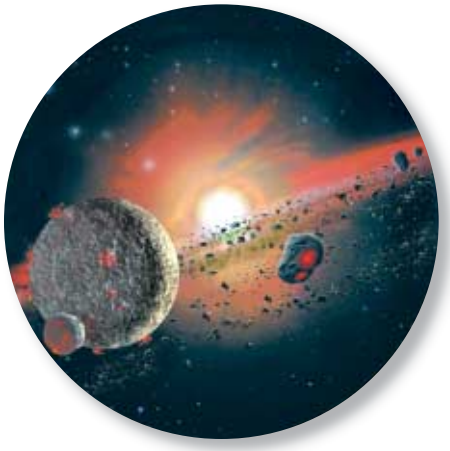
Procedure

1. Use a **medicine dropper** to place two drops of **water** about 3 cm apart on a **piece of wax paper.**
2. Lift one edge of the wax paper so that one drop of water moves toward the other drop until the drops collide.
3. Add a third drop of water to the wax paper. Then, repeat step 2.

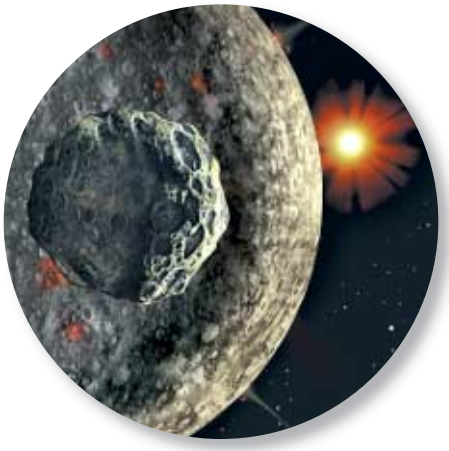
Analysis

1. What happened when the water droplets collided?
2. How does this activity model the formation of protoplanets?

As planetesimals grow, their gravitational pull increases. The largest planetesimals begin to collect more of the gas and dust of the nebula.



Small planetesimals collide with larger ones, and the planets begin to grow.



The excess dust and gas is gradually removed from the solar nebula, which leaves planets around the sun and thus creates a new solar system.

Formation of Solid Earth

When Earth first formed, it was very hot. Three sources of energy contributed to the high temperature on the new planet. First, much of the energy was produced when the planetesimals that formed the planet collided with each other. Second, the increasing weight of Earth's outer layers compressed the inner layers, which generated more energy. Third, radioactive materials that emit high-energy particles were very abundant when Earth formed. When surrounding rocks absorbed these particles, the energy of the particles' motion led to higher temperatures.

Graphic Organizer

Chain-of-Events Chart

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Chain-of-Events Chart" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Then, fill in the chart with details about each step of the formation of Earth.

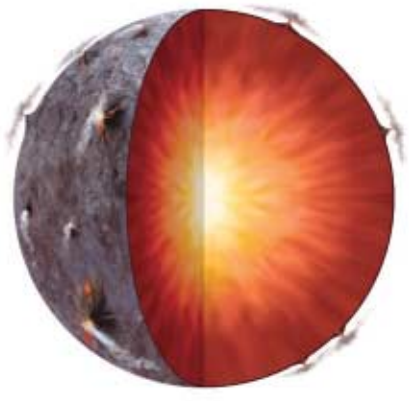
Early Solid Earth

Young Earth was hot enough to melt iron, the most common of the existing heavy elements. As Earth developed, denser materials, such as molten iron, sank to its center, and less dense materials were forced to the outer layers. This process is called *differentiation*. Differentiation caused Earth to form three distinct layers, as shown in **Figure 3.** At the center is a dense *core* that is composed mostly of iron and nickel. Around the core is the very thick layer of iron- and magnesium-rich rock called the *mantle*. The outermost layer of Earth is a thin *crust* of less dense, silica-rich rock. Today, processes that shape Earth, such as plate tectonics, are driven by heat transfer and differences in density.

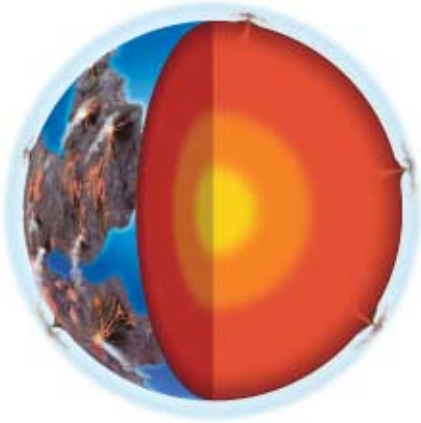
Present Solid Earth

Eventually, Earth's surface cooled enough for solid rock to form. The solid rock at Earth's surface formed from less dense elements that were pushed toward the surface during differentiation. Earth's surface continued to change as a result of the heat in Earth's interior as well as through impacts and through interactions with the newly forming atmosphere.

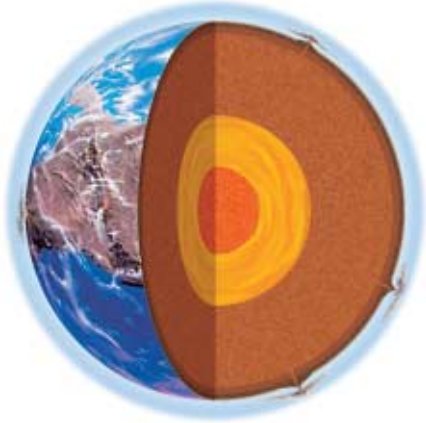
Figure 3 ▶ Differentiation of Earth



During its early history, Earth cooled to form three distinct layers.



An atmosphere began to form from the water vapor and carbon dioxide released by volcanic eruptions.



Organisms produced oxygen from photosynthesis to create an oxygenated atmosphere.

Formation of Earth's Atmosphere

Like solid Earth, the atmosphere formed because of differentiation. During the original differentiation of Earth, less dense gas molecules, such as hydrogen and helium, rose to the surface. Thus, the original atmosphere of Earth consisted primarily of hydrogen and helium.

Earth's Early Atmosphere

The high concentrations of hydrogen and helium did not stay with Earth's atmosphere. Earth's gravity is too weak to hold these gases. The sun heated the gases enough so that they escaped Earth's gravity. These gases were probably blown away by the solar wind, which might have been stronger at that time than it is today. Also, Earth's magnetic field, which protects the atmosphere from the solar wind, might not have been fully developed.

Outgassing

As Earth's surface continued to form, volcanic eruptions were much more frequent than they are today. The volcanic eruptions released large amounts of gases, mainly water vapor, carbon dioxide, nitrogen, methane, sulfur dioxide, and ammonia, as shown in **Figure 4.** This process, known as *outgassing,* formed a new atmosphere.

The gases released during outgassing interacted with radiation from the sun. The solar radiation caused the ammonia and some of the water vapor in the atmosphere to break down. Most of the hydrogen that was released during this breakdown escaped into space. Some of the remaining oxygen formed *ozone,* a molecule that contains three oxygen atoms. The ozone collected in a high atmospheric layer around Earth and shielded Earth's surface from the harmful ultraviolet radiation of the sun.

Earth's Present Atmosphere

Organisms that could survive in Earth's early atmosphere developed. Some of these organisms, such as cyanobacteria and early green plants, used carbon dioxide during photosynthesis. Oxygen, a byproduct of photosynthesis, was released. So, the amount of oxygen in the atmosphere slowly increased. About 2 billion years ago, the percentage of oxygen in the atmosphere increased rapidly. Since that time, the chemical composition of the atmosphere has been similar to the present composition of the atmosphere, as shown in **Figure 5.**

Reading Check **How did green plants contribute to Earth's present-day atmosphere? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

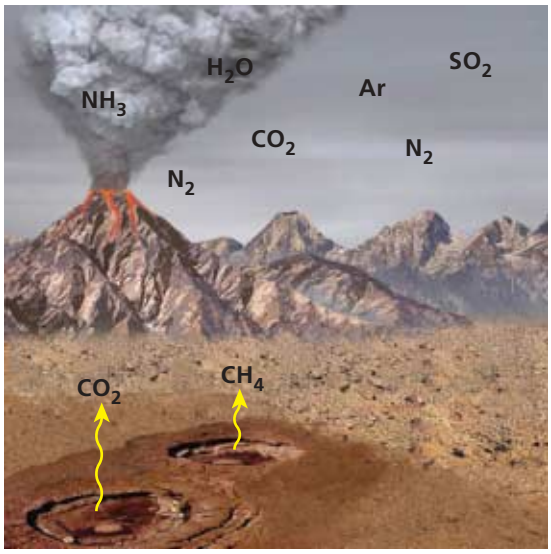


Figure 4 ▶ Earth's early atmosphere formed as volcanic eruptions released nitrogen, N_2; water vapor, H_2O; ammonia, NH_3; methane, CH_4; argon, Ar; sulfur dioxide, SO_2; and carbon dioxide, CO_2.

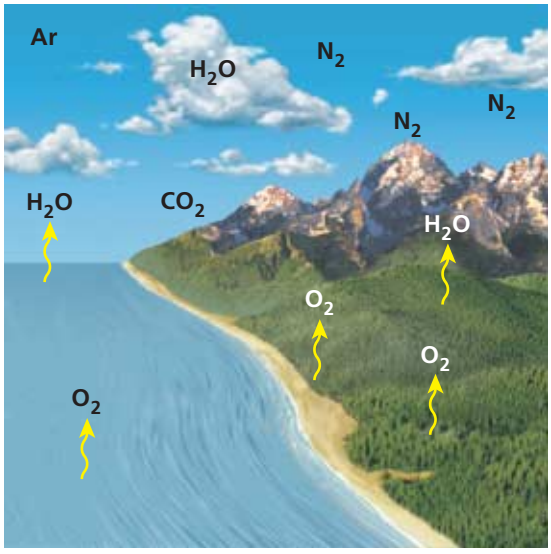


Figure 5 ▶ As Earth's surface changed, the gases in the atmosphere changed. Today, the atmosphere is 78% nitrogen, N_2; 21% oxygen, O_2; and 1% other gases.

Figure 6 ▶ Salt from the ocean can be harvested from salt flats, such as this one in Habantota, Sri Lanka.

Formation of Earth's Oceans

Some scientists think that part of Earth's water may have come from space. Icy bodies, such as comets, collided with Earth. Water from these bodies then became part of Earth's atmosphere. As Earth cooled, water vapor condensed to form rain. This liquid water collected on the surface to form the first oceans.

The first ocean was probably made of fresh water. Over millions of years, rainwater fell to Earth and ran over the land, through rivers, and into the ocean. The rainwater dissolved some of the rocks on land and carried those dissolved solids into the oceans. As more dissolved solids were carried to the oceans, the concentration of certain chemicals in the oceans increased. As the water cycled back into the atmosphere through evaporation, some of these chemicals combined to form salts. Over millions of years, water has cycled between the oceans and the atmosphere. Through this process, the oceans have become increasingly salty. Where shallow ocean water has evaporated completely, the salt precipitates and is left behind. This salt may be harvested for human use, as shown in **Figure 6.**

The Ocean's Effects on the Atmosphere

The oceans affect global temperatures in a variety of ways. One way the oceans affect temperature is by dissolving carbon dioxide from the atmosphere. Scientists think that early oceans also affected Earth's early climate by dissolving carbon dioxide. However, Earth's early atmosphere contained less carbon dioxide than the Earth's atmosphere does today. Thus, Earth's early climate was probably cooler than the global climate is today.

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** the nebular hypothesis.
2. **Explain** how planetesimals differ from protoplanets.
3. **Describe** how planets developed.
4. **Explain** why the outer planets are more gaseous than the inner planets.
5. **List** three reasons that Earth was hot when it formed.
6. **Summarize** the process by which the land, atmosphere, and oceans of Earth formed.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Identifying Relationships** How does the amount of gas in an outer planet differ from the amount of gas in an inner planet? Explain your answer.
8. **Analyzing Ideas** Explain why Earth is capable of supporting life.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to make a concept map: *solar system, solar nebula, protoplanet, planetesimal, planet,* and *gas giant*.

Section 2

Models of the Solar System

The first astronomers who studied the sky thought that the stars, planets, and sun revolved around Earth. This idea led to the first model of the solar system. However, the model changed as scientists learned more about how the solar system works.

OBJECTIVES

- **Compare** the models of the universe developed by Ptolemy and Copernicus.
- **Summarize** Kepler's three laws of planetary motion.
- **Describe** how Newton explained Kepler's laws of motion.

KEY TERMS

eccentricity
orbital period
inertia

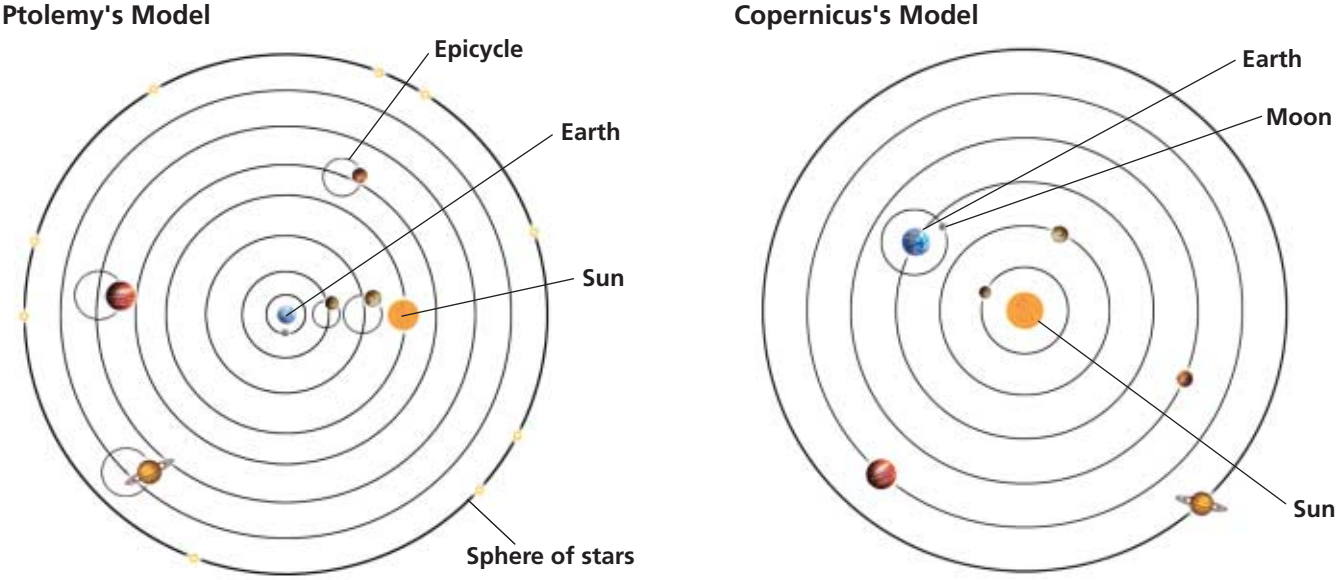
Early Models of the Solar System

More than 2,000 years ago, the Greek philosopher Aristotle suggested an Earth-centered, or *geocentric,* model of the solar system. In this model, the sun, the stars, and the planets revolved around Earth. However, this model did not explain why some planets sometimes appeared to move backward in the sky relative to the stars—a pattern called *retrograde motion*.

Around 130 CE, the Greek astronomer Claudius Ptolemy (TAHL uh mee) proposed changes to this model. Ptolemy thought that planets moved in small circles, called *epicycles,* as they revolved in larger circles around Earth. These epicycles seemed to explain why planets sometimes appeared to move backward.

In 1543 CE, a Polish astronomer named Nicolaus Copernicus proposed a sun-centered, or *heliocentric,* model of the solar system. In this model, the planets revolved around the sun in the same direction but at different speeds and distances from the sun. Fast-moving planets passed slow-moving planets. Therefore, planets that were slower than Earth appeared to move backward. **Figure 1** compares Ptolemy's and Copernicus's models. Later, the Italian scientist Galileo Galilei observed that four moons traveled around Jupiter. This observation showed him that objects can revolve around objects other than Earth.

Figure 1 ▶ Early Solar System Models Ptolemy's solar system model (left) is Earth centered and has the planets moving in epicycles around Earth. Copernicus's solar model (right) is heliocentric and has the planets moving at different speeds around the sun.



SCILINKS NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Early Astronomers
SciLinks code: HQ60441

Kepler's Laws

Twenty years before Galileo used a telescope, a Danish astronomer named Tycho Brahe made detailed observations of the solar system. After Tycho's death, one of his assistants, Johannes Kepler, discovered patterns in Tycho's observations. These patterns led Kepler to develop three laws that explained planetary motion.

Law of Ellipses

Kepler's first law, the *law of ellipses,* states that each planet orbits the sun in a path called an ellipse, not in a circle. An *ellipse* is a closed curve whose shape is determined by two points, or *foci,* within the ellipse. In planetary orbits, one focus is located within the sun. No object is located at the other focus. The combined length of two lines, one from each focus to any one point on the ellipse, would always be the same as the length of two lines from each focus to any other one point on the same ellipse.

Elliptical orbits can vary in shape. Some orbits are elongated ellipses. Other orbit shapes are almost perfect circles. The shape of an orbit can be describe in a numerical form called eccentricity. **Eccentricity** is the degree of elongation of an elliptical orbit (symbol, *e*). Eccentricity is determined by dividing the distance between the foci of the ellipse by the length of the major axis. Therefore, the eccentricity of a circular orbit is $e = 0$. The eccentricity of an extreme elongated orbit, or parabolic orbit, is $e = 1$.

eccentricity the degree of elongation of an elliptical orbit (symbol, *e*)

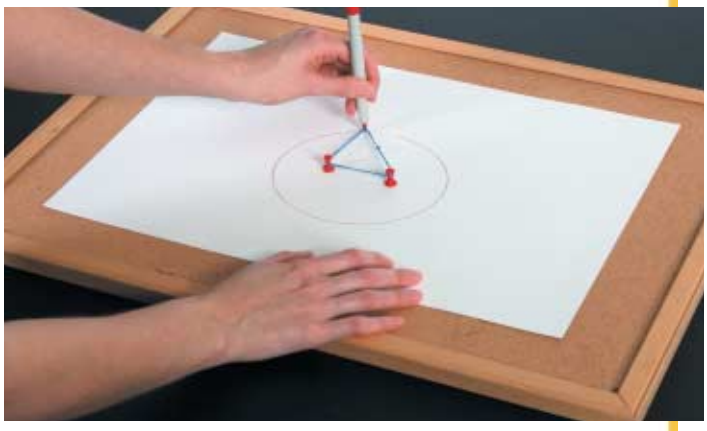
Reading Check **Define and describe an ellipse. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 15 min

Ellipses

Procedure

1. Cover a **cork board** with a **piece of paper.** Put **two push pins** into the cork board 5 cm apart.
2. Tie together the ends of a **string** that is 25 cm long. Loop the string around the pins.
3. Hold the string taut with a **pencil,** and move the pencil to outline an ellipse.
4. Replace the paper with another **piece of paper.** Place the pins 10 cm apart. Outline another ellipse by using the string.
5. Use another **piece of paper.** Loop the string around one pin, and outline another ellipse.



Analysis

1. Which ellipse has an eccentricity closest to 0? Which has an eccentricity closest to 1? Describe the shape of your ellipse in terms of eccentricity.
2. Describe the ellipse as you increased the distance between the foci. Describe what would happen to the ellipse if you increased the length of the string without changing the distance between the foci.

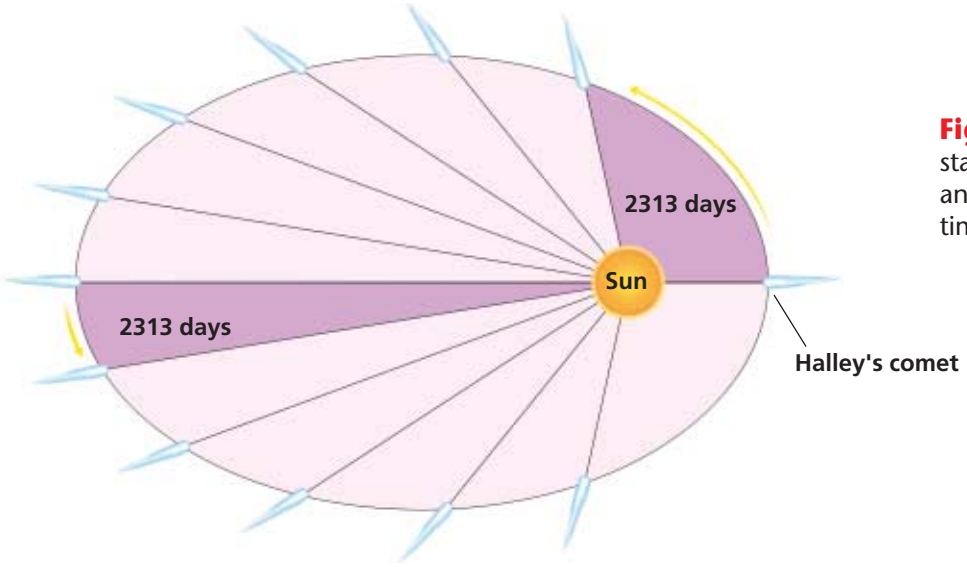


Figure 2 ▶ Kepler's second law states that the areas through which an object sweeps in a given period of time are equal.

Law of Equal Areas

Kepler's second law, the *law of equal areas,* describes the speed at which objects travel at different points in their orbits. Kepler discovered Mars moves fastest in its elliptical when it is closest to the sun. He calculated that a line from the center of the sun to the center of an object sweeps through equal areas in equal periods of time. This principle is illustrated in **Figure 2.**

Imagine a line that connects the center of the sun to the center of an object in orbit around the sun. When the object is near the sun, the imaginary line is short. The object moves relatively rapidly, and the line sweeps through a short, wide, pie-shaped sector. When the object is far from the sun, the line is long. However, the object moves relatively slowly when it is far from the sun, and the imaginary line sweeps through a long, thin, pie-shaped sector in the same period. Kepler's second law states that equal areas are covered in equal amounts of time as an object orbits the sun.

MATHPRACTICE

Law of Periods

Scientists discover an asteroid that is 0.38 AU from the sun. If 1 AU = 150 million km, how long would the planet's orbital period be in Earth years?

Law of Periods

Kepler's third law, the *law of periods,* describes the relationship between the average distance of a planet from the sun and the orbital period of the planet. The **orbital period** is the time required for a body to complete a single orbit. According to Kepler's third law, the cube of the average distance (a) of a planet from the sun is always proportional to the square of the period (p). The mathematical formula that describes this relationship is $K \times a^3 = p^2$, where K is a constant. When distance is measured in astronomical units (AU) and the period is measured in Earth years, $K = 1$ and $a^3 = p^2$.

orbital period the time required for a body to complete a single orbit

Scientists can find out how far away the planets are from the sun by using this law, because they can measure the orbital periods by observing the planets. Jupiter's orbital period is 11.9 Earth years. The square of 11.9 is 142. The cubed number that is equal to 142 is 5.2, so Jupiter is 5.2 AU from the sun.

Figure 3 ▶ In 1997, Comet Hale-Bopp was visible in the sky above the observatory on Mauna Kea in Hawaii.

Newton's Explanation of Kepler's Laws

Isaac Newton asked why the planets move in the ways that Kepler observed. The explanation that Newton gave described the motion of objects on Earth and the motion of planets in space. He hypothesized that a moving body will remain in motion and resist a change in speed or direction until an outside force acts on it. This is called **inertia.** For example, a ball rolling on a smooth surface will continue to move unless something causes it to stop or change direction.

inertia the tendency of an object to resist being moved or, if the object is moving, to resist a change in speed or direction until an outside force acts on the object

Newton's Model of Orbits

Because a planet does not follow a straight path, an outside force must cause the orbit to curve. Newton discovered that this force is *gravity,* and he realized that this attractive force exists between any two objects in the universe. The gravitational pull of the sun keeps objects, such as the comet shown in **Figure 3,** in orbit around the sun. While gravity pulls an object toward the sun, inertia keeps the object moving forward in a straight line. The sum of these two motions forms the ellipse of a stable orbit.

The farther from the sun a planet is, the weaker the sun's gravitational pull on the planet is. So, the outer planets are not pulled toward the sun as strongly as the inner ones are. As a result, the orbits of the outer planets are larger and are curved more gently, and the outer planets have longer periods of revolution than the inner planets do.

Section 2 Review

1. **Compare** Ptolemy's and Copernicus's models of the universe.
2. **Identify** the role that Galileo played in developing the heliocentric theory.
3. **Describe** the shape of planetary orbits.
4. **Explain** the law of equal areas.
5. **Summarize** Kepler's third law of planetary orbits.
6. **Describe** how Newton explained Kepler's laws by combining the effects of two forces.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Applying Ideas** A comet's orbit is a highly elongated ellipse. So, why does a comet spend so little time in the inner solar system?
8. **Making Comparisons** How did Kepler's explanation of the orbits of planets differ from Newton's explanation?

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *retrograde motion, geocentric, heliocentric, ellipse, foci, gravity,* and *inertia.*

Section 3

The Inner Planets

The planets closest to the sun are called the *inner planets*. These planets are Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars. The inner planets are also called **terrestrial planets,** because they are similar to Earth. These planets consist mostly of solid rock and have metallic cores. The number of moons per planet varies from zero to two. The surfaces of inner planets have bowl-shaped depressions, called *impact craters,* that were caused by collisions of the planets with other objects in space.

OBJECTIVES

- **Identify** the basic characteristics of the inner planets.
- **Compare** the characteristics of the inner planets.
- **Summarize** the features that allow Earth to sustain life.

KEY TERM

terrestrial planet

Mercury

Mercury, the planet closest to the sun, circles the sun every 88 days. The ancient Romans named the planet after the messenger of the gods, who moved quickly. Mercury rotates on its axis once every 59 days.

Images of Mercury reveal a surface that is heavily cratered, as shown in **Figure 1.** The images also show a line of cliffs hundreds of kilometers long. These cliffs may be wrinkles that developed in the crust when the molten core cooled and shrank.

The absence of a dense atmosphere and the planet's slow rotation contributes to the large daily temperature range on Mercury. During the day, the temperature may reach as high as 427°C. At night, the temperature may plunge to –173°C.

terrestrial planet one of the highly dense planets nearest to the sun; Mercury, Venus, Mars, and Earth

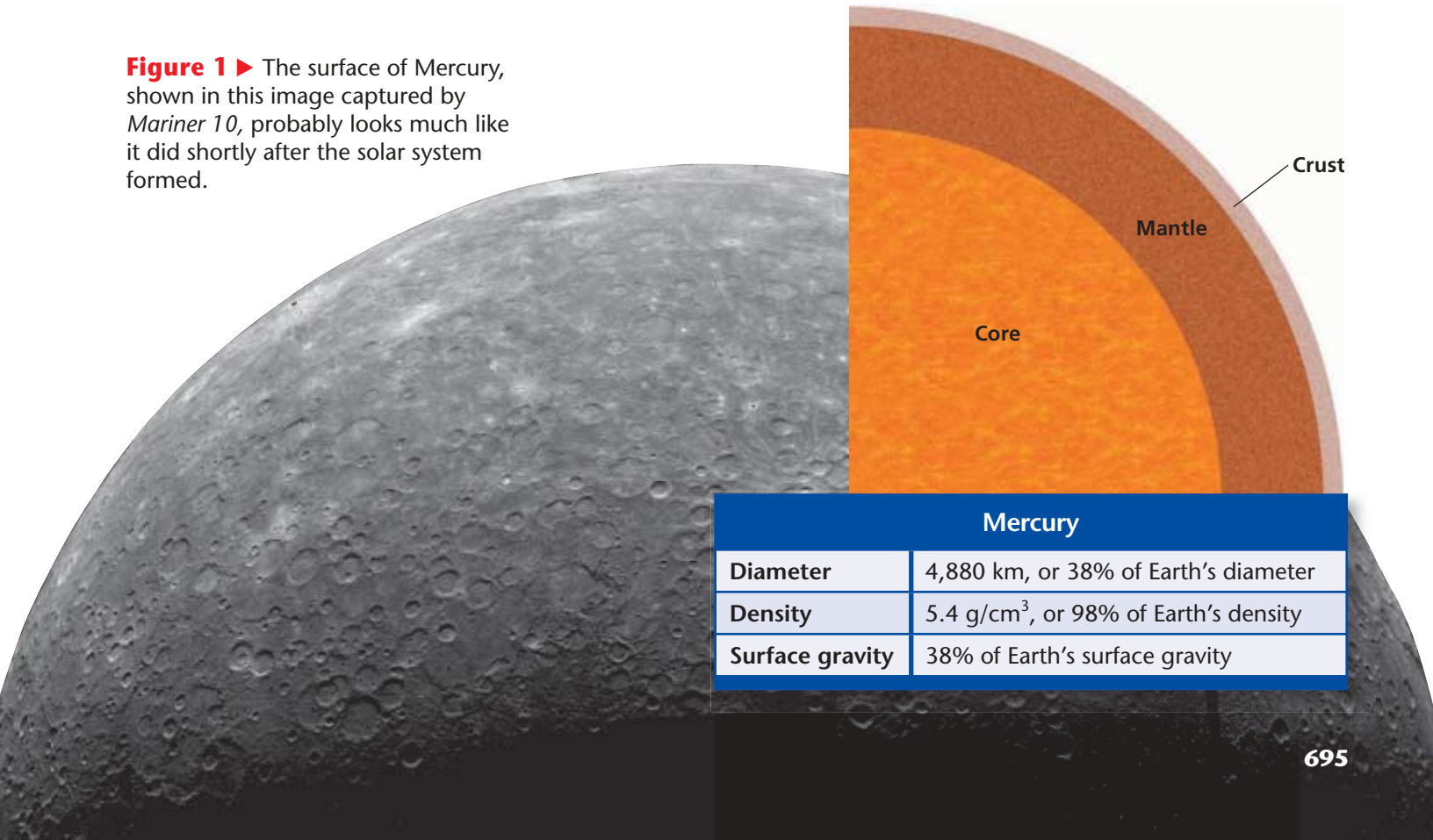


Figure 1 ▶ The surface of Mercury, shown in this image captured by *Mariner 10,* probably looks much like it did shortly after the solar system formed.

Mercury	
Diameter	4,880 km, or 38% of Earth's diameter
Density	5.4 g/cm^3, or 98% of Earth's density
Surface gravity	38% of Earth's surface gravity

Venus

Venus is the second planet from the sun and has an orbital period of 225 days. However, Venus rotates very slowly, only once every 243 days. In some ways, Venus is Earth's twin. The two planets are of almost the same size, mass, and density. However, Venus and Earth differ greatly in other areas.

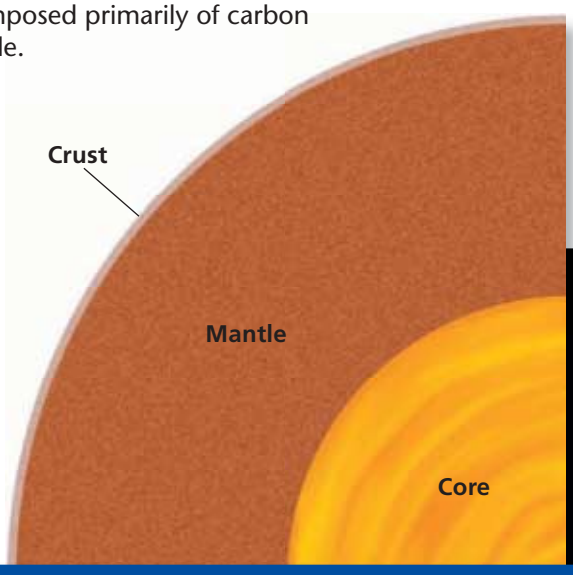
Venus's Atmosphere

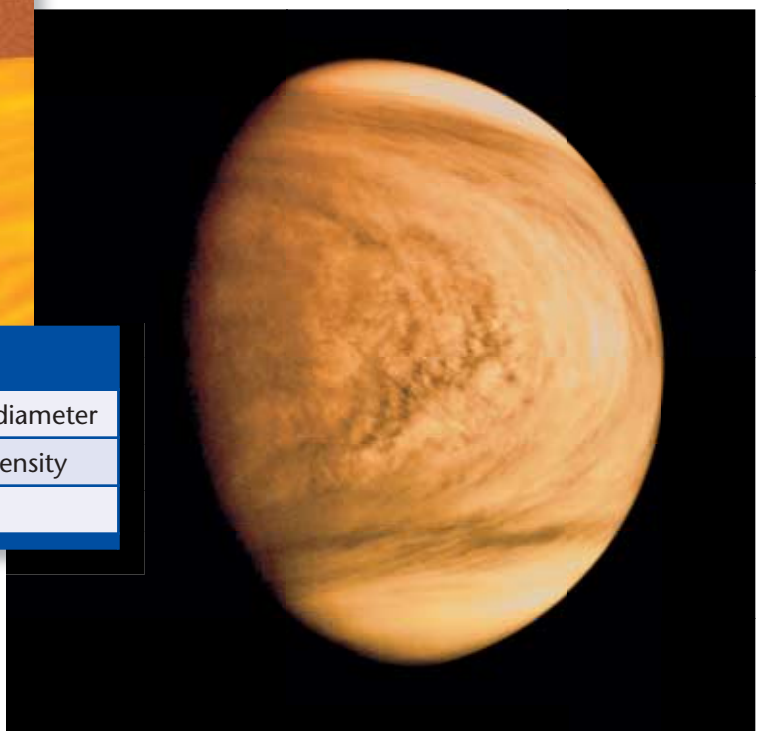
The biggest difference between Earth and Venus is Venus's atmosphere. Venus's atmospheric pressure is about 90 times the pressure on Earth. The high concentration of carbon dioxide in Venus's atmosphere and Venus's relative closeness to the sun have the strongest influences on surface temperatures. Venus's atmosphere is about 96% carbon dioxide.

Solar energy that penetrates the atmosphere heats the planet's surface. The high concentration of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere blocks most of the infrared radiation from escaping. This type of heating is called a *greenhouse effect*. On Earth, the greenhouse effect warms Earth enough to allow organisms to live on the planet. But the greenhouse effect on Venus makes the average surface temperature 464°C! This phenomenon is commonly referred to as a *runaway greenhouse effect* and makes Venus's surface temperature the highest known in the solar system.

Venus also has sulfur dioxide droplets in its upper atmosphere. These droplets form a cloud layer that reflects sunlight. The cloud layer reflects the sunlight so strongly that from Earth, Venus appears to be the brightest object in the night sky, aside from Earth's moon and the sun. Because Venus appears near the sun, Venus is usually visible from Earth only in the early morning or evening. Therefore, Venus is commonly called the *evening star* or the *morning star*.

Figure 2 ▶ Venus's surface is composed of basalt and granite rocks. However, Venus's dense atmosphere is composed primarily of carbon dioxide.





Venus	
Diameter	12,100 km, or 95% of Earth's diameter
Density	5.2 g/cm^3, or 89% of Earth's density
Surface gravity	89% of Earth's surface gravity

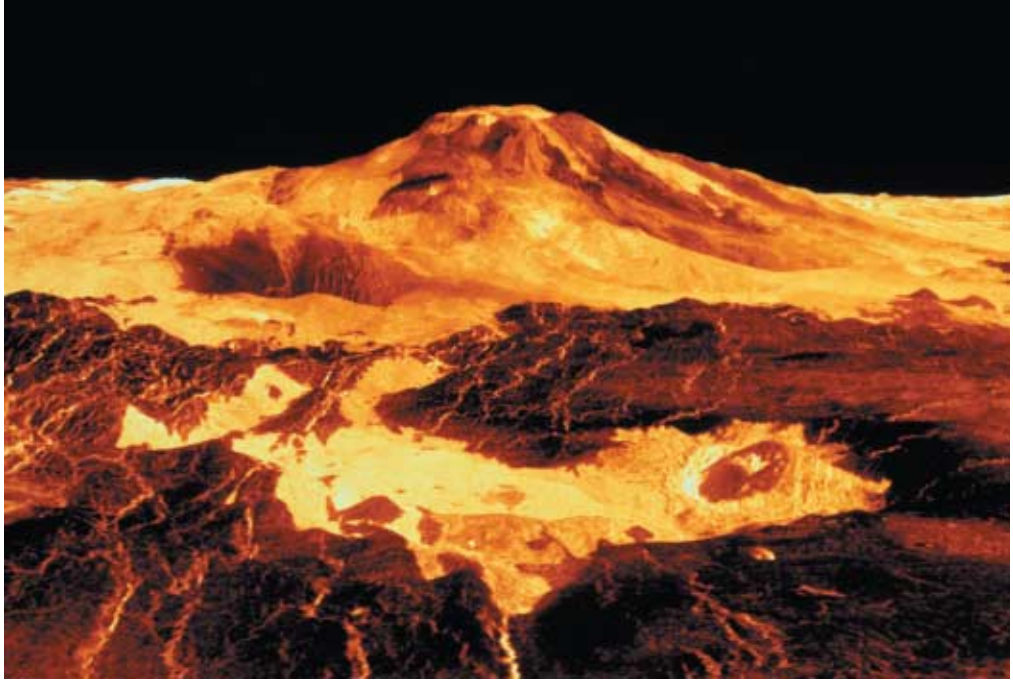


Figure 3 ▶ The scale of this computer-generated image of the Maat Mons volcano on Venus has been stretched vertically to make the topography look more dramatic. The image has also been color enhanced.

Missions to Venus

In the 1970s, the Soviet Union sent six probes to explore the surface of Venus. The probes survived in the atmosphere long enough to transmit surface images of a rocky landscape. The images showed a smooth plain and some rocks. Other instruments carried by the probes indicated that the surface of Venus is composed of basalt and granite. These two types of rock are also common on Earth.

The United States's *Magellan* satellite orbited Venus for four years in the 1990s before the satellite was steered into the planet to collect atmospheric data. *Magellan* also bounced radio waves off Venus to produce radar images of Venus's surface.

Surface Features of Venus

From the radar mapping produced by *Magellan,* scientists discovered landforms such as mountains, volcanoes, lava plains, and sand dunes. Volcanoes and lava plains are the most common features on Venus. At an elevation of 3 km, the volcano Maat Mons, which is shown in **Figure 3,** is Venus's highest volcano.

The surface of Venus is also somewhat cratered. All of the craters are of about the same age, and they are surprisingly young. This evidence and the abundance of volcanic features on Venus's surface have led some scientists to speculate that Venus undergoes a periodic resurfacing as a result of massive volcanic activity. Heat inside the planet builds up over time, which causes the volcanoes to erupt and cover the planet's surface with lava. However, scientists think that another 100 million years may pass before volcanic activity again covers Venus's surface with lava. Venus's surface is very different from Earth's surface, which is constantly changing because of the motion of tectonic plates.

Reading Check **How is Venus different from Earth? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

MATHPRACTICE

Distance from the Sun Earth is about 150 million kilometers from the sun. Venus is 108.2 million kilometers from the sun. How much closer to the sun is Venus than Earth? Express your answer as a percentage.

Earth

The third planet from the sun is Earth. The orbital period of Earth is 365 1/4 days, and Earth completes one rotation on its axis every day. Earth has one large moon.

Earth has had an extremely active geologic history. Geologic records indicate that over the last 250 million years, Earth's continents separated from a single landmass and drifted to their present positions. Weathering and erosion have changed and continue to change the surface of Earth.

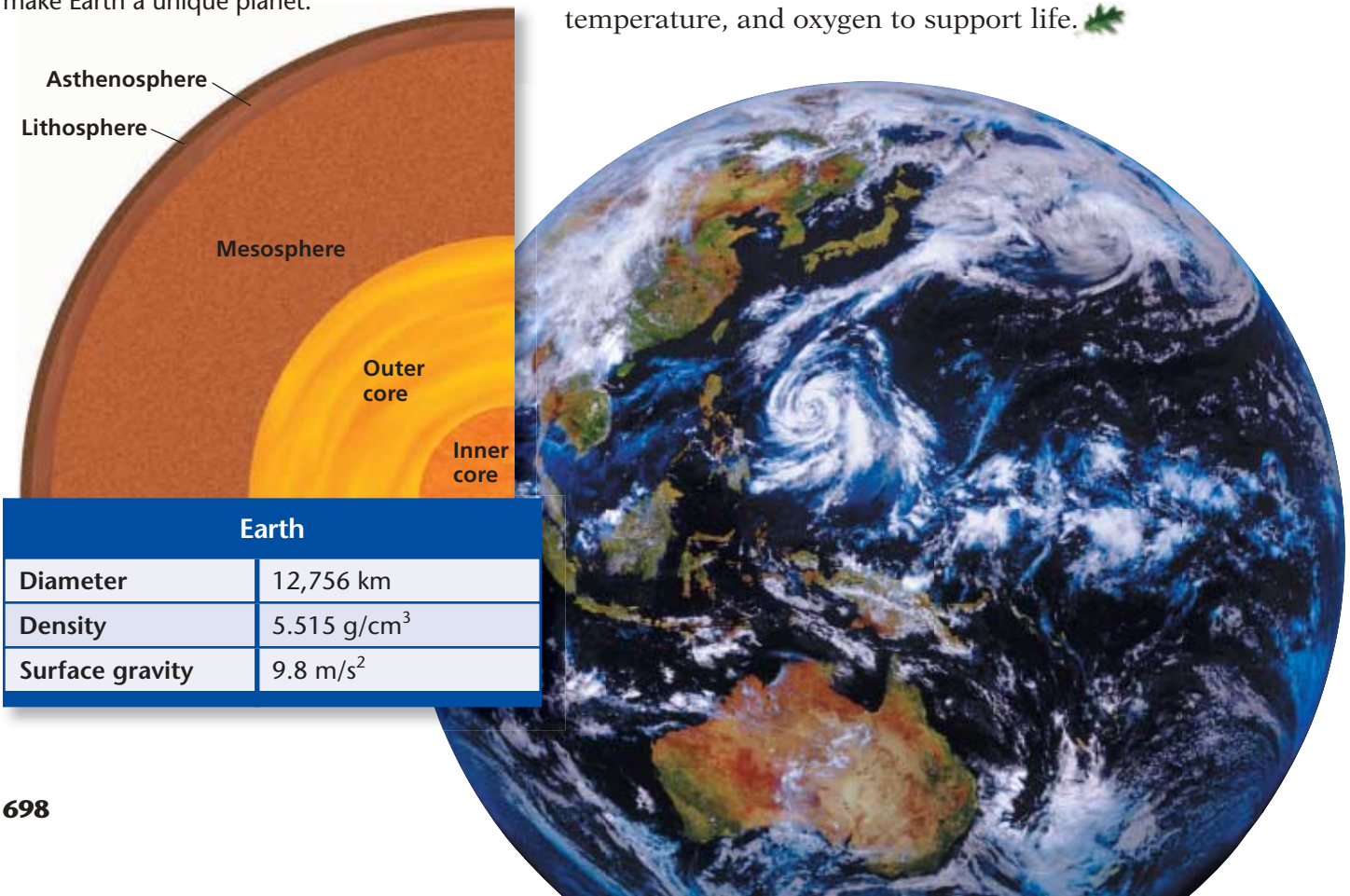
Water on Earth

Earth's unique atmosphere and distance from the sun allow water to exist in a liquid state. Mercury and Venus are so close to the sun that any liquid water on those planets would boil. Mars and the outer planets are so far from the sun that water freezes. Earth is the only planet known to have oceans of liquid water, as shown in **Figure 4.** However, scientists think that Jupiter's moon Europa may have an ocean under its icy crust.

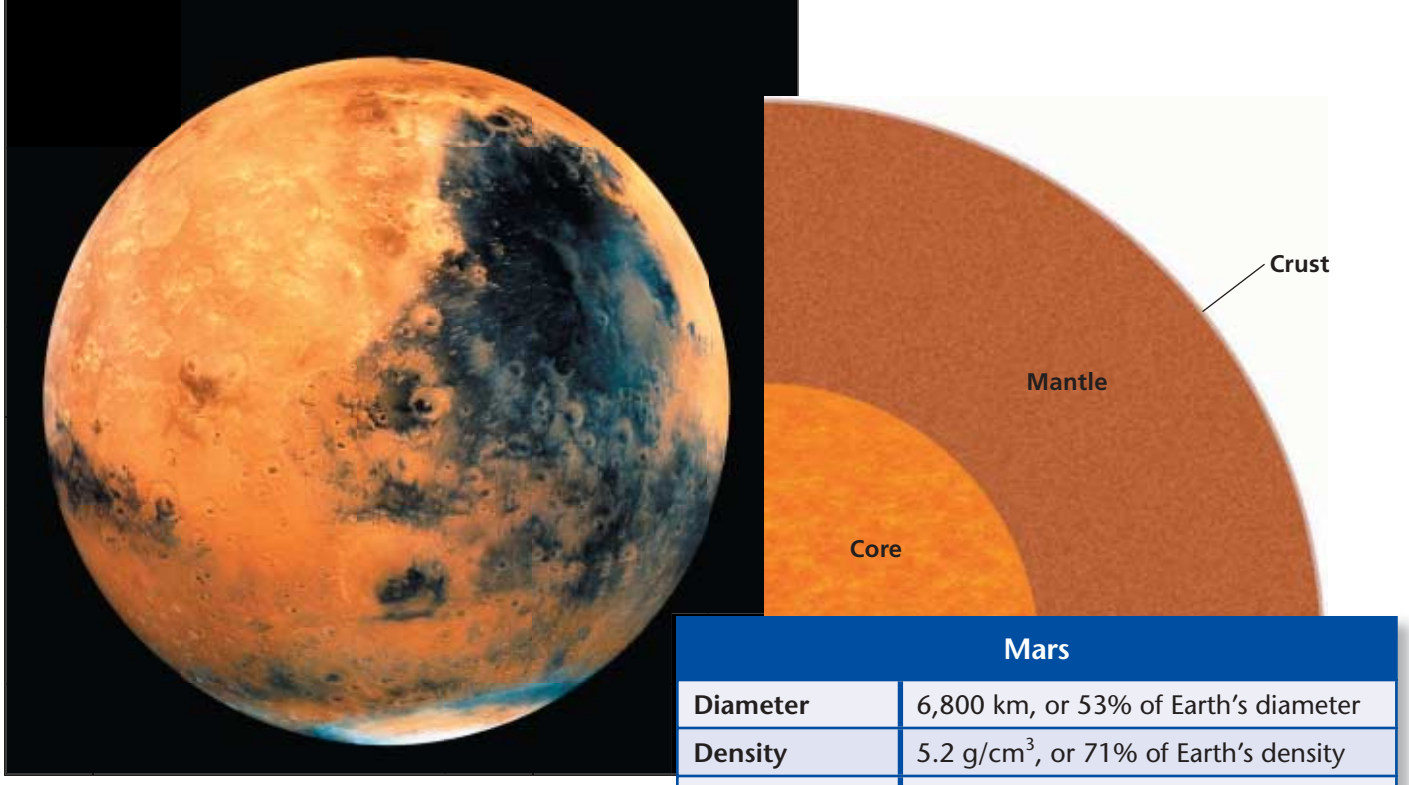
Life on Earth

Scientists theorize that as oceans formed on Earth, liquid water dissolved carbon dioxide from the atmosphere. Because of this process, carbon dioxide did not build up in the atmosphere and solar heat was able to escape. Thus, Earth maintained the moderate temperatures needed to support life. Plants and cyanobacteria contributed free oxygen to the atmosphere. Earth is the only known planet that has the proper combination of water, temperature, and oxygen to support life.

Figure 4 ▶ Oceans of water and an atmosphere that can support life make Earth a unique planet.



Earth	
Diameter	12,756 km
Density	5.515 g/cm^3
Surface gravity	9.8 m/s^2



Mars	
Diameter	6,800 km, or 53% of Earth's diameter
Density	5.2 g/cm^3, or 71% of Earth's density
Surface gravity	38% of Earth's surface gravity

Figure 5 ▶ Mars is called the *Red Planet* because the oxidized rocks on the planet's surface give the planet a red color.

Mars

Mars, shown in **Figure 5,** is the fourth planet from the sun. At an average distance of about 228 million kilometers from the sun, Mars is about 50% farther from the sun than Earth is. Its orbital period is 687 days, and it rotates on its axis every 24 h and 37 min. Because its axis tilts at nearly the same angle that Earth's does, Mars's seasons are much like Earth's seasons.

Mars has been geologically active in its past, which is shown in part by the presence of massive volcanoes. A system of deep canyons also covers part of the surface. Valles Marineris is a canyon that is as long as the United States is wide—4,500 km. The canyon is thought to be a crack that formed in the crust as the planet cooled.

Martian Volcanoes

Tharsis Montes is one of several volcanic regions on Mars. Volcanoes in this region are 100 times as large as Earth's largest volcano. The largest volcano on Mars is Olympus Mons, which is nearly 24 km tall. It is three times as tall as Mount Everest. At 600 km across, the base of Olympus Mons is about the size of Nebraska. Scientists think that the volcano has grown so large because Mars has no moving tectonic plates. So, Olympus Mons may have had a magma source for millions of years.

Whether Martian volcanoes are still active is a question scientists have yet to answer. A *Viking* landing craft detected two geological events that produced seismic waves. These events, called *marsquakes,* may indicate that volcanoes on Mars are active.

Reading Check **Why are Martian volcanoes larger than Earth's volcanoes? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

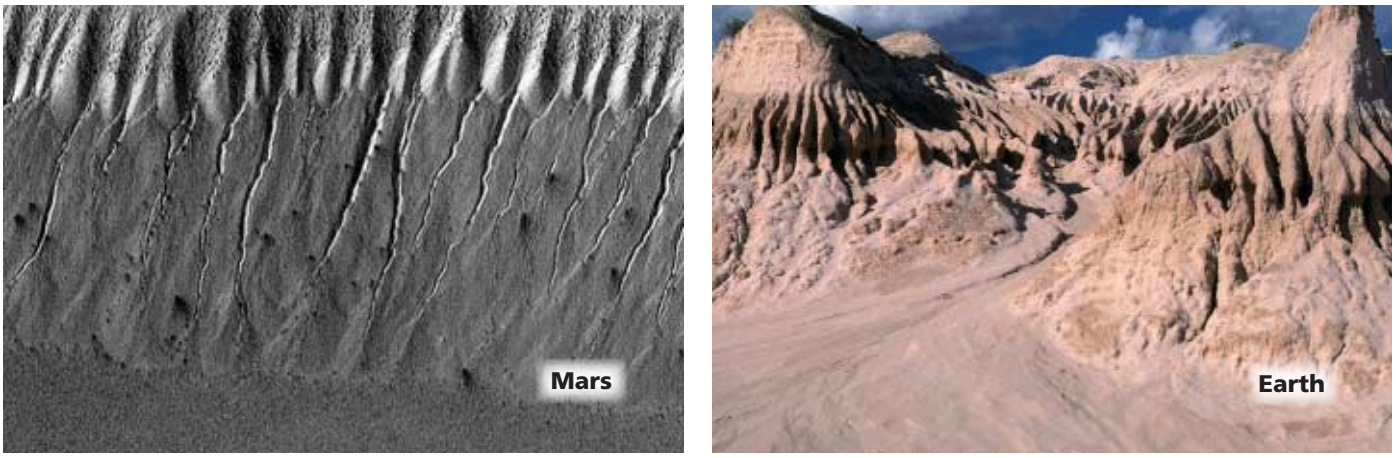


Figure 6 ▶ The images above compare the formation of gullies by possible liquid water runoff on Mars (left) with the formation of similar gullies at Mungo National Park in Australia on Earth (right). The Mungo National Park was the site of a large lake that dried up more than 10,000 years ago.

Water on Mars

The pressure and temperature of Mars's atmosphere are too low for water to exist as a liquid on Mars's surface. However, several NASA spacecraft—such as the Mars rovers, *Spirit* and *Opportunity,* which landed on Mars in 2004—have found evidence that liquid water did exist on Mars's surface in the past. Mars has many surface features that are characteristic of erosion by water, such as branching paths that look like gullies, as shown in **Figure 6.** Scientists think that other features on Mars might be evidence of vast flood plains produced by a volume of water equal to that of all five of Earth's Great Lakes.

The surface temperature on Mars ranges from 20°C near the equator during the summer to as low as –130°C near the poles during the winter. Although most of the water on Mars is trapped in polar icecaps, data from the *Mars Global Surveyor* suggest that water may also exist as permanent frost or as a liquid just below the surface. If liquid water does exist below Mars's surface, the odds of life existing on Mars will dramatically increase. However, no solid evidence of life on Mars has been found.

Section 3 Review

1. **Explain** why Mercury has such drastically different temperatures during its day and during its night.
2. **Describe** the main ways in which Venus is similar to and different from Earth.
3. **Identify** the aspects that make Earth hospitable for life.
4. **Explain** why Mars's volcanoes became so tall.
5. **Explain** why Mars does not have liquid water on its surface.
6. **Compare** the characteristics of the inner planets.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Making Comparisons** Describe the difference between the greenhouse effect on Venus and the greenhouse effect on Earth.
8. **Understanding Relationships** As rock cools, it contracts. How could this fact explain the presence of Valles Marineris on Mars?

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, terrestrial planet, Olympus Mons, liquid water*, and *Maat Mons*.

Section 4

The Outer Planets

The five planets farthest from the sun are called the *outer planets*. They are separated from the inner planets by a ring of debris called the *asteroid belt*. Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune, which are shown in **Figure 1,** are called **gas giants** because they are large planets that have deep, massive atmospheres made mostly of gas. The smallest and usually the most distant planet in the solar system is Pluto. Because Pluto is different from the gas giants, it may not have formed in the same way that the other outer planets formed.

Gas Giants

Although the gas giants are much larger and more massive than the terrestrial planets, the gas giants are much less dense than the terrestrial planets. Unlike the terrestrial planets, the gas giants did not lose their original gases during their formation. Their large masses give them a huge amount of gravity, which helps them retain the gases. Each of the gas giants has a thick atmosphere that is made mostly of hydrogen and helium gases. A cloud layer prevents scientists from directly observing more than the topmost part of the atmosphere of the gas giants. But each planet probably has a core made of rock and metals.

Although Saturn's rings may be the most impressive, all four gas giants have ring systems that are made of dust and icy debris that orbit the planets. Most of the debris probably came from comets or other bodies.

OBJECTIVES

- **Identify** the basic characteristics that make the outer planets different from terrestrial planets.
- **Compare** the characteristics of the outer planets.
- **Explain** why Pluto is different from the other eight planets.

KEY TERMS

gas giant
Kuiper belt

gas giant a planet that has a deep massive atmosphere, such as Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, or Neptune

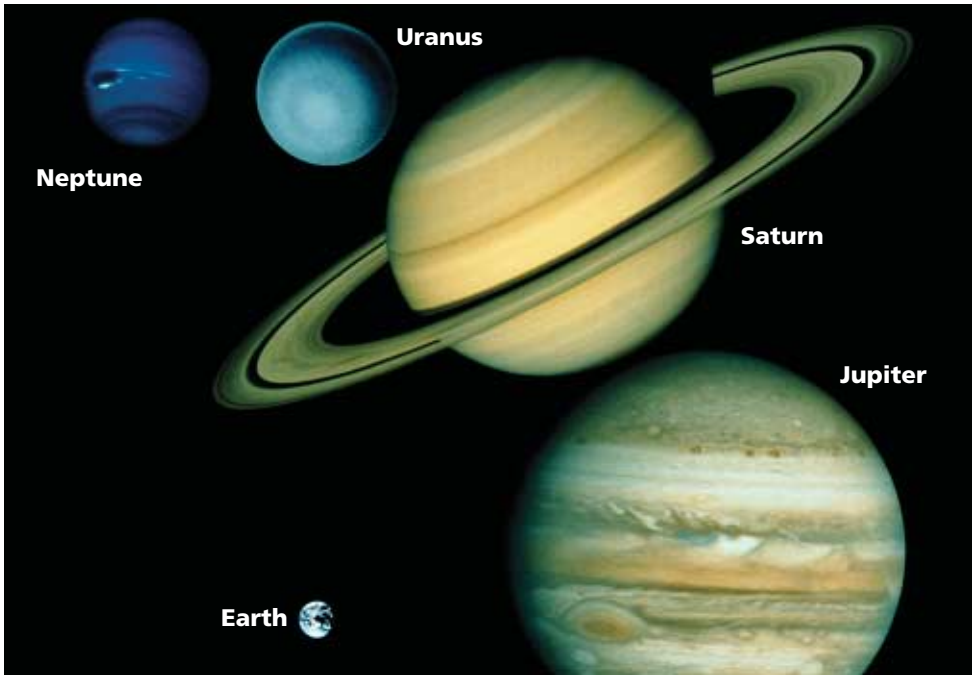


Figure 1 ▶ The four gas giants are much larger than Earth, which is the terrestrial planet shown here at the lower left.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association

For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org

Topic: Outer Planets
SciLinks code: HQ61091
Topic: Galileo
SciLinks code: HQ60633

Jupiter

Jupiter, shown in **Figure 2,** is the fifth planet from the sun and is by far the largest planet in the solar system. Its mass is more than 300 times that of Earth and is twice that of the other eight planets combined. Jupiter's orbital period is almost 12 years. Jupiter rotates on its axis faster than any other planet rotates—once every 9 h and 50 min. Jupiter has at least 60 moons, 4 of which are the size of small planets. It also has several thin rings that are made up of millions of particles.

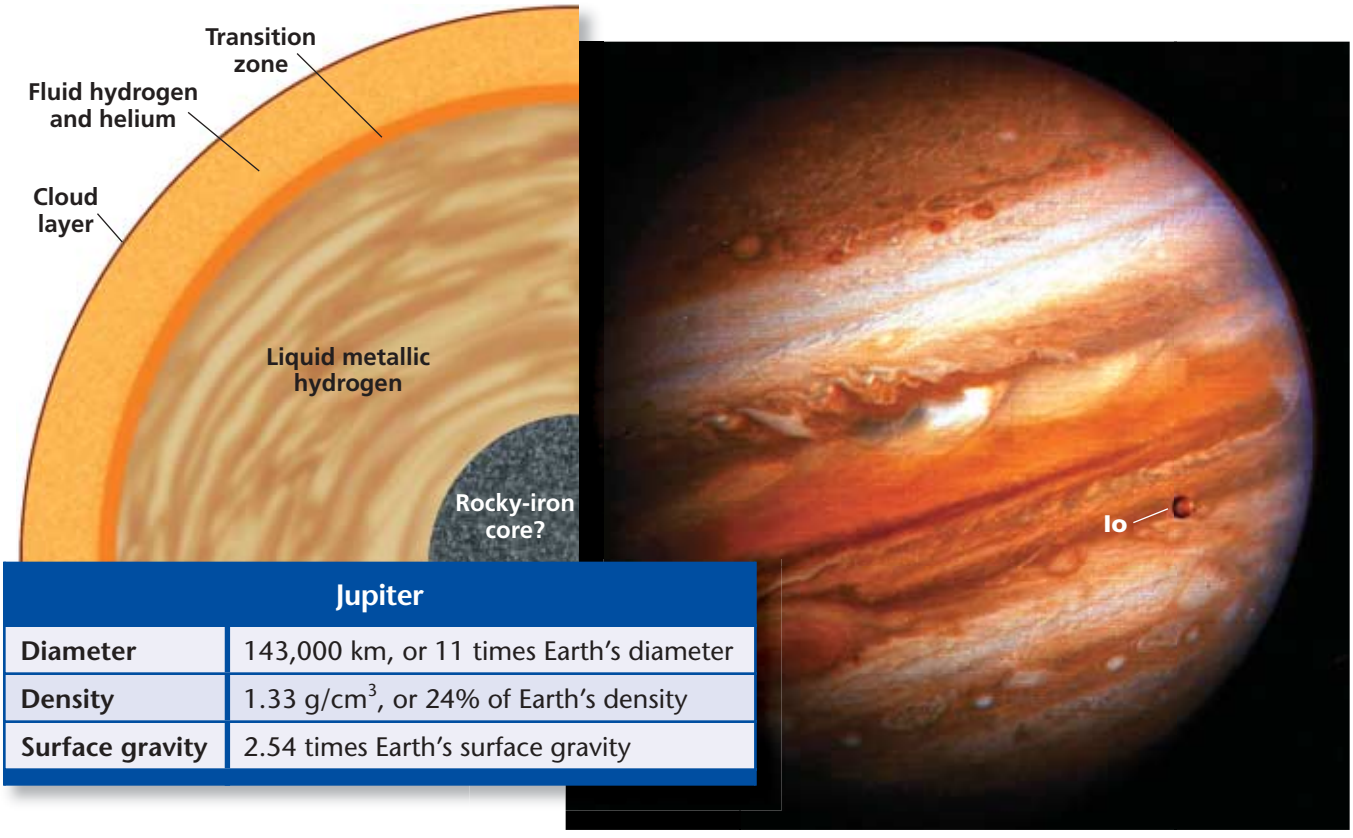
Jupiter's Atmosphere

Hydrogen and helium make up 92% of Jupiter, so Jupiter's composition is much like the sun's. However, when Jupiter formed about 4.6 billion years ago, it did not have enough mass to allow nuclear fusion to begin. So, Jupiter never became a star.

The alternating light and dark bands on its surface make Jupiter unique in our solar system. Orange, gray, blue, and white bands spread out parallel to the equator. The colors suggest the presence of organic molecules mixed with ammonia, methane, and water vapor. Jupiter's rapid rotation causes these gases to swirl around the planet and form the bands. The average temperature of Jupiter's outer atmospheric layers is –160°C. Jupiter also has lightning storms and thunderstorms that are much larger than those on Earth.

Reading Check **Why didn't Jupiter become a star? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 2 ▶ Jupiter is easily identified by its large size and alternating light and dark bands. One of Jupiter's larger moons can be seen in front of the planet.



Jupiter	
Diameter	143,000 km, or 11 times Earth's diameter
Density	1.33 g/cm^3, or 24% of Earth's density
Surface gravity	2.54 times Earth's surface gravity

Weather and Storms on Jupiter

Jupiter's most distinctive feature is its *Great Red Spot,* shown in **Figure 3.** The Great Red Spot is a giant rotating storm, similar to a hurricane on Earth, that has been raging for at least several hundred years. Several other oval spots, or storms, can be seen on Jupiter, although they are usually white. Sometimes, the smaller storms are swallowed up by the larger ones. While storms are common on Jupiter's surface, only a few of the largest storms persist for a long time.

A probe dropped by the *Galileo* spacecraft measured wind speeds on Jupiter of up to 540 km/h. Because winds are caused by temperature differences, scientists have concluded that Jupiter's internal heat affects the planet's weather more than heat from the sun does. From Earth, even by using a small telescope, you can see bands of clouds on Jupiter. These bands, which vary depending on latitude, show regions of different wind speeds.

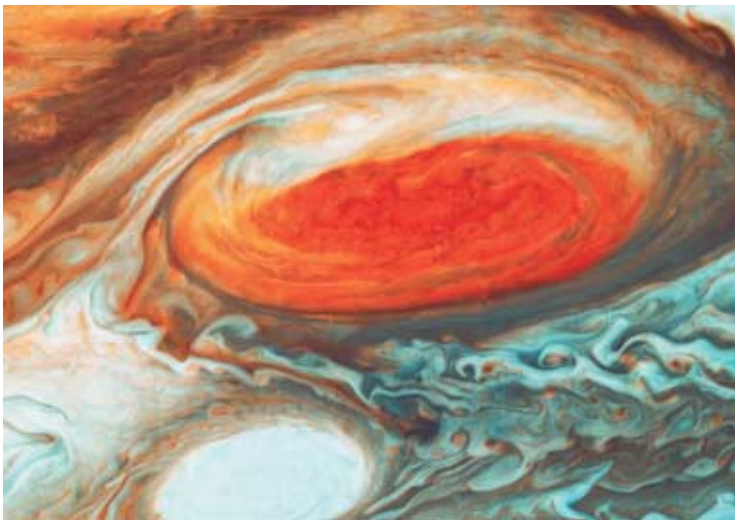


Figure 3 ▶ Jupiter's Great Red Spot is an ongoing, massive, hurricane-like storm that is about twice the diameter of Earth.

Jupiter's Interior

Jupiter's large mass causes the temperature and pressure in Jupiter's interior to be much greater than they are inside Earth. The intense pressure and temperatures as high as 30,000°C have changed Jupiter's interior into a sea of liquid, metallic hydrogen. Electric currents in this hot liquid may be the source of Jupiter's enormous magnetic field. Scientists think that Jupiter has a solid, rocky, iron core at its center.

Connection to **TECHNOLOGY**

Galileo Probes Jupiter

In 1995, the spacecraft *Galileo* arrived at Jupiter and began monitoring an atmospheric probe that Galileo had launched five months earlier. The 336 kg probe transmitted data about the composition and meteorology of Jupiter's atmosphere.

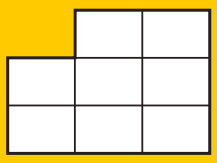
The data surprised mission scientists in many ways. The wind speeds that were measured were much higher than the expected wind speeds. But the most surprising discovery was that although the levels of carbon and nitrogen that were measured were consistent with what was anticipated, only one-fifth of the expected amount of water was found.

The *Galileo* spacecraft studied Jupiter and its moons through 2003. It was then crashed into Jupiter to avoid a collision with one of Jupiter's moons, Europa. No spacecraft is now in orbit around Jupiter. NASA is considering launching a mission to study Europa. *Galileo* discovered evidence of a possible subsurface ocean on Europa. So, scientists are excited about the possibility of life on this moon of Jupiter.

Graphic Organizer

Comparison Table

Create the **Graphic Organizer** entitled "Comparison Table" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns with "Jupiter," "Saturn," Uranus," and "Neptune." Label the rows with "Diameter," "Density," "Orbital period," and "Composition." Then, fill in the table with details about the gas giants.



Saturn

Saturn, shown in **Figure 4,** is the sixth planet from the sun and has an orbital period of 29.5 years. Because it is so far from the sun, Saturn is very cold and has an average cloud-top temperature of –176°C. Saturn has at least 30 moons, and additional small moons continue to be discovered. Its largest moon, Titan, which has a diameter of 5,150 km, is half the size of Earth.

Saturn, like Jupiter, is made almost entirely of hydrogen and helium and has a rocky, iron core at its center. However, Saturn is much less dense than Jupiter. In fact, Saturn is the least dense planet in the solar system.

Saturn's Bands and Rings

Saturn is known for its rings, which are 2 times the planet's diameter. While the other gas giants also have rings, Saturn has the most complex and extensive system of rings. The rings are made of billions of dust and ice particles. Most of the ring debris probably came from comets or other bodies.

Like Jupiter, Saturn also has bands of colored clouds that run parallel to its equator. These bands are caused by Saturn's rapid rotation. Saturn rotates on its axis every 10 h and 30 min. This rapid rotation, paired with Saturn's low density, causes Saturn to bulge at its equator and to flatten at its poles.

Scientists hope to learn more about Saturn and its moon Titan from NASA's *Cassini* spacecraft, which reached Saturn on July 1, 2004. This spacecraft will remain in orbit around Saturn for many years.

Reading Check **How is Saturn similar to Jupiter? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

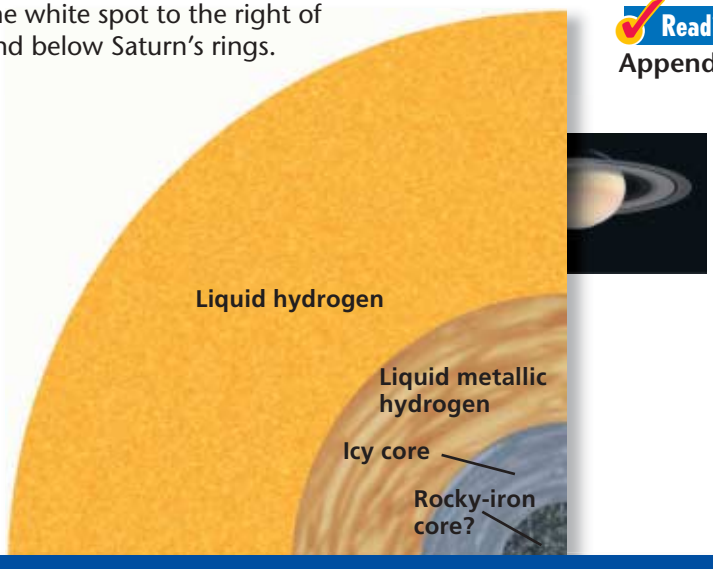
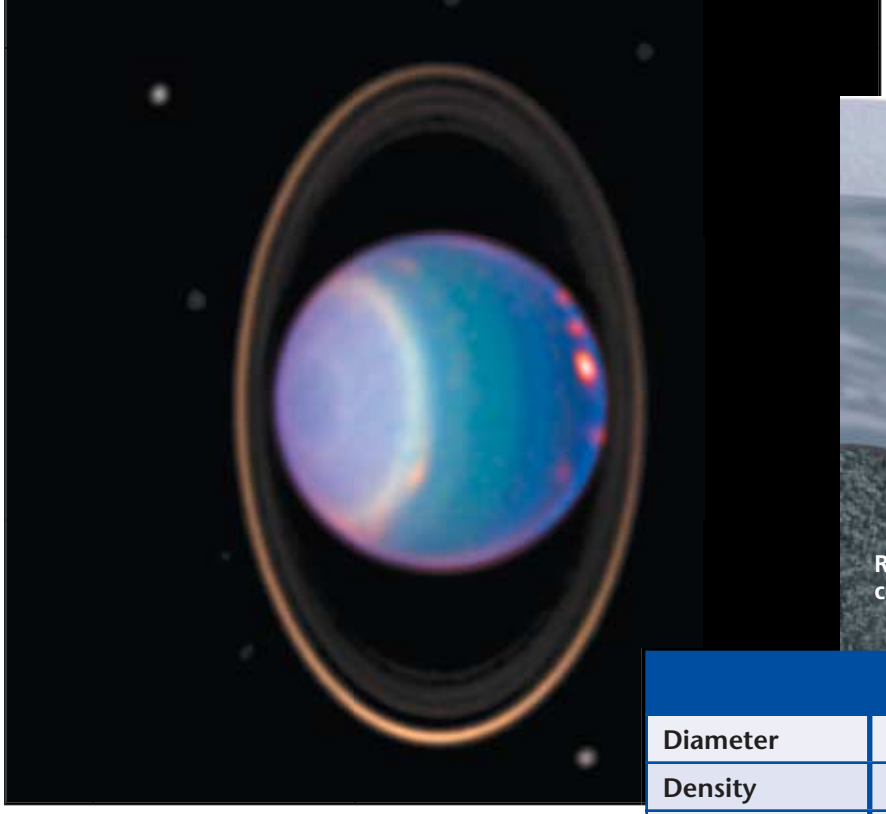
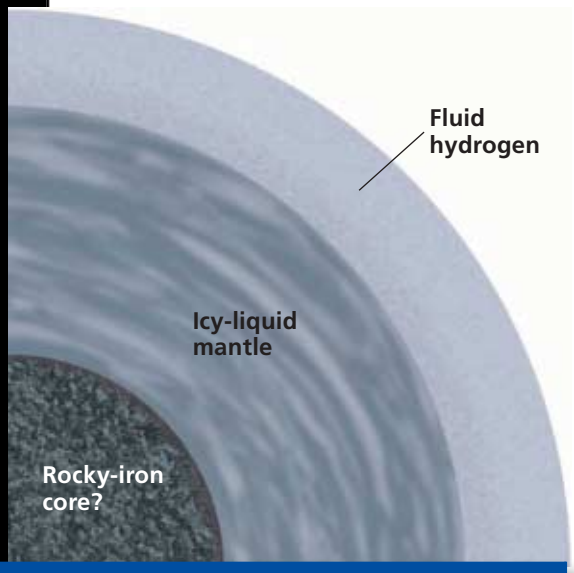


Figure 4 ▶ This composite image of Saturn taken from the *Cassini* spacecraft shows the planet's rings and an icy moon, Enceladus, which is the white spot to the right of and below Saturn's rings.

Saturn	
Diameter	120,535 km, or 9.4 times Earth's diameter
Density	0.70 g/cm^3, or 13% of Earth's density
Surface gravity	1.07 times Earth's surface gravity





Uranus	
Diameter	51,120 km, or 4 times Earth's diameter
Density	1.30 g/cm^3, or 24% of Earth's density
Surface gravity	91% of Earth's surface gravity

Figure 5 ▶ This exaggerated-color image from the *Hubble Space Telescope* shows Uranus, two of its moons, and some of its rings.

Uranus

Uranus, shown in **Figure 5,** is the seventh planet from the sun and the third-largest planet in the solar system. Sir William Herschel discovered Uranus in 1781. Because Uranus is nearly 3 billion kilometers from the sun, Uranus is a difficult planet to study. But the *Hubble Space Telescope* has taken images that show changes in Uranus's atmosphere. Uranus has at least 24 moons and at least 11 thin rings. Its orbital period is almost 84 years.

Uranus's Rotation

The most distinctive feature of Uranus is its unusual orientation. Most planets, including Earth, rotate with their axes perpendicular to their orbital planes as they revolve around the sun. However, Uranus's axis is almost parallel to the plane of its orbit. The rotation rate of Uranus was not discovered until 1986, when *Voyager 2* passed by Uranus. Astronomers were then able to determine that Uranus rotated once about every 17 h.

Uranus's Atmosphere

Like the other gas giants, Uranus has an atmosphere that contains mainly hydrogen and helium. The blue-green color of Uranus indicates that the atmosphere also contains significant amounts of methane. The average cloud-top temperature of Uranus is –214°C. However, astronomers believe that the planet's temperature is much higher below the clouds. There may be a mixture of liquid water and methane beneath the atmosphere. Scientists also think that the center of Uranus, which has a temperature of about 7,000°C, is a core of rock and melted elements.

Neptune

Neptune, shown in **Figure 6,** is the eighth planet from the sun and is similar to Uranus in size and mass. Neptune's orbital period is nearly 164 years, and the planet rotates about every 16 h. Neptune has at least eight moons and possibly four rings.

The Discovery of Neptune

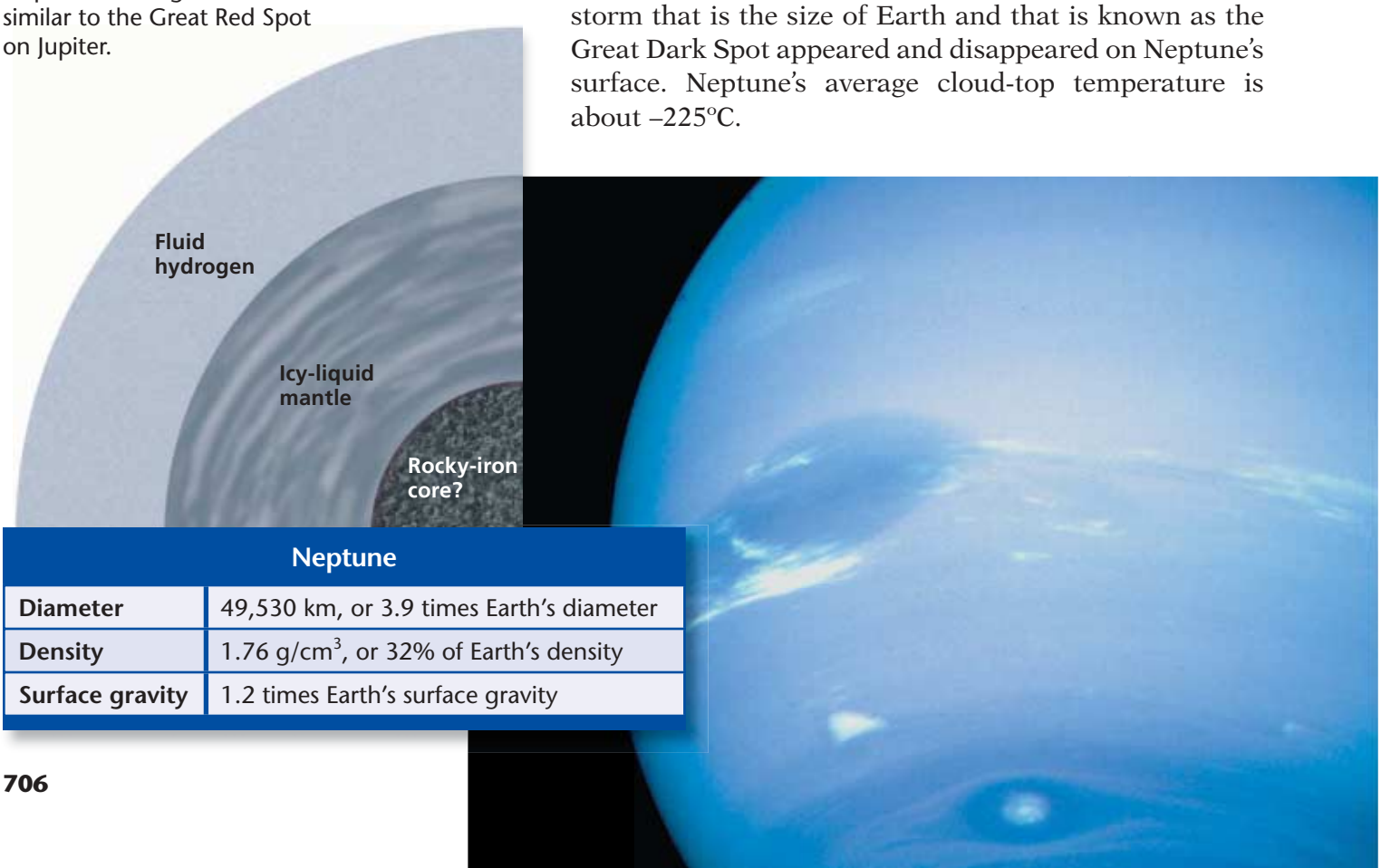
Neptune's existence was predicted before Neptune was actually discovered. After Uranus was discovered, astronomers noted variations from its calculated orbit. They suspected that the gravity of an unknown planet was responsible for the variation. In the mid-1800s, John Couch Adams, an English mathematician, and Urbain Leverrier, a French astronomer, independently calculated the position of the unknown planet. A German astronomer, Johann Galle, discovered a bluish-green disk where Leverrier had predicted the planet would be. Astronomers named the planet Neptune after the Roman god of the sea.

Neptune's Atmosphere

Data from the *Voyager 2* spacecraft indicate that Neptune's atmosphere is made up mostly of hydrogen, helium, and methane. Neptune's upper atmosphere contains some white clouds of frozen methane. These clouds appear as continually changing bands between the equator and the poles of Neptune.

Images taken by *Voyager 2* and the *Hubble Space Telescope* indicate that Neptune has an active weather system. Neptune has the solar system's strongest winds, which exceed 1,000 km/h. A storm that is the size of Earth and that is known as the Great Dark Spot appeared and disappeared on Neptune's surface. Neptune's average cloud-top temperature is about –225°C.

Figure 6 ▶ This Great Dark Spot on Neptune was a giant storm that was similar to the Great Red Spot on Jupiter.



Neptune	
Diameter	49,530 km, or 3.9 times Earth's diameter
Density	1.76 g/cm^3, or 32% of Earth's density
Surface gravity	1.2 times Earth's surface gravity

Pluto	
Diameter	2,390 km, or 20% of Earth's diameter
Density	2.1 g/cm^3, or 40% of Earth's density
Surface gravity	1% of Earth's surface gravity

Figure 7 ▶ Pluto, the smallest planet in our solar system, is even smaller than our moon. Quaoar and Sedna, as shown by these artist renditions, have a smaller diameter than Pluto and are not classified as planets.

Pluto

Pluto, as shown in **Figure 7,** the ninth planet from the sun, was discovered in 1930. Pluto orbits the sun in an unusually elongated and tilted ellipse. Pluto is sometimes inside the orbit of Neptune but is usually far beyond it. Having a diameter of 2,390 km, Pluto is the smallest planet in the solar system. It is also the farthest planet from the sun. Scientists think that Pluto is made up of frozen methane, rock, and ice. The planet has an average temperature of –235°C. Infrared images show that Pluto has extensive methane icecaps and a very thin nitrogen atmosphere. Pluto's only moon, Charon, is half the size of Pluto.

Objects Beyond Pluto

In recent years, scientists have discovered hundreds of objects in our solar system beyond Neptune's orbit. This region of the solar system, which contains these small bodies that are made mostly of ice, is called the **Kuiper belt** (KIE puhr BELT). Some objects that have been found in the Kuiper belt, such as Quaoar, shown in **Figure 7,** are more than half of Pluto's size. If other objects that are larger than Pluto are found there, some scientists think that Pluto should no longer be classified as a planet.

Kuiper belt a region of the solar system that is just beyond the orbit of Neptune and that contains small bodies made mostly of ice

One of the most distant objects in the solar system was found beyond the Kuiper belt in March 2004. This object, which is named after the Inuit goddess of the ocean, Sedna, is about three-fourths the size of Pluto. It is also 3 times farther from Earth than Pluto is. However, Sedna is not classified as a planet. Scientists continue to study Sedna to learn more about it.

Reading Check **Where is the Kuiper belt located? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

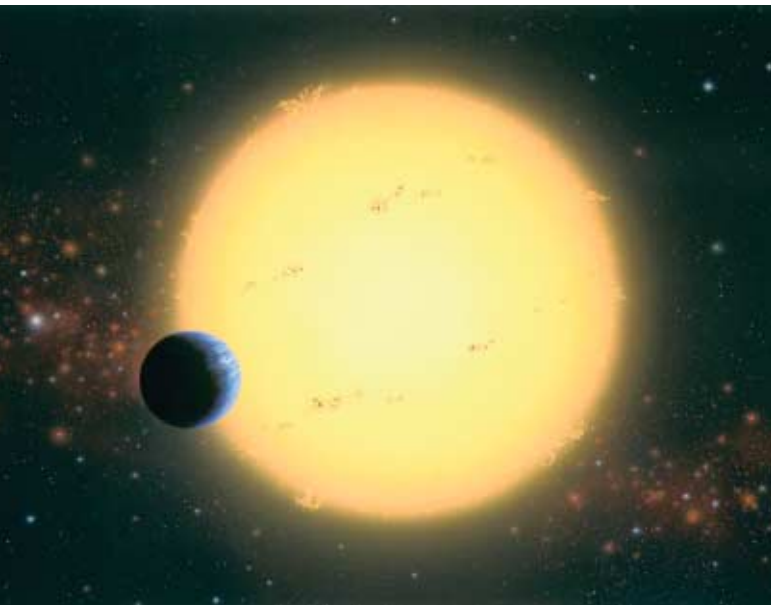


Figure 8 ▶ This illustration shows an artist's idea of a Jupiter-sized exoplanet that was recently discovered. This exoplanet orbits a sun-like star called HD209458, which is located 150 light years from Earth.

Exoplanets

Until the 1990s, all of the planets that astronomers had discovered were in Earth's solar system. Since then, however, more than 100 planets have been attributed to stars other than Earth's sun. Because these planets circle stars other than Earth's sun, they are called *exoplanets*. The prefix *exo-* means "outside." **Figure 8** shows an artist's rendition of an exoplanet. Most known exoplanets orbit stars that are similar to Earth's sun. Therefore, the existence of these planets leads some scientists to wonder if life could exist in another solar system.

Exoplanets cannot be directly observed with telescopes or satellites. Most exoplanets can be detected only because their gravity tugs on stars that they orbit. When scientists study some distant stars, they notice that the light coming from the stars shifts in wavelength. This shifting could be explained by the stars' movement slightly toward and then away from Earth. Scientists know that the gravity of an object that cannot be seen can affect a star's movement. In these cases, that object is most likely an exoplanet that orbits the star.

All of the exoplanets that have been identified are larger than Saturn because current technology can detect only large planets. Many of these exoplanets, though more massive than Jupiter, are closer to their stars than Mercury is to Earth's sun. From studying these many solar systems, scientists hope to learn more about the formation and basic arrangement of solar systems.

Section 4 Review

1. **Explain** what makes Jupiter similar to the sun.
2. **Compare** the characteristics of Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune.
3. **Compare** Jupiter's Great Red Spot with weather on Earth.
4. **Describe** the way in which the tilt of the axis of Uranus's rotation is unusual.
5. **Explain** how Pluto differs from the other outer planets.
6. **Summarize** the features of objects in the Kuiper belt.
7. **Describe** what scientists know about planets outside the solar system.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Making Comparisons** How are the compositions of the gas giants similar to the composition of the sun?
9. **Making Inferences** Why is Pluto considered the ninth planet from the sun even though Neptune is sometimes farther from the sun than Pluto is?
10. **Evaluating Conclusions** Should scientists still consider Pluto to be a planet? Explain your answer.

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *outer planet, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, Pluto, gas giant, Kuiper belt,* and *Great Red Spot*.

Chapter 27 Highlights

Sections

1 Formation of the Solar System

Key Terms

solar system, 685
planet, 685
solar nebula, 685
planetesimal, 686

Key Concepts

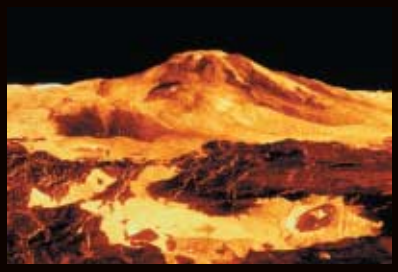
- The solar system formed from a rotating and contracting region of gas and dust about 5 billion years ago.
- The planets formed from collisions of smaller bodies called *planetesimals*.
- As Earth cooled, differentiation caused three distinct compositional layers—the crust, the mantle, and the core—to form.

2 Models of the Solar System

eccentricity, 692
orbital period, 693
inertia, 694

- Geocentric models of the solar system, such as those developed by Aristotle and Ptolemy, were replaced by the heliocentric model proposed by Copernicus.
- Kepler's three laws describe the motion of the planets in their orbits around the sun.
- The planets travel in elliptical orbits around the sun. Planets nearer to the sun travel faster than those farther from the sun do.

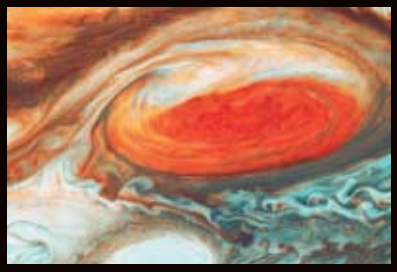
3 The Inner Planets



terrestrial planet, 695

- The four inner planets share similar characteristics and are called the *terrestrial planets*. Earth, Venus, and Mars have a history of geologic activity.
- The terrestrial planets are denser and smaller than the gas giants.

4 The Outer Planets



gas giant, 701
Kuiper belt, 707

- The outer planets consist of the four *gas giants*—Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune—and Pluto, which is the smallest, outermost planet in the solar system.
- The Kuiper belt is a region of the solar system that is beyond Neptune's orbit and that contains small bodies made mostly of ice.
- Exoplanets orbit stars other than the sun.

Chapter 27 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *inertia*
2. *terrestrial planet*
3. *Kuiper belt*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *Kuiper belt* and *orbital period*
5. *planet* and *planetismal*
6. *terrestrial planet* and *gas giant*
7. *solar nebula* and *solar system*

Understanding Key Concepts

8. Copernicus's model of the solar system is
   a. geocentric. **c.** ethnocentric.
   b. lunocentric. **d.** heliocentric.

9. Kepler's first law states that each planet orbits the sun in a path called a(n)
   a. ellipse. **c.** epicycle.
   b. circle. **d.** period.

10. The most distinctive feature of Jupiter is its
    a. Great Red Spot. **c.** ring.
    b. Great Dark Spot. **d.** elongated orbit.

11. The planet that has an axis of rotation that is almost parallel to the plane of its orbit is
    a. Venus. **c.** Uranus.
    b. Jupiter. **d.** Neptune.

12. The tilt of the axis of Mars is nearly the same as that of
    a. Mercury. **c.** Earth.
    b. Venus. **d.** Jupiter.

13. The planet that rotates faster than any other planet in the solar system is
    a. Earth. **c.** Uranus.
    b. Jupiter. **d.** Pluto.

14. Kepler's law that describes how fast planets travel at different points in their orbits is called the law of
    a. ellipses. **c.** equal areas.
    b. equal speeds. **d.** periods.

15. All of the outer planets in the solar system are large *except*
    a. Saturn. **c.** Nepture.
    b. Uranus. **d.** Pluto.

16. The first atmosphere of Earth was made mostly of
    a. helium. **c.** carbon dioxide.
    b. oxygen. **d.** methane.

17. The hypothesis that states that the sun and the planets developed out of the same cloud of gas and dust is called the
    a. Copernicus hypothesis.
    b. solar hypothesis.
    c. nebular hypothesis.
    d. Galileo hypothesis.

18. In the process of photosynthesis, green plants give off
    a. hydrogen. **c.** carbon dioxide.
    b. oxygen. **d.** helium.

Short Answer

19. Explain how Earth's early atmosphere differs from Earth's atmosphere today.

20. What is the shape of the planets' orbits?

21. What is Kepler's first law?

22. How did Newton's ideas about the orbits of the planets differ from Kepler's ideas?

23. List three features of Earth that allow it to sustain life.

24. Describe how a planet might form.

25. How did differentiation help to form solid Earth?

Critical Thinking

26. Applying Ideas Suppose astronomers discover that exoplanets orbiting stars that are similar to Earth's sun have similar compositions to the planets in Earth's solar system. What can the astronomers hypothesize about the formation of those solar systems?

27. Identifying Trends If you know the distance from the sun to a planet, what other information can you determine about the orbit of the planet? Explain your answer.

28. Making Inferences How would the layers of Earth be different if the planet had never been hotter than it is today?

Concept Mapping

29. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *solar system, planet, protoplanet, planetesimal, differentiation, core, mantle, crust, geocentric, heliocentric, Aristotle, Ptolemy, Copernicus, ellipse, Earth, terrestrial planet, outer planet, Jupiter, Pluto, gas giant, Kuiper belt, solar nebula* and *inner planet*.

Math Skills

30. Making Calculations Mercury has a period of rotation equal to 58.67 Earth days. Mercury's period of revolution is equal to 88 Earth days. How many times does Mercury rotate during one revolution around the sun?

31. Applying Quantities Uranus's orbital period is 84 years. What is its distance from the sun in astronomical units?

32. Making Calculations Venus's orbital period is 225 days. Calculate your age in Venus years.

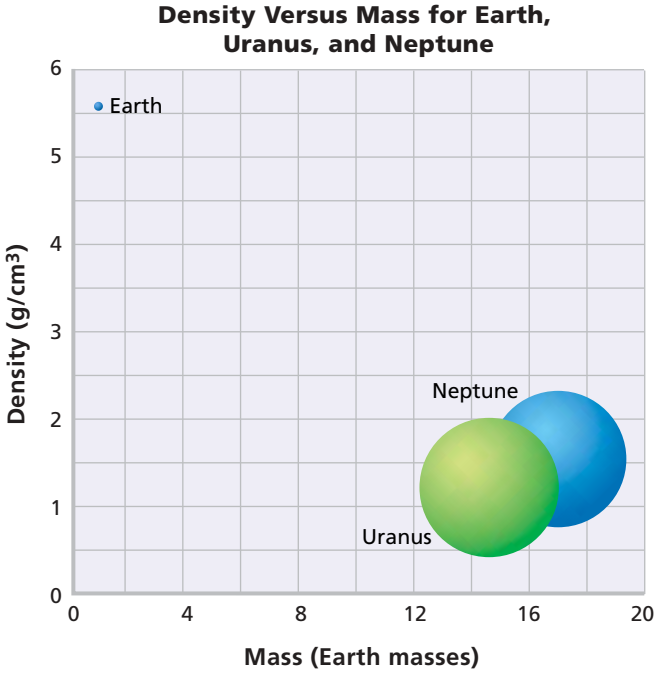
Writing Skills

33. Creative Writing Imagine that you are the first astronaut to land on Mars. In a short essay, describe what you hope and expect to find.

34. Communicating Main Ideas Create your own definition for *planet*. Then, write an explanation for why Pluto is or is not a planet.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows density in relation to mass for Earth, Uranus, and Neptune. Mass is given in Earth masses. The mass of Earth is equal to 1. Use the graph to answer the questions that follow:



35. Which planet is denser, Uranus or Neptune? Explain your answer.

36. Which planet has the smallest mass?

37. How can Earth be the densest of the three planets even though Uranus and Neptune have so much more mass than Earth does?

Chapter 27 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 Small bodies that join to form protoplanets in the early stages of the development of the solar system are

A. planets
B. solar nebulas
C. plantesimals
D. gas giants

2 Scientists hypothesize that Earth's first oceans were made of fresh water. How did oceans obtain fresh water?

F. Water vapor in the early atmosphere cooled and fell to Earth as rain.
G. Frozen comets that fell to Earth melted as they traveled through the atmosphere.
H. As soon as icecaps formed, they melted because Earth was still very hot.
I. Early terrestrial organisms exhaled water vapor, which condensed to form fresh water.

3 The original atmosphere of Earth consisted of

A. nitrogen and oxygen gases
B. helium and hydrogen gases
C. ozone and ammonia gases
D. oxygen and carbon dioxide gases

4 Scientists think that the core of Earth is made of molten

F. iron and nickel
G. nickel and magnesium
H. silicon and nickel
I. iron and silicon

5 Scientists estimate that the sun originated as a solar nebula and began to produce its own energy through nuclear fusion approximately how many years ago?

A. 50 million years
B. 500 million years
C. 1 billion years
D. 5 billion years

Directions (6–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 What four planets make up the group known as the inner planets?

7 The Great Red Spot is found on what planet?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–10): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Movement of the Planets

Imagine that it is the year 200 BCE and that you are an apprentice to a famous Greek astronomer. After many years of observing the sky, the astronomer knows all of the constellations as well as he knows the back of his hand. He shows you how all the stars move together—how the whole sky spins slowly as the night goes on. He also shows you that among the thousands of stars in the sky, some of the brighter ones slowly change their position in relation to the other stars. The astronomer names these stars planetai, the Greek word that means "wanderers."

Building on the observations of the ancient Greeks, we now know that the planetai are actually planets, not wandering stars. Because of their proximity to Earth and their orbits around the sun, the planets appear to move relative to the stars.

8 According to the passage, which of the following statements is not true?

A. It is possible to determine planets in the night sky by the way they move relative to the other stars.
B. The word planetai means "wanderers" in the Greek language.
C. Some of the earliest astronomers to detect the presence of planets were Roman.
D. Ancient Greeks were studying astronomy more than 2,200 years ago.

9 What can you infer from the passage about the ancient Greek astronomers?

F. They were patient and observant.
G. They knew much more about astronomy than we do today.
H. They spent all of their time counting the number of stars in the sky.
I. They invented astronomy and were the first people to observe the skies.

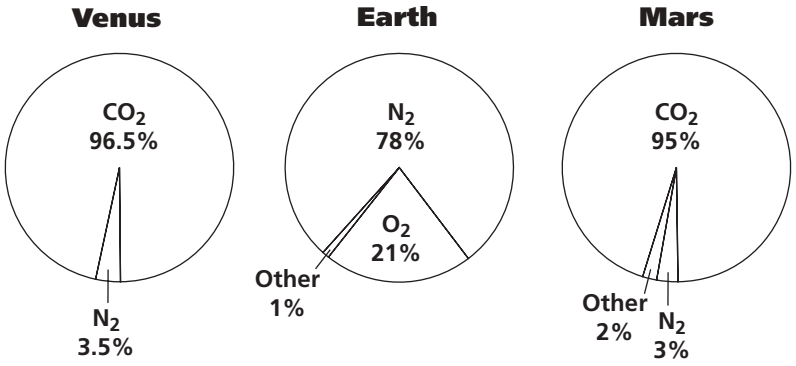
10 What did the Greek astronomers note about the movement of stars and constellations?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–14): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The pie graphs below show the percentages of different gases in the atmospheres of three planets. Use these graphs to answer questions 11 and 12.

Atmospheres of Venus, Earth, and Mars



11 What is the percentage of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere of Venus?

A. 3.5%
B. 21%
C. 95%
D. 96.5%

12 Today, Earth's atmosphere includes a large amount of oxygen. Describe how the oxygen in Earth's atmosphere formed, and using this information, predict the likelihood that Mars will someday have oxygen in its atmosphere.

The table below shows the orbital and rotational periods of the first five planets in the solar system. Use this table to answer questions 13 and 14.

Planets of the Solar System

Planet	Orbital period	Rotational period
Mercury	88 days	59 days
Venus	225 days	243 days
Earth	365.25 days	23 hours 56 minutes
Mars	687 days	24 hours 37 minutes
Jupiter	12 years	9 hours 50 minutes
Saturn	29.5 years	10 hours 30 minutes
Uranus	84 years	17 hours
Neptune	164 years	16 hours
Pluto	248 years	153 hours 20 minutes

13 Which planet's day length is nearly the same as Earth's?

F. Mercury
G. Mars
H. Saturn
I. Neptune

14 How many rotations does Neptune complete in one Earth day?

Test TIP

Even if you are sure of the answer to a test question, read all of the answer choices before selecting your response.

Chapter 27

Making Models Lab

Objectives

- **Create** a model that demonstrates the formation of impact craters.
- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Analyze** how an object's speed and projectile angle affect the impact crater that the object forms on planets and moons.

Materials

marble, large (1)
marbles, small (5)
marker
meter stick
plaster of Paris
protractor
scissors
shoe box
tape, masking
toothpicks (6)
tweezers

Safety

Crater Analysis

All of the inner planets—Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars—have many features in common. They are made of mostly solid rock and have metallic cores. They have no rings and have from zero to two moons each. And they have bowl-shaped depressions called *impact craters*. Impact craters are caused by collisions between the planets and rocky objects that travel through space. Most of these collisions took place during the formation of the solar system.

Mercury's entire surface is covered with these craters, while very few craters are still evident on the surface of Earth. Many of the moons of the inner and outer planets are also heavily cratered. In this lab, you will experiment with making craters to discover the effect of speed and projectile angle on the way craters form.

PROCEDURE

1. Place the top of a toothpick in the center of a piece of masking tape that is 6 cm long. Fold the tape in half around the toothpick to form a "small flag" and "flagpole." On the flag, write the letter *A*. Repeat this step for the other toothpicks, and label them with the letters *B* through *F*.

Step 7

2. Mix plaster of Paris with water, according to instructions for making plaster of Paris. Spread your mixture in the bottom of the shoe box. Make your plaster layer about 4 cm thick. The surface should be as smooth as possible.
3. Allow the plaster to dry until it is no longer soupy, but not yet rigid.
4. Drop a large marble onto the plaster from a height of 50 cm above the surface. Quickly remove the marble with tweezers, but do not damage the crater that formed. Place flag A next to the crater to label the crater.
5. Repeat **step 4** by using a small marble dropped from a height of 50 cm and another small marble dropped from a height of 25 cm. Use the flags to label craters *B* (50 cm drop) and *C* (25 cm drop).
6. Repeat **step 4** by using a small marble dropped from a height of 1 m. Label the crater *D*.
7. Using a protractor as a guide, have your partner tilt the box at a 30° angle to the table. Be sure your partner holds the box steady. Then, drop a small marble vertically from a height of 50 cm. Label the crater *E*.
8. Repeat **step 7** by using an angle of 45°. Label the crater *F*.
9. Allow the plaster of Paris to harden. Write a description of each crater and the surrounding area.

Step 6

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

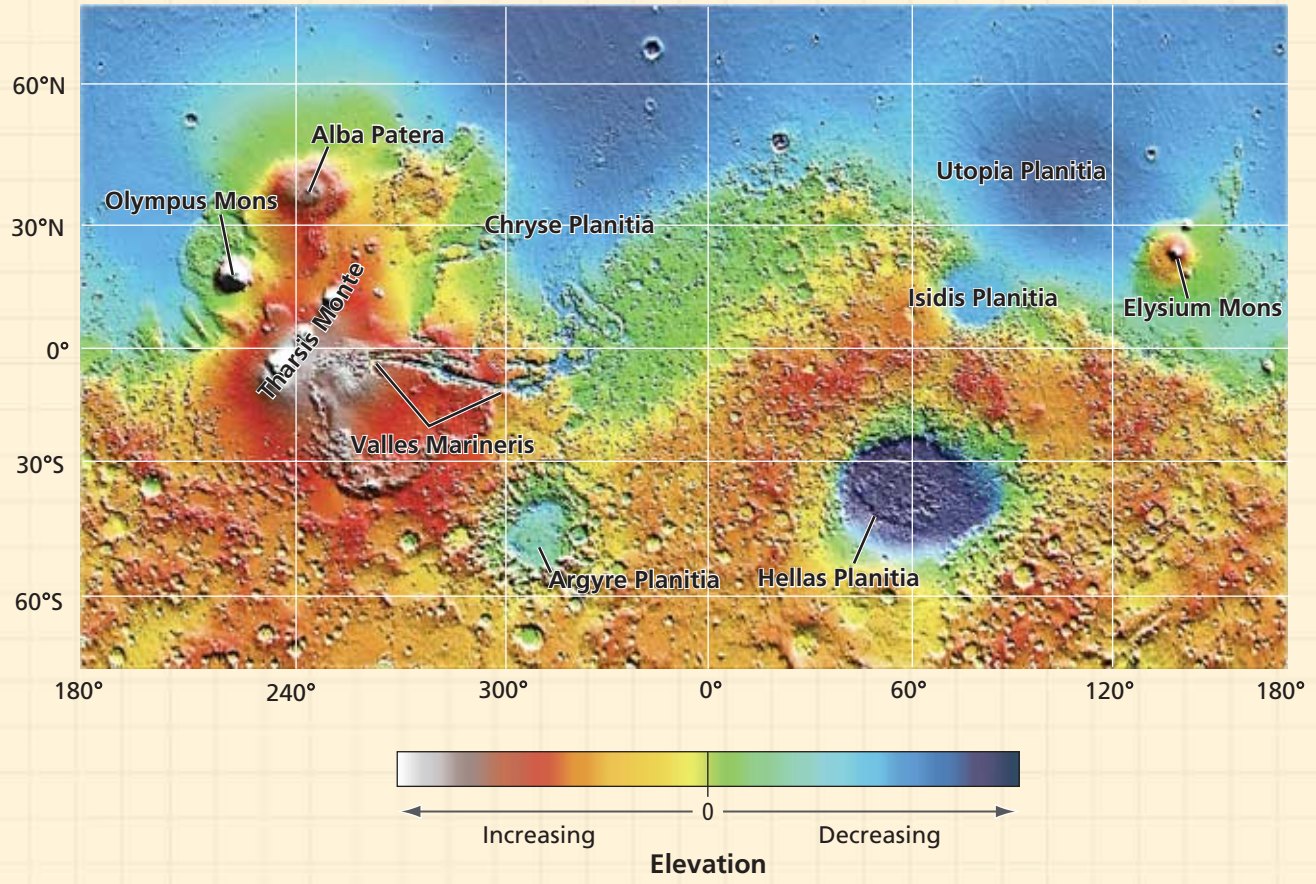
1. **Examining Data** Which crater was formed by the marble that had the highest velocity? What is the effect of velocity on the characteristics of the crater formed?
2. **Explaining Events** Study the shapes of craters B, E, and F. How did the angle of the plaster of Paris affect the shape of the craters that formed?
3. **Making Comparisons** Compare craters A, B, and D. How do they differ from each other? What caused this difference? Is the difference in the masses of the objects a factor? Explain your answer.

Extension

1. **Applying Conclusions** Find a map of the surface craters on one of the terrestrial planets. Identify craters that were made by different angles of impact. Label the craters on the diagram, and present your findings to the class.

MAPS in Action

MOLA Map of Mars



Map Skills Activity

The above map shows the relative elevation of surface features on Mars's surface. The number 0 on the elevation scale marks the average elevation at the equator. This map was created from data that was collected by the Mars Orbiter Laser Altimeter (MOLA) on the *NASA Mars Global Surveyor*. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Analyzing Data** Estimate the longitude and latitude of Elysium Mons.
2. **Using the Key** Identify three features that have elevations below 0. Identify three features that have elevations above 0.
3. **Comparing Areas** In general, which pole on Mars, the north pole or south pole, has higher elevations?
4. **Using the Key** Which feature, Isidis Planitia or Argyre Planitia, has a higher elevation?
5. **Making Comparisons** Which feature, Hellas Planitia or Olympus Mons, would most likely be a volcano?
6. **Using the Key** Estimate the distance between Olympus Mons and Elysium Mons in degrees of longitude.
7. **Inferring Relationships** Based on what you have learned from the map, what type of features do you think the words *planitia,* and *mons* refer to?

Astronomer

"Astronomy offers profound messages for our future. It provides a motivation for humans to save this planet and take advantage of its enormous possibilities."

—Sandra Faber

"As a five-year-old, I had binoculars—I'd lie on the lawn at night and use them to look at the sky," says Sandra Faber, professor of astronomy at the University of Santa Cruz, and staff member at the Lick Observatory in Santa Cruz, California.

Like a Detective Story

Faber's research focuses on the formation and evolution of galaxies and the evolution of structures in the universe. To gather data, Faber uses various kinds of telescopes, including ground-based telescopes and the *Hubble Space Telescope*. "Astronomy is like a big detective story," she says. "Information is gathered and shared among scientists, who then draw scientific conclusions about how the universe came to be." Faber is currently a core member of the Deep Extragalactic Evolutionary Probe (DEEP) project. DEEP uses the Keck II telescope in Hawaii and the *Hubble Space Telescope* to survey faint, faraway galaxies.

A Look Back in Time

To see these galaxies, the DEEP project uses a spectrographic instrument called DEIMOS, which stands for *deep imaging multi-object spectrograph*. DEIMOS allows Faber and her colleagues to collect and analyze light that has traveled for billions of years from its original source. Astronomers call such research *look back studies*. By collecting data, Faber can look back billions of years to find answers to scientific questions about the origin of the universe.

Faber's research has given her appreciation for Earth's uniqueness. She says, "Earth is far more varied and beautiful than any other planet. It's all we've got." She also has a special perspective on the Earth's vulnerability: "When seen from space, the Earth is small. It floats in a hostile void. Its atmosphere is thin, like the skin on an apple. Even from space, one can see visual signs of pollutants. It provides a motivation for humans to save this planet and take advantage of its enormous possibilities." In many ways, notes Faber, "Earth is like a spaceship. It's up to the crew members to maintain control."

◀ Faber studies distant galaxies from the W. M. Keck Observatory on top of the Hawaiian volcano Mauna Kea.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Careers in Earth Science
SciLinks code: HQ60222

Chapter 28

Minor Bodies of the Solar System

Sections

Earth's Moon

Movements of the Moon

Satellites of Other Planets

Asteroids, Comets, and Meteoroids

What You'll Learn

- What Earth's moon is made of and how it moves
- How satellites of other planets differ from Earth's moon
- What comets, asteroids, and meteoroids are

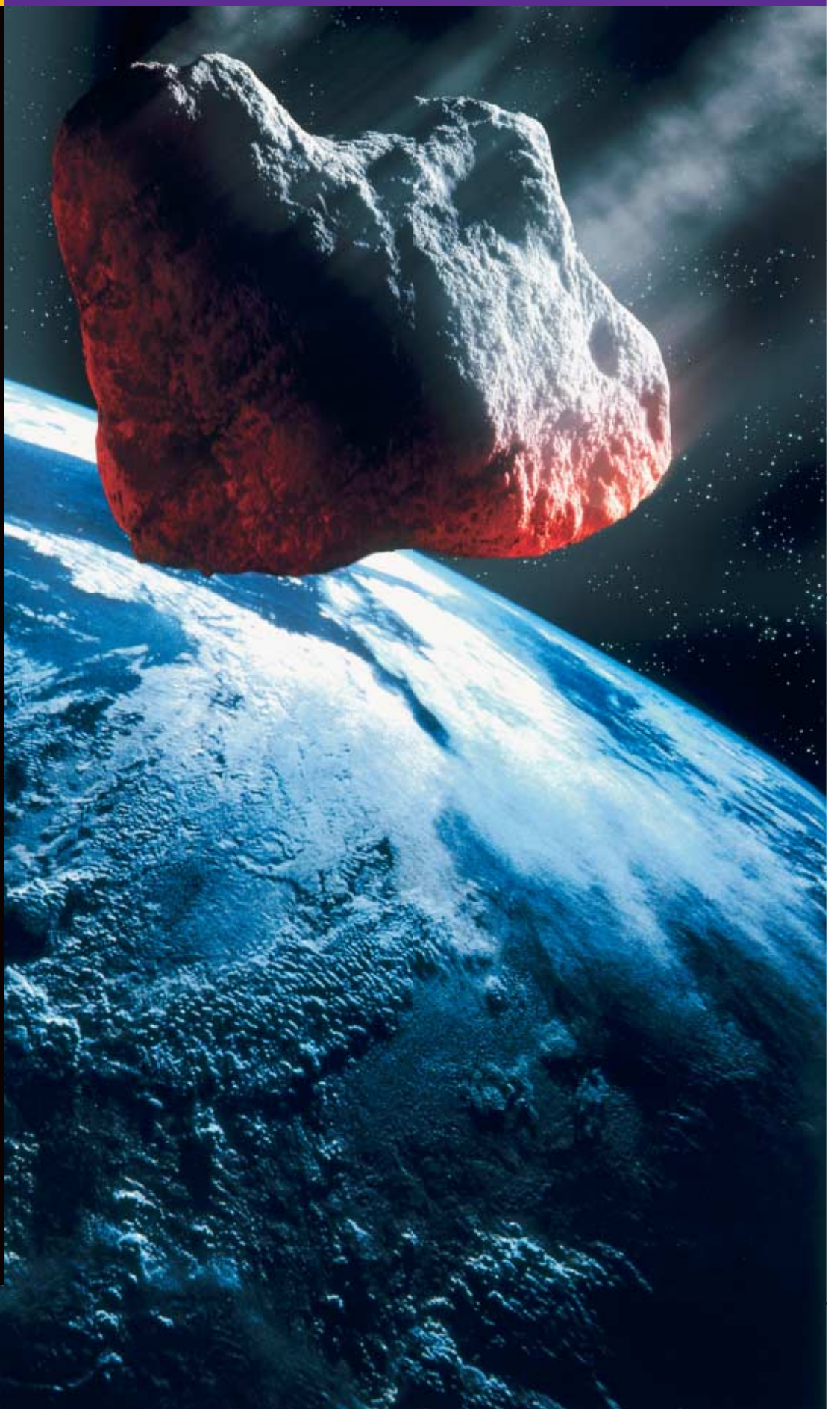
Why It's Relevant

Small orbiting objects can provide information about the conditions that existed at the beginnings of our solar system.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Booklet Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Booklet" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label each page of the booklet with a main idea from the chapter. As you read the chapter, write what you learn about each main idea on the appropriate page of the booklet.



▶ This is one idea of how an asteroid might look as it moves toward Earth. Asteroids are one type of small body that travels through our solar system.

Section 1 Earth's Moon

A body that orbits a larger body is called a **satellite.** Seven of the planets in our solar system have smaller bodies that orbit around them. These natural satellites are also called **moons.** Our moon is Earth's natural satellite.

In 1957, the Soviet Union launched *Sputnik 1,* which was the first *artificial satellite* launched into space. In 1958, the United States launched its first artificial satellite, which was named *Explorer 1*. Thousands of artificial satellites are now in orbit around Earth, including weather satellites and space telescopes, such as the *Hubble Space Telescope*.

Exploring the Moon

Between 1969 and 1972, the United States sent six spacecraft to the moon as part of the Apollo space program. Apollo astronauts found that the moon's weak gravity affected the way they moved. They discovered that bouncing was more efficient than walking. Apollo astronauts also explored the moon's surface in a variety of specially-designed vehicles, such as the one shown in **Figure 1.**

The moon has much less mass than Earth does, so the gravity experienced on the moon's surface is about one-sixth of the gravity experienced on Earth. As a result, a person who has a mass of 61.2 kg and who exerts about 600 newtons (N) of force on Earth would exert only about 100 N on the moon. The gravity at the moon's surface is not strong enough to hold gases and therefore has no atmosphere. Because the moon has no atmosphere to absorb and transport heat, the moon's surface temperature varies greatly, from 134°C during the day to –170°C at night.

Figure1 ▶ *Apollo 17* astronaut Eugene Cernan explores the lunar surface in a Lunar Roving Vehicle.

OBJECTIVES

- **List** four kinds of lunar surface features.
- **Describe** the three layers of the moon.
- **Summarize** the three stages by which the moon formed.

KEY TERMS

satellite
moon
mare
crater

satellite a natural or artificial body that revolves around a planet

moon a body that revolves around a planet and that has less mass than the planet does

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Earth's Moon
SciLinks code: HQ60449

The Lunar Surface

Because *luna* is the Latin word for "moon," any feature of the moon is referred to as *lunar*. Light and dark patches on the moon can be seen with the unaided eye. The lighter areas are rough highlands that are composed of rocks called *anorthosites*. The darker areas are smooth, reflect less light, and are called *maria* (MAHR ee uh). Each dark area is a **mare** (MAHR AY). *Mare* is Latin for "sea." Galileo named these dark areas *maria* because he thought that they looked like Earth's seas. Today, astronomers know that maria are plains of dark, solidified lava. These lava plains formed more than 3 billion years ago when lava slowly filled basins that were created by impacts of massive asteroids.

mare a large, dark area of basalt on the moon (plural, *maria*)

crater a bowl-shaped depression that forms on the surface of an object when a falling body strikes the object's surface or when an explosion occurs

Craters, Rilles, and Ridges

The surface of the moon, shown in **Figure 2,** is covered with numerous bowl-shaped depressions, called **craters.** Most of the moon's craters formed when debris left over from the formation of the solar system struck the moon about 4 billion years ago. Younger craters are characterized by bright streaks, called *rays*, that extend outward from the impact site. Even these younger craters, however, are billions of years old.

Long, deep channels called *rilles* run through the maria in some places. The moon's rilles are thought to be leftover lava channels from the formation of the maria. Some rilles are as long as 240 km. Another surface feature of the moon is ridges. Ridges are long, narrow elevations of rock that rise out of the surface and criss-cross the maria.

Reading Check **Name two features of the moon. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

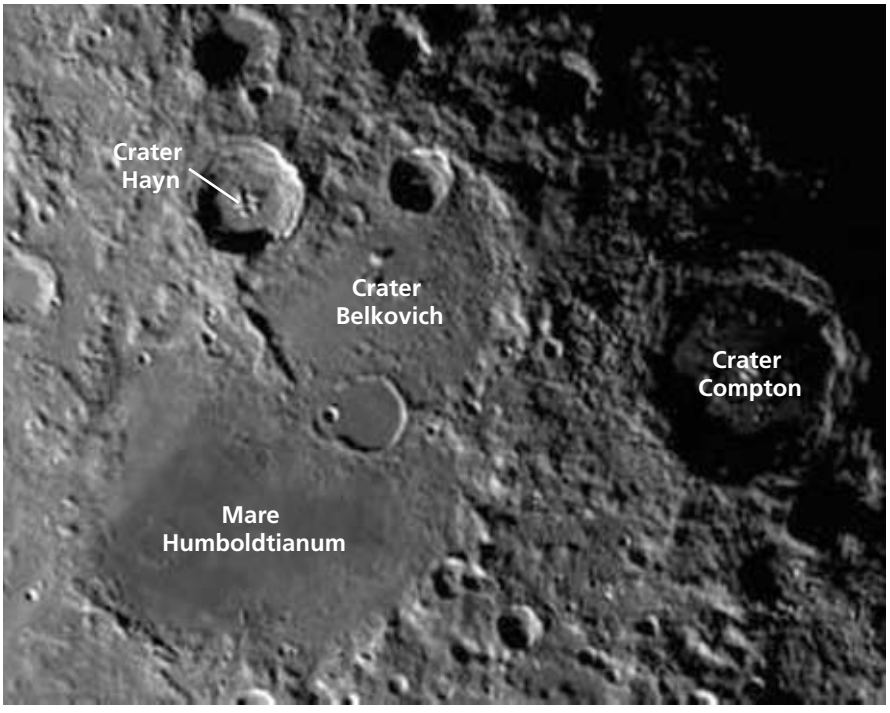


Figure 2 ▶ The largest lunar craters are named for famous scholars and scientists. The lunar surface also has millions of small, overlapping craters. ***How does the shape of Mare Humboldtianum indicate that this feature once was an impact crater?***

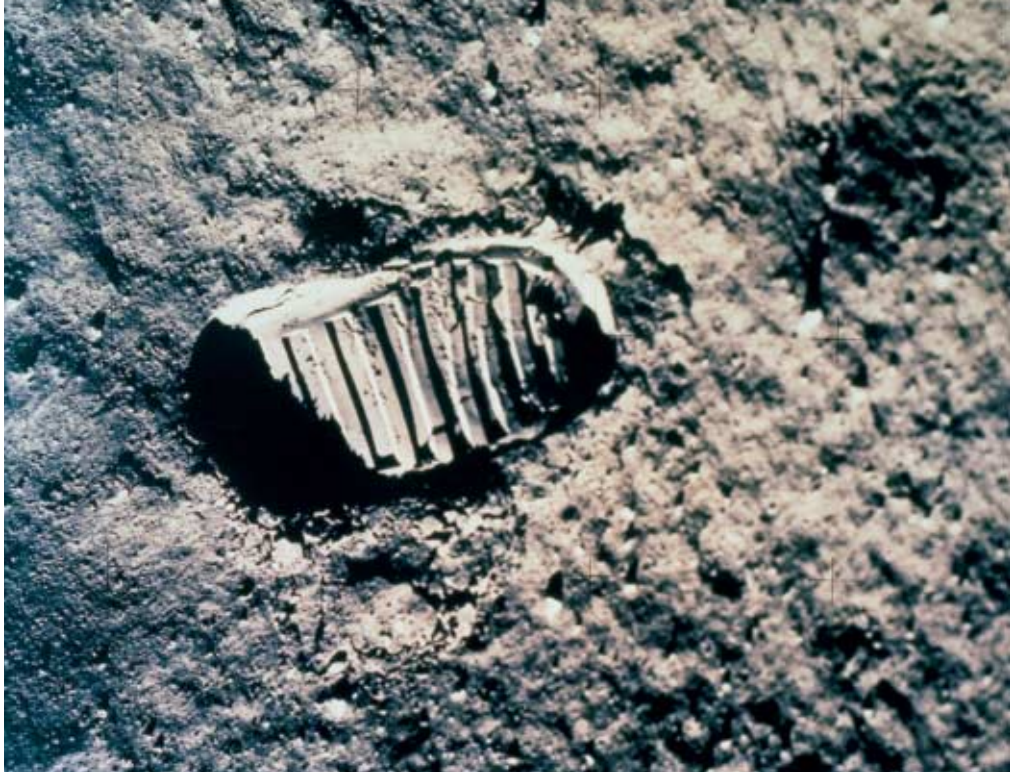


Figure 3 ▶ This footprint is one of the first marks left on the moon by humans. The footprint is visible because of the fine layer of rock and dust, called *regolith,* that covers the moon's surface.

Regolith

More meteorites have reached the surface of the moon than have reached Earth's surface because the moon has no atmosphere for protection. Over billions of years, these meteorites crushed much of the rock on the lunar surface into dust and small fragments. Today, almost all of the lunar surface is covered by a layer of dust and rock, called *regolith*. Regolith is shown in **Figure 3.** The depth of the regolith layer varies from 1 m to 6 m.

Lunar Rocks

Many lunar rocks are very similar to rocks on Earth. Lunar rocks, including the one shown in **Figure 4,** contain many of the same elements as Earth's rocks do, but lunar rocks contain different proportions of those elements. Lunar rocks are igneous, and most rocks near the surface are composed mainly of oxygen and silicon. These surface rocks are similar to the rocks in Earth's crust. Rocks from the lunar highlands are light-colored, coarse-grained anorthosites. Highland rocks are rich in calcium and aluminum. Rocks from the maria are fine-grained basalts and contain large amounts of titanium, magnesium, and iron.

Nevertheless, lunar surface rocks have only small amounts of some elements that are common on Earth. Many of these elements have low melting points and may have boiled off early in the moon's history when the moon was still molten. Also, the minerals in lunar rocks do not contain water.

One type of rock that occurs in both maria and the highlands is *breccia*. Lunar breccia contains fragments of other rocks that have been fused together. These breccias formed when meteorites struck the moon. The force of these impacts broke up rocks, and the heat from the impacts partially melted the fragments.

Figure 4 ▶ This rock is 4.3 billion to 4.5 billion years old; it is the oldest rock discovered on the moon. The rock's texture indicates that the rock has a complicated history.

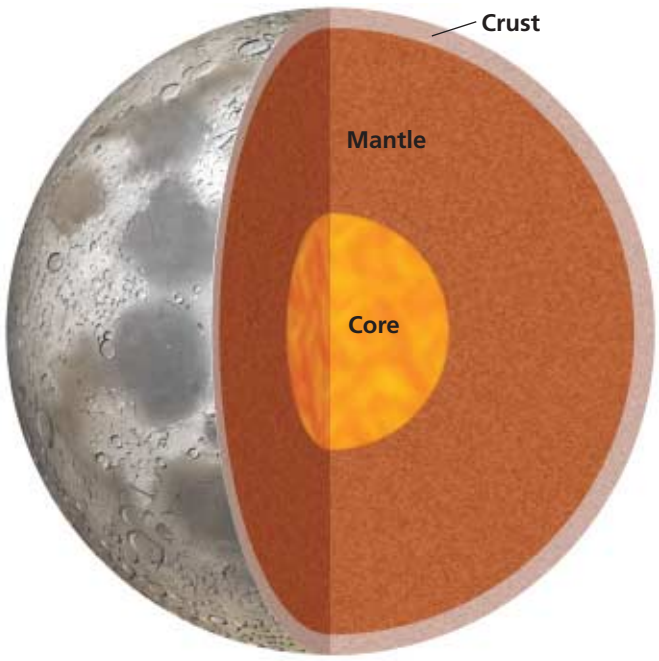


Figure 5 ▶ The moon, like Earth, has three compositional layers: the crust, the mantle, and the core.

The Interior of the Moon

Rocks of the lunar surface are about as dense as those on Earth's surface. However, the overall density of the moon is only three-fifths the density of Earth. The difference in overall density indicates that the interior of the moon is less dense than the interior of Earth.

Most of the information about the interior of the moon comes from seismographs that were placed on the moon by the Apollo astronauts. Seismographs have recorded numerous weak moonquakes, which are similar to earthquakes. More than 10,000 moonquakes have been detected. Most moonquakes occur in the mantle at a depth that is 10 times deeper than the depth at which most earthquakes occur on Earth. From these moonquakes, scientists learned that the moon's interior is layered, as shown in **Figure 5.**

The Moon's Crust

One side of the moon always faces Earth. That side is therefore called the *near side*. The other side always faces away from Earth and is called the *far side*. The pull of Earth's gravity during the moon's formation caused the crust on the far side of the moon to become thicker than the crust on the near side. On the near side, the lunar crust is about 60 km thick. On the far side, the lunar crust is up to 100 km thick. Images of the far side show that the far side's surface is mountainous and has only a few small maria. The crust of the far side appears to consist of materials that are similar to those of the rocks in the highlands on the near side.

Reading Check **Name two features of the far side of the moon. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

The Moon's Mantle and Core

Beneath the crust is the moon's mantle. The mantle is thought to be made of rock that is rich in silica, magnesium, and iron. Of the moon's 1,738 km radius, the mantle makes up more than half of that distance and reaches 1,000 km below the crust.

Scientists think that the moon has a small iron core that has a radius of less than 700 km. When laser beams were bounced off of small mirrors placed on the moon, scientists discovered that the moon's rotation is not uniform. This nonuniform rotation indicates that the core is neither completely solid nor completely liquid. This characteristic may explain why the moon has almost no overall magnetic field. There are, however, small areas on the moon that exhibit local magnetism.

QuickLAB 5 min

Liquid and Solid Cores

Procedure

1. Take **one uncooked egg** and **one hardboiled egg.** With your thumb and forefinger, spin both eggs.
2. Record the amount of time each egg spins.
3. Lay **one can of solid food** and **one can of soup** on their sides, and spin both cans.
4. Record the amount of time each can spins.

Analysis

1. Which egg stopped spinning first? Which can of food stopped spinning first?
2. Which rotates more steadily: an object that has a solid core or an object that has a liquid core? Explain your answer.

The Formation of the Moon

Rocks taken from the moon by Apollo astronauts provided evidence to help astronomers understand the moon's history. Most scientists generally agree that the moon formed in three stages.

The Giant Impact Hypothesis

Most scientists think that the moon's development began when a large object collided with Earth more than 4 billion years ago. This *giant impact hypothesis* states that a Mars-sized body struck Earth early in the history of the solar system. Before the impact, Earth was molten, or heated to an almost liquid state. The collision ejected chunks of Earth's mantle into orbit around Earth. The debris eventually clumped together to form the moon, as shown in **Figure 6.**

Most of the ejected materials came from Earth's silica-rich mantle rather than from Earth's dense, metallic core. This hypothesis explains why moon rocks share many of the chemical characteristics of Earth's mantle. As the material clumped together, it continued to revolve around Earth because of Earth's gravitational pull.

Differentiation of the Lunar Interior

Early in its history, the lunar surface was covered by an ocean of molten rock. Over time, the densest materials moved toward the center of the moon and formed a small core. The least dense materials formed an outer crust. The other materials settled between the core and the outer layer to form the moon's mantle.

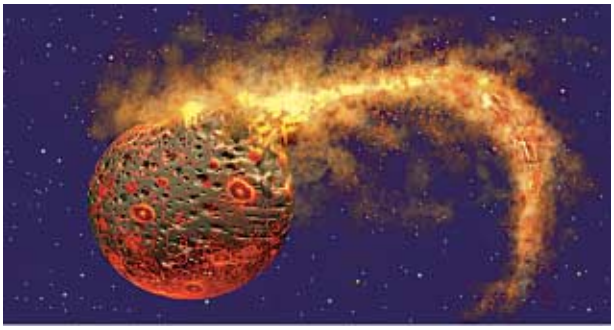
Meteorite Bombardment

The outer surface of the moon eventually cooled to form a thick, solid crust over the molten interior. At the same time, debris left over from the formation of the solar system struck the solid surface and produced craters and regolith.

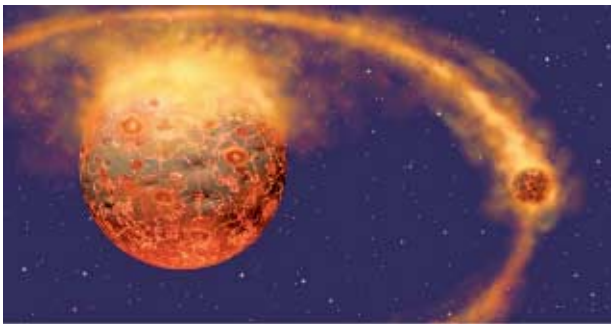
About 3 billion years ago, the number of small objects in the solar system decreased. Less material struck the lunar surface, and few new craters formed. Craters that have rays formed during the most recent meteor impacts. During this stage of lunar development, virtually all geologic activity stopped. Because the moon cooled more than 3 billion years ago, it looks today almost exactly as it did 3 billion years ago. Therefore, the moon is a valuable source of information about the conditions that existed in the solar system long ago.

Figure 6 ▶ The First Stage of Moon Formation

Scientists think that a Mars-sized object collided with Earth and blasted part of Earth's mantle into space.



The resulting debris then began to revolve around Earth.



The material eventually joined to form Earth's moon.

Figure 7 ▶ The near side of the moon (top) has fewer visible craters than the far side (bottom) does because lava flows on the near side covered many of the impact sites with maria.

Lava Flows on the Moon

After impacts on the moon's surface formed deep basins, lava flowed out of cracks, or *fissures*, in the lunar crust. This lava flooded the crater basins to form maria. The presence of the maria suggests that fissure eruptions once characterized the moon, even though there is no evidence that active volcanoes have ever been present on the moon.

Because the moon's crust is thinner on the near side than on the far side, much more lava flowed onto the surface on the near side than onto the surface of the far side of the moon. The near side of the moon has several smooth maria, but the far side has few maria and many more craters, as shown in **Figure 7.**

Scientists do not yet know how magma formed in the lunar interior or how the magma reached the surface. There is no evidence of plate tectonics or convection currents in the moon's mantle, so the magma must have formed in some other way. A large amount of energy would have been needed to produce the magma in the upper layers of the moon. Some scientists think this energy may have come from a long period of intense meteorite bombardment. Other scientists think that radioactive decay of materials may have also heated the moon's interior enough to cause magma to form. Scientists agree that the lava flows ended about 3.1 billion years ago, when the interior cooled completely.

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** what maria on the surface of the moon look like and how they came to be known as maria.
2. **Compare** the thickness of the moon's crust on the near side with the thickness of the crust on the far side.
3. **Summarize** how and when the maria formed.
4. **Describe** how the surface of the moon would be different today if meteorites had continued to hit it at the same rate as they did 3 billion years ago.
5. **Describe** breccias and how they formed on the moon.
6. **Summarize** how scientists think the moon formed.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Analyzing Ideas** Explain how Earth's gravity affected the moon's near side and far side differently.
8. **Making Comparisons** Compare the features of the lunar surface created by lava flows and the features created by impacts.

CONCEPT MAPPING

9. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *moon, meteorite, crater, rille, maria, highlands,* and *basalt.*

Section 2

Movements of the Moon

If you looked down on the moon from above its north pole, you would see the moon rotate once on its axis every 27.3 days. However, if you stood on the moon's surface and measured the lunar day by the amount of time between sunrises, you would find that a lunar day is 29.5 Earth days long. This discrepancy is due to the fact that, while the moon is revolving around Earth, Earth and the moon are also revolving around the sun.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the shape of the moon's orbit around Earth.
- **Explain** why eclipses occur.
- **Describe** the appearance of four phases of the moon.
- **Explain** how the movements of the moon affect tides on Earth.

KEY TERMS

apogee
perigee
eclipse
solar eclipse
lunar eclipse
phase

The Earth-Moon System

To observers on Earth, the moon appears to orbit Earth. However, if you could observe Earth and the moon from space, you would see that Earth and the moon revolve around each other. Together, they form a single system that orbits the sun.

The mass of the moon is only 1/80 that of Earth. So, the balance point of the Earth-moon system is not halfway between the centers of the two bodies. The balance point is located within Earth's interior because Earth's mass is greater than the moon's mass. This balance point is called the *barycenter*. The barycenter follows a smooth orbit around the sun, as shown in **Figure 1.**

The Moon's Elliptical Orbit

The orbit of the moon around Earth forms an ellipse that is about 5% more elongated than a circle is. Therefore, the distance between Earth and its moon varies over a month's time. When the moon is farthest from Earth, the moon is at **apogee.** When the moon is closest to Earth, the moon is at **perigee.** The average distance of the moon from Earth is 384,000 km.

apogee in the orbit of a satellite, the point at which the satellite is farthest from Earth

perigee in the orbit of a satellite, the point at which the satellite is closest to Earth

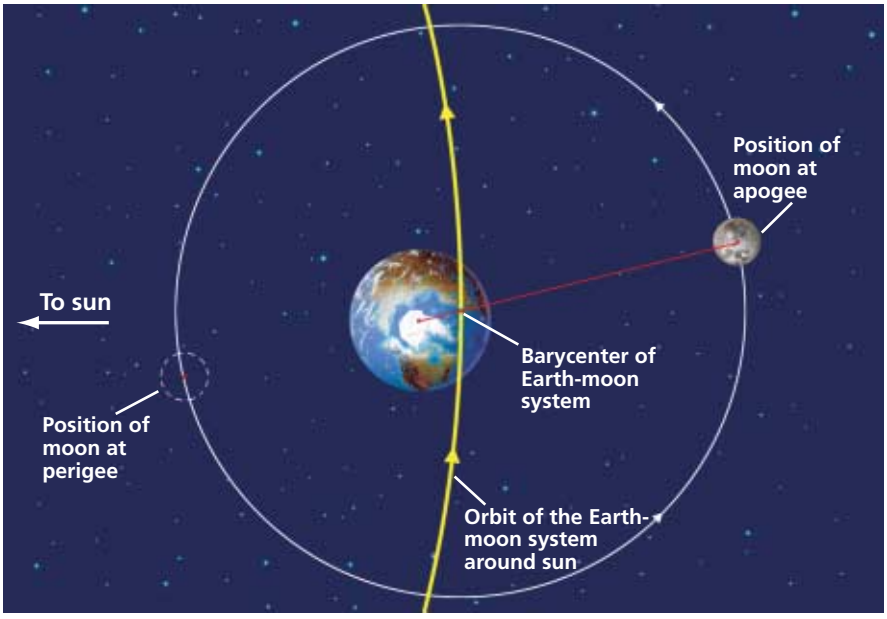


Figure 1 ▶ The barycenter of the Earth-moon system orbits the sun in a smooth ellipse. The orbits of both Earth and the moon "wobble" as the bodies move around the sun. This diagram is not to scale.

Moonrise and Moonset

The moon appears to rise and set at Earth's horizon because of Earth's rotation on its axis. If you were to watch the moon rise or set on successive nights, however, you would notice that it rises or sets approximately 50 minutes later each night. This happens because of both Earth's rotation and the moon's revolution. While Earth completes one rotation each day, the moon also moves in its orbit around Earth. It takes an extra 1/29 of Earth's rotation, or 50 minutes, for the horizon to catch up to the moon.

Lunar Rotation

In addition to orbiting Earth and revolving around the sun, the moon also spins on its axis. The moon rotated rapidly when it formed, but the pull of Earth's gravity has slowed the moon's rate of rotation. The moon now spins very slowly and completes a rotation only once during each orbit around Earth. The moon revolves only once around Earth in about 27.3 days relative to the stars. Because the rotation and the revolution of the moon take the same amount of time, observers on Earth always see the same side of the moon. Therefore, images of the far side of the moon must be taken by spacecraft orbiting the moon.

As the moon orbits Earth, the part of the moon's surface that is illuminated by sunlight changes. The sun's light always illuminates half of the moon and half of Earth, as shown in **Figure 2.** The near side of the moon is sometimes fully illuminated by the sun. At other times, depending on where the moon is in its orbit, the near side is partly or completely darkened.

Reading Check **Why are we unable to photograph the far side of the moon from Earth? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

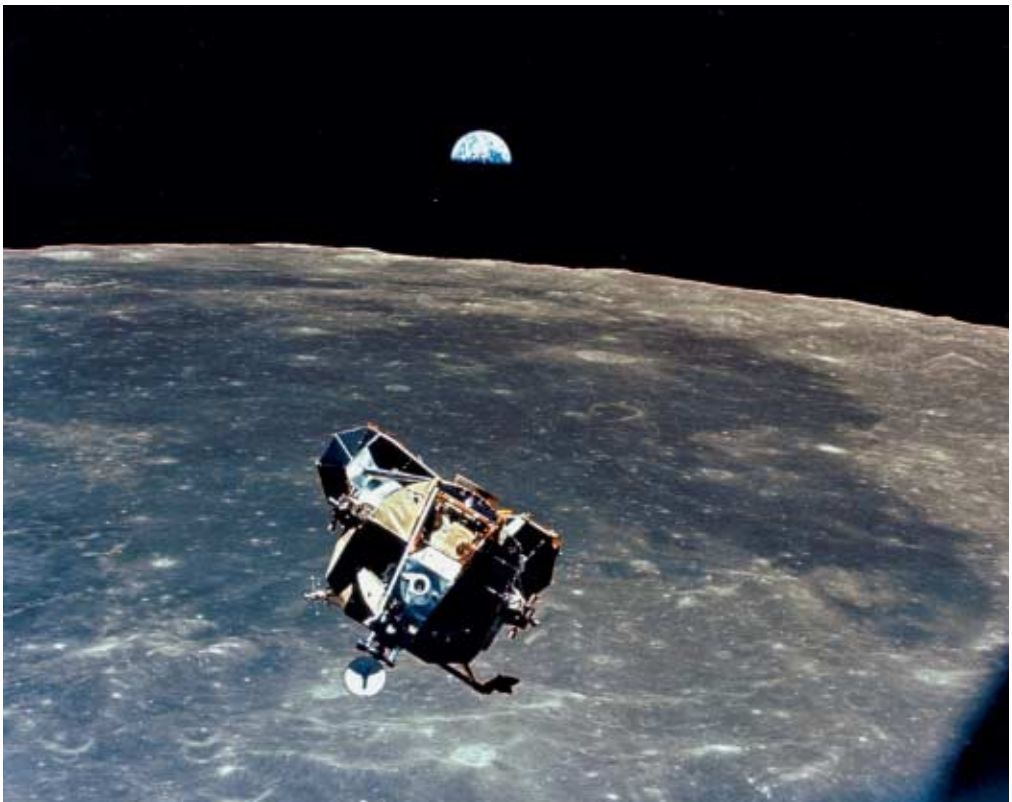


Figure 2 ▶ The lunar landing module, which was also called *The Eagle,* flew to meet the command module at the end of the *Apollo 11* mission. Seen from this viewpoint, Earth is illuminated from above.

Figure 3 ▶ During a solar eclipse, the shadow of the moon falls on Earth. The distance between Earth and the moon in this diagram is not to scale.

Eclipses

Bodies orbiting the sun, including Earth and its moon, cast long shadows into space. An **eclipse** occurs when one celestial body passes through the shadow of another. Shadows cast by Earth and the moon have two parts. In the inner, cone-shaped part of the shadow, the *umbra*, sunlight is completely blocked. In the outer part of the shadow, the *penumbra*, sunlight is only partially blocked, as shown in **Figure 3.**

eclipse an event in which the shadow of one celestial body falls on another

solar eclipse the passing of the moon between Earth and the sun; during a solar eclipse, the shadow of the moon falls on Earth

Solar Eclipses

When the moon is directly between the sun and part of Earth, the shadow of the moon falls on Earth and causes a **solar eclipse.** During a *total solar eclipse*, the sun's light is completely blocked by the moon. The umbra falls on the area of Earth that lies directly in line with the moon and the sun. Outside the umbra, but within the penumbra, people see a *partial solar eclipse*. The penumbra falls on the area that immediately surrounds the umbra.

The umbra of the moon is too small to make a large shadow on Earth's surface. The part of the umbra that hits Earth during an eclipse, as shown in **Figure 4,** is never more than a few hundred kilometers across. So, a total eclipse of the sun covers only a small part of Earth and is seen only by people in particular parts of Earth along a narrow path. A total solar eclipse also never lasts more than about seven minutes at any one location. A total eclipse will not be visible in the United States until 2017, even though there is a total eclipse somewhere on Earth about every 18 months.

Figure 4 ▶ The dark area (right) is the shadow of the moon cast on cloudtops over Europe during a total solar eclipse in 1999. The photo was taken from the orbiting space station *Mir*. The composite (left) shows a total solar eclipse over several hours.

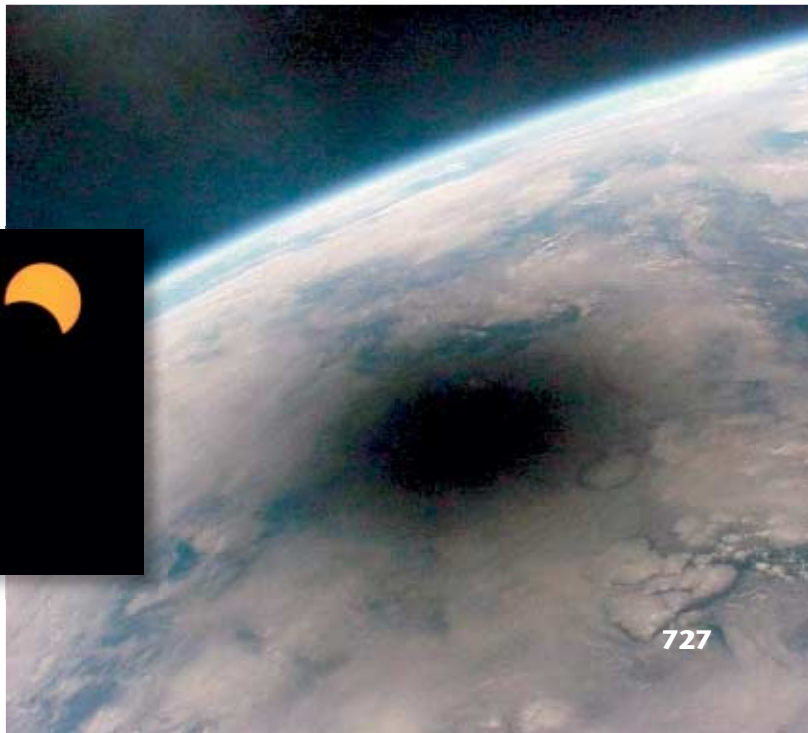


Figure 5 ▶ The diamond-ring effect produced by a solar eclipse can be stunning for observers on the part of Earth that falls under the moon's shadow.

Effects of Solar Eclipses

During a total solar eclipse, people on the ground are in the moon's umbra. In the areas on Earth's surface under the umbra, the sky becomes as dark as it does at twilight. During this period of darkness, the sunlight that is not eclipsed by the moon shows the normally invisible outer layers of the sun's atmosphere. The last bits of normal sunlight before darkness often glisten like the diamond on a ring and cause what is known as the *diamond-ring effect*. The diamond-ring effect is shown in **Figure 5.** Therefore, many people think that total solar eclipses are very beautiful.

If the moon is at or near apogee when it comes directly between Earth and the sun, the moon's umbra does not reach Earth. If the umbra fails to reach Earth, a ring-shaped eclipse occurs. This type of eclipse is called an *annular eclipse,* because *annulus* is the Latin word for "ring." During an annular eclipse, the sun is never completely blocked out. Instead, a thin ring of sunlight is visible around the outer edge of the moon. The brightness of this thin ring of ordinary sunlight prevents observers from seeing the outer layers of the sun's atmosphere that are visible during a total solar eclipse.

Reading Check **What is one difference between a total solar eclipse and an annular eclipse? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

QuickLAB 15 min

Eclipses

Procedure

1. Make two balls from **modeling clay,** one about 4 cm in diameter and one about 1 cm in diameter.
2. Using a **metric ruler,** position the balls about 15 cm apart on a **sheet of paper,** as shown in the photo at right.
3. Turn off any nearby lights. Place a **penlight** approximately 15 cm in front of and almost level with the larger ball. Shine the light on the larger ball. Sketch your model, and note the effect of the beam of light.
4. Repeat step 3, but reverse the positions of the two balls. You may need to raise the smaller ball slightly to center its shadow on the larger ball. Sketch your model, and again note the effect of the light beam.

Analysis

1. Which planetary bodies do the larger clay ball, the smaller clay ball, and the penlight represent?

2. As viewed from Earth, what event did your model in step 3 represent? As viewed from the moon, what would your model represent?
3. As viewed from Earth, what event did your model in step 4 represent? As viewed from the moon, what would your model represent?
4. In what ways could you modify this activity to more closely model how eclipses occur?

Figure 6 ▶ During a lunar eclipse, the shadow of Earth falls on the moon. The distance between Earth and the moon in this diagram is not to scale.

Lunar Eclipses

A **lunar eclipse** occurs when Earth is positioned between the moon and the sun and when Earth's shadow crosses the lighted half of the moon. For a total lunar eclipse to occur, the entire moon must pass into Earth's umbra, as shown in **Figure 6.** When only part of the moon passes into Earth's umbra, a *partial lunar eclipse* occurs. The remainder of the moon passes through Earth's penumbra. When the entire moon passes through Earth's penumbra, a *penumbral eclipse* occurs. During a penumbral eclipse, the moon darkens so little that the eclipse is barely noticeable.

lunar eclipse the passing of the moon through Earth's shadow at full moon

A lunar eclipse may last for more than an hour. Even during a total lunar eclipse, sunlight is bent around Earth through our atmosphere. Mainly red light reaches the moon, so the totally eclipsed moon appears to have a reddish color, as shown in the middle portion of the composite image in **Figure 7.**

Frequency of Solar and Lunar Eclipses

As many as seven eclipses may occur during a calendar year. Four may be lunar, and three may be solar or vice versa. However, total eclipses of the sun and the moon occur infrequently. Solar and lunar eclipses do not occur during every lunar orbit. This is because the orbit of the moon is not in the same plane as the orbit of Earth around the sun. The moon crosses the plane of Earth's orbit only twice in each revolution around Earth. A solar eclipse will occur only if this crossing occurs when the moon is between Earth and the sun. If this crossing occurs when Earth is between the moon and the sun, a lunar eclipse will occur.

Figure 7 ▶ This composite image shows a total lunar eclipse as seen from Earth over several hours.

Lunar eclipses are visible everywhere on the dark side of Earth. A total solar eclipse, however, can be seen only by observers in the small path of the moon's shadow as it moves across Earth's lighted surface. A partial solar eclipse can be seen for thousands of kilometers on either side of the path of the umbra.

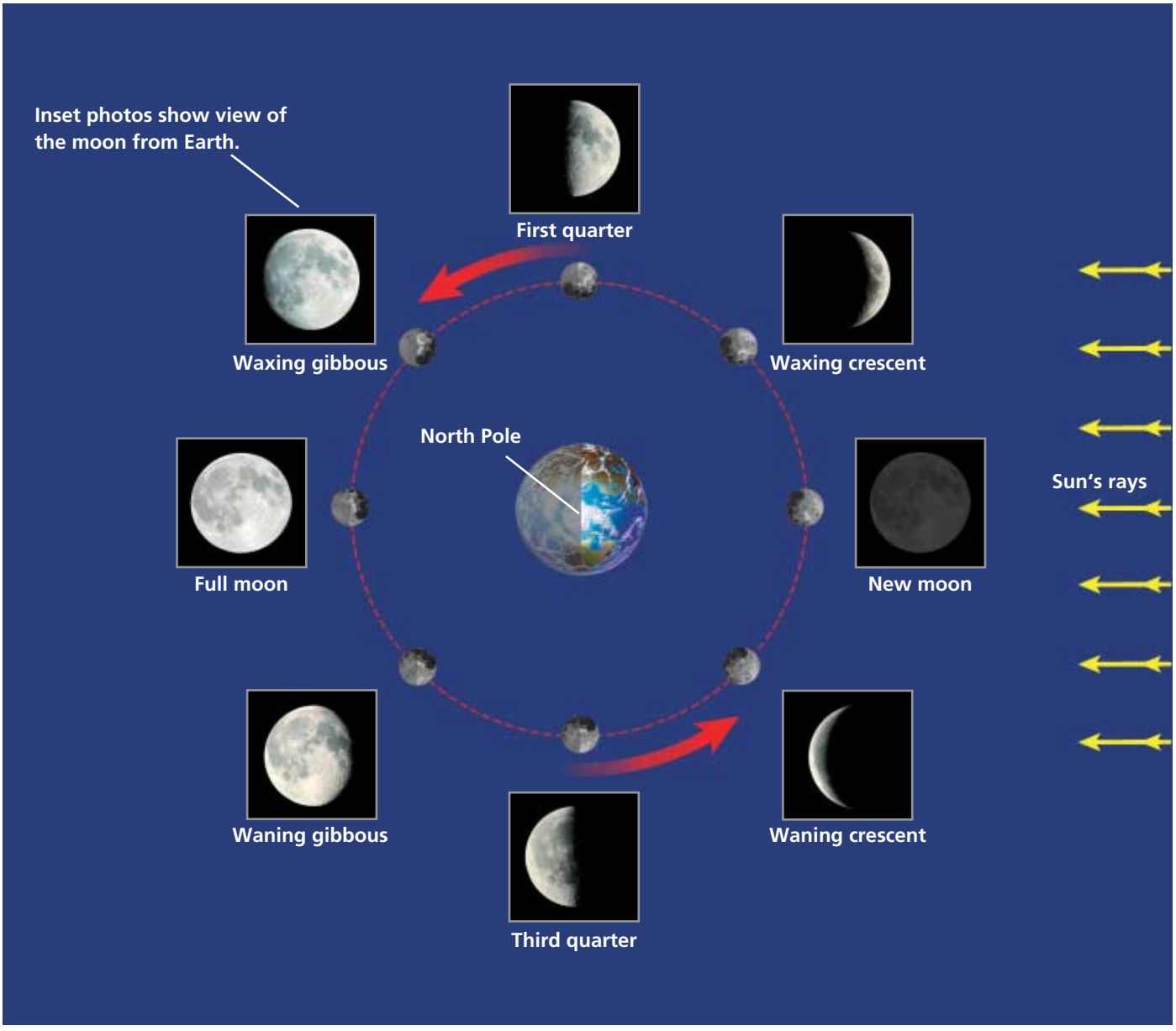
Phases of the Moon

On some nights, the moon shines brightly enough for you to read a book by its light. But moonlight is not produced by the moon. The moon merely reflects light from the sun. Because the moon is spherical, half of it is always lit by sunlight. As the moon revolves around Earth, however, different amounts of the near side of the moon, which faces Earth, are lighted. Therefore, the apparent shape of the visible part of the moon varies. These varying shapes, lighted by reflected sunlight, are called **phases** of the moon and are shown in **Figure 8.**

phase in astronomy, the change in the illuminated area of one celestial body as seen from another celestial body; phases of the moon are caused by the changing positions of Earth, the sun, and the moon

When the moon is directly between the sun and Earth, the sun's rays strike only the far side of the moon. As a result, the entire near side of the moon is dark. When the near side is dark, the moon is said to be in the *new-moon* phase. During this phase, no lighted area of the moon is visible from Earth.

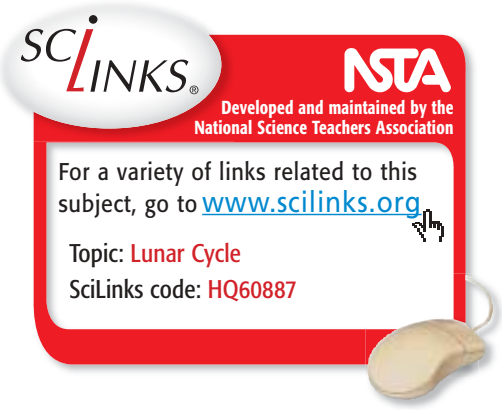
Figure 8 ▶ Phases of the Moon



Waxing Phases of the Moon

As the moon continues to move in its orbit around Earth, part of the near side becomes illuminated. When the size of the lighted part of the moon is increasing, the moon is said to be *waxing*. When a sliver of the moon's near side is illuminated, the moon enters its *waxing-crescent* phase.

When the moon has moved through one-quarter of its orbit after the new moon phase, the moon appears to be a semicircle. Half of the near side of the moon is lighted. When a waxing moon becomes a semicircle, the moon enters its *first-quarter* phase. When the lighted part of the moon's near side is larger than a semicircle and still increasing in size, the moon is in its *waxing-gibbous* phase. The moon continues to wax until it appears as a full circle. At *full moon*, Earth is between the sun and the moon. Consequently, the entire near side of the moon is illuminated by the light of the sun.



Waning Phases of the Moon

After the full moon phase, when the lighted part of the near side of the moon appears to decrease in size, the moon is *waning*. When it is waning but the lighted part is still larger than a semicircle, the moon is in the *waning-gibbous* phase. When the lighted part of the near side becomes a semicircle, the moon enters the *last-quarter* phase. When only a sliver of the near side is visible, the moon enters the *waning-crescent* phase. After the waning-crescent phase, the moon again moves between Earth and the sun. The moon once more becomes a new moon, and the cycle of phases begins again.

Before and after a new moon, only a small part of the moon shines brightly. However, the rest of the moon is not completely dark. It shines dimly from sunlight that reflects first off Earth's clouds and oceans and then reflects off the moon. Sunlight that is reflected off Earth is called *earthshine*. The darker part of the moon shown in **Figure 9** is lit by earthshine.

Time from New Moon to New Moon

Although the moon revolves around Earth in 27.3 days, a longer period of time is needed for the moon to go through a complete cycle of phases. The period from one new moon to the next one is 29.5 days. This difference of 2.2 days is due to the orbiting of the Earth-moon system around the sun. In the 27.3 days in which the moon orbits Earth, the two bodies move slightly farther along their orbit around the sun. Therefore, the moon must go a little farther to be directly between Earth and the sun. About 2.2 days are needed for the moon to travel this extra distance. The position directly between Earth and the sun is the position of the moon in each new moon phase.

Reading Check **Describe two phases of the waning moon. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 9 ▶ The darker portion of this crescent moon is not completely dark because some sunlight is reflected from Earth, to the moon, and back to Earth.

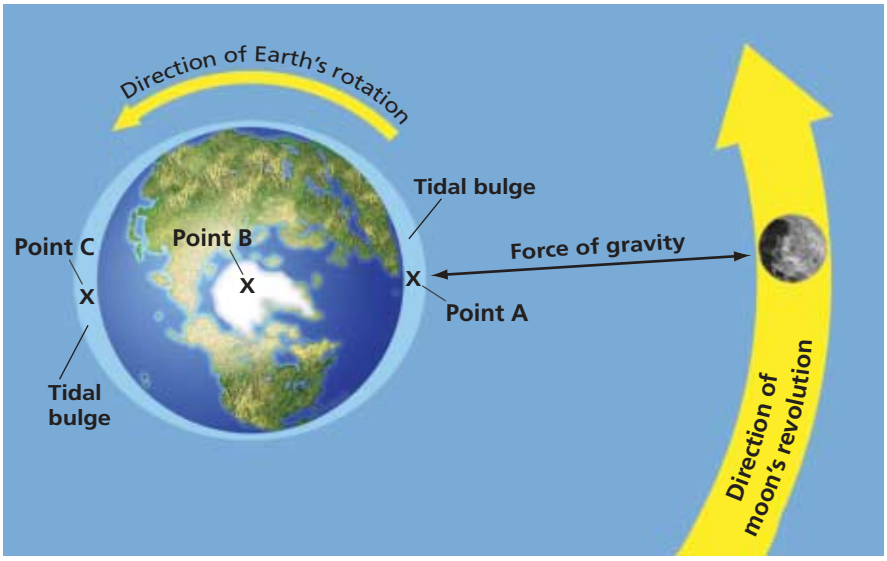


Figure 10 ▶ The moon's pull on Earth is greatest at point A, on Earth's near side, and weakest at point C, on Earth's far side. Point B represents Earth's center of mass. Earth's rotation causes two low tides and two high tides each day on most shorelines.

Tides on Earth

Bulges in Earth's oceans, called *tidal bulges,* form because the moon's gravitational pull on Earth decreases with distance from the moon. As a result, the ocean on Earth's near side is pulled toward the moon with the greatest force. The solid Earth, which acts as though all of its mass were at Earth's center, experiences a lesser force. The ocean on Earth's far side is subject to less force than the solid Earth is. As shown in **Figure 10,** these differences cause Earth's tidal bulges. Because Earth rotates, tides occur in a regular rhythm at any given point on Earth's surface each day. The sun also causes tides, but they are smaller because the sun is so much farther from Earth than the moon is.

Section 2 Review

1. **Explain** why the moon rises and sets about 50 minutes later each successive night.
2. **Describe** the conditions that cause a total solar eclipse to occur.
3. **Explain** why a lunar eclipse does not occur every time the moon revolves around Earth in its monthly orbit.
4. **Summarize** how a solar eclipse differs from a lunar eclipse.
5. **Describe** the relative locations of the sun, Earth, and the moon during a new moon phase.
6. **Describe** how the appearance of the moon changes when it is waxing.
7. **Explain** why the moon repeats phases every 29.5 days even though it orbits Earth every 27.3 days.
8. **Explain** how the moon causes tidal bulges on Earth.

CRITICAL THINKING

9. **Analyzing Ideas** Explain why observers on Earth always see the same side of the moon.
10. **Making Comparisons** Explain why more people see each total lunar eclipse than each total solar eclipse.
11. **Analyzing Relationships** The sun's gravity also affects tides on Earth. Why does the moon have a larger effect on tides than the sun does?

CONCEPT MAPPING

12. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *Earth, moon, sun, eclipse, solar eclipse, lunar eclipse, umbra,* and *penumbra.*

Section 3 Satellites of Other Planets

Until the 1600s, astronomers thought that Earth was the only planet that had a moon. In 1610, Galileo discovered four moons orbiting Jupiter. He also observed what later were identified as the rings of Saturn. Since the time of Galileo, astronomers have discovered that all of the planets in our solar system except Mercury and Venus have moons. In addition, the gas giants Saturn, Jupiter, Uranus, and Neptune all have rings.

Moons of Mars

Mars has two tiny moons, named Phobos and Deimos. They revolve around Mars relatively quickly. Phobos and Deimos are irregularly shaped chunks of rock and are thought to be captured asteroids. Phobos is 27 km across at its longest, and Deimos is about 15 km across at its longest.

The surfaces of Phobos and Deimos are dark like maria on Earth's moon. Both moons have many craters. The large number of craters shows that the moons have been hit by many meteorites and asteroids, and suggests that the moons are fairly old.

Moons of Jupiter

Galileo observed four large moons revolving around Jupiter. Since that discovery was made, scientists have observed dozens of smaller moons around Jupiter. Smaller moons continue to be discovered today. Most of Jupiter's moons have diameters of less than 200 km, but of the largest four, known as the **Galilean moons,** three are bigger than Earth's moon. Until spacecraft flew near the moons, scientists knew little about them. Now, scientists have identified many unique characteristics of the Galilean moons. One of the four Galilean moons is shown in **Figure 1.**

OBJECTIVES

- **Compare** the characteristics of the two moons of Mars.
- **Describe** how volcanoes were discovered on Io.
- **Name** one distinguishing characteristic of each of the Galilean moons.
- **Compare** the characteristics of the rings of Saturn with the rings of the other outer planets.

KEY TERM

Galilean moon

Galilean moon any one of the four largest satellites of Jupiter—Io, Europa, Ganymede, and Callisto—that were discovered by Galileo in 1610

Figure 1 ▶ The stormy surface of Jupiter is visible in the background. In the foreground is Io, which orbits Jupiter once every 42 hours.

Figure 2 ▶ In this image taken by the *Galileo* spacecraft you can see a volcanic eruption on the left side of Io against the background of space.

Io

Io is the innermost of Jupiter's four Galilean moons. An engineer examining images from the *Voyager* spacecraft discovered volcanoes on Io. Io is the first extraterrestrial body on which active volcanoes have been seen. Since the discovery of Io's volcanoes, scientists realize that volcanism is more widespread in the solar system than they had thought. Volcanoes on Io eject thousands of metric tons of material each second. The lava that erupts on Io is much hotter than the lava that erupts on Earth. The temperature of the lava on Io is higher because the lava has more magnesium and iron than lava on Earth does. Plumes of volcanic material on Io reach heights of hundreds of kilometers, as shown in **Figure 2.** Because parts of Io's surface are yellow-red, scientists think that the volcanic material is mostly sulfur and sulfur dioxide.

Io moves inward and outward in its orbit around Jupiter because of the gravitational pull of the other moons of Jupiter. These *tidal forces* are caused by the difference between the force on one side of Io and that on the other side. These forces are similar to tides on Earth caused by the pull of the moon. As Io is pulled back and forth, its surface also moves in and out. Calculations show that tidal forces make Io's surface move in and out by 100 m. Heat from the friction caused by this surface flexing results in the melting of the interior of Io and leads to volcanism. Data from the *Galileo* spacecraft show that Io has a giant iron core and may possess a magnetic field. Much of what we know about Jupiter's moons came from information gathered by the *Galileo* spacecraft, which orbited Jupiter from 1995 to 2003.

Connection to **GEOLOGY**

Extraterrestrial Volcanism

Volcanoes on Earth can be compared to volcanoes that exist elsewhere in the universe. Recent discoveries have revealed that volcanism was very common in our solar system's past. Mars and Venus each have giant volcanoes that are now extinct. Some of these volcanoes are much bigger than the largest volcanoes on Earth. Mars's Olympus Mons is 600 km across and 25 km tall. The largest volcano on Earth, Hawaii's Mauna Loa, is only 17 km tall. Radar images show lava flows on Venus that extend for hundreds of kilometers. Venus and Mars also have many smaller volcanic landforms.

It was a surprise when the *Voyager I* spacecraft, flying by in 1979, revealed interesting and complex structures on the Galilean moons. Because of its small size, Io was expected to be a geologically dead world, like Earth's moon. Some long-exposure images were taken of Io to show the stars behind it and to help track the spacecraft's position. Linda Morabito, an engineer working at the California Institute of Technology's Jet Propulsion Laboratory, examined the images and noticed something extending over Io's edge. It could not be a cloud, because Io had no atmosphere. A volcano was the only possibility. Since that time, scientists have realized that Io is the most volcanically active place in the solar system.

The black plumes at the bottom left of the photo are from an erupting volcano on Io.

The only other place in the solar system where active volcanism is known is on Neptune's moon Triton. The *Voyager 2* spacecraft observed dark streaks on Triton's surface that show where nitrogen that erupted from below Triton's surface was carried downwind.

Europa

Europa is the second closest Galilean moon to Jupiter. Europa is about the size of Earth's moon, but Europa is much less dense than Earth's moon. Astronomers think that Europa has a rock core that is covered with a crust of ice that is about 100 km thick. Images of Europa, such as the one shown in **Figure 3,** show cracks in this enormous ice sheet. Scientists have concluded from observations made from spacecraft that an ocean of liquid water may exist under this blanket of ice. If liquid water exists, simple forms of life could also exist there. Astronomers have no evidence of life on Europa, but many think Europa would be a good place to investigate the possibility of extraterrestrial life.

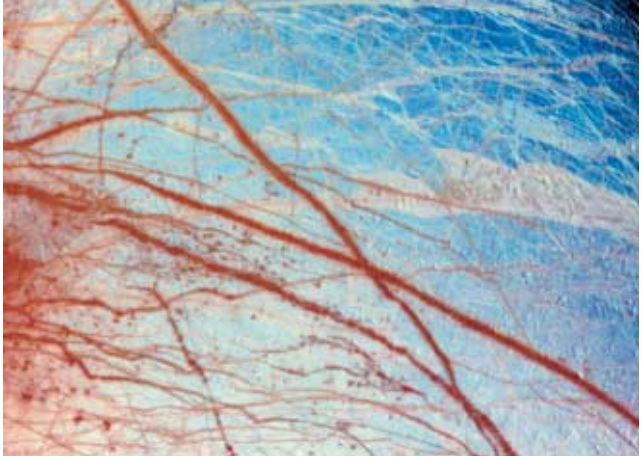


Figure 3 ▶ This false-color image of Europa shows immense cracks across its ice sheets.

Ganymede

Ganymede is the third Galilean moon from Jupiter. Ganymede is also the largest moon in the solar system, even larger than the planet Mercury. However, Ganymede has a relatively small mass because it is probably composed mostly of ice mixed with rock.

Images of Ganymede, such as **Figure 4,** show dark, crater-filled areas. Other light areas show marks that are thought to be long ridges and valleys. The Galileo spacecraft provided evidence to support the existence of a magnetic field around Ganymede. Ganymede and Io are the only Galilean moons that have strong magnetic fields. Both moons' magnetic fields are completely surrounded by Jupiter's much more powerful magnetic field.

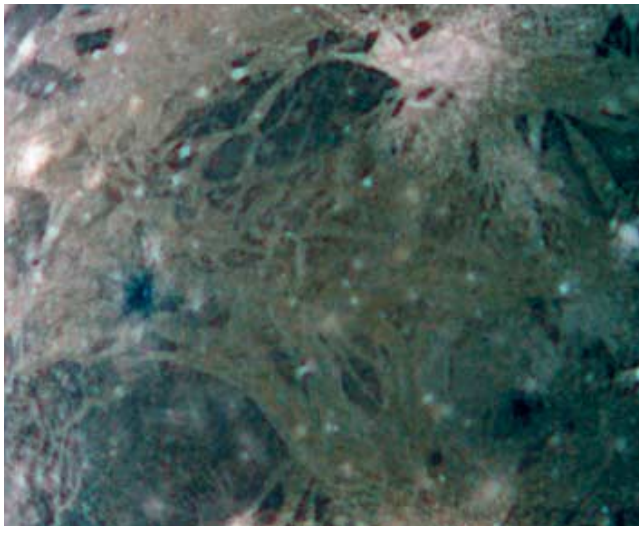


Figure 4 ▶ Much of Ganymede's surface is covered with ridges and valleys.

Callisto

Of the four Galilean moons, Callisto is the farthest from Jupiter. Callisto is similar to Ganymede in size, density, and composition. However, Callisto has a much rougher surface than Ganymede does. In fact, Callisto may be one of the most densely cratered moons in our solar system.

Like craters on Earth's moon and other bodies in our solar system, craters on Callisto are the result of collisions that occurred early in the history of the solar system. **Figure 5** shows a giant impact basin that is 600 km across and a set of concentric rings that extend about 1,500 km outward in all directions from the crater.

Reading Check **Name one feature of each of the Galilean moons. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

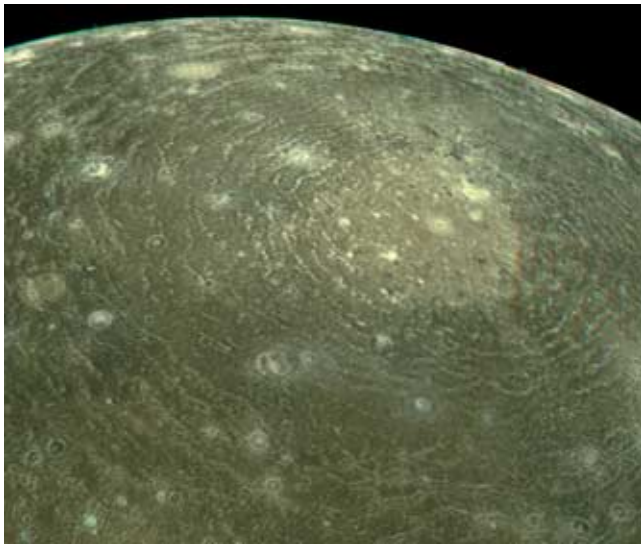


Figure 5 ▶ "Ripples" of ice and rock radiate out from this impact crater, called *Valhalla*, on Callisto.

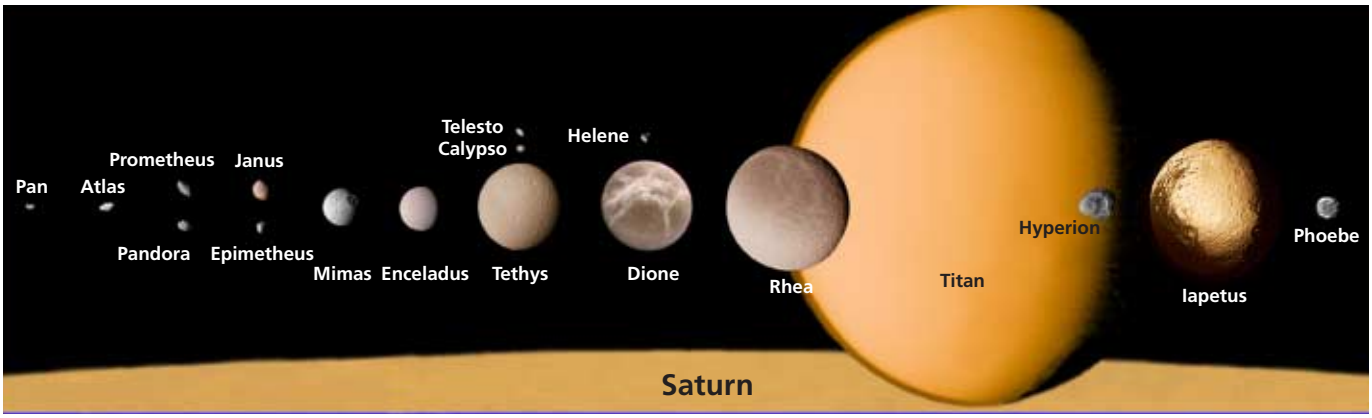


Figure 6 ▶ This composite image shows Saturn and many of Saturn's largest moons. The distances of the moons from Saturn and from each other are not to scale.

Moons of Saturn

Saturn has at least 30 moons. Most of them are small, icy bodies that have many craters. However, five of Saturn's moons are fairly large. These five moons and many of Saturn's other moons are shown in **Figure 6.**

Graphic Organizer **Comparison Table**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Comparison Table" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns with "Moons of Mars," Moons of Jupiter," "Moons of Saturn, and "Moons of Uranus and Neptune." Fill in the table with details about each moon as you read this section.

Titan

Saturn's largest moon, called Titan, has a diameter of more than 5,000 km. Only Jupiter's moon Ganymede is larger. Unlike any of the other moons in our solar system, Titan has a thick atmosphere that is composed mainly of nitrogen. Titan's atmosphere is so thick that hydrocarbon smog conceals the surface. Observations made by using infrared sensors have indicated that Titan's surface may contain lakes or oceans of liquid methane.

In 2005, the *Huygens* (HIE guhnz) probe, which is part of the Cassini mission, gathered data about Titan's atmosphere. Titan's atmospheric composition should give scientists clues about how Titan and its atmosphere formed. Data on Titan's surface may give clues about the moon's interior.

Saturn's Other Moons

Saturn's icy moons resemble Jupiter's icy Galilean moons. Saturn's other smaller moons have irregular shapes. Scientists think that many of the smallest moons, such as Janus, which is shown in **Figure 7,** were captured by Saturn's gravitational pull.

Figure 7 ▶ This image of Janus was taken by the *Voyager 1* spacecraft as the moon orbited near Saturn's rings.

Moons of Uranus and Neptune

Uranus's four largest moons, Oberon, Titania, Umbriel, and Ariel, were known by the mid-1800s. A fifth, Miranda, was discovered in 1948 and is shown in **Figure 8.** Other much smaller moons have been discovered recently by using spacecraft and orbiting observatories such as the *Hubble Space Telescope*. Astronomers know that Uranus has at least two dozen small moons.

Neptune has at least eight moons. Triton, an icy moon, is unusual because it revolves around Neptune in a backward, or *retrograde,* orbit. Some astronomers think that Triton has an unusual orbit because the moon was probably captured by the gravity of Neptune after forming elsewhere in the solar system and then coming too close to the planet. Triton's diameter is 2,705 km, and the moon has a thin atmosphere.

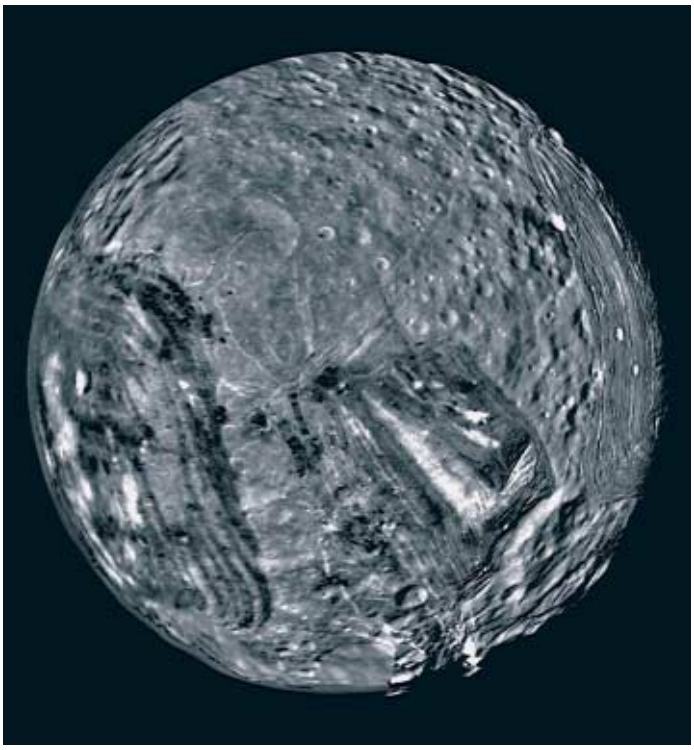


Figure 8 ▶ Uranus's moon called Miranda shows intriguing evidence of past geologic activity.

Pluto's Moon

Pluto is different from the other outer planets. Pluto's orbit is more elliptical and at a different angle than the other planets' orbits. Some scientists think that Pluto should not be considered a planet because several objects that are similar to Pluto in size and composition exist near Pluto's orbit.

Unlike the relationships between other moons and planets in the solar system, Pluto's moon Charon (KER uhn) is almost half the size of Pluto. Because Pluto and Charon are similar in size, some scientists consider them to be a double-planet system. Charon completes one orbit around Pluto in 6.4 days, the same length of time as a day on Pluto. Because of these equal lengths, Charon stays in the same place in Pluto's sky. In the same way that one side of Earth's moon faces toward Earth, one side of Pluto always faces toward Charon.

Reading Check **Identify two ways Charon is different from other moons. (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Moons of Other Planets
SciLinks code: HQ60993

Figure 9 ▶ Charon has a diameter almost half as large as Pluto's. Pluto was discovered in 1930, and Charon was discovered in 1978.

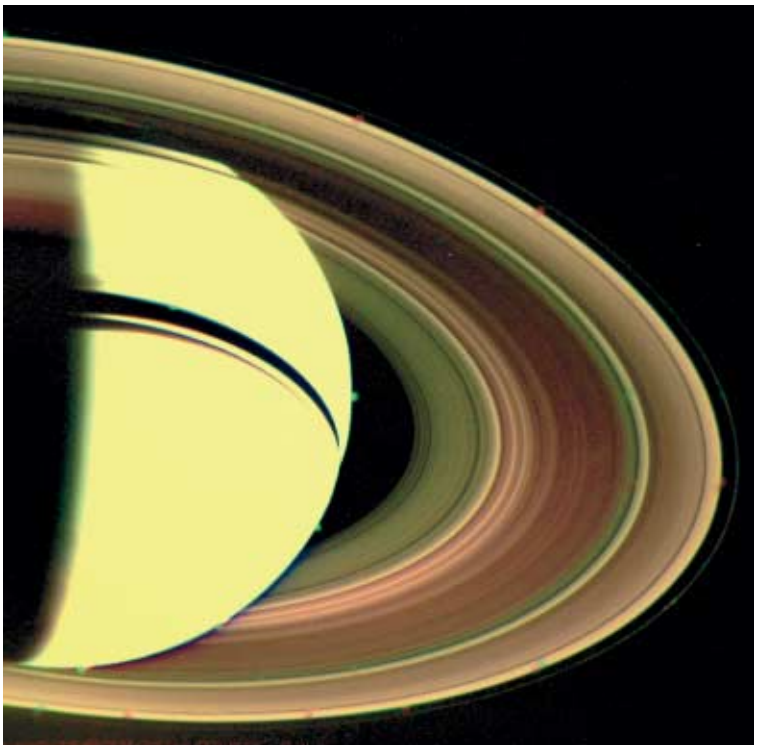


Figure 10 ▶ Saturn has the most extensive system of rings in the solar system. The angle at which its rings are visible changes as Saturn orbits the sun.

Rings of the Gas Giants

Saturn's spectacular set of rings, shown in **Figure 10,** was discovered more than 300 years ago. Each of the rings circling Saturn is divided into hundreds of small ringlets. The ringlets are composed of billions of pieces of rock and ice. These pieces range in size from particles the size of dust to chunks the size of a house. Each piece follows its own orbit around Saturn. The ring system of Saturn is very thin.

Originally, astronomers thought that the rings formed from material that was unable to clump together to form moons while Saturn was forming. However, evidence indicates that the rings are much younger than originally thought. Now, most scientists think that the rings are the remains of a large cometlike body that entered Saturn's system and was ripped apart by tidal forces. Particles from the rings continue to spiral into Saturn, but the rings are replenished by particles given off by Saturn's moons.

The other gas giants have rings as well. These rings are relatively narrow. Jupiter's were not discovered until the *Voyager 1* spacecraft flew by Jupiter in 1979. Jupiter has a single, thin ring made of microscopic particles that may have been given off by Io or one of Jupiter's other moons. The particles may also be debris from collisions of comets or meteorites with Jupiter's moons. Uranus also has a dozen thin rings. Neptune's relatively small number of rings are clumpy rather than thin and uniform.

Section 3 Review

1. **Compare** the characteristics of Phobos and Deimos.
2. **List** the four moons of Jupiter that were discovered by Galileo, and identify one distinguishing characteristic of each.
3. **Describe** how volcanoes were discovered on Io.
4. **Explain** why Io remains volcanically active.
5. **Describe** how the smaller moons of Uranus were discovered.
6. **Explain** why Triton has an unusual orbit.
7. **Compare** the characteristics of Saturn's rings with the rings of the other outer planets.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Analyzing Relationships** Explain why scientists think that Ganymede's interior includes ice.
9. **Inferring Relationships** Compare and contrast the way in which moons and ring systems form.
10. **Making Comparisons** Explain why Triton retains an atmosphere while Phobos does not.

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *moon, ring, Mars, Uranus, Jupiter, Saturn, Phobos, Deimos, Pluto, Galilean moon, natural satellite, Charon, Titania,* and *Titan.*

Section 4

Asteroids, Comets, and Meteoroids

In addition to the sun, the planets, and the planets' moons, our solar system includes millions of smaller bodies. Some of these small bodies are tiny bits of dust or ice that orbit the sun. Other bodies are as big as small moons. Astronomers theorize that these smaller bodies are leftover debris from the formation of the solar system.

Asteroids

The largest of the smaller bodies in the solar system are called asteroids. **Asteroids** are fragments of rock that orbit the sun. Astronomers have discovered more than 50,000 asteroids. Millions of asteroids may exist in the solar system. The orbits of asteroids, like those of the planets, are ellipses. The largest known asteroid, Ceres, has a diameter of about 1,000 km. Two other asteroids are shown in **Figure 1.** The large size of some asteroids leads some scientists to refer to them as "minor planets."

Most asteroids are located in a region between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter known as the *asteroid belt*. This main belt extends from about 299 million to about 598 million kilometers from the sun. However, not all asteroids are located in the main asteroid belt. The closest asteroids to the sun are inside the orbit of Mars, about 224 million kilometers from the sun. The *Trojan asteroids* are concentrated in groups just ahead of and just behind Jupiter as it orbits the sun. In fact, the Trojan asteroids almost share Jupiter's orbit. These asteroids are name for the Trojan and Greek warriors of the famous Trojan War of Greek mythology. Asteroids also exist beyond Jupiter's orbit.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the physical characteristics of asteroids and comets.
- **Describe** where the Kuiper belt is located.
- **Compare** meteoroids, meteorites, and meteors.
- **Explain** the relationship between the Oort cloud and comets.

KEY TERMS

asteroid
comet
Oort cloud
Kuiper belt
meteoroid
meteor

asteroid a small, rocky object that orbits the sun; most asteroids are located in a band between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter

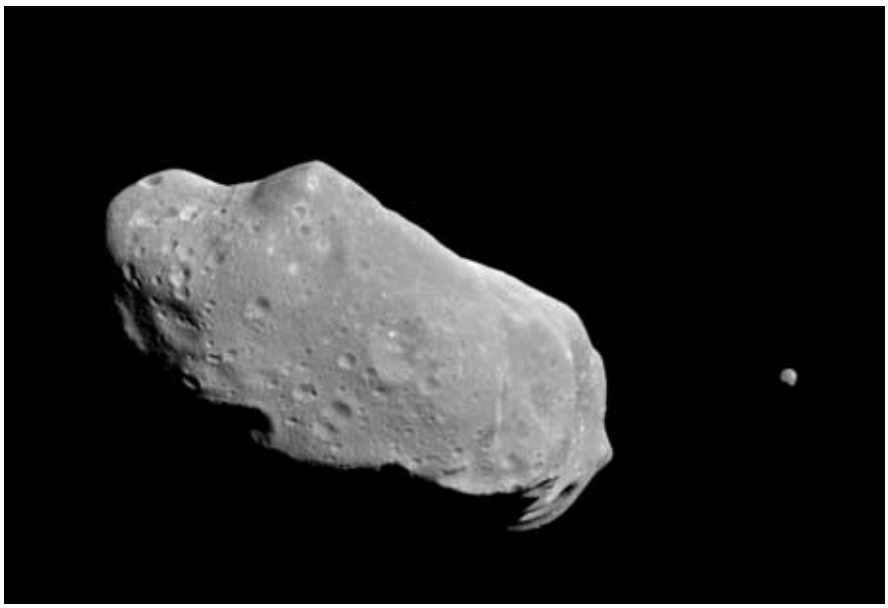


Figure 1 ▶ This image of the asteroids Ida (left) and Dactyl (right) were taken by the spacecraft *Galileo* as it passed through the asteroid belt on its way to Jupiter. Ida is 56 km long, and Dactyl is 1.5 km across.

Composition of Asteroids

The composition of asteroids is similar to that of the inner planets. Asteroids are classified according to their composition into three main categories. The most common of the three types of asteroids is made of mostly silicate minerals. These asteroids look like Earth rocks. The second type of asteroid is composed of mostly iron and nickel. These asteroids have a shiny, metallic appearance, especially on fresh surfaces. The third, and rarest, type of asteroid is made mostly of carbon materials, which give this type of asteroid a dark color.

Many astronomers think that asteroids in the asteroid belt are made of material that was not able to form a planet because of the strong gravitational force of Jupiter. Scientists estimate that the total mass of all asteroids—including the largest, Ceres—is less than the mass of Earth's moon.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Comets, Asteroids, and Meteoroids
SciLinks code: HQ60317

Near-Earth Asteroids

More than a thousand asteroids have orbits that sometimes bring them very close to Earth. These asteroids have wide, elliptical orbits that bring them near Earth's orbit. Thus they are called *near-Earth asteroids*. Near-Earth asteroids make up only a small percentage of the total number of asteroids in the solar system.

Interest in near-Earth asteroids has increased in recent years with the realization that these asteroids could inflict great damage on Earth if they were to strike the planet. Meteor Crater, in Arizona, which is shown in **Figure 2,** formed when a small asteroid that had a diameter of less than 50 m struck Earth about 40,000 years ago. Several recently established asteroid detection programs have begun to track all asteroids whose orbits may approach Earth. By identifying and monitoring these asteroids, scientists hope to predict and possibly avoid future collisions.

Reading Check **What are the three types of asteroids? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 2 ▶ Barringer Meteorite Crater, also known simply as Meteor Crater, in Arizona, has a diameter of more than 1 km. Dozens of such craters have resulted from past impacts on Earth, but most craters have eroded or have been covered by sediment.

Figure 3 ▶ A comet, such as Comet Hale-Bopp, consists of a nucleus, a coma, and two tails. The blue streak is the *ion tail,* and the white streak is the *dust tail*.

Comets

Every few years, an object that looks like a star that has a tail is visible in the evening sky. This object is a comet. **Comets** are small bodies of ice, rock, and cosmic dust that follow highly elliptical orbits around the sun. The most famous is Halley's Comet, which passes by Earth every 76 years. It last passed Earth in 1986 and will return in 2061. Every 5 to 10 years, another very bright comet will be visible from Earth. Comet Hale-Bopp, shown in **Figure 3,** was particularly bright and spectacular as it passed by Earth in 1997.

comet a small body of rock, ice, and cosmic dust that follows an elliptical orbit around the sun and that gives off gas and dust in the form of a tail as it passes close to the sun

Composition of Comets

A comet has several parts. The core, or nucleus, of a comet is made of rock, metals, and ice. Cores of comets are commonly between 1 km and 100 km in diameter. A spherical cloud of gas and dust, called the *coma,* surrounds the nucleus. The coma can extend as far as 1 million kilometers from the nucleus. A comet's bright appearance largely results from sunlight reflected by the comet's coma. The nucleus and the coma form the head of the comet. In 2004, material was collected by the spacecraft *Stardust* from the coma of a comet named Wild 2. The spacecraft flew to within 240 km of the comet's nucleus and collected the first detailed images of a comet's nucleus.

The most spectacular parts of a comet are its tails. Tails form when sunlight causes the comet's ice to change to gas. The gas, or ion, tail of a comet streams from the comet's head. The solar wind—electrically charged particles expanding away from the sun—pushes the gas away from the comet's head. Thus, regardless of the direction the comet travels, its ion tail points away from the sun. The comet's second tail is made of dust and curves backward along the comet's orbit. Some comets have tails that are more than 80 million kilometers long.

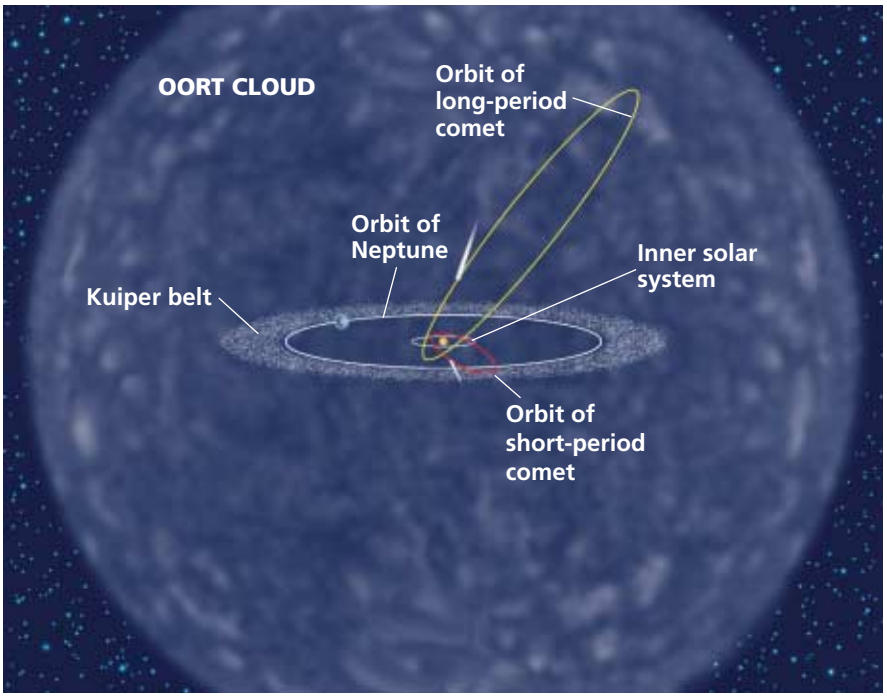


Figure 4 ▶ Most comets come from the Oort cloud, a region in the outer solar system that is beyond the orbit of Pluto.

The Oort Cloud

Oort cloud a spherical region that surrounds the solar system, that extends from just beyond Pluto's orbit to almost halfway to the nearest star, and that contains billions of comets

Kuiper belt the flat region beyond Neptune's orbit that extends about twice as far as Neptune's orbit, that contains leftover planetesimals, and that is the source of many short-period comets

Astronomers think that most comets originate in the Oort cloud, which is illustrated in **Figure 4.** The **Oort cloud** is a spherical cloud of dust and ice that lies far beyond Pluto's orbit and that contains the nuclei of billions of comets. The total mass of the Oort cloud is estimated to be between 10 and 40 Earth masses.

The Oort cloud surrounds the solar system and may reach as far as halfway to the nearest star. Scientists think that the matter in the Oort cloud was left over from the formation of the solar system. Studying this distant matter helps scientists understand the early history of the solar system.

Bodies within the Oort cloud circle the sun so slowly that they take a few million years to complete one orbit. But the gravity of a star that passes near the solar system may cause a comet to fall into a more elliptical orbit around the sun. The orbits of comets that pass by Jupiter may also be changed by Jupiter's gravitational force. If a comet takes more than 200 years to complete one orbit of the sun, the comet is called a *long-period comet*.

The Kuiper Belt

Recent advances in technology have allowed scientists to observe many small objects beyond the orbit of Neptune. Most of these objects, including some comets, are from a flat ring of objects, called the **Kuiper belt** (KIE puhr BELT), that is located just beyond Neptune's orbit. The Kuiper belt may contain thousands of *Kuiper belt objects* that have diameters larger than 100 km. Only two known objects are as large as half the size of Pluto. Pluto is located in the Kuiper belt during much of its orbit. Some astronomers do not consider Pluto to be a planet, and they consider Pluto and Charon to be two of many Kuiper belt objects.

Short-Period Comets

Comets called *short-period comets* take less than 200 years to complete one orbit around the sun. In recent years, astronomers have discovered that most short-period comets come from the Kuiper belt. Some of the comets that originate in the Kuiper belt have been forced outward into the Oort cloud by Jupiter's gravity. Many comets in the Kuiper belt are the result of collisions between larger Kuiper belt objects there. Halley's comet, which has a period of 76 years, is a short-period comet.

MATH PRACTICE

Matter From Space

Astronomers estimate that about 1 million kg of matter from meteoroids falls to Earth each day. Based on this estimate, how many kilograms of matter from meteoroids would fall on Earth in three weeks?

Meteoroids

In addition to relatively large asteroids and comets, very small bits of rock or metal move throughout the solar system. These small, rocky bodies are called **meteoroids.** Most meteoroids have a diameter of less than 1 mm. Scientists think that most meteoroids are pieces of matter that become detached from passing comets. Large meteoroids—more than 1 cm in diameter—are probably the result of collisions between asteroids.

meteoroid a relatively small, rocky body that travels through space

meteor a bright streak of light that results when a meteoroid burns up in Earth's atmosphere

Meteors

Meteoroids that travel through space on an orbit that takes them directly into Earth's path may enter Earth's atmosphere. When a meteoroid enters Earth's atmosphere, friction between the object and the air molecules heats the meteoroid's surface. As a result of this friction and heat, most meteoroids burn up in the atmosphere. As a meteoroid burns up in Earth's atmosphere, the meteoroid produces a bright streak of light called a **meteor.** Meteors are commonly called *shooting stars*. Meteoroids sometimes also vaporize very quickly in a brilliant flash of light called a *fireball*. Observers on Earth may hear a loud noise as a fireball disintegrates.

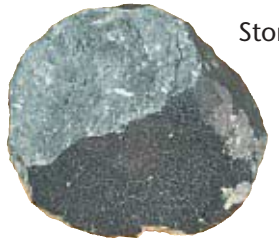
When a large number of small meteoroids enter Earth's atmosphere in a short period of time, a *meteor shower* occurs. During the most spectacular of these showers, several meteors are visible every minute. A composite photo of a meteor shower is shown in **Figure 5.** Meteor showers occur at the same time each year. This happens because Earth intersects the orbits of comets that have left behind a trail of dust. As these particles burn up in Earth's atmosphere, they appear as meteors streaking across the sky.

Reading Check **What is the difference between a meteor and a meteoroid? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 5 ▶ The straight lines in this composite photo are meteors burning up as they move through Earth's atmosphere.

Meteorites

Figure 6 ▶ Types of Meteorites



Stony

Iron

Stony-iron

Millions of meteoroids enter Earth's atmosphere each day. A few of these meteoroids do not burn up entirely in the atmosphere because they are relatively large. These meteoroids fall to Earth's surface. A meteoroid or any part of a meteoroid that is left when a meteoroid hits Earth is called a *meteorite*. Most meteorites are small and have a mass of less than 1 kg. However, large meteorites occasionally strike Earth's surface with the force of a large bomb. These impacts leave large impact craters.

Meteorites can be classified into three basic types: stony, iron, and stony-iron. These three types of meteorites are shown in **Figure 6.** *Stony meteorites* are similar in composition to rocks on Earth. Some stony meteorites contain carbon-bearing compounds that are similar to the carbon compounds in living organisms. Although most meteorites are stony, *iron meteorites* are easier to find. Iron meteorites are easier to find because they have a distinctive metallic appearance. This distinctive appearance makes iron meteorites easy to distinguish from common Earth rocks. The third type of meteorites, called *stony-iron meteorites,* contain iron and stone. Stony-iron meteorites are rare.

Astronomers think that almost all meteorites come from collisions between asteroids. The oldest meteoroids may be 100 million years older than Earth and its moon. Therefore, meteorites may provide information about how the early solar system formed.

Some rare meteorites originated on the moon or Mars. Computer simulations have shown that meteorites that hit the moon or Mars can eject rocks that then fall to Earth. Many of these rare meteorites have been found in Antarctica. Finding meteorites in Antarctica is relatively easy because they stand out against the background of snow and ice.

Section 4 Review

1. **Identify** where the asteroid belt is located in the solar system.
2. **Describe** the physical characteristics of asteroids.
3. **List** the four main parts of a comet, and identify their physical characteristics.
4. **Compare** the ion and dust tails of a comet.
5. **Explain** the relationship between the Oort cloud and comets.
6. **Describe** the location of the Kuiper belt.
7. **Distinguish** between a meteor, a meteoroid, and a meteorite.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Analyzing Relationships** Explain why a comet's ion tail always points away from the sun.
9. **Making Comparisons** Explain one argument for considering Pluto to be a planet and one argument for considering Pluto to not be a planet.
10. **Making Comparisons** You find a meteorite on the ground. What kind of meteorite did you most likely find? Describe two steps of its journey from space.

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *comet, asteroid, Kuiper belt, Oort cloud, long-period comet, short-period comet,* and *meteoroid.*

Chapter 28 Highlights

Sections

1 Earth's Moon

Key Terms

satellite, 719
moon, 719
mare, 720
crater, 720

Key Concepts

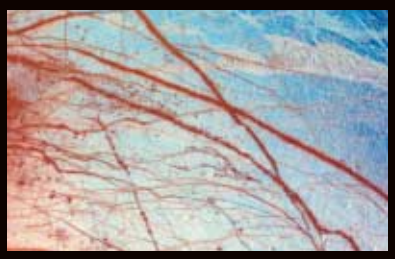
- The surface of the moon is covered by craters, rilles, and ridges.
- The structure of the moon's interior was determined by using seismographs.
- The moon may have formed when an object hit Earth more than 4 billion years ago. Lunar surface features have changed little since they formed 3 billion years ago.

2 Movements of the Moon

apogee, 725
perigee, 725
eclipse, 727
solar eclipse, 727
lunar eclipse, 729
phase, 730

- Eclipses occur when one planetary body passes through the shadow of another.
- The moon spins on its axis once during each orbit of Earth. As the moon orbits, the amount of the near side that is lighted increases and decreases, which causes phases.
- Tides on Earth are the result of the gravitational pull of the sun and the moon.

3 Satellites of Other Planets



Galilean moon, 733

- Phobos and Deimos, the two tiny moons of Mars, are much smaller than Earth's moon.
- The Galilean moons are the four largest satellites of Jupiter. Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune have rings.
- Uranus and Neptune each have several moons. Pluto has one moon named Charon.

4 Asteroids, Comets, and Meteoroids

asteroid, 739
comet, 741
Oort cloud, 742
Kuiper belt, 742
meteoroid, 743
meteor, 743

- Most asteroids are located in an asteroid belt that is located between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter.
- Comets come from the Oort cloud, which is beyond Pluto's orbit, and from the Kuiper belt, which is beyond Neptune's orbit.
- Meteoroids are small rocks in space that either burn up in Earth's atmosphere (as meteors) or stay intact to hit Earth (as meteorites).

Chapter 28 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *crater*
2. *mare*
3. *Galilean moon*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *perigee* and *apogee*
5. *Oort cloud* and *Kuiper belt*
6. *solar eclipse* and *lunar eclipse*
7. *comet* and *asteroid*
8. *meteoroid* and *meteorite*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. Dark areas on the moon that are smooth and that reflect little light are called
   a. rilles. **c.** maria.
   b. rays. **d.** breccia.

10. What happened in the most recent stage in the development of the moon?
   a. The densest material sank to the core.
   b. The crust began to break.
   c. Earth's gravity captured the moon.
   d. The number of meteorites hitting the moon decreased.

11. During each orbit around Earth, the moon spins on its axis
   a. 1 time. **c.** about 27 times.
   b. about 29 times. **d.** 365 times.

12. In a lunar eclipse, the moon
   a. casts a shadow on Earth.
   b. is in Earth's shadow.
   c. is between Earth and the sun.
   d. blocks part of the sun from view.

13. When the size of the lighted part of the moon's near side is decreasing, the moon is
   a. full. **c.** annular.
   b. waxing. **d.** waning.

14. Compared with the other moons of Jupiter, the four Galilean moons are
   a. larger.
   b. farther from Jupiter.
   c. lighter.
   d. younger.

15. The main asteroid belt exists in a region between the orbits of
   a. Mercury and Venus. **c.** Venus and Earth.
   b. Earth and Mars. **d.** Mars and Jupiter.

16. Meteorites can provide information about
   a. the composition of the solar system before the planets formed.
   b. the size of Earth.
   c. the destiny of the solar system.
   d. the size of the universe.

Short Answer

17. Describe how maria formed on the moon.

18. Are craters on the moon caused by volcanism or by impacts with other bodies? Explain your answer.

19. Do total eclipses of the sun occur only at full moons? Explain your answer.

20. Are any moons in the solar system bigger than planets? Explain.

21. Which planets have rings?

22. Which two places in the solar system do comets come from?

23. What is the difference between natural and artificial satellites?

Critical Thinking

24. Analyzing Relationships If Earth had two moons that traveled on the same orbit and were the same distance from Earth, but formed a 90° angle with Earth, how would Earth's tides be different?

25. Making Inferences How would the craters on the moon be different today if the moon had developed a dense atmosphere that moved as wind and that contained water?

26. Determining Cause and Effect If meteorites had stopped hitting the moon before the outer surface of the moon cooled, how would the moon's surface be different than it is today?

27. Evaluating Information Suppose that the moon spun twice on its axis during each orbit around Earth. How would the study of the moon from Earth be easier than it is currently?

28. Applying Ideas The surfaces of some asteroids reflect only small amounts of light. Other asteroids reflect up to 40% of the light that falls on them. Of what kind of materials would each type of asteroid probably be composed?

Concept Mapping

29. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *moon, Earth, apogee, perigee, new moon, full moon, waxing, waning, solar eclipse, lunar eclipse, umbra, penumbra,* and *phase*.

Math Skills

30. Making Calculations There are 60 s in 1 min, 60 min in 1 h, 24 h in 1 day, and 365 1/4 days in a year. How many seconds are in a year?

31. Making Calculations The radius of Earth's moon is 1,738 km. The diameter of Neptune's moon Triton is 2,705 km. What percentage of Earth's moon's size is Triton?

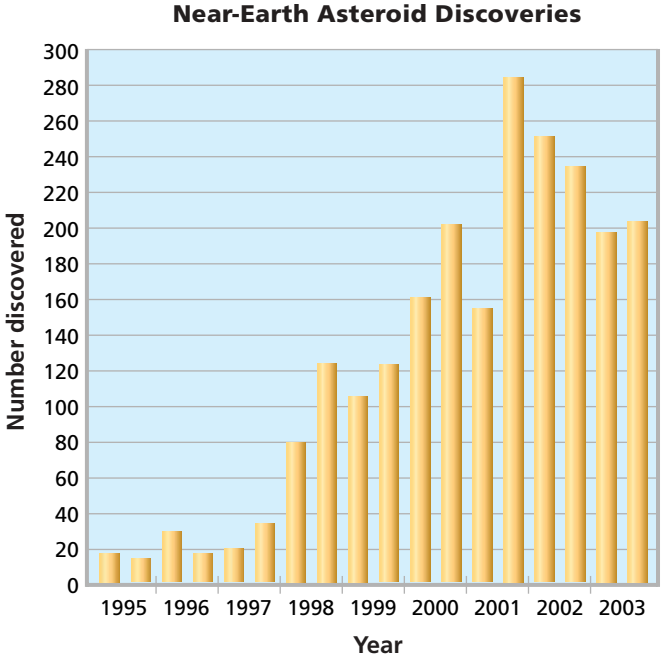
Writing Skills

32. Creative Writing Imagine that you want to live on the moon. Describe how you would get your water and how you would acquire food and other supplies.

33. Communicating Ideas Summarize how the moon's gravity and the rotation of Earth cause tides.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows the number of near-Earth asteroids discovered each year. Use the graph below to answer the questions that follow.



34. Was the rate of discovery of near-Earth asteroids in 2003 higher or lower than the rate in 2000?

35. How many near-Earth asteroids were discovered in the half-year in which the most discoveries were made?

36. Which calendar year had the highest total number of near-Earth asteroid discoveries?

37. What is the total number of near-Earth asteroids discovered in the last three years shown on the graph?

Chapter 28 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–4): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 Because of differences in surface gravity, how much does a person who weighs 360 newtons (360 N) on Earth weigh on the moon?

A. 36 N
B. 60 N
C. 180 N
D. 90 N

2 The point in the orbit of a satellite at which the satellite is farthest from Earth is the satellite's

F. apogee
G. perigee
H. barycenter
I. phase

3 Which of the following statements accurately describes each ring of Saturn?

A. It is divided into smaller ringlets, all of which orbit Saturn together.
B. It consists of a single ring composed of rock and ice pieces.
C. It is divided into smaller ringlets, each of which has an individual orbit.
D. It is part of a set of rings that are unlike those found anywhere else.

4 Which of the following statements describes why temperature variation on the moon is so large?

F. The moon has no atmosphere to provide insulation.
G. The atmosphere of the moon is made up of cold gases.
H. Gases are dense and close to the surface.
I. Dark, smooth rocks absorb the sun's heat.

Directions (5–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

5 Approximately how long does it take the moon to make one orbit around Earth?

6 What are the names of the four moons of Jupiter known as the Galilean moons?

7 When the moon is at its apogee, what part of its shadow cannot reach Earth during an eclipse?

Reading Skills

Directions (9–12): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Kuiper Belt Objects

To explain the source of short-period comets, or comets that have a relatively short orbit around the sun, the Dutch-American astronomer Gerard Kuiper proposed in 1949 that a belt of icy bodies must lie beyond the orbits of Pluto and Neptune. Kuiper argued that comets were icy planetesimals that formed from the condensation that happened during the formation of our galaxy.

Because the icy bodies are so far from any large planet's gravitational field (30 to 100 AU), they are able to remain on the fringe of the solar system. Some theorists speculate that the large moons Triton and Charon were once members of the Kuiper belt before they were captured by Neptune and Pluto, respectively. These moons and short-period comets have similar physical and chemical properties. Scientists now believe that the Kuiper belt may be home to thousands of objects that have diameters of more than 100 km.

9 According to the information in the passage, which of the following did Gerard Kuiper think were actually icy planetesimals?

A. outer planets
B. comets
C. moons of every planet
D. inner planets

10 What two bodies do some scientists believe were once Kuiper belt objects?

F. Neptune and Charon
G. Neptune and Pluto
H. Triton and Neptune
I. Triton and Charon

11 What did the moon Triton orbit before it was captured by the gravity of Neptune?

A. the sun
B. Pluto
C. the solar system
D. Charon

12 Why did it take until the middle of the 20th century for astronomers to discover the presence of the Kuiper belt?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (13–16): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagram below shows the waxing and waning of the moon. Use this diagram to answer questions 13 and 14.

Phases of the Moon in the Northern Hemisphere

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
New Moon	Waxing Cresent	First Quarter	Waxing Gibbous	Full Moon	Waning Gibbous	Last Quarter	Waning Cresent

13 How would the appearance of the moon in the Southern Hemisphere be different from its appearance in the Northern Hemisphere?

A. The phases of the moon would appear exactly the same.
B. The Southern Hemisphere would see a full moon when the Northern Hemisphere sees a new moon.
C. The moon would wax from left to right instead of from right to left.
D. The Southern Hemisphere would see a waxing moon when the Northern Hemisphere sees a waning moon.

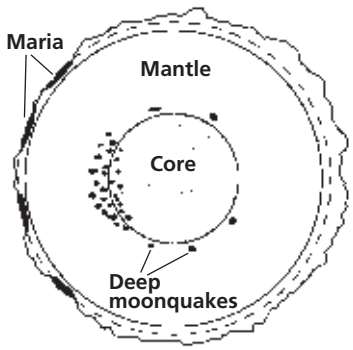
14 What part of the moon is facing Earth during the new moon in stage 1?

F. the near side
G. the far side
H. the north pole
I. the south pole

15 The word *wax* means "to grow larger," while *wane* means "to grow smaller." If the lighted portion of a waxing crescent is the same size as that of a waning crescent, why do you think these terms are used?

The diagram below shows data about the interior structure of the moon. Use this diagram to answer question 16.

Structure of the Moon



16 Where is the crust of the moon the thickest?

A. at the poles
B. at the equator
C. on the near side
D. on the far side

Test TIP

Test questions are not necessarily arranged in order of difficulty. If you are unable to answer a question, mark it and move on to other questions.

Chapter 28

Skills Practice Lab

Galilean Moons of Jupiter

Objectives

- **Calculate** the value of a constant, K.
- **Explain** how Kepler's law of periods explains orbits of moons of Jupiter.

Materials

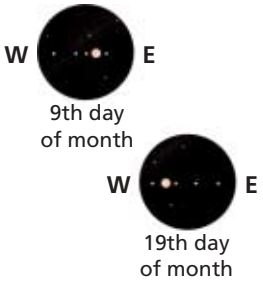
calculator

metric ruler

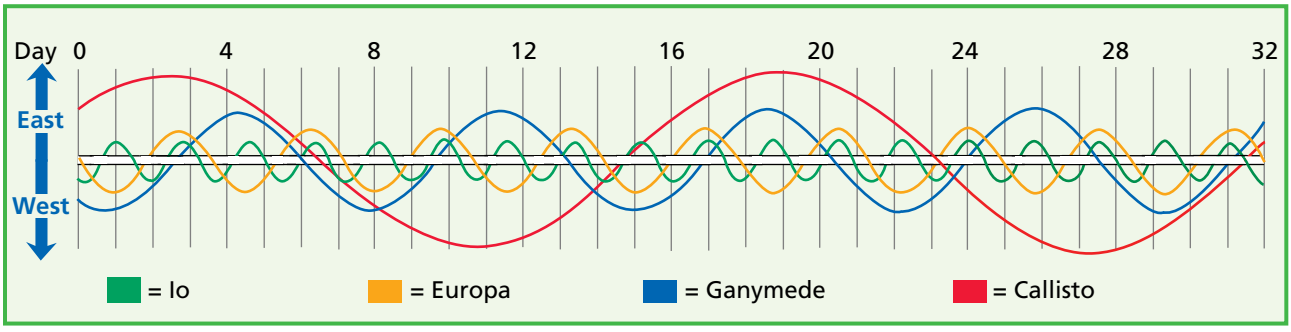
Kepler's third law of motion—the law of periods—explains the relationship between a planet's distance from the sun and the planet's period (the time required to make one revolution around the sun.) According to the law of periods, the cube of the average distance of the planet from the sun is proportional to the square of the planet's period. Kepler's third law can be expressed mathematically as $K \times a^3 = p^2$, in which a is the average distance from the sun, p is the period, and K is a constant. Kepler's third law also may be applied to moons orbiting a planet, in which a is the average distance of a moon to the planet and p is the moon's period. In this activity, you will verify that the orbital motions of Jupiter's moons obey Kepler's third law.

PROCEDURE

1. Two telescope eyepiece views at the left show how Jupiter and its four largest, or Galilean, moons appear through a telescope on Earth at midnight on the 9th and 19th day of a month. Compare these illustrations with the chart below, which shows the path of each moon as it orbits Jupiter during the same month.
   a. List the days when each of Jupiter's moons crosses in front of the planet.
   b. List the days when each of the moons is behind Jupiter.
2. Use the data in the table on the next page to test Kepler's third law. Calculate p^2 and a^3 for each of the planets. Record your results in a table of your own. Then, calculate K for each planet by using Kepler's third law, $K = p^2/a^3$. Record your results in a similar table.
3. Draw Jupiter and its moons as they would appear from Earth at midnight on the 2nd and 26th of the month.



Step 1 The central horizontal band on the chart below represents Jupiter. When a moon's path crosses in front of this band, the moon is in front of the planet. When a moon's path crosses behind this band, the moon is behind Jupiter.



4. Draw Jupiter's moons on the first day of the month that all four moons are on the same side of the planet. Identify the date.

5. Give a date when only two moons will be visible. Name the two visible moons.

6. Follow each moon's motion on the chart. Find the length of time, in Earth days, required for each moon to orbit Jupiter. To do this, measure the time between two points when the moon is in exactly the same position on the same side of Jupiter. Record your answers in a table listing the moons, p (in Earth days), a (in mm), p^2, a^3, and K.

7. Measure the scale distance between the maximum outward swing of each moon and the center of Jupiter in millimeters. Record your answers in your table.

8. Square each period measurement, and record the answer in your table. Cube each distance measurement, and record the answer.

9. Use your results to test Kepler's third law. Because $K = p^2/a^3$, divide p^2 by a^3 for each moon to find K. Record your results in your table.

Kepler's Third Law

Planet	p (in Earth years)	a (in billions of km)	a^3	p^2	K
Mercury	0.24	0.058			
Venus	0.62	0.108			
Earth	1	0.150			
Mars	1.88	0.228			
Jupiter	11.86	0.778			
Saturn	29.46	1.427			
Uranus	83.8	2.871			
Neptune	163.7	4.497			
Pluto	248.6	5.914			

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Analyzing Events** Will you see all four of Jupiter's largest moons each time you look at Jupiter through a telescope or binoculars? Explain your answer.

2. **Making Inferences** If you look at Jupiter's moons through a telescope, they look like dots. If you had no charts, how could you identify each moon?

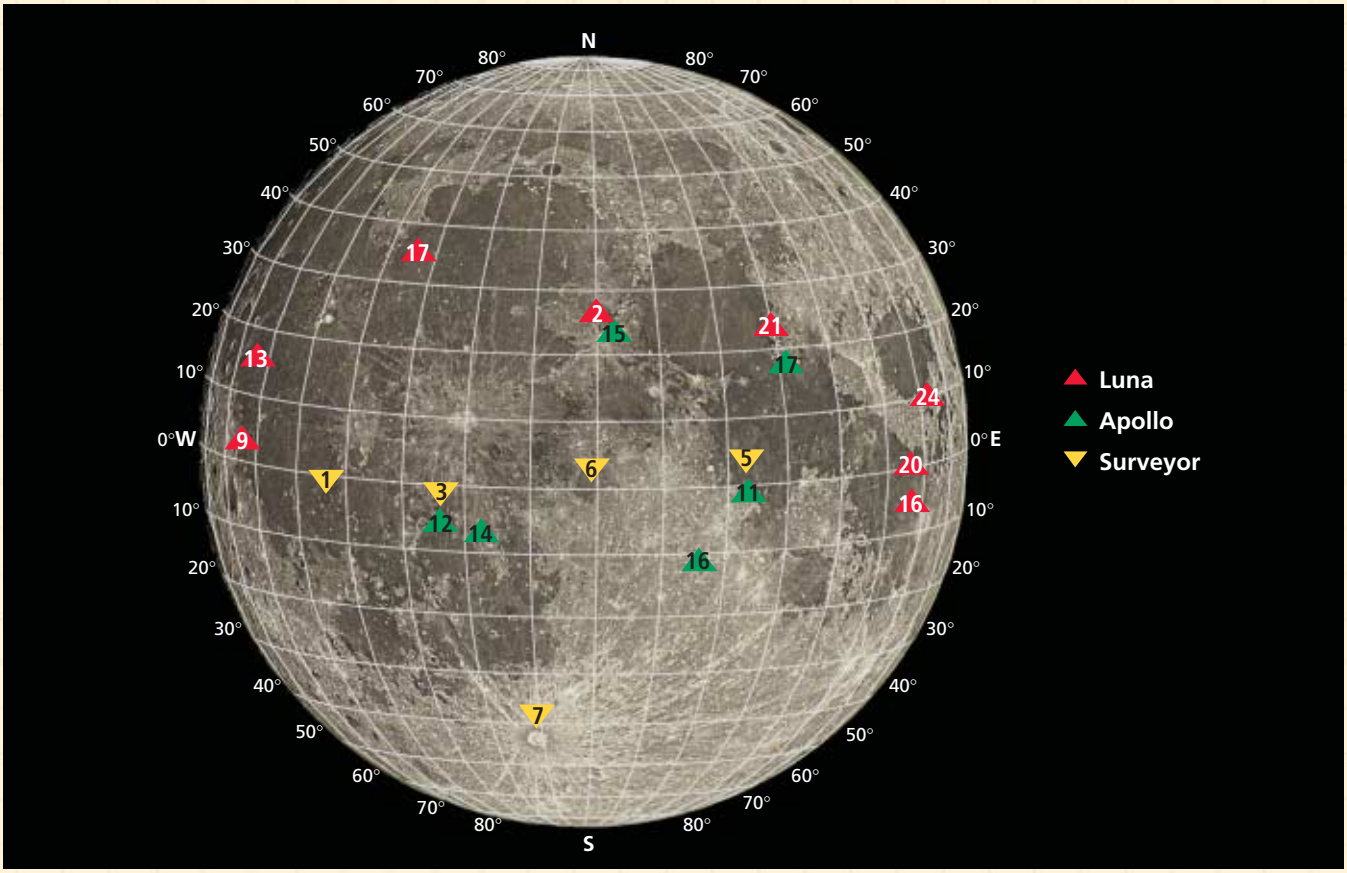
3. **Drawing Conclusions** After you solve for K for each moon, study your results. Is K a constant for the moons of Jupiter? Explain your answer.

Extension

1. **Making Calculations** Recalculate the values of K for the planets by using astronomical units instead of kilometers. How does this affect the amount of variation in the value of the constant?

MAPS in Action

Lunar Landing Sites



Map Skills Activity

This map shows the surface of the near side of the moon and the landing sites of both lunar missions that had crews and lunar missions that did not have crews. Most Surveyor missions took place before the Apollo missions. The Luna missions were launched by the former Soviet Union. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using the Key** How many Luna missions landed on the moon?
2. **Using the Key** How many Surveyor missions landed on the moon's southern hemisphere?
3. **Analyzing Data** How many Apollo missions landed close to Surveyor mission landing sites?
4. **Making Comparisons** At which areas of latitude are no landing sites located?
5. **Making Comparisons** In what 10° range of latitude are most landing sites located?
6. **Inferring Relationships** Based on the locations of most landing sites, what surface features do you think interested scientists?
7. **Identifying Trends** Many of the missions to the moon used radio communications. Radio communications require a clear path between the transmitter and receiver. Taking these facts into consideration, how many landing sites would you expect to find on the far side of the moon? Explain your answer.

Mining on the Moon

Since astronauts landed on the moon in 1969, scientists have been working toward permanent lunar bases. The biggest obstacle is the cost of transporting construction materials and life-support systems. So, scientists are developing ways to produce the materials by mining the moon's own natural resources.

Moon Mining Methods

One of the promising mining methods uses electrolysis, a process in which an electrical current is passed through a substance to change the chemical composition of the substance. Scientists hope to use electrolysis to extract iron and oxygen from lunar rocks. To test the procedure, scientists created a silicate rock like the rocks that are common on the moon. After melting the rock, they passed an electrical current through the molten rock, which caused iron and oxygen to separate from the other elements. On the moon, the extracted iron could be used to manufacture steel, and the oxygen could support human life.

Researchers also imagine using a solar-powered satellite to provide energy for everything from lunar mining to life-support systems. The satellite might use a solar concentrator and lasers to beam energy to the moon's surface. There, the laser light would be converted into electricity.

Ice Mines

Another important substance that might be mined on the moon is water in the form of ice. Many scientists think that the amount of ice that has been discovered in the craters near the poles could be of practical use. This ice was discovered where the crater rims have shielded the ice from the sun's rays and prevented it from melting.

◀ Apollo astronauts discovered valuable materials on the moon.

▲ Lunar mining operations might look something like this.

Mining the moon may not be possible for many years to come. But scientists continue to develop the technology to make it possible. In addition to developing the necessary technology, many more geological studies of the moon are necessary before undertaking such a project. The European Space Agency's *SMART-1* spacecraft, launched in 2003, is one such mission. If mining the moon were profitable, it would help secure funding for future space exploration by opening the door to private commercial ventures.

Extension

1. **Making Inferences** Why would solar energy be important for a lunar mining operation?

Chapter 29

The Sun

Sections

1 Structure of the Sun
2 Solar Activity

What You'll Learn

- How the sun's interior differs from its surface layers
- How sunspots and other solar activity vary during an 11-year cycle

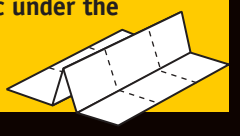
Why It's Relevant

The sun is the energy source that fuels most life on Earth. Understanding how the sun's energy affects Earth helps people understand how Earth interacts with the sun.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Table Fold Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Table Fold" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the columns of the table fold with "Characteristics of the sun," "Energy of the sun," "Composition of the sun," and "Layers of the sun." As you read the chapter, write examples of each topic under the appropriate column.



▶ Huge plumes of hot gas that are many times the size of Earth, called *prominences,* are occasionally visible in the sun's atmosphere. The hottest parts of the sun shown in this false-color image are white, and the coolest areas are dark red.

Section 1 Structure of the Sun

Throughout much of human history, people thought that the sun's energy came from fire. People knew that burning a piece of coal or wood produced heat and light. They assumed that the sun, too, burned some type of fuel to produce its energy. But less than 100 years ago, scientists discovered that the source of the sun's energy is quite different from fire.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how the sun converts matter into energy in its core.
- **Compare** the radiative and convective zones of the sun.
- **Describe** the three layers of the sun's atmosphere.

KEY TERMS

nuclear fusion
radiative zone
convective zone
photosphere
chromosphere
corona

The Sun's Energy

The sun appears to the unaided eye as a dazzling, brilliant ball that has no distinct features. Because the sun's brightness can damage your eyes if you look directly at the sun, astronomers look at the sun only through special filters. Astronomers often use other specialized scientific instruments to study the sun.

Composition of the Sun

Scientists break up the sun's light into a spectrum (plural, *spectra*) by using a device called a *spectrograph*. Dark lines form in the spectra of stars when gases in the stars' outer layers absorb specific wavelengths of the light that passes through the layers. The temperature of these outer layers determines which gases produce visible spectral lines. By studying the spectrum of a star, scientists can determine the amounts of elements that are present in a star's atmosphere. They can also deduce the temperature, density, and pressure of the gas. Because each element produces a unique pattern of spectral lines, astronomers can match the spectral lines of starlight to those of Earth's elements, as shown in **Figure 1,** and identify the elements in the star's atmosphere.

Both hydrogen and helium occur in the sun. About 75% of the sun's mass is hydrogen, and hydrogen and helium together make up about 99% of the sun's mass. The sun's spectrum reveals that the sun contains traces of almost all other chemical elements.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: The Sun
SciLinks code: HQ61477

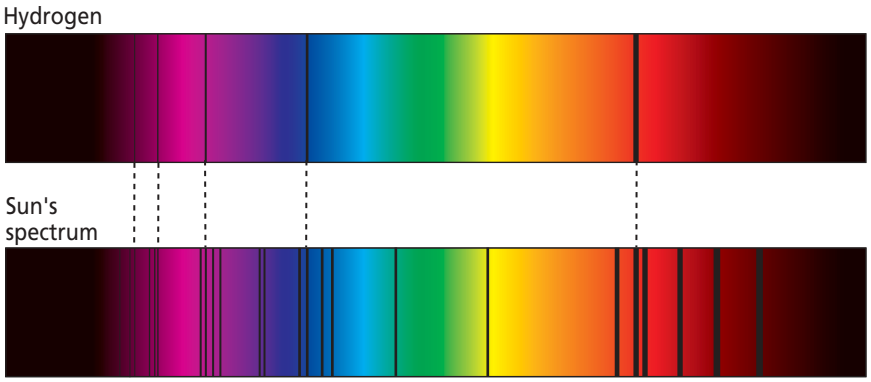


Figure 1 ▶ When light passes through hydrogen gas and then through a slit in a prism, dark lines appear in the spectrum. Hydrogen and lines from other elements in the solar spectrum are shown in the bottom spectrograph. ***How many lines are not accounted for by the presence of hydrogen in the sun's atmosphere?***

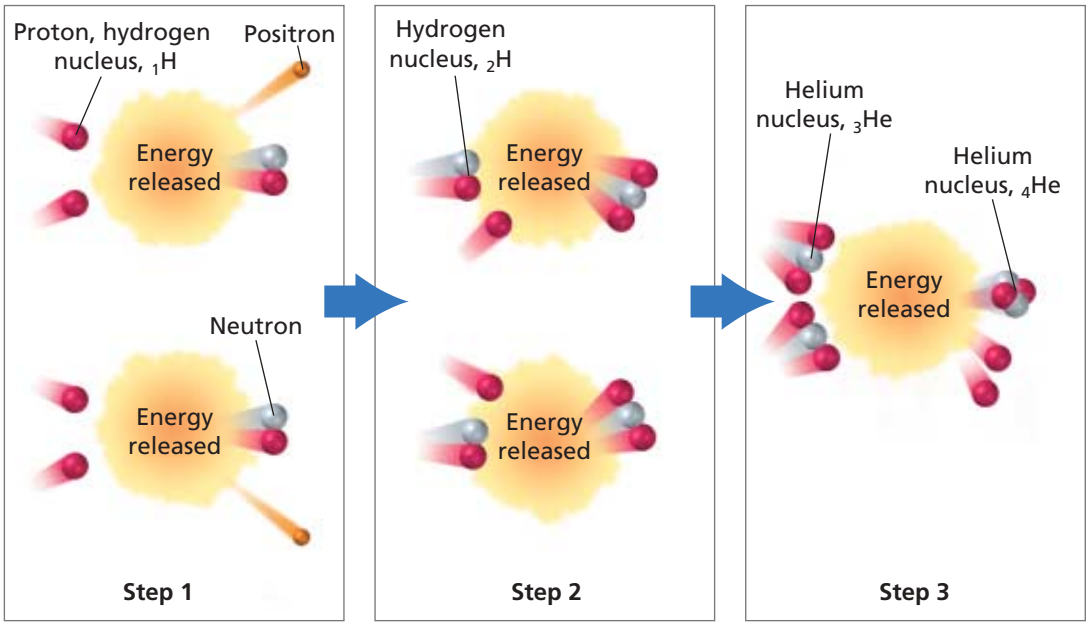


Figure 2 ▶ In the core of the sun, the nuclei of hydrogen atoms fuse to form helium. The fusion process converts mass into energy.

nuclear fusion the process by which nuclei of small atoms combine to form a new, more massive nucleus; the process releases energy

Nuclear Fusion

A powerful atomic process known as nuclear fusion occurs inside the sun. **Nuclear fusion** is the process of combining nuclei of small atoms to form more-massive nuclei. Fusion releases huge amounts of energy. Nuclei of hydrogen atoms are the primary fuel for the sun's fusion. A hydrogen atom, the simplest of all atoms, commonly consists of only one electron and one proton. Inside the sun, however, electrons are stripped from the protons by the sun's intense heat.

Nuclear fusion produces most of the sun's energy and consists of three steps, as shown in **Figure 2.** In the first step, two hydrogen nuclei, or *protons,* collide and fuse. In this step, the positive charge of one of the protons is neutralized as that proton emits a particle called a *positron*. As a result, the proton becomes a neutron and changes the original two protons into a proton-neutron pair. In the second step, another proton combines with this proton-neutron pair to produce a nucleus made up of two protons and one neutron. In the third step, two nuclei made up of two protons and one neutron collide and fuse. As this fusion happens, two protons are released. The remaining two protons and two neutrons are fused together and form a helium nucleus. During each step of the reaction, energy is released.

Graphic Organizer **Chain-of-Events Chart**

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Chain-of-Events Chart" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Then, fill in the chart with details about each step of the process of nuclear fusion.

The Final Product

One of the final products of the fusion of hydrogen in the sun is always a helium nucleus. The helium nucleus has about 0.7% less mass than the hydrogen nuclei that combined to form it do. The lost mass is converted into energy during the series of fusion reactions that forms helium. The energy released during the three steps of nuclear fusion causes the sun to shine and gives the sun its high temperature.

Mass Changing into Energy

The sun's energy comes from fusion, and the mass that is lost during fusion becomes energy. In 1905, the physicist Albert Einstein, then an unknown patent-office worker, proposed that a small amount of matter yields a large amount of energy. At the time, the existence of nuclear fusion was unknown. In fact, scientists had not yet discovered the nucleus of the atom. Einstein's proposal was part of his special theory of relativity. This theory included the equation $E = mc^2$. In this equation, E represents energy produced; m represents the mass, or the amount of matter, that is changed; and c represents the speed of light, which is about 300,000 km/s. Einstein's equation can be used to calculate the amount of energy produced from a given amount of matter.

By using Einstein's equation, astronomers were able to explain the huge quantities of energy produced by the sun. The sun changes more than 600 million tons of hydrogen into helium every second. Yet this amount of hydrogen is small compared with the total mass of hydrogen in the sun. During fusion, a type of subatomic particle, called a *neutrino,* is given off. Neutrinos escape the sun and reach Earth in about eight minutes. Studies of these particles indicate that the sun is fueled by the fusion of hydrogen into helium. One apparatus that collects these particles is shown in **Figure 3.** Elements other than hydrogen can fuse, too. In stars that are hotter than the sun, energy is produced by fusion reactions of the nuclei of carbon, nitrogen, and oxygen.

Reading Check **How did the equation $E = mc^2$ help scientists understand the energy of the sun? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

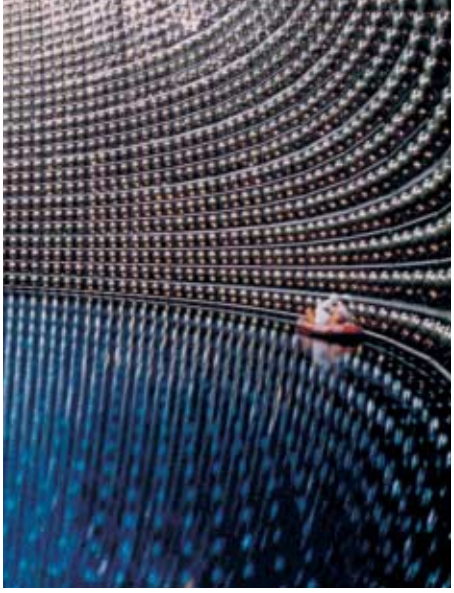


Figure 3 ▶ In Japan, this giant tank of pure water, which was only partly filled when the photo was taken, captures subatomic particles that fly out of the sun during nuclear fusion.

QuickLAB **5 min**

Modeling Fusion

Procedure

1. Mark **six coins** by using a **marker** or **wax pencil.** Put a *P* for "proton" on the head side of each coin and an *N* for "neutron" on the tail side of the coins.
2. Place two coins P-side up. These two protons each represent hydrogen's simplest isotope, H. Model the fusion of these two H nuclei by placing them such that their edges touch. When they touch, flip one of them to be N-side up. This flip represents a proton becoming a neutron during fusion. The resulting nucleus, which consists of one proton and one neutron, represents the isotope hydrogen-2, ^{2}H.
3. To model the next step of nuclear fusion, place a third coin, P-side up, against the ^{2}H nucleus from step 2. This forms the isotope helium-3, or ^{3}He.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to form a second ^{3}He nucleus.
5. Next, model the fusion of two ^{3}He nuclei. Move the two ^{3}He nuclei formed in step 3 so that their edges touch. When the two ^{3}He nuclei touch, move two of the protons in the two ^{3}He nuclei away from the other four particles. These four particles form a new nucleus: helium-4, or ^{4}He.

Analysis

1. Large amounts of energy are released when nuclei combine. How many energy-producing reactions did you model?
2. Create a diagram that shows the formation of ^{4}He.

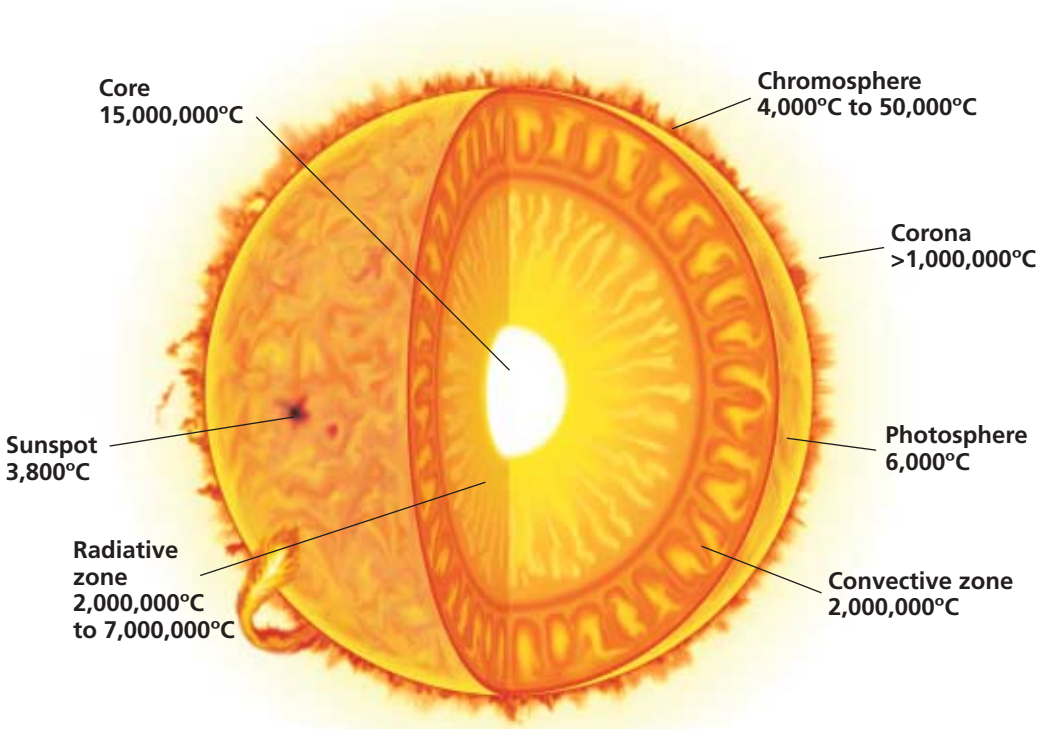


Figure 4 ▶ Energy released by fusion reactions in the core slowly works its way through the layers of the sun by the processes of radiation and convection.

The Sun's Interior

Scientists can't see inside the sun. But computer models have revealed what the invisible layers may be like. In recent years, careful studies of motions on the sun's surface have supplied more detail about what is happening inside the sun. The parts of the sun are shown in **Figure 4.**

The Core

At the center of the sun is the core. The core makes up 25% of the sun's total diameter of 1,390,000 km. The temperature of the sun's core is about 15,000,000°C. No liquid or solid can exist at such a high temperature. The core, like the rest of the sun, is made up entirely of ionized gas. The mass of the sun is 300,000 times the mass of Earth. Because of the sun's large mass, the pressure from the sun's material is so great that the center of the sun is more than 10 times as dense as iron.

The enormous pressure and high temperature of the sun's core cause the atoms to separate into nuclei and electrons. On Earth, atoms generally consist of a nucleus surrounded by one or more electrons. Within the core of the sun, however, the energy and pressure strip electrons away from the atomic nuclei. The nuclei have positive charges, so they tend to push away from each other. But the high temperature and pressure force the nuclei close enough to fuse. The most common nuclear reaction that occurs inside the sun is the fusion of hydrogen into helium.

QuickLAB 20 min

The Size of Our Sun

Procedure

1. Using a **compass,** draw a large circle near the edge of a piece of **butcher paper** to represent the sun.
2. Measure the diameter (D) of your "sun."
3. Calculate the size of Earth and Jupiter, and compare the sizes with the size of the sun in step 1 by using the following values:
   D(sun) = 1.4×10^9 m
   D(Jupiter) = 1.4×10^8 m
   D(Earth) = 1.3×10^7 m
4. Now, draw Earth and Jupiter to scale on your model.

Analysis

1. The diameter of the sun's core is about 175,000,000 m. How does size of the core compare with that of Earth and Jupiter?

The Radiative Zone

Before reaching the sun's atmosphere, the energy produced in the core moves through two zones of the sun's interior. The zone surrounding the core is called the **radiative zone.** The temperature in this zone ranges from about 2,000,000°C to 7,000,000°C. In the radiative zone, energy moves outward in the form of electromagnetic waves, or radiation.

radiative zone the zone of the sun's interior that is between the core and the convective zone and in which energy moves by radiation

The Convective Zone

Surrounding the radiative zone is the **convective zone,** where temperatures are about 2,000,000°C. Energy produced in the core moves through this zone by convection. *Convection* is the transfer of energy by moving matter. On Earth, boiling water carries energy upward by convection. In the sun's convective zone, hot gases carry energy to the sun's surface. As the hot gases move outward and expand, they lose energy. The cooling gases become denser than the other gases and sink to the bottom of the convective zone. There, the cooled gases are heated by the energy from the radiative zone and rise again. Thus, energy is transferred to the sun's surface as the gases rise and sink.

convective zone the region of the sun's interior that is between the radiative zone and the photosphere and in which energy is carried upward by convection

photosphere the visible surface of the sun

The Sun's Atmosphere

Surrounding the convective zone is the sun's atmosphere. Although the sun is made of gases, the term *atmosphere* refers to the uppermost region of solar gases. This region has three layers—the photosphere, the chromosphere, and the corona.

The Photosphere

The innermost layer of the solar atmosphere is the **photosphere.** *Photosphere* means "sphere of light." The photosphere is made of gases that have risen from the convective zone. The temperature in the photosphere is about 6,000°C. Much of the energy given off from the photosphere is in the form of visible light. The layers above the photosphere are transparent, so the visible light is the light that is seen from Earth. A photo of the sun's photosphere is shown in **Figure 5.** The dark spots are cool areas of about 3,800°C and are called *sunspots*.

Reading Check **What layers make up the sun's atmosphere? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Figure 5 ▶ The photosphere is referred to as the sun's surface because this layer is the visible surface of the sun.

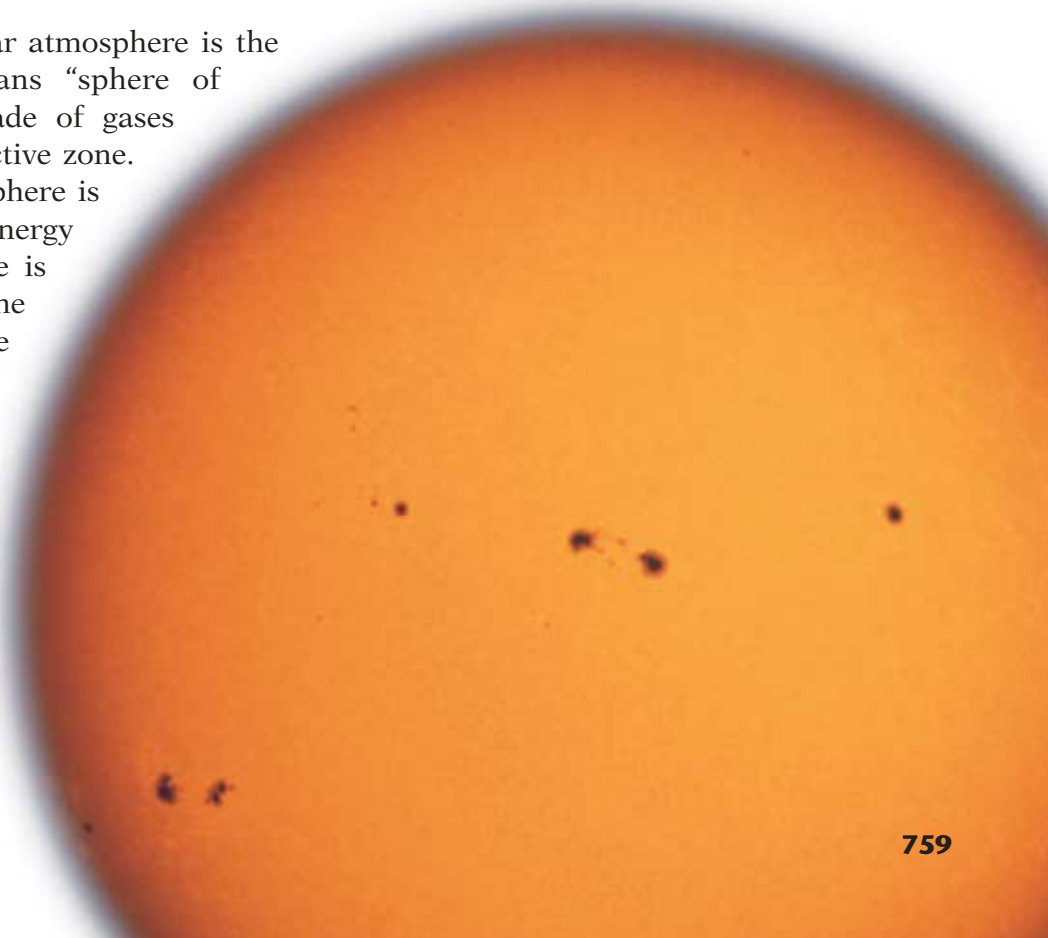


Figure 6 ▶ The corona of the sun becomes visible during a total solar eclipse.

chromosphere the thin layer of the sun that is just above the photosphere and that glows a reddish color during eclipses

corona the outermost layer of the sun's atmosphere

The Chromosphere

Above the photosphere lies the **chromosphere,** or color sphere. The chromosphere is a thin layer of gases that glows with reddish light that is typical of the color given off by hydrogen. The chromosphere's temperature ranges from 4,000°C to 50,000°C. The gases of the chromosphere move away from the photosphere. In an upward movement, gas regularly forms narrow jets of hot gas that shoot outward to form the chromosphere and then fade away within a few minutes. Some of these jets reach heights of 16,000 km.

Spacecraft study the sun from above Earth's atmosphere. These spacecraft can detect small details on the sun because they measure wavelengths of light that are blocked by Earth's atmosphere. Movies made from these spacecraft images show how features on the sun rise, change, and sometimes twist.

The Sun's Outer Parts

The outermost layer of the sun's atmosphere is the **corona** (kuh ROH nuh), or crown. The corona is a huge region of gas that has a temperature above 1,000,000°C. The corona is not very dense, but its magnetic field can stop most subatomic particles from escaping into space. However, electrons and electrically charged particles called *ions* do stream out into space as the corona expands. These particles make up the *solar wind,* which flows outward from the sun to the rest of the solar system.

The chromosphere and the corona are normally not seen from Earth because the sky during the day is too bright. Occasionally, however, the moon moves between Earth and the sun and blocks out the light of the photosphere. The sky darkens, and the corona becomes visible, as shown in **Figure 6.**

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** how scientists use spectra to determine the composition of stars.
2. **Identify** the two elements that make up most of the sun.
3. **Identify** the end products of the nuclear fusion process that occurs in the sun.
4. **Explain** how the sun converts matter into energy in its core.
5. **Compare** the radiative and convective zones of the sun.
6. **Describe** the three layers of the sun's atmosphere.
7. **Explain** why the sun's corona can be seen during an eclipse but not at other times.

CRITICAL THINKING

8. **Making Inferences** Describe whether the amount of hydrogen in the sun will increase or decrease over the next few million years. Explain your reasoning.
9. **Analyzing Ideas** Why does fusion occur in the sun's core but not in other layers?
10. **Predicting Consequences** What might happen to the solar wind if the sun lost its corona?

CONCEPT MAPPING

11. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *sun, hydrogen, helium, nuclear fusion, core, radiative zone,* and *convective zone.*

Section 2 Solar Activity

The gases that make up the sun's interior and atmosphere are in constant motion. The energy produced in the sun's core and the force of gravity combine to cause the continuous rising and sinking of gases. The gases also move because the sun rotates on its axis. Because the sun is a ball of hot gases rather than a solid sphere, not all locations on the sun rotate at the same speed. Places close to the equator on the surface of the sun take 25.3 Earth days to rotate once. Points near the poles take 33 days to rotate once. On average, the sun rotates once every 27 days.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how sunspots are related to powerful magnetic fields on the sun.
- **Compare** prominences, solar flares, and coronal mass ejections.
- **Describe** how the solar wind can cause auroras on Earth.

KEY TERMS

sunspot
prominence
solar flare
coronal mass ejection
aurora

Sunspots

The movement of gases within the sun's convective zone and the movements caused by the sun's rotation produce magnetic fields. These magnetic fields cause convection to slow in parts of the convective zone. Slower convection causes a decrease in the amount of gas that is transferring energy from the core of the sun to these regions of the photosphere. In some places, the magnetic field is thousands of times stronger than it is in other places. Because less energy is being transferred, these regions of the photosphere are up to 3,000°C cooler than surrounding regions.

Although they still shine brightly, these cooler areas of the sun appear darker than the areas that surround them do. These cool, dark areas of gas within the photosphere are called **sunspots.** The photosphere has a grainy appearance called *granulation*. The area around the sunspots shown in **Figure 1** has visible granulation. A large sunspot can have a diameter of more than 100,000 km, which is several times the diameter of Earth.

sunspot a dark area of the photosphere of the sun that is cooler than the surrounding areas and that has a strong magnetic field

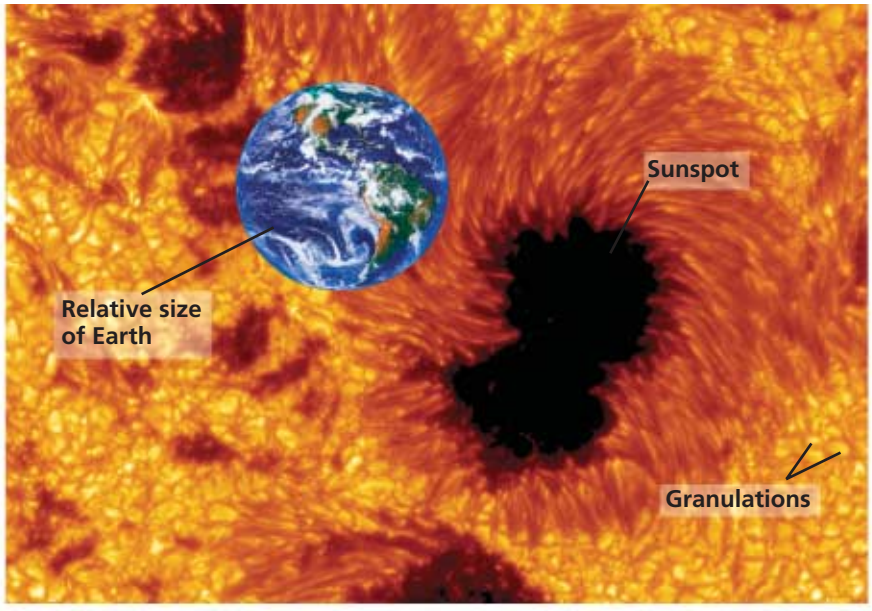


Figure 1 ▶ The diameter of this large sunspot is bigger than Earth's diameter. This image shows the granulation on the sun's surface.

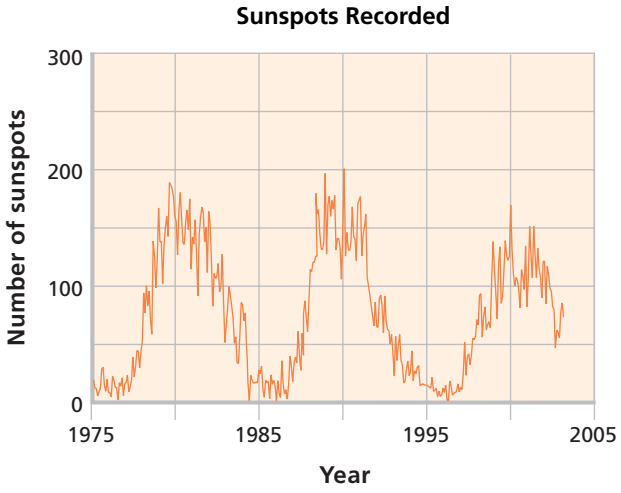


Figure 2 ▶ The sunspot cycle lasts an average of 11 years. ***When will the next high point in the cycle occur?***

The Sunspot Cycle

Astronomers have carefully observed sunspots for hundreds of years. Observations of sunspots showed astronomers that the sun rotates. Later, astronomers observed that the numbers and positions of sunspots vary in a cycle that lasts about 11 years.

A sunspot cycle begins when the number of sunspots is very low but begins to increase. Sunspots initially appear in groups about midway between the sun's equator and poles. The number of sunspots increases over the next few years until it reaches a peak of 100 or more sunspots. Then, sunspots at higher latitudes slowly disappear, and new ones appear closer to the sun's equator. **Figure 2** shows that after the peak, the number of sunspots begins to decrease until it reaches a minimum. Another 11-year cycle begins when the number of sunspots begins to increase again.

Solar Ejections

Many other solar activities are affected by the sunspot cycle. The *solar-activity cycle* is caused by the changing solar magnetic field. This cycle is characterized by increases and decreases in various types of solar activity, including solar ejections. Solar ejections are events in which the sun emits atomic particles. These events include prominences, solar flares, and coronal mass ejections.

Connection to **ASTRONOMY**

Total Solar Irradiance

Astronomers once thought that the sun's energy output remained steady. They called the amount of solar energy that a square centimeter of the top of Earth's atmosphere receives each second the *solar constant*. Earth's atmosphere causes an amount of energy that is less than the solar constant to reach Earth's surface.

Careful spacecraft observations made outside Earth's atmosphere have shown, however, that the solar constant isn't constant. Observations made by the Solar Maximum Mission first showed the effect. The solar constant is now being followed with special equipment on the Solar and Heliospheric Observatory (SOHO), the Active Cavity Radiometer Irradiance Monitor satellite (ACRIMSAT), and the Solar Radiation and Climate Experiment (SORCE) satellite. The ACRIMSAT and the SORCE satellite measure the entire range of solar radiation. Because this value changes, it is now officially called the *total solar irradiance* instead of the *solar constant*. *Irradiance* is simply the amount of energy that falls on a square centimeter of Earth each second. *Total* means that the whole spectrum of sunlight is included, not just the visible part.

The total solar irradiance varies by about 0.2% over the 11-year sunspot cycle. It is highest when the sunspot cycle is at its maximum. Individual sunspots, however, can temporarily block a small amount of the energy that comes from the sun and thus lower the total solar irradiance.

The SORCE satellite is being used to follow total solar irradiance.

Prominences

The magnetic fields that cause sunspots also create other disturbances in the sun's atmosphere. Great clouds of glowing gases, called **prominences**, form huge arches that reach high above the sun's surface. Each solar prominence follows curved lines of magnetic force from a region of one magnetic polarity to a region of the opposite magnetic polarity. Some prominences may last for several weeks, while others may erupt and disappear in hours. The gas in prominences is very hot and is commonly associated with the chromosphere.

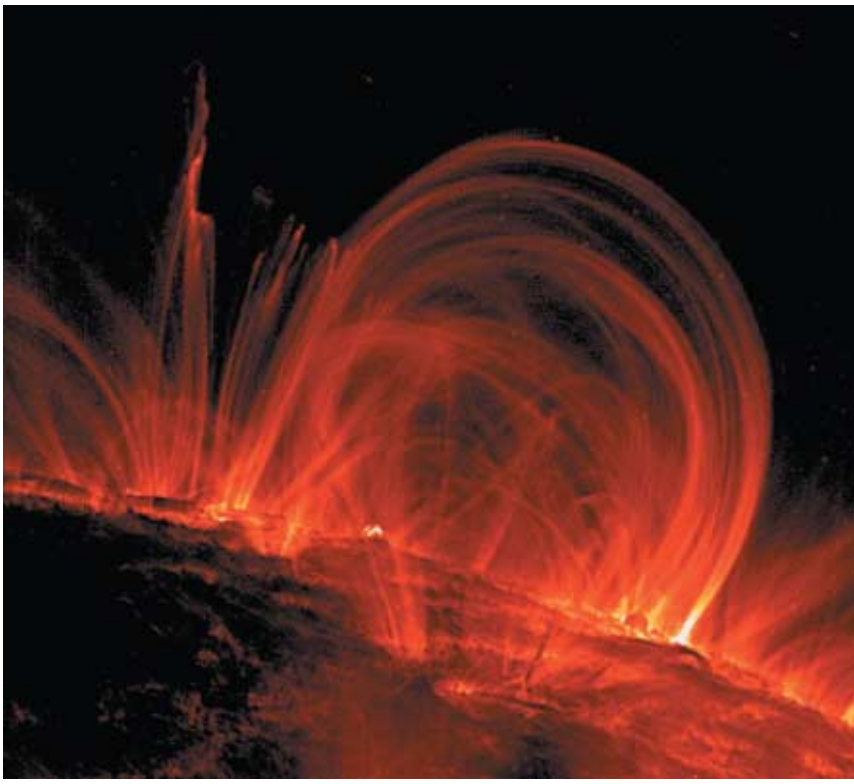


Figure 3 ▶ A loop of coronal gas can arch half a million kilometers or more above the sun's surface.

Solar Flares

The most violent of all solar disturbances is a **solar flare**, a sudden outward eruption of electrically charged particles, such as electrons and protons. The trigger for these eruptions is unknown. However, scientists know that solar flares release the energy stored in the strong magnetic fields of sunspots. This release of energy can lead to the formation of coronal loops, such as the one shown in **Figure 3.**

Solar flares may travel upward thousands of kilometers within minutes, but few eruptions last more than an hour. During a peak in the sunspot cycle, 5 to 10 solar flares may occur each day. The temperature of the gas in solar flares may reach 20,000,000°C.

prominence a loop of relatively cool, incandescent gas that extends above the photosphere

solar flare an explosive release of energy that comes from the sun and that is associated with magnetic disturbances on the sun's surface

coronal mass ejection a part of coronal gas that is thrown into space from the sun

Coronal Mass Ejections

Some of the particles from a solar flare escape into space. These particles increase the strength of the solar wind. Particles also escape into space as **coronal mass ejections,** or parts of the corona that are thrown off the sun. As the gusts of particles strike Earth's *magnetosphere*, or the space around Earth that contains a magnetic field, the particles can generate a sudden disturbance in Earth's magnetic field. These disturbances are called *geomagnetic storms*. Although several small geomagnetic storms may occur each month, the average number of severe storms is less than one per year.

Geomagnetic storms have been known to interfere with radio communications on Earth. The high-energy particles that circulate in Earth's outer atmosphere during geomagnetic storms can also damage satellites. They can also lead to blackouts when power lines become overloaded. Not all solar activity is so dramatic, but the activity of the sun affects Earth every day.

Reading Check **How do coronal mass ejections affect communications on Earth? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

MATHPRACTICE

Magnetic Fields

Magnetic fields on the sun differ greatly from each other. Field densities at the poles are 0.001 teslas (T), while field densities near sunspots are up to 0.3 T. How many times the densities of fields at the sun's poles are densities of fields near sunspots?

Figure 4 ▶ Auroras, such as these over Canada, can fill the entire sky. When high-energy particles strike oxygen atoms in the upper atmosphere, green curtains form. When low-energy particles strike oxygen atoms, red curtains form.

Auroras

aurora colored light produced by charged particles from the solar wind and from the magnetosphere that react with and excite the oxygen and nitrogen of Earth's upper atmosphere; usually seen in the sky near Earth's magnetic poles

On Earth, a spectacular effect of the interaction between the solar wind and Earth's magnetosphere is the appearance in the sky of bands of light called **auroras** (aw RAWR uhz). **Figure 4** shows an example of an aurora. Auroras are usually seen close to Earth's magnetic poles because electrically charged particles are guided toward Earth's magnetic poles by Earth's magnetosphere. The electrically charged particles strike the atoms and gas molecules in the upper atmosphere and produce colorful sheets of light. Depending on which pole they are near, auroras are called *northern lights*—or *aurora borealis* (aw RAWR uh BAWR ee AL is)—or *southern lights*—or *aurora australis*.

Auroras normally occur between 100 and 1,000 km above Earth's surface. They are most frequent just after a peak in the sunspot cycle, especially after solar flares occur. Across the northern contiguous United States, auroras are visible about five times per year. In Alaska, however, people can see auroras almost every clear, dark night. Astronauts in orbit can also look down on Earth and see auroras. But Earth is not the only planet that has auroras. Spacecraft have recorded auroras on Jupiter and Saturn.

Section 2 Review

1. **Explain** why sunspots are cooler than surrounding areas on the sun's surface.
2. **Identify** the number of sunspots that are on the sun during the peak of the sunspot cycle.
3. **Summarize** how the latitude of sunspots varies during the sunspot cycle.
4. **Explain** how prominences are different from solar flares.
5. **Summarize** the cause of auroras on Earth.

CRITICAL THINKING

6. **Identifying Relationships** How can a sunspot be bright but look dark?
7. **Analyzing Ideas** Why doesn't the whole sun rotate at the same rate?

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *sunspot, prominence, solar flare, solar-activity cycle,* and *coronal mass ejection.*

Chapter 29

Highlights

Sections

1 Structure of the Sun

Key Terms

nuclear fusion, 756
radiative zone, 759
convective zone, 759
photosphere, 759
chromosphere, 760
corona, 760

Key Concepts

- The enormous pressure and heat in the sun's core converts matter into energy through the process of nuclear fusion.
- Nuclear fusion combines four hydrogen nuclei to form one helium nucleus.
- Energy from the sun's core moves through the radiative zone and the convective zone before it enters the sun's atmosphere.
- The sun's atmosphere is composed of the photosphere, the chromosphere, and the corona.
- Solar wind forms when electrons and electrically charged particles called *ions* from the corona travel into space.

2 Solar Activity

sunspot, 761
prominence, 763
solar flare, 763
coronal mass ejection, 763
aurora, 764

- Sunspots are caused by powerful magnetic fields in the sun.
- The sunspot cycle is a periodic variation in the number of sunspots and occurs about every 11 years. The sunspot cycle is closely related to the cycles of other solar activity.
- Prominences, solar flares, and coronal mass ejections are examples of solar activity that are caused by changes in the sun's magnetic field.
- Auroras in Earth's polar regions occur when charged particles from the interaction between the solar wind and Earth's magnetosphere collide with atoms and molecules in Earth's atmosphere.

Chapter 29 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *photosphere*
2. *solar flare*
3. *solar wind*
4. *sunspot cycle*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

5. *chromosphere* and *corona*
6. *photosphere* and *core*
7. *solar flare* and *prominence*
8. *aurora* and *solar wind*

Understanding Key Concepts

9. According to Einstein's theory of relativity, in the formula $E = mc^2$, the c stands for
   a. corona.
   b. core.
   c. the speed of light.
   d. the length of time.

10. A nuclear reaction in which atomic nuclei combine is called
    a. fission. **c.** magnetism.
    b. fusion. **d.** granulation.

11. The part of the sun in which energy moves from atom to atom in the form of electromagnetic waves is called the
    a. radiative zone. **c.** solar wind.
    b. convective zone. **d.** chromosphere.

12. The number of hydrogen atoms that fuse to form a helium atom is
    a. two. **c.** six.
    b. four. **d.** eight.

13. The part of the sun that is normally visible from Earth is the
    a. core. **c.** corona.
    b. photosphere. **d.** solar nebula.

14. Sunspots are regions of
    a. intense magnetism.
    b. the core.
    c. high temperature.
    d. lighter color.

15. The sunspot cycle repeats about every
    a. month. **c.** 11 years.
    b. 5 years. **d.** 19 years.

16. Sudden outward eruptions of electrically charged particles from the sun are called
    a. prominences. **c.** sunspots.
    b. coronas. **d.** solar flares.

17. Gusts of solar wind can cause
    a. rotation. **c.** nuclear fission.
    b. magnetic storms. **d.** nuclear fusion.

18. *Northern lights* and *southern lights* are other names for
    a. prominences.
    b. auroras.
    c. granulations.
    d. total solar irradiance.

Short Answer

19. What is the outermost layer of the sun?

20. How is the solar activity cycle related to the sunspot cycle?

21. What is unusual about the magnetic field in a sunspot?

22. From what process does the sun gets its energy? What steps does this process follow?

23. Compare two types of solar activity.

24. Describe the corona, and identify when it is visible from Earth.

25. How does the transfer of energy in the radiative zone differ from the transfer of energy in the convective zone?

Critical Thinking

26. Making Comparisons How is the transfer of energy in a pan of hot water similar to the transfer of energy in the sun's convective zone?

27. Making Comparisons Explain how the radiative zone in the sun is similar to the region between the sun and Earth.

28. Making Predictions Predict what would happen to the number of sunspots if parts of the sun's magnetic field suddenly increased in strength.

29. Drawing Conclusions If Earth's magnetosphere shifted so that solar wind was not deflected toward the poles but was deflected toward the equator, what would happen to the area where auroras are most often visible?

30. Analyzing Relationships Magnetic fields create electric currents that can damage electric power grids and interrupt the flow of electricity. How does this information help explain why strong magnetic storms can knock out power in cities?

31. Predicting Consequences How do scientists predict magnetic storms? List two ways that scientists on Earth could help people prepare for a very large magnetic storm.

Concept Mapping

32. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *sun, nuclear fusion, core, radiative zone, convective zone, photosphere,* and *corona.*

Math Skills

33. Making Calculations On average, Earth is 150×10^6 km from the sun. A coronal mass ejection, or CME, can have a speed of 7×10^6 km/h. At this speed, how long would a CME take to reach Earth?

34. Applying Information A peak of the sunspot cycle occurred in the year 2000. In what years will the next two peaks occur?

Writing Skills

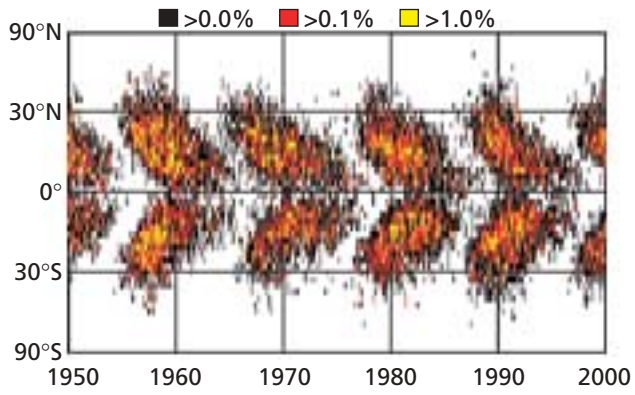
35. Creative Writing Write a short story that describes an imaginary trip to the center of the sun. Describe each layer and zone through which you would pass.

36. Writing from Research Research the northern lights. Write a short travel brochure that describes when and where to go to see the most spectacular and frequent displays of the auroras.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows how the latitudes of sunspots vary over time. Use the graph to answer the questions that follow.

Average Daily Sunspot Area



37. How many complete sunspot cycles are illustrated by the graph?

38. How does the range of latitudes of sunspots change over time? How is this change related to the sunspot cycle?

39. According to the graph, how many sunspots were located at the sun's north pole?

Chapter 29 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 What is the source of the sun's energy?
- **A.** nuclear fission reactions that break down massive nuclei to form lighter atoms
- **B.** nuclear fusion reactions that combine smaller nuclei to form more massive ones
- **C.** reactions that strip away electrons to form lighter atoms
- **D.** reactions that strip away electrons to form more massive ones

2 What do electrically charged particles from the sun strike in Earth's magnetosphere to produce sheets of light known as auroras?
- **F.** gas molecules
- **G.** dust particles
- **H.** water vapor
- **I.** ice crystals

3 Which layer of the sun has the densest material?
- **A.** the corona
- **B.** the convection zone
- **C.** the radiative zone
- **D.** the core

4 Based on the amount of fuel the sun possessed at its formation, the life span of the sun is thought by scientists to be how long?
- **F.** 1 billion years
- **G.** 5 billion years
- **H.** 10 billion years
- **I.** 50 billion years

5 The solar activity cycle occurs regularly every
- **A.** 5 years
- **B.** 11 years
- **C.** 16 years
- **D.** 22 years

Directions (6–7): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 In which part of the sun's interior is energy carried to the sun's surface by moving matter?

7 What is the term for the innermost layer of the sun's atmosphere?

Reading Skills

Directions (8–10): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

Studying the Sun

Sunlight that has been focused, especially through a magnifying glass, can produce a great amount of thermal energy—enough to start a fire. Imagine focusing the sun's rays by using a magnifying glass that has a diameter of 1.6 m. The resulting heat could easily melt metal. If a conventional telescope were pointed directly at the sun, its parts could melt and become useless.

To avoid a meltdown, the McMath-Pierce telescope uses a special mirror that produces an image of the sun. This mirror directs the sun's rays down a long, diagonal shaft to another mirror, which is located 50 m underground. This second mirror is adjustable, which allows it to focus the sunlight. The sunlight is then directed to a third mirror, which in turn directs the light to an observing room and instrument shaft. This system, while complex, not only protects the sensitive and expensive telescopic equipment but also protects the scientists that use it as well.

8 According to the information in the passage, which of the following statements about solar telescopes is true?
- **A.** Solar telescopes allow scientists to safely observe the sun.
- **B.** Solar telescopes do not need mirrors to focus the sun's rays.
- **C.** All solar telescopes are built 50 m underground.
- **D.** All solar telescopes are built with a diameter of 1.6 m.

9 Which of the following statements can be inferred from the information in the passage?
- **F.** Focusing sunlight can help avoid a meltdown.
- **G.** Unfocused sunlight produces little energy.
- **H.** A magnifying glass can focus sunlight to produce a great amount of thermal energy.
- **I.** Mirrors greatly increase the intensity and danger of studying sunlight.

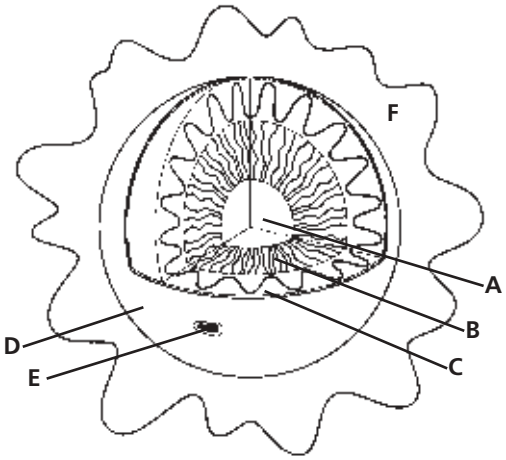
10 Why do scientists have to use specialized equipment to study the sun?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (11–13): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The graphic below shows the structure of the sun. Use this diagram to answer questions 11 and 12.

Structure of the Sun



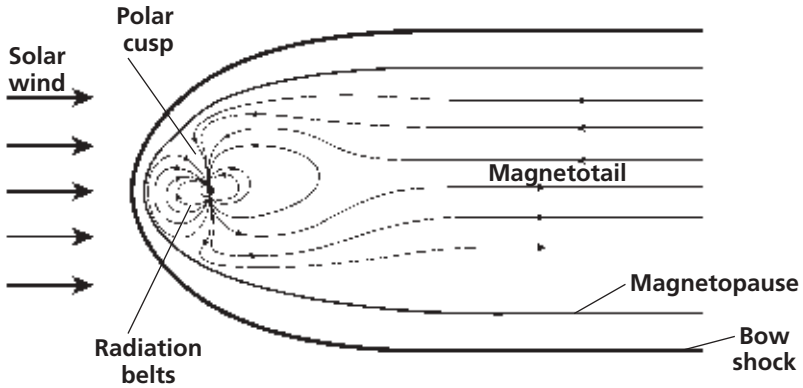
11 Fusion reactions provide power for the stars, such as the sun. In which part of the sun do these fusion reactions take place?

A. layer A
B. layer B
C. layer C
D. layer D

12 What is the term for the dark, cool regions of the sun, which are represented by the letter E on the diagram?

The diagram below shows what happens when Earth's magnetic field interacts with the solar wind. Use this graphic to answer question 13.

Earth's Magnetosphere



13 How does the solar wind affect humans and other living things on Earth, despite the protection provided by the magnetosphere? Use examples to explain your answer.

Test TIP

Choose the best possible answer for each question, even if you think there is another possible answer that is not given.

Chapter 29

Skills Practice Lab

Energy of the Sun

Objectives

- **Estimate** the sun's energy output.
- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Evaluate** the differences between known values and experimental values.

Materials

- clay, modeling
- desk lamp with 100 W bulb
- jar, glass, with lid
- metal, sheet, very thin, at least 2 cm × 8 cm
- paint, black, flat finish
- pencil
- ruler, metric
- tape, masking
- thermometer, Celsius

Safety

The sun is, on average, 150 million kilometers away from Earth. Scientists use complicated astronomical instruments to measure the size and energy output of the sun. However, it is possible to estimate the sun's energy by using simple instructions and the knowledge of the relationship between the sun's size and the sun's distance from Earth. In this lab, you will collect energy from sunlight and estimate the amount of energy produced by the sun.

PROCEDURE

1. Construct a solar collector in the following way.
   a. Carefully punch a hole in the jar lid, or use a lid that is already prepared by your teacher.
   b. Shape the piece of sheet metal by gently bending it around a pencil. Bend the edges out so that they form "wings," as shown in the photo. Then, carefully place the metal piece around the thermometer bulb so that it fits snugly. Be careful not to press too hard.
   CAUTION Thermometers are fragile. Do not squeeze the bulb of the thermometer or let the thermometer strike any solid object. Bend the remaining metal outward to collect as much sunlight as possible.
   c. If the sheet metal is not already painted, paint the sheet metal black.
   d. Slip the top of the thermometer through the hole in the jar's lid. On the top and bottom of the lid, mold the clay around the thermometer to hold the thermometer steady. Place the lid on the jar. Adjust the thermometer so that the metal wings are centered in the jar. Then, secure the thermometer and clay to the lid with masking tape.
2. Place the solar collector in sunlight. Tilt the jar so that the sun shines directly on the metal wings. Carefully hold the jar in place. You may want to prop the jar up carefully with books.
3. Watch the temperature reading on the thermometer until it reaches a maximum value or until 5 min has elapsed. Record this value. Allow the collector to cool for 2 min.

4. Place the lamp or heat lamp at the end of a table. Remove any reflector or shade from the lamp.
5. Place the collector about 30 cm from the lamp, and turn the collector toward the lamp.
6. Turn on the lamp, and wait 1 min. Then, gradually move the collector toward the lamp in 2 cm increments. Watch the temperature carefully. At each position, let the collector sit until the temperature reading stabilizes. Stop moving the collector when the temperature reaches the maximum temperature that was achieved in sunlight.
7. Once the temperature has stabilized at the same level reached in sunlight, record the distance between the center of the lamp and the thermometer bulb.

Step 6

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Analyzing Results** Because the collector reached the same temperature in both trials, the collector absorbed as much energy from the sun at a distance of 150 million km as it did from the light bulb at the distance that you measured. Using 1.5×10^{13} cm as the distance to the sun, calculate the power of the sun in watts by using the equation that follows. The power of the lamp is equal to the wattage of the light bulb.

$$\frac{power_{sun}}{(distance_{sun})^2} = \frac{power_{lamp}}{(distance_{lamp})^2}$$

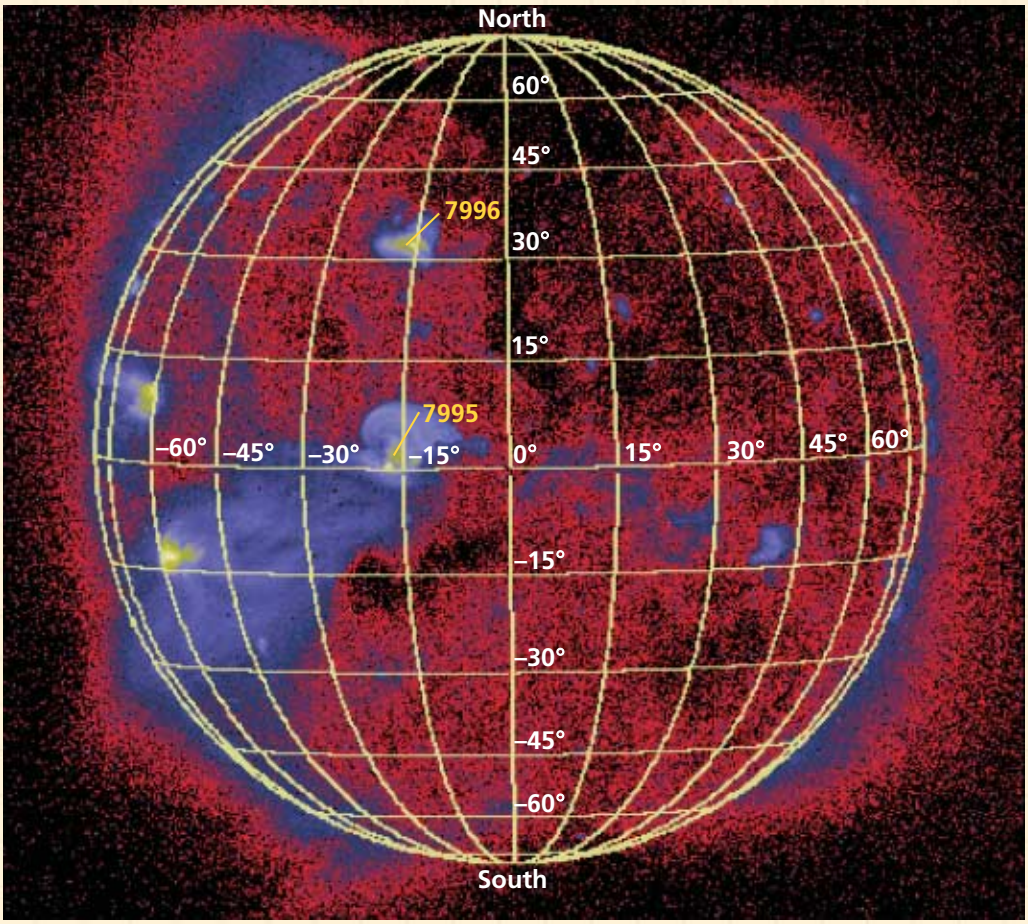
2. **Evaluating Models** The sun's power is generally given as 3.7×10^{26} W. Calculate your experimental percentage error by first subtracting your experimental value from the accepted value. Divide this difference by the accepted value, and multiply by 100. Describe two possible sources for your calculated error.

Extension

1. **Evaluating Models** How would using a fluorescent bulb instead of an incandescent bulb in the experiment affect the results of the experiment? Explain your answer.

MAPS in Action

SXT Composite Image of the Sun



Map Skills Activity

This map is a soft X-ray telescope (SXT) image of the sun that includes latitude and longitude lines. Yellow represents the strongest X-ray radiation. Blue represents moderate X-ray radiation. Red represents the weakest X-ray radiation. The numbered areas are known active regions. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Analyzing Data** Which numbered active region is near the sun's equator?
2. **Analyzing Data** What is the latitude and longitude of the active region numbered 7996?
3. **Inferring Relationships** Why do the lines of solar longitude appear to be close to each other near the left side and the right side of the map?
4. **Interpreting Data** Coronal holes produce almost no X-ray radiation, so they appear as black regions on the map. What is the range of longitudes covered by the coronal hole in the southwestern quadrant of the map?
5. **Analyzing Relationships** Sunspots emit large amounts of X-ray radiation. Where on this map would you expect to find sunspots?

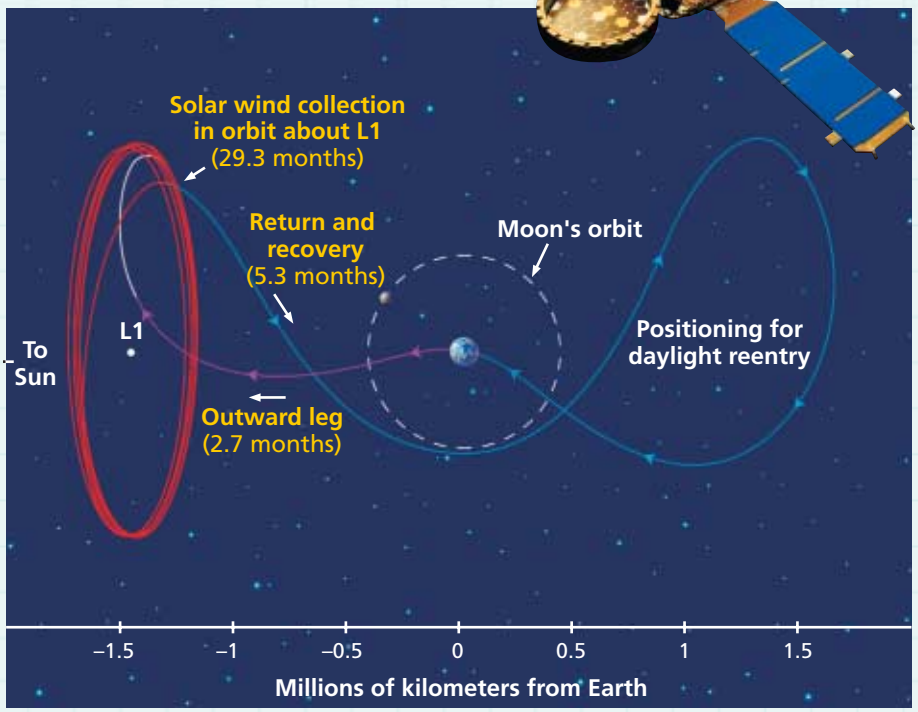
The Genesis Mission

What makes up the sun? Are the materials that make up Earth the same as those that make up other planets? These are only a few of the questions that NASA hoped an ambitious project called *The Genesis Mission* would answer.

Collecting Solar Wind

The Genesis mission began on August 8, 2001, when NASA launched its *Genesis* spacecraft. The spacecraft traveled 1.5 million kilometers toward the sun to an area called *Lagrange Point 1* (L1). L1 is a point in space outside Earth's magnetic field where the gravitational pulls of Earth and the sun are balanced.

Once at L1, the *Genesis* spacecraft collected electrically charged particles called *ions,* which make up solar wind. The spacecraft's solar collector contained pure materials that trapped the solar ions that collided with the collector. Another device, called the *concentrator,* consolidated the ions. The spacecraft's solar wind monitors collected data and helped coordinate the motions of the solar collectors and the concentrator. On April 1, 2004, after two years of collecting particles, the collectors were shut down in preparation for their scheduled September 8, 2004, return to Earth.



▶ The *Genesis* spacecraft collected solar wind particles.

Bringing the Sun to Earth

During the return to Earth, Genesis's parachute failed to open and the space capsule crashed into the Utah desert at nearly 200 mi/h. Scientists transported the damaged canister containing the collectors to a specially built clean room. Clean rooms are rooms in which specialized air filters and flooring reduce the number of airborne particles that may contaminate the samples.

Despite the crash, scientists remain hopeful that the samples recovered from the canister will provide enough data to help them measure the composition of the solar wind. The composition of the solar wind can be used to indirectly measure the abundance of isotopes and elements in the sun. Scientists hope to compare isotope data with data collected from comets, asteroids, and other bodies that formed at the beginning of our solar system.

Extension

1. **Evaluating Conclusions** Research the results of the scientists' investigation of Genesis's canister.

Chapter 30

Stars, Galaxies, and the Universe

Sections

1 Characteristics of Stars
2 Stellar Evolution
3 Star Groups
4 The Big Bang Theory

What You'll Learn

- How stars are organized by their characteristics
- How stars form and die
- How stars are grouped into clusters and galaxies
- What the universe is like and how it formed

Why It's Relevant

Our solar system is only one small part of the universe. By studying stars and galaxies, we can learn more about the formation and evolution of our universe.

PRE-READING ACTIVITY

FOLDNOTES

Layered Book Before you read this chapter, create the FoldNote entitled "Layered Book" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Label the tabs of the layered book with "Star types," "Stellar evolution," "Star groups," and "Origin of the universe." As you read the chapter, write information you learn about each category under the appropriate tab.

▶ New stars are currently forming in the Tarantula nebula, an enormous region of dust and ionized gas.

Section 1

Characteristics of Stars

A **star** is a ball of gases that gives off a tremendous amount of electromagnetic energy. This energy comes from nuclear fusion within the star. *Nuclear fusion* is the combination of light atomic nuclei to form heavier atomic nuclei.

As seen from Earth, most stars in the night sky appear to be tiny specks of white light. However, if you look closely at the stars, you will notice that they vary in color. For example, the star Antares shines with a slightly reddish color, the star Rigel shines blue-white, and the star Arcturus shines with an orange tint. Our own star, Sol, is a yellow star.

Analyzing Starlight

Astronomers learn about stars primarily by analyzing the light that the stars emit. Astronomers direct starlight through *spectrographs,* which are devices that separate light into different colors, or wavelengths. Starlight passing through a spectrograph produces a display of colors and lines called a *spectrum*. There are three types of spectra: *emission,* or bright-line; *absorption,* or dark-line; and *continuous*.

All stars have *dark-line spectra*—bands of color crossed by dark lines where the color is diminished, as shown in **Figure 1.** A star's dark-line spectrum reveals the star's composition and temperature.

Stars are made up of different elements in the form of gases. While the inner layers of a star are very hot, the outer layers are somewhat cooler. Elements in the outer layers absorb some of the light radiating from within the star. Because different elements absorb different wavelengths of light, scientists can determine the elements that make up a star by studying its spectrum.

OBJECTIVES

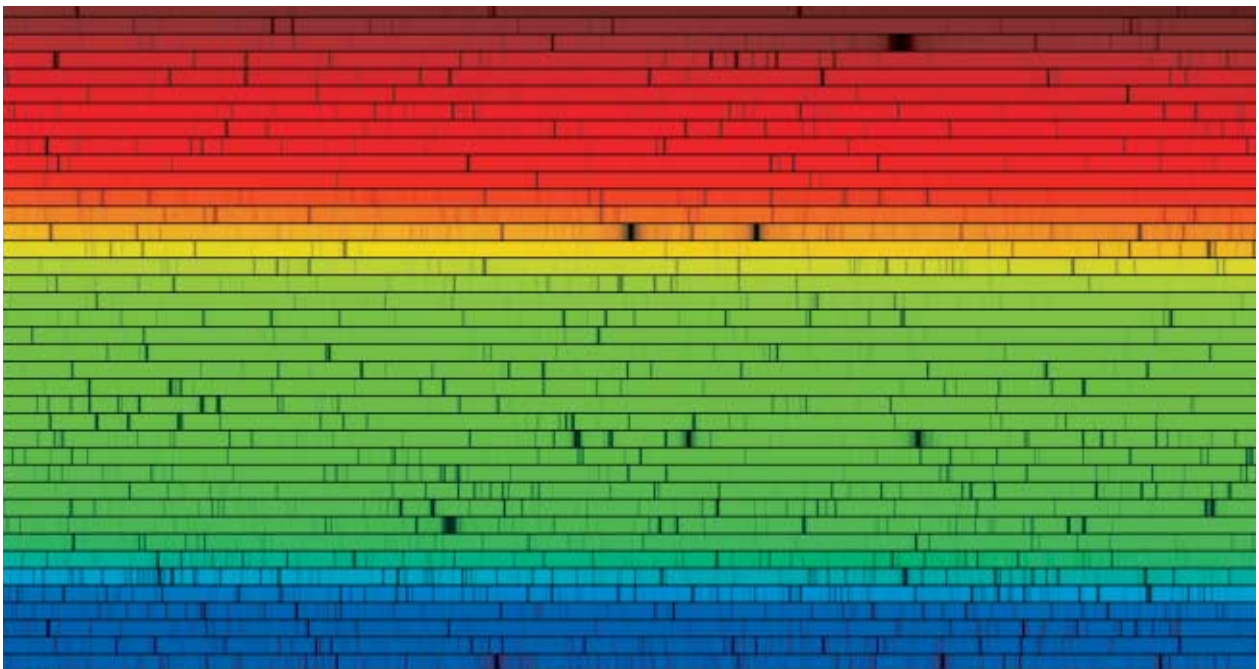
- **Describe** how astronomers determine the composition and temperature of stars.
- **Explain** why stars appear to move in the sky.
- **Describe** one way astronomers measure the distances to stars.
- **Explain** the difference between absolute magnitude and apparent magnitude.

KEY TERMS

star
Doppler effect
light-year
parallax
apparent magnitude
absolute magnitude

star a large celestial body that is composed of gas and that emits light

Figure 1 ▶ The spectrum of the sun consists of bands of color crossed by dark absorption lines. This spectrum has been cut into strips that have been arranged vertically.



Classification of Stars		
Color	Surface temperature (°C)	Examples
Blue	above 30,000	10 Lacertae
Blue-white	10,000–30,000	Rigel, Spica
White	7,500–10,000	Vega, Sirius
Yellow-white	6,000–7,500	Canopus, Procyon
Yellow	5,000–6,000	sun, Capella
Orange	3,500–5,000	Arcturus, Aldebaran
Red	less than 3,500	Betelgeuse, Antares

Figure 2 ▶ Stars in the sky show tinges of different colors, which reveal the stars' temperatures. Blue stars shine with the hottest temperatures, and red stars shine with the coolest.

The Compositions of Stars

Every chemical element has a characteristic spectrum in a given range of temperatures. The colors and lines in the spectrum of a star indicate the elements that make up the star. Through spectrum analysis, scientists have learned that stars are made up of the same elements that compose Earth. But while the most common element on Earth is oxygen, the most common element in stars is hydrogen. Helium is the second most common element in stars. Elements such as carbon, oxygen, and nitrogen, usually in small quantities, make up most of the remaining mass of stars.

The Temperatures of Stars

The surface temperature of a star is indicated by the star's color, as shown in **Figure 2.** The temperature of most stars ranges from 2,800°C to 24,000°C, although a few stars are hotter. Generally, a star that shines with blue light has an average surface temperature of 35,000°C. However, the surface temperatures of some blue stars are as high as 50,000°C. Red stars are the coolest stars and have average surface temperatures of 3,000°C. Yellow stars, such as the sun, have surface temperatures of about 5,500°C.

The Sizes and Masses of Stars

Stars also vary in size and mass. Some dwarf stars are about the same size as Earth. The sun, a medium-sized star, has a diameter of about 1,390,000 km. Some giant stars have diameters that are 1,000 times the sun's diameter. Most stars visible from Earth are medium-sized stars that are similar to our sun.

Many stars also have about the same mass as the sun, though some stars may be significantly more or less massive. Stars that are very dense may have more mass than the sun and still be much smaller than the sun. Less-dense stars may have a larger diameter than the sun has but still have less mass than the sun.

Stellar Motion

Two kinds of motion are associated with stars—actual motion and apparent motion. Because stars are so far from Earth, their actual motion can be measured only with high-powered telescopes and other specialized instruments. Apparent motion, on the other hand, is much more noticeable.

Apparent Motion of Stars

The *apparent motion* of stars, or motion visible to the unaided eye, is caused by the movement of Earth. By aiming a camera at the sky and leaving the shutter open for a few hours, you can photograph the apparent motion of the stars. The curves of light in **Figure 3** record the apparent motion of stars in the northern sky. The circular trails make it seem as though the stars are moving counter-clockwise around a central star called Polaris, or the North Star. The circular pattern is caused by the rotation of Earth on its axis. Polaris is almost directly above the North Pole, and thus the star does not appear to move much.

Earth's revolution around the sun causes the stars to appear to move in a second way. Stars located on the side of the sun opposite Earth are obscured by the sun. As Earth orbits the sun, however, different stars become visible during different seasons. The visible stars appear to shift slightly to the west every night. Each night, most stars appear a small distance farther across the sky than they were the night before. After many months, they may finally disappear below the western horizon.

Reading Check **Why does Polaris appear to remain stationary in the night sky? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Stars
SciLinksCode: HQ61448

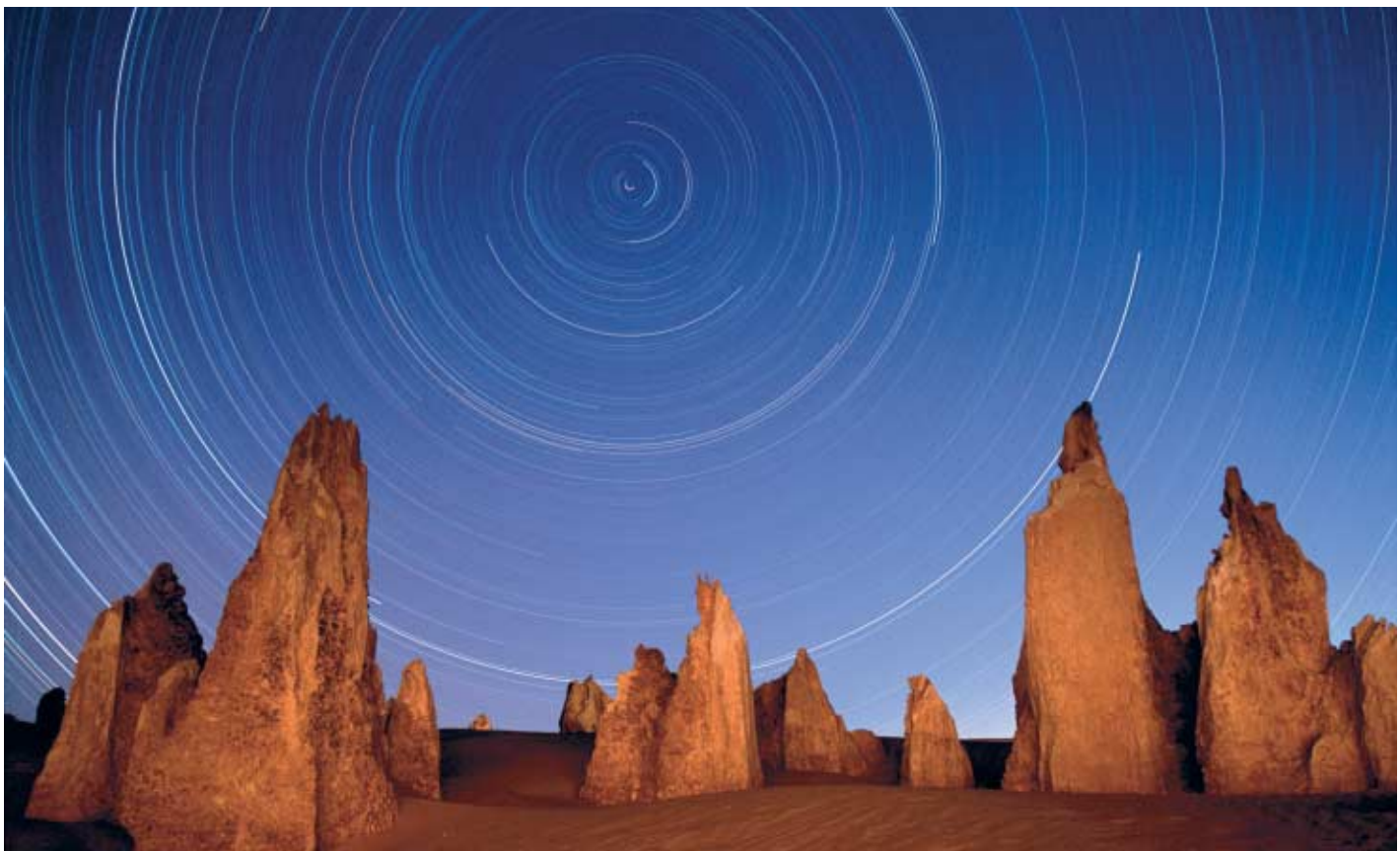


Figure 3 ▶ Stars appear as curved trails in this long-exposure photograph. These trails result from the rotation of Earth on its axis.

Circumpolar Stars

Some stars are always visible in the night sky. These stars never pass below the horizon in either their nightly or annual movements. In the Northern Hemisphere, the movement of these stars makes them appear to circle Polaris, the North Star. These circling stars are called *circumpolar stars*. The stars of the Little Dipper are circumpolar for most observers in the Northern Hemisphere. At the North Pole, all visible stars are circumpolar. The farther the observer moves from the North Pole toward the equator, the fewer circumpolar stars the observer will be able to see.

Actual Motion of Stars

Most stars have several types of *actual motion*. First, they rotate on an axis. Second, they may revolve around another star. Third, they either move away from or toward our solar system.

From a star's spectrum, astronomers can learn more about how that star is moving in space. The spectrum of a star that is moving toward or away from Earth appears to shift, as shown in **Figure 4.** The apparent shift in the wavelength of light emitted by a light source moving toward or away from an observer is called the **Doppler effect.** The colors in the spectrum of a star moving toward Earth are shifted slightly toward blue. This shift, called *blue shift,* occurs because the light waves from a star appear to have shorter wavelengths as the star moves toward Earth.

Doppler effect an observed change in the frequency of a wave when the source or observer is moving

A star moving away from Earth has a spectrum that is shifted slightly toward red. This shift, called *red shift,* occurs because the wavelengths of light appear to be longer. Most distant galaxies, or large groups of stars, have red-shifted spectra, which indicate that these galaxies or stars are moving away from Earth.

Reading Check **What causes starlight to shift toward the red end of the spectrum? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

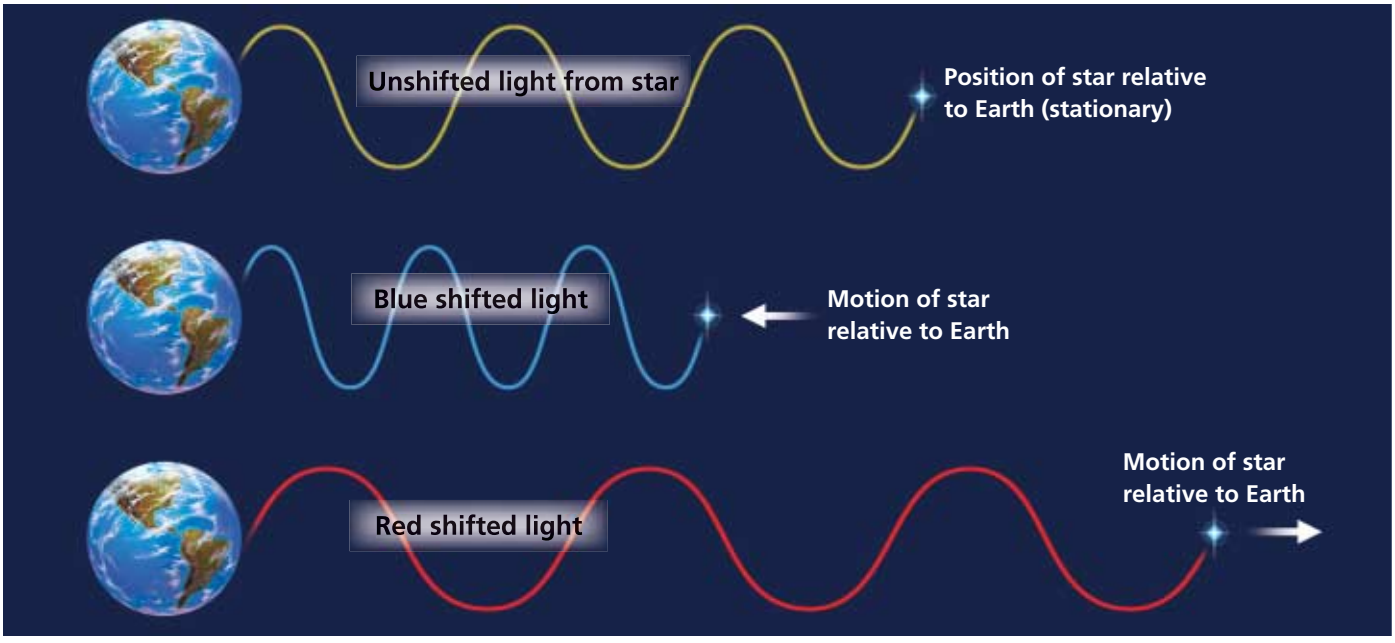


Figure 4 ▶ The light from stars is shifted based on the star's movement in relationship to Earth. For example, light from stars that are moving away from Earth is shifted slightly toward the red end of the spectrum.

Distances to Stars

Because space is so vast, distances between the stars and Earth are measured in light-years. A **light-year** is the distance that light travels in one year. Because the speed of light is 300,000 km/s, light travels about 9.46 trillion km in one year. The light you see when you look at a star left that star sometime in the past. Light from the sun, for example, takes about 8 minutes to reach Earth. The sun is therefore 8 light-minutes from Earth. When we witness an event on the sun, such as a solar flare, the event actually took place about 8 minutes before we saw it.

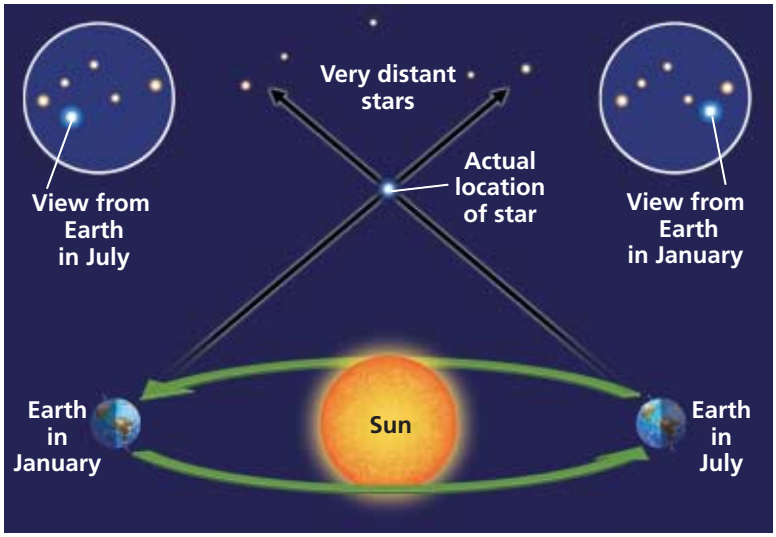


Figure 5 ▶ Observers on Earth see nearby stars against those in the distant background. The movement of Earth causes nearby stars to appear to move back and forth each year.

Apart from the sun, the star nearest Earth is Proxima Centauri. This star is 4.2 light-years from Earth, nearly 300,000 times the distance from Earth to the sun. Polaris is 700 light-years from Earth. When you look at Polaris, you see the star the way it was 700 years ago.

For relatively close stars, scientists can determine a star's distance by measuring **parallax,** the apparent shift in a star's position when viewed from different locations. As Earth orbits the sun, observers can study the stars from different perspectives, as shown in **Figure 5.** As Earth moves halfway around its orbit, a nearby star will appear to shift slightly relative to stars that are farther from Earth. The closer the star is to Earth, the larger the shift will be. Using this method, astronomers can calculate the distance to any star within 1,000 light-years of Earth.

light-year the distance that light travels in one year

parallax an apparent shift in the position of an object when viewed from different locations

QuickLAB 15 min

Parallax

Procedure

1. Use a **metric ruler** and **scissors** to cut **five 1 m lengths of thread.** Use **masking tape** to tape one end of each piece of thread to the edge of a **paper plate.** Each plate should have the same diameter. One plate should be red, and four should be blue.
2. Stand on a **ladder,** and tape the free end of each piece of thread to the ceiling at various heights. Place the thread 30 cm apart in a staggered pattern. Hang the plates in a location that allows the widest field of view and movement.
3. Stand directly in front of and facing the red plate at a distance of several meters.
4. Close one eye, and sketch the position of the red plate in relation to the blue plates.
5. Take several steps back and to the right. Repeat step 4.
6. Take several more steps and make another sketch.
7. Repeat step 6.

Analysis

1. Compare your drawings. Did the red plate change position as you viewed it from different locations? Explain your answer.
2. What results would you expect if you continued to repeat step 6? Explain your answer.
3. If you noted the positions of several stars by using a powerful telescope, what would you expect to observe about their positions if you saw the same stars six months later? Explain.

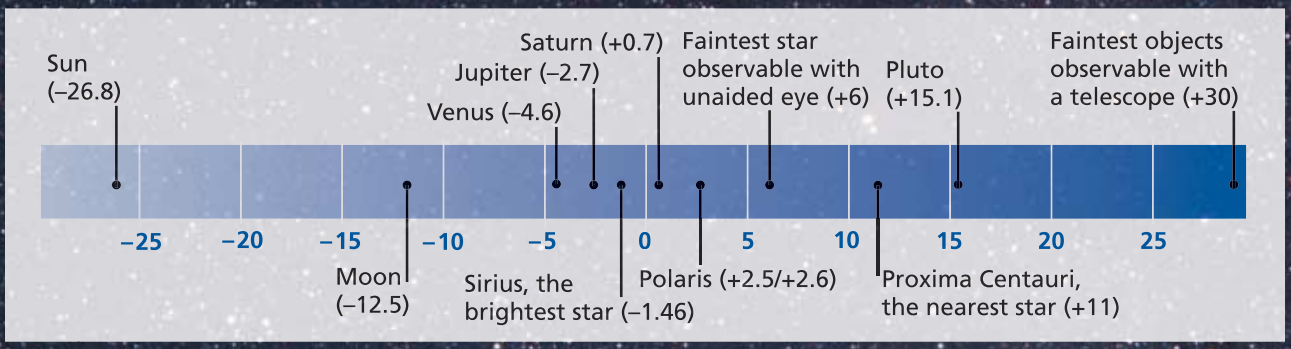


Figure 6 ▶ The sun, which has an apparent magnitude of –26.8, is the brightest object in our sky. All other objects appear dimmer in the sky, so their apparent magnitudes are higher on the scale.

Stellar Brightness

More than 3 billion stars can be seen through telescopes on Earth. Of these, only about 6,000 are visible without a telescope. Billions more stars can be observed from Earth-orbiting telescopes, such as the *Hubble Space Telescope*. The visibility of a star depends on its brightness and its distance from Earth. Astronomers use two scales to describe the brightness of a star.

apparent magnitude the brightness of a star as seen from the Earth

absolute magnitude the brightness that a star would have at a distance of 32.6 light-years from Earth

The brightness of a star as it appears to us on Earth is called the star's **apparent magnitude.** The apparent magnitude of a star depends on both how much light the star emits and how far the star is from Earth. The lower the number of the star on the scale shown in **Figure 6,** the brighter the star appears to observers on Earth. The true brightness, or **absolute magnitude,** of a star is how bright the star would appear if all the stars were at a standard, uniform distance from Earth. The brighter a star actually is, the lower the number of its absolute magnitude.

Section 1 Review

1. **Describe** what astronomers analyze to determine the composition and surface temperature of a star.
2. **Compare** the mass of the sun with the masses of most other stars in the universe.
3. **Explain** why, as you observe the night sky over time, stars appear to move westward across the sky.
4. **Describe** the units used to measure the distance to stars in terms of whether their starlight takes minutes or years to reach Earth.
5. **Describe** the method astronomers use to measure the distance to stars that are less than 1,000 light-years from Earth.
6. **Explain** the difference between apparent magnitude and absolute magnitude.

CRITICAL THINKING

7. **Identifying Relationships** How does the movement of Earth affect the apparent movement of stars in the sky?
8. **Analyzing Ideas** Why is it better for astronomers to measure parallax by observing every six months instead of observing every year?
9. **Understanding Relationships** If two stars have the same absolute magnitude, but one of the stars is farther from Earth than the other one, which star would appear brighter in the night sky?

CONCEPT MAPPING

10. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *star, apparent magnitude, red shift, Doppler effect, light-year, absolute magnitude,* and *blue shift*.

Section 2 Stellar Evolution

Because a typical star exists for billions of years, astronomers will never be able to observe one star throughout its entire lifetime. Instead, they have developed theories about the evolution of stars by studying stars in different stages of development.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** how a protostar becomes a star.
- **Explain** how a main-sequence star generates energy.
- **Describe** the evolution of a star after its main-sequence stage.

KEY TERMS

main sequence
nebula
giant
white dwarf
nova
neutron star
pulsar
black hole

Classifying Stars

Plotting the surface temperatures of stars against their *luminosity,* or the total amount of energy they give off each second, reveals a consistent pattern. The graph that illustrates this pattern is the *Hertzsprung-Russell diagram,* or *H-R diagram,* a simplified version of which is shown in **Figure 1.** The graph is named for Ejnar Hertzsprung and Henry Norris Russell, the astronomers who discovered the pattern nearly 100 years ago. The temperature of a star's surface is plotted on the horizontal axis. The luminosity of a star is plotted on the vertical axis.

Astronomers use the H-R diagram to describe the life cycles of stars. Astronomers always plot the highest temperatures on the left and the highest luminosities at the top. The temperature and luminosity for most stars falls within a band that runs diagonally through the middle of the H-R diagram. This band, which extends from cool, dim, red stars at the lower right to hot, bright, blue stars at the upper left, is known as the **main sequence.** Stars within this band are called *main-sequence stars.* The sun is one example of a main-sequence star.

main sequence the location on the H-R diagram where most stars lie; it has a diagonal pattern from the lower right to the upper left

Figure 1 ▶ The Hertzsprung-Russell Diagram

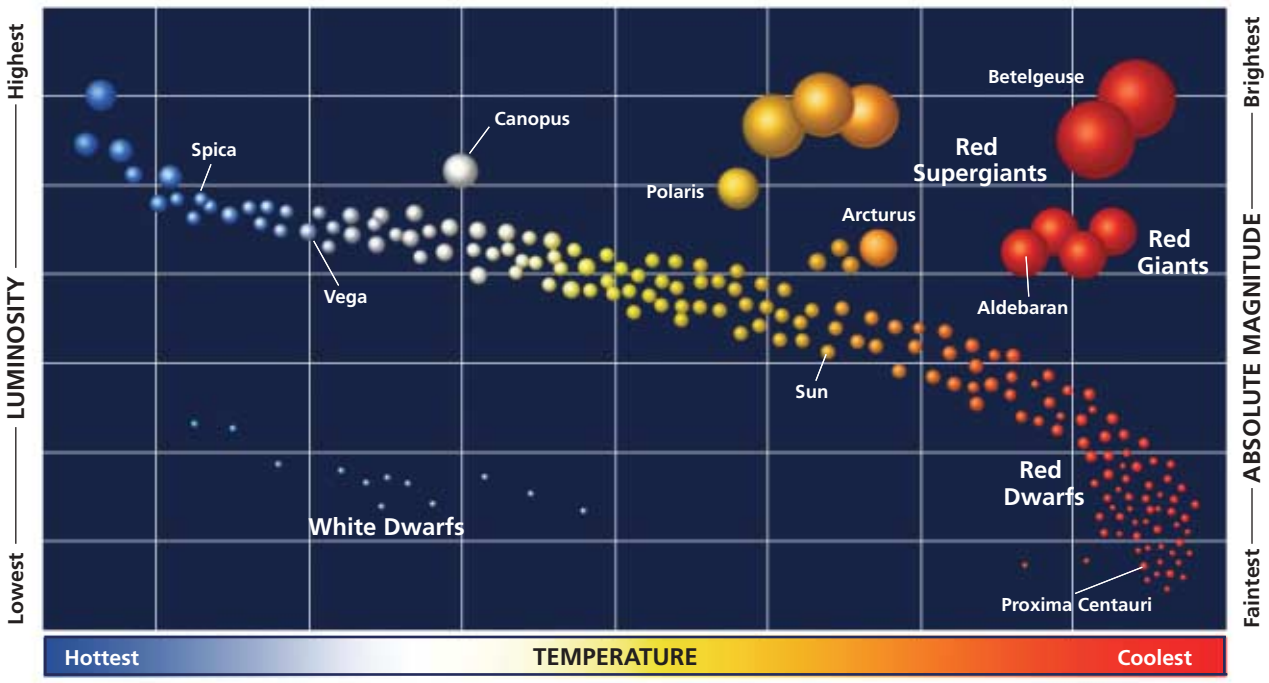


Figure 2 ▶ The Eagle Nebula is a region in which star formation is currently taking place. This false-color image was captured by the *Hubble Space Telescope*.

Star Formation

nebula a large cloud of gas and dust in interstellar space; a region in space where stars are born

A star begins in a **nebula** (NEB yu luh), a cloud of gas and dust, such as the one shown in **Figure 2.** A nebula commonly consists of about 70% hydrogen, 28% helium, and 2% heavier elements. When an outside force, such as the explosion of a nearby star compresses the cloud, some of the particles move close to each other and are pulled together by gravity.

According to Newton's *law of universal gravitation,* all objects in the universe attract each other through gravitational force. This gravitational force increases as the mass of an object increases or as the distance between two objects decreases. Therefore, as gravity pulls particles closer together, the gravitational pull of the particles on each other increases. This increase in gravitational force causes more nearby particles to be pulled toward the area of increasing mass. As more particles come together, regions of dense matter begin to build up within the cloud.

Protostars

As gravity makes these dense regions more compact, any spin the region has is greatly amplified. The shrinking, spinning region begins to flatten into a disk that has a central concentration of matter called a *protostar*. Gravitational energy is converted into heat energy as more matter is pulled into the protostar. This heat energy causes the temperature of the protostar to increase.

The protostar continues to contract and increase in temperature for several million years. Eventually, the gas becomes so hot that its electrons are stripped from their parent atoms. The nuclei and free electrons move independently, and the gas is then considered a separate state of matter called plasma. *Plasma* is a hot, ionized gas that consists of an equal number of free-moving positive ions and electrons.

MATH PRACTICE

Nuclear Fusion

The sun converts nearly 545 million metric tons of hydrogen to helium every second. In the process, approximately 3.6 million metric tons of that hydrogen mass is changed into energy and radiated into space. What percentage of the converted hydrogen is changed into radiated energy? If the sun loses 3.6 million metric tons of mass per second, how many metric tons of mass will it lose in one year?

The Birth of a Star

Temperature continues to increase in a protostar to about 10,000,000°C. At this temperature, nuclear fusion begins. *Nuclear fusion* is a process that occurs when extremely high temperature and pressure cause less-massive atomic nuclei to combine to form more-massive nuclei and, in the process, release enormous amounts of energy. The onset of fusion marks the birth of a star. Once nuclear fusion begins in a star, the process can continue for billions of years.

A Delicate Balancing Act

As gravity increases the pressure on the matter within the star, the rate of fusion increases. In turn, the energy radiated from fusion reactions heats the gas inside the star. The outward pressures of the radiation and the hot gas resist the inward pull of gravity. The stabilizing effect of these forces is shown in **Figure 3.** This equilibrium makes the star stable in size. A main-sequence star maintains a stable size as long as the star has an ample supply of hydrogen to fuse into helium.

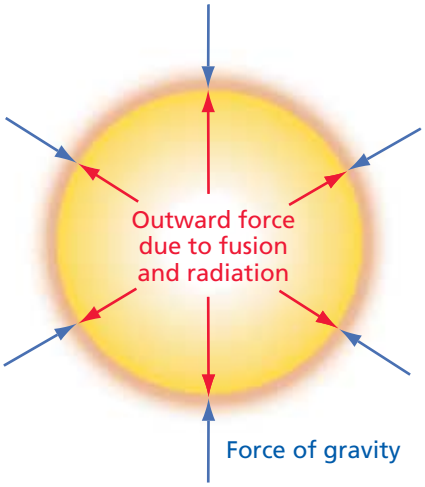


Figure 3 ▶ Stellar equilibrium is achieved when the inward force of gravity is balanced by the outward pressure from fusion and radiation inside the star.

Reading Check **How does the pressure from fusion and hot gas interact with the force of gravity to maintain a star's stability? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

The Main-Sequence Stage

The second and longest stage in the life of a star is the main-sequence stage. During this stage, energy continues to be generated in the core of the star as hydrogen fuses into helium. Fusion releases enormous amounts of energy. For example, when only 1 g of hydrogen is converted into helium, the energy released could keep a 100 W light bulb burning for more than 200 years.

A star that has a mass about the same as the sun's mass stays on the main sequence for about 10 billion years. More-massive stars, on the other hand, fuse hydrogen so rapidly that they may stay on the main sequence for only 10 million years. Because the universe is about 14 billion years old, massive stars that formed long ago have long since left the main sequence. Less massive stars, which are at the bottom right of the main sequence on the H-R diagram, are thought to be able to exist for hundreds of billions of years.

The stages in the life of a star cover an enormous period of time. Scientists estimate that over a period of almost 5 billion years, the sun, shown in **Figure 4,** has converted only 5% of its original hydrogen nuclei into helium nuclei. After another 5 billion years, though, with 10% of the sun's original hydrogen converted, fusion will stop in the core. When fusion stops, the sun's temperature and luminosity will change and the sun will move off the main sequence.

Figure 4 ▶ Our sun is a yellow star. It is located in the diagonal band of main-sequence stars on the H-R diagram.

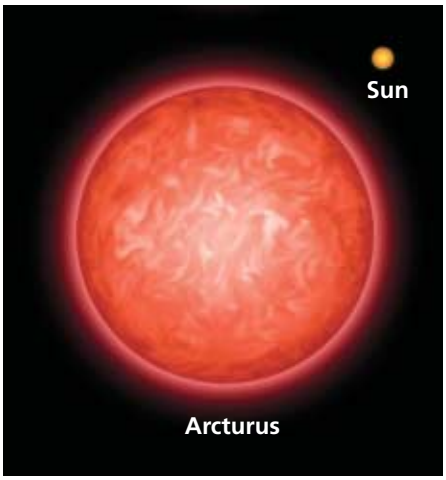


Figure 5 ▶ Arcturus is an orange giant that is about 23 times larger than the sun. Despite being about 1,000°C cooler than the sun, Arcturus gives off more than 100 times as much light as the sun does.

giant a very large and bright star whose hot core has used most of its hydrogen

Leaving the Main Sequence

A star enters its third stage when almost all of the hydrogen atoms within its core have fused into helium atoms. Without hydrogen for fuel, the core of a star contracts under the force of its own gravity. This contraction increases the temperature in the core. As the helium core becomes hotter, it transfers energy into a thin shell of hydrogen surrounding the core. This energy causes hydrogen fusion to continue in the shell of gas. The on-going fusion of hydrogen radiates energy outward, which causes the outer shell of the star to expand greatly.

Giant Stars

A star's shell of gases grows cooler as it expands. As the gases in the outer shell become cooler, they begin to glow with a reddish color. These large, red stars are known as **giants.**

Because of their large surface areas, giant stars are bright. Giants, such as the star Arcturus shown in **Figure 5,** are 10 or more times larger than the sun. Stars that contain about as much mass as the sun will become giants. As they become larger, more luminous, and cooler, they move off the main sequence. Giant stars are above the main sequence on the H-R diagram.

Supergiants

Main-sequence stars that are more massive than the sun will become larger than giants in their third stage. These highly luminous stars are called *supergiants*. These stars appear along the top of the H-R diagram. Supergiants are often at least 100 times larger than the sun. Betelgeuse, the large, orange-red star shown in **Figure 6,** is one example of a supergiant. Located in the constellation Orion, Betelgeuse is 1,000 times larger than the sun.

Though such supergiant stars make up only a small fraction of all the stars in the sky, their high luminosity makes the stars easy to find in a visual scan of the night sky. However, despite the high luminosity of supergiants, their surfaces are relatively cool.

Reading Check **Where are giants and supergiants found on the H-R diagram? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

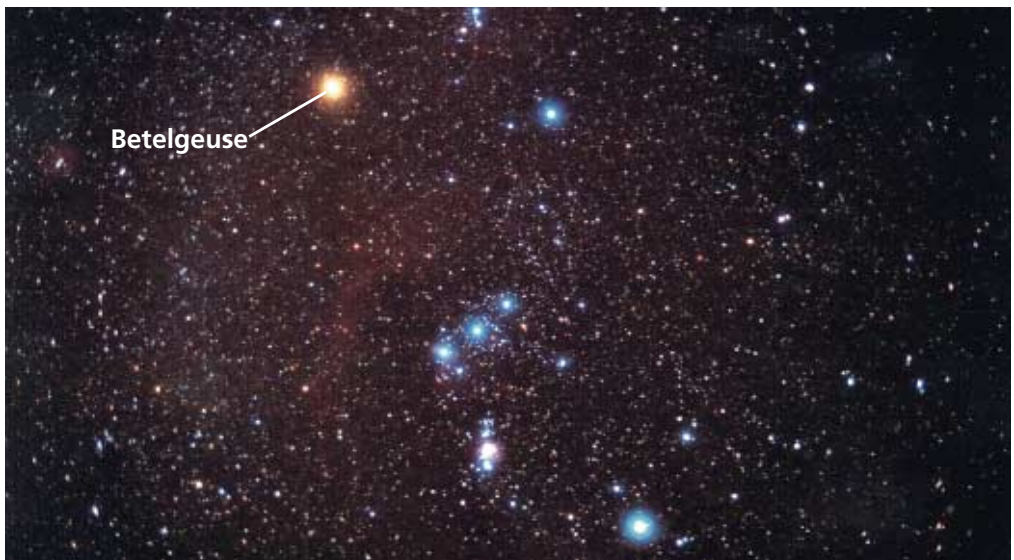


Figure 6 ▶ If the sun were replaced by the red supergiant Betelgeuse, the surface of this star would be farther out than Jupiter's orbit. ***How does the temperature of Betelgeuse compare with that of the sun?***

The Final Stages of a Sunlike Star

In the evolution of a medium-sized star, fusion in the core will stop after the helium atoms have fused into carbon and oxygen. With energy no longer available from fusion, the star enters its final stages.

Planetary Nebulas

As the star's outer gases drift away, the remaining core heats these expanding gases. The gases appear as a *planetary nebula,* a cloud of gas that forms around a sunlike star that is dying. Some of these clouds may form a simple sphere or ring around the star. However, many planetary nebulas form more-complex shapes. For example, the Ant nebula has a double-lobed shape, as shown in **Figure 7.**

Figure 7 ▶ The Ant nebula is a planetary nebula that is located more than 3,000 light-years from Earth in the southern constellation Norma.

White Dwarfs

As a planetary nebula disperses, gravity causes the remaining matter in the star to collapse inward. The matter collapses until it cannot be pressed further together. A hot, extremely dense core of matter—a **white dwarf**—is left. White dwarfs shine for billions of years before they cool completely.

White dwarfs are in the lower left of the H-R diagram. They are hot but dim. These stars are very small, about the size of Earth. As white dwarfs cool, they become fainter. This is the final stage in the life cycle of many stars.

When a white dwarf no longer gives off light, the star will become a *black dwarf.* However, this process is long, and many astronomers do not believe that any black dwarf stars yet exist.

white dwarf a small, hot, dim star that is the leftover center of an old star

Connection to **TECHNOLOGY**

Searching for Extraterrestrial Life

In 1967, scientists discovered strange, regular pulses of radio waves coming from a specific point in space. Some scientists briefly thought these pulses might be coming from an intelligent source and called them LGMs, for *Little Green Men.* Further research showed that the source of these waves was a natural phenomenon, but the idea that there might be life in the universe continued to spur scientific interest.

In 1984, the SETI Institute was founded. The name SETI stands for the Search for Extraterrestrial Intelligence. SETI is dedicated to searching for evidence of extraterrestrial life and signs of alien intelligence.

The SETI program uses telescopes all over Earth to gather data. Many of these telescopes, such as the Arecibo Observatory in Puerto Rico, gather radio data, but optical searches are also performed.

Combing through all the data that the telescopes collect is no small job. In fact, the telescopes often collect more data than SETI's computers can process. In 1998, the SETI@home project was launched by scientists at the University of California at Berkeley. This program allows anyone with a computer and an internet connection to help process the data collected.

Novas and Supernovas

nova a star that suddenly becomes brighter

Some white dwarf stars are part of a binary star system. If a white dwarf revolves around a red giant, the gravity of the very dense white dwarf may capture gases from the red giant. As these gases accumulate on the surface of the white dwarf, pressure begins to build up. This pressure may cause large explosions, which release energy and stellar material into space, to occur. Such an explosion is called a **nova.**

A nova may cause a star to become many thousands of times brighter than it normally is. However, within days, the nova begins to fade to its normal brightness. Because these explosions rarely disrupt the stability of the binary system, the process may start again and a white dwarf may become a nova several times.

A white dwarf star in a binary system may also become a *supernova,* a star that has such a tremendous explosion that it blows itself apart. Unlike an ordinary nova, a white dwarf can sometimes accumulate so much mass on its surface that gravity overwhelms the outward pressure. The star collapses and becomes so dense that the outer layers rebound and explode outward. Supernovas are thousands of times more violent than novas. The explosions of supernovas completely destroy the white dwarf star and may destroy much of the red giant.

Graphic Organizer

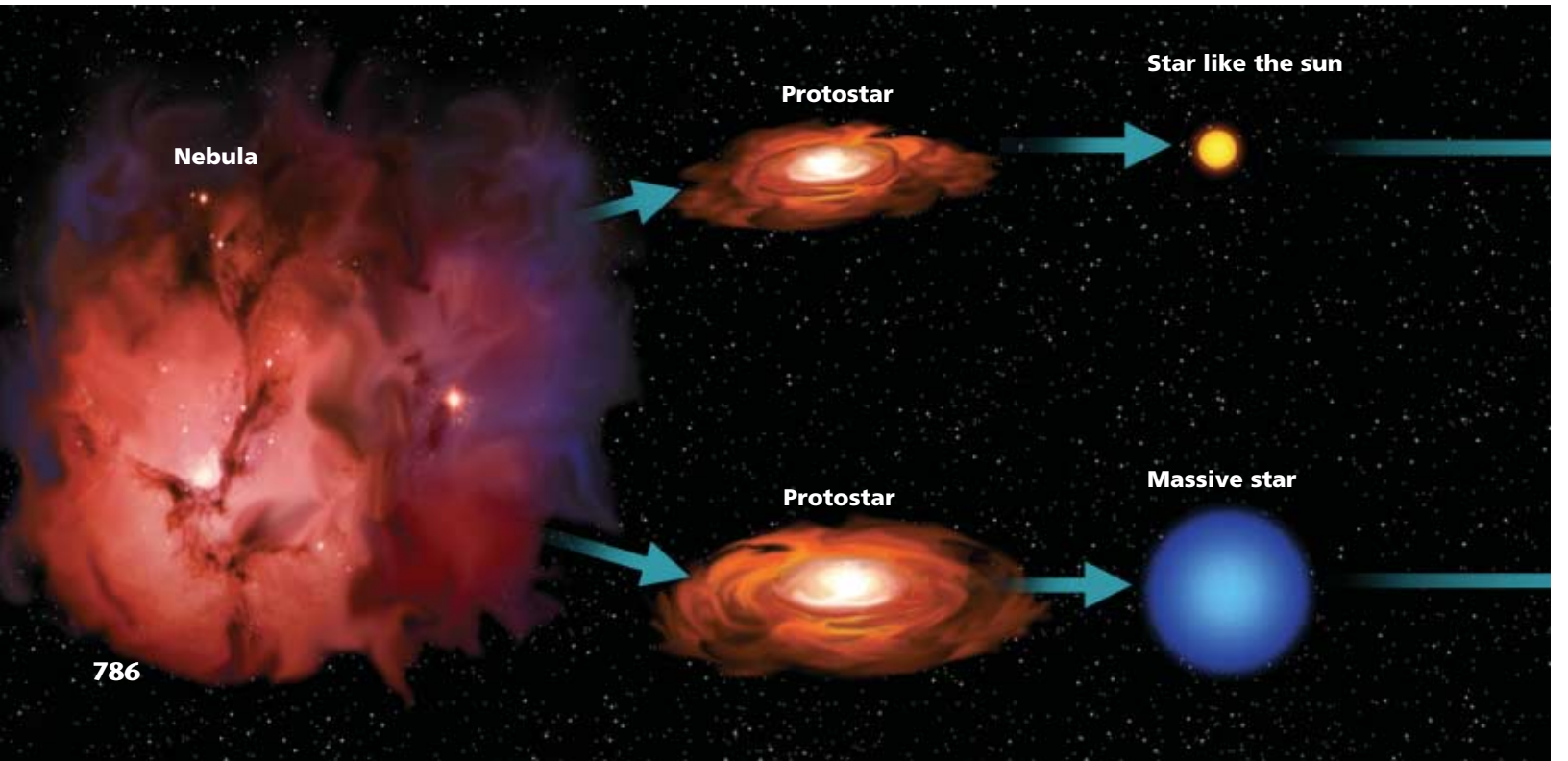
Chain-of-Events Chart

Create the Graphic Organizer entitled "Chain-of-Events Chart" described in the Skills Handbook section of the Appendix. Then, fill in the chart with details about each stage in the life cycle of a main-sequence star.

The Final Stages of Massive Stars

Stars that have masses of more than 8 times the mass of the sun may produce supernovas without needing a secondary star to fuel them. In 1054, Chinese astronomers saw a supernova so bright that it was seen during the day for more than three weeks. At its peak, the supernova radiated an amount of energy that was equal to the output of about 400 million suns.

Life Cycle of Stars



Supernovas in Massive Stars

While only a small percentage of white dwarfs become supernovas, massive stars become supernovas as part of their life cycle, which is shown in **Figure 8.** After the supergiant stage, these stars contract with a gravitational force that is much greater than that of small-mass stars. The collapse produces such high pressures and temperatures that nuclear fusion begins again. This time, carbon atoms in the core of the star fuse into heavier elements such as oxygen, magnesium, or silicon.

Fusion continues until the core is almost entirely made of iron. Because of the stable nuclear structure of iron, not even the incredible heat and pressure in a star's core can cause it to fuse into heavier elements. Having used up its supply of fuel, the core begins to collapse under its own gravity. Energy released as the core collapses is transferred to the outer layers of the star, which explode outward with tremendous force. Within a few minutes, the energy released by the supernova may surpass the amount of energy radiated by a sunlike star over its entire lifetime.

Reading Check **What causes a supergiant star to explode as a supernova? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: How Stars Evolve
SciLinksCode: HQ60764

Neutron Stars

Stars that contain about 8 or more times the mass of the sun do not become white dwarfs. After a star explodes as a supernova, the core may contract into a very small but incredibly dense ball of neutrons, called a **neutron star.** A single teaspoon of matter from a neutron star would weigh 100 million metric tons on Earth. A neutron star that has more mass than the sun may have a diameter of only about 20 km but may emit the same amount of energy as 100,000 suns. Neutron stars rotate very rapidly.

neutron star a star that has collapsed under gravity to the point that the electrons and protons have smashed together to form neutrons

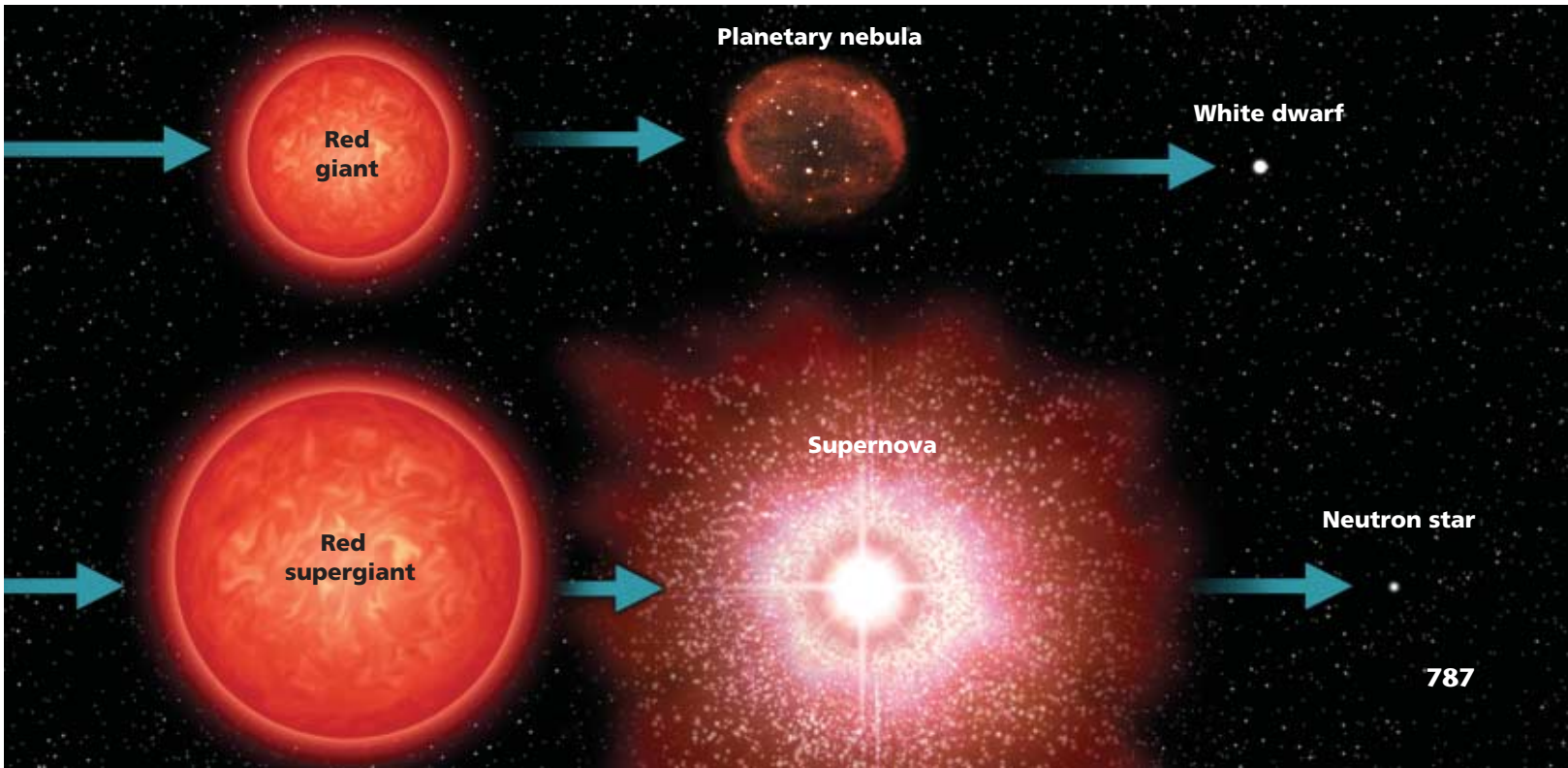


Figure 8 ▶ A star the mass of the sun becomes a white dwarf near the end of its life cycle. A more massive star may become a neutron star.

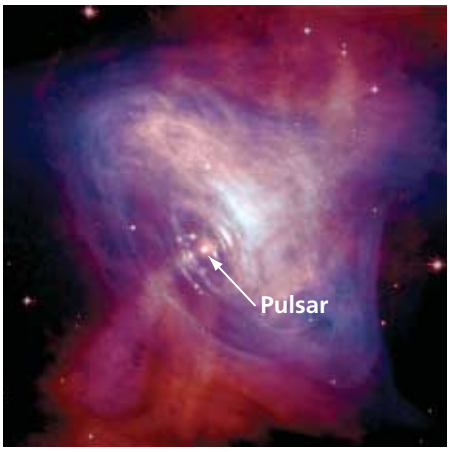


Figure 9 ▶ This pulsar, located in the heart of the Crab nebula, is still surrounded by the remains of a supernova explosion that took place less than 1,000 years ago.

Pulsars

Some neutron stars emit a beam of radio waves that sweeps across space like a lighthouse light beam sweeps across water. Because we detect pulses of radio waves every time the beam sweeps by Earth, these stars are called **pulsars.** For each pulse we detect, we know that the star has rotated within that period. Newly formed pulsars, such as the one shown in **Figure 9,** are commonly surrounded by the remnants of a supernova. But most known pulsars are so old that these remnants have long since dispersed and have left behind only the spinning star.

Black Holes

Some massive stars produce leftovers too massive to become stable neutron stars. If the remaining core of a star contains more than 3 times the mass of the sun, the star may contract further under its greater gravity. The force of the contraction crushes the dense core of the star and leaves a **black hole.** The gravity of a black hole is so great that nothing, not even light, can escape it.

Because black holes do not give off light, locating them is difficult. But a black hole can be observed by its effect on a companion star. Matter from the companion star is pulled into the black hole. Just before the matter is absorbed, it swirls around the black hole. The gas becomes so hot that X rays are released. Astronomers locate black holes by detecting these X rays. Scientists then try to find the mass of the object that is affecting the companion star. Astronomers conclude that a black hole exists only if the companion star's motion shows that a massive, invisible object is present nearby.

pulsar a rapidly spinning neutron star that emits pulses of radio and optical energy

black hole an object so massive and dense that even light cannot escape its gravity

Section 2 Review

1. **Explain** the steps that the gas in a nebula goes through as it becomes a star.
2. **Describe** the process that generates energy in the core of a main-sequence star.
3. **Explain** how a main-sequence star like the sun is able to maintain a stable size.
4. **Describe** how nuclear fusion in a main-sequence star is different from nuclear fusion in a giant star.
5. **Describe** how a star similar to the sun changes after it leaves the main-sequence stage of its life cycle.
6. **Describe** what causes a nova explosion.
7. **Explain** why only very massive stars can form black holes.
8. **Describe** the two types of supernovas.

CRITICAL THINKING

9. **Identifying Relationships** How do astronomers conclude that a supergiant star is larger than a main-sequence star of the same temperature?
10. **Analyzing Ideas** Why would an older main-sequence star be composed of a higher percentage of helium than a young main-sequence star?
11. **Compare and Contrast** Why does temperature increase more rapidly in a more massive protostar than in a less massive protostar?
12. **Analyzing Ideas** How can astronomers detect a black hole if it is invisible to a normal telescope?

CONCEPT MAPPING

13. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *main-sequence star, nebula, supergiant, white dwarf, planetary nebula, black hole, supernova, protostar, giant, pulsar,* and *neutron star.*

Section 3 Star Groups

When you look into the sky on a clear night, you see what appear to be individual stars. These visible stars are only some of the trillions of stars that make up the universe. Most of the ones we see are within 100 light-years of Earth. However, in the constellation Andromeda, there is a hazy region that is actually a huge collection of stars, gas, and dust. This region is more than two million light-years from Earth. It is the farthest one can see with the unaided eye.

OBJECTIVES

- **Describe** the characteristics that identify a constellation.
- **Describe** the three main types of galaxies.
- **Explain** how a quasar differs from a typical galaxy.

KEY TERMS

constellation
galaxy
quasar

Constellations

By using a star chart and observing carefully, you can identify many star groups that form star patterns or regions. Although the stars that make up a pattern appear to be close together, they are not all the same distance from Earth. In fact, they may be very distant from one another, as shown in **Figure 1.**

If you look at the same region of the sky for several nights, the positions of the stars in relation to one another do not appear to change. Because of the tremendous distance from which the stars are viewed, they appear fixed in their patterns. For more than 3,000 years, people have observed and recorded these patterns. These patterns of stars and the region of space around them are called **constellations.**

constellation one of 88 regions into which the sky has been divided in order to describe the locations of celestial objects; a group of stars organized in a recognizable pattern

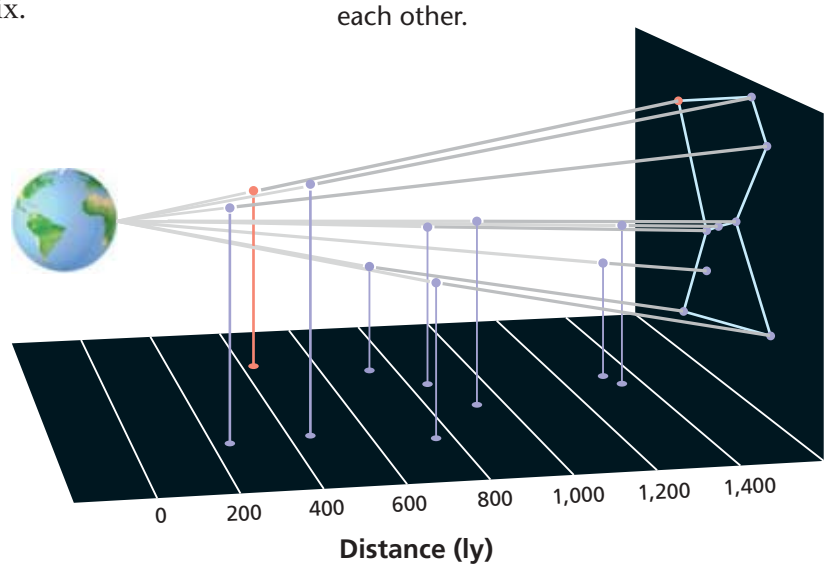
Dividing Up the Sky

In 1930, astronomers around the world agreed upon a standard set of 88 constellations. The stars of these constellations and the regions around them divide the sky into sectors. Just as you can use a road map to locate a particular town, you can use a map of the constellations to locate a particular star. Star charts can be found in the Reference Map section of the Appendix.

Naming Constellations

Many of the modern names we use for the constellations come from Latin. Some constellations are named for real or imaginary animals, such as Ursa Major, which means "the great bear," and Draco, which means "the dragon." Other constellations are named for ancient gods or legendary heroes, such as Hercules and Orion. In some cases, smaller parts of constellations are well known and have their own names. The Big Dipper, for example, is a part of the constellation Ursa Major.

Figure 1 The stars that make up the constellation Orion appear close together when viewed from Earth. However, these stars are located at various distances from Earth and from each other.



Multiple-Star Systems

Stars are not always solitary objects isolated in space. When two or more stars are closely associated, they form multiple-star systems. *Binary stars* are pairs of stars that revolve around each other and are held together by gravity. In systems where the two stars have similar masses, the center of mass, or *barycenter,* will be somewhere between the stars. If one star is more massive than the other, the barycenter will be closer to the more massive star.

Multiple-star systems sometimes have more than two stars. In such a star system, two stars may revolve rapidly around a common barycenter, while a third star revolves more slowly at a greater distance from the pair. Astronomers estimate that more than half of all observed stars are part of multiple-star systems.

galaxy a collection of stars, dust, and gas bound together by gravity

Reading Check **What percentage of stars are in multiple-star systems? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

Star Clusters

Sometimes, nebulas collapse to form groups of hundreds or thousands of stars, called clusters. *Globular clusters* have a spherical shape and can contain up to 100,000 stars. An *open cluster,* such as the one shown in **Figure 2,** is loosely shaped and rarely contains more than a few hundred stars.

Figure 2 ▶ The open cluster NGC 2516 is made up of about 100 stars. Located about 1,300 light-years from Earth, many of the stars in the cluster appear blue in color.

Galaxies

A large-scale group of stars, gas, and dust that is bound together by gravity is called a **galaxy.** Galaxies are the major building blocks of the universe. A typical galaxy, such as the Milky Way galaxy in which we live, has a diameter of about 100,000 light-years and may contain more than 200 billion stars. Astronomers estimate that the universe contains hundreds of billions of galaxies.

Distances to Galaxies

Some stars allow astronomers to find distances to the galaxies that contain the stars. For example, giant stars called *Cepheid* (SEF ee id) *variables* brighten and fade in a regular pattern. Most Cepheids have regular cycles that range from 1 to 100 days. The longer a Cepheid's cycle is, the brighter the star's visual absolute magnitude is. By comparing the Cepheid's absolute magnitude and the Cepheid's apparent magnitude, astronomers calculate the distance to the Cepheid variable. This distance, in turn, tells them the distance to the galaxy in which the Cepheid is located.

Figure 3 ▶ The three main types of galaxies are spiral (left), elliptical (center), and irregular (right).

Types of Galaxies

In studying galaxies, astronomers found that galaxies could be classified by shape into the three main types shown in **Figure 3.** The most common type, called a *spiral galaxy,* has a nucleus of bright stars and flattened arms that spiral around the nucleus. The spiral arms consist of billions of young stars, gas, and dust. Some spiral galaxies have a straight bar of stars that runs through the center. These galaxies are called *barred spiral galaxies*.

Galaxies of the second type vary in shape from nearly spherical to very elongated, like a stretched-out football. These galaxies are called *elliptical galaxies*. They are extremely bright in the center and do not have spiral arms. Elliptical galaxies have few young stars and contain little dust and gas.

The third type of galaxy, called an *irregular galaxy,* has no particular shape. These galaxies usually have low total masses and are fairly rich in dust and gas. Irregular galaxies make up only a small percentage of the total number of observed galaxies.

The Milky Way

If you look into the night sky, you may see what appears to be a cloudlike band that stretches across the sky. Because of its milky appearance, this part of the sky is called the Milky Way.

The *Milky Way galaxy* is a spiral galaxy in which the sun is one of hundreds of billions of stars. Each star orbits around the center of the Milky Way galaxy. It takes the sun about 225 million years to complete one orbit around the galaxy.

Two irregular galaxies, the Large Magellanic Cloud and Small Magellanic Cloud, are our closest neighbors. Even so, these galaxies are each more than 170,000 light-years away from Earth. Within 5 million light-years of the Milky Way are about 30 other galaxies. These galaxies and the Milky Way galaxy are collectively called the *Local Group*.

SCILINKS®
NSTA
Developed and maintained by the National Science Teachers Association
For a variety of links related to this subject, go to www.scilinks.org
Topic: Galaxies
SciLinksCode: HQ60632
Topic: Milky Way Galaxy
SciLinks code: HQ60964

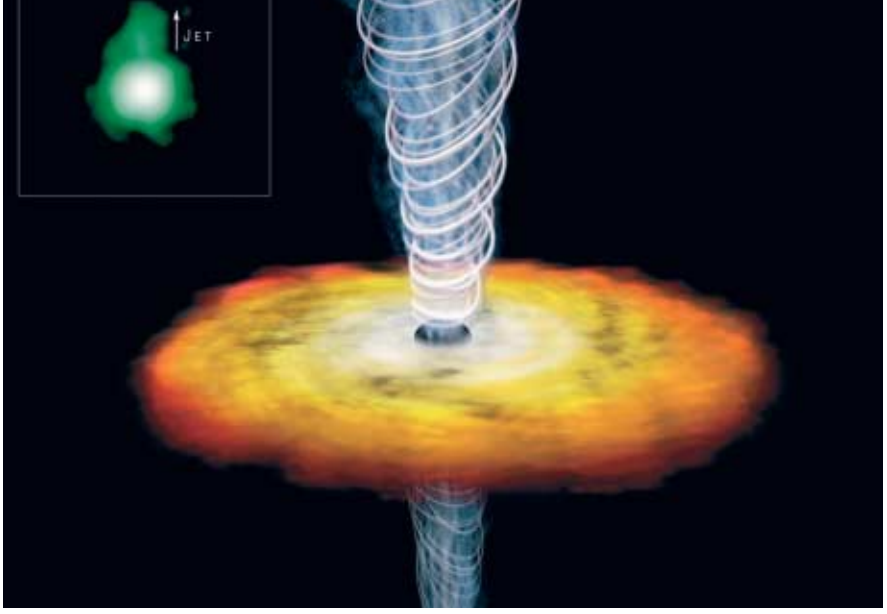


Figure 4 ▶ The jets of gas projected from a quasar can extend for more than 100,000 light-years. Quasars are too distant to be clearly photographed. The image shown is an artist's rendition of a quasar. The smaller inset is an actual image taken by the Chandra X-Ray Observatory.

Quasars

quasar quasi-stellar radio source; a very luminous object that produces energy at a high rate

First discovered in 1963, quasars used to be the most puzzling objects in the sky. Viewed through an optical telescope, a quasar appears as a point of light, almost in the same way that a small, faint star would appear. The word **quasar** is a shortened term for *quasi-stellar radio source*. The prefix *quasi-* means "similar to," and the word *stellar* means "star." Quasars are not related to stars, but quasars are related to galaxies. Some quasars project a jet of gas, as shown in **Figure 4.**

Astronomers have discovered that quasars are located in the centers of galaxies that are distant from Earth. Galaxies that have quasars in them differ from other galaxies in that the quasars in their centers are very bright. The large amount of energy emitted from such a small volume could be explained by the presence of a giant black hole. The mass of such black holes is estimated to be billions of times the mass of our sun. Quasars are among the most distant objects that have been observed from Earth.

Section 3 Review

1. **Identify** the characteristics of a constellation.
2. **List** the three basic types of galaxies.
3. **Describe** the Milky Way galaxy in terms of galaxy types.
4. **Describe** the difference between an typical galaxy and a quasar.

CRITICAL THINKING

5. **Identifying Relationships** Explain how stars can form a constellation when seen from Earth but can still be very far from each other.
6. **Making Calculations** The sun orbits the center of the Milky Way galaxy every 225 million years. How many revolutions has the sun made since the formation of Earth 4.6 billion years ago?
7. **Analyzing Ideas** Why are the constellations that are seen in the winter sky different from those seen in the summer sky?

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *galaxy, elliptical galaxy, Milky Way galaxy, irregular galaxy, barred spiral galaxy,* and *spiral galaxy*.

Section 4

The Big Bang Theory

The study of the origin, structure, and future of the universe is called **cosmology.** Cosmologists, or people who study cosmology, are concerned with processes that affect the universe as a whole. Like the parts found within it, the universe is always changing. While some astronomers study how planets, stars, or galaxies form and evolve, a cosmologist studies how the entire universe formed and tries to predict how it will change in the future.

Like all scientific theories, theories about the origin and evolution of the universe must constantly be tested against new observations and experiments. Many current theories of the universe began with observations made less than 100 years ago.

OBJECTIVES

- **Explain** how Hubble's discoveries lead to an understanding that the universe is expanding.
- **Summarize** the big bang theory.
- **List** evidence for the big bang theory.

KEY TERMS

cosmology
big bang theory
cosmic background radiation

Hubble's Observations

Just as the light from a single star can be used to make a stellar spectrum, scientists can also use the light given off by an entire galaxy to create the spectrum for that galaxy. In the early 1900s, finding the spectrum of a galaxy could take the whole night, or even several nights. Although collecting new spectra was very time consuming, the astronomer Edwin Hubble used these galactic spectra to uncover new information about our universe.

cosmology the study of the origin, properties, processes, and evolution of the universe

Measuring Red Shifts

Near the end of the 1920s, Hubble found that the spectra of galaxies, except for the few closest to Earth, were shifted toward the red end of the spectrum. By examining the amount of red shift, he determined the speed at which the galaxies were moving away from Earth. Hubble found that the most distant galaxies showed the greatest red shift and thus were moving away from Earth the fastest.

Many distant galaxies are shown in **Figure 1.** Modern telescopes that have electronic cameras can take images of hundreds of spectra per hour. To date, these spectra all confirm Hubble's original findings.

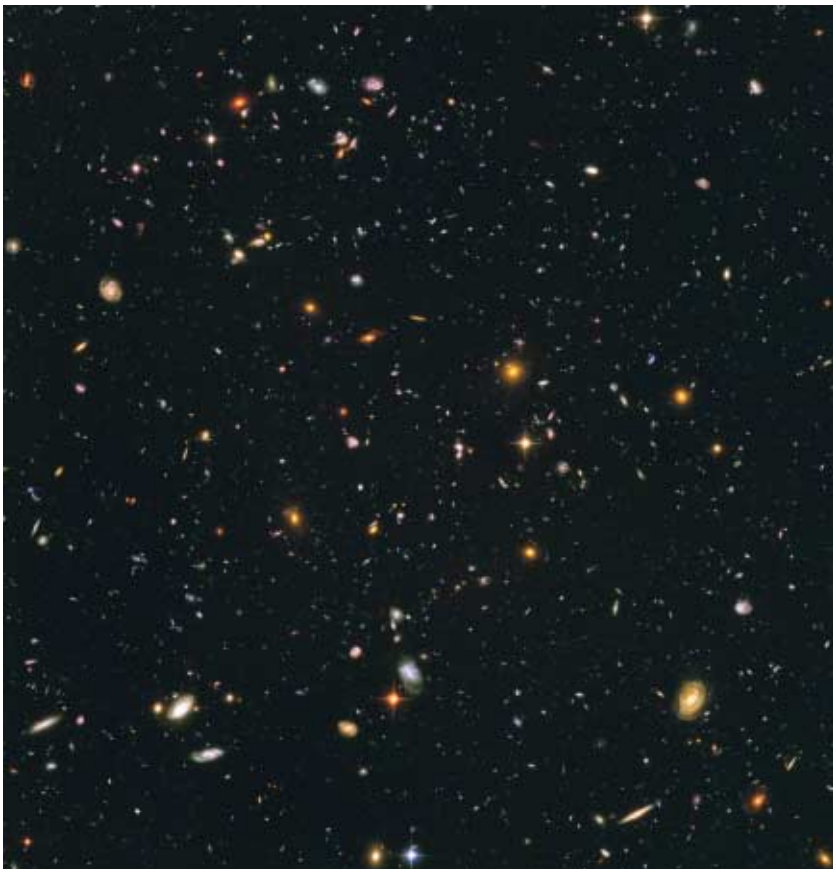


Figure 1 ▶ This image from the *Hubble Space Telescope* shows hundreds of galaxies. These galaxies all have large red shifts, so they are moving away from Earth very fast.

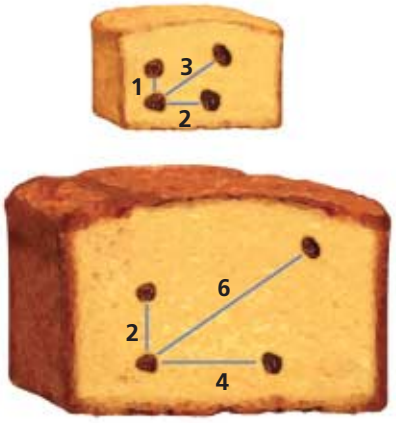


Figure 2 ▶ The farther away one raisin is from another raisin, the faster they move away from each other. Similarly, the farther galaxies are from each other, the faster they move away from each other.

The Expanding Universe

Imagine a raisin cake rising in a kitchen oven. If you were able to sit on one raisin, you would see all the other raisins moving away from you, as shown in **Figure 2.** Raisins that are farther away in the dough when it begins rising move away faster because there is more cake between you and them and because the whole cake is expanding. The situation is similar with galaxies and the universe. By using Hubble's observations, astronomers were able to determine that the universe was expanding.

The Big Bang Theory Emerges

Although cosmologists have proposed several different theories to explain the expansion of the universe, the current and most widely accepted is the big bang theory. The **big bang theory** states that billions of years ago, all the matter and energy in the universe was compressed into an extremely small volume. If you trace the expanding universe back in time, all matter would have been close together at one point in time. About 14 billion years ago, a sudden event called the *big bang* sent all of the matter and energy outward in all directions.

big bang theory the theory that all matter and energy in the universe was compressed into an extremely small volume that 13 to 15 billion years ago exploded and began expanding in all directions

As the universe expanded, some of the matter gathered into clumps that evolved into galaxies. Today, the universe is still expanding, and the galaxies continue to move apart from one another. This expansion of space explains the red shift that we detect in the spectra of galaxies. **Figure 3** shows a timeline of events following the big bang.

By the mid-20th century, almost all astronomers accepted the big bang theory. An important discovery in the 1960s finally convinced most of the remaining scientists that a sudden event, the big bang, had taken place.

Reading Check **What does the big bang theory tell us about the early universe? (See the Appendix for answers to Reading Checks.)**

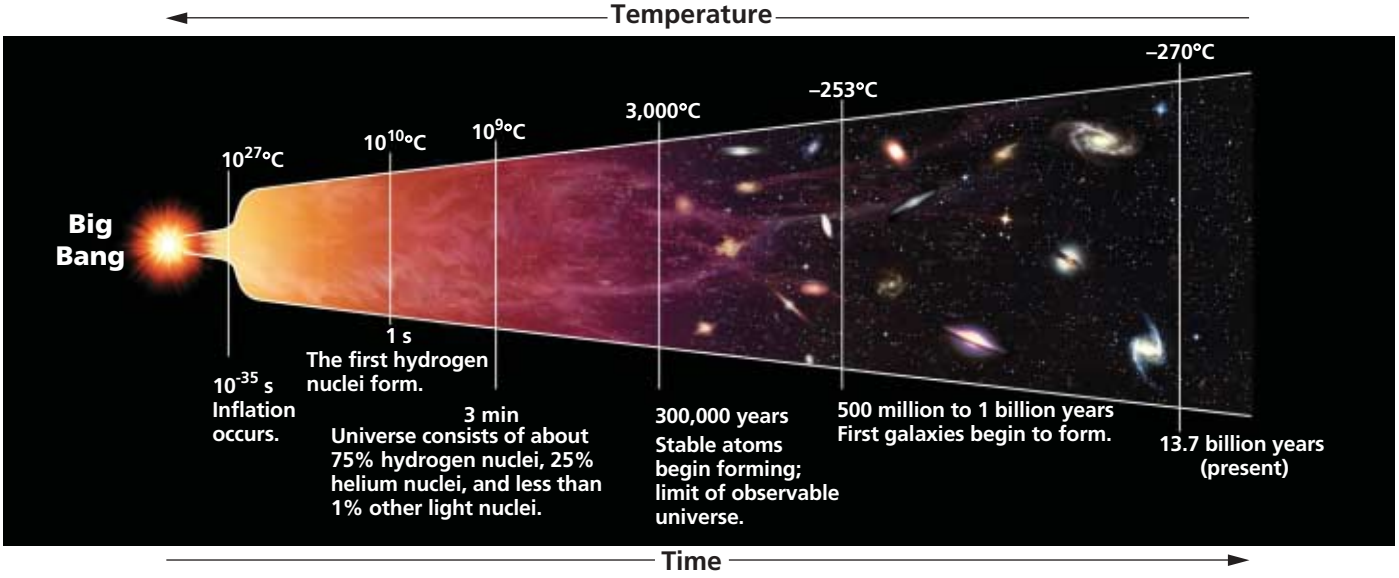


Figure 3 ▶ Following the big bang, matter and energy began to take shape, but the universe as we know it did not begin forming until the temperature cooled by many billions of degrees.

QuickLAB time

The Expanding Universe

Procedure

1. Use a **marker** to make 3 dots in a row on an noninflated **balloon.** Label them "A," "B," and "C." Dot B should be closer to A than dot C is to B.
2. Blow the balloon up just until it is taut. Pinch the balloon to keep it inflated, but do not tie the neck.
3. Use **string** and a **ruler** to measure the distances between A and B, B and C, and A and C.
4. With the balloon still inflated, blow into the balloon until its diameter is twice as large.
5. Measure the distances between A and B, B and C, and A and C. For each set of dots, subtract the original distances measured in step 3 from the new distances. Then, divide by 2, because the balloon is about twice as large. This calculation will give you the rate of change for each pair of dots.
6. Repeat steps 4 and 5.

Analysis

1. Did the distance between A and B, between B and C, or between A and C show the greatest rate of change?
2. Suppose dot A represents Earth and that dots B and C represent galaxies. How does the rate at which galaxies are moving away from us relate to how far they are from Earth?

Cosmic Background Radiation

In 1965, researchers using radio telescopes detected **cosmic background radiation,** or low levels of energy evenly distributed throughout the universe. Astronomers think that this background radiation formed shortly after the big bang.

The universe soon after the big bang would have been very hot and would have cooled to a great extent by now. The energy of the background radiation has a temperature of only about 3°C above *absolute zero,* the coldest temperature possible. Because absolute zero is about –273°C, the cosmic background radiation's temperature is about 270°C below zero.

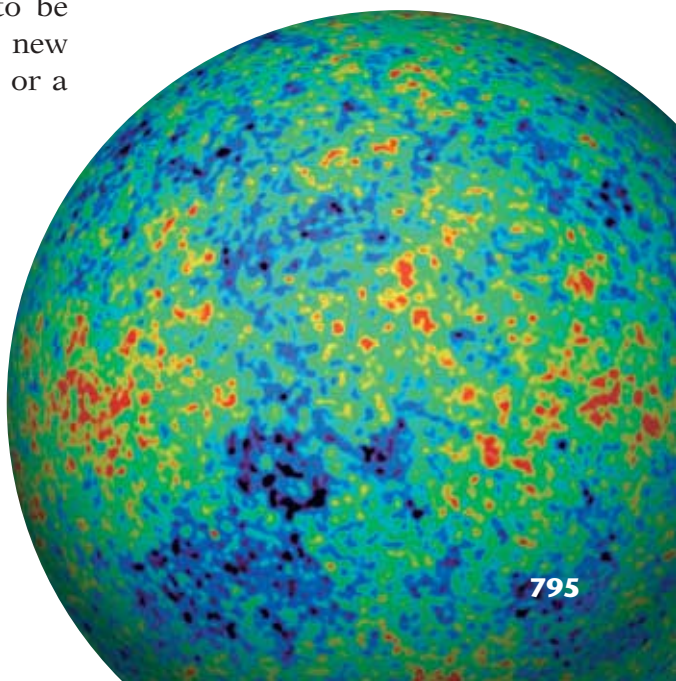
Like any theory, the big bang theory must continue to be tested against each new discovery about the universe. As new information emerges, the big bang theory may be revised, or a new theory may become more widely accepted.

cosmic background radiation radiation uniformly detected from every direction in space; considered a remnant of the big bang

Ripples in Space

Maps of cosmic background radiation over the whole sky look very smooth. But on a map that shows where temperatures differ from the average background temperature, "ripples" become apparent, as shown in **Figure 4.** These ripples are irregularities in the cosmic background radiation, which were caused by small fluctuations in the distribution of matter in the early universe. The ripples may indicate the first stages in the formation of the universe's first galaxies.

Figure 4 ▶ This display is shown on half a globe that represents the sky as seen from Earth. The temperature difference between the red spots and the blue spots is only 2/10,000°C.



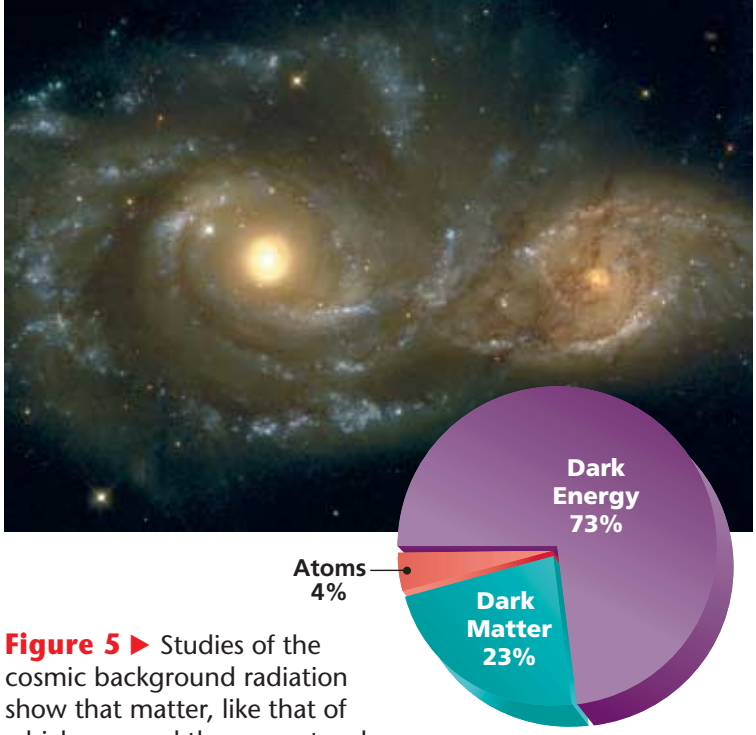


Figure 5 ▶ Studies of the cosmic background radiation show that matter, like that of which you and these spectacular spiral galaxies are made, makes up only 4% of the universe.

A Universe of Surprises

Recent data based on the ripples in the cosmic background radiation and studies of the distance to supernovas found in ancient galaxies have forced astronomers to rethink some of the theories about what makes up the universe. Astronomers now think that the universe is made up of more mass and energy than they can currently detect.

Dark Matter

Surprisingly, analyzing the ripples in the cosmic background radiation tells us that the kinds of matter that humans, the planets, the stars, and the matter between the stars are made of makes up only 4% of the universe, as shown in **Figure 5.** Another 23% of the universe is made up of a type of matter that does not give off light but that has gravity that we can detect. Because this type of matter does not give off light, it is called *dark matter*.

Dark Energy

Another surprise is that most of the universe is composed of something that we know almost nothing about. The unknown material is called *dark energy,* and scientists think that it acts as a force that opposes gravity. Recent evidence suggests that distant galaxies are farther from Earth than current theory would indicate. So, many scientists conclude that some form of undetectable dark energy is pushing galaxies apart. Because of dark energy, the universe is not only expanding, but the rate of expansion also seems to be accelerating.

Section 4 Review

1. **Describe** how red shifts were used by cosmologists to determine that the universe is expanding.
2. **Summarize** the big bang theory.
3. **List** evidence that supports the big bang theory.
4. **Compare** the amount of visible matter in the universe with the total amount of matter and energy.

CRITICAL THINKING

5. **Inferring Relationships** How did the distribution of matter in the early universe affect how we are able to detect cosmic background radiation today?
6. **Evaluating Theories** Use the big bang theory to explain why scientists do not expect to find galaxies that have large blue shifts.
7. **Identifying Relationships** Why do observations made of distant galaxies indicate that dark energy exists?

CONCEPT MAPPING

8. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *cosmic background radiation, dark energy, red shift, dark matter, big bang theory,* and *galaxies.*

Chapter 30 Highlights

Sections

1 Characteristics of Stars

Key Terms

star, 775
Doppler effect, 778
light-year, 779
parallax, 779
apparent magnitude, 780
absolute magnitude, 780

Key Concepts

- To determine the composition and surface temperature of a star, astronomers study the spectrum of the star.
- Stars appear to circle Polaris each night and appear to move westward across the sky on successive nights.
- To measure the distance to a star, astronomers use direct and indirect methods.

2 Stellar Evolution

main sequence, 781
nebula, 782
giant, 784
white dwarf, 785
nova, 786
neutron star, 787
pulsar, 788
black hole, 788

- Plotting stars by temperature and luminosity on the H-R diagram groups stars by their current stage in their life cycles.
- A protostar becomes a star when hydrogen begins to fuse into helium.
- The main-sequence stage is the longest and most stable stage for most stars.
- A red giant is a large, relatively cool star that has a core in which helium fusion is occurring.

3 Star Groups

constellation, 789
galaxy, 790
quasar, 792

- A constellation is a region of the sky that contains a recognizable star pattern and is used to locate celestial objects.
- Astronomers have identified three main types of galaxies: spiral, elliptical, irregular.
- Quasars are very bright, distant galaxies that are thought to have enormous black holes in their centers.

4 The Big Bang Theory

cosmology, 793
big bang theory, 794
cosmic background radiation, 795

- The red shifts of distant galaxies show that the universe is expanding.
- Tracing the expansion backward indicates that everything in the universe was close together about 14 billion years ago.
- Tiny ripples in the temperature of the cosmic background radiation hint that ordinary matter makes up only a small percentage of the universe.

Chapter 30 Review

Using Key Terms

Use each of the following terms in a separate sentence.

1. *light-year*
2. *cosmology*
3. *big bang theory*

For each pair of terms, explain how the meanings of the terms differ.

4. *constellation* and *cluster*
5. *spiral galaxy* and *elliptical galaxy*
6. *galaxy* and *quasar*
7. *cosmic background radiation* and *red shift*

Understanding Key Concepts

8. The most common element in most stars is
   a. oxygen. **c.** helium.
   b. hydrogen. **d.** sodium.

9. Cosmic background radiation
   a. is very hot.
   b. is blue-green.
   c. comes from supernovas.
   d. comes equally from all directions.

10. Stars appear to move in circular paths through the sky because
    a. Earth rotates on its axis.
    b. Earth orbits the sun.
    c. the stars orbit Polaris.
    d. the Milky Way is a spiral galaxy.

11. A nebula begins the process of becoming a protostar when the nebula
    a. develops a red shift.
    b. changes color from red to blue.
    c. begins to shrink and increases its spin.
    d. explodes as a nova.

12. The brightest star in the night sky is
    a. Polaris. **c.** Arcturus.
    b. Mars. **d.** Sirius.

13. A main-sequence star generates en
    fusing
    a. nitrogen into iron.
    b. helium into carbon.
    c. hydrogen into helium.
    d. nitrogen into carbon.

14. Which of the following choices list
    colors of stars from hottest to cool
    a. red, yellow, orange, white, blue
    b. orange, red, white, blue, yellow
    c. yellow, orange, red, blue, white
    d. blue, white, yellow, orange, red

15. The heaviest element formed in th
    a star is
    a. iron.
    b. carbon.
    c. helium.
    d. nitrogen.

16. The change in position of a nearby
    seen from different points on Eart
    compared with the position of a fa
    star is called
    a. parallax.
    b. blue shift.
    c. red shift.
    d. a Cepheid variable.

Short Answer

17. Describe what scientists think will
    to the sun in the next 5 billion yea

18. How can a black hole be detected
    invisible?

19. How does a galaxy that contains a
    differ from an ordinary galaxy?

20. What evidence indicates that the u
    expanding?

21. How does the presence of cosmic
    ground radiation support the big-b
    theory?

Critical Thinking

22. Inferring Relationships If the spectrum of a star indicates that the star shines with red light, what is the approximate surface temperature of the star?

23. Analyzing Ideas Why are different constellations visible during different seasons?

24. Analyzing Ideas Explain why Polaris is considered to be a very significant star even though it is not the brightest star in Earth's sky.

25. Making Comparisons Why does energy build up more rapidly in a massive protostar than in a less massive one?

26. Analyzing Ideas Explain why an old main-sequence star is made of a higher percentage of helium than a young main-sequence star is.

27 Analyzing Ideas If all galaxies began to show blue shifts, what would this change indicate about the fate of the universe?

Concept Mapping

28. Use the following terms to create a concept map: *galaxy, star, black hole, white dwarf, neutron star, giant, spiral galaxy, supergiant, elliptical galaxy, planetary nebula, main sequence, irregular galaxy,* and *protostar*.

Math Skills

29. Making Calculations The Milky Way galaxy has about 200 billion stars. If only 10% of an estimated 125 billion galaxies thought to exist in the universe were as large as the Milky Way, how many total stars would be in those galaxies?

30. Making Calculations Given that the nearest star is about 4 light-years from Earth and a light-year is about 10,000,000,000,000 km, how many years would it take to travel to the nearest star if your spaceship goes 100 times faster than a car traveling 100 km/h?

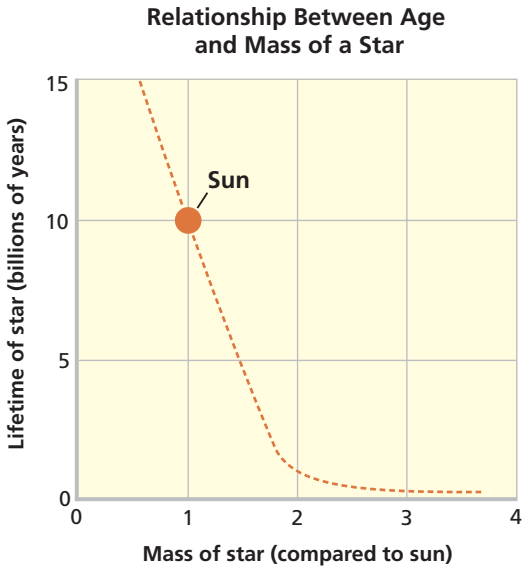
Writing Skills

31. Creative Writing Imagine that you are navigating through the galaxy and seeing many kinds of objects. Write a brief tour article for a magazine that describes your trip.

32. Writing from Research Use the Internet and library resources to research the function of constellations in ancient cultures. Write a short essay describing three different ways that ancient cultures used constellations.

Interpreting Graphics

The graph below shows the relationship between a star's age and mass. Use the graph to answer the questions that follow.



33. Which star would live longer, a star that has half the mass of the sun or a star that has 2 times the mass of the sun?

34. Approximately how long would a main-sequence star that has a mass about 1.5 times that of our sun live?

35. If the mass of the sun was reduced by one-half, approximately how much longer would the sun live than it would with its current mass?

Chapter 30 Standardized Test Prep

Understanding Concepts

Directions (1–5): **For *each* question, write on a separate sheet of paper the letter of the correct answer.**

1 What accounts for different stars being seen in the sky during different seasons of the year?
A. stellar motion around Polaris
B. Earth's rotation on its axis
C. Earth's revolution around the sun
D. position north or south of the equator

2 How do stellar spectra provide evidence that stars are actually moving?
F. Dark line spectra reveal a star's composition.
G. Long exposure photos show curved trails.
H. Light separates into different wavelengths.
I. Doppler shifts occur in the star's spectrum.

3 What happens to main sequence stars when energy from fusion is no longer available?
A. They expand and become supergiants.
B. They collapse and become white dwarfs.
C. They switch to fission reactions.
D. They contract and turn into neutron stars.

4 Which type of star is most likely to be found on the main sequence?
F. a white dwarf
G. a red supergiant
H. a yellow star
I. a neutron star

5 Evidence for the big-bang theory is provided by
A. cosmic background radiation
B. apparent parallax shifts
C. differences in stellar luminosity
D. star patterns called constellations

Directions (6–8): **For *each* question, write a short response.**

6 What type of galaxy has no identifiable shape?

7 What is the collective name for the Milky Way galaxy and a cluster of approximately 30 other galaxies located nearby?

8 What is the name for stars that seem to circle around Polaris and never dip below the horizon?

Reading Skills

Directions (9–11): **Read the passage below. Then, answer the questions.**

GEOMAGNETIC POLES

Today, we know that Copernicus was right—the stars are very far from Earth. In fact, stars are so distant that a new unit of length—the light-year—was created to measure their distance. A light-year is a unit of length equal to the distance that light travels through space in 1 year. Because the speed of light through space is about 300,000 km/s, light travels approximately 9.46 trillion kilometers in one year.

Even after astronomers figured out that stars were far from Earth, the nature of the universe was hard to understand. Some astronomers thought that our galaxy, the Milky Way, included every object in space. In the early 1920's, Edwin Hubble made one of the most important discoveries in astronomy. He discovered that the Andromeda galaxy, which is the closest major galaxy to our own, was past the edge of the Milky Way. This fact confirmed the belief of many astronomers that the universe is larger than our galaxy.

9 Why was Edwin Hubble's discovery important?
A. Hubble's discovery showed scientists that the universe was smaller than previously thought.
B. Hubble showed that the Andromeda galaxy was larger than the Milky Way galaxy.
C. Hubble's discovery showed scientists that the universe was larger than our own galaxy.
D. Hubble showed that all of the stars exist in two galaxies, the Andromeda and the Milky Way.

10 Because the sun and Earth are close together, the distance between the sun and Earth is measured in light-minutes. A light-minute is the distance light travels in 1 minute. The sun is about 8 light-minutes from Earth. What is the approximate distance between the sun and Earth?
F. 2,400,000 km
G. 18,000,000 km
H. 144,000,000 km
I. 1,000,000,000 km

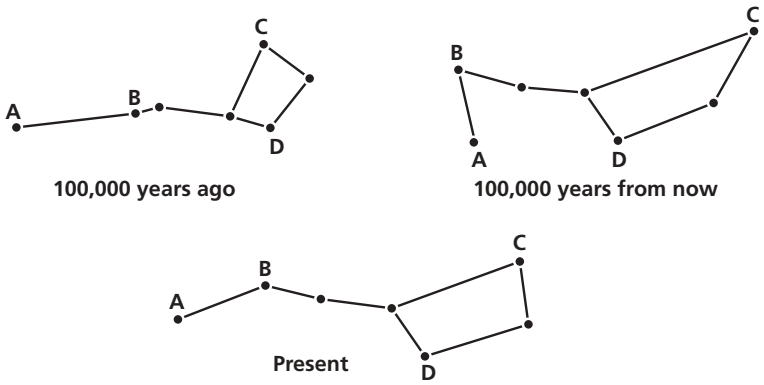
11 Why might scientists use light-years as a measurement of distance between stars?

Interpreting Graphics

Directions (12–15): **For *each* question below, record the correct answer on a separate sheet of paper.**

The diagram shows a group of stars called the Big Dipper moving over a period of 200,000 years. Use this map to answer question 12.

Changing Shape of the Big Dipper over Time



12 What does this series of drawings demonstrate about the individual stars in such a star group?

The table below shows data about several well-known stars. Distance is given in light-years. Use this table to answer questions 13 through 15.

Stellar Characteristics

Name	Color	Magnitude	Distance
Arcturus	orange	0.0	36.8 ly
Betelguese	red	0.5	400 ly
Canopus	yellow-white	-0.6	310 ly
Capella	yellow	0.1	42.2 ly
Mintaka	blue-violet	2.2	915 ly
Rigel	blue-white	0.2	800 ly
Sirius	white	-1.4	8.6 ly
Vega	white	0.0	25.3 ly

13 Which star has the brighest apparent magnitude as seen from Earth?

A. Rigel
B. Betalgeuse
C. Mintaka
D. Sirius

14 Which of these stars is the coolest?

F. Arcturus
G. Betalgeuse
H. Mintaka
I. Vega

15 Which star most likely has a temperature that is similar to the temperature of our sun? Explain how you are able to determine this information.

Test TIP

If you are unsure of an answer, eliminate the answers that you know are wrong before choosing your answer.

Chapter 30

Making Models Lab

Objectives

- **Construct** a model photometer and two model stars.
- **Demonstrate** how distance affects brightness of stars.
- **Explain** how color is related to the temperature of stars.

Materials

- aluminum foil, 12 cm × 12 cm
- batteries, AA (3)
- desk lamp with incandescent bulb
- flashlight bulbs, 3-volt (2)
- paraffin, 12 cm × 6 cm bricks (2)
- rubber band, large
- ruler, metric
- tape, electrical
- wire, plastic-coated with stripped ends, 15 cm
- wire, plastic-coated with stripped ends, 20 cm

Safety

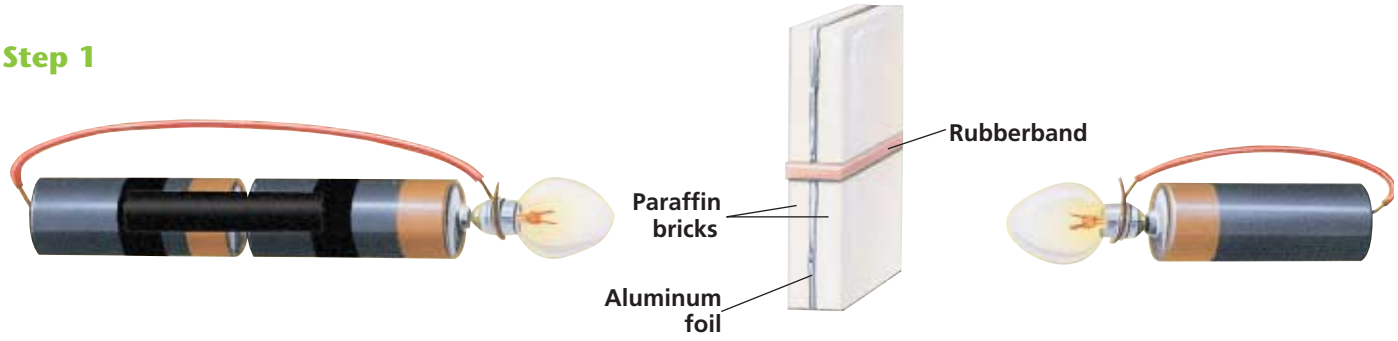
Star Magnitudes

Astronomers study the brightness, or magnitude, of stars. Except for the sun, stars are very faint and visible only at night. Thus, their brightness must be measured with a device called a *photometer*. An astronomical photometer consists of a surface that is sensitive to light and a device that measures the amount of light that reaches the surface. Photometers can also be used to compare the colors of different light sources. In this lab, you will determine the effect of distance on brightness and the relationship between temperature and color.

PROCEDURE

1. Construct two flashlights:
   - **a.** Arrange the bulbs and batteries as shown in the figure below. Using electrical tape, attach the wires to the batteries and bulbs. The bulb should be on. If it is not on, study the illustration again and make adjustments.
   - **b.** Tape the flashlight arrangement together so that it can be moved. Be sure to leave the wire loose at the negative end of the battery so that you can turn your flashlight on and off.
2. Construct a photometer by folding the aluminum foil in half with the shiny side facing out, and place it between two paraffin bricks. Hold the pieces together by using a rubber band.
3. Place the two flashlights about 2 m apart on a table. Place the photometer between them with the largest sides of the bricks facing each flashlight bulb, as shown in the figure below.

Step 1



4. Turn on both flashlights, and turn off all room lights.
5. Move the photometer until both sides are equally bright. Measure the distance, in centimeters, from each flashlight bulb to the center of the photometer. Record these measurements.
6. Square the distances you recorded in step 5. Record these values.
7. Incandescent light bulbs have filaments that emit light at a temperature that is much cooler than the sun's surface. Place the photometer between the desk lamp and a window on a bright day. Sunlight coming through a window will be the same color as the sunlight outdoors. Turn off any fluorescent ceiling lighting, and turn on the desk lamp.
8. Compare the color differences between the paraffin sides of your photometer.
9. Darken the room once again, and compare the colors of the bulb powered by one battery with the colors of the bulb powered by two batteries.

Step 8

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

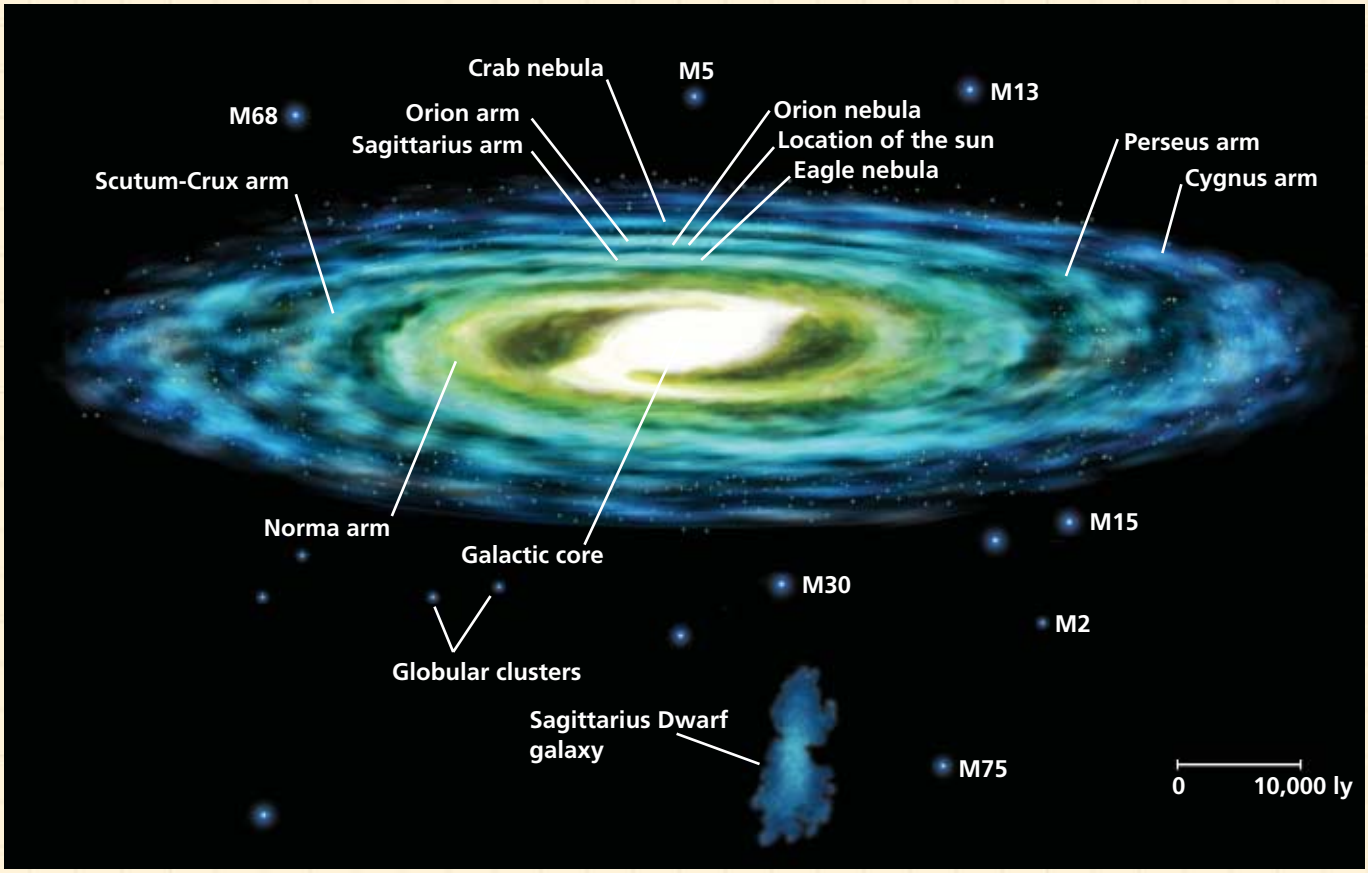
1. **Analyzing Data** The ratio of the square of the distances you calculated in step 6 is equal to the ratio of the brightnesses of the bulbs. What is the ratio of the square of the distance of the two-battery flashlight to that of the one-battery flashlight? What does this information tell you about the relationship between the brightness of the two flashlights?
2. **Drawing Conclusions** Based on the results of the investigation, would you expect a white star to be hotter or cooler than a yellow star?
3. **Applying Conclusions** Using your knowledge of the spectrum, would you expect a white star to be hotter or cooler than an orange star? Predict whether a blue star is hotter or cooler than a white star. Also, predict whether a red star is hotter or cooler than an orange star.

Extension

1. **Explaining Observations** Find an incandescent bulb controlled by a dimmer. Watch the color of the light as it fades. Does it become more yellow or more white? Explain why.

MAPS in Action

The Milky Way



Map Skills Activity

The map above shows what astronomers think the Milky Way galaxy looks like. Because of Earth's position within the galaxy, scientists must hypothesize what our galaxy looks like from a perspective outside of the galaxy. They must also form a hypothesis about the shape and location of those spiral arms that are obscured by either the galactic core or other spiral arms that are closer to Earth. Use the map to answer the questions below.

1. **Using the Key** What is the approximate distance from one edge of the Milky Way to the other edge?
2. **Using the Key** What is the approximate width of the galactic core?
3. **Analyzing Relationships** How are the Perseus arm and the Cygnus arm related to the Norma arm?
4. **Identifying Trends** What happens to the arms of the Milky Way as they radiate outward from the center of the galaxy?
5. **Analyzing Relationships** The locations on the map marked with an M and a number are known as Messier objects. These objects are named for their discoverer, Charles Messier, who first catalogued them in the 1700s. The Messier objects shown on this map are all globular clusters. If each of these clusters contain hundreds, or even thousands, of stars, why might the clusters appear so small on this map compared to the size of the Milky Way?

Studying Stars in Formation

When stars are forming, they have a dim, reddish glow. As their temperature increases, they eventually become much hotter and brighter. But when they are dim and reddish, they give off most of their light in the infrared part of the spectrum. Most of this infrared light does not penetrate Earth's atmosphere, where water vapor and carbon dioxide block the light. So, astronomers have launched telescopes into space that allow them to observe stars and galaxies from above the layers of Earth's atmosphere.

The *Hubble Space Telescope*

The *Hubble Space Telescope* observes ultraviolet, visible, and infrared spectra. The telescope did not have infrared capability at first. But a camera called NICMOS, which stands for *Near Infrared Camera and Multi-Object Spectrometer,* was launched on an updating mission in which astronauts brought new equipment to the *Hubble Space Telescope*. Infrared cameras such as NICMOS have to be kept very cool, and the liquid nitrogen that originally cooled NICMOS was depleted after about two years. The next mission to the *Hubble Space Telescope* brought a new type of refrigerator to keep the camera cool.

The *Spitzer Space Telescope*

On August 25, 2003, NASA launched a new and more sensitive infrared telescope. Originally called *Space Infrared Telescope Facility,* it was renamed the *Spitzer Space Telescope*. This telescope is not orbiting Earth in the way that the *Hubble Space Telescope* does. Instead, it is far from Earth and trails Earth in its orbit around the sun. This keeps the light reflected by Earth from heating the camera.

▲ Astronauts conduct delicate repairs to the *Hubble Space Telescope* while in orbit.

The *Spitzer Space Telescope* takes images of infrared light, which has wavelengths as much as 100 times longer than the wavelengths in images taken by the *Hubble Space Telescope*. The *Spitzer Space Telescope's* high-quality images show glowing dust, cool stars, and the most distant galaxies especially well.

◀ This false-color image from the *Spitzer Space Telescope* shows the intensity of infrared emissions of the galaxy M81.

Extension

1. **Making Comparisons** What types of information can scientists determine from infrared images that they cannot determine from images taken in the visual spectrum?

APPENDIX CONTENTS

SKILLS HANDBOOK **807**

Reading and Study Skills 807
FoldNote Instructions 814
Graphic Organizer Instructions 817
Math Skills Refresher 820
Graphing Skills Refresher 824
Chemistry Skills Refresher 827
Physics Skills Refresher 829
Answers to Practice Problems 831

MAPPING EXPEDITIONS **832**

Journey to Red River 832
A Case of the Tennessee Shakes 834
Buried Treasure 836
What Comes Down Must Go . . . Where? 838
Where the Hippos Roam 840
Snapshots of the Weather 842
Stars in Your Eyes 844

LONG-TERM PROJECTS **846**

Introducing Long-Term Projects 846
Positions of Sunrise and Sunset 848
Air-Pollution Watch 852
Correlating Weather Variables 856
Weather Forecasting 858
Comparing Climate Features 862
Planetary Motions 866

REFERENCE TABLES **870**

SI Conversions 870
Mineral Uses 871
Guide to Common Minerals 872
Guide to Common Rocks 874
Radiogenic Isotopes and Half-Life . . . 875
Topographic and Geologic Map Symbols 876
Contour Map 877
Relative Humidity 878
Barometric Conversion Scale 878
Weather Map of the United States . . . 879
Weather Map Symbols 879
Solar System Data 880
Periodic Table: The Periodic Table is located both on the inside back cover and on pages 84–85.

REFERENCE MAPS **881**

Topographic Provinces of North America 881
Geologic Map of North America 882
Mineral and Energy Resources of North America 883
Fossil Fuel Deposits of North America 884
Topographic Maps of the Moon 885
Star Charts for the Northern Hemisphere 886
Maps of the Solar System 888

READING CHECK ANSWERS **889**

Items marked with an oak leaf contain information directly related to environmental issues.

Analyzing Science Terms

You can unlock the meaning of an unfamiliar science term by analyzing its word parts. Many parts of scientific words carry a meaning that derives from Latin or Greek. The parts of words listed below provide clues to the meanings of many science terms.

Word part or root	Meaning	Application
a-	not, without	abiotic
astr-, aster-	star	astronomy
bar-, baro-	weight, pressure	barometer
batho-, bathy-	depth	batholith, bathysphere
circum-	around	circum-Pacific, circumpolar
-cline	lean, slope	anticline, syncline
-duct-	to lead, draw	conduction
eco-	environment	ecology, ecosystem
epi-	on	epicenter
ex-, exo-	out, outside of	exosphere, exfoliation, extrusion
geo-	earth	geode, geology, geomagnetic
-graph	write, writing	seismograph
hydro-	water	hydrosphere
hypo-	under	hypothesis
iso-	equal	isoscope, isostasy, isotope
-lith, -lithic	stone	Neolithic, regolith
-log-	study	ecology, geology, meteorology
magn-	great, large	magnitude
mar-	sea	marine
meta-	among, change	metamorphic, metamorphism
-meter	to measure	thermometer, spectrometer
micro-	small	microquake
-morph, -morphic	form, shape	metamorphic
nebula-	mist, cloud	nebula
neo-	new	Neolithic
paleo-	old	paleontology, Paleozoic
ped-, pedo-	ground, soil	pediment
per-	through	permeable
peri-	around	perigee, perihelion
seism-, seismo-	shake, earthquake	seismic, seismograph
sol-	sun	solar, solstice
spectro-	look at, examine	spectroscope, spectrum
-sphere	ball, globe	geosphere, lithosphere
strati-, strato-	spread, layer	stratification, stratovolcano
terra-	earth, land	terracing, terrane
thermo-	heat	thermosphere, thermometer
top-, topo-	place	topographic
trop-, tropo-	turn, respond to	tropopause, troposphere

How to Make Power Notes

Power notes help you organize the Earth science concepts you are studying by distinguishing main ideas from details. Similar to outlines, power notes are linear in form and provide you with a framework of important concepts. To make power notes, you assign a *power* of 1 to each main idea and a 2, 3, or 4 to each detail. You can use power notes to organize ideas while reading your text or to restructure your class notes for studying purposes. Practice first by using simple concepts. For example, start with a few headers or bold-faced vocabulary terms from this book. Later, you can strengthen your notes by expanding these simple words into more-detailed phrases and sentences. Use the following general format.

Power 1: Main idea
- **Power 2:** Detail or support for Power 1 idea
  - **Power 3:** Detail or support for Power 2 concept
    - **Power 4:** Detail or support for Power 3 concept

1 Pick a Power 1 word or phrase from the text.

The text you choose does not have to come from your Earth science textbook. You may make power notes from your lecture notes or from another source. We'll use the term *environmental problems* as an example of a main idea.

Power 1: environmental problems

2 Using the text, select some Power 2 words to support your Power 1 word.

We'll use the terms *resource depletion, pollution,* and *extinction,* which are the three main types of environmental problems.

Power 1: environmental problems
- **Power 2:** resource depletion
- **Power 2:** pollution
- **Power 2:** extinction

3 Select some Power 3 words to support your Power 2 words.

We'll use the terms *renewable resources* and *nonrenewable resources*. These two terms are related to *resource depletion,* which is one of the Power 2 concepts.

Power 1: environmental problems
- **Power 2:** resource depletion
  - **Power 3:** renewable resources
  - **Power 3:** nonrenewable resources
- **Power 2:** pollution
- **Power 2:** extinction

4 Continue to add powers to support and detail the main idea as necessary.

There are no restrictions on how many power numbers you can add to help you extend and organize your ideas. Words that have the same power number should have a similar relationship to the previous power but do not have to be related to each other.

Power 1: environmental problems
- **Power 2:** resource depletion
  - **Power 3:** renewable resources
  - **Power 3:** nonrenewable resources
- **Power 2:** pollution
  - **Power 3:** degradable pollutants
  - **Power 3:** nondegradable pollutants
- **Power 2:** extinction
  - **Power 3:** pollution
  - **Power 3:** habitat loss

Practice

1. Use this book's lesson on scientific methods and power notes structure to organize the following terms: *observing, hypothesizing and predicting, experimenting, organizing and analyzing data, drawing conclusions, repeating experiments, communicating results, observation, hypothesis, prediction, experiment, variable, experimental group, control group,* and *data.*

(See the last page of the Skills Handbook for the answers to practice problems.)

How to Make KWL Notes

KWL stands for *what I **K**now, what I **W**ant to know,* and *what I **L**earned*. The KWL strategy is somewhat different from other learning strategies because it prompts you to brainstorm about the subject matter before reading the assigned material. Relating new ideas and concepts with those that you have learned will help you to understand and apply the knowledge you obtain in this course. The section objectives throughout your text are ideal for using the KWL strategy. Read the objectives before reading each section, and follow the instructions in the example below.

1 Read the section objectives.

You may also want to scan headings, boldfaced terms, and illustrations in the section. We'll use a few sample objectives as examples.

- List and describe the steps of the scientific method.
- Describe why a good hypothesis is not simply a guess.
- Describe the two essential parts of a good experiment.

2 Divide a sheet of paper into three columns. Label the columns "What I know," "What I want to know," and "What I learned."

Here is an example table:

What I know	What I want to know	What I learned

3 Brainstorm about what you know about the information in the objectives, and write these ideas in the first column.

Because this table is designed to help you blend your knowledge with new information, you do not have to write complete sentences.

4 Think about what you want to know about the information in the objectives. Write these ideas in the second column.

You'll want to know the information you will be tested on, so include information from both the objectives and any other topics your teacher has given to you.

5 Use the third column to write down the information you learned. Do this while you read the text or just after reading the text.

While you read, pay close attention to any information about the topics you wrote in the column entitled "What I want to know." If you do not find all of the answers you are looking for, you may need to reread the text or reference a second source. Be sure to ask your teacher for help if you cannot find the information after reading the text a second time.

When you have completed reading the text, review the ideas you brainstormed. Compare your ideas in the first column with the information you wrote down in the third column. If you find that some of the ideas are incorrect, cross them out. Before you begin studying for your test, identify and correct any misconceptions you had prior to reading.

Here is an example of what your notes might look like after using the KWL strategy:

What I know	What I want to know	What I learned
• The steps of the experimental method are predict, test, and conclude.	• What are the steps of the experimental method?	• The steps of the experimental method are observing, hypothesizing, experimenting, organizing and analyzing data, drawing conclusions, communicating results, and repeating experiments.
• A hypothesis is similar to a guess, but when you form a hypothesis, you have an idea of what might happen.	• Why is a hypothesis not a guess?	• A hypothesis is more than a guess. You have to base a hypothesis on observations and really think about what you are trying to learn. You should also design an experiment that can test if your hypothesis is wrong, but an experiment cannot prove that your hypothesis is correct.
• A good experiment includes a hypothesis and a lot of equipment.	• What are the two important parts of a good experiment?	• The two important parts of a good experiment are a single variable and a control group.

Practice

1. Use the third column from the table above to identify and correct any misconceptions in the following list of ideas.

a. The first step of the experimental method is to predict.

b. A hypothesis is similar to a guess.

c. A good experiment includes a lot of equipment.

(See the last page of the Skills Handbook for the answers to practice problems.)

How to Make Two-Column Notes

Two-column notes can be used to learn and review definitions of vocabulary terms, examples of multiple-step processes, or details of specific concepts. The two-column note strategy is simple: write the term, main idea, step-by-step process, or concept in the left-hand column, and write the definition, example, or detail on the right.

One strategy for using two-column notes is to organize main ideas and their details. You will write the main ideas from your reading in the left-hand column of your paper. You can write these ideas as questions, key words, or a combination of both. Then, write details that describe these main ideas in the right-hand column of your paper.

1 Identify the main ideas.

The main ideas for a chapter are listed in the section objectives. However, you decide which ideas to include in your notes. The example below shows some main ideas from possible objectives in a section of this book.

- Define Earth science, and compare Earth science with geology.
- List the four major fields of study that contribute to Earth science.

2 Divide a blank sheet of paper into two columns, and write the main ideas in the left-hand column.

Remind yourself that your two-column notes are precisely that—notes. Do not copy whole phrases out of the book or waste your time writing ideas in complete sentences. Summarize your ideas by using short phrases that are easy for you to understand and remember. Decide how many details you need for each main idea, and write that number in parentheses under the main idea.

Main idea	Detail notes
Earth science (two definitions)	
Goals of Earth science (one main goal)	
What is studied (two main areas)	
Related fields of study (four major fields)	

3 Write the detail notes in the right-hand column.

List as many details as you designated in the main-idea column.

Main idea	Detail notes
Earth science (two definitions)	Earth science is the study of Earth and the universe around it. Scientific methods are the organized, logical approaches to scientific research.
Goals of Earth science (one main goal)	to understand Earth and the universe around it
What is studied (two main areas)	Earth and the universe around it • the origin, history, and structure of the solid Earth and the processes that shape it • how Earth's atmosphere, oceans, and land interact
Related fields of study (four major fields)	geology • the study of the origin, history, and structure of Earth and the processes that shape it oceanography • the study of Earth's oceans, including waves, tides, ocean currents, the ocean floor, and life in the oceans meteorology • the study of Earth's atmosphere, including weather and climate astronomy • the study of the universe beyond Earth, including planets, stars, and galaxies

You can use two-column notes to study for a short quiz or for a test on the material in an entire chapter. Cover the information in the right-hand column with a sheet of paper. Recite what you know, and then uncover the notes to check your answers. Then, ask yourself what else you know about that topic. Linking ideas in this way will help you gain a more complete picture of Earth science.

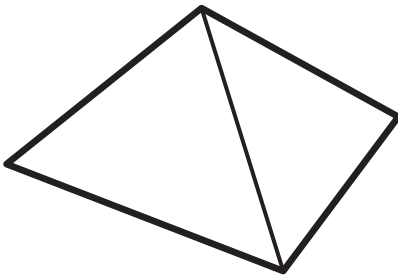
SKILLS HANDBOOK FoldNote Instructions

Have you ever tried to study for a test or quiz but didn't know where to start? Or have you read a chapter and found that you can remember only a few ideas? Well, FoldNotes are a fun and exciting way to help you learn and remember the ideas you encounter as you learn science!

FoldNotes are tools that you can use to organize concepts. One FoldNote focuses on a few main concepts. FoldNotes help you learn and remember how the concepts fit together. FoldNotes can help you see the "big picture." Below, you will find instructions for building 10 different FoldNotes.

Pyramid

1. Place a **sheet of paper** in front of you. Fold the lower left-hand corner of the paper diagonally to the opposite edge of the paper.
2. Cut off the tab of paper created by the fold (at the top).
3. Open the paper so that it is a square. Fold the lower right-hand corner of the paper diagonally to the opposite corner to form a triangle.
4. Open the paper. The creases of the two folds will have created an X.
5. Using **scissors,** cut along one of the creases. Start from any corner, and stop at the center point to create two flaps. Use **tape** or **glue** to attach one of the flaps on top of the other flap.

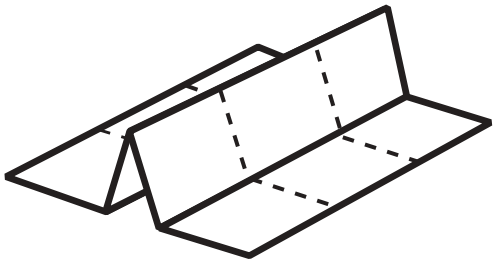


Double-Door Fold

1. Fold a **sheet of paper** in half from the top to the bottom. Then, unfold the paper.
2. Fold the top and bottom edges of the paper to the center crease.

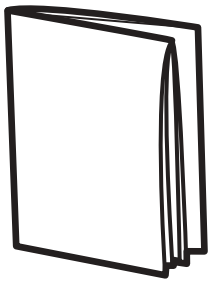
Table Fold

1. Fold a **piece of paper** in half from the top to the bottom. Then, fold the paper in half again.
2. Fold the paper in thirds from side to side.
3. Unfold the paper completely. Carefully trace the fold lines by using a pen or pencil.



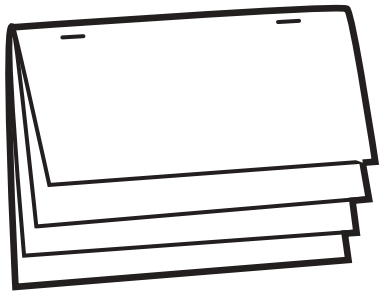
Booklet

1. Fold a **sheet of paper** in half from left to right. Then, unfold the paper.
2. Fold the sheet of paper in half again from the top to the bottom. Then, unfold the paper.
3. Refold the sheet of paper in half from left to right.
4. Fold the top and bottom edges to the center crease.
5. Completely unfold the paper.
6. Refold the paper from top to bottom.
7. Using **scissors,** cut a slit along the center crease of the sheet from the folded edge to the creases made in step 4. Do not cut the entire sheet in half.
8. Fold the sheet of paper in half from left to right. While holding the bottom and top edges of the paper, push the bottom and top edges together so that the center collapses at the center slit. Fold the four flaps to form a four-page book.



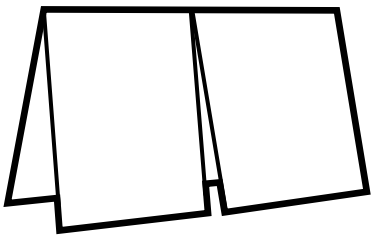
Layered Book

1. Lay **one sheet of paper** on top of **another sheet.** Slide the top sheet up so that 2 cm of the bottom sheet is showing.
2. Holding the two sheets together, fold down the top of the two sheets so that you see four 2 cm tabs along the bottom.
3. Using a **stapler,** staple the top of the FoldNote.



Two-Panel Flip Chart

1. Fold a **piece of paper** in half from the top to the bottom.
2. Fold the paper in half from side to side. Then, unfold the paper so that you can see the two sections.
3. From the top of the paper, cut along the vertical fold line to the fold in the middle of the paper. You will now have two flaps.

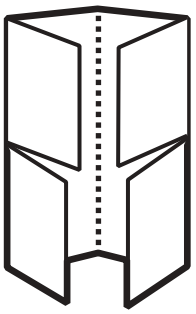


Key-Term Fold

1. Fold a **sheet of lined notebook paper** in half from left to right.
2. Using **scissors,** cut along every third line from the right edge of the paper to the center fold to make tabs.

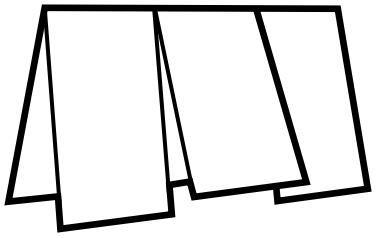
Four-Corner Fold

1. Fold a **sheet of paper** in half from left to right. Then, unfold the paper.
2. Fold each side of the paper to the crease in the center of the paper.
3. Fold the paper in half from the top to the bottom. Then, unfold the paper.
4. Using **scissors,** cut the top flap creases made in step 3 to form four flaps.



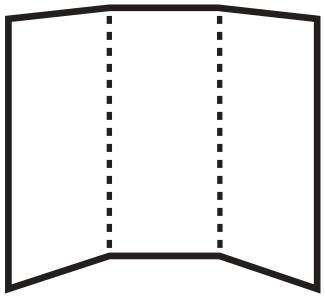
Three-Panel Flip Chart

1. Fold a **piece of paper** in half from the top to the bottom.
2. Fold the paper in thirds from side to side. Then, unfold the paper so that you can see the three sections.
3. From the top of the paper, cut along each of the vertical fold lines to the fold in the middle of the paper. You will now have three flaps.

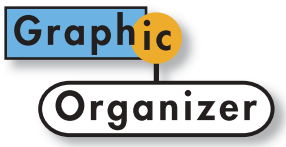


Tri-Fold

1. Fold a piece a paper in thirds from the top to the bottom.
2. Unfold the paper so that you can see the three sections. Then, turn the paper sideways so that the three sections form vertical columns.
3. Trace the fold lines by using a **pen** or **pencil.** Label the columns "Know," "Want," and "Learn."



SKILLS HANDBOOK Graphic Organizer Instructions

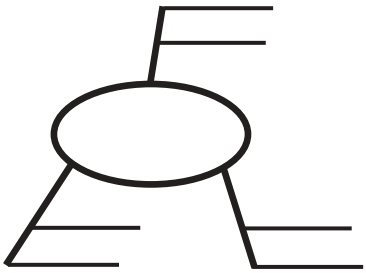


Have you ever wished that you could draw the many concepts you learn in your science class? Sometimes, being able to see how concepts are related helps you remember what you've learned. Graphic Organizers help you see the concepts! They are a way to draw or map out concepts.

You need only a piece of paper and a pencil to make a Graphic Organizer. Below, you will find instructions for six different Graphic Organizers that are designed to help you organize the concepts you'll learn in this book.

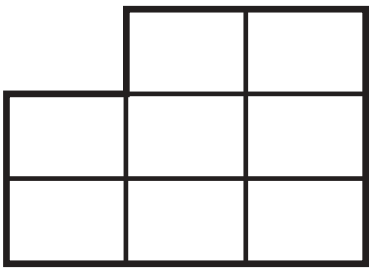
Spider Map

1. Draw a diagram like the one shown. In the circle, write the main topic.
2. From the circle, draw legs to represent different categories of the main topic. You can have as many categories as you want.
3. From the category legs, draw horizontal lines. As you read the chapter, write details about each category on the horizontal lines.

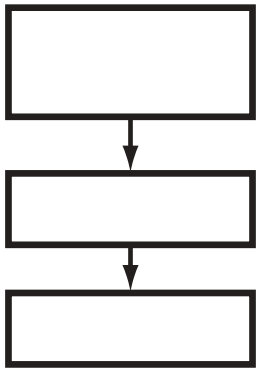


Comparison Table

1. Draw a chart like the one shown. Your chart can have as many columns and rows as you want.
2. In the top row, write the topics that you want to compare.
3. In the left column, write characteristics of the topics that you want to compare. As you read the chapter, fill in the characteristics for each topic in the appropriate boxes.

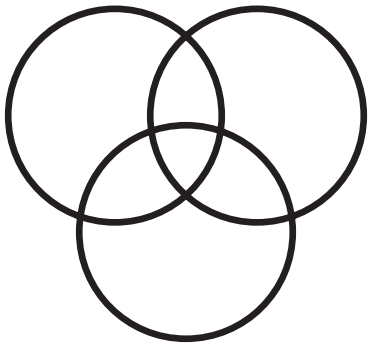


Chain-of-Events-Chart



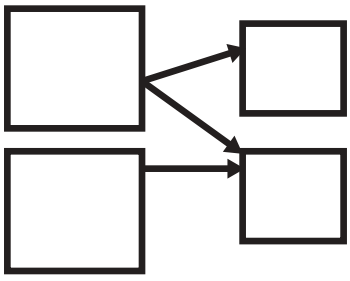
1. Draw a box. In the box, write the first step of a process or the first event of a timeline.
2. Under the box, draw another box, and use an arrow to connect the two boxes. In the second box, write the next step of the process or the next event in the timeline.
3. Continue adding boxes until the process or timeline is finished.

Venn Diagram



1. Draw a diagram like the one shown. You may have two or three circles depending on the number of topics. Make sure the circles overlap with each other.
2. In each circle, write a topic that you want to compare with a topic in another circle.
3. In the areas of the diagram where circles overlap, fill in characteristics that the topics in the overlapping circles share.
4. In the areas of the diagram where circles do not overlap, fill in characteristics that are unique to the topic of the particular circle.

Cause-and-Effect Map

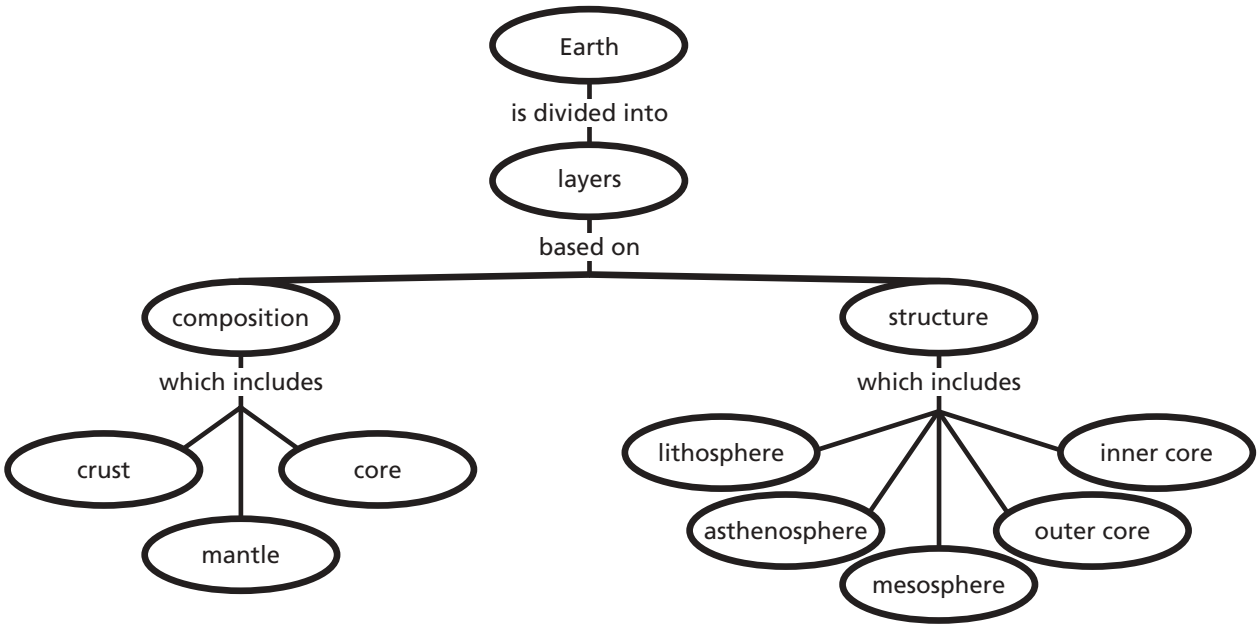


1. Draw a box, and write a cause in the box. You can have as many cause boxes as you want. The diagram shown here is one example of a cause-and-effect map.
2. Draw another box to represent an effect of the cause. You can have as many effect boxes as you want. Draw a line from each cause to the effect(s).
3. In the cause boxes, write a description, explanation, or details about the cause. In the effect boxes, explain the effects that result from the process or factor identified in the cause box.

Concept Map

A concept map is a simple drawing that shows how concepts are connected to each other. Concept maps may be a good tool for visual learners to use when studying and to use to test their understanding of information in the text. Concept maps may be based on key vocabulary terms from the text. These terms are usually nouns, which make good labels for major concepts. Linking words may be used to explain relationships. A group of connected words and lines show a proposition. A proposition is another way of stating a main idea or explaining a concept.

1. Identify main ideas from the text, and write those ideas as short phrases or single words. Concepts may be vocabulary terms, important phrases, or descriptions of processes.
2. List all of the important concepts. Select a main concept for the map, and place this concept at the top or center of a piece of paper.
3. Build the map by placing the other concepts under or around the main concept, according to their importance or their relationship to the main concept.
4. Draw lines between the concepts to show relationships between ideas. Add linking words to give meaning to the arrangement of concepts. To distinguish concepts from links, place concepts in circles, ovals, or rectangles.



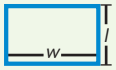
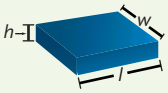
SKILLS HANDBOOK Math Skills Refresher

Geometry

A useful way to model the objects and substances studied in science is to consider them in terms of their shapes. For example, many of the properties of a wheel can be understood by pretending that the wheel is a perfect circle.

When you use shapes as models, the ability to calculate the area or volume of shapes is a useful skill. The table below provides equations for the area and volume of several geometric shapes.

Geometric Areas and Volumes

Geometric shape	Equations for shape
Rectangle 	$area = lw$
Circle	$area = \pi r^2$ $circumference = 2\pi r$
Triangle	$area = \frac{1}{2}bh$
Sphere	$surface\ area = 4\pi r^2$ $volume = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$
Cylinder	$surface\ area = 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh$ $volume = \pi r^2 h$
Rectangular box 	$surface\ area = 2(lh + lw + hw)$ $volume = lwh$

Practice

1. Calculate the area of a triangle that has a base of 900.0 m and a height of 500.0 m.
2. What is the volume of a cylinder that has a diameter of 14 cm and a height of 8 cm?
3. Calculate the surface area of a cube that has sides that are 4 cm long.

(See the last page of the Skills Handbook for the answers to practice problems.)

Exponents

An exponent is a number that is written as superscript to the right of another number. The best way to explain how an exponent works is by using an example. In the value 5^4, the 4 is the exponent of the 5. The number and its exponent means that 5 is multiplied by itself 4 times as shown below:

$$5^4 = 5 \times 5 \times 5 \times 5 = 625$$

Exponents are also referred to as *powers*. Using this terminology, the above equation could be read "five to the fourth power equals 625," or "five to the power of four equals 625." Keep in mind that any number raised to the power of 0 is equal to 1: $5^0 = 1$. Also, any number raised to the power of 1 is equal to itself: $5^1 = 5$.

A scientific calculator is very helpful for solving most problems involving exponents. Many calculators have keys for squares and square roots, but scientific calculators usually have a special caret key, ^, for entering exponents. If you type in "5^4" and then press the equals sign or Enter, the calculator will determine that $5^4 = 625$ and display the answer 625.

Exponents

	Rule	Example
Zero power	$x^0 = 1$	$7^0 = 1$
First power	$x^1 = x$	$6^1 = 6$
Multiplication	$(x^n)(x^m) = (x^{n+m})$	$(x^2)(x^4) = x^{(2+4)} = x^6$
Division	$\frac{x^n}{x^m} = x^{(n-m)}$	$\frac{x^8}{x^2} = x^{(8-2)} = x^6$
Exponents raised to a power	$(x^n)^m = x^{nm}$	$(5^2)^3 = 5^6 = 15{,}625$

Practice

1. Perform the following calculations:
   - **a.** $9^1 =$
   - **b.** $(3^3)^5 =$
   - **c.** $(14^2)(14^3) =$
   - **d.** $11^0 =$

(See the last page of the Skills Handbook for the answers to practice problems.)

Order of Operations

Use this phrase to remember the correct order for long mathematical problems: "Please Excuse My Dear Aunt Sally." Some people just remember the acronym "PEMDAS". This acronym stands for *parentheses, exponents, multiplication, division, addition,* and *subtraction*. This is the correct order in which to complete mathematical operations. These rules are summarized in the table below.

Order of Operations

1. Simplify groups inside parentheses. Start with the innermost group and work out.
2. Simplify all exponents.
3. Perform multiplication and division in order from left to right.
4. Perform addition and subtraction in order from left to right.

Look at the following example.

$$4^3 + 2 \times [8 - (3 - 1)] = ?$$

First, simplify the operations inside parentheses. Begin with the innermost parentheses:

$$(3 - 1) = 2$$
$$4^3 + 2 \times [8 - 2] = ?$$

Then, move on to the next-outer parentheses:

$$[8 - 2] = 6$$
$$4^3 + 2 \times 6 = ?$$

Now, simplify all exponents:

$$4^3 = 64$$
$$64 + 2 \times 6 = ?$$

Next, perform the remaining multiplication:

$$2 \times 6 = 12$$
$$64 + 12 = ?$$

Finally, perform the addition:

$$64 + 12 = 76$$

Practice

1. $2^3 \div 2 + 4 \times (9 - 2^2) =$
2. $\dfrac{2 \times (6-3) + 8}{4 \times 2 - 6} =$

(See the last page of the Skills Handbook for the answers to practice problems.)

Algebraic Rearrangements

Algebraic equations contain *constants* and *variables*. Constants are simply numbers, such as 2, 5, and 7. Variables are represented by letters such as x, y, z, a, b, and c. Variables are unspecified quantities and are also called the *unknowns*. Often, you will need to determine the value of a variable in an equation that contains algebraic expressions.

An algebraic expression contains one or more of the four basic mathematical operations: addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. Constants, variables, or terms made up of both constants and variables can be involved in the basic operations.

The key to finding the value of a variable in an algebraic equation is that the total quantity on one side of the equals sign is equal to the quantity on the other side. If you perform the same operation on either side of the equation, the results will still be equal. To determine the value of a variable in an algebraic expression, you try to reduce the equation into a simple value that tells you exactly what x (or some other variable) equals.

Look at the simple problem below:

$$8x = 32$$

If you wish to solve for x, you can multiply or divide each side of the equation by the same factor. You can perform any operation on one side of an equation as long as you do the same thing to the other side of the equation. In this example, if you divide both sides of the equation by 8, you have the following:

$$\frac{8x}{8} = \frac{32}{8}$$

The two 8s on the left side of the equation cancel each other out, and the fraction $\frac{32}{8}$ can be reduced to give the whole number *4*. Therefore, $x = 4$.

Next, consider the following equation:

$$2x + 4 = 16$$

If you divide each side by 2, you are left with $x + 2$ on the left and 8 on the right:

$$x + 2 = 8$$

Now, you can subtract 2 from each side of the equation to find that $x = 6$. In all cases, the operation that is performed on the left side of the equals sign must also be performed on the right side.

Practice

1. Rearrange each of the following equations to give the value of the variable indicated with a letter.

a. $8x - 32 = 128$

b. $6 - 5(4a + 3) = 26$

c. $-3(y - 2) + 4 = 29$

d. $-2(3m + 5) = 14$

e. $\left[8\frac{(8+2z)}{32}\right] + 2 = 5$

f. $\frac{(6b + 3)}{3} - 9 = 2$

(See the last page of the Skills Handbook for the answers to practice problems.)

Scientific Notation

Many quantities that scientists deal with are very large or very small values. For example, light travels at about 300,000,000 m/s, and an electron has a mass of about 0.000 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 0009 g. Obviously, it is difficult to read, write, and keep track of numbers such as these. We avoid this problem by using a method that deals with powers of the number 10.

Study the positive powers of 10 shown in the following table. You should be able to check these numbers by using what you know about exponents. The number of zeros in the equivalent number corresponds to the exponent of the 10, or the power to which the 10 is raised. The equivalent of 10^4 is 10,000, so the number has four zeros.

But how can we use the powers of 10 to simplify large numbers such as the speed of light? The speed of light is equal to $3 \times$ 100,000,000 m/s. The factor of 10 in this number has 8 zeros, so the number can be rewritten as 10^8. So, 300,000,000 can be expressed as 3×10^8.

Powers of 10

Power of 10	Decimal equivalent
10^4	10,000
10^3	1,000
10^2	100
10^1	10
10^0	1
10^{-1}	0.1
10^{-2}	0.01
10^{-3}	0.001

Negative exponents can be used to simplify numbers that are less than 1. Study the negative powers of 10 in the table above. In these cases, the exponent of 10 equals the number of decimal places you must move the decimal point to the right so that there is one digit just to the left of the decimal point. In the case of the mass of an electron, the decimal point has to be moved 28 decimal places to the right for the numeral 9 to be just to the left of the decimal point. The mass of the electron, about 0.000 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 0009 g, can be rewritten as about 9×10^{-28} g.

Scientific notation is a way to express numbers as a power of 10 multiplied by another number that has only one digit to the left of the decimal point. For example, 5,943,000,000 is written as 5.943×10^9 when expressed in scientific notation. The number 0.000 0832 is written as 8.32×10^{-5} when expressed in scientific notation.

Practice

1. Rewrite the following values using scientific notation.

a. 12,300,000 m/s

b. 0.000 000 000 0045 kg

c. 0.000 0653 m

d. 55,432,000,000,000 s

e. 273.15 K

f. 0.000 627 14 kg

(See the last page of the Skills Handbook for the answers to practice problems.)

Significant Digits

The following list can be used to review how to determine the number of *significant digits* (also called *significant figures*) in a given value or measurement. Significant digits are shown in red below.

Rules for Significant Digits:

1. All nonzero digits are significant. For example, 1,246 has four significant digits.
2. Any zeros between significant digits are also significant. For example, 1,206 has four significant digits.
3. Zeros at the end of a number but to the left of a decimal are significant if they have been measured or are the first estimated digit; otherwise, they are not significant. In this book, they will be treated as not significant. For example, 1,000 may contain from one to four significant digits, but in this book it will be assumed to have one significant digit.
4. If a value has no significant digits to the left of a decimal point, any zeros to the right of the decimal point and also to the left of a significant digit are not significant. For example, 0.0012 has only two significant digits.
5. If a value ends with zeros to the right of a decimal point, those zeros are significant. For example, 0.1200 has four significant digits.

After you have reviewed the rules, use the following table to check your understanding of the rules. Cover up the second column of the table, and try to determine how many significant digits each number in the first column has. If you get confused, refer to the rule given.

Significant Digits

Measurement	Number of significant digits	Rule
12,345	5	1
2,400 cm	2	3
305 kg	3	2
235.0 cm	4	1 and 5
234.005 K	6	2
12.340	5	5
0.001	1	4
0.002 450	4	4 and 5

Rounding and Significant Digits

When performing mathematical operations with measurements, you must remember to keep track of significant digits. If you are adding or subtracting two measurements, your answer can have only as many decimal positions as the value that has the fewest number of decimal places. When you multiply or divide measurements, your answer can have only as many significant digits as the value that has the fewest number of significant digits.

Practice

1. Determine the number of significant digits in each of the following measurements:
   - **a.** 65.04 mL
   - **b.** 564.00 m
   - **c.** 0.007 504 kg
   - **d.** 1,210 K
2. Perform each of the following calculations, and report your answer with the correct number of significant digits and units:
   - **a.** 0.004 dm + 0.12508 dm =
   - **b.** 340 m ÷ 0.1257 s =
   - **c.** 40.1 m × 0.2453 m =
   - **d.** 1.03 g − 0.0456 g =

   (See the last page of the Skills Handbook for the answers to practice problems.)

SKILLS HANDBOOK Graphing Skills Refresher

Line Graphs

In laboratory experiments, you will usually control one variable and see how it affects another variable. Line graphs can show these relationships clearly. For example, you might perform an experiment in which you measure the volume of a gas at different temperatures to determine how volume is related to temperature. In this experiment, you are controlling the temperature intervals at which the gas's volume is measured. Therefore, temperature is the independent variable. The volume of the gas is the dependent variable. The table below gives some sample data for an experiment that measures the volume of gas.

The independent variable is plotted on the *x*-axis. This axis is labeled "Temperature (K)" and has a range from 0 to 400 K. Be sure to properly label each axis, including the units.

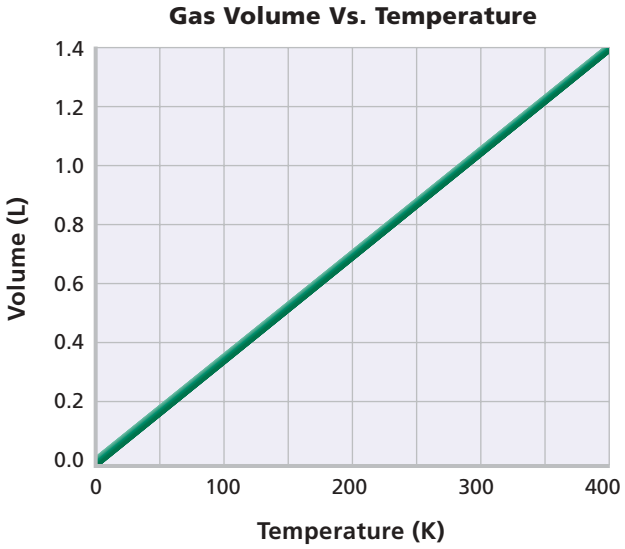
The dependent variable is plotted on the *y*-axis. This axis is labeled "Volume (L)" and has a range of 0.0 to 1.4 L.

Experimental Data for Gas Volume Versus Temperature

Temperature (K)	Gas volume (L)
0	0.0
100	0.35
200	0.70
300	1.05
400	1.4

Think of your graph as a grid that has lines running horizontally from the *y*-axis and vertically from the *x*-axis. To plot a point, find the *x* value on the *x*-axis. For the example above, plot each value for time on the *x*-axis. Follow the vertical line from the *x*-axis until it intersects the horizontal line from the *y*-axis at the corresponding *y* value. For the example, each temperature value has a corresponding volume value. Place your point at the intersection of these two lines.

The line graph below shows how the data in the table may be graphed.



Bar Graphs

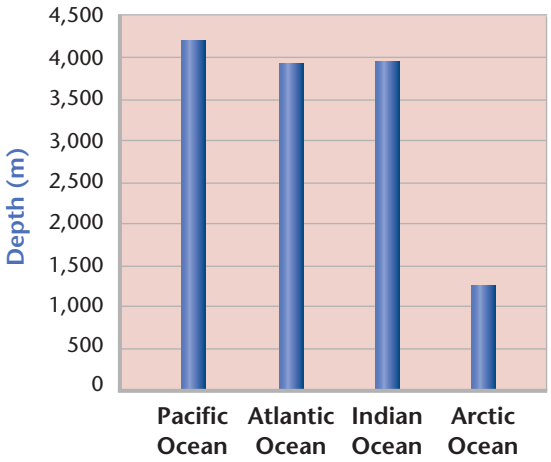
Bar graphs are useful for comparing data values. If you wanted to compare the area or depth of the major oceans, you might use a bar graph. The table below gives the data for each of these quantities.

Depth of the Major Oceans

Ocean	Depth (m)
Pacific Ocean	4,028
Atlantic Ocean	3,926
Indian Ocean	3,963
Arctic Ocean	1,205

To create a bar graph from the data in the table, begin on the *x*-axis by labeling four bar positions with the names of the four oceans. Label the *y*-axis "Depth (m)." Be sure the range on your *y*-axis includes 1,205 m and 4,028 m. Then, draw the bars to represent the area of each ocean.

Make sure the bar height on the *y*-axis matches each ocean's area value, as shown in the bar graph below.



Pie Graphs

Pie graphs can help you visualize how many parts make up a whole. Frequently, pie graphs are made from percentage data. For example, you could create a pie graph that shows the percentage of different materials that make up the waste generated in cities of the United States. Study the example data in the table below.

United States Municipal Solid Waste

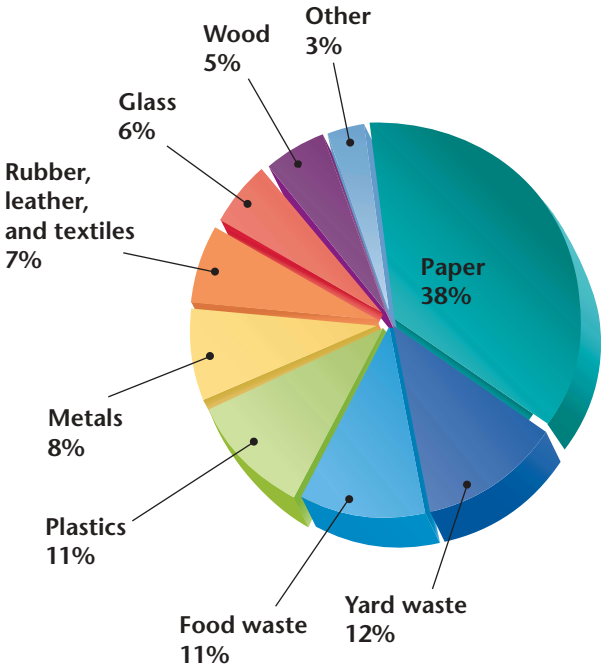
Material	Percentage of total waste
Paper	38%
Yard waste	12%
Food waste	11%
Plastics	11%
Metals	8%
Rubber, leather, and textiles	7%
Glass	6%
Wood	5%
Other	3%

To create a pie graph from the data in the table, begin by drawing a circle to represent the whole, or total. Because all circles are 360°, 1% of a circle is equal to 3.6°. From this point, the pie graph can be constructed in two ways.

First, a protractor can be used to measure the number of degrees that are represented by a percentage of the circle. For example, if paper represents 38% of the municipal solid waste in the United States, that percentage would be equal to 38 × 3.6°, or 138.6°.

Second, the circle can be divided into 100 equal sections of 3.6° each. Then, you can shade in 38 consecutive sections and label that area "Paper." Continue to shade sections with other colors until the entire pie graph has been filled in and until each type of waste has a corresponding area in the circle, as shown in the pie graph below.

United States Municipal Solid Waste (Percentage by Weight)



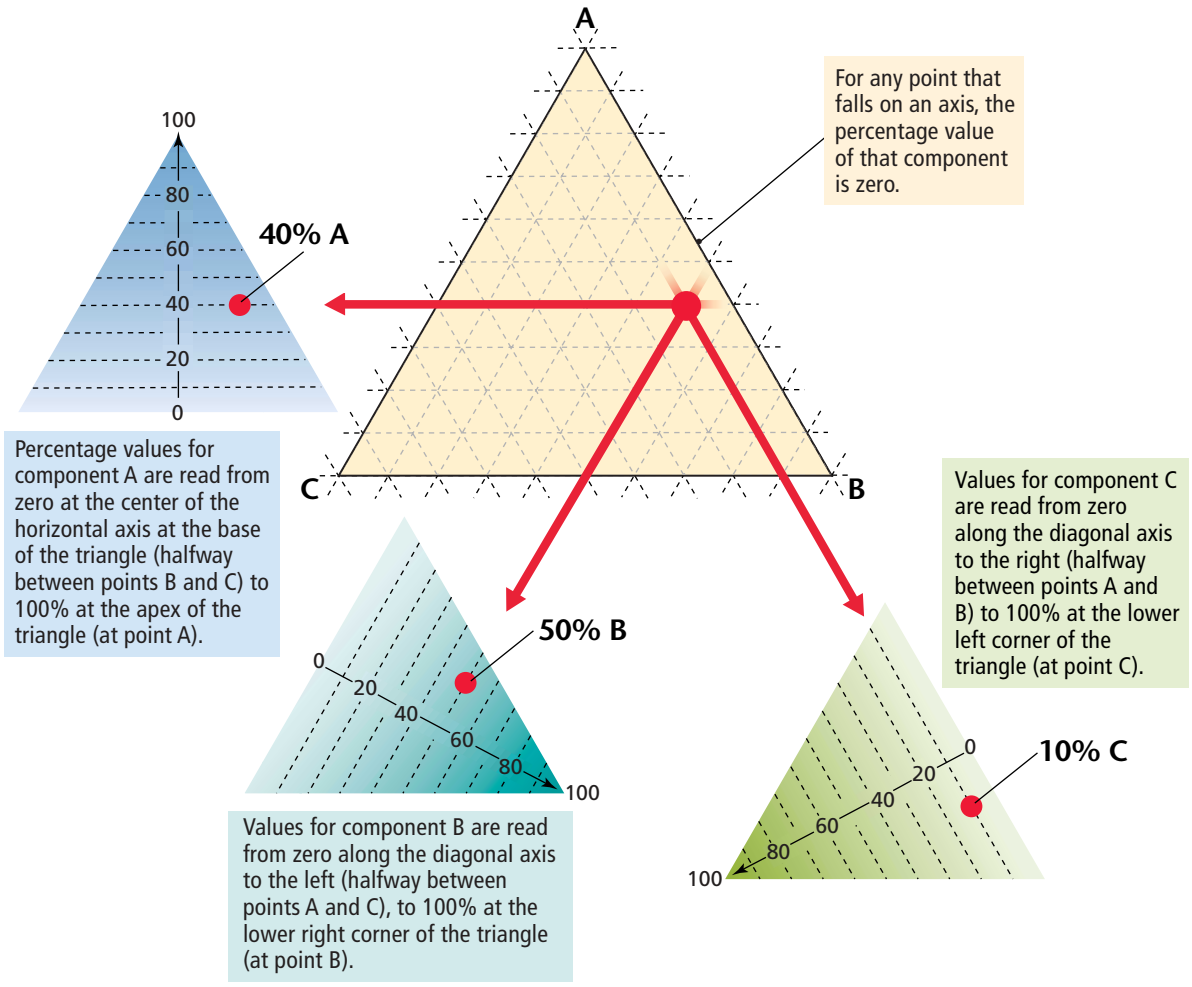
Ternary Diagrams

Ternary graphs, or ternary diagrams, show three variables on the same plot. Earth scientists use ternary diagrams to show composition of rocks and minerals and the physical states of rock material. The most common use of ternary diagrams is to represent the relative percentage of three components, such as three minerals or three elements.

The composition of any point on a ternary diagram can be described by first determining the percentage of each of the three components, as shown in the diagram below. In a ternary diagram, any point represents the relative percentage of three components: A, B, and C. The three components must always add up to 100%. In other words, the total composition of the mineral or rock represented by a given point on a ternary diagram is a combination of A, B, and C, so that x% A + y% B + z% C = 100%.

Readings of composition are stated as % A, % B, and % C. For example, the point in the diagram below has a composition of 40% A, 50% B, and 10% C. In most ternary diagrams, areas of the triangle are given names so that scientists can identify a rock or mineral by its name, rather than by its composition.

How to Read a Ternary Diagram



SKILLS HANDBOOK Chemistry Skills Refresher

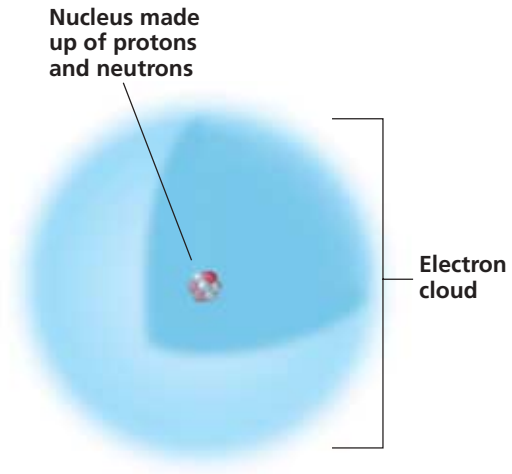
Atoms and Elements

Every object in the universe is made up of particles of matter. Matter is anything that has mass and takes up space. An element is a substance that cannot be separated into simpler substances by chemical means. Elements cannot be separated in this way because each element consists of only one kind of atom. An atom is the smallest unit of an element that maintains the properties of that element.

Atomic Structure Atoms are made up of small particles called *subatomic particles*. The three major types of subatomic particles are **electrons, protons,** and **neutrons.** Electrons have a negative electrical charge, protons have a positive charge, and neutrons have no electrical charge. The protons and neutrons are packed close to one another and form the **nucleus.** The protons give the nucleus a positive charge. The electrons of an atom are located in a region around the nucleus known as an **electron cloud.** The negatively charged electrons are attracted to the positively charged nucleus.

Atomic Number To help in the identification of elements, scientists have assigned an **atomic number** to each kind of atom. The atomic number is equal to the number of protons in the atom. Atoms that have the same number of protons are all of the same element. An uncharged, or electrically neutral, atom has an equal number of protons and electrons. Therefore, the atomic number is also equal to the number of electrons in an uncharged atom. The number of neutrons, however, can vary for a given element. Atoms that have different numbers of neutrons but are of the same element are called **isotopes.**

Periodic Table of the Elements In a periodic table, the elements are arranged in order of increasing atomic number. Each element in the table is found in a separate box. In each horizontal row of the table, each element has one more electron and one more proton than the element to its left. Each row of the table is called a **period.** Changes in chemical properties across a period correspond to changes in the elements' electron arrangements. Each vertical column of the table, known as a **group,** contains elements that have similar properties. The elements in a group have similar chemical properties because they have the same number of electrons in their outer energy level. For example, the elements helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon, and radon all have similar properties and are known as the *noble gases*.



▶ The nucleus of the atom contains the protons and neutrons. The protons give the nucleus a positive charge. The negatively charged electrons are in the electron cloud surrounding the nucleus.

Molecules and Compounds

When the atoms of two or more elements are joined chemically, the resulting substance is called a **compound.** A compound is a new substance that has properties different from those of the elements that compose it. For example, water, H_2O, is a compound formed when atoms of hydrogen, H, and oxygen, O, combine. The smallest complete unit of a compound that has all of the properties of that compound is called a **molecule.**

Chemical Formulas

A chemical formula indicates the elements that make up a compound. The chemical formula also indicates the relative number of atoms of each element present. For example, the chemical formula for water is H_2O, which indicates that each water molecule consists of two atoms of hydrogen and one atom of oxygen.

Chemical Equations

A chemical reaction occurs when a chemical change takes place. (During a chemical change, new substances that have new properties form.) A chemical equation is a useful way of describing a chemical reaction by means of chemical formulas. The equation indicates the substances that react and the products. For example, when carbon and oxygen combine, they can form carbon dioxide. The equation for this reaction is as follows:

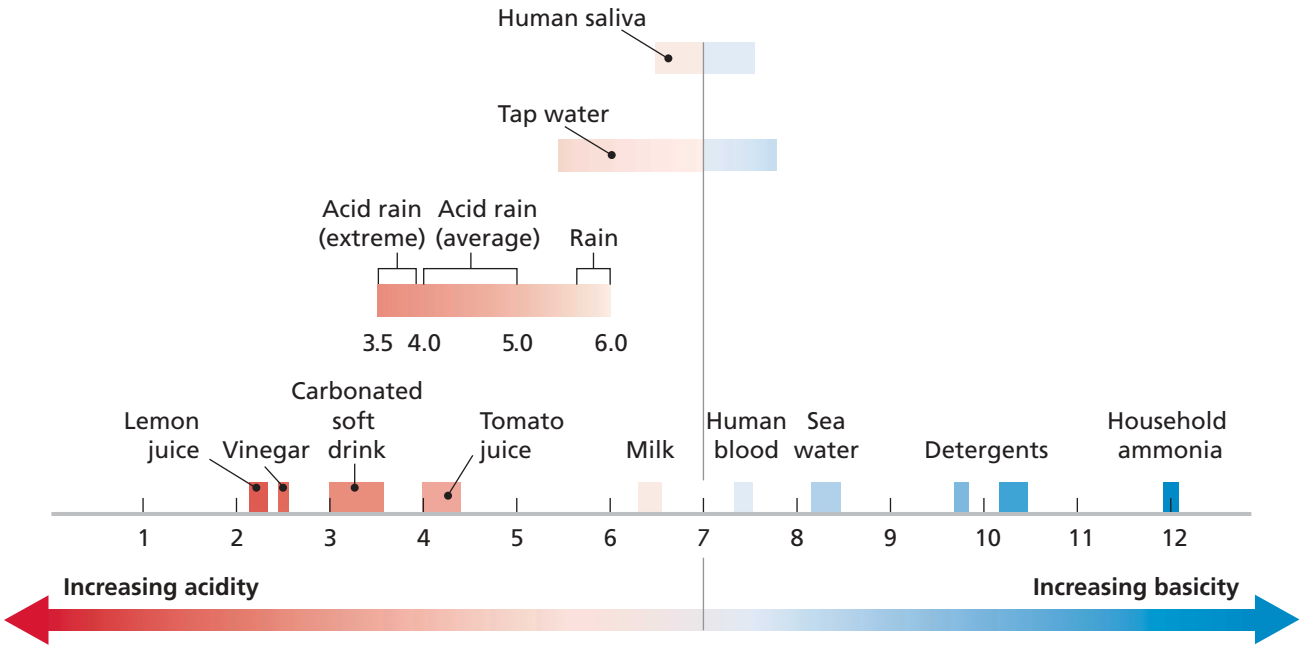
$$C + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2$$

Acids, Bases, and pH

An ion is an atom or group of atoms that has an electrical charge because it has lost or gained one or more electrons. When an acid, such as hydrochloric acid, HCl, is mixed with water, the acid separates into ions. An acid is a compound that produces hydrogen ions, H^+, in water. The hydrogen ions then combine with a water molecule to form a hydronium ion, H_3O^+. A solution that contains hydronium ions is an acidic solution. A base, on the other hand, is a substance that produces hydroxide ions, OH^-, in water.

To determine whether a solution is acidic or basic, scientists measure pH. **pH** is a measure of how many hydronium ions are in solution. The pH scale ranges from 0 to 14. The middle point, pH = 7, is neutral, neither acidic nor basic. Acids have a pH of less than 7; bases have a pH of more than 7. The lower the number is, the stronger the acid is. The higher the number is, the stronger the base is. A pH scale is shown below.

pH Measurements of Some Common Substances



SKILLS HANDBOOK Physics Skills Refresher

Mass

All matter has mass. Mass is the amount of matter that makes up an object. For example, Earth is made of a very large amount of matter and therefore has a large mass. An object's mass can be changed only by changing the amount of matter in the object.

Weight

Weight is different from mass. Weight is a measure of the gravitational force that is exerted on an object. Objects that have large mass are heavier than objects that have a small mass, even if the objects are the same size.

Density

The mass per unit of volume of a substance is density. Thus, a material's density is the amount of matter it has in a given space. To find density, both mass and volume must be measured. Density is calculated by using the following equation:

$$density = \frac{mass}{volume}$$

Density is expressed in units of mass over units of volume. Most commonly, density is expressed as grams per cubic centimeter (g/cm^3) or as kilograms per cubic meter (kg/m^3).

The density of a particular substance is always the same at a given temperature and pressure. The density of one substance is usually different from the density of other substances. Therefore, density is a useful property for identifying substances.

Concentration

A measure of the amount of one substance that is dissolved in another substance is concentration. The substance that is dissolved is the solute. The substance that dissolves another substance is the solvent. Concentration is calculated by using the following equation:

$$concentration = \frac{mass\ of\ solute}{volume\ of\ solvent}$$

Concentration is expressed as mass of solute divided by volume of solvent. Most commonly, concentration is expressed as grams per milliliter (g/mL) or as kilograms per liter (kg/L).

Forces

In science, a force is simply a push or a pull. All forces have both magnitude and direction. Force is expressed using a unit called a newton (N). All forces are exerted by one object on another object.

More than one force can be exerted on an object at the same time. The net force is the force that results from combining all the forces exerted on an object. When forces are in the same direction, net force is calculated by using the following equation:

$$net\ force = force\ A + force\ B$$

When forces are in the opposite direction, net force is calculated by using the following equation:

$$net\ force = force\ A - force\ B$$

Pressure

The force exerted over a given area is pressure. Pressure can be calculated by using the following equation:

$$pressure = \frac{force}{area}$$

The SI unit for pressure is the pascal (Pa). Other common units of pressure include bars and atmospheres.

Speed

The rate at which an object moves is its speed. Speed depends on the distance traveled and the time taken to travel that distance. Speed is calculated by using the following equation:

$$speed = \frac{distance}{time}$$

The SI unit for speed is meters per second (m/s). Other units commonly used to express speed are kilometers per hour, feet per second, and miles per hour.

Velocity

The speed of an object in a particular direction is velocity. Speed and velocity are not the same, even though they are calculated using the same equation. Velocity must include a direction, so velocity is described as speed in a certain direction. For example, the speed of a plane that is traveling south at 600 km/h is 600 km/h. The velocity of a plane that is traveling south at 600 km/h is 600 km/h south.

Velocity can also be thought of as the rate of change of an object's position. An object's velocity remains constant only if its speed and direction don't change. Therefore, constant velocity occurs only along a straight line.

Acceleration

The rate at which velocity changes is called *acceleration*. Acceleration can be calculated by using the following equation:

$$acceleration = \frac{final\ velocity - starting\ velocity}{time\ it\ takes\ to\ change\ velocity}$$

Velocity is expressed in meters per second (m/s), and time is expressed in seconds (s). Therefore, acceleration is expressed in meters per second per second (m/s/s), or meters per second squared (m/s^2).

Inertia

The tendency of an object to resist any change in motion is called *inertia*. Because of inertia, an object at rest will remain at rest until something causes it to move. A moving object continues to move at the same speed and in the same direction unless something acts on it to change its speed or direction.

Momentum

The property of a moving object that is equal to the product of the object's mass and velocity is momentum. Momentum is calculated by using the following equation:

$$momentum = mass \times velocity, \text{ or } p = mv$$

The SI unit for momentum is kilograms multiplied by meters per second (kg•m/s)

When a moving object hits another object, some or all of the momentum of the first object is transferred to the other object. If only some of the momentum is transferred, the rest of the momentum stays with the first object.

Thermodynamics

The study of the behavior of the flow of energy in natural systems is thermodynamics. The laws of thermodynamics describe some of the basic truths of how energy behaves in the universe. Many Earth processes involve the flow of energy through the Earth system.

The First Law of Thermodynamics This law is often called the Law of Conservation of Energy. Simply stated, this law states that energy can be changed from one form to another but that it cannot be created or destroyed. Energy constantly changes from one form to another, but the total amount of energy available in the universe is constant.

The Second Law of Thermodynamics This law states that in all energy exchanges, if no energy enters or leaves the system, the potential energy of the new state will always be less than that of the initial state. In other words, no form of energy converts entirely to another form of energy without losing some energy as heat. So, the entropy of an isolated system always increases as time increases. Entropy is a measure of disorder, or randomness, of energy and matter.

The Third Law of Thermodynamics This law states that if all of the thermal motion of molecules, or kinetic energy, were removed from a system, a temperature called *absolute zero* would be reached. Absolute zero is in a temperature of 0 Kelvin or –273.15 degrees Celsius.

absolute zero = 0K = –273.15°C

ANSWERS Answers to Practice Problems

Reading and Study Skills

How to Make Power Notes

1. Sample answer:

The Experimental Method

Power 1: observing
- Power 2: observation

Power 1: hypothesizing and predicting
- Power 2: hypothesis
- Power 2: prediction

Power 1: experimenting
- Power 2: experiment
  - Power 3: variable
  - Power 3: experimental group
  - Power 3: control group

Power 1: organizing and analyzing data
- Power 2: data

Power 1: drawing conclusions

Power 1: repeating experiments

Power 1: communicating results

How to Make KWL Notes

1. a. The first step is observing.

b. A hypothesis is more than a guess. It must be based on observations and be testable by experiment.

c. A good experiment has a single variable and a control group.

Math Skills Refresher

Geometry

1. 225,000 m^2

2. 1,230 cm^3 (rounded to three significant figures)

3. 96 cm^2

Exponents

1. a. 9

b. 14,348,907

c. 537,824

d. 1

Order of Operations

1. 24

2. 7

Algebraic Rearrangements

1. a. $x = 20$

b. $a = -1.75$

c. $y = -6.3$

d. $m = -4$

e. $z = 2$

f. $b = 5$

Scientific Notation

1. a. 1.23×10^{7} m/s

b. 4.5×10^{-12} kg

c. 6.53×10^{-5} m

d. 5.5432×10^{13} s

e. 2.7315×10^{2} K

f. 6.2714×10^{-4} kg

Significant Digits

1. a. 4

b. 5

c. 4

d. 3

2. a. 0.129 dm

b. 2700 m/s

c. 9.84 m^2

d. 0.98 g

MAPPING EXPEDITIONS

Journey to Red River

Materials

- compass, magnetic, with degree markings (optional)
- ruler, metric

How do you get from one place to another when you don't know the route? Whether you are planning a trip on foot or by car or boat, a map can be very handy. The ability to read a map can help you reach your destination quickly and safely and can help you avoid becoming disoriented and lost.

The topographic map on the facing page shows the area around Red River, New Mexico. Imagine that you are traveling to Red River to do some camping, hiking, and sightseeing. Study the map for a few moments, and note the locations of roads, creeks, hills, and other features. Then, answer the questions below.

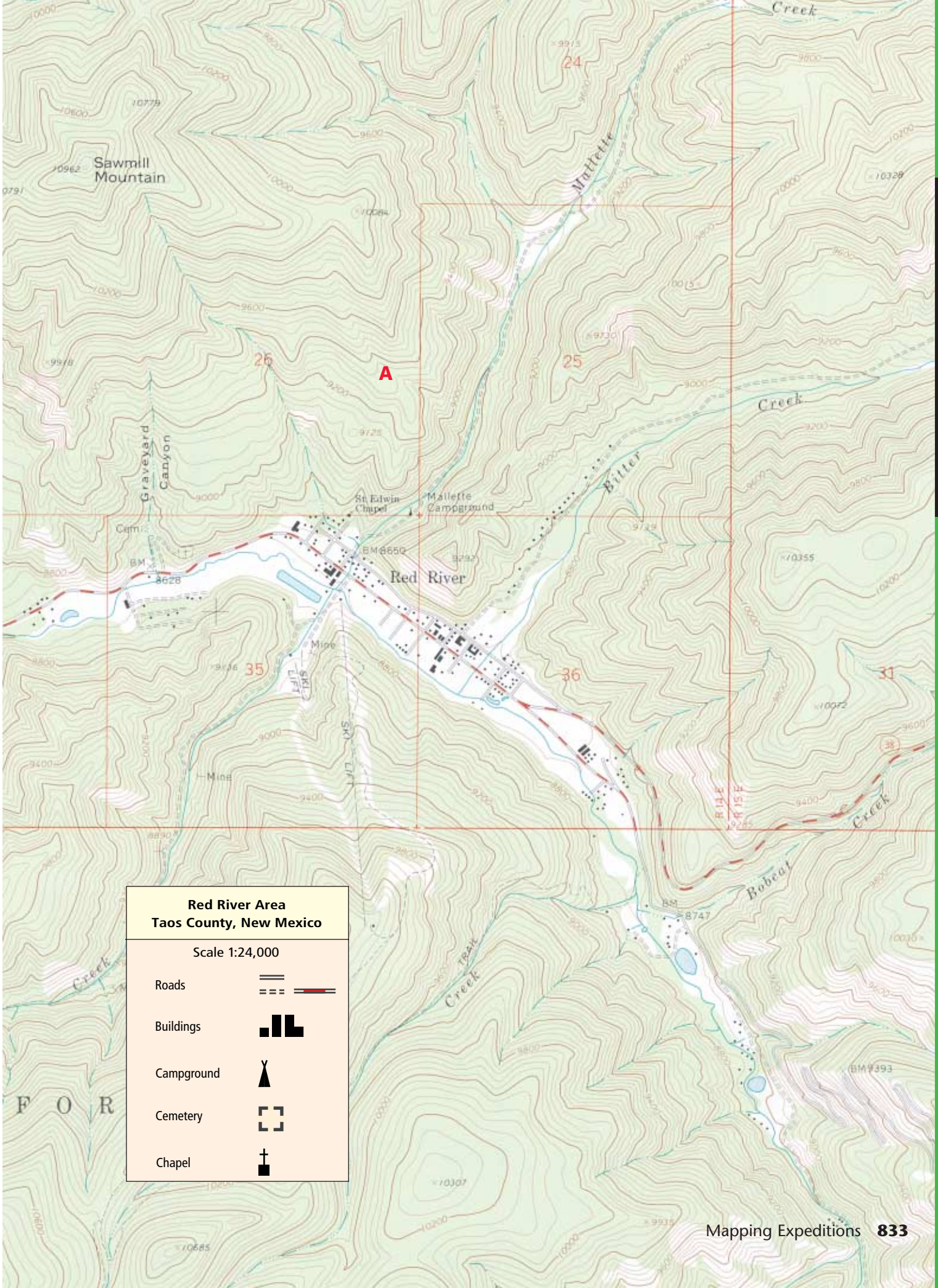
1. Red River lies in northeastern New Mexico near the Colorado border. The magnetic declination in Red River is about 13°E. Draw a diagram that shows how you would adjust a magnetic compass to determine true north in Red River. Why is distinguishing true north from geomagnetic north important?

2. You set up a tent at Mallette Campground. If you walk in a straight line from your campsite to the cemetery at the base of Graveyard Canyon, how far will you walk? Show your work.

3. You decide to hike from St. Edwin Chapel to location A. What is your elevation at location A? How much higher than your starting point is your destination? (Elevations on the map are given in feet.)

4. Notice that the road in the lower-right corner of the map winds back and forth to make a series of hairpin turns. Why did the road designers build the road this way?

5. Most United States Geological Survey maps, including this one, were created in the early 1960s. Like most towns, Red River has changed in the last few decades. Which features of the map might not reflect how Red River looks today? Which features are probably still accurate?


Sawmill Mountain
Mallette Creek
Graveyard Canyon
St Edwin Chapel
Mallette Campground
Bitter Creek
Red River
Mine
Ski Lift
Bobcat Creek
Trail Creek
A
24
25
26
35
36
31
38
R14E
T31N
BM 8659
BM 8628
BM 8747
BM 9393
Red River Area
Taos County, New Mexico
Scale 1:24,000
Roads
Buildings
Campground
Cemetery
Chapel

MAPPING EXPEDITIONS

A Case of the Tennessee Shakes

Materials

- road map of Tennessee

Did you know that almost 10,000 earthquakes occur every day? In fact, an earthquake likely is occurring right now somewhere in the world. Fortunately, less than 2% of the earthquakes that seismographs record are strong enough to do serious damage.

You might think that scientists are most interested in strong earthquakes. But weak earthquakes can tell a seismologist (a scientist who studies earthquakes) as much as strong ones can.

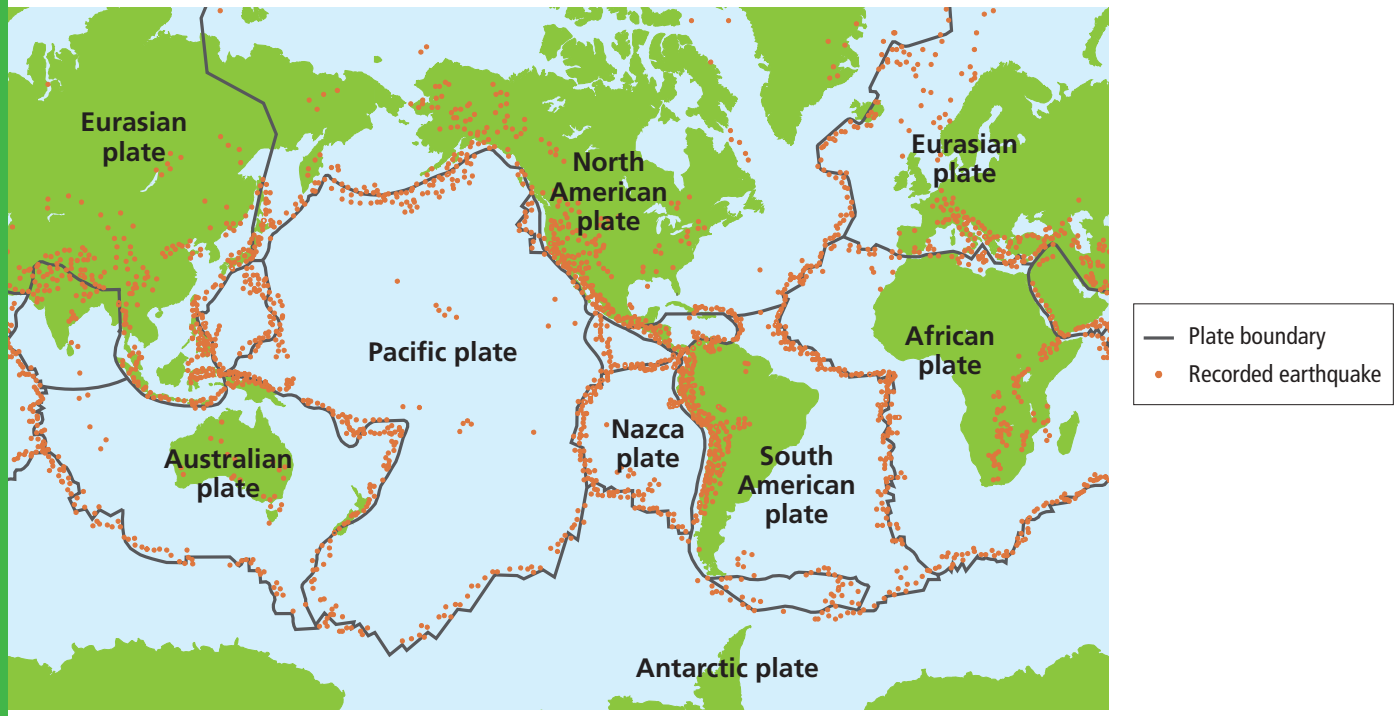
Earthquake Frequency (based on observations since 1900)

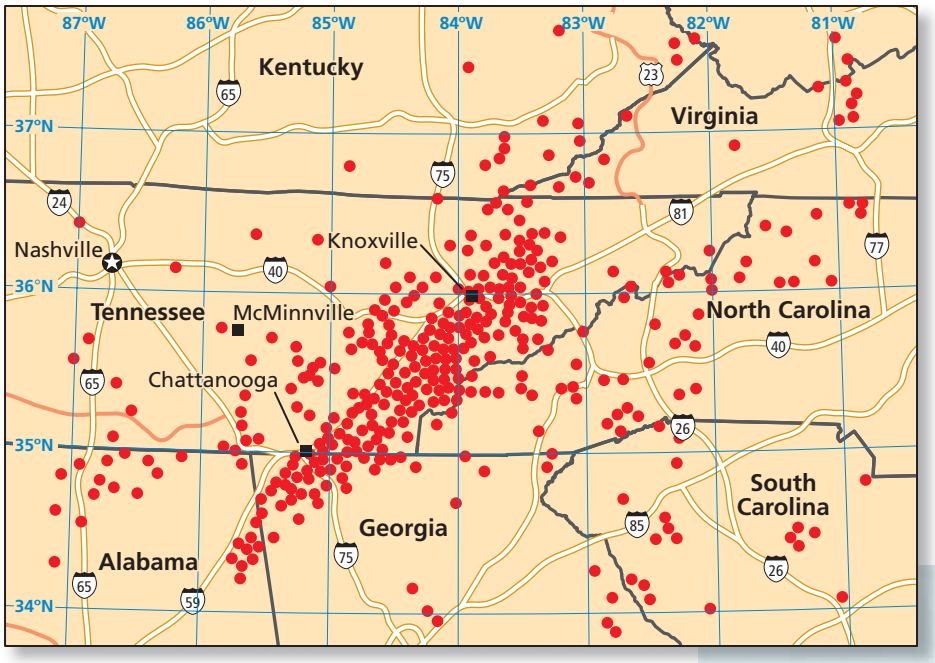
Descriptor	Magnitude	Average occurring annually
Great	8.0 and higher	1
Major	7.0 to 7.9	18
Strong	6.0 to 6.9	120
Moderate	5.0 to 5.9	800
Light	4.0 to 4.9	about 6,200
Minor	3.0 to 3.9	about 49,000
Very minor	2.0 to 2.9 1.0 to 1.9	about 365,000 about 29,200,000

Part 1

1. Examine the map below. Which tectonic plates are involved in most earthquakes that occur in North America?

2. At tectonic plate boundaries, most earthquake epicenters are densely distributed, or closely packed. Why do most earthquakes occur along tectonic plate boundaries?





▶ Each dot on this map represents the epicenter of an earthquake. Most of these earthquakes, which occurred over a 20-year period, were too weak to be felt by people.

3 Some earthquakes, however, occur in the interior of the United States, which is far from any plate boundary. Propose a hypothesis that explains these earthquakes.

Part 2

The map above shows the epicenters of earthquakes in eastern Tennessee. However, Tennessee is far from any plate boundary. Some scientists think that the earthquakes in this region are the result of an ancient fault that has been reactivated. Other scientists think that a new fault zone is forming in eastern Tennessee. If they are correct, eastern Tennessee may experience a major earthquake in this zone.

1 Use the map to describe the location of the eastern Tennessee seismic zone (ETSZ) in terms of longitude and latitude.

2 Name at least two major cities that are located in the ETSZ. How could a major earthquake affect these cities?

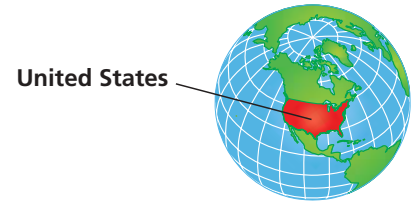
3 Two nuclear power plants are located in the ETSZ. Imagine that a company has plans to build a plant near McMinnville, Tennessee. The United States Geological Survey has hired you to advise this company about the risk of a major earthquake. Briefly describe what you would say in a letter to the company. Explain your reasoning as clearly as possible.

▶ By using trench excavations, seismologist Karl Mueller can study sediments across the New Madrid fault in Tennessee to estimate the dates and magnitudes of past earthquakes.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

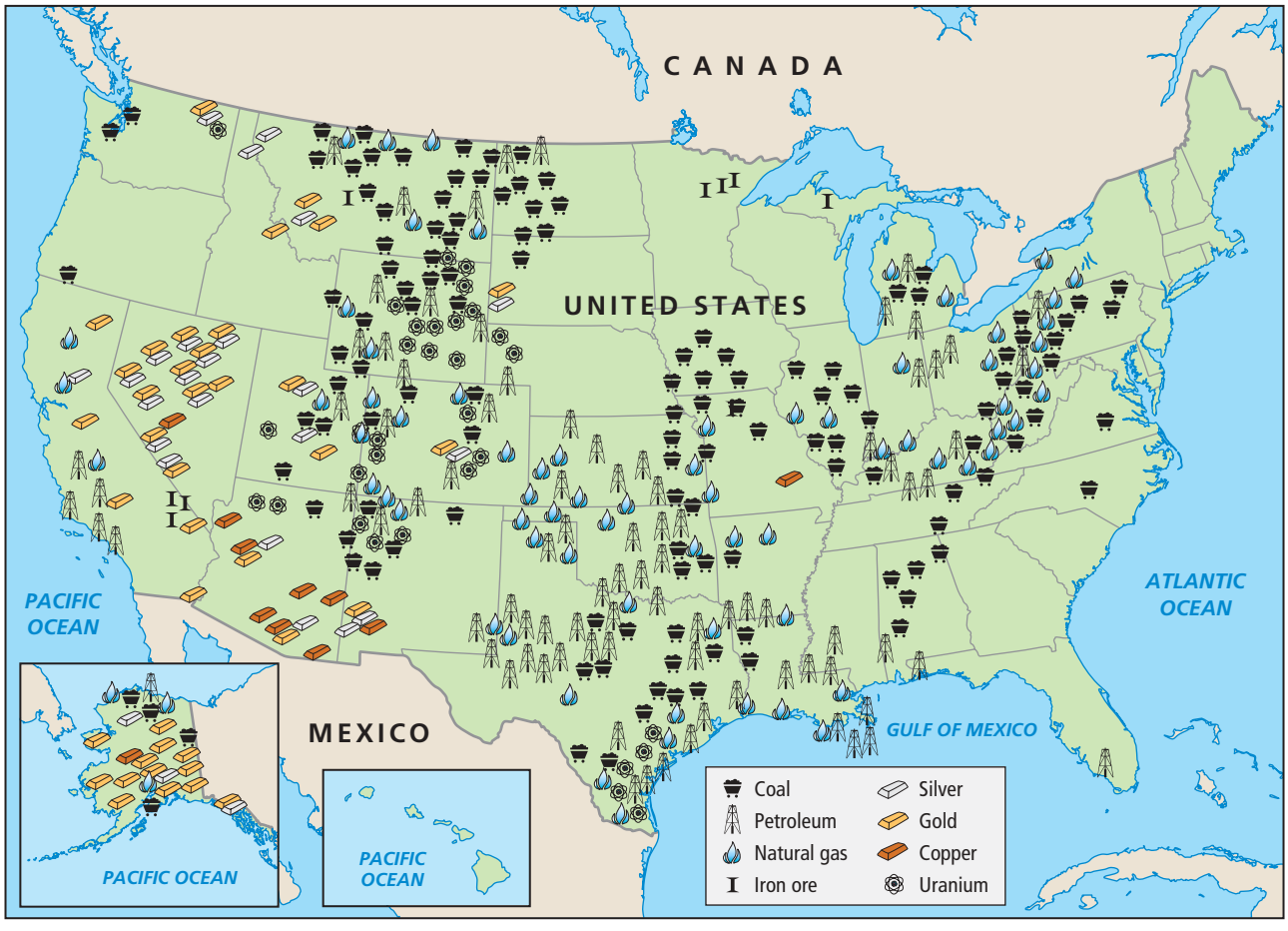
MAPPING EXPEDITIONS

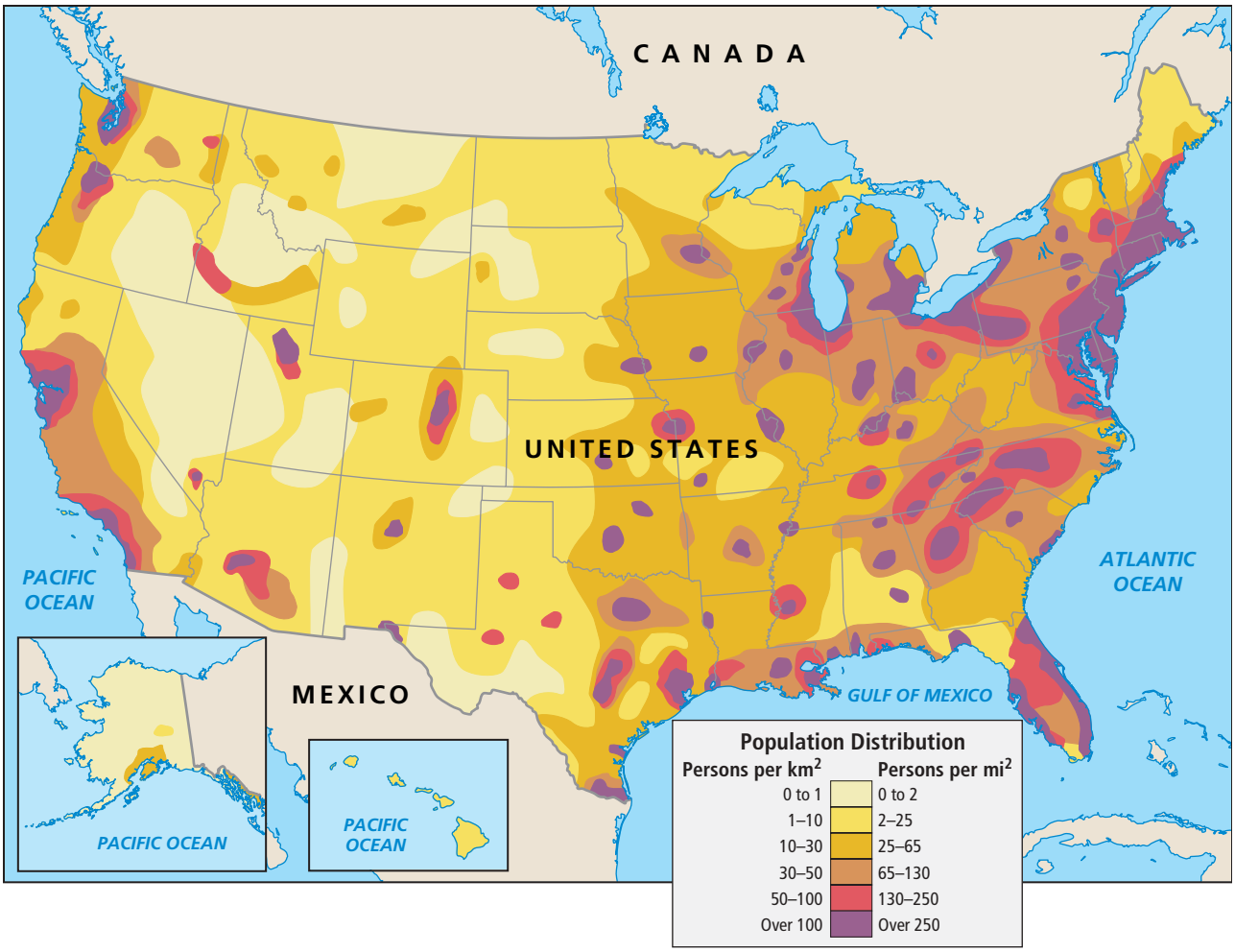
Buried Treasure



By many standards, the United States is one of the wealthiest countries in the world. Although this wealth is largely due to the ingenuity and hard work of the people who live in the country, it is also due to good fortune. The crust that lies beneath the United States holds a huge supply of natural resources. These resources include ores that contain precious metals, such as copper, silver, and gold, as well as fossil fuels, such as petroleum, coal, and natural gas. The availability and distribution of these resources have been important in shaping U.S. history.

▶ This worker in California cuts through steel, an iron alloy, at 2,000°F!





1. Find your state on the map of natural resources on the previous page. What resources are produced in your state?

2. Look at the locations of the various resources. Which resources are commonly located near each other? Why do certain resources commonly occur together?

3. When tectonic plates collide, pockets of hot magma may come into contact with cooler, solid rock. Using what you know about plate tectonics and the ways in which minerals form, describe why Washington has more iron-ore deposits than Nebraska does.

4. Describe the conditions that existed in the United States millions of years ago and that resulted in the formation of the modern petroleum and natural-gas deposits.

5. Compare the map on this page with the map on the previous page. What areas have both high concentrations of people and a large reserve of natural resources? What areas have many people but few resources? How could resources be transported to areas in which they are needed?

6. Using these two maps, would you say that most cities have grown up in places in or near which there are natural resources? Why or why not? What other factors could have influenced the location of cities?

7. Imagine that you work for a company that builds electrical equipment made primarily of copper. Why might southern Arizona be a good place to locate a new plant? What might be a disadvantage of locating your plant there?

MAPPING EXPEDITIONS

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

What Comes Down Must Go...WHERE?

Materials

- cardboard, about 23 cm × 33 cm
- paper, about 23 cm × 33 cm
- pencils, red, blue, and purple
- permanent marker, fine-tipped
- plastic bag, reclosable, about 23 cm × 33 cm
- scissors
- umbrella, raincoat, or other rain gear

Imagine looking out your classroom window during a downpour. Billions of tiny raindrops splatter off of everything in sight. Streams of water fall from the roof and form dozens of puddles and streams on the ground. These miniature lakes and rivers swirl together, and tiny torrents carry away leaves, bits of trash, and other debris. A day or two later, the ground outside looks completely dry. Where did all of the water go?

In this activity, you will create a map of your school. After observing the type of ground cover and the slope of the terrain at various locations, you will predict whether rainwater will collect or run off at those locations. You will also look for possible sources of pollution and places where erosion might occur. Later, you will go outside in the rain and find out whether your predictions are correct.

Part 1: Outside on a Fair Day

1. Form a team with several of your classmates. Then, divide your school's campus into the number of equal areas that is the same as the number of teams in your class. Each team will work on one campus area.
2. Cut out a piece of paper and a piece of cardboard that fit exactly into a large reclosable plastic bag. The piece of paper will be your map.
3. On the paper, map one section of your school's campus. Include buildings, paved areas (such as sidewalks, outdoor sports courts, and parking lots), and vegetated areas (such as lawns, athletic fields, and wooded areas). The map on the next page is an example of the type of map that you will make.
4. **a.** Use a red pencil to mark the areas on your map. Draw arrows to indicate a downhill slope. Use a narrow arrow to indicate a steep slope and a wider arrow to indicate a gradual slope. Use circles to indicate flat areas.

b. Use a blue pencil to draw arrows and circles that indicate where you think surface water may collect or flow during a steady rain. These areas may include low-lying areas, the roofs of buildings, gutters, and drainage ditches.

c. Use a purple pencil to mark the locations that you think might contribute pollution to the runoff. (These areas may include parking lots that contain oil stains or places where trash is usually found on the ground, such as near a dumpster.)

5. Seal your map and the piece of cardboard in the reclosable bag. When you are outside in the rain, use a permanent marker to write your observations on the outside of the bag.

Part 2: Outside During a Steady Rain

6. Dress appropriately, and go outside. Using the marker, write on your plastic-covered map the places where water collects and runs. In places where water moves along the ground, use arrows to show the water's direction. Use the letter *P* to mark the locations of pollutants that you observe in the water. Use the letter *E* to mark the locations where erosion seems to be occurring. (Look for soil or natural debris that is being washed along by moving water.)

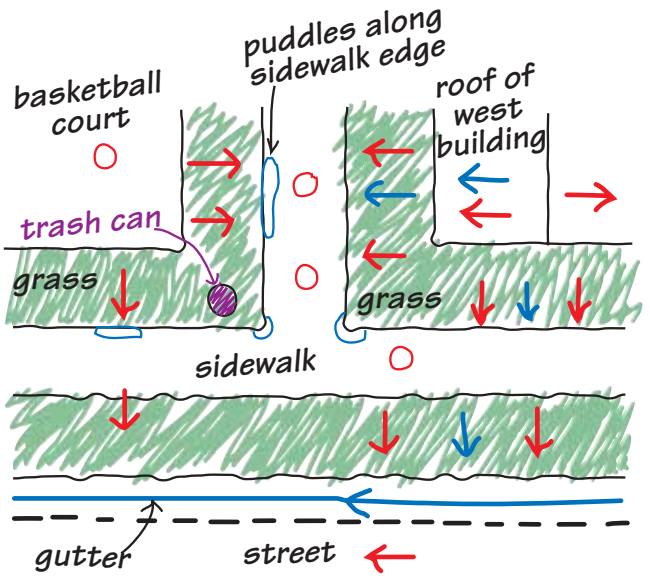
Part 3: Back in the Classroom

7. Discuss your predictions for some of the locations. Were your predictions correct? How do you explain differences between your predictions and your observations?

8. Was the pollution that you observed suspended load, bed load, or dissolved load? Explain how there may have been pollution that you could not observe.

9. Explain how erosion on your school's campus could affect the erosion and deposition that occurs downstream from the campus.

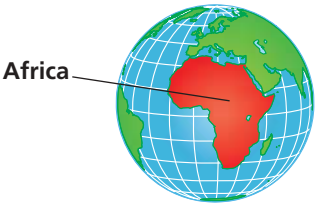
10. Assemble the maps from your class into a single map of your school's campus. In your opinion, does most of the rainfall at your school become groundwater or runoff? Where does runoff go when it leaves your school's campus? Your school is probably part of a larger, local watershed. Find out what stream or other body of water the surface runoff in your area empties into.



ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

MAPPING EXPEDITIONS

Where the hippos Roam



Materials

- pencils, assorted colors
- ruler, metric

Millions of years ago, ancestors of modern crocodiles lurked in the shallow waters of lakes and other bodies of water. Like their current descendents, they hunted fish and other animals. If you could travel back in time to visit one of those lakes, you might see the ancestors of today's hippopotamuses there, too. Antelopes might browse along the edges of the lake, and rodents of various sizes might scurry back and forth.

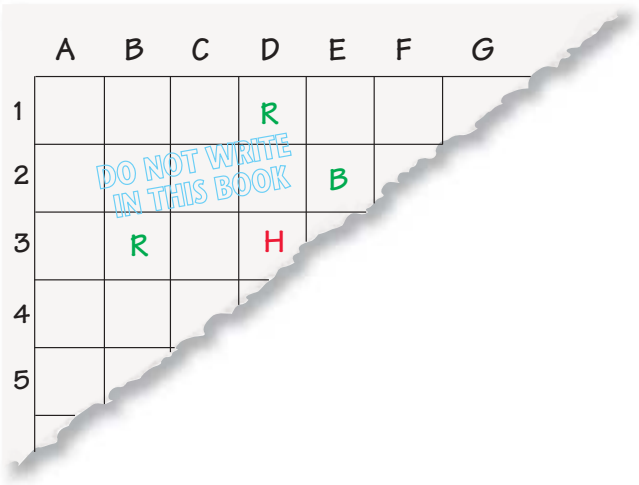
When paleontologists examine the fossil of a prehistoric organism, they may discover clues about the organism's life. They may also answer questions about the organism's environment: Was the area hot or cold? Was it humid or dry? Then, by putting all of these clues together, the paleontologists may be able to learn a little more about how organisms and environments change over time.

Unfortunately, studying a fossil site is no easy task! Discoveries of complete organisms are rare. More often, a paleontologist may find a few teeth scattered over a very large area. In such cases, keeping track of where the fossils were found is very important. In this activity, you will use the data from a fossil site to create a map of fossil locations at that site. Then, you will draw some conclusions about the past environment, or *paleoenvironment,* at that location.

▶ The animals that lived near lakes millions of years ago probably had lives similar to the lives of animals that live near lakes today.

Location of Fossil Teeth				
Layer	**Hippos**	**Rodents**	**Crocodiles**	**Bovids***
A	B11, C6, D3, I15, J10, L7, M6		C14, F7, G13, I3, L13, O2	
B	F2, J3, K1, K2	B10, B11, F13	H2, I7, K2, N5, N7	G14
C		B3, C10, D1, H8, M9, N4		A5, A6, E2, E4, E14, H7, H8, H12, K4, M1, N15

*Bovids are antelopes and other such animals.



The table above shows the locations of fossils that were found spread out over 22,500 m^2. A team of paleontologists decided that this site, which measured 150 m × 150 m, was too large to work on all at once. So, the paleontologists decided to create a grid of 10 m squares. Starting in the northwest corner of the site, they labeled the squares from west to east with the letters *A*–*O*. Then, they numbered the squares 1–15 from north to south. Thus, each fossil could be labeled with a letter and a number that would identify where the fossil was found. For example, A1 would signify the 10 m × 10 m square in the northwest corner of the site, and O15 would signify the square in the southeast corner.

1. Create a map of the fossil site by drawing a grid similar to the one described above. The scale should be 1 cm = 10 m. Use letters to label across the top edge of the grid, and use numbers to label down the left edge of the grid. For each fossil, place a letter (*H* for a hippo fossil, *R* for a rodent fossil, *C* for a crocodile fossil, and *B* for a bovid fossil) in the square that corresponds to where the fossil was found. Use pencil color to represent the different layers of sediment, and make a key that shows which layer each color represents.

2. From the distribution of fossils in the layer of sediment just below the surface layer, what part of this site might have been underwater? Explain your answer, and devise a way to show that area on your map.

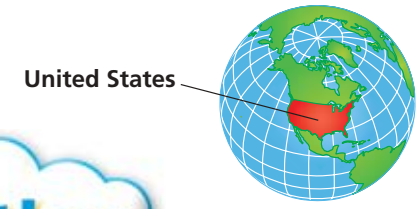
3. Describe how the environment at this site changed over time.

4. One team member wished to search this site for fossils of dry-climate plants. Which layer or layers would most likely yield fossils of such plants? Explain your answer.

5. One paleontologist suggested that tectonic uplift had raised the area's elevation over time and thus caused the climate to change. A second paleontologist thought that the area had probably lost elevation over time. With which scientist do you agree? Explain your answer.

▶ Fossils, such as these crocodile teeth, help scientists learn what an area was like millions of years ago.

MAPPING EXPEDITIONS



Snapshots of the Weather

Materials

- paper, tracing
- pencil

From looking at a weather map, you might get the impression that the clouds, fronts, and other features shown are standing still. However, weather patterns change constantly, and a weather map can show only what is happening at one particular instant. For this reason, meteorologists rely on a sequence of maps to make predictions about local weather.

In this activity, you will analyze a sequence of weather maps. The maps were taken from a daily newspaper and show weather patterns that occurred in the United States during a 4-day period. You will note what information the maps show and do not show, and you will make a few predictions based on your observations.

1. Look carefully at the maps on the next page. What weather information do they show? Now, look at the weather symbols in the Reference Tables section of the Appendix. What information is not included on these maps? Why might a newspaper exclude certain types of information on daily weather maps?

2. Why would a newspaper that serves only a specific geographic region publish the weather for the entire continental United States?

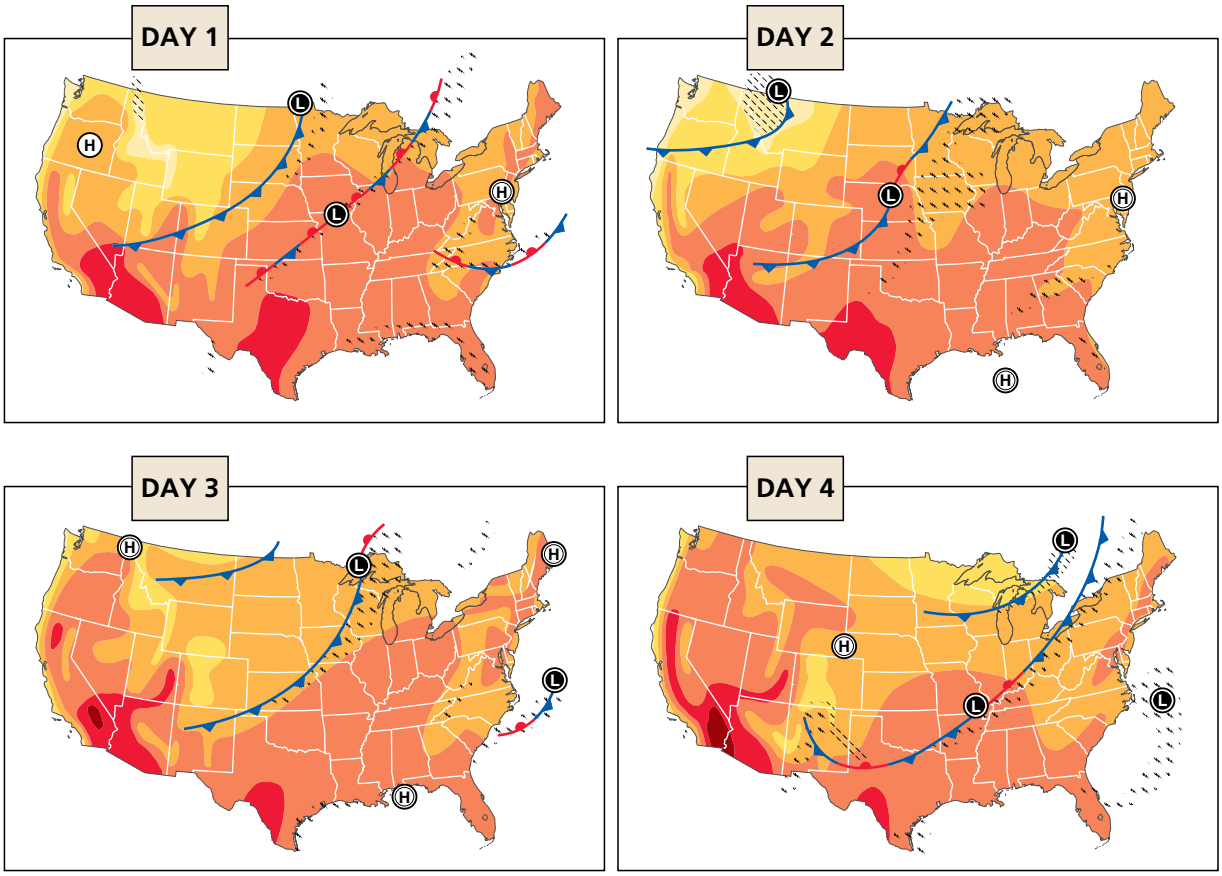
3. Describe how the weather patterns in your location changed during the 4-day period shown.

4. During what season do you think this 4-day period occurred? Explain your answer.

5. Trace the outline of one weather map on a separate piece of paper, but do not include any information on the map. Predict the locations of the fronts on the day following this 4-day period. Note the locations of the fronts on your new map.

6. Predict the temperature and precipitation patterns that occur in your location on the day following this 4-day period.

▶ This tornado twisted through Manchester, South Dakota, on June 24, 2003. On the same day, South Dakota had its largest recorded outbreak of twisters ever!



▶ Thunderstorms, such as this one in Tucson, Arizona, bring much-needed moisture to dry regions.

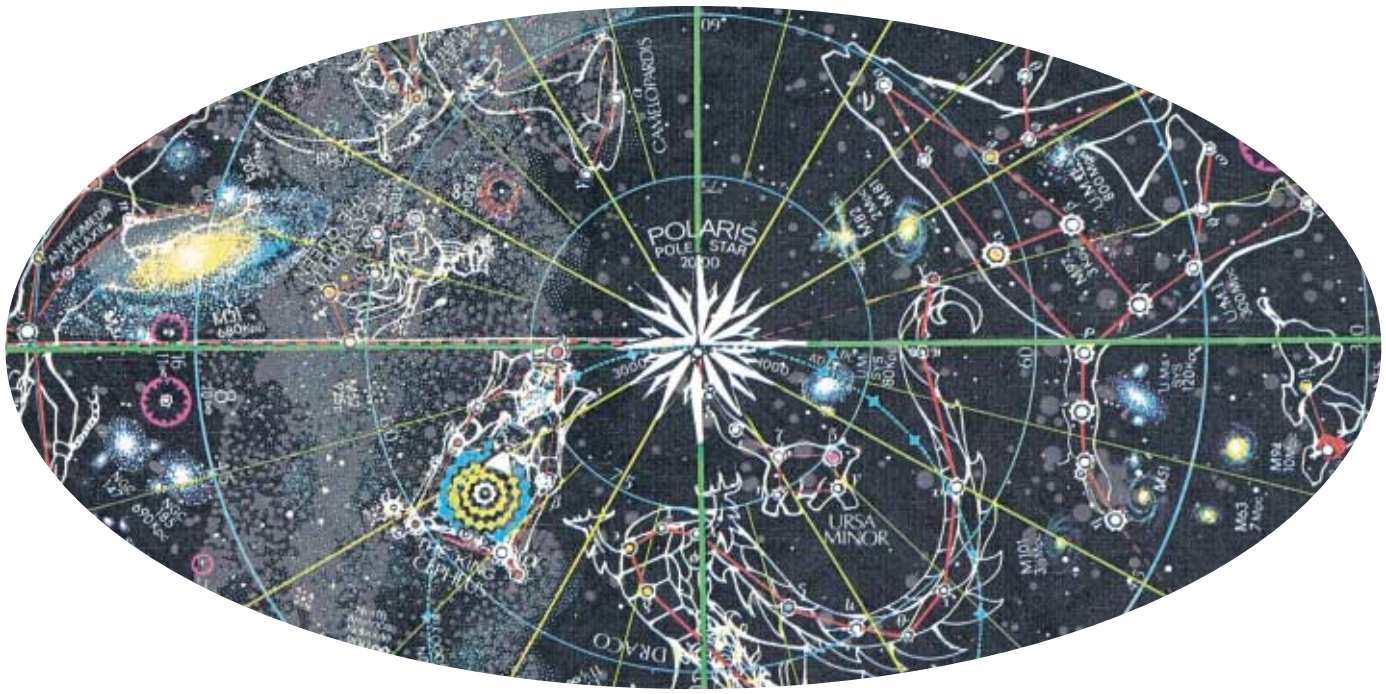
MAPPING EXPEDITIONS

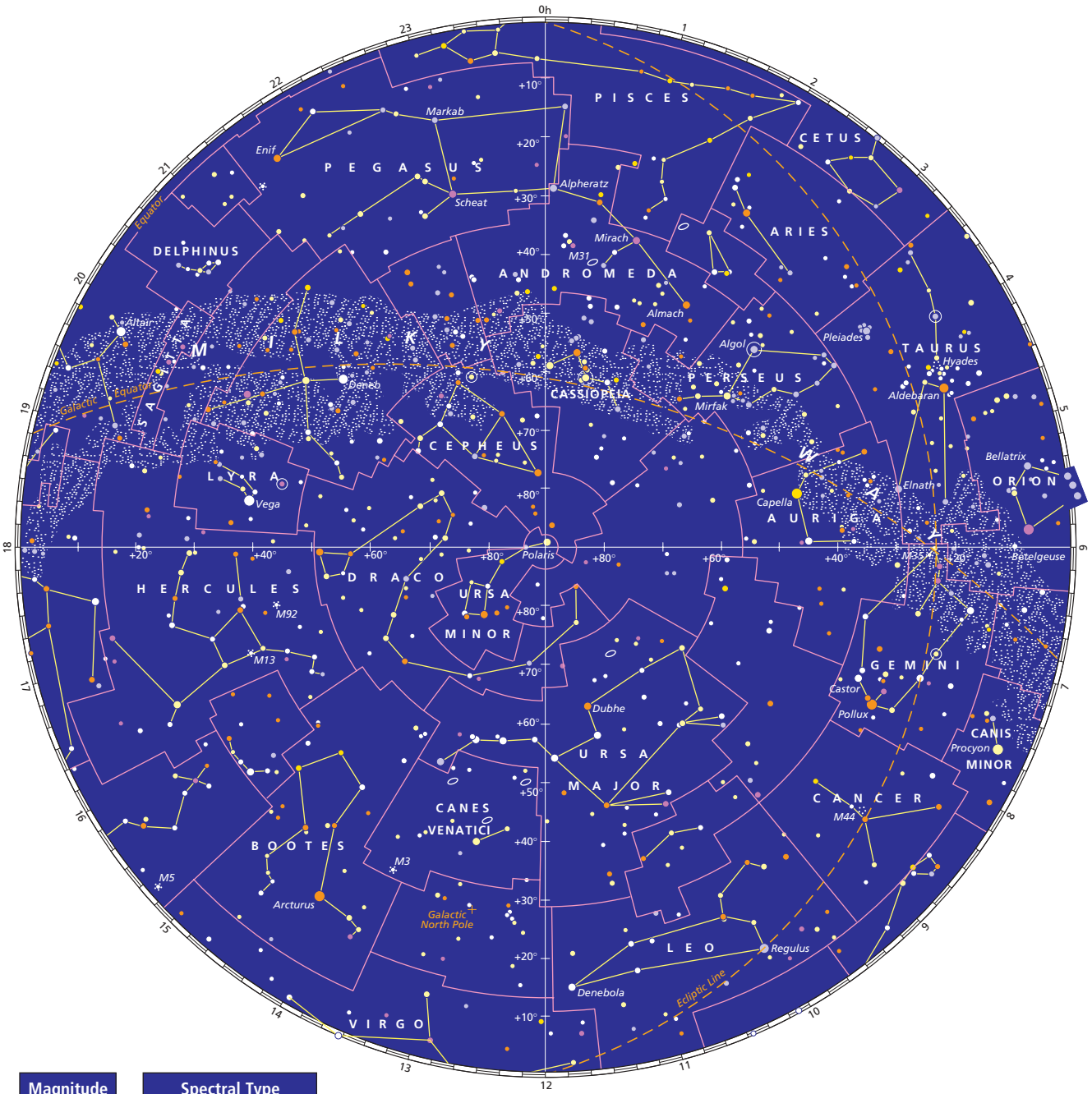
Stars in Your Eyes

A constellation is an arbitrary grouping of stars. The map to the right shows constellations that can be seen from the Northern Hemisphere of Earth. A Southern Hemisphere sky map, which is not provided, would show stars that can be seen from the Southern Hemisphere of Earth. Refer to the map to the right as you answer the questions below.

1. For many years, the best way to navigate at night was to use the stars as a guide. Many people used Polaris—the North Star—to orient themselves. This approach would not have worked for people all over the world, however. Why not?
2. What is the name of the constellation that contains Polaris?
3. What is the temperature of the star in the Bootes constellation, with magnitude 0?
4. The constellation Virgo can be observed from the Northern Hemisphere during the summer but not during the winter. Explain why.
5. Compare the constellation Draco on the map below with the constellation on the map to the right. What type of animal was this constellation named after?
6. Pick a group of stars that have not been connected into a constellation. Sketch the star group on a separate piece of paper. Connect the stars into a new constellation, and name your constellation.

▶ People, such as Sumerians, Greeks, Chinese, and Egyptians, have been grouping stars into constellations like these for thousands of years.





▶ There are 88 constellations recognized by modern astronomers. The Northern Hemisphere sky map shows those that can be seen from the Northern Hemisphere of Earth.

LONG-TERM PROJECTS

Introducing Long-Term Projects

Scientific investigations that lead to important discoveries are almost never short term. Usually, these investigations last months, years, and even decades before results are considered complete and dependable. Investigations in Earth science are no exception. The long-term projects included in this section will give you practical experience in investigating Earth science the way that Earth scientists do—over extended periods of time. You will observe changes over time, keep detailed records of your observations, and draw conclusions from your data. By following these steps, you will learn firsthand what it is like to be an Earth scientist.

Safety First!

Many of the long-term projects require you to make field trips to an observation site or to conduct your activities outdoors. Advance planning is essential. You should plan carefully for these investigations and should be certain that you are aware of the safety guidelines that must be followed. The following are general guidelines for fieldwork and lab work.

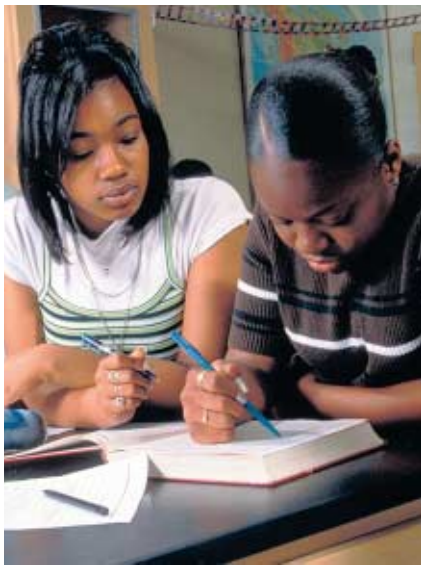
Conducting Fieldwork

Find out about on-site hazards before setting out. Determine whether there are poisonous plants or dangerous animals where you are going, and know how to identify them. Also, find out about other hazards, such as steep or slippery terrain.

Wear protective clothing. Dress in a manner that will keep you warm, comfortable, and dry. Wear sunglasses, a hat, gloves, rain gear, or other gear to suit local weather conditions. Wear waterproof shoes if you will be near water or mud.

Do not approach or touch wild animals unless you have permission from your teacher. Avoid animals that may sting, bite, scratch, or otherwise cause injury.

Do not touch wild plants or pick wildflowers without permission from your teacher. Many wild plants can cause irritation or can be toxic, and many are protected by law. Never taste a wild plant.



Do not wander away from the group. Do not go beyond where you can be seen or heard. Travel with a partner at all times.

Report any hazards or accidents to your teacher immediately. Even if an incident seems unimportant, tell your teacher about it.

Consider the safety of the ecosystem that you will be visiting as well as your own safety. Do not remove anything from a field site without your teacher's permission. Stay on trails when possible to avoid trampling delicate vegetation. Never leave garbage behind at a field site. Strive to leave natural areas just as you find them.

Conducting Lab Work

Be aware of safety hazards. Any field or lab exercises in which there are known safety hazards will include safety cautions and icons to identify specific hazards. By being aware of safety concerns, you may avoid accidents. Know where safety equipment and emergency exits are located so that you are prepared in the event of an emergency.

Do not engage in inappropriate behavior. Most laboratory accidents are caused by carelessness, lack of attention, or inappropriate behavior. Always be aware of your surroundings, and pay attention to safety cautions.

Be neat. Keep your work area free of unnecessary clutter. Tie back loose hair and loose articles of clothing. Do not wear dangling jewelry or open-toed shoes in the lab. Never eat or drink in the laboratory.

Clean your lab station when your lab time is over. Before leaving the lab, clean up your work area. Put away all equipment and supplies, and dispose of chemicals and other materials as directed by your teacher. Turn off water, gas, and burners, and unplug electrical equipment. Wash your hands with soap and water after working on any lab.

For additional information about safety in the lab and in the field, refer to the Lab and Field Safety section in the front of this book. Don't take any chances with safety!

LONG-TERM PROJECT 1

Positions of Sunrise and Sunset

Duration
8 or 9 months

Objectives

- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Observe and record** the positions of sunrise and sunset once per month.
- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Graph and analyze** collected data that describe the positions of sunrise and sunset.
- **Predict** the positions of sunrise and sunset for 3 or 4 months.

Materials

- compass, magnetic
- glue
- paper
- paper, graph
- pen
- pencil
- poster board
- scissors
- twist tie (or pipe cleaner)

Safety

You are probably aware that the sun rises in the east and sets in the west each day. What may not be obvious to you is that the positions of sunrise and sunset along the horizon differ from day to day in a specific pattern. As the positions of sunrise and sunset change, the amount of sunlight that an area receives also changes. In this investigation, you will observe the changes in the sun's position along the horizon at sunrise and at sunset. You will be making two observations on or near the 21st of each month for approximately 8 or 9 months (depending on the schedule of your school year).

PROCEDURE

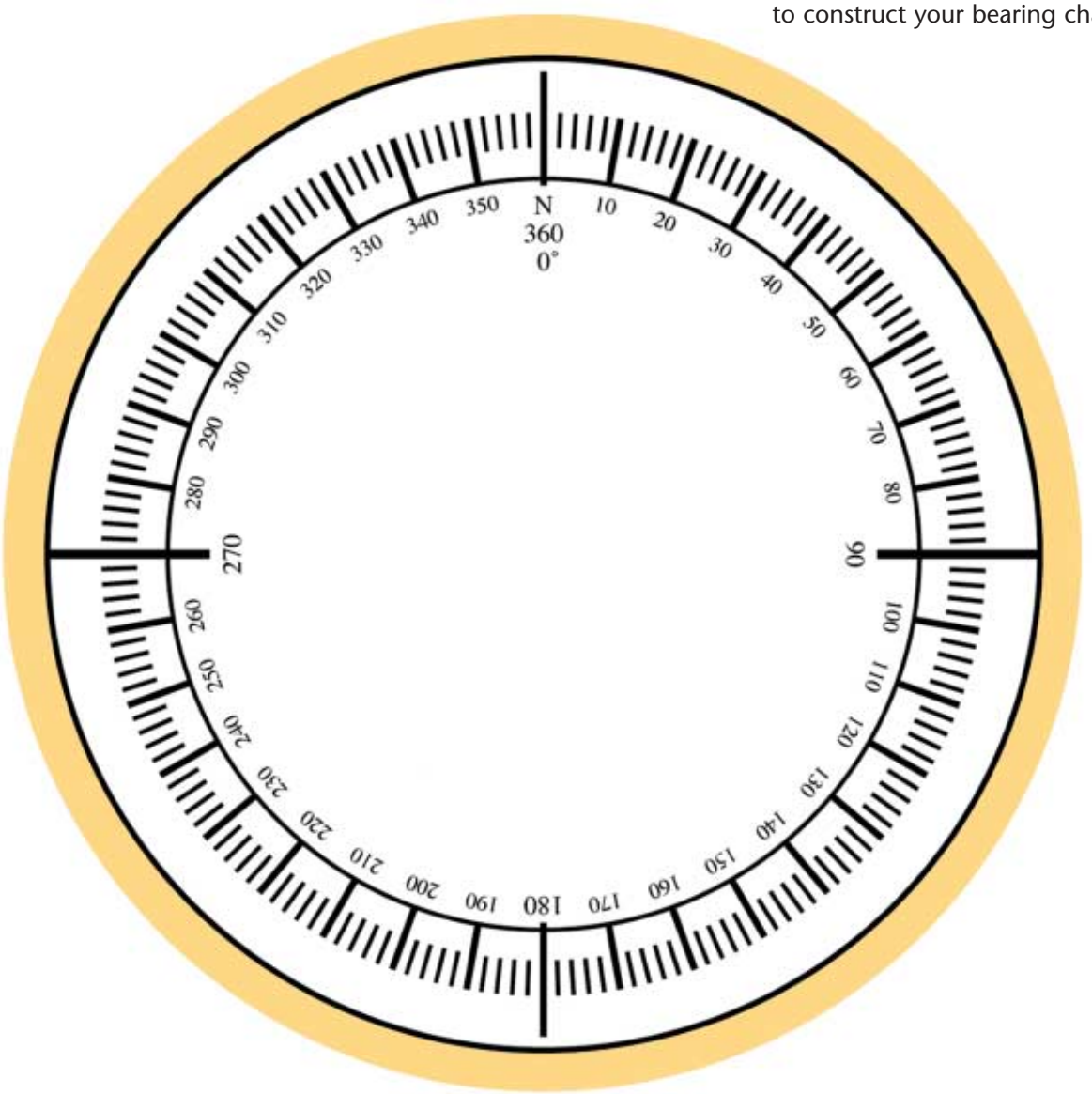
1. Construct the bearing chart before taking any measurements. Copy the bearing chart from the next page onto a piece of paper.
2. Glue your copy of the chart to a piece of poster board. When the glue is dry, trim away the excess poster board.
3. Wrap the center of a twist tie once around the center of a pencil. Poke the ends of the twist tie through the center of the bearing chart to make a pointer for your chart.

The sun appears to rise and set at different positions relative to landmarks, such as these skyscrapers in Los Angeles, California.

4. On a cloudless morning just before sunrise, place the bearing chart on a level spot where no buildings or trees block your view of sunrise and sunset.
CAUTION Although sunlight is less intense at sunrise and sunset, you should never stare at the sun for extended periods of time.

5. Use the magnetic compass to determine the direction of north. Set the bearing chart so that 0° is pointing north and 180° is pointing south. (Note: Have the chart face the same direction for every observation, even months from now.) Try to align an edge of the chart with some permanent object near your observation point.

Step 1 Copy the chart below on a separate piece of paper, and use it to construct your bearing chart.



LONG-TERM PROJECT 1 *Positions of Sunrise and Sunset, continued*

Step 7

Date	Position of sunrise (in degrees)	Position of sunset (in degrees)

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK

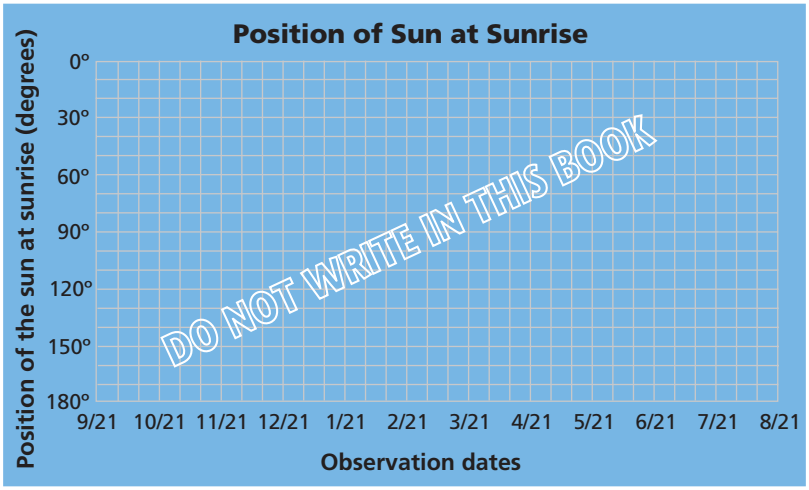
6. When the bearing chart is in place and properly aligned, measure the position of sunrise. (Note: Sunrise occurs at the instant the top of the sun appears on the horizon.) Without looking at the sun, measure its position by pointing the chart's pencil toward the sun. The shadow of the eraser end of the pencil will mark the sun's position.

7. In your lab notebook, draw a table like the one shown above. Record the position of sunrise (in degrees) in your table. That evening, measure and record the position of sunset (in degrees). (Note: Sunset occurs when the top edge of the sun drops below the horizon.)

Many scientists think that ancient people used structures, such as Stonehenge in England, to predict astronomical occurrences and to determine the timing of solstices and equinoxes.

8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 on the same date each month. (Note: On the equinoxes, the sun will rise due east and set due west. On the solstices, the sunrise and sunset will be shifted from these directions. The amount of the maximum shift will depend on the observer's latitude.)

9. On a sheet of graph paper, prepare a graph similar to the one shown at right. Label the graph's *y*-axis, which represents the position (in degrees) of the sun at sunrise, from 0° to 180°. The position of 90° will be in the center of the *y*-axis scale. The *x*-axis represents observation dates. Next, make a graph on which to plot the position of the sun at sunset. Label the *y*-axis of this graph from 180° to 360°.



Step 9

10. On each graph, connect the points by drawing a smooth line. Estimate the positions of points between the plotted points.

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Analyzing Data** On which date does the sun appear to follow the highest path across the sky? What happens to the length of daylight during this season?

2. **Analyzing Data** On which date does the sun appear to follow the lowest path across the sky? What happens to the length of daylight during this season?

3. **Analyzing Results** On which dates are the positions of the sun at sunrise and again at sunset about 180° apart? Those dates mark the beginning of which seasons?

4. **Describing Events** What general statement can you make about the pattern of sunrise and sunset according to the graphs?

5. **Forming a Hypothesis** Expand your graph to include the predicted position of the sun in June and July. Describe the pattern that you predicted.

Extension

1. **Evaluating Hypotheses** Use the process described in the investigation to chart the positions of sunrise and sunset for the months of June and July. How do your observations compare with your prediction?

2. **Making Comparisons** Use the same process to chart the positions of the moon at moonrise and moonset. Refer to an almanac when you choose the times at which you will make measurements. Do the positions of sunrise and sunset correlate to those of moonrise and moonset? What can you conclude from your observations?

LONG-TERM PROJECT 2

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

Air-Pollution Watch

Duration
2 weeks

Objectives

- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Count and record** the number of particulates in the air over a 2-week period.
- **Analyze** how wind direction and particulate source are related.

Materials

- compass, magnetic
- microscope
- microscope slides (8 or more)
- paper, graph
- pencil, grease
- petroleum jelly
- slide box
- tape, masking or packaging, or rubber bands

Safety

When certain types of pollutants are present in high concentrations, they threaten the general health and well-being of humans. Some substances that can be air pollutants include dust and smoke particles, pollen, mold spores, and waste gases. If these tiny particles remain suspended in the air for long periods of time, they are called *particulates*.

Wind direction affects the number of particulates in the air. If there is a source of particulates in an area, there will be a large number of particulates in the air when the wind blows from the direction of that source. There will be fewer particulates in the air when the wind blows from the direction opposite the source.

In this investigation, you will collect and view a few types of particulates. You will collect particulates from an outdoor site every day for 2 weeks. Then, you will examine those particulates.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a collection site in an open area, such as a large field or pasture, where the wind can blow past the site from every direction.
2. Locate a four-sided post, such as a 4 in. × 4 in. fence post, that is firmly driven into the ground. Try to choose a post whose top is at least 1 m above ground level. If there are no fences in your area, look for another four-sided structure that you could use.

Haze and smog are common in large cities, such as Los Angeles, California.

Day	Date	Wind direction	Slide direction	Number of particulates 1	2	3	4	5	Total
1			N						
			S						
			E						
			W						

DO NOT WRITE IN THIS BOOK

Step 3

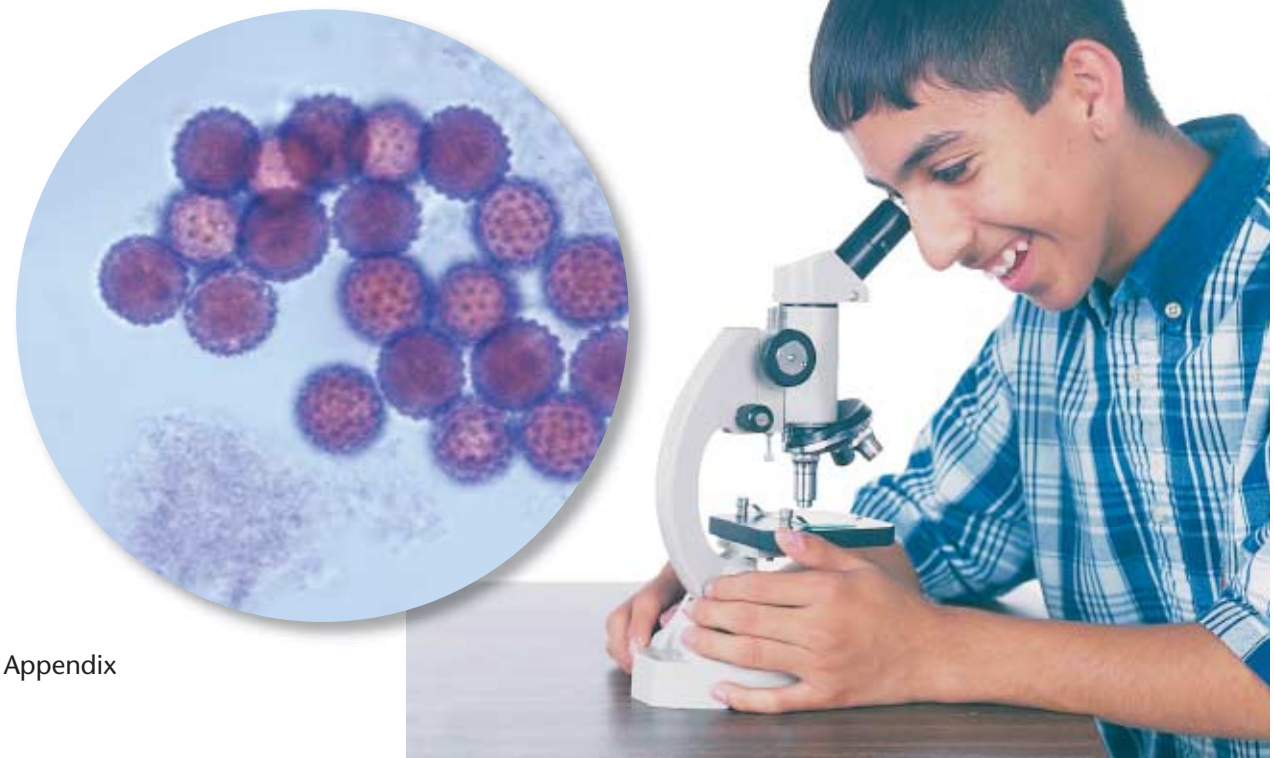
3. Use a compass to establish north, south, east, and west directions from the post's location. Determine the direction from which the wind is blowing by watching objects, such as a flag, move in the wind. Record the wind direction and the date in a table like the one shown above.
4. Look for any phenomena that may affect air quality, such as smokestacks or heavy traffic. Record these observations and the day's weather conditions.
5. Use a grease pencil to mark on the back of each microscope slide the direction that the slide will face when placed on the post. Place each slide on the appropriate side of the post.
6. Use tape or rubber bands to attach the slides to the post, as shown on the lower-right side of this page. Use your finger to spread a thin, even film of petroleum jelly on one side of each slide.
7. Return to the site the following day. Remove the slides. Place each slide carefully in the slide box. (Note: Do not touch the greased surface.)

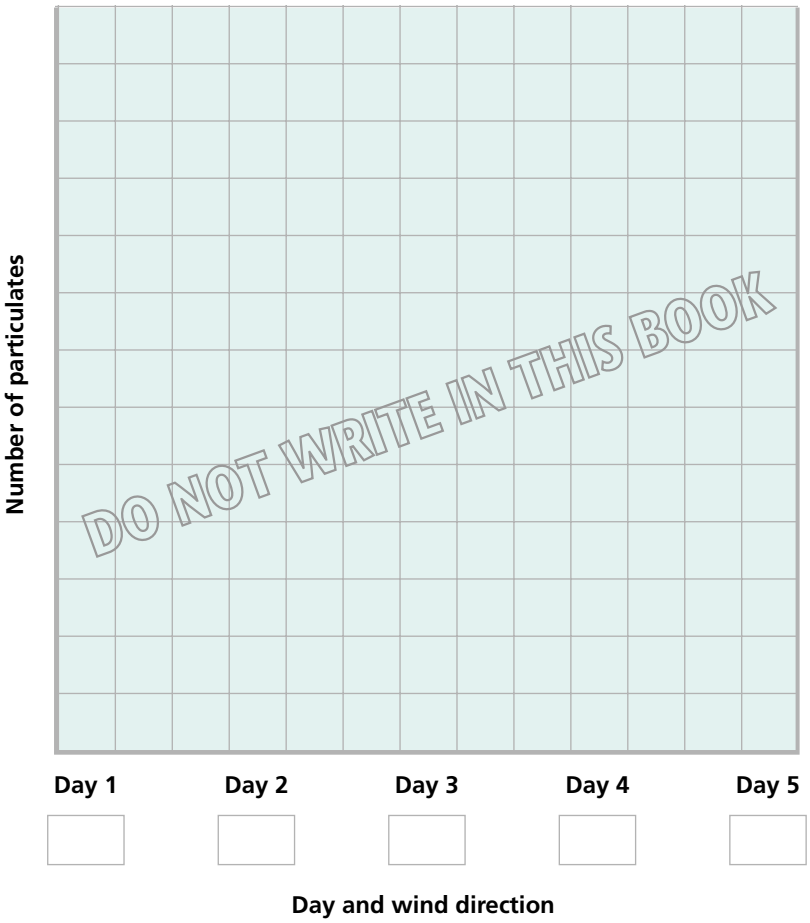
Step 6

LONG-TERM PROJECT 2 *Air-Pollution Watch, continued*

8. Place new slides on the post, and record the wind direction and weather conditions.
9. Examine each slide under the microscope at 100×. Focus on one section that you have chosen at random. Count the number of particulates that you observe in the section. Record this number in column 1 of your table.
10. Move the slide, and examine another section that you have chosen at random. Count the number of particulates in this section. Record this number in column 2 of your table.
11. Repeat step 10 three more times so that you have a total of five observations per slide. Record the total number of particulates counted in the five sections.
12. Repeat steps 7 through 11 each weekday for 2 weeks.
13. When you have finished examining the slides and recording your results, total the number of particulates counted for each of the wind directions.
14. Using the data in your table, construct a bar graph. On the *y*-axis, plot the total number of particulates obtained in the past 5 days. On the *x*-axis, plot the day and wind direction. A sample graph is shown on the next page.

Step 9





Step 14

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Analyzing Results** For your location, did any one wind direction or group of wind directions result in more particulates than any other direction or directions did?
2. **Interpreting Information** What are possible sources of these particulates?
3. **Applying Conclusions** What would your results likely be if you set up this investigation near a populated urban area?
4. **Evaluating Methods** Did weather conditions have any effect on your results? Explain your answer.
5. **Graphing Data** Construct a second graph that uses data from all 10 days on which you collected samples. How does this graph differ from your previous graph?
6. **Identifying Patterns** Did you see a different pattern in the data when you plotted data from more than 5 days? Explain your answer.

Extension

1. **Research** Use the library or the Internet to research common particulates. Use your research to identify common particulates on several of the slides from this investigation. Which particulates are most common in your area? Explain why these particulates are most common.

LONG-TERM PROJECT 3

Correlating Weather Variables

Duration
1 month

Objectives

- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Measure and record** weather variables twice every day.
- **Predict** weather conditions based on data that you collected.

Materials

aneroid barometer or barograph
compass, magnetic
paper, graph
thermometer, Celsius

Safety

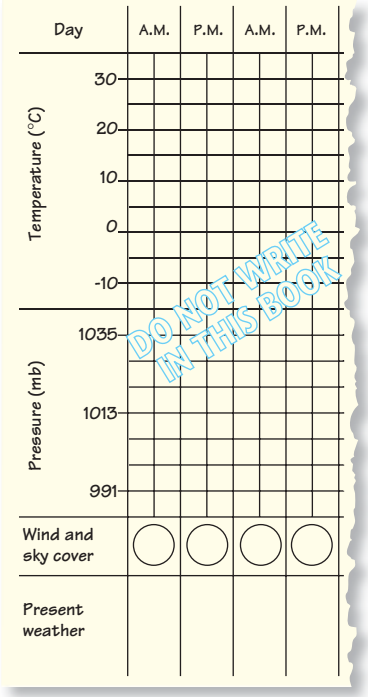
Identifying weather patterns that exist in an area is the first step in making weather predictions. Weather records are used to identify relationships between variables. Although weather cannot be predicted with complete accuracy, the probability that certain weather conditions will happen at a given time and place can be established.

In this investigation, you will gather and organize weather information in a data table and will present the information as a graph. Then, you will analyze the relationships between the data collected and will make predictions about the weather.

PROCEDURE

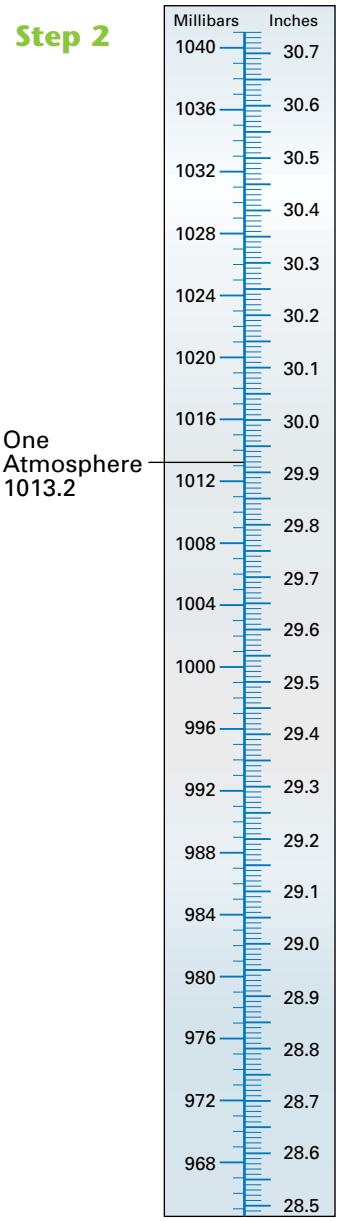
1. Use graph paper to make two charts like the one shown at lower left. One chart will hold data from the first 15 days of the project. The other will hold data from the second 15 days of the project. At the top of each column, write the date on which the observation was made.
2. Twice daily for a month, at about the same times every day (about 10 hours apart), measure and record the following weather variables: temperature (°C), barometric pressure (mb), wind direction, cloud cover, and weather conditions. The chart on the following page explains how to measure and record these variables.
3. Use the month's data to make two graphs. Do so by connecting the points for temperature with one smooth line and the points for pressure with a second smooth line.

Step 1



How to Measure Weather Variables	
Weather variable	**How to measure and record the variable**
Temperature	Place a thermometer where it is in the shade and is not exposed to precipitation. Wait at least 3 min, and then read the temperature. Plot a point for that temperature on your chart.
Barometric pressure	Using a barometer, record the barometric pressure to the nearest tenth of a millibar. If your barometer is calibrated in "inches of mercury," change inches to millibars by using the Barometric Conversion Scale at right. Plot a point for the barometric pressure.
Wind direction	Determine the wind direction by using a weather vane or by observing objects moved by the wind. Wind direction is named according to the direction from which the wind blows. Use a compass to help determine direction. Using the symbols shown in the Table of Weather Symbols in the Reference Tables section of the Appendix of this book, record wind direction on the circles at the bottom of your chart.
Cloud cover	Estimate the amount of sky that is covered by clouds. Using the symbols shown in the Table of Weather Symbols in the Reference Tables section of the Appendix of this book, shade the circles at the bottom of your chart.
Weather conditions	Observe the present weather conditions. Using the Table of Weather Symbols in the Reference Tables section of the Appendix of this book, draw in your chart the symbol that most accurately indicates the weather conditions.

Step 2



ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Evaluating Data** According to your graph, on how many days was the temperature falling? On how many days was the barometric pressure falling?
2. **Identifying Patterns** Of the days that had falling temperature, how many had rising barometric pressure?
3. **Inferring Relationships** In general, what is the relationship between temperature and pressure?
4. **Analyzing Results** What sky cover and wind direction are generally associated with falling barometric pressure?
5. **Interpreting Results** What weather conditions are generally associated with high barometric pressure? with low barometric pressure?
6. **Drawing Conclusions** How do the relationships between certain weather variables help you predict the weather?
7. **Evaluating Methods** Which weather variables are most useful in predicting precipitation?

Extension

1. **Research** Find out what the normal temperature, pressure, and precipitation are for your area during the time period in which you recorded your data. Do your observations match the normal conditions for that time period? How can you explain differences between your observations and the normal conditions?

LONG-TERM PROJECT 4

Weather Forecasting

Duration
1 week

Objectives

- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Observe and record** locations of weather fronts.
- **Predict** weather conditions based on data you collected.
- **Compare** the movement of weather fronts in different seasons.

Materials

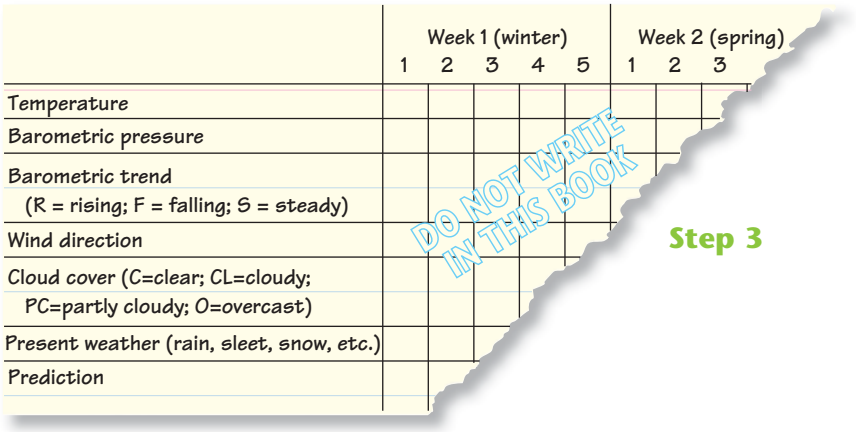
pencils, colored
daily weather maps for consecutive days (5)

Every three hours, the National Weather Service collects data from about 800 weather stations located around the world. Daily newspapers summarize this weather data in the form of national weather maps. The data include temperature, precipitation, cloud cover, and barometric pressure. The patterns produced by the data allow meteorologists to identify weather fronts and to provide information about weather conditions around the globe.

In this investigation, you will use a series of daily weather maps to track the movements of weather systems in the winter months. Then, you will use these datas to predict weather conditions.

PROCEDURE

1. Find a local or national newspaper that prints a daily weather map from the National Weather Service. You may also use the Internet to find daily weather maps.
2. Cut out or print out the map, and write on it the date that it represents.
3. Make a data table similar to the sample table shown at the bottom of this page.
4. Fill in your table with the information from the weather map.
5. Make at least one copy of the blank weather map on the third page of this exercise.



A meteorologist from the National Weather Service tracks the path of a hurricane in the Gulf of Mexico.

6. On your copy of the map, put an *L* at any locations where low-pressure centers are shown on the daily weather map that you collected in step 1. Circle the *L*s with a colored pencil, and label each circle with the date.

7. Put an *H* on your map at the locations of any high-pressure centers. Circle the *H*s with a second colored pencil, and label each circle with the date.

8. Repeat steps 1–7, but use four consecutive daily weather maps that follow the first day's map, and reuse your data table and weather map. For each symbol, use the same colors that you used for the first day's map.

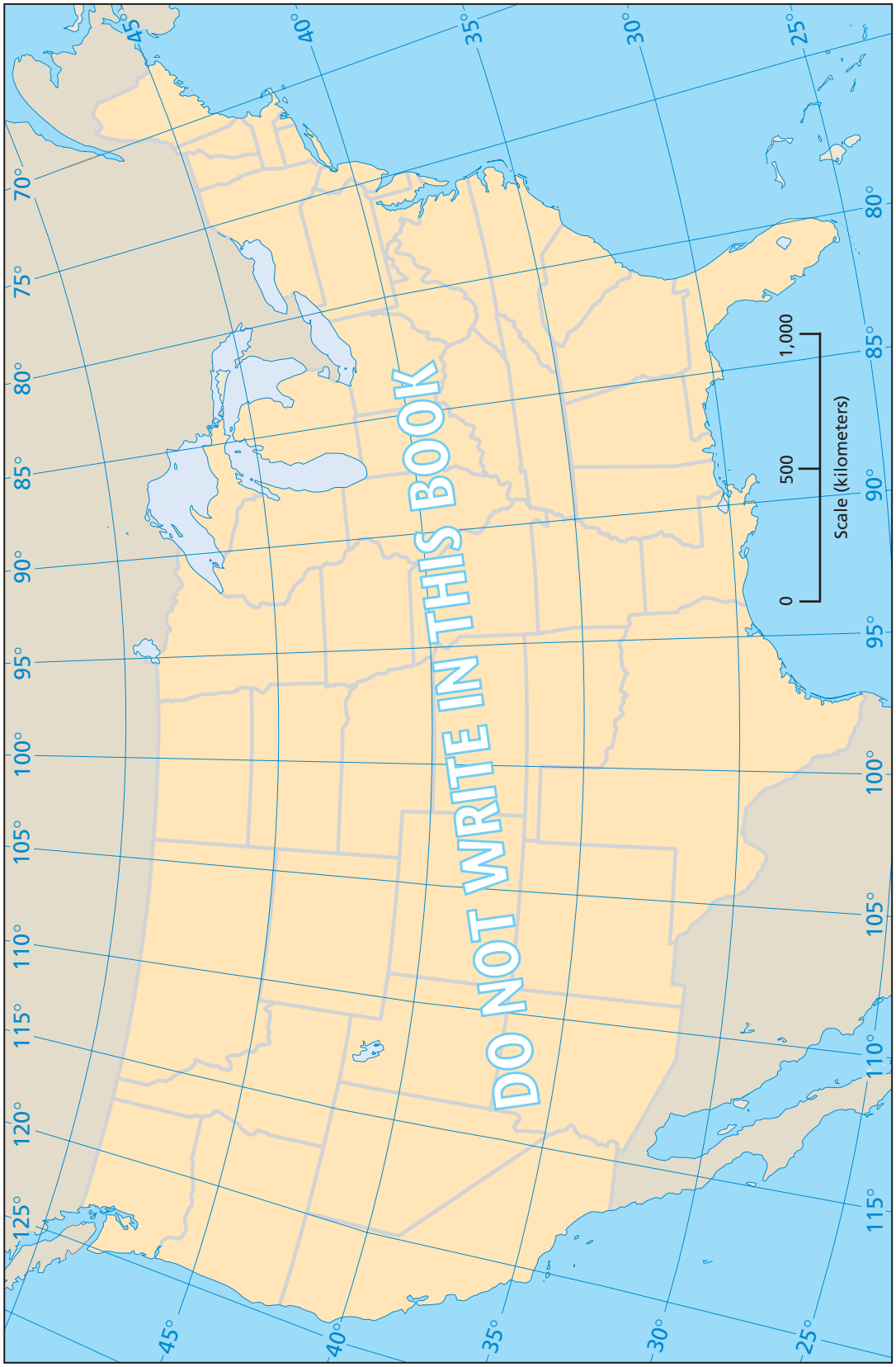
9. Draw arrows to connect the daily positions of each high-pressure center and ofeach low-pressure center.

10. Use the formula below to calculate the average velocity (in kilometers per day) of each high-pressure center and each low-pressure center. The average velocity equals the total distance traveled divided by the number of days traveled, or

$$\textit{average velocity} = \frac{\textit{total distance traveled}}{\textit{number of days}}$$

LONG-TERM PROJECT 4 *Weather Forecasting, continued*

Step 5



Many hurricane-prone areas have established evacuation routes to help people reach safety before a hurricane hits. This man is boarding up windows in his house to prepare for an imminent hurricane.

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Analyzing Data** Generally, in which direction do the pressure centers over the United States move?
2. **Analyzing Results** From your calculations, what is the average rate of movement (in kilometers per day) of low- and high-pressure centers in winter?
3. **Making Predictions** Predict where the low- and high-pressure centers will be located on the day following the date of the last map in your series.
4. **Forming a Hypothesis** Refer to your series of daily weather maps to predict the weather for your hometown on the sixth day of the series. Write a forecast, and fill in the data table with your predictions of weather conditions.
5. **Evaluating Predictions** Was your prediction about the locations of the low- and high-pressure centers from question 3 accurate? Explain why or why not.
6. **Evaluating Hypotheses** Compare your weather prediction with the daily weather map for the appropriate day. Check the accuracy of your prediction. What factors could have caused errors in your prediction?
7. **Explaining Events** Describe the general weather conditions associated with regions of low and high atmospheric pressure.

Extension

1. **Designing Experiments** In the spring, repeat the entire investigation. What is the average rate of movement (in kilometers per day) of low- and high-pressure centers in the spring? Compare the rate of movement of pressure systems during spring and winter.

LONG-TERM PROJECT 5

ENVIRONMENTAL CONNECTION

Comparing Climate Features

Duration
6 months (October 1 to April 1)

Objectives

- **Record** temperature and precipitation data for eight regions.
- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Graph and analyze** climate features for eight regions.
- **Classify** regions by using two climate classification systems.

Materials

- almanac
- atlas
- paper, graph
- rain gauge (optional)
- thermometer (optional)
- weather reports, daily

Safety

A graph of the monthly temperatures and amounts of precipitation for a region is called a *climatograph*. Climatographs can be used to compare the climates of different areas or to classify an area's climate.

In this investigation, you will use climate data to compare your local climate with the climates of other regions of the United States. You will keep a daily temperature and precipitation log. You will record data every day from the first day of October until the first day of April. You will then compare your graphed data with information about the world's climates. You will use this comparison to develop a conclusion about the type of climate that your location has.

PROCEDURE

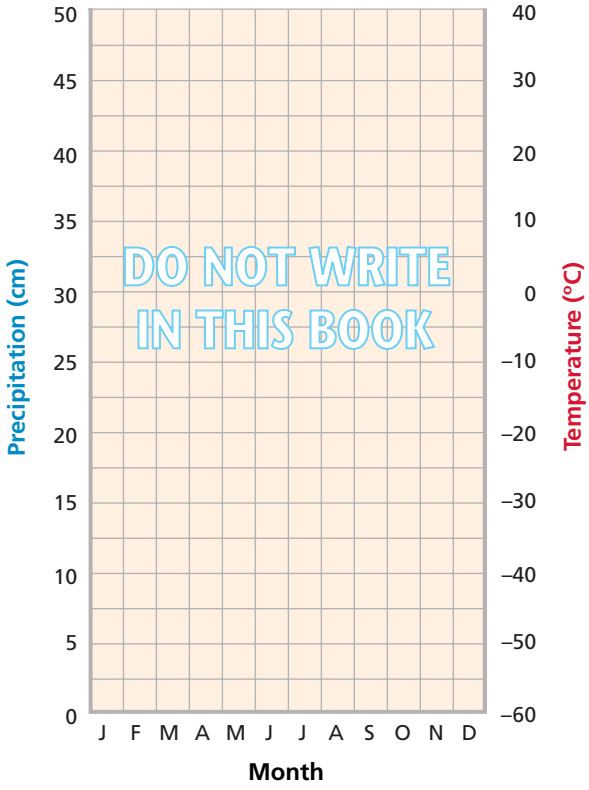
1. Listen to or watch a daily weather report for your area, or find this information in a daily newspaper or on the Internet. You may also keep your own records by using a thermometer and a rain gauge.
2. Beginning on the first day of October, keep a daily record of the high and low temperatures and of the amount of precipitation that occurs. During winter, snow should be melted before determining the amount of precipitation (in centimeters).

Rain gauges collect precipitation for scientists to measure.

3. Calculate the average temperature for each day by dividing the sum of the day's high and low temperatures by 2. Record this information.

4. At the end of each month, record the average monthly temperature given by the weather report, or calculate the average monthly temperature by dividing the sum of the daily averages by the number of days in the month. Also, record the total monthly precipitation given by the weather report.

5. Use the Internet or an almanac to look up climate data for your town or city and for seven other cities in the United States. Select one city from each of the following regions: New England, the Gulf Coast, the Midwest, the Southwest, the Pacific Northwest, the interior of Alaska, and the Hawaiian Islands.



Step 7

6. Look up the average monthly temperatures and precipitation for your town or city and for each city that you chose. Record these data in a table.

7. On your graph paper, make eight copies of the blank climatograph shown on the upper-right side of this page.

8. Label each blank climatograph with the name of one of the seven cities. Label the eighth climatograph with the name of your town or city.

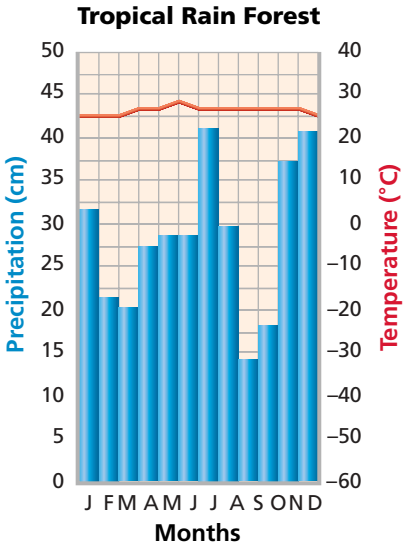
9. If you recorded temperature and precipitation in English (American) units, such as degrees Fahrenheit or inches, convert your measurements to SI units, such as degrees Celsius or centimeters. Use the SI Conversions table in the Appendix of this book to convert English units to SI units.

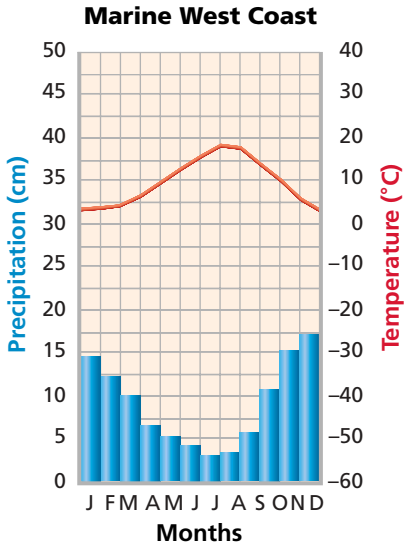
10. For each of the eight locations, plot the average temperature for January by placing a dot in the center of the square that is located in the column representing January and in the row representing that average temperature.

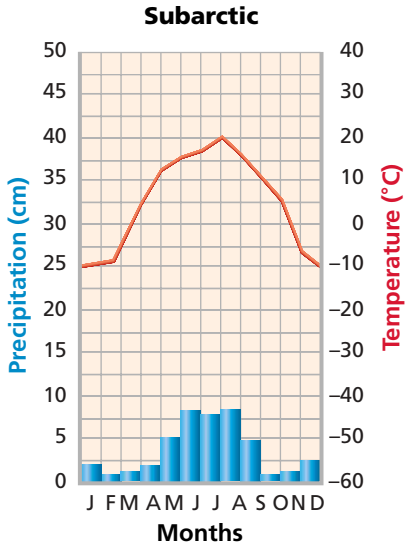
11. Using the same method, plot the average precipitation for January.

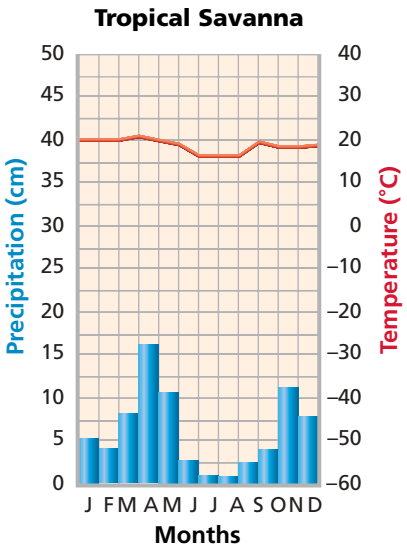
12. Repeat steps 10 and 11 for each month's data for each location. Then, connect the temperature points and connect the precipitation points in order of consecutive months.

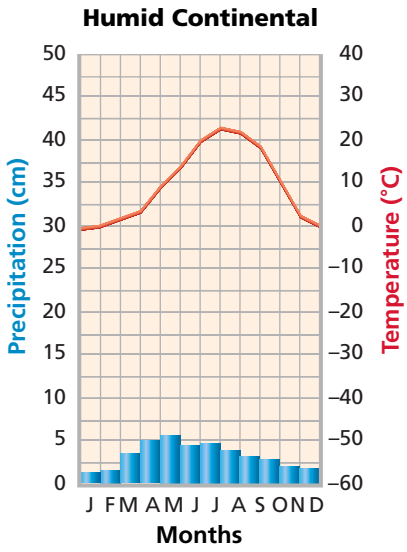
LONG-TERM PROJECT 5 *Comparing Climate Features, continued*

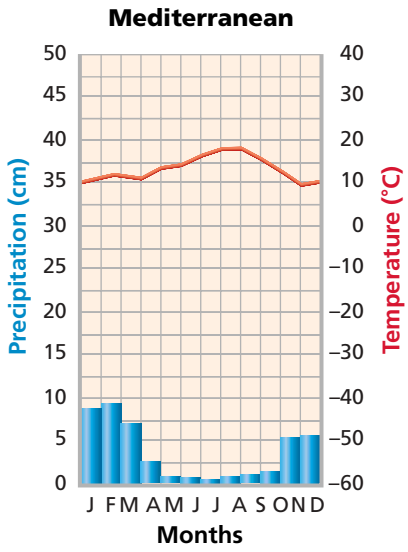


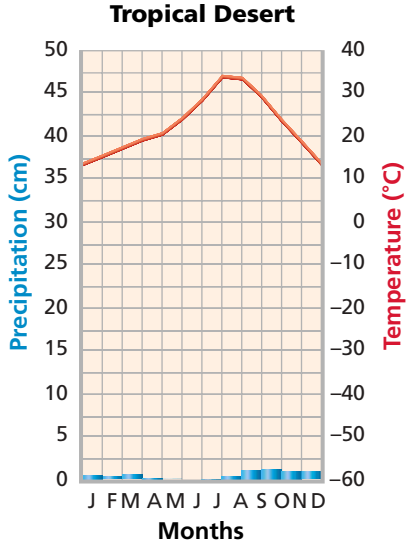


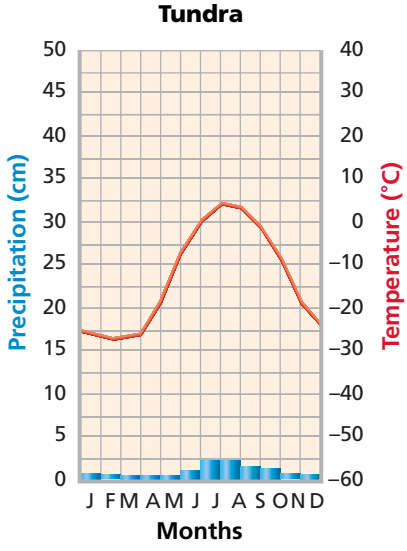


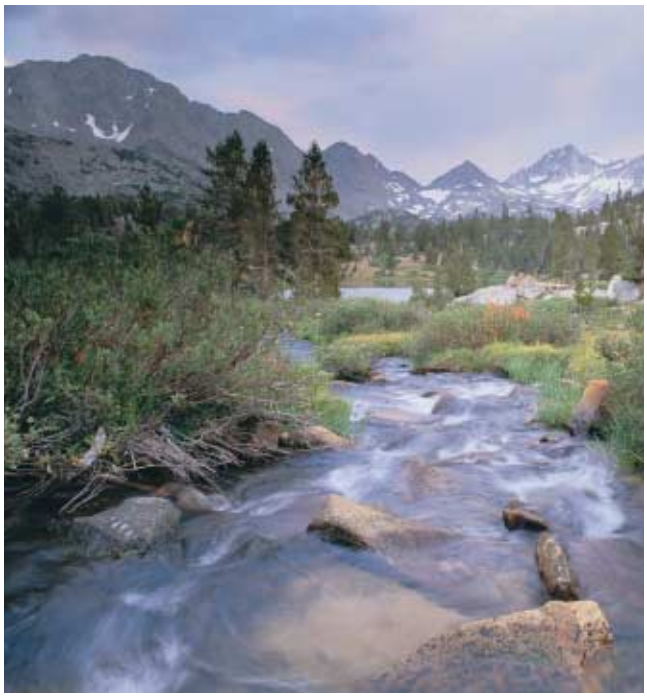


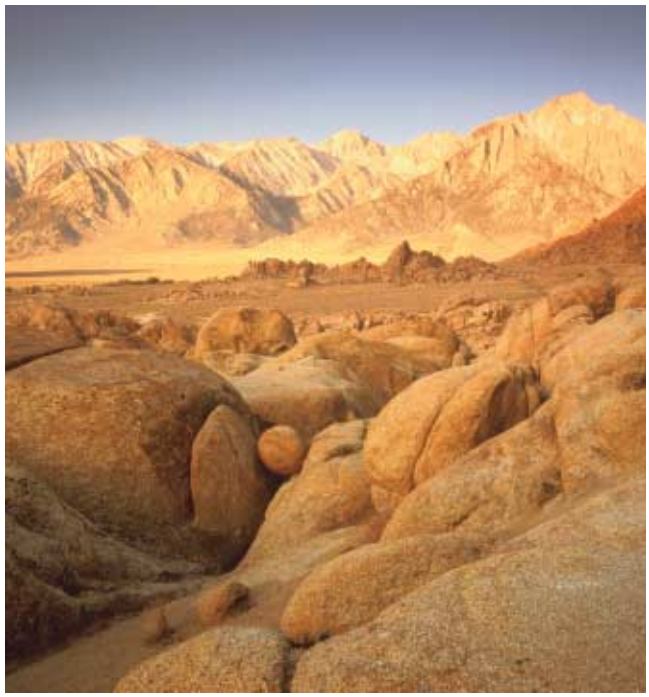












Although rain forests and deserts may have similar latitudes, the amount of precipitation that rain forests receive differs greatly from the amount that deserts receive.

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Making Comparisons** Compare each of the climatographs of your seven chosen U.S. cities with the sample climatographs on the previous page. Identify the climate type or types for each location that you selected. What features of each climatograph helped you classify each region?

2. **Analyzing Results** Use the climatograph for your area to classify your regional climate. What features of your climatograph helped you identify the climate type?

3. **Examining Data** Compare the average temperatures and precipitation amounts for your location that you collected to the values that you obtained from the Internet or an almanac. Do you think that this year's climate data are typical for your region? Explain your answer.

4. **Classifying Information** How would each of the climatographs, including the one for your region, fit into the climate classification system outlined in the chapter entitled "Climate"?

5. **Evaluating Methods** In this investigation, you compared climates by looking at average precipitation and temperature. What other factors might affect the climate of an area? Give examples of each factor.

Extension

1. **Making Comparisons** Bermuda is a small island in the Atlantic Ocean. Bermuda is at about the same latitude as St. Louis, Missouri, which lies in the middle of a continent. In which of the two locations does the temperature vary least from month to month? Explain the cause of the temperature pattern in the location that has the more moderate pattern.

LONG-TERM PROJECT 6

Planetary Motions

Duration
8 months

Objectives

- **Observe** the position of Mars in the night sky for 8 months.
- USING SCIENTIFIC METHODS **Graph** the apparent movement of Mars through the night sky.
- **Identify** changes in the relative positions of Earth and Mars.

Materials

- celestial sphere model (optional)
- compass, magnetic
- constellation charts
- flashlight
- metric ruler

While observing the evening sky over a period of time, you might have noticed that some objects look like stars but do not maintain a fixed position relative to the celestial sphere. These objects are the planets. As viewed from Earth at various times during the year, the patterns in the planets' motion differ from the patterns that you might expect.

In this investigation, you will observe the planet Mars in the night sky on the 1st and 15th of each month over a period of 8 months. Then, you will use your observations to draw conclusions and make predictions about planetary motion.

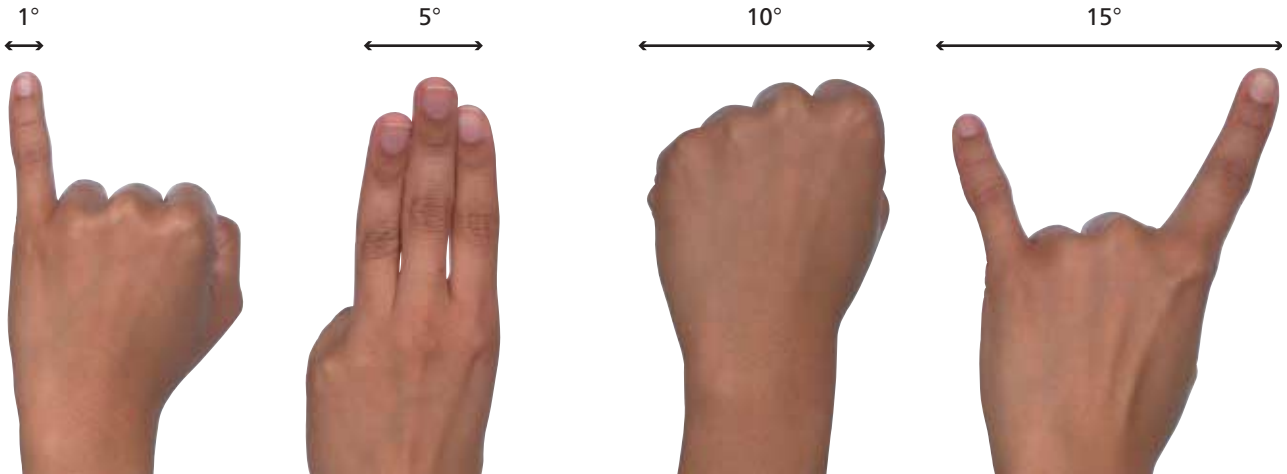
PROCEDURE

1. Obtain data on the positions of Mars in the night sky throughout the last year from an astronomical yearbook or from the Internet. Astronomical yearbooks can be found at most libraries.
2. Check the Internet, an almanac, or the weather section of a newspaper to find the time of night that Mars will be visible in your area.
3. Copy the star chart on the third and fourth pages of this lab onto a separate piece of paper.
4. Practice measuring angular distance by using the method shown at the bottom of this page. Always use the same hand when measuring angular distance. To have confidence in the accuracy of your measurements, you may need to practice measuring angular distance for a few days or weeks before beginning this lab.

Step 4

Estimating Angular Distance in Degrees

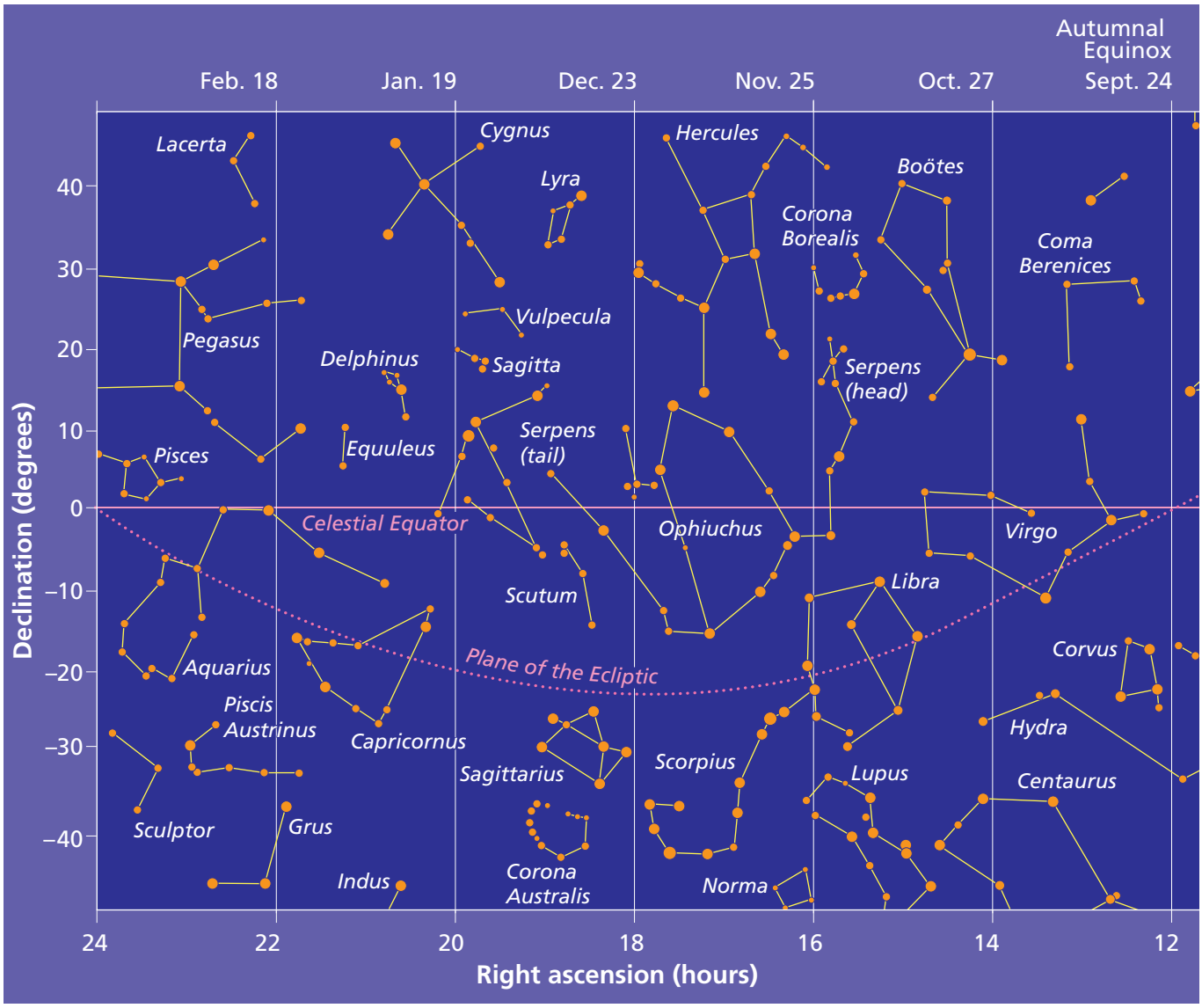
Hold your hand at arm's length.



In 2003, Mars was closer to Earth than it had been for about 60,000 years.

5. On the 1st and 15th of each month, go at night to an area that gives you a clear view of the eastern, southern, and western skies. (Note: If the skies are not clear on the 1st and 15th, make observations as close to these dates as possible.)
6. At the same time each night, locate Mars in the night sky. Mars will have a dull red appearance.
7. Use your magnetic compass to position yourself facing south, and observe the position of Mars relative to the background stars.
8. Choose a constellation. Use the method illustrated at the bottom of the previous page to estimate Mars's angular distance (in degrees) from the constellation.
9. On your star chart, locate the constellation from which you measured Mars's angular distance. Draw Mars in the appropriate position relative to the constellation, and label the planet's position with the date.
10. Compare the apparent brightness of Mars with that of the background stars. Record your observation on a separate sheet of paper.
11. Repeat steps 6–10 on the 1st and 15th of each month for the next 8 months.
12. After each observation, draw an arrow from Mars's previous position to the position that you just observed. The progression of arrows will show Mars's apparent path.

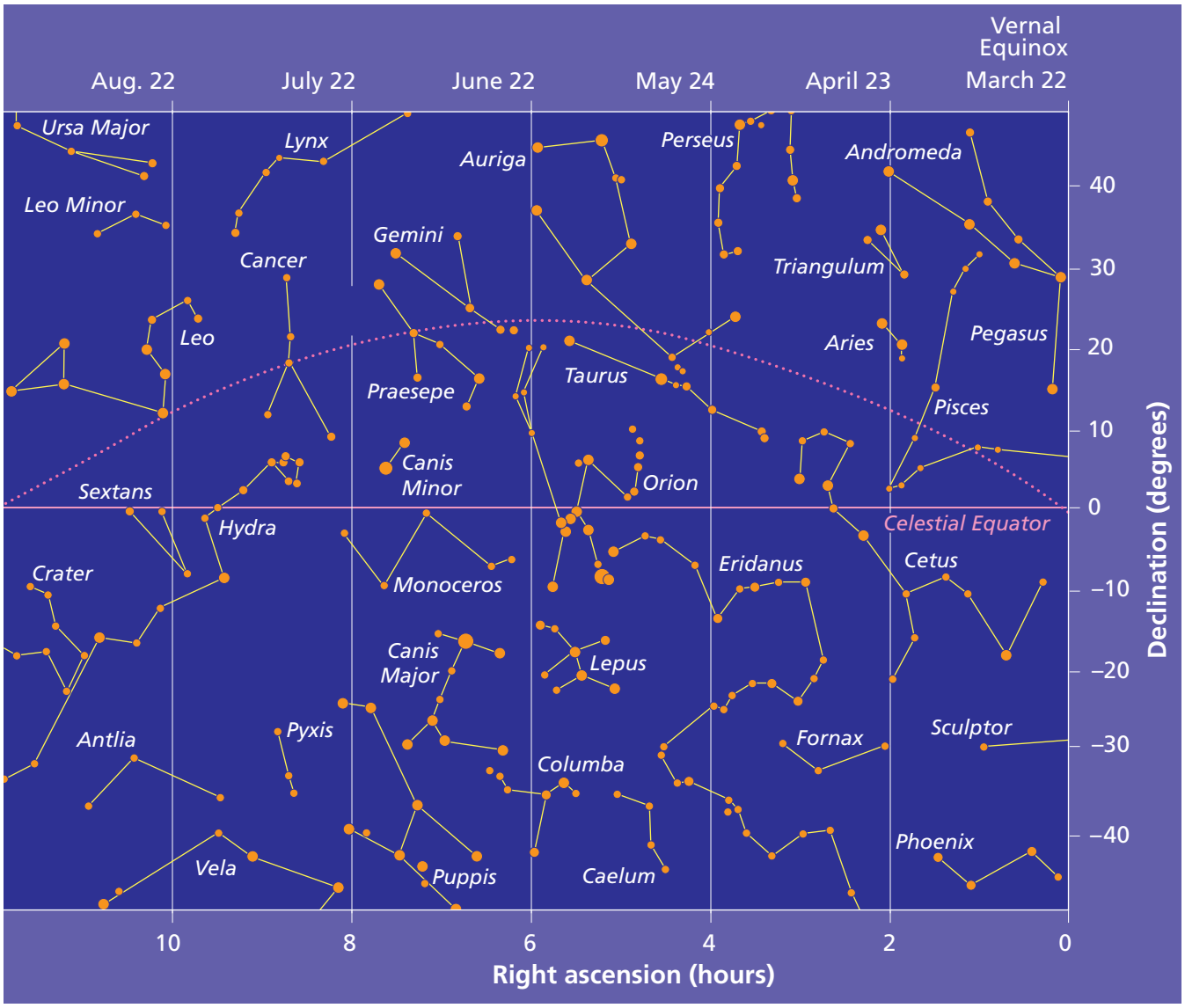
LONG-TERM PROJECT 6 *Planetary Motions, continued*



Step 3

ANALYSIS AND CONCLUSION

1. **Examining Data** In which months does Mars appear highest in the night sky? lowest in the night sky?
2. **Evaluating Results** In which direction does Mars appear to move across the sky? At any point during the year, does Mars appear to deviate from this apparent path?
3. **Making Predictions** In one year from today, will Mars be in the same position that it is in today? Explain.
4. **Drawing Conclusions** From your observations of the apparent brightness of Mars at different times of the year, what can you infer about the distance between Mars and Earth? Explain your answer.



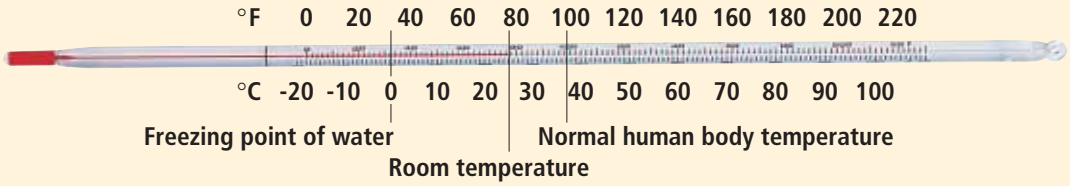
Extension

1. **Evaluating Predictions** In the Analysis and Conclusion section of this investigation, you predicted the position of Mars in one year. Use the Internet or library to research where astronomers predict Mars will be in one year. Was your prediction accurate? Explain why or why not.
2. **Evaluating Hypotheses** Repeat this investigation, but measure the positions of another planet, such as Venus, for the course of 8 months. Write a brief essay that explains how the paths of Mars and Venus differ.

REFERENCE TABLES SI Conversions

The metric system is used for making measurements in science. The official name of this system is the Système Internationale d'Unités, or International System of Measurements (SI).

SI Units	From SI to English	From English to SI
Length		
kilometer (km) = 1,000 m	1 km = 0.62 mile	1 mile = 1.609 km
meter (m) = 100 cm	1 m = 3.28 feet	1 foot = 0.305 m
centimeter (cm) = 0.01 m	1 cm = 0.394 inch	1 inch = 2.54 cm
millimeter (mm) = 0.001 m	1 mm = 0.039 inch	
micrometer (μm) = 0.000 001 m		
nanometer (nm) = 0.000 000 001 m		
Area		
square kilometer (km^2) = 100 hectares	1 km^2 = 0.386 square mile	1 square mile = 2.590 km^2
hectare (ha) = 10,000 m^2	1 ha = 2.471 acres	1 acre = 0.405 ha
square meter (m^2) = 10,000 cm^2	1 m^2 = 10.765 square feet	1 square foot = 0.093 m^2
square centimeter (cm^2) = 100 mm^2	1 cm^2 = 0.155 square inch	1 square inch = 6.452 cm^2
Volume		
liter (L) = 1,000 mL = 1 dm^3	1 L = 1.06 fluid quarts	1 fluid quart = 0.946 L
milliliter (mL) = 0.001 L = 1 cm^3	1 mL = 0.034 fluid ounce	1 fluid ounce = 29.577 mL
microliter (μL) = 0.000 001 L		
Mass		* Equivalent weight at Earth's surface
kilogram (kg) = 1,000 g	1 kg = 2.205 pounds*	1 pound* = 0.454 kg
gram (g) = 1,000 mg	1 g = 0.035 ounce*	1 ounce* = 28.35 g
milligram (mg) = 0.001 g		
microgram (μg) = 0.000 001 g		
Energy		
British Thermal Units (BTU)	1 BTU = 1,055.056 joules	1 joule = 0.00095 BTU
Temperature		



Conversion of Fahrenheit to Celsius:
$°C = \frac{5}{9}(°F - 32)$

Conversion of Celsius to Fahrenheit:
$°F = \frac{9}{5}(°C) + 32$

Mineral Uses

Metallic Minerals		
Mineral and chemical formula	**Location of economically important deposits**	**Important uses**
Chalcopyrite, $CuFeS_2$	Chile, U.S., and Indonesia	electrical and electronic products, wiring, telecommunications equipment, industrial machinery and equipment
Chromite, $FeCr_2O_4$	South Africa, Kazahkstan, and India	production of stainless steel, alloys, and metal plating
Galena, PbS	Australia, China, and U.S.	batteries, ammunition, glass and ceramics, and X-ray shielding
Gold, Au	South Africa, U.S., and Australia	computers, communications equipment, spacecraft, jet engines, dentistry, jewelry, and coins
Ilmenite, $FeTiO_3$	Australia, South Africa, and Canada	jet engines; missile components; and white pigment in paints, toothpaste, and candy
Magnetite, Fe_3O_4	China, Brazil, and Australia	steelmaking
Uraninite, UO_2	Canada and Australia	fuel in nuclear reactors and manufacture of radioisotopes

Nonmetallic Minerals		
Mineral and chemical formula	**Location of economically important deposits**	**Important uses**
Barite, $BaSO_4$	China, India, and U.S.	weighting agent in oil well drilling fluids, automobile paint primer, and X-ray diagnostic work
Borax, $Na_2B_4O_7 \cdot 10H_2O$	Turkey, U.S., and Russia	glass, soaps and detergents, agriculture, fire retardants, and plastics and polymer additives
Calcite, $CaCO_3$	China, U.S., and Russia	cement, lime production, crushed stone, glassmaking, chemicals, and optics
Diamond, C	Australia, Democratic Republic of the Congo, and Russia	jewelry, cutting tools, drill bits, and manufacture of computer chips
Fluorite, CaF_2	China, Mexico, and South Africa	hydrofluoric acid, steelmaking, water fluoridation, solvents, manufacture of glass, and enamels
Gypsum, $CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$	U.S., Iran, and Canada	wallboard, building plasters, and manufacture of cement
Halite, NaCl	U.S., China, and Germany	chemical production, human and animal nutrition, highway deicer, and water softener
Sulfur, S	Canada, U.S., and Russia	sulfuric acid, fertilizers, gunpowder, and tires
Kaolinite, $Al_2Si_2O_5(OH)_4$	U.S., Uzbehkistan, and Czech Republic	glossy paper and whitener and abrasive in toothpaste
Orthoclase, $KAlSi_3O_8$	Italy, Turkey, and U.S.	glass, ceramics, and soaps
Quartz, SiO_2	U.S., Germany, and France	glass, computer chips, ceramics, abrasives, and water filtration
Talc, $Mg_3Si_4O_{10}(OH)_2$	China, U.S., and Republic of Korea	ceramics, plastics, paint, paper, rubber, and cosmetics

Guide to Common Minerals

This table is used in the chapter lab for the chapter entitled "Minerals of Earth's Crust."

	Luster		Hardness	Cleavage	Fracture	Color/opacity	
Nonmetallic; light color	glassy to pearly	Scratches glass	6	two cleavage planes at nearly right angles		various colors but often white or pink; opaque	
	glassy		6	two cleavage planes at 86° and 94°		colorless, white, pink, or various colors; translucent to opaque	
	glassy and waxy		7	no cleavage	conchoidal fracture	various colors; transparent to opaque	
	glassy		6.5–7	no cleavage	conchiodal to irregular fracture	olive green; transparent to translucent	
	glassy	Does not scratch glass	2.5–3	three cleavage planes at right angles		colorless to gray; transparent to opaque	
	glassy		3	three cleavage planes at 75° and 105°		colorless or white and may be tinted; transparent to opaque	
	glassy, pearly, or silky		1–2.5	one perfect cleavage plane	conchoidal and fibrous fracture	white, pink, or gray to colorless; transparent to opaque	
	pearly to waxy		1	one cleavage plane		white to green; opaque	
	glassy or pearly		2–2.5	one cleavage plane		colorless to light gray or brown; translucent to opaque	
	glassy		4	eight cleavage planes (octahedral)		green, yellow, purple, and other colors; transparent to translucent	
	glassy		4.5–5	no cleavage	conchiodal to irregular fracture	green, blue, violet, brown, or colorless; translucent to opaque	
	silky		3.5–4	no cleavage	irregular, splintery fracture	green; translucent to opaque	
Nonmetallic; dark color	glassy and silky	Scratches glass	5–6	two cleavage planes at 56° and 124°		dark green, brown, or black; translucent to opaque	
	resinous and glassy		6.5–7.5	no cleavage	irregular fracture	dark red or green; transparent to opaque	
	pearly and glassy	Does not scratch glass	2.5–3	one cleavage plane		black to dark brown; translucent to opaque	
	metallic to earthy		5.5–6.5	no cleavage	irregular fracture	reddish brown to black; opaque	
Metallic	metallic or earthy	Does not scratch glass	1–2	one cleavage plane		black to gray; opaque	
	metallic		2.5	three cleavage planes at right angles		lead gray; opaque	
	metallic	Scratches glass	5–6	two cleavage planes at 56° and 124°		iron black; opaque	
	metallic		6–6.5	no cleavage	conchoidal to irregular fracture	brass yellow; opaque	

Streak	Specific gravity	Other properties	Mineral name and chemical formula
white	2.6	prismatic, columnar, or tabular crystals	orthoclase, $KAlSi_3O_8$
blue-gray to white	2.6 to 2.7	striations	plagioclase, $(Na, Cl)(Al, Si)_4O_8$
white	2.65	six-sided crystals	quartz, SiO_2
white to pale green	3.2 to 3.3	stubby, prismatic crystals	olivine, $(Mg, Fe)_2SiO_4$
white	2.2	cubic crystals and salty taste	halite, NaCl
white	2.7	may produce double image when you look through it	calcite, $CaCO_3$
white	2.2 to 2.4	thin layers and flexible	gypsum, $CaSO_4 \bullet 2H_2O$
white	2.7 to 2.8	soapy feel and thin scales	talc, $Mg_3Si_4O_{10}(OH)_2$
white	2.7 to 3	thin sheets	muscovite, $KAl_2Si_3O_{10}(OH)_2$
white	3.2	fluorescent under UV light; cubic and six-sided crystals	fluorite, CaF_2
white or pale red-brown	3.1	six-sided crystals	apatite, $Ca_5(OH, F, Cl)(PO_4)_3$
emerald green	4	fibrous, radiating aggregates or circular, banded structure	malachite, $CuCO_3 \bullet Cu(OH)_2$
pale green or white	3.2	six-sided crystals	hornblende, $(Ca, Na)_{2\text{-}3}(Mg, Fe, Al)_5 Si_6(Si, Al)_2O_{22}(OH)_2$
white	4.2	12- or 24-sided crystals	garnet, $Fe_3Al_2(SiO_4)_3$
white to gray	2.7 to 3.2	thin, flexible sheets	biotite, $K(Mg, Fe)_3AlSi_3O_{10}(OH)_2$
red to red-brown	5.25	granular masses	hematite, Fe_2O_3
black to dark green	2.3	greasy feel, soft, and flaky	graphite, C
lead gray to black	7.4 to 7.6	very heavy	galena, PbS
black to dark green	5.2	8- or 12-sided crystals; may be magnetic	magnetite, Fe_3O_4
greenish black	5	cubic crystals	pyrite, FeS_2

Guide to Common Rocks

This table is used in the chapter lab for the chapter entitled "Rocks."

Rock class	Grain size	Description	Rock class	Rock name
Made of crystals	Coarse grained	mostly light in color; shades of pink, gray, and white are common	igneous	granite
		dark in color; commonly black and white; heavy heft	igneous	gabbro
		foliated; layers of different minerals give a banded appearance	metamorphic	gneiss
		foliated; contains abundant amount of quartz, and may contain garnet; flaky minerals	metamorphic	schist
		nonfoliated; reacts with acid	metamorphic	marble
	Fine grained	usually light in color; many holes and spongy appearance; may float in water	igneous	pumice
		light to dark in color; glassy luster; conchoidal fracture	igneous	obsidian
		dark in color; may ring like a bell when struck with a hammer	igneous	basalt
		fine grained; foliated; cleaves into thin, flat plates	metamorphic	slate
Made of rock particles	Coarse grained	coarse-grained particles, more than 2 mm; rounded pebbles; some sorting; clay and sand are visible	sedimentary	conglomerate
		well-preserved fossils are common; can be scratched with a knife; many colors but usually white-gray; reacts with acid	sedimentary	limestone
		cube-shaped crystals; commonly colorless; does not react with acid	sedimentary	halite
	Medium grained	1/16 to 2 mm grains; mostly quartz fragments; surface feels sandy	sedimentary	sandstone
	Fine grained	soft and porous; commonly white or buff color	sedimentary	chalk
		microscopic grains; clay composition; smooth surface; hardened mud appearance	sedimentary	shale

Radiogenic Isotopes and Half-Life

Unstable isotopes, called *radiogenic isotopes* or *radioactive isotopes,* decay to form different isotopes called *daughter isotopes*. Each radiogenic isotope breaks down at a predictable rate, called its *half-life,* into a daughter isotope. Because of this predictable decay pattern, radiogenic isotopes are used to determine numeric dates for rocks. The table below describes several common radiometric dating methods.

Radiometric dating method	How it works	Parent isotope	Daughter isotope	Half-life	Effective dating range
Argon-argon dating ($^{39}Ar/^{40}Ar$)	Comparison made between ^{39}Ar and ^{40}Ar in a sample specially irradiated to form ^{39}Ar; ^{39}Ar is equivalent to ^{40}K in potassium-argon dating.	potassium-40 (^{40}K) irradiated to form argon-39 (^{39}Ar)	argon-40, ^{40}Ar	1.25 billion years	50,000 to 4.6 billion years
Fission track dating	Tracks of damage created by charged particles from radioactive decay that pass through a mineral's crystal lattice are counted under an electron microscope.	uranium, U	ultimately, lead, Pb, but also several other daughter isotopes	not applicable	500 years to 1 billion years
Potassium-argon dating ($^{40}K/^{40}Ar$)	Comparison is made between the amount of ^{40}K and amount of ^{40}Ar; over time, ^{40}K decreases and ^{40}Ar increases.	potassium-40, ^{40}K	argon-40, ^{40}Ar	1.25 billion years	50,000 to 4.6 billion years
Radiocarbon dating ($^{14}C/^{12}C$)	Comparison is made between the amount of ^{14}C in organic matter and the amount of ^{12}C; ^{12}C remains constant over time, and ^{14}C breaks down.	carbon-14, ^{14}C	nitrogen-14, ^{14}N	5,730 years	<80,000 years
Rubidium-strontium dating ($^{87}Rb/^{87}Sr$)	Comparison made between the ratio of $^{87}Sr/^{86}Sr$ and the ratio of $^{87}Rb/^{86}Sr$ to find the amount of ^{87}Sr formed by radioactive decay.	rubidium-87, ^{87}Rb	strontium-87, ^{87}Sr	48.8 billion years	10 million to 4.6 billion years
Thorium-lead dating	Comparison made between amount of ^{232}Th and the ratio of $^{208}Pb/^{204}Pb$; ^{232}Th breaks into ^{208}Pb, and ^{204}Pb remains constant.	thorium-232, ^{232}Th	lead-208, ^{208}Pb	14.0 billion years	>200 million years
Uranium-lead dating ($^{235}U/^{207}Pb$)	Comparison made between amount of ^{235}U and the ratio of $^{207}Pb/^{204}Pb$; ^{235}U breaks into ^{207}Pb, and ^{204}Pb remains constant.	uranium-235, ^{235}U	lead-207, ^{207}Pb	704 million years	10 million to 4.6 billion years
Uranium-lead dating ($^{238}U/^{206}Pb$)	Comparison made between amount of ^{238}U and the ratio of $^{206}Pb/^{204}Pb$; ^{238}U breaks into ^{206}Pb, and ^{204}Pb remains constant.	uranium-238, ^{238}U	lead-206, ^{206}Pb	4.5 billion years	10 million to 4.6 billion years

Topographic and Geologic Map Symbols

Topographic Map Symbols

Elevation markers

Contour lines

Index contour lines — 100

Depression contour lines

Water elevation — 9600

Spot elevation — x 9136

Boundaries

National

State

County, parish, municipal

Township, precinct, town

Incorporated city, village, or town

National or state reservation

Small park, cemetery, airport, etc.

Land grant

Buildings and Structures

Buildings

School

Church

Cemetery — cem

Barn and warehouse

Wells (non-water) — oil — gas

Open-pit mine, quarry, or prospect

Tunnel

Benchmark — BM 8025

National Park

Campsite

Bridge

Roads and Railroads

Divided highway

Road

Trail

Railroad

Geologic Map Symbols

Sedimentary Rocks

Breccia

Conglomerate

Dolomite

Limestone

Mudstone

Sandstone

Siltstone

Shale

Igneous and Metamorphic Rocks

Extrusive

Intrusive

Metamorphic

Features

River

Water well — water

Spring

Lake

Glacier

Contour Map

This map is used in the chapter lab for the chapter entitled “Models of the Earth.”

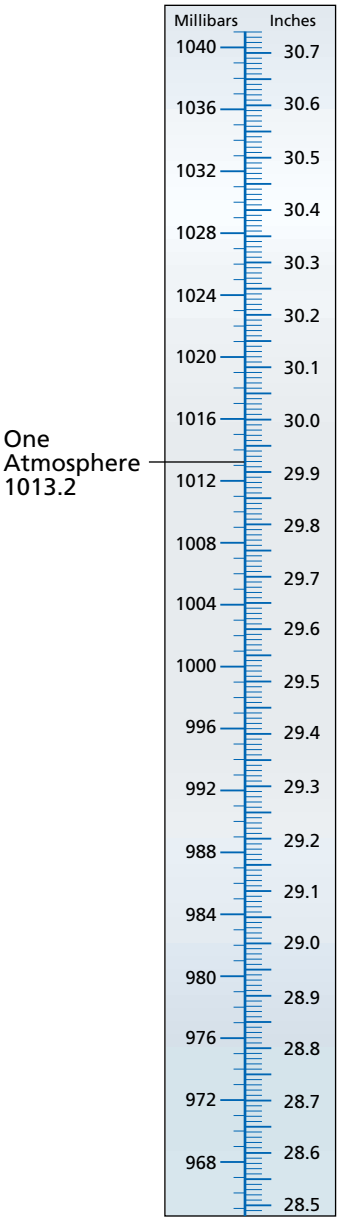
Humidity and Air Pressure

The Relative Humidity table below is used in the chapter lab for the chapter entitled "Water in the Atmosphere." The Barometric Conversion Scale is used in the Long-Term Project entitled "Correlating Weather Variables" in the Appendix.

Relative Humidity (%)

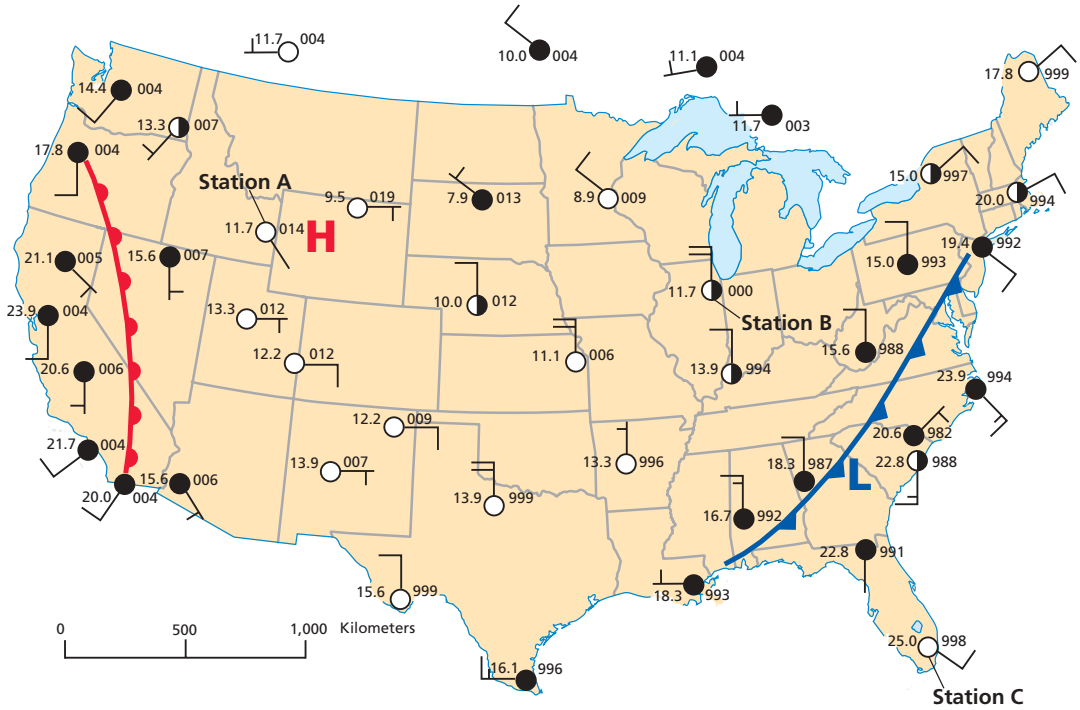
Dry-bulb temperature (°C)	Difference in temperature (°C)									
	1.0	2.0	3.0	4.0	5.0	6.0	7.0	8.0	9.0	10.0
10	88	77	66	55	44	34	24	15	6	—
11	89	78	67	56	46	36	27	18	9	—
12	89	78	68	58	48	39	29	21	12	—
13	89	79	69	59	50	41	32	23	15	7
14	90	79	70	60	51	42	34	26	18	10
15	90	80	71	61	53	44	36	27	20	13
16	90	81	71	63	54	46	38	30	23	15
17	90	81	72	64	55	47	40	32	25	18
18	91	82	73	65	57	49	41	34	27	20
19	91	82	74	65	58	50	43	36	29	22
20	91	83	74	66	59	51	44	37	31	24
21	91	83	75	67	60	53	46	39	32	26
22	92	83	76	68	61	54	47	40	34	28
23	92	84	76	69	62	55	48	42	36	30
24	92	84	77	69	62	56	49	43	37	31
25	92	84	77	70	63	57	50	44	39	33
26	92	85	78	71	64	58	51	46	40	34
27	92	85	78	71	65	58	52	47	41	36
28	93	85	78	72	65	59	53	48	42	37
29	93	86	79	72	66	60	54	49	43	38
30	93	86	79	73	67	61	55	50	44	39
31	93	86	80	73	67	61	56	51	45	40
32	93	86	80	74	68	62	57	51	46	41
33	93	87	80	74	68	63	57	52	47	42
34	93	87	81	75	69	63	58	53	48	43
35	94	87	81	75	69	64	59	54	49	44
36	94	87	81	75	70	64	59	54	50	45
37	94	87	82	76	70	65	60	55	51	46
38	94	88	82	76	71	66	60	56	51	47
39	94	88	82	77	71	66	61	57	52	48
40	94	88	82	77	72	67	62	57	53	48

Barometric Conversion Scale



Weather Map of the United States

This map is used in the chapter lab for the chapter entitled "Weather."



Weather Map Symbols

This chart is used in the Long-Term Project entitled "Weather Forecasting."

Cloud cover (fraction of sky covered)	Clear	$\frac{1}{8}$	Scattered	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{4}{8}$	
	$\frac{5}{8}$	Broken	$\frac{7}{8}$	Overcast	Obscured	No data
Wind speed (knots)	Calm	1 to 2	3 to 7	8 to 12	13 to 17	
	18 to 22	23 to 27	48 to 52	73 to 77	103 to 107	
Wind direction	North	Northeast	East	Southeast		
	South	Southwest	West	Northwest		
Weather conditions	Drizzle	Fog	Hail	Haze	Rain	Shower
	Freezing rain	Smoke	Snow	Thunderstorm	Hurricane	Tropical storm

Solar System Data

Notes

The **semimajor axis** is the average distance between an object and its primary (the body the object revolves around).

Surface gravity indicated for the gas giants is calculated for the altitude at which the atmospheric pressure equals 1 bar.

Rotation period and **orbital period** are sidereal measurements (relative to the stars, not the sun).

* This value indicates distance from the sun in AU.

† This value represents the rate of rotation at the sun's equator. The sun displays differential rotation; in other words, it rotates faster at its equator than at its poles.

R This value indicates retrograde rotation or retrograde revolution.

	Sun	Mercury	Venus	Earth	Mars	Jupiter	Saturn	Uranus	Neptune	Pluto
Mass (10^{24} kg)	1,989,100	0.33	4.87	5.97	0.642	1,899	568	86.8	102	0.0125
Diameter (km)	1,390,000	4,879	12,104	12,756	6,794	142,984	120,536	51,118	49,528	2,390
Density (kg/m^3)	1,408	5,427	5,243	5,515	3,933	1,326	687	1,270	1,638	1,750
Surface gravity (m/s^2)	274	3.7	8.9	9.8	3.7	23.1	9	8.7	11	0.6
Escape velocity (km/s)	617.7	4.3	10.4	11.2	5	59.5	35.5	21.3	23.5	1.1
Rotation period (h)	609.12	1,407.6	5,832.5 R	23.9	24.6	9.9	10.7	17.2 R	16.1	153.3 R
Length of day (hours)	609.6†	4,222.6	2,802	24	24.7	9.9	10.7	17.2	16.1	153.3 R
Semimajor axis (10^6 km)	N/A	57.9	108.2	149.6	227.9	778.6	1,433.5	2,872.5	4,495.1	5,870
Perihelion (10^6 km)	N/A	46	107.5	147.1	206.6	740.5	1,352.6	2,741.3	4,444.5	4,435
Aphelion (10^6 km)	N/A	69.8	108.9	152.1	249.2	816.6	1,514.5	3,003.6	4,545.7	7,304.3
Orbital period (days)	N/A	88	224.7	365.2	687	4,331	10,747	30,589	59,800	90,588
Orbital velocity (km/s)	N/A	47.9	35	29.8	24.1	13.1	9.7	6.8	5.4	4.7
Orbital inclination (degrees)	N/A	7	3.4	0	1.9	1.3	2.5	0.8	1.8	17.2
Orbital eccentricity	N/A	0.205	0.007	0.017	0.094	0.049	0.057	0.046	0.011	0.244
Axial tilt (degrees)	7.25	0.01	2.6	23.5	25.2	3.1	26.7	82.2	28.3	57.5
Mean surface temperature (°C)	6,073	167	464	15	–65	–110	–140	–195	–200	–225
Global magnetic field?	yes	yes	no	yes	no	yes	yes	yes	yes	unknown

	Earth's moon	Major moons of Jupiter				Major moons of Saturn			
		Io	Europa	Ganymede	Callisto	Dione	Rhea	Titan	Iapetus
Mass (10^{20} kg)	0.073	893.2	480.0	1,481.9	1,075.9	0.375	11.0	1,345.5	15.9
Diameter (km)	3,475	3,643.2	3,121.6	5,262.4	4,820.6	1,120	1,528	5,150	1,436
Density (kg/m^3)	3,340	3,530	3,010	1,940	1,830	1,500	1,240	1,881	1,020
Rotation period (days)	655.7	1.77	3.55	7.15	16.69	2.74	4.52	15.95	79.33
Semimajor axis (10^3 km)	0.384*	421.6	670.9	1,070.4	1,882.7	377.40	527.04	1,221.83	3,561.3
Orbital period (days)	27.32	1.77	3.55	7.15	16.69	2.74	4.52	15.95	79.33

	Major moons of Uranus			Major moons of Neptune		Pluto's moon	Selected asteroids		Selected comets	
	Umbriel	Titania	Oberon	Triton	Nereid	Charon	Vesta	Ceres	Chiron	Hale-Bopp
Mass (10^{20} kg)	11.7	35.2	30.1	214	0.2	19	3	8.7	—	—
Diameter (km)	1,169	1,578	1,523	2,707	340	1,186	530	960 × 932	—	—
Density (kg/m^3)	1,400	1,710	1,630	2,050	1,000	2,000	—	—	—	—
Rotation period	4.14 days	8.71 days	13.46 days	5.87 days R	unknown	6.39 days	5.342 h	9.075 h	—	—
Semimajor axis (10^3 km)	266.30	435.91	583.52	354.76	5,513.4	19,600	2.362 *	2.767 *	13.7 *	250 *
Orbital period	4.14 days	8.71 days	13.46 days	5.87 days R	360.14 days	6.39 days	3.63 y	4.60 y	50.7 y	4,000 y

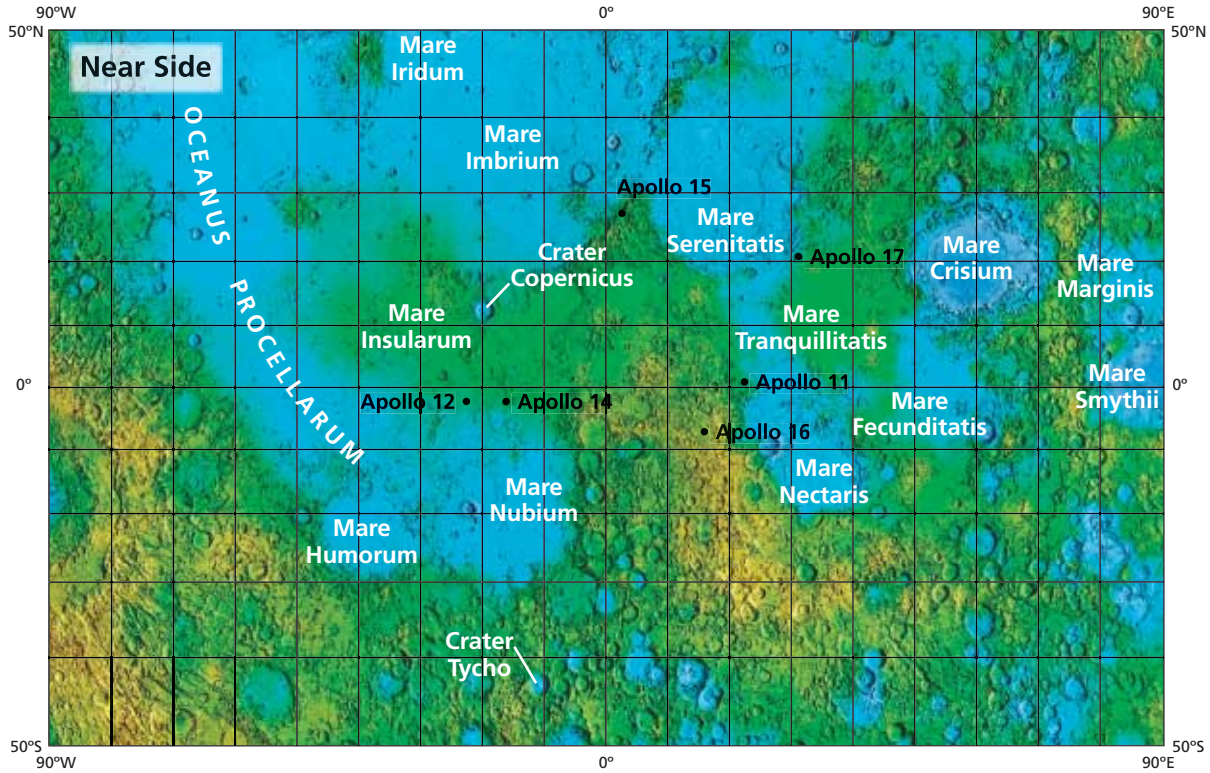
Topographic Provinces of North America

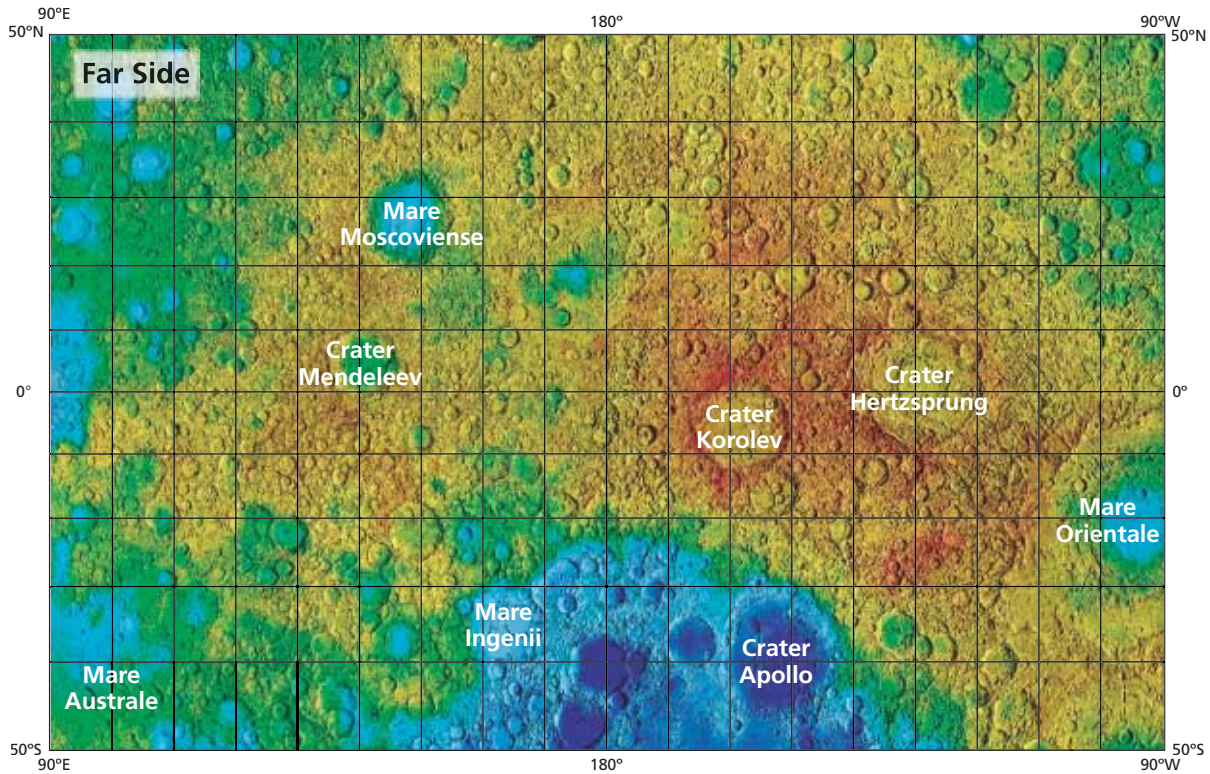
Geologic Map of North America

Mineral and Energy Resources of North America

Fossil Fuel Deposits of North America

Topographic Maps of the Moon





● Apollo landing sites

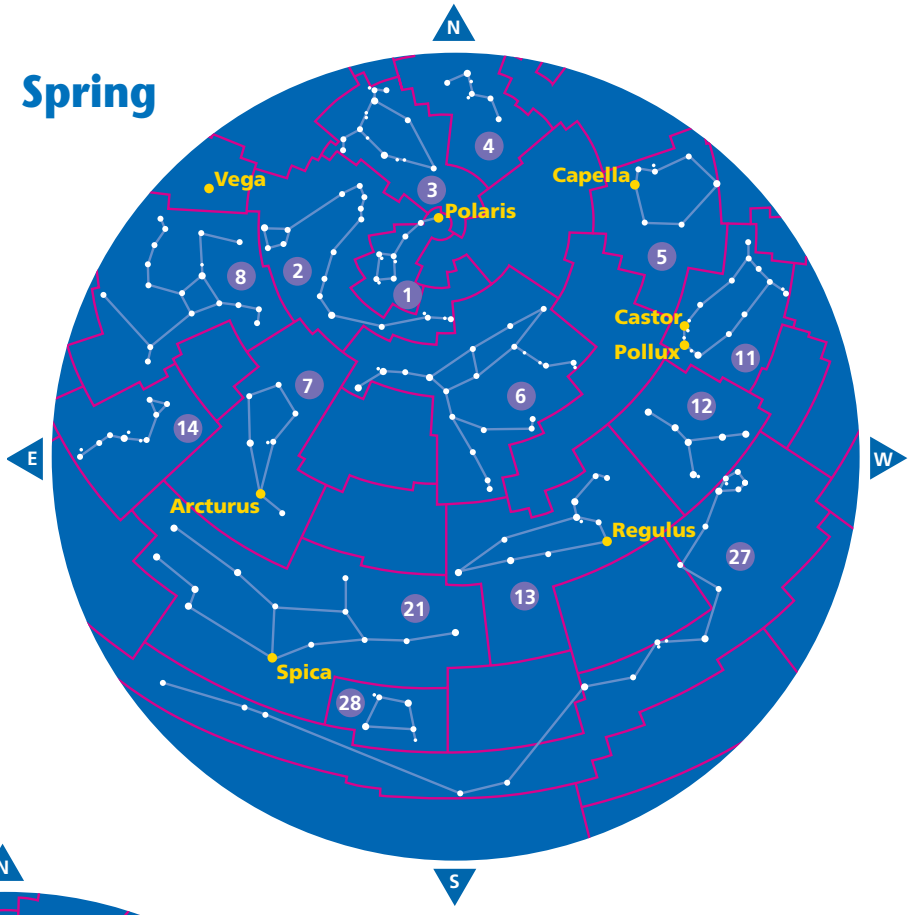
-9,900 -8,000 -6,000 -4,000 -2,000 0 2,000 4,000 6,000 8,200 METERS

Color-coded topography key

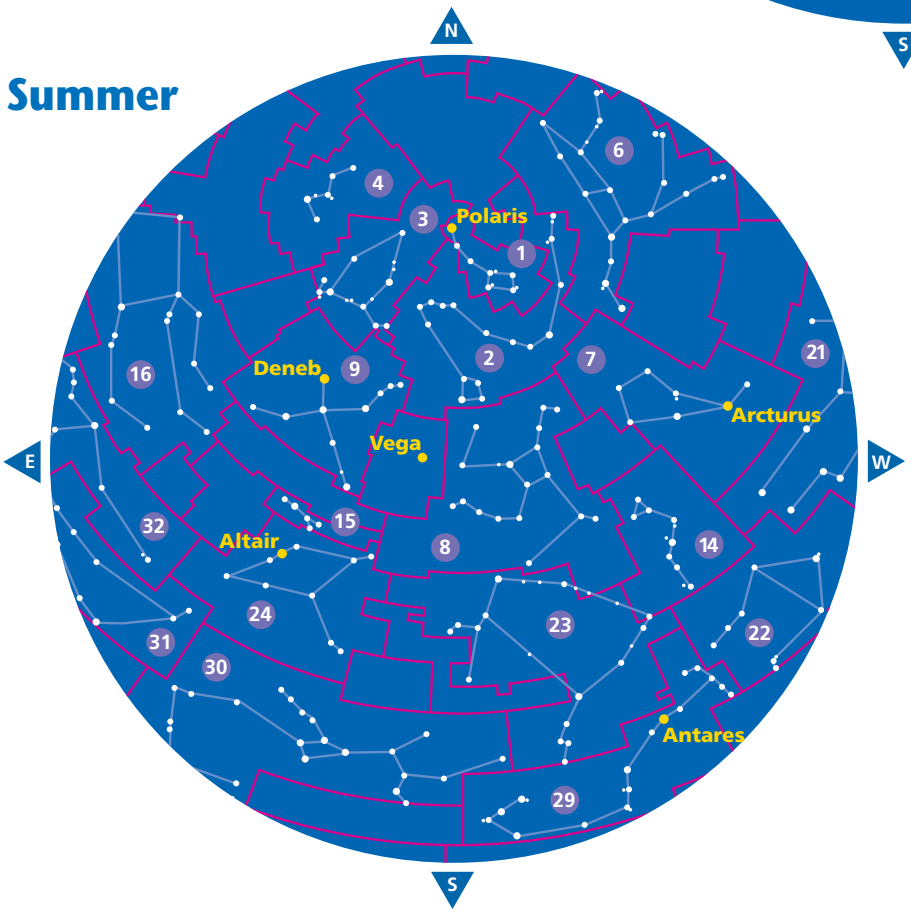
REFERENCE MAPS

Star Charts for the Northern Hemisphere

Spring

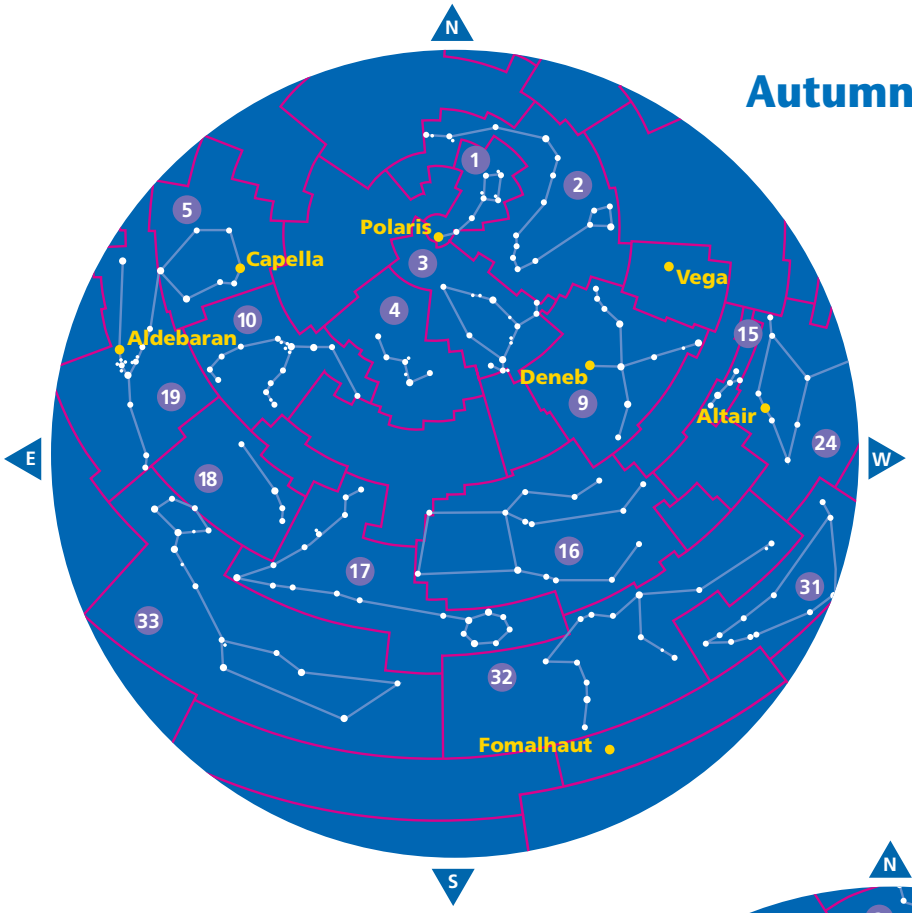


Summer

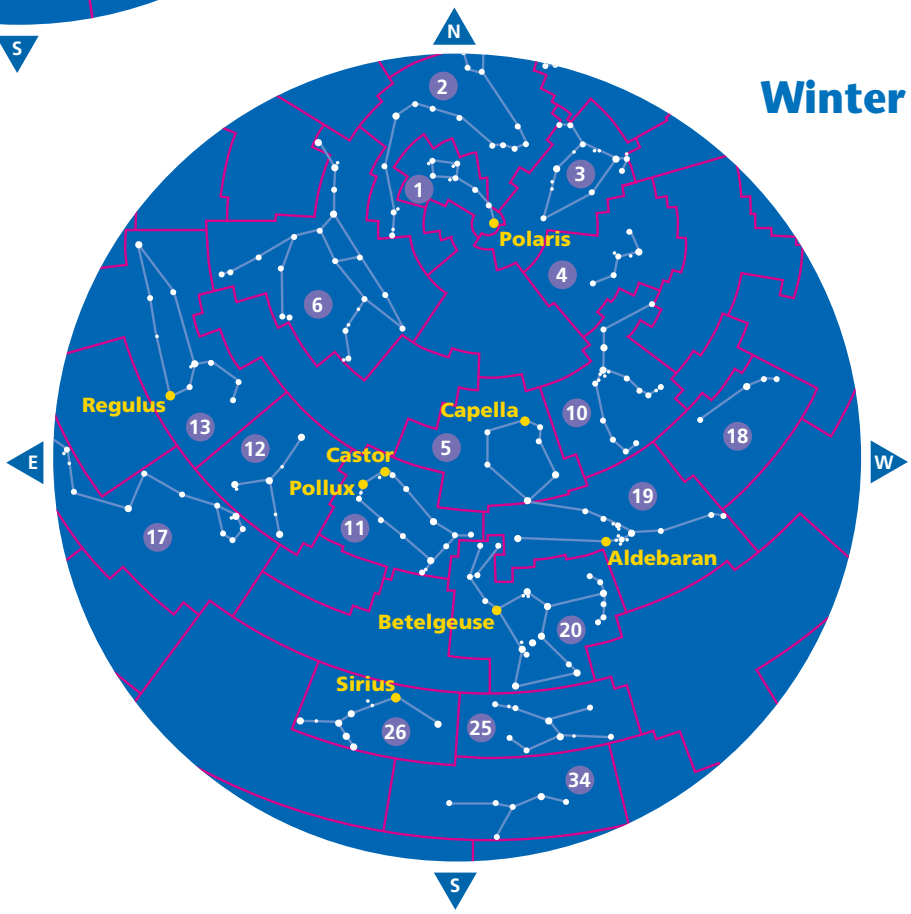


Constellations	
1	Ursa Minor
2	Draco
3	Cepheus
4	Cassiopeia
5	Auriga
6	Ursa Major
7	Boötes
8	Hercules
9	Cygnus
10	Perseus
11	Gemini
12	Cancer
13	Leo
14	Serpens
15	Sagitta
16	Pegasus
17	Pisces

Autumn



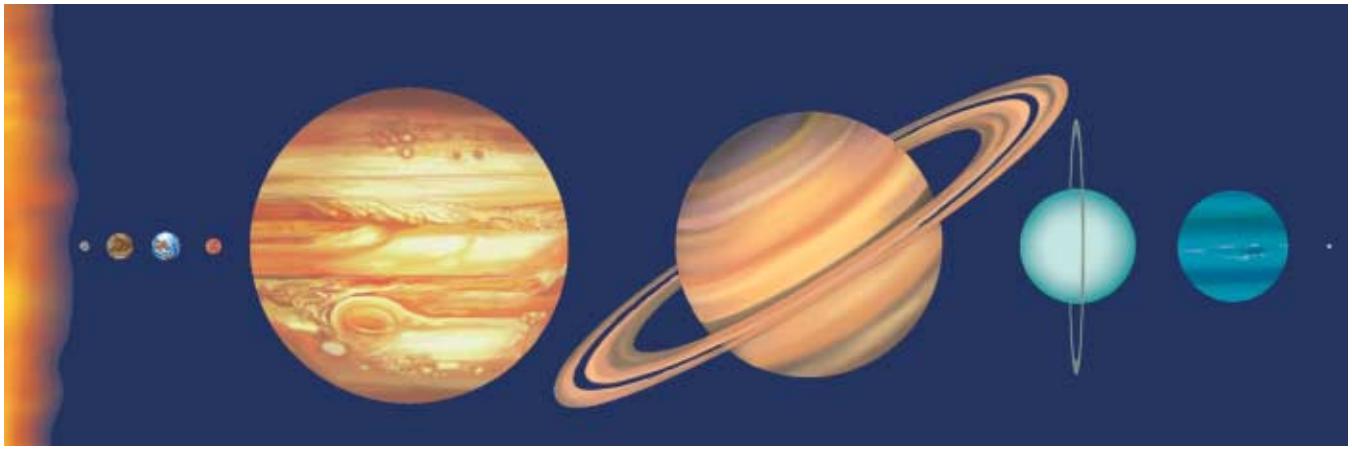
Winter

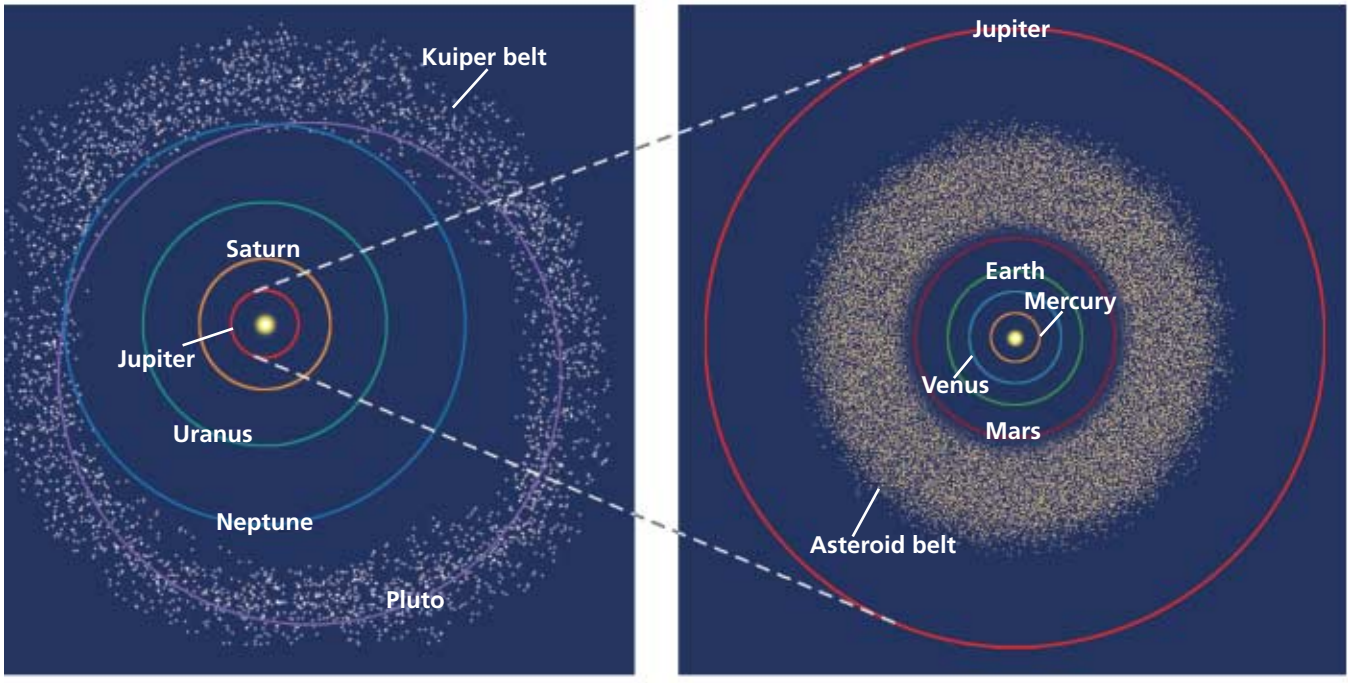


Constellations	
18	Aries
19	Taurus
20	Orion
21	Virgo
22	Libra
23	Ophiuchus
24	Aquila
25	Lepus
26	Canis Major
27	Hydra
28	Corvus
29	Scorpius
30	Sagittarius
31	Capricornus
32	Aquarius
33	Cetus
34	Columba

Maps of the Solar System

The diagram at top shows the relative sizes of the nine planets. The order of the planets from the sun is the following: Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto. The diagrams at bottom show the orbits of the planets around the sun.





READING CHECK ANSWERS

Chapter 1 Introduction to Earth Science

Section 1

Page 7: The development of telescopes, satellites, and space probes has greatly expanded astronomers' understanding of the universe.

Section 2

Page 10: Observations may lead to interesting scientific questions and may help scientists formulate reasonable and testable hypotheses.

Page 13: Answers may vary but should include three of the following types of models: physical models, graphic models, conceptual models, computer models, and mathematical models.

Page 14: Scientists present the results of their work at professional meetings and in scientific journals.

Chapter 2 Earth as a System

Section 1

Page 28: Indirect observations are the only means available for exploring Earth's interior at depths too great to be reached by drilling.

Section 2

Page 32: Dust and rock come to Earth from space, while hydrogen atoms from the atmosphere enter space from Earth.

Page 34: An energy budget is the total distribution of energy to, from, and between Earth's various spheres.

Page 36: soil and plants

Section 3

Page 40: The amount of matter and energy in an ecosystem can supply a population of a given size, and no larger. This maximum population is the carrying capacity of the ecosystem.

Chapter 3 Models of the Earth

Section 1

Page 54: because the equator is the only parallel that divides Earth into halves

Section 2

Page 58: Because both the parallels and the meridians are equally spaced straight lines on a cylindrical projection, the parallels and meridians form a grid.

Page 61: by using a graphic scale, or a printed line divided into proportional parts that represent units of measure; a fractional scale, in which a ratio shows how distance on Earth relates to distance on a map; or a verbal scale, which expresses scale in sentence form

Section 3

Page 65: Water moves from areas of higher elevation to areas of lower elevation. Because the V shape points toward higher elevation, it points upstream.

Page 67: Scientists create soil maps to classify, map, and describe soils.

Chapter 4 Earth Chemistry

Section 1

Page 83: The atomic number is the number of protons in an atom's nucleus. The mass number is the sum of the number of protons and the number of neutrons in an atom. The atomic mass unit is used to express the mass of subatomic particles or atoms.

Section 2

Page 89: Atoms form chemical bonds by transferring electrons or by sharing electrons.

Page 91: The oxygen atom has a larger and more positively charged nucleus than the hydrogen atoms do. As a result, the oxygen nucleus pulls the electrons from the hydrogen atoms closer to it than the hydrogen nuclei pull the shared electrons from the oxygen. This unequal attraction forms a polar-covalent bond.

Chapter 5 Minerals of Earth's Crust

Section 1

Page 105: Nonsilicate minerals never contain compounds of silicon bonded to oxygen.

Page 106: The building block of the silicate crystalline structure is a four-sided structure known as the *silicon-oxygen tetrahedron*, which is one silicon atom surrounded by four oxygen atoms.

Section 2

Page 111: The strength and geometric arrangement of the bonds between the atoms that make up a mineral's internal structure determines the hardness of a mineral.

Page 113: Chatoyancy is the silky appearance of some minerals in reflected light. Asterism is the appearance of a six-sided star when a mineral reflects light.

Chapter 6 Rocks

Section 1

Page 127: As magma cools and solidifies, minerals crystallize out of the magma in a specific order that depends on their melting points.

Section 2

Page 131: Fine-grained igneous rock forms mainly from magma that cools rapidly; coarse-grained igneous rock forms mainly from magma that cools more slowly.

Page 133: A batholith is an intrusive structure that covers an area of at least 100 km^2. A stock covers an area of less than 100 km^2.

Section 3

Page 137: Three groups of clastic sedimentary rock are conglomerates and breccias, sandstones, and shales.

Page 139: Graded bedding is a type of stratification in which different sizes and types of sediments settle to different levels.

Section 4

Page 142: The high pressures and temperatures that result from the movements of tectonic plates may cause chemical changes in the minerals.

Chapter 7 Resources and Energy

Section 1

Page 156: Water creates ore deposits by eroding rock and releasing minerals and by carrying the mineral fragments and depositing them in streambeds.

Section 2

Page 161: Cap rock is a layer of impermeable rock at the top of an oil- or natural gas-bearing formation through which fluids cannot flow.

Page 162: As neutrons strike neighboring nuclei, the nuclei split and release additional neutrons that strike other nuclei and cause the chain to continue.

Section 3

Page 167: Answers may vary but should include three of the following: geothermal, solar, hydroelectric, and biomass.

Section 4

Page 170: The use of fossil fuels affects the environment when coal is mined from the surface, which destroys the land. When fossil fuels are burned, they affect the environment by creating air pollution.

Chapter 8 The Rock Record

Section 1

Page 186: Hutton reasoned that the extremely slow-working forces that changed the land on his farm had also slowly changed the rocks that make up Earth's crust. He concluded that large changes must happen over a period of millions of years.

Page 188: Because ripple marks form at the top of a rock layer, scientists can use the orientation of the ripple marks to determine which direction was "up" when the rock layers formed.

Section 2

Page 192: Varves are like tree rings in that varves are laid down each year. Thus, counting varves can reveal the age of sedimentary deposits.

Page 195: An isotope that has an extremely long half-life will not show significant or measurable changes in a young rock. In a very old rock, an isotope that has a short half-life may have decayed to the point at which too little of the isotope is left to give an accurate age measurement. So, the estimated age of the rock must be correlated to the dating method used.

Section 3

Page 199: A trace fossil is fossilized evidence of past animal movement, such as tracks, footprints, borings, or burrows, that can provide information about prehistoric life.

Chapter 9 A View of Earth's Past

Section 1

Page 211: You would find fossils of extinct animals in older layers of a geologic column.

Section 2

Page 216: Earth is approximately 4.6 billion years old.

Page 218: Answers may vary but should include three of the following: trilobites, brachiopods, jellyfish, worms, snails, and sponges.

Section 3

Page 222: Answers may vary but could include *Archaeopteryx*, pterosaurs, *Apatosaurus*, and *Stegosaurus*.

Page 225: During ice ages, water from the ocean was frozen as ice, so the amount of liquid water in the seas decreased and sea level fell.

Chapter 10 Plate Tectonics

Section 1

Page 241: Many scientists rejected Wegener's hypothesis because the mechanism that Wegener suggested was easily disproved by geologic evidence.

Page 243: New sea floor forms as magma rises to fill the rift that forms when two plates pull apart at a divergent boundary.

Page 245: The symmetrical magnetic patterns in sea-floor rocks show that rock formed at one place (at a ridge) and then broke apart and moved away from the center in opposite directions.

Section 2

Page 248: Scientists use the locations of earthquakes, volcanoes, trenches, and mid-ocean ridges to outline tectonic plates.

Page 250: Collisions at convergent boundaries can happen between two oceanic plates, between two continental plates, or between one oceanic plate and one continental plate.

Page 253: When denser lithosphere sinks into the asthenosphere, the asthenosphere must move out of the way. As the asthenosphere moves, it drags or pushes on other parts of the lithosphere, which causes movement.

Section 3

Page 256: As a plate subducts beneath another plate, islands and other land features on the subducting plate are scraped off the subducting plate and become part of the overriding plate.

Page 259: The continents Africa, South America, Antarctica, and Australia formed from Gondwanaland. The subcontinent of India was also part of Gondwanaland.

Chapter 11 Deformation of the Crust

Section 1

Page 273: Tension and shear stress can both pull rock apart.

Page 275: limbs and hinges

Page 277: A thrust fault is a type of reverse fault in which the fault plane is at a low angle relative to the surface.

Section 2

Page 281: The Himalayas are growing taller because the two plates are still colliding and causing further compression of the rock, which further uplifts the mountains.

Page 283: Answers may include three of the following: folded mountains, fault-block mountains, dome mountains, and volcanic mountains.

Chapter 12 Earthquakes

Section 1

Page 297: Rayleigh waves cause the ground to move in an elliptical, rolling motion. Love waves cause rock to move side-to-side and perpendicular to the direction the waves are traveling.

Page 298: The speed of seismic waves changes as they pass through different layers of Earth.

Section 2

Page 303: Moment magnitude is more accurate for larger earthquakes than the Richter scale is. Moment magnitude is directly related to rock properties and so is more closely related to the cause of the earthquake than the Richter scale is.

Section 3

Page 307: Scientists think that stress on a fault builds up to a critical point and is then released as an earthquake. Seismic gaps are areas in which no earthquakes have happened in a long period of time and thus are likely to be under a high amount of stress.

Chapter 13 Volcanoes

Section 1

Page 321: The denser plate of oceanic lithosphere subducts beneath the less dense plate of continental lithosphere.

Page 323: As the lithosphere moves over the mantle plume, older volcanoes move away from the mantle plume. A new hot spot forms in the lithosphere above the mantle plume as a new volcano begins to form.

Section 2

Page 326: The faster the rate of flow is and the higher the gas content is, the more broken up and rough the resulting cooled lava will be.

Page 329: A caldera may form when a magma chamber empties or when large amounts of magma are discharged, causing the ground to collapse.

Chapter 14 Weathering and Erosion

Section 1

Page 344: Two types of mechanical weathering are ice wedging and abrasion. Ice wedging is caused by water that seeps into cracks in rock and freezes. When water freezes, it expands and creates pressure on the rock, which widens and deepens cracks. Abrasion is the grinding away of rock surfaces by other rocks or sand particles. Abrasive agents may be carried by gravity, water, and wind.

Page 346: Two effects of chemical weathering are changes in the chemical composition and changes in the physical appearance of a rock.

Section 2

Page 350: Fractures and joints in a rock increase surface area and allow weathering to occur more rapidly.

Section 3

Page 355: Large amounts of rainfall and high temperatures cause thick soils to form in both tropical and temperate climates. Tropical soils have thin A horizons because of the continuous leaching of topsoil. Temperate soils have three thick layers, because leaching of the A horizon in temperate climates is much less than leaching of the A horizon in tropical climates.

Section 4

Page 358: Dust storms may form during droughts when the soil is made dry and loose by lack of moisture and wind-caused sheet erosion carries it away in clouds of dust. If all of the topsoil is removed, the remaining subsoil will not contain enough nutrients to raise crops.

Page 361: Landslides are masses of loose rock combined with soil that suddenly fall down a slope. A rockfall consists of rock falling from a steep cliff.

Page 363: When a mountain is no longer being uplifted, weathering and erosion wear down its jagged peaks to low, featureless surfaces called *peneplains*.

Chapter 15 River Systems

Section 1

Page 376: Precipitation is any form of water that falls to Earth from the clouds, including rain, snow, sleet, and hail.

Section 2

Page 381: A river that has meanders probably has a low gradient.

Section 3

Page 385: Floods can be controlled indirectly through forest and soil conservation measures that reduce or prevent runoff, or directly by building artificial structures, such as dams, levees, and floodways, to redirect water flow.

Chapter 16 Groundwater

Section 1

Page 399: The two zones of groundwater are the zone of saturation and the zone of aeration.

Page 400: The depth of a water table depends on topography, aquifer permeability, the amount of rainfall, and the rate at which humans use the groundwater.

Page 403: Ordinary springs occur where the ground surface drops below the water table. An artesian spring occurs where groundwater flows to the surface through natural cracks in the overlying cap rock.

Section 2

Page 407: A natural bridge may form when two sinkholes form close to each other. The bridge is the uncollapsed rock between the sinkholes.

Chapter 17 Glaciers

Section 1

Page 420: Continental glaciers exist only in Greenland and Antarctica.

Page 424: A moving glacier forms a cirque by pulling blocks of rock from the floor and walls of a valley and leaving a bowl-shaped depression.

Section 2

Page 427: A drumlin is a long, low, tear-shaped mound of till.

Page 428: Eskers form when meltwater from receding continental glaciers flows through ice tunnels and deposits long, winding ridges of gravel and sand.

Section 3

Page 432: The sea level was up to 140 m lower than it is now.

Chapter 18 Erosion by Wind and Waves

Section 1

Page 446: Moisture makes soil heavier, so the soil sticks and is more difficult to move. Therefore, erosion happens faster in dry climates.

Page 448: Barchan dunes are crescent shaped; transverse dunes form linear ridges.

Section 2

Page 452: Answers should include three of the following: sea cliffs, sea caves, sea arches, sea stacks, wave-cut terraces, and wave-built terraces.

Section 3

Page 457: As sea levels rise over a flat coastal plain, the shoreline moves inland and isolates dunes from the old shoreline. These dunes become barrier islands.

Chapter 19 Ocean Basins

Section 1

Page 472: Oceanographers study the physical characteristics, chemical composition, and life-forms of the ocean.

Section 2

Page 476: Trenches; broad, flat plains; mountain ranges; and submerged volcanoes are part of the deep-ocean basins.

Section 3

Page 481: When chemical reactions take place in the ocean, dissolved substances can crystallize to form nodules that settle to the ocean floor.

Chapter 20 Ocean Water

Section 1

Page 495: Dissolved solids enter the oceans from the chemical weathering of rock on land, from volcanic eruptions, and from chemical reactions between sea water and newly formed sea-floor rocks.

Page 497: Ocean surface temperatures are affected by the amount of solar energy an area receives and by the movement of water in the ocean.

Page 499: Ocean water contains dissolved solids (mostly salts) that add mass to a given volume of water. The large amount of dissolved solids in ocean water makes ocean water denser than fresh water.

Section 2

Page 503: Most marine life is found in the sublittoral zone. Life in this zone is continuously submerged, but waters are still shallow enough to allow sunlight to penetrate.

Section 3

Page 507: Aquaculture provides a reliable, economical source of food. However, aquatic farms are susceptible to pollution and they may become local sources of pollution.

Chapter 21 Movements of the Ocean

Section 1

Page 521: Because no continents interrupt the flow of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current, also called the *West Wind Drift*, it completely encircles Antarctica and crosses three major oceans. All other surface currents are deflected and divided when they meet a continental barrier.

Page 523: Antarctic Bottom Water is very cold. It also has a high salinity. The extreme cold and high salinity combine to make the water extremely dense.

Section 2

Page 526: Because waves receive energy from wind that pushes against the surface of the water, the amount of energy decreases as the depth of water increases. As a result, the diameter of the water molecules' circular path also decreases.

Page 528: Contact with the ocean floor causes friction, which slows down the bottom of the wave but not the top of the wave. Because of the difference in speed between the top and bottom of the wave, the top gets farther ahead of the bottom until the wave becomes unstable and falls over.

Section 3

Page 532: When the tidal range is small, the sun and the moon are at right angles to each other relative to Earth's orbit.

Chapter 22 The Atmosphere

Section 1

Page 548: Transpiration increases the amount of water vapor in the atmosphere.

Page 551: An aneroid barometer contains a sealed metal container that has a partial vacuum.

Page 553: The lower region of the thermosphere is called the *ionosphere*.

Section 2

Page 559: Deserts are colder at night than other areas are because the air in deserts contains little water vapor that can absorb heat during the day and release heat slowly at night.

Section 3

Page 562: They flow in opposite directions from each other, and they occur at different latitudes.

Chapter 23 Water in the Atmosphere

Section 1

Page 576: When the air is very dry and the temperature is below freezing, ice and snow change directly into water vapor by sublimation.

Page 578: Dew is liquid moisture that condenses from air on cool objects when the air is nearly saturated and the temperature drops. Frost is water vapor that condenses as ice crystals onto a cool surface directly from the air when the dew point is below freezing.

Section 2

Page 582: The source of heat that warms the air and leads to cloud formation is solar energy that is reradiated as heat by Earth's surface. As the process continues, latent heat released by the condensation may allow the clouds to expand beyond the condensation level.

Page 585: because cirrus clouds form at very high altitudes where air temperature is low

Section 3

Page 589: Doppler radar measures the location, direction of movement, and intensity of precipitation.

Chapter 24 Weather

Section 1

Page 603: a continental tropical air mass

Section 2

Page 607: The air of an anticyclone sinks and flows outward from a center of high pressure. The air of a midlatitude cyclone rotates toward the rising air of a central, low-pressure region.

Page 609: over warm tropical seas

Section 3

Page 612: A barometer is used to measure atmospheric pressure.

Section 4

Page 617: Areas of precipitation are marked by using colors or symbols.

Page 618: Meteorologists compare computer models because different models are better at predicting different weather variables. If information from two or more models matches, scientists can be more confident of their predictions.

Chapter 25 Climate

Section 1

Page 633: Waves, currents, and other water motions continually replace warm surface waters with cooler water from the ocean depths, which keeps the surface temperature of the water from increasing rapidly.

Page 634: The temperature of land increases faster than that of water does because the specific heat of land is lower than that of water, and thus the land requires less energy to heat up than the water does.

Section 2

Page 638: marine west coast, humid continental, and humid subtropical

Section 3

Page 642: Scientists use computer models to incorporate as much data as possible to sort out the complex variables that influence climate and to make predictions about climate.

Page 644: Climate change influences humans, plants, and animals. It also affects nearby climates, sea level, and precipitation rates.

Chapter 26 Studying Space

Section 1

Page 661: The only kind of electromagnetic radiation the human eye can detect is visible light.

Page 663: Images produced by refracting telescopes are subject to distortion because of the way different colors of visible light are focused at different distances from the lens and because of weight limitations on the objective lens.

Page 664: Scientists launch spacecraft into orbit to detect radiation screened out by Earth's atmosphere and to avoid light pollution and other atmospheric distortions.

Section 2

Page 669: Constellations provide two kinds of evidence of Earth's motion. As Earth rotates, the stars appear to change position during the night. As Earth revolves around the sun, Earth's night sky faces a different part of the universe. As a result, different constellations appear in the night sky as the seasons change.

Page 671: Because time zones are based on Earth's rotation, as you travel west, you eventually come to a location where, on one side of time zone border, the calendar moves ahead one day. The purpose of the International Dateline is to locate the border so that the transition would affect the least number of people. So that it will affect the least number of people, the International Dateline is in the middle of the Pacific Ocean, instead of on a continent.

Page 672: Daylight savings time is an adjustment that is made to standard time by setting clocks ahead one hour to take advantage of longer hours of daylight in the summer months and to save energy.

Chapter 27 Planets of the Solar System

Section 1

Page 687: Unlike the other outer planets, Pluto is very small and is composed of rock and frozen gas, instead of thick layers of gases.

Page 689: Green plants release free oxygen as part of photosynthesis, which caused the concentration of oxygen gas in the atmosphere to gradually increase.

Section 2

Page 692: An ellipse is a closed curve whose shape is defined by two points inside the curve. An ellipse looks like an oval.

Section 3

Page 697: Answers may vary but should address differences in distance from the sun, density, atmospheric pressure and density, and tectonics.

Page 699: Martian volcanoes are larger than volcanoes on Earth because Mars has no moving tectonic plates. Magma sources remain in the same spot for millions of years and produce volcanic material that builds the volcanic cone higher and higher.

Section 4

Page 702: When Jupiter formed, it did not have enough mass for nuclear fusion to begin.

Page 704: Saturn and Jupiter are made almost entirely of hydrogen and helium and have rocky-iron cores, ring systems, many satellites, rapid rotational periods, and bands of colored clouds.

Page 707: The Kuiper belt is located beyond the orbit of Neptune.

Chapter 28 Minor Bodies of the Solar System

Section 1

Page 720: Answers should include two of the following features: maria, highlands, craters, ridges, and rilles.

Page 722: The crust of the far side of the moon is thicker than the crust of the near side is. The crust of the far side also consists mainly of mountainous terrain and has only a few small maria.

Section 2

Page 726: The far side of the moon is never visible from Earth, because the moon's rotation and the moon's revolution around Earth take the same amount of time.

Page 728: During a total eclipse, the entire disk of the sun is blocked, and the outer layers of the sun become visible. During an annular eclipse, the disk of the sun is never completely blocked out, so the sun is too bright for observers on Earth to see the outer layers of the sun's atmosphere.

Page 731: When the lighted part of the moon is larger than a semicircle but the visible part of the moon is shrinking, the phase is called *waning gibbous*. When only a sliver of the near side is visible, the phase is a waning crescent.

Section 3

Page 735: Io's surface is covered with many active volcanoes. Europa's surface is covered by an enormous ice sheet. Ganymede is the largest moon in the solar system and has a strong magnetic field. Callisto's surface is heavily cratered.

Page 737: Charon is almost half the size of the planet it orbits. Charon's orbital period is the same length as Pluto's day, so only one side of Pluto always faces the moon.

Section 4

Page 740: The most common type is made mostly of silicate rock. Other asteroids are made mostly of metals such as iron and nickel. The third type is composed mostly of carbon-based materials.

Page 743: A meteoroid is a rocky body that travels through space. When a meteoroid enters Earth's atmosphere and begins to burn up, the meteoroid becomes a meteor.

Chapter 29 The Sun

Section 1

Page 757: Einstein's equation helped scientists understand the source of the sun's energy. The equation explained how the sun could produce huge amounts of energy without burning up.

Page 759: The sun's atmosphere consists of the photosphere, the chromosphere, and the corona.

Section 2

Page 763: Coronal mass ejections generate sudden disturbances in Earth's magnetic field. The high-energy particles that circulate during these storms can damage satellites, cause power blackouts, and interfere with radio communications.

Chapter 30 Stars, Galaxies, and the Universe

Section 1

Page 777: Polaris is almost exactly above the pole of Earth's rotational axis, so Polaris moves only slightly around the pole during one rotation of Earth.

Page 778: Starlight is shifted toward the red end of the spectrum when the star is moving away from the observer.

Section 2

Page 783: The forces balance each other and keep the star in equilibrium. As gravity increases the pressure on the matter within a star, the rate of fusion increases. This increase in fusion causes a rise in gas pressure. As a result, the energy from the increased fusion and gas pressure generates outward pressure that balances the force of gravity.

Page 784: Giants and supergiants appear in the upper-right part of the H-R diagram.

Page 787: As supergiants collapse because of gravitational forces, fusion begins and continues until the supply of fuel is used up. The core begins to collapse under its own gravity and causes energy to transfer to the outer layers of the star. The transfer of energy to the outer layers causes the explosion.

Section 3

Page 790: More than 50% of all stars are in multiple-star systems.

Section 4

Page 794: All matter and energy in the early universe were compressed into a small volume at an extremely high temperature until the temperature cooled and all of the matter and energy were forced outward in all directions.

GLOSSARY/GLOSARIO

Terms and their definitions are listed in English in alphabetical order in the first column. The second column lists the equivalent term in Spanish.

A

abrasion the grinding and wearing away of rock surfaces through the mechanical action of other rock or sand particles (344)	**abrasion/abrasión** proceso por el cual las super-ficies de las rocas se muelen o desgastan por medio de la acción mecánica de otras rocas y partículas de arena (344)
absolute age the numeric age of an object or event, often stated in years before the present, as established by an absolute-dating process, such as radiometric dating (191)	**absolute age/edad absoluta** la edad numérica de un objeto o suceso, que suele expresarse en cantidad de años antes del presente, determinada por un proceso de datación absoluta, tal como la datación radiométrica (191)
absolute humidity the mass of water vapor per unit volume of air that contains the water vapor; usually expressed as grams of water vapor per cubic meter of air (577)	**absolute humidity/humedad absoluta** la masa de vapor de agua por unidad de volumen de aire que contiene al vapor de agua; normalmente se expresa por metro cúbico de aire (577)
absolute magnitude the brightness that a star would have at a distance of 32.6 light-years from Earth (780)	**absolute magnitude/magnitud absoluta** el brillo que una estrella tendría a una distancia de 32.6 años luz de la Tierra (780)
abyssal plain a large, flat, almost level area of the deep-ocean basin (477)	**abyssal plain/llanura abisal** un área amplia, llana y casi plana de la cuenca oceánica profunda (477)
adiabatic cooling the process by which the temperature of an air mass decreases as the air mass rises and expands (582)	**adiabatic cooling/enfriamiento adiabático** el proceso por medio del cual la temperatura de una masa de aire disminuye a medida que ésta se eleva y se expande (582)
advective cooling the process by which the temperature of an air mass decreases as the air mass moves over a cold surface (583)	**advective cooling/enfriamiento advectivo** el proceso por medio del cual la temperatura de una masa de aire disminuye a medida que ésta se mueve sobre una superficie fría (583)
air mass a large body of air throughout which temperature and moisture content are similar (601)	**air mass/masa de aire** un gran volumen de aire, cuya temperatura y cuyo contenido de humedad son similares en toda su extensión (601)
albedo the fraction of solar radiation that is reflected off the surface of an object (557)	**albedo/albedo** porcentaje de la radiación solar que la superficie de un objeto refleja (557)
alluvial fan a fan-shaped mass of rock material deposited by a stream when the slope of the land decreases sharply; for example, alluvial fans form when streams flow from mountains to flat land (383)	**alluvial fan/abanico aluvial** masa de materiales rocosos en forma de abanico, depositados por un arroyo cuando la pendiente del terreno disminuye bruscamente; por ejemplo, los abanicos aluviales se forman cuando los arroyos fluyen de una montaña a un terreno llano (383)
alpine glacier a narrow, wedge-shaped mass of ice that forms in a mountainous region and that is confined to a small area by surrounding topog-raphy; examples include valley glaciers, cirque glaciers, and piedmont glaciers (420)	**alpine glacier/glaciar alpino** una masa de hielo angosta, parecida a una cuña, que se forma en una región montañosa y que está confinada a un área pequeña por la topografía que la rodea; los glaci-ares de valle, los circos glaciares y los glaciares de pie de monte son algunos ejemplos de esto (420)

anemometer an instrument used to measure wind speed (612)	**anemometer/anemómetro** un instrumento que se usa para medir la rapidez del viento (612)
aphelion the point in the orbit of a planet at which the planet is farthest from the sun (668)	**aphelion/afelio** el punto en la órbita de un planeta en que el planeta está más lejos del Sol (668)
apogee in the orbit of a satellite, the point at which the satellite is farthest from Earth (725)	**apogee/apogeo** en la órbita de un satélite, el punto en el que el satélite está más alejado de la Tierra (725)
apparent magnitude the brightness of a star as seen from the Earth (780)	**apparent magnitude/magnitud aparente** el brillo de una estrella como se percibe desde la Tierra (780)
aquaculture the raising of aquatic plants and animals for human use or consumption (507)	**aquaculture/acuacultura** el cultivo de plantas y animales acuáticos para uso o consumo humano (507)
aquifer a body of rock or sediment that stores groundwater and allows the flow of groundwater (397)	**aquifer/acuífero** un cuerpo rocoso o sedimento que almacena agua subterránea y permite que fluya (397)
arête a sharp, jagged ridge that forms between cirques (424)	**arête/cresta** una cumbre puntiaguda e irregular que se forma entre circos glaciares (424)
artesian formation a sloping layer of permeable rock sandwiched between two layers of impermeable rock and exposed at the surface (403)	**artesian formation/formación artesiana** capa inclinada de rocas permeables que está en medio de dos capas de rocas impermeables y expuesta en la superficie (403)
asteroid a small, rocky object that orbits the sun; most asteroids are located in a band between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter (739)	**asteroid/asteroide** un objeto pequeño y rocoso que se encuentra en órbita alrededor del Sol; la mayoría de los asteroides se ubican en una banda entre las órbitas de Marte y Júpiter (739)
asthenosphere the solid, plastic layer of the mantle beneath the lithosphere; made of mantle rock that flows very slowly, which allows tectonic plates to move on top of it (29, 247)	**asthenosphere/astenosfera** la capa sólida y plástica del manto, que se encuentra debajo de la litosfera; está formada por roca del manto que fluye muy lentamente, lo cual permite que las placas tectónicas se muevan en su superficie (29, 247)
astronomical unit the average distance between the Earth and the sun; approximately 150 million kilometers (symbol, AU) (660)	**astronomical unit/unidad astronómica** la distancia promedio entre la Tierra y el Sol; aproximadamente 150 millones de kilómetros (símbolo: UA) (660)
astronomy the scientific study of the universe (7, 659)	**astronomy/astronomía** el estudio científico del universo (7, 659)
atmosphere a mixture of gases that surrounds a planet or moon (33, 547)	**atmosphere/atmósfera** una mezcla de gases que rodea un planeta o una luna (33, 547)
atmospheric pressure the force per unit area that is exerted on a surface by the weight of the atmosphere (550)	**atmospheric pressure/presión atmosférica** la fuerza por unidad de área que el peso de la atmósfera ejerce sobre una superficie (550)
atom the smallest unit of an element that maintains the chemical properties of that element (82)	**atom/átomo** la unidad más pequeña de un elemento que conserva las propiedades químicas de ese elemento (82)

aurora colored light produced by charged particles from the solar wind and from the magnetosphere that react with and excite the oxygen and nitrogen of Earth's upper atmosphere; usually seen in the sky near Earth's magnetic poles (764)	**aurora/aurora** luz de colores producida por partículas con carga del viento solar y de la magnetosfera, que reaccionan con los átomos de oxígeno y nitrógeno de la parte superior de la atmósfera de la Tierra y los excitan; normalmente se ve en el cielo cerca de los polos magnéticos de la Tierra (764)

B

barometer an instrument that measures atmospheric pressure (612)	**barometer/barómetro** un instrumento que mide la presión atmosférica (612)
barrier island a long ridge of sand or narrow island that lies parallel to the shore (457)	**barrier island/isla barrera** un largo arrecife de arena o una isla angosta ubicada paralela a la costa (457)
basal slip the process that causes the ice at the base of a glacier to melt and the glacier to slide (421)	**basal slip/deslizamiento basal** el proceso que hace que el hielo de la base de un glaciar se derrita y que éste se deslice (421)
beach an area of the shoreline that is made up of deposited sediment (453)	**beach/playa** un área de la costa que está formada por sedimento depositado (453)
benthic zone the bottom region of oceans and bodies of fresh water (503)	**benthic zone/zona bentónica** la región del fondo de los océanos y de las masas de agua dulce (503)
benthos organisms that live at the bottom of oceans or bodies of fresh water (502)	**benthos/benthos** organismos que viven en el fondo de los océanos o de las masas de agua dulce (502)
big bang theory the theory that all matter and energy in the universe was compressed into an extremely small volume that 13 billion to 15 billion years ago exploded and began expanding in all directions (794)	**big bang theory/teoría del Big Bang** la teoría que establece que toda la materia y la energía del universo estaban comprimidas en un volumen extremadamente pequeño que explotó hace aproximadamente 13 a 15 mil millones de años y empezó a expandirse en todas direcciones (794)
biomass plant material, manure, or any other or-ganic matter that is used as an energy source (167)	**biomass/biomasa** materia vegetal, estiércol o cualquier otra materia orgánica que se usa como fuente de energía (167)
biosphere the part of Earth where life exists; includes all of the living organisms on Earth (33)	**biosphere/biosferavla** parte de la Tierra donde existe la vida; abarca a todos los organismos vivos de la Tierra (33)
black hole an object so massive and dense that even light cannot escape its gravity (788)	**black hole/hoyo negro** un objeto tan masivo y denso que ni siquiera la luz puede salir de su campo gravitacional (788)
body wave in geology, a seismic wave that travels through the body of a medium (296)	**body wave/onda interna** en geología, una onda sísmica que se desplaza a través del cuerpo de un medio (296)
Bowen's reaction series the simplified pattern that illustrates the order in which minerals crystallize from cooling magma according to their chemical composition and melting point (127)	**Bowen's reaction series/serie de reacción de Bowen** el patrón simplificado que ilustra el orden en que los minerales se cristalizan a partir del magma que se enfría, de acuerdo con su composición química y punto de fusión (127)

braided stream a stream or river that is composed of multiple channels that divide and rejoin around sediment bars (382)	**braided stream/corriente anastomosada** una corriente o río compuesto por varios canales que se dividen y se vuelven a encontrar alrededor de barreras de sedimento (382)

C

caldera a large, circular depression that forms when the magma chamber below a volcano partially empties and causes the ground above to sink (329)	**caldera/caldera** una depresión grande y circular que se forma cuando se vacía parcialmente la cámara de magma que hay debajo de un volcán, lo cual hace que el suelo se hunda (329)
carbonation the conversion of a compound into a carbonate (347)	**carbonation/carbonación** la transformación de un compuesto a un carbonato (347)
carrying capacity the largest population that an environment can support at any given time (40)	**carrying capacity/capacidad de carga** la población más grande que un ambiente puede sostener en cualquier momento dado (40)
cavern a natural cavity that forms in rock as a result of the dissolution of minerals; *also* a large cave that commonly contains many smaller, connecting chambers (406)	**cavern/caverna una cavidad** natural que se forma en la roca como resultado de la disolución de minerales; *también,* una gran cueva que generalmente contiene muchas cámaras más pequeñas comunicadas entre sí (406)
cementation the process in which minerals precipitate into pore spaces between sediment grains and bind sediments together to form rock (135)	**cementation/cementación** el proceso en el cual los minerales se precipitan entre los poros de granos de sedimento y unen los sedimentos para formar rocas (135)
Cenozoic Era the current geologic era, which began 65.5 million years ago; also called the *Age of Mammals* (224)	**Cenozoic Era/Era Cenozoica** la era geológica actual, que comenzó hace 65.5 millones de años; también llamada *Edad de los Mamíferos* (224)
chemical sedimentary rock sedimentary rock that forms when minerals precipitate from a solution or settle from a suspension (136)	**chemical sedimentary rock/roca sedimentaria** química roca sedimentaria que se forma cuando los minerales precipitan a partir de una solución o se depositan a partir de una suspensión (136)
chemical weathering the process by which rocks break down as a result of chemical reactions (346)	**chemical weathering/desgaste químico** el proceso por medio del cual las rocas se fragmentan como resultado de reacciones químicas (346)
chromosphere the thin layer of the sun that is just above the photosphere and that glows a reddish color during eclipses (760)	**chromosphere/cromosfera** la delgada capa del Sol que se encuentra justo encima de la fotosfera y que resplandece con un color rojizo durante los eclipses (760)
cirque a deep and steep bowl-like depression produced by glacier erosion (424)	**cirque/circo** una depresión profunda y empinada, con forma de tazón, producida por erosión glaciar (424)
cirrus cloud a feathery cloud that is composed of ice crystals and that has the highest altitude of any cloud in the sky (585)	**cirrus cloud/nube cirro** una nube liviana formada por cristales de hielo, la cual tiene la mayor altitud de todas las nubes en el cielo (585)

clastic sedimentary rock sedimentary rock that forms when fragments of preexisting rocks are compacted or cemented together (137)	**clastic sedimentary rock/roca sedimentaria clástica** roca sedimentaria que se forma cuando los fragmentos de rocas preexistentes se unen por compactación o cementación (137)
cleavage in geology, the tendency of a mineral to split along specific planes of weakness to form smooth, flat surfaces (110)	**cleavage/exfoliación** en geología, la tendencia de un mineral a agrietarse a lo largo de planos débiles específicos y formar superficies lisas y planas (110)
climate the average weather conditions in an area over a long period of time (631)	**climate/clima** las condiciones promedio del tiempo en un área durante un largo período de tiempo (631)
climatologist a scientist who gathers data to study and compare past and present climates and to predict future climate change (641)	**climatologist/climatólogo** un científico que recopila datos para estudiar y comparar los climas del pasado y del presente y para predecir cambios climáticos en el futuro (641)
cloud a collection of small water droplets or ice crystals suspended in the air, which forms when the air is cooled and condensation occurs (581)	**cloud/nube** un conjunto de pequeñas gotitas de agua o cristales de hielo suspendidos en el aire, que se forma cuando el aire se enfría y ocurre condensación (581)
cloud seeding the process of introducing freezing nuclei or condensation nuclei into a cloud in order to cause rain to fall (590)	**cloud seeding/sembrado de nubes** el proceso de introducir núcleos congelados o núcleos de condensación en una nube para producir lluvia (590)
coalescence the formation of a larger droplet by the combination of smaller droplets (588)	**coalescence/coalescencia** la formación de una gota más grande al combinarse gotas más pequeñas (588)
cold front the front edge of a moving mass of cold air that pushes beneath a warmer air mass like a wedge (605)	**cold front/frente frío** el borde del frente de una masa de aire frío en movimiento que empuja por debajo de una masa de aire más caliente como una cuña (605)
comet a small body of ice, rock, and cosmic dust that follows an elliptical orbit around the sun and that gives off gas and dust in the form of a tail as it passes close to the sun (741)	**comet/cometa** un cuerpo pequeño formado por hielo, roca y polvo cósmico que sigue una órbita elíptica alrededor del Sol y que libera gas y polvo, los cuales forman una cola al pasar cerca del Sol (741)
compaction the process in which the volume and porosity of a sediment is decreased by the weight of overlying sediments as a result of burial beneath other sediments (135)	**compaction/compactación** el proceso en el que el volumen y la porosidad de un sedimento disminuyen por efecto del peso al quedar el sedimento enterrado debajo de otros sedimentos superpuestos (135)
compound a substance made up of atoms of two or more different elements joined by chemical bonds (87)	**compound/compuesto** una substancia formada por átomos de dos o más elementos diferentes unidos por enlaces químicos (87)
condensation the change of state from a gas to a liquid (376)	**condensation/condensación** el cambio de estado de gas a líquido (376)
condensation nucleus a solid particle in the atmos-phere that provides the surface on which water vapor condenses (581)	**condensation nucleus/núcleo de condensación** una partícula sólida en la atmósfera que proporciona la superficie en la que el vapor de agua se condensa (581)

conduction the transfer of energy as heat through a material (560)	**conduction/conducción** transferencia de energía en forma de calor a través de un material (560)
conservation the preservation and wise use of natural resources (171)	**conservation/conservación** la preservación y el uso inteligente de los recursos naturales (171)
constellation one of 88 regions into which the sky has been divided in order to describe the locations of celestial objects; a group of stars organized in a recognizable pattern (789)	**constellation/constelación** una de las 88 regiones en las que se ha dividido el cielo con el fin de describir la ubicación de los objetos celestes; un grupo de estrellas organizadas en un patrón reconocible (789)
contact metamorphism a change in the texture, structure, or chemical composition of a rock due to contact with magma (142)	**contact metamorphism/metamorfismo de contacto** un cambio en la textura, estructura o composición química de una roca debido al contacto con el magma (142)
continental glacier a massive sheet of ice that may cover millions of square kilometers, that may be thousands of meters thick, and that is not confined by surrounding topography (420)	**continental glacier/glaciar continental** una enorme capa de hielo que puede cubrir millones de kilómetros cuadrados, tener un espesor de miles de metros y que no está confinada por la topografía que la rodea (420)
continental drift the hypothesis that states that the continents once formed a single landmass, broke up, and drifted to their present locations (239)	**continental drift/deriva continental** la hipótesis que establece que alguna vez los continentes formaron una sola masa de tierra, se dividieron y se fueron a la deriva hasta terminar en sus ubicaciones actuales (239)
continental margin the shallow sea floor that is located between the shoreline and the deep-ocean bottom (475)	**continental margin/margen continental** el suelo marino poco profundo que se ubica entre la costa y el fondo profundo del océano (475)
contour line a line that connects points of equal elevation on a map (64)	**contour line/curva de nivel** una línea en un mapa que une puntos que tienen la misma elevación (64)
convection the movement of matter due to differences in density that are caused by temperature variations; can result in the transfer of energy as heat (560)	**convection/convección** el movimiento de la materia debido a diferencias en la densidad que se producen por variaciones en la temperatura; puede resultar en la transferencia de energía en forma de calor (560)
convective zone the region of the sun's interior that is between the radiative zone and the photosphere and in which energy is carried upward by convection (759)	**convective zone/zona convectiva** la región del interior del Sol que se encuentra entre la zona radiactiva y la fotosfera y en la cual la energía se desplaza hacia arriba por convección (759)
convergent boundary the boundary between tectonic plates that are colliding (250)	**convergent boundary/límite convergente** el límite entre placas tectónicas que chocan (250)
core the central part of the Earth below the mantle; *also* the center of the sun (28)	**core/núcleo** la parte central de la Tierra, debajo del manto; *también,* el centro del Sol (28)
core sample a cylindrical piece of sediment, rock, soil, snow, or ice that is collected by drilling (479)	**core sample/muestra de sondeo** un fragmento de sedimento, roca, suelo, nieve o hielo que se obtiene taladrando (479)
Coriolis effect the curving of the path of a moving object from an otherwise straight path due to the Earth's rotation (520, 561)	**Coriolis effect/efecto de Coriolis** la desviación de la trayectoria recta que experimentan los objetos en movimiento debido a la rotación de la Tierra (520, 561)

corona the outermost layer of the sun's atmosphere (760)	**corona/corona** la capa externa de la atmósfera del Sol (760)
coronal mass ejection a part of coronal gas that is thrown into space from the sun (763)	**coronal mass ejection/eyección de masa coronal** una parte de gas coronal que el Sol expulsa al espacio (763)
cosmic background radiation radiation uniformly detected from every direction in space; considered a remnant of the big bang (795)	**cosmic background radiation/radiación cósmica de fondo** radiación que se detecta de manera uniforme desde todas las direcciones en el espacio; se considera un resto del Big Bang (795)
cosmology the study of the origin, properties, processes, and evolution of the universe (793)	**cosmology/cosmología** el estudio del origen, propiedades, procesos y evolución del universo (793)
covalent bond a bond formed when atoms share one or more pairs of electrons (91)	**covalent bond/enlace covalente** un enlace formado cuando los átomos comparten uno más pares de electrones (91)
crater a bowl-shaped depression that forms on the surface of an object when a falling body strikes the object's surface or when an explosion occurs; a similar depression around the central vent of a volcano or geyser (720)	**crater/cráter** una depresión con forma de tazón, que se forma sobre la superficie de un objeto cuando un cuerpo en caída impacta sobre ésta o cuando se produce una explosión; una depresión similar alrededor de la chimenea de un volcán o géiser (720)
creep the slow downhill movement of weathered rock material (362)	**creep/arrastre** el movimiento lento y descendente de materiales rocosos desgastados (362)
crevasse in a glacier, a large crack or fissure that results from ice movement (422)	**crevasse/grieta** en un glaciar, una fractura o fisura grande debida al movimiento del hielo (422)
crust the thin and solid outermost layer of the Earth above the mantle (28)	**crust/corteza** la capa externa, delgada y sólida de la Tierra, que se encuentra sobre el manto (28)
crystal a solid whose atoms, ions, or molecules are arranged in a regular, repeating pattern (106)	**crystal/cristal** un sólido cuyos átomos, iones o moléculas están ordenados en un patrón regular y repetitivo (106)
cumulus cloud a low-level, billowy cloud that commonly has a top that resembles cotton balls and a dark bottom (585)	**cumulus cloud/nube cúmulo** una nube esponjada ubicada en un nivel bajo, cuya parte superior normalmente parece una bola de algodón y es obscura en la parte inferior (585)
current in geology, a horizontal movement of water in a well-defined pattern, such as a river or stream; the movement of air in a certain direction (519)	**current/corriente** en geología, un movimiento horizontal de agua en un patrón bien definido, como por ejemplo, un río o arroyo; el movimiento del aire en una cierta dirección (519)

D

deep current a streamlike movement of ocean water far below the surface (523)	**deep current/corriente profunda** un movimiento del agua del océano que es similar a una corriente y ocurre debajo de la superficie (523)
deep-ocean basin the part of the ocean floor that is under deep water beyond the continental margin and that is composed of oceanic crust and a thin layer of sediment (475)	**deep-ocean basin/cuenca oceánica profunda** la parte del fondo del océano que está bajo aguas profundas más allá del margen continental y que se compone de corteza oceánica y una delgada capa de sedimento (475)

deflation a form of wind erosion in which fine, dry soil particles are blown away (446)	**deflation/deflación** una forma de erosión del viento en la que se mueven partículas de suelo finas y secas (446)
deformation the bending, tilting, and breaking of Earth's crust; the change in the shape of rock in response to stress (271)	**deformation/deformación** el proceso de doblar, inclinar y romper la corteza de la Tierra; el cambio en la forma de una roca en respuesta a la tensión (271)
delta a fan-shaped mass of rock material deposited at the mouth of a stream; for example, deltas form where streams flow into the ocean at the edge of a continent (383)	**delta/delta** un depósito de materiales rocosos en forma de abanico ubicado en la desembocadura de un río; por ejemplo, los deltas se forman en el lugar donde las corrientes fluyen al océano en el borde de un continente (383)
density the ratio of the mass of a substance to the volume of the substance; commonly expressed as grams per cubic centimeter for solids and liquids and as grams per liter for gases (112, 499)	**density/densidad** la relación entre la masa de una substancia y su volumen; comúnmente se expresa en gramos por centímetro cúbico para los sólidos y líquidos, y como gramos por litro para los gases (112, 499)
dependent variable in an experiment, the factor that changes as a result of manipulation of one or more other factors (the independent variables) (11)	**dependent variable/variable dependiente** en un experimento, el factor que cambia como resultado de la manipulación de uno o más factores (las variables independientes) (11)
desalination a process of removing salt from ocean water (378, 505)	**desalination/desalación** (o desalinización) un proceso de remoción de sal del agua del océano (378, 505)
dew point at constant pressure and water vapor content, the temperature at which the rate of condensation equals the rate of evaporation (577)	**dew point/punto de rocío** a presión y contenido de vapor constantes, la temperatura a la cual la tasa de condensación iguala la tasa de evaporación (577)
differential weathering the process by which softer, less weather resistant rocks wear away at a faster rate than harder, more weather resistant rocks do (349)	**differential weathering/desgaste diferencial** el proceso por medio cual las rocas más blandas y menos resistentes al clima se desgastan a una tasa más rápida que las rocas más duras y resistentes al clima (349)
discharge the volume of water that flows within a given time (380)	**discharge/descarga** el volumen de agua que fluye en un tiempo determinado (380)
divergent boundary the boundary between two tectonic plates that are moving away from each other (249)	**divergent boundary/límite divergente** el límite entre dos placas tectónicas que se están separando una de la otra (249)
dome mountain a circular or elliptical, almost symmetrical elevation or structure in which the stratified rock slopes downward gently from the central point of folding (283)	**dome mountain/domo** una elevación o estructura circular o elíptica, casi simétrica, en la cual la roca estratificada se encuentra en una ligera pendiente hacia abajo a partir del punto central de plegamiento (283)
Doppler effect an observed change in the frequency of a wave when the source or observer is moving (778)	**Doppler effect/efecto Doppler** un cambio que se observa en la frecuencia de una onda cuando la fuente o el observador está en movimiento (778)
dune a mound of wind-deposited sand that moves as a result of the action of wind (447)	**dune/duna** un montículo de arena depositada por el viento que se mueve como resultado de la acción de éste (447)

E

earthquake a movement or trembling of the ground that is caused by a sudden release of energy when rocks along a fault move (295)	**earthquake/terremoto** un movimiento o temblor del suelo causado por una liberación súbita de energía que se produce cuando las rocas ubicadas a lo largo de una falla se mueven (295)
Earth science the scientific study of Earth and the universe around it (5)	**Earth science/ciencias de la Tierra** el estudio científico de la Tierra y del universo que la rodea (5)
eccentricity the degree of elongation of an elliptical orbit (symbol, *e*) (692)	**eccentricity/excentricidad** el grado de alargamiento de una orbita eliptica (símbolo: *e*) (692)
eclipse an event in which the shadow of one celestial body falls on another (727)	**eclipse/eclipse** un suceso en el que la sombra de un cuerpo celeste cubre otro cuerpo celeste (727)
ecosystem a community of organisms and their abiotic environment (39)	**ecosystem/ecosistema** una comunidad de organismos y su ambiente abiótico (39)
elastic rebound the sudden return of elastically deformed rock to its undeformed shape (295)	**elastic rebound/rebote elástico** ocurre cuando una roca deformada elásticamente vuelve súbitamente a su forma no deformada (295)
electromagnetic spectrum all of the frequencies or wavelengths of electromagnetic radiation (555, 661)	**electromagnetic spectrum/espectro electromagnético** todas las frecuencias o longitudes de onda de la radiación electromagnética (555, 661)
electron a subatomic particle that has a negative charge (82)	**electron/electrón** una partícula subatómica que tiene carga negativa (82)
element a substance that cannot be separated or broken down into simpler substances by chemical means; all atoms of an element have the same atomic number (81)	**element/elemento** una substancia que no se puede separar o descomponer en substancias más simples por medio de métodos químicos; todos los átomos de un elemento tienen el mismo número atómico (81)
elevation the height of an object above sea level (63)	**elevation/elevación** la altura de un objeto sobre el nivel del mar (63)
El Niño the warm-water phase of the El Niño–Southern Oscillation; a periodic occurrence in the eastern Pacific Ocean in which the surface-water temperature becomes unusually warm (635)	**El Niño/El Niño** la fase caliente de la Oscilación Sureña "El Niño"; un fenómeno periódico que ocurre en el océano Pacífico oriental en el que la temperatura del agua superficial se vuelve más caliente que de costumbre (635)
epicenter the point on Earth's surface directly above an earthquake's starting point, or focus (296)	**epicenter/epicentro** el punto de la superficie de la Tierra que queda justo arriba del punto de inicio, o foco, de un terremoto (296)
epoch a subdivision of geologic time that is longer than an age but shorter than a period (214)	**epoch/época** una subdivisión del tiempo geológico que es más larga que una edad pero más corta que un período (214)
equinox the moment when the sun appears to cross the celestial equator (673)	**equinox/equinoccio** el momento en que el Sol parece cruzar el ecuador celeste (673)
era a unit of geologic time that includes two or more periods (214)	**era/era** una unidad de tiempo geológico que incluye dos o más períodos (214)

erosion a process in which the materials of Earth's surface are loosened, dissolved, or worn away and transported from one place to another by a natural agent, such as wind, water, ice, or gravity (357)

erosion/erosión un proceso por medio del cual los materiales de la superficie de la Tierra se aflojan, disuelven o desgastan y son transportados de un lugar a otro por un agente natural, como el viento, el agua, el hielo o la gravedad (357)

erratic a large rock transported from a distant source by a glacier (426)

erratic/errática una piedra grande transportada de una fuente lejana por un glacial (426)

esker a long, winding ridge of gravel and coarse sand deposited by glacial meltwater streams (428)

esker/esker una cumbre larga y con curvas, compuesta por grava y arena gruesa depositada por corrientes de aguas glaciares (428)

estuary an area where fresh water from rivers mixes with salt water from the ocean; the part of a river where the tides meet the river current (456)

estuary/estuario un área donde el agua dulce de los ríos se mezcla con el agua salada del océano; la parte de un río donde las mareas se encuentran con la corriente del río (456)

evapotranspiration the total loss of water from an area, which equals the sum of the water lost by evaporation from the soil and other surfaces and the water lost by transpiration from organisms (376)

evapotranspiration/evapotranspiración la pérdida total de agua de un área, igual a la suma del agua perdida por evaporación del suelo y otras superficies, y el agua perdida debido a la transpiración de los organismos (376)

evolution a heritable change in the characteristics within a population from one generation to the next; the development of new types of organisms from preexisting types of organisms over time (215)

evolution/evolución un cambio hereditario en las características de una población que se produce de una generación a la siguiente; el desarrollo de nuevos tipos de organismos a partir de organismos preexistentes a lo largo del tiempo (215)

extrusive igneous rock rock that forms from the cooling and solidification of lava at Earth's surface (131)

extrusive igneous rock/roca ígnea extrusiva roca que se forma a partir del enfriamiento y la solidificación de la lava en la superficie de la Tierra (131)

F

fault a break in a body of rock along which one block slides relative to another; a form of brittle strain (277)

fault/falla una grieta en un cuerpo rocoso a lo largo de la cual un bloque se desliza respecto a otro; una forma de tensión quebradiza (277)

fault-block mountain a mountain that forms where faulting breaks Earth's crust into large blocks, which causes some blocks to drop down relative to other blocks (283)

fault-block mountain/montaña de bloque de falla una montaña que se forma cuando una falla rompe la corteza de la Tierra en grandes bloques, lo cual hace que algunos bloques se hundan respecto a otros bloques (283)

fault zone a region of numerous, closely spaced faults (300)

fault zone/zona de fallas una región donde hay muchas fallas, las cuales están cerca unas de otras (300)

felsic describes magma or igneous rock that is rich in feldspars and silica and that is generally light in color (132, 325)

felsic/félsica término que describe el magma o la roca ígnea que es rica en feldespato y sílice y que en general es de color claro (132, 325)

fetch the distance that wind blows across an area of the sea to generate waves (527)

fetch/alcance la distancia que el viento sopla en un área del mar para generar olas (527)

floodplain an area along a river that forms from sediments deposited when the river overflows its banks (384)

floodplain/llanura de inundación un área a lo largo de un río formada por sedimentos que se depositan cuando el río se desborda (384)

focus the location within Earth along a fault at which the first motion of an earthquake occurs (296)	**focus/foco** el lugar dentro de la Tierra a lo largo de una falla donde ocurre el primer movimiento de un terremoto (296)
fog water vapor that has condensed very near the surface of Earth because air close to the ground has cooled (586)	**fog/niebla** vapor de agua que se ha condensado muy cerca de la superficie de la Tierra debido al enfriamiento del aire próximo al suelo (586)
fold a form of ductile strain in which rock layers bend, usually as a result of compression (275)	**fold/pliegue** una forma de tensión dúctil en la cual las capas de roca se curvan, normalmente como resultado de la compresión (275)
folded mountain a mountain that forms when rock layers are squeezed together and uplifted (282)	**folded mountain/montaña de plegamiento** una montaña que se forma cuando las capas de roca se comprimen y se elevan (282)
foliation the metamorphic rock texture in which mineral grains are arranged in planes or bands (143)	**foliation/foliación** la textura de una roca metamórfica en la que los granos de mineral están ordenados en planos o bandas (143)
food web a diagram that shows the feeding relationships among organisms in an ecosystem (41)	**food web/red alimenticia** un diagrama que muestra las relaciones de alimentación entre los organismos de un ecosistema (41)
fossil the trace or remains of an organism that lived long ago, most commonly preserved in sedimentary rock (197)	**fossil/fósil** los indicios o los restos de un organismo que vivió hace mucho tiempo, comúnmente preservados en las rocas sedimentarias (197)
fossil fuel a nonrenewable energy resource formed from the remains of organisms that lived long ago; examples include oil, coal, and natural gas (159)	**fossil fuel/combustible fósil** un recurso energético no renovable formado a partir de los restos de organismos que vivieron hace mucho tiempo; algunos ejemplos incluyen el petróleo, el carbón y el gas natural (159)
fracture in geology, a break in a rock, which results from stress, with or without displacement, including cracks, joints, and faults; *also* the manner in which a mineral breaks along either curved or irregular surfaces (110)	**fracture/fractura** en geología, un rompimiento en una roca, que resulta de la tensión, con o sin desplazamiento, incluyendo grietas, fisuras y fallas; *también,* la forma en la que se rompe un mineral a lo largo de superficies curvas o irregulares (110)

G

galaxy a collection of stars, dust, and gas bound together by gravity (660, 790)	**galaxy/galaxia** un conjunto de estrellas, polvo y gas unidos por la gravedad (660, 790)
Galilean moon any one of the four largest satellites of Jupiter—Io, Europa, Ganymede, and Callisto—that were discovered by Galileo in 1610 (733)	**Galilean moon/satélite galileano** cualquiera de los cuatro satélites más grandes de Júpiter (Io, Europa, Ganímedes y Calisto) que fueron descubiertos por Galileo en 1610 (733)
gas giant a planet that has a deep, massive atmosphere, such as Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, or Neptune (701)	**gas giant/gigante gaseoso** un planeta con una atmósfera masiva y profunda, como por ejemplo, Júpiter, Saturno, Urano o Neptuno (701)
gemstone a mineral, rock, or organic material that can be used as jewelry or an ornament when it is cut and polished (157)	**gemstone/piedra preciosa** un mineral, roca o material orgánico que se puede usar como joya u ornamento cuando se corta y se pule (157)

geologic column an ordered arrangement of rock layers that is based on the relative ages of the rocks and in which the oldest rocks are at the bottom (211)	**geologic column/columna geológica** un arreglo ordenado de capas de rocas que se basa en la edad relativa de las rocas y en el cual las rocas más antiguas están al fondo (211)
geology the scientific study of the origin, history, and structure of Earth and the processes that shape Earth (6)	**geology/geología** el estudio científico del origen, la historia y la estructura del planeta Tierra y los procesos que le dan forma (6)
geosphere the mostly solid, rocky part of the Earth; extends from the center of the core to the surface of the crust (33)	**geosphere/geosfera** la parte principalmente sólida y rocosa de la Tierra; se extiende del centro del núcleo a la superficie de la corteza (33)
geothermal energy the energy produced by heat within Earth (165)	**geothermal energy/energía geotérmica** la energía producida por el calor del interior de la Tierra (165)
giant a very large and bright star whose hot core has used most of its hydrogen (784)	**giant/gigante** una estrella muy grande y brillante que tiene un núcleo caliente que ha usado la mayor parte de su hidrógeno (784)
glacial drift the rock material carried and deposited by glaciers (426)	**glacial drift/deriva glacial** el material rocoso que es transportado y depositado por los glaciares (426)
glacier a large mass of moving ice (419)	**glacier/glaciar** una masa grande de hielo en movimiento (419)
global ocean the body of salt water that covers nearly three-fourths of Earth's surface (471)	**global ocean/océano global** la masa de agua salada que cubre cerca de tres cuartas partes de la superficie de la Tierra (471)
global warming a gradual increase in the average global temperature that is due to a higher concentration of gases such as carbon dioxide in the atmosphere (645)	**global warming/calentamiento global** un aumento gradual de la temperatura global promedio debido a una concentración más alta de gases (tales como dióxido de carbono) en la atmósfera (645)
gradient the change in elevation over a given distance (380)	**gradient/gradiente** el cambio en la elevación a lo largo de una distancia determinada (380)
greenhouse effect the warming of the surface and lower atmosphere of Earth that occurs when carbon dioxide, water vapor, and other gases in the air absorb and reradiate infrared radiation (558)	**greenhouse effect/efecto de invernadero** el calentamiento de la superficie terrestre y de la parte más baja de la atmósfera, el cual se produce cuando el dióxido de carbono, el vapor de agua y otros gases del aire absorben radiación infrarroja y la vuelven a irradiar (558)
groundwater the water that is beneath the Earth's surface (397)	**groundwater/agua subterránea** el agua que está debajo de la superficie de la Tierra (397)
Gulf Stream the swift, deep, and warm Atlantic current that flows along the eastern coast of the United States toward the northeast (522)	**Gulf Stream/corriente del Golfo** la corriente rápida, profunda y cálida del océano Atlántico que fluye por la costa este de los Estados Unidos hacia el noreste (522)
gyre a huge circle of moving ocean water found above and below the equator (520)	**gyre/giro** un círculo enorme de agua oceánica en movimiento que se encuentra debajo del ecuador (520)

H

half-life the time required for half of a sample of a radioactive isotope to break down by radioactive decay to form a daughter isotope (194)	**half-life/vida media** el tiempo que se requiere para que la mitad de una muestra de un isótopo radiactivo se descomponga por desintegración radiactiva y forme un isótopo hijo (194)
headland a high and steep formation of rock that extends out from shore into the water (452)	**headland/promontorio** una formación rocosa alta y empinada que se extiende de la costa hacia el agua (452)
horizon the line where the sky and the Earth appear to meet; *also* a horizontal layer of soil that can be distinguished from the layers above and below it; *also* a boundary between two rock layers that have different physical properties (354)	**horizon/horizonte** la línea donde parece que el cielo y la Tierra se unen; *también,* una capa horizontal de suelo que puede distinguirse de las capas que están por encima y por debajo de ella; *también,* un límite entre dos capas de roca que tienen propiedades físicas distintas (354)
horn a sharp, pyramid-like peak that forms because of the erosion of cirques (424)	**horn/cuerno** un pico puntiagudo en forma de pirámide que se forma debido a la erosión de los circos (424)
hot spot a volcanically active area of Earth's surface, commonly far from a tectonic plate boundary (323)	**hot spot/mancha caliente** un área volcánicamente activa de la superficie de la Tierra que comúnmente se encuentra lejos de un límite entre placas tectónicas (323)
humus dark, organic material formed in soil from the decayed remains of plants and animals (354)	**humus/humus** material orgánico obscuro que se forma en la tierra a partir de restos de plantas y animales en descomposición (354)
hurricane a severe storm that develops over tropical oceans and whose strong winds of more than 120 km/h spiral in toward the intensely low-pressure storm center (609)	**hurricane/huracán** tormenta severa que se desarrolla sobre océanos tropicales, con vientos fuertes que soplan a más de 120 km/h y que se mueven en espiral hacia el centro de presión extremadamente baja de la tormenta (609)
hydroelectric energy electrical energy produced by the flow of water (167)	**hydroelectric energy/energía hidroeléctrica** energía eléctrica producida por el flujo del agua (167)
hydrolysis a chemical reaction between water and another substance to form two or more new substances; a reaction between water and a salt to create an acid or a base (347)	**hydrolysis/hidrólisis** una reacción química entre el agua y otras substancias para formar dos o más substancias nuevas; una reacción entre el agua y una sal para crear un ácido o una base (347)
hydrosphere the portion of the Earth that is water (33)	**hydrosphere/hidrosfera** la porción de la Tierra que es agua (33)
hypothesis an idea or explanation that is based on observations and that can be tested (10)	**hypothesis/hipótesis** una idea o explicación que se basa en observaciones y que se puede probar (10)

I

ice age a long period of climatic cooling during which the continents are glaciated repeatedly (431)	**ice age/edad de hielo** un largo período de enfriamiento del clima, durante el cual los continentes se ven repetidamente sometidos a la glaciación (431)
igneous rock rock that forms when magma cools and solidifies (129)	**igneous rock/roca ígnea** una roca que se forma cuando el magma se enfría y se solidifica (129)

independent variable in an experiment, the factor that is deliberately manipulated (11)	**independent variable/variable independiente** en un experimento, el factor que se manipula deliberadamente (11)
index fossil a fossil that is used to establish the age of a rock layer because the fossil is distinct, abundant, and widespread and existed for only a short span of geologic time (200)	**index fossil/fósil guía** un fósil que se usa para establecer la edad de una capa de roca debido a que puede diferenciarse bien de otros y es abundante; está extendido y existió sólo por un corto período de tiempo geológico (200)
inertia the tendency of an object to resist being moved or, if the object is moving, to resist a change in speed or direction until an outside force acts on the object (694)	**inertia/inercia** la tendencia de un objeto a no moverse o, si el objeto se está moviendo, la tendencia a resistir un cambio en su rapidez o dirección hasta que una fuerza externa actúe en el objeto (694)
intensity in Earth science, the amount of damage caused by an earthquake (304)	**intensity/intensidad** en las ciencias de la Tierra, la cantidad de daño causado por un terremoto (304)
internal plastic flow the process by which glaciers flow slowly as grains of ice deform under pressure and slide over each other (421)	**internal plastic flow/flujo plástico interno** el proceso por medio del cual los glaciares fluyen lentamente a medida que los granos de hielo se deforman por efecto de la presión y se deslizan unos sobre otros (421)
intrusive igneous rock rock formed from the cooling and solidification of magma beneath the Earth's surface (131)	**intrusive igneous rock/roca ígnea intrusiva** una roca formada a partir del enfriamiento y solidificación del magma debajo de la superficie terrestre (131)
ion an atom, radical, or molecule that has gained or lost one or more electrons and has a negative or positive charge (90)	**ion/ion** un átomo, radical o molécula que ha ganado o perdido uno o más electrones y que tiene una carga negativa o positiva (90)
ionic bond the attractive force between oppositely charged ions, which form when electrons are transferred from one atom to another (90)	**ionic bond/enlace iónico** la fuerza de atracción entre iones con cargas opuestas, que se forman cuando se transfieren electrones de un átomo a otro (90)
isogram a line on a map that represents a constant or equal value of a given quantity (62)	**isogram/isograma** una línea en un mapa que representa un valor constante o igual de una cantidad dada (62)
isostasy a condition of gravitational and buoyant equilibrium between Earth's lithosphere and asthenosphere (271)	**isostasy/isostasia** una condición de equilibrio gravitacional y flotante entre la litosfera y la astenosfera de la Tierra (271)
isotope an atom that has the same number of protons (or the same atomic number) as other atoms of the same element do but that has a different number of neutrons (and thus a different atomic mass) (83)	**isotope/isótopo** un átomo que tiene el mismo número de protones (o el mismo número atómico) que otros átomos del mismo elemento, pero que tiene un número diferente de neutrones (y, por lo tanto, otra masa atómica) (83)

J

jet stream a narrow band of strong winds that blow in the upper troposphere (563)	**jet stream/corriente en chorro** un cinturón delgado de vientos fuertes que soplan en la parte superior de la troposfera (563)

K

karst topography a type of irregular topography that is characterized by caverns, sinkholes, and underground drainage and that forms on limestone or other soluble rock (408)	**karst topography/topografía de karst** una tipo de topografía irregular que se caracteriza por cavernas, depresiones y drenaje subterráneo y que se forma en piedra caliza o algún otro tipo de roca soluble (408)
kettle a bowl-shaped depression in a glacial drift deposit (428)	**kettle/marmita** una depresión con forma de tazón en un depósito de deriva glaciar (428)
Kuiper belt a region of the solar system that is just beyond the orbit of Neptune and that contains small bodies made mostly of ice (707, 742)	**Kuiper belt/cinturón de Kuiper** una región del Sistema Solar que se encuentra más allá de la órbita de Neptuno y que contiene cuerpos pequeños, en su mayoría formados por hielo (707, 742)

L

lagoon a small body of water separated from the sea by a low, narrow strip of land (457)	**lagoon/laguna** una masa pequeña de agua separada del mar por una tira de tierra baja y angosta (457)
landform a physical feature of Earth's surface (363)	**landform/accidente geográfico** una característica física de la superficie terrestre (363)
latent heat the heat energy that is absorbed or released by a substance during a phase change (575)	**latent heat/calor latente** la energía calorífica que es absorbida o liberada por una substancia durante un cambio de fase (575)
latitude the distance north or south from the equator; expressed in degrees (53)	**latitude/latitud** la distancia hacia el norte o hacia el sur del ecuador; se expresa en grados (53)
lava magma that flows onto Earth's surface; the rock that forms when lava cools and solidifies (320)	**lava/lava** magma que fluye a la superficie terrestre; la roca que se forma cuando la lava se enfría y se solidifica (320)
law of crosscutting relationships the principle that a fault or body of rock is younger than any other body of rock that it cuts through (190)	**law of crosscutting relationships/ley de las relaciones entrecortadas** el principio de que una falla o un cuerpo rocoso siempre es más joven que cualquier otro cuerpo rocoso que atraviese (190)
law of superposition the principle that a sedimentary rock layer is older than the layers above it and younger than the layers below it if the layers are not disturbed (187)	**law of superposition/ley de la sobreposición** el principio de que una capa de roca sedimentaria es más vieja que las capas que se encuentran arriba de ella y más joven que las capas que se encuentran debajo de ella si las capas no han sido alteradas (187)
legend a list of map symbols and their meanings (61)	**legend/leyenda** una lista de símbolos de un mapas y sus significados (61)
light-year the distance that light travels in one year; about 9.46 trillion kilometers (779)	**light-year/año luz** la distancia que viaja la luz en un año; aproximadamente 9.46 trillones de kilómetros (779)
lithosphere the solid, outer layer of Earth that consists of the crust and the rigid upper part of the mantle (29, 247)	**lithosphere/litosfera** la capa externa y sólida de la Tierra que está formada por la corteza y la parte superior y rígida del manto (29, 247)

lode a mineral deposit within a rock formation (156)	**lode/veta** un depósito mineral que se encuentra dentro de una formación rocosa (156)
loess fine-grained sediments of quartz, feldspar, hornblende, mica, and clay deposited by the wind (450)	**loess/loess** sedimentos de grano fino de cuarzo, feldespato, horneblenda, mica y arcilla depositados por el viento (450)
longitude the angular distance east or west from the prime meridian; expressed in degrees (54)	**longitude/longitud** la distancia angular hacia el este o hacia el oeste del primer meridiano; se expresa en grados (54)
longshore current a water current that travels near and parallel to the shoreline (454)	**longshore current/corriente de ribera** una corriente de agua que se desplaza cerca de la costa y paralela a ella (454)
lunar eclipse the passing of the moon through the Earth's shadow at full moon (729)	**lunar eclipse/eclipse lunar** el paso de la Luna frente a la sombra de la Tierra cuando hay luna llena (729)
luster the way in which a mineral reflects light (110)	**luster/brillo** la forma en que un mineral refleja la luz (110)

M

mafic describes magma or igneous rock that is rich in magnesium and iron and that is generally dark in color (132, 325)	**mafic/máfica** término que describe el magma o la roca ígnea que es rica en magnesio y hierro y que en general es de color obscuro (132, 325)
magma liquid rock produced under the Earth's surface; igneous rocks are made of magma (319)	**magma/magma** roca líquida producida debajo de la superficie terrestre; las rocas ígneas están hechas de magma (319)
magnitude a measure of the strength of an earthquake (303)	**magnitude/magnitud** una medida de la fuerza de un terremoto (303)
main sequence the location on the H-R diagram where most stars lie; it has a diagonal pattern from the lower right (low temperature and luminosity) to the upper left (high temperature and luminosity) (781)	**main sequence/secuencia principal** la ubicación en el diagrama H-R donde se encuentran la mayoría de las estrellas; tiene un patrón diagonal de la parte inferior derecha (baja temperatura y luminosidad) a la parte superior izquierda (alta temperatura y luminosidad) (781)
mantle in Earth science, the layer of rock between Earth's crust and core (28)	**mantle/manto** en las ciencias de la Tierra, la capa de roca que se encuentra entre la corteza terrestre y el núcleo (28)
map projection a flat map that represents a spherical surface (58)	**map projection/proyección cartográfica** un mapa plano que representa una superficie esférica (58)
mare a large, dark area of basalt on the moon (plural, *maria*) (720)	**mare/mar lunar** una gran área oscura de basalto en la Luna (720)
mass extinction an episode during which large numbers of species become extinct (221)	**mass extinction/extinción masiva** un episodio durante el cual grandes cantidades de especies se extinguen (221)
mass movement the movement of a large mass of sediment or a section of land down a slope (361)	**mass movement/movimiento masivo** el movimiento hacia abajo por una pendiente de una gran masa de sedimento o una sección de terreno (361)

matter anything that has mass and takes up space (81)	**matter/materia** cualquier cosa que tiene masa y ocupa un lugar en el espacio (81)
meander one of the bends, twists, or curves in a low-gradient stream or river (381)	**meander/meandro** una de las vueltas, giros o curvas de un arroyo o río de bajo gradiente (381)
mechanical weathering the process by which rocks break down into smaller pieces by physical means (343)	**mechanical weathering/desgaste mecánico** el proceso por medio del cual las rocas se rompen en pedazos más pequeños mediante medios físicos (343)
meridian any semicircle that runs north and south around Earth from the geographic North Pole to the geographic South Pole; a line of longitude (54)	**meridian/meridiano** cualquier semicírculo que va de norte a sur alrededor de la Tierra, del Polo Norte geográfico al Polo Sur geográfico; una línea de longitud (54)
mesosphere literally, the "middle sphere"; the strong, lower part of the mantle between the asthenosphere and the outer core; *also* the coldest layer of the atmosphere, between the stratosphere and the thermosphere, in which temperature decreases as altitude increases (29, 553)	**mesosphere/mesosfera** literalmente, la "esfera media"; la parte fuerte e inferior del manto que se encuentra entre la astenosfera y el núcleo externo; *también,* la capa más fría de la atmósfera que se encuentra entre la estratosfera y la termosfera, en la cual la temperatura disminuye al aumentar la altitud (29, 553)
Mesozoic Era the geologic era that lasted from 251 million to 65.5 million years ago; also called the *Age of Reptiles* (221)	**Mesozoic Era/Era Mesozoica** la era geológica que comenzó hace 251 millones de años y terminó hace 65.5 millones de años; también llamada *Edad de los Reptiles* (221)
metamorphism the process in which one type of rock changes into metamorphic rock because of chemical processes or changes in temperature and pressure (141)	**metamorphism/metamorfismo** el proceso en el que un tipo de roca cambia a roca metamórfica debido a procesos químicos o cambios en la temperatura y la presión (141)
meteor a bright streak of light that results when a meteoroid burns up in Earth's atmosphere (743)	**meteor/meteoro** un rayo de luz brillante que se produce cuando un meteoroide se quema en la atmósfera de la Tierra (743)
meteoroid a relatively small, rocky body that travels through space (743)	**meteoroid/meteoroide** un cuerpo rocoso relativamente pequeño que viaja en el espacio (743)
meteorology the scientific study of Earth's atmosphere, especially in relation to weather and climate (7)	**meteorology/meteorología** el estudio científico de la atmósfera de la Tierra, sobre todo en lo que se relaciona al tiempo y al clima (7)
microclimate the climate of a small area (640)	**microclimate/microclima** el clima de un área pequeña (640)
middle-latitude climate a climate that has a maximum average temperature of 8°C in the coldest month and a minimum average temperature of 10°C in the warmest month (638)	**middle-latitude climate/clima de latitud media** un clima que tiene una temperatura máxima promedio de 8ºC en el mes más frío y una temperatura mínima promedio de 10ºC en el mes más caliente (638)
mid-latitude cyclone an area of low pressure that is characterized by rotating wind that moves toward the rising air of the central low-pressure region; the motion is counterclockwise in the Northern Hemisphere (606)	**mid-latitude cyclone/ciclón de latitud media** un área de baja presión caracterizada por la presencia de viento en rotación que se desplaza hacia el aire ascendente de la región central de baja presión; en el hemisferio norte, el movimiento se produce en sentido contrario al de las manecillas del reloj (606)

mid-ocean ridge a long, undersea mountain chain that has a steep, narrow valley at its center, that forms as magma rises from the asthenosphere, and that creates new oceanic lithosphere (sea floor) as tectonic plates move apart (242)	**mid-ocean ridge/dorsal oceánica** una larga cadena submarina de montañas que tiene un valle empinado y angosto en el centro, se forma a medida que el magma se eleva a partir de la astenosfera y produce una nueva litosfera oceánica (suelo marino) a medida que las placas tectónicas se separan (242)
Milankovitch theory the theory that cyclical changes in Earth's orbit and in the tilt of Earth's axis occur over thousands of years and cause climatic changes (433)	**Milankovitch theory/teoría de Milankovitch** la teoría que establece que los cambios cíclicos en la órbita de la Tierra y en la inclinación de su eje se producen a lo largo de miles de años y provocan cambios climáticos (433)
mineral a natural, usually inorganic solid that has a characteristic chemical composition, an orderly internal structure, and a characteristic set of physical properties (103)	**mineral/mineral** un sólido natural, normalmente inorgánico, que tiene una composición química característica, una estructura interna ordenada y propiedades físicas y químicas características (103)
mineralogist a person who examines, analyzes, and classifies minerals (109)	**mineralogist/minerólogo** una persona que examina, analiza y clasifica los minerales (109)
mixture a combination of two or more substances that are not chemically combined (92)	**mixture/mezcla** una combinación de dos o más substancias que no están combinadas químicamente (92)
Mohs hardness scale the standard scale against which the hardness of minerals is rated (111)	**Mohs hardness scale/escala de dureza de Mohs** la escala estándar que se usa para clasificar la dureza de un mineral (111)
molecule a group of atoms that are held together by chemical forces; a molecule is the smallest unit of matter that can exist by itself and retain all of a substance's chemical properties (87)	**molecule/molécula** un conjunto de átomos que se mantienen unidos por acción de las fuerzas químicas; una molécula es la unidad más pequeña de la materia capaz de existir en forma independiente y conservar todas las propiedades químicas de una substancia (87)
monsoon a seasonal wind that blows toward the land in the summer, bringing heavy rains, and that blows away from the land in the winter, bringing dry weather (635)	**monsoon/monzón** viento estacional que sopla hacia la tierra en el verano, ocasionando fuertes lluvias, y que se aleja de la tierra en el invierno, ocasionando tiempo seco (635)
moon a body that revolves around a planet and that has less mass than the planet does (719)	**moon/luna** un cuerpo que gira alrededor de un planeta y que tiene menos que el planeta (719)
moraine a landform that is made from unsorted sediments deposited by a glacier (427)	**moraine/morrena** un accidente geográfico que se forma a partir de varios tipos de sedimentos depositados por un glaciar (427)
mountain range a series of mountains that are closely related in orientation, age, and mode of formation (279)	**mountain range/cinturón de montañas** una serie de montañas que están íntimamente relacionadas en orientación, edad y modo de formación (279)

N

nebula a large cloud of gas and dust in interstellar space; a region in space where stars are born (782)	**nebula/nebulosa** una nube grande de gas y polvo en el espacio interestelar; una región en el espacio donde las estrellas nacen (782)
nekton all organisms that swim actively in open water, independent of currents (502)	**nekton/necton** todos los organismos que nadan activamente en las aguas abiertas, de manera independiente de las corrientes (502)
neutron a subatomic particle that has no charge and that is located in the nucleus of an atom (82)	**neutron/neutrón** una partícula subatómica que no tiene carga y que está ubicada en el núcleo de un átomo (82)
neutron star a star that has collapsed under gravity to the point that the electrons and protons have smashed together to form neutrons (787)	**neutron star/estrella de neutrones** una estrella que se ha colapsado debido a la gravedad hasta el punto en que los electrones y protones han chocado unos contra otros para formar neutrones (787)
nodule a lump of minerals whose composition differs from the composition of the surrounding sediment or rock; *also* a lump of minerals that is made of oxides of manganese, iron, copper, or nickel and that is found in scattered groups on the ocean floor (481)	**nodule/nódulo** un bulto de minerales que tienen una composición diferente a la de los sedimentos o rocas de los alrededores; *también,* un bulto de minerales compuesto por óxidos de manganeso, hierro, cobre o níquel y que se encuentra en grupos esparcidos en el fondo del océano (481)
nonfoliated the metamorphic rock texture in which mineral grains are not arranged in planes or bands (144)	**nonfoliated/no foliada** la textura de una roca metamórfica en la que los granos de mineral no están ordenados en planos ni bandas (144)
nonrenewable resource a resource that forms at a rate that is much slower than the rate at which it is consumed (159)	**nonrenewable resource/recurso no renovable** un recurso que se forma a una tasa que es mucho más lenta que la tasa a la que se consume (159)
nonsilicate mineral a mineral that does not contain compounds of silicon and oxygen (105)	**nonsilicate mineral/mineral no-silicato** un mineral que no contiene compuestos de sílice y oxígeno (105)
nova a star that suddenly becomes brighter (786)	**nova/nova** una estrella que súbitamente se vuelve más brillante (786)
nuclear fission the process by which the nucleus of a heavy atom splits into two or more fragments; the process releases neutrons and energy (162)	**nuclear fission/fisión nuclear** el proceso por medio del cual el núcleo de un átomo pesado se divide en dos o más fragmentos; el proceso libera neutrones y energía (162)
nuclear fusion the process by which nuclei of small atoms combine to form new, more massive nuclei; the process releases energy (164, 756)	**nuclear fusion/fusión nuclear** el proceso por medio del cual los núcleos de átomos pequeños se combinan y forman núcleos nuevos con mayor masa; el proceso libera energía (164, 756)

O

observation the process of obtaining information by using the senses; the information obtained by using the senses (10)	**observation/observación** el proceso de obtener información por medio de los sentidos; la información que se obtiene al usar los sentidos (10)

occluded front a front that forms when a cold air mass overtakes a warm air mass and lifts the warm air mass off the ground and over another air mass (606)	**occluded front/frente ocluido** un frente que se forma cuando una masa de aire frío supera a una masa de aire caliente y la levanta del suelo por encima de otra masa de aire (606)
oceanography the scientific study of the ocean, including the properties and movements of ocean water, the characteristics of the ocean floor, and the organisms that live in the ocean (6, 472)	**oceanography/oceanografía** el estudio científico del océano, incluyendo las propiedades y los movimientos del agua, las características del fondo y los organismos que viven en él (6, 472)
Oort cloud a spherical region that surrounds the solar system, that extends from just beyond Pluto's orbit to almost halfway to the nearest star, and that contains trillions of comets (742)	**Oort cloud/nube de Oort** una región esférica que rodea al Sistema Solar; comienza justo después del inicio de la órbita de Plutón y termina a medio camino entre Plutón y la estrella más cercana; contiene billones de cometas (742)
orbital period the time required for a body to complete a single orbit (693)	**orbital period/período de órbita** el tiempo que se requiere para que un cuerpo complete una órbita (693)
ore a natural material whose concentration of economically valuable minerals is high enough for the material to be mined profitably (155)	**ore/mena** un material natural cuya concentración de minerales con valor económico es suficientemente alta como para que el material pueda ser explotado de manera rentable (155)
organic sedimentary rock sedimentary rock that forms from the remains of plants or animals (136)	**organic sedimentary rock/roca sedimentaria orgánica** roca sedimentaria que se forma a partir de los restos de plantas o animales (136)
oxidation a reaction that removes one or more electrons from a substance such that the substance's valence or oxidation state increases; in geology, the process by which a metallic element combines with oxygen (346)	**oxidation/oxidación** una reacción en la que uno o más electrones son removidos de una substancia, aumentado su valencia o estado de oxidación; en geología, el proceso por medio del cual un elemento metálico se combina con oxígeno (346)
ozone a gas molecule that is made up of three oxygen atoms (549)	**ozone/ozono** una molécula de gas que está formada por tres átomos de oxígeno (549)

P

pack ice a floating layer of sea ice that completely covers an area of the ocean surface (497)	**pack ice/manto de hielo** marino una capa flotante de hielo marino que cubre completamente un área de la superficie del océano (497)
paleomagnetism the study of the alignment of magnetic minerals in rock, specifically as it relates to the reversal of Earth's magnetic poles; *also* the magnetic properties that rock acquires during formation (243)	**paleomagnetism/paleomagnetismo** el estudio de la alineación de los minerales magnéticos en la roca, específicamente en lo que se relaciona con la inversión de los polos magnéticos de la Tierra; *también,* las propiedades magnéticas que la roca adquiere durante su formación (243)
paleontology the scientific study of fossils (197)	**paleontology/paleontología** el estudio científico de los fósiles (197)
Paleozoic Era the geologic era that followed Precambrian time and that lasted from 542 million to 251 million years ago (218)	**Paleozoic Era/Era Paleozoica** la era geológica que vino después del período Precámbrico; comenzó hace 542 millones de años y terminó hace 251 millones de años (218)

Pangaea the supercontinent that formed 300 million years ago and that began to break up 250 million years ago (258)	**Pangaea/Pangea** el supercontinente que se formó hace 300 millones de años y que comenzó a separarse hace 250 millones de años (258)
Panthalassa the single, large ocean that covered Earth's surface during the time the supercontinent Pangaea existed (258)	**Panthalassa/Panthalassa** el único gran océano que cubría la superficie de la Tierra cuando existía el supercontinente Pangea (258)
parallax an apparent shift in the position of an object when viewed from different locations (779)	**parallax/paralaje** un cambio aparente en la posición de un objeto cuando se ve desde lugares distintos (779)
parallel any circle that runs east and west around Earth and that is parallel to the equator; a line of latitude (53)	**parallel/paralelo** cualquier círculo que va hacia el Este o hacia el Oeste alrededor de la Tierra y que es paralelo al ecuador; una línea de latitud (53)
peer review the process in which experts in a given field examine the results and conclusions of a scientist's study before that study is accepted for publication (14)	**peer review/evaluación de pares** el proceso en el cual los expertos en un campo dado examinan los resultados y las conclusiones de un estudio científico antes de aceptar su publicación (14)
pelagic zone the region of an ocean or body of fresh water above the benthic zone (503)	**pelagic zone/zona pelágica** la región de un océano o una masa de agua dulce sobre la zona bentónica (503)
perigee in the orbit of a satellite, the point at which the satellite is closest to Earth (725)	**perigee/perigeo** en la órbita de un satélite, el punto en el que el satélite está más cerca de la Tierra (725)
perihelion the point in the orbit of a planet at which the planet is closest to the sun (668)	**perihelion/perihelio** el punto en la órbita de un planeta en el que el planeta está más cerca del Sol (668)
period a unit of geologic time that is longer than an epoch but shorter than an era (214)	**period/período** una unidad de tiempo geológico que es más larga que una época pero más corta que una era (214)
permeability the ability of a rock or sediment to let fluids pass through its open spaces, or pores (398)	**permeability/permeabilidad** la capacidad de una roca o sedimento de permitir que los fluidos pasen a través de sus espacios abiertos o poros (398)
phase in astronomy, the change in the illuminated area of one celestial body as seen from another celestial body; phases of the moon are caused by the changing positions of the Earth, the sun, and the moon (730)	**phase/fase** en astronomía, el cambio en el área iluminada de un cuerpo celeste según se ve desde otro cuerpo celeste; las fases de la Luna se producen como resultado de los cambios en la posición de la Tierra, el Sol y la Luna (730)
photosphere the visible surface of the sun (759)	**photosphere/fotosfera** la superficie visible del Sol (759)
placer deposit a deposit that contains a valuable mineral that has been concentrated by mechanical action (156)	**placer deposit/yacimiento de aluvión** un yacimiento que contiene un mineral valioso que se ha concentrado debido a la acción mecánica (156)
planet any of the primary bodies that orbit the sun; a similar body that orbits another star (685)	**planet/planeta** cualquiera de los cuerpos principales que giran en órbita alrededor del Sol; un cuerpo similar que gira en órbita alrededor de otra estrella (685)
planetesimal a small body from which a planet originated in the early stages of development of the solar system (686)	**planetesimal/planetesimal** un cuerpo pequeño a partir del cual se originó un planeta en las primeras etapas de desarrollo del Sistema Solar (686)

plankton the mass of mostly microscopic organisms that float or drift freely in the waters of aquatic (freshwater and marine) environments (502)	**plankton/plancton** la masa de organismos casi microscópicos que flotan o se encuentran a la deriva en aguas (dulces y marinas) de ambientes acuáticos (502)
plate tectonics the theory that explains how large pieces of the lithosphere, called plates, move and change shape (247)	**plate tectonics/tectónica de placas** la teoría que explica cómo las grandes partes de litosfera, denominadas placas, se mueven y cambian de forma (247)
polar climate a climate that is characterized by average temperatures that are near or below freezing; typical of polar regions (639)	**polar climate/clima polar** un clima caracterizado por temperaturas cercanas o inferiores al punto de congelación; típico de las regiones polares (639)
polar easterlies prevailing winds that blow from east to west between 60° and 90° latitude in both hemispheres (562)	**polar easterlies/vientos polares** del este vientos preponderantes que soplan de este a oeste entre los 60° y los 90° de latitud en ambos hemisferios (562)
porosity the percentage of the total volume of a rock or sediment that consists of open spaces (397)	**porosity/porosidad** el porcentaje del volumen total de una roca o sedimento que está formado por espacios abiertos (397)
Precambrian time the interval of time in the geologic time scale from Earth's formation to the beginning of the Paleozoic Era, from 4.6 billion to 542 million years ago (216)	**Precambrian time/período Precámbrico** el intervalo en la escala de tiempo geológico que abarca desde la formación de la Tierra hasta el comienzo de la Era Paleozoica; comenzó hace 4,600 millones de años y terminó hace 542 millones de años (216)
precipitation any form of water that falls to Earth's surface from the clouds; includes rain, snow, sleet, and hail (376, 587)	**precipitation/precipitación** cualquier forma de agua que cae de las nubes a la superficie de la Tierra; incluye a la lluvia, nieve, aguanieve y granizo (376, 587)
prominence a loop of relatively cool, incandescent gas that extends above the photosphere and above the sun's edge as seen from Earth (763)	**prominence/protuberancia** una espiral de gas incandescente y relativamente frío que, vista desde la Tierra, se extiende por encima de la fotosfera y la superficie del Sol (763)
proton a subatomic particle that has a positive charge and that is located in the nucleus of an atom; the number of protons of the nucleus is the atomic number, which determines the identity of an element (82)	**proton/protón** una partícula subatómica que tiene una carga positiva y que está ubicada en el núcleo de un átomo; el número de protones que hay en el núcleo es el número atómico, y éste determina la identidad del elemento (82)
pulsar a rapidly spinning neutron star that emits pulses of radio and optical energy (788)	**pulsar/pulsar** una estrella de neutrones que gira rápidamente y emite pulsaciones de energía radioeléctrica y óptica (788)
P wave a primary wave, or compression wave; a seismic wave that causes particles of rock to move in a back-and-forth direction parallel to the direction in which the wave is traveling; P waves are the fastest seismic waves and can travel through solids, liquids, and gases (297)	**P wave/onda P** una onda primaria u onda de compresión; una onda sísmica que hace que las partículas de roca se muevan en una dirección de atrás hacia delante en forma paralela a la dirección en que viaja la onda; las ondas P son las ondas sísmicas más rápidas y pueden viajar a través de sólidos, líquidos y gases (297)
pyroclastic material fragments of rock that form during a volcanic eruption (326)	**pyroclastic material/material piroclástico** fragmentos de roca que se forman durante una erupción volcánica (326)

Q

quasar quasi-stellar radio source; a very luminous object that produces energy at a high rate; quasars are thought to be the most distant objects in the universe (792)	**quasar/cuasar** fuente de radio cuasi-estelar; un objeto muy luminoso que produce energía a una gran velocidad; se piensa que los cuasares son los objetos más distantes del universo (792)

R

radar radio detection and ranging, a system that uses reflected radio waves to determine the velocity and location of objects (613)	**radar/radar** detección y exploración a gran distancia por medio de ondas de radio; un sistema que usa ondas de radio reflejadas para determinar la velocidad y ubicación de los objetos (613)
radiative zone the zone of the sun's interior that is between the core and the convection zone and in which energy moves by radiation (759)	**radiative zone/zona radiactiva** la zona del interior del Sol que se encuentra entre el núcleo y la zona de convección y en la cual la energía se mueve por radiación (759)
radiometric dating a method of determining the absolute age of an object by comparing the relative percentages of a radioactive (parent) isotope and a stable (daughter) isotope (193)	**radiometric dating/datación radiométrica** un método para determinar la edad absoluta de un objeto comparando los porcentajes relativos de un isótopo radiactivo (precursor) y un isótopo estable (hijo) (193)
radiosonde a package of instruments that is carried aloft by balloons to measure upper atmosphere conditions, including temperature, dew point, and wind velocity (613)	**radiosonde/radiosonda** un conjunto de instrumentos que llevan los globos para medir condiciones de la atmósfera superior, como la temperatura, el punto de rocío y la velocidad del viento (613)
recycling the process of recovering valuable or useful materials from waste or scrap; the process of reusing some items (171)	**recycling/reciclar** el proceso de recuperar materiales valiosos o útiles de los desechos o de la basura; el proceso de reutilizar algunas cosas (171)
reflecting telescope a telescope that uses a curved mirror to gather and focus light from distant objects (663)	**reflecting telescope/telescopio reflector** un telescopio que utiliza un espejo curvo para captar y enfocar la luz de objetos lejanos (663)
refracting telescope a telescope that uses a set of lenses to gather and focus light from distant objects (663)	**refracting telescope/telescopio refractante** un telescopio que utiliza un conjunto de lentes para captar y enfocar la luz de objetos lejanos (663)
refraction the bending of a wavefront as the wavefront passes between two substances in which the speed of the wave differs; *also* the process by which ocean waves bend directly toward the coastline as they approach shallow water (529)	**refraction/refracción** el curvamiento de un frente de ondas a medida que el frente pasa entre dos substancias en las que la velocidad de las ondas difiere; *también,* el proceso por medio del cual las olas oceánicas se curvan directamente hacia la costa a medida que se acercan a agua poco profunda (529)
regional metamorphism a change in the texture, structure, or chemical composition of a rock due to changes in temperature and pressure over a large area, generally as a result of tectonic forces (142)	**regional metamorphism/metamorfismo regional** un cambio en la textura, estructura o composición química de una roca debido a cambios en la temperatura y presión en un área extensa, generalmente como resultado de la acción de fuerzas tectónicas (142)

relative age the age of an object in relation to the ages of other objects (186)	**relative age/edad relativa** la edad de un objeto en relación con la edad de otros objetos (186)
relative humidity the ratio of the amount of water vapor in the air to the amount of water vapor needed to reach saturation at a given temperature (578)	**relative humidity/humedad relativa** la proporción de la cantidad de vapor de agua que hay en el aire respecto a la cantidad de vapor de agua necesaria para alcanzar la saturación a una temperatura dada (578)
relief the difference between the highest and lowest elevations in a given area; the variations in elevation of a land surface (64)	**relief/relieve** la diferencia entre las elevaciones más altas y las más bajas en un área dada; las variaciones en elevación de una superficie de terreno (64)
remote sensing the process of gathering and analyzing information about an object without physically being in touch with the object (57)	**remote sensing/teledetección** el proceso de recopilar y analizar información acerca de un objeto sin estar en contacto físico con el objeto (57)
renewable resource a natural resource that can be replaced at the same rate at which the resource is consumed (165)	**renewable resource/recurso renovable** un recurso natural que puede reemplazarse a la misma tasa a la que se consume (165)
revolution the motion of a body that travels around another body in space; one complete trip along an orbit (668)	**revolution/revolución** el movimiento de un cuerpo que viaja alrededor de otro cuerpo en el espacio; un viaje completo a lo largo de una órbita (668)
rifting the process by which Earth's crust breaks apart; can occur within continental crust or oceanic crust (255)	**rifting/fracturación** el proceso por medio del cual la corteza de la Tierra se fractura; puede producirse dentro de la corteza continental u oceánica (255)
rock cycle the series of processes in which rock forms, changes from one type to another, is destroyed, and forms again by geologic processes (126)	**rock cycle/ciclo de las rocas** la serie de procesos por medio de los cuales una roca se forma, cambia de un tipo a otro, se destruye y se forma nuevamente por procesos geológicos (126)
rotation the spin of a body on its axis (667)	**rotation/rotación** el giro de un cuerpo alrededor de su eje (667)

S

salinity a measure of the amount of dissolved salts in a given amount of liquid (496)	**salinity/salinidad** una medida de la cantidad de sales disueltas en una cantidad determinada de líquido (496)
saltation the movement of sand or other sediments by short jumps and bounces that is caused by wind or water (445)	**saltation/saltación** el movimiento de la arena u otros sedimentos por medio de saltos pequeños y rebotes debido al viento o al agua (445)
satellite a natural or artificial body that revolves around a planet (719)	**satellite/satélite** un cuerpo natural o artificial que gira alrededor de un planeta (719)
scale the relationship between the distance shown on a map and the actual distance (61)	**scale/escala** la relación entre la distancia que se muestra en un mapa y la distancia real (61)
sea a large, commonly saline body of water that is smaller than an ocean and that may be partially or completely surrounded by land; *also* a subdivision of an ocean (471)	**sea/mar** una gran masa de agua, generalmente salada, que es más pequeña que un océano y que puede estar parcial o totalmente rodeada de tierra; *también,* una subdivisión de un océano (471)

sea-floor spreading the process by which new oceanic lithosphere (sea floor) forms as magma rises to Earth's surface and solidifies at a mid-ocean ridge (243)	**sea-floor spreading/expansión del suelo marino** el proceso por medio del cual se forma nueva litosfera oceánica (suelo marino) a medida que el magma se eleva a la superficie de la Tierra y se solidifica en una dorsal oceánica (243)
seismic gap an area along a fault where relatively few earthquakes have occurred recently but where strong earthquakes are known to have occurred in the past (307)	**seismic gap/brecha sísmica** un área a lo largo de una falla donde han ocurrido relativamente pocos terremotos recientemente, pero donde se sabe que han ocurrido terremotos fuertes en el pasado (307)
seismogram a tracing of earthquake motion that is recorded by a seismograph (301)	**seismogram/sismograma** una traza del movimiento de un terremoto registrada por un sismógrafo (301)
seismograph an instrument that records vibrations in the ground (301)	**seismograph/sismógrafo** un instrumento que registra las vibraciones en el suelo (301)
shadow zone an area on Earth's surface where no direct seismic waves from a particular earthquake can be detected (298)	**shadow zone/zona de sombra** un área de la superficie de la Tierra donde no se detectan ondas sísmicas directas de un determinado terremoto (298)
sheet erosion the process by which water flows over a layer of soil and removes the topsoil (358)	**sheet erosion/erosión laminar** el proceso por medio del cual el agua fluye sobre el suelo y remueve la capa superior de éste (358)
silicate mineral a mineral that contains a combination of silicon and oxygen and that may also contain one or more metals (104)	**silicate mineral/mineral silicato** un mineral que contiene una combinación de silicio y oxígeno y que también puede contener uno o más metales (104)
silicon-oxygen tetrahedron the basic unit of the structure of silicate minerals; a silicon ion chemically bonded to and surrounded by four oxygen ions (106)	**silicon-oxygen tetrahedron/tetraedro de sílice-oxígeno** la unidad fundamental de la estructura de los minerales silicatos: un ion de silicio unido químicamente a cuatro iones de oxígeno, los cuales lo rodean (106)
sinkhole a circular depression that forms when rock dissolves, when overlying sediment fills an existing cavity, or when the roof of an underground cavern or mine collapses (407)	**sinkhole/depresión** una depresión circular que se forma cuando la roca se funde, cuando el sedimento suprayacente llena una cavidad existente, o al colapsarse el techo de una caverna o mina subterránea (407)
soil a loose mixture of rock fragments and organic material that can support the growth of vegetation (353)	**soil/suelo** una mezcla suelta de fragmentos de roca y material orgánico en la que puede crecer vegetación (353)
soil profile a vertical section of soil that shows the layers of horizons (354)	**soil profile/perfil del suelo** una sección vertical de suelo que muestra las capas u horizontes (354)
solar eclipse the passing of the moon between Earth and the sun; during a solar eclipse, the shadow of the moon falls on Earth (727)	**solar eclipse/eclipse solar** el paso de la Luna entre la Tierra y el Sol; durante un eclipse solar, la sombra de la Luna cae sobre la Tierra (727)
solar energy the energy received by Earth from the sun in the form of radiation (166)	**solar energy/energía solar** la energía que la Tierra recibe del Sol en forma de radiación (166)
solar flare an explosive release of energy that comes from the sun and that is associated with magnetic disturbances on the sun's surface (763)	**solar flare/erupción solar** una liberación explosiva de energía que proviene del Sol y que se asocia con disturbios magnéticos en la superficie solar (763)

solar nebula a rotating cloud of gas and dust from which the sun and planets formed; *also* any nebula from which stars and planets may form (685)	**solar nebula/nebulosa solar** una nube de gas y polvo en rotación a partir de la cual se formaron el Sol y los planetas; *también,* cualquier nebulosa a partir de la cual se pueden formar estrellas y planetas (685)
solar system the sun and all of the planets and other bodies that travel around it (685)	**solar system/Sistema Solar** el Sol y todos los planetas y otros cuerpos que se desplazan alrededor de él (685)
solifluction the slow, downslope flow of soil saturated with water in areas surrounding glaciers at high elevations (362)	**solifluction/soliflucción** el flujo lento y descendente de suelo saturado con agua en áreas que rodean glaciares a altas elevaciones (362)
solstice the point at which the sun is as far north or as far south of the equator as possible (674)	**solstice/solsticio** el punto en el que el Sol está tan lejos del ecuador como es posible, ya sea hacia el norte o hacia el sur (674)
solution a homogeneous mixture throughout which two or more substances are uniformly dispersed (92)	**solution/solución** una mezcla homogénea en la cual dos o más sustancias se dispersan de manera uniforme (92)
sonar sound navigation and ranging, a system that uses acoustic signals and returned echoes to determine the location of objects or to communicate (473)	**sonar/sonar** navegación y exploración por medio del sonido; un sistema que usa señales acústicas y ondas de eco que regresan para determinar la ubicación de los objetos o para comunicarse (473)
specific heat the quantity of heat required to raise a unit mass of homogeneous material 1 K or 1°C in a specified way given constant pressure and volume (634)	**specific heat/calor específico** la cantidad de calor que se requiere para aumentar una unidad de masa de un material homogéneo 1 K ó 1°C de una manera especificada, dados un volumen y una presión constantes (634)
star a large celestial body that is composed of gas and that emits light; the sun is a typical star (775)	**star/estrella** un cuerpo celeste grande que está compuesto de gas y emite luz; el Sol es una estrella típica (775)
stationary front a front of air masses that moves either very slowly or not at all (606)	**stationary front/frente estacionario** un frente de masas de aire que se mueve muy lentamente o que no se mueve (606)
station model a pattern of meteorological symbols that represents the weather at a particular observing station and that is recorded on a weather map (616)	**station model/estación modelo** el modelo de símbolos meteorológicos que representan el tiempo en una estación de observación determinada y que se registra en un mapa meteorológico (616)
strain any change in a rock's shape or volume caused by stress; deformation (274)	**strain/tensión** cualquier cambio en la forma o volumen de una roca causado por el estrés; deformación (274)
stratosphere the layer of the atmosphere that lies between the troposphere and the mesosphere and in which temperature increases as altitude increases; contains the ozone layer (553)	**stratosphere/estratosfera** la capa de la atmósfera que se encuentra entre la troposfera y la mesosfera y en la cual la temperatura aumenta al aumentar la altitud; contiene la capa de ozono (553)
stratus cloud a gray cloud that has a flat, uniform base and that commonly forms at very low altitudes (584)	**stratus cloud/nube estrato** una nube gris que tiene una base plana y uniforme y que comúnmente se forma a altitudes muy bajas (584)
streak the color of a mineral in powdered form (110)	**streak/veta** el color de un mineral en forma de polvo (110)

stream load the materials other than the water that are carried by a stream (380)	**stream load/carga de un arroyo** los materiales que lleva un arroyo, además del agua (380)
stress the amount of force per unit area that acts on a rock (273)	**stress/estrés** la cantidad de fuerza por unidad de área que se ejerce sobre una roca (273)
sublimation the process in which a solid changes directly into a gas (the term is sometimes also used for the reverse process) (576)	**sublimation/sublimación** el proceso por medio del cual un sólido se transforma directamente en un gas (en ocasiones, este término también se usa para describir el proceso inverso) (576)
sunspot a dark area of the photosphere of the sun that is cooler than the surrounding areas and that has a strong magnetic field (761)	**sunspot/mancha solar** un área oscura en la fotosfera del Sol que es más fría que las áreas que la rodean y que tiene un campo magnético fuerte (761)
supercontinent cycle the process by which supercontinents form and break apart over millions of years (258)	**supercontinent cycle/ciclo de los supercontinentes** el proceso por medio del cual los supercontinentes se forman y se separan a lo largo de millones de años (258)
supercooling a condition in which a substance is cooled below its freezing point, condensation point, or sublimation point without going through a change of state (588)	**supercooling/superfrío** una condición en la que una sustancia se enfría por debajo de su punto de congelación, punto de condensación o punto de sublimación sin pasar por un cambio de estado (588)
surface current a horizontal movement of ocean water that is caused by wind and that occurs at or near the ocean's surface (519)	**surface current/corriente superficial** un movimiento horizontal del agua del océano que es producido por el viento y que ocurre en la superficie del océano o cerca de ella (519)
surface wave in geology, a seismic wave that travels along the surface of a medium and that has a stronger effect near the surface of the medium than it has in the interior (296)	**surface wave/onda superficial** en geología, una onda sísmica que se desplaza a lo largo de la superficie de un medio, cuyo efecto es más fuerte cerca de la superficie del medio que en el interior de éste (296)
S wave a secondary wave, or shear wave; a seismic wave that causes particles of rock to move in a side-to-side direction perpendicular to the direction in which the wave is traveling; S waves are the second-fastest seismic waves and can travel only through solids (297)	**S wave/onda S** una onda secundaria u onda rotacional; una onda sísmica que hace que las partículas de roca se muevan en una dirección de lado a lado, en forma perpendicular a la dirección en la que viaja la onda; las ondas S son las segundas ondas sísmicas en cuanto a velocidad y únicamente pueden viajar a través de sólidos (297)
system a set of particles or interacting components considered to be a distinct physical entity for the purpose of study (31)	**system/sistema** un conjunto de partículas o componentes que interactúan unos con otros, el cual se considera una entidad física independiente para fines de estudio (31)

T

telescope an instrument that collects electromagnetic radiation from the sky and concentrates it for better observation (662)	**telescope/telescopio** un instrumento que capta la radiación electromagnética del cielo y la concentra para mejorar la observación (662)
terrane a piece of lithosphere that has a unique geologic history and that may be part of a larger piece of lithosphere, such as a continent (256)	**terrane/macizo autóctono** un fragmento de litosfera que tiene una historia geológica única y que puede formar parte de un fragmento de litosfera mayor, como por ejemplo, un continente (256)

terrestrial planet one of the highly dense planets nearest to the sun; Mercury, Venus, Mars, and Earth (695)	**terrestrial planet/planeta terrestre** uno de los planetas muy densos que se encuentran más cerca del Sol; Mercurio, Venus, Marte y la Tierra (695)
theory an explanation for some phenomenon that is based on observation, experimentation, and reasoning; that is supported by a large quantity of evidence; and that does not conflict with any existing experimental results or observations (15)	**theory/teoría** una explicación sobre algún fenómeno que está basada en la observación, experimentación y razonamiento; que está respaldada por una gran cantidad de pruebas; y que no contradice ningún resultado experimental ni observación existente (15)
thermocline a layer in a body of water in which water temperature drops with increased depth faster than it does in other layers (498)	**thermocline/termoclinal** una capa en una masa de agua en la que, al aumentar la profundidad, la temperatura del agua disminuye más rápido de lo que lo hace en otras capas (498)
thermometer an instrument that measures and indicates temperature (611)	**thermometer/termómetro** un instrumento que mide e indica la temperatura (611)
thermosphere the uppermost layer of the atmosphere, in which temperature increases as altitude increases; includes the ionosphere (553)	**thermosphere/termosfera** la capa más alta de la atmósfera, en la cual la temperatura aumenta a medida que la altitud aumenta; incluye la ionosfera (553)
thunderstorm a usually brief, heavy storm that consists of rain, strong winds, lightning, and thunder (608)	**thunderstorm/tormenta eléctrica** una tormenta fuerte y normalmente breve que consiste en lluvia, vientos fuertes, relámpagos y truenos (608)
tidal current the movement of water toward and away from the coast as a result of the rise and fall of the tides (534)	**tidal current/corriente de marea** el movimiento del agua hacia la costa y de la costa hacia el mar, como resultado del ascenso y descenso de las mareas (534)
tidal oscillation the slow, rocking motion of ocean water that occurs as the tidal bulges move around the ocean basins (533)	**tidal oscillation/oscilación de las mareas** el movimiento lento y mecedor del agua del océano que se produce cuando los abultamientos de marea se mueven alrededor de las cuencas oceánicas (533)
tidal range the difference in levels of ocean water at high tide and low tide (532)	**tidal range/rango de marea** la diferencia en los niveles del agua del océano entre la marea alta y la marea baja (532)
tide the periodic rise and fall of the water level in the oceans and other large bodies of water (531)	**tide/marea** el ascenso y descenso periódico del nivel del agua en los océanos y otras masas grandes de agua (531)
till unsorted rock material that is deposited directly by a melting glacier (426)	**till/arcilla** glaciárica material rocoso desordenado que deposita directamente un glaciar que se está derritiendo (426)
topography the size and shape of the land surface features of a region, including its relief (63)	**topography/topografía** el tamaño y la forma de las características de una superficie de terreno, incluyendo su relieve (63)
tornado a destructive, rotating column of air that has very high wind speeds and that may be visible as a funnel-shaped cloud (610)	**tornado/tornado** una columna destructiva de aire en rotación cuyos vientos se mueven a velocidades muy altas y que puede verse como una nube con forma de embudo (610)

trace fossil a fossilized mark that formed in sedimentary rock by the movement of an animal on or within soft sediment (199)	**trace fossil/fósil traza** una marca fosilizada que se formó en una roca sedimentaria por el movimiento de un animal sobre sedimento blando o dentro de éste (199)
trade winds prevailing winds that blow from east to west from 30° latitude to the equator in both hemispheres (562)	**trade winds/vientos alisios** vientos prevalecientes que soplan de este a oeste desde los 30° de latitud hacia el ecuador en ambos hemisferios (562)
transform boundary the boundary between tectonic plates that are sliding past each other horizontally (251)	**transform boundary/límite de transformación el límite** entre placas tectónicas que se están deslizando horizontalmente una sobre otra (251)
trench a long, narrow, and steep depression that forms on the ocean floor as a result of subduction of a tectonic plate, that runs parallel to the trend of a chain of volcanic islands or the coastline of a continent, and that may be as deep as 11 km below sea level; also called an *ocean trench* or a *deep-ocean trench* (477)	**trench/fosa submarina** una depresión larga, angosta y empinada que se forma en el fondo del océano debido a la subducción de una placa tectónica; corre paralela al curso de una cadena de islas montañosas o a la costa de un continente; y puede tener una profundidad de hasta 11 km bajo el nivel del mar; también denominada *fosa oceánica* o *fosa oceánica profunda* (477)
tributary a stream that flows into a lake or into a larger stream (379)	**tributary/afluente** un arroyo que fluye a un lago o a otro arroyo más grande (379)
tropical climate a climate characterized by high temperatures and heavy precipitation during at least part of the year; typical of equatorial regions (637)	**tropical climate/clima tropical** un clima caracterizado por temperaturas altas y precipitación fuerte durante al menos una parte del año; típico de las regiones ecuatoriales (637)
troposphere the lowest layer of the atmosphere, in which temperature drops at a constant rate as altitude increases; the part of the atmosphere where weather conditions exist (552)	**troposphere/troposfera** la capa inferior de la atmósfera, en la que la temperatura disminuye a una tasa constante a medida que la altitud aumenta; la parte de la atmósfera donde se dan las condiciones del tiempo (552)
tsunami a giant ocean wave that forms after a volcanic eruption, submarine earthquake, or landslide (305)	**tsunami/tsunami** una ola gigante del océano que se forma después de una erupción volcánica, terremoto submarino o desprendimiento de tierras (305)

U

unconformity a break in the geologic record created when rock layers are eroded or when sediment is not deposited for a long period of time (189)	**unconformity/disconformidad** una ruptura en el registro geológico, creada cuando las capas de roca se erosionan o cuando el sedimento no se deposita durante un largo período de tiempo (189)
uniformitarianism a principle that geologic processes that occurred in the past can be explained by current geologic processes (185)	**uniformitarianism/uniformitarianismo** un principio que establece que es posible explicar los procesos geológicos que ocurrieron en el pasado en función de los procesos geológicos actuales (185)
upwelling the movement of deep, cold, and nutrient-rich water to the surface (502)	**upwelling/surgencia** el movimiento de las aguas profundas, frías y ricas en nutrientes hacia la superficie (502)

V

varve a banded layer of sand and silt that is de-posited annually in a lake, especially near ice sheets or glaciers, and that can be used to determine absolute age (192)	**varve/sedimentos cíclicos estacionales** una capa de arena y limo dispuestos en bandas, que se deposita en un lago durante un año, especialmente cerca de las capas de hielo o los glaciares, y que puede usarse para determinar la edad absoluta (192)
ventifact any rock that is pitted, grooved, or polished by wind abrasion (447)	**ventifact/ventifacto** cualquier roca que es marcada, estriada o pulida por la abrasión del viento (447)
volcanism any activity that includes the movement of magma toward or onto the Earth's surface (320)	**volcanism/volcanismo** cualquier actividad que incluye el movimiento de magma hacia la superficie de la Tierra o sobre ella (320)
volcano a vent or fissure in the Earth's surface through which magma and gases are expelled (320)	**volcano/volcán** una chimenea o fisura en la superficie de la Tierra a través de la cual se expulsan magma y gases (320)

W

warm front the front edge of an advancing warm air mass that replaces colder air with warmer air (606)	**warm front/frente cálido** el borde del frente de una masa de aire caliente en movimiento que reemplaza al aire más frío (606)
water cycle the continuous movement of water between the atmosphere, the land, and the oceans (375)	**water cycle/ciclo del agua** el movimiento continuo del agua entre la atmósfera, la tierra y los océanos (375)
watershed the area of land that is drained by a river system (379)	**watershed/cuenca hidrográfica** el área del terreno que es drenada por un sistema de ríos (379)
water table the upper surface of underground water; the upper boundary of the zone of saturation (399)	**water table/capa freática** el nivel más alto del agua subterránea; el límite superior de la zona de saturación (399)
wave a periodic disturbance in a solid, liquid, or gas as energy is transmitted through a medium (525)	**wave/onda** una perturbación periódica en un sólido, líquido o gas que se transmite a través de un medio en forma de energía (525)
wave period the time required for identical points on consecutive waves to pass a given point (525)	**wave period/período de onda** el tiempo que se requiere para que puntos idénticos de ondas consecutivas pasen por un punto dado (525)
weathering the natural process by which atmospheric and environmental agents, such as wind, rain, and temperature changes, disintegrate and decompose rocks (343)	**weathering/meteorización** el proceso natural por medio del cual los agentes atmosféricos o ambientales, como el viento, la lluvia y los cambios de temperatura, desintegran y descomponen las rocas (343)
westerlies prevailing winds that blow from west to east between 30° and 60° latitude in both hemispheres (562)	**westerlies/vientos del oeste** vientos preponderantes que soplan de oeste a este entre 30° y 60° de latitud en ambos hemisferios (562)
white dwarf a small, hot, dim star that is the left-over center of an old star (785)	**white dwarf/enana blanca** una estrella pequeña, caliente y tenue que es el centro sobrante de una estrella vieja (785)
wind vane an instrument used to determine the direction of the wind (612)	**wind vane/veleta** un instrumento que se usa para determinar la dirección del viento (612)

INDEX

Note: Page references followed by *f* refer to figures. Page references followed by *t* refer to tables.

A

aa, 326, 326*f*
abrasion, 344
absolute age, 191–196
  absolute dating methods, 191–192
  carbon dating, 196, 196*f*
  geologic column, 211–212
  index fossils, 200
  radiometric dating, 193–195
  rate of deposition, 192
  rate of erosion, 191
  varve count, 192, 192*f*
absolute humidity, 577
absolute magnitude, 780, 781*f*
absolute zero, 795, 830
absorption of solar energy, 557–558, 570–571, 572
absorption spectra, 775, 775*f*
abyssal hills, 478
abyssal plains, 477
abyssal zone, 503, 503*f*
abyssopelagic zone, 503*f*, 504
acceleration, 830
accretion, 256
accuracy, 12, 12*f*
  and precision, 12, 12*f*
acidity, of soil
  lab on, 370–371
acid precipitation, 170, 348
acid rain, 144
Acid Rain Control Program, 348
acids, 828
  acid precipitation, 348
  carbonation, 347
  chemical weathering, 346, 348
  organic acids, 347
Active Cavity Radiometer Irradiance Monitor satellite (*ACRIMSAT*), 762
active system, solar energy, 166
Adams, John Couch, 706
adiabatic cooling, 582
adiabatic lapse rate, 582
Adirondack Mountains (New York)
  as dome mountains, 283, 283*f*
advection fog, 586
advective cooling, 583
aeration, zone of, 399
Africa
  East Africa and monsoon climate, 635
  formation of, 259, 259*f*
  future geography of, 260, 260*f*, 293
agates, 102*f*
age
  absolute, 191–196
  of Earth, 185–186
  relative, 186
air. *See also* **atmosphere; wind**
  composition of, 547, 547*f*
  dry air, 548
  measuring air temperature, 611
  moist air, 548
air masses, 601–604
  classification of and symbols for, 602–604, 602*t*, 603*t*
  cold front, 605, 605*f*
  continental, 602, 602*t*
  formation of, 601
  maritime, 602, 602*t*, 603*t*
  of North America, 603–604, 603*f*, 603*t*
  polar, 602*t*, 604
  tropical, 602*t*, 603
  warm front, 606, 606*f*
air pollution
  air-pollution watch long-term project, 852–855
  reducing amount of, 554
  smog, 554
  temperature inversions, 554, 554*f*
air pressure. *See also* **atmospheric pressure**
  air masses and, 601
  measuring, 612
  on weather map, 616–617
  wind and, 519, 525
albedo, 557
Aleutian Islands, 321, 321*f*
algebraic rearrangements, 821–822
alloy, 92
alluvial fans, 383, 383*f*
alpha decay, 193, 193*f*
alpine glaciers, 420, 420*f*
  deposition by, 426, 426*f*
  erosion by, 424–425
Alps, 224
  foehn, 636
  as folded mountain, 282
  formation of, 259, 293
  reverse faults, 277
altimeter, 551
altitude
  measuring with altimeter, 551
  temperature and atmospheric pressure at various altitudes, 552–553, 552*f*
altocumulus clouds, 584*f*, 585
altostratus clouds, 584, 584*f*
aluminum
  as element of Earth's crust, 81*f*
  in ore bauxite, 155
  physical properties of, 98*t*
  in soil, 353
aluminum ore, leaching and formation of, 347
Alvin, 474
amber, 198*t*
amethyst, color of, 109, 109*f*
ammonite, 222
ammonite fossil, 200, 200*f*
amphibians, Paleozoic Era, 220
amphiboles, 107
  as silicate mineral, 104
Andes (South America), 221
  formation of, 259, 280, 280*f*
andesite, as intermediate rock, 132
Andromeda, 789
anemometer, 612, 612*f*
aneroid barometer, 551
angiosperms, 223
angler fish, 474, 474*f*
angularity, of clastic sedimentary rock, 138
angular unconformity, 189, 189*f*
anhydrite, 105*t*
animals, weathering and, 345, 351
anion, 104
ankylosaurs, 223
annular eclipse, 728
anorthosites, 720
Antarctica
  clues to climate change in, 209
  formation of, 259, 259*f*
  ice sheet in, 420
  meteorites in, 744
Antarctic Bottom Water, 523, 523*f*
Antarctic Circumpolar Current, 521, 521*f*
anthracite, 160, 160*f*
anticline, 276, 276*f*
  oil and, 276
anticyclone, 607
Ant nebula, 785, 785*f*
apatite, hardness of, 111*t*
Apatosaurus, 222
aphelion, 668, 668*f*
apogee, 725
Apollo space program, 719
Appalachian Mountains (eastern North America), 258
  anticlines and synclines, 276
  as folded mountains, 282
  mountain ranges of, 279
apparent magnitude, 780, 780*f*
aquaculture, 507, 507*f*
aquifers, 397
  Ogallala Aquifer, 416
  permeability, 398, 398*f*

aquifers (*continued*)
porosity, 397, 397*f*
properties of, 397–398
recharge zone, 401, 401*f*
zones of, 399
arable land, 359
Archaeopteryx, 222*f*
Archean Eon, 214
arctic climate, soil in, 355, 355*f*
Arctic Ocean, 471, 471*f*
Arcturus, 784, 784*f*
area, 820
conversion table, 870*t*
arêtes, 424, 424*f*
argon, radiometric dating of, 195*t*
argon-argon dating, 875*t*
Ariel, 737
Aristotle, 691
artesian formation, 403
artesian spring, 403
artesian well, 403
artificial levees, 385
artificial satellite, 719
asterism, as special property of minerals, 113
asteroid belt, 701, 739, 739*f*
asteroids, 718*f,* 739–740, 739*f*
composition of, 740
near-Earth asteroids, 740
asthenosphere, 28*f,* 29, 247
as a layer of Earth, 298
isostasy and, 271, 271*f*
astronomers, 7, 659, 717
astronomical unit, 660
astronomy, 7, 659
characteristics of universe, 660
human space exploration, 666
observing space, 661–663
probes, 665
space-based, 664–666
space telescopes, 665
telescopes, 662–664
Atlantic Ocean, 471, 471*f*
currents in, 522, 522*f*
deep-water currents in, 524, 524*f*
equatorial currents, 521, 521*f*
tides, 533
atmosphere, 33, 547
absorption of solar energy and infrared energy, 557–558
atmospheric pressure, 550–551
composition of, 547–549
conduction in, 560
convection in, 560
Coriolis effect, 561, 561*f*
Earth's early atmosphere, 689, 689*f*
Earth's present atmosphere, 689, 689*f*
factors affecting temperature, 558–559
formation of, 689–690, 689*f*
global winds, 562–563
greenhouse effect, 558, 558*f*
layers of, 552–553, 552*f*
local winds, 564
nitrogen in, 33, 547, 547*f*
ocean's effect on, 690
outgassing, 689, 689*f*
oxygen in, 33, 548, 548*f*
ozone in, 549, 549*f*
particulates in, 549, 549*f*
reflection of solar energy, 557
scattering of solar energy, 556
solar radiation absorbed in, 556–557
temperature inversions, 554, 554*f*
water vapor in, 548, 548*f*
atmosphere, sun's, 759–760
atmospheric moisture
changing forms of water, 575–576
clouds, 581–585
evaporation, 576
fog, 586
humidity, 577–580
latent heat, 575
precipitation, 587–590
sublimation, 576
sunlight and visual effects, 576
atmospheric pressure, 550–551. *See also* **air pressure**
adiabatic cooling, 582
altitude and, 550, 550*f*
global winds and, 562–563, 562*f*
measuring, 550–551, 551*f*
seasons and wind belt changes, 633
temperature and, 550
at various altitudes, 552–553, 552*f*
water vapor and, 550, 577, 577*f*
atolls, 457, 478, 478*f*
as terrane, 256
atomic mass, 83
average, 86
isotopes, 83
atomic mass unit, 83
atomic number, 83, 827
isotopes, 83
atoms, 82–86, 827
atomic mass, 83–86
atomic number, 83, 827
chemical bonds, 89–91, 104
chemical equations, 88, 828
chemical formulas, 87, 828
compounds, 87, 827
electron cloud, 82, 827*f*
electrons, 82, 827
ions, 90
magnetism and, 244
molecules, 87, 827
neutrons, 82, 827
nucleus of, 82, 82*f,* 827
protons, 82, 827
structure of, 82, 827
valence electrons and periodic properties, 86
aurora australis, 764
aurora borealis, 764
auroras, 553, 553*f,* 764, 764*f*
Australia
formation of, 259, 259*f*
future geography of, 260, 260*f*
monsoon climate, 635
automobiles
hybrid cars, 646
to reduce carbon dioxide emissions, 646
autumnal equinox, 673
autunite, 114
average atomic mass, 86
axial plane of fold, 275
axis of Earth
climate and changes in, 643, 643*f*
seasons and, 672, 672*f*
Ayers Rock (Australia), 342*f*
azimuthal projection, 59, 59*f*
Azores, 284
azurite, color of, 109

B

Bahamas, 469*f*
Baja Peninsula (Mexico), future geography of, 260
Baltic Sea, tidal oscillations, 533
Banff National Park (Canada), 381*f*
banks, stream, 379
barchan dune, 448, 448*f*
bar graphs, 824–825
barometers, 550–551, 551*f,* 612
aneroid, 551
mercurial, 551, 551*f*
barometric pressure
conversion scale, 878*t*
measuring, 857*t*
barred spiral galaxy, 791
barrier islands, 457, 457*f*
barrier reef, 457
barycenter, 725, 725*f,* 790
basal slip, 421
basalt, 103, 103*t*
as fine-grained igneous rock, 131
as mafic rock, 132
base map, 66
bases, 828
chemical weathering, 346
batholiths, 133, 324
bathyal zone, 503, 503*f*
bathypelagic zone, 503*f,* 504
bathysphere/bathyscaph, 474
bauxite, leaching and formation of, 347
bays, 452
longshore currents and, 454, 454*f*
beaches, 452, 453
absolute sea-level changes and, 455
berm, 452*f,* 453
composition of, 453
emergent coastline, 456
lab on, 464–465
longshore-current deposits, 454
pollution and, 508, 517
preserving coastline, 458

relative sea-level changes, 456–457
submergent coastlines, 456, 456*f*
wave erosion and, 453, 464–465
Beaufort Sea (Canada) and coastal erosion, 466
bedding plane, 187
bed load, in streams, 380
bedrock, 353, 354*f*
in Ohio, 208
beds, 187
sedimentary rock, 139
stream, 379
benthic zone, 503, 503*f*
benthos, 502
Bering land bridge, 225
berm, 452*f,* 453
beryl, 107
beta decay, 193, 193*f*
Betelgeuse, 784, 784*f*
big bang theory, 660, 794–795, 794*f*
Big Dipper, 789
binary stars, 786, 790
Bingham Canyon Mine (Utah), 158*f*
biodiversity, 77
maps of, 77*f*
biogenic sediments, 481
biological clock, 51
biomass, 167
biosphere, 33
biotite, 107
as felsic rock, 132
partial melting of magma, 129, 129*f*
as rock-forming mineral, 104
as silicate mineral, 104
biotite mica, in intermediate rock, 132
birds, of Jurassic Period, 222
bituminous coal, 160, 160*f*
black dwarf, 785
Black Hills (South Dakota), 133
as dome mountains, 283
black hole, 788
blizzard, safety tips for, 619*t*
blocky lava, 326, 326*f*
Blue Ridge (eastern United States), 279
blue shift, 778, 778*f*
body waves, 296, 297
P waves, 297, 297*f*
S waves, 297, 297*f*
bonds
chemical, 89–91
covalent, 91, 91*t*
ionic, 90, 90*t*
polar covalent, 91
Bonneville Salt Flats (Utah), 136
Bora Bora, 457*f*
borax, as evaporite, 429
Boston Harbor, pollution of, 517
Bowen, N. L., 127
Bowen's reaction series, 127, 127*f*
brachiopods, 218, 219
Brahe, Tycho, 692
braided stream, 382, 382*f*
breakers, 528, 528*f*
breccia
as clastic sedimentary rock, 137, 137*f*
lunar, 721
breezes, 564
mountain, 564
valley, 564
brittle strain, 274, 274*f*
bromine, extracted from oceans, 506
Brontosaurus, 222
buttes, 364, 364*f*

C

Caesar, Augustus, 670
Caesar, Julius, 670
calcareous ooze, 482
calcite, 105*t*
caverns and, 406
cleavage of, 110*f*
as evaporite, 429
fluorescence of, 113, 113*f*
hardness of, 111*t*
as rock-forming mineral, 104
stalactites and stalagmites, 406
uses of, 157*t*
calcium
as dissolved solid in ocean water, 495
as element of Earth's crust, 81*f*
calcium bicarbonate, 347
calcium carbonate, 405
in organic sediments, 481
calderas, 329, 329*f*
calendar
formation of, 670
leap year, 670
modern, 670
Calico Hills (California), 446*f*
California, future geography of, 260, 260*f*
California Current, 522
Callisto, 735, 735*f*
Cambrian Period, 213*t,* 218
Canary Current, 522, 522*f*
Canyon de Chelly (Arizona), 186*f*
canyons, submarine, 476, 476*f*
capillary action, groundwater and, 399
capillary fringe, 399, 399*f*
caprock, 403
petroleum and natural gas deposits in, 161
carbohydrates, in carbon cycle, 37, 37*f*
carbon
in carbon cycle, 37, 37*f*
radiometric dating, 195*t,* 196, 196*f*
uses of, 157*t*
carbonates, 37, 347
as major class of nonsilicate minerals, 105*t*
carbonation, 347
carbon cycle, 37, 37*f*
carbon dating, 195*t,* 196, 196*f*
carbon dioxide
in carbon cycle, 37, 37*f*
carbon sink, 494
climate changes and increases in, 644
coccolithophores, 655, 655*f*
dissolved in ocean water, 493–494, 690
global warming and, 645
greenhouse effect, 558
individual efforts to reduce pollution by, 646
photosynthesis and, 548
predicting volcanic eruptions, 336–337
transportation solutions to reduce emissions of, 646
carbonic acid, 347, 405
caverns and, 406
Carboniferous Period, 213*t,* 220
carbonization, 159
carbon sink, 494
cardinal directions, 60, 60*f*
Caribbean Sea, 469*f,* 471, 471*f*
carnotite, 114
carrying capacity, 40
cartography, 57, 57*f*
Cascade Range (western United States)
formation of, 280
as volcanic mountains, 284, 284*f*
Cassini-Huygens, 7, 665, 665*f,* 704
casts, fossils and, 199*t*
cation, 104
cat's-eye effect, 113
Catskills, 364
caverns, 406, 406*f*
celestial equator, 673
cementation, 135
Cenozoic Era, 213*t,* 214, 224–226
Age of Mammals, 224
Eocene Epoch, 224
Holocene Epoch, 226
Miocene Epoch, 225
Oligocene Epoch, 225
Paleocene Epoch, 224
Pleistocene Epoch, 226
Pliocene Epoch, 225
Quaternary Period, 224
Tertiary Period, 224
timeline for, 224*f*
Central American land bridge, 225
Cepheid variables, 790
ceratopsians, 223
Ceres, 739
CFCs (chlorofluorocarbons), 549, 556
chalcedony, 102*f*
chalcopyrite, uses of, 157*t*
chalk, as organic sedimentary rock, 136
Challenger, 666
Champagne Pool (New Zealand), 80*f*
Chandra X-ray Observatory, 665
channel, 379
Channeled Scablands (Washington), 443
channel erosion, 379–380
Charon, 737, 737*f,* 742

INDEX

chatoyancy, as special property of minerals, 113
chemical bonds, 89–91, 104
covalent bonds, 91, 91*t*
ionic bonds, 90, 90*t*
polar covalent bond, 91
valence electrons and, 89
chemical equations, 828
balanced equations, 88
products, 88
reactants, 88
structure of, 88
chemical formulas, 87, 828
coefficients and balanced equations, 87
of salt, 87
subscript in, 87, 88
of water, 87
chemical properties, 81
chemical sedimentary rock, 136
evaporites, 136
chemical weathering, 346–348, 451
acid precipitation, 348
acid rain, 144
carbonation, 347
climate and, 351
by groundwater, 405–408
hydrolysis, 347, 347*f*
organic acids, 347
oxidation, 346
rate of, 349–352
Chemistry Skills Refresher, 827–828
acids, bases, and pH, 828
atoms and elements, 827
chemical equations, 828
chemical formulas, 828
molecules and compounds, 827
chevron barracuda, 492*f*
chinooks, 636
Chisana River (Alaska), 382*f*
chlorine, as dissolved solid in ocean water, 495
chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) ozone and, 549, 556
chromosphere, 758*f,* 760
cinder cones, 328*t*
cinnabar, mercury in, 155
circadian rhythms, 51
circle, 820
Circum-Pacific mountain belt, 279, 279*f*
circumpolar stars, 778
cirque, 424, 424*f*
cirrocumulus clouds, 584*f,* 585
cirrostratus clouds, 584*f,* 585
cirrus clouds, 584*f,* 585, 585*f*
clastic sedimentary rock, 137–138, 137*f*–138*f*
angularity, 138
breccia, 137, 137*f*
characteristics of, 138
conglomerate, 137, 137*f*
sandstone, 137, 137*f*
shale, 137, 137*f*
sorting, 138, 138*f*
clay
in mud, 482
permeability of, 398
in soil, 354
Clean Air Act, 348
clean rooms, 773
Clean Water Act, 170
cleavage, physical property of minerals, 110, 110*f*
Cleopatra's Needle, 351, 351*f*
climate, 6*f,* 7, 631. *See also* **climate change; climate zone**
carbon dioxide in oceans and, 494
climatic evidence of continental drift, 241
coccolithophores and, 655, 655*f*
comparing climate features long-term project, 862–865
continental changes and, 257
elevation and, 636
El Niño-Southern Oscillation, 635
factors that affect, 631–636, 652–653
global wind patterns, 633
heat absorption and release, 633–635
lab on factors that affect, 652–653
latitude and, 632–633
map of climates of world, 654*f*
monsoons, 625*f,* 635
mountains' affect on, 257
ocean currents and, 634
precipitation and, 631
rate of weathering and, 351, 351*f*
soil and, 355, 355*f*
solar energy and, 632, 632*f*
specific heat and evaporation, 634
temperature and, 631
topography and, 636
vs. weather, 631
climate change
in Cenozoic Era, 224, 225
collecting climate data, 641, 641*t*
deforestation and, 644, 644*f*
fossil clues to, 209
general circulation models (GCMs), 642
global warming and, 645–646
human activity and, 644
modeling climates, 642
orbital changes, 643, 643*f*
plate tectonics and, 643
potential causes of, 643–644
potential impacts of, 644–646
sea-level changes and, 645, 645*f*
studying, 641–642
volcanic activity, 644
volcanoes and, 339
climate zones
highland climate, 640
map of climates of world, 654*f*
microclimates, 640
middle-latitude climate, 638, 638*t*
polar climates, 639, 639*t*
tropical climate, 637
climatograph, 862, 864
climatologists, 641
closed systems, 32, 32*f*
closest packing, 108
clouds, 581–585
adiabatic cooling, 582
advective cooling, 583
cirrus, 584*f,* 585, 585*f*
classification of, 584–585, 584*f*
coalescence of water droplets in, 588, 588*f*
coccolithophores and formation of, 655, 655*f*
condensation level, 582
cumulus, 584*f,* 585, 585*f*
formation of, 581–583
lifting, 583
measuring cloud cover, 857*t*
mixing and formation of, 582
seeding, 620
stratus, 584, 584*f*
supercooling of water droplets in, 588
water droplets in, 581, 588
cloud seeding, 590, 590*f,* 620
coal
bituminous, 160, 160*f*
formation of, 159
as fossil fuel, 159
as organic sedimentary rock, 136
pollution and, 170
supply of, 161, 169
types of deposits of, 160, 160*f*
coalescence, of water droplets in clouds, 588, 588*f*
coarse-grained igneous rock, 131, 131*f*
coastline
absolute sea-level changes, 455
barrier islands, 457, 457*f*
Beaufort Sea, coastal erosion, 466
coastal erosion and deposition, 455–458
emergent coastline, 456
preserving, 458
relative sea-level changes, 456–457
submergent coastlines, 456, 456*f*
waves and, 528–529
Coast Range (British Columbia), 133
coccolithophores, 655, 655*f*
coefficients, chemical formulas and balanced equations, 88
Coelophysis, 222*f*
cold front, 605, 605*f*
on weather map, 617, 617*f*
color
of ocean water, 500

as physical property of minerals, 109
Colorado Plateau, 282, 282*f,* 364
Columbia, 666
column, calcite deposit, 406
coma, 741
comets, 741–743, 741*f,* 742*f*
collision with Earth and first oceans, 690
composition of, 741
Kuiper belt, 742
long-period comet, 742
Oort cloud, 742, 742*f*
short-period comets, 743
compaction, 135, 135*f*
compass, geomagnetic poles and, 55, 55*f*
compass rose, 60, 60*f*
composite volcanoes, 328*t*
compounds, 87, 104, 827
chemical formula, 87, 828
covalent, 91
ionic, 90
minerals as, 155
properties of, 87, 87*f*
Comprehensive Response Compensation and Liability Act, 170
compression, 273, 273*f*
Earth's crust deformation, 273
metamorphic rock and, 142
compression waves, 297, 297*f*
Compton Gamma Ray Observatory, 665
computerized axial tomography scan (CT scan), of fossils, 235
computers
for weather monitoring and forecasting, 614, 618
concentration, 829
concept mapping instructions, 819
conchoidal fracture, 110, 110*f*
conclusions, in scientific method, 10*f,* 11
concretions, 140
condensation
dew point, 577
latent heat and, 575
in water cycle, 38, 38*f,* 376, 376*f*
condensation level, 582
condensation nuclei, 581
conduction, 560
cone of depression, 402
confidence interval, 13
conglomerate
as clastic sedimentary rock, 137, 137*f*
rate of weathering and, 349
conic projections, 59, 59*f*
conservation, 171
of fossil fuel, 172, 172*f*
law of conservation of energy, 830
law of conservation of mass, lab on, 48–49
mineral resources, 171
soil, 359–360, 373
water, 172, 378
constants, in algebraic equations, 821
constellations, 789
as evidence of Earth's revolution, 669, 669*f*
as evidence of Earth's rotation, 669, 669*f*
naming, 789
of Northern Hemisphere, 844–845, 886–887
consumers
in ecosystems, 39
in energy pyramid, 41
contact line, on geologic maps, 66
contact metamorphism, 142
ore formation and, 156
continental air masses, 602, 602*t*
continental barriers, surface currents and, 520
continental crust, 28, 28*f,* 247
continental drift, 239–246
climatic evidence of, 241
fossil evidence of, 240
how continents move, 247
mid-ocean ridges, 242
paleomagnetism and, 243–245
rock formation evidence of, 240
sea-floor spreading, 243, 243*f,* 246
continental glacier, 420, 420*f*
deposition by, 427, 427*f,* 428
erosion by, 425
continental margins, 475–476, 475*f*
continental shelf, 475, 476*f*
continental slope and continental rise, 476, 476*f*
continental polar air masses, 602, 603*t*
continental rise, 476, 476*f*
continental shelf, 475, 476*f*
continental slope, 476, 476*f*
continental tropical air masses, 602, 603*t*
continents
changing shape of, 255–260
effects of continental change, 257
lab on continental collisions, 290–291
mountain formation and collisions between continents, 281, 281*f,* 290–291
Pangaea, 258–259, 258*f*–259*f*
rifting and continental reduction, 255
supercontinent cycle, 258–260, 258*f*–259*f*
terranes and continental growth, 256
continuous spectra, 775
contour interval, 64
contour lines, of topographic map, 64–65
contour plowing, 360, 360*f*
control group, 11
controlled experiment, 11
convection, 252, 759
as internal source of Earth's energy, 35
mantle, 252
of solar energy, 560, 759
convection cells, 252, 562
convective zone, 758*f,* 759
convergent boundaries, 250, 250*f,* 251*t*
compression, 273
earthquakes and, 299
terranes and, 256
conversions, SI conversion table, 870*t*
Copernicus, Nicolaus, 691
copper, 105*t*
formation of, from contact metamorphism, 156
as native element, 155
surface mining for, 158, 158*f*
uses of, 157*t*
veins of, 156
coprolites, 199*t*
corals, 457
core, Earth's, 28, 28*f,* 29
formation of, 688, 688*f*
seismic waves and, 298
core, moon's, 722, 722*f*
core, sun's, 758, 758*f*
core samples, 479
Coriolis effect, 520, 561, 561*f,* 601, 668
coronal mass ejections, 763
coronas, 576, 758*f,* 760, 760*f*
corundum, 105*t*
color of, 109
hardness of, 111*t*
cosmic background radiation, 795
cosmology, 660, 793
covalent bonds, 91, 91*t*
polar, 91
covalent compound, 91
cover crop, 360
Crater Lake (Oregon), 329
craters, 720
analysis of, lab on, 714–715
impact, 695
on moon, 720, 720*f*
volcanic, 328
cratons, 255
creep, 362
crepuscular rays, 576
crest of wave, 525, 525*f*
Cretaceous Period, 213*t,* 223
impact hypothesis, 223
mass extinction, 223
crevasses, 422, 422*f*
crinoids, 184*f,* 220, 220*f*
crocodilian, 214, 214*f*
crop rotation, 360
cross-beds, 188, 188*f*
of sedimentary rock, 139, 139*f*

INDEX

crosscutting relationships, law of, 190, 190*f*
crude oil, 161
crust
collisions between continental and oceanic crust, 280, 280*f*
compositional zones of Earth's interior, 28, 28*f*
continental crust, 28, 28*f,* 247
deformation of, 271–278
faults, 277–278, 277*f*–278*f*
folds, 275–276, 275*f*–276*f*
formation of, 688, 688*f*
isostasy, 271–272, 271*f*
Mohorovičić discontinuity, 28
moon's, 722, 722*f*
most common elements in, 81*f*
mountain formation, 279–284
oceanic crust, 28, 28*f,* 247
rifting, 255
seismic waves and, 298
strain, 274, 274*f*
stress, 273, 273*f*
supercontinent cycle, 258–260, 258*f*–259*f*
crystalline structure
as characteristic of mineral, 103
closest packing, 108
of nonsilicate minerals, 108
of silicate minerals, 106–107
silicon-oxygen tetrahedron, 106, 106*f*
crystallization, fractional, 130, 130*f*
crystals, 106
crystal shape as physical property of minerals, 112, 112*t*
formation of, 130
CT scan (computerized axial tomography), of fossils, 235
cubic system, 112*t*
cumberland, 279
cumulonimbus clouds, 584*f,* 585
cumulus clouds, 584*f,* 585, 585*f*
cumulus stage of thunderstorm, 608
currents
deep-ocean currents, 523–524
factors that affect ocean surface currents, 519–520
longshore, 529
major ocean surface currents, 521–522, 521*f,* 522*f*
ocean, 469*f,* 519–524
rip, 529
tidal, 534
turbidity, 476, 480, 524
cycles
carbon cycle, 37, 37*f*
nitrogen cycle, 36, 36*f*
phosphorus cycle, 37
water cycle, 38, 38*f*
cylinder, area of, 820
cylindrical projections, 58, 58*f*

D

Dactyl, 739*f*
daily forecasts, 619
dams
flood control and, 385
Three Gorges Dam, 395, 395*f*
dark energy, 796
dark-line spectra, 775
dark matter, 796
Darrieus turbine, 573, 573*f*
Darwin, Charles, 215
dating methods, absolute, 191–192
daughter isotopes, 193, 194, 875
daylight savings time, 672
dead zone, 384
Death Valley (California), 282*f,* 383*f*
decomposers, 39
deep currents, 523–524
Deep Extragalactic Evolutionary Probe (*DEEP*), 717
deep-ocean basin, 475–478
abyssal plains, 477
mid-ocean ridges, 477*f,* 478
physical classification of sediments, 482
seamounts, 477*f,* 478
sediment thickness of Earth's oceans, 490
sources of sediments in, 479–481
trenches, 477, 477*f*
Deer Island sewage-treatment facility, 517, 517*f*
deflation, 446
deflation hollows, 446
deforestation, 359
climate changes and, 644, 644*f*
global warming and, 645
deformation, 271
faults, 277–278, 277*f*–278*f*
folds, 275–276, 275*f*–276*f*
isostasy, 271–272, 271*f*
mountain formation, 279–284
strain, 274, 274*f*
stress, 273, 273*f*
DEIMOS, 717
Deimos, Mars' moon, 733
deltas, 383, 383*f*
density, 112, 499, 829
Antarctic Bottom Water, 523
of Earth, 698*f*
equation for, 112, 113, 829
of Jupiter, 702*f*
of Mars, 699*f*
of Mercury, 695*f*
of Neptune, 706*f*
of ocean water, 499, 514–515, 523
as physical property of minerals, 112
of Pluto, 707*f*
of Saturn, 704*f*
of Uranus, 705*f*
of Venus, 696*f*
dependent variable, 11
deposition
coastal, 455–458
by glaciers, 426–428
isostasy and, 272
rate of, and absolute age, 192
by rivers or streams, 383
sedimentary rock features and, 138–140
wind, 447–450
depositional environment, 138
depression contours, 65, 65*f*
desalination, 378, 505
desertification, 359
desert pavement, 446, 446*f*
deserts
desert pavement, 446, 446*f*
dunes, 447–449
soil in, 355, 355*f*
temperature variations, 559
tropical desert climate, 637, 637*t*
wind erosion in, 446–447
Desolation watershed (Oregon), 76*f*
Devils Postpile National Monument (California), 128, 128*f*
Devils Tower (Wyoming), 324*f*
Devonian Period, 213*t,* 219
dew, 578, 578*f*
dew cell, 580
dew point, 577, 616
frost, 578
reaching dew point, 578
diamond
crystalline structure of, 108*f*
hardness of, 111, 111*t*
luster of, 110
uses of, 157*t*
diamond-ring effect, 728, 728*f*
diatomic molecules, 87
diatoms, 481, 482, 482*f*
differential weathering, 349
differentiation, formation of solid Earth, 688, 688*f*
dikes, 133, 133*f,* 324
dimethyl sulfide, cloud formation and, 655, 655*f*
dinosaurs
Cretaceous Period, 223
impact hypothesis, 15*f,* 223
Jurassic Period, 222
mass extinction of, 223
Triassic Period, 222
diorite, as intermediate rock, 132
dip, on geologic maps, 66
directed stress, 142
discharge, stream, 380

disconformity, 189, 189*f*
dissolved load, in streams, 380
distillation, as desalination of ocean water, 505
divergent boundaries, 249, 249*f,* 251*t*
earthquakes and, 299
normal faults, 277
tension, 273
volcanic mountains, 284
divides, in river systems, 379, 379*f*
doldrums, 562*f,* 563
climate and, 633
dolomite, 105*t*
as rock-forming mineral, 104
domains, magnetism and, 244
dome mountains, 283, 283*f*
Doppler effect, 778
Doppler radar and, 613
star's actual motion and, 778
Doppler radar, 613
to measure precipitation, 589, 589*f*
double-chain silicate, 107, 107*f*
double refraction, as special property of minerals, 114, 114*f*
Draco, 789
drizzle, 587
drumlins, 427, 427*f*
ductile strain, 274
dunes
formation of, 447, 447*f*
migration, 449, 449*f*
types of, 448, 448*f*
dust
how wind moves, 445
loess, 450, 450*f*
as particulate, 549, 549*f*
sources of, 445
dust storms, 445, 445*f*

E

Eagle nebula, 782*f*
Earth, 698*f*
age of, 185–186
characteristics of, 27, 698, 698*f*
circumference of, 27
compositional zones of Earth's interior, 28, 28*f*
density of, 698*f*
diameter of, 27, 698*f*
distance to sun, 779
Earth-moon system, 725–726, 725*f*
formation of, 686, 688
geomagnetic poles of, 55
gravity, 30
as inner planet, 698
interior of, 28–29
internal temperature and pressure, 319, 319*f*
lab on Earth-sun motion, 680–681
latitude, 53, 53*f*
lithosphere, 28*f,* 29
longitude, 54, 54*f*
lunar eclipses, 729, 729*f*
as magnet, 29
orbit of, 668
periodic changes in movement around sun, 433, 433*f*
revolution of, 668, 669
rotation of, 667–668, 669, 680–681
seasons, 672–674
solar eclipses, 727–728, 727*f,* 728*f*
structural zones of Earth's interior, 29
surface gravity of, 698*f*
as water planet, 471
Earth-moon system, 725–726, 725*f*
earthquakes, 295–308
anatomy of, 296, 296*f*
causes, 295, 296
convergent oceanic boundaries, 299
destruction of buildings and property by, 305
divergent oceanic boundaries, 299
earthquake-hazard level map, 308*f,* 316*f*
Eastern Tennessee Seismic Zone (ETSZ), 834–835
elastic rebound, 295, 295*f*
epicenter of, 296, 296*f,* 314–315
fault zones, 300
focus of, 296, 296*f*
foreshocks, 308
intensity of, 304, 304*t*
lab on finding epicenter of, 314–315
locating, 302
magnitude of, 303
map of, 834
on moon, 722
Pacific Ring of Fire, 320
plate tectonics and, 299
predicting volcanic eruptions and, 330
recording, 301
safety rules for, 306
seismic gap, 307, 307*f*
seismic waves and, 296–298
South America, locations of earthquakes in, 268*f*
studying, 301–304
tectonic plates and, 248
transform boundaries, 251
tsunami, 305, 530
warnings and forecasts of, 307–308
Earth science, 5, 6–8
earthshine, 731, 731*f*
Earth's orbit, 668, 668*f*
climate change and changes in, 643, 643*f*
Earth-system, 31–38
atmosphere, 33
biosphere, 33
carbon cycle, 37, 37*f*
as closed system, 32
energy budget of, 34–35, 34*f*
external energy sources, 35
geosphere, 33
human interaction with, 38
hydrosphere, 33
internal sources of energy, 35
nitrogen cycle, 36, 36*f*
phosphorus cycle, 37
water cycle, 38, 38*f*
East Africa, monsoon climate and, 635
East Africa Rift Valley, 255*f*
ebb tide, 534
eccentricity, 433, 433*f,* 692
climate and changes in, 643, 643*f*
echinoderms, 213*t,* 219
eclipses, 727
annular, 728
frequency of, 729
lunar eclipses, 729, 729*f*
penumbral, 729
solar eclipses, 727–728, 727*f,* 728*f*
total, 727
ecology, 39–42. *See also* **ecosystems**
balancing forces in ecosystems, 40–41
ecological responses to change, 40
ecosystems, 39
human stewardship of environment, 42
ecosystems, 39
balancing forces in, 40–41
carrying capacity, 40
consumers in, 39
decomposers in, 39
ecological responses to change, 40
energy transfer in, 41
food web, 41, 41*f*
human stewardship of environment, 42
producers in, 39
Einstein, Albert, 7, 7*f,* 757
elastic rebound, 295, 295*f*
El Caracol, Mexico, 5*f*
electrical conductance, 579
electrical thermometer, 611
electricity
biomass, 167
generated from nuclear fission, 163, 163*f*
geothermal energy, 165
hydroelectric energy, 167, 167*f*
nuclear fusion, 164
solar energy, 166
wind energy, 168
electromagnetic radiation
invisible, 662
telescopes for invisible, 664
visible, 661, 661*f*
electromagnetic spectrum, 555, 555*f,* 661, 661*f,* 775, 775*f*
electromagnetic waves, 555, 555*f*
electron cloud, 82, 827, 827*f*
electrons, 82, 827
atomic number, 83, 827
covalent bonds, 91, 91*t*
ionic bonds, 90, 90*t*
mass of, 83
valence, 86

elements, 81
most common, in Earth's crust, 81*f*
lab on physical properties of, 98–99
native, 155
periodic table, 83, 84*f*–85*f*
in United States, 100*f*
elevation, 63
climate and, 636
highland climate, 640
temperature and, 636
on topographic maps, 63, 64
ellipse, 668
law of, 692
elliptical galaxy, 791, 791*f*
El Niño-Southern Oscillation, 635
emergent coastline, 456
emission spectra, 775
emissions testing, 170
Endangered Species Act, 170
Endeavor, 237*f*
energy, 31
absorption and reflection, lab on 570–571
biomass, 167
conservation, 171–172
conversion table, 870*t*
dark energy, 796
Earth's energy budget, 34–35, 34*f*
energy transfer in ecosystem, 41
external sources of Earth's energy, 35
first law of thermodynamics, 34
fossil fuels, 159–161
geothermal, 165
hydroelectric, 167, 167*f*
internal sources of Earth's energy, 35
law of conservation of energy, 830
map of resources, in North America, 883
methane hydrates, 171
nonrenewable, 159–164
nuclear, 162–164, 756–757
from oceans, 543
renewable, 165–168
second law of thermodynamics, 34
solar, 166
splitting subatomic particles, 101
states of matter and speed of particles in, 89
from sun, 756–757
of sun, 770–771
wind, 168, 178–179, 573
energy pyramid, 41
engineer, mining, 123
environmental impact
conservation, 171–172
of fossil fuels, 170
of mining, 169–170, 181
recycling, 171
environmental protection
acid precipitation and, 348
coastline, 458
land degradation, 359
soil conservation, 359–360, 359*f,* 360*f*
environmental science, 8
Eocene Epoch, 213*t,* 224
eon, 214
epicenter
of earthquake, 296, 296*f*
finding, 314–315
locating, 302
epicycles, 691
epipelagic zone, 503*f,* 504
epochs, 214
equal areas, law of, 693, 693*f*
equator, 53, 53*f*
evaporation at, 576
as great circle, 54
solar energy at, 559, 632
Equatorial Countercurrent, 521, 521*f*
equatorial currents, 521, 521*f*
equinoxes, 673
erosion, 357–364
channel erosion, 379–380
coastal erosion and deposition, 455–458
creep, 362
by glaciers, 423–425
gravity and, 361–362
gullying, 358, 358*f*
headward, 379
landforms and, 363–364, 363*f,* 364*f*
landslides, 361, 361*f*
mass movement, 361–362
mountains and, 363, 363*f*
mudflow, 361, 361*f*
plains and plateaus, 364, 364*f*
rate of, and absolute age, 191
rockfalls, 361
sheet erosion, 358
slump, 361
soil, 357–358, 357*f,* 358*f*
soil conservation, 359–360, 359*f,* 360*f*
solifluction, 362
in streams, 379–380, 392–393
by turbidity current, 480
wave, 451–454
wind, 445–450
erratics, 426, 427*f*
error, 13
eskers, 428
estuary, 456
ethanol, 167
Eurasia
formation of, 259, 259*f*
future geography of, 260, 260*f,* 293
glaciation in, 432
Himalaya Mountains, formation and, 281
Eurasian-Melanesian mountain belt, 279, 279*f*
Europa, 735, 735*f*
Europe, geologic features and political boundaries, 24
eurypterids, 219, 219*f*
evaporation
atmospheric moisture and, 576
climate and, 634
dew point, 577
global warming and, 645
latent heat and, 575
salinity of ocean water and, 496
in water cycle, 38, 38*f,* 376, 376*f*
evaporites, 136, 429
evapotranspiration, 376
factors that affect, 377
evening star, 696
Everest, Mount (Himalaya Mountains), 279
evolution, 215
evidence of, 215, 215*f*
geologic change and, 215
natural selection, 216
exfoliation, 343, 343*f*
exoplanets, 708, 708*f*
exosphere, 553
experiment, variables in, 11
Explorer 1, 719
exponents, 820
extended forecasts, weather, 619
extraterrestrial life, search for, 785
extrusions, 134, 134*f*
extrusive igneous rock, 131
eyewall of hurricane, 609, 629

F

farming
contour plowing, 360, 360*f*
crop rotation, 360
gullying, 358, 358*f*
sheet erosion, 358, 358*f*
soil conservation, 359–360
soil erosion and, 358
strip-cropping, 360, 360*f*
terracing, 360, 360*f*
far side of moon, 722, 724*f*
fault-block mountains, 282*f*–283*f,* 283
fault plane, 277–278, 277*f*–278*f*
faults, 190, 277–278, 277*f*–278*f*
locked, 295
normal, 277, 277*f*
reverse, 277, 277*f*
size of, 278
strike-slip, 278, 278*f*
fault zones, 300
feldspar, 107
hardness of, 111*t*
hydrolysis, 347
orthoclase, 104
partial melting of magma, 129, 129*f*
plagioclase, 132
as silicate mineral, 104
in soil, 353
felsic magma, 325
explosive eruptions, 326
felsic rock, 132, 132*f*
ferromagnesian minerals
as mafic rock, 132

as rock-forming mineral, 104
fertile soil, 359
fetch, 527
fibrous fracture, 110
field geologist, 25
fine-grained igneous rock, 131, 131*f*
finger lakes, 429
fiord, 456
fireball, 743
firn, 419
first law of thermodynamics, 830
first-quarter phase, 730*f,* 731
fish
Age of Fishes, 219
Carboniferous Period, 220
Devonian Period, 219
oceans as source of food, 507
Ordovician Period, 219
fission, nuclear, 162–163, 162*f*
fission track dating, 875*t*
fissures, 322
Iceland and, 269
floodplain, 384
floods
control of, 385
floodplain, 384
human impact on, 385
hurricanes and, 609
in Venice, Italy, 467
flood tide, 534
fluorescence, as special property of minerals, 113, 113*f*
fluorite, 103, 103*t,* 105*t*
hardness of, 111*t*
focus, of earthquake, 296, 296*f*
foehn, 636
fog, 375, 586, 586*f*
advection fog, 586
radiation, 586
steam, 586
upslope, 586
folded mountains, 282, 282*f*–283*f*
FoldNote instructions, 814–816
folds, 275–276, 275*f*–276*f*
anatomy of, 275–276, 275*f*–276*f*
sizes of, 276
types of, 276, 276*f*
foliation, 143
food
aquaculture, 507
from oceans, 507
food chain, 41
food web, 41, 41*f*
in oceans, 502
footwall, 277
Foraminifera, 434, 434*f,* 481
force, 829
foreshocks, 308
fossa, 257*f*
fossil fuels, 159–161
conservation of, 172
environmental impact of, 170
formation of coal, 159
formation of petroleum and natural gas, 160
map of, in North America, 884
methane hydrates, 171
oil traps, 161, 161*f*
petroleum and natural gas deposits, 161
pollution and, 170
supplies of, 161
types of coal, 160, 160*f*
fossils, 197–200
absolute age and index fossils, 200
as clues to climate change, 209
coprolites, 199*t*
CT scanning, 235
as evidence of continental drift, 240
evolution and geologic change, 215
formation of, 198, 198*t*
gastroliths, 199*t*
in geologic column, 211
Gondwanaland, fossil evidence, 234
imprints, 199*t*
index fossils, 200, 200*f,* 232–233
interpreting, 197
lab on age of, 232–233
lab on types of, 206–207
Mesozoic Era, 221–223
molds and casts, 199*t*
oxygen isotopes and studying climate change, 642
Paleozoic Era, 218
Precambrian, 217
relative age and index fossils, 211, 232–233
in sedimentary rock, 140
to study past climates, 640, 641*t*
trace, 199
types of, 199, 199*t,* 206–207
Foucault, Jean-Bernard-Leon, 667
Foucault pendulum, 667, 667*f*
fractional crystallization, 130, 130*f*
fractional scale, 61
fractures, 277
physical property of minerals, 110, 110*f*
rate of weathering and, 350
fracture zones, 251, 478
strike-slip faults, 278
framework silicate, 107, 107*f*
freezing
as desalination of ocean water, 505
fossil formation and, 198*t*
freezing nuclei, 588
fringing reefs, 457
fronts
cold front, 605, 605*f*
occluded front, 606, 606*f*
plotting on weather map, 617
polar, 606
squall line, 605, 605*f*
stationary front, 606
storm, 562
warm front, 606, 606*f*
wave in polar front, 606
frost, 578
fuel rods, 163
full moon, 730*f,* 731
Fundy, Bay of, 533
fusion, nuclear, 164, 756–757, 775, 783, 787

G

gabbro, 322, 322*f*
as mafic rock, 132
galaxies, 660, 790–791
big bang theory, 794–795
distances to, 790
Milky Way galaxy, 791
types of, 791, 791*f*
galena, 105*t*
uses of, 157*t*
Galilean moons, 733–735, 733*f*–735*f*
lab on, 750–751
Galileo, 665, 703, 734, 734*f*
Galileo Galilei, 662, 691, 733
Galle, Johann, 706
gamma rays, 555, 662, 664
Ganymede, 735, 735*f*
gases
dissolved in ocean water, 493–494, 501
speed of particles in, 89
gas giants, 687, 701–706
gastroliths, 199*t*
Geiger counter, 114
gemstones, 157
general circulation models (GCMs), 642
Genesis, 773
The Genesis Mission, 773
geocentric model of solar system, 691
geode, 140
geologic column, 211–212, 211*f*
using, 212
geologic maps, 66, 66*f*
of North America, 882
symbols for, 876*t*
geologic time
Cenozoic Era, 224–226
divisions of, 212–214
evolution and, 215
geologic column, 211–212
Mesozoic Era, 221–223
overview of geologic time scale, 213*t*
Paleozoic Era, 218–220
Precambrian time, 216–217
geologic unit, 66
geologist, 6, 6*f*
field, 25
geology, 6
absolute dating methods, 191–196
fossil record, 197–200
law of crosscutting relationships, 190, 190*f*
law of superposition, 187
principle of original horizontality, 187–188
relative dating methods, 185–190
unconformities, 189–190
uniformitarianism, 185

geomagnetic poles, 55, 55*f*
geomagnetic reversal time scale, 244–245
geomagnetic storms, 763
geometry, 820
geophone, 297
geophysicist, 317
geosphere, 33
geothermal energy, 165
geysers, 79*f,* 404, 404*f*
giant impact hypothesis, 723, 723*f*
giant stars, 784, 784*f,* 786, 787*f*
glacial drift, 426
glacial lakes, 192, 192*f*
glacial period, 431
glaciers, 3*f,* 419–434
  alpine, 420, 420*f*
  basal slip, 421
  continental, 420, 420*f*
  crevasses, ice shelf, ice bergs, 422, 422*f*
  deposition by, 426–428
  erosion by, 423–425
  features of, 422
  formation of, 419
  glacial lakes, 429–430
  Gulkana Glacier, 442
  ice ages and, 431–434
  internal plastic flow, 421
  isostasy and, 272
  landforms from deposition, 427–428
  landforms from erosion, 424–425
  mountain landforms and, 424–425
  movement of, 420–421
  sea level change and, lab on, 440–441
  size of, changes in, 419
  types of, 420
glassy texture, 131, 131*f*
glaze ice, 587, 587*f*
global ocean, 27, 471
  divisions of, 471, 471*f*
global positioning system (GPS), 56, 317
global warming, 645
  individual efforts to reduce, 646
  sea-level changes, 645, 645*f*
  transportation solutions to reduce, 646
globular clusters, 790
glories, 576
gneiss, 125*f*
  as foliated rock, 143, 143*f*
gold
  crystalline structure of, 108*f*
  as native element, 155
  uses of, 157*t*
  veins of, 156
Gondwanaland, 259, 259*f*
  fossil evidence, 234
grabens, 282*f,* 283
graded bedding, 139, 188, 188*f*
gradient
  groundwater and, 400
  stream, 380, 380*f*
Grand Canyon (southwest United States), 191
Grand Teton National Park (Wyoming), 419*f*
granite, 125*f*
  as course-grained igneous rock, 131, 131*f*
  as felsic rock, 132
  as heterogeneous mixture, 92
granulation, 761, 761*f*
Graphic Organizer Instructions, 817–819
graphic scale, 61
Graphing Skills Refresher, 824–826
graphite
  hardness of, 111
  uses of, 157*t*
graptolites, 219
gravitation, law of, 30
gravity, 30
  abrasion, 344
  detecting exoplanets and, 708
  erosion and, 361–362
  law of universal gravitation, 782
  mass and, 30, 30*f*
  orbit of planets and, 694
  tides and, 531, 531*f,* 532, 532*f,* 533, 732, 732*f*
  weight and, 30, 30*f*
gravity, surface
  of Earth, 698*f*
  of Jupiter, 702*f*
  of Mars, 699*f*
  of Mercury, 695*f*
  of Moon, 719
  of Neptune, 706*f*
  of Pluto, 707*f*
  of Saturn, 704*f*
  of Uranus, 705*f*
  of Venus, 696*f*
great circle, 54, 54*f*
Great Dark Spot, 706
Great Lakes (northern United States), 226
  history of, 430, 430*f*
Great Red Spot, 703, 703*f*
Great Rift Valley (Africa), normal fault, 277
Great Salt Lake (Utah), 429, 429*f*
Great Smoky Mountains (eastern United States), 279
greenhouse effect, 558, 558*f*
  on Earth, 696
  runaway, 696
  on Venus, 696
Greenland, ice sheet in, 420
Green Mountains (eastern United States), 279
Gregorian calendar, 670
ground moraines, 427
groundwater, 397–408
  conserving, 401
  hard and soft water, 405
  movement of, 400
  properties of aquifers, 397–398
  recharge zone, 401, 401*f*
  removal of, and sinking of Venice, Italy, 467
  topography and water table, 400, 400*f*
  water table, 399
  weathering by, 405–408
  wells and springs, 402–404
  zones of aquifers, 399
group, in periodic table, 827
Gulf of Mexico
  hypoxia and dead zone, 384
  tides, 533
Gulf Stream, 522, 522*f*
  climate and, 634
Gulkana Glacier (Alaska), 442
gullying, 358, 358*f*
guyots, 477*f,* 478
gypsum, 105*t*
  as evaporite, 136, 429
  hardness of, 111*t*
  as rock-forming mineral, 104
  uses of, 157*t*
gyres, 520

H

hadal zone, 503, 503*f*
Hadean Eon, 214
hadrosaurs, 223
Haicheng earthquake, 308
hail
  characteristics of, 587, 599
  cloud seeding and, 620
  damage and cost of, 599
  formation of, 587, 599
hair hygrometer, 580
Hale-Bopp Comet, 741, 741*f*
half-life, 194, 875
halides, as major class of nonsilicate minerals, 105*t*
halite, 105*t*
  chemical bond of, 104
  crystalline structure of, 108*f*
  as evaporite, 136, 429
  in ocean water, 495
  as rock-forming mineral, 104
  uses of, 157*t*
Halley's Comet, 741, 743
halos, 576, 585
hanging valley, 425, 425*f*
hanging wall, 277
hardness, physical property of minerals, 111, 111*t*
hard water, 405
Hawaiian-Emperor seamount chain, 338
Hawaiian Island chain, 318*f,* 323, 323*f*
  as volcanic mountain, 284
headlands, 452, 453*f*
  longshore currents and, 454, 454*f*
headward erosion, 379
headwaters, gradient at, 380
heat, latent, 575, 609
heliocentric model of solar system, 691
helium
  atomic number of, 83*f*
  in composition of sun, 755
  in nuclear fusion, 164, 756, 756*f,* 757
  in stars, 776, 783, 784
hematite, 105*t*
  iron in, 155

oxidation and, 346
uses of, 157*t*
Herschel, Sir Frederick William, 662, 705
Hertzsprung, Ejnar, 781
Hertzsprung-Russell diagram, 781, 781*f*
Hess, Harry, 243
heterogeneous mixtures, 92
hexagonal system, 112*t*
highland climate, 640
highland rock, 153
high tide, 531, 531*f*
Himalaya Mountains, 224, 225
as folded mountains, 282
formation of, 250, 256, 259, 281, 281*f*
hinge, of fold, 275
Holocene Epoch, 213*t*, 226
homogeneous mixtures, 92, 92*f*
Homo sapiens, 226
Hoover Dam (western United States), 154*f*
horizons, soil, 354, 354*f*
horn, 424, 424*f*
hornblende
as intermediate rock, 132
as mafic rock, 132
partial melting of magma, 129, 129*f*
hornfels, as metamorphic rock, 141*f*
horse latitudes, 562*f*, 563
hot spots, 323
seamounts and, 478
volcanic mountains and, 284
hot springs, 404
H-R diagram, 781, 781*f*, 783, 784, 785
Hubble, Edwin, 793
Hubble Space Telescope, 665, 665*f*, 705, 706, 717, 719, 737, 780, 805
humid continental climate, 638, 638*t*
humidity, 577–580
absolute, 577
air masses and, 601–604
dew cells to measure, 580
dew point and, 616
hair hygrometer to measure, 580
measuring, at high altitudes, 580, 580*f*
mixing ratio, 577
psychrometer to measure, 579, 579*f*
relative, 578, 596–597
relative humidity table, 878*t*
thin polymer film, 579
humid subtropical climate, 638, 638*t*
humus, 354
Hurricane Florence, 601*f*
hurricanes
controlling, 620
forecasting, 629
formation of, 609, 609*f*
safety tips for, 619*t*
Hutton, James, 185, 185*f*
hybrid cars, 646
hydrocarbons, fossil fuels as, 159, 160
hydroelectric energy, 167, 167*f*
hydrogen
atomic number of, 83*f*
average atomic mass, 86
in composition of sun, 755
isotopes of, 86*f*
in nuclear fusion, 164, 756, 756*f*, 757
in stars, 776, 783, 784
hydrolysis, 347, 347*f*
hydronium ions, 346
hydrosphere, 33
hydrothermal solutions, contact metamorphism, 156
hydroxide ions, 346
hygrometer, 580
Hypacrosaurus, 210*f*
hypothesis, 10
forming, 10
in scientific method, 10–11
testing, 11
hypoxia, 384

I

ice
latent heat and, 575
as phase of water, 575, 575*f*
sublimation, 576
ice ages, 224, 225, 226, 431
causes of, 433–434
evidence for multiple ice ages, 434
glacial and interglacial periods, 431–432
glaciation in North America, 432
Milankovitch theory, 433
icebergs, 422, 422*f*
sediments from, 480
icecap, 225
ice core, to study past climates, 641, 641*t*
Iceland, 238*f*, 322
Mid-Atlantic Ridge and landscape of, 269
volcanic activity, 269
ice sheets, 420
isostasy and, 272
melting of, and sea level, 455
ice shelves, 422
ice storm, 587
ice wedging, 344, 344*f*
topography and, 351
ichthyosaurs, 222
Ichthyostega, 219
Ida, 739*f*
igneous rock, 125*f*, 129–134
coarse-grained, 131, 131*f*
composition of, 132
extrusions, 134, 134*f*
extrusive, 131, 134
felsic rock, 132, 132*f*
fine-grained, 131, 131*f*
fossils, 197
fractional crystallization, 130, 130*f*
glassy texture, 131, 131*f*
intermediate rock, 132
intrusions, 133, 133*f*
intrusive, 131, 133
joints, 128, 128*f*
lunar rocks as, 721
mafic rock, 132, 132*f*
magma formation and, 129–130
partial melting, 129, 129*f*
porphyritic, 131, 131*f*
rate of weathering, 349
in rock cycle, 126, 126*f*
textures of, 131, 131*f*
impact craters, 695
impact hypothesis, 223
impermeable rocks, petroleum and natural gas deposits, 161
imprints, 199*t*
independent variable, 11
index contours, 64
index fossils, 200, 200*f*
absolute age and, 200
relative age and, 200, 232–233
India, 52*f*
formation of, 259, 259*f*
Himalaya Mountains formation and, 281
monsoon climate, 635
Indian Ocean, 471, 471*f*
currents in, 521, 521*f*
inertia, 694, 830
inferior mirage, 576
infrared rays
absorption of solar energy and emission of, 557–558
telescope for, 664
wavelength of, 555, 662
inner core, Earth's, 298
inner planets, 695–700
Earth, 698, 698*f*
formation of, 686
Mars, 699–700, 699*f*, 700*f*
Mercury, 695, 695*f*
Venus, 696–697, 696*f*, 697*f*
inorganic, 103
intensity, of earthquakes, 304, 304*t*
interglacial period, 431
intermediate rock, 132
internal plastic flow, 421
International Date Line, 55, 671, 671*f*
International System of Units, 12
conversion table for, 870*t*
intertidal zone, 503, 503*f*
intrusions, 190, 190*f*
batholiths and stocks, 133
laccoliths, 133
sills and dikes, 133, 133*f*
intrusive igneous rock, 131
invertebrates, 218
Io, 733*f*, 734, 734*f*
ionic bond, 90, 90*t*
ionic compound, 90, 90*t*
ionosphere, 553
ions, 90, 104
chemical bonds and, 104
solar winds, 760, 773
iridium, 223
iron
as element of Earth's crust, 81*f*

iron (*continued*)
in magnetite and hematite, 155
in nodules, 158
oxidation and, 346
physical properties of, 98*t*
in soil, 346, 353
uses of, 157*t*
iron meteorites, 744, 744*f*
irregular fracture, 110
irregular galaxy, 791, 791*f*
island arc, 250
island arc volcanoes, 321
island construction, lab on, 74–75
isobars, 62, 62*f,* 617
isograms, 62, 62*f*
isolated tetrahedral silicate, 107, 107*f*
isometric system, 112*t*
isostasy, 271–272, 271*f*
deposition, 272
glaciers, 272
mountains and, 272
isostatic adjustments, 271–272, 271*f*
isotherms, 62, 617
isotopes, 83, 193, 827
daughter, 193, 194
parent, 193, 194
radioactive, 195
studying climate change and, 642
Italy, future geography of, 293

J

James Webb Space Telescope, 665
Janus, 736, 736*f*
Japan, as island arc, 250, 321
jet streams, 563
Jigokudani National Park (Japan), 396*f*
JOIDES Resolution, 472, 472*f,* 479*f*
joints
in igneous rocks, 128, 128*f*
rate of weathering and, 350
Jollie Valley, 425*f*
Jupiter, 702*f,* 703*f*
atmosphere of, 702
characteristics of, 702–703, 702*f*
formation of, 687
Great Red Spot, 703, 703*f*
interior of, 703
moons of, 733–735, 733*f*–735*f,* 750–751
rings of, 738
weather and storms on, 703
Jurassic Period, 213*t,* 222

K

Kangaroo Island, 444*f*
kaolin, 347
kaolinite, uses of, 157*t*
karst topography, 408, 408*f*
Katahdin, Mount, 272, 272*f*
Keck Telescope, 663
Kelly's Island (Ohio), 423*f*
Kepler, Johannes, 692–693
Kepler's laws, 692–694, 750–751
kettles, 427*f,* 428, 428*f*
Kobe, Japan, earthquake in, 294*f,* 303
Krakatau, 329
Kuiper belt, 707, 742
Kuroshio Current, 522
KWL notes, 810–811

L

Labrador Current, 522, 522*f*
laccoliths, 133
lagoon, 457
Lagrange Point, 773
lakes
finger, 429
glacial, 429–430
life cycle of, 386
as open system, 32
oxbow, 381
salt lakes, 429, 429*f*
sediment build up in, 386
water source for, 386
land degradation, 359
landforms, 363
created by glacial erosion, 424–425
erosion and, 363–364, 363*f,* 364*f*
heat absorption and climate, 633–635
on topographic maps, 65, 65*f*
Landsat, 5, 683
landslides, 361, 361*f*
La Niña, 635
lapilli, 327, 327*f*
Laplace, Pierre-Simon Marques de, 685
Large Magellanic Cloud, 791
last-quarter phase, 730*f,* 731
latent heat, 575
hurricanes and, 609
lateral moraine, 426*f,* 427
laterite soil, 355, 355*f*
latitude, 53, 53*f*
climate and, 632–633
degrees of, 53
minutes and seconds of, 53
solar energy and, 632
Laurasia, 259, 259*f*
lava, 125, 320. *See also* **magma**
lava flows on moon, 724, 724*f*
pillow, 322, 322*f*
lava flows, 134
lava plateau, 134
leaching, 347
in tropical soil, 355
zone of, 354*f*
lead
formation of, from contact metamorphism, 156
formation of, from cooling magma, 155
radioactive decay of uranium, 193
radiometric dating, 195*t*
uses of, 157*t*
veins of, 156
leap year, 670
legend, map, 61, 61*f*
lemmings, 40
length, conversion table, 870*t*
lepton, 101
levees
artificial, 385
natural, 384
Leverrier, Urbain, 706
lichen, as organic acid, 347
lifting, cloud formation and, 583
light
color of ocean water, 500
electromagnetic spectrum, 661
interaction of light and water in atmosphere, 576
nonvisible electromagnetic radiation, 662
visible electromagnetic radiation, 661
lightning, 608, 608*f*
controlling, 620
light pollution, 664
light-year, 660, 779
lignite, 160, 160*f*
limb, of fold, 275
limestone
carbonation, 347
caverns and, 406
karst topography, 408
as organic sedimentary rock, 136
permeability of, 398
rate of weathering, 349, 349*f*
water dissolving, 406
line graphs, 824
liquids, speed of particles in, 89
lithium, atomic number of, 83*f*
lithosphere, 28*f,* 29, 247
isostasy and, 271, 271*f*
Little Dipper, 778
Local Group, 791
locked fault, 295
lode, 156
lodestone, 114
loess, 450, 450*f*
longitude, 54, 54*f*
degrees of, 54
distance between meridians, 54
meridians, 54, 54*f*
longitudinal dune, 448, 448*f*
long-period comet, 742
long-range forecasts, weather, 619
longshore currents, 454, 529
Long-Term Projects, 846–869
air-pollution watch, 852–855

comparing climate features, 862–865
correlating weather variables, 856–857
planetary motion, 866–869
positions of sunrise and sunset, 848–851
safety guidelines, 846–847
weather forecasting, 858–861
Love waves, 297, 297*f*
recorded on seismograph, 301
low tide, 531, 531*f*
Lucid, Shannon, 11*f*
luminosity, 781
lunar eclipses, 729, 729*f*
lungfish, 219
luster, 110, 110*f*

M

Maat Mons volcano, 697, 697*f*
mafic magma, 325
lava flows, 326, 326*f*
quiet eruptions, 325, 325*f*
mafic rock, 132, 132*f*
Magellan, 697
magma, 125, 319
Bowen's reaction series, 127, 127*f*
felsic, 325
formation of, 129–130, 319
in hot spots, 323
intrusive activity, 324
mafic, 325
in metamorphic rock formation, 141–142
in mid-ocean ridges, 322
ore formation by cooling, 155, 155*f*
partial melting, 129, 129*f*
in sea-floor formation, 322
in subduction zone, 321
types of, 325
viscosity, 325
magnesium
as dissolved solid in ocean water, 495
as element of Earth's crust, 81*f*
extracted from oceans, 506
magnetic declination, 56, 56*f*
magnetic field
auroras, 764, 764*f*
coronal mass ejections, 763
of Earth, 29
geomagnetic storms, 763
prominences, 763
of sun and moon, 29
sunspots and, 761
magnetic poles, 55, 55*f*
magnetism
cause of, 244
of Earth, 29
geomagnetic poles, 55–56
magnetic declination, 56
normal polarity, 244–245
paleomagnetism, 243–245
reversed polarity, 244–245
as special property of minerals, 114
magnetite, 114
iron in, 155
oxidation and, 346
uses of, 157*t*
magnetosphere, 29, 29*f*
magnitude, of earthquake, 303
main sequence, 781, 781*f*
main-sequence stars, 781, 781*f,* 783
Mammals, Age of, 224
manganese, in nodules, 158
mantle
formation of, 688, 688*f*
as internal source of energy, 35
of moon, 722, 722*f*
seismic waves and, 298
structural zones of Earth's interior, 29
temperature and pressure, 319
thickness of, 28, 28*f*
mantle plumes, 323
Mapping Expeditions, 832–845
map projections, 58, 58*f,* 59, 59*f*
marble, as nonfoliated rock, 144, 144*f*
mare, 153, 720
maria, 720
Mariana Islands, 281, 281*f*
Mariana Trench (western Pacific Ocean), 477
marine life
benthic zone, 503, 503*f*
dissolved gases and solids and, 501–502
marine food web, 502
pelagic zone, 503*f,* 504
upwelling and, 502
marine west coast climate, 638, 638*t*
maritime air masses, 602, 602*t*
maritime polar air masses, 602, 602*t,* 603*t*
maritime tropical air masses, 602, 602*t,* 603*t*
Mars, 699*f*
characteristics of, 699–700, 699*f*
formation of, 686
map of, 716*f*
marsquakes, 699
moons of, 733
planetary motion, long-term project, 866–869
Valles Marineris, 684*f,* 699
volcanoes on, 699, 734
water on, 700, 700*f*
Mars Global Surveyor, 700
marsquakes, 699
mass, 829
atomic, 83, 86
conservation of, 48–49
conversion table, 870*t*
gravity and, 30, 30*f*
of stars, 776
mass extinction, 221
Cretaceous Period, 223
Paleozoic Era, 220, 221
massive beds, 139
mass movement, 361–362
creep, 362
landslides, 361, 361*f*
mudflow, 361, 361*f*
rockfalls, 361
slump, 361
solifluction, 362
mass number, 83
Math Skills Refresher, 820–823
matter, 31, 81, 796
dark matter, 796
Maury, Matthew F., 472
Mazama, Mount (Oregon), 329
meanders, 381, 381*f*
mean sea level, 63
measurements, SI conversion table, 870*t*
mechanical weathering, 343–345, 451
abrasion, 344
exfoliation, 343, 343*f*
ice wedging, 344, 344*f*
organic activity, 345, 345*f*
rate of, 349–352
medial moraine, 426*f,* 427
Mediterranean climate, 638, 638*t*
Mediterranean Sea, 471, 471*f*
deep-water currents in, 524, 524*f*
disappearing, 260, 293
formation of, 259
tidal oscillations, 533
medium-range forecasts
weather, 619
melting, partial, 129, 129*f*
meltwater, 426
Mendenhall Glacier (Alaska), 418, 418*f*
Mercalli scale, 304, 304*f*
Mercurial barometer, 551, 551*f*
Mercury, 695*f*
characteristics of, 695, 695*f*
formation of, 686
temperature on, 695
meridians, 54, 54*f*
distance between meridians, 54
International Date Line, 55
prime, 54, 54*f,* 55
mesas, 364, 364*f*
mesopelagic zone, 503*f,* 504
Mesosaurus, 240, 240*f*
mesosphere, 29, 552*f,* 553
as layer of Earth's atmosphere, 552*f,* 553, 556
as layer of solid Earth, 29*f,* 298
solar radiation absorbed in, 556
Mesozoic Era, 213*t,* 214, 221–223
Age of Reptiles, 221
Cretaceous Period, 223
impact hypothesis, 223
Jurassic Period, 222
timeline for, 221*f*

INDEX

Mesozoic Era (*continued*)
Triassic Period, 222
metallic luster, 110, 110*f*
metallic minerals
guide to common minerals table, 872*t*–873*t*
mineral uses table, 871*t*
uses of, 157, 157*t*
metals
as mineral resource, 155
physical properties of, 98*t,* 155
valence electrons and, 86
metamorphic rock, 125, 125*f,* 141–144
classification of, 143–144
contact metamorphism, 142
foliated, 143, 143*f*
formation of, 141–142
fossils, 197
nonfoliated, 144, 144*f*
regional metamorphism, 142
in rock cycle, 126, 126*f*
metamorphism, 141
contact, 142, 156
regional, 142
Meteor Crater (Arizona), 740, 740*f*
meteorites, 744, 744*f*
bombardment of moon with, 723
deep-ocean basin sediment, 480
impact hypothesis, 223
meteoroids, 743–744, 743*f,* 744*f*
meteorites, 744, 744*f*
meteors, 743, 743*f*
meteorologist, 6*f,* 7, 8*f,* 629
meteorology, 7
meteors, 743, 743*f*
methane, 167
methane hydrates, 171, 171*f*
metric, conversion table, 870*t*
mica minerals, 107, 110, 132
microclimate, 640
Mid-Atlantic Ridge, 242, 322
Iceland and, 269
middle-latitude climate, 638, 638*t*
humid continental climate, 638, 638*t*
humid subtropical climate, 638, 638*t*
marine west coast climate, 638, 638*t*
mediterranean climate, 638, 638*t*
steppe climate, 638, 638*t*
midlatitude cyclone, 606–607, 607*f*
mid-ocean ridges, 242, 477*f,* 478
continental drift and, 242
earthquakes and, 299
formation of, 249, 249*f*
fracture zone, 251
ridge push, 253, 253*f*
sea-floor spreading, 243, 243*f*
slab pull, 254, 254*f*
volcanic mountains, 284
volcanoes and, 322
Milankovitch, Milutin, 433
Milankovitch theory, 433
climate change and, 643, 643*f*
Milky Way galaxy, 660, 791
diameter of, 790
map of, 804*f*
mineralogist, 109
mineral resources, 155–158
conservation, 171
environmental impact of mining, 169–170
mineral exploration and mining, 157–158
ores, 155–156
recycling, 171, 171*f*
in the United States, 100*f*
uses of, 157, 157*t*
minerals, 102–114
characteristics of, 103, 103*t*
chemical stability of, 128
cleavage, 110, 110*f*
color of, 109
crystalline structure of, 106–108
crystal shape of, 112, 112*t*
density of, 112, 113
fracture of, 110, 110*f*
guide to common minerals table, 872*t*–873*t*
hardness of, 111, 111*t*
identifying, 109–114, 120–121
kinds of, 104–105, 105*t*
lab on identifying, 120–121
luster, 110, 110*f*
magnetism of, 114
map of, in North America, 883
mineral uses table, 871*t*
nonsilicate, 105
physical properties of, 109–112
radioactivity of, 114
rock and mineral production in United States, 122*f*
rock-forming, 104
silicate, 104
special properties of, 113–114
streak, 110
mining
environmental impacts of, 169–170, 181
mineral exploration, 157
on moon, 753
placer, 158
reclamation, 170, 181
regulations for operation, 170
subsurface, 158
surface, 158, 158*f*
undersea, 158
mining engineer, 123
minutes, of latitude, 53
Miocene Epoch, 213*t,* 225
Mir, 727f
mirage, 557, 557*f,* 576
Miranda, 737, 737*f*
***Mir* space station,** 11*f*
Mississippian Period, 213*t,* 220
Mississippi River, dead zone in Gulf of Mexico and, 384
mixing ratio, 577
mixtures, 92
heterogeneous, 92
homogeneous, 92
models, 13
early models of solar system, 691–694
Newton's model of orbits, 694
to study climate change, 642
types of, 13, 13*f*
Moho, 28
Mohorovičić, Andrija, 298
Mohorovičić discontinuity, 28
Mohs hardness scale, 111, 111*t*
Mojave Desert (California), 377, 377*f*
molds, fossils, 199t
molecules, 87, 827
chemical formula of, 87
diatomic, 87
mollusks, 219
moment magnitude scale, 303
momentum, 830
monocline, 276, 276*f*
monoclinic crystal system, 112*t*
monsoons, 521, 625*f,* 635
month, 670
Monument Valley (Arizona), 364, 364*f*
moon, Earth's
analyzing rock from, 153
characteristics of, 719
core, 722, 722*f*
craters, rilles and ridges on, 720, 720*f*
crust of, 722, 722*f*
Earth-moon system, 725–726 725*f*
elliptical orbit of, 725
exploring, 719
far side of, 722, 724*f*
formation of, 723–724
giant impact hypothesis, 723, 723*f*
interior of, 722, 722*f*
lava flows on, 724, 724*f*
lunar eclipses, 729, 729*f*
lunar landing sites, 752*f*
lunar rocks, 721, 721*f*
magnetic field of, 29
mantle of, 722, 722*f*
meteorite bombardment, 723
mining on, 753
moonquakes, 722
moonrise and moonset, 726
near side of, 722, 724*f*
phases of, 730–731, 730*f*
regolith, 721, 721*f*
rotation of, 533, 726
solar eclipses, 727–728, 727*f,* 728*f*
surface of, 720–721
tides and, 531, 531*f,* 532, 532*f,* 533, 732, 732*f*
topographic map of, 885
waxing phases of, 730*f,* 731

moons, 686, 719
Galilean, 733–735, 750–751
of Jupiter, 733–735, 733*f*–735*f,* 750–751
of Mars, 733
of Neptune, 737
of Pluto, 737, 737*f*
of Saturn, 736, 736*f*
of Uranus, 737, 737*f*
moraines, 426*f,* 427
moss, as organic acid, 347
mountain belts, 279
mountain breeze, 564
mountain range, 279
mountains
affect on climate, 257
climate and, 636
collision between oceanic crust and oceanic crust, 281
collisions between continental and oceanic crust, 280, 280*f*
collisions between continents, 281, 281*f,* 290–291
erosion and, 363, 363*f*
formation of, 250, 279–284
glacial erosion and, 424–425
isostasy and, 272
plate tectonics and formation of, 280–281, 280*f*–281*f*
rain shadow, 636, 636*f*
terranes and formation of, 256
types of, 282–284, 282*f*–284*f*
uplift, 272
valley and mountain breezes, 564
mountain system, 279
mouth of stream, 380
mud, as deep-ocean sediment, 482
mud cracks, 140, 140*f*
mudflow, 361, 361*f*
mud pots, 404
mummification, fossil formation, 198*t*
Mungo National Park (Australia), 700*f*
muscovite mica, 104, 107, 132

N

Nambung National Park (Australia), 349, 349*f*
Nanotyranus lancensis, 235*f*
NASA, 659, 666
National Science Foundation, 659
National Weather Service, 615
native elements, 155
as major class of nonsilicate minerals, 105*t*
natural bridge, 407, 407*f*
natural gas
deposits of, 161
drilling for, 276
formation of, 160
as fossil fuel, 159
oil traps, 161, 161*f*
pollution and, 170
seismic surveying for, 297
supply of, 161
natural levees, 384
natural resources. *See also* **resources**
conservation, 171–172
environmental impact of mining, 169–170
fossil fuels and environment, 170
map of, in North America, 883, 884
map of, in U.S., 836
recycling, 171, 171*f*
Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS), 67
natural selection, 215
principles of, 216
Nautile, 474, 474*f*
NAVSTAR, 56
neap tides, 532, 532f
near-Earth asteroids, 740
near side of moon, 722, 724*f*
nebula, 216, 659*f,* 782
solar, 685
nebular hypothesis, 685, 686*f*–687*f*
nekton, 502
Neptune, 706*f*
atmosphere, 706
characteristics of, 706*f*
discovery of, 706
formation of, 687
Great Dark Spot, 706
moons of, 737
rings of, 738
neritic zone, 503*f,* 504
neutrinos, 757
neutrons, 82, 827
atomic mass and, 83
isotopes, 83
mass of, 83
neutron stars, 787, 788
New Madrid (Missouri), 300
new-moon phase, 730, 730*f*
newton, 30
Newton, Isaac, 30, 531, 663, 694
New Zealand, shear strain in, 292*f*
Niagara Falls (North America), 191, 191*f*
formation of, 430
nickel
formation of, from cooling magma, 155
in nodules, 158
physical properties of, 98*t*
NICMOS, 805
nimbostratus clouds, 584, 584*f*
nitrogen
in atmosphere, 33, 547, 547*f*
as dissolved gas in ocean water, 493–494
in nitrogen cycle, 36, 36*f*
nitrogen cycle, 36, 36*f,* 547, 547*f*
nodules, 481, 481*f*
extracting for mineral resources, 506
mining for, 158
nonconformity, 189, 189*f*
nonfoliated metamorphic rock, 144, 144*f*
nonmetallic luster, 110, 110*f*
nonmetallic minerals
guide to common minerals table, 872*t*–873*t*
mineral uses table, 871*t*
uses of, 157, 157*t*
nonmetals
as mineral resource, 155
physical properties of, 155
valence electrons and, 86
nonrenewable energy, 159–164, 171–172
fossil fuels, 159–161, 170
nuclear energy, 162–164
nonrenewable resources, 159–164, 169–172
environmental impact of mining, 169–170
fossil fuels, 159–161, 170
nuclear energy, 162–164
nonsilicate minerals, 105
crystalline structure of, 108
major classes of, 105*t*
normal fault, 277, 277*f*
normal polarity, 244–245
North America
formation of, 259, 259*f*
fossil fuel deposits in, 884
future geography of, 260, 260*f*
geologic maps of, 882
glaciation in, 432
mineral and energy resources of, 883
topographic provinces of, 881
North Anatolian fault zone (Turkey), 300, 300*f*
North Atlantic Current, 522, 522*f*
northeast trade winds, 562, 562*f*
Northern Hemisphere, constellations of, 844–845, 886–887
northern light, 764
North Pacific Drift, 522
North Pole, 53, 53*f*
geomagnetic vs. geographic, 55, 55*f*
North Star, 777, 777*f,* 778
Norway Current, 522, 522*f*
note-taking skills, 808–809, 810–811, 812–813
nova, 786
nowcasts, 619
nuclear energy, 162–164
nuclear fission, 162–163, 162*f*
advantages and disadvantages of, 164
generating electricity, 163, 163*f*
process of, 162, 162*f*
nuclear fusion, 164
energy from, 164, 756–757

nuclear fusion (*continued*)
process of, 164
in stars, 775, 783
in sun, 756–757, 756*f*
nuclear power plant, 163, 163*f*
nuclear reactor, 163
nuclear waste, 164, 164*f*
nucleus, 82, 82*f,* 827, 827*f*

O

Oberon, 737
oblate spheroid, 27, 27*f*
observation, in scientific method, 10, 10*f*
obsidian, 103, 103*t*
as felsic rock, 132
glassy texture, 131, 131*f*
occluded front, 606, 606*f*
on weather map, 617, 617*f*
ocean currents, 519–524
Antarctic Bottom Water, 523, 523*f*
climate and, 634
continental barriers, 520
Coriolis effect, 520
deep currents, 523–524
density of water and, 523
equatorial currents, 521, 521*f*
factors that affect surface currents, 519–520, 520*f*
global wind belts, 520, 520*f*
Gulf Stream, 522, 522*f*
longshore current, 529
major surface currents, 521–522, 521*f,* 522*f*
in North Atlantic, 522, 522*f,* 524, 524*f*
in North Pacific, 522
rip current, 529
in Southern Hemisphere, 521, 521*f*
turbidity current, 524
Ocean Drilling Project, 209
ocean floor
abyssal plains, 477
continental drift, 242–245
continental margins, 475–476
continental shelf, 475, 476*f*
continental slope and continental rise, 476, 476*f*
deep-ocean basins, 476–478
features of, 475–478
mid-ocean ridges, 242, 249, 249*f,* 477*f,* 478
paleomagnetism, 243–245
physical classification of sediments, 482
sea-floor spreading, 243, 246, 266–267
seamounts, 477*f,* 478
sediments in, 479–482, 490*f*
sources of sediment, in deep-ocean basins, 479–481
subsidence, 272
trenches, 477, 477*f*
oceanic crust, 28, 28*f,* 247
collision between oceanic crust and oceanic crust, 281
collisions between continental and oceanic crust, 280, 280*f*
oceanic zone, 503*f,* 504
ocean movement
continental barriers, 520
Coriolis effect, 520
factors that affect surface currents, 519–520, 520*f*
global wind belts, 520, 520*f*
major surface currents, 521–522, 521*f,* 522*f*
tides, 531–534
oceanographer, 6, 6*f,* 491
oceanography, 6, 472
birth of, 472
sonar and, 473
submersibles, 474
oceans. *See also* **ocean currents; ocean floor; ocean movement; ocean water; ocean waves**
advection fog, 586
coastal erosion and deposition, 455–458
Earth's first oceans, 690
effects on atmosphere, 690
energy from, 543
exploration of, 472–474
glaciers and sea level change, 440–441
global warming and sea-level changes, 645, 645*f*
Panthalassa, 258, 258*f*
sea and land breezes, 564
sea-floor formation, 322
undersea mining, 158
wave erosion, 451–454
ocean thermal energy conversion (OTEC), 543
ocean water, 493–508
absolute sea-level changes, 455
aquaculture, 507
benthic zone, 503, 503*f*
carbon sink, 494
color of, 500
deep-water temperature, 498
density of, 499, 514–515
dissolved gases in, 493–494
dissolved solids in, 495
fishing, 507
food from, 507
food web in, 502
fresh water from, 505
global ocean defined, 471
heat absorption and climate, 633–635
lab on density of, 514–515
mass and volume of Earth, 471
mineral resources extracted from, 506
ocean chemistry and marine life, 501–502
pelagic zone, 503*f,* 504
phytoplankton in, 500
pollution of, 508
pollution of Boston Harbor, 517
relative sea-level changes, 456–457
salinity of, 496, 496*f*
sea surface temperatures in August, 516*f*
surface water temperature, 497
temperature of, 497–498
thermocline, 498, 498*f*
upwelling, 502, 502*f*
water temperature and dissolved gases, 494
ocean waves, 525–530
breakers, 528, 528*f*
coastline and, 528–529
electric energy from, 543
fetch, 527
lab on, 540–541
longshore currents, 529
refraction, 529, 529*f*
rip current, 529
swell, 527
tidal waves, 530
tsunamis, 530
undertow, 529
water movement in, 526, 526*f*
wave size factors, 527
whitecaps, 527, 527*f*
wind and, 525
Ogallala Aquifer (midwestern United States), 416
Ohio, bedrock in, 208
oil. *See also* **petroleum**
drilling for oil and natural gas, 276
seismic surveying for, 297
oil shale, 161
oil traps, 161, 161*f*
Oligocene Epoch, 213*t,* 225
olivine, 107
in mafic rock, 132
as silicate mineral, 104
Olympus Mons, Mars, 699
Oort cloud, 742, 742*f*
ooze, as deep-ocean sediment, 482
open cluster, stars, 790, 790*f*
open systems, 32, 32*f*
operations, order of, 821
Opportunity, 700
optical telescope, 662
Ora Verde, 470*f*
orbit, 668
of Earth, 643, 643*f,* 668, 668*f*
eccentricity, 692
gravity and, 694
law of ellipses, 692
law of equal areas, 693
law of periods, 693
Newton's model of orbits, 694
orbital period, 693
order of operations, 821
Ordovician Period, 213*t,* 219

ore, 155–156
bauxite, 155
formed by contact metamorphism, 156
formed by cooling magma, 155, 155*f*
formed by moving water, 156, 156*f*
lode, 156
placer deposits, 156, 156*f*
organic sedimentary rock, 136
original horizontality, principle of, 187–188
Orion, 685*f,* 784, 789, 789*f*
ornithischians, 222
orthoclase feldspar, 104
orthorhombic system, 112*t*
osmosis, reverse osmosis desalination, 505
Ouachita Plateau, 283*f*
outer core, 28*f,* 29
as Earth's layer, 298
outer giants, 701
outer planets, 701–708
exoplanets, 708
formation of, 687
Jupiter, 702–703, 702*f,* 703*f*
Neptune, 706, 706*f*
objects beyond Pluto, 707
Pluto, 707, 707*f*
Saturn, 704, 704*f*
Uranus, 705, 705*f*
outgassing, 689, 689*f*
outwash plain, 427*f,* 428
overgrazing, 359
overturned fold, 275
O.W.L. (Overwhelmingly Large Telescope), 663
oxbow lake, 381
oxidation, 346
oxides, as major class of nonsilicate minerals, 105*t*
oxygen
altitude and oxygen level, 550, 550*f*
in atmosphere, 33, 548, 548*f*
as dissolved gas in ocean water, 493–494
as element of Earth's crust, 81*f*
oxygen isotopes and studying climate change, 642
ozone, 549, 556
in atmosphere, 549, 549*f*
chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), 549, 556
damage to, 549, 549*f*
outgassing and formation of, 689
ozone hole, 556

P

Pacific Ocean, 471, 471*f*
currents in north, 522
equatorial currents, 521, 521*f*
tides, 533
Pacific Ring of Fire, 248, 320, 320*f*
pack ice, 497
pahoehoe, 326, 326*f*
paint pots, 404
Paleocene Epoch, 213*t,* 224
paleoenvironment, 840–841
paleomagnetism, 243–245
paleontology, 197
Paleozoic Era, 213*t,* 214, 218–220
Cambrian Period, 218
Carboniferous Period, 220
Devonian Period, 219
mass extinction, 220, 221
Ordovician Period, 219
Permian Period, 220
Silurian Period, 219
timeline for, 218*f*
Pangaea, 218, 220, 221, 258–259, 258*f*–259*f*
Panthalassa, 258, 258*f*
parabolic dune, 448, 448*f*
parallax, 779, 779*f*
parallels, 53, 53*f*
parent isotope, 193, 194
parent rock, 353
Parthenon (Greece), 144, 144*f*
partial melting, 129, 129*f*
particle accelerator, 101, 101*f*
particulates, 549, 852
air pollutants, 554
sources of, 549, 549*f*
passive system, solar energy, 166
peat, 159, 159*f,* 160, 160*f*
pedalfer soil, 355
pedocal soils, 355
peer review, 14
pelagic zone, 503*f,* 504
PEMDAS, 821
peneplains, 363
Pennsylvanian Period, 213*t,* 220
penumbra, 727
perched water table, 400, 400*f*
perigee, 725
perihelion, 668, 668*f*
periodic table, 83, 84*f*–85*f,* 86, 827
permeability, 398, 398*f*
permeable rocks, petroleum and natural gas deposits, 161
Permian Period, 213*t,* 220
petrification, fossil formation and, 198*t*
petroleum
deposits of, 161
drilling for oil and natural gas, 276
extracted from oceans, 506
formation of, 160
as fossil fuel, 159
oil traps, 161, 161*f*
pollution and, 170
supply of, 161, 169
uses of, 161
pH, 828
scale, 828
of soil, 370–371
Phanerozoic Eon, 214
phases, 730
of moon, 730–731, 730*f*
Phobos, 733
Phoenix (Arizona), 445*f*
phosphorescence, as special property of minerals, 113
phosphorus, in phosphorus cycle, 37
phosphorus cycle, 37
photometer, 802–803
photosphere, 758*f,* 759, 759*f*
photosynthesis, oxygen in atmosphere and, 548
photovoltaic cells, 166
physical properties, 81
of elements, lab on, 98–99
Physics Skills Refresher, 829–830
phytoplankton, color of ocean water and, 500
pie graphs, 825
pillow lava, 322, 322*f*
Pinatubo, Mount, 339, 339*f*
pitchblende, 114
placer deposits, 156, 156*f*
placer mining, 158
plagioclase feldspar
as rock-forming mineral, 104, 132
as silicate mineral, 104
plains, erosion and, 364, 364*f*
planetary nebula, 785, 785*f*
planetesimals, 686
planets, 685. *See also* **solar system**
formation of, 686–687
gas giants, 687, 701–706
inner, 687, 695–700
orbits of, 692–694
outer, 687, 701–708
planetary motion long-term project, 866–869
solar system data table, 880*t*
terrestrial, 695–700
plankton, 502, 502*f*
phytoplankton and color of ocean water, 500
plants
concentration of plant life on Earth, 50*f*
Cretaceous Period, 223
weathering and, 345, 351
plasma, star formation, 782
plasticity, 29
plastic rock, 247
plateaus, 282, 282*f*
erosion and, 364, 364*f*
plate tectonics, 238–260. *See also* **tectonic plates**
causes of plate motion, 252–254
climate change and, 643
continental changes, 255–260
continental drift, 239–246
convergent boundaries, 250, 250*f,* 251*t*
divergent boundaries, 249, 249*f,* 251*t*

plate tectonics (*continued*)
earthquakes and, 299
Gondwanaland, 234, 259, 259*f*
how continents move, 247
mantle convection, 252, 252*f*
mountain formation and, 280–281, 280*f*–281*f*
Pangaea, 258–259, 258*f*–259*f*
plate boundary summary, 251*t*
ridge push, 253, 253*f*
rifting and continental reduction, 255
sea-floor spreading, 266–267
slab pull, 254, 254*f*
supercontinent cycle, 258–260, 258*f*–259*f*
tectonic plate boundaries, 248, 248*f*
terranes and continental growth, 256
transform boundaries, 251, 251*f*, 251*t*
platinum, uses of, 157t
Pleistocene Epoch, 213*t*, 226
Pliocene Epoch, 213*t*, 225
Pluto, 707*f*
characteristics of, 687, 707*f*
formation of, 687
in Kuiper belt, 707, 742
moon of, 737, 737*f*
plutons, 324, 324*f*
polar air masses, 602*t*, 604
polar climates, 639, 639*t*
polar icecap climate, 639, 639*t*
subarctic climate, 639, 639*t*
tundra climate, 639, 639*t*
polar covalent bond, 91
polar easterlies, 562, 562*f*
polar front, 606
polar icecaps
climate of, 639, 639*t*
melting and global warming, 645
Polaris, 777, 777*f*, 778, 779
polarity
normal, 244–245
reversed, 244–245
polar jet streams, 563
poles, 53, 53*f*
geomagnetic vs. geographic, 55, 55*f*
solar energy at, 632
pollen, as particulate, 549, 549f
pollution, 42
air-pollution watch, long-term project, 852–855
aquaculture and, 507
of Boston Harbor, 517
coastal resources and, 458
emissions testing, 170
fossil fuels, 170
global warming and, 645
individual efforts to reduce carbon dioxide concentrations, 646
light, 664
from mining, 169
ocean water, 508
temperature inversions and, 554, 554*f*
water use and wastewater, 378, 378*f*
polyconic projections, 59
population
carrying capacity and ecosystem, 40
map of, in U.S., 837
pores, 397
porosity, 397
factors affecting, 397, 397*f*
lab on measuring, 414–415
porphyritic texture, 131, 131*f*
positrons, 756, 756*f*
potassium
as dissolved solid in ocean water, 495
in Earth's crust, 81*f*
radiometric dating, 195, 195*t*
potassium-argon dating, 875*t*
power, exponents, 820
Power notes, 808–809
Precambrian time, 213*t*, 214, 216–217
fossils, 217
life during, 217
Paleozoic Era, 218–220
rocks, 217
timeline for, 216*f*
precession of Earth's axis, 433, 433*f*
precipitation, 587–590
acid, 170, 348
acid rain, 144
amount of, 589
annual precipitation in United States, 598*f*
causes of, 588
climate and, 631
cloud seeding, 590, 590*f*
coalescence of water droplets in, 588, 588*f*
Doppler radar, 589, 589*f*
forms of, 587
global wind patterns and, 633
measuring, 589
in middle-latitude climates, 638, 638*t*
plotting on weather map, 617
in polar climate, 639, 639*t*
supercooling, 588
in tropical climate, 637
in water cycle, 376
precision, 12, 12*f*
accuracy, 12, 12*f*
pressure, 829. *See also* **air pressure**
Earth's internal, 319, 319*f*
prevailing winds, 562
primary waves, 297, 297*f*
prime meridian, 54, 54*f*, 55
Prince William Sound (Alaska), 383*f*
principles of original horizontality, 187–188
probes, 665
producers
in ecosystems, 39
in energy pyramid, 41
products, in chemical equation, 88
prominences, 754*f*, 763
protactinium, 193
Proterozoic Eon, 214
protons, 82, 827
atomic mass and, 83
atomic number, 83
isotopes, 83
mass of, 83
in nuclear fusion, 756, 756*f*
protoplanets, 686
protostar, 782
Proxima Centauri, 779
psychrometer, 579, 579*f*
pterosaurs, 222
Ptolemy, Claudius, 691
pulsar, 788, 788*f*
pumice, as felsic rock, 132
P waves, 297, 297*f*
locating earthquake and, 302
recorded on seismograph, 301
shadow zones, 298
pyrite, 105*t*
streak of, 110
pyroclastic material, 326
types of, 327, 327*f*
pyroxene, 107
as intermediate rock, 132
as mafic rock, 132
as silicate mineral, 104

Q

Quaoar, 707, 707*f*
quark, 101
quartz, 107
color of, 109, 109*f*
differential weathering and, 349
fracture of, 110*f*
hardness of, 111*t*
partial melting of magma, 129, 129*f*
as rock-forming mineral, 104
as silicate mineral, 104
in soil, 353
uses of, 157*t*
quartzite, as nonfoliated rock, 144
quasars, 792, 792*f*
Quaternary Period, 213*t*, 224

R

radar, 613
Doppler, 613
radiation, 555. *See also* **electromagnetic radiation; electromagnetic spectrum**
atmosphere's absorption of solar radiation, 556
cosmic background radiation, 795
reflection of solar, 557
scattering, 556

types of, and wavelength, 555
radiation fog, 586
radiative zone, 758*f,* 759
radioactive dating, 193
radioactive decay
half-life, 194
of uranium, 193
radioactive isotopes, 193, 875
radioactivity, 114
radioactive material from nuclear fission, 164, 164*f*
as special property of minerals, 114
radiocarbon dating, 195*t,* 196, 196*f,* 875*t*
radiogenic isotopes, 875
radiolarians, 82*f,* 481, 482
radiometric dating, 193–195, 195*t,* 875*t*
carbon dating, 196, 196*f*
half-life, 194
radioactive isotopes, 194
radiosonde, 580, 613
radio telescope, 664, 664*f*
radio waves, 662
wavelength of, 555
radium, 114
rain, 587
acid precipitation, 348
characteristics of, 587
cloud seeding, 590, 590*f*
coalescence of water droplets in clouds, 588, 588*f*
measuring amount of, 589
ordinary wells and springs, 402
rain forest, 637, 637*t*
rain gauge, 589
Rainier, Mount, 284*f*
rain shadow, 636, 636*f*
Rayleigh waves, 297, 297*f*
recorded on seismograph, 301
rays, moon crater, 720
reactants, in chemical equation, 88
reading and study skills, 807–813
recharge zone, 401, 401*f*
reclamation
mine reclamation, 170
mining reclamation, 181
rectangle, 820
rectangular box, area of, 820
recycling, 171, 171*f*
red clay, 482
Red River (Taos County in New Mexico), 832–833
Red Sea, 249, 249*f*
salinity of, 496
red shift, 778, 778*f*
measuring, and expanding universe, 793
reefs, 457
reference maps, 881–887
reference tables, 870*t*–880*t*
reflecting telescope, 663, 663*f*
reflection
energy, lab on, 570–571
of light and color of ocean water, 500
solar radiation, 557
refracting telescope, 663, 663*f*
refraction, 114
double, 114, 114*f*
ocean waves, 529, 529*f*
regional metamorphism, 142
regolith, 153, 353, 721, 721*f*
relative age, 186
in geologic column, 211
index fossils, 200, 232–233
law of superposition, 187
principle of original horizontality, 187–188
unconformities, 189–190
uniformitarianism, 185–186
relative humidity, 578
lab on, 596–597
relativity, theory of, 7, 757
relief, on topographic map, 64
remote sensing, 57
renewable energy, 165–168
biomass, 167
geothermal energy, 165
hydroelectric energy, 167, 167*f*
from oceans, 167, 543
solar energy, 166
wind energy, 168, 178–179, 573, 573*f*
renewable resources, 165–168
biomass, 167
geothermal energy, 165
hydroelectric energy, 167, 167*f*
from oceans, 167, 543
solar energy, 166
wind energy, 168, 178–179, 573, 573*f*
reptiles
Age of Reptiles, 221
Mesozoic Era, 221–223
Paleozoic Era, 220
reservoir, 36, 276
residual soil, 353
resources
conservation and, 169–172
fossil fuels, 159–161
mineral, 155–158
mineral/energy from ocean water, 506
nonrenewable energy, 159–164, 169–172
recycling, 171, 171*f*
renewable, 165–168
renewable energy, 165–168
retrograde motion, 691
reversed polarity, 244–245
reverse fault, 277, 277*f*
reverse grading, 139
reverse osmosis desalination, 505
revolution of Earth, 668, 668*f,* 669
rhipidistians, 219
rhyolite
as felsic rock, 132
as fine-grained igneous rock, 131, 131*f*
Richter scale, 303
ridge push, 253, 253*f*
ridges
formed by anticlines, 276
on moon, 720
rifting, 255
rift valley, formation of, 249, 249*f*
rilles, on moon, 720
rings, 576
ring silicates, 107, 107*f*
rip currents, 529
ripple marks, 140, 188, 188*f*
river systems, 375–386
alluvial fans, 383, 383*f*
braided stream, 382, 382*f*
deltas, 383, 383*f*
deposition, 383, 383*f*
erosion, 379–380, 392–393
evolution of river channels, 381–382, 381*f*
flood control, 385
floodplain, 384
headward erosion, 379
meandering channels in, 381, 381*f*
natural levees, 384
oxbow lakes, 381
parts of, 379, 379*f*
sediment load when meeting ocean, 480
stream discharge, 380
stream gradient, 380, 380*f*
stream load, 380
stream piracy, 379
tributaries, 379, 379*f*
water cycle and, 375–378
watershed, 379, 379*f*
water use and wastewater, 378, 378*f*
robots, submarine, 474
roches moutonnées, 424
rock cycle, 126, 126*f*
rockfalls, 361
rock-forming minerals, 104
rocks, 125–144
absolute age of, 191–196
Bowen's reaction series, 127, 127*f*
chemical stability of, 128
classification of, lab on, 150–151
compression, 273, 273*f*
felsic rock, 132, 132*f*
folds, 275–276, 275*f*–276*f*
geologic maps of, 66
igneous, 125, 125*f,* 129–134, 129*f*–134*f*
intermediate, 132
law of superposition, 187
lunar, 721, 721*f*
mafic rock, 132, 132*f*
major types of, overview, 125
metamorphic, 125, 125*f,* 141–144, 141*f*–144*f*

INDEX

rocks (*continued*)
on moon, 153
permeability of, 398, 398*f*
physical stability of, 128
plastic rock, 247
porosity of, 397, 397*f*
Precambrian, 217
properties of, 127–128
relative age of, 186–190
rock and mineral production in United States, 122*f*
rock formations as evidence of continental drift, 240
rock cycle, 126, 126*f*
sedimentary, 125, 125*f*, 135–140, 137*f*–140*f*
shear stress, 273, 273*f*
soil composition and, 353
strain, 274, 274*f*
tension, 273, 273*f*
ventifacts, 447
rock salt, as evaporite, 136
Rocky Mountains
chinook, 636
formation of, 259
reverse faults, 277
Rosston (Oklahoma), 574*f*
rotation of Earth, 667–668, 669
Coriolis effect and, 520
rubidium, radiometric dating, 195
rubidium-strontium dating, 195*t*, 875*t*
ruby, 109
runaway greenhouse effect, 696
runoff
in river system, 379
in water cycle, 376, 376*f*
Russell, Henry Norris, 781
Rutherford, Ernest, 162

S

Safe Drinking Water Act, 170
safety
during earthquakes, 306
severe weather safety tips, 619*t*
Safir-Simpson scale, 609
Sahara (Africa), 341*f*
salinity, 496
Antarctic Bottom Water, 523
density of ocean water and, 499, 514–515
of ocean water, 496, 496*f*, 523
salt
chemical formula of table salt, 87*f*
desalination of ocean water, 505
as evaporite, 429
as particulate, 549, 549*f*
salinity, 496, 496*f*
saltation, 445
salt lakes, 429, 429*f*
San Andreas fault (California), 251, 251*f*, 270, 278, 278*f*
sand
barrier islands, 457, 457*f*
components of, 445
dunes, 447–449
how wind moves, 445
saltation, 445
in soil, 354
uses of, 157*t*
sandbars, 453, 529
sand dunes, 341*f*
sandstone, 125*f*
as clastic sedimentary rock, 137, 137*f*
permeability of, 398
rate of weathering and, 349
Santa Rosa Island (Florida), 457*f*
sapphire, 109
Sargasso Sea (Atlantic Ocean), 522, 522*f*
satellites, 666, 719
ACRIMSAT, 762
artificial, 719
Landsat, 683
moons as, 719
SOHO, 762
SORCE, 762
TRACE, 665
weather, 614
saturation, zone of, 399
Saturn, 704*f*
bands and rings of, 704
characteristics of, 704, 704*f*
formation of, 687
moons of, 736, 736*f*
rings of gas, 738, 738*f*
saurischians, 222
savanna climate, 637, 637*t*
scale
fractional, 61
graphic, 61
map, 61, 61*f*
verbal, 61
scattering, 556
schist, as foliated rock, 143
science
acceptance of scientific ideas, 14–15
formulating theory, 15
importance of interdisciplinary science, 15, 15*f*
measurements and analysis, 12–13
peer review, 14
as process, 9–16
publication of results and conclusion, 14
scientific method, 10–11
society and, 16
study behavior of natural systems, 9
science terms, analyses of, 807
scientific laws, 15
scientific methods, 10–11, 10*f*
lab on, 22–23
scientific notation, 822
scientific revolutions, technology and, 7
sea, 471
sea arch, 452, 452*f*
sea cave, 452, 452*f*
sea cliffs, wave erosion and, 452
sea-floor sediment, to study past climates, 641*t*
sea-floor spreading, 243, 243*f*, 246
lab on, 266–267
sea horse, 501, 501*f*
sea level
absolute changes in, 455
relative changes in, 456–457
seamounts, 477*f*, 478
as terrane, 256
sea salts, 495
seasons, 672–674
Earth's axis and, 672, 672*f*
Earth's orbital changes and changes in, 643, 643*f*
Earth's temperature and, 559
equinoxes, 673
seasonal weather, 673
solar energy and temperature, 632, 632*f*
summer solstice, 674
wind belt changes and, 563
winter solstice, 674
sea stack, 452, 452*f*
secondary waves, 297, 297*f*
second law of thermodynamics, 830
seconds, of latitude, 53
sedimentary rock, 124*f*, 125, 125*f*, 135–140, 186*f*
cementation, 135
chemical sedimentary rock, 136
clastic sedimentary rock, 137–138, 137*f*–138*f*
compaction, 135, 135*f*
cross-beds, 139, 139*f*
formation of, 135, 135*f*
fossils, 140, 197
graded bedding, 139
law of superposition, 187
mud cracks, 140, 140*f*
organic sedimentary rock, 136
principle of original horizontality, 187–188
rate of deposition, 192
rate of weathering, 349
ripple marks, 140
in rock cycle, 126, 126*f*
stratification, 139, 139*f*
varve count, 192, 192*f*
sediments, 125
abyssal plains, 477
alluvial fans, 383, 383*f*
biogenic, 481
braided streams, 382, 382*f*
deltas, 383, 383*f*, 480
in floodplain, 384
from icebergs, 480
inorganic, 480
lab on ocean-floor sediments, 488–489
lab on sediments and water, 392–393
in lakes, 386
from meteorites, 480
nodules, 481, 481*f*
permeability of, 398, 398*f*

physical classification of, 482
porosity of, 397, 397*f*
in sedimentary rock, 135
sediment thickness of Earth's oceans, 490
size of particles, and settling rate, 488–489
sources of, in deep-ocean basins, 479–481
in streams and erosion, 380, 392–393
turbidity current, 480
world watershed sediment yield, 394*f*
Sedna, 707
seismic gap, 307, 307*f*
seismic surveying, 297
seismic waves
body waves, 296, 297
Earth's internal layers and, 28, 28*f,* 298, 298*f*
locating earthquakes, 302
Love waves, 297, 297*f*
P waves, 297, 297*f*
Rayleigh waves, 297, 297*f*
recording earthquakes, 301
shadow zones, 298
surface waves, 296, 297
S waves, 297, 297*f*
use in surveying underground features, 297
seismograms, 301, 301*f*
seismographs, 301, 301*f*
seismology, 301
intensity of earthquakes, 304, 304*t*
locating earthquake and, 302
magnitude of earthquakes, 303
SETI (Search for Extraterrestrial Intelligence), 785
Severn River (England), 534
sewage-treatment, Boston Harbor and, 517
shadow zones, 298
shale
as clastic sedimentary rock, 137, 137*f*
rate of weathering and, 349
shear strain, in New Zealand, 292*f*
shear stress
Earth's crust deformation, 273
metamorphic rock and, 142
shear waves, 297, 297*f*
sheeted dikes, 322, 322*f*
sheet erosion, 358
sheet silicates, 107, 107*f*
shields, 217, 255
shield volcanoes, 328*t*
Shiprock (New Mexico), 134, 134*f*
shooting stars, 743
short-period comets, 743
Sierra Nevadas (California), 133, 221
as fault-block mountains, 282*f,* 283
significant digits, 823
SI (International System of Units), 12
conversion table for, 870*t*
silica, in organic sediments, 481
silicate minerals, 104
crystalline structure of, 106–107
double-chain silicate, 107, 107*f*
examples of, 104
framework silicate, 107, 107*f*
isolated tetrahedra, 107, 107*f*
ring silicate, 107, 107*f*
sheet silicate, 107, 107*f*
single-chain silicate, 107, 107*f*
siliceous ooze, 482
silicon, as element of Earth's crust, 81*f*
silicon-oxygen tetrahedron, 106, 106*f*
sills, 133, 133*f*
silt, in soil, 354
Silurian Period, 213*t,* 219
silver, 105*t*
as native element, 155
uses of, 157*t*
single-chain silicate, 107, 107*f*
sinkholes, 407, 407*f,* 417, 417*f*
skills handbook, 807–831
slab pull, 254, 254*f*
slack water, 534
slate
as foliated rock, 143
as metamorphic rock, 141*f*
sleet, 587
slipface, 448
slump, 361
Small Magellanic Cloud, 791
smog, 554
snow
characteristics of, 587
measuring amount of, 589
supercooling of water droplets in clouds, 588
snowfield, 419
snowline, 419
sodium
as dissolved solid in ocean water, 495
as element of Earth's crust, 81*f*
sodium chloride
chemical formula of, 87, 87*f*
dissolved in water, 494
ionic bond of, 90
soft water, 405
soil, 353
acidity of, lab on, 370–371
arable land, 359
characteristics of, 353–354
climate and, 355, 355*f*
color of, 353, 353*f*
composition of, 353
desert/arctic, 355, 355*f*
erosion of, 357–358, 357*f,* 358*f*
fertile, 359
gullying, 358, 358*f*
land degradation, 359
mass movement of, 361–362
residual, 353
sheet erosion, 358
soil conservation, 359–360
temperate, 355, 355*f*
texture of, 354
topography and formation of, 356, 356*f*
transported, 353
tropical, 355, 355*f*
soil conservation, 359–360, 359*f,* 360*f*
contour plowing, 360, 360*f*
crop rotation, 360
land degradation and, 359
strip-cropping, 360, 360*f*
terracing, 360, 360*f*
soil conservationist, 373
soil maps, 67, 67*f*
soil profile, 354, 354*f*
soil survey, 67
solar-activity cycle, 762
Solar and Heliospheric Observatory (*SOHO*), 762
solar collector, 166
solar constant, 762
solar eclipses, 727–728, 727*f,* 728*f*
annular, 728
diamond-ring effect, 728, 728*f*
frequency of, 729
total, 727
solar energy/radiation, 166
absorption of, 557–558, 570–571, 572
albedo, 557
atmosphere and, 555–560
conduction, 560
convection, 560
as external source of Earth's energy, 35
latitude and, 559, 559*f,* 632
reflection, of 557, 570–571
scattering of, 556
seasons and, 559
solar flares, 763
Solar Maximum Mission, 762
solar nebula, 685, 686*f*
Solar Radiation and Climate Experiment (*SORCE*), 762
solar system, 660, 685
asteroids, 739–740, 739*f*
comets, 741–743, 741*f,* 742*f*
data table, 880*t*
early models of, 691, 691*f*
Earth's moon, 719–732
exoplanets, 708
formation of planets, 686–687
inner planets, 686, 695–700
Kepler's laws, 692–694
Kuiper belt, 707, 742

INDEX

solar system (*continued*)
meteoroids, 743–744, 743*f*, 744*f*
models of, 691–694
moons, 733–738
nebular hypothesis of formation, 685, 686*f*–687*f*
Oort cloud, 742, 742*f*
outer planets, 687, 701–708
sun, 755–764
solar wind, 760, 773
solids, speed of particles in, 89
solifluction, 362
solstices, 674
solutions, 92, 92*f*
sonar, for oceanographic research, 473
sorting, 397, 397*f*
of clastic sedimentary rock, 138, 138*f*
South America
formation of, 259, 259*f*
locations of earthquakes in, 268*f*
South China Sea, 471, 471*f*
southeast trade winds, 562, 562*f*
Southern Hemisphere, currents in, 521, 521*f*
southern lights, 764
Southern Ocean, 471, 471*f*
South Pole, 53, 53*f*
geomagnetic vs. geographic, 55, 55*f*
spacecrafts
probes, 665
robotic, 666
space telescopes, 665
species
continental changes and, 257
identifying, 77
specific heat, 634
spectrograph, 6*f*, 661, 755, 775
analyzing starlight through, 775
spectrum, 551, 551*f*, 661, 661*f*, 755, 755*f*, 775, 775*f*
speed, 829–830
sphalerite, 157*t*
sphere, area of, 820
spiral galaxy, 791, 791*f*
Spirit, 700
spit, 454, 454*f*
Spitzer Space Telescope, 665, 805
splintery fracture, 110
springs, 402
artesian, 403
hot, 404
ordinary, 402
spring tides, 532, 532*f*
Sputnik 1, 719
squall line, 605, 605*f*
stalactites, 406
stalagmites, 406
standard atmospheric pressure, 550
Stardust, 741
Starfire telescope, 657*f*
stars, 775–796
actual motion of, 778, 778*f*
analyzing starlight, 775
apparent motion of, 777, 777*f*
big bang theory, 794–795
binary, 790
black hole, 788
blue shift, 778, 778*f*
brightness of, 780, 780*f*, 802–803
Cepheid variables, 790
circumpolar stars, 778
classifying, 781, 781*f*
clusters, 790, 790*f*
color of, 775, 776, 776*f*
composition of, 776
constellations, 789, 844–845, 886–887
distances to, 779
formation of, 782–783, 782*f*
galaxies, 790–791
giants, 784, 784*f*
H-R diagram, 781, 781*f*
lab on star magnitude, 802–803
main-sequence, 781, 781*f*, 783
neutron, 787
novas, 785
parallax, 779, 779*f*
planetary nebulas, 785, 785*f*
pulsars, 788, 788*f*
red shift, 778, 778*f*
size and mass of, 776
stages of, 782–788
supergiants, 784, 784*f*
supernovas, 785–786, 785*f*
telescopes to study, 805
temperature of, 776, 776*f*
white dwarf, 785
stationary front, 606
on weather map, 617, 617*f*
station model, 616, 616*f*
steam fog, 586
steel, as homogeneous mixture, 92, 92*f*
Stegosaurus, 222
steppe climate, 638, 638*t*
St. Helens, Mount, 279, 284, 284*f*, 326, 327*f*
stocks, 133
Stone Forest in Yunnan (China), 408, 408*f*
stone pavement, 446
stony-iron meteorites, 744, 744*f*
stony meteorites, 744, 744*f*
storm surge, 609
strain
brittle, 274, 274*f*
ductile, 274
factors that affect, 274
types of permanent, 274
Strait of Gibraltar, 524, 524*f*
strata, 186
stratification, sedimentary rock, 139, 139*f*
stratified drift, 426
stratocumulus clouds, 584*f*, 585
stratosphere, 552*f*, 553
solar radiation absorbed in, 556
stratus clouds, 584, 584*f*
streak, physical property of minerals, 110
streak plate, 110
stream load, 380
stream piracy, 379
streams. *See also* **river systems**
braided, 382, 382*f*
deposition of, 383, 383*f*
discharge of, 380
erosion in, 379–380
gradient of, 380, 380*f*
stream load, 380
stress, 142, 273
compression, 273, 273*f*
directed, 142
Earth's crust deformation and, 273, 273*f*
elastic rebound, 295
shear, 142, 273, 273*f*
tension, 273, 273*f*
strike, on geologic maps, 66
strike-slip fault, 278, 278*f*
strip-cropping, 360, 360*f*
stromatolites, 217, 217*f*
strontium, radiometric dating, 195t
study skills, 807–813
subarctic climate, 639, 639*t*
subatomic particles, 82, 101
subduction zones, 250, 321
sublimation, 576
sublittoral zone, 503, 503*f*
submarine canyons, 476, 476*f*
submergent coastlines, 456, 456*f*
submersibles, 474
subscript, in chemical formulas, 87, 88
subsidence, 272
sinkholes, 407
subsoil, 354, 354*f*
subsurface mining, 158
subtropical highs, climate and, 633
subtropical jet streams, 563
sulfates, as major class of nonsilicate minerals, 105*t*
sulfides, as major class of nonsilicate minerals, 105*t*
sulfur
color of, 109
as dissolved solid in ocean water, 495
uses of, 157*t*
summer solstice, 674
sun, 755–764
age of, 783, 783*f*
atmosphere of, 759–760
auroras, 764, 764*f*
chromosphere, 758*f*, 760
color of, 775
composition of, 755
convective zone, 758*f*, 759
core of, 758, 758*f*
corona, 758*f*, 760, 760*f*
distance from Earth, 779
energy of, 755–757, 770–771
as external source of Earth's energy, 35

formation of, 685
geomagnetic storms, 763
interior of, 758–759, 758*f*
lab on energy of, 770–771
lunar eclipses, 729, 729*f*
magnetic field of, 29
nuclear fusion, 756–757, 756*f*
photosphere, 758*f*, 759, 759*f*
positions of sunrise and sunset, long-term project, 848–851
prominences, 754*f*, 763
radiative zone, 758*f*, 759
size of, 776
solar constant and total solar irradiance, 762
solar eclipses, 727–728, 727*f*, 728*f*
solar flares, 763
solar winds, 760, 773
sunspots, 759*f*, 761–762, 761*f*
SXT composite image of, 772*f*
sun dogs, 576
sun pillars, 576
sunspots, 759*f*, 761–762, 761*f*
supercontinent, 239
supercontinent cycle, 258–260, 258*f*–260*f*
supercooling, precipitation formation and, 588
supergiants, 784, 784*f*, 787*f*,
superior mirage, 576
supernova, 786–787, 787*f*
superposition, law of, 187
surface area, rate of weathering and, 350, 350*f*
surface currents, 519
continental barriers, 520
Coriolis effect, 520
factors that affect, 519–520
global wind belts, 520, 520*f*
major, 521–522, 521*f*, 522*f*
surface mining, 158, 158*f*
surface waves, 296, 297
Love waves, 297, 297*f*
Rayleigh waves, 297, 297*f*
suspended load, in streams, 380
S waves, 297, 297*f*
locating earthquake and, 302
recorded on seismograph, 301
shadow zones, 298
swell, 527
syncline, 276, 276*f*
systems, 31
closed, 32, 32*f*
Earth system, 32
open, 32, 32*f*

T

tablemounts, 478
table salt
chemical formula of, 87, 87*f*
ionic bond of, 90
talc, hardness of, 111*t*
talus, 362, 362*f*
tar seeps, 198*t*
tarsier, 224*f*
technology, scientific revolution and, 7
tectonic plates, 247. *See also* **plate tectonics**
boundaries of, 248, 248*f*
causes of plate motion, 252–254
climate change and, 643
compression, 273
continental changes, 255–260
convergent boundaries, 250, 250*f*, 251*t*
divergent boundaries, 249, 249*f*, 251*t*
earthquakes and identifying boundaries, 248
identifying boundaries and volcanoes, 248
major, 248*f*
mantle convection, 252, 252*f*
map of, 834
regional metamorphism, 142
ridge push, 253, 253*f*
shear stress, 273
slab pull, 254, 254*f*
strike-slip faults, 278
subduction zone, 321
tension, 273
transform boundaries, 251, 251*f*, 251*t*
volcanoes and, 320–323, 320*f*
telescopes, 662–664
invisible electromagnetic radiation, 664
reflecting, 663, 663*f*
refracting, 663, 663*f*
space-based, 665
temperate climate, soil in, 355, 355*f*
temperature
Antarctic Bottom Water, 523
big bang theory and, 795
density of ocean water and, 499, 514–515, 523
Earth's internal, 319, 319*f*
of ocean water, 494, 497–498
sea surface temperatures in August, 516
of stars, 776, 776*f*
temperature, atmospheric
absorption of solar energy, and of Earth's surface, 557
adiabatic cooling, 582
advective cooling, 583
atmospheric pressure and, 550
climate and, 631
coccolithophores and, 655, 655*f*
conversion table, 870*t*
cooling of, and cloud formation, 581–583
elevation and, 636
global warming, 645
greenhouse effect and Earth's, 558
latitude and, 559, 559*f*
measuring, 611, 857*t*
in middle-latitude climates, 638, 638*t*
plotting on weather map, 617
in polar climate, 639, 639*t*
seasons and, 559
solar energy and, 632, 632*f*
specific heat and evaporation, 634
in tropical climate, 637
at various altitudes, 552–553, 552*f*
water vapor and, 559
temperature inversions, 554, 554*f*
tension, 273, 273*f*
metamorphic rock and, 142
terminal moraines, 426*f*, 427
terracing, 360, 360*f*
terrane, 256
identifying, 256
terrestrial planets, 695. *See also* **inner planets**
Tertiary Period, 213*t*, 224
Tethys Sea, 258, 259
tetragonal system, 112*t*
texture, of rock
coarse-grained, 131, 131*f*
fine-grained, 131, 131*f*
foliated rock, 143, 143*f*
glassy, 131, 131*f*
of igneous rocks, 131, 131*f*
of metamorphic rock, 143–144, 143*f*, 144*f*
nonfoliated rock, 144, 144*f*
porphyritic, 131, 131*f*
vesicular, 131, 131*f*
Tharsis Montes, 699
The Eagle, 726*f*
thematic map, 683
theory, 15
formulating, 15
of relativity, 757
thermistor, 611
thermocline, 498, 498*f*
thermodynamics, 830
first law of, 34, 830
second law of, 34, 830
third law of, 830
thermometer, to measure air temperature, 611
thermosphere, 552*f*, 553
solar radiation absorbed in, 556
thin polymer film, as instrument for measuring humidity, 579
third law of thermodynamics, 830
thorium, 193
radiometric dating, 195*t*
thorium-lead dating, 875*t*
Three Gorges Dam (China), 395, 395*f*
thrust fault, 277, 277*f*

INDEX

thunderstorms, 608
safety tips for, 619*t*
Tibetan Plateau, 282
tidal bore, 534, 534*f*
tidal bulge, 732
tidal currents, 534
tidal forces, on Jupiter, 734
tidal oscillations, 533
tidal range, 532
tidal waves, 530
tides, 531, 732
causes of, 531, 732
ebb tide, 534
electric energy from, 543
energy from, 35, 167
flood tide, 534
high, 531, 531*f*
low, 531, 531*f*
moon and, 531, 531*f,* 532, 532*f,* 533, 732, 732*f*
neap tides, 532, 532*f*
spring tides, 532, 532*f*
tidal currents, 534
tidal oscillations, 533
tidal range, 532
tidal variations, 533
till, 426
tilt of Earth's axis, 433, 433*f*
climate and changes in, 643, 643*f*
time
daylight savings time, 672
formation of calendar, 670
International Date Line, 671, 671*f*
measuring, 670–672
modern calendar, 670
time zones, 671, 671*f*
time zones, 671, 671*f*
tin
physical properties of, 98*t*
veins of, 156
Titan, 736, 736*f*
Titania, 737
tombolos, 454, 454*f*
topaz, hardness of, 111*t*
topographic maps, 63–65, 63*f,* 65*f,* 74–75, 877
advantages of, 63
contour lines, 64
depression contours, 65
of Desolation watershed, 76*f*
elevation on, 64
index contours, 64
landforms on, 65, 65*f*
of moon, 885
provinces of North America, 881
Red River, Taos County, New Mexico, 833
relief, 64
symbols for, 65, 876*t*
topographic provinces of North America, 881
topography, 63
climate and, 636
elevation and temperature, 636
groundwater and, 400, 400*f*
karst, 408
rain shadows, 636
rate of weathering and, 351
soil formation and, 356, 356*f*
topsoil, 354, 354*f*
soil conservation and, 359–360
Tornado Alley, 610
tornadoes, 610, 610*f*
safety tips for, 619*t*
total solar irradiance, 762
tourmaline, 107
TRACE, 665
trace elements, in ocean water, 495
trace fossil, 199
trace minerals, extracted from oceans, 506
trade winds, 520, 520*f,* 562, 562*f*
transform boundaries, 251, 251*f,* 251*t*
shear stress, 273
strike-slip faults, 278
transpiration, in water cycle, 38, 38*f,* 376, 376*f*
transported soil, 353
transverse dunes, 448, 448*f*
travertine, 404
tree rings, to study past climates, 640, 641*t*
trenches, 477, 477*f*
subduction zones, 321
triangle, area of, 820
Triassic Period, 213*t,* 222
tributaries, 379, 379*f*
triclinic system, 112*t*
trilobites, 218, 218*f*
Triton, 737
volcanoes on, 734
Trojan asteroids, 739*f*
tropical air masses, 602*t,* 603
tropical climate, 637
desert, 637, 637*t*
rain forest, 637, 637*t*
savanna, 637, 637*t*
soil in, 355, 355*f*
tropical desert climate, 637, 637*t*
tropical rain-forest climate, 637, 637*t*
tropopause, 552
troposphere, 552, 552*f*
solar radiation absorbed in, 556
trough of wave, 525, 525*f*
tsunamis, 530
causes of, 305
earthquakes and, 305
tuff, 134
tundra climate, 639, 639*t*
tungsten, physical properties of, 98*t*
turbidity currents, 476, 480, 524
Two-Column notes, 812–813
Tyrannosaurus rex, 223, 223*f*

U

ultraviolet radiation, 555, 555*f,* 556
ultraviolet rays, wavelength of, 555, 662
umbra, 727
Umbriel, 737
unconformities, 189–190
types of, 189, 189*t*
undertow, and ocean waves, 529
uneven fracture, 110
uniformitarianism, 185
United States Department of Agriculture (USDA), 67
United States Geological Survey (USGS), 60
universal gravitation, law of, 782
universe
big bang theory, 794–795
dark energy, 796
dark matter, 796
expanding, 794, 795
Hubble's observations of, 793–794
measuring distances in, 660
measuring red shift, 793
organization of, 660
uplift, 272
upslope fog, 586
upwelling, 502, 502*f*
Ural Mountains (Russia), 258
as folded mountain, 282
uraninite, 114
uranium, 114
in nuclear fission, 163
radioactive decay of, 193, 195
radiometric dating, 195, 195*t*
uranium-lead dating, 875*t*
Uranus, 705*f*
atmosphere of, 705
characteristics of, 705, 705*f*
formation of, 687
moons of, 737, 737*f*
rings of, 738
rotation of, 705
urbanization, 359
urban sprawl, 359
Ursa Major, 789
U-shaped valley, 425, 425*f*

V

valence electrons, 86
chemical bonds, 89
Valles Marineris, 684*f,* 699
valley breeze, 564
valleys
formed by syncline, 276
hanging, 425
U-shaped, 425
variables
in algebraic equations, 821
dependent, 11
independent, 11
varve, 192
varve count, 192, 192*f*
veins, ore formation, 156
velocity, 830
vent, 320
ventifacts, 447
Venus, 696*f,* 697*f*
atmosphere of, 696

characteristics of, 696–697, 696*f*
as evening star/morning star, 696
formation of, 686
greenhouse effect on, 696
missions to, 697
surface features of, 697
volcanoes on, 697, 697*f*, 734
verbal scale, 61
vernal equinox, 673
vertebrates, 219
vesicles, in igneous rock, 131, 131*f*
Viking, 699
visible light
and electromagnetic spectrum, 661, 661*f*
wavelength of, 555
volcanic ash, 327, 327*f*
climate change and, 339
as particulate, 549, 549*f*
volcanic blocks, 327, 327*f*
volcanic bombs, 327
volcanic dust, 327
volcanic eruptions
earthquake activity, 330
explosive eruptions, 326
lab on, 336–337
lava flows, 326, 326*f*
patterns of activity in, 330
predicting, 330, 336–337
quiet eruptions, 325, 325*f*
types of, 325–327
types of pyroclastic material, 327, 327*f*
viscosity of magma and, 325
volcanic mountains, formation of, 283, 284, 284*f*
volcanic neck, 134, 134*f*
volcanism, 320
volcanoes, 319–330. *See also* **volcanic eruptions**
calderas, 329, 329*f*
cinder cones, 328*t*
climate change and, 339, 644
composite volcanoes, 328*t*
craters, 328
hot spots, 323
in Iceland, 269
on Io, 734, 734*f*
island arc, 321
on Jupiter's moon, 734
major volcanic zones, 320–323, 320*f*
on Mars, 699, 734
mid-ocean ridges, 322
plate tectonics and, 320–323, 320*f*
sea-floor formation, 322
shield volcanoes, 328*t*
subduction zones, 321
tectonic plates and, 248
types of, 328, 328*t*
on Venus, 697, 697*f*, 734
volcanic cone, 329
volcanologist, 6*f*
volume, 820
conversion table, 870*t*
Voyager, 734
Voyager 1, 665, 736, 736*f*, 738
Voyager 2, 665, 705, 706

W

wall cloud, 545*f*
waning-crescent phase, 730*f*, 731
waning-gibbous phase, 730*f*, 731
warm front, 606, 606*f*
on weather map, 617, 617*f*
warning, severe weather, 619
wastewater, 378, 378*f*
watch, severe weather, 619
water. *See also* **ocean water; river systems; water vapor**
abrasion and, 344
changing forms of, 575–576
chemical formula of, 87
comet collisions and Earth's first, 690
conservation of, 172, 378
covalent bond of, 91
energy from moving, 167, 167*f*
fresh water from oceans, 505
geothermal energy, 165
groundwater, 397–408
hard, 405
hydrolysis, 347, 347*f*
hydrosphere, 33
land areas close to, and climate, 640
land areas close to, and temperature, 559
on Mars, 700, 700*f*
ore formation by moving water, 156, 156*f*
phases of, 575, 575*f*
as polar covalent bond, 91
sodium chloride dissolved in, 494
soft, 405
water budget, 377–378
in water cycle, 38, 38*f*
water use, 378
world watershed sediment yield, 394*f*
water budget, 377
factors that affect, 377–378
local, 377
water cycle, 38, 38*f*, 375–378, 376*f*
condensation, 376, 376*f*
evapotranspiration, 376, 376*f*
movement of water on Earth, 375–376
precipitation, 376, 376*f*
water planet, 471
watershed, 379, 379*f*
world watershed sediment yield, 394*f*
water table, 399
cone of depression, 402
factors affecting depth of, 400
perched, 400, 400*f*
topography and, 400, 400*f*
water vapor, 375
in atmosphere, 548, 548*f*
atmospheric pressure and, 550
clouds, 581–585
fog, 586
humidity, 577–580
latent heat and, 575
as phase of water, 575, 575*f*
sublimation, 576
temperature and, 559
wave-built terrace, 452
wave-cut terrace, 452
wave erosion, 451–454
beaches and, 453, 464–465
as chemical weathering, 451
longshore-current deposits, 454
as mechanical weathering, 451
sea caves, arches, and stacks and, 452, 452*f*
sea cliffs and, 452
wave height, 525, 525*f*
wave period, 525
waves, 525. *See also* **ocean waves**
body, 296, 297
crest of, 525, 525*f*
electromagnetic, 555
Love, 297, 297*f*
P, 297, 297*f*
in polar front, 606
Rayleigh, 297, 297*f*
S, 297, 297*f*
seismic, 296–298
speed of, 525
surface, 296, 297
trough, 525, 525*f*
waxing-crescent phase, 730*f*, 731
waxing-gibbous phase, 730*f*, 731
weather, 600–620
air masses, 601–604
anticyclone, 607
vs. climate, 631
cold front, 605, 605*f*
controlling, 620
correlating weather variables, long-term project, 856–857
dew point, 616
global weather monitoring, 615
hurricanes, 609, 609*f*
lightning, 608, 608*f*
midlatitude cyclone, 606–607, 607*f*
occluded front, 606, 606*f*
seasonal, 673
severe weather safety tips, 619*t*
squall line, 605, 605*f*
stationary front, 606
thunderstorms, 608
tornadoes, 610, 610*f*
warm front, 606, 606*f*
weather forecasting, long-term project, 858–861
weather-related disasters map, 628*f*
weather balloon, 580, 580*f*

weather forecasting
global weather monitoring, 615
hurricanes, 629
severe weather watches and warnings, 619, 619*t*
types of forecasts, 619
weather data for, 618
weather maps and, 616–617
weathering, 343–352. *See also* **weathering, rates of**
abrasion, 344
acid precipitation, 348
acid rain, 144
carbonation, 347
chemical, 346–348, 451
differential, 349
erosion, 357–364
by groundwater, 405–408
hydrolysis, 347, 347*f*
ice wedging, 344, 344*f*
mechanical, 343–345, 451
organic acids, 347
organic activity, 345, 345*f*
oxidation, 346
weathering, rates of, 349–352
amount of exposure, 350
climate and, 351, 351*f*
fractures and joints, 350
human activity and, 351
plant and animal activities, 351
rock composition and, 349
surface area and, 350
topography and, 351
weather instruments, 611–614
for air pressure, 612
for air temperature, 611
computers for, 614
Doppler radar, 613
measuring lower-atmospheric conditions, 611–612
measuring upper-atmospheric conditions, 613–614
radar, 613
radiosonde, 613
weather satellites, 614
for wind direction, 612
for wind speed, 612
weather maps, 68, 68*f,* 842–843, 859, 860
interpreting, lab on, 626–627
plotting fronts and precipitation, 617
plotting temperature and pressure, 617
station model, 616, 616*f*
symbols for, 616, 616*f,* 879
of United States, 879
weather satellites, 614
Wegener, Alfred, 239, 246
weight, 829
gravity and, 30
location and, 30, 30*f*
mass and, 30, 30*f*
Weihenmeyer, Eric, 550*f*
wells, 402
artesian, 403
ordinary, 402
westerlies, 520, 520*f,* 562, 562*f*
West Wind Drift, 521, 521*f*
whitecaps, 527, 527*f*
white dwarf, 785
wind
abrasion, 344
air mass and, 601
air pressure and, 519, 525
breezes, 564
climate and, 633
Coriolis effect, 561, 561*f*
doldrums, 562*f,* 563
energy from, 168, 573
farms, 168
fetch, 527
global wind patterns, 562–563, 633
horse latitudes, 562*f,* 563
hurricanes, 609
jet streams, 563
land and sea breezes, 564
local, 564
measuring direction, 612, 857*t*
measuring speed, 612, 612*f*
monsoons and, 625*f,* 635
ocean waves and, 525
patterns of, and temperature, 559
polar easterlies, 562, 562*f*
prevailing, 562
seasonal winds and climate, 635
seasons and wind belt change, 563
surface currents and, 519–520, 520*f*
tornadoes, 610
trade winds, 562, 562*f*
westerlies, 562, 562*f*
wind belt, 562, 562*f*
wind belts, 520, 520*f*
wind speeds in United States, 180*f*
wind belt, 520, 520*f,* 562, 562*f*
wind chill, 612
wind energy, lab on, 178–179
wind erosion, 445–450
deflation hollows, 446
desert pavement, 446
dunes, 447–449
effects of, 446–447
loess, 450, 450*f*
ventifacts, 447
wind deposition, 447–450
wind farms, 168, 168*f*
wind power, 573
wind vane, 612
Winter Park, Florida, sinkhole, 417, 417*f*
winter solstice, 674
World Meteorological Organization (WMO), 615
World Weather Watch, 615

X

X rays
telescope for, 664
wavelength of, 555, 662

Y

Yakima River (Washington), 586*f*
Yangtze River, Three Gorges Dam, 395, 395*f*
Yellowstone National Park (United States), 25, 25*f*
Yosemite National Park (United States), 343*f*

Z

zero, absolute, 830
zinc
formation of, from contact metamorphism, 156
physical properties of, 98*t*
uses of, 157*t*
zone of aeration, 399
zone of saturation, 399

Acknowledgments, continued

Staff Credits

Editorial

Robert V. Tucek, *Executive Editor*
Clay Walton, *Senior Editor*
Debbie Starr, *Managing Editor*

Editorial Development Team
Wesley M. Bain
Angela Hemmeter
Shari Husain
Kristen McCardel
Marjorie Roueché

Copyeditors
Dawn Marie Spinozza, *Copyediting Manager*
Simon Key
Jane A. Kirschman
Kira J. Watkins

Editorial Support Staff
Mary Anderson
Suzanne Krejci
Shannon Oehler

Online Products
Robert V. Tucek, *Executive Editor*
Wesley M. Bain

Design

Book Design
Kay Selke, *Director of Book Design*
Tim Hovde
Holly Whittaker

Media Design
Richard Metzger, *Design Director*
Chris Smith

Image Acquisitions
Curtis Riker, *Director*
Jeannie Taylor, *Photo Research Manager*
Elaine Tate, *Art Buyer Supervisor*
Andy Christiansen

Cover Design
Kay Selke, *Director of Book Design*

Publishing Services

Carol Martin, *Director*

Graphic Services
Bruce Bond, *Director*
Katrina Gnader
Cathy Murphy
Nanda Patel
JoAnn Stringer

Technology Services
Laura Likon, *Director*
Juan Baquera, *Technology Services Manager*
Jeff Robinson, *Ancillary Design Manager*
Sara Buller
Lana Kaupp
Janice Noske
Margaret Sanchez
Patty Zepeda

eMedia

Kate Bennett, *Director*
Armin Gutzmer, *Director of Development*
Ed Blake, *Design Director*
Kimberly Cammerata, *Design Manager*
Marsh Flournoy, *Technology Project Manager*
Tara F. Ross, *Senior Project Manager*
Melanie Baccus
Lydia Doty
Cathy Kuhles
Michael Rinella

Production

Eddie Dawson, *Senior Production Manager*
Adriana Bardin-Prestwood

Manufacturing and Inventory

Ivania Quant Lee, *Inventory Supervisor*
Wilonda Ieans
Jevara Jackson
Kristen Quiring

Acknowledgments, continued

Photo Credits

COVER PHOTO: John & Eliza Forder/Getty Images.

FRONTMATTER: vi (t), Terry Donnelly/Getty Images/The Image Bank; vi (c), Steve Bloom Images; vi (b), National Geophysical Data Center/National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration/Department of Commerce; vii (Ch. 4), Steve Allen/PictureQuest; vii (Ch. 5), Richard Price/Getty Images; vii (Ch. 6), John Cleare/Worldwide Picture Library/Alamy Photos; vii (b), Richard Sisk/Panoramic Images/NGSimages.com; viii (Ch. 7), Lester Lefkowitz/CORBIS; viii (Ch. 8), Mark E. Gibson/CORBIS; viii (Ch. 9), John Gurche; viii (br), Andrew Leitch/(c)1992 the Walt Disney Co. Reprinted with permission of Discover Magazine; viii (bc), Bill Steele/A+C Anthology; ix (Ch. 10), Mats Wibe Lund; ix (Ch. 11), Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS; ix (Ch. 12), Tom Wagner/CORBIS SABA; ix (Ch. 13), Gavriel Jecan/CORBIS; x (Ch. 14), Mark Laricchia/CORBIS ; x (Ch. 15), Jim Wark; x (Ch. 16), Joseph Van Os/Getty Images/The Image Bank; x (br), Harald Sund/Getty Images; xi (t), Liz Hymans/CORBIS; xi (Ch. 17), Andrew Wenzel/Masterfile; xi (Ch. 18), Nicole Duplaix/National Geographic Image Collection; xi (Ch. 19), Jeffrey L. Rotman/CORBIS; xii (tr), Sean Davey/AllSport/Getty Images; xii (Ch. 20), David Hall; xii (Ch. 21), eStock Photo/PictureQuest; xii (Ch. 22), Kevin Kelly/Getty Images/The Image Bank; xiii (Ch. 23), Charles Doswell III/Getty Images; xiii (Ch. 24), Getty Images/Taxi; xiii (Ch. 25), Theo Allofs/CORBIS; xiii (br), Rick Doyle/CORBIS; xiv (Ch. 26), NASA; xiv (Ch. 27), Denis Scott/CORBIS; xiv (Ch. 28), Denis Scott/CORBIS; xiv (br), Dr. Fred Espenak/Photo Researchers, Inc.; xv (t), Grant Faint/Getty Images; xv (Ch. 29), SOHO/ESA/NASA; xv (Ch. 30), Stocktrek/CORBIS; xv (inset), Barry Runk/Stan/Grant Heilman Photography; 3 (tr), Terry Donnelly/Getty Images/The Image Bank; 3 (cr), Steve Bloom Images; 3 (br), National Geophysical Data Center/National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration/Department of Commerce; 4, Terry Donnelly/Getty Images/The Image Bank; 5, Danny Lehman/CORBIS; 6 (bl), Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS; 6 (c), Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS; 6 (r), Bryan and Cherry Alexander Photography; 7, Bettmann/CORBIS; 8, Dr. Howard B. Bluestein; 9 (bl), (c)Michael Sewell/Peter Arnold, Inc.; 9 (br), CSIRO/Simon Fraser/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 11, NASA; 11, NASA; 12 (tl), Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 12 (tc), Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 12 (tr), Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 12 (b), Andy Christiansen/HRW; 13 (l), Kuni/AP/Wide World Photos; 13 (r), NASA/JPL/NIMA; 14, Ric Francis/AP/Wide World Photos; 15 (bl), Aventurier Patrick/Gamma; 15 (cl), V. L. Sharpton/LPI; 15 (cr), Dr. David A. Kring; 15 (br), Courtesy of Los Alamos National Laboratories; 16, Patrick J. Endres/Alaskaphotographics.com; 17 (t), Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS; 22, HRW; 2-3, Tom Bean/CORBIS ; 25 (t), Courtesy Ken Pierce; 25 (b), Corbis Images; 26, Steve Bloom Images; 27 (bl), Getty Images/PhotoDisc; 31 (bkgd), Douglas Faulkner/CORBIS; 31 (inset), Stuart Westmorland/CORBIS; 31 (inset), Stuart Westmorland/CORBIS; 32 (l), Andy Christiansen/HRW; 32 (r), Andy Christiansen/HRW; 33, Darrell Gulin/CORBIS; 35, Bernhard Lang/The Image Bank/Getty Images; 38, Pam Ostrow/Index Stock Imagery, Inc.; 39, Martin Harvey/Gallo Images/CORBIS; 40 (t), Raymond Gehman/CORBIS ; 40 (b), Roine Magnusson/The Image Bank/Getty Images; 42, Bob Krist; 43 (t), Getty Images/PhotoDisc; 43 (c), Bernhard Lang/The Image Bank/Getty Images; 43 (b), Bob Krist; 49, Andy Christiansen/HRW; 49, Peter Van Steen/HRW; 50, Provided by the SeaWiFS Project, NASA/Goddard Space Flight Center and ORBIMAGE/NASA/Seawifs; 51 (b), Carlos Barria/REUTERS/NewsCom; 51 (t), Martin Harvey/CORBIS; 52 (all), National Geophysical Data Center/National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration/Department of Commerce; 55 (tl), Layne Kennedy/CORBIS; 55 (br), National Maritime Museum, London; 57 (bl), Christopher Cormack/CORBIS; 60 (bl), Courtesy U.S. Geological Survey; 60 (inset), ; 61 (tl), Simon & Schuster, Inc.; 62 (tl), Bill Frymire/Masterfile; 64 (tl), Nathan Wier/Getty Images; 64 (br), Victoria Smith/HRW; 66 (t), Courtesy U.S. Geological Survey; 67 (bl), National Conservation Resource Service; 67 (br), National Conservation Resource Service; 68 (tl), Image courtesy NSSTC Lightning Team; 69 (tl), Layne Kennedy/CORBIS; 69 (cl), Christopher Cormack/CORBIS; 69 (bl), Nathan Wier/Getty Images; 74 (b), Victoria Smith/HRW; 74 (cr), Victoria Smith/HRW; 75 (tr), Victoria Smith/HRW; 76 (t), Courtesy U.S. Geological Survey; 77 (tr), Robert Goldstrom/The Newborn Group; 77 (bl), Image Makers /Getty Images; 79 (Ch. 4), Steve Allen/PictureQuest; 79 (Ch. 5), Richard Price/Getty Images; 79 (Ch. 6), John Cleare/Worldwide Picture Library/Alamy Photos.

UNIT TWO: 78-79, Jack Dykinga/Stone/Getty Images; 79 (Ch. 7), Lester Lefkowitz/CORBIS; 80, Steve Allen/PictureQuest; 87 (bl), Andrew Lambert Photography/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 87 (bc), Andrew Lambert Photography/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 87 (br), Tony Freeman/PhotoEdit; 89 (tr), Steve Chen/CORBIS; 90 (inset), Bruce Dale/National Geographic Image Collection; 91 (tr), Charlie Winters/HRW; 92 (tl), Craig Aurness/CORBIS; 93 (bl), Steve Chen/CORBIS; 99 (cr), Victoria Smith/HRW; 101 (b), Fermilab; 101 (cr), FERMILAB/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 102 (all), Richard Price/Getty Images; 103 (inset), Barry Runk/Grant Heilman Photography, Inc.; 103 (inset), Richard Cummins/CORBIS; 103 (inset), Doug Sokell/Visuals Unlimited; 103 (inset), Dr. E. R. Degginger/Color-Pic, Inc.; 103 (inset), Barry Runk/Stan/Grant Heilman Photography; 104 (tl), Martin Miller/Visuals Unlimited; 104 (tr), Dr. E. R. Degginger/Color-Pic, Inc.; 104 (cl), Charles D. Winters/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 105 (inset), Cabisco/Visuals Unlimited; 105 (inset), Mark Schneider/Visuals Unlimited; 105 (inset), Stonetrust, Inc.; 105 (inset), Paul Silverman/Fundamental Photographs; 105 (inset), Dr. E. R. Degginger/Color-Pic, Inc.; 105 (inset), Dr. E. R. Degginger/Color-Pic, Inc.; 105 (inset), Barry Runk/Stan/Grant Heilman Photography, Inc.; 105 (inset), Science VU/Visuals Unlimited; 105 (inset), Grace Davies Photography; 105 (inset), Geoff Tompkinson/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 105 (inset), Ken Lucas/Visuals Unlimited; 105 (inset), Ken Lucas/Visuals Unlimited; 108 (tl), Ken Lucas/Visuals Unlimited; 108 (tc), Jose Manuel Sanchez Calvate/CORBIS; 108 (tr), Breck P. Kent; 109 (bl), G. Tompkinson/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 109 (br), Mark Schneider/Visuals Unlimited; 110 (tl), E. R. Degginger/Dembinsky Photo Associates; 110 (cl), Mark A. Schneider/Visuals Unlimited; 110 (bc), Barry Runk/Stan/Grant Heilman Photography; 110 (bl), Tom Pantages Photography; 113 (tr), Dr. E. R. Degginger/Color-Pic, Inc.; 113 (cr), Dr. E. R. Degginger/Color-Pic, Inc.; 113 (inset), Victoria Smith/HRW; 114 (tl), Larry Stepanowicz / Visuals Unlimited; 115 (tl), Mark Schneider/Visuals Unlimited; 115 (bl), Mark Schneider/Visuals Unlimited; 120 (b), Victoria Smith/HRW; 123 (bl), Craig Aurness/CORBIS; 123 (tr), Courtesy of Jami Gerard-Dwyer; 124, John Cleare/Worldwide Picture Library/Alamy Photos; 125 (l), Breck P. Kent; 125 (c), Astrid & Hans-Frieder Michler/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 125 (r), Wally Eberhart/Visuals Unlimited ; 126 (br), Breck P. Kent; 126 (t), Joyce Photographics/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 126 (bl), Breck P. Kent; 128, Brand X Photos/Alamy Photos; 130 (b), Andy Christiansen/HRW; 131 (coarse), Image Copyright (c) Jerome Wyckoff; Image courtesy Earth Science World ImageBank; 131 (rhyolite), Breck P. Kent; 131 (porphyritic), Breck P. Kent; 131 (obsidian), G. R. Roberts/Natural Sciences Image Library (NSIL) of New Zealand; 131 (pumice), Wally Eberhart/Visuals Unlimited; 132 (tl), Martin Miller/Visuals Unlimited; 132 (tl, inset), Breck P. Kent; 132 (tr), Paul Harris/Getty Images/Stone; 132 (tr, inset), Victoria Smith/HRW; 134, Richard Sisk/Panoramic Images/NGSimages.com; 137 (tr, bl), Breck P. Kent; 137 (tr), Copyright Dorling Kindersley; 137 (br), Dr. E. R. Degginger/Color-Pic, Inc.; 139 (l), Russell Wood; 139 (r), Bernhard Edmaier/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 140, Tom Wagner/CORBIS SABA; 141 (br), Joyce Photographics/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 141 (cr), Wally Eberhart/Visuals Unlimited; 142, Martin Miller, University of Oregon; 143 (bl), Breck P. Kent; 143 (br), Galen Rowell/CORBIS; 144 (t), Adam Crowley/Photodisc Green/gettyimages; 144 (inset), Andy Christiansen/HRW; 145 (Sec. 1), Brand X Photos/Alamy Photos; 145 (Sec. 2, t), Image Copyright (c) Jerome Wyckoff; Image courtesy Earth Science World ImageBank; 145 (Sec. 2, b), Breck P. Kent; 145 (Sec. 3), Russell Wood; 145 (b), Adam Crowley/Photodisc Green/gettyimages; 150, Victoria Smith/HRW; 152, Ohio Department of Natural Resources, Division of Geological Survey; 153 (tr), NASA; 153 (c), NASA; 153 (bl), Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS ; 154, Lester Lefkowitz/CORBIS; 156 (br), Neal Mishler/Getty Images/Photographer's Choice; 158, H. David Seawell/CORBIS; 159, Macduff Everton/CORBIS; 160 (all), Barry Runk/Stan/Grant Heilman Photography, Inc.; 164, Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS; 165, Bob Krist; 166, Andy Christiansen/HRW; 168, Stefan Schott/Panoramic Images; 169, Peter Essick/Aurora; 170, John Lovretta, The Hawk Eye/AP/Wide World Photos; 171 (t), Jose Fuste Raga/CORBIS; 171 (b), Gary Klinkhammer/College of Oceanic and Atmospheric Sciences, Oregon State University; 172 (t), Photodisc/gettyimages; 173 (1), H. David Seawell/CORBIS; 173 (2), Macduff Everton/CORBIS; 173 (3), Bob Krist; 173 (4), Jose Fuste Raga/CORBIS; 181 (t), Applied Ecological Services; 181 (inset), Barry/Runk/Stan/Grant Heilman Photography, Inc.; 181 (b), Applied Ecological Services.

UNIT THREE: 182-183, Discovery Images/PictureQuest; 183 (Ch. 8), Mark E. Gibson/CORBIS; 183 (Ch. 7), John Gurche; 184, Mark E. Gibson/CORBIS; 185 (l), CORBIS; 185 (r), Tom Bean/CORBIS; 186, Deborah Long/Visuals Unlimited; 188 (tr), Tom Bean/CORBIS; 188 (tl), Christian Hass; 188 (tc), Gerald and Buff Corsi/Visuals Unlimited ; 191, Alan Smith/Getty Images/Stone; 192 (r), Pat O'Hara/CORBIS; 192 (l), Bruce Molnia/Terra Photo Graphics; 194 (t), Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 194 (t), Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 194 (t), Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 194 (t), Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 194 (t), Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 194, Victoria Smith/HRW; 196,

James King-Holmes/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 197, Annie Griffiths Belt/CORBIS; 198 (mummy), Landmann Patrick/CORBIS SYGMA; 198 (amber), Layne Kennedy/CORBIS; 198 (tar), Nick Ut/AP/Wide World Photos; 198 (mammoth), Bettmann/CORBIS; 198 (log), Bernhard Edmaier/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 199 (leaf), Layne Kennedy/CORBIS ; 199 (mold), G. R. Roberts/Natural Sciences Image Library (NSIL) of New Zealand; 199 (coprolite), Sinclair Stammers/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 199 (gastrolith), Francios Gohier/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 200, James L. Amos/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 201 (b), James L. Amos/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 201 (c), Pat O'Hara/CORBIS; 201 (t), Tom Bean/CORBIS; 206, Victoria Smith/HRW; 207 (all), Victoria Smith/HRW; 208, Courtesy, Ohio Department of Natural Resources, Division of Geological Survey; 209 (t), Steve Bloom Images; 209 (b), Pablo Corral Vega/CORBIS; 210, John Gurche; 212, Jonathan Blair/CORBIS; 214, Reuters New Media Inc./CORBIS; 216 (l), Jim Brandenburg/Minden Pictures; 216 (r), Manfred Danegger/Peter Arnold; 217, John Reader/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 218, James L. Amos/CORBIS; 219, Kaj R. Svensson/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 220, Ken Lucas/Visuals Unlimited; 221 (bl), Chris Butler/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 221 (bc), Joe Tucciarone/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 222 (t), Doug Henderson/Reuters/NewsCom; 222 (b), James L. Amos/CORBIS; 223, Sue Ogrocki/Reuters/NewsCom; 224, Stuart Westmorland/CORBIS; 225 (bl), Wardene Weiser/Bruce Coleman, Inc.; 225, Jeff Gage/Florida Museum of Natural History; 226, Bettmann/CORBIS; 227 (t), Jonathan Blair/CORBIS; 227 (c), John Reader/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 227, Stuart Westmorland/CORBIS; 233, Jonathan Blair/CORBIS; 235 (tr), Andrew Leitch/(c)1992 the Walt Disney Co. Reprinted with permission of Discover Magazine; 235 (tc), Bill Steele/A+C Anthology; 235 (bl), Ira Block.

UNIT FOUR: 236-237, NASA; 237 (Ch. 10), Mats Wibe Lund; 237 (Ch. 11), Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS; 237 (Ch. 12), Tom Wagner/CORBIS SABA; 237 (Ch. 13), Gavriel Jecan/CORBIS; 238 (all), Mats Wibe Lund; 239 (bl), The Granger Collection, New York.; 240 (inset), Paleontological Museum/University of Oslo, Norway; 241 (b), Galen Rowell/CORBIS; 241 (inset), British Antarctic Survey/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 242 (tl), P. Hickey/Woods Hole Oceanographic Institute; 246 (t), Courtesy of Dr. Donald Prothero; 249 (tl), NASA; 250 (br), Jacques Descloitres. MODIS Land Rapid Response Team, NASA/GSFC; 251 (tr), Tom Bean/CORBIS; 253 (br), Victoria Smith/HRW; 255 (b), Y. Arthus-B./Peter Arnold, Inc.; 255 (b), Y. Arthus-B./Peter Arnold, Inc.; 257 (cr), Michael Dick/Animals Animals/Earth Scenes; 261 (tl), British Antarctic Survey/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 261 (cr), Jacques Descloitres. MODIS Land Rapid Response Team, NASA/GSFC; 266 (b), Victoria Smith/HRW; 267 (tr), Victoria Smith/HRW; 269 (bl), Bettmann/CORBIS; 269 (inset), Walter H. F. Smith and David T. Sandwell; 270, Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS; 272, Jeremy Woodhouse/Getty Images; 272, Jeremy Woodhouse/Getty Images; 274 (t), Tom Bean; 274 (b), Andy Christiansen/HRW; 275, Bill Bachman; 276, Photodisc Blue/Getty Images; 278, Lloyd Cluff/CORBIS; 280, Jeremy Woodhouse/Pixelchrome; 281 (t), Kim Westerskov/Getty Images/Stone; 281 (b), Alexander Stewart/Getty Images/The Image Bank; 282-283, Photodisc Green/gettyimages; 282 (sierra), Russ Bishop; 282 (colorado), George H. H. Huey/CORBIS; 282 (valley), Bob Krist/CORBIS; 283 (dome), Alan Schein Photography/CORBIS ; 283 (appalachian), James P. Blair/National Geographic Image Collection; 283 (arkansas), Zephyr Picture/Index Stock Imagery, Inc.; 284, Harvey Lloyd/Getty Images/Taxi; 285 (t), Kim Westerskov/Getty Images/Stone; 290, Victoria Smith/HRW; 292, Institute of Geological and Nuclear Sciences; 292, Institute of Geological and Nuclear Sciences; 293 (bl), Bill Bachmann/Rainbow; 293 (cr), Gavin Hellier/Nature Picture Library; 294 (all), Tom Wagner/CORBIS SABA; 300 (tl), Yann Arthus Bertrand/CORBIS; 301 (bl), Reuters/CORBIS; 302 (br), Michael S. Yamashita/CORBIS; 302 (br), Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 305 (br), Reuters/CORBIS; 306 (tr), Samuel Zuder/laif/Aurora; 309 (tl), Yann Arthus Bertrand/CORBIS; 309 (cl), Michael S. Yamashita/CORBIS; 309 (bl), Reuters/CORBIS; 316, Global Seismic Hazard Assessment Program; 317 (bl), Courtesy of Wayne Thatcher; 317 (bl), Massonet, CNES/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 317 (bkgd), Dewitt Jones/CORBIS; 318 (all), Gavriel Jecan/CORBIS; 321 (br), Barry Tessman/National Geographic Image Collection; 322 (tl), James Wall/Animals Animals/Earth Scenes; 323 (cl), Jacques Descloitres, MODIS Rapid Response Team, NASA/GSFC; 324 (t), Bill Ross/CORBIS; 325 (bl), Stuart Westmoreland/Getty Images; 326 (tl), Gary Braasch/CORBIS; 326 (tc), J. D. Griggs/CORBIS; 326 (tr), David Muench/CORBIS; 327 (b), Gary Braasch/CORBIS; 327 (cr), Robert Patrick/Corbis Sygma; 327 (cr), Juerg Alean, Switzerland/www.stromboli.net; 327 (bl), Michael Yamashita/CORBIS; 328 (cr), Mike Zens/CORBIS; 328 (cl), Yann Arthrus-Bertrand/CORBIS; 328 (br), Japack Company/CORBIS; 330 (tl), Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS; 331 (tl), Jacques Descloitres, MODIS Rapid Response Team, NASA/GSFC; 331 (bl), Gary Braasch/CORBIS; 337 (tr), Koji Sasahara/AP/Wide World Photos; 339 (bl), InterNetwork Media/Getty Images; 339 (inset).

UNIT FIVE: 340-341, Frans Lemmens/Image Bank/Getty Images; Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS; 341 (Ch. 14), Mark Laricchia/CORBIS ; 341 (Ch. 15), Jim Wark; 341 (Ch. 16), Joseph Van Os/Getty Images/The Image Bank; 341 (Ch. 17), Andrew Wenzel/Masterfile; 341 (Ch. 18), Nicole Duplaix/National Geographic Image Collection; 342 (all), Mark Laricchia/CORBIS ; 344 (bl), Dr. E. R. Degginger/Color-Pic, Inc.; 344 (tr), SuperStock; 345 (tl), Layne Kennedy/CORBIS; 345 (tr), W. Perry Conway/CORBIS; 345 (br), Victoria Smith/HRW; 346 (br), Kevin Fleming/CORBIS; 348 (tr), Adam Hart-Davis/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 349 (br), Tom Till/Getty Images; 351 (tl), Bettman/CORBIS; 351 (tc), Joen Iaconetti/Bruce Coleman, Inc.; 352 (tl), Richard Hamilton Smith/CORBIS; 353 (bl), Jeff Vanuga/USDA/NRCS; 358 (tr), Yann Arthus-Bertrand/CORBIS; 359 (tr), Jason Hawkes/CORBIS; 359 (cr), Daniel Dancer/Peter Arnold, Inc.; 360 (tl), Jim Richardson/CORBIS; 360 (tr), Keren Su/CORBIS; 360 (tc), Grant Heilman Photography, Inc.; 361 (br), AFP/CORBIS; 361 (bl), Handout/Malacanang/Reuters/CORBIS; 362 (br), CORBIS; 363 (tl), Galen Rowell/CORBIS; 363 (tr), Steve Terrill/CORBIS; 364 (t), (c) Robert Frerck/Odyssey/Chicago; 365 (tl), Adam Hart-Davis/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 365 (cl), Richard Hamilton Smith/CORBIS; 365 (cl), Jeff Vanuga/USDA/NRCS; 365 (bl), Galen Rowell/CORBIS; 370 (b), Victoria Smith/HRW; 371 (tr), Victoria Smith/HRW; 373 (tr), Courtesy of Lewis Nichols; 373 (bl), Grant Heilman/Grant Heilman Photography, Inc.; 374 (all), Jim Wark; 375 (bl), Annie Reynolds/PhotoLink/gettyimages; 377 (tr), Mark Taylor/Warren Photographic/Bruce Coleman, Inc.; 377 (cr), Brad Wrobleski/Masterfile; 378 (tl), Peter Turnley/CORBIS; 380 (bl), Nancy Simmerman/Getty Images; 380 (br), Rich Reid/National Geographic Image Collection; 381 (tl), Harald Sund/Getty Images; 382 (tr), Jim Wark/Airphoto; 383 (bl), Jim Wark/Airphoto; 383 (br), Martin Miller/Visuals Unlimited; 384 (tl), Kevin R. Morris/CORBIS; 385 (br), Modesto Bee/AP/Wide World Photos; 387 (tl), Annie Reynolds/PhotoLink/gettyimages; 387 (cl), Harald Sund/Getty Images; 387 (bl), Martin Miller/Visuals Unlimited; 392 (bl), Victoria Smith/HRW; 393 (tr), Victoria Smith/HRW; 393 (cr), Victoria Smith/HRW; 395 (bl), EPA/AP Wide World Photos; 395 (tr), Reuters New Media, Inc./CORBIS; 396, Joseph Van Os/Getty Images/The Image Bank; 398, Victoria Smith/HRW; 401, Charles River Watershed Association; 402, Tom Bean/CORBIS; 403, Pagasus/Visuals Unlimited; 405 (inset), Martyn F. Chillmaid/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 405 (bl), Peter Essick/Aurora; 406, Adam Woolfitt/CORBIS; 407 (t), Bettmann/CORBIS; 407, Natural Bridge Caverns; 408, Keren Su/CORBIS; 409 (t), Pagasus/Visuals Unlimited; 409, Peter Essick/Aurora; 414, Victoria Smith/HRW; 415, Victoria Smith/HRW; 416, McGuire, V.L., 2001, Water-level changes in the High Plains Aquifer, 1980 to 1999: U.S. Geological Survey Fact Sheet, FS-029-01, 2 p.; 417 (br), Leif Skoogfers/Woodfin Camp & Associates; 417 (bl), Joseph Melanson/Aero Photo-Aerials Only Gallery; 418, Andrew Wenzel/Masterfile; 419 (b), Kevin R. Morris/CORBIS; 420 (tl), Jim Wark/Airphoto; 420 (tr), Hanne & Jens Eriksen/Nature Picture Library; 422 (l), Ralph A. Clevenger/CORBIS; 422 (tr), Jim Brandenburg/Minden Pictures; 423 (bl), Ronald Gorbutt/Visuals Unlimited; 425 (tr), G. R. Roberts/Natural Sciences Image Library (NSIL) of New Zealand; 425 (br), Victoria Smith/HRW; 428 (t), Galen Rowell/CORBIS; 429 (tr), Scott T. Smith/CORBIS; 431 (bkgd), George D. Lepp/CORBIS; 434 (tl), SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 435 (tl), Jim Brandenburg/Minden Pictures; 435 (cl), Scott T. Smith/CORBIS; 435 (bl), SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 440 (br), Victoria Smith/HRW; 441 (tr), Victoria Smith/HRW; 443 (b), Craig Tuttle/CORBIS; 444, Nicole Duplaix/National Geographic Image Collection; 445, Mark J. Terrill/AP/Wide World Photos; 446, Jonathan Blair/CORBIS; 449 (t), John Warden/Getty Images/Stone; 449, Andy Christiansen/HRW; 450, Walter H. Hodge/Peter Arnold, Inc.; 451, David Welling; 452 (bc), Jeff Foott/DRK Photo; 452 (tl), Jeff Foott/Tom Stack & Associates; 453 (bl), G. R. Roberts/Natural Sciences Image Library (NSIL) of New Zealand; 453 (tc), Breck P. Kent; 453 (br), John S. Shelton ; 457 (t), Aerial by Caudell; 457 (bl), Frans Lanting/Minden Pictures; 457 (br), Jean-Pierre Pieuchot/Getty Images/The Image Bank; 458, Tami Chappell/Rueters/NewsCom; 459, Mark J. Terrill/AP/Wide World Photos; 459, David Welling; 459, Tami Chappell/Rueters/NewsCom; 464, HRW; 465 (t), Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 465 (c), Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 465 (b), Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 466, Joost Van der Sanden, Canada Centre for Remote Sensing/Natural Resources Canada, RADARSAT image: (c)1999 Canadian Space Agency; 467 (t), Jonathan Blair/CORBIS; 467 (b), Adam Woolfitt/CORBIS.

UNIT SIX: 468-469, USGS/NASA; 469 (Ch. 19), Jeffrey L. Rotman/CORBIS; 469 (Ch. 20), David Hall; 469 (Ch. 21), eStock Photo/PictureQuest; 470, Jeffrey L. Rotman/CORBIS; 472 (br), Ocean Drilling Program - Texas A&M University; 472 (l), Ocean Drilling Program - Texas A&M University; 473 (ship), National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration/Department of Commerce; 473 (b), Victoria Smith/HRW; 474 (tl), Alexis Rosenfeld/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 474 (inset), David Shale/naturepl.com; 478, B. Tanaka/Getty Images/Taxi; 479, Ocean Drilling Program - Texas A&M University; 480 (t), Digital image (c) 1996 CORBIS; Original image courtesy of NASA/CORBIS; 480 (b), Courtesy Stephen Morris, Experimental Nonlinear Physics Group, University of Toronto; 481 (nodules), Tom McHugh/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 481 (bkgd), Darryl Torckler/Getty Images/Stone; 481 (nodules), Tom McHugh/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 482 (l), Jim Zuckerman/CORBIS; 482 (r), Andrew Syred/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 483 (t), Ocean Drilling Program - Texas A&M University; 483 (c), B. Tanaka/Getty Images/Taxi; 489, Victoria Smith/HRW; 490, NGDC/NOAA; 491 (t), Scripps Institution of Oceanography; 491 (b), Scripps Institution of Oceanography; 491 (bkgd), Royalty-Free/Corbis; 492 (all), David Hall; 495 (tl), Sean Davey/AllSport/Getty Images; 497 (tl), Tom Stewart/CORBIS; 497 (tr), CORBIS; 499 (tc), Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 499 (br), Vic-

toria Smith/HRW; 500 (tl), Lawson Wood/CORBIS; 501 (bl), David Hall; 502 (bl), IQ3d/Bruce Coleman, Inc.; 504 (tr), Craig Tuttle/CORBIS; 505 (bl), Steve Raymer/National Geographic Image Collection; 506 (tr), Bohemian Nomad Picturemakers/CORBIS; 507 (b), Chris Hellier/CORBIS; 508 (tl), Simon Fraser/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 509 (cl), David Hall; 509 (bl), Chris Hellier/CORBIS; 509 (tl), Sean Davey/AllSport/Getty Images; 514 (bl), Victoria Smith/HRW; 516, Courtesy of N.R. Nalli, NOAA/NESDIS, Washington, D.C.; 517 (bl), Karen J. Dodge/MWRA/RVA; 517 (tr), Digital Vision; 518 (all), eStock Photo/PictureQuest; 519 (bl), Jonathan Blair/CORBIS; 520 (br), Provided by the SeaWiFS Project, NASA/Goddard Space Flight Center, and ORBIMAGE; 522 (inset), Peter David/Nature Picture Library; 524 (inset), CORBIS; 525 (bl), Jack Fields/CORBIS; 527 (tr), Darrell Wong/Getty Images; 527 (br), Victoria Smith/HRW; 529 (tr), G. R. Roberts/Natural Sciences Image Library (NSIL) of New Zealand; 530 (tl), CORBIS; 530 (inset), CORBIS; 533 (tl), CORBIS; 533 (cl), CORBIS; 533 (br), NASA; 534 (tl), Photo Researchers, Inc.; 535 (tl), CORBIS; 535 (cl), Darrell Wong/Getty Images; 535 (bl), NASA; 540 (b), Victoria Smith/HRW; 543 (bl), SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 543 (br), R. Toms/OSF/Animals Animals/Earth Scenes.

UNIT SEVEN: 544-545, (c) Warren Faidley/Weatherstock; 545 (Ch. 22), Kevin Kelly/Getty Images/The Image Bank; 545 (Ch. 23), Charles Doswell III/Getty Images; 545 (Ch. 24), Taxi/Getty; 545 (Ch. 25), Theo Allofs/CORBIS; 546, Kevin Kelly/Getty Images/The Image Bank; 547 (b), Joseph Sohm; Visions of America/CORBIS; 549 (bl), Carol Hughes; Gallo Images/CORBIS; 549 (tr), Wolfgang Kaehler/CORBIS; 549 (tl), Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS ; 549 (tr), Royalty Free/CORBIS; 550 (tr), Chris Noble/Stone/Getty Images; 550 (tl), Didrik Johnck/CORBIS; 551, Andy Christiansen/HRW; 553, NASA/CORBIS; 554, Martin Thomas/Reuters NewMediInc./CORBIS; 555 (radio), NRAO/AUI/NSF; 555 (x-ray), NASA/JIAS/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 555 (visible), NASA/JIAS/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 555 (ultraviolet), SOHO/ESA/NASA; 555 (infrared), NOAO/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 556 (br), NASA; 556 (bl), NASA; 557, Jeremy Woodhouse/Photodisc/Getty; 563, NASA/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 564, Charles Benes/Index Stock Imagery, Inc.; 565 (t), Wolfgang Kaehler/CORBIS; 565 (c), Jeremy Woodhouse/Photodisc/Getty; 565 (b), NASA/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 572, NASA; 573 (bl), ML Sinibaldi/CORBIS; 573 (br), Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS; 574, Charles Doswell III/Getty Images; 576 (br), Robert Wright/Ecoscence/CORBIS; 578 (tr), (c)National Geographic Image Collection; 579 (bl), Barry Runk/Stan/Grant Heilman Photography, Inc.; 580 (tl), Graham Neden/Ecoscene/CORBIS; 582 (br), Michael S. Yamashita/CORBIS; 583 (t), Chris Anderson/Aurora; 585 (tl), Royalty Free/CORBIS; 585 (tr), Gary Braasch/CORBIS; 586 (tl), Charles O'Rear/CORBIS; 587 (bl), Darrell Gulin/CORBIS; 587 (bc), Gary W. Carter/CORBIS; 588 (br), Barry Runk/Stan/Grant Heilman Photography, Inc.; 589 (tl), AFP/CORBIS; 590 (tl), Jim Brandenburg/Minden Pictures; 591 (tl), Robert Wright/Ecoscence/CORBIS; 591 (cl), Michael S. Yamashita/CORBIS; 591 (bl), Gary W. Carter/CORBIS; 596 (br), Victoria Smith/HRW; 597 (tr), Victoria Smith/HRW; 599 (tr), National Center for Atmospheric Research/University Corporation for Atmospheric Research; 599 (bl), Marci Stenberg/Merced Sun-Star/AP/Wide World Photos; 600, Getty Images/Taxi; 601, NASA/CORBIS; 602, Rick Doyle/CORBIS; 604, Benjamin Lowy/Corbis; 605, CORBIS; 608, A & J Verkaik/CORBIS; 610 (inset), Jim Reed/CORBIS; 610 (tl), Howard B. Bluestein/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 611, Jonathan Blair/CORBIS; 612 (t), Philippe Giraud/CORBIS SYGMA; 612 (b), Victoria Smith/HRW; 613, Gene Rhoden/Visuals Unlimited; 614, NASA; 615, Courtesy World Meteorological Organization; 617 (t), Courtesy, The Weather Channel; 618, Jim Reed/CORBIS; 620, H. David Seawell/CORBIS; 621 (1), Benjamin Lowy/CORBIS; 621 (2), A & J Verkaik/CORBIS; 621 (3), NASA; 621 (4), Jim Reed/CORBIS; 626, HRW; 628, Data courtesy NOAA; 629 (t), Courtesy Shirley Murillo; 629 (b), NOAA; 629 (bkgd), Don Farrall/Getty Images/PhotoDisc; 630 (all), Theo Allofs/CORBIS; 631 (bl), Wolfgang Kaehler/CORBIS; 631 (br), Andrea Pistolesi/Getty Images; 635 (br), Indranil Mukherjee/AFP/Getty Images/Getty Images; 635 (bl), Reuters NewMedia, Inc./CORBIS; 639 (tl), (c) Bryan and Cherry Alexander Photography; 642 (tl), Bojan Brecelj/CORBIS; 644 (tr), Yann Arthus-Bertrand/CORBIS; 646 (tl), Wendy Stone/CORBIS; 646 (bl), Wendy Stone/CORBIS; 647 (tl), Wolfgang Kaehler/CORBIS; 647 (cl), (c) Bryan and Cherry Alexander Photography; 652 (b), Victoria Smith/HRW; 655 (c), Dee Breger/Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory.

UNIT EIGHT: 656-657, Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS; 657 (Ch. 28), Denis Scott/CORBIS; 657 (Ch. 26), NASA; 657 (Ch. 26), Denis Scott/CORBIS; 657 (Ch. 29), SOHO/ESA/NASA; 657 (Ch. 30), Stocktrek/CORBIS; 658 (all), NASA; 659 (bl), NASA; 660 (tr), NASA; 660 (tl), Jean-Charles Cuillandre/Canada-france-Hawaii Telescope/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 661 (br), Alfred Pasieka/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 662 (br), Michael Freeman/CORBIS; 664 (br), Bohemia Nomad Picturemakers/CORBIS; 664 (tl), Glen Alison/PhotoDisc Green/gettyimages; 665 (tl), NASA; 665 (br), NASA-JPL; 666 (tl), NASA; 667 (bl), Inga Spence/Visuals Unlimited; 667 (br), Inga Spence/Visuals Unlimited; 670 (tl), Gianni Dagli Orti/CORBIS; 673 (br), Andy Christiansen/HRW; 675 (bl), Inga Spence/Visuals Unlimited; 675 (tl), Jean-Charles Cuillandre/Canada-france-Hawaii Telescope/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 680 (br), Peter van Steen/HRW; 682 (t), C. Mayhew & R. Simmon/NASA/GSFO; 683 (tr), Lockheed Martin Corporation; 683 (bl), Image courtesy of NASA Landsat Project Science Office and USGS EROS Data Center; 684 (all), Denis Scott/CORBIS; 685 (bl), Royal Observatory, Edinburgh/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 690 (tl), Lindsay Hebberd/CORBIS; 692 (br), Victoria Smith/HRW; 694 (tl), David Nunuk/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 695 (b), JPL/NASA; 696 (br), NASA/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 697 (tl), NASA/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 698 (br), ESA/PLI/CORBIS; 699 (tl), World Perspectives/Getty Images; 700 (tl), AFP/CORBIS; 700 (tr), Gordon Garradd/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 701 (bl), Kevin Kelley/Getty Images; 702 (br), NASA; 703 (tr), CORBIS; 703 (br), NASA; 704 (br), NASA/JPL/Space Science Institute; 705 (tl), NASA; 706 (br), JPL/NASA; 707 (tl), NASA/JPL-Caltech; 708 (tl), Lynette R. Cook; 709 (t), Royal Observatory, Edinburgh/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 709 (cl), David Nunuk/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 709 (bl), NASA/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 709 (b), CORBIS; 714 (b), Victoria Smith/HRW; 715 (tr), Victoria Smith/HRW; 716 (tc), Photo Researchers, Inc.; 717 (tr), George Sakkestad; 717 (br), Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS; 717 (bkgd), NASA; 719, NASA; 720, Galileo Project/JPL/NASA; 721 (t), NASA; 721 (b), NASA; 724 (t), USGS; 724 (b), USGS; 726, NASA; 727 (bl), George Post/SPL/Photo Researchers; 727 (br), CNES/GAMMA; 728 (b), Victoria Smith/HRW; 728 (t), Royalty Free/CORBIS; 729 (b), Dr. Fred Espenak/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 730, John Bova/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 730, John Bova/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 730, John Bova/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 730, John Bova/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 730, John Bova/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 730, John Bova/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 730, NASA; 731, John Sanford/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 733, NASA/JPL/University of Arizona; 734 (t), Galileo Project/JPL/NASA; 734 (b), Galileo Project/JPL/NASA; 735 (t), Galileo Project/JPL/NASA; 735 (c), NASA; 735 (b), NASA; 736 (t), NASA; 736 (b), Copyright Calvin J. Hamilton; 737 (t), NASA; 737 (b), Dr. R. Albrecht, ESA/ESO Space Telescope European Coordinating Facility; NASA ; 738, NASA; 739, NASA; 740, Getty Images/PhotoDisc; 741, Wally Pacholka/AstroPics.com; 743, Juan Carlos Casado; 744 (t), E.R. Degginger/Bruce Coleman, Inc.; 744 (c), Breck P. Kent/Animals Animals/Earth Scenes; 744 (b), Ken Nichols/Institute of Meteorites; 745 (1), NASA; 745 (2), CNES/GAMMA; 745 (3), Galileo Project/JPL/NASA; 745 (4), Wally Pacholka/AstroPics.com; 752, NASA; 753 (b), NASA; 753 (t), NASA; 754, SOHO/ESA/NASA; 757 (t), Kamioka Observatory, ICRR (Institute for Cosmic Ray Research), The University of Tokyo; 757 (b), Andy Christiansen/HRW; 759, NOAO/AURA/NSF; 760, Fred Espenek; 761 (bl), The Institute for Solar Physics, The Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences; 761(inset), Getty Images/Photodisc; 762, Laboratory for Atmospheric and Space Physics, University of Colorado-Boulder; 763, M. Aschwanden et al. (LMSAL), TRACE, NASA ; 764, Michael DeYoung/AlaskaStock Images; 765 (t), Fred Espenek; 765 (b), Michael DeYoung/AlaskaStock Images; 767, NASA; 770, HRW; 771, HRW; 772, Yohkoh Solar Observatory; 773 (tr), JPL/NASA; 774 (all), Stocktrek/CORBIS; 775 (b), N.A.Sharp, NOAO/NSO/Kitt Peak FTS/AURA/NSF; 776 (t), NASA/Hubble Heritage Team; 777 (b), Grant Faint/Getty Images; 779 (inset), Victoria Smith/HRW; 780 (bkgd), Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS; 782 (tr), NASA; 783 (br), Tony Craddock/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 784 (br), Matthew Spinelli; 785 (tr), NASA The Heritage Hubble Team; 785 (inset), Photo courtesy of the NAIC/Aricebo Observatory/NSF; 788 (tl), NASA; 790 (bl), Celestial Image Co./SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 791 (tl), NASA/Gemini Observatory, GMOS Team; 791 (tr), Royal Observatory, Edinburgh/AATB/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 791 (tc), NOAO/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 792 (tr), NASA/CXC/A.Siemiginowska et al.; Illustration: CXC/M.Weiss ; 793 (br), NASA; 795 (tr), Victoria Smith/HRW; 795 (br), NASA/WMAP Science Team; 796 (tl), NASA and Hubble Heritage Team; 797 (tl), Grant Faint/Getty Images; 797 (cl), NASA The Heritage Hubble Team; 797 (cl), Celestial Image Co./SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 797 (bl), NASA; 803 (tr), Victoria Smith/HRW; 805 (bl), NASA/JPL-Caltech/S. Willner (Harvard-Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics); 805 (tr), Roger Ressmeyer/CORBIS.

APPENDIX: 806 (bl), R. L. Christiansen/CORBIS; 806 (bc), Stuart Westmorland/CORBIS /CORBIS; 806 (br), Jean Miele/CORBIS ; 832 (bkgd), David Muench/CORBIS; 832 (b), Victoria Smith/HRW; 833, USGS; 835, Karl Mueller/University of Colorado/AP/Wide World Photos; 836, David McNew/Getty Images/NewsCom; 838-839, Victoria Smith/HRW; 840, Chris Johns/Getty Images/National Geographic; 841, Greg Dimijian/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 842, A.T. Willett/Alamy Photos; 843, A.T. Willett/Alamy Photos; 844, Courtesy Earth and Sky; 846, HRW; 847 (tr), David Young-Wolff/PhotoEdit; 847 (c), Photodisc Green/Getty Images; 848, Digital Image copyright (c) 2006 Larry Brownstein/PhotoDisc; 850, David Gallant/CORBIS; 852-853, Robert Landau/CORBIS ; 853, Victoria Smith/HRW; 854 (r), Daniel Schaefer/HRW; 854 (l), Michael Abbey/Visuals Unlimited; 856, A & J Verkaik/CORBIS; 859, Hillery Smith/AP/Wide World Photos; 861, Michael Wirtz/Philadelphia Inquirer/NewsCom; 862, Tony Freeman/PhotoEdit; 865 (l), Galen Rowell/CORBIS; 865 (r), Paul Wakefield/Getty Images/Stone; 866 (all), HRW; 867 (r), WallyPacholka/AstroPics.com; 867 (l), Stocktrek/CORBIS.